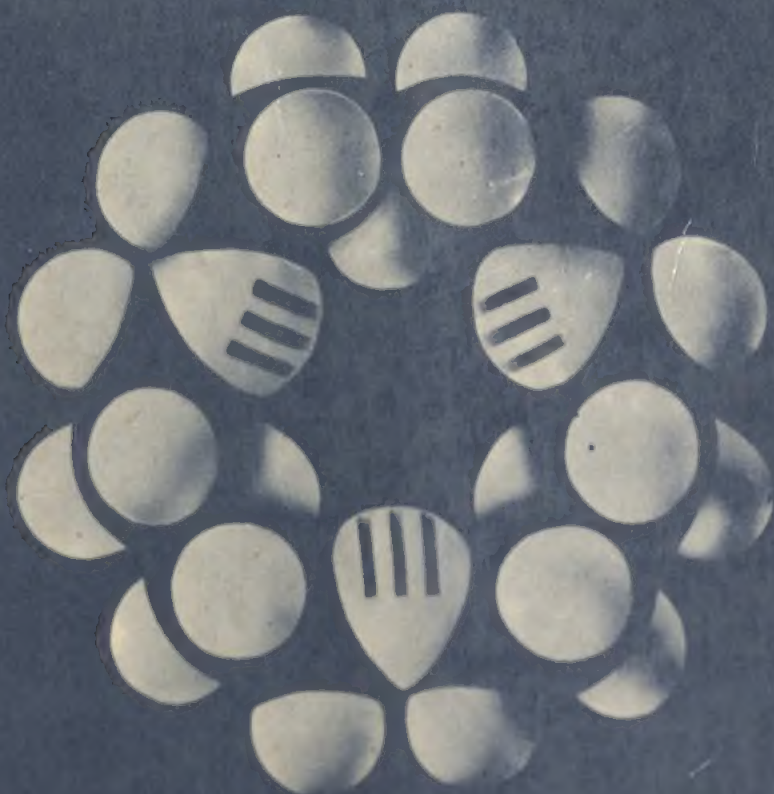


MORRISON  
AND BOYD

ORGANIC  
CHEMISTRY  
FOURTH EDITION



# Organic Chemistry

Fourth Edition

ROBERT THORNTON MORRISON

ROBERT NEILSON BOYD

*New York University*

 **UBSPD**

UBS Publishers' Distributors Ltd  
8/1-B, Chowringhee Lane, Calcutta-700 016  
Ph: 212451, 249473



Allyn and Bacon, Inc.  
Universal Book Stall

Boston, London, Sydney, Toronto  
New Delhi



LIBRARY  
Date 10.8.98  
Accn. No. 9699

547  
MOR

Copyright © 1983  
by Allyn and Bacon Inc.

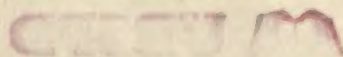
First Indian Reprint  
Ninth Indian Reprint

June 1985  
March 1989



Universal Book Stall  
5 Ansari Road, New Delhi-110 002

ISBN 81-85274-14-2



Published by arrangement with Allyn and Bacon, Inc.

U.S. Publishers, Distributors Ltd.  
81-85, Chowringhee Lane, Calcutta-700 016  
Phone: 334473

For sale in India, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh and Nepal.

Printed at New Printindia Pvt. Ltd., 8/4-B, Industrial Area,  
Sahibabad-201 010, Dist. Ghaziabad (U.P.)

# Table of Contents

*Preface* xxi

*Acknowledgments* xxv

---

## PART I

---

### The Fundamentals

---

#### 1. Structure and Properties

- 1.1 Organic chemistry 1
- 1.2 The structural theory 3
- 1.3 The chemical bond before 1926 3
- 1.4 Quantum mechanics 5
- 1.5 Atomic orbitals 6
- 1.6 Electronic configuration. Pauli exclusion principle 7
- 1.7 Molecular orbitals 8
- 1.8 The covalent bond 9
- 1.9 Hybrid orbitals:  $sp$  11
- 1.10 Hybrid orbitals:  $sp^2$  13
- 1.11 Hybrid orbitals:  $sp^3$  15
- 1.12 Unshared pairs of electrons 17
- 1.13 Intramolecular forces 19
- 1.14 Bond dissociation energy. Homolysis and heterolysis 20
- 1.15 Polarity of bonds 22
- 1.16 Polarity of molecules 22
- 1.17 Structure and physical properties 25
- 1.18 Melting point 26
- 1.19 Intermolecular forces 27
- 1.20 Boiling point 29
- 1.21 Solubility: non-ionic solutes 30
- 1.22 Solubility: ionic solutes. Protic and aprotic solvents. Ion pairs 32
- 1.23 Acids and bases 36
- 1.24 Isomerism 39

#### 2. Methane *Energy of Activation. Transition State*

- 2.1 Hydrocarbons 43
- 2.2 Structure of methane 43
- 2.3 Physical properties 44
- 2.4 Source 45
- 2.5 Reactions 45
- 2.6 Oxidation. Heat of combustion 46
- 2.7 Chlorination: a substitution reaction 46
- 2.8 Control of chlorination 47



2.9	Reaction with other halogens: halogenation	48
2.10	Relative reactivity	48
2.11	Reaction mechanisms	49
2.12	Mechanism of chlorination. Free radicals	49
2.13	Chain reactions	52
2.14	Inhibitors	53
2.15	Heat of reaction	53
2.16	Energy of activation	54
2.17	Progress of reaction: energy changes	55
2.18	Rate of reaction	59
2.19	Relative rates of reaction	62
2.20	Relative reactivities of halogens toward methane	63
2.21	An alternative mechanism for halogenation	65
2.22	Structure of the methyl radical. $sp^2$ Hybridization	67
2.23	Transition state	69
2.24	Reactivity and development of the transition state	71
2.25	Molecular formula: its fundamental importance	72
2.26	Qualitative elemental analysis	73
2.27	Quantitative elemental analysis: carbon, hydrogen, and halogen	74
2.28	Empirical formula	74
2.29	Molecular weight. Molecular formula	75

### 3. Alkanes *Free-Radical Substitution*

3.1	Classification by structure: the family	79
3.2	Structure of ethane	79
3.3	Free rotation about the carbon-carbon single bond. Conformations. Torsional strain	80
3.4	Propane and the butanes	82
3.5	Conformations of <i>n</i> -butane. Van der Waals repulsion	84
3.6	Higher alkanes. The homologous series	85
3.7	Nomenclature	86
3.8	Alkyl groups	87
3.9	Common names of alkanes	89
3.10	IUPAC names of alkanes	89
3.11	Classes of carbon atoms and hydrogen atoms	91
3.12	Physical properties	91
3.13	Industrial source	93
3.14	Industrial source vs. laboratory preparation	94
3.15	Preparation	95
3.16	The Grignard reagent: an organometallic compound	95
3.17	Coupling of alkyl halides with organometallic compounds	99
3.18	Reactions	100
3.19	Halogenation	101
3.20	Mechanism of halogenation	103
3.21	Orientation of halogenation	105
3.22	Relative reactivities of alkanes toward halogenation	107
3.23	Ease of abstraction of hydrogen atoms. Energy of activation	108
3.24	Stability of free radicals	109
3.25	Ease of formation of free radicals	110

3.26	Transition state for halogenation	111
3.27	Orientation and reactivity	111
3.28	Reactivity and selectivity	112
3.29	Non-rearrangement of free radicals. Isotopic tracers	113
3.30	Combustion	115
3.31	Pyrolysis: cracking	116
3.32	Determination of structure	117
3.33	Analysis of alkanes	118

#### 4. Stereochemistry

4.1	Stereochemistry and stereoisomerism	123
4.2	Isomer number and tetrahedral carbon	124
4.3	Optical activity. Plane-polarized light	125
4.4	The polarimeter	126
4.5	Specific rotation	127
4.6	Enantiomerism: the discovery	128
4.7	Enantiomerism and tetrahedral carbon	129
4.8	Enantiomerism and optical activity	130
4.9	Prediction of enantiomerism. Chirality	131
4.10	The chiral center	132
4.11	Enantiomers	134
4.12	The racemic modification	135
4.13	Optical activity: a closer look	136
4.14	Configuration	137
4.15	Specification of configuration: <i>R</i> and <i>S</i>	138
4.16	Sequence rules	139
4.17	Diastereomers	141
4.18	<i>Meso</i> structures	143
4.19	Specification of configuration: more than one chiral center	145
4.20	Conformational isomers	146
4.21	Reactions involving stereoisomers	148
4.22	Generation of a chiral center. Synthesis and optical activity	149
4.23	Reactions of chiral molecules. Bond breaking	150
4.24	Reactions of chiral molecules. Relating configurations	151
4.25	Optical purity	154
4.26	Reactions of chiral molecules. Generation of a second chiral center	154
4.27	Formation of enantiomers and diastereomers: a closer look	156
4.28	Reactions of chiral molecules with optically active reagents. Resolution	157
4.29	Reactions of chiral molecules. Mechanism of free-radical chlorination	159

#### 5. Alicyclic Compounds *Cycloalkanes*

5.1	Open-chain and cyclic compounds	165
5.2	Nomenclature	166
5.3	Industrial source	167
5.4	Preparation	168



5.5	Reactions	169
5.6	Reactions of small-ring compounds. Cyclopropane and cyclobutane	169
5.7	Baeyer strain theory	170
5.8	Heats of combustion and relative stabilities of the cycloalkanes	171
5.9	Orbital picture of angle strain	173
5.10	Factors affecting stability of conformations	175
5.11	Conformations of cycloalkanes	175
5.12	Equatorial and axial bonds in cyclohexane	179
5.13	Stereoisomerism of cyclic compounds: <i>cis</i> - and <i>trans</i> -isomers	182
5.14	Stereoisomerism of cyclic compounds. Conformational analysis	184
5.15	Analysis of cycloalkanes	189

## 6. Alkyl Halides *Nucleophilic Aliphatic Substitution*

6.1	Homolytic and heterolytic chemistry	193
6.2	Relative rates of competing reactions	194
6.3	Structure of alkyl halides and alcohols. The functional group	195
6.4	Classification and nomenclature of alkyl halides	196
6.5	Classification and nomenclature of alcohols	197
6.6	Physical properties of alkyl halides	198
6.7	Physical properties of alcohols	200
6.8	Alcohols as acids and bases	201
6.9	Preparation of alkyl halides	202
6.10	Reactions of alkyl halides. Nucleophilic aliphatic substitution	204
6.11	Nucleophilic aliphatic substitution. Nucleophiles and leaving groups	208
6.12	Rate of reaction: effect of concentration. Kinetics	212
6.13	Kinetics of nucleophilic aliphatic substitution. Second-order and first-order reactions	212
6.14	Nucleophilic aliphatic substitution: duality of mechanism	213
6.15	The $S_N2$ reaction: mechanism and kinetics	215
6.16	The $S_N2$ reaction: stereochemistry. Inversion of configuration	216
6.17	Stereoselective and stereospecific reactions	219
6.18	The $S_N2$ reaction: reactivity. Steric hindrance	221
6.19	The $S_N1$ reaction: mechanism and kinetics. Rate-determining step	224
6.20	Carbocations	226
6.21	Structure of carbocations	228
6.22	The $S_N1$ reaction: stereochemistry	228
6.23	Relative stabilities of carbocations	231
6.24	Stabilization of carbocations. Accommodation of charge. Polar effects	234
6.25	The $S_N1$ reaction: reactivity. Ease of formation of carbocations	235
6.26	Rearrangement of carbocations	238
6.27	The $S_N1$ reaction: role of the solvent. Ion-dipole bonds	244
6.28	The $S_N2$ reaction: role of the solvent. Protic and aprotic solvents	246
6.29	The $S_N2$ reaction: phase-transfer catalysis	249
6.30	$S_N2$ vs. $S_N1$	252
6.31	Solvolysis. Nucleophilic assistance by the solvent	254



- 6.32 Reaction of alcohols with hydrogen halides 258  
 6.33 Analysis of alkyl halides 263

## 7. Alkenes I. Structure and Preparation *Elimination*

- 7.1 Unsaturated hydrocarbons 267  
 7.2 Structure of ethylene. The carbon-carbon double bond 267  
 7.3 Propylene 269  
 7.4 Hybridization and orbital size 269  
 7.5 The butylenes 270  
 7.6 Geometric isomerism 272  
 7.7 Higher alkenes 276  
 7.8 Names of alkenes 276  
 7.9 Physical properties 278  
 7.10 Industrial source 280  
 7.11 Preparation 280  
 7.12 Dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides: 1,2-elimination 283  
 7.13 Kinetics of dehydrohalogenation. Duality of mechanism 288  
 7.14 The E2 mechanism 288  
 7.15 The E1 mechanism 289  
 7.16 Elimination via carbanions 290  
 7.17 Evidence for the E2 mechanism. Absence of rearrangement 294  
 7.18 Evidence for the E2 mechanism. Isotope effects 294  
 7.19 Evidence for the E2 mechanism. Absence of hydrogen exchange 297  
 7.20 Evidence for the E2 mechanism. The element effect 298  
 7.21 The E2 reaction: orientation and reactivity 299  
 7.22 The E2 reaction: stereochemistry. *syn*- and *anti*-Elimination. 302  
 7.23 The E2 mechanism: stereochemistry. Conformational effects 308  
 7.24 Evidence for the E1 mechanism 310  
 7.25 The E1 reaction: orientation 313  
 7.26 Elimination: E2 *vs.* E1 314  
 7.27 Elimination *vs.* substitution 315  
 7.28 Dehydration of alcohols 318

## 8. Alkenes II. Reactions of the Carbon-Carbon Double Bond *Electrophilic and Free-Radical Addition*

- 8.1 Reactions of alkenes 325  
 8.2 Reactions at the carbon-carbon double bond. Addition 325  
 8.3 Hydrogenation. Heat of hydrogenation 331  
 8.4 Heat of hydrogenation and stability of alkenes 333  
 8.5 Homogeneous hydrogenation. Transition metal complexes 335  
 8.6 Stereochemistry of homogeneous hydrogenation: diastereoselectivity.  
*syn*- and *anti*-Addition 339  
 8.7 Stereochemistry of homogeneous hydrogenation:  
 enantioselectivity 342  
 8.8 Addition of hydrogen halides. Markovnikov's rule. Regioselective  
 reactions 345  
 8.9 Addition of hydrogen bromide. Peroxide effect 348  
 8.10 Addition of sulfuric acid 349



- 8.11 Addition of water. Hydration 350
- 8.12 Electrophilic addition: mechanism 350
- 8.13 Electrophilic addition: rearrangements 352
- 8.14 Electrophilic addition: absence of hydrogen exchange 354
- 8.15 Electrophilic addition: orientation and reactivity 355
- 8.16 Addition of halogens 359
- 8.17 Mechanism of addition of halogens 359
- 8.18 Stereochemistry of addition of halogens 361
- 8.19 Halohydrin formation: addition of the elements of hypohalous acids 367
- 8.20 Addition of alkenes. Dimerization 370
- 8.21 Addition of alkanes. Alkylation 371
- 8.22 Free-radical addition. Mechanism of the peroxide-initiated addition of HBr 373
- 8.23 Orientation of free-radical addition. Polar factors 374
- 8.24 Other free-radical additions 377
- 8.25 Addition of carbenes. Cycloaddition 378
- 8.26 Addition of substituted carbenes. 1,1-Elimination 381
- 8.27 Hydroxylation. Formation of 1,2-diols 382
- 8.28 Cleavage: determination of structure by degradation. Ozonolysis 384
- 8.29 Analysis of alkenes 386

## 9. Conjugation and Resonance *Dienes*

- 9.1 The carbon-carbon double bond as a substituent 395
- 9.2 Free-radical halogenation of alkenes: substitution *vs.* addition 396
- 9.3 Free-radical substitution in alkenes: orientation and reactivity 398
- 9.4 Free-radical substitution in alkenes: allylic rearrangement 400
- 9.5 Symmetry of the allyl radical 401
- 9.6 The theory of resonance 402
- 9.7 The allyl radical as a resonance hybrid 402
- 9.8 Stability of the allyl radical 404
- 9.9 Orbital picture of the allyl radical 405
- 9.10 Using the resonance theory 407
- 9.11 Resonance stabilization of alkyl radicals. Hyperconjugation 408
- 9.12 The allyl cation as a resonance hybrid 410
- 9.13 Nucleophilic substitution in allylic substrates:  $S_N1$ . Reactivity. Allylic rearrangement 411
- 9.14 Stabilization of carbocations: the resonance effect 414
- 9.15 Stabilization of carbocations: the role of unshared pairs 415
- 9.16 Resonance stabilization of alkyl cations: hyperconjugation 418
- 9.17 Nucleophilic substitution in allylic substrates:  $S_N2$  419
- 9.18 Nucleophilic substitution in vinylic substrates 419
- 9.19 Nucleophilic substitution in vinylic substrates: vinylic cations 420
- 9.20 Dienes: structure and properties 424
- 9.21 Stability of conjugated dienes 425
- 9.22 Resonance in conjugated dienes 426
- 9.23 Resonance in alkenes. Hyperconjugation 427
- 9.24 Stability of dienes and alkenes: an alternative interpretation 428



- 9.25 Ease of formation of conjugated dienes: orientation of elimination 429
- 9.26 Electrophilic addition to conjugated dienes. 1,4-Addition 429
- 9.27 1,2- *vs.* 1,4-Addition. Rate *vs.* equilibrium 432
- 9.28 Free-radical addition to conjugated dienes: orientation 434
- 9.29 Free-radical addition to conjugated dienes: reactivity 435

#### POLYMERS AND POLYMERIZATION

- 9.30 Macromolecules 436
- 9.31 Free-radical polymerization of alkenes 437
- 9.32 Free-radical polymerization of dienes. Rubber and rubber substitutes 439
- 9.33 Isoprene and the isoprene rule 440
- 9.34 Copolymerization 442
- 9.35 Ionic polymerization 442
- 9.36 Coordination polymerization 443
- 9.37 Structure and properties of macromolecules 446
- 9.38 Analysis of dienes 450

### 10. Alcohols I. Preparation and Physical Properties

- 10.1 Introduction 455
- 10.2 Structure, classification, and nomenclature 455
- 10.3 Physical properties 456
- 10.4 Industrial source 459
- 10.5 Ethyl alcohol 463
- 10.6 Preparation of alcohols 464
- 10.7 Oxymercuration-demercuration 468
- 10.8 Hydroboration-oxidation 469
- 10.9 Orientation and stereochemistry of hydroboration 470
- 10.10 Mechanism of hydroboration 472
- 10.11 Aldehydes and ketones: an introduction 474
- 10.12 Grignard synthesis of alcohols 475
- 10.13 Products of the Grignard synthesis 476
- 10.14 Formation of carbon-carbon bonds. Role played by organometallic compounds 477
- 10.15 Planning a Grignard synthesis 478
- 10.16 Limitations of the Grignard synthesis 479
- 10.17 Steroids 480

### 11. Alcohols II. Reactions

- 11.1 Chemistry of the —OH group 485
- 11.2 Reactions 485
- 11.3 Cleavage of the C---OH bond 489
- 11.4 Neighboring group effects: the discovery. Stereochemistry 490
- 11.5 Neighboring group effects: intramolecular nucleophilic attack 493
- 11.6 Neighboring group effects: rate of reaction. Anchimeric assistance 495
- 11.7 Alcohols as acids and bases 500
- 11.8 Formation of alkyl sulfonates 502
- 11.9 Oxidation of alcohols 503



- 11.10 Biological oxidation of ethanol 504
- 11.11 Enantiotopic and diastereotopic ligands and faces 510
- 11.12 Synthesis of alcohols 517
- 11.13 Syntheses using alcohols 519
- 11.14 Analysis of alcohols. Characterization. Iodoform test 521
- 11.15 Analysis of 1,2-diols. Periodic acid oxidation 523

## 12. Ethers and Epoxides

### ETHERS

- 12.1 Structure and nomenclature of ethers 533
- 12.2 Physical properties of ethers 534
- 12.3 Industrial sources of ethers. Dehydration of alcohols 534
- 12.4 Preparation of ethers 536
- 12.5 Preparation of ethers. Williamson synthesis 537
- 12.6 Preparation of ethers. Alkoxymercuration demercuration 538
- 12.7 Reactions of ethers. Cleavage by acids 539
- 12.8 Cyclic ethers 540
- 12.9 Crown ethers. Host-guest relationship 542

### EPOXIDES

- 12.10 Preparation of epoxides 544
- 12.11 Reactions of epoxides 546
- 12.12 Acid-catalyzed cleavage of epoxides. *anti*-Hydroxylation 548
- 12.13 Base-catalyzed cleavage of epoxides 549
- 12.14 Reaction of ethylene oxide with Grignard reagents 550
- 12.15 Orientation of cleavage of epoxides 550
- 12.16 Analysis of ethers 552

## 13. Alkynes

- 13.1 Introduction 555
- 13.2 Structure of acetylene. The carbon-carbon triple bond 555
- 13.3 Higher alkynes. Nomenclature 557
- 13.4 Physical properties of alkynes 558
- 13.5 Industrial source of acetylene 558
- 13.6 Preparation of alkynes 559
- 13.7 Reactions of alkynes 560
- 13.8 Reduction to alkenes 563
- 13.9 Electrophilic addition to alkynes 564
- 13.10 Hydration of alkynes. Tautomerism 565
- 13.11 Acidity of alkynes 566
- 13.12 Reactions of metal acetylides 568
- 13.13 Analysis of alkynes 569

## 14. Aromaticity *Benzene*

- 14.1 Aliphatic and aromatic compounds 573
- 14.2 Structure of benzene 574
- 14.3 Molecular formula. Isomer number. Kekule structure 574
- 14.4 Stability of the benzene ring. Reactions of benzene 576
- 14.5 Stability of the benzene ring. Heats of hydrogenation and combustion 578

14.6	Carbon-carbon bond lengths in benzene	579
14.7	Resonance structure of benzene	579
14.8	Orbital picture of benzene	581
14.9	Representation of the benzene ring	583
14.10	Aromatic character. The Hückel $4n + 2$ rule	583
14.11	Nomenclature of benzene derivatives	587
14.12	Quantitative elemental analysis: nitrogen and sulfur	589

## 15. Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution

15.1	Introduction	593
15.2	Effect of substituent groups	595
15.3	Determination of orientation	596
15.4	Determination of relative reactivity	597
15.5	Classification of substituent groups	598
15.6	Orientation in disubstituted benzenes	598
15.7	Orientation and synthesis	600
15.8	Mechanism of nitration	601
15.9	Mechanism of sulfonation	603
15.10	Mechanism of Friedel-Crafts alkylation	604
15.11	Mechanism of halogenation	605
15.12	Desulfonation. Mechanism of protonation	605
15.13	Mechanism of electrophilic aromatic substitution: a summary	606
15.14	Mechanism of electrophilic aromatic substitution: the two steps	607
15.15	Reactivity and orientation	611
15.16	Theory of reactivity	612
15.17	Theory of orientation	614
15.18	Electron release via resonance	616
15.19	Effect of halogen on electrophilic aromatic substitution	618
15.20	Relation to other carbocation reactions	620

## 16. Aromatic-Aliphatic Compounds *Arenes and Their Derivatives*

16.1	The aromatic ring as a substituent	625
16.2	Aromatic-aliphatic hydrocarbons: arenes	625
16.3	Structure and nomenclature of arenes and their derivatives	626
16.4	Physical properties	628
16.5	Industrial source of alkylbenzenes	630
16.6	Preparation of alkylbenzenes	631
16.7	Friedel-Crafts alkylation	632
16.8	Mechanism of Friedel-Crafts alkylation	633
16.9	Limitations of Friedel-Crafts alkylation	635
16.10	Reactions of alkylbenzenes	636
16.11	Oxidation of alkylbenzenes	638
16.12	Electrophilic aromatic substitution in alkylbenzenes	639
16.13	Halogenation of alkylbenzenes. ring vs. side chain	640
16.14	Side-chain halogenation of alkylbenzenes	641
16.15	Resonance stabilization of the benzyl radical	643
16.16	Triphenylmethyl a stable free radical	645



- 16.17 Stability of the benzyl cation 649
- 16.18 Nucleophilic substitution in benzylic substrates 650
- 16.19 Synthesis of alkylbenzene derivatives 652
- 16.20 Neighboring group effects: neighboring aryl 654
- 16.21 Neighboring group effects: neighboring saturated carbon. Nonclassical ions 657
- 16.22 Neighboring group effects: neighboring alkyl and neighboring hydrogen 661
- 16.23 Preparation of alkenylbenzenes. Conjugation with the ring 663
- 16.24 Reactions of alkenylbenzenes 664
- 16.25 Addition to conjugated alkenylbenzenes 665
- 16.26 Alkynylbenzenes 666
- 16.27 Analysis of arenes 666

## 17. Spectroscopy and Structure

- 17.1 Determination of structure: spectroscopic methods 675
- 17.2 The mass spectrum 676
- 17.3 The electromagnetic spectrum 679
- 17.4 The infrared spectrum 680
- 17.5 Infrared spectra of hydrocarbons 682
- 17.6 Infrared spectra of alcohols 684
- 17.7 Infrared spectra of ethers 685
- 17.8 The ultraviolet spectrum 688
- 17.9 The nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectrum 690
- 17.10 NMR. Number of signals. Equivalent and non-equivalent protons 691
- 17.11 NMR. Positions of signals. Chemical shift 694
- 17.12 NMR. Peak area and proton counting 699
- 17.13 NMR. Splitting of signals. Spin spin coupling 700
- 17.14 NMR. Coupling constants 710
- 17.15 NMR. Complicated spectra. Deuterium labeling 713
- 17.16 Equivalence of protons: a closer look 715
- 17.17 NMR spectra of alcohols. Hydrogen bonding. Proton exchange 719
- 17.18 Carbon-13 NMR (CMR) spectroscopy 720
- 17.19 The electron spin resonance (ESR) spectrum 720

## 18. Aldehydes and Ketones *Nucleophilic Addition*

- 18.1 Structure 733
- 18.2 Nomenclature 734
- 18.3 Physical properties 735
- 18.4 Preparation 737
- 18.5 Preparation of ketones by Friedel-Crafts acylation 741
- 18.6 Preparation of ketones by use of organocopper compounds 743
- 18.7 Pinacol rearrangement. Migration to electron-deficient carbon 744
- 18.8 Reactions. Nucleophilic addition 746
- 18.9 Oxidation 752
- 18.10 Reduction 753

18.11	Addition of Grignard reagents	755
18.12	Addition of cyanide	755
18.13	Addition of derivatives of ammonia	756
18.14	Addition of alcohols. Acetal formation	757
18.15	Cannizzaro reaction	760
18.16	Analysis of aldehydes and ketones	761
18.17	Spectroscopic analysis of aldehydes and ketones	762

## 19. Carboxylic Acids

19.1	Structure	775
19.2	Nomenclature	776
19.3	Physical properties	778
19.4	Salts of carboxylic acids	779
19.5	Industrial source	780
19.6	Preparation	781
19.7	Grignard synthesis	784
19.8	Nitrile synthesis	785
19.9	Reactions	786
19.10	Ionization of carboxylic acids. Acidity constant	789
19.11	Equilibrium	790
19.12	Acidity of carboxylic acids	793
19.13	Structure of carboxylate ions	794
19.14	Effect of substituents on acidity	795
19.15	Conversion into acid chlorides	797
19.16	Conversion into esters	798
19.17	Conversion into amides	799
19.18	Reduction of acids to alcohols	799
19.19	Halogenation of aliphatic acids. Substituted acids	800
19.20	Dicarboxylic acids	801
19.21	Analysis of carboxylic acids. Neutralization equivalent	804
19.22	Spectroscopic analysis of carboxylic acids	805

## 20. Functional Derivatives of Carboxylic Acids

### *Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution*

20.1	Structure	813
20.2	Nomenclature	813
20.3	Physical properties	814
20.4	Nucleophilic acyl substitution. Role of the carbonyl group	815
20.5	Nucleophilic substitution: alkyl vs. acyl	818

### ACID CHLORIDES

20.6	Preparation of acid chlorides	819
20.7	Reactions of acid chlorides	819
20.8	Conversion of acid chlorides into acid derivatives	821

### ACID ANHYDRIDES

20.9	Preparation of acid anhydrides	822
20.10	Reactions of acid anhydrides	823

### AMIDES

20.11	Preparation of amides	825
-------	-----------------------	-----



20.12	Reactions of amides	826
20.13	Hydrolysis of amides	826
20.14	Imides	827
	ESTERS	
20.15	Preparation of esters	827
20.16	Reactions of esters	830
20.17	Alkaline hydrolysis of esters	832
20.18	Acidic hydrolysis of esters	835
20.19	Ammonolysis of esters	837
20.20	Transesterification	837
20.21	Reaction of esters with Grignard reagents	838
20.22	Reduction of esters	838
20.23	Functional derivatives of carbonic acid	839
20.24	Step-reaction polymerization. Polyesters. Urea-formaldehyde resins. Polyurethanes	842
20.25	Analysis of carboxylic acid derivatives. Saponification equivalent	845
20.26	Spectroscopic analysis of carboxylic acid derivatives	846

## 21. Carbanions I *Aldol and Claisen Condensations*

21.1	Acidity of $\alpha$ -hydrogens	859
21.2	Reactions involving carbanions	861
21.3	Base-promoted halogenation of ketones	864
21.4	Acid-catalyzed halogenation of ketones. Enolization	866
21.5	Aldol condensation	867
21.6	Dehydration of aldol products	869
21.7	Use of aldol condensation in synthesis	870
21.8	Crossed aldol condensation	871
21.9	Reactions related to the aldol condensation	872
21.10	The Wittig reaction	873
21.11	Claisen condensation. Formation of $\beta$ -keto esters	875
21.12	Crossed Claisen condensation	878
21.13	Reformatsky reaction. Preparation of $\beta$ -hydroxy esters	879

## 22. Amines I. Preparation and Physical Properties

22.1	Structure	887
22.2	Classification	887
22.3	Nomenclature	888
22.4	Physical properties of amines	889
22.5	Salts of amines	891
22.6	Stereochemistry of nitrogen	891
22.7	Industrial source	893
22.8	Preparation	893
22.9	Reduction of nitro compounds	897
22.10	Ammonolysis of halides	898
22.11	Reductive amination	900
22.12	Hofmann degradation of amides	901
22.13	Synthesis of secondary and tertiary amines	902

- 22.14 Heterocyclic amines 903
- 22.15 Hofmann rearrangement. Migration to electron-deficient nitrogen 903
- 22.16 Hofmann rearrangement. Intramolecular or intermolecular? 905
- 22.17 Hofmann rearrangement. Stereochemistry at the migrating group 906
- 22.18 Hofmann rearrangement. Timing of the steps 907

## 23. Amines II. Reactions

- 23.1 Reactions 911
- 23.2 Basicity of amines. Basicity constant 914
- 23.3 Structure and basicity 915
- 23.4 Effect of substituents on basicity of aromatic amines 918
- 23.5 Quaternary ammonium salts. Exhaustive methylation. Hofmann elimination 919
- 23.6 E2 elimination: Hofmann orientation. The variable E2 transition state 921
- 23.7 Conversion of amines into substituted amides 923
- 23.8 Polyamides. Nylon 926
- 23.9 Ring substitution in aromatic amines 927
- 23.10 Sulfonation of aromatic amines. Dipolar ions 928
- 23.11 Sulfanilamide. The sulfa drugs 930
- 23.12 Reactions of amines with nitrous acid 931
- 23.13 Diazonium salts. Preparation and reactions 933
- 23.14 Diazonium salts. Replacement by halogen. Sandmeyer reaction 936
- 23.15 Diazonium salts. Replacement by  $-\text{CN}$ . Synthesis of carboxylic acids 937
- 23.16 Diazonium salts. Replacement by  $-\text{OH}$ . Synthesis of phenols 937
- 23.17 Diazonium salts. Replacement by  $-\text{H}$  938
- 23.18 Syntheses using diazonium salts 938
- 23.19 Coupling of diazonium salts. Synthesis of azo compounds 940
- 23.20 Analysis of amines. Hinsberg test 943
- 23.21 Analysis of substituted amides 944
- 23.22 Spectroscopic analysis of amines and substituted amides 944

## 24. Phenols

- 24.1 Structure and nomenclature 957
- 24.2 Physical properties 957
- 24.3 Salts of phenols 960
- 24.4 Industrial source 960
- 24.5 Rearrangement of hydroperoxides. Migration to electron-deficient oxygen 962
- 24.6 Rearrangement of hydroperoxides. Migratory aptitude 963
- 24.7 Preparation 965
- 24.8 Reactions 966
- 24.9 Acidity of phenols 970
- 24.10 Formation of ethers. Williamson synthesis 972
- 24.11 Ester formation. Fries rearrangement 973



- 24.12 Ring substitution 974
- 24.13 Kolbe reaction. Synthesis of phenolic acids 976
- 24.14 Reimer-Tiemann reaction. Synthesis of phenolic aldehydes.  
Dichlorocarbene 977
- 24.15 Reaction with formaldehyde. Phenol-formaldehyde resins 978
- 24.16 Analysis of phenols 979
- 24.17 Spectroscopic analysis of phenols 980

## 25. Aryl Halides *Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution*

- 25.1 Structure 991
- 25.2 Physical properties 992
- 25.3 Preparation 993
- 25.4 Reactions 995
- 25.5 Low reactivity of aryl and vinyl halides 997
- 25.6 Structure of aryl and vinyl halides 997
- 25.7 Nucleophilic aromatic substitution: bimolecular displacement 999
- 25.8 Bimolecular displacement mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic  
substitution 1002
- 25.9 Reactivity in nucleophilic aromatic substitution 1003
- 25.10 Orientation in nucleophilic aromatic substitution 1004
- 25.11 Electron withdrawal by resonance 1006
- 25.12 Evidence for the two steps in bimolecular displacement 1006
- 25.13 Nucleophilic substitution: aliphatic and aromatic 1008
- 25.14 Elimination-addition mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic  
substitution. Benzyne 1009
- 25.15 Analysis of aryl halides 1014

## 26. Carbanions II *Malonic Ester and Acetoacetic Ester Syntheses*

- 26.1 Carbanions in organic synthesis 1019
- 26.2 Malonic ester synthesis of carboxylic acids 1020
- 26.3 Acetoacetic ester synthesis of ketones 1023
- 26.4 Decarboxylation of  $\beta$ -keto acids and malonic acids 1026
- 26.5 Direct and indirect alkylation of esters and ketones 1027
- 26.6 Synthesis of acids and esters via 2-oxazolines 1028
- 26.7 Organoborane synthesis of acids and ketones 1029
- 26.8 Alkylation of carbonyl compounds via enamines 1031

---

## PART II

---

## Biomolecules

---

### 27. Fats

- 27.1 The organic chemistry of biomolecules 1039
- 27.2 Occurrence and composition of fats 1040
- 27.3 Hydrolysis of fats. Soap. Micelles 1043

27.4	Fats as sources of pure acids and alcohols	1045
27.5	Detergents	1045
27.6	Unsaturated fats. Hardening of oils. Drying oils	1046
27.7	Phosphoglycerides. Phosphate esters	1047
27.8	Phospholipids and cell membranes	1050

## 28. Carbohydrates I. Monosaccharides

28.1	Introduction	1055
28.2	Definition and classification	1056
28.3	(+)-Glucose: an aldohexose	1056
28.4	(-)-Fructose: a 2-ketohexose	1058
28.5	Stereoisomers of (+)-glucose. Nomenclature of aldose derivatives	1058
28.6	Oxidation. Effect of alkali	1060
28.7	Osazone formation. Epimers	1062
28.8	Lengthening the carbon chain of aldoses. The Kiliani-Fischer synthesis	1063
28.9	Shortening the carbon chain of aldoses. The Ruff degradation	1065
28.10	Conversion of an aldose into its epimer	1065
28.11	Configuration of (+)-glucose. The Fischer proof	1066
28.12	Configurations of aldoses	1071
28.13	Optical families. D and L	1073
28.14	Tartaric acid	1075
28.15	Families of aldoses. Absolute configuration	1077
28.16	Cyclic structure of D-(+)-glucose. Formation of glucosides	1079
28.17	Configuration about C-1	1083
28.18	Methylation	1084
28.19	Determination of ring size	1086
28.20	Conformation	1089

## 29. Carbohydrates II. Disaccharides and Polysaccharides

29.1	Disaccharides	1097
29.2	(+)-Maltose	1097
29.3	(+)-Cellobiose	1100
29.4	(+)-Lactose	1101
29.5	(+)-Sucrose	1103
29.6	Polysaccharides	1104
29.7	Starch	1105
29.8	Structure of amylose. End group analysis	1105
29.9	Structure of amylopectin	1109
29.10	Cyclodextrins	1111
29.11	Structure of cellulose	1112
29.12	Reactions of cellulose	1113
29.13	Cellulose nitrate	1113
29.14	Cellulose acetate	1113
29.15	Rayon. Cellophane	1114
29.16	Cellulose ethers	1114



**30. Amino Acids and Proteins**

- 30.1 Introduction 1117
- 30.2 Structure of amino acids 1118
- 30.3 Amino acids as dipolar ions 1120
- 30.4 Isoelectric point of amino acids 1122
- 30.5 Configuration of natural amino acids 1122
- 30.6 Preparation of amino acids 1123
- 30.7 Reactions of amino acids 1125
- 30.8 Peptides. Geometry of the peptide linkage 1125
- 30.9 Determination of structure of peptides. Terminal residue analysis. Partial hydrolysis 1128
- 30.10 Synthesis of peptides 1131
- 30.11 Proteins. Classification and function. Denaturation 1134
- 30.12 Structure of proteins 1135
- 30.13 Peptide chain 1135
- 30.14 Side chains. Isoelectric point. Electrophoresis 1135
- 30.15 Conjugated proteins. Prosthetic groups. Coenzymes 1136
- 30.16 Secondary structure of proteins 1138

**31. Biochemical Processes    *Molecular Biology***

- 31.1 Biochemistry, molecular biology, and organic chemistry 1147
- 31.2 Mechanism of enzyme action. Chymotrypsin 1148
- 31.3 The organic chemistry of vision 1152
- 31.4 The source of biological energy. The role of ATP 1154
- 31.5 Biological oxidation of carbohydrates 1156
- 31.6 Mechanism of a biological oxidation 1157
- 31.7 Biosynthesis of fatty acids 1159
- 31.8 Nucleoproteins and nucleic acids 1161
- 31.9 Chemistry and heredity. The genetic code 1164

---



---

**PART III**


---



---

**Special Topics****32.  $\alpha,\beta$ -Unsaturated Carbonyl Compounds    *Conjugate Addition***

- 32.1 Structure and properties 1171
- 32.2 Preparation 1173
- 32.3 Interaction of functional groups 1173
- 32.4 Electrophilic addition 1174
- 32.5 Nucleophilic addition 1176
- 32.6 Comparison of nucleophilic and electrophilic addition 1178
- 32.7 The Michael addition 1179
- 32.8 The Diels-Alder reaction 1182
- 32.9 Quinones 1184

### 33. Molecular Orbitals. Orbital Symmetry

- 33.1 Molecular orbital theory 1191
- 33.2 Wave equations. Phase 1191
- 33.3 Molecular orbitals. LCAO method 1193
- 33.4 Bonding and antibonding orbitals 1194
- 33.5 Electronic configurations of some molecules 1196
- 33.6 Aromatic character. The Hückel  $4n + 2$  rule 1199
- 33.7 Orbital symmetry and the chemical reaction 1203
- 33.8 Electrocyclic reactions 1204
- 33.9 Cycloaddition reactions 1212
- 33.10 Sigmatropic reactions 1218

### 34. Polynuclear Aromatic Compounds

- 34.1 Fused-ring aromatic compounds 1231
  - NAPHTHALENE
- 34.2 Nomenclature of naphthalene derivatives 1232
- 34.3 Structure of naphthalene 1233
- 34.4 Reactions of naphthalene 1234
- 34.5 Oxidation of naphthalene 1236
- 34.6 Reduction of naphthalene 1236
- 34.7 Dehydrogenation of hydroaromatic compounds. Aromatization 1238
- 34.8 Nitration and halogenation of naphthalene 1240
- 34.9 Orientation of electrophilic substitution in naphthalene 1241
- 34.10 Friedel-Crafts acylation of naphthalene 1242
- 34.11 Sulfonation of naphthalene 1243
- 34.12 Naphthols 1244
- 34.13 Orientation of electrophilic substitution in naphthalene derivatives 1246
- 34.14 Synthesis of naphthalene derivatives by ring closure. The Haworth synthesis 1249
  - ANTHRACENE AND PHENANTHRENE
- 34.15 Nomenclature of anthracene and phenanthrene derivatives 1251
- 34.16 Structure of anthracene and phenanthrene 1252
- 34.17 Reactions of anthracene and phenanthrene 1252
- 34.18 Preparation of anthracene derivatives by ring closure. Anthraquinones 1255
- 34.19 Preparation of phenanthrene derivatives by ring closure 1257
- 34.20 Carcinogenic hydrocarbons. Arene oxides 1259

### 35. Heterocyclic Compounds

- 35.1 Heterocyclic systems 1267
  - FIVE-MEMBERED RINGS
- 35.2 Structure of pyrrole, furan, and thiophene 1269
- 35.3 Source of pyrrole, furan, and thiophene 1271
- 35.4 Electrophilic substitution in pyrrole, furan, and thiophene. Reactivity and orientation 1273



35.5 Saturated five-membered heterocycles 1275

SIX-MEMBERED RINGS

35.6 Structure of pyridine 1276

35.7 Source of pyridine compounds 1277

35.8 Reactions of pyridine 1278

35.9 Electrophilic substitution in pyridine 1278

35.10 Nucleophilic substitution in pyridine 1280

35.11 Basicity of pyridine 1281

35.12 Reduction of pyridine 1283

FUSED RINGS

35.13 Quinoline. The Skraup synthesis 1283

35.14 Isoquinoline. The Bischler-Napieralski synthesis 1286

*Suggested Readings* 1293

*Answers to Problems* 1303

*Index* 1321

# Preface

In the preparation of this fourth edition, our chief aim has been to bring the book up-to-date: to reflect, to the extent that a beginning textbook can, the directions that organic chemistry is taking today. The literature of the past decade, it seems to us, shows an unmistakable pattern; organic chemistry is not growing randomly but along certain broad lines. Seemingly unrelated areas of research are found, on examination, to involve simply different applications of the same basic concept. Since it is our job to prepare students to deal with organic chemistry as it is now, we set out to identify these concepts and to build them into a new framework for the book—a framework to which we could attach the new material and the old.

To accomplish our aim, we have carried out a major reorganization of the first, fundamental half of the book, and have rewritten, completely or nearly completely, the discussion of many key topics.

Perhaps the most striking of the trends in organic chemistry today reflects the growing realization that one of the most powerful factors determining the course of a reaction is the juxtaposition of reacting atoms: what we may call **neighboring group effects**, but in a much broader sense than in the classical use of the term. Teachers quite rightly spend a good deal of time discussing polar effects, which may be as small as the 30-fold increase in the rate of nitration brought about by a methyl group attached to a benzene ring. Surely one must not ignore—or relegate to the status of a special topic—an effect that can speed up a reaction by a factor of a million or more. A neighboring group has a tremendous advantage over outside reagents, and for a simple reason: *because it is there*. It is there, in the same molecule, poised in just the right position for reaction to occur: reaction with a special stereochemistry, reaction with an enormously enhanced rate. The reagent and the substrate may be attached to adjacent carbons, as in the classical examples. They may be held by a transition metal to form one of the complexes that have given organic chemists catalysts of unprecedented selectivity and power. They may be held by an enzyme: only temporarily, but while they are there they are parts of the same gigantic molecule and are, in effect, neighboring groups.



As organic chemistry has moved to close the gap between it and biochemistry, the need to understand certain fundamental concepts of **stereochemistry** has grown. For a synthetic compound to be biologically active, it must be prepared with a degree of stereoselectivity to match the stereospecificity of biological reactions. If students are to see how hydrogenation with the Wilkinson catalyst can be adapted to give optically active amino acids, or how an oxidation enzyme can differentiate between the two apparently equivalent  $\alpha$ -hydrogens of ethanol, they must be familiar with the concepts of enantiotopic and diastereotopic ligands and faces.

Appreciation of the importance of **secondary bonding** has continued to grow. It is more essential than ever before that students understand the forces—ion-ion, ion-dipole, dipole-dipole, van der Waals—that hold together different molecules or different parts of the same molecule. They must realize that the same forces that bring about dissolution of a solute in a solvent also make the DNA helix *double* and enable an enzyme to hold a substrate. A good place to begin is with solvation. Study of ionic reactions in the absence of any solvent—in the gas phase—has provided a standard by which to measure solvation effects on organic reactions, and to show, in a straightforward way, that they are more powerful than the effects exerted by any other factor. The presence of a solvent lowers the energy of activation for heterolysis of an alkyl halide by more than 130 kcal; it also affects an  $S_N2$  reaction but *in the opposite direction*, slowing reaction down by a factor of  $10^{20}$ . When, through phase-transfer, we bring an anionic nucleophile into a non-polar solvent, we are taking a step in the direction of that "ideal" medium for an  $S_N2$  reaction: the gas phase.

The keystone of our new approach is the presentation of nucleophilic substitution in Chapter 6. With the very early introduction of this reaction, organic synthesis can be carried out in a realistic way, with alcohols and alkyl halides as starting materials. The chemistry of carbocations can be presented in a most straightforward way: they are formed by heterolysis, and they react—sometimes after rearrangement—by combining with a nucleophile. Heterolytic bond dissociation energies give the relative stabilities of carbocations, and provide a standard against which to measure the enormous effects of the solvent. Three factors basic to chemical reactivity are introduced here: dispersal of charge, bond-making concerted with bond-breaking, and steric hindrance. Tools for the study of organic mechanisms are brought in here: kinetics is introduced for the first time, and stereochemistry is made use of shortly after its introduction in Chapter 4.

Nucleophilic substitution in Chapter 6 opens the way to other changes. Elimination can be discussed in a systematic way in Chapter 7, with continued use of kinetics and stereochemistry, and the introduction of isotope effects and isotopic exchange. Neighboring group effects can be introduced with the reactions of alcohols in Chapter 11. And in this chapter we can bring out the importance to reactivity of changes in the nature of the leaving group: by converting hydroxyl into sulfonate or by using that simplest and most widespread catalytic device, protonation.

With nucleophilic substitution, elimination, and addition to draw upon, a new chapter (Chapter 9) has been written to discuss conjugation in a unified way, based upon the treatment of the carbon-carbon double bond *as a substituent*. The theory of resonance is introduced here, along with evidence of various kinds for the hybrid nature of allylic free radicals and cations: stability and ease of formation, allylic rearrangement and 1,4-addition, the equivalence of positions as shown by spectroscopy.

Later, in the chapter on aromatic-aliphatic compounds, we treat the aryl group in a similar way, as a substituent, and see its effects on reactions of the various kinds studied by that time. At that point we add to the polar effects of the aryl group its role as a neighboring group—an alternative way in which it provides electrons to electron-deficient carbon.

We have emphasized even more than before the basic importance of the rate of reaction and its dependence upon energy changes. In any reaction vessel, there is a collection of molecules, banging blindly about colliding with one another. In principle a number of options are open to them: a number of competing reactions. Just which reaction they actually undergo depends upon the relative rates of these competing reactions. And, by and large, what the molecules tend to do is what is easiest for them. To get this across to the student we have, as before, introduced the concept of the course of a chemical reaction with the simplest possible example: the halogenation of alkanes. Without the complications of a solvent, the reactants, transition state, and products can be displayed in a straightforward way; the energy changes—and the effects of these on the rate of reaction—can be discussed rigorously. With this as background the student is better prepared to move on, in Chapter 6, to the necessarily more complex systems of solution chemistry.

There is much else that is new to the book: the up-dating of synthetic methods; the increased use of organocopper and organolithium reagents in carbon-carbon bond formation; the emergence of the carbon-carbon triple bond as a building block for organic synthesis; catalysis by transition metal complexes of hydrogenation, polymerization, and in the oxo process; phase-transfer; crown ethers and the host-guest relationship; the discussion of vinylic cations.

But it is not enough just to add new material. Students must be shown the relationships among the various facts and concepts that they are learning. They should realize that, as we know more and more about what is really happening, seemingly unrelated properties are seen to be simply different manifestations of the same basic factors. In nucleophilic substitution, whether a methoxyl group speeds up formation of a cation through resonance or through a neighboring group effect, the same property is involved: the willingness of oxygen to share a pair of electrons, that is, its basicity—the same basicity that enables methoxyl to activate an aromatic ring toward electrophilic substitution. When a neighboring aryl group participates, it is acting as an internal nucleophile—and is itself undergoing electrophilic aromatic substitution. The role played by the solvent in solvolysis may change from substrate to substrate and from solvent to solvent, but two basic factors are involved, the same ones as in the classical  $S_N2$  and  $S_N1$  reactions—dispersal of charge and nucleophilic attack; only the balance between the two factors changes.

Organic chemists work increasingly in biological fields; biologists increasingly use organic chemistry. Whatever the ultimate goals of our students, all of them will need as never before a grounding in the fundamentals of organic chemistry; we see it as our primary job to help provide that grounding. At the same time, students should be made aware that the process of life depends upon the straightforward chemical behavior of organic molecules. The enormous catalytic effect of an enzyme involves both phase-transfer—the substrate is transferred into a different medium, the interior of the enzyme—and a neighboring group effect. When the antibiotic Nonactin transports an ion through a cell membrane to upset the ionic balance in the cell, it acts in exactly the same way as a transfer protein in carrying out its normal function, and both cases involve the same host-guest relationship.



as that between a crown ether and a cation: there is the same kind of bonding between the host and guest, and the function is the same—to carry a cation into a non-polar medium. The carcinogenic effect of certain hydrocarbons comes down to a familiar reaction of familiar kinds of compounds: nucleophilic attack by a nitrogen base upon an epoxide. Biology, on the molecular level, *is* organic chemistry, and we try to let the student see this—not just in the chapters on biomolecules, but wherever significant examples can be presented.

The most important thing for a student to retain from this beginning course is the pattern underlying organic chemistry. This pattern is clearer today than ever before, and the purpose of this book is to reveal it to the student.

ROBERT THORNTON MORRISON

ROBERT NEILSON BOYD

# *Acknowledgments*

Our thanks to Sadtler Research Laboratories for the infrared spectra labeled "Sadtler" and to the Infrared Data Committee of Japan for those labeled "IRDC," and to the following people for permission to reproduce material: Professor George A. Olah, Figure 6.5; Irving Geis and Benjamin/Cummings, Publishers, Figure 31.1; Cornell University, Figure 6.2; the editors of *The Journal of the American Chemical Society*, Figures 6.5, 17.23, and 17.24; and Walt Disney Productions, Figure 8.13.

Most of all, our warm and very special thanks to Beverly Kokinos, who performed the countless tasks that went into the preparing of the manuscript—from typing the text to drawing formulas and figures—skilfully and unflaggingly, and with a dedication far beyond the call of any duty.

R.T.M.

R.N.B.



== PART I ==

---

# The Fundamentals

---

# Structure and Properties

---



---

## 1.1 Organic chemistry

*Organic chemistry is the chemistry of the compounds of carbon.*

The misleading name "organic" is a relic of the days when chemical compounds were divided into two classes, inorganic and organic, depending upon where they had come from. Inorganic compounds were those obtained from minerals; organic compounds were those obtained from vegetable or animal sources, that is, from material produced by living organisms. Indeed, until about 1850 many chemists believed that organic compounds *must* have their origin in living organisms, and consequently could never be synthesized from inorganic material.

These compounds from organic sources had this in common: they all contained the element carbon. Even after it had become clear that these compounds did not have to come from living sources but could be made in the laboratory, it was convenient to keep the name *organic* to describe them and compounds like them. The division between inorganic and organic compounds has been retained to this day.

Today, although many compounds of carbon are still most conveniently isolated from plant and animal sources, most of them are synthesized. They are sometimes synthesized from inorganic substances like carbonates or cyanides, but more often from other organic compounds. There are two large reservoirs of organic material from which simple organic compounds can be obtained: *petroleum* and *coal*. (Both of these are "organic" in the old sense, being products of the decay of plants and animals.) These simple compounds are used as building blocks from which larger and more complicated compounds can be made.

We recognize petroleum and coal as the *fossil fuels*, laid down over millenia and non-renewable. They—particularly petroleum—are being consumed at an alarming rate to meet our constantly increasing demands for power. Today, less than ten percent of the petroleum used goes into making chemicals; most of it is simply burned to supply energy. There *are*, fortunately, alternative sources of

power—solar, geothermal, nuclear energy—but where are we to find an alternative reservoir of organic raw material? Eventually, of course, we shall have to go to the place where the fossil fuels originally came from—the *biomass*—but this time directly, without the intervening millenia. The biomass is renewable and, used properly, can last as long on this planet as we can. In the meantime, it has been suggested, petroleum is too valuable to burn.

What is so special about the compounds of carbon that they should be separated from compounds of all the other hundred-odd elements of the Periodic Table? In part, at least, the answer seems to be this: there are so very many compounds of carbon, and their molecules can be so large and complex.

The number of compounds that contain carbon is many times greater than the number of compounds that do not contain carbon. These organic compounds have been divided into families, which generally have no counterparts among the inorganic compounds.

Organic molecules containing thousands of atoms are known, and the arrangement of atoms in even relatively small molecules can be very complicated. One of the major problems in organic chemistry is to find out how the atoms are arranged in molecules, that is, to determine the structures of compounds.

There are many ways in which these complicated molecules can break apart, or rearrange themselves, to form new molecules; there are many ways in which atoms can be added to these molecules, or new atoms substituted for old ones. Much of organic chemistry is devoted to finding out what these reactions are, how they take place, and how they can be used to synthesize compounds we want.

What is so special about carbon that it should form so many compounds? The answer to this question came to August Kekulé in 1854 during a London bus ride.

“One fine summer evening, I was returning by the last omnibus, ‘outside’ as usual, through the deserted streets of the metropolis, which are at other times so full of life. I fell into a reverie and lo! the atoms were gambolling before my eyes . . . I saw how, frequently, two smaller atoms united to form a pair, how a larger one embraced two smaller ones, how still larger ones kept hold of three or even four of the smaller; whilst the whole kept whirling in a giddy dance. I saw how the larger ones formed a chain . . . I spent part of the night putting on paper at least sketches of these dream forms.”—August Kekulé, 1890.

Carbon atoms can attach themselves to one another to an extent not possible for atoms of any other element. Carbon atoms can form chains thousands of atoms long, or rings of all sizes; the chains and rings can have branches and cross-links. To the carbon atoms of these chains and rings there are attached other atoms, chiefly hydrogen, but also fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, phosphorus, and many others. (Look, for example, at cellulose on page 1112, chlorophyll on page 1269, and oxytocin on page 1127.)

Each different arrangement of atoms corresponds to a different compound, and each compound has its own characteristic set of chemical and physical properties. It is not surprising that more than a million compounds of carbon are known today and that thousands of new ones are being made each year. It is not surprising that the study of their chemistry is a special field.

Organic chemistry is a field of immense importance to technology—it is the chemistry of dyes and drugs, paper and ink, paints and plastics, gasoline and rubber tires, it is the chemistry of the food we eat and the clothing we wear.



Organic chemistry is fundamental to biology and medicine. Aside from water, living organisms are made up chiefly of organic compounds; the molecules of "molecular biology" are organic molecules. Biology, on the molecular level, is organic chemistry.

## 1.2 The structural theory

"Organic chemistry nowadays almost drives me mad. To me it appears like a primeval tropical forest full of the most remarkable things, a dreadful endless jungle into which one does not dare enter for there seems to be no way out."—Friedrich Wöhler, 1835.

How can we even begin to study a subject of such enormous complexity? Is organic chemistry today as Wöhler saw it a century and a half ago? The jungle is still there—largely unexplored—and in it are more remarkable things than Wöhler ever dreamed of. But, so long as we do not wander too far too fast, we can enter without fear of losing our way, for we have a chart: the **structural theory**.

The structural theory is the basis upon which millions of facts about hundreds of thousands of individual compounds have been brought together and arranged in a systematic way. It is the basis upon which these facts can best be accounted for and understood.

The structural theory is the framework of ideas about how atoms are put together to make molecules. The structural theory has to do with the order in which atoms are attached to each other, and with the electrons that hold them together. It has to do with the shapes and sizes of the molecules that these atoms form, and with the way that electrons are distributed over them.

A molecule is often represented by a picture or a model—sometimes by several pictures or several models. The atomic nuclei are represented by letters or wooden balls, and the electrons that join them by lines or dots or wooden pegs. These crude pictures and models are useful to us only if we understand what they are intended to mean. Interpreted in terms of the structural theory, they tell us a good deal about the compound whose molecules they represent: how to go about making it; what physical properties to expect of it—melting point, boiling point, specific gravity, the kind of solvents the compound will dissolve in, even whether it will be colored or not; what kind of chemical behavior to expect—the kind of reagents the compound will react with and the kind of products that will be formed, whether it will react rapidly or slowly. We would know all this about a compound that we had never encountered before, simply on the basis of its structural formula and what we understand its structural formula to mean.

## 1.3 The chemical bond before 1926

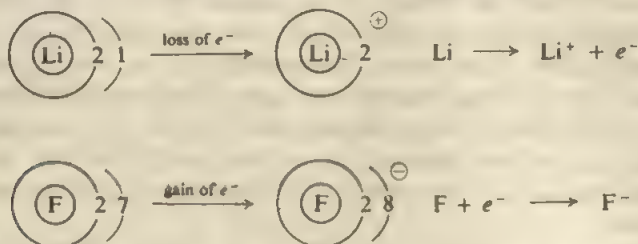
Any consideration of the structure of molecules must begin with a discussion of *chemical bonds*, the forces that hold atoms together in a molecule.

We shall discuss chemical bonds first in terms of the theory as it had developed prior to 1926, and then in terms of the theory of today. The introduction of quantum mechanics in 1926 caused a tremendous change in ideas about how molecules are formed. For convenience, the older, simpler language and pictorial representations are often still used, although the words and pictures are given a modern interpretation.

In 1916 two kinds of chemical bond were described: the *ionic bond* by Walther Kossel (in Germany) and the *covalent bond* by G. N. Lewis (of the University of California). Both Kossel and Lewis based their ideas on the following concept of the atom.

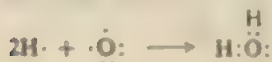
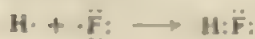
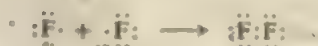
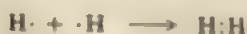
A positively charged nucleus is surrounded by electrons arranged in concentric shells or energy levels. There is a maximum number of electrons that can be accommodated in each shell: two in the first shell, eight in the second shell, eight or eighteen in the third shell, and so on. The greatest stability is reached when the outer shell is full, as in the noble gases. Both ionic and covalent bonds arise from the tendency of atoms to attain this stable configuration of electrons.

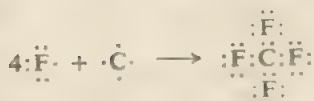
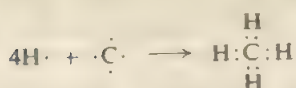
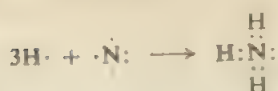
The **ionic bond** results from **transfer of electrons**, as, for example, in the formation of lithium fluoride. A lithium atom has two electrons in its inner shell



and one electron in its outer or valence shell; the loss of one electron would leave lithium with a full outer shell of two electrons. A fluorine atom has two electrons in its inner shell and seven electrons in its valence shell; the gain of one electron would give fluorine a full outer shell of eight. Lithium fluoride is formed by the transfer of one electron from lithium to fluorine; lithium now bears a positive charge and fluorine bears a negative charge. The electrostatic attraction between the oppositely charged ions is called an ionic bond. Such ionic bonds are typical of the salts formed by combination of the metallic elements (electropositive elements) on the far left side of the Periodic Table with the non-metallic elements (electronegative elements) on the far right side.

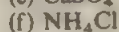
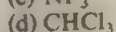
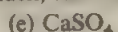
The **covalent bond** results from **sharing of electrons**, as, for example, in the formation of the hydrogen molecule. Each hydrogen atom has a single electron; by sharing a pair of electrons, both hydrogens can complete their shells of two. Two fluorine atoms, each with seven electrons in the valence shell, can complete their octets by sharing a pair of electrons. In a similar way we can visualize the formation of HF, H<sub>2</sub>O, NH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>4</sub>, and CF<sub>4</sub>. Here, too, the bonding force is electrostatic attraction: this time between each electron and *both* nuclei.



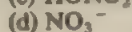
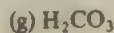
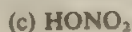


*The covalent bond is typical of the compounds of carbon; it is the bond of chief importance in the study of organic chemistry.*

**Problem 1.1** Which of the following would you expect to be ionic, and which non-ionic? Give a simple electronic structure for each, showing only valence shell electrons.



**Problem 1.2** Give a likely simple electronic structure for each of the following, assuming them to be completely covalent. Assume that every atom (except hydrogen, of course) has a complete octet, and that two atoms may share more than one pair of electrons.



## 1.4 Quantum mechanics

In 1926 there emerged the theory known as *quantum mechanics*, developed, in the form most useful to chemists, by Erwin Schrödinger (of the University of Zurich). He worked out mathematical expressions to describe the motion of an electron in terms of its energy. These mathematical expressions are called *wave equations*, since they are based upon the concept that electrons show properties not only of particles but also of waves.

A wave equation has a series of solutions, called *wave functions*, each corresponding to a different energy level for the electron. For all but the simplest of systems, doing the mathematics is so time-consuming that at present—and super-high-speed computers will some day change this—only approximate solutions can be obtained. Even so, quantum mechanics gives answers agreeing so well with the facts that it is accepted today as the most fruitful approach to an understanding of atomic and molecular structure.

“Wave mechanics has shown us what is going on, and at the deepest possible level . . . it has taken the concepts of the experimental chemist—the imaginative perception that came to those who had lived in their laboratories and allowed their minds to dwell creatively upon the facts that they had found—and it has shown how they all fit together, how, if you wish, they all have one single rationale, and how this hidden relationship to each other can be brought out.” C. A. Coulson, London, 1951.



## 1.5 Atomic orbitals

A wave equation cannot tell us exactly where an electron is at any particular moment, or how fast it is moving; it does not permit us to plot a precise orbit about the nucleus. Instead, it tells us the *probability* of finding the electron at any particular place.

*The region in space where an electron is likely to be found is called an orbital.* There are different kinds of orbitals, which have different sizes and different shapes, and which are disposed about the nucleus in specific ways. The particular kind of orbital that an electron occupies depends upon the energy of the electron. It is the shapes of these orbitals and their disposition with respect to each other that we are particularly interested in, since these determine—or, more precisely, can conveniently be *thought of* as determining—the arrangement in space of the atoms of a molecule, and even help determine its chemical behavior.

It is convenient to picture an electron as being smeared out to form a cloud. We might think of this cloud as a sort of blurred photograph of the rapidly moving electron. The shape of the cloud is the shape of the orbital. The cloud is not uniform, but is densest in those regions where the probability of finding the electron is highest, that is, in those regions where the average negative charge, or *electron density*, is greatest.

Let us see what the shapes of some of the atomic orbitals are. The orbital at the lowest energy level is called the *1s* orbital. It is a sphere with its center at the nucleus of the atom, as represented in Fig. 1.1. An orbital has no definite boundary



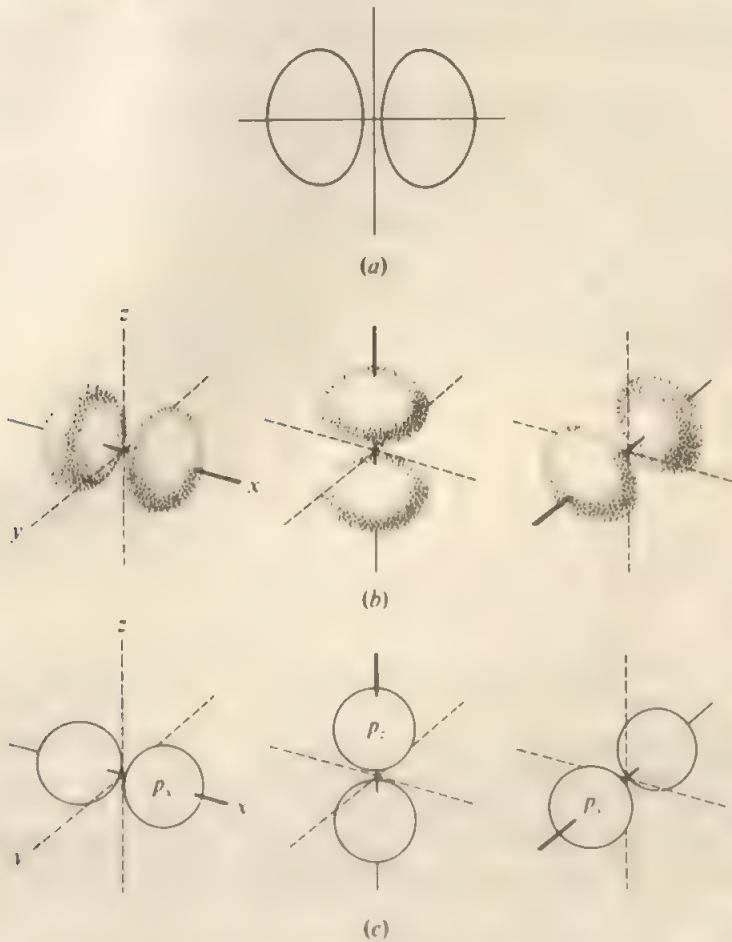
Figure 1.1. Atomic orbitals: *s* orbital. Nucleus at center.

since there is a probability, although a very small one, of finding the electron essentially separated from the atom—or even on some other atom! However, the probability decreases very rapidly beyond a certain distance from the nucleus, so that the distribution of charge is fairly well represented by the electron cloud in Fig. 1.1a. For simplicity, we may even represent an orbital as in Fig. 1.1b, where the solid line encloses the region where the electron spends most (say 95%) of its time.

At the next higher energy level there is the *2s* orbital. This, too, is a sphere with its center at the atomic nucleus. It is *naturally* larger than the *1s* orbital; the higher energy (lower stability) is due to the greater average distance between electron and nucleus, with the resulting decrease in electrostatic attraction. (Con-

sider the work that must be done—the energy put into the system—to move an electron away from the oppositely charged nucleus.)

Next there are three orbitals of equal energy called  $2p$  orbitals, shown in Fig. 1.2. Each  $2p$  orbital is dumbbell-shaped. It consists of two lobes with the atomic nucleus lying between them. The axis of each  $2p$  orbital is perpendicular to the axes of the other two. They are differentiated by the names  $2p_x$ ,  $2p_y$ , and  $2p_z$ , where the  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  refer to the corresponding axes.



**Figure 1.2.** Atomic orbitals  $p$  orbitals. Axes mutually perpendicular. (a) Cross-section showing the two lobes of a single orbital. (b) Approximate shape as pairs of distorted ellipsoids. (c) Representation as pairs of not-quite-touching spheres.

1.6 Electronic configuration. Pauli exclusion principle

There are a number of "rules" that determine the way in which the electrons of an atom may be distributed, that is, that determine the *electronic configuration* of an atom

The most fundamental of these rules is the **Pauli exclusion principle**: *only two electrons can occupy any atomic orbital, and to do so these two must have opposite spins*. These electrons of opposite spins are said to be *paired*. *Electrons of like spin tend to get as far from each other as possible*. This tendency is the most important of all the factors that determine the shapes and properties of molecules.

The exclusion principle, advanced in 1925 by Wolfgang Pauli, Jr. (of the Institute for Theoretical Physics, Hamburg, Germany), has been called the cornerstone of chemistry.

The first ten elements of the Periodic Table have the electronic configurations shown in Table 1.1. We see that an orbital becomes occupied only if the orbitals of

Table 1.1 ELECTRONIC CONFIGURATIONS

	1s				
H	⊙				
He	⊙⊙				
		2s	2p		
Li	⊙⊙	⊙	⊙	⊙	⊙
Be	⊙⊙	⊙⊙	⊙	⊙	⊙
B	⊙⊙	⊙⊙	⊙	⊙	⊙
C	⊙⊙	⊙⊙	⊙	⊙	⊙
N	⊙⊙	⊙⊙	⊙	⊙	⊙
O	⊙⊙	⊙⊙	⊙⊙	⊙	⊙
F	⊙⊙	⊙⊙	⊙⊙	⊙⊙	⊙
Ne	⊙⊙	⊙⊙	⊙⊙	⊙⊙	⊙⊙

lower energy are filled (e.g., 2s after 1s, 2p after 2s). We see that an orbital is not occupied by a pair of electrons until other orbitals of equal energy are each occupied by one electron (e.g., the 2p orbitals). The 1s electrons make up the first shell of two, and the 2s and 2p electrons make up the second shell of eight. For elements beyond the first ten, there is a third shell containing a 3s orbital, 3p orbitals, and so on.

**Problem 1.3** (a) Show the electronic configurations for the next eight elements in the Periodic Table (from sodium through argon). (b) What relationship is there between electronic configuration and periodic family? (c) Between electronic configuration and chemical properties of the elements?

## 1.7 Molecular orbitals

In molecules, as in isolated atoms, electrons occupy orbitals, and in accordance with much the same "rules." These *molecular orbitals* are considered to be centered about many nuclei, perhaps covering the entire molecule, the distribution of nuclei and electrons is simply the one that results in the most stable molecule



To make the enormously complicated mathematics more workable, two simplifying assumptions are commonly made: (a) that each pair of electrons is essentially localized near just two nuclei, and (b) that the shapes of these localized molecular orbitals and their disposition with respect to each other are related in a simple way to the shapes and disposition of atomic orbitals in the component atoms.

The idea of localized molecular orbitals—or what we might call *bond orbitals*—is evidently not a bad one, since mathematically this method of approximation is successful with most (although *not all*) molecules. Furthermore, this idea closely parallels the chemist's classical concept of a bond as a force acting between two atoms and pretty much independent of the rest of the molecule; it can hardly be accidental that this concept has worked amazingly well for a hundred years. Significantly, the exceptional molecules for which classical formulas do not work are just those for which the localized molecular orbital approach does not work, either. (Even these cases, we shall find, can be handled by a rather simple adaptation of classical formulas, an adaptation which again parallels a method of mathematical approximation.)

The second assumption, of a relationship between atomic and molecular orbitals, is a highly reasonable one, as discussed in the following section. It has proven so useful that, when necessary, atomic orbitals of certain kinds have been *invented* just so that the assumption can be retained.

## 1.8 The covalent bond

Now let us consider the formation of a molecule. For convenience we shall picture this as happening by the coming together of the individual atoms, although most molecules are not actually made this way. We make physical models of molecules out of wooden or plastic balls that represent the various atoms; the location of holes or snap fasteners tells us how to put them together. In the same way, we shall make *mental* models of molecules out of mental atoms; the location of atomic orbitals—some of them imaginary—will tell us how to put these together.

For a covalent bond to form, two atoms must be located so that an orbital of one *overlaps* an orbital of the other; each orbital must contain a single electron. When this happens, the two atomic orbitals merge to form a single *bond orbital* which is occupied by both electrons. The two electrons that occupy a bond orbital must have opposite spins, that is, must be paired. Each electron has available to it the entire bond orbital, and thus may be considered to “belong to” both atomic nuclei.

This arrangement of electrons and nuclei contains less energy—that is, is more stable—than the arrangement in the isolated atoms; as a result, formation of a bond is accompanied by evolution of energy. The amount of energy (per mole) that is given off when a bond is formed (or the amount that must be put in to break the bond) is called the *bond dissociation energy*. For a given pair of atoms, the greater the overlap of atomic orbitals, the stronger the bond.

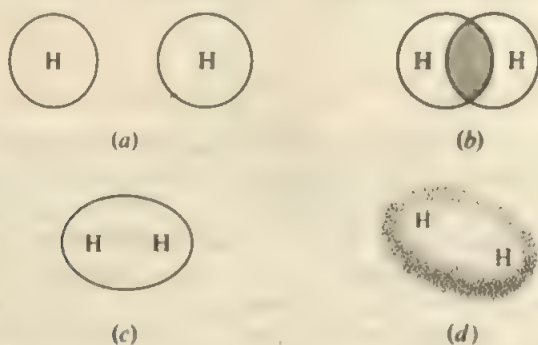
What gives the covalent bond its strength? It is the increase in electrostatic attraction. In the isolated atoms, each electron is attracted by—and attracts—one positive nucleus; in the molecule, each electron is attracted by *two* positive nuclei.

It is the concept of “overlap” that provides the mental bridge between atomic orbitals and bond orbitals. Overlap of atomic orbitals means that the bond orbital

occupies much of the same region in space that was occupied by *both* atomic orbitals. Consequently, an electron from one atom can, to a considerable extent, remain in its original, favorable location with respect to "its" nucleus, and at the same time occupy a similarly favorable location with respect to the second nucleus; the same holds, of course, for the other electron.

The principle of *maximum overlap*, first stated in 1931 by Linus Pauling (at the California Institute of Technology), has been ranked only slightly below the exclusion principle in importance to the understanding of molecular structure.

As our first example, let us consider the formation of the hydrogen molecule,  $H_2$ , from two hydrogen atoms. Each hydrogen atom has one electron, which occupies the  $1s$  orbital. As we have seen, this  $1s$  orbital is a sphere with its center at the atomic nucleus. For a bond to form, the two nuclei must be brought closely enough together for overlap of the atomic orbitals to occur (Fig. 1.3). For hydrogen, the system is most stable when the distance between the nuclei is  $0.74 \text{ \AA}$ ; this distance is called the **bond length**. At this distance the stabilizing effect of overlap is exactly balanced by repulsion between the similarly charged nuclei. The resulting hydrogen molecule contains  $104 \text{ kcal/mol}$  less energy than the hydrogen atoms from which it was made. We say that the hydrogen-hydrogen bond has a length of  $0.74 \text{ \AA}$  and a strength of  $104 \text{ kcal}$ .



**Figure 1.3.** Bond formation:  $H_2$  molecule. (a) Separate  $s$  orbitals (b) Overlap of  $s$  orbitals. (c) and (d) The  $\sigma$  bond orbital.

This bond orbital has roughly the shape we would expect from the merging of two  $s$  orbitals. As shown in Fig. 1.3, it is sausage-shaped, with its long axis lying along the line joining the nuclei. It is cylindrically symmetrical about this long axis; that is, a slice of the sausage is circular. Bond orbitals having this shape are called  $\sigma$  orbitals (*sigma orbitals*) and the bonds are called  $\sigma$  bonds. We may visualize the hydrogen molecule as two nuclei embedded in a single sausage-shaped electron cloud. This cloud is densest in the region between the two nuclei, where the negative charge is attracted most strongly by the two positive charges.

The size of the hydrogen molecule— as measured, say, by the volume inside the 95% probability surface— is considerably *smaller* than that of a single hydrogen atom. Although surprising at first, this shrinking of the electron cloud is actually what would be expected. It is the powerful attraction of the electrons by *two* nuclei that gives the molecule greater stability than the isolated hydrogen atoms; this must mean that the electrons are held tighter, *closer*, than in the atoms.

Next, let us consider the formation of the fluorine molecule,  $F_2$ , from two fluorine atoms. As we can see from our table of electronic configurations (Table 1.1), a fluorine atom has two electrons in the  $1s$  orbital, two electrons in the  $2s$  orbital, and two electrons in each of two  $2p$  orbitals. In the third  $2p$  orbital there is a single electron which is unpaired and available for bond formation. Overlap of this  $p$  orbital with a similar  $p$  orbital of another fluorine atom permits electrons to pair and the bond to form (Fig. 1.4). The electronic charge is concentrated between the two nuclei, so that the back lobe of each of the overlapping orbitals shrinks to

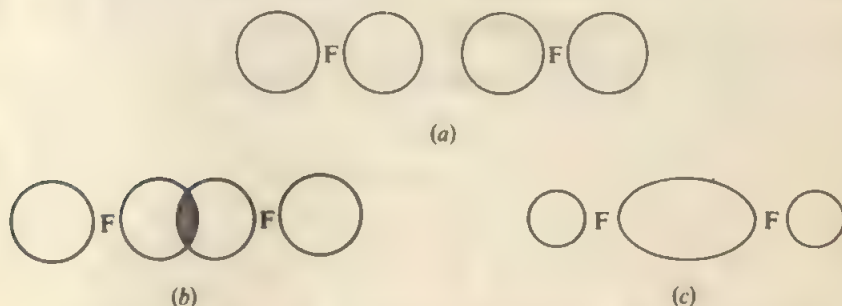


Figure 1.4. Bond formation:  $F_2$  molecule. (a) Separate  $p$  orbitals. (b) Overlap of  $p$  orbitals. (c) The  $\sigma$  bond orbital.

a comparatively small size. Although formed by overlap of atomic orbitals of a different kind, the fluorine-fluorine bond has the same general shape as the hydrogen-hydrogen bond, being cylindrically symmetrical about a line joining the nuclei; it, too, is given the designation of  $\sigma$  bond. The fluorine-fluorine bond has a length of 1.42 Å and a strength of about 38 kcal.

As the examples show, a covalent bond results from the overlap of two atomic orbitals to form a bond orbital occupied by a pair of electrons. *Each kind of covalent bond has a characteristic length and strength.*

## 1.9 Hybrid orbitals: $sp$

Let us next consider beryllium chloride,  $BeCl_2$ .

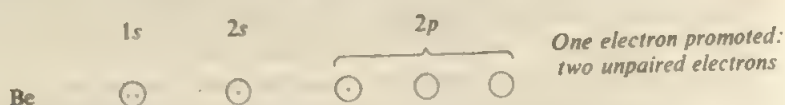
Beryllium (Table 1.1) has no unpaired electrons. How are we to account for its combining with two chlorine atoms? Bond formation is an energy-releasing



(stabilizing) process, and the tendency is to form bonds—and as many as possible—even if this results in bond orbitals that bear little resemblance to the atomic orbitals we have talked about. If our method of mental molecule-building is to be applied here, it must be modified. We must invent an imaginary kind of beryllium atom, one that is about to become bonded to two chlorine atoms.

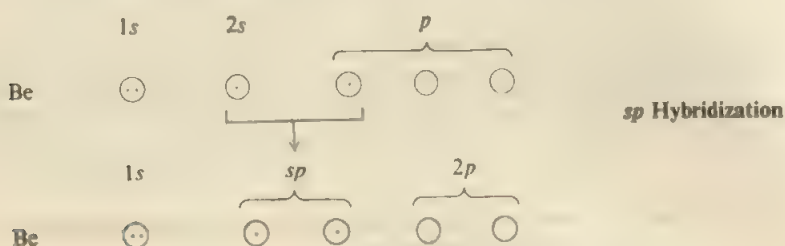


To arrive at this divalent beryllium atom, let us do a little electronic book-keeping. First, we "promote" one of the  $2s$  electrons to an empty  $p$  orbital:

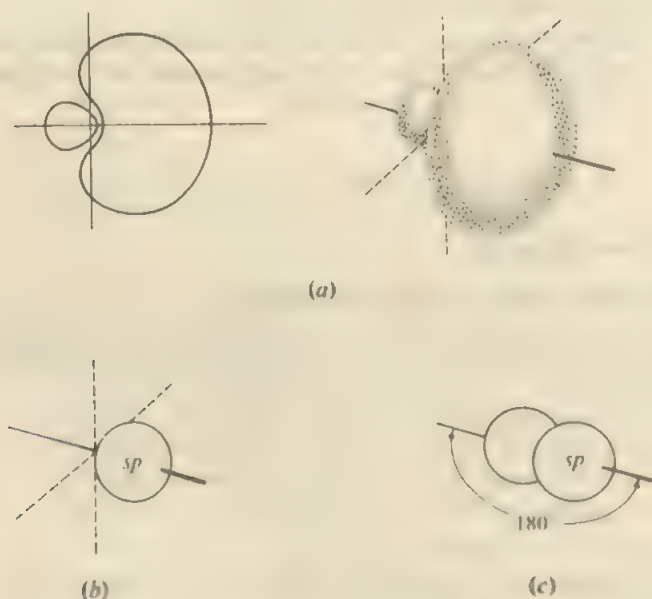


This provides two unpaired electrons, which are needed for bonding to two chlorine atoms. We might now expect beryllium to form one bond of one kind, using the  $p$  orbital, and one bond of another kind, using the  $s$  orbital. Again, this is contrary to fact: the two bonds in beryllium chloride are known to be equivalent.

Next, then, we *hybridize* the orbitals. Various combinations of one  $s$  and one



$p$  orbitals are taken mathematically, and the mixed (*hybrid*) orbitals with the greatest degree of *directional character* are found (Fig. 1.5). The more an atomic orbital is concentrated in the direction of the bond, the greater the overlap and the

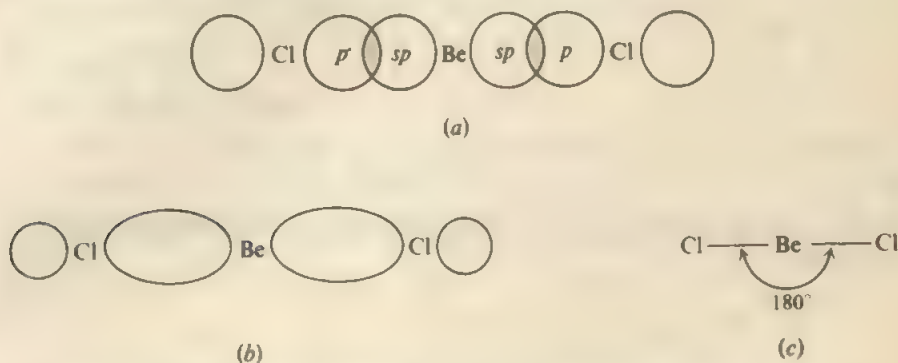


**Figure 1.5.** Atomic orbitals, hybrid  $sp$  orbitals (a) Cross-section and approximate shape of a single orbital. Strongly directed along one axis (b) Representation as a sphere, with small back lobe omitted (c) Two orbitals, with axes lying along a straight line.

stronger the bond it can form. Three highly significant results emerge from the calculations: (a) the "best" hybrid orbital is much more strongly directed than either the  $s$  or  $p$  orbital; (b) the two best orbitals are exactly equivalent to each other; and (c) these orbitals point in exactly opposite directions — *the arrangement that permits them to get as far away from each other as possible* (remember the Pauli exclusion principle). The angle between the orbitals is thus  $180^\circ$ .

These particular hybrid orbitals are called  $sp$  orbitals, since they are considered to arise from the mixing of *one*  $s$  orbital and *one*  $p$  orbital. They have the shape shown in Fig. 1.5a; for convenience we shall neglect the small back lobe and represent the front lobe as a sphere.

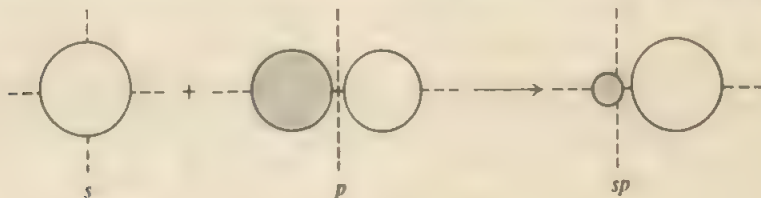
Using this  $sp$ -hybridized beryllium, let us construct beryllium chloride. An extremely important concept emerges here: **bond angle**. For maximum overlap between the  $sp$  orbitals of beryllium and the  $p$  orbitals of the chlorines, the two chlorine nuclei must lie along the axes of the  $sp$  orbitals; that is, they must be located on exactly opposite sides of the beryllium atom (Fig. 1.6). The angle between the beryllium-chlorine bonds must therefore be  $180^\circ$ .



**Figure 1.6.** Bond formation:  $\text{BeCl}_2$  molecule. (a) Overlap of  $sp$  and  $p$  orbitals. (b) The  $\sigma$  bond orbitals. (c) Shape of molecule.

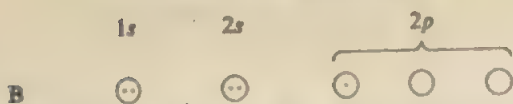
Experiment has shown that, as calculated, beryllium chloride is a *linear molecule*, all three atoms lying along a single straight line.

There is nothing magical about the increase in directional character that accompanies hybridization. The two lobes of the  $p$  orbital are of opposite *phase* (Sec. 33.2); combination with an  $s$  orbital amounts to *addition* on one side of the nucleus, but *subtraction* on the other.

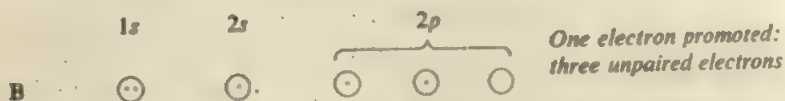


## 1.10 Hybrid orbitals: $sp^2$

Next, let us look at boron trifluoride,  $\text{BF}_3$ . Boron (Table 1.1) has only one unpaired electron, which occupies a  $2p$  orbital. For three bonds we need three



unpaired electrons, and so we promote one of the  $2s$  electrons to a  $2p$  orbital:



If, now, we are to "make" the most stable molecule possible, we must "make" the strongest bonds possible; for these we must provide the most strongly directed atomic orbitals that we can. Again, hybridization provides such orbitals: three hybrid orbitals, exactly equivalent to each other. Each one has the shape shown in

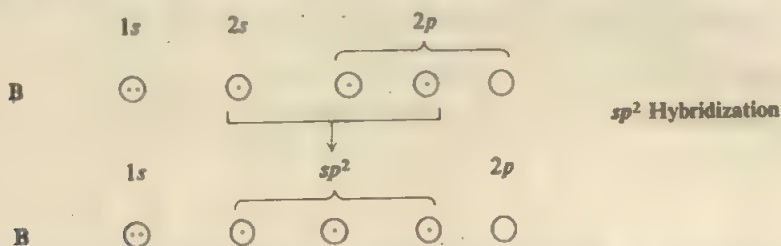
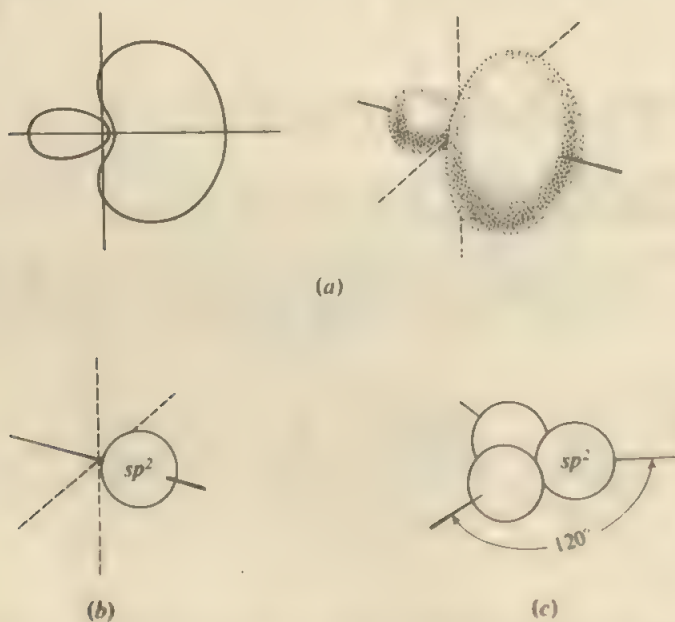


Fig. 1.7; as before, we shall neglect the small back lobe and represent the front lobe as a sphere.



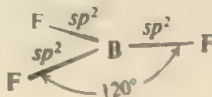
**Figure 1.7.** Atomic orbitals: hybrid  $sp^2$  orbitals. (a) Cross-section and approximate shape of a single orbital. Strongly directed along one axis. (b) Representation as a sphere, with small back lobe omitted. (c) Three orbitals, with axes directed toward corners of equilateral triangle



These hybrid orbitals are called  $sp^2$  orbitals, since they are considered to arise from the mixing of *one*  $s$  orbital and *two*  $p$  orbitals. They lie in a plane, which includes the atomic nucleus, and are directed to the corners of an equilateral triangle; the angle between any two orbitals is thus  $120^\circ$ . Again we see the geometry that permits the orbitals to be as far apart as possible: here, a *trigonal* (three-cornered) arrangement.

When we arrange the atoms for maximum overlap of each of the  $sp^2$  orbitals of boron with a  $p$  orbital of fluorine, we obtain the structure shown in Fig. 1.8: a *flat* molecule, with the boron atom at the center of a triangle and the three fluorine atoms at the corners. Every bond angle is  $120^\circ$ .

Figure 1.8.  $\text{BF}_3$  molecule.



Experiment has shown that boron fluoride has exactly this flat, symmetrical structure calculated by quantum mechanics.

### 1.11 Hybrid orbitals: $sp^3$

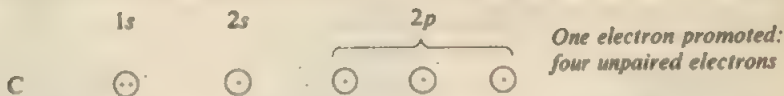
Now, let us turn to one of the simplest of organic molecules, *methane*,  $\text{CH}_4$ .

Carbon (Table 1.1) has an unpaired electron in each of the two  $p$  orbitals, and on this basis might be expected to form a compound  $\text{CH}_2$ . (It *does*, but  $\text{CH}_2$  is a

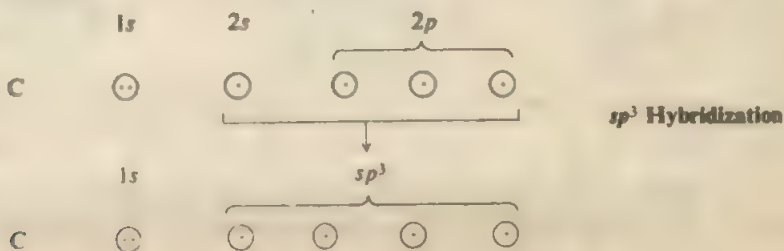


highly reactive molecule whose properties center about the need to provide carbon with two more bonds.) Again, we see the tendency to form as many bonds as possible: in this case, to combine with *four* hydrogen atoms.

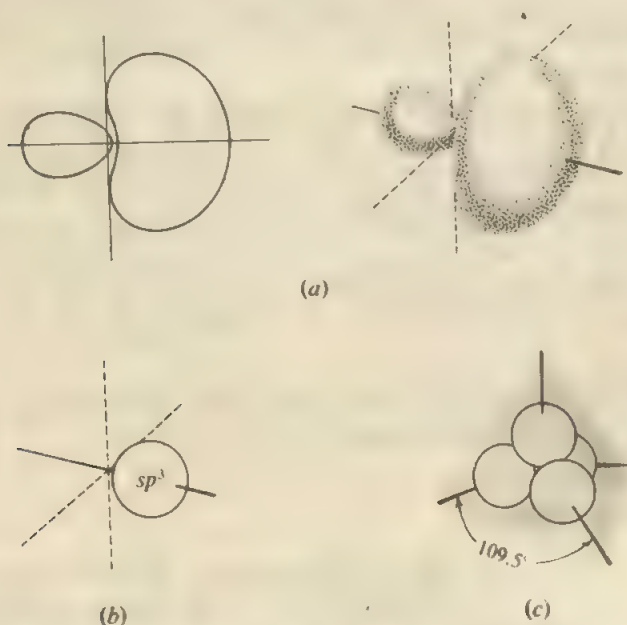
To provide four unpaired electrons, we promote one of the  $2s$  electrons to the empty  $p$  orbital:



Once more the most strongly directed orbitals are hybrid orbitals: this time,  $sp^3$  orbitals, from the mixing of *one*  $s$  orbital and *three*  $p$  orbitals. Each one has the



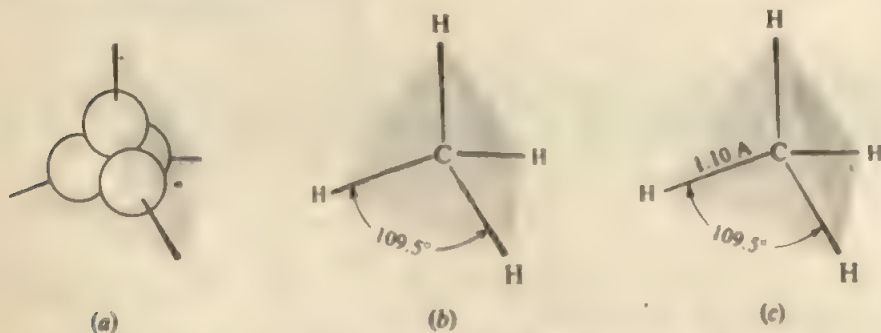
shape shown in Fig. 1.9; as with  $sp$  and  $sp^2$  orbitals, we shall neglect the small back lobe and represent the front lobe as a sphere.



**Figure 1.9.** Atomic orbitals: hybrid  $sp^3$  orbitals. (a) Cross-section and approximate shape of a single orbital. Strongly directed along one axis. (b) Representation as a sphere, with small back lobe omitted. (c) Four orbitals, with axes directed toward corners of tetrahedron.

Now, how are  $sp^3$  orbitals arranged in space? The answer is no surprise to us: in the way that lets them get as far away from each other as possible. They are directed to the corners of a regular tetrahedron. The angle between any two orbitals is the tetrahedral angle  $109.5^\circ$  (Fig. 1.9). Just as mutual repulsion among orbitals gives two linear bonds or three trigonal bonds, so it gives four tetrahedral bonds.

Overlap of each of the  $sp^3$  orbitals of carbon with an  $s$  orbital of hydrogen results in methane: carbon at the center of a regular tetrahedron, and the four hydrogens at the corners (Fig. 1.10).



**Figure 1.10.** Bond formation  $CH_4$  molecule (a) Tetrahedral  $sp^3$  orbitals (b) Predicted shape. H nuclei located for maximum overlap (c) Shape and size

Experimentally, methane has been found to have the highly symmetrical tetrahedral structure we have assembled. Each carbon-hydrogen bond has exactly the same length, 1.10 Å; the angle between any pair of bonds is the tetrahedral angle 109.5°. It takes 104 kcal/mol to break one of the bonds of methane.

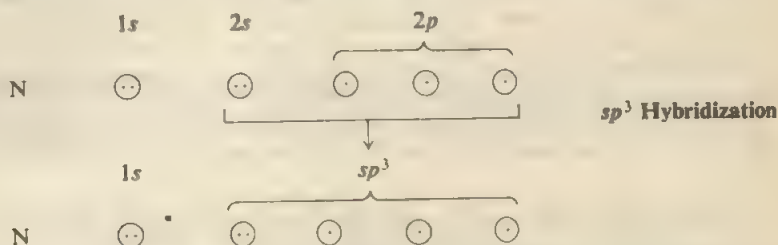
Thus, in these last three sections, we have seen that there are associated with covalent bonds not only characteristic bond lengths and bond dissociation energies but also characteristic bond *angles*. These bond angles can be conveniently related to the arrangement of atomic orbitals—including hybrid orbitals—involved in bond formation; they ultimately go back to the Pauli exclusion principle and the tendency for unpaired electrons to get as far from each other as possible.

Unlike the ionic bond, which is equally strong in all directions, *the covalent bond is a directed bond*. We can begin to see why the chemistry of the covalent bond is so much concerned with molecular size and shape.

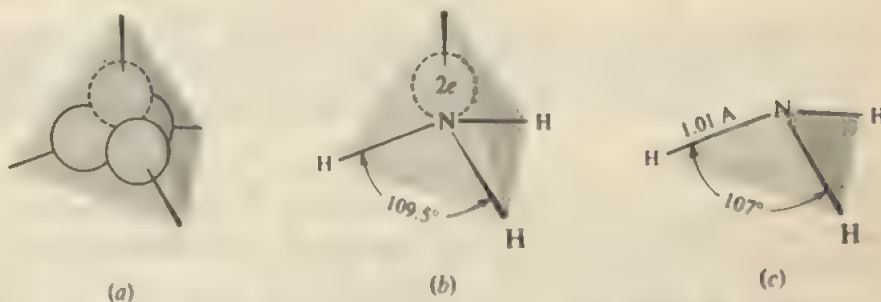
## 1.12 Unshared pairs of electrons

Two familiar compounds, ammonia ( $\text{NH}_3$ ) and water ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ), show how *unshared pairs of electrons* can affect molecular structure.

In ammonia, nitrogen resembles the carbon of methane. Nitrogen is  $sp^3$ -hybridized, but (Table 1.1) has only three unpaired electrons; they occupy three of



the  $sp^3$  orbitals. Overlap of each of these orbitals with the  $s$  orbital of a hydrogen atom results in ammonia (Fig. 1.11). The fourth  $sp^3$  orbital of nitrogen contains a pair of electrons.



**Figure 1.11.** Bond formation:  $\text{NH}_3$  molecule. (a) Tetrahedral  $sp^3$  orbitals. (b) Predicted shape, showing unshared pair: H nuclei located for maximum overlap. (c) Shape and size.

If there is to be maximum overlap and hence maximum bond strength, the hydrogen nuclei must be located at three corners of a tetrahedron; the fourth corner



is occupied by an unshared pair of electrons. Considering only atomic nuclei, we would expect ammonia to be shaped like a pyramid with nitrogen at the apex and hydrogen at the corners of a triangular base. Each bond angle should be the tetrahedral angle  $109.5^\circ$ .

Experimentally, ammonia is found to have the pyramidal shape calculated by quantum mechanics. The bond angles are  $107^\circ$ , slightly smaller than the predicted value; it has been suggested that the unshared pair of electrons occupies more space than any of the hydrogen atoms, and hence tends to compress the bond angles slightly. The nitrogen-hydrogen bond length is 1.01 Å; it takes 103 kcal/mol to break one of the bonds of ammonia.

The  $sp^3$  orbital occupied by the unshared pair of electrons is a region of high electron density. This region is a source of electrons for electron-seeking atoms and molecules, and thus gives ammonia its basic properties (Sec. 1.23).

There are two other conceivable electronic configurations for ammonia, but neither fits the facts.

(a) Since nitrogen is bonded to three other atoms, we might have pictured it as using  $sp^2$  orbitals, as boron does in boron trifluoride. But ammonia is *not* a flat molecule, and so we must reject this possibility. It is the unshared pair of electrons on nitrogen that makes the difference between  $NH_3$  and  $BF_3$ ; these electrons need to stay away from those in the carbon-hydrogen bonds, and the tetrahedral shape makes this possible.

(b) We might have pictured nitrogen as simply using the  $p$  orbitals for overlap, since they would provide the necessary three unpaired electrons. But this would give bond angles of  $90^\circ$ —remember, the  $p$  orbitals are at right angles to each other—in contrast to the observed angles of  $107^\circ$ . More importantly, the unshared pair would be buried in an  $s$  orbital, and there is evidence from dipole moments (Sec. 1.16) that this is not so. Evidently the stability gained by using the highly directed  $sp^3$  orbitals for bond formation more than makes up for raising the unshared pair from an  $s$  orbital to the higher-energy  $sp^3$  orbital.

One further fact about ammonia: spectroscopy reveals that the molecule undergoes *inversion*, that is, turns inside-out (Fig. 1.12). There is an energy barrier

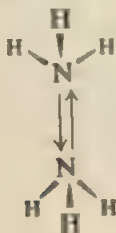
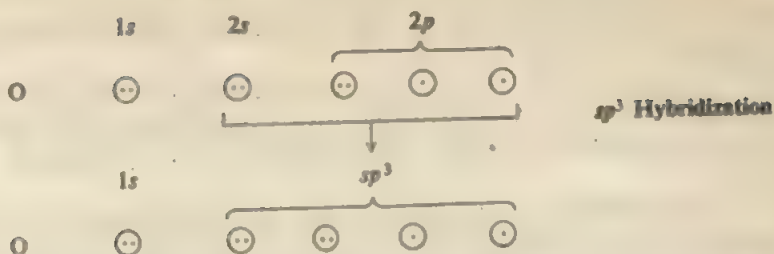


Figure 1.12. Inversion of ammonia.

of only 6 kcal/mol between one pyramidal arrangement and the other, equivalent one. This energy is provided by molecular collisions, and even at room temperature the fraction of collisions hard enough to do the job is so large that a rapid transformation between pyramidal arrangements occurs.

Compare ammonia with methane, which does *not* undergo inversion. The unshared pair plays the role of a carbon-hydrogen bond in determining the most stable shape of the molecule, tetrahedral. But, unlike a carbon-hydrogen bond, the unshared pair cannot maintain a *particular* tetrahedral arrangement; the pair points now in one direction, and the next instant in the opposite direction.

Finally, let us consider water,  $H_2O$ . The situation is similar to that for ammonia, except that oxygen has only two unpaired electrons, and hence it bonds



with only two hydrogen atoms, which occupy two corners of a tetrahedron. The other two corners of the tetrahedron are occupied by unshared pairs of electrons (Fig. 1.13).



Figure 1.13. Bond formation:  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  molecule. (a) Tetrahedral  $sp^3$  orbitals. (b) Predicted shape, showing unshared pairs: H nuclei located for maximum overlap. (c) Shape and size.

As actually measured, the  $\text{H}-\text{O}-\text{H}$  angle is  $105^\circ$ , smaller than the calculated tetrahedral angle, and even smaller than the angle in ammonia. Here there are two bulky unshared pairs of electrons compressing the bond angles. The oxygen-hydrogen bond length is  $0.96 \text{ \AA}$ ; it takes  $118 \text{ kcal/mol}$  to break one of the bonds of water.

Because of the unshared pairs of electrons on oxygen, water is basic, although less strongly so than ammonia (Sec. 1.23).

**Problem 1.4** Predict the shape of each of the following molecules, and tell how you arrived at your prediction: (a) the ammonium ion,  $\text{NH}_4^+$ ; (b) the hydronium ion,  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ ; (c) methyl alcohol,  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ ; (d) methylamine,  $\text{CH}_3\text{NH}_2$ .

### 1.13 Intramolecular forces

We must remember that the particular method of mentally building molecules that we are learning to use is artificial: it is a purely intellectual process involving imaginary overlap of imaginary orbitals. There are other, equally artificial ways that use different mental or physical models. Our method is the one that so far has seemed to work out best for the organic chemist. Our kit of mental atomic models will contain just three "kinds" of carbon: *tetrahedral* ( $sp^3$ -hybridized), *trigonal* ( $sp^2$ -hybridized), and *digonal* ( $sp$ -hybridized). By use of this kit, we shall find, one can do an amazingly good job of building hundreds of thousands of organic molecules.

But, however we arrive at it, we see the actual structure of a molecule to be the

net result of a combination of *repulsive* and *attractive* forces, which are related to *charge* and *electron spin*.

(a) *Repulsive forces*. Electrons tend to stay as far apart as possible because they have the same charge and also, if they are unpaired, because they have the same spin (Pauli exclusion principle). The like-charged atomic nuclei, too, repel each other.

(b) *Attractive forces*. Electrons are attracted by atomic nuclei—as are the nuclei by the electrons—because of their opposite charge, and hence tend to occupy the region between two nuclei. Opposite spin *permits* (although, in itself, probably does not actually *encourage*) two electrons to occupy the same region.

In methane, for example, the four hydrogen nuclei are as widely separated as they can be. The distribution of the eight bonding electrons is such that each one occupies the desirable region near two nuclei—the bond orbital—and yet, except for its partner, is as far as possible from the other electrons. We can picture each electron accepting—perhaps reluctantly because of their similar charges—one orbital-mate of opposite spin, but staying as far as possible from all other electrons and even, as it wanders within the loose confines of its orbital, doing its best to avoid the vicinity of its restless partner.

### 1.14 Bond dissociation energy. Homolysis and heterolysis

We have seen that energy is liberated when atoms combine to form a molecule. For a molecule to break into atoms, an equivalent amount of energy must be consumed. *The amount of energy consumed or liberated when a bond is broken or formed is known as the bond dissociation energy, D*. It is characteristic of the particular bond. Table 1.2 lists bond dissociation energies that have been measured for a number of bonds. As can be seen, they vary widely, from weak bonds like I—I (36 kcal/mol) to very strong bonds like H—F (136 kcal/mol). Although the accepted values may change as experimental methods improve, certain trends are clear.

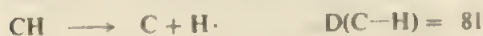
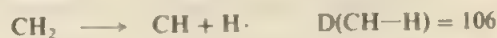
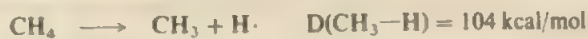
We must not confuse *bond dissociation energy* (D) with another measure of bond strength called *bond energy* (E). If one begins with methane, for example, and breaks, successively,

Table 1.2 HOMOLYTIC BOND DISSOCIATION ENERGIES, KCAL/MOL

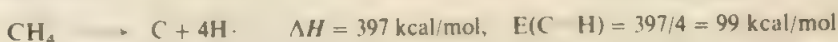
A:B → A· + ·B		ΔH = Homolytic Bond Dissociation Energy or D(A—B)	
H—H	104		
H—F	136	F—F	38
H—Cl	103	Cl—Cl	58
H—Br	88	Br—Br	46
H—I	71	I—I	36
CH <sub>3</sub> —H	104	CH <sub>3</sub> —CH <sub>3</sub>	88
C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> —H	98	C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> —CH <sub>3</sub>	85
n-C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> —H	98	n-C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> —CH <sub>3</sub>	85
i-C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> —H	95	i-C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> —CH <sub>3</sub>	84
t-C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> —H	92	t-C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> —CH <sub>3</sub>	80
H <sub>2</sub> C=CH—H	108	H <sub>2</sub> C=CH—CH <sub>3</sub>	92
H <sub>2</sub> C—CHCH <sub>3</sub> —H	88	H <sub>2</sub> C—CHCH <sub>3</sub> —CH <sub>3</sub>	72
C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> —H	110	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> —CH <sub>3</sub>	93
C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> —H	85	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> —CH <sub>3</sub>	70
		CH <sub>3</sub> —Cl	84
		C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> —Cl	81
		n-C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> —Cl	82
		i-C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> —Cl	81
		t-C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> —Cl	79
		H <sub>2</sub> C=CH—Cl	84
		H <sub>2</sub> C—CHCH <sub>3</sub> —Cl	60
		C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> —Cl	86
		C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> —Cl	68
		CH <sub>3</sub> —Br	70
		C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> —Br	69
		n-C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> —Br	69
		i-C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> —Br	68
		t-C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> —Br	63
		H <sub>2</sub> C—CHCH <sub>3</sub> —Br	47
		C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> —Br	72
		C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> —Br	51



four carbon-hydrogen bonds, one finds four different bond dissociation energies:



The carbon hydrogen bond energy in methane,  $E(\text{C}-\text{H})$ , on the other hand, is a single average value:



We shall generally find bond dissociation energies more useful for our purposes.

So far, we have spoken of breaking a molecule into two atoms or into an atom and a group of atoms. Thus, of the two electrons making up the covalent bond, one goes to each fragment; such bond-breaking is called *homolysis*. We shall also encounter reactions involving bond-breaking of a different kind: *heterolysis*, in which both bonding electrons go to the same fragment.



(These words are taken from the Greek: *homo* and *hetero*, the same and different; and *lysis*, a loosening. To a chemist *lysis* means "cleavage" as in, for example, *hydro-lysis*, "cleavage by water.")

The bond dissociation energies given in Table 1.2 are for homolysis, and are therefore *homolytic* bond dissociation energies. But bond dissociation energies have also been measured for heterolysis; some of these *heterolytic* bond dissociation energies are given in Table 1.3.

Table 1.3 HETEROLYTIC BOND DISSOCIATION ENERGIES, KCAL/MOL

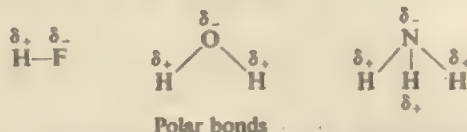
$\text{A}:\text{B} \longrightarrow \text{A}^+ + :\text{B}^-$		$\Delta H = \text{Heterolytic Bond Dissociation Energy or } D(\text{A}^+ \text{ } \text{B}^-)$	
H-H	401	CH <sub>3</sub> -H	313
H-F	370	CH <sub>3</sub> -F	256
H-Cl	334	CH <sub>3</sub> -Cl	227
H-Br	324	CH <sub>3</sub> -Br	219
H-I	315	CH <sub>3</sub> -I	212
H-OH	390	CH <sub>3</sub> -OH	274
CH <sub>3</sub> -Cl	227	CH <sub>3</sub> -Br	219
C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> -Cl	191	C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> -Br	184
<i>n</i> -C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> -Cl	185	<i>n</i> -C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> -Br	178
<i>i</i> -C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> -Cl	170	<i>i</i> -C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> -Br	164
<i>t</i> -C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> -Cl	157	<i>t</i> -C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> -Br	149
H <sub>2</sub> C=CH-Cl	207	H <sub>2</sub> C=CH-Br	200
H <sub>2</sub> C=CHCH <sub>3</sub> -Cl	173	H <sub>2</sub> C=CHCH <sub>3</sub> -Br	165
C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> -Cl	219	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> -Br	210
C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -Cl	166	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -Br	157
		CH <sub>3</sub> -I	212
		C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> -I	176
		<i>n</i> -C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> -I	171
		<i>i</i> -C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> -I	156
		<i>t</i> -C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> -I	140
		H <sub>2</sub> C=CH-I	194
		H <sub>2</sub> C=CHCH <sub>2</sub> -I	159
		C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> -I	202
		C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -I	149
		CH <sub>3</sub> -OH	274
		C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> -OH	242
		<i>n</i> -C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> -OH	235
		<i>i</i> -C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> -OH	222
		<i>t</i> -C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> -OH	208
		H <sub>2</sub> C=CHCH <sub>2</sub> -OH	223
		C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> -OH	236
		C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -OH	215

If we examine these values, we see that they are considerably bigger than those in Table 1.2. Simple heterolysis of a neutral molecule yields, of course, a positive ion and a negative ion. Separation of these oppositely charged particles takes a great deal of energy: 100 kcal/mol or so *more* than separation of neutral particles. In the gas phase, therefore, bond dissociation generally takes place by the easier route, homolysis. In an ionizing solvent (Sec. 6.27), on the other hand, heterolysis is the preferred kind of cleavage.

### 1.15 Polarity of bonds

Besides the properties already described, certain covalent bonds have another property: **polarity**. Two atoms joined by a covalent bond share electrons; their nuclei are held by the same electron cloud. But in most cases the two nuclei do not share the electrons equally; the electron cloud is denser about one atom than the other. One end of the bond is thus relatively negative and the other end is relatively positive; that is, there is a *negative pole* and a *positive pole*. Such a bond is said to be a **polar bond**, or to *possess polarity*.

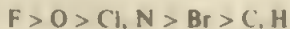
We can indicate polarity by using the symbols  $\delta_+$  and  $\delta_-$ , which indicate *partial* + and - charges. (We say "delta plus" and "delta minus.") For example:



We can expect a covalent bond to be polar if it joins atoms that differ in their tendency to attract electrons, that is, atoms that differ in *electronegativity*. Furthermore, the greater the difference in electronegativity, the more polar the bond will be.

The most electronegative elements are those located in the upper right-hand corner of the Periodic Table. Of the elements we are likely to encounter in organic chemistry, fluorine has the highest electronegativity, then oxygen, then nitrogen and chlorine, then bromine, and finally carbon. Hydrogen does not differ very much from carbon in electronegativity; it is not certain whether it is more or less electronegative.

#### Electronegativity



Bond polarities are intimately concerned with both physical and chemical properties. The polarity of bonds can lead to polarity of molecules, and thus profoundly affect melting point, boiling point, and solubility. The polarity of a bond determines the kind of reaction that can take place at that bond, and even affects reactivity at nearby bonds.

### 1.16 Polarity of molecules

A molecule is polar if the center of negative charge does not coincide with the center of positive charge. Such a molecule constitutes a *dipole*: two equal and opposite charges separated in space. A dipole is often symbolized by  $\leftrightarrow$ , where the arrow points from positive to negative. The molecule possesses a dipole

moment,  $\mu$ , which is equal to the magnitude of the charge,  $e$ , multiplied by the distance,  $d$ , between the centers of charge:

$$\mu = e \times d$$

$\begin{matrix} \text{in} & \text{in} & \text{in} \\ \text{Debye} & \text{e.s.u.} & \text{cm} \\ \text{units, D} & & \end{matrix}$

In a way that cannot be gone into here, it is possible to measure the dipole moments of molecules; some of the values obtained are listed in Table 1.4. We shall be interested in the values of dipole moments as indications of the relative polarities of different molecules.

Table 1.4 DIPOLE MOMENTS, D

H <sub>2</sub>	0	HF	1.75	CH <sub>4</sub>	0
O <sub>2</sub>	0	H <sub>2</sub> O	1.84	CH <sub>3</sub> Cl	1.86
N <sub>2</sub>	0	NH <sub>3</sub>	1.46	CCl <sub>4</sub>	0
Cl <sub>2</sub>	0	NF <sub>3</sub>	0.24	CO <sub>2</sub>	0
Br <sub>2</sub>	0	BF <sub>3</sub>	0		

It is the *fact* that some molecules are polar which has given rise to the *speculation* that some bonds are polar. We have taken up bond polarity first simply because it is convenient to consider that the polarity of a molecule is a composite of the polarities of the individual bonds.

Molecules like H<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>2</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>, Cl<sub>2</sub>, and Br<sub>2</sub> have zero dipole moments, that is, are non-polar. The two identical atoms of each of these molecules have, of course, the same electronegativity and share electrons equally;  $e$  is zero and hence  $\mu$  is zero, too.

A molecule like hydrogen fluoride has the large dipole moment of 1.75 D. Although hydrogen fluoride is a small molecule, the very high electronegative fluorine pulls the electrons strongly; although  $d$  is small,  $e$  is large, and hence  $\mu$  is large, too.

Methane and carbon tetrachloride, CCl<sub>4</sub>, have zero dipole moments. We certainly would expect the individual bonds—of carbon tetrachloride at least—to be polar; because of the very symmetrical tetrahedral arrangement, however, they exactly cancel each other out (Fig. 1.14). In methyl chloride, CH<sub>3</sub>Cl, the polarity

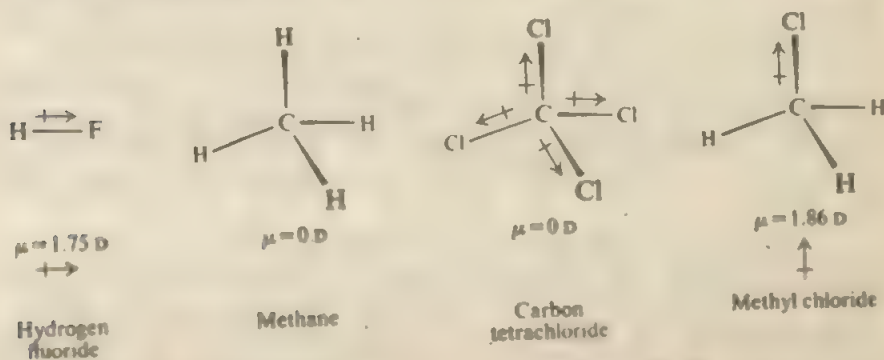
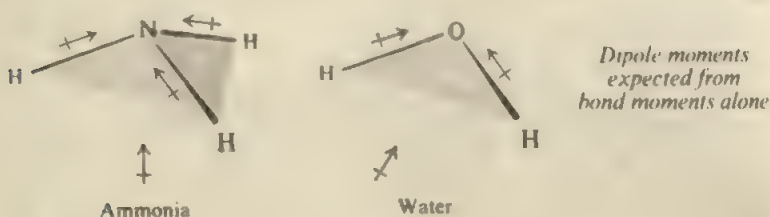


Figure 1.14. Dipole moments of some molecules. Polarity of bonds and of molecules.

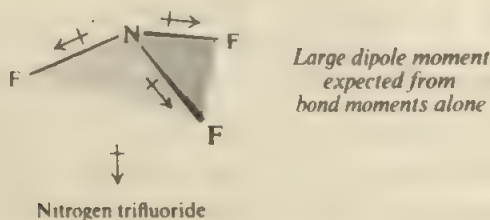


of the carbon-chlorine bond is not canceled, however, and methyl chloride has a dipole moment of 1.86 D. Thus the polarity of a molecule depends not only upon the polarity of its individual bonds but also upon the way the bonds are directed, that is, upon the shape of the molecule.

Ammonia has a dipole moment of 1.46 D. This could be accounted for as a net dipole moment (a *vector sum*) resulting from the three individual bond moments, and would be in the direction shown in the diagram. In a similar way, we could account for water's dipole moment of 1.84 D.



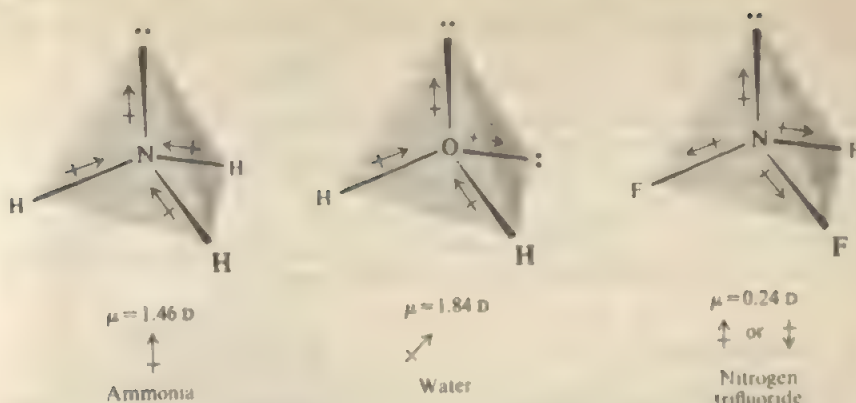
Now, what kind of dipole moment would we expect for nitrogen trifluoride, NF<sub>3</sub>, which, like ammonia, is pyramidal? Fluorine is the most electronegative element of all and should certainly pull electrons strongly from nitrogen; the N-F bonds should be highly polar, and their vector sum should be large—far larger than for ammonia with its modestly polar N-H bonds.



What are the facts? Nitrogen trifluoride has a dipole moment of only 0.24 D. It is not larger than the moment for ammonia, but rather is *much smaller*.

How are we to account for this? We have forgotten the *unshared pair of electrons*. In NF<sub>3</sub> (as in NH<sub>3</sub>) this pair occupies an *sp*<sup>3</sup> orbital and must contribute a dipole moment in the direction opposite to that of the net moment of the N-F bonds (Fig. 1.15); these opposing moments are evidently of about the same size, and the result is a small moment, in which direction we cannot say. In ammonia the observed moment is probably due chiefly to the unshared pair, augmented by the sum of the bond moments. In a similar way, unshared pairs of electrons must contribute to the dipole moment of water and, indeed, of any molecules in which they appear.

Dipole moments can give valuable information about the structure of molecules. For example, any structure for carbon tetrachloride that would result in a polar molecule can be ruled out on the basis of dipole moment alone. The evidence of dipole moment thus supports the tetrahedral structure for carbon tetrachloride. (However, it does not prove this structure, since there are other conceivable structures that would also result in a non-polar molecule.)



**Figure 1.15.** Dipole moments of some molecules. Contribution from unshared pairs. In  $\text{NF}_3$ , moment due to unshared pair opposes vector sum of bond moments.

**Problem 1.5** Which of the following conceivable structures of  $\text{CCl}_4$  would also have a zero dipole moment? (a) Carbon at the center of a square with a chlorine at each corner. (b) Carbon at the apex of a pyramid with a chlorine at each corner of a square base.

**Problem 1.6** Suggest a shape for the  $\text{CO}_2$  molecule that would account for its zero dipole moment.

**Problem 1.7** In Sec. 1.12 we rejected two conceivable electronic configurations for ammonia. (a) If nitrogen were  $sp^2$ -hybridized, what dipole moment would you expect for ammonia? What is the dipole moment of ammonia? (b) If nitrogen used  $p$  orbitals for bonding, how would you expect the dipole moments of ammonia and nitrogen trifluoride to compare? How do they compare?

The dipole moments of most compounds have never been measured. For these substances we must predict polarity from structure. From our knowledge of electronegativity, we can estimate the polarity of bonds; from our knowledge of bond angles, we can then estimate the polarity of molecules, taking into account any unshared pairs of electrons.

## 1.17 Structure and physical properties

We have just discussed one physical property of compounds: dipole moment. Other physical properties—like melting point, boiling point, or solubility in a particular solvent—are also of concern to us. The physical properties of a new compound give valuable clues about its structure. Conversely, the structure of a compound often tells us what physical properties to expect of it.

In attempting to synthesize a new compound, for example, we must plan a series of reactions to convert a compound that we have into the compound that we want. In addition, we must work out a method of separating our product from all the other compounds making up the reaction mixture: unconsumed reactants, solvent, catalyst, by-products. Usually the *isolation* and *purification* of a product take much more time and effort than the actual making of it. The feasibility of isolating the product by distillation depends upon its boiling point and the boiling

points of the contaminants; isolation by recrystallization depends upon its solubility in various solvents and the solubility of the contaminants. Success in the laboratory often depends upon making a good prediction of physical properties from structure. Organic compounds are *real* substances—not just collections of letters written on a piece of paper—and we must learn how to handle them.

We have seen that there are two extreme kinds of chemical bonds: ionic bonds, formed by the transfer of electrons, and covalent bonds, formed by the sharing of electrons. The physical properties of a compound depend largely upon which kind of bonds hold its atoms together in the molecule.

### 1.18 Melting point

In a crystalline solid the particles acting as structural units—ions or molecules—are arranged in some very regular, symmetrical way; there is a geometric pattern repeated over and over within a crystal.

Melting is the change from the highly ordered arrangement of particles in the crystalline lattice to the more random arrangement that characterizes a liquid (see Figs. 1.16 and 1.17). Melting occurs when a temperature is reached at which the thermal energy of the particles is great enough to overcome the intracrystalline forces that hold them in position.

An **ionic compound** forms crystals in which the structural units are *ions*. Solid sodium chloride, for example, is made up of positive sodium ions and negative chloride ions alternating in a very regular way. Surrounding each positive ion and

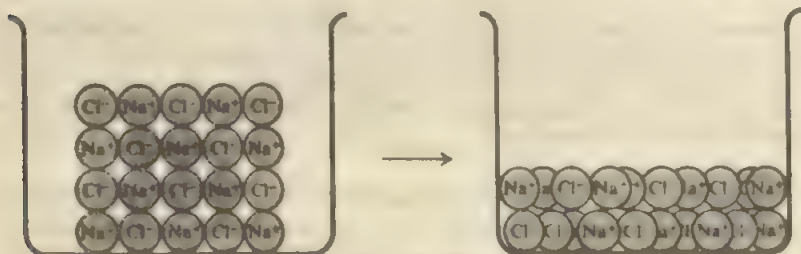


Figure 1.16. Melting of an ionic crystal. Units are ions.

equidistant from it are six negative ions: one on each side of it, one above and one below, one in front and one in back. Each negative ion is surrounded in a similar way by six positive ions. There is nothing that we can properly call a *molecule* of sodium chloride. A particular sodium ion does not “belong” to any one chloride ion; it is equally attracted to six chloride ions. The crystal is an extremely strong, rigid structure, since the electrostatic forces holding each ion in position are powerful. These powerful *interionic* forces are overcome only at a very high temperature; sodium chloride has a melting point of 801°.

Crystals of other ionic compounds resemble crystals of sodium chloride in having an ionic lattice, although the exact geometric arrangement may be different. As a result, these other ionic compounds, too, have high melting points. Many molecules contain both ionic and covalent bonds. Potassium nitrate,  $\text{KNO}_3$ , for example, is made up of  $\text{K}^+$  ions and  $\text{NO}_3^-$  ions, the oxygen and nitrogen atoms of the  $\text{NO}_3^-$  ion are held to each other by covalent bonds. The physical properties



of compounds like these are largely determined by the ionic bonds; potassium nitrate has very much the same sort of physical properties as sodium chloride.

A **non-ionic compound**, one whose atoms are held to each other entirely by covalent bonds, forms crystals in which the structural units are *molecules*. It is the forces holding these molecules to each other that must be overcome for melting to occur. In general, these *intermolecular* forces are very weak compared with the

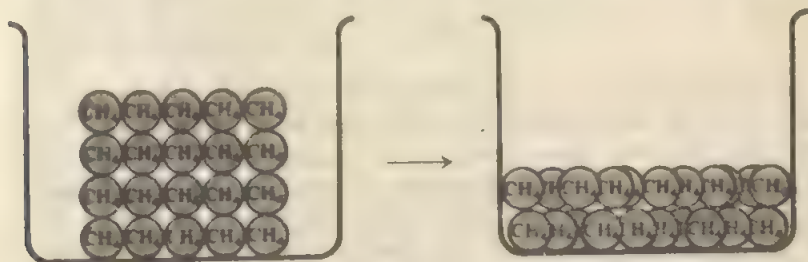


Figure 1.17. Melting of a non-ionic crystal. Units are molecules.

forces holding ions to each other. To melt sodium chloride we must supply enough energy to break ionic bonds between  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$ . To melt methane,  $\text{CH}_4$ , we do not need to supply enough energy to break covalent bonds between carbon and hydrogen; we need only supply enough energy to break  $\text{CH}_4$  molecules away from each other. In contrast to sodium chloride, methane melts at  $-183^\circ$ .

### 1.19 Intermolecular forces

What kind of forces hold neutral molecules to each other? Like interionic forces, these forces seem to be electrostatic in nature, involving attraction of positive charge for negative charge. There are two kinds of intermolecular forces: *dipole-dipole interactions* and *van der Waals forces*.

**Dipole-dipole interaction** is the attraction of the positive end of one polar molecule for the negative end of another polar molecule. In hydrogen chloride, for example, the relatively positive hydrogen of one molecule is attracted to the relatively negative chlorine of another:



As a result of dipole-dipole interaction, polar molecules are generally held to each other more strongly than are non-polar molecules of comparable molecular weight; this difference in strength of intermolecular forces is reflected in the physical properties of the compounds concerned.

An especially strong kind of dipole-dipole attraction is **hydrogen bonding**, in which a *hydrogen atom serves as a bridge between two electronegative atoms, holding one by a covalent bond and the other by purely electrostatic forces*. When hydrogen is attached to a highly electronegative atom, the electron cloud is greatly distorted toward the electronegative atom, exposing the hydrogen nucleus. The strong positive charge of the thinly shielded hydrogen nucleus is strongly attracted by the negative charge of the electronegative atom of a second molecule. This attraction



With respect to other atoms to which it is not bonded—whether in another molecule or in another part of the same molecule—every atom has an effective “size,” called its *van der Waals radius*. As two non-bonded atoms are brought together the attraction between them steadily increases, and reaches a maximum when they are just “touching”—that is to say, when the distance between the nuclei is equal to the sum of the van der Waals radii. Now, if the atoms are forced still closer together, van der Waals attraction is very rapidly replaced by van der Waals *repulsion*. Thus, non-bonded atoms welcome each other's touch, but strongly resist crowding.

We shall find both attractive and repulsive van der Waals forces important to our understanding of molecular structure.

## 1.20 Boiling point

Although the particles in a liquid are arranged less regularly and are freer to move about than in a crystal, each particle is attracted by a number of other particles. Boiling involves the breaking away from the liquid of individual molecules or pairs of oppositely charged ions (see Figs. 1.18 and 1.19). This occurs when a temperature is reached at which the thermal energy of the particles is great enough to overcome the cohesive forces that hold them in the liquid.

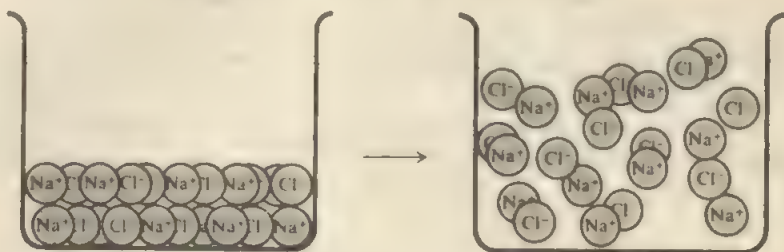


Figure 1.18. Boiling of an ionic liquid. Units are ions and ion pairs.

In the liquid state the unit of an ionic compound is again the ion. Each ion is still held strongly by a number of oppositely charged ions. Again there is nothing we could properly call a molecule. A great deal of energy is required for a pair of oppositely charged ions to break away from the liquid; boiling occurs only at a very high temperature. The boiling point of sodium chloride, for example, is  $1413^{\circ}$ . In the gaseous state we have an *ion pair*, which can be considered a sodium chloride molecule.

In the liquid state the unit of a non-ionic compound is again the molecule. The weak intermolecular forces here—dipole-dipole interactions and van der Waals

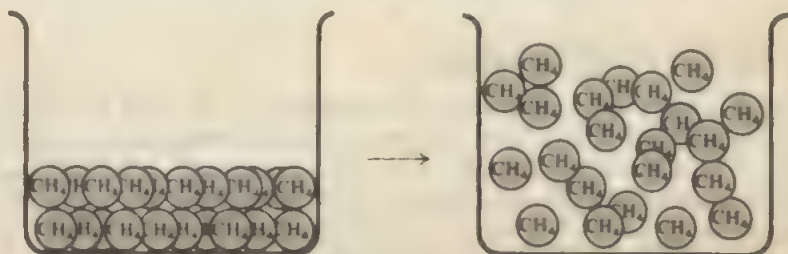


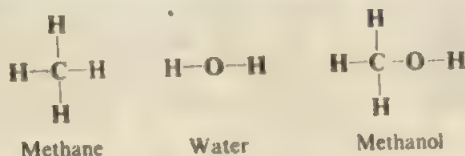
Figure 1.19. Boiling of a non-ionic liquid. Units are molecules.



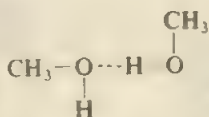
forces—are more readily overcome than the strong interionic forces of ionic compounds, and boiling occurs at a very much lower temperature. Non-polar methane boils at  $-161.5^{\circ}$ , and even polar hydrogen chloride boils at only  $-85^{\circ}$ .

Liquids whose molecules are held together by hydrogen bonds are called *associated liquids*. Breaking these hydrogen bonds takes considerable energy, and so an associated liquid has a boiling point that is abnormally high for a compound of its molecular weight and dipole moment. Hydrogen fluoride, for example, boils 100 degrees higher than the heavier, non-associated hydrogen chloride; water boils 160 degrees higher than hydrogen sulfide.

There are organic compounds, too, that contain hydrogen bonded to oxygen or nitrogen, and here, too, hydrogen bonding occurs. Let us take, for example, methane and replace one of its hydrogens with a hydroxyl group,  $-\text{OH}$ . The resulting compound,  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ , is *methanol*, the smallest member of the *alcohol* family. Structurally, it resembles not only methane, but also water:



Like water, it is an associated liquid with a boiling point “abnormally” high for a compound of its size and polarity.



The bigger the molecules, the stronger the van der Waals forces. Other things being equal—polarity, hydrogen bonding—boiling point rises with increasing molecular size. Boiling points of organic compounds range upward from that of tiny, non-polar methane, but we seldom encounter boiling points much above  $350^{\circ}$ ; at higher temperatures, covalent bonds *within* the molecules start to break, and decomposition competes with boiling. It is to lower the boiling point and thus minimize decomposition that distillation of organic compounds is often carried out under reduced pressure.

**Problem 1.8** Which of the following organic compounds would you predict to be associated liquids? Draw structures to show the hydrogen bonding you would expect. (a)  $\text{CH}_3\text{OCH}_3$ ; (b)  $\text{CH}_3\text{F}$ ; (c)  $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$ ; (d)  $\text{CH}_3\text{NH}_2$ ; (e)  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NH}$ ; (f)  $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{N}$ .

## 1.21 Solubility: non-ionic solutes

When a solid or liquid dissolves, the structural units—ions or molecules—become separated from each other, and the spaces in between become occupied by solvent molecules. In dissolution, as in melting and boiling, energy must be supplied to overcome the interionic or intermolecular forces. Where does the necessary energy come from? The energy required to break the bonds between solute particles is supplied by the formation of bonds between the solute particles and the solvent molecules: the old attractive forces are replaced by new ones

Now, what are these bonds that are formed between solute and solvent? Let us consider first the case of non-ionic solutes.

The solubility characteristics of non-ionic compounds are determined chiefly by their polarity. Non-polar or weakly polar compounds dissolve in non-polar or weakly polar solvents; highly polar compounds dissolve in highly polar solvents. "Like dissolves like" is an extremely useful rule of thumb. Methane dissolves in carbon tetrachloride because the forces holding methane molecules to each other and carbon tetrachloride molecules to each other—van der Waals interactions—are replaced by very similar forces holding methane molecules to carbon tetrachloride molecules.

Neither methane nor carbon tetrachloride is readily soluble in water. The highly polar water molecules are held to each other by very strong dipole-dipole interactions—hydrogen bonds; there could be only very weak attractive forces between water molecules on the one hand and the non-polar methane or carbon tetrachloride molecules on the other.

In contrast, the highly polar organic compound methanol,  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ , is quite soluble in water. Hydrogen bonds between water and methanol molecules can readily replace the very similar hydrogen bonds between different methanol molecules and different water molecules.

But nearly all organic molecules are bigger than methane or methanol. Most of them contain both non-polar parts and polar parts, and their solubility behavior reflects this. Consider, for example, a series of *alcohols*, compounds of the same family as methanol. Each contains an  $-\text{OH}$  group, and to that extent is like water; each contains a hydrocarbon (hydrogen-and-carbon) chain, and to that extent is like methane. Table 1.5 gives the water solubility of a series of such alcohols. For

**Table 1.5 SOLUBILITY OF ALCOHOLS IN WATER**

Alcohol	Solubility, g/100 g $\text{H}_2\text{O}$
$\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$	$\infty$
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	$\infty$
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	$\infty$
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	7.9
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	2.3
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	0.6
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	0.2
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	0.05

the lower members of the series, the  $-\text{OH}$  group constitutes a large portion of the molecule, and these compounds are miscible with water. But, we see, as the number of carbons increases, the solubility steadily decreases; a long chain with an  $-\text{OH}$  at one end of it is mostly hydrocarbon, and its solubility shows this.

Because of the very special status of water as a solvent—especially in biological systems—the terms *hydrophilic* (water-loving) and *hydrophobic* (water-hating) are used in reference to water-solubility and water-insolubility. Instead of hydrophobic, the term *lipophilic* (fat-loving) is often used; this emphasizes not so much insolubility in water as solubility in non-polar solvents.

Since it is easier to work with a term for a positive quality than one for a negative quality, in this book we shall generally use *lipophilic*. This term is meant simply to indicate the *fact* of solubility in non-polar solvents. It may well be—as is widely held—that this solubility is chiefly due to rejection by water rather than positive acceptance by a non-polar solvent.

\*Now, if a molecule is big enough—if an alcohol, say, has a chain of 16 to 20 carbons or more—hydrophilic and lipophilic parts display their individual solubility properties. The hydrophilic parts dissolve in water; the lipophilic parts dissolve in a non-polar solvent or, if there is none about, cluster together—in effect, dissolve in each other. Such dual solubility behavior gives soaps and detergents their cleansing power, and controls the alignment of molecules in cell membranes; a globular protein molecule—an enzyme, say—coils up to expose its hydrophilic parts to the surrounding water and to hide its lipophilic parts, and in doing this takes on the particular shape needed for its characteristic biological properties.

## 1.22 Solubility: ionic solutes. Protic and aprotic solvents. Ion pairs

Now let us turn to the dissolution of ionic compounds.

A great deal of energy is necessary to overcome the powerful electrostatic forces holding together an ionic lattice. Only water or other highly polar solvents are able to dissolve ionic compounds appreciably. What kind of bonds are formed between ions and a polar solvent? By definition, a polar molecule has a positive end and a negative end. Consequently, there is electrostatic attraction between a positive ion and the negative end of the solvent molecule, and between a negative ion and the positive end of the solvent molecule. These attractions are called **ion-dipole** bonds. Each ion-dipole bond is relatively weak, but in the aggregate they supply enough energy to overcome the interionic forces in the crystal. In solution each ion is surrounded by a cluster of solvent molecules, and is said to be *solvated*; if the solvent happens to be water, the ion is said to be *hydrated*. In solution, as in the solid and liquid states, the unit of a substance like sodium chloride is the ion, although in this case it is a solvated ion (see Fig. 1.20).



Figure 1.20. Ion-dipole interactions: solvated cation and anion.

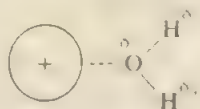
To dissolve ionic compounds a solvent must also have a high *dielectric constant*, that is, have high insulating properties to lower the attraction between oppositely charged ions once they are solvated.

Water owes its superiority as a solvent for ionic substances *in part* to its polarity and high dielectric constant. But there are other liquids with large dipole moments and high dielectric constants that are very poor solvents for ionic compounds.



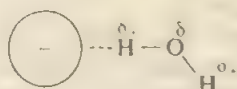
What is needed is *solvating power*, and to see what determines this we must look more closely at the structure of the solvent. Let us start with water.

Cations, we said, are attracted to the negative pole of a polar solvent. In water the negative pole is clearly on oxygen. Oxygen is highly electronegative and, most important, it has *unshared pairs of electrons*.



Furthermore, with only two tiny hydrogens attached to it, the oxygen is *well exposed*; a number of oxygen atoms in a number of water molecules can cluster closely about the cation without crowding.

Anions, we said, are attracted to the positive pole of a polar molecule. In water the positive poles are clearly on hydrogen. We have already discussed (Sec. 1.19) the highly positive character of hydrogen attached to an atom like oxygen. The ion-dipole bonds holding anions to water, we recognize, are *hydrogen bonds*.



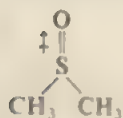
Hydrogen bonding permits particularly strong solvation of anions. Not only is there a strong positive charge concentrated on a very small atom, hydrogen, but this hydrogen juts out from the molecule and is well exposed; the anion can be held by a number of hydrogen bonds on a number of water molecules without crowding.

Thus, water owes a large part of its special solvating power to its  $\text{—OH}$  group: it solvates cations strongly through the unshared pairs on oxygen; it solvates anions strongly through hydrogen bonding.

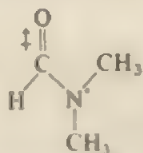
Methanol ( $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ ), we have seen, resembles water in having an  $\text{—OH}$  group. It is not surprising that it, too, dissolves ionic compounds. (It is, however, inferior to water. It is less polar, and the  $\text{CH}_3\text{—}$  group is bigger and causes more crowding than the second  $\text{—H}$  of water.)

Solvents like water and methanol are called **protic solvents**: solvents containing hydrogen that is attached to oxygen or nitrogen and hence is appreciably acidic (Sec. 1.19). These other protic solvents solvate ions in the same way that water does: *cations, through unshared pairs; anions, through hydrogen bonding*.

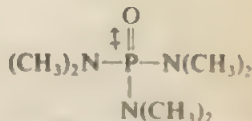
Recent years have seen the development and widespread use of **aprotic solvents**: polar solvents with moderately high dielectric constants, which do not contain acidic hydrogen. For example:



Dimethylsulfoxide  
DMSO



Dimethylformamide  
DMF



Hexamethylphosphorotriamide  
HMPT

They dissolve ionic compounds, but in doing this their action differs in a very important way from that of protic solvents: *they cannot form hydrogen bonds to anions.*

These aprotic solvents are highly polar, with dipole moments several times as large as that of water. As shown above, the negative pole in each of our examples is on an oxygen atom that juts out from the rest of the molecule. Through unshared pairs of electrons on these negatively charged, well-exposed atoms, cations are solvated very strongly.

The positive pole, on the other hand, is buried within the molecule. As a consequence, anions are solvated very weakly. *Aprotic solvents thus dissolve ionic compounds chiefly through their solvation of cations.*

Now, as we shall see, much of organic chemistry is concerned with reactions between non-ionic compounds (generally organic) and ionic compounds (inorganic and organic), and it is necessary to select a solvent in which both of the reagents will dissolve. Water dissolves ionic compounds very well, but is a poor solvent for most organic compounds. This difficulty can be overcome by addition of a second solvent like methanol: methanol's hydrophilic  $\text{—OH}$  makes it miscible with the water; through its lipophilic  $\text{CH}_3\text{—}$ , it brings about dissolution of organic compounds. Indeed, methanol (or ethanol,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ) is often used alone to dissolve both ionic and non-ionic compounds.

But water and alcohols are protic solvents. Through hydrogen bonding, we have seen, such solvents solvate anions strongly; and anions, as it turns out, are usually the important half of an ionic reagent. Thus, although protic solvents dissolve the reagent and bring it into contact with the organic molecule, they at the same time stabilize the anions and lower their reactivity drastically; their basicity is weakened and, with it, the related property, nucleophilic power (Sec. 6.10).

This is where aprotic solvents come in. Through their lipophilic portions, they dissolve organic compounds. They also dissolve inorganic compounds, but they do this, as we have just seen, chiefly through their solvation of cations. Anions are left relatively unencumbered and highly reactive; they are more basic and more nucleophilic.

By use of these aprotic solvents, dramatic effects have been achieved on a wide variety of reactions. Reactions that, in protic solvents, proceed slowly at high temperatures to give low yields may be found, in an aprotic solvent, to proceed rapidly—often at room temperature—to give high yields. A change of solvent may cause a million-fold change in reaction rate. A solvent is not simply a place—a kind of gymnasium—where solute molecules may gambol about and occasionally collide; the solvent is intimately *involved* in any reaction that takes place in it, and we are just beginning to find out how much it is involved, and in what way.

Just as solvents differ in their ability to solvate ions, so ions differ in their tendency *to be solvated*. The concentrated charge on a small, "hard" ion leads to stronger ion-dipole bonding than the diffuse charge on a larger, "soft" ion. Thus, in a given solvent,  $\text{F}^-$  is more strongly solvated than  $\text{Cl}^-$ , and  $\text{Li}^+$  is more strongly solvated than  $\text{Na}^+$ .

There is an alternative way to view the stabilization of an ion by a solvent. According to the laws of electrostatics, the **stability of a charged system is increased by dispersal of charge**. Consider, for example, a solvated anion. The positive ends of the solvent molecules are turned toward the anion and partially neutralize its charge; in doing this they are themselves partially neutralized. This leaves the solvent molecules with a net negative charge; that is, the outer, negative ends are

no longer quite balanced by the inner, positive ends. The negative charge originally concentrated on the anion is now distributed over the very large outer surface of the solvent cluster. This amounts to a very large dispersal of charge and, with it, an enormous stabilization of the anion. In the same way, of course, cations are stabilized by dispersal of their positive charge over the solvent cluster.

Such dispersal is more important for the stabilization of a small ion like  $F^-$  or  $Li^+$  than for a larger ion like  $I^-$  or  $Rb^+$ , in which the charge is already dispersed over a considerable surface.

Dispersal of charge—either through solvation or within the ion itself—tends to stabilize organic cations and anions as well as inorganic ones. We shall find that this concept plays a key role in our understanding of the large fraction of organic chemistry that involves such intermediate particles.

So far in this section we have discussed the interaction of an ion only with the solvent. But there is another component of the solution to be considered. Each ion has a *counter-ion*, that is, an ion of opposite charge that is also necessarily present. In dilute aqueous solutions an inorganic ion is strongly solvated and effectively insulated from the charge of its counter-ion. But in a less polar solvent—in methanol, for example, or one of the aprotic solvents we have described—it feels this charge, and is attracted by it. There is a measure of ionic bonding, and the pair of oppositely charged ions is called an **ion pair**.

The strength of this ionic bonding depends upon the nature of the solvent. In solvents of lower polarity, where solvation is weak, ionic bonding is strong; there are no solvent molecules between the pair of ions, and we speak of a *tight ion pair*. In solvents of higher polarity, where solvation is stronger, ionic bonding is weak; a layer or layers of solvent molecules may separate the pair of ions, and we speak of a *loose ion pair*.

Ion pairs—organic as well as inorganic—play an exceedingly important part in organic chemistry. An ion in solution is subject to many forces, and the stabilizing effect of a counter-ion—like that of the solvent—is one that must always be reckoned with.

**Problem 1.9** Label each of the following solvents as protic or aprotic:

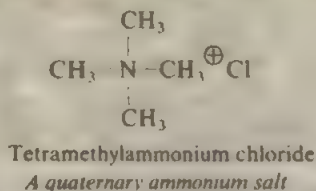
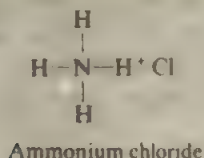
- (a)  $NH_3(l)$  (b)  $SO_2(l)$  (c)  $CH_2Cl_2$  (d)  $CH_3CH_2OH$   
Ammonia Sulfur dioxide Methylene chloride Ethanol

- (e)  $CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$  (f)  $CH_3C(=O)OH$  (g)  $CH_3C(=O)CH_3$  (h)  $H-C(=O)-NH_2$   
Diethyl ether Acetic acid Acetone Formamide

- (i)  $H-C(=O)-N(CH_3)-H$  (j)  $CH_3C\equiv N$  (k)  $\begin{array}{c} H_2C-CH_2 \\ | \quad \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ H_3C \quad O \quad CH_2 \end{array}$  (l)  $\begin{array}{c} H_2C-CH_2 \\ | \quad \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ H_2C \quad S \quad CH_2 \\ | \quad \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ O \quad \quad O \end{array}$   
N-Methylformamide Acetonitrile Tetrahydrofuran Sulfolane



**Problem 1.10** Like most inorganic salts, ammonium chloride is insoluble in non-polar organic solvents. If the hydrogens of  $\text{NH}_4^+$  are replaced by  $\text{CH}_3$  groups, however,



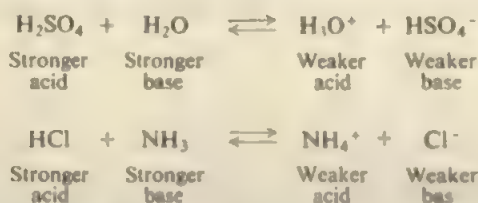
the resulting salt shows appreciable solubility in these substances. (a) How do you account for this contrast? (b) How might you increase the solubility still further?

## 1.23 Acids and bases

Turning from physical to chemical properties, let us review briefly one familiar topic that is fundamental to the understanding of organic chemistry: acidity and basicity.

The terms *acid* and *base* have been defined in a number of ways, each definition corresponding to a particular way of looking at the properties of acidity and basicity. We shall find it useful to look at acids and bases from two of these viewpoints; the one we select will depend upon the problem at hand.

According to the **Lowry-Brønsted** definition, *an acid is a substance that gives up a proton*, and *a base is a substance that accepts a proton*. When sulfuric acid dissolves in water, the acid  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  gives up a proton (hydrogen nucleus) to the base  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  to form the new acid  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$  and the new base  $\text{HSO}_4^-$ . When hydrogen chloride reacts with ammonia, the acid  $\text{HCl}$  gives up a proton to the base  $\text{NH}_3$  to form the new acid  $\text{NH}_4^+$  and the new base  $\text{Cl}^-$ .



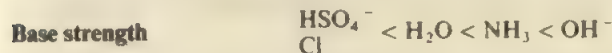
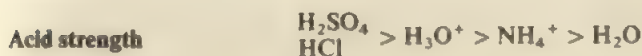
According to the Lowry-Brønsted definition, the strength of an acid depends upon its tendency to give up a proton, and the strength of a base depends upon its tendency to accept a proton. Sulfuric acid and hydrogen chloride are strong acids since they tend to give up a proton very readily; conversely, bisulfate ion,  $\text{HSO}_4^-$ , and chloride ion must necessarily be weak bases since they have little tendency to hold on to protons. In each of the reactions just described, the equilibrium favors the formation of the weaker acid and the weaker base.

If aqueous  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  is mixed with aqueous  $\text{NaOH}$ , the acid  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$  (hydronium ion) gives up a proton to the base  $\text{OH}^-$  to form the new acid  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and the new base  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . When aqueous  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  is mixed with aqueous  $\text{NaOH}$ , the acid  $\text{NH}_4^+$

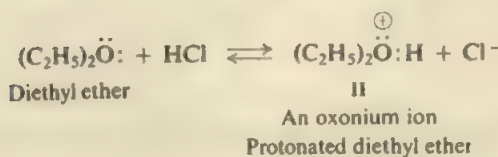
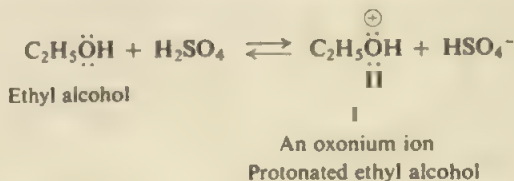




(ammonium ion) gives up a proton to the base  $\text{OH}^-$  to form the new acid  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and the new base  $\text{NH}_3$ . In each case the strong base, hydroxide ion, has accepted a proton to form the weak acid  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . If we arrange these acids in the order shown, we must necessarily arrange the corresponding (conjugate) bases in the opposite order.

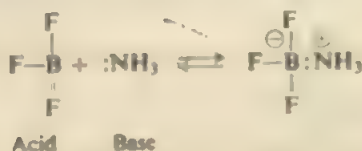


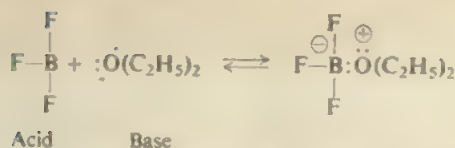
Like water, many organic compounds that contain oxygen can act as bases and accept protons; ethyl alcohol and diethyl ether, for example, form the *oxonium ions* I and II. For convenience, we shall often refer to a structure like I as a *protonated alcohol* and a structure like II as a *protonated ether*.



According to the **Lewis** definition, a *base* is a substance that can furnish an electron pair to form a covalent bond, and an *acid* is a substance that can take up an electron pair to form a covalent bond. Thus an **acid is an electron-pair acceptor** and a **base is an electron-pair donor**. This is the most fundamental of the acid-base concepts, and the most general; it includes all the other concepts.

A proton is an acid because it is deficient in electrons, and needs an electron pair to complete its valence shell. Hydroxide ion, ammonia, and water are bases because they contain electron pairs available for sharing. In boron trifluoride,  $\text{BF}_3$ , boron has only six electrons in its outer shell and hence tends to accept another pair to complete its octet. Boron trifluoride is an acid and combines with such bases as ammonia or diethyl ether. Aluminum chloride,  $\text{AlCl}_3$ , is an acid, and for the same reason. In stannic chloride,  $\text{SnCl}_4$ , tin has a complete octet, but can accept additional pairs of electrons (e.g., in  $\text{SnCl}_6^{2-}$ ) and hence it is an acid, too.



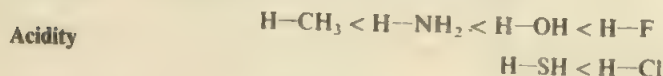


We write a formal negative charge on boron in these formulas because it has one more electron half-interest in the pair shared with nitrogen or oxygen than is balanced by the nuclear charge; correspondingly, nitrogen or oxygen is shown with a formal positive charge.

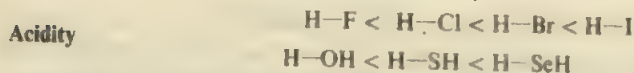
We shall find the Lewis concept of acidity and basicity fundamental to our understanding of organic chemistry. To make it clear that we are talking about this kind of acid or base, we shall often use the expression *Lewis acid* (or *base*), or sometimes *acid* (or *base*) *in the Lewis sense*.

Chemical properties, like physical properties, depend upon molecular structure. Just what features in a molecule's structure tell us what to expect about its acidity or basicity? We can try to answer this question in a general way now, although we shall return to it many times later.

To be acidic in the Lowry-Brønsted sense, a molecule must, of course, contain hydrogen. The degree of acidity is determined largely by the kind of atom that holds the hydrogen and, in particular, by that atom's ability to accommodate the electron pair left behind by the departing hydrogen ion. This ability to accommodate the electron pair seems to depend upon several factors, including (a) the atom's *electronegativity*, and (b) its *size*. Thus, within a given row of the Periodic Table, acidity increases as electronegativity increases:



And within a given family, acidity increases as the size increases:



Among organic compounds, we can expect appreciable Lowry-Brønsted acidity from those containing O—H, N—H, and S—H groups.

To be acidic in the Lewis sense, a molecule must be electron-deficient; in particular, we would look for an atom bearing only a sextet of electrons.

**Problem 1.11** Predict the relative acidity of (a) methyl alcohol ( $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ ) and methylamine ( $\text{CH}_3\text{NH}_2$ ); (b) methyl alcohol ( $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ ) and methanethiol ( $\text{CH}_3\text{SH}$ ); (c)  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$  and  $\text{NH}_4^+$ .

**Problem 1.12** Which is the stronger acid of each pair: (a)  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$  or  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; (b)  $\text{NH}_4^+$  or  $\text{NH}_3$ ; (c)  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$  or  $\text{HS}^-$ ; (d)  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  or  $\text{OH}^-$ ; (e) What relationship is there between *charge* and acidity?

To be basic in either the Lowry-Brønsted or the Lewis sense, a molecule must have an electron pair available for sharing. The availability of these unshared electrons is determined largely by the atom that holds them: its electronegativity, its size, its charge. The operation of these factors here is necessarily opposite to



what we observed for acidity; the better an atom accommodates the electron pair, the less available the pair is for sharing.

**Problem 1.13** Arrange the members of each group in order of basicity:

- (a)  $F^-$ ,  $OH^-$ ,  $NH_3$ ,  $CH_3^-$ ; (b)  $HF$ ,  $H_2O$ ,  $NH_3$ ; (c)  $Cl^-$ ,  $SH^-$ ; (d)  $F^-$ ,  $Cl^-$ ,  $Br^-$ ,  $I^-$ ; (e)  $OH^-$ ,  $SH^-$ ,  $SeH^-$ .

**Problem 1.14** Predict the relative basicity of methyl fluoride ( $CH_3F$ ), methyl alcohol ( $CH_3OH$ ), and methylamine ( $CH_3NH_2$ ).

**Problem 1.15** Arrange the members of each group in order of basicity:

- (a)  $H_3O^+$ ,  $H_2O$ ,  $OH^-$ ; (b)  $NH_3$ ,  $NH_2^-$ ; (c)  $H_2S$ ,  $HS^-$ ,  $S^{2-}$ . (d) What relationship is there between charge and basicity?

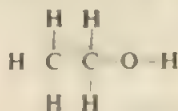
## 1.24 Isomerism

Before we start our systematic study of the different kinds of organic compounds, let us look at one further concept which illustrates especially well the fundamental importance of molecular structure: the concept of **isomerism**.

The compound *ethyl alcohol* is a liquid boiling at  $78^\circ$ . Analysis (by the methods described later, Sec. 2.27) shows that it contains carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen in the proportions  $2C:6H:1O$ . Measurement of its mass spectrum shows that it has a molecular weight of 46. The molecular formula of ethyl alcohol must therefore be  $C_2H_6O$ . Ethyl alcohol is a quite reactive compound. For example, if a piece of sodium metal is dropped into a test tube containing ethyl alcohol, there is a vigorous bubbling and the sodium metal is consumed; hydrogen gas is evolved and there is left behind a compound of formula  $C_2H_5ONa$ . Ethyl alcohol reacts with hydriodic acid to form water and a compound of formula  $C_2H_5I$ .

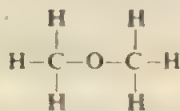
The compound *dimethyl ether* is a gas with a boiling point of  $-24^\circ$ . It is clearly a different substance from ethyl alcohol, differing not only in its physical properties but also in its chemical properties. It does not react at all with sodium metal. Like ethyl alcohol, it reacts with hydriodic acid, but it yields a compound of formula  $CH_3I$ . Analysis of dimethyl ether shows that it contains carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen in the same proportion as ethyl alcohol,  $2C:6H:1O$ . It has the same molecular weight as ethyl alcohol, 46. We conclude that it has the same molecular formula  $C_2H_6O$ .

Here we have two substances, ethyl alcohol and dimethyl ether, which have the same molecular formula,  $C_2H_6O$ , and yet quite clearly are different compounds. How can we account for the existence of these two compounds? The answer is: *they differ in molecular structure*. Ethyl alcohol has the structure represented by I, and dimethyl ether the structure represented by II. As we shall see, the differences in physical and chemical properties of these two compounds can readily be accounted for on the basis of the difference in structure.



I

Ethyl alcohol



II

Dimethyl ether

Different compounds that have the same molecular formula are called **isomers** (Gr. *isos*, equal; *meros*, part). They contain the same numbers of the same kinds of atoms, but the atoms are attached to one another in different ways. Isomers are different compounds because they have different molecular structures.

This difference in molecular structure gives rise to a difference in properties; it is the difference in properties which tells us that we are dealing with different compounds. In some cases, the difference in structure—and hence the difference in properties—is so marked that the isomers are assigned to different chemical families, as, for example, ethyl *alcohol* and dimethyl *ether*. In other cases the difference in structure is so subtle that it can be described only in terms of three-dimensional models. Other kinds of isomerism fall between these two extremes.

## PROBLEMS

1. Which of the following would you expect to be ionic, and which non-ionic? Give a simple electronic structure (Sec. 1.3) for each, showing only valence shell electrons.

- |                              |                    |                     |                              |
|------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|
| (a) $\text{MgCl}_2$          | (c) $\text{ICl}$   | (e) $\text{KClO}_4$ | (g) $\text{BaSO}_4$          |
| (b) $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ | (d) $\text{NaOCl}$ | (f) $\text{SiCl}_4$ | (h) $\text{CH}_3\text{NH}_2$ |

2. Give a likely simple electronic structure (Sec. 1.3) for each of the following, assuming them to be completely covalent. Assume that every atom (except hydrogen, of course) has a complete octet, and that two atoms may share more than one pair of electrons.

- |                             |                     |                            |                             |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) $\text{N}_2\text{H}_4$  | (d) $\text{COCl}_2$ | (g) $\text{CO}_3^{--}$     | (j) $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$   |
| (b) $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ | (e) $\text{HONO}$   | (h) $\text{C}_2\text{H}_4$ | (k) $\text{CH}_2\text{O}_2$ |
| (c) $\text{HSO}_4^-$        | (f) $\text{NO}_2^-$ | (i) $\text{C}_2\text{H}_2$ | (l) $\text{C}_3\text{H}_8$  |

3. What shape would you expect each of the following to have?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{B}$          | (e) the amide ion, $\text{NH}_2^-$        |
| (b) the methyl anion, $\text{CH}_3^-$  | (f) dimethyl ether                        |
| (c) the methyl cation, $\text{CH}_3^+$ | (g) the fluoroborate ion, $\text{BF}_4^-$ |
| (d) $\text{H}_2\text{S}$               | (h) $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{N}$             |

4. In many complex ions, e.g.,  $\text{Co}(\text{NH}_3)_6^{+++}$ , the bonds to the central atom can be pictured as utilizing six equivalent  $sp^3d^2$  (or  $d^2sp^3$ ) hybrid orbitals. On the basis of maximum separation of orbitals, what geometry would you expect these complexes to have?

5. Indicate the direction of the dipole moment, if any, that you would expect for each of the following:

- |                  |                              |                               |
|------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (a) $\text{HBr}$ | (d) $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ | (g) dimethyl ether            |
| (b) $\text{ICl}$ | (e) $\text{CHCl}_3$          | (h) $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{N}$ |
| (c) $\text{I}_2$ | (f) $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$   | (i) $\text{CF}_2\text{Cl}_2$  |

6. (a) Although  $\text{HCl}$  (1.27 Å) is a longer molecule than  $\text{HF}$  (0.92 Å), it has a *smaller* dipole moment (1.03 D compared to 1.75 D). How do you account for this fact? (b) The dipole moment of  $\text{CH}_3\text{F}$  is 1.847 D, and of  $\text{CD}_3\text{F}$ , 1.858 D. (D is  $^2\text{H}$ , deuterium.) Compared with the  $\text{C}-\text{H}$  bond, what is the direction of the  $\text{C}-\text{D}$  dipole?

7. What do the differences in properties between lithium acetylacetonate (m.p. very high, insoluble in chloroform) and beryllium acetylacetonate (m.p. 108°, b.p. 270°, soluble in chloroform) suggest about their structures?

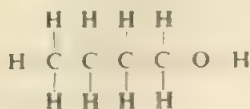
### About Working Problems

Working problems is a necessary part of your work for two reasons. It will guide your study in the right direction, and, after you have studied a particular chapter, it will show whether or not you have reached your destination.

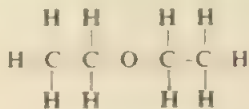
You should work all the problems that you can. You should get help with the ones you cannot work yourself. The first problems in each set are easy, but provide the drill in drawing formulas, naming compounds, and using reactions that even the best student needs. The later problems in each set are the kind encountered by practicing chemists, and test your ability to use what you have learned.

You can check your answers to many of the problems in the answer section in the back of the book, and by use of the index.

8. *n*-Butyl alcohol (b.p. 118°) has a much higher boiling point than its isomer diethyl ether (b.p. 35°), yet both compounds show the same solubility (8 g per 100 g) in water.



*n*-Butyl alcohol



Diethyl ether

How do you account for these facts?

9. In the gas phase the heat liberated from the interaction of an ion with each successive molecule of water has been measured: the first molecule, the second, the third, etc. How do you account for the relative quantities (in kcal/mol) in each of the following examples?

- (a) For the first molecule of water:  $\text{H}^+$ , 165;  $\text{Li}^+$ , 34;  $\text{Na}^+$ , 24;  $\text{K}^+$ , 18;  $\text{Rb}^+$ , 16.  
 (b) For  $\text{Li}^+$ , each successive molecule of water: 34, 26, 21, 16, 14, 12.

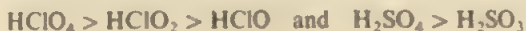
10. Rewrite the following equations to show the Lowry-Brønsted acids and bases actually involved. Label each as stronger or weaker, as in Sec. 1.23.

- (a)  $\text{HCl(aq)} + \text{NaHCO}_3\text{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons \text{H}_2\text{CO}_3 + \text{NaCl}$   
 (b)  $\text{NaOH(aq)} + \text{NaHCO}_3\text{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons \text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$   
 (c)  $\text{NH}_3\text{(aq)} + \text{HNO}_3\text{(aq)} \rightleftharpoons \text{NH}_4\text{NO}_3\text{(aq)}$   
 (d)  $\text{NaCN(aq)} \rightleftharpoons \text{HCN(aq)} + \text{NaOH(aq)}$   
 (e)  $\text{NaH} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{H}_2 + \text{NaOH}$   
 (f)  $\text{CaC}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{Ca(OH)}_2 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_2$   
     Calcium carbide                      Acetylene

11. What is the Lowry-Brønsted acid in (a) HCl dissolved in water; (b) HCl (un-ionized) dissolved in benzene? (c) Which solution is the more strongly acidic?

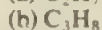
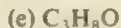
12. Account for the fact that nearly every organic compound containing oxygen dissolves in cold concentrated sulfuric acid to yield a solution from which the compound can be recovered by dilution with water.

13. How might you account for the following orders of acidity? Be as specific as you can.





14. For each of the following molecular formulas, draw structures like those in Sec. 1.24 (a line for each shared pair of electrons) for all the isomers you can think of. Assume that every atom (except hydrogen) has a complete octet, and that two atoms may share more than one pair of electrons.



15. In ordinary distillation, a liquid is placed in a flask and heated, at ordinary or reduced pressure, until distillation is complete. In the modification called *flash distillation*, the liquid is dripped into a heated flask at the same rate that it distills out, so that there is little liquid in the flask at any time. What advantage might flash distillation have, and under what conditions might you use it?

## Methane

*Energy of Activation.*

*Transition State*

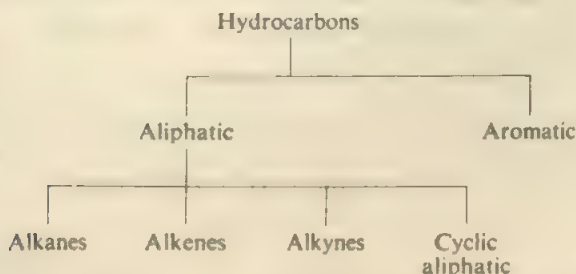
---



---

### 2.1 Hydrocarbons

Certain organic compounds contain only two elements, hydrogen and carbon, and hence are known as **hydrocarbons**. On the basis of structure, hydrocarbons are divided into two main classes, **aliphatic** and **aromatic**. Aliphatic hydrocarbons are further divided into families: alkanes, alkenes, alkynes, and their cyclic analogs (cycloalkanes, etc.).

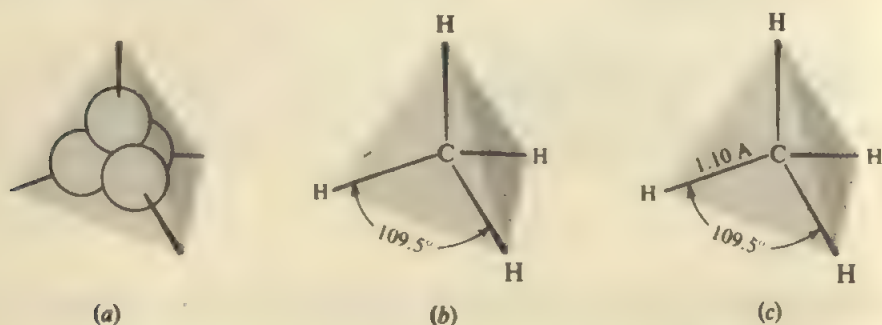


The simplest member of the alkane family and, indeed, one of the simplest of all organic compounds is **methane**,  $\text{CH}_4$ . We shall study this single compound at some length, since most of what we learn about it can be carried over with minor modifications to any alkane.

### 2.2 Structure of methane

As we discussed in the previous chapter (Sec. 1.11), each of the four hydrogen atoms is bonded to the carbon atom by a covalent bond, that is, by the sharing of a pair of electrons. When carbon is bonded to four other atoms, its bonding orbitals ( $sp^3$  orbitals, formed by the mixing of one  $s$  and three  $p$  orbitals) are directed to the corners of a tetrahedron (Fig. 2.1a). This tetrahedral arrangement is the one that

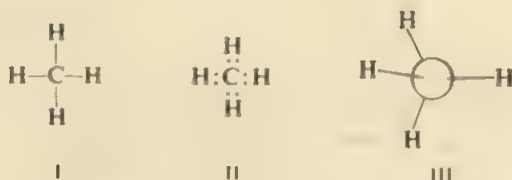
permits the orbitals to be as far apart as possible. For each of these orbitals to overlap most effectively the spherical  $s$  orbital of a hydrogen atom, and thus to form the strongest bond, each hydrogen nucleus must be located at a corner of this tetrahedron (Fig. 2.1b).



**Figure 2.1.** Methane molecule. (a) Tetrahedral  $sp^3$  orbitals. (b) Predicted shape: H nuclei located for maximum overlap. (c) Shape and size.

The tetrahedral structure of methane has been verified by electron diffraction (Fig. 2.1c), which shows beyond question the arrangement of atoms in such simple molecules. Later on, we shall examine some of the evidence that led chemists to accept this tetrahedral structure long before quantum mechanics or electron diffraction was known.

We shall ordinarily write methane with a dash to represent each pair of electrons shared by carbon and hydrogen (I). To focus our attention on individual electrons, we may sometimes indicate a pair of electrons by a pair of dots (II). Finally, when we wish to consider the actual shape of the molecule, we shall use a simple three-dimensional picture (III).



## 2.3 Physical properties

As we discussed in the previous chapter (Sec. 1.18), the unit of such a non-ionic compound, whether solid, liquid, or gas, is the molecule. Because the methane molecule is highly symmetrical, the polarities of the individual carbon hydrogen bonds cancel out; as a result, the molecule itself is non-polar.

Attraction between such non-polar molecules is limited to van der Waals forces; for such small molecules, these attractive forces must be tiny compared with the enormous forces between, say, sodium and chloride ions. It is not surprising, then, that these attractive forces are easily overcome by thermal energy, so that melting and boiling occur at very low temperatures: m.p.  $-183^\circ$ , b.p.  $-161.5^\circ$ . (Compare these values with the corresponding ones for sodium chloride: m.p.  $801^\circ$ , b.p.  $1413^\circ$ .) As a consequence, methane is a gas at ordinary temperatures.



Methane is colorless and, when liquefied, is less dense than water (sp.gr. 0.4). In agreement with the rule of thumb that "like dissolves like," it is only slightly soluble in water, but very soluble in organic liquids such as gasoline, ether, and alcohol. In its physical properties methane sets the pattern for the other members of the alkane family.

## 2.4 Source

Methane is an end product of the anaerobic ("without air") decay of plants, that is, of the breakdown of certain very complicated molecules. As such, it is the major constituent (up to 97%) of **natural gas**. It is the dangerous *firedamp* of the coal mine, and can be seen as *marsh gas* bubbling to the surface of swamps.

If methane is wanted in very pure form, it can be separated from the other constituents of natural gas (mostly other alkanes) by fractional distillation. Most of it, of course, is consumed as fuel without purification.

According to one theory, the origins of life go back to a primitive earth surrounded by an atmosphere of methane, water, ammonia, and hydrogen. Energy—radiation from the sun, lightning discharges—broke these simple molecules into reactive fragments (free radicals, Sec. 2.12); these combined to form larger molecules which eventually yielded the enormously complicated organic compounds that make up living organisms. (Recent detection of organic molecules in space has even led to the speculation that "organic seeds for life could have existed in interstellar clouds.")

Evidence that this *could* have happened was found in 1953 by the Nobel Prize winner Harold C. Urey and his student Stanley Miller at the University of Chicago. They showed that an electric discharge converts a mixture of methane, water, ammonia, and hydrogen into a large number of organic compounds, including amino acids, the building blocks from which proteins, the "stuff of life" (Chap. 30), are made. (It is perhaps appropriate that we begin this study of organic chemistry with methane and its conversion into free radicals.)

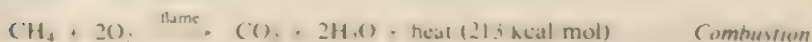
The methane generated in the final decay of a once-living organism may well be the very substance from which—in the final analysis—the organism was derived. ". . . *earth to earth, ashes to ashes, dust to dust.* . . ."

## 2.5 Reactions

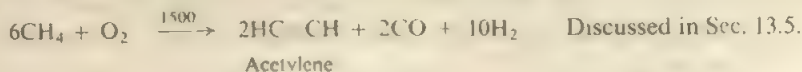
In its chemical properties as in its physical properties, methane sets the pattern for the alkane family (Sec. 3.18). Typically, it reacts only with highly reactive substances—or under very vigorous conditions, which, as we shall see, amounts to the same thing. At this point we shall take up only its oxidation: by oxygen, by halogens, and even by water.

### REACTIONS OF METHANE

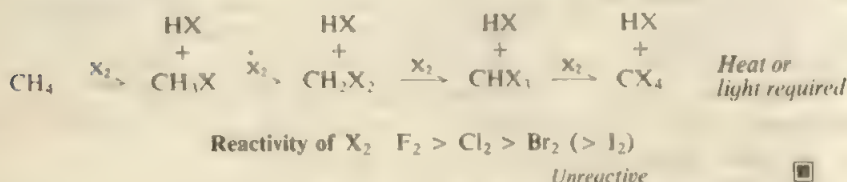
#### I. Oxidation



CONT.



## 2. Halogenation



## 2.6 Oxidation. Heat of combustion

Combustion to carbon dioxide and water is characteristic of organic compounds; under special conditions it is used to determine their content of carbon and hydrogen (Sec. 2.27).

Combustion of methane is the principal reaction taking place during the burning of natural gas. It is hardly necessary to emphasize its importance in the areas where natural gas is available; the important product is not carbon dioxide or water but *heat*.

Burning of hydrocarbons takes place only at high temperatures, as provided, for example, by a flame or a spark. Once started, however, the reaction gives off heat which is often sufficient to maintain the high temperature and to permit burning to continue. *The quantity of heat evolved when one mole of a hydrocarbon is burned to carbon dioxide and water is called the heat of combustion*, for methane its value is 213 kcal.

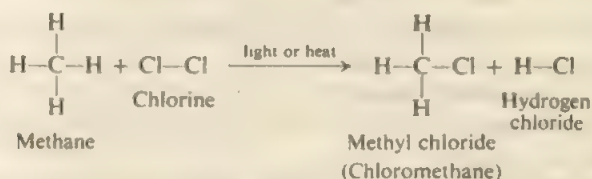
Through controlled *partial* oxidation of methane and the high-temperature catalytic reaction with water, methane is an increasingly important source of products other than heat—of hydrogen, used in the manufacture of ammonia, of mixtures of carbon monoxide and hydrogen, used in the manufacture of *methanol* and other alcohols, and of *acetylene* (Sec. 13.5), itself the starting point of large-scale production of many organic compounds.

Oxidation by halogens is of particular interest to us—partly because we know more about it than the other reactions of methane—and, in one way or another, is the topic of discussion throughout the remainder of this chapter.

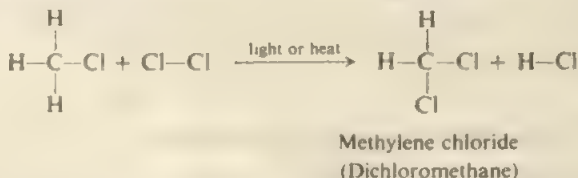
## 2.7 Chlorination: a substitution reaction

Under the influence of ultraviolet light or at a temperature of 250–400° a mixture of the two gases, methane and chlorine, reacts vigorously to yield hydrogen chloride and a compound of formula  $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$ . We say that methane has undergone **chlorination**, and we call the product,  $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$ , *chloromethane* or *methyl chloride* ( $\text{CH}_3 = \text{methyl}$ ).

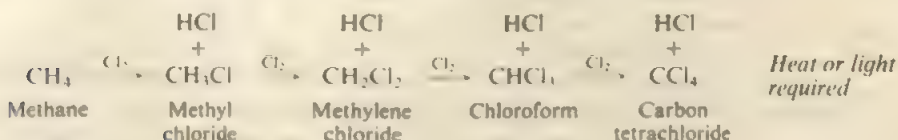
Chlorination is a typical example of a broad class of organic reactions known as **substitution**. A chlorine atom has been substituted for a hydrogen atom of methane, and the hydrogen atom thus replaced is found combined with a second atom of chlorine.



The methyl chloride can itself undergo further substitution to form more hydrogen chloride and the compound  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , *dichloromethane* or *methylene chloride* ( $\text{CH}_2 = \text{methylene}$ ).



In a similar way, chlorination may continue to yield  $\text{CHCl}_3$ , *trichloromethane* or *chloroform*, and  $\text{CCl}_4$ , *tetrachloromethane* or *carbon tetrachloride*. Carbon tetrachloride was once widely used as a non-flammable cleaning agent and the fluid in certain fire extinguishers, but has been largely replaced by other materials.



## 2.8 Control of chlorination

Chlorination of methane may yield any one of four organic products, depending upon the stage to which the reaction is carried. Can we control this reaction so that methyl chloride is the principal organic product? That is, can we limit the reaction to the first stage, *monochlorination*?

We might at first expect naively, as it turns out, to accomplish this by providing only one mole of chlorine for each mole of methane. But let us see what happens if we do so. At the beginning of the reaction there is only methane for the chlorine to react with, and consequently only the first stage of chlorination takes place. This reaction, however, yields methyl chloride, so that as the reaction proceeds methane disappears and methyl chloride takes its place.

As the proportion of methyl chloride grows, it competes with the methane for the available chlorine. By the time the concentration of methyl chloride exceeds that of methane, chlorine is more likely to attack methyl chloride than methane.



and the second stage of chlorination becomes more important than the first. A large amount of methylene chloride is formed, which in a similar way is chlorinated to chloroform and this, in turn, is chlorinated to carbon tetrachloride. When we finally work up the reaction product, we find that it is a mixture of all four chlorinated methanes together with some unreacted methane.

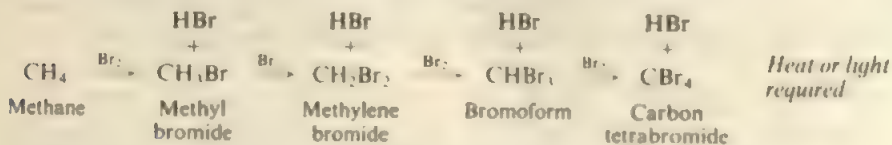
The reaction may, however, be limited almost entirely to monochlorination if we use a large excess of methane. In this case, even at the very end of the reaction unreacted methane greatly exceeds methyl chloride. Chlorine is more likely to attack methane than methyl chloride, and thus the first stage of chlorination is the principal reaction.

Because of the great difference in their boiling points, it is easy to separate the excess methane (b.p.  $-161.5^\circ$ ) from the methyl chloride (b.p.  $-24^\circ$ ) so that the methane can be mixed with more chlorine and put through the process again. While there is a low **conversion** of methane into methyl chloride in each cycle, the **yield** of methyl chloride based on the chlorine consumed is quite high.

The use of a large excess of one reactant is a common device of the organic chemist who wishes to limit reaction to only one of a number of reactive sites in the molecule of that reactant.

## 2.9 Reaction with other halogens: halogenation

Methane reacts with bromine, again at high temperatures or under the influence of ultraviolet light, to yield the corresponding bromomethanes: methyl bromide, methylene bromide, bromoform, and carbon tetrabromide.

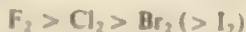


Bromination takes place somewhat less readily than chlorination.

Methane does not react with iodine at all. With fluorine it reacts so vigorously that, even in the dark and at room temperature, the reaction must be carefully controlled: the reactants, diluted with an inert gas, are mixed at low pressure.

We can, therefore, arrange the halogens in order of reactivity

### Reactivity of halogens



This same order of reactivity holds for the reaction of the halogens with other alkanes and, indeed, with most other organic compounds. The spread of reactivities is so great that only chlorination and bromination proceed at such rates as to be generally useful.

## 2.10 Relative reactivity

Throughout our study of organic chemistry, we shall constantly be interested in *relative reactivities*. We shall compare the reactivities of various reagents toward the same organic compound, the reactivities of different organic compounds toward the same reagent, and even the reactivities of different sites in an organic molecule toward the same reagent.

It should be understood that when we compare reactivities we compare rates of reaction. When we say that chlorine is *more reactive* than bromine toward methane, we mean that under the same conditions (same concentration, same temperature, etc.) chlorine reacts with methane *faster* than does bromine. From another point of view, we mean that the bromine reaction must be carried out under more vigorous conditions (higher concentration or higher temperature) if it is to take place as fast as the chlorine reaction. When we say that methane and iodine do not react at all, we mean that the reaction is too slow to be significant.

We shall want to know not only what these relative reactivities are but also, whenever possible, how to account for them. To see what factors cause one reaction to be faster than another, we shall take up in more detail this matter of the different reactivities of the halogens toward methane. Before we can do this, however, we must understand a little more about the reaction itself.

## 2.11 Reaction mechanisms

It is important for us to know not only *what* happens in a chemical reaction but also *how* it happens, that is, to know not only the *facts* but also the *theory*.

For example, we know that methane and chlorine under the influence of heat or light form methyl chloride and hydrogen chloride. Just how is a molecule of methane converted into a molecule of methyl chloride? Does this transformation involve more than one step, and, if so, what are these steps? Just what is the function of heat or light?

The answer to questions like these, that is, *the detailed, step-by-step description of a chemical reaction, is called a mechanism*. It is only a hypothesis; it is advanced to account for the facts. As more facts are discovered, the mechanism must also account for them, or else be modified so that it does account for them; it may even be necessary to discard a mechanism and to propose a new one.

It would be difficult to say that a mechanism had ever been *proved*. If, however, a mechanism accounts satisfactorily for a wide variety of facts; if we make predictions based upon this mechanism and find these predictions borne out; if the mechanism is consistent with mechanisms for other, related reactions; then the mechanism is said to be *well established*, and it becomes part of the theory of organic chemistry.

Why are we interested in the mechanisms of reactions? As an important part of the theory of organic chemistry, they help make up the framework on which we hang the facts we learn. An understanding of mechanisms will help us to see a pattern in the complicated and confusing multitude of organic reactions. We shall find that many apparently unrelated reactions proceed by the same or similar mechanisms, so that most of what we have already learned about one reaction may be applied directly to many new ones.

By knowing how a reaction takes place, we can make changes in the experimental conditions - not by trial and error, but logically - that will improve the yield of the product we want, or that will even alter the course of the reaction completely and give us an entirely different product. As our understanding of reactions grows, so does our power to control them.

## 2.12 Mechanism of chlorination. Free radicals

It will be worthwhile to examine the mechanism of chlorination of methane in some detail. The same mechanism holds for bromination as well as chlorination,

and for other alkanes as well as methane; it even holds for many compounds which, while not alkanes, contain alkane-like portions in their molecules. Closely related mechanisms are involved in oxidation (combustion) and other reactions of alkanes. More important, this mechanism illustrates certain general principles that can be carried over to a wide range of chemical reactions. Finally, by studying the evidence that supports the mechanism, we can learn something of how a chemist finds out what goes on during a chemical reaction.

Among the facts that must be accounted for are these:

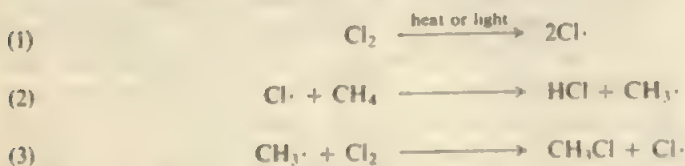
- (a) Methane and chlorine do not react in the dark at room temperature.
- (b) Reaction takes place readily, however, in the dark at temperatures over 250°, or
- (c) under the influence of ultraviolet light at room temperature.
- (d) The wavelength of light that induces chlorination is that known independently to cause dissociation of chlorine molecules.

(e) In the light-induced reaction, many (several thousand) molecules of methyl chloride are obtained for each photon of light that is absorbed by the system.

(f) The presence of a small amount of oxygen slows down the reaction for a period of time, after which the reaction proceeds normally; the length of this period depends upon how much oxygen is present.

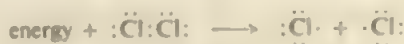
(We shall see further evidence for the mechanism in Secs. 2.21 and 4.29.)

The mechanism that accounts for these facts most satisfactorily, and hence is generally accepted, is shown in the following equation:



then (2), (3), (2), (3), etc.

The first step is the breaking of a chlorine molecule into two chlorine atoms. Like the breaking of any bond, this requires energy, the *bond dissociation energy*, and in Table 1.2 (p. 20) we find that in this case the value is 58 kcal/mol. The energy is supplied as either heat or light.



The chlorine molecule undergoes *homolysis* (Sec. 1.14): that is, cleavage of the chlorine-chlorine bond takes place in a symmetrical way, so that each atom retains one electron of the pair that formed the covalent bond. This **odd electron** is not *paired* as are all the other electrons of the chlorine atom, that is, it does not have a partner of opposite spin (Sec. 1.6). *An atom or group of atoms possessing an odd (unpaired) electron is called a free radical.* In writing the symbol for a free radical, we generally include a dot to represent the odd electron just as we include a plus or minus sign in the symbol of an ion.

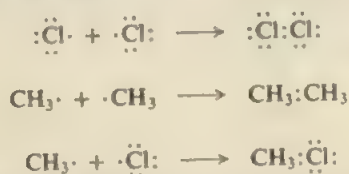
Once formed, what is a chlorine atom most likely to do? Like most free radicals, it is extremely reactive because of its tendency to gain an additional electron and thus have a complete octet; from another point of view, energy was supplied to each chlorine atom during the cleavage of the chlorine molecule, and





radical, which attacks a chlorine molecule to form a chlorine atom, and so the sequence is repeated over and over. Each step produces not only a new reactive particle but also a molecule of product: methyl chloride or hydrogen chloride.

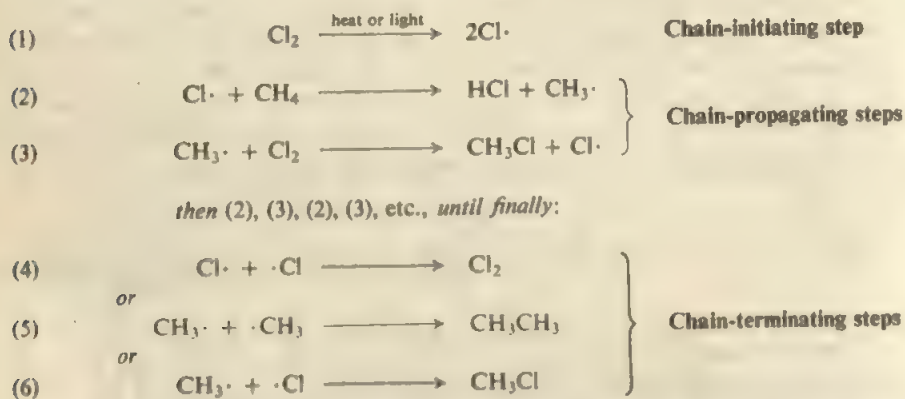
This process cannot, however, go on forever. As we saw earlier, union of two short-lived, relatively scarce particles is not likely; but every so often it does happen, and when it does, this particular sequence of reactions stops. Reactive particles are consumed but not generated.



It is clear, then, how the mechanism accounts for facts (a), (b), (c), (d), and (e) on page 50: either light or heat is required to cleave the chlorine molecule and form the initial chlorine atoms; once formed, each atom may eventually bring about the formation of many molecules of methyl chloride.

## 2.13 Chain reactions

The chlorination of methane is an example of a **chain reaction**, a reaction that involves a series of steps, each of which generates a reactive substance that brings about the next step. While chain reactions may vary widely in their details, they all have certain fundamental characteristics in common.



First in the chain of reactions is a **chain-initiating step**, in which energy is absorbed and a reactive particle generated; in the present reaction it is the cleavage of chlorine into atoms (step 1).

There are one or more **chain-propagating steps**, each of which consumes a reactive particle and generates another; here they are the reaction of chlorine atoms with methane (step 2), and of methyl radicals with chlorine (step 3).

Finally, there are **chain-terminating steps**, in which reactive particles are consumed but not generated; in the chlorination of methane these would involve the union of two of the reactive particles, or the capture of one of them by the walls of the reaction vessel.

Under one set of conditions, about 10,000 molecules of methyl chloride are formed for every quantum (photon) of light absorbed. Each photon cleaves one chlorine molecule to form two chlorine atoms, each of which starts a chain. On the average, each chain consists of 5000 repetitions of the chain-propagating cycle before it is finally stopped.

## 2.14 Inhibitors

Finally, how does the mechanism of chlorination account for fact (f), that a small amount of oxygen slows down the reaction for a period of time, which depends upon the amount of oxygen, after which the reaction proceeds normally?

Oxygen is believed to react with a methyl radical to form a new free radical:



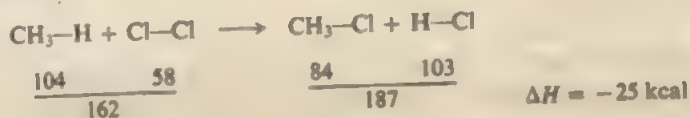
The  $\text{CH}_3\text{OO}\cdot$  radical is much less reactive than the  $\text{CH}_3\cdot$  radical, and can do little to continue the chain. By combining with a methyl radical, one oxygen molecule breaks a chain, and thus prevents the formation of thousands of molecules of methyl chloride; this, of course, slows down the reaction tremendously. After all the oxygen molecules present have combined with methyl radicals, the reaction is free to proceed at its normal rate.

*A substance that slows down or stops a reaction even though present in small amount is called an inhibitor. The period of time during which inhibition lasts, and after which the reaction proceeds normally, is called the inhibition period.* Inhibition by a relatively small amount of an added material is quite characteristic of chain reactions of any type, and is often one of the clues that first leads us to suspect that we are dealing with a chain reaction. It is hard to see how else a few molecules could prevent the reaction of so many. (We shall frequently encounter the use of oxygen to inhibit free-radical reactions.)

## 2.15 Heat of reaction

In our consideration of the chlorination of methane, we have so far been concerned chiefly with the particles involved—molecules and atoms—and the changes that they undergo. As with any reaction, however, it is important to consider also the energy changes involved, since these changes determine to a large extent how fast the reaction will go, and, in fact, whether it will take place at all.

By using the values of homolytic bond dissociation energies given in Table 1.2 (p. 20), we can calculate the energy changes that take place in a great number of reactions. In the conversion of methane into methyl chloride, two bonds are broken  $\text{CH}_3\text{—H}$  and  $\text{Cl—Cl}$ , consuming  $104 + 58$ , or a total of  $162 \text{ kcal/mol}$ . At the same time two new bonds are formed,  $\text{CH}_3\text{—Cl}$  and  $\text{H—Cl}$ , liberating  $84 + 103$ , or a total of  $187 \text{ kcal/mol}$ . The result is the liberation of  $25 \text{ kcal}$  of heat for every mole of methane that is converted into methyl chloride; this is, then, an **exothermic reaction**. (This calculation, we note, does not depend on our knowing the mechanism of the reaction.)

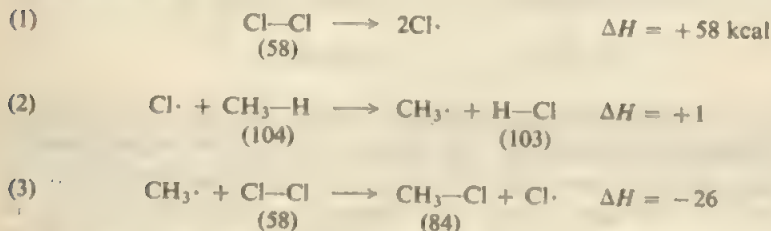




When heat is liberated, the heat content (enthalpy),  $H$ , of the molecules themselves must decrease; the change in heat content,  $\Delta H$ , is therefore given a negative sign. (In the case of an endothermic reaction, where heat is absorbed, the increase in heat content of the molecules is indicated by a positive  $\Delta H$ .)

**Problem 2.1** Calculate  $\Delta H$  for the corresponding reaction of methane with: (a) bromine, (b) iodine, (c) fluorine.

The value of  $-25$  kcal that we have just calculated is the *net*  $\Delta H$  for the overall reaction. A more useful picture of the reaction is given by the  $\Delta H$ 's of the individual steps. These are calculated below:



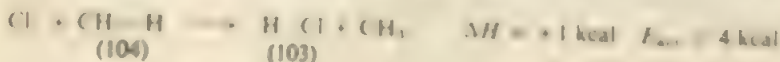
It is clear why this reaction, even though exothermic, occurs only at a high temperature (in the absence of light). The chain-initiating step, without which reaction cannot occur, is highly **endothermic**, and takes place (at a significant rate) only at a high temperature. Once the chlorine atoms are formed, the two chain-propagating steps—one only slightly endothermic, and the other exothermic—occur readily many times before the chain is broken. The difficult cleavage of chlorine is the barrier that must be surmounted before the subsequent easy steps can be taken.

**Problem 2.2** Calculate  $\Delta H$  for the corresponding steps in the reaction of methane with: (a) bromine, (b) iodine, (c) fluorine.

We have assumed so far that exothermic reactions proceed readily, that is, are reasonably fast at ordinary temperatures, whereas endothermic reactions proceed with difficulty, that is, are slow except at very high temperatures. This assumed relationship between  $\Delta H$  and rate of reaction is a useful rule of thumb when other information is not available, it is *not*, however, a *necessary* relationship, and there are many exceptions to the rule. We shall go on, then, to a discussion of another energy quantity, the *energy of activation*, which is related in a more exact way to rate of reaction.

## 2.16 Energy of activation

To see what actually happens during a chemical reaction, let us look more closely at a specific example, the attack of chlorine atoms on methane.



This reaction is comparatively simple—it occurs in the gas phase, and is thus not complicated by the presence of a solvent, it involves the interaction of a single

atom and the simplest of organic molecules. Yet from it we can learn certain principles that apply to any reaction.

Just what must happen if this reaction is to occur? First of all, a chlorine atom and a methane molecule must **collide**. Since chemical forces are of extremely short range, a hydrogen-chlorine bond can form only when the atoms are in close contact.

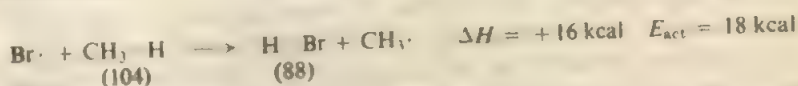
Next, to be *effective*, the collision must provide a certain *minimum amount of energy*. Formation of the H—Cl bond liberates 103 kcal/mol; breaking the CH<sub>3</sub>—H bond requires 104 kcal/mol. We might have expected that only 1 kcal/mol additional energy would be needed for reaction to occur; however, this is not so. Bond-breaking and bond-making evidently are not perfectly synchronized, and the energy liberated by the one process is not completely available for the other. Experiment has shown that if reaction is to occur, an additional 4 kcal/mol of energy must be supplied.

*The minimum amount of energy that must be provided by a collision for reaction to occur is called the energy of activation,  $E_{\text{act}}$ .* Its source is the kinetic energy of the moving particles. Most collisions provide less than this minimum quantity and are fruitless, the original particles simply bouncing apart. Only solid collisions between particles one or both of which are moving unusually fast are energetic enough to bring about reaction. In the present example, at 275°, only about one collision in 40 is sufficiently energetic.

Finally, in addition to being sufficiently energetic, the collisions must occur when the particles are properly **oriented**. At the instant of collision, the methane molecule must be turned in such a way as to present a hydrogen atom to the full force of the impact. In the present example, only about one collision in eight is properly oriented.

In general, then, *a chemical reaction requires collisions of sufficient energy ( $E_{\text{act}}$ ) and of proper orientation*. There is an energy of activation for nearly every reaction where bonds are broken, even for exothermic reactions, in which bond-making liberates more energy than is consumed by bond-breaking.

The attack of bromine atoms on methane is more highly endothermic, with a  $\Delta H$  of +16 kcal.



Breaking the CH<sub>3</sub>—H bond, as before, requires 104 kcal/mol, of which only 88 kcal is provided by formation of the H—Br bond. It is evident that, even if this 88 kcal were completely available for bond-breaking, at least an additional 16 kcal/mol would have to be supplied by the collision. In other words, the  $E_{\text{act}}$  of an endothermic reaction must be at least as large as the  $\Delta H$ . As is generally true, the  $E_{\text{act}}$  of the present reaction (18 kcal) is actually somewhat larger than the  $\Delta H$ .

## 2.17 Progress of reaction: energy changes

These energy relationships can be seen more clearly in diagrams like Figs. 2.2 and 2.3. Progress of reaction is represented by horizontal movement from reactants on the left to products on the right. Potential energy (that is, all energy except kinetic) at any stage of reaction is indicated by the height of the curve.

Let us follow the course of reaction in Fig. 2.2. We start in a potential energy valley with a methane molecule and a chlorine atom. These particles are moving.

and hence possess kinetic energy in addition to the potential energy shown. The exact amount of kinetic energy varies with the particular pair of particles, since some move faster than others. They collide, and kinetic energy is converted into potential energy. With this increase in potential energy, reaction begins, and we move up the energy hill. If enough kinetic energy is converted, we reach the top of the hill and start down the far side.

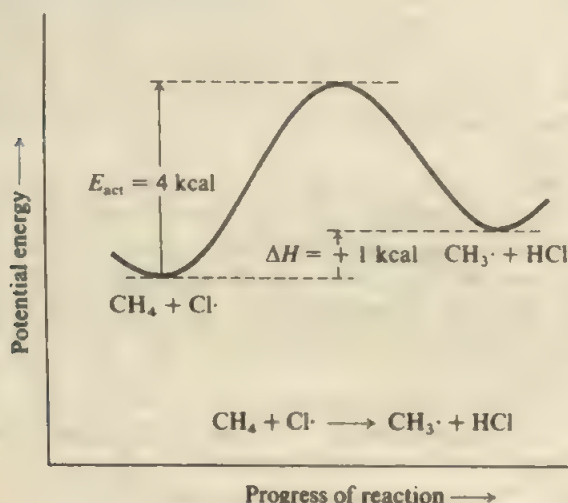


Figure 2.2. Potential energy changes during progress of reaction: the methane-chlorine atom reaction.

During the descent, potential energy is converted back into kinetic energy, until we reach the level of the products. The products contain a little more potential energy than did the reactants, and we find ourselves in a slightly higher valley than the one we left. With this net increase in potential energy there must be a corresponding decrease in kinetic energy. The new particles break apart, and since they are moving more slowly than the particles from which they were formed, we observe a drop in temperature. Heat will be *taken up* from the surroundings.

In the bromine reaction, shown in Fig. 2.3, we climb a much higher hill and end up in a much higher valley. The increase in potential energy—and the corresponding decrease in kinetic energy—is much larger than in the chlorine reaction; more heat will be taken up from the surroundings.

An exothermic reaction follows much the same course. (Take, for example, the reverse of the bromine reaction; that is, read from right to left in Fig. 2.3.) In this case, however, the products contain less potential energy than did the reactants so that we end up in a lower valley than the one we left. Since this time the new particles contain more kinetic energy than the particles from which they were formed, and hence move faster, we observe a rise in temperature. Heat will be *given off* to the surroundings.

In any reaction there are many collisions that provide too little energy for us to reach the top of the hill. These collisions are fruitless, and we slide back to our original valley. Many collisions provide sufficient energy, but take place when the molecules are improperly oriented. We then climb an energy hill, but we are off the



road; we may climb very high without finding the pass that leads over into the next valley.

The difference in level between the two valleys is, of course, the  $\Delta H$ ; the difference in level between the reactant valley and the top of the hill is the  $E_{\text{act}}$ . We are concerned only with these differences, and not with the absolute height at any stage of the reaction. We are not even concerned with the relative levels of the reactant valleys in the chlorine and bromine reactions. We need only to know that in the chlorine reaction we climb a hill 4 kcal high and end up in a valley 1 kcal higher than our starting point; and that in the bromine reaction we climb a hill 18 kcal high and end up in a valley 16 kcal higher than our starting point.

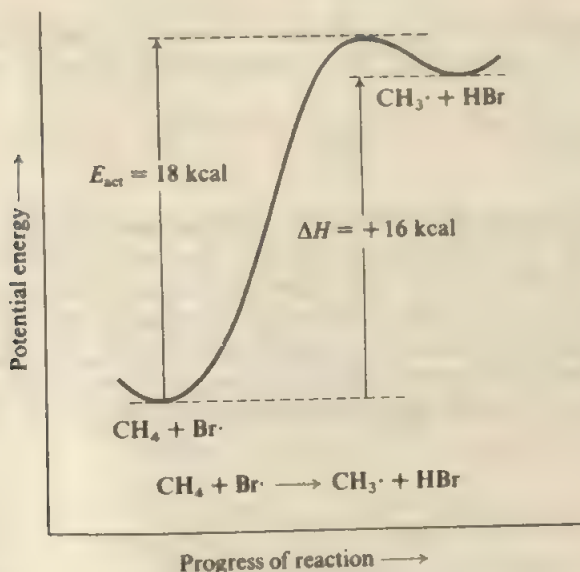
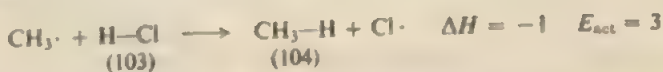


Figure 2.3. Potential energy changes during progress of reaction: the methane-bromine atom reaction.

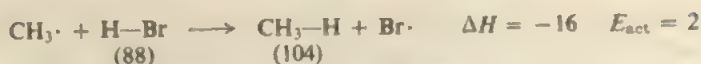
As we shall see, it is the height of the hill, the  $E_{\text{act}}$ , that determines the rate of reaction, and not the difference in level of the two valleys,  $\Delta H$ . In going to a lower valley, the hill might be very high, but *could* be very low—or even non-existent. In climbing to a higher valley, however, the hill can be no lower than the valley to which we are going; that is to say, *in an endothermic reaction the  $E_{\text{act}}$  must be at least as large as the  $\Delta H$ .*

An energy diagram of the sort shown in Figs. 2.2 and 2.3 is particularly useful because it tells us not only about the reaction we are considering, but also about the reverse reaction. Let us move from right to left in Fig. 2.2, for example. We see that the reaction



has an energy of activation of 3 kcal, since in this case we climb the hill from the higher valley. This is, of course, an exothermic reaction with a  $\Delta H$  of  $-1$  kcal.

In the same way we can see from Fig. 2.3 that the reaction

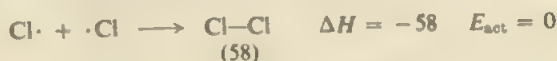


has an energy of activation of 2 kcal, and is exothermic with a  $\Delta H$  of  $-16$  kcal. (We notice that, even though exothermic, these last two reactions have energies of activation.)

Reactions like the cleavage of chlorine into atoms fall into a special category:



a bond is broken but no bonds are formed. The reverse of this reaction, the union of chlorine atoms, involves no bond-breaking and hence would be expected to



take place very easily, in fact, with no energy of activation at all. This is considered to be generally true for reactions involving the union of two free radicals.

If there is no hill to climb in going from chlorine atoms to a chlorine molecule, but simply a slope to descend, the cleavage of a chlorine molecule must involve simply the ascent of a slope as shown in Fig. 2.4. The  $E_{\text{act}}$  for the cleavage of a chlorine molecule, then, must equal the  $\Delta H$ , that is, 58 kcal. This equality of  $E_{\text{act}}$  and  $\Delta H$  is believed to hold generally for reactions in which molecules dissociate into radicals.

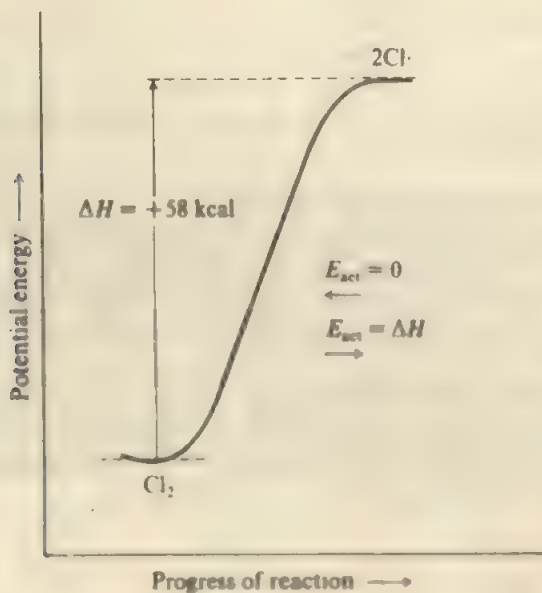


Figure 2.4. Potential energy changes during progress of reaction simple dissociation

## 2.18 Rate of reaction

A chemical reaction is the result of collisions of sufficient energy and proper orientation. The rate of reaction, therefore, must be the rate at which these effective collisions occur, the number of effective collisions, let us say, that occur during each second within each  $\text{cm}^3$  of reaction space. We can then express the rate as the product of three factors. (The number expressing the probability that a collision will have the proper orientation is commonly called the **probability factor**.) Anything that affects any one of these factors affects the rate of reaction.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 \text{number of} & & & & \text{fraction of} & & \text{fraction of} \\
 \text{effective} & & & & \text{collisions} & & \text{collisions} \\
 \text{collisions} & = & \text{total number} & \times & \text{that have} & \times & \text{that have} \\
 \text{per cm}^3 \text{ per sec} & & \text{of collisions} & & \text{sufficient} & & \text{proper} \\
 & & \text{per cm}^3 \text{ per sec} & & \text{energy} & & \text{orientation} \\
 \\
 \text{rate} & = & \text{collision} & \times & \text{energy} & \times & \text{probability} \\
 & & \text{frequency} & & \text{factor} & & \text{factor} \\
 & & & & & & \text{(orientation} \\
 & & & & & & \text{factor)}
 \end{array}$$

The **collision frequency** depends upon (a) how closely the particles are crowded together, that is, concentration or pressure; (b) how large they are; and (c) how fast they are moving, which in turn depends upon their weight and the temperature.

We can change the concentration and temperature, and thus change the rate. We are familiar with the fact that an increase in concentration causes an increase in rate; it does so, of course, by increasing the collision frequency. A rise in temperature increases the collision frequency; as we shall see, it also increases the energy factor, and this latter effect is so great that the effect of temperature on collision frequency is by comparison unimportant.

The size and weight of the particles are characteristic of each reaction and cannot be changed. Although they vary widely from reaction to reaction, this variation does not affect the collision frequency greatly. A heavier weight makes the particle move more slowly at a given temperature, and hence tends to decrease the collision frequency. A heavier particle is, however, generally a larger particle, and the larger size tends to increase the collision frequency. These two factors thus tend to cancel out.

The **probability factor** depends upon the geometry of the particles and the kind of reaction that is taking place. For closely related reactions it does not vary widely.

Kinetic energy of the moving molecules is not the only source of the energy needed for reaction; energy can also be provided, for example, from vibrations among the various atoms within the molecule. Thus the probability factor has to do not only with what atoms in the molecule suffer the collision, but also with the alignment of the other atoms in the molecule at the time of collision.

By far the most important factor determining rate is the **energy factor**: the fraction of collisions that are sufficiently energetic. This factor depends upon the temperature, which we can control, and upon the energy of activation, which is characteristic of each reaction.

At a given temperature the molecules of a particular compound have an average velocity and hence an average kinetic energy that is characteristic of this system; in fact, the temperature is a measure of this average kinetic energy. But the individual molecules do not all travel with the same velocity, some moving faster



than the average and some slower. The distribution of kinetic energy is shown in Fig. 2.5 by the familiar bell-shaped curve that describes the distribution among individuals of so many qualities, for example, height, intelligence, income, or even life expectancy. The number of molecules with a particular kinetic energy is greatest for an energy near the average and decreases as the energy becomes larger or smaller than the average.

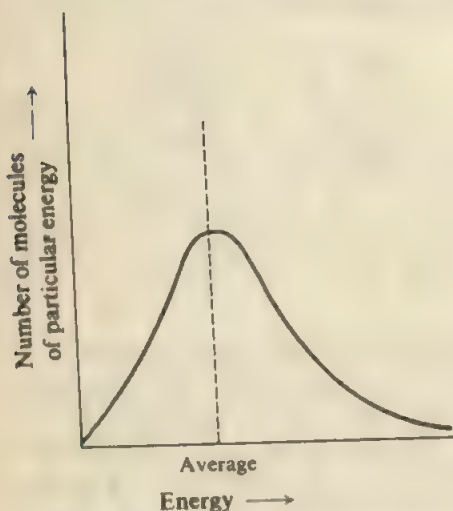


Figure 2.5. Distribution of kinetic energy among molecules.

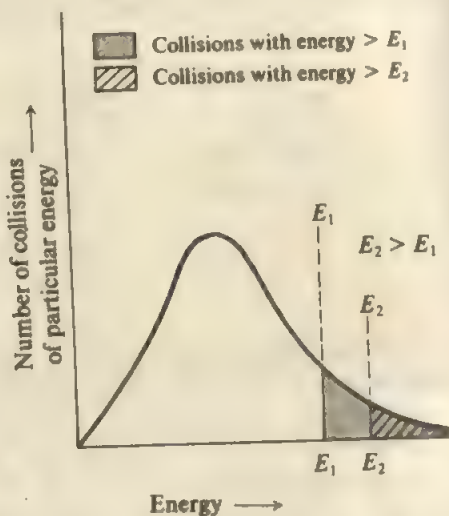


Figure 2.6. Distribution of kinetic energy among collisions.

The distribution of collision energies, as we might expect, is described by a similar curve, Fig. 2.6. Let us indicate collisions of a particular energy,  $E_{act}$ , by a vertical line. The number of collisions with energy equal to or greater than  $E_{act}$  is indicated by the shaded area under the curve to the right of the vertical line. The fraction of the total number of collisions that have this minimum energy,  $E_{act}$ , is then the fraction of the total area that is shaded. It is evident that *the greater the value of  $E_{act}$ , the smaller the fraction of collisions that possess that energy.*

The exact relationship between energy of activation and fraction of collisions with that energy is:

$$e^{-E_{act}/RT} = \text{fraction of collisions with energy greater than } E_{act}$$

where

$E_{act}$  = energy of activation in cal (not kcal)

$e$  = 2.718 (base of natural logarithms)

$R$  = 1.986 (gas constant)

$T$  = absolute temperature.

Using  $P$  for the probability factor and  $Z$  for the collision frequency, we arrive at the rate equation:

$$\text{rate} = PZe^{-E_{act}/RT}$$

This exponential relationship is important to us in that it indicates that a small difference in  $E_{\text{act}}$  has a large effect on the fraction of sufficiently energetic collisions, and hence on the rate of reaction. For example, at  $275^\circ$ , out of every million collisions, 10,000 provide sufficient energy if  $E_{\text{act}} = 5$  kcal, 100 provide sufficient energy if  $E_{\text{act}} = 10$  kcal, and only one provides sufficient energy if  $E_{\text{act}} = 15$  kcal. This means that (all other things being equal) a reaction with  $E_{\text{act}} = 5$  kcal will go 100 times as fast as one with  $E_{\text{act}} = 10$  kcal, and 10,000 times as fast as one with  $E_{\text{act}} = 15$  kcal.

We have so far considered a system held at a given temperature. A rise in temperature, of course, increases the average kinetic energy and average velocities, and hence shifts the entire curve to the right, as shown in Fig. 2.7. For a given energy of activation, then, a rise in temperature increases the fraction of sufficiently energetic collisions, and hence increases the rate, as we already know.

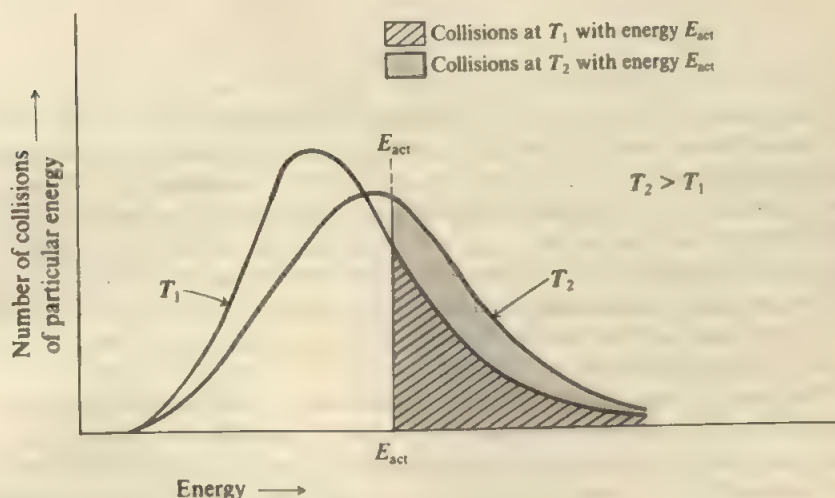


Figure 2.7. Change in collision energies with change in temperature.

The exponential relationship again leads to a large change in rate, this time for a small change in temperature. For example, a rise from  $250^\circ$  to  $300^\circ$ , which is only a 10% increase in absolute temperature, increases the rate by 50% if  $E_{\text{act}} = 5$  kcal, doubles the rate if  $E_{\text{act}} = 10$  kcal, and trebles the rate if  $E_{\text{act}} = 15$  kcal. As this example shows, the greater the  $E_{\text{act}}$ , the greater the effect of a given change in temperature; this follows from the  $e^{-E_{\text{act}}/RT}$  relationship. Indeed, it is from the relationship between rate and temperature that the  $E_{\text{act}}$  of a reaction is determined: the rate is measured at different temperatures, and from the results  $E_{\text{act}}$  is calculated.

We have examined the factors that determine rate of reaction. What we have learned may be used in many ways. To speed up a particular reaction, for example, we know that we might raise the temperature, or increase the concentration of reactants, or even (in ways that we shall take up later) lower the  $E_{\text{act}}$ .

Of immediate interest, however, is the matter of relative reactivities. Let us see, therefore, how our knowledge of reaction rates can help us to account for the fact that one reaction proceeds faster than another, even though conditions for the two reactions are identical.

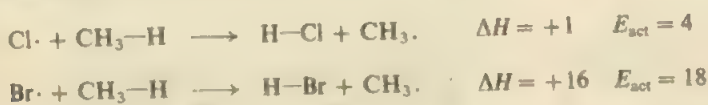
## 2.19 Relative rates of reaction

We have seen that the rate of a reaction can be expressed as a product of three factors:

$$\text{rate} = \text{collision frequency} \times \text{energy factor} \times \text{probability factor}$$

Two reactions could proceed at different rates because of differences in any or all these factors. To account for a difference in rate, we must first see in which of these factors the difference lies.

As an example, let us compare the reactivities of chlorine and bromine atoms toward methane, that is, let us compare the rates, under the same conditions, of the two reactions:



Since temperature and concentration must be the same for the two reactions if we are to compare them under the same conditions, any difference in **collision frequency** would have to arise from differences in particle weight or size. A bromine atom is heavier than a chlorine atom, and it is also larger; as we have seen, the effects of these two properties tend to cancel out. In actuality, the collision frequencies differ by only a few percent. It is generally true that for the same temperature and concentration, two closely related reactions differ but little in collision frequency. A difference in collision frequency therefore cannot be the cause of a large difference in reactivity.

The nature of the **probability factor** is very poorly understood. Since our two reactions are quite similar, however, we might expect them to have similar probability factors. Experiment has shown this to be true: whether chlorine or bromine atoms are involved, about one in every eight collisions with methane has the proper orientation for reaction. In general, where closely related reactions are concerned, we may assume that a difference in probability factor is *not likely* to be the cause of a large difference in reactivity.

We are left with a consideration of the **energy factor**. At a given temperature, the fraction of collisions that possess the amount of energy required for reaction depends upon how large that amount is, that is, depends upon the  $E_{\text{act}}$ . In our example  $E_{\text{act}}$  is 4 kcal for the chlorine reaction, 18 kcal for the bromine reaction. As we have seen, a difference of this size in the  $E_{\text{act}}$  causes an enormous difference in the energy factor, and hence in the rate. At 275°, of every 15 million collisions, 375,000 are sufficiently energetic when chlorine atoms are involved, and only *one* when bromine atoms are involved. Because of the difference in  $E_{\text{act}}$  alone, then, chlorine atoms are 375,000 times as reactive as bromine atoms toward methane.

As we encounter, again and again, differences in reactivity, we shall in general attribute them to differences in  $E_{\text{act}}$ . In many cases we shall be able to account for these differences in  $E_{\text{act}}$  on the basis of differences in molecular structure, *it must be understood that we are justified in doing this only when the reactions being compared are so closely related that differences in collision frequency and in probability factor are comparatively insignificant.*



## 2.20 Relative reactivities of halogens toward methane

With this background, let us return to the reaction between methane and the various halogens, and see if we can account for the order of reactivity given before,  $F_2 > Cl_2 > Br_2 > I_2$ , and in particular for the fact that iodine does not react at all:

From the table of bond dissociation energies (Table 1.2, p. 20) we can calculate for each of the four halogens the  $\Delta H$  for each of the three steps of halogenation. Since  $E_{act}$  has been measured for only a few of these reactions, let us see what tentative conclusions we can reach using only  $\Delta H$ .

		X =	F	Cl	Br	I
(1)	$X_2 \longrightarrow 2X\cdot$	$\Delta H =$	+38	+58	+46	+36
(2)	$X\cdot + CH_4 \longrightarrow HX + CH_3\cdot$		-32	+1	+16	+33
(3)	$CH_3\cdot + X_2 \longrightarrow CH_3X + X\cdot$		-70	-26	-24	-20

Since step (1) involves simply dissociation of molecules into atoms, we may quite confidently assume (Sec. 2.17 and Fig. 2.4) that  $\Delta H$  in this case is equal to  $E_{act}$ . Chlorine has the largest  $E_{act}$ , and should dissociate most slowly; iodine has the smallest  $E_{act}$ , and should dissociate most rapidly. Yet this does not agree with the observed order of reactivity. Thus, except possibly for fluorine, dissociation of the halogen into atoms cannot be the step that determines the observed reactivities.

Step (3), attack of methyl radicals on halogen, is exothermic for all four halogens, and for chlorine, bromine, and iodine it has very nearly the same  $\Delta H$ . For these reactions,  $E_{act}$  could be very small, and does indeed seem to be so; probably only a fraction of a kcal. Even iodine has been found to react readily with methyl radicals generated in another way, e.g., by the heating of tetramethyllead. In fact, iodine is sometimes employed as a free-radical "trap" or "scavenger" in the study of reaction mechanisms. The third step, then, cannot be the cause of the observed relative reactivities.

This leaves step (2), abstraction of hydrogen from methane by a halogen-atom. Here we see a wide spread of  $\Delta H$ 's, from the highly exothermic reaction with the fluorine atom to the highly endothermic reaction with the iodine atom. The endothermic bromine atom reaction must have an  $E_{act}$  of at least 16 kcal; as we have seen, it is actually 18 kcal. The slightly endothermic chlorine atom reaction could have a very small  $E_{act}$ ; it is actually 4 kcal. At a given temperature, then, the fraction of collisions of sufficient energy is much larger for methane and chlorine atoms than for methane and bromine atoms. To be specific, at 275° the fraction is about 1 in 40 for chlorine and 1 in 15 million for bromine.

A bromine atom, on the average, collides with many methane molecules before it succeeds in abstracting hydrogen; a chlorine atom collides with relatively few. During its longer search for the proper methane molecule, a bromine atom is more likely to encounter another scarce particle—a second halogen atom or a methyl radical—or be captured by the vessel wall; the chains should therefore be much shorter than in chlorination. Experiment has shown this to be so: where the average chain length is several thousand for chlorination, it is less than 100 for bromination. Even though bromine atoms are formed more rapidly than chlorine atoms at a given temperature because of the lower  $E_{act}$  of step (1), overall bromination is slower than chlorination because of the shorter chain length.

For the endothermic reaction of an iodine atom with methane,  $E_{\text{act}}$  can be no less than 33 kcal, and is probably somewhat larger. Even for this minimum value of 33 kcal, an iodine atom must collide with an enormous number of methane molecules ( $10^{13}$  or ten million million at  $275^\circ$ ) before reaction is likely to occur. Virtually no iodine atoms last this long, but instead recombine to form iodine molecules; the reaction therefore proceeds at a negligible rate. Iodine atoms are easy to form; it is their inability to abstract hydrogen from methane that prevents iodination from occurring.

We cannot predict the  $E_{\text{act}}$  for the highly exothermic attack of fluorine atoms on methane, but we would certainly not expect it to be any larger than for the attack of chlorine atoms on methane. It appears actually to be smaller (about 1 kcal), thus permitting even longer chains. Because of the surprising weakness of the fluorine-fluorine bond, fluorine atoms should be formed faster than chlorine atoms; thus there should be not only longer chains in fluorination but also *more* chains. The overall reaction is extremely exothermic, with a  $\Delta H$  of  $-102$  kcal, and the difficulty of removing this heat is one cause of the difficulty of control of fluorination.

Of the two chain-propagating steps, then, step (2) is more difficult than step (3) (see Fig. 2.8). Once formed, methyl radicals react easily with any of the halogens; it is how fast methyl radicals are formed that limits the rate of overall reaction. Fluorination is fast because fluorine atoms rapidly abstract hydrogen atoms from methane;  $E_{\text{act}}$  is only 1 kcal. Iodination does not take place because iodine atoms find it virtually impossible to abstract hydrogen from methane;  $E_{\text{act}}$  is more than 33 kcal.

Values of  $E_{\text{act}}$  for step (2), we notice, parallel the values of  $\Delta H$ . Since the same bond,  $\text{CH}_3\text{—H}$ , is being broken in every case, the differences in  $\Delta H$  reflect differences in bond dissociation energy among the various hydrogen-halogen

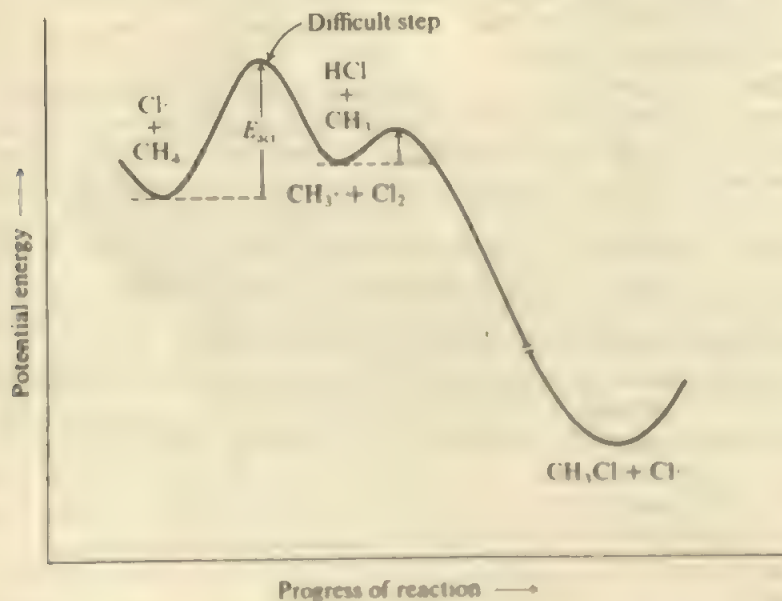


Figure 2.8. Potential energy changes during progress of reaction chlorination of methane. Formation of radical is difficult step.

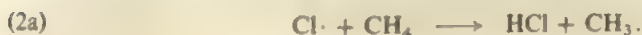
bonds. Ultimately, it appears, the reactivity of a halogen toward methane depends upon the strength of the bond which that halogen forms with hydrogen.

One further point requires clarification. We have said that an  $E_{\text{act}}$  of 33 kcal is too great for the reaction between iodine atoms and methane to proceed at a significant rate; yet the initial step in each of these halogenations requires an even greater  $E_{\text{act}}$ . The difference is this: since halogenation is a chain reaction, dissociation of each molecule of halogen gives rise ultimately to many molecules of methyl halide; hence, even though dissociation is very slow, the overall reaction can be fast. The attack of iodine atoms on methane, however, is a chain-carrying step and if it is slow the entire reaction must be slow; under these circumstances chain-terminating steps (e.g., union of two iodine atoms) become so important that effectively there is *no* chain.

## 2.21 An alternative mechanism for halogenation

In the preceding section we were concerned with the relative reactivities of the various halogens toward methane. In the next chapter we shall change our viewpoint, and look at the relative reactivities of various alkanes—or various positions in one alkane—toward a given halogen. All this helps make up an important part of our study of organic chemistry: how variations in structure lead to variations in reactivity. But there is an even more fundamental point to consider: how a particular type of structure leads to a particular type of reaction in the first place. How is it, not that one halogen or one alkane reacts faster or slower than another, but that any halogen and any alkane react together *in the way they do*?

To answer this question, let us take the chlorination of methane as an example, and examine it closely. The chain-propagating steps in our mechanism are (2a) and (3a).



But consider, instead, the sequence (2b) and (3b), which represent an alternative mechanism.

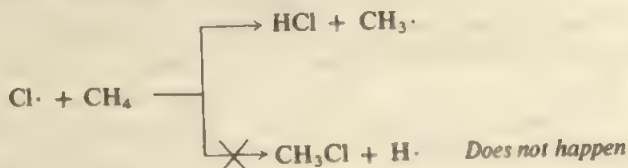


On the face of it, this mechanism would certainly seem to be worth considering; indeed, until 1940 it was just as consistent with the evidence as the now-accepted mechanism was. But this alternative mechanism is *not* the one by which chlorination takes place, and in Sec. 4.29 we shall see direct evidence against it.

Our question, then, becomes this: how is it that chlorination goes by steps (2a) and (3a) rather than by (2b) and (3b)? The crux of the matter lies in step (2). It is here that the two reaction paths divide; what happens in (2) determines the entire course of reaction. If (2b) were to occur, (3b) would inevitably follow; (3b) is a known reaction that takes place readily in a different system. But (2b) does *not* occur.

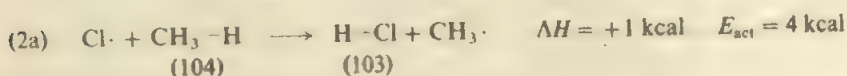


So we have narrowed our inquiry still further. We now ask: how is it that (2a) takes place rather than (2b)? In both reactions the chlorine atom attacks a methane

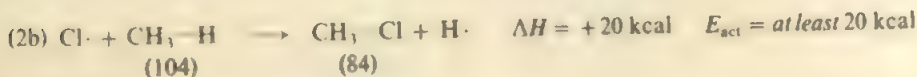


molecule. It can either attach itself to hydrogen and expel a methyl radical, or attach itself to carbon and expel a hydrogen atom. There is thus *competition* between the two reactions, and the faster reaction wins. If step (2a) predominates, it can only mean that (2a) *goes faster than* (2b).

How do we account for this? Ideally we would like to know the  $E_{\text{act}}$ 's for the competing reactions. But  $E_{\text{act}}$  cannot, of course, be measured for (2b), since this reaction does not take place. So, as we did in Sec. 2.20, let us see what we can do using values of  $\Delta H$ ; these we can calculate—for real or imaginary reactions—from the homolytic bond dissociation energies of Table 1.2 (p. 20). For (2a)  $\Delta H$  is +1 kcal;  $E_{\text{act}}$  could therefore be as small as 1 kcal and, as we have seen, is actually 4 kcal.



For (2b),  $\Delta H$  is +20 kcal;  $E_{\text{act}}$  must therefore be *at least* 20 kcal—and is probably considerably larger.



The fraction of collisions providing 4 kcal or more is enormously larger than the fraction providing 20 kcal: at 275°, for example, *2.5 million times larger!* Just on the basis of this *minimum* estimate of the difference in  $E_{\text{act}}$ , we see that (2a) must proceed so much faster than (2b) that, in effect, (2a) is the *only* reaction that takes place.

The point is *not* that 20 kcal is in itself too high a barrier for reaction to occur; after all, the attack of Br· on methane has an  $E_{\text{act}}$  of 18 kcal, and it occurs. The point here is that a reaction with an  $E_{\text{act}}$  of 20 kcal *cannot compete successfully* with a reaction whose  $E_{\text{act}}$  is only 4 kcal. When a chlorine atom collides with a methane molecule, the collision is overwhelmingly more likely to provide enough energy for (2a) than for (2b). And so (2a) is what happens.

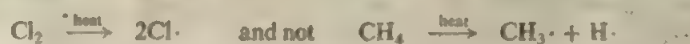
Finally, let us see what structural feature makes (2a) the easier of the two reactions. Both reactions involve breaking of a carbon-hydrogen bond. The difference lies in which bond is being formed, hydrogen-chlorine or carbon-chlorine. Breaking the carbon-hydrogen bond requires 104 kcal/mol—a great deal of energy. A small fraction of this is supplied by collisions. But most of it comes from the concerted formation of another bond—hydrogen-chlorine in the case of (2a) or carbon-chlorine in the case of (2b). The hydrogen-chlorine bond is a strong

one (103 kcal) and its formation can supply nearly all the needed energy. But the methyl-chlorine bond is weaker (only 84 kcal) and, even if all this were available to help break the carbon-hydrogen bond, 20 kcal more would have to be supplied by collisions. The course of this reaction is, then, ultimately determined by the fact that the hydrogen-chlorine bond is stronger than the methyl-chlorine bond.

Examination of the bond dissociation energies of Table 1.2 shows that what we have just described is part of a pattern: each halogen forms a stronger bond to hydrogen than to carbon—not only carbon in methane but carbon in other alkanes as well. The result is that, whatever the halogen and whatever the alkane, halogenation follows a mechanism that is analogous to (2a) and (3a) and *not* to (2b) and (3b).

Again we have encountered relative rates of reaction, this time determining the most fundamental aspect of chemical behavior: *what type of reaction takes place*. Whenever different kinds of molecules are mixed together, there will, in principle, be more than one way in which they can react. There will be a competition between different reaction paths—very often, as we shall find, a closer competition than the one we have just used as our example. And, by and large, what the molecules actually do is *what is easiest for them*. As we encounter such cases of competition, we shall try to see what factors tend to favor one path or the other; we shall even try to see what we can do to make the path that we prefer be the easier one for the reaction to follow.

**Problem 2.3** Account in a quantitative way for the fact that the first step in the thermal chlorination of methane is



What structural feature ultimately determines the nature of the chain-initiating step?

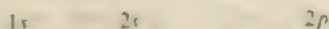
**Problem 2.4** Account in a quantitative way for the fact that bromination of methane follows a mechanism that is analogous to (2a) and (3a) rather than one analogous to (2b) and (3b).

## 2.22 Structure of the methyl radical. $sp^2$ Hybridization

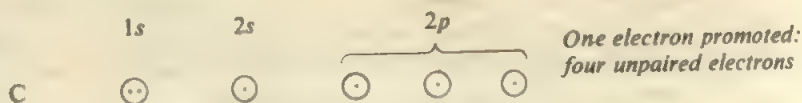
We have spent a good part of this chapter discussing the formation and reactions of the methyl free radical  $\text{CH}_3\cdot$ . Just what is this molecule like? What is its shape? How are the electrons distributed and, in particular, where is the odd electron?

These are important questions, for the answers apply not only to this simple radical but to any free radical, however complicated, that we shall encounter. The *shape* naturally, underlies the three-dimensional chemistry—the stereochemistry—of free radicals. The *location of the odd electron* is intimately involved with the stabilization of free radicals by substituent groups.

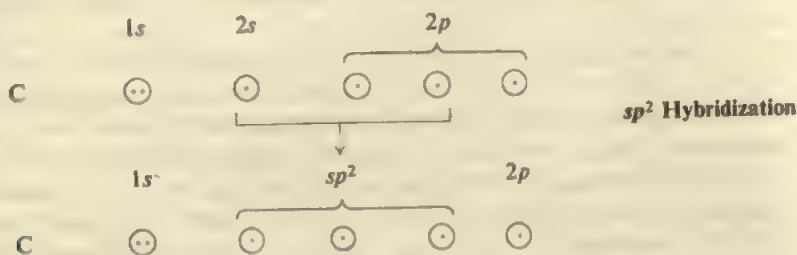
As we did when we “made” methane (Sec. 1.11), let us start with the electronic configuration of carbon,



and, to provide more than two unpaired electrons for bonding, promote a  $2s$  electron to the empty  $2p$  orbital:



Like boron in boron trifluoride (Sec. 1.10), carbon here is bonded to three other atoms. Hybridization of the  $2s$  orbital and two of the  $p$  orbitals provides the



necessary orbitals: three strongly directed  $sp^2$  orbitals which, as we saw before, lie in a plane that includes the carbon nucleus, and are directed to the corners of an equilateral triangle.

If we arrange the carbon and three hydrogens of a methyl radical to permit maximum overlap of orbitals, we obtain the structure shown in Fig. 2.9a. It is flat, with the carbon atom at the center of a triangle and the three hydrogen atoms at the corners. Every bond angle is  $120^\circ$ .

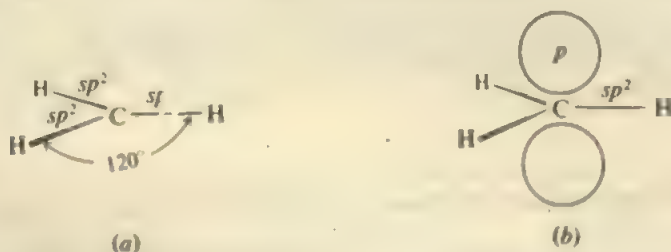


Figure 2.9. Methyl radical. (a) Only  $\sigma$  bonds shown. (b) Odd electron in  $p$  orbital above and below plane of  $\sigma$  bonds.

Now where is the odd electron? In forming the  $sp^2$  orbitals, the carbon atom has used only two of its three  $p$  orbitals. The remaining  $p$  orbital consists of two equal lobes, one lying above and the other lying below the plane of the three  $sp^2$  orbitals (Fig. 2.9b); it is occupied by the odd electron.

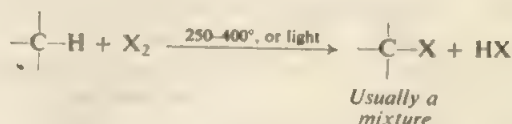
This is not the only conceivable electronic configuration for the methyl radical: an alternative treatment would lead to a pyramidal molecule like that of ammonia, except that the fourth  $sp^3$  orbital contains the odd electron instead of an electron pair (Sec. 1.12). Quantum mechanical calculations do not offer a clear-cut decision between the two configurations. Spectroscopic studies indicate that the methyl radical is actually flat, or nearly so. Carbon is trigonal, or not far from it, the odd electron occupies a  $p$  orbital, or at least an orbital with much  $p$  character.



hydrogen atoms and the particular product eventually obtained depends upon which of these hydrogen atoms is abstracted. Although an attacking particle may show a certain selectivity, it can abstract a hydrogen from any part of the molecule, and thus bring about the formation of many isomeric products.

## REACTIONS OF ALKANES

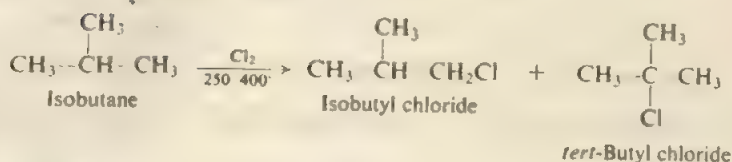
### 1. Halogenation. Discussed in Secs. 3.19–3.22.



**Reactivity**       $\text{X}_2$ :  $\text{Cl}_2 > \text{Br}_2$

**H:**  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ > \text{CH}_3-\text{H}$

*Example:*



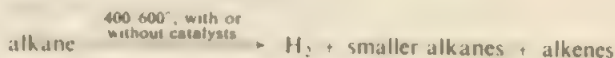
### 2. Combustion. Discussed in Sec. 3.30.



*Example:*



### 3. Pyrolysis (cracking). Discussed in Sec. 3.31.



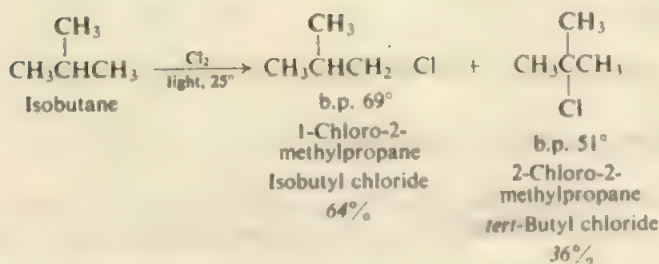
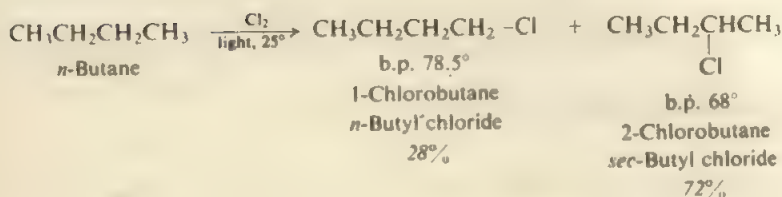
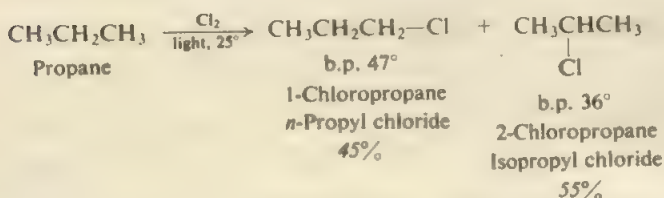
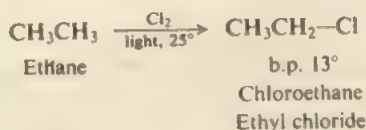
## 3.19 Halogenation

As we might expect, halogenation of the higher alkanes is essentially the same as the halogenation of methane. It can be complicated, however, by the formation of mixtures of isomers.

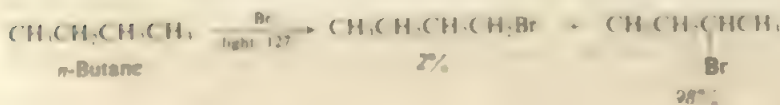
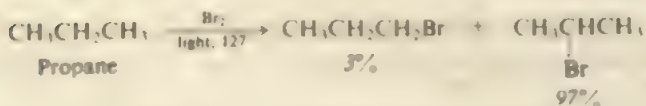
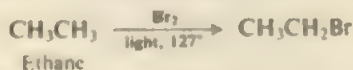
Under the influence of ultraviolet light, or at 250–400°, chlorine or bromine converts alkanes into chloroalkanes (alkyl chlorides) or bromoalkanes (alkyl bromides); an equivalent amount of hydrogen chloride or hydrogen bromide is formed at the same time. When diluted with an inert gas, and in an apparatus

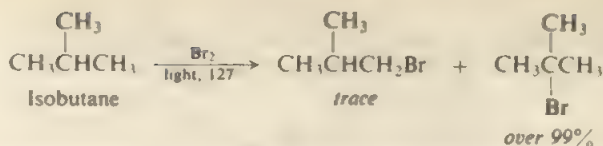
designed to carry away the heat produced, fluorine has recently been found to give analogous results. As with methane, iodination does not take place at all.

Depending upon which hydrogen atom is replaced, any of a number of isomeric products can be formed from a single alkane. Ethane can yield only one haloethane; propane, *n*-butane, and isobutane can yield two isomers each; *n*-pentane can yield three isomers, and isopentane, four isomers. Experiment has shown that on halogenation an alkane yields a mixture of all possible isomeric products, indicating that all hydrogen atoms are susceptible to replacement. For example, for chlorination:



Bromination gives the corresponding bromides but in different proportions:





**Problem 3.12** Draw the structures of: (a) the three monochloro derivatives of *n*-pentane; (b) the four monochloro derivatives of isopentane.

Although both chlorination and bromination yield mixtures of isomers, the results given above show that the *relative amounts* of the various isomers differ markedly depending upon the halogen used. Chlorination gives mixtures in which no isomer greatly predominates; in bromination, by contrast, one isomer may predominate to such an extent as to be almost the only product, making up 97–99% of the total mixture. In bromination, there is a high degree of *selectivity* as to which hydrogen atoms are to be replaced. (As we shall see in Sec. 3.28, this characteristic of bromination is due to the relatively low reactivity of bromine atoms, and is an example of a general relationship between *reactivity* and *selectivity*.)

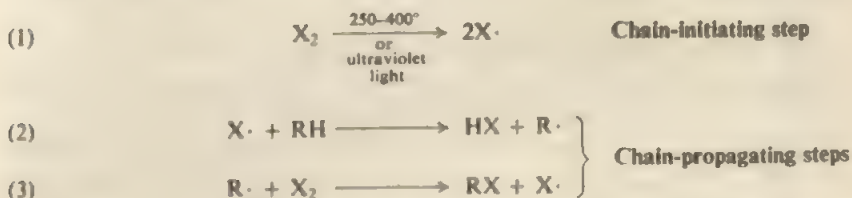
Chlorination of an alkane is not usually suitable for the laboratory preparation of an alkyl chloride; any one product is necessarily formed in low yield, and is difficult to separate from its isomers, whose boiling points are seldom far from its own. Bromination, on the other hand, often gives a nearly pure alkyl bromide in high yield. As we shall see, it is possible to predict just which isomer will predominate; if this product is the one desired, direct bromination could be a feasible synthetic route.

On an industrial scale, chlorination of alkanes is important. For many purposes—for example, use as a solvent—a mixture of isomers is just as suitable as, and much cheaper than, a pure compound. It may be even worthwhile, when necessary, to separate a mixture of isomers if each isomer can then be marketed.

**Problem 3.13** How do you account for the fact that not only bromination but also chlorination is a feasible laboratory route to a neopentyl halide,  $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCH}_2\text{X}$ ?

### 3.20 Mechanism of halogenation

Halogenation of alkanes proceeds by the same mechanism as halogenation of methane:

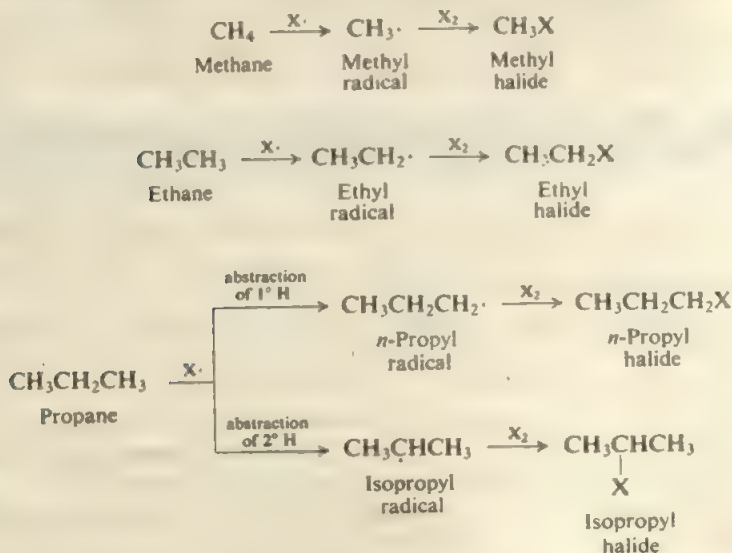


then (2), (3), (2), (3), etc., until finally a chain is terminated (Sec. 2.13)

A halogen atom abstracts hydrogen from the alkane (RH) to form an alkyl radical ( $\text{R}\cdot$ ). The radical in turn abstracts a halogen atom from a halogen molecule to yield the alkyl halide (RX).



Which alkyl halide is obtained depends upon which alkyl radical is formed.



This in turn depends upon the alkane and which hydrogen atom is abstracted from it. For example, *n*-propyl halide is obtained from a *n*-propyl radical, formed from propane by abstraction of a primary hydrogen; isopropyl halide is obtained from an isopropyl radical, formed by abstraction of a secondary hydrogen.

How fast an alkyl halide is formed depends upon how fast the alkyl radical is formed. Here also, as was the case with methane (Sec. 2.20), of the two chain-propagating steps, step (2) is more difficult than step (3), and hence controls the

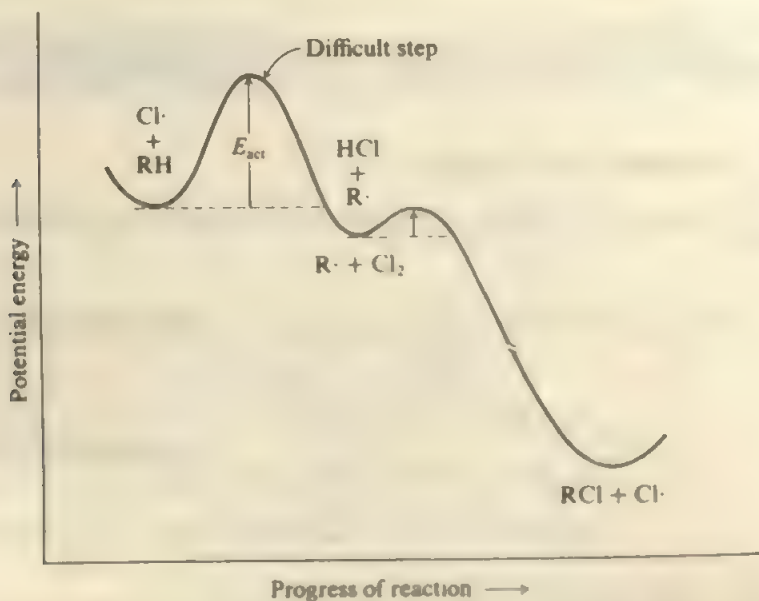


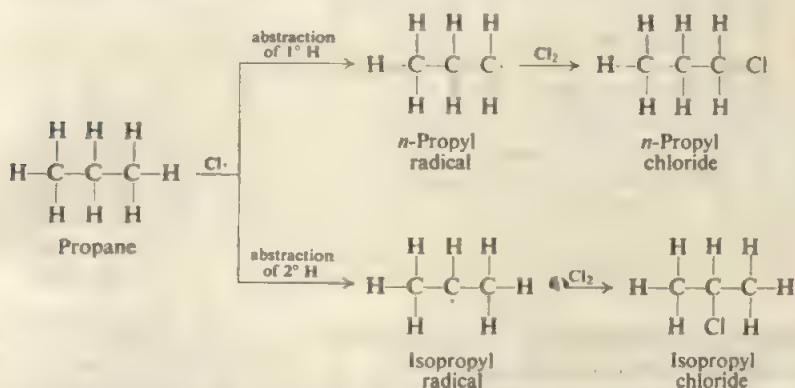
Figure 3.5. Potential energy changes during progress of reaction: chlorination of an alkane. Formation of radical is rate-controlling step.

rate of overall reaction. Formation of the alkyl radical is difficult, but once formed the radical is readily converted into the alkyl halide (see Fig. 3.5).

### 3.21 Orientation of halogenation

With this background let us turn to the problem of **orientation**; that is, let us examine the factors that determine *where* in a molecule reaction is most likely to occur. It is a problem that we shall encounter again and again, whenever we study a compound that offers more than one reactive site to attack by a reagent. It is an important problem, because orientation determines what product we obtain.

As an example let us take chlorination of propane. The relative amounts of *n*-propyl chloride and isopropyl chloride obtained depend upon the relative rates at which *n*-propyl radicals and isopropyl radicals are formed. If, say, isopropyl radicals are formed faster, then isopropyl chloride will be formed faster, and will make up a larger fraction of the product. As we can see, *n*-propyl radicals are formed by abstraction of primary hydrogens, and isopropyl radicals by abstraction of secondary hydrogens.



Thus *orientation is determined by the relative rates of competing reactions*. In this case we are comparing the rate of abstraction of primary hydrogens with the rate of abstraction of secondary hydrogens. What are the factors that determine the rates of these two reactions, and in which of these factors may the two reactions differ?

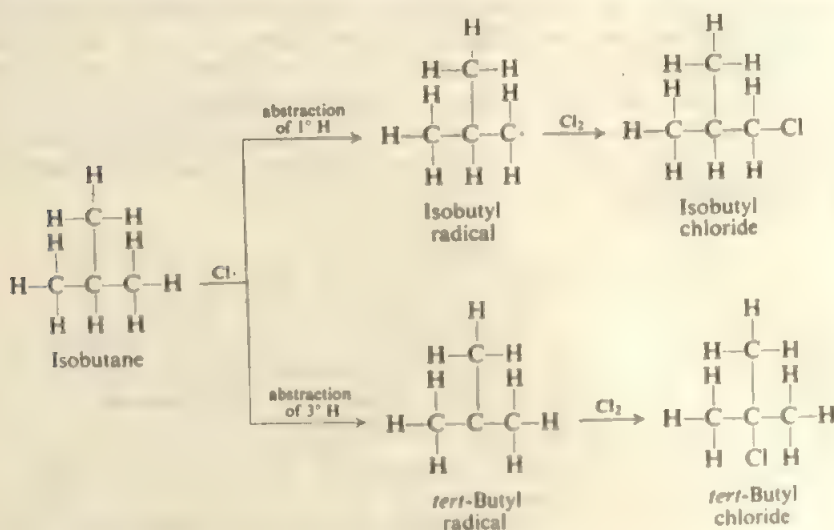
First of all, there is the collision frequency. This must be the same for the two reactions, since both involve collisions of the same particles: a propane molecule and a chlorine atom.

Next, there is the probability factor. If a primary hydrogen is to be abstracted, the propane molecule must be so oriented at the time of collision that the chlorine atom strikes a primary hydrogen; if a secondary hydrogen is to be abstracted, the propane must be so oriented that the chlorine collides with a secondary hydrogen. Since there are six primary hydrogens and only two secondary hydrogens in each molecule, we might estimate that the probability factor favors abstraction of primary hydrogens by the ratio of 6:2, or 3:1.

Considering only collision frequency and our guess about probability factors, we predict that chlorination of propane would yield *n*-propyl chloride and isopropyl chloride in the ratio of 3:1. As shown on page 102, however, the two chlorides are formed in roughly equal amounts, that is, in the ratio of about 1:1, or 3:3. The

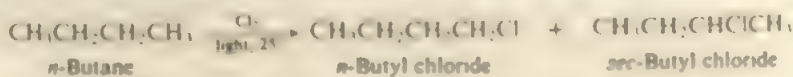
proportion of isopropyl chloride is about three times as great as predicted. Evidently, about three times as many collisions with secondary hydrogens are successful as collisions with primary hydrogens. If our assumption about the probability factor is correct, this means that  $E_{act}$  is less for abstraction of a secondary hydrogen than for abstraction of a primary hydrogen.

Chlorination of isobutane presents a similar problem. In this case, abstraction of one of the nine primary hydrogens leads to the formation of isobutyl chloride, whereas abstraction of a single tertiary hydrogen leads to the formation of *tert*-butyl chloride. We would estimate, then, that the probability factor favors formation



of isobutyl chloride by the ratio of 9:1. The experimental results given on page 102 show that the ratio is roughly 2:1, or 9:4.5. Evidently, about 4.5 times as many collisions with the tertiary hydrogen are successful as collisions with the primary hydrogens. This, in turn, probably means that  $E_{act}$  is less for abstraction of a tertiary hydrogen than for abstraction of a primary hydrogen, and, in fact, even less than for abstraction of a secondary hydrogen.

Study of the chlorination of a great many alkanes has shown that these are typical results. After allowance is made for differences in the probability factor, the rate of abstraction of hydrogen atoms is always found to follow the sequence  $3 > 2 > 1$ . At room temperature, for example, the relative rates *per hydrogen atom* are 5.0 : 3.8 : 1.0. Using these values we can predict quite well the ratio of isomeric chlorination products from a given alkane. For example:



$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\textit{n-butyl chloride}}{\textit{sec-butyl chloride}} &= \frac{\text{no. of } 1^\circ \text{ H}}{\text{no. of } 2^\circ \text{ H}} \times \frac{\text{reactivity of } 1^\circ \text{ H}}{\text{reactivity of } 2^\circ \text{ H}} \\ &= \frac{6}{4} \times \frac{1.0}{3.8} \\ &= \frac{6}{14.2} \text{ equivalent to } \frac{28\%}{72\%} \end{aligned}$$



In spite of these differences in reactivity, chlorination rarely yields a great preponderance of any single isomer. In nearly every alkane, as in the examples we have studied, the less reactive hydrogens are the more numerous; their lower reactivity is compensated for by a higher probability factor, with the result that appreciable amounts of every isomer are obtained.

**Problem 3.14** Predict the proportions of isomeric products from chlorination at room temperature of: (a) propane; (b) isobutane; (c) 2,3-dimethylbutane; (d) *n*-pentane (Note: There are *three* isomeric products); (e) isopentane; (f) 2,2,3-trimethylbutane; (g) 2,2,4-trimethylpentane. For (a) and (b) check your calculations against the experimental values given on page 102.

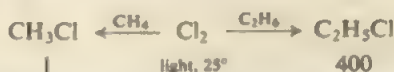
The same sequence of reactivity,  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ$ , is found in bromination, but with enormously larger reactivity ratios. At  $127^\circ$ , for example, the relative rates per hydrogen atom are 1600:82:1. Here, differences in reactivity are so marked as vastly to outweigh probability factors.

**Problem 3.15** Answer Problem 3.14 for bromination at  $127^\circ$ .

### 3.22 Relative reactivities of alkanes toward halogenation

The best way to measure the relative reactivities of different compounds toward the same reagent is by the **method of competition**, since this permits an exact quantitative comparison under identical reaction conditions. Equimolar amounts of two compounds to be compared are mixed together and allowed to react with a limited amount of a particular reagent. Since there is not enough reagent for both compounds, the two compete with each other. Analysis of the reaction products shows which compound has consumed more of the reagent and hence is more reactive.

For example, if equimolar amounts of methane and ethane are allowed to react with a small amount of chlorine, about 400 times as much ethyl chloride as methyl chloride is obtained, showing that ethane is 400 times as reactive as methane. When allowance is made for the relative numbers of hydrogens in the two kinds of molecules, we see that each hydrogen of ethane is about 270 times as reactive as each hydrogen of methane.



**Problem 3.16** Because of the rather large difference in reactivity between ethane and methane, competition experiments have actually used mixtures containing more methane than ethane. If the molar ratio of methane to ethane were 10:1, what ratio of ethyl chloride to methyl chloride would you expect to obtain? What practical advantage would this experiment have over one involving a 1:1 ratio?

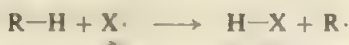
Data obtained from similar studies of other compounds are consistent with this simple generalization: *the reactivity of a hydrogen depends chiefly upon its class, and not upon the alkane to which it is attached*. Each primary hydrogen of propane, for example, is about as easily abstracted as each primary hydrogen in *n*-butane or isobutane; each secondary hydrogen of propane, about as easily as each secondary hydrogen of *n*-butane or *n*-pentane, and so on.

The hydrogen atoms of methane, which fall into a special class, are even less reactive than primary hydrogens, as shown by the above competition with ethane.

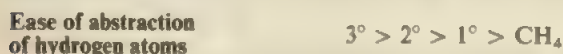
**Problem 3.17** On chlorination, an equimolar mixture of ethane and neopentane yields neopentyl chloride and ethyl chloride in the ratio of 2.3:1. How does the reactivity of a primary hydrogen in neopentane compare with that of a primary hydrogen in ethane?

### 3.23 Ease of abstraction of hydrogen atoms. Energy of activation

At this stage we can summarize the effect of structure on halogenation of alkanes in the following way. The controlling step in halogenation is abstraction of hydrogen by a halogen atom:



The relative ease with which the different classes of hydrogen atoms are abstracted is:



This sequence applies (a) to the various hydrogens within a single alkane and hence governs **orientation** of reaction, and (b) to the hydrogens of different alkanes and hence governs **relative reactivities**.

Earlier, we concluded that these differences in ease of abstraction—like most differences in rate between closely related reactions (Sec. 2.19)—are probably due to differences in  $E_{\text{act}}$ . By study of halogenation at a series of temperatures (Sec. 2.18), the values of  $E_{\text{act}}$  listed in Table 3.5 were measured. In agreement with our tentative conclusions, the increasing rate of reaction along the series, methyl,  $1^\circ$ ,  $2^\circ$ ,  $3^\circ$ , is paralleled by a decreasing  $E_{\text{act}}$ . In chlorination the differences in  $E_{\text{act}}$ , like the differences in rate, are small; in bromination both differences are large.

**Table 3.5** ENERGIES OF ACTIVATION, KCAL/MOL

$\text{R-H} + \text{X}\cdot \longrightarrow \text{R}\cdot + \text{H-X}$		
R	X = Cl	X = Br
$\text{CH}_3$	4	18
$1^\circ$	1	13
$2^\circ$	0.5	10
$3^\circ$	0.1	7.5

We have seen (Sec. 2.18) that the larger the  $E_{\text{act}}$  of a reaction, the larger the increase in rate brought about by a given rise in temperature. We have just found that the differences in rate of abstraction among primary, secondary, and tertiary hydrogens are due to differences in  $E_{\text{act}}$ . We predict, therefore, that a rise in temperature should speed up abstraction of primary hydrogens (with the largest  $E_{\text{act}}$ ) most, and abstraction of tertiary hydrogens (with the smallest  $E_{\text{act}}$ ) least, the three classes of hydrogen should then display more nearly the same reactivity.

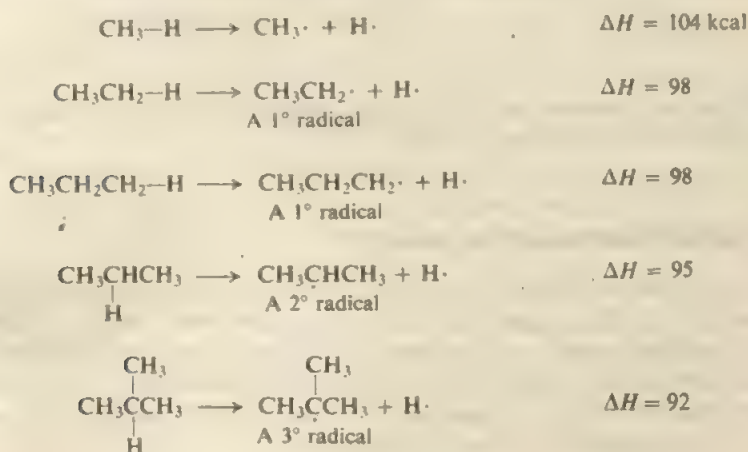
This leveling-out effect has indeed been observed as the temperature is raised, the relative rates per hydrogen atom change from 5.0:3.8:1.0 toward 1:1:1. At very high temperatures virtually every collision has enough energy for abstraction of even primary

hydrogens. It is generally true that *as the temperature is raised a given reagent becomes less selective in the position of its attack*, conversely, as the temperature is lowered it becomes more selective.

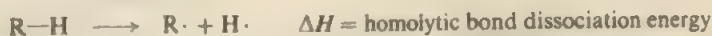
How can we account for the effect of structure on ease of abstraction of hydrogen atoms? Since this is a matter of  $E_{\text{act}}$ , we must look for our answer, as always, in the transition state. To do this, however, we must first shift our focus from the hydrogen atom being abstracted to the radical being formed.

### 3.24 Stability of free radicals

In Table 1.2 (p. 20) we find the homolytic dissociation energies of the bonds that hold hydrogen atoms to a number of groups. These values are the  $\Delta H$ 's of the following reactions:



By definition, this bond dissociation energy is the amount of energy that must be supplied to convert a mole of alkane into radicals and hydrogen atoms. As we can see, the amount of energy needed to form the various classes of radicals decreases in the order:  $\text{CH}_3\cdot > 1^\circ > 2^\circ > 3^\circ$ .



If less energy is needed to form one radical than another, it can only mean that, *relative to the alkane from which it is formed*, the one radical contains less energy than the other, this is to say, is *more stable* (see Fig. 3.6).

We are not attempting to compare the absolute energy contents of, say, methyl and ethyl radicals; we are simply saying that the difference in energy between methane and methyl radicals is greater than the difference between ethane and ethyl radicals. *When we compare stabilities of free radicals, it must be understood that our standard for each radical is the alkane from which it is formed.* As we shall see, this is precisely the kind of stability that we are interested in.

Relative to the alkane from which each is formed, then, the order of stability of free radicals is:

Stability of  
free radicals





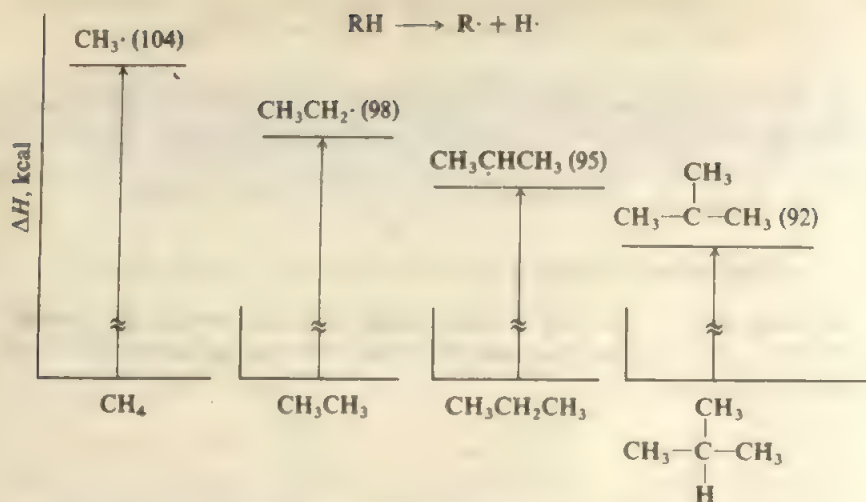
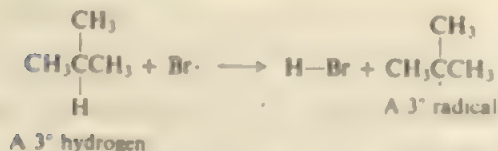
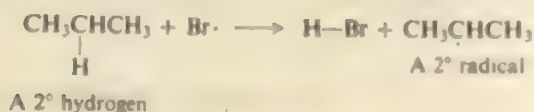


Figure 3.6. Relative stabilities of free radicals. (Plots aligned with each other for easy comparison.)

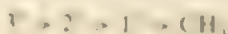
### 3.25 Ease of formation of free radicals

Let us return to the halogenation of alkanes. Orientation and reactivity, we have seen (Sec. 3.23), are governed by the relative ease with which the different classes of hydrogen atoms are abstracted. But by definition, the hydrogen being abstracted and the radical being formed belong to the same class. Abstraction of a primary hydrogen yields a primary radical, abstraction of a secondary hydrogen yields a secondary radical, and so on. For example:



If the ease of abstraction of hydrogen atoms follows the sequence  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ > \text{CH}_4$ , then the ease of formation of free radicals must follow the same sequence:

Ease of formation  
of free radicals



In listing free radicals in order of their ease of formation, we find that we have

at the same time listed them in order of their stability. **The more stable the free radical, the more easily it is formed.**

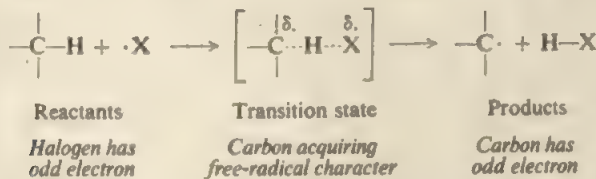
This is an extremely useful generalization. *Radical stability seems to govern orientation and reactivity in many reactions where radicals are formed.* The addition of bromine atoms to alkenes (Sec. 8.23), for example, is a quite different sort of reaction from the one we have just studied; yet, there too, orientation and reactivity can be governed by radical stability. (Even in those cases where other factors—steric hindrance, polar effects—are significant or even dominant, it is convenient to use radical stability as a point of departure.)

### 3.26 Transition state for halogenation

Is it reasonable that the more stable radical should be formed more easily?

We have already seen that the differences in reactivity toward halogen atoms are due chiefly to differences in  $E_{\text{act}}$ : the more stable the radical, then, the lower the  $E_{\text{act}}$  for its formation. This, in turn, means that the more stable the radical, the more stable the transition state leading to its formation—both stabilities being measured, as they must be, against the same standard, the reactants. (*Remember:  $E_{\text{act}}$  is the difference in energy content between reactants and transition state.*)

Examination of the transition state shows that this is exactly what we would expect. As we saw before (Sec. 2.23), the hydrogen-halogen bond is partly formed and the carbon-hydrogen bond is partly broken. To the extent that the bond is



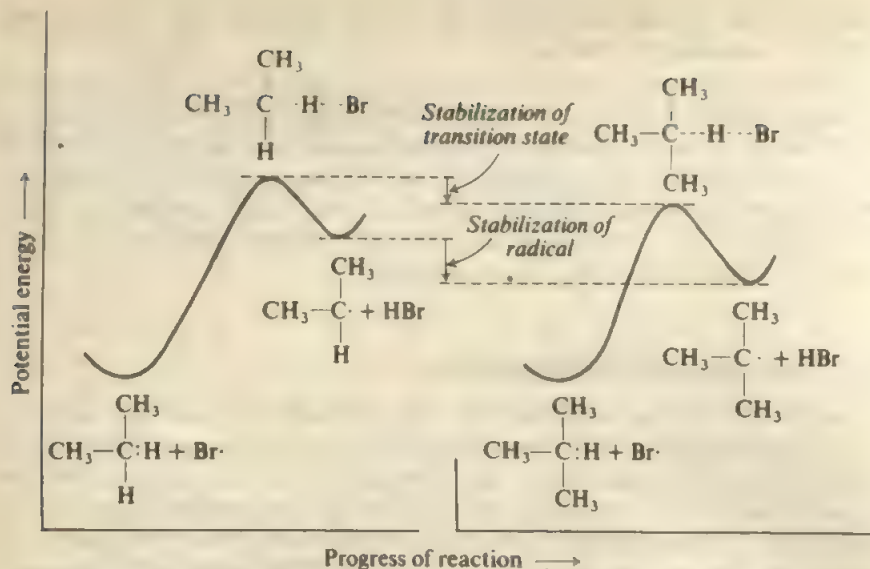
broken, the alkyl group possesses character of the free radical it will become. *Factors that tend to stabilize the free radical tend to stabilize the incipient free radical in the transition state.*

We have seen that the stabilities of free radicals follow the sequence  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ > \text{CH}_3\cdot$ . A certain factor (*delocalization of the odd electron*, Sec. 9.11) causes the energy difference between isobutane and the *tert*-butyl radical, for example, to be smaller than between propane and the isopropyl radical. It is not unreasonable that this same factor should cause the energy difference between isobutane and the *incipient tert*-butyl radical in the transition state to be smaller than between propane and the *incipient* isopropyl radical in its transition state (Fig. 3.7, following page).

### 3.27 Orientation and reactivity

Throughout our study of organic chemistry, we shall approach the problems of orientation and reactivity in the following way.

Both problems involve comparing the rates of closely related reactions: in the case of orientation, reactions at different sites in the same compound; in the case of reactivity, reactions with different compounds. For such closely related reactions,



**Figure 3.7.** Molecular structure and rate of reaction. Stability of transition state parallels stability of radical: more stable radical formed faster. (Plots aligned with each other for easy comparison.)

variations in rate are due mostly to differences in  $E_{\text{act}}$ ; by definition,  $E_{\text{act}}$  is the difference in energy content between reactants and transition state.

We shall examine the most likely structure for the transition state, then, to see what structural features affect its stability without at the same time affecting by an equal amount the stability of the reactants; that is, we shall look for factors that tend to increase or decrease the energy difference between reactants and transition state. Having decided what structural features affect the  $E_{\text{act}}$ , we shall compare the transition states for the reactions whose rates we wish to compare: the more stable the transition state, the faster the reaction.

In many, if not most, reactions where a free radical is formed, as in the present case, the transition state differs from the reactants chiefly in being like the product. It is reasonable, then, that the factor most affecting the  $E_{\text{act}}$  should be the *radical character* of the transition state. Hence we find that the more stable the radical the more stable the transition state leading to its formation, and the faster the radical is formed.

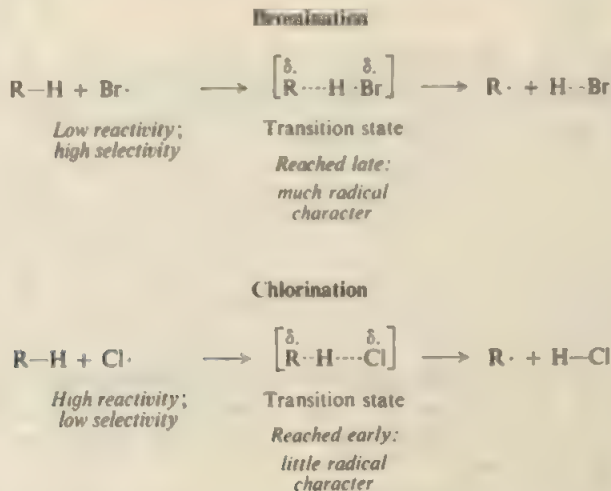
### 3.28 Reactivity and selectivity

In its attack on alkanes, the bromine atom is much more selective than the chlorine atom (with relative rate factors of 1600:82:1 as compared with 5.0:3.8:1). It is also much less reactive than the chlorine atom (only 1/375,000 as reactive toward methane, for example, as we saw in Sec. 2.19). This is just one example of a general relationship: in a set of similar reactions, the *less reactive* the reagent, the *more selective* it is in its attack.

To account for this relationship, we must recall what we learned in Sec. 2.24. In the attack by the comparatively unreactive bromine atom, the transition state is reached late in the reaction process, after the alkyl group has developed



considerable radical character. In the attack by the highly reactive chlorine atom, the transition state is reached early, when the alkyl group has gained very little radical character.



Now, by "selectivity" we mean here the differences in rate at which the various classes of free radicals are formed; a more stable free radical is formed faster, we said, because the factor that stabilizes it—delocalization of the odd electron (Sec. 9.11)—also stabilizes the incipient radical in the transition state. If this is so, then the more fully developed the radical character in the transition state, the more effective delocalization will be in stabilizing the transition state. The isopropyl radical, for example, is 3 kcal more stable than the *n*-propyl radical; if the radicals were *completely* formed in the transition state, the difference in  $E_{act}$  would be 3 kcal. Actually, in bromination the difference in  $E_{act}$  is 3 kcal: equal, within the limits of experimental error, to the maximum potential stabilization, indicating as we expected, a great deal of radical character. In chlorination, by contrast, the difference in  $E_{act}$  is only 0.5 kcal, indicating only very slight radical character.

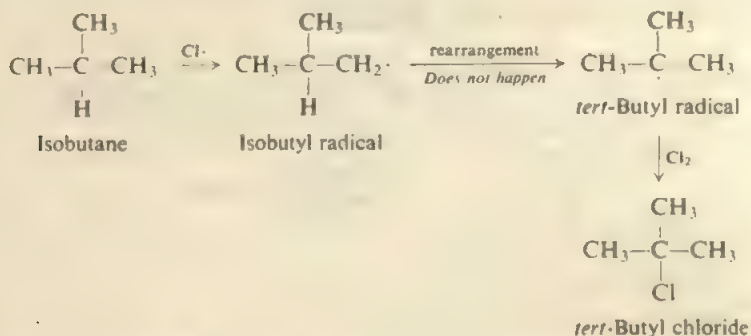
A similar situation exists for reactions of other kinds. Whatever the factor responsible for differences in stability among a set of transition states—whether it is delocalization of an odd electron, or accommodation of a positive or negative charge, or perhaps a change in crowding of the atoms—the factor will operate more effectively when the transition state is more fully developed, that is, when the reagent is less reactive.

### 3.29 Non-rearrangement of free radicals. Isotopic tracers

Our interpretation of orientation (Sec. 3.21) was based on an assumption that we have not yet justified: that the relative amounts of isomeric halides we find in the product reflect the relative rates at which various free radicals were formed from the alkane. From isobutane, for example, we obtain twice as much isobutyl chloride as *tert*-butyl chloride, and we assume from this that, by abstraction of hydrogen, isobutyl radicals are formed twice as fast as *tert*-butyl radicals.

Yet how do we know, in this case, that every isobutyl radical that is formed

ultimately yields a molecule of isobutyl chloride? Suppose some isobutyl radicals were to change—by *rearrangement* of atoms—into *tert*-butyl radicals, which then react with chlorine to yield *tert*-butyl chloride. This supposition is not so far-fetched

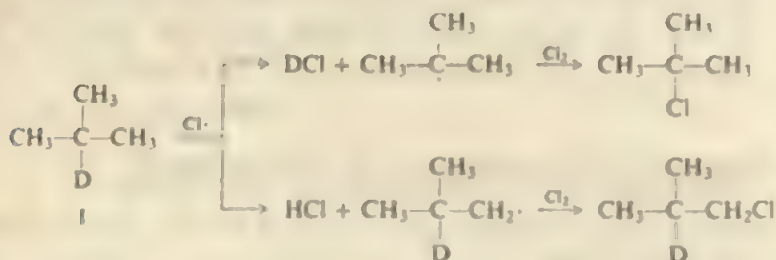


as we, in our present innocence, might think; the doubt it raises is a very real one. We shall shortly see that another kind of reactive intermediate particle, the carbocation, is very prone to rearrange, with less stable ions readily changing into more stable ones (Sec. 6.26).

H. C. Brown (p. 471) and Glen Russell (now of Iowa State University) decided to test the possibility that free radicals, like carbocations, might rearrange, and chose the chlorination of isobutane as a good test case, because of the large difference in stability between *tert*-butyl and isobutyl radicals. If rearrangement of alkyl radicals can indeed take place, it should certainly happen here.

What the problem comes down to is this: does every abstraction of primary hydrogen lead to isobutyl chloride, and every abstraction of tertiary hydrogen lead to *tert*-butyl chloride? This, we might say, we could never know, because all hydrogen atoms are exactly alike. But are they? Actually, three isotopes of hydrogen exist:  $^1\text{H}$ , *protium*, ordinary hydrogen;  $^2\text{H}$  or *D*, *deuterium*, heavy hydrogen; and  $^3\text{H}$  or *T*, *tritium*. Protium and deuterium are distributed in nature in the ratio of 5000:1. (Tritium, the unstable, radioactive isotope, is present in traces, but can be made by neutron bombardment of  $^6\text{Li}$ .) Modern methods of separation of isotopes have made very pure deuterium available, at moderate prices, in the form of deuterium oxide,  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ , heavy water.

Brown and Russell prepared the deuterium-labeled isobutane I,

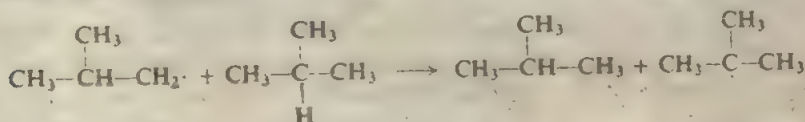


photochemically chlorinated it, and analyzed the products. The  $\text{DCl}:\text{HCl}$  ratio (determined by the mass spectrometer) was found to be equal (within experimental error) to the *tert*-butyl chloride:isobutyl chloride ratio. Clearly, every abstraction of a tertiary hydrogen (*deuterium*) gave a molecule of *tert*-butyl chloride, and every

abstraction of a primary hydrogen (*protium*) gave a molecule of isobutyl chloride. *Rearrangement of the intermediate free radicals did not occur.*

All the existing evidence indicates quite strongly that, although rearrangement of free radicals occasionally happens, it is not very common and does not involve simple alkyl radicals.

**Problem 3.18** (a) What results would have been obtained if some isobutyl radicals had rearranged to *tert*-butyl radicals? (b) Suppose that, instead of rearranging, isobutyl radicals were, in effect, converted into *tert*-butyl radicals by the reaction



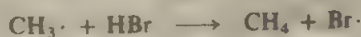
What results would Brown and Russell have obtained?

**Problem 3.19** Keeping in mind the availability of  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ , suggest a way to make  $\text{I}$  from *tert*-butyl chloride. (*Hint*: See Sec. 3.16.)

The work of Brown and Russell is just one example of the way in which we can gain insight into a chemical reaction by using isotopically labeled compounds. We shall encounter many other examples in which isotopes, used either as *tracers*, as in this case, or for the detection of *isotope effects* (Sec. 7.18), give us information about reaction mechanisms that we could not get in any other way.

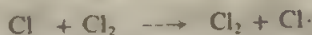
Besides deuterium and tritium, isotopes commonly used in organic chemistry include:  $^{14}\text{C}$ , available as  $^{14}\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$  and  $\text{Ba}^{14}\text{CO}_3$ ;  $^{18}\text{O}$ , as  $\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$ ;  $^{15}\text{N}$ , as  $^{15}\text{NH}_3$ ,  $^{15}\text{NO}_3^-$ , and  $^{15}\text{NO}_2^-$ ;  $^{36}\text{Cl}$ , as chlorine or chloride;  $^{131}\text{I}$ , as iodide.

**Problem 3.20** Bromination of methane is slowed down by the addition of  $\text{HBr}$  (Problem 13, p. 77); this is attributed to the reaction



which, as the reverse of one of the chain-carrying steps, slows down bromination. How might you test whether or not this reaction actually occurs in the bromination mixture?

**Problem 3.21** In Sec. 2.12 the reaction



was listed as probable but unproductive. Given ordinary chlorine (made up of  $^{35}\text{Cl}$  and  $^{37}\text{Cl}$ ) and  $^{36}\text{Cl}_2$ , and a mass spectrometer, how would you go about finding out whether or not the reaction actually occurs?

### 3.30 Combustion

The reaction of alkanes with oxygen to form carbon dioxide, water, and—most important of all—*heat*, is the chief reaction occurring in the internal combustion engine; its tremendous practical importance is obvious.

The mechanism of this reaction is extremely complicated and is not yet fully understood. There seems to be no doubt, however, that it is a free-radical chain reaction. The reaction is extremely exothermic and yet requires a very high temperature, that of a flame, for its initiation. As in the case of chlorination, a great deal of energy is required for the bond-breaking that generates the initial



reactive particles; once this energy barrier is surmounted, the subsequent chain-carrying steps proceed readily and with the evolution of energy.

A higher compression ratio has made the modern gasoline engine more efficient than earlier ones, but has at the same time created a new problem. Under certain conditions the smooth explosion of the fuel-air mixture in the cylinder is replaced by **knocking**, which greatly reduces the power of the engine.

The problem of knocking has been successfully met in two general ways: (a) proper selection of the hydrocarbons to be used as fuel, and (b) addition of tetraethyllead.

Experiments with pure compounds have shown that hydrocarbons of differing structures differ widely in knocking tendency. The relative antiknock tendency of a fuel is generally indicated by its **octane number**. An arbitrary scale has been set up, with *n*-heptane, which knocks very badly, being given an octane number of zero, and 2,2,4-trimethylpentane ("iso-octane") being given the octane number of 100. There are available today fuels with better antiknock qualities than "iso-octane."

The gasoline fraction obtained by direct distillation of petroleum (*straight-run gasoline*) is improved by addition of compounds of higher octane number; it is sometimes entirely replaced by these better fuels. Branched-chain alkanes and alkenes, and aromatic hydrocarbons generally have excellent antiknock qualities; these are produced from petroleum hydrocarbons by *catalytic cracking* (Sec. 3.31) and *catalytic reforming* (Sec. 16.5). Highly branched alkanes are synthesized from alkenes and alkanes by *alkylation* (Sec. 8.21).

In 1922 T. C. Midgley, Jr., and T. A. Boyd (of the General Motors Research Laboratory) found that the octane number of a fuel is greatly improved by addition of a small amount of tetraethyllead,  $(C_2H_5)_4Pb$ . Gasoline so treated is called *ethyl gasoline* or *leaded gasoline*. Nearly 50 years of research finally showed that tetraethyllead probably works by producing tiny particles of lead oxides, on whose surface certain reaction chains are broken.

In addition to carbon dioxide and water, however, the gasoline engine discharges other substances into the atmosphere, substances that are either smog-producing or downright poisonous: unburned hydrocarbons, carbon monoxide, nitrogen oxides, and, from leaded gasoline, various compounds of lead—in the United States, hundreds of tons of lead a day. Growing public concern about these pollutants has caused a minor revolution in the petroleum and auto industries. *Converters* are being developed to clean up exhaust emissions: by catalytic oxidation of hydrocarbons and carbon monoxide, and by the breaking down of nitrogen oxides into nitrogen and oxygen. But most of these oxidation catalysts contain platinum, which is poisoned by lead, there has been a move to get the lead out of gasoline—not, initially, to cut down on lead pollution, but to permit converters to function. This has, in turn, brought back the problem of knocking, which is being met in two ways: (a) by lowering the compression ratio of the new automobiles being built; and (b) by increasing the octane number of gasoline through changes in hydrocarbon composition—through addition of aromatics and through increased use of isomerization (Sec. 3.13).

### 3.31 Pyrolysis: cracking

Decomposition of a compound by the action of heat alone is known as **pyrolysis**. This word is taken from the Greek *pyr*, fire, and *lysis*, a loosing, and

hence to chemists means "cleavage by heat"; compare *hydrolysis*, "cleavage by water."

The pyrolysis of alkanes, particularly when petroleum is concerned, is known as **cracking**. In *thermal cracking* alkanes are simply passed through a chamber heated to a high temperature. Large alkanes are converted into smaller alkanes, alkenes, and some hydrogen. This process yields predominantly ethylene ( $C_2H_4$ ) together with other small molecules. In a modification called *steam cracking*, the hydrocarbon is diluted with steam, heated for a fraction of a second to 700–900°, and rapidly cooled. Steam cracking is of great importance in the production of hydrocarbons as chemicals, including ethylene, propylene, butadiene, isoprene, and cyclopentadiene. Another source of smaller hydrocarbons is *hydrocracking*, carried out in the presence of a catalyst and hydrogen, at high pressure and at much lower temperatures (250–450°).

The low-molecular-weight alkenes obtained from these cracking processes can be separated and purified, and are the most important raw materials for the large-scale synthesis of aliphatic compounds.

Most cracking, however, is directed toward the production of fuels, not chemicals, and for this *catalytic cracking* is the major process. Higher boiling petroleum fractions (typically, gas oil) are brought into contact with a finely divided silica-alumina catalyst at 450–550° and under slight pressure. Catalytic cracking not only increases the yield of gasoline by breaking large molecules into smaller ones, but also improves the quality of the gasoline: this process involves carbocations (Sec. 6.20), and yields alkanes and alkenes with the highly branched structures desirable in gasoline.

Through the process of *alkylation* (Sec. 8.21) some of the smaller alkanes and alkenes are converted into high-octane synthetic fuels.

Finally, by the process of *catalytic reforming* (Sec. 16.5) enormous quantities of the aliphatic hydrocarbons of petroleum are converted into *aromatic* hydrocarbons which are used not only as superior fuels but as the starting materials in the synthesis of most aromatic compounds (Chap. 14).

### 3.32 Determination of structure

One of the commonest and most important jobs in organic chemistry is to determine the structural formula of a compound just synthesized or isolated from a natural source.

The compound will fall into one of two groups, although at first we probably shall not know *which* group. It will be either (a) a previously reported compound, which we must identify, or (b) a new compound, whose structure we must prove.

If the compound has previously been encountered by some other chemist who determined its structure, then a description of its properties will be found somewhere in the chemical literature, together with the evidence on which its structure was assigned. In that case, we need only to show that our compound is identical with the one previously described.

If, on the other hand, our compound is a new one that has never before been reported, then we must carry out a much more elaborate proof of structure.

Let us see—in a general way now, and in more detail later—just how we would go about this job. We are confronted by a flask filled with gas, or a few milliliters of liquid, or a tiny heap of crystals. We must find the answer to the question: *what is it?*

First, we purify the compound and determine its physical properties: melting point, boiling point, density, refractive index, and solubility in various solvents. In the laboratory today, we would measure various spectra of the compound (Chap. 17), in particular the infrared spectrum and the NMR spectrum; indeed, because of the wealth of information to be gotten in this way, spectroscopic examination might well be the first order of business after purification. From the mass spectrum we would get a very accurate molecular weight. Increasingly, structure is being determined in the most direct way possible: by x-ray analysis, which can show the precise distribution of atoms in a molecule.

We would carry out a qualitative elemental analysis to see what elements are present (Sec. 2.26). We might follow this with a quantitative analysis, and from this and the molecular weight we could calculate a molecular formula (Sec. 2.27); we would certainly do this if the compound is suspected of being a new one.

Next, we study systematically the behavior of the compound toward certain reagents. This behavior, taken with the elemental analysis, solubility properties, and spectra, generally permits us to *characterize* the compound, that is, to decide what family the unknown belongs to. We might find, for example, that the compound is an alkane, or that it is an alkene, or an aldehyde, or an ester.

Now the question is: *which* alkane is it? Or which alkene, or which aldehyde, or which ester? To find the answer, we first go to the chemical literature and look up compounds of the particular family to which our unknown belongs.

If we find one described whose physical properties are identical with those of our unknown, then the chances are good that the two compounds are identical. For confirmation, we generally convert the unknown by a chemical reaction into a new compound called a **derivative**, and show that this derivative is identical with the product derived in the same way from the previously reported compound.

If, on the other hand, we do not find a compound described whose physical properties are identical with those of our unknown, then we have a difficult job on our hands: we have a new compound, and must prove its structure. We may carry out a *degradation*: break the molecule apart, identify the fragments, and deduce what the structure must have been. To clinch any proof of structure, we attempt to *synthesize* the unknown by a method that leaves no doubt about its structure.

**Problem 3.22** The final step in the proof of structure of an unknown alkane was its synthesis by the coupling of lithium di(*tert*-butyl)copper with *n*-butyl bromide. What was the alkane?

In Chap. 17, after we have become familiar with more features of organic structure, we shall see how spectroscopy fits into the general procedure outlined above.

### 3.33 Analysis of alkanes

An unknown compound is characterized as an alkane on the basis of negative evidence.

Upon qualitative elemental analysis, an alkane gives negative tests for all elements except carbon and hydrogen. A quantitative combustion, if one is carried out, shows the absence of oxygen, taken with a molecular weight determination, the combustion gives the molecular formula,  $C_nH_{2n+2}$ , which is that of an alkane.

An alkane is insoluble not only in water but also in dilute acid and base and



in concentrated sulfuric acid. (As we shall see, most kinds of organic compounds dissolve in one or more of these solvents.)

An alkane is unreactive toward most chemical reagents. Its infrared spectrum lacks the absorption bands characteristic of groups of atoms present in other families of organic compounds (like OH, C=O, C=C, etc.).

Once the unknown has been characterized as an alkane, there remains the second half of the problem: finding out *which* alkane.

On the basis of its physical properties—boiling point, melting point, density, refractive index, and, most reliable of all, its infrared and mass spectra—it may be identified as a previously studied alkane of known structure.

If it turns out to be a new alkane, the proof of structure can be a difficult job. Combustion and molecular weight determination give its molecular formula. Clues about the arrangement of atoms are given by its infrared and NMR spectra. (For compounds like alkanes, it may be necessary to lean heavily on x-ray diffraction and mass spectrometry.)

Final proof lies in synthesis of the unknown by a method that can lead only to the particular structure assigned.

(The spectroscopic analysis of alkanes will be discussed in Chap. 17.)

## PROBLEMS

### 1. Give the structural formula of:

- |                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| (a) 2,2,3,3-tetramethylpentane  | (f) 2,5-dimethylhexane          |
| (b) 2,3-dimethylbutane          | (g) 3-ethyl-2-methylpentane     |
| (c) 3,4,4,5-tetramethylheptane  | (h) 2,2,4-trimethylpentane      |
| (d) 4-ethyl-3,4-dimethylheptane | (i) 3-chloro-2-methylpentane    |
| (e) 4-ethyl-2,4-dimethylheptane | (j) 1,2-dibromo-2-methylpropane |

### 2. Draw out the structural formula and give the IUPAC name of:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$  | (g) $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_3$   |
| (b) $\text{CH}_3\text{CBr}_2\text{CH}_3$  | (h) $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CClCH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$   |
| (c) $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$   | (i) $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$   |
| (d) $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$   | (j) $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH}_3$  |
| (e) $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$  | (k) $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHC}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$   |
| (f) $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_3$<br><div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="text-align: center;"><math>\text{CH}_3</math></div> <div style="text-align: center;"><math>\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3</math></div> </div> | (l) $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CHCHCH}_3$<br><div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="text-align: center;"><math>\text{CH}_3</math></div> <div style="text-align: center;"><math>\text{CH}_3</math></div> <div style="text-align: center;"><math>\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3</math></div> </div> |

3. Pick out an alkane in Problem 1 or 2 that has: (a) no tertiary hydrogen; (b) one tertiary hydrogen; (c) two tertiary hydrogens; (d) no secondary hydrogen; (e) two secondary hydrogens; (f) half the number of secondary hydrogens as primary hydrogens.

### 4. Pick out an alkane (if any) in Problem 1 or 2 that contains:

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| (a) one isopropyl group          | (g) one <i>tert</i> -butyl group  |
| (b) two isopropyl groups         | (h) two <i>tert</i> -butyl groups   |
| (c) one isobutyl group           | (i) an isopropyl group and a <i>sec</i> -butyl group                      |
| (d) two isobutyl groups          | (j) a <i>tert</i> -butyl group and an isobutyl group                      |
| (e) one <i>sec</i> -butyl group  | (k) a methyl, an ethyl, a <i>n</i> -propyl, and a <i>sec</i> -butyl group |
| (f) two <i>sec</i> -butyl groups |   |

5. What alkane or alkanes of molecular weight 86 have (a) two monobromo derivatives? (b) three? (c) four? (d) five? (e) How many dibromo derivatives does the alkane in (a) have? (f) Name the monobromo derivatives in (a)

6. How many mono-, di-, and trichloro derivatives are possible for cyclopentane? (Structure given in Sec. 5.2.)

7. Without referring to tables, list the following hydrocarbons in order of decreasing boiling points (i.e., highest boiling at top, lowest at bottom):

- (a) 3,3-dimethylpentane      (c) 2-methylheptane      (e) 2-methylhexane  
(b) *n*-heptane      (d) *n*-pentane

8. Write balanced equations, naming all organic products, for the following reactions:

- (a) isobutyl bromide + Mg/ether      (e) product of (a) +  $D_2O$   
(b) *tert*-butyl bromide + Mg/ether      (f) *sec*-butyl chloride + Li, then CuI  
(c) product of (a) +  $H_2O$       (g) product of (f) + ethyl bromide  
(d) product of (b) +  $H_2O$

9. Write equations for the preparation of *n*-butane from:

- (a) *n*-butyl bromide      (d) 1-butene,  $CH_3CH_2CH=CH_2$   
(b) *sec*-butyl bromide      (e) 2-butene,  $CH_3CH=CHCH_3$   
(c) ethyl chloride

10. Draw structures of all products expected from monochlorination at room temperature of:

- (a) *n*-hexane      (c) 2,2,4-trimethylpentane  
(b) isohexane      (d) 2,2-dimethylbutane

11. Predict the proportions of products in the preceding problem.

12. (a) Reaction of an aldehyde with a Grignard reagent is an important way of making alcohols. Why must one scrupulously dry the aldehyde before adding it to the Grignard reagent? (b) Why would one not prepare a Grignard reagent from  $BrCH_2CH_2OH$ ?

13. On the basis of bond strengths in Table 1.2, page 20, add the following free radicals to the stability sequence of Sec. 3.24:

- (a) *vinyl*,  $H_2C=CH\cdot$   
(b) *allyl*,  $H_2C=CHCH_2\cdot$   
(c) *benzyl*,  $C_6H_5CH_2\cdot$

Check your answer in Sec. 16.15.

14. On the basis of your answer to Problem 13, predict how the following would fit into the sequence (Sec. 3.23) that shows ease of abstraction of hydrogen atoms:

- (a) *vinyl* hydrogen,  $H_2C=CH-H$   
(b) *allylic* hydrogen,  $H_2C=CHCH_2-H$   
(c) *benzyl* hydrogen,  $C_6H_5CH_2-H$

Check your answer against the facts in Secs. 9.3 and 16.14.

15. Free-radical chlorination of *either* *n*-propyl or isopropyl bromide gives 1-bromo-2-chloropropane, and of *either* isobutyl or *tert*-butyl bromide gives 1-bromo-2-chloro-2-methylpropane. What appears to be happening? Is there any pattern to this behavior?

16. (a) If a rocket were fueled with kerosene and liquid oxygen, what weight of oxygen would be required for every liter of kerosene? (Assume kerosene to have the average composition of  $n-C_{14}H_{30}$ .) (b) How much heat would be evolved in the combustion of one liter of kerosene? (Assume 157 kcal/mol for each  $-CH_2-$  group and 186 kcal/mol for each  $-CH_3$  group.) (c) If it were to become feasible to fuel a rocket with free hydrogen atoms, what weight of fuel would be required to provide the same heat as a liter of kerosene and the necessary oxygen? (Assume  $H_2$  as the sole product.)

17. By what two quantitative methods could you show that a product isolated from the chlorination of propane was a monochloro or a dichloro derivative of propane? Tell exactly what results you would expect from each of the methods.

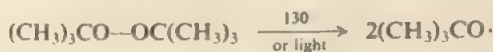
18. On the basis of certain evidence, including its infrared spectrum, an unknown compound of formula  $C_{10}H_{22}$  is suspected of being 2,7-dimethyloctane. How could you confirm or disprove this tentatively assigned structure?

19. (a) A solution containing an unknown amount of methyl alcohol ( $CH_3OH$ ) dissolved in *n*-octane is added to an excess of methylmagnesium iodide dissolved in the high-boiling solvent, *n*-butyl ether. A gas is evolved, and is collected and its volume measured:  $1.04\text{ cm}^3$  (corrected to STP). What is the gas, and how is it formed? What weight of methyl alcohol was added to the Grignard reagent?

(b) A sample of  $4.12\text{ mg}$  of an unknown alcohol,  $ROH$ , is added to methylmagnesium iodide as above; there is evolved  $1.56\text{ cm}^3$  of gas (corrected to STP). What is the molecular weight of the alcohol? Suggest a possible structure or structures for the alcohol.

(c) A sample of  $1.79\text{ mg}$  of a compound of mol. wt. about 90 gave  $1.34\text{ cm}^3$  of the gas (corrected to STP). How many "active (that is, acidic) hydrogens" are there per molecule? Assuming all these to be in  $-OH$  groups, suggest a structure for the alcohol. (This is an example of the Zerewitinoff active hydrogen determination.)

20. (a) *tert*-Butyl peroxide is a stable, easy-to-handle liquid that serves as a convenient source of free radicals:



A mixture of isobutane and  $CCl_4$  is quite stable at  $130-140^\circ$ . If a small amount of *tert*-butyl peroxide is added, a reaction occurs that yields (chiefly) *tert*-butyl chloride and chloroform. A small amount of *tert*-butyl alcohol ( $(CH_3)_3COH$ , equivalent to the peroxide used) is also isolated. Give all steps in a likely mechanism for this reaction.

(b) When irradiated with ultraviolet light, or in the presence of a small amount of peroxides, *tert*-butyl hypochlorite,  $(CH_3)_3C-O-Cl$ , reacts with alkanes to form, in equimolar amounts, alkyl chlorides and *tert*-butyl alcohol. Outline all steps in a likely mechanism for this reaction.



# Stereochemistry

---



---

## 4.1 Stereochemistry and stereoisomerism

The science of organic chemistry, we said, is based on the relationship between molecular structure and properties. That part of the science which deals with structure *in three dimensions* is called **stereochemistry** (Gr.: *stereos*, solid).

One aspect of stereochemistry is *stereoisomerism*. Isomers, we recall, are different compounds that have the same molecular formula. The particular kind of isomers that are different from each other *only* in the way the atoms are oriented in space (but are like one another with respect to which atoms are joined to which other atoms) are called **stereoisomers**.

Pairs of stereoisomers exist that differ so little in structure—and hence in properties—that of all the physical measurements we can make, only one, involving a special instrument and an unusual kind of light, can distinguish between them. Yet, despite this close similarity, the existence of such stereoisomers provides us with one of our most sensitive probes into mechanisms of chemical reactions; very often, one of these isomers is selected for study, not because it is different from ordinary compounds in its three-dimensional chemistry, but because it can be made to reveal what ordinary compounds hide. And, again despite their close similarity, one isomer of such a pair may serve as a nourishing food, or as an antibiotic, or as a powerful heart stimulant, and the other isomer may be useless.

We have already (Secs. 3.3 and 3.5) begun our study of the branch of stereochemistry called *conformational analysis*. In this chapter we shall, first, learn how to predict the existence of the kinds of stereoisomers called *enantiomers* and *diastereomers*, how to represent and designate their structures, and, in a general way, how their properties will compare. Then, in the latter part of the chapter, the emphasis will shift from what these isomers *are* to how they are formed, what they do, and what they can tell us. But stereochemistry permeates organic chemistry, and we shall return to it again and again throughout the rest of the book: to add to our knowledge of the fundamental concepts of stereochemistry; and simply to use it to help us understand what is going on in chemical reactions.

## 4.2 Isomer number and tetrahedral carbon

Let us begin our study of stereochemistry with methane and some of its simple substitution products. Any compound, however complicated, that contains carbon bonded to four other atoms can be considered to be a derivative of methane; and whatever we learn about the shape of the methane molecule can be applied to the shapes of vastly more complicated molecules.

The evidence of electron diffraction, x-ray diffraction, and spectroscopy shows that when carbon is bonded to four other atoms its bonds are directed toward the corners of a tetrahedron. But as early as 1874, years before the direct determination of molecular structure was possible, the tetrahedral carbon atom was proposed by J. H. van't Hoff (while he was still a student at the University of Utrecht) and, independently, J. A. LeBel. Their proposal was based upon the evidence of **isomer number**.

*For any atom Y, only one substance of formula  $\text{CH}_3\text{Y}$  has ever been found.* Chlorination of methane yields only one compound of formula  $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$ ; bromination yields only one compound of formula  $\text{CH}_3\text{Br}$ . Similarly, only one  $\text{CH}_3\text{F}$  is known, and only one  $\text{CH}_3\text{I}$ . Indeed, the same holds true if Y represents, not just an atom, but a group of atoms (unless the group is so complicated that in itself it brings about isomerism); there is only one  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ , only one  $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$ , only one  $\text{CH}_3\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ .

What does this suggest about the arrangement of atoms in methane? It suggests that every hydrogen atom in methane is equivalent to every other hydrogen atom, so that replacement of any one of them gives rise to the same product. If the hydrogen atoms of methane were not equivalent, then replacement of one would yield a different compound than replacement of another, and isomeric substitution products would be obtained.

In what ways can the atoms of methane be arranged so that the four hydrogen atoms are equivalent? There are three such arrangements: (a) a *planar* arrangement (I) in which carbon is at the center of a rectangle (or square) and a hydrogen atom



is at each corner, (b) a *pyramidal* arrangement (II) in which carbon is at the apex of a pyramid and a hydrogen atom is at each corner of a square base, (c) a *tetrahedral* arrangement (III) in which carbon is at the center of a tetrahedron and a hydrogen atom is at each corner.

How do we know that each of these arrangements could give rise to only one substance of formula  $\text{CH}_3\text{Y}$ ? As always for problems like this, the answer lies in the use of molecular models (Gumdrops and toothpicks can be used to make structures like I and II, for which the bond angles of ordinary molecular models are not suited). For example, we make two identical models of I. In one model we

replace, say, the upper right-hand H with a different atom Y, represented by a differently colored ball or gumdrop, in the other model we similarly replace, say, the lower right-hand H. We next see whether or not the two resulting models are *superimposable*; that is, we see whether or not, by any manipulations except bending or breaking bonds, we can make the models coincide in all their parts. If the two models are superimposable, they simply represent two molecules of the same compound; if the models are not superimposable, they represent molecules of different compounds which, since they have the same molecular formula, are by definition *isomers* (p. 40). Whichever hydrogen we replace in I (or in II or III), we get the same structure. From any arrangement other than these three, we would get more than one structure.

As far as compounds of the formula  $\text{CH}_3\text{Y}$  are concerned, the evidence of isomer number limits the structure of methane to one of these three possibilities.

**Problem 4.1** How many isomers of formula  $\text{CH}_3\text{Y}$  would be possible if methane were a pyramid with a *rectangular* base? What are they? (*Hint*: If you have trouble with this question now, try it again after you have studied Sec. 4.7.)

For any atom Y and for any atom Z, only one substance of formula  $\text{CH}_2\text{YZ}$  has ever been found. Halogenation of methane, for example, yields only one compound of formula  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , only one compound of formula  $\text{CH}_2\text{Br}_2$ , and only one compound of formula  $\text{CH}_2\text{ClBr}$ .

Of the three possible structures of methane, only the tetrahedral one is consistent with this evidence.

**Problem 4.2** How many isomers of formula  $\text{CH}_2\text{YZ}$  would be expected from each of the following structures for methane? (a) Structure I with carbon at the center of a rectangle; (b) structure I with carbon at the center of a square; (c) structure II; (d) structure III.

Thus, only the tetrahedral structure for methane agrees with the evidence of isomer number. It is true that this is negative evidence; one might argue that isomers exist which have never been isolated or detected simply because the experimental techniques are not good enough. But, as we said before, any compound that contains carbon bonded to four other atoms can be considered to be a derivative of methane; in the preparation of hundreds of thousands of compounds of this sort, the number of isomers obtained has always been consistent with the concept of the tetrahedral carbon atom.

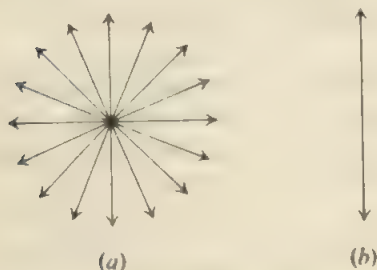
There is additional, positive evidence for the tetrahedral carbon atom: the finding of just the kind of isomers—*enantiomers*—that are predicted for compounds of formula  $\text{CWXYZ}$ . It was the existence of enantiomers that convinced van't Hoff and LeBel that the carbon atom is tetrahedral. But to understand what enantiomers are, we must first learn about the property called *optical activity*.

### 4.3 Optical activity. Plane-polarized light

Light possesses certain properties that are best understood by considering it to be a wave phenomenon in which the vibrations occur at right angles to the direction in which the light travels. There are an infinite number of planes passing through the line of propagation, and ordinary light is vibrating in all these planes.



If we consider that we are looking directly into the beam of a flashlight, Fig. 4.1 shows schematically the sort of vibrations that are taking place, all perpendicular



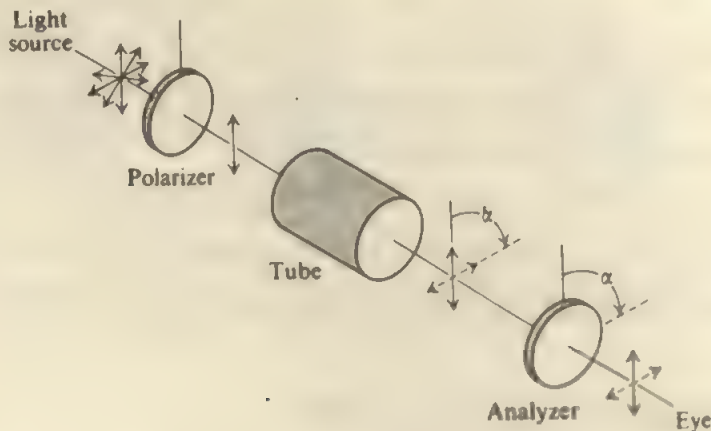
**Figure 4.1.** Schematic representation of (a) ordinary light and (b) plane-polarized light. Light travelling perpendicular to page; vibrations in plane of page.

to a line between our eye and the paper (flashlight). **Plane-polarized light** is light whose vibrations take place in only one of these possible planes. Ordinary light is turned into plane-polarized light by passing it through a lens made of the material known as *Polaroid* or more traditionally through pieces of *calcite* (a particular crystalline form of  $\text{CaCO}_3$ ) so arranged as to constitute what is called a *Nicol prism*.

An **optically active substance** is one that rotates the plane of polarized light. When polarized light, vibrating in a certain plane, is passed through an optically active substance, it emerges vibrating in a different plane.

#### 4.4 The polarimeter

How can this rotation of the plane of polarized light —this optical activity— be detected? It is both detected and measured by an instrument called the **polarimeter**, which is represented schematically in Fig. 4.2. It consists of a light source, two lenses (*Polaroid* or *Nicol*), and between the lenses a tube to hold the substance that is being examined for optical activity. These are arranged so that the light passes through one of the lenses (*polarizer*), then the tube, then the second lens (*analyzer*),



**Figure 4.2.** Schematic representation of a polarimeter. Solid lines: before rotation. Broken lines: after rotation.  $\alpha$  is angle of rotation.

and finally reaches our eye. When the tube is empty, we find that the maximum amount of light reaches our eye when the two lenses are so arranged that they pass light vibrating in the same plane. If we rotate the lens that is nearer our eye, say, we find that the light dims, and reaches a minimum when the lens is at right angles to its previous position.

Let us adjust the lenses so that a maximum amount of light is allowed to pass. (In practice, it is easier to detect a minimum than a maximum, the principle remains the same.) Now let us place the sample to be tested in the tube. If the substance does not affect the plane of polarization, light transmission is still at a maximum and the substance is said to be **optically inactive**. If, on the other hand, the substance rotates the plane of polarization, then the lens nearer our eye must be rotated to conform with this new plane if light transmission is again to be a maximum, and the substance is said to be **optically active**. If the rotation of the plane, and hence our rotation of the lens, is to the right (clockwise), the substance is **dextrorotatory** (Latin: *dexter*, right); if the rotation is to the left (counterclockwise), the substance is **levorotatory** (Latin: *laevus*, left).

We can determine not only that the substance has rotated the plane, and in which direction, but also *by how much*. The amount of rotation is simply the number of degrees that we must rotate the lens to conform with the light. The symbols + and - are used to indicate rotations to the right and to the left, respectively.

The lactic acid (p. 129) that is extracted from muscle tissue rotates light to the right, and hence is known as *dextrorotatory* lactic acid, or (+)-lactic acid. The 2-methyl-1-butanol that is obtained from fusel oil (a by-product of the fermentation of starch to ethyl alcohol) rotates light to the left, and is known as *levorotatory* 2-methyl-1-butanol, or (-)-2-methyl-1-butanol.

## 4.5 Specific rotation

Since optical rotation of the kind we are interested in is caused by individual molecules of the active compound, *the amount of rotation depends upon how many molecules the light encounters in passing through the tube*.

The light will encounter twice as many molecules in a tube 20 cm long as in a tube 10 cm long, and the rotation will be twice as large. If the active compound is in solution, the number of molecules encountered by the light will depend upon the concentration. For a given tube length, light will encounter twice as many molecules in a solution of 2 g per 100 cm<sup>3</sup> of solvent as in a solution containing 1 g per 100 cm<sup>3</sup> of solvent, and the rotation will be twice as large. When allowances are made for the length of tube and the concentration, it is found that the amount of rotation, as well as its direction, is a characteristic of each individual optically active compound.

**Specific rotation** is the number of degrees of rotation observed if a 1-decimeter tube is used, and the compound being examined is present to the extent of 1 g/cm<sup>3</sup>. This is usually calculated from observations with tubes of other lengths and at different concentrations by means of the equation

$$[\alpha] = \frac{\alpha}{l \times d}$$

$$\text{specific rotation} = \frac{\text{observed rotation (degrees)}}{\text{length (dm)} \times \text{g/cm}^3}$$

where *d* represents density for a pure liquid or concentration for a solution.

The specific rotation is as much a property of a compound as its melting point, boiling point, density, or refractive index. Thus the specific rotation of the 2-methyl-1-butanol obtained from fusel oil is

$$[\alpha]_D^{20} = -5.90^\circ$$

Here 20 is the temperature and D is the wavelength of the light used in the measurement (D line of sodium, 5893 Å).

**Problem 4.3** The concentration of cholesterol dissolved in chloroform is 6.15 g per 100 mL of solution. (a) A portion of this solution in a 5-cm polarimeter tube causes an observed rotation of  $-1.2^\circ$ . Calculate the specific rotation of cholesterol. (b) Predict the observed rotation if the same solution were placed in a 10-cm tube. (c) Predict the observed rotation if 10 mL of the solution were diluted to 20 mL and placed in a 5-cm tube.

**Problem 4.4** A sample of a pure liquid in a 10-cm tube is placed in a polarimeter, and a reading of  $+45^\circ$  is made. How could you establish that  $[\alpha]$  is really  $+45^\circ$  and not  $-315^\circ$ ? That it is  $+45^\circ$  and not  $+405^\circ$  or, for that matter,  $+765^\circ$ ?

## 4.6 Enantiomerism: the discovery

The optical activity we have just described was discovered in 1815 at the Collège de France by the physicist Jean-Baptiste Biot.

In 1848 at the École normale in Paris the chemist Louis Pasteur made a set of observations which led him a few years later to make a proposal that is the foundation of stereochemistry. Pasteur, then a young man, had come to the École normale from the Royal College of Besançon (where he had received his *baccalaureat ès sciences* with the rating of *médiocre* in chemistry), and had just won his *docteur ès sciences*. To gain some experience in crystallography, he was repeating another chemist's earlier work on salts of tartaric acid when he saw something that no one had noticed before: optically inactive sodium ammonium tartrate existed as a mixture of two different kinds of crystals, which were *mirror images* of each other. Using a hand lens and a pair of tweezers, he carefully and laboriously separated the mixture into two tiny piles—one of right-handed crystals and the other of left-handed crystals—much as one might separate right-handed and left-handed gloves lying jumbled together on a shop counter. Now, although the original mixture was optically inactive, each set of crystals dissolved in water was found to be *optically active*! Furthermore, the specific rotations of the two solutions were exactly *equal, but of opposite sign*, that is to say, one solution rotated plane-polarized light to the right, and the other solution an equal number of degrees to the left. In all other properties the two substances were identical.

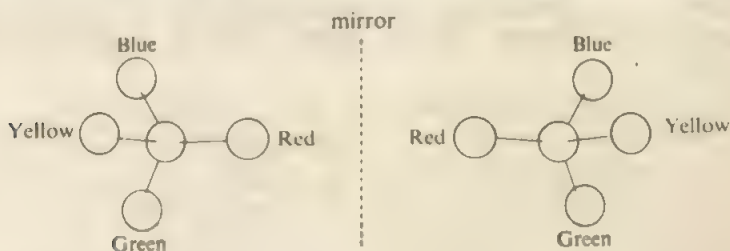
Since the difference in optical rotation was observed *in solution*, Pasteur concluded that it was characteristic, not of the crystals, but of the *molecules*. He proposed that, like the two sets of crystals themselves, the molecules making up the crystals were *mirror images of each other*. He was proposing the existence of isomers whose structures differ only in being mirror images of each other, and whose properties differ only in the direction of rotation of polarized light.

There remained only for van't Hoff and LeBel to point out that a *tetrahedral* carbon atom would account not only for the absence of isomers of formula  $\text{CH}_3\text{Y}$  and  $\text{CH}_2\text{YZ}$ , but also for the existence of mirror-image isomers—*enantiomers*—like Pasteur's tartaric acids.

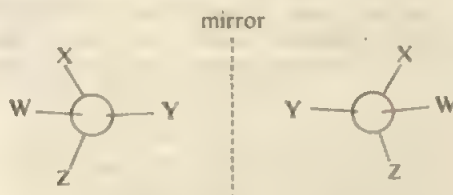


## 4.7 Enantiomerism and tetrahedral carbon

Let us convince ourselves that such mirror-image isomers should indeed exist. Starting with the actual, tetrahedral arrangement for methane, let us make a model of a compound  $CWXYZ$ , using a ball of a different color for each different atom or group represented as  $W$ ,  $X$ ,  $Y$ , and  $Z$ . Let us then imagine that we are holding this model before a mirror, and construct a second model of what its mirror image would look like. We now have two models which look something like this:



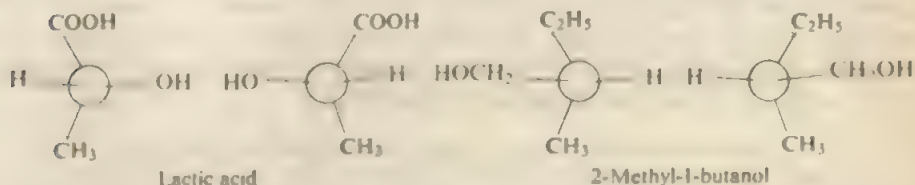
which are understood to stand for this:



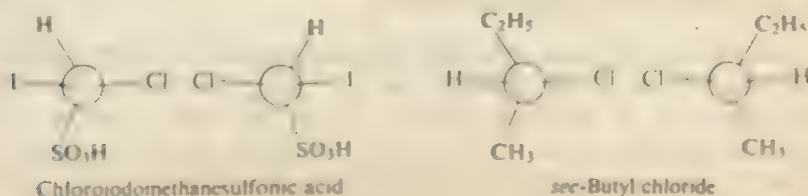
*Not superimposable: isomers*

Are these two models superimposable? *No*. We may twist and turn them as much as we please (so long as no bonds are broken), but although two groups of each may coincide, the other two do not. The models are not superimposable, and therefore must represent two isomers of formula  $CWXYZ$ .

As predicted, mirror-image isomers do indeed exist, and thousands of instances besides the tartaric acids are known. There are, for example, two isomeric *lactic*

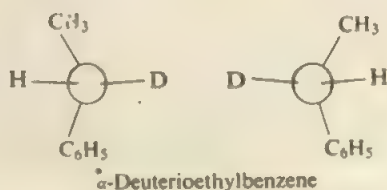


*acids* and two *2-methyl-1-butanols*, two *chloriodomethanesulfonic acids* and two *sec-butyl chlorides*.

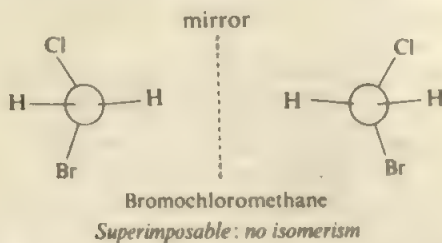


As we can see, the structures of each pair are mirror images; as we can easily verify by use of models, the structures of each pair are not superimposable and therefore represent isomers. (In fact, we have *already* verified this, since the models we made for CWXYZ can, of course, stand for any of these.)

At this point we do not need to know the chemistry of these compounds, or even what structure a particular collection of letters ( $-\text{COOH}$ , say, or  $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ) stands for; we can tell when atoms or groups are the *same* or *different* from each other, and whether or not a model can be superimposed on its mirror image. Even two isotopes of the same element, like protium (ordinary hydrogen, H) and deuterium (heavy hydrogen, D) are different enough to permit detectable isomerism:



We must remember that *everything* (except, of course, a vampire) has a mirror image, including all molecules. Most molecules, however, are superimposable on their mirror images, as, for example, bromochloromethane, and do not show this mirror-image isomerism.



Mirror-image isomers are called *enantiomers*. Since they differ from one another only in the way the atoms are oriented in space, enantiomers belong to the general class called *stereoisomers*. Later on we shall encounter stereoisomers that are *not* mirror images of each other; these are called *diastereomers*. *Any two stereoisomers are thus classified either as enantiomers or as diastereomers, depending upon whether or not they are mirror images of each other.*

The non-superimposability of mirror images that brings about the existence of enantiomers also, as we shall see, gives them their optical activity, and hence enantiomers are often referred to as (one kind of) *optical isomers*. We shall make no use of the term *optical isomer*, since it is hard to define—indeed, is often used undefined—and of doubtful usefulness.

## 4.8 Enantiomerism and optical activity

Most compounds do not rotate the plane of polarized light. How is it that *some* do? It is not the particular chemical family that they belong to, since optically active compounds are found in all families. To see what special structural feature gives rise to optical activity, let us look more closely at what happens when polarized light is passed through a sample of a single pure compound.

When a beam of polarized light passes through an individual molecule, in nearly every instance its plane is rotated a tiny amount by interaction with the charged particles of the molecule; the direction and extent of rotation varies with the orientation of the particular molecule in the beam. For most compounds, because of the random distribution of the large number of molecules that make up even the smallest sample of a single pure compound, for every molecule that the light encounters, there is another (identical) molecule oriented *as the mirror image of the first*, which exactly cancels its effect. The net result is no rotation, that is, optical inactivity. Thus optical inactivity is not a property of individual molecules, but rather of the *random distribution of molecules that can serve as mirror images of each other*.

Optical inactivity requires, then, that one molecule of a compound act as the mirror image of another. But in the special case of CWXYZ, we have found (Sec. 4.7) a molecule whose mirror image is not just another, identical molecule, but rather a molecule of a different, isomeric compound. In a pure sample of a single enantiomer, no molecule can serve as the mirror image of another; there is no exact canceling-out of rotations, and the net result is optical activity. Thus, the same non-superimposability of mirror images that gives rise to enantiomerism also is responsible for optical activity.

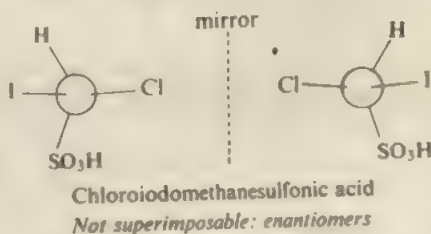
#### 4.9 Prediction of enantiomerism. Chirality

*Molecules that are not superimposable on their mirror images are chiral.*

Chirality is the necessary and sufficient condition for the existence of enantiomers. That is to say: *a compound whose molecules are chiral can exist as enantiomers; a compound whose molecules are achiral (without chirality) cannot exist as enantiomers.*

When we say that a molecule and its mirror image are superimposable, we mean that if—in our mind's eye—we were to bring the image from behind the mirror where it seems to be, it could be made to coincide in all its parts with the molecule. To decide whether or not a molecule is chiral, therefore, we make a model of it and a model of its mirror image, and see if we can superimpose them. This is the safest way, since properly handled it must give us the right answer. It is the method that we should use until we have become quite familiar with the ideas involved; even then, it is the method we should use when we encounter a new type of compound.

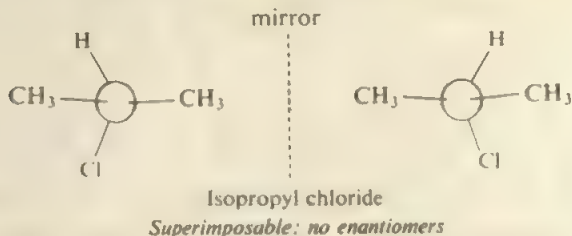
After we have become familiar with the models themselves, we can draw pictures of the models, and *mentally* try to superimpose them. Some, we find, are not superimposable, like these:



These molecules are chiral, and we know that chloriodomethanesulfonic acid can exist as enantiomers, which have the structures we have just made or drawn.



Others, we find, are superimposable, like these:



These molecules are achiral, and so we know that isopropyl chloride cannot exist as enantiomers.

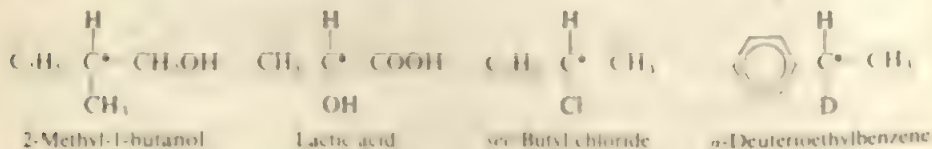
"I call any geometrical figure, or any group of points, *chiral*, and say it has *chirality*, if its image in a plane mirror, ideally realized, cannot be brought to coincide with itself."—Lord Kelvin, 1893.

In 1964, Cahn, Ingold, and Prelog (see p. 138) proposed that chemists use the terms "chiral" and "chirality" as defined by Kelvin. Based on the Greek word for "hand" (*cheir*), chirality means "handedness," in reference to that pair of non-superimposable mirror images we constantly have before us: our two hands. There has been widespread acceptance of Kelvin's terms, and they have largely displaced the earlier "dissymmetric" and "dissymmetry" (and the still earlier and less accurate "asymmetric" and "asymmetry"), although one must expect to encounter the older terms in the older chemical literature.

Whatever one calls it, it is non-superimposability-on-mirror-image that is the necessary and sufficient condition for enantiomerism; it is also a necessary but *not* sufficient condition for optical activity (see Sec. 4.13).

#### 4.10 The chiral center

So far, all the chiral molecules we have talked about happen to be of the kind CXYZ, that is, in each molecule there is a carbon (C\*) that holds four different groups.

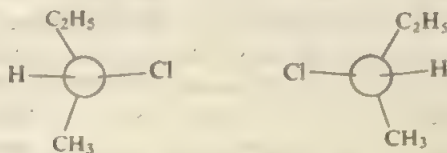


A carbon atom to which four different groups are attached is a **chiral center** (Sometimes it is called *chiral carbon*; when it is necessary to distinguish it from *chiral nitrogen*, *chiral phosphorus*, etc.)

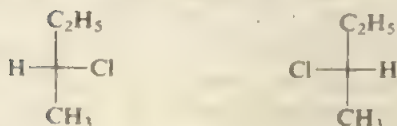
Many—but *not all*—molecules that contain a chiral center are chiral. Many—but *not all*—chiral molecules contain a chiral center. There are molecules that contain *no* chiral centers and yet are achiral (Sec. 4.18). (Such achiral molecules *always* contain *more than one* chiral center; if there is *only one* chiral center in a molecule, we can be certain that the molecule is chiral.) There are chiral molecules that contain *no* chiral centers (see for example Problem 8, p. 180).

The presence or absence of a chiral center is thus no criterion of chirality. However, most of the chiral molecules that we shall take up do contain chiral centers, and it will be useful for us to look for such centers; if we find a chiral center, then we should consider the *possibility* that the molecule is chiral, and hence can exist in enantiomeric forms. We shall later (Sec. 4.18) learn to recognize the kind of molecule that may be achiral in spite of the presence of chiral centers; such molecules contain more than one chiral center.

After becoming familiar with the use of models and of pictures of models, the student can make use of even simpler representations of molecules containing chiral centers, which can be drawn much faster. This is a more dangerous method, however, and must be used properly to give the right answers. We simply draw a cross and attach to the four ends the four groups that are attached to the chiral center. The chiral center is understood to be located where the lines cross. Chemists have agreed that such a diagram stands for a particular structure: *the horizontal lines represent bonds coming toward us out of the plane of the paper, whereas the vertical lines represent bonds going away from us behind the plane of the paper*. That is to say:



can be represented by



In testing the superimposability of two of these flat, two-dimensional representations of three-dimensional objects, we must follow a certain procedure and obey certain rules. First, we use these representations only for molecules that contain a chiral center. Second, we draw one of them, and then draw the other as its mirror image. (Drawing these formulas *at random* can lead to some interesting but quite *wrong* conclusions about isomer numbers.) Third, in our mind's eye we may slide these formulas or rotate them end for end, *but we may not remove them from the plane of the paper*. Used with caution, this method of representation is convenient, it is not foolproof, however, and in doubtful cases models or pictures of models should be used.

**Problem 4.5** Using cross formulas, decide which of the following compounds are chiral. Check your answers by use of stick-and-ball formulas, and finally by use of models.

- |                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| (a) 1-chloropentane          | (e) 2-chloro-2-methylpentane |
| (b) 2-chloropentane          | (f) 3-chloro-2-methylpentane |
| (c) 3-chloropentane          | (g) 4-chloro-2-methylpentane |
| (d) 1-chloro-2-methylpentane | (h) 1-chloro-2-bromobutane   |

**• Problem 4.6** (a) Neglecting stereoisomers for the moment, draw all isomers of formula  $C_5H_{10}DCl$ . (b) Decide, as in Problem 4.5, which of these are chiral.

### 4.11 Enantiomers

Isomers that are mirror images of each other are called **enantiomers**. The two different lactic acids whose models we made in Sec. 4.7 are enantiomers (Gr.: *enantio*-, opposite). So are the two 2-methyl-1-butanols, the two *sec*-butyl chlorides, etc. How do the properties of enantiomers compare?

**Enantiomers have identical physical properties, except for the direction of rotation of the plane of polarized light.** The two 2-methyl-1-butanols, for example,

	(+)-2-Methyl-1-butanol	(-)-2-Methyl-1-butanol (Fermentation Product)
Specific rotation	+5.90°	-5.90°
Boiling point	128.9°	128.9
Density	0.8193	0.8193
Refractive index	1.4107	1.4107

have identical melting points, boiling points, densities, refractive indices, and any other physical constant one might measure, except for this: one rotates plane-polarized light to the right, the other to the left. This fact is not surprising, since the interactions of both kinds of molecule with their fellows should be the same. Only the *direction* of rotation is different; the *amount* of rotation is the same, the specific rotation of one being +5.90°, the other -5.90°. It is reasonable that these molecules, being so similar, can rotate light by the same amount. The molecules are mirror images, and so are their properties: the mirror image of a clockwise rotation is a counterclockwise rotation—and of exactly the same *magnitude*.

**Enantiomers have identical chemical properties except toward optically active reagents.** The two lactic acids are not only acids, but acids of exactly the same strength; that is, dissolved in water at the same concentration, both ionize to exactly the same degree. The two 2-methyl-1-butanols not only form the same products—*alkenes* on treatment with hot sulfuric acid, *alkyl bromides* on treatment with HBr, *esters* on treatment with acetic acid—but also form them at exactly the same rate. We can see why this must be so: the atoms undergoing attack in each case are influenced in their reactivity by exactly the same combination of substituents. The reagent approaching either kind of molecule encounters the same environment, except, of course, that one environment is the mirror image of the other.

(There is only one way in which enantiomers may differ in their reactions with ordinary, optically inactive reagents: *sometimes* they give products that are not identical but enantiomeric—still, of course, at exactly the same rate. As we shall see, whether or not this is the case can be highly significant, both practically and theoretically.)

In the special case of a reagent that is itself optically active, on the other hand, the influences exerted on the reagent are *not* identical in the attack on the two enantiomers, and reaction rates will be different—so different, in some cases, that reaction with one isomer does not take place at all. In biological systems, for example, such stereochemical specificity is the rule rather than the exception, since the all-important catalysts, *enzymes*, and most of the compounds they work on, are optically active. The sugar (+)-glucose plays a unique role in animal metabolism (Sec. 28.3) and is the basis of a multimillion-dollar fermentation industry (Sec. 10.4); yet (-)-glucose is neither metabolized by animals nor fermented by yeasts. When the mold *Penicillium glaucum* feeds on a mixture of enantiomeric tartaric



acids, it consumes only the (+)-enantiomer and leaves (-)-tartaric acid behind. The hormonal activity of (-)-adrenaline is many times that of its enantiomer; only one stereoisomer of chloromycetin is an antibiotic. (+)-Ephedrine not only has no activity as a drug, but actually interferes with the action of its enantiomer. Among amino acids, only one asparagine and one leucine are sweet, and only one glutamic acid enhances the flavor of food. It is (-)-carvone that gives oil of spearmint its characteristic odor; yet the enantiomeric (+)-carvone is the essence of caraway.

Consider, as a crude analogy, a right and left hand of equal strength (the enantiomers) hammering a nail (an optically inactive reagent) or, alternatively, inserting a right-handed screw (an optically active reagent). Hammering requires exactly corresponding sets of muscles in the two hands, and can be done at identical rates. Inserting the screw uses different sets of muscles: the right thumb pushes, for example, whereas the left thumb pulls.

Or, let us consider reactivity in the most precise way we know: by the transition-state approach (Sec. 2.23).

Take first the reactions of two enantiomers with an optically inactive reagent. The reactants in both cases are of exactly the same energy: one enantiomer plus the reagent, and the other enantiomer plus the same reagent. The two transition states for the reactions are mirror images (they are enantiomeric), and hence are of exactly the same energy, too. Therefore, the energy differences between reactants and transition states—the  $E_{act}$ 's—are identical, and so are the rates of reaction.

Now take the reactions of two enantiomers with an optically *active* reagent. Again the reactants are of the same energy. The two transition states, however, are *not* mirror images of each other (they are diastereomeric, Sec. 4.17), and hence are of *different* energies; the  $E_{act}$ 's are different, and so are the rates of reaction.

The principle underlying all this is: enantiomers show different properties—physical or chemical—*only in a chiral medium*. Polarized light provides such a medium, and in it enantiomers differ in a physical property: direction of the rotation of the light. They may also differ in solubility in an optically active solvent, or in adsorption on an optically active surface. For enantiomers to react at different rates, the necessary chiral medium can be provided in a number of ways: by an optically active reagent; by a chiral solvent or the chiral surface of a catalyst; even—for some light-catalyzed reactions—by irradiation with circularly polarized light. For simplicity, we shall often use the term “optically active reagent” or “chiral reagent” in speaking of reaction under any of these chiral conditions. We shall use the term “optically inactive reagent” or “achiral reagent” or even “ordinary conditions” in speaking of reaction in the absence of a chiral medium.

## 4.12 The racemic modification

*A mixture of equal parts of enantiomers is called a racemic modification. A racemic modification is optically inactive: when enantiomers are mixed together, the rotation caused by a molecule of one isomer is exactly canceled by an equal and opposite rotation caused by a molecule of its enantiomer.*

The prefix  $\pm$  is used to specify the racemic nature of the particular sample, as, for example, ( $\pm$ )-lactic acid or ( $\pm$ )-2-methyl-1-butanol.

It is useful to compare a racemic modification with a compound whose molecules are superimposable on their mirror images, that is, with an achiral compound. They are both optically inactive, and for exactly the same reason. Because of the random distribution of the large number of molecules, for every molecule that the light encounters there is a second molecule, a mirror image of the

first, aligned just right to cancel the effect of the first one. In a racemic modification this second molecule happens to be an isomer of the first; for an achiral compound it is not an isomer, but another, identical molecule (Sec. 4.8).

(For an optically active substance uncontaminated by its enantiomer, we have seen, such cancellation of rotation cannot occur since no other molecule can serve as the mirror image of another, no matter how random the distribution.)

**Problem 4.7** To confirm the statements of the three preceding paragraphs, make models of: (a) a pair of enantiomers, e.g.,  $\text{CHClBrI}$ ; (b) a pair of identical achiral molecules, e.g.,  $\text{CH}_2\text{ClBr}$ ; (c) a pair of identical chiral molecules, e.g.,  $\text{CHClBrI}$ . (d) Which pairs are mirror images?

The identity of most physical properties of enantiomers has one consequence of great practical significance. They cannot be separated by ordinary methods: not by fractional distillation, because their boiling points are identical; not by fractional crystallization, because their solubilities in a given solvent are identical (unless the solvent is optically active); not by chromatography, because they are held equally strongly on a given adsorbent (unless it is optically active). The separation of a racemic modification into enantiomers—the *resolution* of a racemic modification—is therefore a special kind of job, and requires a special kind of approach (Sec. 4.28).

The first resolution was, of course, the one Pasteur carried out with his hand lens and tweezers (Sec. 4.6). But this method can almost never be used, since racemic modifications seldom form mixtures of crystals recognizable as mirror images. Indeed, even sodium ammonium tartrate does not, unless it crystallizes at a temperature below  $28^\circ$ . Thus partial credit for Pasteur's discovery has been given to the cool Parisian climate—and, of course, to the availability of tartaric acid from the winemakers of France.

The method of resolution nearly always used—one also discovered by Pasteur—involves the use of optically active reagents, and is described in Sec. 4.28.

Although popularly known chiefly for his great work in bacteriology and medicine, Pasteur was by training a chemist, and his work in chemistry alone would have earned him a position as an outstanding scientist.

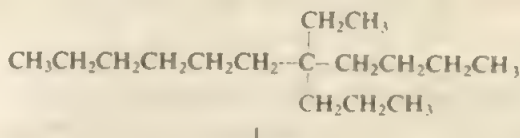
### 4.13 Optical activity: a closer look

We have seen (Sec. 4.8) that, like enantiomerism, optical activity results from—and *only* from—chirality—the non-superimposability of certain molecules on their mirror images. Whenever we observe (molecular) optical activity, we know we are dealing with chiral molecules.

Is the reverse true? Whenever we deal with chiral molecules—with compounds that exist as enantiomers—must we always observe optical activity? No. We have just seen that a 50:50 mixture of enantiomers is optically inactive. Clearly, if we are to *observe* optical activity, the material we are dealing with must contain an *excess* of one enantiomer—enough of an excess that the net optical rotation can be detected by the particular polarimeter at hand.

Furthermore, this excess of one enantiomer must persist long enough for the optical activity to be measured. If the enantiomers are rapidly interconverted, then before we could measure the optical activity due to one enantiomer, it would be converted into an equilibrium mixture—which, since enantiomers are of exactly equal stability, must be a 50:50 mixture and optically inactive.

Even if all these conditions are met, the magnitude—and hence the detectability—of the optical rotation depends on the structure of the particular molecule concerned. In compound I, for example, the four groups attached to the chiral center differ only in chain length.



Ethyl-*n*-propyl-*n*-butyl-*n*-hexylmethane

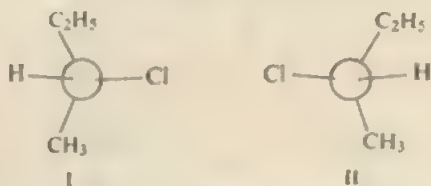
It has been calculated that this compound should have the tiny specific rotation of 0.00001—far below the limits of detection by any existing polarimeter. In 1965, enantiomerically pure samples of both enantiomers of I were prepared (see Problem 19, p. 1291), and each was found to be optically inactive.

At our present level of study, the matter of speed of interconversion will give us no particular trouble. Nearly all the chiral molecules we encounter in this book lie at either of two extremes, which we shall easily recognize: (a) molecules—like those described in this chapter—which owe their chirality to chiral centers; here interconversion of enantiomers (*configurational* enantiomers) is so slow—because bonds have to be broken—that we need not concern ourselves at all about interconversion; (b) molecules whose enantiomeric forms (*conformational* enantiomers) are interconvertible simply by rotations about single bonds; here—for the compounds we shall encounter—interconversion is so fast that ordinarily we need not concern ourselves at all about the existence of the enantiomers.

#### 4.14 Configuration

*The arrangement of atoms that characterizes a particular stereoisomer is called its configuration.*

Using the test of superimposability, we conclude, for example, that there are two stereoisomeric *sec*-butyl chlorides, their *configurations* are I and II. Let us say



*sec*-Butyl chloride

that, by methods we shall take up later (Sec. 4.28), we have obtained in the laboratory samples of two compounds of formula  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CHClCH}_3$ . We find that one rotates the plane of polarized light to the right, and the other to the left; we put them into two bottles, one labeled “(+)-*sec*-butyl chloride” and the other “(–)-*sec*-butyl chloride.”

We have made two models to represent the two configurations of this chloride. We have isolated two isomeric compounds of the proper formula. Now the question arises, which configuration does each isomer have? Does the (+)-isomer, say, have



configuration I or configuration II? How do we know which structural formula, I or II, to draw on the label of each bottle? That is to say, how do we *assign configuration*?

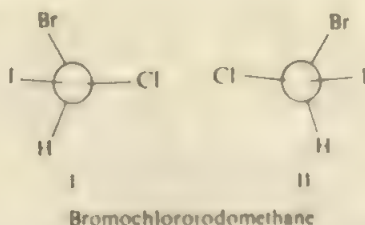
Until 1951 the question of configuration could not be answered in an absolute sense for any optically active compound. But in that year J. M. Bijvoet—most fittingly Director of the van't Hoff Laboratory at the University of Utrecht (Sec. 4.2)—reported that, using a special kind of x-ray analysis (the method of anomalous scattering), he had determined the actual arrangement in space of the atoms of an optically active compound. The compound was a salt of (+)-tartaric acid, the same acid that—almost exactly 100 years before—had led Pasteur to his discovery of optical isomerism. Over the years prior to 1951, the relationships between the configuration of (+)-tartaric acid and the configurations of hundreds of optically active compounds had been worked out (by methods that we shall take up later, Sec. 4.24); when the configuration of (+)-tartaric acid became known, these other configurations, too, immediately became known. (In the case of the *sec*-butyl chlorides, for example, the (–)-isomer is known to have configuration I, and the (+)-isomer configuration II.)

#### 4.15 Specification of configuration: *R* and *S*

Now, a further problem arises. How can we specify a particular configuration in some simpler, more convenient way than by always having to draw its picture? The most generally useful way yet suggested is the use of the prefixes *R* and *S*. According to a procedure proposed by R. S. Cahn (The Chemical Society, London), Sir Christopher Ingold (University College, London), and V. Prelog (Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule, Zurich), two steps are involved.

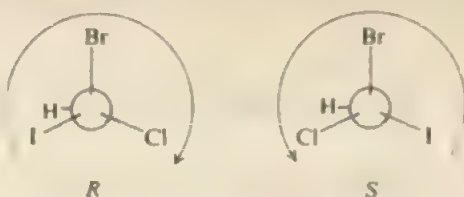
*Step 1.* Following a set of *sequence rules* (Sec. 4.16), we assign a sequence of priority to the four atoms or groups of atoms—that is, the four *ligands*—attached to the chiral center.

In the case of  $\text{CHClBrI}$ , for example, the four atoms attached to the chiral center are all different and priority depends simply on atomic number, the atom of higher number having higher priority. Thus I, Br, Cl, H.



*Step 2.* We visualize the molecule oriented so that the ligand of *lowest* priority is directed *away* from us, and observe the arrangement of the remaining ligands. If, in proceeding from the ligand of highest priority to the ligand of second priority and thence to the third, our eye travels in a clockwise direction, the configuration is specified *R* (Latin: *rectus*, right). If counterclockwise, the configuration is specified *S* (Latin: *sinister*, left).

Thus, configurations I and II are viewed like this:



and are specified *R* and *S*, respectively.

A complete name for an optically active compound reveals, if they are known, both configuration and direction of rotation, as, for example, (*S*)-(+)-*sec*-butyl chloride. A racemic modification can be specified by the prefix *RS*, as, for example, (*RS*)-*sec*-butyl chloride.

(Specification of compounds containing more than one chiral center is discussed in Sec. 4.19.)

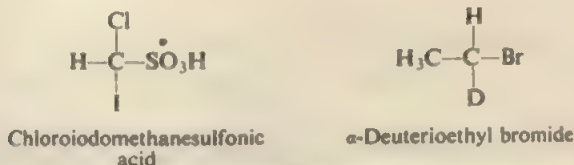
We must not, of course, confuse the direction of optical rotation of a compound—a physical property of a real substance, like melting point or boiling point—with the direction in which our eye happens to travel when we imagine a molecule held in an arbitrary manner. So far as we are concerned, unless we happen to know what has been established experimentally for a specific compound, we have no idea whether (+) or (−) rotation is associated with the (*R*)- or the (*S*)-configuration.

## 4.16 Sequence rules

For ease of reference and for convenience in reviewing, we shall set down here those sequence rules we shall have need of. The student should study Rules 1 and 2 now, and Rule 3 later when the need for it arises.

**Sequence Rule 1.** If the four atoms attached to the chiral center are all different, priority depends on atomic number, with the atom of higher atomic number getting higher priority. If two atoms are isotopes of the same element, the atom of higher mass number has the higher priority.

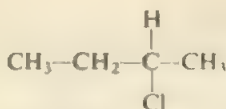
For example, in chloriodomethanesulfonic acid the sequence is I, Cl, S, H; in  $\alpha$ -deuterioethyl bromide it is Br, C, D, H.



**Problem 4.8** Make models and then draw both stick-and-ball pictures and cross formulas for the enantiomers of: (a) chloriodomethanesulfonic acid and (b)  $\alpha$ -deuterioethyl bromide. Label each as *R* or *S*.

**Sequence Rule 2.** If the relative priority of two groups cannot be decided by Rule 1, it shall be determined by a similar comparison of the next atoms in the groups (and so on, if necessary, working outward from the chiral center). That is to say, if two atoms attached to the chiral center are the same, we compare the atoms attached to each of these first atoms.

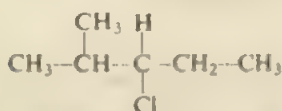
For example, take *sec*-butyl chloride, in which two of the atoms attached to the chiral center are themselves carbon. In  $\text{CH}_3$ , the second atoms are H, H, H;



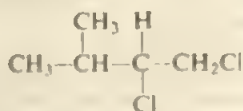
*sec*-Butyl chloride

in  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , they are C, H, H. Since carbon has a higher atomic number than hydrogen,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$  has the higher priority. A complete sequence of priority for *sec*-butyl chloride is therefore Cl,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ ,  $\text{CH}_3$ , H.

In 3-chloro-2-methylpentane the C, C, H of isopropyl takes priority over the C, H, H of ethyl, and the complete sequence of priority is Cl, isopropyl, ethyl, H.



3-Chloro-2-methylpentane



1,2-Dichloro-3-methylbutane

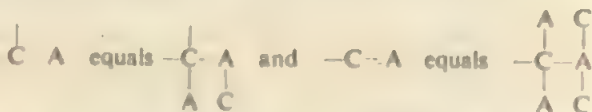
In 1,2-dichloro-3-methylbutane the Cl, H, H of  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$  takes priority over the C, C, H of isopropyl. Chlorine has a higher atomic number than carbon, and the fact that there are *two* C's and only *one* Cl does not matter. (One higher number is worth more than two— or three— of a lower number.)

**Problem 4.9** Into what sequence of priority must these alkyl groups always fall:  $\text{CH}_3$ ,  $1^\circ$ ,  $2^\circ$ ,  $3^\circ$ ?

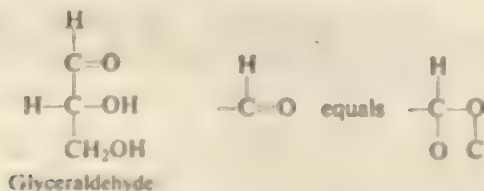
**Problem 4.10** Specify as *R* or *S* each of the enantiomers you drew: (a) in Problem 4.5 (p. 133), (b) in Problem 4.6 (p. 133).

**Sequence Rule 3.** (One should defer study of this rule until one needs it.)

Where there is a double or triple bond, both atoms are considered to be duplicated or triplicated. Thus



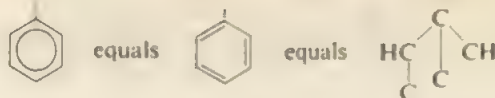
For example, in glyceraldehyde the OH group has the highest priority of all.



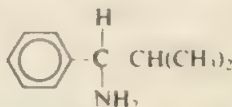
and the O, O, H of  $\text{---CHO}$  takes priority over the O, H, H of  $\text{---CH}_2\text{OH}$ . The complete sequence is then  $\text{---OH}$ ,  $\text{---CHO}$ ,  $\text{---CH}_2\text{OH}$ , H.



The phenyl group,  $C_6H_5-$ , is handled as though it had one of the Kekulé structures:

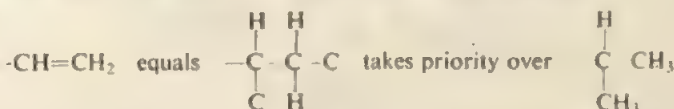


In 1-amino-2-methyl-1-phenylpropane, for example, the C, C, C of phenyl takes



priority over the C, C, H of isopropyl, but not over N, which has a higher atomic number. The entire sequence is then  $NH_2$ ,  $C_6H_5$ ,  $C_3H_7$ , H.

The vinyl group,  $CH_2=CH-$ , takes priority over isopropyl.



Following the "senior" branch,  $-CH_2-C$ , we arrive at C in vinyl as compared with H in the  $-CH_2-H$  of isopropyl.

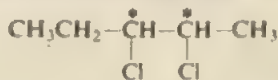
**Problem 4.11** Draw and specify as *R* or *S* the enantiomers (if any) of:

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| (a) 3-chloro-1-pentene              | (e) methylethyl- <i>n</i> -propylisopropylmethane |
| (b) 3-chloro-4-methyl-1-pentene     | (f) $C_6H_5CHOHCOOH$ , mandelic acid              |
| (c) $HOOCCH_2CHOHCOOH$ , malic acid | (g) $CH_3CH(NH_2)COOH$ , alanine                  |
| (d) $C_6H_5CH(CH_3)NH_2$            |   |

## 4.17 Diastereomers

Next, we must learn what stereoisomers are possible for compounds whose molecules contain, not just one, but *more than one* chiral center. (In Chap. 28, we shall be dealing regularly with molecules that contain *five* chiral centers.)

Let us start with 2,3-dichloropentane. This compound contains two chiral

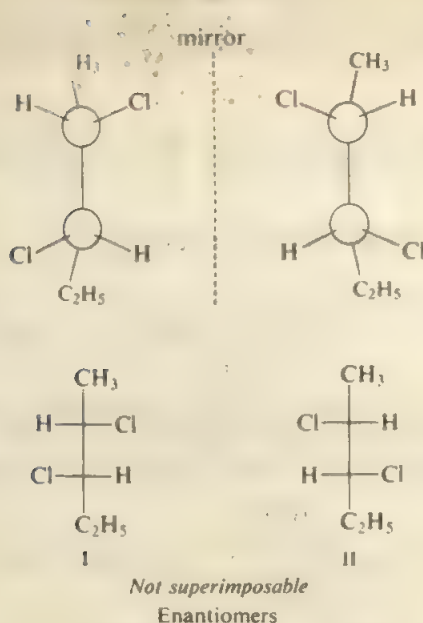


2,3-Dichloropentane

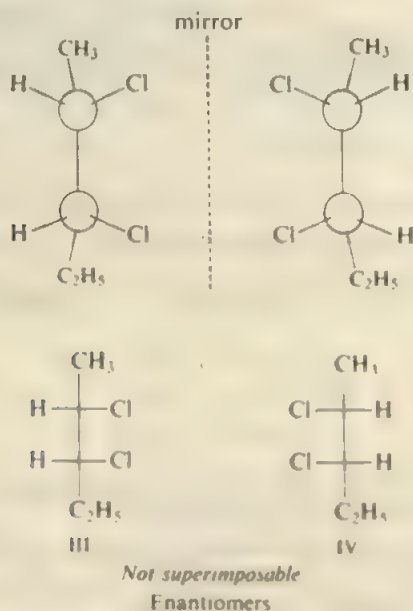
centers, C 2 and C 3. (What four groups are attached to each of these carbon atoms?) How many stereoisomers are possible?

Using models, let us first make structure I and its mirror image II, and see if these are superimposable. We find that I and II are not superimposable, and hence must be enantiomers. (As before, we may represent the structures by pictures, and mentally try to superimpose these. Or, we may use the simple "cross" representations, being careful, as before (Sec. 4.10), not to remove the drawings from the plane of the paper or blackboard.)

Next, we try to interconvert I and II by rotations about carbon-carbon bonds. We find that they are not interconvertible in this way, and hence each of them is capable of retaining its identity and, if separated from its mirror image, of showing optical activity.



Are there any other stereoisomers of 2,3-dichloropentane? We can make structure III, which we find to be non-superimposable on either I or II; it is not, of



course, the mirror image of either. What is the relationship between III and I? Between III and II? They are stereoisomers but not enantiomers. *Stereoisomers that are not mirror images of each other are called **diastereomers**.* Compound III is a diastereomer of I, and similarly of II.

Now, is III chiral? Using models, we make its mirror image, structure IV, and find that this is not superimposable on (or interconvertible with) III. Structures III

and IV represent a second pair of enantiomers. Like III, compound IV is a diastereomer of I and of II.

How do the properties of diastereomers compare?

**Diastereomers have similar chemical properties**, since they are members of the same family. Their chemical properties are *not identical*, however. In the reaction of two diastereomers with a given reagent, neither the two sets of reactants nor the two transition states are mirror images, and hence—except by sheer coincidence—will not be of equal energies.  $E_{act}$ 's will be different and so will the rates of reaction.

**Diastereomers have different physical properties**: different melting points, boiling points, solubilities in a given solvent, densities, refractive indexes, and so on. Diastereomers differ in specific rotation; they may have the same or opposite signs of rotation, or some may be inactive.

As a result of their differences in boiling point and in solubility, they can, in principle at least, be separated from each other by fractional distillation or fractional crystallization; as a result of differences in molecular shape and polarity, they differ in adsorption, and can be separated by chromatography.

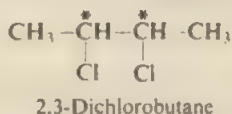
Given a mixture of all four stereoisomeric 2,3-dichloropentanes, we could separate it, by distillation, for example, into two fractions but no further. One fraction would be the racemic modification of I plus II; the other fraction would be the racemic modification of III plus IV. Further separation would require *resolution* of the racemic modifications by use of optically active reagents (Sec. 4.28).

Thus the presence of two chiral centers can lead to the existence of as many as four stereoisomers. For compounds containing three chiral centers, there could be as many as eight stereoisomers; for compounds containing four chiral centers, there could be as many as sixteen stereoisomers, and so on. The maximum number of stereoisomers that can exist is equal to  $2^n$ , where  $n$  is the number of chiral centers. (In any case where *meso* compounds exist, as discussed in the following section, there will be fewer than this maximum number.)

The sugar (+)-glucose is by far the most important and abundant of the carbohydrates (Chap. 28). It is the compound oxidized in our cells to provide energy, it is the building block making up starch, from which our food ultimately comes, and cellulose, the framework of the plants that synthesize this starch. Glucose contains five chiral centers; this could—and does—give rise to  $2^5$  or 32 stereoisomers. Of these only *one*,  $\alpha$ -D-glucose, is the unit of starch, and only one,  $\beta$ -D-glucose, is the unit of cellulose.

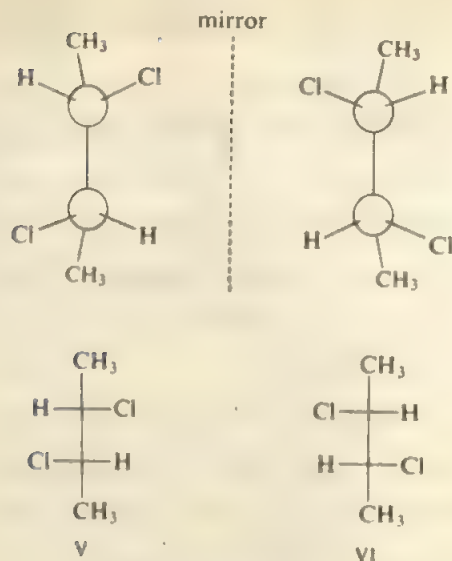
#### 4.18 Meso structures

Now let us look at 2,3-dichlorobutane, which also has two chiral centers. Does this compound, too, exist in four stereoisomeric forms?

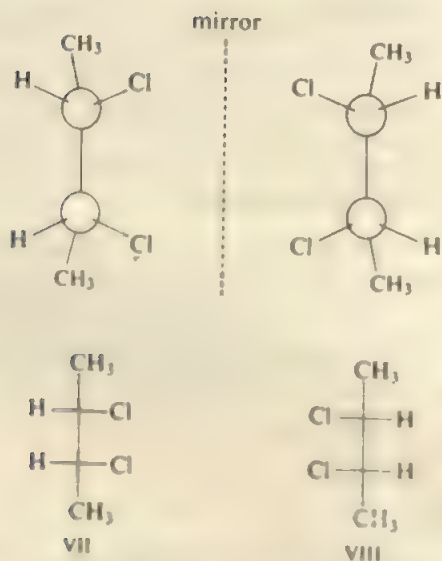


Using models as before, we arrive first at the two structures V and VI. These are mirror images that are not superimposable or interconvertible; they are therefore enantiomers, and each should be capable of optical activity.





*Not superimposable*  
Enantiomers

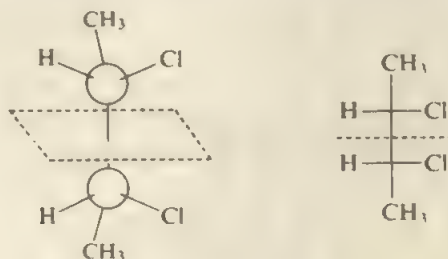


*Superimposable*  
A *meso* compound

Next, we make VII, which we find to be a diastereomer of V and of VI. We now have three stereoisomers; is there a fourth? No. If we make VIII, the mirror image of VII, we find the two to be superimposable, turned end-for-end. VII coincides in every respect with VIII. In spite of its chiral centers, VII is not chiral. It cannot exist in two enantiomeric forms, and it cannot be optically active. It is called a *meso* compound.

A **meso compound** is one whose molecules are superimposable on their mirror images even though they contain chiral centers. A meso compound is optically inactive for the same reason as any other compound whose molecules are achiral: the rotation caused by any one molecule is canceled by an equal and opposite rotation caused by another molecule that is the mirror image of the first (Sec. 4.8).

We can often recognize a meso structure on sight by the fact that (in at least one of its conformations) one half of the molecule is the mirror image of the other half. This can be seen for *meso*-2,3-dichlorobutane by imagining the molecule to be



cut by a plane lying where the dotted line is drawn. The molecule has a *plane of symmetry*, and cannot be chiral. (*Caution:* If we do not see a plane of symmetry, however, this does not necessarily mean that the molecule is chiral.)

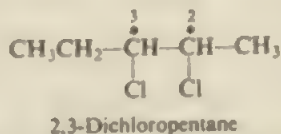
**Problem 4.12** Draw stereochemical formulas for all the possible stereoisomers of the following compounds. Label pairs of enantiomers, and *meso* compounds. Tell which isomers, if separated from all other stereoisomers, will be optically active. Pick out several examples of diastereomers.

- |                                    |                                 |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| (a) 1,2-dibromopropane             | (e) 1,2,3,4-tetrabromobutane    |
| (b) 3,4-dibromo-3,4-dimethylhexane | (f) 2-bromo-3-chlorobutane      |
| (c) 2,4-dibromopentane             | (g) 1-chloro-2-methylbutane     |
| (d) 2,3,4-tribromohexane           | (h) 1,3-dichloro-2-methylbutane |

#### 4.19 Specification of configuration: more than one chiral center

Now, how do we specify the configuration of compounds which, like these, contain more than one chiral center? They present no special problem; we simply specify the configuration about *each* of the chiral centers, and by use of numbers tell which specification refers to which carbon.

Consider, for example, the 2,3-dichloropentanes (Sec. 4.17). We take each of the chiral centers, C-2 and C-3, in turn—ignoring for the moment the existence of

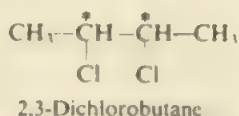


the other—and follow the steps of Sec. 4.15 and use the Sequence Rules of Sec.

4.16. In order of priority, the four ligands attached to C-2 are Cl,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CHCl}-$ ,  $\text{CH}_3-$ , H. On C-3 they are Cl,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHCl}-$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2-$ , H. (Why is  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHCl}-$  "senior" to  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2-$ ?)

Taking in our hands—or in our mind's eye—a model of the particular stereoisomer we are interested in, we focus our attention first on C-2 (ignoring C-3), and then on C-3 (ignoring C-2). Stereoisomer I (p. 142), for example, we specify (2*S*,3*S*)-2,3-dichloropentane. Similarly, II is (2*R*,3*R*), III is (2*S*,3*R*), and IV is (2*R*,3*S*). These specifications help us to analyze the relationships among the stereoisomers. As enantiomers, I and II have opposite—that is, mirror-image—configurations about both chiral centers: 2*S*,3*S* and 2*R*,3*R*. As diastereomers, I and III have opposite configurations about one chiral center, and the same configuration about the other: 2*S*,3*S* and 2*S*,3*R*.

We would handle 2,3-dichlorobutane (Sec. 4.18) in exactly the same way. Here it happens that the two chiral centers occupy equivalent positions along the chain,



and so it is not necessary to use numbers in the specifications. Enantiomers V and VI (p. 144) are specified (*S,S*)- and (*R,R*)-2,3-dichlorobutane, respectively. The *meso* isomer, VII, can, of course, be specified either as (*R,S*)- or (*S,R*)-2,3-dichlorobutane—the absence of numbers emphasizing the equivalence of the two specifications. The mirror-image relationship between the two ends of this molecule is consistent with the *opposite* designations of *R* and *S* for the two chiral centers. (Not all (*R,S*)-isomers, of course, are *meso* structures—only those whose two halves are chemically equivalent.)

**Problem 4.13** Give the *R/S* specification for each stereoisomer you drew in Problem 4.12 (p. 145).

## 4.20 Conformational isomers

In Sec. 3.5, we saw that there are several different staggered conformations of *n*-butane, each of which lies at the bottom of an energy valley—at an *energy minimum*—separated from the others by energy hills (see Fig. 3.4, p. 85). *Different conformations corresponding to energy minima are called conformational isomers, or conformers.* Since conformational isomers differ from each other only in the way their atoms are oriented in space, they, too, are stereoisomers. Like stereoisomers of any kind, a pair of conformers can either be mirror images of each other or not. *n*-Butane exists as three conformational isomers: one *anti* and two *gauche* (Sec. 3.5). The *gauche* conformers, II and III, are mirror images of each other, and hence are (conformational) enantiomers. Conformers I and II (or I and III) are *not* mirror images of each other, and hence are (conformational) diastereomers.

Although the barrier to rotation in *n*-butane is a little higher than in ethane, it is still low enough that—at ordinary temperatures, at least—interconversion of conformers is easy and rapid. Equilibrium exists, and favors a higher population



of the more stable *anti* conformer; the populations of the two *gauche* conformers—mirror images, and hence of exactly equal stability—are, of course, equal. Put differently, any given molecule spends the greater part of its time as the *anti* conformer, and divides the smaller part equally between the two *gauche* conformers. As a result of the rapid interconversion, these isomers cannot be separated.

**Problem 4.14** Return to Problem 3.4 (p. 85) and, for each compound: (a) tell how many conformers there are, and label pairs of (conformational) enantiomers; (b) give the order of relative abundance of the various conformers.

Easy interconversion is characteristic of nearly every set of conformational isomers, and is the quality in which such isomers differ most from the kind of stereoisomers we have encountered so far in this chapter. This difference in interconvertibility is due to a difference in height of the energy barrier separating stereoisomers, which is, in turn, due to a difference in origin of the barrier. By definition, interconversion of conformational isomers involves rotation about single bonds; the rotational barrier is—in most cases—a very low one and interconversion is easy and fast. The other kind of stereoisomers, *configurational isomers*, or *inversional isomers*, differ from one another in configuration about a chiral center. Interconversion here involves the breaking of a covalent bond, for which there is a very high barrier: 50 kcal/mol or more (Sec. 1.14). Interconversion is difficult, and—unless one deliberately provides conditions to bring it about—is negligibly slow.

Interconvertibility of stereoisomers is of great practical significance because it limits their *isolability*. Hard-to-interconvert stereoisomers can be separated (with special methods, of course, for resolution of enantiomers) and studied individually; among other things, their optical activity can be measured. Easy-to-interconvert isomers cannot be separated, and single isolated isomers cannot be studied; optical activity cannot be observed, since any chiral molecules are present only as non-resolvable racemic modifications.

Our general approach to stereoisomers involves, then, two stages; first, we test the *superimposability* of possible isomeric structures, and then we test their *interconvertibility*. Both tests are best carried out with models. We make models of the two molecules and, without allowing any rotations about single bonds, we try to superimpose them: if they cannot be superimposed, they represent isomers. Next, we allow the models all possible rotations about single bonds, and repeatedly try to superimpose them: if they still cannot be superimposed, they are non-interconvertible, and represent *configurational isomers*; but if they can be superimposed after rotation, they are interconvertible and represent *conformational isomers*.

In dealing with those aspects of stereochemistry that depend on isolation of stereoisomers—isomer number or optical activity, for example, or study of the reactions of a single stereoisomer—we can ignore the existence of easy-to-interconvert isomers, which means *most* conformational isomers. For convenience the following “ground rule” will hold for discussions and problems in this book: unless specifically indicated otherwise, the terms “stereoisomers,” “enantiomers,” and “diastereomers” will refer only to *configurational isomers*, including *geometric isomers* (Sec. 7.6), and will exclude conformational isomers. The latter will be referred to as “conformational isomers,” “conformers,” “conformational enantiomers,” and “conformational diastereomers.”

There is no sharp boundary between easy-to-interconvert and hard-to-interconvert stereoisomers. Although we can be sure that interconversion of configurational isomers will be hard, we cannot be sure that interconversion of conformational isomers will be easy. Depending upon the size and nature of substituents, the barrier to rotation about single bonds can be of any height, from the low one in ethane to one comparable to that for breaking a covalent bond. Some conformational isomers exist that are readily isolated, kept, and studied; indeed, study of such isomers (*atropisomers*) makes up a large and extremely important part of stereochemistry, one which, unfortunately, we shall not be able to take up in this beginning book. Other conformational isomers exist that can be isolated, not at ordinary temperatures, but at lower temperatures, where the average collision energy is lower. The conformational isomers that we shall encounter in this book, however, have low rotational barriers, and we may assume—until we learn otherwise—that when we classify stereoisomers as configurational or conformational, we at the same time classify them as hard-to-interconvert or easy-to-interconvert.

**Problem 4.15** At low temperatures, where collision energies are small, two isomeric forms of the badly crowded  $\text{CHBr}_2\text{CHBr}_2$  have been isolated by crystallization. (a) Give a formula or formulas (Newman projections) corresponding to each of the separable forms. (b) Which, if either, of the materials, as actually isolated at low temperatures, would be optically active? Explain.

## 4.21 Reactions involving stereoisomers

So far, our study of stereochemistry has been limited chiefly to finding out what the various kinds of stereoisomers are, how to predict their existence, and how to name and classify them. We have compared their properties, but only in a very general way.

Now let us go on from the *existence* of stereoisomers, and look at their *involvement* in chemical reactions: reactions in which stereoisomers are *formed*, and reactions in which stereoisomers are *consumed*; reactions in which the reagent is of the ordinary (i.e., optically inactive) kind and those in which the reagent is optically active.

We shall take up:

- (a) the conversion of an achiral molecule into a chiral molecule, with the generation of a chiral center;
- (b) reactions of chiral molecules in which bonds to the chiral center are not broken, and see how such reactions can be used to relate the configuration of one compound to that of another;
- (c) reactions of the kind in (b) in which a second chiral center is generated;
- (d) reactions of chiral compounds with optically active reagents.

Then we shall examine the stereochemistry of a reaction we have already studied—free-radical halogenation of alkanes—and see how stereochemistry can be used to get information about reaction mechanism. In doing this, we shall take up:

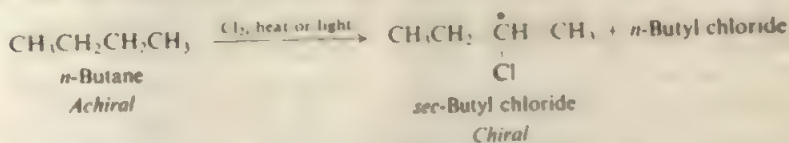
- (e) a reaction of a chiral compound in which a bond to a chiral center is broken.

Finally, we shall

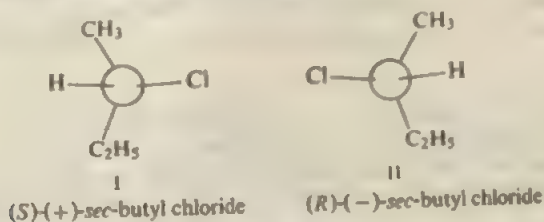
- (f) learn how to recognize stereochemically non-equivalent parts of a molecule—just as an optically active reagent can—and, in doing this, become acquainted with the concept of *heterotopic* ligands and faces.

## 4.22 Generation of a chiral center. Synthesis and optical activity

One of the products of chlorination of *n*-butane is the chiral compound, *sec*-butyl chloride. It can exist as two enantiomers, I and II, which are specified

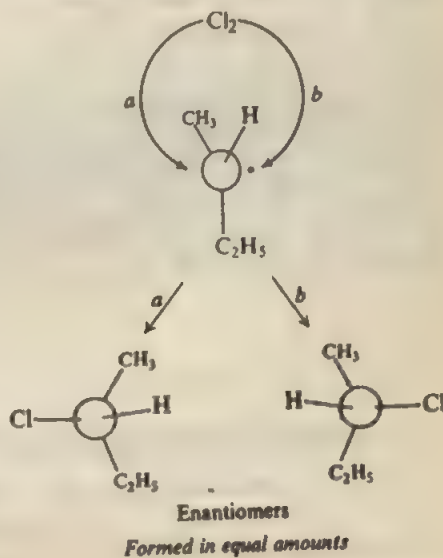


(Sec. 4.16) as *S* and *R*, respectively.



Each enantiomer should, of course, be optically active. Now, if we were to put the *sec*-butyl chloride actually prepared by the chlorination of *n*-butane into a polarimeter, would it rotate the plane of polarized light? The answer is *no*, because prepared as described it would consist of the racemic modification. The next question is: *why is the racemic modification formed?*

In the first step of the reaction, a chlorine atom abstracts hydrogen to yield hydrogen chloride and a *sec*-butyl free radical. The carbon that carries the odd electron in the free radical is  $sp^2$ -hybridized (trigonal, Sec. 2.22), and hence a part of the molecule is *flat*, the trigonal carbon and the three atoms attached to it lying in the same plane. In the second step, the free radical abstracts chlorine from a chlorine molecule to yield *sec*-butyl chloride. But chlorine may become attached to either face of the flat radical, and, depending upon which face, yield either of two products: *R* or *S* (see Fig. 4.3). Since the chance of attachment to one face is exactly



**Figure 4.3.** Generation of a chiral center. Chlorine becomes attached to either face of flat free radical, via (a) or (b), to give enantiomers, and in equal amounts.



the same as for attachment to the other face, the enantiomers are obtained in exactly equal amounts. The product is the racemic modification.

If we were to apply the approach just illustrated to the synthesis of any compound whatsoever—and on the basis of any mechanism, correct or incorrect—we would arrive at the same conclusion: as long as neither the starting material nor the reagent (nor the environment) is optically active, we should obtain an optically inactive product. At some stage of the reaction sequence, there will be two alternative paths, one of which yields one enantiomer and the other the opposite enantiomer. The two paths will always be equivalent, and selection between them *random*. The facts agree with these predictions. **Synthesis of chiral compounds from achiral reactants always yields the racemic modification.** This is simply one aspect of the more general rule: **optically inactive reactants yield optically inactive products.**

**Problem 4.16** Show in detail why racemic *sec*-butyl chloride would be obtained if: (a) the *sec*-butyl radical were not flat, but pyramidal; (b) chlorination did not involve a free *sec*-butyl radical at all, but proceeded by a mechanism in which a chlorine atom displaced a hydrogen atom, taking the position on the carbon atom formerly occupied by that hydrogen.

To purify the *sec*-butyl chloride obtained by chlorination of *n*-butane, we would carry out a fractional distillation. But since the enantiomeric *sec*-butyl chlorides have exactly the same boiling point, they cannot be separated, and are collected in the same distillation fraction. If recrystallization is attempted, there can again be no separation since their solubilities in every (optically inactive) solvent are identical. It is easy to see, then, that whenever a racemic modification is *formed* in a reaction, we will *isolate* (by ordinary methods) a racemic modification.

If an ordinary chemical synthesis yields a racemic modification, and if this cannot be separated by our usual methods of distillation, crystallization, etc., how do we know that the product obtained *is* a racemic modification? It is optically inactive; how do we know that it is actually made up of a mixture of two optically active substances? The separation of enantiomers (called *resolution*) can be accomplished by special methods; these involve the use of optically active reagents, and will be discussed later (Sec. 4.28).

**Problem 4.17** Isopentane is allowed to undergo free-radical chlorination, and the reaction mixture is separated by careful fractional distillation. (a) How many fractions of formula  $C_5H_{11}Cl$  would you expect to collect? (b) Draw structural formulas, stereochemical where pertinent, for the compounds making up each fraction. Specify each enantiomer as *R* or *S*. (c) Which, if any, of the fractions, as collected, would show optical activity? (d) Account in detail just as was done above—for the optical activity or inactivity of each fraction.

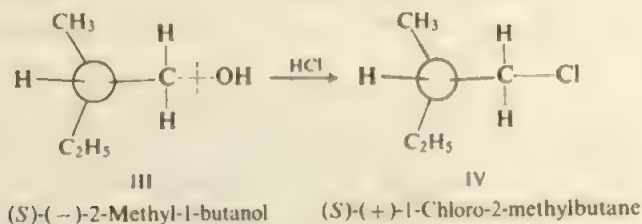
## 4.23 Reactions of chiral molecules. Bond breaking

Having made a chiral compound, *sec*-butyl chloride, let us see what happens when it, in turn, undergoes free-radical chlorination. A number of isomeric dichlorobutanes are formed, corresponding to attack at various positions in the



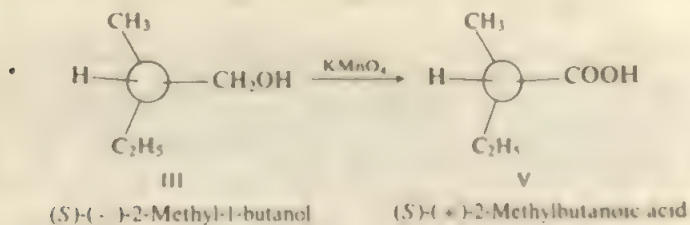
known, since they had already been related by chemical methods to (+)-tartaric acid. Most of these relationships were established by application of the axiom given above; that is, *the configurational relationship between two optically active compounds can be determined by converting one into the other by reactions that do not involve breaking of a bond to a chiral center.*

Let us take as an example (–)-2-methyl-1-butanol (the enantiomer found in fusel oil) and accept, for the moment, that it has configuration III, which we would specify *S*. We treat this alcohol with hydrogen chloride and obtain the alkyl chloride, 1-chloro-2-methylbutane. Without knowing the mechanism of this reac-



tion, we can see that the carbon–oxygen bond is the one that is broken. *No bond to the chiral center is broken*, and therefore configuration is retained, with  $-\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$  occupying the same relative position in the product that was occupied by  $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  in the reactant. We put the chloride into a tube, place this tube in a polarimeter, and find that the plane of polarized light is rotated to the right; that is, the product is (+)-1-chloro-2-methylbutane. Since (–)-2-methyl-1-butanol has configuration III, (+)-1-chloro-2-methylbutane must have configuration IV.

Or, we oxidize (–)-2-methyl-1-butanol with potassium permanganate, obtain the acid 2-methylbutanoic acid, and find that this rotates light to the right. Again, no bond to the chiral center is broken, and we assign configuration V to (+)-2-methylbutanoic acid.



We can nearly always tell whether or not a bond to a chiral center is broken by simple inspection of the formulas of the reactant and product, as we have done in these cases, and without a knowledge of the reaction mechanism. We must be aware of the possibility, however, that a bond may break and re-form during the course of a reaction without this being evident on the surface. This kind of thing does not happen at random, but in certain specific situations which an organic chemist learns to recognize. Indeed, stereochemistry plays a leading role in this learning process. One of the best ways to detect hidden bond-breaking is so to design the experiment that if such breaking occurs, it must involve a chiral center.

But how do we know in the first place that (–)-2-methyl-1-butanol has configuration III? Its configuration was related in this same manner to that of



another compound, and that one to the configuration of still another, and so on, going back ultimately to (+)-tartaric acid and Bijvoet's x-ray analysis.

We say that the (–)-2-methyl-1-butanol, the (+)-chloride, and the (+)-acid have *similar* (or the *same*) configurations. The enantiomers of these compounds, the (+)-alcohol, (–)-chloride, and (–)-acid, form another set of compounds with similar configurations. The (–)-alcohol and, for example, the (–)-chloride are said to have *opposite* configurations. As we shall find, we are usually more interested in knowing whether two compounds have similar or opposite configurations than in knowing what the actual configuration of either compound actually is. That is to say, we are more interested in *relative* configurations than in *absolute* configurations.

In this set of compounds with similar configurations, we notice that two are dextrorotatory and the third is levorotatory. The sign of rotation is important as a means of keeping track of a particular isomer—just as we might use boiling point or refractive index to tell us whether we have *n*-butane or isobutane, *now that their structures have been assigned*—but the fact that two compounds happen to have the same sign or opposite sign of rotation means little; they may or may not have similar configurations.

The three compounds all happen to be specified as *S*, but this is simply because  $-\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$  and  $-\text{COOH}$  happen to have the same relative priority as  $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ . If we were to replace the chlorine with deuterium (*Problem*: How could this be done?), the product would be specified *R*, yet obviously it would have the same configuration as the alcohol, halide, and acid. Indeed, looking back to *sec*-butyl chloride and 1,2-dichlorobutane, we see that the similar configurations I and II are specified differently, one *S* and the other *R*; here, a group ( $-\text{CH}_3$ ) that has a lower priority than  $-\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$  is converted into a group ( $-\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ) that has a higher priority. We cannot tell whether two compounds have the same or opposite configurations by simply looking at the letters used to specify their configurations; we must work out and compare the absolute configurations indicated by those letters.

**Problem 4.19** Which of the following reactions could safely be used to relate configurations?

- (a)  $(+)\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_3 + \text{PBr}_3 \longrightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHBrCH}_3$   
 (b)  $(+)\text{-CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CHClCH}_3 + \text{C}_6\text{H}_6 + \text{AlCl}_3 \longrightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$   
 (c)  $(-)\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2\text{OH} + \text{HBr} \longrightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$   
 (d)  $(+)\text{-CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_2\text{Br} + \text{NaCN} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$   
 (e)  $(+)\text{-CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{OH}^- \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{COO}^- + \text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}^{18}\text{OHCH}_3$   
 (f)  $(-)\text{-CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CHBrCH}_3 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}^- \text{Na}^+ \longrightarrow \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$   
 (g)  $(+)\text{-CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CHOHCH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{Na}} \text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{ONa})\text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}} \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$

**Problem 4.20** What general conclusion must you draw from each of the following observations? (a) After standing in an aqueous acidic solution, optically active  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CHOHCH}_3$  is found to have lost its optical activity. (b) After standing in solution with potassium iodide, optically active *n*- $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{CHICH}_3$  is found to have lost its optical activity. (c) Can you suggest experiments to test your conclusions? (See Sec. 3.29.)

### 4.25 Optical purity

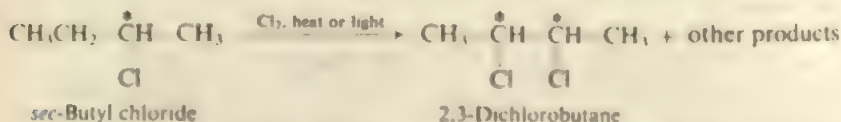
Reactions in which bonds to chiral centers are not broken can be used to get one more highly important kind of information: the specific rotations of optically pure compounds. For example, the 2-methyl-1-butanol obtained from fusel oil (which happens to have specific rotation  $-5.90^\circ$ ) is *optically pure*—like most chiral compounds from biological sources—that is, it consists entirely of the one enantiomer, and contains none of its mirror image. When this material is treated with hydrogen chloride, the 1-chloro-2-methylbutane obtained is found to have specific rotation of  $+1.67^\circ$ . Since no bond to the chiral center is broken, every molecule of alcohol with configuration III is converted into a molecule of chloride with configuration IV; since the alcohol was optically pure, the chloride of specific rotation  $+1.67^\circ$  is also optically pure. Once this *maximum rotation* has been established, anyone can determine the optical purity of a sample of 1-chloro-2-methylbutane in a few moments by simply measuring its specific rotation.

If a sample of the chloride has a rotation of  $+0.835^\circ$ , that is, 50% of the maximum, we say that it is 50% *optically pure*. We consider the components of the mixture to be (+)-isomer and (±)-isomer (not (+)-isomer and (−)-isomer). (Problem: What are the percentages of (+)-isomer and (−)-isomer in this sample?)

**Problem 4.21** Predict the specific rotation of the chloride obtained by treatment with hydrogen chloride of 2-methyl-1-butanol of specific rotation  $+3.54^\circ$ .

### 4.26 Reactions of chiral molecules. Generation of a second chiral center

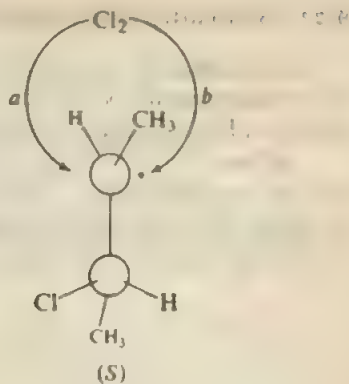
Let us return to the reaction we used as our example in Sec. 4.23, free-radical chlorination of *sec*-butyl chloride, but this time focus our attention on one of the other products, one in which a second chiral center is generated: 2,3-dichlorobutane. This compound, we have seen (Sec. 4.18), exists as three stereoisomers, *meso* and a pair of enantiomers.



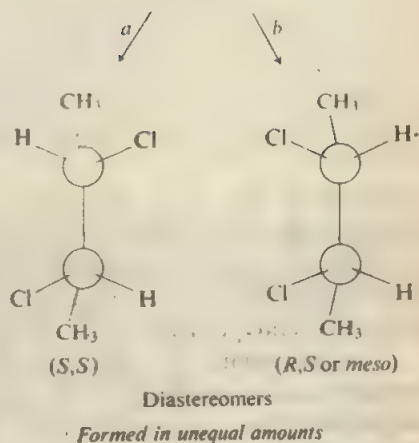
Let us suppose that we take optically active *sec*-butyl chloride (the (*S*)-isomer, say), carry out the chlorination, and by fractional distillation separate the 2,3-dichlorobutanes from all the other products (the 1,2-isomer, 2,2-isomer, etc.) Which stereoisomers can we expect to have?

Figure 4.4 shows the course of reaction. Three important points are illustrated which apply in all cases where a second chiral center is generated. First, since no bond to the original chiral center, C-2, is broken, its configuration is retained in all the products. Second, there are two possible configurations about the new chiral center, C-3, and both of these appear, in this particular case, they result from attacks (*a*) and (*b*) on opposite sides of the flat portion of the free radical, giving the diastereomeric *S,S* and *R,S* (or *meso*) products. Third, the diastereomeric products will be formed in unequal amounts, in this case because attack (*a*) and attack (*b*) are not equally likely.

In Sec. 4.22 we saw that generation of the first chiral center in a compound



**Figure 4.4.** Generation of a second chiral center. Configuration at original chiral center unchanged. Chlorine becomes attached via (a) or (b) to give diastereomers, and in unequal amounts.



yields equal amounts of enantiomers, that is, yields an optically inactive racemic modification. Now we see that generation of a new chiral center in a compound that is already optically active yields an optically active product containing unequal amounts of diastereomers.

Suppose (as is actually the case) that the products from (*S*)-*sec*-butyl chloride show an *S,S*:*meso* ratio of 29:71. What would we get from chlorination of (*R*)-*sec*-butyl chloride? We would get (*R,R*)- and *meso*-products, and the *R,R*:*meso* ratio would be exactly 29:71. Whatever factor favors *meso*-product over (*S,S*)-product will favor *meso*-product over (*R,R*)-product, and to exactly the same extent.

Finally, what can we expect to get from optically inactive, racemic *sec*-butyl chloride? The (*S*)-isomer that is present would yield (*S,S*)- and *meso*-products in the ratio of 29:71; the (*R*)-isomer would yield (*R,R*)- and *meso*-products, and in the ratio of 29:71. Since there are exactly equal quantities of (*S*)- and (*R*)-reactants, the two sets of products would exactly balance each other, and we would obtain racemic and *meso* products in the ratio of 29:71. Optically inactive reactants yield optically inactive products.

One point requires further discussion. Why are the diastereomeric products formed in unequal amounts? It is because the intermediate 3-chloro-2-butyl radical in Fig. 4.4 already contains a chiral center. The free radical is chiral, and lacks the symmetry that is necessary for attack at the two faces to be equally likely. (Make a model of the radical and assure yourself that this is so.)

In the following section, this point is discussed in more detail.





abundant than IV, and the *meso* product to predominate over the (*S,S*)-isomer (as it actually does).

We might have made a different guess about the preferred direction of attack, and even a different estimate about relative stabilities of conformations, but we would still arrive at the same basic conclusion: except by sheer coincidence, the two diastereomers would not be formed in equal amounts.

In this discussion, we have assumed that the relative rates of competing reactions depend on relative populations of the conformations of the reactants. This assumption is correct here if, as seems likely, reaction of the free radicals with chlorine is easier and faster than the rotation that interconverts conformations.

If, on the other hand, reaction with chlorine were a relatively difficult reaction and much slower than interconversion of conformations, then relative rates would be determined by relative stabilities of the transition states. We would still draw the same general conclusions. In the reaction of the achiral *sec*-butyl radical, the transition states are mirror images and therefore of the same stability, and the rates of formation of the two products would be exactly the same. In the reaction of the chiral 3-chloro-2-butyl radical, the transition states are not mirror images and therefore not of the same stability, and rates of formation of the two products would be different. (In the latter case, we would even make the same prediction, that the *meso* product would predominate, since the same relationship between methyl groups that would make conformation III more stable would also make the transition state resembling conformation III more stable.)

**Problem 4.22** Answer the following questions about the formation of 2,3-dichlorobutane from (*R*)-*sec*-butyl chloride. (a) Draw conformations (V and VI) of the intermediate radicals that correspond to III and IV above. (b) What is the relationship between V and VI? (c) How will the V:VI ratio compare with the III:IV ratio? (d) Assuming the same preferred direction of attack by chlorine as on III and IV, which stereoisomeric product would be formed from V? From VI? (e) Which product would you expect to predominate? (f) In view of the ratio of products actually obtained from (*S*)-*sec*-butyl chloride, what ratio of products must be obtained from (*R*)-*sec*-butyl chloride?

**Problem 4.23** Each of the following reactions is carried out, and the products are separated by careful fractional distillation or recrystallization. For each reaction tell how many fractions will be collected. Draw stereochemical formulas of the compound or compounds making up each fraction, and give each its *R/S* specification. Tell whether each fraction, as collected, will show optical activity or optical inactivity.

- (a) monochlorination of (*R*)-*sec*-butyl chloride at 300°;
- (b) monochlorination of racemic *sec*-butyl chloride at 300°;
- (c) monochlorination of racemic 1-chloro-2-methylbutane at 300°.

## 4.28 Reactions of chiral molecules with optically active reagents.

### Resolution

So far in this chapter we have discussed the reactions of chiral compounds only with optically inactive reagents. Now let us turn to reactions with optically active reagents, and examine one of their most useful applications: **resolution of a racemic modification**, that is, *the separation of a racemic modification into enantiomers*.

We know (Sec. 4.22) that when optically inactive reactants form a chiral compound, the product is the racemic modification. We know that the enantiomers making up a racemic modification have identical physical properties (except for direction of rotation of polarized light), and hence cannot be separated by the usual methods of fractional distillation or fractional crystallization. Yet throughout this

book are frequent references to experiments carried out using optically active compounds like (+)-*sec*-butyl alcohol, (−)-2-bromooctane, (−)- $\alpha$ -phenylethyl chloride, (+)- $\alpha$ -phenylpropionamide. How are such optically active compounds obtained?

Some optically active compounds are obtained from natural sources, since living organisms usually produce only one enantiomer of a pair. Thus only (−)-2-methyl-1-butanol is formed in the yeast fermentation of starches, and only (+)-lactic acid,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHOHCOOH}$ , in the contraction of muscles; only (−)-malic acid,  $\text{HOOCCH}_2\text{CHOHCOOH}$ , is obtained from fruit juices, and only (−)-quinine from the bark of the cinchona tree. Indeed, we deal with optically active substances to an extent that we may not realize. We eat optically active bread and optically active meat, live in houses, wear clothes, and read books made of optically active cellulose. The proteins that make up our muscles and other tissues, the glycogen in our liver and in our blood, the enzymes and hormones that enable us to grow and that regulate our bodily processes—all these are optically active. Naturally occurring compounds are optically active because the enzymes that bring about their formation—and often the raw materials from which they are made—are themselves optically active. As to the origin of the optically active enzymes, we can only speculate.

Amino acids, the units from which proteins are made, have been reported present in meteorites, but in such tiny amounts that the speculation has been made that "what appears to be the pitter-patter of heavenly feet is probably instead the print of an earthly thumb." Part of the evidence that the amino acids found in a meteorite by Cyril Ponnampерuma (of the University of Maryland) are really extraterrestrial in origin is that they are optically *inactive*—not optically active as earthly contaminants from biological sources would be.

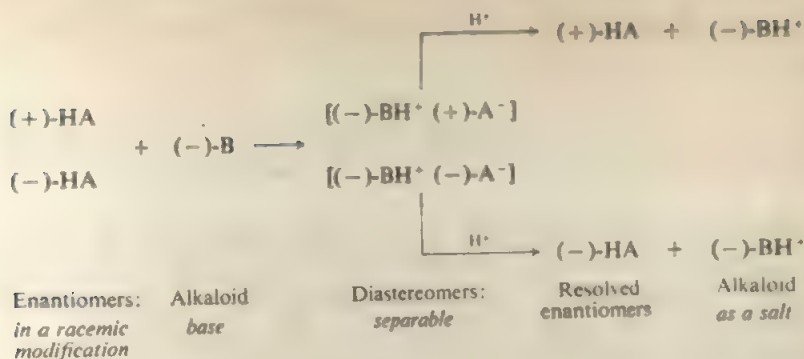
From these naturally occurring compounds, other optically active compounds can be made. We have already seen, for example, how (−)-2-methyl-1-butanol can be converted without loss of configuration into the corresponding chloride or acid (Sec. 4.24); these optically active compounds can, in turn, be converted into many others.

Most optically active compounds are obtained by the resolution of a racemic modification, that is, by a separation of a racemic modification into enantiomers. Most such resolutions are accomplished through the use of reagents that are themselves optically active; these reagents are generally obtained from natural sources.

The majority of resolutions that have been carried out depend upon the reaction of organic bases with organic acids to yield salts. Let us suppose, for example, that we have prepared the racemic acid,  $(\pm)\text{-HA}$ . Now, there are isolated from various plants very complicated bases called *alkaloids* (that is, *alkali-like*), among which are cocaine, morphine, strychnine, and quinine. Most alkaloids are produced by plants in only one of two possible enantiomeric forms, and hence they are optically active. Let us take one of these optically active bases, say a levorotatory one,  $(-)\text{-B}$ , and mix it with our racemic acid  $(\pm)\text{-HA}$ . The acid is present in two configurations, but the base is present in only one configuration; there will result, therefore, crystals of two different salts,  $[(-)\text{-BH}^+ (+)\text{-A}^-]$  and  $[(-)\text{-BH}^+ (-)\text{-A}^-]$ .

What is the relationship between these two salts? They are not superimposable, since the acid portions are not superimposable. They are not mirror images, since





the base portions are not mirror images. The salts are stereoisomers that are not enantiomers, and therefore are *diastereomers*.

These diastereomeric salts have, of course, different physical properties, including solubility in a given solvent. They can therefore be separated by fractional crystallization. Once the two salts are separated, optically active acid can be recovered from each salt by addition of strong mineral acid, which displaces the weaker organic acid. If the salt has been carefully purified by repeated crystallizations to remove all traces of its diastereomer, then the acid obtained from it is *optically pure*. Among the alkaloids commonly used for this purpose are  $(-)$ -brucine,  $(-)$ -quinine,  $(-)$ -strychnine, and  $(+)$ -cinchonine.

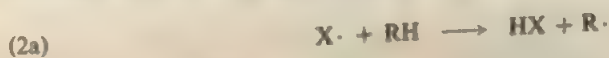
Resolution of organic bases is carried out by reversing the process just described: using naturally occurring optically active acids,  $(-)$ -malic acid, for example. Resolution of alcohols, which we shall find to be of special importance in synthesis, poses a special problem: since alcohols are neither appreciably basic nor acidic, they cannot be resolved by direct formation of salts. Yet they can be resolved by a rather ingenious adaptation of the method we have just described: one attaches to them an acidic "handle," which permits the formation of salts, and then when it is no longer needed can be removed.

Compounds other than organic bases, acids, or alcohols can also be resolved. Although the particular chemistry may differ from the salt formation just described, the principle remains the same: **a racemic modification is converted by an optically active reagent into a mixture of diastereomers which can then be separated.**

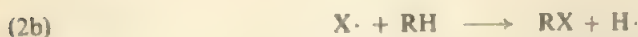
#### 4.29 Reactions of chiral molecules. Mechanism of free-radical chlorination

So far, we have discussed only reactions of chiral molecules in which bonds to the chiral center are not broken. What is the stereochemistry of reactions in which the bonds to the chiral center *are* broken? The answer is: *it depends*. It depends upon the *mechanism* of the reaction that is taking place; because of this, stereochemistry can often give us information about a reaction that we cannot get in any other way.

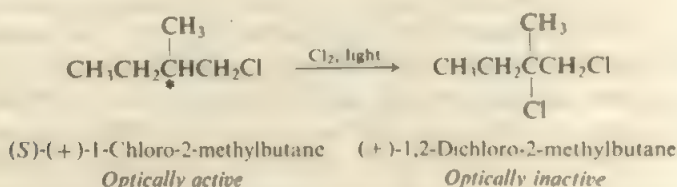
For example, stereochemistry played an important part in establishing the mechanism that was the basis of our entire discussion of the halogenation of alkanes (Chap. 3). The chain-propagating steps of this mechanism are:



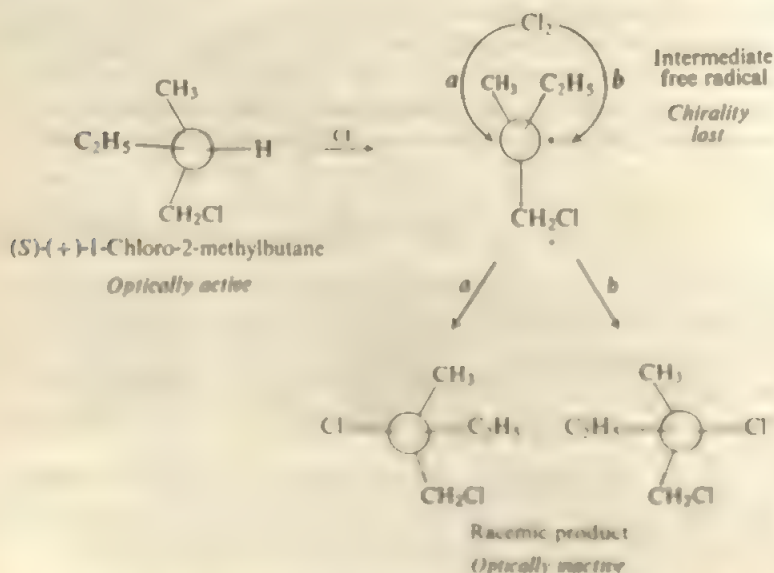
Until 1940 the existing evidence was just as consistent with the following alternative steps:



To differentiate between these alternative mechanisms, H. C. Brown, M. S. Kharasch, and T. H. Chao, working at the University of Chicago, carried out the photochemical halogenation of optically active (*S*)-(+)-1-chloro-2-methylbutane. A number of isomeric products were, of course, formed, corresponding to attack at various positions in the molecule. (*Problem*: What were these products?) They focused their attention on just *one* of these products: 1,2-dichloro-2-methylbutane, resulting from substitution at the chiral center (C-2).



They had planned the experiment on the following basis. The two mechanisms differed as to whether or not a free alkyl radical is an intermediate. The most likely structure for such a radical, they thought, was *flat*—as, it turns out, it very probably is—and the radical would lose the original chirality. Attachment of chlorine to either face would be equally likely, so that an optically inactive, racemic product would be formed. That is to say, the reaction would take place *with racemization* (see Fig. 4.5).



**Figure 4.5.** Racemization through free radical formation. Chlorine becomes attached to either face of free radical, via (a) or (b), to give enantiomers, and in equal amounts.

For the alternative mechanism, in which chlorine would become attached to the molecule while the hydrogen was being displaced, they could make no prediction, except that formation of an optically inactive product would be highly unlikely: there was certainly no reason to expect that *back-side* attack (on the face opposite the hydrogen) would take place to exactly the same extent as *front-side* attack. (In ionic displacements, attack is generally back-side.)

By careful fractional distillation they separated the 1,2-dichloro-2-methylbutane from the reaction mixture, and found it to be *optically inactive*. From this they concluded that the mechanism involving free alkyl radicals, (2a), (3a), is the correct one. This mechanism is accepted without question now; in Sec. 2.21 we saw how the relative strengths of the hydrogen-chlorine and carbon-chlorine bonds force the reaction to follow this course. Today, the work of Brown, Kharasch, and Chao is frequently referred to as evidence of the stereochemical behavior of free radicals, with the original significance of the work exactly reversed.

We can begin to see how stereochemistry provides the organic chemist with one of the most powerful tools for finding out what is going on in a chemical reaction.

**Problem 4.24** This work does *not* prove that free radicals are flat. Racemization is consistent with what other structure for free radicals? Explain. (*Hint*: See Sec. 2.22.)

**Problem 4.25** Altogether, the free-radical chlorination of (S)-(+)-1-chloro-2-methylbutane gave six fractions of formula  $C_5H_{10}Cl_2$ . Four fractions were found to be optically active, and two fractions optically inactive. Draw structural formulas for the compounds making up each fraction. Account in detail for optical activity or inactivity in each case.

## PROBLEMS

### 1. What is meant by each of the following?

- |                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) optical activity  | (k) <i>meso</i> compound    |
| (b) dextrorotatory    | (l) racemic modification    |
| (c) levorotatory      | (m) configuration           |
| (d) specific rotation | (n) conformations           |
| (e) chirality         | (o) <i>R</i>                |
| (f) chiral molecule   | (p) <i>S</i>                |
| (g) chiral center     | (q) +                       |
| (h) superimposable    | (r) -                       |
| (i) enantiomers       | (s) configurational isomers |
| (j) diastereomers     | (t) conformational isomers  |

2. (a) What is the necessary and sufficient condition for enantiomerism? (b) What is a necessary but not a sufficient condition for optical activity? (c) What conditions must be met for the observation of optical activity? (d) How can you tell from its formula whether or not a compound can exist as enantiomers? (e) What restrictions, if any, must be applied to the use of planar formulas in (d)? (f) To the use of models in (d)? (f) Exactly how do you go about deciding whether a molecule should be specified as *R* or as *S*?

3. Compare the dextrorotatory and levorotatory forms of *sec*-butyl alcohol,  $CH_3CH_2CHOHCH_3$ , with respect to:

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| (a) boiling point                | (g) rate of reaction with HBr             |
| (b) melting point                | (h) infrared spectrum                     |
| (c) specific gravity             | (i) NMR spectrum                          |
| (d) specific rotation            | (j) adsorption on alumina                 |
| (e) refractive index             | (k) retention time in gas chromatography  |
| (f) solubility in 100 g of water | (l) specification as <i>R</i> or <i>S</i> |



#### 4. Which of the following objects are chiral?

- (a) nail, screw, pair of scissors, knife, spool of thread;  
 (b) glove, shoe, sock, pullover sweater, coat sweater, scarf tied around your neck;  
 (c) child's block, rubber ball, Pyramid of Cheops, helix (p. 1141), double helix (p. 1164);  
 (d) basketball, football, tennis racket, golf club, baseball bat, shotgun barrel, rifle barrel;  
 (e) your hand, your foot, your ear, your nose, yourself.

5. Assuming both your hands to be of equal strength and skill, which of the following operations could you perform with equal speed and efficiency?

- (a) driving a screw, sawing a board, drilling a hole;  
 (b) opening a door, opening a milk bottle, opening a coffee jar, turning on the hot water;  
 (c) signing your name, sharpening a pencil, throwing a ball, shaking hands with another right hand, turning to page 164.

#### 6. Draw and specify as *R* or *S* the enantiomers (if any) of:

- (a) 3-bromohexane  
 (b) 3-chloro-3-methylpentane  
 (c) 1,2-dibromo-2-methylbutane  
 (d) 1,3-dichloropentane  
 (e) 3-chloro-2,2,5-trimethylhexane  
 (f) 1-deuterio-1-chlorobutane,  
 $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHDCl}$

7. (a) What is the lowest-molecular-weight alkane that is chiral? Draw stereochemical formulas of the enantiomers and specify each as *R* or *S*. (b) Is there another alkane of the same molecular weight that is also chiral? If there is, give its structure and name, and specify the enantiomers as *R* or *S*.

8. Draw stereochemical formulas for all the possible stereoisomers of the following compounds. Label pairs of enantiomers, and *meso* compounds. Tell which isomers, if separated from all other stereoisomers, will be optically active. Give one isomer of each set its *R/S* specification.

- (a)  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHBrCHOHCH}_3$   
 (b)  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHBrCHBrCH}_2\text{Br}$   
 (c)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$   
 (d)  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$   
 (e)  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CHOHCH}_3$   
 (f)  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHOHCHOHCHOHCH}_2\text{OH}$   
 (g)  $\text{HOCH}_2(\text{CHOH})_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$   
 (h)  $\text{CH}_2-\text{CHCl}$  (Make models.)  
 $\text{CH}_2-\text{CHCl}$   
 (i)  $\text{CH}_2-\text{CHCl}$   
 $\text{CHCl}-\text{CH}_2$

(j) methylethyl-*n*-propyl-*n*-butylammonium chloride,  $(\text{RRR}^+\text{R}^+\text{N})^+\text{Cl}^-$  (See Sec. 1.12)

(k) methylethyl-*n*-propyl-*sec*-butylammonium chloride

9. (a) In a study of chlorination of propane, four products (A, B, C, and D) of formula  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Cl}$  were isolated. What are their structures?

(b) Each was chlorinated further, and the number of trichloro products ( $\text{C}_3\text{H}_2\text{Cl}_3$ ) obtained from each was determined by gas chromatography. A gave one trichloro product, B gave two, and C and D each gave three. What is the structure of A? Of B? Of C and D?

(c) By another synthetic method, compound C was obtained in optically active form. Now what is the structure of C? Of D?

(d) When optically active C was chlorinated, one of the trichloropropanes obtained was optically active and the other two were optically inactive. What is the structure of the optically active one? Of the other two?

10. Draw configurational isomers (if any) of (a)  $\text{CH}_3\text{BrCH}_2\text{Cl}$  (b)  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHBrCH}_2\text{Cl}$   
 (c) For each substance of (a) and (b), draw all conformers. Label pairs of conformational enantiomers.

11. The more stable conformer of *n*-propyl chloride,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$  is the *gauche*. What does this indicate about the interaction between  $-\text{Cl}$  and  $-\text{CH}_3$ ? How do you account for this interaction? (Hint: See Sec. 1.19.)

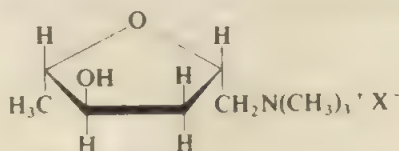
12. (a) What must be the dipole moment of the *anti* conformation of 1,2-dichloroethane,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}-\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ , (b) At 112° in the gas phase, the measured dipole moment of

1,2-dichloroethane is 1.12 D. What does this single fact tell you about the conformational make-up of the compound? (c) The dipole moment of a mixture of X and Y is given by the expression

$$\mu^2 = N_x \mu_x^2 + N_y \mu_y^2$$

where  $N$  is the mole fraction of each kind of molecule. From bond moments, it has been estimated that the *gauche* conformation of 1,2-dichloroethane should have a dipole moment of about 3.2 D. Calculate the conformational composition of 1,2-dichloroethane at 32° in the gas phase.

13. It is February, 1929. In a lonely cottage in Devonshire, George Harrison, a middle-aged amateur mycologist, has died shortly after eating a mushroom stew he prepared from warty caps (*Amanita rubescens*) collected in nearby Five-Acre Wood. Cause of death: poisoning by *muscarine*, an alkaloid found in the fly agaric (*Amanita muscaria*).



Muscarine

An alkaloid found in  
the mushroom *Amanita muscaria*

You are Sir James Lubbock, Home Office Analyst, and you have been asked to help solve a knotty problem crucial to the investigation: whether (a) a deadly *Amanita muscaria* found its way accidentally into the mess of closely similar, but harmless *Amanita rubescens*; or (b) a lethal dose of synthetic muscarine (filched from a London laboratory) was deliberately added to the stew pot—perhaps by the lover of beautiful Mrs. Harrison.

You have available a solution of muscarine that you isolated from left-over stew, a well-equipped (for 1929) laboratory, and ten minutes. Tell what you can do that might give a definite answer to the question: was there a fly agaric in Mr. Harrison's soup—or did a second cook, wilfully and with malice aforethought, spoil the broth?

14. Each of the following reactions is carried out, and the products are separated by careful fractional distillation or recrystallization. For each reaction tell how many fractions will be collected. Draw stereochemical formulas of the compound or compounds making up each fraction, and give each its *R/S* specification. Tell whether each fraction, as collected, will show optical activity or optical inactivity.

- $n$ -pentane +  $\text{Cl}_2$  (300°)  $\rightarrow$   $\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{Cl}$ .
- 1-chloropentane +  $\text{Cl}_2$  (300°)  $\rightarrow$   $\text{C}_5\text{H}_{10}\text{Cl}_2$ .
- (*S*)-2-chloropentane +  $\text{Cl}_2$  (300°)  $\rightarrow$   $\text{C}_5\text{H}_{10}\text{Cl}_2$ ;
- (*R*)-2-chloro-2,3-dimethylpentane +  $\text{Cl}_2$  (300°)  $\rightarrow$   $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{14}\text{Cl}_2$ ;
- meso*- $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CHOHCHOHCH}_2\text{OH}$  +  $\text{HNO}_3$   $\rightarrow$   $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CHOHCHOHCOOH}$ ;
- (*S*)-3-chloro-1-butene +  $\text{HCl}$   $\rightarrow$  2,3-dichloro-2-methylbutane;
- racemic  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCHOHC}_6\text{H}_5$  +  $\text{H}_2$ /Ni, catalyst  $\rightarrow$   $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHOHCHOHC}_6\text{H}_5$ .

15. Give the absolute configuration and *R/S* specification of compounds E–K.

- (*R*)- $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CHOHCH}_2\text{CH}_3$  + cold alkaline  $\text{KMnO}_4$   $\rightarrow$  E (optically active) + F (optically inactive). E and F are  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CHOHCHOHCH}_2\text{OH}$ .
- (*S*)-1-chloro-2-methylbutane +  $\text{I}_2$ , then  $\rightarrow \text{CuI}$   $\rightarrow$  G.
- G + (*S*)-1-chloro-2-methylbutane  $\rightarrow$  H.
- (*R,R*)- $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CHOHCHOHCH}_2\text{OH}$  +  $\text{HBr}$   $\rightarrow$  I ( $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CHOHCHOHCH}_2\text{Br}$ ).
- (*R*)-3-methyl-2-ethyl-1-pentene ( $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)=\text{CH}_2$ ) +  $\text{H}_2$ /Ni  $\rightarrow$  J (optically active) + K (optically inactive). Both J and K are  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{16}$ .

16. An excess of the racemic acid  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHClCOOH}$  is allowed to react with (*S*)-2-methyl-1-butanol to form the ester,



and the reaction mixture is carefully distilled. Three fractions are obtained, each of which is optically active. Draw stereochemical formulas of the compound or compounds making up each fraction.



# Alicyclic Compounds

## Cycloalkanes

### 5.1 Open-chain and cyclic compounds

In the compounds that we have studied so far, the carbon atoms are attached to one another to form *chains*; these are called **open-chain** compounds. In many compounds, however, the carbon atoms are arranged to form *rings*; these are called **cyclic** compounds.

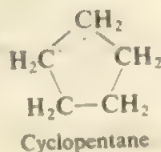
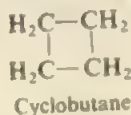
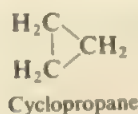
In this chapter we shall take up *alicyclic* compounds (*aliphatic cyclic* compounds). Much of the chemistry of cycloalkanes we already know, since it is essentially the chemistry of open-chain alkanes. But the cyclic nature of some of these compounds confers very special properties on them. It is because of these special properties that, over the years, alicyclic chemistry has become what Professor Lloyd Ferguson, of the California State College at Los Angeles, has called "the playground for organic chemists." It is on some of these special properties that we shall focus our attention.

Table 5.1 CYCLOALKANES

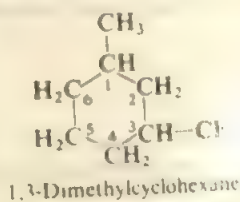
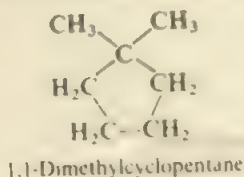
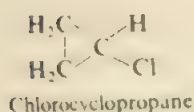
Name	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Density (at 20°C)
Cyclopropane	-127	-33	
Cyclobutane	-80	13	
Cyclopentane	-94	49	0.746
Cyclohexane	6.5	81	.778
Cycloheptane	-12	118	.810
Cyclooctane	14	149	.830
Methylcyclopentane	-142	72	.749
<i>cis</i> -1,2-Dimethylcyclopentane	-62	99	.772
<i>trans</i> -1,2-Dimethylcyclopentane	-120	92	.750
Methylcyclohexane	-126	100	.769

## 5.2 Nomenclature

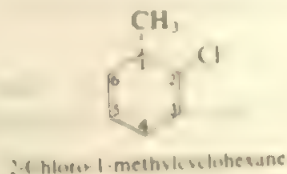
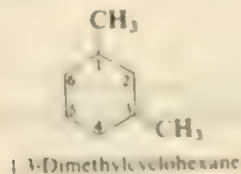
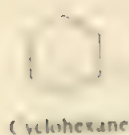
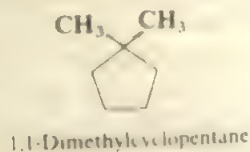
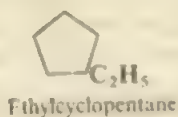
Cycloalkanes are named by prefixing *cyclo-* to the name of the corresponding open-chain alkane having the same number of carbons as the ring. For example:



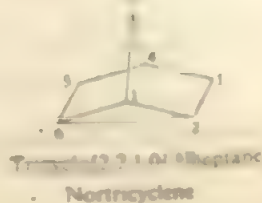
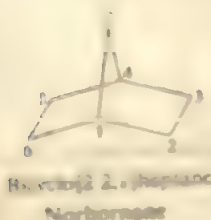
Substituents on the ring—alkyl groups, halogens—are named, and their positions are indicated by numbers. We assign position 1 to a particular carbon and then number either clockwise or counterclockwise around the ring; we do all this in such a way as to give the lowest combination of numbers. For example:



For convenience, aliphatic rings are often represented by simple geometric figures: a triangle for cyclopropane, a square for cyclobutane, a pentagon for cyclopentane, a hexagon for cyclohexane, and so on. It is understood that two hydrogens are located at each corner of the figure unless some other group is indicated. For example:



Polycyclic compounds contain two or more rings that share two or more carbon atoms. We can illustrate the naming system with *norbornane*, whose systematic name is bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane. (a) *heptane*, since it contains a total of seven carbon atoms. (b) *bicyclo*, since it contains two rings, that is, breaking two carbon-carbon



bonds converts it into an open-chain compound; (c) [2.2.1], since the number of carbons between bridgeheads (shared carbons) is *two* (C-2 and C-3), *two* (C-5 and C-6), and *one* (C-7).

Polycyclic compounds in a variety of strange and wonderful shapes have been made, and their properties have revealed unexpected facets of organic chemistry. Underlying much of this research there has always been the challenge: *can such a compound be made?*



Cubane



Basketane



Adamantane

The ultimate polycyclic aliphatic system is *diamond* which is, of course, not a hydrocarbon at all, but one of the allotropic forms of elemental carbon. In diamond each carbon



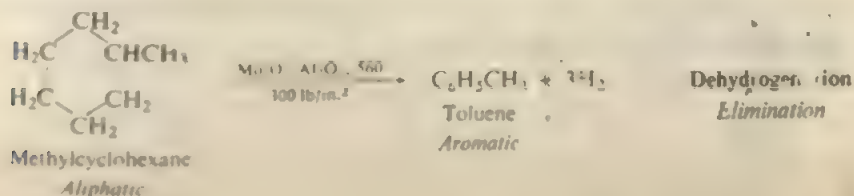
Diamond

atom is attached to four others by tetrahedral bonds of the usual single bond length, 1.54 Å. (Note the cyclohexane chairs, Sec. 5.11.)

### 5.3 Industrial source

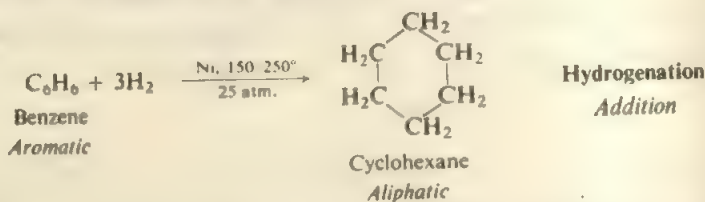
We have already mentioned (Sec. 3.13) that petroleum from certain areas (in particular California) is rich in cycloalkanes, known to the petroleum industry as *naphthenes*. Among these are cyclohexane, methylcyclohexane, methylcyclopentane, and 1,2-dimethylcyclopentane.

These cycloalkanes are converted by *catalytic reforming* into aromatic hydrocarbons, and thus provide one of the major sources of these important compounds (Sec. 16.5). In this reaction there is *elimination* of hydrogen from the molecules. For example:

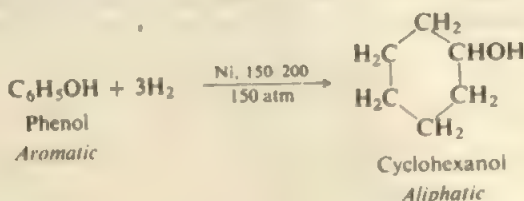




Just as elimination of hydrogen from cyclic aliphatic compounds yields aromatic compounds, so *addition* of hydrogen to aromatic compounds yields cyclic aliphatic compounds, specifically cyclohexane derivatives. An important example of this is the hydrogenation of benzene to yield pure cyclohexane.



As we might expect, hydrogenation of substituted benzenes yields substituted cyclohexanes. For example:

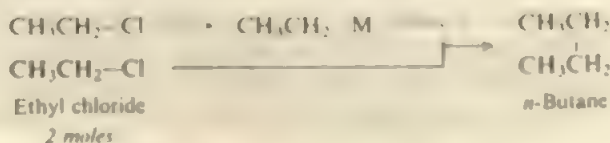


From cyclohexanol many other cyclic compounds containing a six-membered ring can be made.

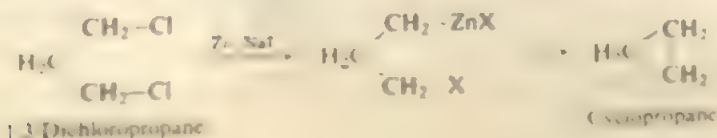
## 5.4 Preparation

Preparation of alicyclic compounds from other aliphatic compounds generally involves two stages: (a) conversion of some open-chain compound or compounds into a compound that contains a ring, a process called *cyclization*; (b) conversion of the cyclic compound thus obtained into the kind of compound that we want: for example, conversion of a cyclic alcohol into a cyclic alkyl halide, or of a cyclic alkene into a cyclic alkane.

Very often, cyclic compounds are made by the *adapting* of a standard method of preparation to the job of closing a ring. For example, we have seen (Sec. 3.17) that the alkyl groups of two alkyl halides can be coupled together through conversion of one halide into an organometallic compound (a lithium dialkylcopper):



The same method applied to a *dihalide* can bring about coupling between two alkyl groups that are *part of the same molecule*



In this case zinc happens to do a good job. Although this particular method works well only for the preparation of cyclopropane, it illustrates an important technique: the carrying out of what is normally an *intermolecular* (between-molecules) reaction under such circumstances that it becomes an *intramolecular* (within-a-molecule) reaction. As we can see, it involves tying together the ends of a difunctional molecule.

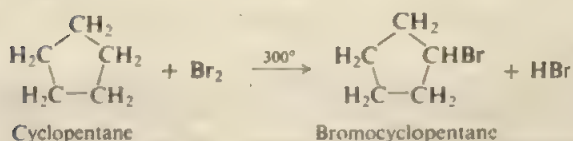
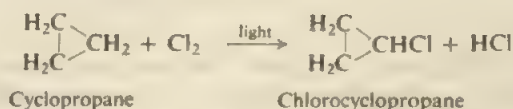
Alicyclic hydrocarbons are prepared from other cyclic compounds (e.g., halides or alcohols) by exactly the same methods that are used for preparing open-chain hydrocarbons from other open-chain compounds.

**Problem 5.1** Bromocyclobutane can be obtained from open-chain compounds. How would you prepare cyclobutane from it?

The most important route to rings of many different sizes is through the important class of reactions called **cycloadditions**: *reactions in which molecules are added together to form rings*. We shall see many examples of cycloaddition (Secs. 8.25–8.26, 32.8, and 33.9).

## 5.5 Reactions

With certain very important and interesting exceptions, alicyclic hydrocarbons undergo the same reactions as their open-chain analogs. Cycloalkanes undergo chiefly free-radical substitution (compare Sec. 3.19). For example:



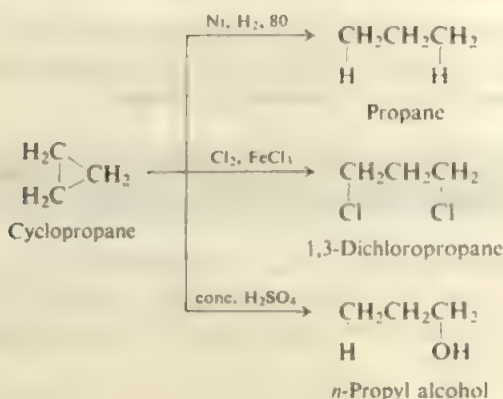
The two smallest cycloalkanes, cyclopropane and cyclobutane, show certain chemical properties that are entirely different from those of the other members of their family. Some of these exceptional properties fit into a pattern and, as we shall see, can be understood in a general way.

The chemistry of bicyclic compounds is even more remarkable, and is one of the most intensively studied areas of organic chemistry (Sec. 16.21).

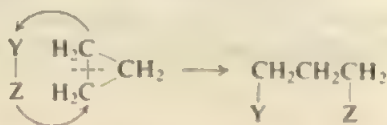
## 5.6 Reactions of small-ring compounds. Cyclopropane and cyclobutane

Besides the free-radical substitution reactions that are characteristic of cycloalkanes and of alkanes in general, cyclopropane and cyclobutane undergo certain reactions of a quite different type: *addition*, in which the reagent is simply *added*

to the organic molecule, instead of being *substituted* for a portion of the molecule. (We shall begin the detailed study of this broad class of reactions when we take up the reactions of alkenes in Chapter 8.) These addition reactions destroy the cyclopropane and cyclobutane ring systems, and yield open-chain products. For example:



In each of these reactions a carbon-carbon bond is broken, and the two atoms of the reagent appear at the ends of the propane chain:



In general, cyclopropane undergoes addition less readily than an alkene: chlorination, for example, requires a Lewis acid catalyst to polarize the chlorine molecule (compare Sec. 15.11). Yet the reaction with sulfuric acid and other aqueous protic acids takes place considerably faster for cyclopropane than for an alkene. (Odder still, treatment with bromine and  $\text{FeBr}_3$  yields a grand mixture of bromopropanes.)

Cyclobutane does not undergo most of the ring-opening reactions of cyclopropane; it is hydrogenated, but only under more vigorous conditions than those required for cyclopropane. Thus cyclobutane undergoes addition less readily than cyclopropane and, with some exceptions, cyclopropane less readily than an alkene. The remarkable thing is that these cycloalkanes undergo addition at all.

## 5.7 Baeyer strain theory

In 1885 Adolf von Baeyer (of the University of Munich) proposed a theory to account for certain aspects of the chemistry of cyclic compounds. The part of his theory dealing with the ring-opening tendencies of cyclopropane and cyclobutane is generally accepted today, although it is dressed in more modern language. Other parts of his theory have been shown to be based on false assumptions, and have been discarded.



Baeyer's argument was essentially the following. In general, when carbon is bonded to four other atoms, the angle between any pair of bonds is the tetrahedral angle  $109.5^\circ$ . But the ring of cyclopropane is a triangle with three angles of  $60^\circ$ , and the ring of cyclobutane is a square with four angles of  $90^\circ$ . In cyclopropane or cyclobutane, therefore, one pair of bonds to each carbon cannot assume the tetrahedral angle, but must be compressed to  $60^\circ$  or  $90^\circ$  to fit the geometry of the ring.

These deviations of bond angles from the "normal" tetrahedral value cause the molecules to be *strained*, and hence to be unstable compared with molecules in which the bond angles are tetrahedral. Cyclopropane and cyclobutane undergo ring-opening reactions since these relieve the strain and yield the more stable open-chain compounds. Because the deviation of the bond angles in cyclopropane ( $109.5^\circ - 60^\circ = 49.5^\circ$ ) is greater than in cyclobutane ( $109.5^\circ - 90^\circ = 19.5^\circ$ ), cyclopropane is more highly strained, more unstable, and more prone to undergo ring-opening reactions than is cyclobutane.

The angles of a regular pentagon ( $108^\circ$ ) are very close to the tetrahedral angle ( $109.5^\circ$ ), and hence cyclopentane should be virtually free of angle strain. The angles of a regular hexagon ( $120^\circ$ ) are somewhat larger than the tetrahedral angle, and hence, Baeyer proposed (incorrectly), there should be a certain amount of strain in cyclohexane. Further, he suggested (incorrectly) that as one proceeded to cycloheptane, cyclooctane, etc., the deviation of the bond angles from  $109.5^\circ$  would become progressively larger, and the molecules would become progressively more strained.

Thus Baeyer considered that rings smaller or larger than cyclopentane or cyclohexane were unstable; it was because of this instability that the three- and four-membered rings underwent ring-opening reactions; it was because of this instability that great difficulty had been encountered in the synthesis of the larger rings. How does Baeyer's strain theory agree with the facts?

## 5.8 Heats of combustion and relative stabilities of the cycloalkanes

We recall (Sec. 2.6) that the heat of combustion is the quantity of heat evolved when one mole of a compound is burned to carbon dioxide and water. Like heats of hydrogenation (Secs. 8.4 and 9.21), heats of combustion can often furnish valuable information about the relative stabilities of organic compounds. Let us see if the heats of combustion of the various cycloalkanes support Baeyer's proposal that rings smaller or larger than cyclopentane and cyclohexane are unstable.

Examination of the data for a great many compounds has shown that the heat of combustion of an aliphatic hydrocarbon agrees rather closely with that calculated by assuming a certain characteristic contribution from each structural unit. For open-chain alkanes each methylene group,  $-\text{CH}_2-$ , contributes very close to 157.4 kcal/mol to the heat of combustion. Table 5.2 lists the heats of combustion that have been measured for some of the cycloalkanes.

We notice that for cyclopropane the heat of combustion per  $-\text{CH}_2-$  group is 9 kcal higher than the open-chain value of 157.4; for cyclobutane it is 7 kcal higher than the open-chain value. Whatever the compound in which it occurs, a

Table 5.2 HEATS OF COMBUSTION OF CYCLOALKANES

Ring size	Heat of combustion per CH <sub>2</sub> , kcal/mol	Ring size	Heat of combustion per CH <sub>2</sub> , kcal/mol
3	166.6	10	158.6
4	164.0	11	158.4
5	158.7	12	157.6
6	157.4	13	157.8
7	158.3	14	157.4
8	158.6	15	157.5
9	158.8	17	157.2
Open-chain 157.4			

—CH<sub>2</sub>— group yields the same products on combustion: carbon dioxide and water.



If cyclopropane and cyclobutane evolve more energy per —CH<sub>2</sub>— group than an open-chain compound, it can mean only that they *contain* more energy per —CH<sub>2</sub>— group. In agreement with the Baeyer angle-strain theory, then, cyclopropane and cyclobutane are less stable than open-chain compounds; it is reasonable to suppose that their tendency to undergo ring-opening reactions is related to this instability.

According to Baeyer, rings larger than cyclopentane and cyclohexane also should be unstable, and hence also should have high heats of combustion; furthermore, relative instability—and, with it, heat of combustion—should increase steadily with ring size. However, we see from Table 5.2 that almost exactly the opposite is true. For none of the rings larger than four carbons does the heat of combustion per —CH<sub>2</sub>— deviate much from the open-chain value of 157.4. Indeed, one of the biggest deviations is for Baeyer's "most stable" compound, cyclopentane: 1.3 kcal per —CH<sub>2</sub>—, or 6.5 kcal for the molecule. Rings containing seven to eleven carbons have about the same value as cyclopentane, and when we reach rings of twelve carbons or more, heats of combustion are indistinguishable from the open-chain values. Contrary to Baeyer's theory, then, none of these rings is appreciably less stable than open-chain compounds, and the larger ones are completely free of strain. Furthermore, once they have been synthesized, these large-ring cycloalkanes show little tendency to undergo the ring-opening reactions characteristic of cyclopropane and cyclobutane.

What is wrong with Baeyer's theory that it does not apply to rings larger than four members? Simply this: the angles that Baeyer used for each ring were based on the assumption that the rings were *flat*. For example, the angles of a regular (flat) hexagon are 120°, the angles for a regular decagon are 144°. But the cyclohexane ring is not a regular hexagon, and the cyclodecane ring is not a regular decagon. These rings are not flat, but are puckered (see Fig. 5.1) so that each bond angle of carbon can be 109.5°.

A three-membered ring must be planar, since three points (the three carbon nuclei) define a plane. A four-membered ring need not be planar, but puckering here would increase (angle) strain. A five-membered ring need not be planar, but in this case a planar arrangement would permit the bond angles to have nearly the tetrahedral value. All rings larger than this are puckered. (Actually, as we shall see,

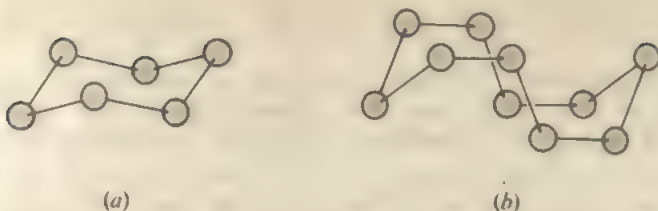


Figure 5.1. Puckered rings. (a) Cyclohexane. (b) Cyclodecane.

cyclobutane and cyclopentane are puckered, too, but this is *in spite of* increased angle strain.)

If large rings are stable, why are they difficult to synthesize? Here we encounter Baeyer's second false assumption. The fact that a compound is difficult to synthesize does not necessarily mean that it is unstable. The closing of a ring requires that two ends of a chain be brought close enough to each other for a bond to form. The larger the ring one wishes to synthesize, the longer must be the chain from which it is made, and the less is the likelihood of the two ends of the chain approaching each other. Under these conditions the end of one chain is more likely to encounter the end of a *different* chain, and thus yield an entirely different product (see Fig. 5.2).

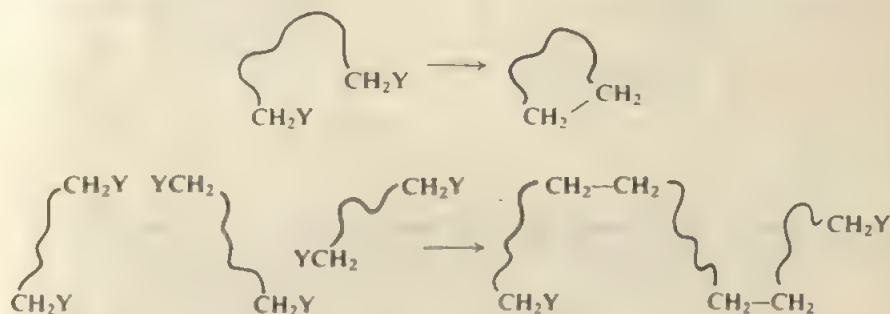


Figure 5.2. Ring closure (upper) vs. chain lengthening (lower).

The methods that are used successfully to make large rings take this fact into consideration. Reactions are carried out in highly dilute solutions where collisions between two different chains are unlikely; under these conditions the ring-closing reaction, although slow, is the principal one. Five- and six-membered rings are the kind most commonly encountered in organic chemistry because they are large enough to be free of angle strain, and small enough that ring closure is likely.

## 5.9 Orbital picture of angle strain

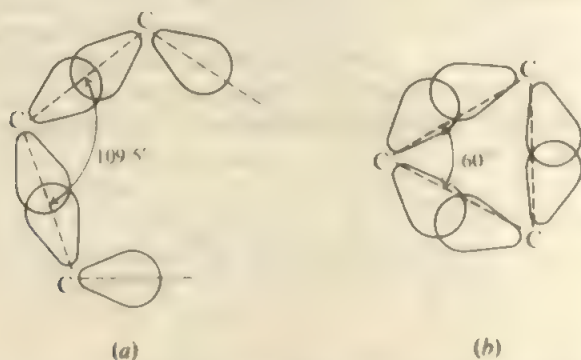
What is the meaning of Baeyer's angle strain in terms of the modern picture of the covalent bond?

We have seen (Sec. 1.8) that, for a bond to form, two atoms must be located so that an orbital of one overlaps an orbital of the other. For a given pair of atoms,



the greater the overlap of atomic orbitals, the stronger the bond. When carbon is bonded to four other atoms, its bonding orbitals ( $sp^3$  orbitals) are directed to the corners of a tetrahedron; the angle between any pair of orbitals is thus  $109.5^\circ$ . Formation of a bond with another carbon atom involves overlap of one of these  $sp^3$  orbitals with a similar  $sp^3$  orbital of the other carbon atom. This overlap is most effective, and hence the bond is strongest, when the two atoms are located so that an  $sp^3$  orbital of each atom points toward the other atom. This means that when carbon is bonded to two other carbon atoms the  $C-C-C$  bond angle should be  $109.5^\circ$ .

In cyclopropane, however, the  $C-C-C$  bond angle cannot be  $109.5^\circ$ , but instead must be  $60^\circ$ . As a result, the carbon atoms cannot be located to permit their  $sp^3$  orbitals to point toward each other (see Fig. 5.3). There is less overlap and the bond is weaker than the usual carbon-carbon bond.



**Figure 5.3.** Angle strain. (a) Maximum overlap permitted for open-chain or large-ring compounds. (b) Poor overlap for cyclopropane ring. Bent bonds have much  $p$  character.

The decrease in stability of a cyclic compound attributed to *angle strain* is due to poor overlap of atomic orbitals in the formation of the carbon-carbon bonds.

On the basis of quantum mechanical calculations, C. A. Coulson and W. A. Moffitt (of Oxford University) proposed *bent bonds* between carbon atoms of cyclopropane rings; this idea is supported by electron density maps based on x-ray studies. Carbon uses  $sp^3$  orbitals for carbon-hydrogen bonds (which are short and strong), and orbitals with much  $p$  character ( $sp^4$  to  $sp^6$ ) for the carbon-carbon bonds. The high  $p$  character of these carbon-carbon bonds, and their location—largely outside the ring—seems to underlie much of the unusual chemistry of these rings. The carbon-carbon bond orbitals can overlap orbitals on adjacent atoms; the resulting delocalization is responsible for the effects of cyclopropyl as a substituent. The carbon-carbon bond orbitals provide a site for the attack by acids that is the first step of ring-opening. (Indeed, "edge-protonated" cyclopropanes seem to be key intermediates in many reactions that do not, on the surface, seem to involve cyclopropane rings.)

Ring-opening is *due* to the weakness of the carbon-carbon bonds, but the *way* in which it happens reflects the unusual nature of the bonds; all this stems ultimately from the geometry of the rings and angle strain.

## 5.10 Factors affecting stability of conformations

To go more deeply into the chemistry of cyclic compounds, we must use conformational analysis (Sec. 4.20). As preparation for that, let us review the factors that determine the stability of a conformation.

Any atom tends to have bond angles that match those of its bonding orbitals: tetrahedral ( $109.5^\circ$ ) for  $sp^3$ -hybridized carbon, for example. Any deviations from the "normal" bond angles are accompanied by **angle strain** (Secs. 5.8–5.9).

Any pair of tetrahedral carbons attached to each other tend to have their bonds staggered. That is to say, any ethane-like portion of a molecule tends, like ethane, to take up a staggered conformation. Any deviations from the staggered arrangement are accompanied by **torsional strain** (Sec. 3.3).

Any two atoms (or groups) that are not bonded to each other can interact in several ways, depending on their size and polarity, and how closely they are brought together. These non-bonded interactions can be either repulsive or attractive, and the result can be either destabilization or stabilization of the conformation.

Non-bonded atoms (or groups) that just touch each other—that is, that are about as far apart as the sum of their van der Waals radii—attract each other. If brought any closer together, they repel each other: such crowding together is accompanied by **van der Waals strain (steric strain)** (Secs. 1.19, 3.5).

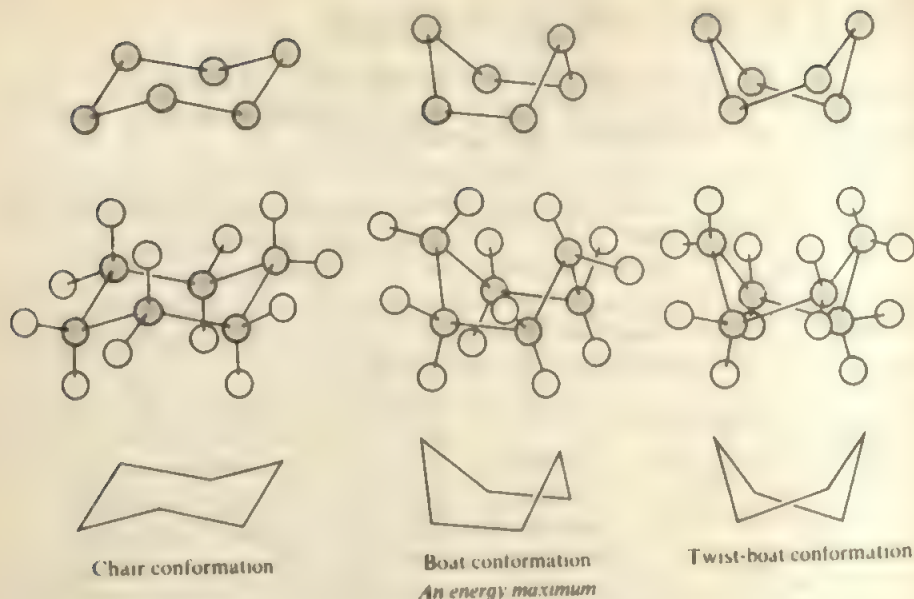
Non-bonded atoms (or groups) tend to take positions that result in the most favorable **dipole–dipole interactions**: that is, positions that minimize dipole–dipole repulsions or maximize dipole–dipole attractions. (A particularly powerful attraction results from the special kind of dipole–dipole interaction called the **hydrogen bond** (Sec. 1.19).

All these factors, working together or opposing each other, determine the net stability of a conformation. To figure out what the most stable conformation of a particular molecule should be, one ideally should consider all possible combinations of bond angles, angles of rotation, and even bond lengths, and see which combination results in the lowest energy content. Such calculations have become quite feasible through the use of computers.

Both calculations and experimental measurements show that the final result is a compromise, and that few molecules have the idealized conformations that we assign them and, for convenience, usually work with. For example, probably no tetravalent carbon compound—except one with four identical substituents—has *exactly* tetrahedral bond angles: a molecule accepts a certain amount of angle strain to relieve van der Waals strain or dipole–dipole interaction. In the *gauche* conformer of *n*-butane (Sec. 3.5), the dihedral angle between the methyl groups is not  $60^\circ$ , but almost certainly larger: the molecule accepts some torsional strain to ease van der Waals strain between the methyl groups.

## 5.11 Conformations of cycloalkanes

Let us look more closely at the matter of puckered rings, starting with cyclohexane, the most important of the cycloalkanes. Let us make a model of the molecule, and examine the conformations that are free of angle strain.



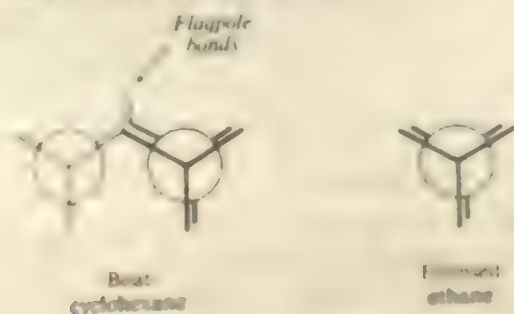
**Figure 5.4.** Conformations of cyclohexane that are free of angle strain.

First, there is the **chair form** (Fig. 5.4). If we sight along each of the carbon-carbon bonds in turn, we see in every case perfectly staggered bonds:



The conformation is thus not only free of angle strain but free of torsional strain as well. It lies at an energy minimum, and is therefore a conformational isomer. *The chair form is the most stable conformation of cyclohexane, and, indeed, of nearly every derivative of cyclohexane.*

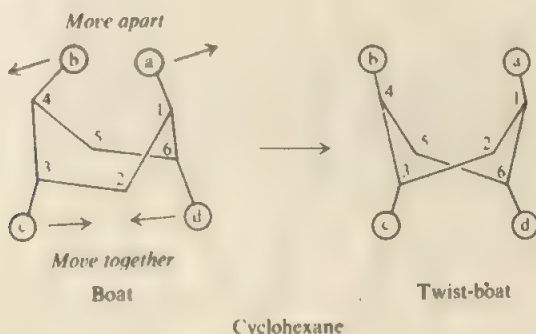
Next, let us flip the "left" end of the molecule up (Fig. 5.4) to make the *boat conformation*. (Like all the transformations we shall carry out in this section, this involves only rotations about single bonds, what we are making are indeed conformations.) This is not a very happy arrangement. Sighting along either of two carbon-carbon bonds, we see sets of exactly eclipsed bonds,



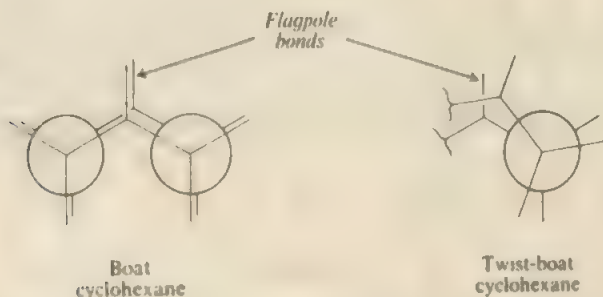


and hence we expect considerable torsional strain: as much as in *two* ethane molecules. In addition, there is van der Waals strain due to crowding between the "flagpole" hydrogens, which lie only 1.83 Å apart, considerably closer than the sum of their van der Waals radii (2.5 Å). The boat conformation is a good deal less stable (7.1 kcal/mol, it has been calculated) than the chair conformation. It is believed to lie, not at an energy minimum, but at an energy maximum: it is thus not a conformer, but a transition state between two conformers.

Now, what are these two conformers that lie energetically speaking on either side of the boat conformation? To see what they are, let us hold a model of the boat conformation with the flagpole hydrogens ( $H_a$  and  $H_b$ ) pointing up, and look down through the ring. We grasp C-2 and C-3 in the right hand and C-5 and



C-6 in the left hand, and *twist* the molecule so that, say, C-3 and C-6 go *down*, and C-2 and C-5 come *up*. As we do this,  $H_a$  and  $H_b$  move diagonally apart, and we see (below the ring) a pair of hydrogens,  $H_c$  and  $H_d$  (on C-3 and C-6, respectively), begin to approach each other. (If this motion is continued, we make a new boat conformation with  $H_c$  and  $H_d$  becoming the flagpole hydrogens.) When the  $H_a-H_b$  distance is equal to the  $H_c-H_d$  distance, we stop and examine the molecule. We have minimized the flagpole flagpole interactions, and at the same time have partly relieved the torsional strain at the  $C_2-C_3$  and  $C_5-C_6$  bonds.



This new configuration is the **twist-boat form**. It is a conformer, lying at an energy minimum 5.5 kcal above the chair conformation. The twist-boat conformer is separated from another, enantiomeric twist-boat conformer by an energy barrier 1.6 kcal high, at the top of which is the boat conformation.

Between the chair form and the twist-boat form lies the highest barrier of all: a transition state conformation (the *half-chair*) which, with angle strain and torsional strain, lies about 11 kcal above the chair form.

The overall relationships are summarized in Fig. 5.5. Equilibrium exists between the chair and twist-boat forms, with the more stable chair form being favored—10,000 to 1 at room temperature.

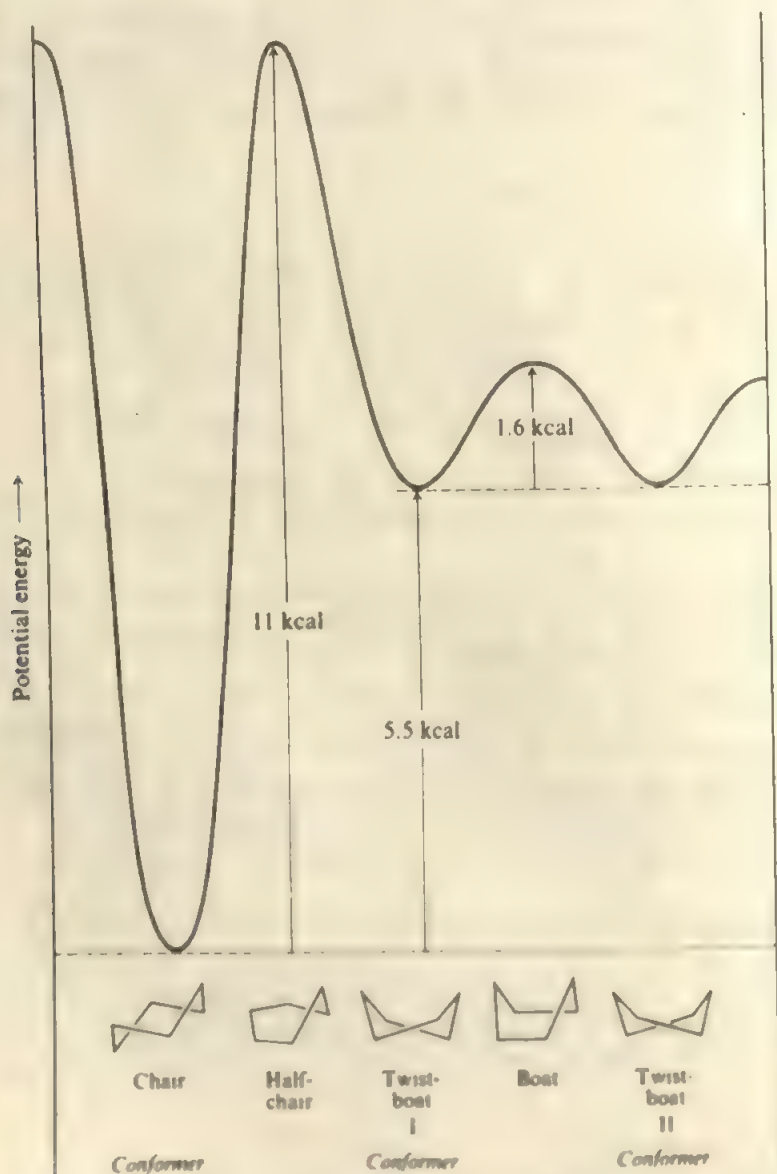
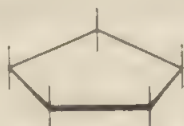
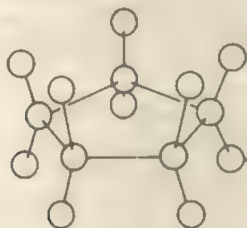


Figure 5.5. Potential energy relationships among conformations of cyclohexane

If chair cyclohexane is, conformationally speaking, the perfect specimen of a cycloalkane, planar cyclopentane (Fig. 5.6) must certainly be the poorest: there is exact bond eclipsing between every pair of carbons. To (partially) relieve this

torsional strain, cyclopentane takes on a slightly puckered conformation, even at the cost of a little angle strain. (See also Problem 9, p. 191.)



**Figure 5.6.** Planar cyclopentane: much torsional strain. Molecule actually puckered.

Evidence of many kinds strongly indicates that cyclobutane is not planar, but rapidly changes between equivalent, slightly folded conformations (Fig. 5.7). Here, too, torsional strain is partially relieved at the cost of a little angle strain.

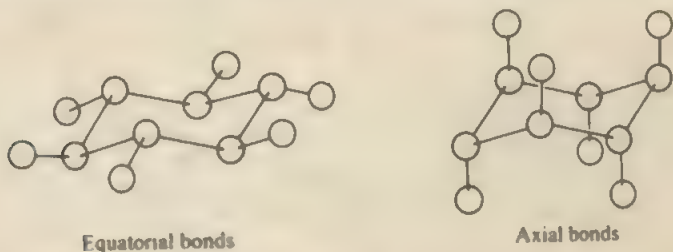


**Figure 5.7.** Cyclobutane: rapid transformation between equivalent non-planar "folded" conformations.

Rings containing seven to twelve carbon atoms are also subject to torsional strain, and hence these compounds, too, are less stable than cyclohexane; scale models also reveal serious crowding of hydrogens inside these rings. Only quite large ring systems seem to be as stable as cyclohexane.

## 5.12 Equatorial and axial bonds in cyclohexane

Let us return to the model of the chair conformation of cyclohexane (see Fig. 5.8). Although the cyclohexane ring is not flat, we can consider that the carbon atoms lie roughly in a plane. If we look at the molecule in this way, we see that the hydrogen atoms occupy two kinds of position: six hydrogens lie in the plane, while



**Figure 5.8.** Equatorial and axial bonds in cyclohexane.



six hydrogens lie above or below the plane. The bonds holding the hydrogens that are in the plane of the ring lie in a belt about the "equator" of the ring, and are called **equatorial bonds**. The bonds holding the hydrogen atoms that are above and below the plane are pointed along an axis perpendicular to the plane and are called **axial bonds**. In the chair conformation each carbon atom has one equatorial bond and one axial bond.

Cyclohexane itself, in which only hydrogens are attached to the carbon atoms, is not only free of angle strain and torsional strain, but free of van der Waals strain as well. Hydrogens on adjacent carbons are the same distance apart (2.3 Å) as in (staggered) ethane and, if anything, feel mild van der Waals attraction for each other. We notice that the three axial hydrogens on the same side of the molecule are thrown rather closely together, despite the fact that they are attached to alternate carbon atoms; as it happens, however, they are the same favorable distance apart (2.3 Å) as the other hydrogens are.

If, now, a hydrogen is replaced by a larger atom or group, crowding occurs. The most severe crowding is among atoms held by the three axial bonds on the same side of the molecule; the resulting interaction is called **1,3-diaxial interaction**. Except for hydrogen, *a given atom or group has more room in an equatorial position than in an axial position*.

As a simple example of the importance of 1,3-diaxial interactions, let us consider methylcyclohexane. In estimating relative stabilities of various conformations of this compound, we must focus our attention on methyl, since it is the largest substituent on the ring and hence the one most subject to crowding. There are two possible chair conformations (see Fig. 5.9), one with  $\text{CH}_3$  in an equatorial

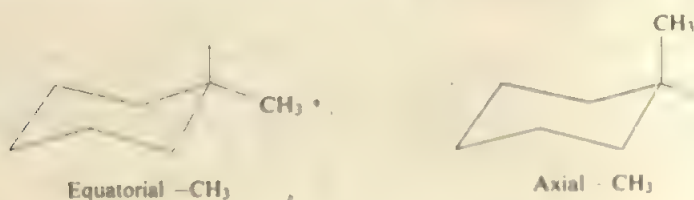


Figure 5.9. Chair conformations of methylcyclohexane

position, the other with  $\text{CH}_3$  in an axial position. As shown in Fig. 5.10, the two axial hydrogens (on C 3 and C 5) approach the axial  $\text{CH}_3$  (on C 1) more closely than any hydrogens approach the equatorial  $\text{CH}_3$ . We would expect the equatorial conformation to be the more stable, and it is, by about 1.8 kcal. Most

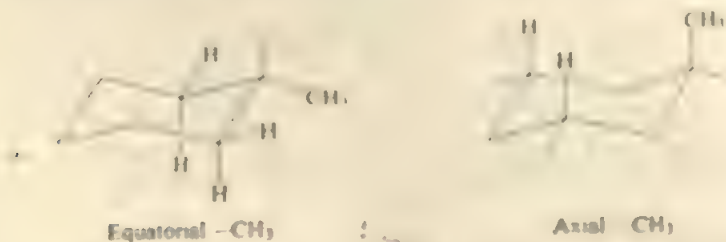


Figure 5.10. 1,3-Diaxial interaction in methylcyclohexane. Axial  $\text{CH}_3$  more crowded than equatorial  $\text{CH}_3$ .

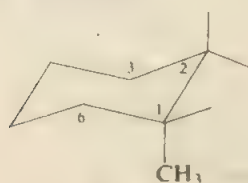
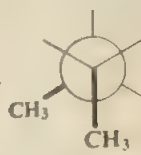
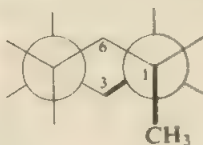
molecules (about 95% at room temperature) exist in the conformation with methyl in the uncrowded equatorial position.

In an equatorial position, we see,  $\text{—CH}_3$  points *away* from its nearest neighbors: the two hydrogens — one axial, and one equatorial — on the adjacent carbons. This is not true of  $\text{CH}_3$  in an axial position, since it is held by a bond that is *parallel* to the bonds holding its nearest neighbors: the two axial hydrogens.

Conformational analysis can account not only for the fact that one conformation is more stable than another, but often — with a fair degree of accuracy — for just *how much* more stable it is. We have attributed the 1.8-kcal energy difference between the two conformations of methylcyclohexane to 1,3-diaxial interactions between a methyl group and *two* hydrogens. If, on that basis, we assign a value of 0.9 kcal/mol to each 1,3-diaxial methyl-hydrogen interaction, we shall find that we can account amazingly well for the energy differences between conformations of a variety of cyclohexanes containing more than one methyl group.

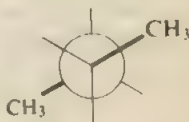
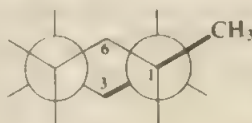
We notice that 0.9 kcal is nearly the same value that we earlier (Sec. 3.5) assigned to a *gauche* interaction in *n*-butane; examination of models shows that this is not just accidental.

Let us make a model of the conformation of methylcyclohexane with axial methyl. If we hold it so that we can sight along the  $\text{C}_1\text{—C}_2$  bond, we see something like this, represented by a Newman projection:

Axial  $\text{—CH}_3$ *Gauche*  
*n*-Butane

The methyl group and C-3 of the ring have the same relative locations as the two methyl groups in the *gauche* conformation of *n*-butane (Sec. 3.5). If we now sight along the  $\text{C}_1\text{—C}_6$  bond, we see a similar arrangement but with C-5 taking the place of C-3.

Next, let us make a model of the conformation with equatorial methyl. This time, if we sight along the  $\text{C}_1\text{—C}_2$  bond, we see this:

Equatorial  $\text{—CH}_3$ *Anti*  
*n*-Butane

Here, methyl and C-3 of the ring have the same relative locations as the two methyl groups in the *anti* conformation of *n*-butane. And if we sight along the  $\text{C}_1\text{—C}_6$  bond, we see methyl and C-5 in the *anti* relationship.

Thus, for each 1,3-diaxial methyl-hydrogen interaction there is a "butane-*gauche*" interaction between the methyl group and a carbon atom of the ring. Of the two approaches, however, looking for 1,3-diaxial interactions is much the easier and has the advantage, when we study substituents other than methyl, of focusing our attention on the sizes of the groups being crowded together.

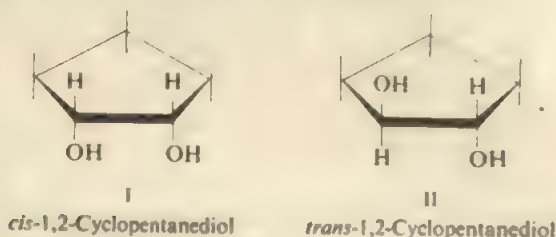
In general, then, it has been found that (a) chair conformations are more stable than twist conformations, and (b) the most stable chair conformations are those in which the largest groups are in equatorial positions. There are exceptions to both these generalizations (which we shall encounter later in problems), but the exceptions are understandable ones.

**Problem 5.2** For other alkylcyclohexanes the difference in energy between equatorial and axial conformations has been found to be: ethyl, 1.9 kcal/mol; isopropyl, 2.1 kcal/mol; and *tert*-butyl, more than 5 kcal/mol. Using models, can you account for the big increase at *tert*-butyl? (*Hint*: Don't forget freedom of rotation about *all* the single bonds.)

### 5.13 Stereoisomerism of cyclic compounds: *cis*- and *trans*-isomers

Let us turn for the moment from conformational analysis, and look at configurational isomerism in cyclic compounds.

We shall begin with the compound 1,2-cyclopentanediol. Using models, we find that we can arrange the atoms of this molecule as in I, in which both hydroxyls lie below (or above) the plane of the ring, and as in II, in which one hydroxyl lies above and the other lies below the plane of the ring.



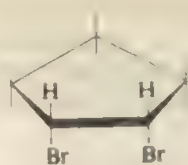
I and II cannot be superimposed, and hence are isomers. They differ only in the way their atoms are oriented in space, and hence are stereoisomers. No amount of rotation about bonds can interconvert I and II, and hence they are not conformational isomers. They are configurational isomers; they are interconverted only by breaking of bonds, and hence are isolable. They are not mirror images, and hence are diastereomers; they should, therefore, have different physical properties, as the two diols actually have. Configuration I is designated the *cis*-configuration, and II is designated the *trans*-configuration. (Compare *cis*- and *trans*-alkenes, Sec. 7.6.)

**Problem 5.3** You have two bottles labeled "1,2-Cyclopentanediol," one containing a compound of *m p* 30, the other a compound of *m p* 55. Both compounds are optically inactive. How could you decide, beyond any doubt, which bottle should be labeled "*cis*" and which "*trans*"?

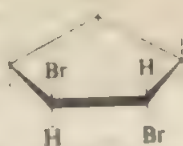
Stereoisomerism of this same sort should be possible for compounds other than diols, and for rings other than cyclopentane. Some examples of isomers that



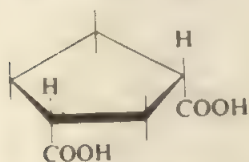
have been isolated are:



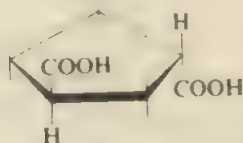
*cis*-1,2-Dibromocyclopentane



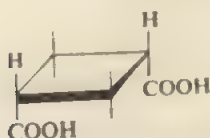
*trans*-1,2-Dibromocyclopentane



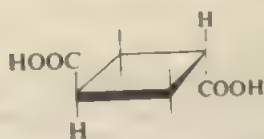
*cis*-1,3-Cyclopentanedicarboxylic acid



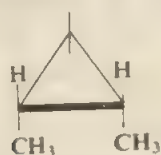
*trans*-1,3-Cyclopentanedicarboxylic acid



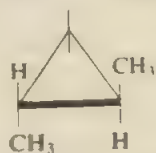
*cis*-1,3-Cyclobutanedicarboxylic acid



*trans*-1,3-Cyclobutanedicarboxylic acid

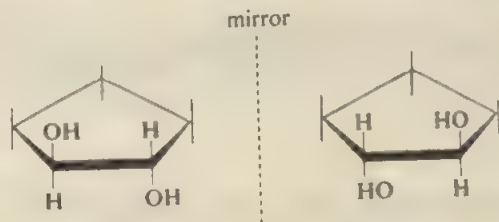


*cis*-1,2-Dimethylcyclopropane



*trans*-1,2-Dimethylcyclopropane

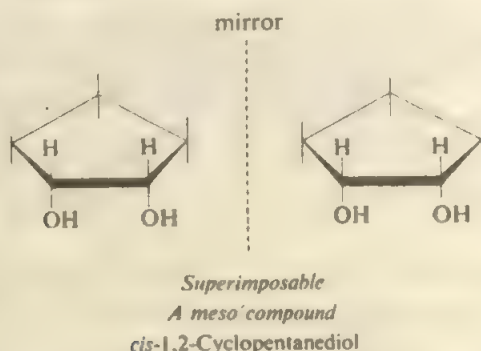
If we examine models of *cis*- and *trans*-1,2-cyclopentanediol more closely, we find that each compound contains two chiral centers. We know (Sec. 4.18) that compounds containing more than one chiral center are often—but not always—chiral. Are these diols chiral? As always, to test for possible chirality, we construct a model of the molecule and a model of its mirror image, and see if the two are superimposable. When we do this for the *trans*-diol, we find that the models are not superimposable. The *trans*-diol is chiral, and the two models we have constructed therefore correspond to enantiomers. Next, we find that the models are not interconvertible by rotation about single bonds. They therefore represent, not



Not superimposable  
Enantiomers: resolvable  
*trans*-1,2-Cyclopentanediol

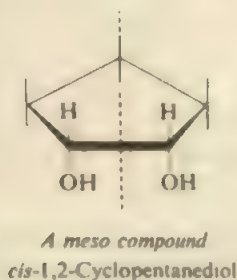
conformational isomers, but configurational isomers; they should be capable of isolation—*resolution*—and, when isolated, each should be optically active.

Next let us look at *cis*-1,2-cyclopentanediol. This, too, contains two chiral centers; is it also chiral? This time we find that a model of the molecule and a model of its mirror image *are* superimposable. In spite of its chiral centers, *cis*-1,2-



cyclopentanediol is not chiral; it cannot exist in two enantiomeric forms, and cannot be optically active. It is a *meso* compound.

We might have recognized *cis*-1,2-cyclopentanediol as a *meso* structure on sight from the fact that one half of the molecule is the mirror image of the other half (Sec. 4.18):



Thus, of the two 1,2-cyclopentanediols obtainable by ordinary synthesis, only one is separable into enantiomers, that is, is *resolvable*; this must necessarily be the *trans*-diol. The other diol is a single, inactive, nonresolvable compound, and it must have the *cis*-configuration.

What is the relationship between the *meso cis*-diol and either of the enantiomeric *trans*-diols? They are *diastereomers*, since they are stereoisomers that are not enantiomers.

**Problem 5.4** Five of the eight structures shown at the top of p. 183 are achiral. Which are these?

## 5.14 Stereoisomerism of cyclic compounds. Conformational analysis

So far, we have described the relative positions of groups in *cis*- and *trans*-isomers in terms of flat rings: both groups are below (or above) the plane of the ring, or one group is above and the other is below the plane of the ring. In view of

what we have said about puckering, however, we realize that this is a highly simplified picture even for four- and five-membered rings, and for six-membered rings is quite inaccurate.

Let us apply the methods of conformational analysis to the stereochemistry of cyclohexane derivatives; and, since we are already somewhat familiar with interactions of the methyl group, let us use the dimethylcyclohexanes as our examples.

If we consider only the more stable, chair conformations, we find that a particular molecule of *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane, to take our first example, can exist in two conformations (see Fig. 5.11). In one, both  $-\text{CH}_3$  groups are in

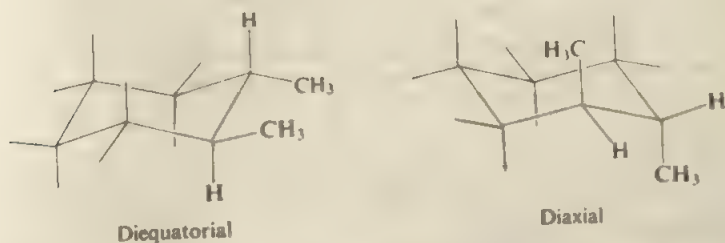


Figure 5.11. Chair conformations of *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane.

equatorial positions, and in the other, both  $-\text{CH}_3$  groups are in axial positions. Thus, we see, the two  $-\text{CH}_3$  groups of the *trans*-isomer are not necessarily on opposite sides of the ring; in fact, because of lesser crowding between  $-\text{CH}_3$  groups and axial hydrogens of the ring (less 1,3-diaxial interaction), the more stable conformation is the diequatorial one.

A molecule of *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane can also exist in two conformations (see Fig. 5.12). In this case, the two are of equal stability (they are mirror images) since in each there is one equatorial and one axial  $-\text{CH}_3$  group.

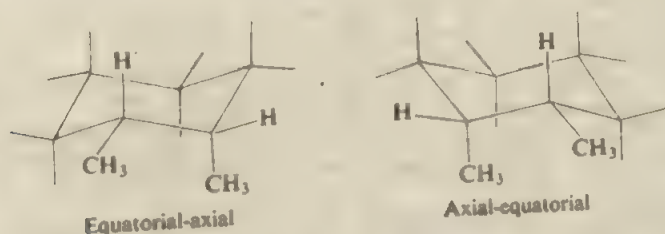


Figure 5.12. Chair conformations of *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane.

In the most stable conformation of *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane, both  $-\text{CH}_3$  groups occupy uncrowded equatorial positions. In either conformation of the *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane, only one  $-\text{CH}_3$  group can occupy an equatorial position. It is not surprising to find that *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane is more stable than *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane.

It is interesting to note that in the most stable conformation (diequatorial) of the *trans*-isomer, the  $-\text{CH}_3$  groups are exactly the same distance apart as they are in either conformation of the *cis*-isomer. Clearly, it is not repulsion between the  $-\text{CH}_3$  groups—as one might incorrectly infer from planar representations—that



causes the difference in stability between the *trans*- and *cis*-isomers: the cause is 1,3-diaxial interactions (Sec. 5.12).

Now, just *how much* more stable is the *trans*-isomer? In the *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane there is one axial methyl group, which means *two* 1,3-diaxial methyl-hydrogen interactions: one with each of two hydrogen atoms. (Or, what is equivalent (Sec. 5.12), there are two butane-*gauche* interactions between the methyl groups and carbon atoms of the ring.) In addition, there is one butane-*gauche* interaction between the two methyl groups. On the basis of 0.9 kcal for each 1,3-diaxial methyl-hydrogen interaction or butane-*gauche* interaction, we calculate a total of 2.7 kcal of van der Waals strain for the *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane. In the (diequatorial) *trans*-isomer there are no 1,3-diaxial methyl-hydrogen interactions, but there is one butane-*gauche* interaction between the methyl groups; this confers 0.9 kcal of van der Waals strain on the molecule. We subtract 0.9 kcal from 2.7 kcal and conclude that the *trans*-isomer should be more stable than the *cis*-isomer by 1.8 kcal/mol, in excellent agreement with the measured value of 1.87 kcal.

**Problem 5.5** Compare stabilities of the possible chair conformations of:

- cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane;
  - trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane;
  - cis*-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane;
  - trans*-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane;
  - cis*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane;
  - trans*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane.
- (g) On the basis of 0.9 kcal/mol per 1,3-diaxial methyl hydrogen interaction, predict (where you can) the potential energy difference between the members of each pair of conformations.

**Problem 5.6** On theoretical grounds, K. S. Pitzer (then at the University of California) calculated that the energy difference between the conformations of *cis*-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane should be about 5.4 kcal, much larger than that between the chair conformations of *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane or of *trans*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane.

- What special factor must Pitzer have recognized in the *cis*-1,3-isomer? (b) Using the 0.9 kcal value where it applies, what value must you assign to the factor you invoked in (a), if you are to arrive at the energy difference of 5.4 kcal for the *cis*-1,3-conformations? (c) The potential energy difference between *cis*- and *trans*-1,1,3,5-tetramethylcyclohexane was then measured by Norman L. Allinger (University of Georgia) as 3.7 kcal/mol. This measurement was carried out because of its direct bearing on the matter of *cis*-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane. What is the connection between this measurement and parts (a) and (b)? Does Allinger's measurement support Pitzer's calculation?

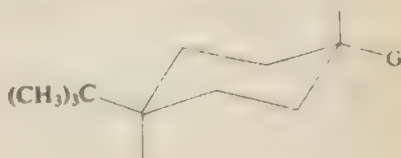
**Problem 5.7** Predict the relative stabilities of the *cis*- and *trans*-isomers of: (a) 1,3-dimethylcyclohexane, (b) 1,4-dimethylcyclohexane, (c) On the basis of 0.9 kcal/mol per 1,3-diaxial methyl hydrogen interaction or butane-*gauche* interaction, and assuming that each stereoisomer exists exclusively in its more stable conformation, predict the potential energy difference between members of each pair of stereoisomers.

Conformational analysis of cyclohexane derivatives containing several *different* substituents follows along the same lines as that of the dimethylcyclohexanes. We need to keep in mind that, of two groups, the larger one will tend to call the tune. Because of its very large 1,3-diaxial interactions (Problem 5.2, p. 182), the bulky *tert*-butyl group is particularly prone to occupy an equatorial position. If—as is usually the case—other substituents are considerably smaller than *tert*-butyl, the molecule is virtually locked in a single conformation—the one with an equatorial

*tert*-butyl group. Consider cyclohexanes I and II containing a 4-*tert*-butyl group *cis* or *trans* to another substituent -G. In each diastereomer, *tert*-butyl holds -G exclusively in the axial or in the equatorial position, yet, because of its distance,



I  
A *cis*-4-*tert*-butyl  
substituted cyclohexane



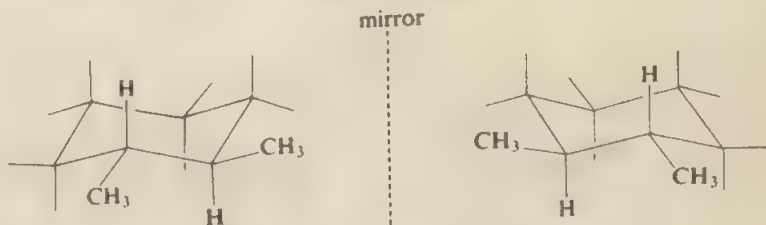
II  
A *trans*-4-*tert*-butyl  
substituted cyclohexane

exerts little electronic effect on -G. Following a suggestion by Professor Saul Winstein (at the University of California, Los Angeles), *tert*-butyl has been widely used as a holding group, to permit the study of physical and chemical properties associated with a purely axial or purely equatorial substituent.

**Problem 5.8** Use the energy differences given in Problem 5.2 (p. 182) to calculate values for the various alkyl-hydrogen 1,3-diaxial interactions, and from these calculate the difference in energy between the two conformations of:

- cis*-4-*tert*-butylmethylcyclohexane;
- trans*-4-*tert*-butylmethylcyclohexane;
- trans*-3-*cis*-4-dimethyl-*tert*-butylcyclohexane.

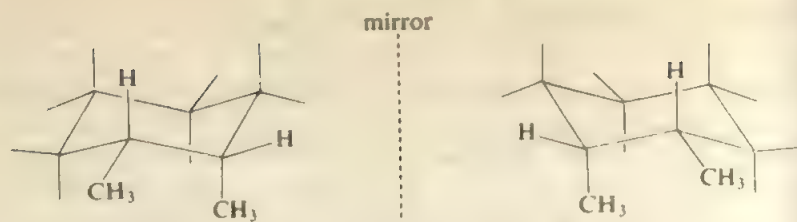
Now, what can we say about the possible chirality of the 1,2-dimethylcyclohexanes? Let us make a model of *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane—in the more stable diequatorial conformation, say—and a model of its mirror image. We find



Not superimposable; not interconvertible  
*trans*-1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane  
A resolvable racemic modification

they are not superimposable, and therefore are enantiomers. We find that they are not interconvertible, and hence are configurational isomers. (When we flip one of these into the opposite chair conformation, it is converted, not into its mirror image, but into a diaxial conformation.) Thus, *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane should, in principle, be resolvable into (configurational) enantiomers, each of which should be optically active.

Next, let us make a model of *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane and a model of its mirror image. We find they are not superimposable, and hence are enantiomers. In



*Not superimposable; but interconvertible*

*cis-1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane*

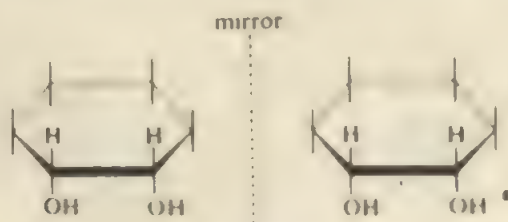
*A non-resolvable racemic modification*

contrast to what we have said for the *trans*-compound, however, we find that these models *are* interconvertible by flipping one chair conformation into the other. These are conformational enantiomers and hence, except possibly at low temperatures, should interconvert too rapidly for resolution and measurement of optical activity.

Thus, just as with the *cis*- and *trans*-1,2-cyclopentanediols (Sec. 5.13), we could assign configurations to the *cis*- and *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexanes by finding out which of the two is resolvable. The *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane is not literally a *meso* compound, but it is a non-resolvable racemic modification, which for most practical purposes amounts to the same thing.

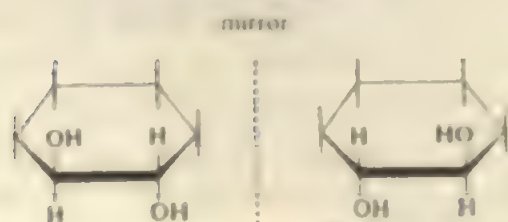
To summarize, then, 1,2-dimethylcyclohexane exists as a pair of (configurational) diastereomers: the *cis*- and *trans*-isomers. The *cis*-isomer exists as a pair of conformational enantiomers. The *trans*-isomer exists as a pair of configurational enantiomers, each of which in turn exists as two conformational diastereomers (axial-axial and equatorial-equatorial).

Because of the ready interconvertibility of chair conformations, it is possible to use planar drawings to predict the configurational stereoisomerism of cyclohexane derivatives. To understand the true geometry of such molecules, however,



*Superimposable*

*cis-1,2-Cyclohexanediol*



*Not superimposable*

*trans-1,2-Cyclohexanediol*



and with it the matter of stability, one must use models and formulas like those in Figs 5.11 and 5.12.

**Problem 5.9** Which of the following compounds are resolvable, and which are non-resolvable? Which are truly *meso* compounds? Use models as well as drawings.

- |                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| (a) <i>cis</i> -1,2-cyclohexanediol   | (d) <i>trans</i> -1,3-cyclohexanediol |
| (b) <i>trans</i> -1,2-cyclohexanediol | (e) <i>cis</i> -1,4-cyclohexanediol   |
| (c) <i>cis</i> -1,3-cyclohexanediol   | (f) <i>trans</i> -1,4-cyclohexanediol |

**Problem 5.10** Tell which, if any, of the compounds of Problem 5.9 exist as:

- a single conformation;
- a pair of conformational enantiomers;
- a pair of conformational diastereomers;
- a pair of (configurational) enantiomers, each of which exists as a single conformation;
- a pair of (configurational) enantiomers, each of which exists as a pair of conformational diastereomers;
- none of the above answers. (Give the correct answer.)

**Problem 5.11** Draw structural formulas for all stereoisomers of the following. Label any *meso* compounds and indicate pairs of enantiomers. Do any (like *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane) exist as a non-resolvable racemic modification?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) <i>cis</i> -2-chlorocyclohexanol   | (d) <i>trans</i> -3-chlorocyclopentanol |
| (b) <i>trans</i> -2-chlorocyclohexanol | (e) <i>cis</i> -4-chlorocyclohexanol    |
| (c) <i>cis</i> -3-chlorocyclopentanol  | (f) <i>trans</i> -4-chlorocyclohexanol  |

## 5.15 Analysis of cycloalkanes

A cyclopropane readily dissolves in concentrated sulfuric acid, and in this resembles an alkene or alkyne (Secs. 8.29 and 13.13). It can be differentiated from these unsaturated hydrocarbons, however, by the fact that it is not oxidized by cold, dilute, neutral permanganate (Sec. 8.29).

Other cycloalkanes have the same kind of properties as their open-chain counterparts, and they are characterized in the same way: by their general inertness. That one is dealing with a cyclic hydrocarbon is shown by its molecular formula. The properties of cyclohexane, for example, show clearly that it is an alkane. However, combustion analysis and molecular weight determination show its molecular formula to be  $C_6H_{12}$ . Only a cyclic structure (although not necessarily a six-membered ring) is consistent with both sets of data.

**Problem 5.12** Compare the molecular formulas of: (a) *n*-hexane and cyclohexane; (b) *n*-pentane and cyclopentane; (c) dodecane, *n*-hexylcyclohexane, and cyclohexylcyclohexane. (d) In general, how can you deduce the number of rings in a compound from its molecular formula and degree of unsaturation?

**Problem 5.13** What is the molecular formula of: (a) cyclohexane; (b) methylcyclopentane; (c) 1,2-dimethylcyclobutane? (d) Does the molecular formula give any information about the size of ring in a compound?

(Analysis of cycloalkanes by spectroscopy will be discussed in Chap. 17.)

## PROBLEMS

1. Draw structural formulas of:

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| (a) methylcyclopentane                       | (d) cyclohexylcyclohexane             |
| (b) <i>trans</i> -1,3-dichlorocyclobutane    | (e) 1,1-dimethyl-4-chlorocycloheptane |
| (c) <i>cis</i> -2-bromo-1-methylcyclopentane | (f) 1-chlorobicyclo[2.2.2]octane      |

2. Give structures and names of the principal organic products expected from each of the following reactions:

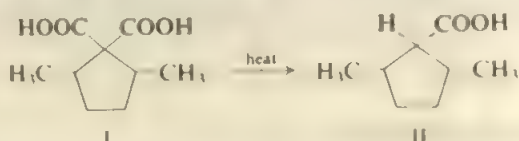
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) cyclopropane + $\text{Cl}_2$ , $\text{FeCl}_3$ | (d) cyclopentane + $\text{Cl}_2$ , $\text{FeCl}_3$             |
| (b) cyclopropane + $\text{Cl}_2$ (300°)            | (e) cyclopentane + $\text{Cl}_2$ (300°)                        |
| (c) cyclopropane + conc. $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$   | (f) chlorocyclopentane + $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CuLi}$ |

3. Give structures for all isomers of the following. For cyclohexane derivatives, planar formulas (p. 188) will be sufficient here. Label pairs of enantiomers, and *meso* compounds.

- |                           |                                     |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (a) dichlorocyclopropanes | (d) dichlorocyclohexanes            |
| (b) dichlorocyclobutanes  | (e) chloro-1,1-dimethylcyclohexanes |
| (c) dichlorocyclopentanes | (f) 1,3,5-trichlorocyclohexanes     |

(g) There are a number of stereoisomeric 1,2,3,4,5,6-hexachlorocyclohexanes. Without attempting to draw all of them, give the structure of the most stable isomer, and show its preferred conformation.

4. (a) 2,5-Dimethyl-1,1-cyclopentanedicarboxylic acid (I) can be prepared as two optically inactive substances (A and B) of different m.p. Draw their structures. (b) Upon heating, A yields two 2,5-dimethylcyclopentanecarboxylic acids (II), and B yields only one. Assign structures to A and B.



5. The following compound can be resolved into optically active enantiomers.



Using models and then drawing three-dimensional formulas, account for this. Label the chiral center in the molecule.

6. (a) *trans*-1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane exists about 99% in the diequatorial conformation. *trans*-1,2-Dibromocyclohexane (or *trans*-1,2-dichlorocyclohexane), on the other hand, exists about equally in the diequatorial and diaxial conformations; furthermore, the fraction of the diaxial conformation decreases with increasing polarity of the solvent. How do you account for the contrast between the dimethyl and dibromo (or dichloro) compounds? (Hint: See Problem 11, p. 162.)

(b) If *trans*-3,4-dibromo-*tert*-butylcyclohexane is subjected to prolonged heating, it is converted into an equilibrium mixture (about 50:50) of itself and a diastereomer. What is the diastereomer likely to be? How do you account for the approximately equal stability of these two diastereomers? (Here, and in (c), consider the more stable conformation of each diastereomer to be the one with an equatorial *tert*-butyl group.)

(c) There are two more diastereomeric 3,4-dibromo-*tert*-butylcyclohexanes. What are they? How do you account for the fact that neither is present to an appreciable extent in the equilibrium mixture?

7. The compound *decalin*,  $C_{10}H_{18}$ , consists of two fused cyclohexane rings



Decalin

(a) Using models, show how there can be two isomeric decalins, *cis* and *trans*. (b) How many different conformations free of angle strain are possible for *cis*-decalin? For *trans*-decalin? (c) Which is the most stable conformation of *cis*-decalin? Of *trans*-decalin? (d) Account for the fact that *trans*-decalin is more stable than *cis*-decalin. (*Hint*: Consider each ring in turn. What are the largest substituents on each ring?) (e) The difference in stability between *cis*- and *trans*-decalin is about 2 kcal/mol, conversion of one into the other takes place only under very vigorous conditions. The chair and twist-boat forms of cyclohexane, on the other hand, differ in stability by about 6 kcal/mol, yet are readily interconverted at room temperature. How do you account for the contrast? Draw energy curves to illustrate your answer.

8. Allinger (p. 186) found the energy difference between *cis*- and *trans*-1,3-di-*tert*-butylcyclohexane to be 5.9 kcal/mol, and considers that this value represents the energy difference between the chair and twist-boat forms of cyclohexane. Defend Allinger's position.

9. It has been suggested that in certain substituted cyclopentanes the ring exists preferentially in the "envelope" form:

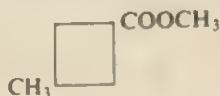


Using models, suggest a possible explanation for each of the following facts:

(a) The attachment of a methyl group to the badly strained cyclopentane ring raises the heat of combustion very little more than attachment of a methyl group to the unstrained cyclohexane ring. (*Hint*: Where is the methyl group located in the "envelope" form?)

(b) Of the 1,2-dimethylcyclopentanes, the *trans*-isomer is more stable than the *cis*. Of the 1,3-dimethylcyclopentanes, on the other hand, the *cis*-isomer is more stable than the *trans*.

(c) The *cis*-isomer of methyl 3-methylcyclobutanecarboxylate



is more stable than the *trans*-isomer.



# Alkyl Halides

## *Nucleophilic Aliphatic Substitution*

---



---

### 6.1 Homolytic and heterolytic chemistry

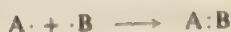
Chemistry owes its existence as a science, of course, to the chemical change: the conversion of one substance into another. Old molecules are changed into new ones, which means that old bonds must be broken, and new bonds must be formed—covalent bonds, mostly, in the case of organic chemistry.

Now, the breaking of a covalent bond, we have seen (Sec. 1.14), can take place in two fundamentally different ways, depending upon what happens to the two electrons making up the bonding pair: in homolysis, one electron goes to each fragment; in heterolysis, both electrons go to the same fragment. The nouns “homolysis” and “heterolysis” are used only in their literal sense (p. 21) to mean bond-breaking. But the adjectives “homolytic” and “heterolytic”—for want of better words—are used in a broader sense, to include the bond-making process as well, and so define two broad classes of organic reactions.

Thus, **homolytic reactions** are those in which the electrons of the bonding pair are taken away—or provided—*singly*. Whether bonds are being broken,



or formed,



or simultaneously broken and formed,



each of the atoms being separated takes one of the bonding electrons, and each of the atoms being joined together provides one of the bonding electrons.

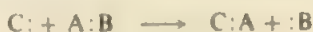
**Heterolytic reactions** are those in which the bonding electrons are taken away or provided *-in pairs*. Whether bonds are, being broken,



or formed,



or simultaneously broken and formed,



one of the atoms being separated takes both bonding electrons, and one of the atoms being joined together provides both electrons.

Homolytic chemistry is thus the chemistry of the odd electron; heterolytic chemistry is the chemistry of the electron pair. Where homolytic chemistry deals with the neutral particles called free radicals, heterolytic chemistry deals with positive and negative charges, with cations and anions. Homolytic reactions are typically carried out in the gas phase, or in solvents whose principal function is to provide an inert medium in which the reacting molecules can move about. Heterolytic reactions are typically carried out in solution; and the solvents, as we shall see, exert powerful effects—just how powerful is only now being realized.

So far, the reaction we have been chiefly concerned with—free-radical substitution, as exemplified by the halogenation of alkanes—is a part of homolytic chemistry. Now let us begin our study of heterolytic chemistry. The larger part of organic chemistry is heterolytic, and it is the kind that will take up most of our time in the remainder of this book. The reaction we shall start with is, like halogenation, substitution, but of a quite different kind: heterolytic, and of the specific type called *nucleophilic aliphatic substitution*.

## 6.2 Relative rates of competing reactions

In our study of nucleophilic substitution, we shall enormously broaden our understanding of the principle underlying all of organic chemistry—that chemical behavior depends upon molecular structure. Before we go further, let us remind ourselves of how, in general, we approach the matter of chemical behavior.

In a reaction vessel there is a collection of molecules, hanging blindly about, colliding with one another. In principle, a number of options are open to them—a number of reactions that they can conceivably undergo. Which of these reactions actually takes place—or, at least, predominates—is the one that *goes fastest*. Chemical behavior thus comes down to a matter of *relative rates of competing reactions*.

As we have seen from our study of halogenation of alkanes, relative rates of reaction thus determine

(a) *what happens*: a halogen atom, for example, attaches itself to a hydrogen of methane and abstracts the hydrogen—the alternative, attachment to carbon with expulsion of a hydrogen atom—is vastly slower and, in effect, does not take place (Sec. 2.21)

(b) *where* it happens: a halogen atom abstracts hydrogen from ethane in preference to methane; it abstracts a tertiary hydrogen in preference to a primary hydrogen (Sec. 3.23).

(c) even *whether* it happens: a chlorine atom abstracts hydrogen from an alkane; an iodine atom does not, because it recombines with another iodine atom faster (Sec. 2.20).

A chemical reaction is, then, the result of a *competition*; it is a race that is won by the fastest runner. And, we have learned, the most important factor determining how fast a reaction goes is the energy of activation. What our collection of molecules tend to do, by and large, is *what is easiest for them*. They follow the course that makes the smallest demand for energy; that is, they undergo the reaction with the smallest  $E_{\text{act}}$ .

And, finally, to help us understand  $E_{\text{act}}$ —to interpret and, sometimes, even to predict—we have our all-important intellectual tool, the transition state. The more stable the transition state relative to the reactant, then the smaller the  $E_{\text{act}}$  and the faster the reaction. It is the concept of the transition state that is our mental link between molecular structure and chemical behavior.

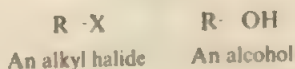
What we have said above is based on the premise that the products we *obtain* from a chemical reaction, and their relative proportions, reflect the relative rates at which they are initially *formed*; that is to say, once formed, a particular product sits and waits unchanged for the completion of reaction. For most of the reactions we study this premise is correct; under the conditions employed, most organic reactions are essentially irreversible, that is, they are one-way reactions.

But this is *not always* the case. Some reactions are reversible, and equilibrium exists among the various products; what we then obtain reflects, not which product is initially formed faster, but which product is eventually favored by the equilibrium. We shall see examples of this kind of behavior. Irreversibility, therefore, is not something that can be simply assumed for an organic reaction. It must be established by experiment; and only when it has been established are we justified in interpreting product composition on the basis of relative rates.

In our study of nucleophilic substitution, we shall have much to do with competition between reaction pathways: in this chapter, competition between different mechanisms for substitution itself; in later chapters, competition between nucleophilic substitution and a reaction of a quite different type, elimination. We shall be concerned with the relative rates at which these competing reactions take place, and the kinds of transition states they pass through. Most important, we shall learn about the factors that determine the stability of these transition states, factors that we shall work with throughout the rest of our study of organic chemistry.

### 6.3 Structure of alkyl halides and alcohols. The functional group

In this introduction to nucleophilic substitution, we shall deal chiefly with two families of compounds: *alkyl halides* and *alcohols*. Alkyl halides have the general formula  $\text{RX}$ , and alcohols the general formula  $\text{ROH}$ ; in both cases  $\text{R}$  is an alkyl or substituted alkyl group.



The characteristic feature of the alkyl halide structure is the halogen atom,  $\text{X}$ , and the characteristic reactions of an alkyl halide are those that take place at



the halogen atom. *The atom or group of atoms that defines the structure of a particular family of organic compounds and, at the same time, determines their properties is called the functional group.*

In alkyl halides the functional group is the halogen atom, and in alcohols the hydroxyl group,  $\text{—OH}$ . We must not forget that an alkyl halide or alcohol has alkyl groups attached to these functional groups; under the proper conditions, the alkyl portions of these molecules undergo the reactions typical of alkanes. However, the reactions that are *characteristic* of each of these families are those that occur at the halogen atom or at the hydroxyl group. A large part of organic chemistry is therefore the chemistry of the various functional groups. We shall learn to associate a particular set of properties with a particular group wherever we may find it.

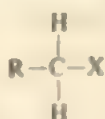
When we encounter a complicated molecule, which contains a number of different functional groups, we may expect the properties of this molecule to be roughly a composite of the properties of the various functional groups. A compound that contains both  $\text{—X}$  and  $\text{—OH}$ , for example, is both an alkyl halide and an alcohol; depending upon experimental conditions, it may undergo reactions characteristic of either kind of compound. The properties of one group may be modified, of course, by the presence of another group, and it is important for us to understand these modifications; but our point of departure is the chemistry of individual functional groups.

In this chapter, we shall take up alkyl halides in a systematic way. We shall outline their chemistry, and then concentrate on their most important reaction: nucleophilic substitution.

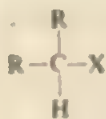
Alcohols, because of the greater complexity of their chemistry, will be treated systematically later (Chapters 10 and 11). But we cannot go very far into organic chemistry of almost any kind without encountering alcohols, and the chemistry of alkyl halides is no exception. To begin with, alcohols are the compounds from which alkyl halides—and, in fact, most substances undergoing nucleophilic substitution—are nearly always made. Next, once we have made alkyl halides and are allowing them to undergo nucleophilic substitution, we encounter alcohols again playing a variety of roles: they may be the reagents with which the alkyl halides react, or the products, or the solvents in which reaction takes place. (Indeed, as we shall see, the preparation of alkyl halides involves nucleophilic substitution, too, this time with alcohols as the reactants undergoing substitution.) And so in this chapter we must learn enough about alcohols to be able to work with them: what kind of structure they have, how to name and classify them, and what some of their fundamental properties are.

## 6.4 Classification and nomenclature of alkyl halides

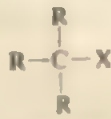
We classify a carbon atom as *primary*, *secondary*, or *tertiary*, according to the number of other carbon atoms attached to it (Sec. 3.11). An alkyl halide is classified according to the kind of carbon that bears the halogen:



Primary  
(1)



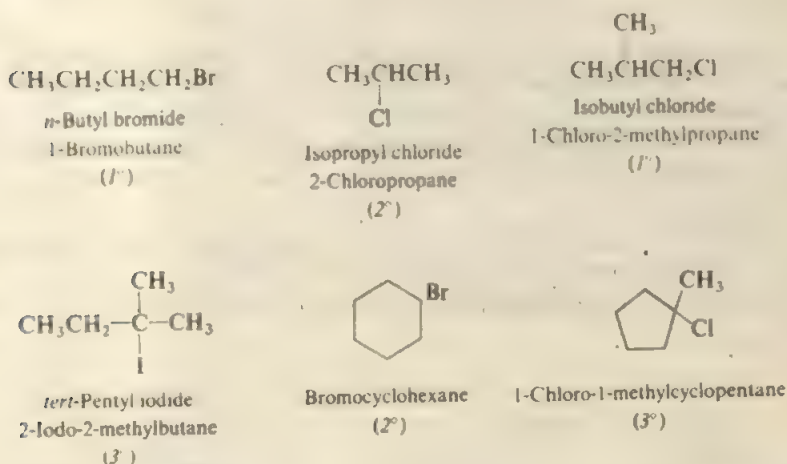
Secondary  
(2)



Tertiary  
(3)

As members of the same family, containing the same functional group, alkyl halides of different classes tend to undergo the same kinds of reactions. They differ in rates of reaction, however, and these differences in rates may lead to other, deeper differences.

As we have seen (Secs. 3.8 and 3.10), alkyl halides can be given two kinds of names: **common names** (for the simpler halides); and **IUPAC names**, in which the compound is simply named as an alkane with a halogen attached as a side chain. For example:

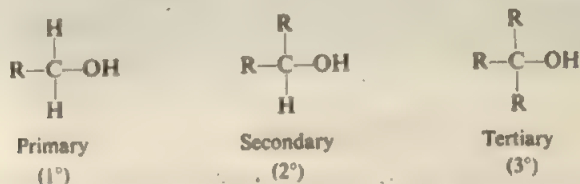


We should notice that similar names do not always mean the same classification; for example, isopropyl chloride is a secondary chloride, whereas isobutyl chloride is a primary chloride.

**Problem 6.1** Label as primary, secondary, or tertiary each of the isomeric chloropentanes whose structures you drew in Problem 3.5, p. 86.

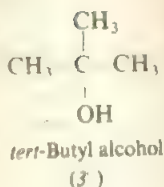
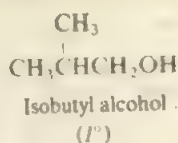
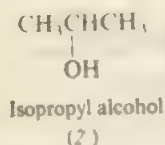
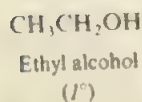
## 6.5 Classification and nomenclature of alcohols

Like alkyl halides, alcohols are classified as *primary*, *secondary*, or *tertiary* according to the kind of carbon that bears the —OH group.



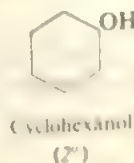
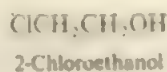
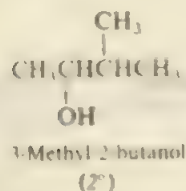
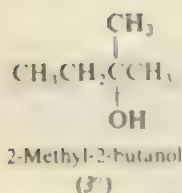
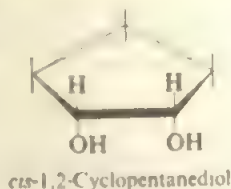
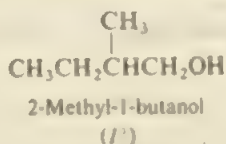
Alcohols are named by two principal systems. With the simpler alcohols the common names are most often used. A common name simply consists of the name

of the alkyl group followed by the word *alcohol*. For example:



The most versatile system is, of course, the IUPAC. The rules are:

1. Select as the parent structure the longest continuous carbon chain *that contains the OH group*; then consider the compound to have been derived from this structure by replacement of hydrogen by various groups. The parent structure is known as *ethanol*, *propanol*, *butanol*, etc., depending upon the number of carbon atoms; each name is derived by replacing the terminal *-e* of the corresponding alkane name by *-ol*.
2. Indicate by a number the position of the OH group in the parent chain, generally using the lowest possible number for this purpose.
3. Indicate by numbers the positions of other groups attached to the parent chain.



We should notice a distinction here, where an alkyl halide is named as a haloalkane, with an alkane as the parent structure, an alcohol is named as an *alkanol*, with an alcohol as the parent structure.

**Problem 6.2** (a) Ignoring enantiomerism, draw the structures of the eight isomeric pentyl alcohols,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{OH}$ . (b) Name each by the IUPAC system. (c) Label each as primary, secondary, or tertiary. (d) Which one is isopentyl alcohol? *n*-Pentyl alcohol? *tert*-Pentyl alcohol?

## 6.6 Physical properties of alkyl halides

Because of their greater molecular weights, haloalkanes have considerably higher boiling points (Table 6.1) than alkanes of the same number of carbons. For a given alkyl group, the boiling point increases with increasing atomic weight of the halogen, so that a fluoride is the lowest boiling, an iodide the highest boiling.



Table 6.1 ALKYL HALIDES

Name	Chloride		Bromide		Iodide	
	B.p., °C	Density at 20°C	B.p., °C	Density at 20°C	B.p., °C	Density at 20°C
Methyl	-24		5		43	2.279
Ethyl	12.5		38	1.440	72	1.933
<i>n</i> -Propyl	47	0.890	71	1.335	102	1.747
<i>n</i> -Butyl	78.5	.884	102	1.276	130	1.617
<i>n</i> -Pentyl	108	.883	130	1.223	157	1.517
<i>n</i> -Hexyl	134	.882	156	1.173	180	1.441
<i>n</i> -Heptyl	160	.880	180		204	1.401
<i>n</i> -Octyl	185	.879	202		225.5	
Isopropyl	36.5	.859	60	1.310	89.5	1.705
Isobutyl	69	.875	91	1.261	120	1.605
<i>sec</i> -Butyl	68	.871	91	1.258	119	1.595
<i>tert</i> -Butyl	51	.840	73	1.222	100 <sup>d</sup>	
Cyclohexyl	142.5	1.000	165			
Vinyl (Haloethene)	-14		16		56	
Allyl (3-Halopropene)	45	.938	71	1.398	103	
Crotyl (1-Halo-2-butene)	84				132	
Methylvinylcarbinyl (3-Halo-1-butene)	64					
Propargyl (3-Halo-1-ynene)	65		90	1.520	115	
<i>n</i> -Nonyl	179	1.102	201		93 <sup>10</sup>	
$\alpha$ -Phenylethyl	92 <sup>15</sup>		85 <sup>10</sup>			
$\beta$ -Phenylethyl	92 <sup>20</sup>		92 <sup>11</sup>		127 <sup>19</sup>	
Diphenylmethyl	173 <sup>19</sup>		184 <sup>20</sup>			
Triphenylmethyl	310		230 <sup>15</sup>			
Dihalomethane	40	1.336	99	2.49	180 <sup>d</sup>	3.325
Trihalomethane	61	1.489	151	2.89	<i>subl.</i>	4.008
Tetrahalomethane	77	1.595	189.5	3.42	<i>subl.</i>	4.32
1,1-Dihaloethane	57	1.174	110	2.056	179	2.84
1,2-Dihaloethane	84	1.257	132	2.180	<i>d</i>	2.13
Trihaloethylene	87		164	2.708		
Tetrahaloethylene	121				<i>subl.</i>	
Benzal halide	205		140 <sup>20</sup>			
Benzotrihalide	221	1.38				

For a given halogen, the boiling point rises with increasing carbon number; as with alkanes, the boiling point rise is 20–30° for each added carbon, except for the very small homologs. As before, branching involving either alkyl groups or the halogen itself lowers the boiling point.

In spite of their modest polarity, alkyl halides are insoluble in water, probably because of their inability to form hydrogen bonds. They are soluble in the typical organic solvents of low polarity, like benzene, ether, chloroform, or ligroin.

Iodo, bromo, and polychloro compounds are more dense than water.

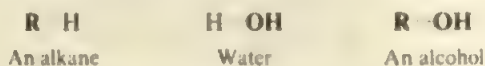
Alkanes and alkyl halides, then, have the physical properties we might expect of compounds of low polarity, whose molecules are held together by van der Waals forces or weak dipole-dipole attraction. They have relatively low melting points and boiling points, and are soluble in non-polar solvents and insoluble in water.

There is a further result of their low polarity: while alkanes and alkyl halides are themselves good solvents for other compounds of low polarity—each other, for example—they cannot solvate simple ions appreciably, and hence cannot dissolve inorganic salts.

## 6.7 Physical properties of alcohols

The physical properties of alcohols contrast sharply with those we have just described for alkanes and alkyl halides. To see what this contrast is, and how it arises, let us examine the structure of alcohols.

The functional group is hydroxyl,  $\text{OH}$ , and it is therefore at this group that we should look first to understand the characteristic properties of alcohols. Very well—but just what can we expect of this group? To start with, it is like the hydroxyl group of water, a compound with which we are already familiar. An alcohol contains an alkyl group, too; this resembles an alkane, and we know something of what to expect of it from having studied alkanes. So, as we did before (Sec. 1.21), we view an alcohol as a composite of an alkane and water; from this viewpoint we



can begin to understand not only the physical properties of alcohols, but many of their chemical properties as well.

The hydroxyl group is quite polar and, most important, has a very special structural feature: it contains hydrogen attached to the highly electronegative element, oxygen. Through the hydroxyl group, alcohol molecules are capable of forming *hydrogen bonds*: hydrogen bonds to each other, which give alcohols abnormally high boiling points (Sec. 1.20); hydrogen bonds to other molecules,



which make alcohols soluble in other protic compounds, such as water (Sec. 1.21). These, then, are water-like properties—high boiling point and solubility in protic solvents.

Now consider the effect of the alkyl group. Where the hydroxyl group is hydrophilic, the alkyl group is lipophilic; as the alkyl group becomes larger, the molecule becomes more alkane-like and, as a whole, more lipophilic. The result, as we have seen (Sec. 1.21), is this: water solubility for a homologous series of alcohols begins with complete miscibility for the smallest ones, methanol and ethanol, and then steadily decreases.

In this chapter, we shall be interested in the behavior of alcohols, not as solutes, but as *solvents*. Nucleophilic substitution, like most of organic chemistry, is concerned with reactions between non-ionic compounds (generally organic) and ionic compounds (inorganic or organic), and it is necessary to select a solvent in which both reagents will dissolve. Although a good solvent for inorganic salts, water is a poor solvent for most organic compounds. Non-polar solvents—ether, chloroform, benzene—are good solvents for organic compounds, but very poor

solvents for inorganic salts. Alcohols, particularly the smaller ones like methanol and ethanol, offer one way—the traditional way—out of this difficulty. Their lipophilic alkyl groups help them to dissolve non-ionic organic reagents, their hydroxyl groups permit them to dissolve ionic reagents. And so, alone or mixed with water, methanol and ethanol provide a medium in which nucleophilic aliphatic substitution has been commonly carried out.

Now, of particular concern to us will be the way in which an alcohol dissolves ionic reagents. The oxygen of  $\text{—OH}$  is very negative and the hydrogen is very positive; furthermore, and most important, each end of this dipole is well exposed—uncrowded—and thus can approach an ion closely. Thus, like water and other protic solvents, an alcohol solvates both cations and anions strongly through powerful ion-dipole bonds: cations, through oxygen and its unshared electrons; anions, through hydrogen bonding (Fig. 6.1).

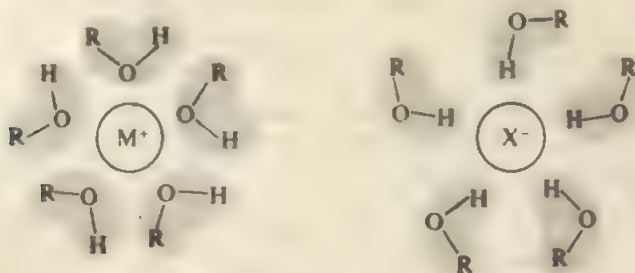
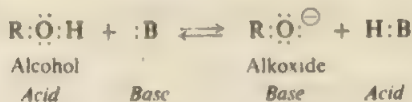


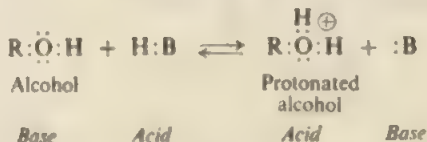
Figure 6.1. Solvation of ions by an alcohol.

## 6.8 Alcohols as acids and bases

Of the varied chemical properties of alcohols, there is one pair that we should become acquainted with at this point: their acidity and basicity. These properties reside in the  $\text{—OH}$  group. Hydrogen is attached to electronegative oxygen, and is acidic; it can be given up to another base. The conjugate base thus formed is called an *alkoxide*.



Oxygen has unshared electrons, and is basic; it can accept a proton (or other acid). The conjugate acid thus formed is called a *protonated alcohol*.

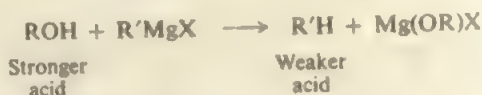
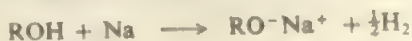


The base  $:\text{B}$  can be neutral or negatively charged: for example,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  or  $\text{OH}^-$ . The conjugate base  $\text{H}:\text{B}$  can be positively charged or neutral: for example  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$  or  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

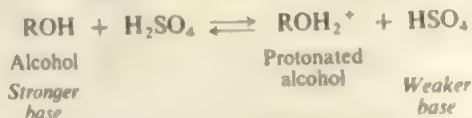


How acidic and how basic are alcohols? The  $\text{—OH}$  group, we remember, is water-like. Quite simply, alcohols are about as acidic and about as basic as water. Necessarily, then, the conjugate bases and conjugate acids derived from alcohols are about as basic and about as acidic as those derived from water: protonated alcohols are comparable to the hydronium ion,  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ ; alkoxides are comparable to hydroxide ion,  $\text{OH}^-$ .

Like water, alcohols are weak acids compared with compounds like hydrogen chloride, sulfuric acid, and even acetic acid. But they are enormously stronger than extremely weak acids like alkanes; they readily displace alkanes,  $\text{R'H}$ , from Grignard reagents,  $\text{R'MgX}$  (Sec. 3.16). They are acidic enough to react with active metals to liberate hydrogen gas.



Like water, alcohols are basic enough to accept a proton from strong acids like hydrogen chloride and hydrogen sulfate, and thus bring about complete dissociation of these compounds. For example:



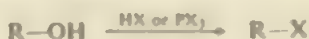
Like hydroxide ion, alkoxide ions are very strong bases. Their structures can vary, depending upon the nature of the alkyl group, thus in alkoxides we have a set of basic reagents that differ from each other and from hydroxide—in degree of basicity, in solubility properties, and in molecular size and shape. They are readily prepared from alcohols by the action of active metals, as shown above.

## 6.9 Preparation of alkyl halides

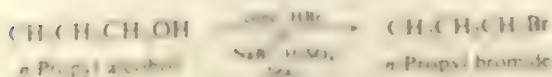
In the laboratory alkyl halides are most often prepared by the methods outlined below.

### PREPARATION OF ALKYL HALIDES

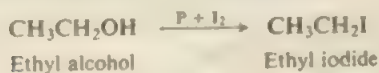
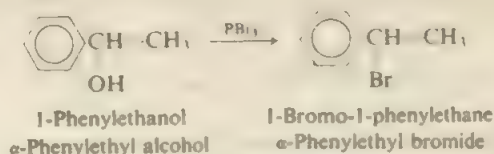
#### 1. From alcohols. Discussed in Secs. 6.9 and 6.32



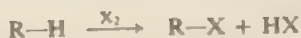
#### Examples



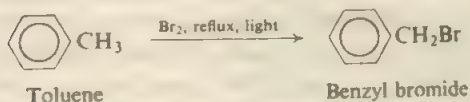
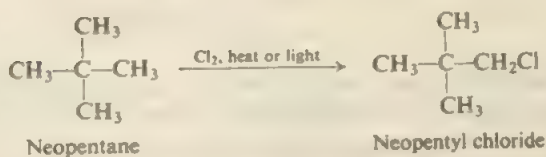
CONT.



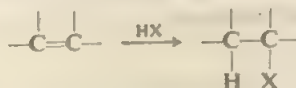
2. Halogenation of certain hydrocarbons. Discussed in Secs. 3.19, 9.3, 16.13-16.14



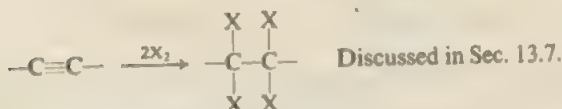
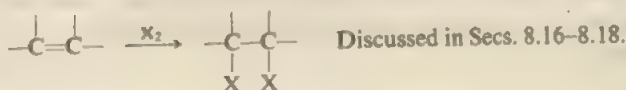
Examples:



3. Addition of hydrogen halides to alkenes. Discussed in Secs. 8.8-8.9.



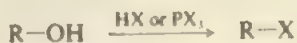
4. Addition of halogens to alkenes and alkynes



5. Halide exchange. Discussed in Sec. 6.9.

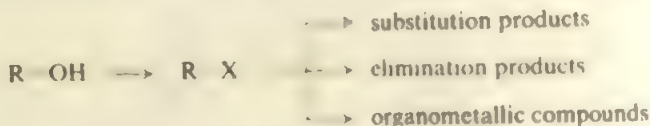


*Alkyl halides are nearly always prepared from alcohols.* Alcohols, in turn, are readily available in a wide variety of shapes and sizes. Simpler alcohols are



produced commercially (Sec. 10.4); the more complicated ones are readily synthesized (Secs. 10.6 and 10.12-10.13). Although certain alcohols tend to undergo rearrangement (Sec. 6.32) during replacement of  $-\text{OH}$  by  $\text{X}$ , this tendency can be minimized by use of phosphorus halides.

In the laboratory, alcohols are the most common starting point for the synthesis of aliphatic compounds, and one of the commonest first steps in such a synthesis is the conversion of the alcohol into an alkyl halide. Once the alkyl halide is made,



the synthesis can follow any one of dozens of pathways, depending upon the reaction that the alkyl halide is allowed to undergo—and, as we shall see in the following section, there are dozens of possibilities.

Alkyl halides are *almost never* prepared by direct halogenation of alkanes. From the standpoint of synthesis in the laboratory, an alkane is a dead-end. Halogenation generally gives a mixture of isomers; even if, occasionally, one isomer greatly predominates—as in the bromination of isobutane, say—it is probably not the one we want. How much more practical simply to pick an alcohol that has the  $-\text{OH}$  in the proper position, and then to replace that  $-\text{OH}$  by halide!

An alkyl iodide is often prepared from the corresponding bromide or chloride by treatment with a solution of sodium iodide in acetone, the less soluble sodium bromide or sodium chloride precipitates from solution and can be removed by filtration.

## 6.10 Reactions of alkyl halides. Nucleophilic aliphatic substitution

When methyl bromide is treated with sodium hydroxide in a solvent that dissolves both reagents, there is obtained methanol and sodium bromide. This is a *substitution* reaction: the  $-\text{OH}$  group is substituted for  $\text{Br}$  in the original compound.



It is clearly heterolytic: the departing halide ion takes with it the electron pair it has been sharing with carbon; hydroxide ion brings with it the electron pair needed to bind it to carbon. Carbon loses one pair of electrons and gains another pair. This is just one example of the class of reactions called *nucleophilic aliphatic substitution*.

Nucleophilic substitution is characteristic of alkyl halides. To see why this is so, we must look at the functional group of this family—halogen.

A halide ion is an extremely weak base. This is shown by its readiness to release a proton to other bases, that is, by the high acidity of the hydrogen halides.



In an alkyl halide, halogen is attached to carbon; and, just as halide readily releases a proton, so it readily releases carbon—again, to other bases. These bases possess an unshared pair of electrons and are seeking a relatively positive site, that is, are seeking a nucleus with which to share their electron pair.

Basic, electron-rich reagents that tend to attack the nucleus of carbon are called **nucleophilic reagents** (from the Greek, *nucleus-loving*) or simply **nucleophiles**. When this attack results in substitution, the reaction is called **nucleophilic substitution**.



The carbon compound that undergoes a particular kind of reaction—here, the compound on which substitution takes place—is called the **substrate**. In the case of nucleophilic substitution, the substrate is characterized by the presence of a **leaving group**: the group that becomes displaced from carbon and, taking the electron pair with it, departs from the molecule.

Increasingly in the chemical literature, we find the leaving group called the *nucleofuge* (from the Latin, *nucleus-leaver*). It is said to be *nucleofugic*, and it possesses *nucleofugality*.

In the example we started with, methyl bromide is the substrate, bromide is the leaving group, and hydroxide ion is the nucleophile.

Because the weakly basic halide ion is a good leaving group, then, alkyl halides are good substrates for nucleophilic substitution. They react with a large number of nucleophilic reagents, both inorganic and organic, to yield a wide variety of important products. As we shall see, these reagents include not only negative ions like hydroxide, alkoxide, and cyanide, but also neutral bases like ammonia and water; their characteristic feature is an unshared pair of electrons.

As a synthetic tool, nucleophilic substitution is one of the three or four most useful classes of organic reactions. Nucleophilic substitution is the work-horse of organic synthesis; in its various forms, it is the reaction we shall turn to first when faced with the basic job of replacing one functional group by another. The synthesis of aliphatic compounds, we said, most often starts with alcohols. But the —OH group, we shall find, is a very poor leaving group; it is only conversion of alcohols into alkyl halides—or other compounds with good leaving groups—that opens the door to nucleophilic substitution.

A large number of nucleophilic substitutions are listed below to give an idea of the versatility of alkyl halides; many will be left to later chapters for detailed discussion.

With nucleophilic substitution we shall encounter many things new to us: a new reaction, of course—several new reactions, actually—and a new kind of reactive particle, the *carbocation*. To find out what is going on in these reactions, we shall use a new tool, *kinetics*, and use an old tool, *stereochemistry*, in a new way. We shall be introduced to new factors affecting reactivity—*dispersal of charge* and *polar factors*, *steric hindrance*, *nucleophilic assistance*—factors that we shall work with throughout the rest of our study.

We shall see how reactivity—and, with it, the course of reaction—is affected by the *solvent*. The solvent adds a new dimension to our study of organic chemistry; if it complicates things, it at the same time adds richness. It offers us the most

## REACTIONS OF ALKYL HALIDES

## 1. Nucleophilic substitution

$R:X + :Z$	$\longrightarrow$	$R:Z + :X^-$	
$R:X + :OH^-$	$\longrightarrow$	$R:OH + :X^-$	Alcohol
$+ H_2O$	$\longrightarrow$	$R:OH$	Alcohol
$+ :OR'^-$	$\longrightarrow$	$R:OR'$	Ether (Williamson synthesis, Sec. 12.5)
$+ ^-:C\equiv CR'$	$\longrightarrow$	$R:C\equiv CR'$	Alkyne (Sec. 13.12)
$+ \overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{R'-M}$	$\longrightarrow$	$R:R'$	Alkane (coupling, Sec. 3.17)
$+ :I^-$	$\longrightarrow$	$R:I$	Alkyl iodide
$+ :CN^-$	$\longrightarrow$	$R:CN$	Nitrile (Sec. 19.8)
$+ R'COO:^-$	$\longrightarrow$	$R'COO:R$	Ester
$+ :NH_3$	$\longrightarrow$	$R:NH_2$	Primary amine (Sec. 22.10)
$+ :NH_2R'$	$\longrightarrow$	$R:NHR'$	Secondary amine (Sec. 22.13)
$+ :NHR'R''$	$\longrightarrow$	$R:NR'R''$	Tertiary amine (Sec. 22.13)
$+ :P(C_6H_5)_3$	$\longrightarrow$	$[R:P(C_6H_5)_3]^+X^-$	Phosphonium salt (Sec. 21.10)
$+ :SH^-$	$\longrightarrow$	$R:SH$	Thiol (mercaptan)
$+ :SR'^-$	$\longrightarrow$	$R:SR'$	Thioether (sulfide)
$+ ArH + AlCl_3$	$\longrightarrow$	$ArR$	Alkylbenzene (Friedel-Crafts reaction, Sec. 16.7)
$+ [CH(COOC_2H_5)_2]^-$	$\longrightarrow$	$R:CH(COOC_2H_5)_2$	(Malonic ester synthesis, Sec. 26.2)
$+ [CH_3COCHCOOC_2H_5]^-$	$\longrightarrow$	$CH_3CO\underset{\underset{R}{ }}{CH}COOC_2H_5$	(Acetoacetic ester synthesis, Sec. 26.3)

CONT.

2. Dehydrohalogenation: elimination. Discussed in Secs. 7.12-7.27



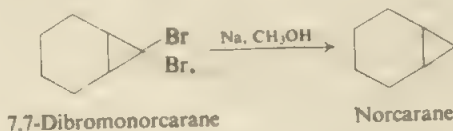
3. Preparation of Grignard reagent. Discussed in Secs. 3.16 and 10.12.



4. Reduction. Discussed in Sec. 3.15.



Examples:



practical way to *control* what happens in a chemical reaction. The effect exerted by a solvent is just one kind of medium effect—environmental effect—and in that sense is only the beginning of a trail that leads all the way to the ultimate organic reaction, the action of an enzyme; this (literally) vital action is possible only because the substrate is *dissolved* in the enzyme, held to it by the same kinds of forces that a solvent uses.

In following sections we shall discuss nucleophilic aliphatic substitution in detail. But our study of nucleophilic substitution will not end with this chapter; we shall encounter it again and again, sometimes as a key step in what seems to be a reaction of a quite different type.

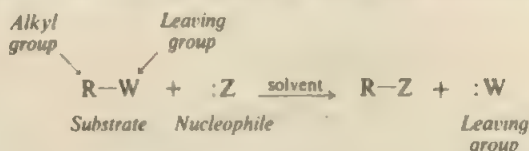
Alkyl halides undergo not only substitution but also **elimination**, a reaction that we shall take up in the next chapter. Both elimination and substitution are brought about by basic reagents, and hence there will always be *competition* between the two reactions. We shall be interested to see how this competition is affected by such factors as the structure of the halide and the particular nucleophilic reagent used.

Alkyl halides are the substances most commonly **converted into organometallic compounds**: compounds that contain carbon attached to a metal—magnesium (as in the Grignard reagent), lithium, copper, and a host of others. We have already met some of these compounds, and shall have a great deal to do with them as we go along. As we shall see (Sec. 10.14), conversion of alkyl halides into organometallic compounds changes the nature of the central carbon atom in a fundamental way, and gives us a class of reagents with unique properties.



## 6.11 Nucleophilic aliphatic substitution. Nucleophiles and leaving groups

The components required for nucleophilic substitution are: *substrate*, *nucleophile*, and *solvent*. The substrate consists of two parts, *alkyl group* and *leaving group*. We shall be concerned with the alkyl group throughout much of the chapter; we



shall study the roles played by the solvent in some of the later sections. At this point let us examine the other components of these systems, nucleophiles and leaving groups.

We have already seen enough to realize that basicity plays an important part in our understanding of nucleophiles and leaving groups. Nucleophiles are characterized by being bases, and leaving groups are characterized by being *weak* bases. We may find a rough correlation between *degree* of basicity, on the one hand, and nucleophilic power or leaving ability, on the other: the stronger of two bases is often the more powerful nucleophile, and the weaker of two bases is often the better leaving group. But this holds true only for closely related sets of nucleophiles or sets of leaving groups: ones that, among other things, involve the same central element—oxygen, say, or nitrogen. There are many exceptions to such a correlation, and clearly basicity is only *one* of the factors involved.

We should have clear in our minds the distinction between basicity and nucleophilic power or leaving ability. All have to do with the tendency—or, in the case of leaving ability, *lack* of tendency—to share an electron pair to form a covalent bond. But there are two fundamental differences:

(a) Basicity is a matter of *equilibrium*, nucleophilic power and leaving ability are matters of *rate*. Of two bases, one is said to be the stronger because at equilibrium it holds a greater proportion of the acid. Of two nucleophiles, one is said to be the more powerful because it attacks carbon *faster*; of two leaving groups, one is said to be the better because it leaves carbon *faster*.

(b) Basicity (in the Lowry-Brønsted sense) involves interaction with a proton, nucleophilic power and leaving ability involve interactions with carbon.

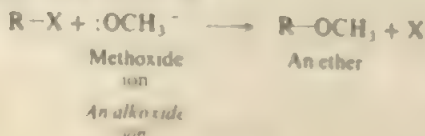
It is not surprising, then, that there is no exact parallel between basicity and these two other properties. The surprise, perhaps, is that the parallel is as good as it is.

Let us have a look at some of the **nucleophiles** we shall be working with. Many of the products formed are new to us, but at this point we need see only how the structure of a particular product is the natural result of the structure of a particular nucleophile. For now, we shall use alkyl halides as our examples of substrates.

Some nucleophiles are anions, like *hydroxide ion*.



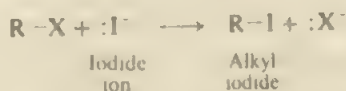
the closely related *alkoxides*, methoxide, say,



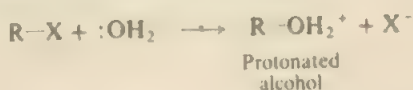
cyanide (the strongly basic anion of the very weak acid, HCN);



or even another *halide* ion which, while only weakly basic, does after all possess unshared electrons.



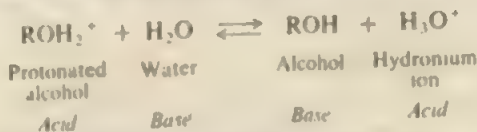
But neutral molecules, too, can possess unshared electrons, be basic, and hence act as nucleophiles. *Water*, for example, attacks an alkyl halide to yield, ultimately, an alcohol. But the oxygen of water already has two hydrogens, and when it attaches



itself to carbon there is formed initially, not the alcohol itself, but its conjugate acid, the protonated alcohol. This, as we have seen, easily changes itself into the alcohol by loss of the proton.

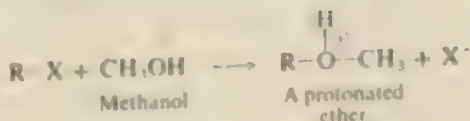


An important point arises here. For convenience we shall often show the loss or gain of a hydrogen ion,  $\text{H}^+$ . But it should be understood that we are *not* actually dealing with a naked proton, but rather with the *transfer* of a proton from one base to another. In the

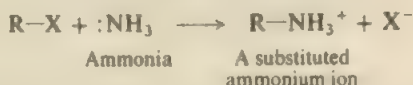


present case, for example, protonated alcohol is converted into alcohol by transfer of the proton to water—about as basic as the alcohol itself, and much more abundant.

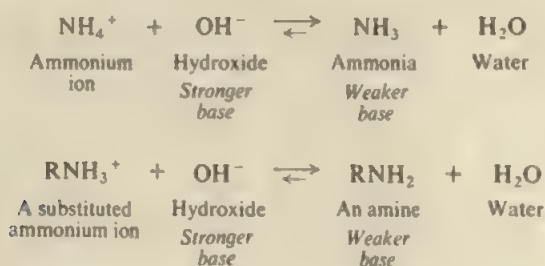
In a similar way, an *alcohol*—methanol, say—converts an alkyl halide into a protonated ether and thence into an ether.



The familiar base *ammonia* converts an alkyl halide into the protonated amine. Here we encounter a slight difference. Ammonia, we remember, although a



considerably weaker base than hydroxide, is much stronger than water (or an alcohol). And the same is true of the closely related amines. Just as it is necessary to use a stronger base than ammonia—hydroxide, say—to pull a proton away from the ammonium ion, so it is necessary to use a stronger base to pull a proton away from a substituted ammonium ion.



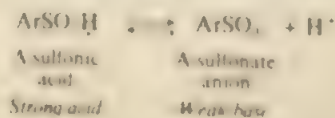
The difference here is not a fundamental one. It is just that with ammonia we must deliberately carry out two operations: first, the nucleophilic substitution, and then, the removal of the proton. With water or alcohol as nucleophile, the second step takes place spontaneously.

**Problem 6.3** Write equations to show the actual steps involved in the conversion of an alkyl halide into an ether by the action of methanol.

One further point. Consider the pairs of nucleophiles:  $\text{OH}^-$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ;  $\text{RO}^-$  and  $\text{ROH}$ . In each case the anion is much more basic than the corresponding neutral molecule, and it is much more nucleophilic, too. This relationship holds for all such pairs.

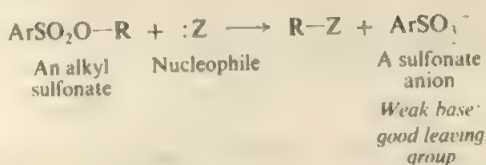
Now let us look at some of the **leaving groups** we shall encounter. So far we have used alkyl halides as our chief examples, and we shall continue to do this in following sections. But we should realize that these reactions take place in exactly the same ways with a variety of other substrates—compounds which, like alkyl halides, contain good leaving groups.

Of these other substrates, alkyl esters of sulfonic acids,  $\text{ArSO}_2\text{OR}$ , are most commonly used in place of alkyl halides: usually in the study of reaction mechanisms, but also in synthesis. Sulfonic acids,  $\text{ArSO}_3\text{H}$ , are related to sulfuric acid

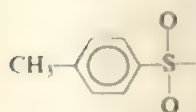




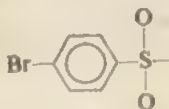
and, like sulfuric, are *strong* acids. Their anions, the sulfonates, are weak bases and hence good leaving groups.



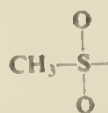
Most commonly used are esters of *p*-toluenesulfonic acid: the *p*-toluenesulfonates. (We shall understand the structures of these aromatic compounds later; for now we need only know that sulfonates are good leaving groups.) The name of the *p*-toluenesulfonate group is often abbreviated to *tosyl* (Ts), and *p*-toluenesulfonates become *tosylates* (TsOR).



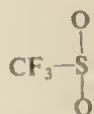
*Tosyl or Ts*



*Brosyl or Bs*

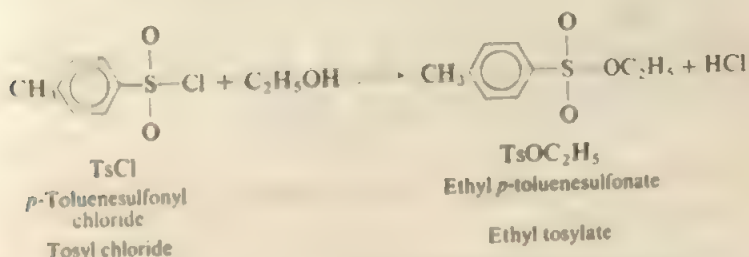


*Mesyl or Ms*



*Triflyl or Tf*

Like alkyl halides, alkyl sulfonates are readily prepared from alcohols. For example:



As we shall see in Sec. 11.8, the two syntheses differ in one very important way.

Now let us begin our study of the mechanism of nucleophilic aliphatic substitution. For generations this reaction has fascinated chemists, including many of the "greats" whose names are—or will become—familiar to us: J. A. LeBel, G. N. Lewis, I. M. Lowry, and that giant of organic chemistry, Emil Fischer, who, we shall find, opened up the two vast fields of carbohydrates and proteins.

Today, in its various forms, nucleophilic aliphatic substitution is the most widely studied and most strongly disputed area of organic chemistry. The fascination—and the argument—today, as always, lies in two related questions. The bond to the leaving group is being broken and the bond to the nucleophile is being formed. (a) What is the *timing* of these two processes? (b) Where does the energy required to break the bond to the leaving group come from?

We shall begin our study of the mechanism where the modern history of the reaction begins—with the *kinetics* of nucleophilic aliphatic substitution. But, first, what is kinetics?

## 6.12 Rate of reaction: effect of concentration. Kinetics

We have seen (Sec. 2.18) that the rate of a chemical reaction can be expressed as a product of three factors:

$$\text{rate} = \text{collision frequency} \times \text{energy factor} \times \text{probability factor}$$

So far, we have used this relationship in comparing rates of *different* reactions to help us understand orientation and relative reactivity, and why a particular reaction takes place at all. So that comparisons of this sort may be as fair as possible, we keep the conditions that we can control—temperature, concentration—the same. If this is done, then closely related reactions proceed at different rates chiefly because they have different energy factors, that is to say, different  $E_{\text{act}}$ 's; and to account for different  $E_{\text{act}}$ 's we must estimate relative stabilities of transition states.

It is also useful to study an *individual* reaction to see how its rate is affected by deliberate changes in experimental conditions. We can determine  $E_{\text{act}}$ , for example, if we measure the rate at different temperatures (Sec. 2.18). But perhaps the most valuable information about a reaction is obtained by studying the effect of *changes in concentration* on its rate.

How does a change in concentration of reactants affect the rate of a reaction at a constant temperature? An increase in concentration cannot alter the fraction of collisions that have sufficient energy, or the fraction of collisions that have the proper orientation; it can serve only to increase the total number of collisions. If more molecules are crowded into the same space, they will collide more often and the reaction will go faster. Collision frequency, and hence rate, depends in a very exact way upon concentration.

The field of chemistry that deals with rates of reaction, and in particular with dependence of rates on concentration, is called **kinetics**. Let us see what kinetics can tell us about nucleophilic aliphatic substitution.

## 6.13 Kinetics of nucleophilic aliphatic substitution. Second-order and first-order reactions

Let us take a specific example, the reaction of methyl bromide with sodium hydroxide to yield methanol:



This reaction would probably be carried out in aqueous ethanol, in which both reactants are soluble.

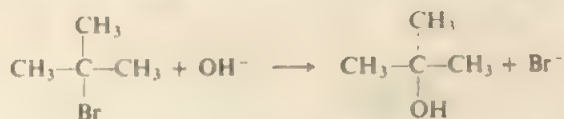
If the reaction results from collision between a hydroxide ion and a methyl bromide molecule, we would expect the rate to depend upon the concentration of both these reactants. If either  $\text{OH}^-$  concentration,  $[\text{OH}^-]$ , or  $\text{CH}_3\text{Br}$  concentration,  $[\text{CH}_3\text{Br}]$ , is doubled, the collision frequency should be doubled and the reaction rate doubled. If either concentration is cut in half, the collision frequency—and consequently the rate, should be halved.

This is found to be so. We say that the rate of reaction depends upon both  $[\text{OH}^-]$  and  $[\text{CH}_3\text{Br}]$ , and we indicate this by the expression

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{CH}_3\text{Br}][\text{OH}^-]$$

If concentrations are expressed in, say, moles per liter, then  $k$  is the number which, multiplied by these concentrations, tells us how many moles of methanol are formed in each liter during each second. At a given temperature and for a given solvent,  $k$  always has the same value and is characteristic of this particular reaction;  $k$  is called the **rate constant**. For example, for the reaction between methyl bromide and hydroxide ion in a mixture of 80% ethanol and 20% water at 55°, the value of  $k$  is 0.0214 liters per mole per second.

What we have just seen is, of course, not surprising; we all know that an increase in concentration causes an increase in rate. But now let us look at the corresponding reaction between *tert*-butyl bromide and hydroxide ion:



As before, if we double  $[\text{RBr}]$  the rate doubles; if we cut  $[\text{RBr}]$  in half the rate is halved. But if we double  $[\text{OH}^-]$ , or if we cut  $[\text{OH}^-]$  in half, there is no change in the rate. *The rate of reaction is independent of  $[\text{OH}^-]$ .*

The rate of reaction of *tert*-butyl bromide depends only upon  $[\text{RBr}]$ . This is indicated by the expression

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{RBr}]$$

For the reaction of *tert*-butyl bromide in 80% alcohol at 55°, the rate constant is 0.010 per second. This means that of every mole of *tert*-butyl bromide present, 0.010 mole reacts each second, whatever the  $[\text{OH}^-]$ .

The methyl bromide reaction is said to follow **second-order kinetics**, since its rate is dependent upon the concentrations of *two* substances. The *tert*-butyl bromide reaction is said to follow **first-order kinetics**, its rate depends upon the concentration of only *one* substance.

## 6.14 Nucleophilic aliphatic substitution: duality of mechanism

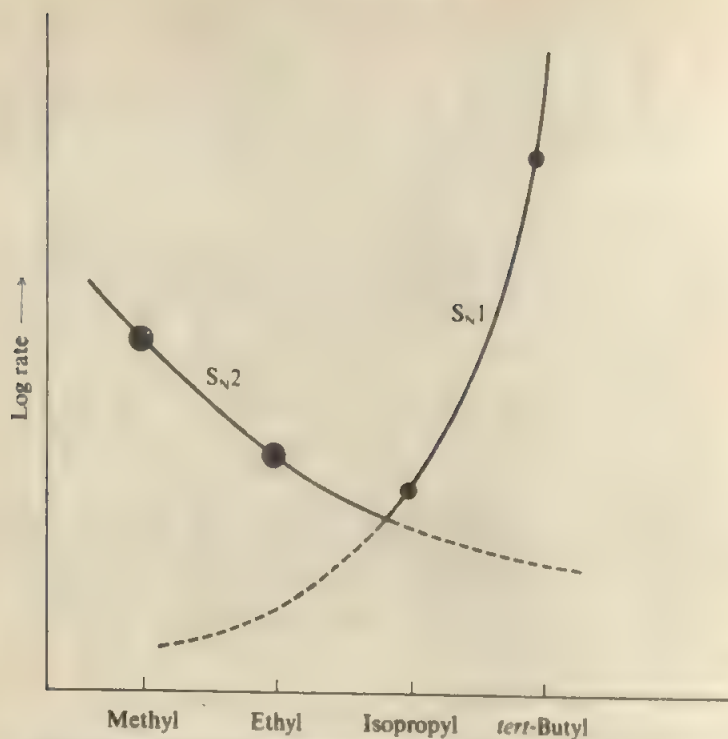
By the 1930's, kinetics studies of nucleophilic substitution had been carried out with a variety of substrates, and the following had been found. Like methyl, primary substrates react by second-order kinetics. Like *tert*-butyl, other tertiary substrates react by first-order kinetics. Secondary substrates show borderline behavior—sometimes second-order, sometimes first-order, often a mixture of the two.

Besides the kinetic order, the rate studies had revealed something else about the substitution—the relative reactivities of the various substrates. Typically, at a given concentration of a nucleophile like  $\text{OH}^-$ , reactivity was found to vary **something like this**:



That is, as one proceeds along the series  $\text{CH}_3$ ,  $1^\circ$ ,  $2^\circ$ ,  $3^\circ$ , reactivity at first decreases, then passes through a minimum (usually at  $2^\circ$ ), and finally rises (see Fig. 6.2)





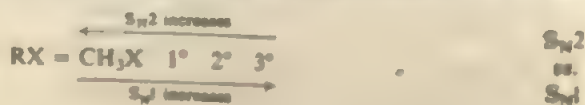
From C. K. Ingold, *Structure and Mechanism in Organic Chemistry*, Second Edition. Copyright 1953, copyright © 1969 by Cornell University. Used by permission of the publisher Cornell University Press.

**Figure 6.2.** Nucleophilic aliphatic substitution: typical effect on rate of variation in structure of substrate,  $RX$ . Minimum in rate attributed to crossing of two opposing curves, that is, to change in mechanism from  $S_N2$  to  $S_N1$ .

Significantly, the minimum occurs at just the point in the series where the kinetics changes from second-order to first-order.

In 1935, E. D. Hughes and Sir Christopher Ingold (University College, London) took these two sets of facts—kinetic order and relative reactivity—and on them built a broad theory of nucleophilic aliphatic substitution. The keystone of their theory was this: that *nucleophilic aliphatic substitution can proceed by two different mechanisms*. These mechanisms, for reasons that will become clear, they named  $S_N2$  and  $S_N1$ . Different substrates react by different kinetic order because they are reacting by different mechanisms: some, like methyl, by  $S_N2$ ; others, like *tert*-butyl, by  $S_N1$ .

Reactivity passes through a minimum with secondary substrates because the mechanism changes at this point, from  $S_N2$  to  $S_N1$ . The occurrence of a minimum or maximum in a property—reactivity, acidity, antibacterial activity—as one proceeds along a logical series, suggests the working of opposing factors. Here, Hughes and Ingold proposed, the factors are the opposing reactivity sequences for the two different mechanisms. As one passes along the series, reactivity by the  $S_N2$



mechanism decreases from  $\text{CH}_3$  to  $1^\circ$ , and at  $2^\circ$  is so low that the  $S_N1$  reaction begins to contribute significantly; reactivity, now by  $S_N1$ , rises sharply to  $3^\circ$  (Fig. 6.2).

In the following sections, we shall see what these two mechanisms are, the facts on which they are based, and how they account for these facts. We shall see, for example, how they account for the difference in kinetic order and, in particular, for the puzzling fact that the rate of the *tert*-butyl bromide reaction is independent of  $[\text{OH}^-]$ . We shall see what factors are believed to be responsible for the opposing reactivity sequences for the two mechanisms. Finally, we shall see how this mechanistic pattern drawn in 1935 has stood the test of time.

## 6.15 The $S_N2$ reaction: mechanism and kinetics

The reaction between methyl bromide and hydroxide ion to yield methanol follows second-order kinetics: that is, the rate depends upon the concentrations of both reactants:



$$\text{rate} = k[\text{CH}_3\text{Br}][\text{OH}^-]$$

The simplest way to account for the kinetics is to assume that reaction requires a collision between a hydroxide ion and a methyl bromide molecule. On the basis of evidence we shall shortly discuss, it is known that in its attack the hydroxide ion stays as far away as possible from the bromine; that is to say, it attacks the molecule from the rear.



**Figure 6.3.** The  $S_N2$  reaction: complete inversion of configuration. Nucleophilic reagent attacks back side.

The reaction is believed to take place as shown in Fig. 6.3. When hydroxide ion collides with a methyl bromide molecule at the face most remote from the bromine, and when such a collision has sufficient energy, a  $\text{C}-\text{OH}$  bond forms and the  $\text{C}-\text{Br}$  bond breaks, liberating the bromide ion.

The transition state can be pictured as a structure in which carbon is partially bonded to both  $-\text{OH}$  and  $-\text{Br}$ , the  $\text{C}-\text{OH}$  bond is not completely formed, the  $\text{C}-\text{Br}$  bond is not yet completely broken. Hydroxide has a diminished negative charge, since it has begun to share its electrons with carbon. Bromine has developed a partial negative charge, since it has partly removed a pair of electrons from carbon.

The  $-\text{OH}$  and  $-\text{Br}$  are located as far apart as possible, the three hydrogens and the carbon lie in a single plane, all bond angles being  $120^\circ$ . The  $\text{C}-\text{H}$  bonds

are thus arranged like the spokes of a wheel, with the C—OH and the C—Br bonds lying along the axle.

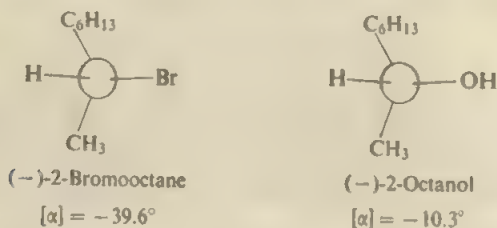
This is the mechanism that is called  $S_N2$ : *substitution nucleophilic bimolecular*. The term *bimolecular* is used here since the rate-determining step involves collision of *two* particles.

What evidence is there that alkyl halides can react in this manner? First of all, as we have just seen, the mechanism is consistent with the kinetics of a reaction like the one between methyl bromide and hydroxide ion. In general, **an  $S_N2$  reaction follows second-order kinetics**. Let us look at some of the other evidence.

## 6.16 The $S_N2$ reaction: stereochemistry. Inversion of configuration

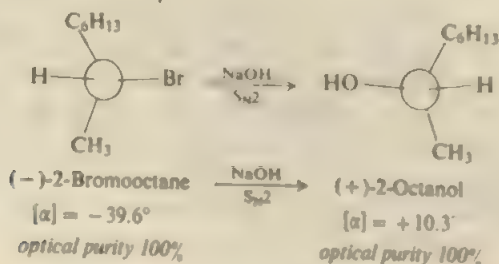
Both 2-bromooctane and 2-octanol are chiral; that is, they have molecules that are not superimposable on their mirror images. Consequently, these compounds can exist as enantiomers, and can show optical activity. Optically active 2-octanol has been obtained by resolution of the racemic modification (Sec. 4.28), and from it optically active 2-bromooctane has been made.

The following configurations have been assigned (Sec. 4.24):



We notice that the (-)-bromide and the (-)-alcohol have similar configurations; that is, -OH occupies the same relative position in the (-)-alcohol as -Br does in the (-)-bromide. As we know, compounds of similar configuration do not *necessarily* rotate light in the same direction; they just happen to do so in the present case. (As we also know, compounds of similar configuration are not necessarily given the same specification of *R* and *S* (Sec. 4.24); it just happens that both are *R* in this case.)

When (-)-2-bromooctane is allowed to react with sodium hydroxide under conditions where second-order kinetics are followed, there is obtained (+)-2-octanol.



We see that the -OH group has not taken the position previously occupied by Br; the alcohol obtained has a configuration *opposite* to that of the bromide. A



reaction that yields a product whose configuration is opposite to that of the reactant is said to proceed with **inversion of configuration**.

(In this particular case, inversion of configuration happens to be accompanied by a change in specification, from *R* to *S*, but this is not always true. We cannot tell whether a reaction proceeds with inversion or retention of configuration simply by looking at the letters used to specify the reactant and product; we must work out and compare the absolute configurations indicated by those letters.)

Now the question arises: does a reaction like this proceed with **complete inversion**? That is to say, is the configuration of *every* molecule inverted? The answer is **yes**. An  $S_N2$  reaction proceeds with **complete stereochemical inversion**.

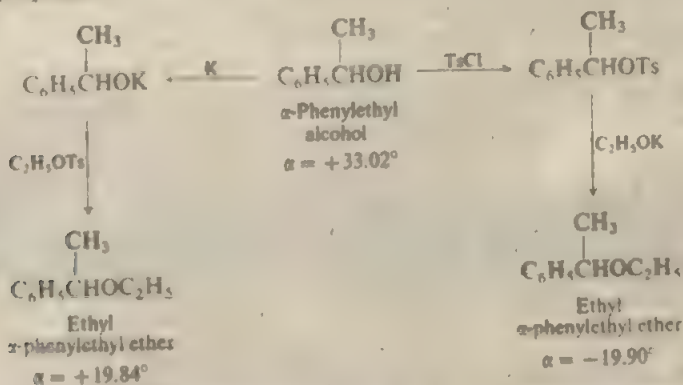
To answer a question like this, we must in general know the optical purity both of the reactant that we start with and of the product that we obtain: in this case, of 2-bromooctane and 2-octanol. To know these we must, in turn, know the maximum rotation of the bromide and of the alcohol; that is, we must know the rotation of an optically pure sample of each.

Suppose, for example, that we know the rotation of optically pure 2-bromooctane to be  $39.6^\circ$  and that of optically pure 2-octanol to be  $10.3^\circ$ . If, then, a sample of optically pure bromide were found to yield optically pure alcohol, we would know that the reaction had proceeded with **complete inversion**. Or—and this is much more practicable—if a sample of a halide of rotation, say,  $-32.9^\circ$  (83% optically pure) were found to yield alcohol of rotation  $+8.55^\circ$  (83% optically pure), we would draw exactly the same conclusion.

In developing the ideas of  $S_N1$  and  $S_N2$  reactions, Hughes and Ingold studied the reaction of optically active 2-bromooctane and obtained results which led them to conclude that the  $S_N2$  reaction proceeds, within limits of experimental error, with complete inversion.

The particular value that Hughes and Ingold used for the rotation of optically pure 2-bromooctane has been questioned, but the basic idea of complete inversion in  $S_N2$  reactions is established beyond question: by the studies of systems other than alkyl halides and by elegant work involving radioactivity and optical activity (Problem 6.5, below).

**Problem 6.4** In 1923 Henry Phillips (Battersea Polytechnic, London) reported the following experiment:

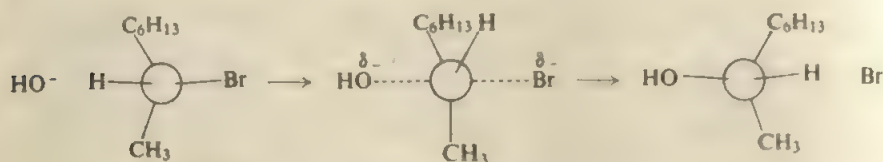


(a) Account for the fact that the ethers obtained by the two routes have *opposite but equal* optical rotations. (*Hint*: See Sec. 4.24.) (b) Does it matter what the optical purity of the starting alcohol is? (c) What is the fundamental significance of this finding?

**Problem 6.5** When optically active 2-iodooctane was allowed to stand in acetone solution containing  $\text{Na}^{131}\text{I}$  (radioactive iodide), the alkyl halide was observed to lose optical activity and to exchange its ordinary iodine for radioactive iodine. The rate of each of these reactions depended on both  $[\text{RI}]$  and  $[\text{I}^-]$ , but loss of optical activity was exactly twice as fast as gain of radioactivity. Combining as it does kinetics and stereochemistry, this experiment, reported in 1935 by E. D. Hughes (p. 214), is considered

to have established the stereochemistry of the  $S_N2$  reaction: that each molecule undergoing substitution suffers inversion of configuration. Show exactly how this conclusion is justified. (*Hint*: Take one molecule of alkyl halide at a time, and consider what happens when it undergoes substitution.)

It was to account for inversion of configuration that back-side attack was first proposed for substitution of the  $S_N2$  kind. As  $\text{—OH}$  becomes attached to carbon, three bonds are forced apart until they reach the planar "spoke" arrangement of the transition state; then, as bromide is expelled, they move on to a tetrahedral arrangement *opposite* to the original one. This process has often been likened to the turning-inside-out of an umbrella in a gale.



$S_N2$ : complete inversion

The stereochemistry of the 2-bromooctane reaction indicates back-side attack in accordance with the  $S_N2$  mechanism; studies of other optically active compounds, under conditions where the reactions follow second-order kinetics, show similar results. It is not possible to study the stereochemistry of most halides, since they are not optically active; however, there seems no reason to doubt that they, too, undergo back-side attack.

Inversion of configuration is the general rule for reactions occurring at chiral centers, being much commoner than retention of configuration. Oddly enough, it is the very prevalence of inversion that made its detection difficult. Paul Walden (at the Polytechnicum in Riga, Latvia) discovered the phenomenon of inversion in 1896 when he encountered one of the exceptional reactions in which inversion does *not* take place

**Problem 6.6** Show the absolute configuration and give the  $R/S$  specification and specific rotation of the 2-octanol expected from the  $S_N2$  reaction of 2-bromooctane of  $[\alpha] + 24.9^\circ$ .

**Problem 6.7** (a) What product would be formed if the reaction of *cis*-4-bromocyclohexanol with  $\text{OH}^-$  proceeded with inversion? (b) Without inversion? (c) Is it always necessary to use optically active compounds to study the stereochemistry of substitution reactions?

But besides the spatial orientation of attack, there is another feature of the  $S_N2$  reaction, a feature that is even more fundamental since it defines the mechanism: reaction occurs *in a single step*, and hence bond-making and bond-breaking occur simultaneously, in a *concerted* fashion. This feature, too, is supported by the stereochemistry: not by the fact that there is inversion, but by the fact that there is *complete* inversion. Every molecule of substrate suffers the same stereochemical fate—inversion, as it happens. This specificity is completely consistent with the mechanism: the leaving group is still attached to carbon when nucleophilic attack begins, and controls the direction from which that attack occurs. (We shall appreciate the significance of this point better when we see the contrast offered by the  $S_N1$  reaction.)

Actually, we have already encountered a contrasting situation: the free-radical chlorination of optically active 1-chloro-2-methylbutane (Sec. 4.29). First, hydrogen is extracted from the chiral center. Then, in a subsequent step, chlorine becomes attached to that carbon. But, with the hydrogen gone, there is nothing left to direct chlorine to a particular face of the carbon; attack occurs randomly at either face, and the racemic modification is obtained.

The  $S_N2$  mechanism is supported, then, by stereochemical evidence. Indeed, the relationship between mechanism and stereochemistry is so well established that in the absence of other evidence complete inversion is taken to indicate an  $S_N2$  reaction.

We see once more how stereochemistry can give us a kind of information about a reaction that we cannot get by any other means.

## 6.17 Stereoselective and stereospecific reactions

Let us take the reaction we have just studied and look at it, not for what it shows about the  $S_N2$  reaction, but as an illustration of certain stereochemical concepts.

Although two enantiomeric 2-octanols exist, only *one* of them is obtained here from (*R*)-2-bromooctane. That is to say, instead of random formation of both enantiomers, there is strictly selective formation of just one. Since this selectivity is stereochemical, it is called *stereoselectivity*, and the reaction is said to be *stereoselective*. But there are stereoisomers of a kind other than enantiomers, and selectivity can be observed in their formation, too: selective formation of one or sometimes two diastereomers of a larger number of possible diastereomeric products. Our definition is, then, the following. A **stereoselective reaction** is a reaction that yields predominantly one enantiomer of a possible pair, or one diastereomer (or one enantiomeric pair) of several possible diastereomers.

Stereoselectivity can be exhibited in various degrees, and reactions are often said to be "highly stereoselective," "moderately stereoselective," and so on. The  $S_N2$  reaction is *completely* stereoselective.

Now, suppose we start, not with (*R*)-2-bromooctane, but with its enantiomer, (*S*)-2-bromooctane. Again inversion of configuration takes place, and we obtain, not (*S*)-2-octanol, but its enantiomer, (*R*)-2-octanol. Just which product we obtain depends in a specific way on just which stereoisomer we start with. Such a reaction, in which stereochemically different reactants yield stereochemically different products, is called a *stereospecific reaction*.

But the term *stereospecific* is used in a much broader sense, to indicate any kind of discrimination on a stereochemical basis between different reactant molecules or even between different parts of a single reactant molecule. Our definition is, then, the following. A **stereospecific reaction** is one in which stereochemically different molecules (or stereochemically different parts of a molecule) react differently.

The  $S_N2$  reaction is thus not only completely stereoselective but completely stereospecific as well.

By "stereochemically different molecules" is meant stereoisomers: enantiomers or diastereomers. By "stereochemically different parts of a molecule" is meant heterotopic (enantiotopic or diastereotopic) ligands or faces (Sec. 11.11). In the following, it will be understood that what is said about reactions of enantiomers also applies to reactions at enantiotopic groups or faces, and what is said about reactions of diastereomers also applies to reactions at diastereotopic groups or faces.



To "react differently" means to show any difference whatsoever in chemical behavior. In a stereospecific reaction, stereoisomers can:

- (a) react at different rates—in some cases to such an extent that, while one stereoisomer reacts readily, the other does not react at all;
- (b) yield different stereoisomers as products;
- (c) react by different paths to yield quite different kinds of compounds as products.

When the reactants are **diastereomers**, all these differences are open to them, whether the reagent with which they are reacting is optically active or inactive. Indeed, as we have seen (Sec. 4.17), a difference in rate of reaction is the *rule* for diastereomers, in this respect at least, diastereomers will always react stereospecifically, although often to only a modest degree.

We have already seen (Sec. 4.17) why this must be so. Since diastereomers are neither identical nor mirror images, they are of different energies. In the reaction of two diastereomers with a given reagent, both the two sets of reactants and the two transition states are diastereomeric, and hence—except by sheer coincidence—will not be of equal energies.  $E_{\text{act}}$ 's will be different and so will the rates of reaction.

When the reactants are **enantiomers**, the situation is considerably different. In reactions with *achiral reagents*, they can show only difference (b): they can yield different stereoisomers as products, as in the  $S_N2$  reaction, but in all other respects they must react identically—at identical rates to yield products that are identical except for their stereochemistry.

On the other hand, in reactions with *optically active reagents*—or in a chiral medium of any sort—enantiomers may show all the differences in behavior that we have listed. Virtually complete stereospecificity is the rule for the countless reactions taking place in the chiral medium provided by the optically active enzymes of biological systems; in Sec. 4.11 we saw examples of such powerful discrimination between enantiomers.

We have accounted for this contrast in behavior toward optically inactive and optically active reagents. It stems from the fact that—whether we are comparing reactants or comparing transition states—enantiomers are of equal energy and diastereomers are of different energies (see Sec. 4.11).

Many reactions are, like the  $S_N2$  reaction, both stereoselective and stereospecific. But this is not always true. *Some reactions are stereoselective but not stereospecific*: one particular stereoisomer is the predominant product regardless of the stereochemistry of the reactant, or regardless of whether the reactant even exists as stereoisomers. *Some reactions are stereospecific but not stereoselective*: stereoisomers react at widely different rates, but yield the same stereoisomer as the product—or yield products that differ in ways other than in their stereochemistry.

The quality of stereoselectivity is concerned solely with the *products*, and their stereochemistry. The quality of stereospecificity is focused on the *reactants*, and their stereochemistry; it is concerned with the products, too, but only as they provide evidence of a difference in behavior between reactants. The stereospecificity of biological reactions has given a powerful impetus to the development of synthetic methods that are highly stereoselective (Secs. 8.7 and 13.8). In synthesizing a drug, for example, or a hormone, a chemist wants to use (stereoselective) reactions that produce just the correct stereoisomer, since only that stereoisomer will show (stereospecific) activity in a biological system.

Such practical applications aside, stereoselectivity and stereospecificity make up an important part of stereochemistry and, as such, help us to understand what is going on in an organic reaction—both in the test tube and in a living organism. The S<sub>N</sub>2 reaction is stereospecific. To describe the type of stereospecificity, we say that reaction proceeds *with inversion of configuration*; this fact is the evidence that attack occurs from the back side. The degree of stereospecificity is *complete*; this fact is strong evidence that reaction involves a single step, with concerted bond-making and bond-breaking.

So far, we have studied the stereochemistry of two reactions: the S<sub>N</sub>2 reaction and free-radical chlorination. One, we found, is completely stereospecific, and the other is completely non-stereospecific. In each case the very existence or non-existence of stereospecificity provides powerful evidence for a particular mechanism. In addition, for the S<sub>N</sub>2 reaction the nature of the stereospecificity (inversion) gives direct evidence of the orientation of attack—something that could not have been determined in any other way.

As we take up reactions of other kinds, we shall study their stereochemistry, too. We shall find other examples of stereospecificity—in some cases stereospecificity of quite different types from inversion of configuration. And we shall find other examples of non-stereospecificity. Whatever the stereochemistry, it must, of course, be accounted for by a satisfactory mechanism.

## 6.18 The S<sub>N</sub>2 reaction: reactivity. Steric hindrance

Now let us turn to the matter of *reactivity* in nucleophilic aliphatic substitution, and see how it is affected by changes in the structure of the alkyl group.

According to the dual mechanism theory (Sec. 6.14), the commonly observed order of reactivity, with a minimum at 2°, is simply the composite of two opposing orders of reactivity, one for S<sub>N</sub>2 and the other for S<sub>N</sub>1. Clearly, a test of this hypothesis would be to carry out substitution under conditions where all members of a series—methyl through 3°—react to a significant extent by, say, second-order kinetics, and measure the second-order rate constants; then, to repeat the process, this time selecting conditions that favor first-order reaction, and measure the first-order rate constants. Let us look at results obtained in this way, first for the S<sub>N</sub>2 reaction and then, in a later section, for the S<sub>N</sub>1 reaction.

Direct measurement of S<sub>N</sub>2 rates for a series of substrates gives results like these:

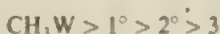
### S<sub>N</sub>2 substitution: relative reactivity



	$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\   \\ \text{H}-\text{C}-\text{Br} \\   \\ \text{H} \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\   \\ \text{CH}_3-\text{C}-\text{Br} \\   \\ \text{H} \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\   \\ \text{CH}_3-\text{C}-\text{Br} \\   \\ \text{H} \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\   \\ \text{CH}_3-\text{C}-\text{Br} \\   \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$
	Methyl	Ethyl	Isopropyl	<i>tert</i> -Butyl
Relative rate (S <sub>N</sub> 2)	37	1.0	0.02	0.0008

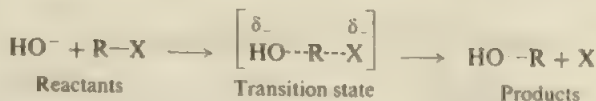
As postulated, then, the reactivity of substrates in the  $S_N2$  reaction is:

### Reactivity in $S_N2$



How are we to account for this order of reactivity? As always to answer a question like this, we must take the specific reaction involved—here, the  $S_N2$  reaction—and compare the structure of the reactants with the structure of the transition state. In contrast to free-radical substitution, this time the structure of the transition state is *not* intermediate between the structures of the reactants and product; this time, we cannot simply expect that factors stabilizing the product will also stabilize the transition state.

During many reactions, as we shall discover, there is a change in electron distribution such that a negative or positive charge develops in the reacting molecule; and very often reactivity depends upon how easily the molecule accommodates that charge. Accommodation of charge depends, in turn, upon the *polar effects* of substituents, that is, upon how well the substituents tend to withdraw or release electrons. First of all, then, let us examine the  $S_N2$  reaction with regard to changes in electron distribution, again using the reaction of an alkyl halide with hydroxide ion as our example. In the transition state as we have described it (Sec. 6.15), there is a partly formed bond between carbon and hydroxide ion, and a



partly broken bond between carbon and halogen; hydroxide ion has brought electrons to carbon, and halide ion has taken electrons away. Unless one of the two processes, bond-making or bond-breaking, has gone much further than the other, carbon is not appreciably more negative or positive than it was at the start of the reaction. If this is so, it would appear that the reactivity sequence for the  $S_N2$  reaction does *not* result from the polar effects of substituent groups.

To understand how structure does influence the rate, let us compare transition state and reactants with regard to *shape*, starting with the methyl bromide reaction. The carbon in reactant and product is tetrahedral, whereas carbon in the transition state is bonded to five atoms. As indicated before, the C-H bonds are arranged like the spokes of a wheel, with the C-OH and C-Br bonds lying along the axle (Fig. 6.4).

What would be the effect of replacing the hydrogens successively by methyl groups? That is, how would the transition state differ as we go from methyl bromide through ethyl bromide and isopropyl bromide to *tert*-butyl bromide? As hydrogen atoms are replaced by the larger methyl groups, there is increased crowding about the carbon; this is particularly severe in the transition state, where the methyls are thrown close to both -OH and -Br (Fig. 6.4). Non-bonded interaction raises the energy of the crowded transition state more than the energy of the roomier reactant.  $E_{act}$  is higher and the reaction is slower.

This interpretation is the one that is generally accepted today. Differences in rate between two  $S_N2$  reactions are due chiefly to **steric factors**, and not to



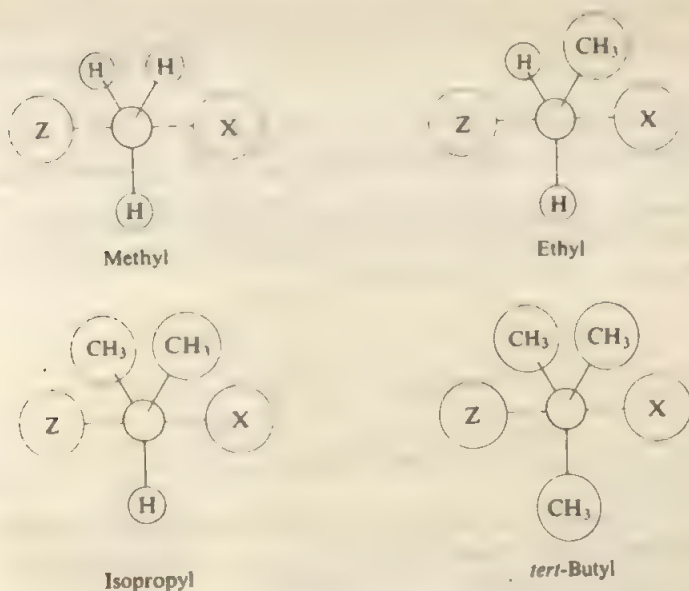
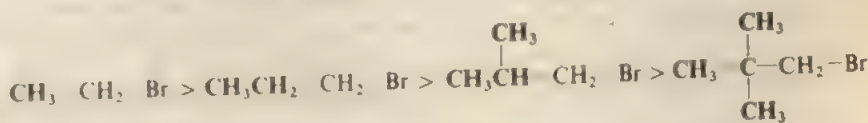


Figure 6.4. Steric factor in the S<sub>N</sub>2 reaction. Crowding raises energy of transition state and slows down reaction.

polar factors; that is to say, differences in rate are related to the *bulk* of the substituents and not to their effect on electron distribution. As the number of substituents attached to the carbon bearing the halogen is increased, the reactivity toward S<sub>N</sub>2 substitution decreases, as measurements have shown for the series methyl, 1°, 2°, 3°.

That steric factors are at work here is confirmed by the relative rates of another series of substrates. This time all the substrates are primary, and hence have the

#### S<sub>N</sub>2 substitution: relative reactivity



	Ethyl	<i>n</i> -Propyl	Isobutyl	Neopentyl
Relative rate (S <sub>N</sub> 2)	1.0	0.69	0.33	0.000006

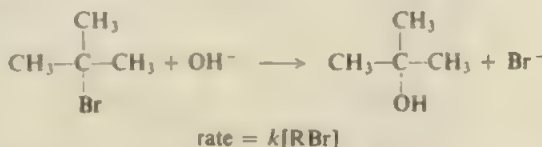
same *number* of substituents— one—attached to the carbon bearing halogen. But now the *size* of the substituent is steadily increased: in ethyl bromide the substituent is methyl; in *n*-propyl bromide, ethyl; in isobutyl bromide, isopropyl; and in neopentyl bromide, *tert*-butyl. And as the size of the (single) substituent increases, so does steric hindrance to attack, and the rate falls off.

Thus we see that the S<sub>N</sub>2 mechanism is supported by three lines of evidence: kinetics, stereochemistry, and effect of structure on reactivity.

We shall return to the  $S_N2$  reaction later in this chapter, but for now let us turn to another mechanism by which nucleophilic aliphatic substitution can take place.

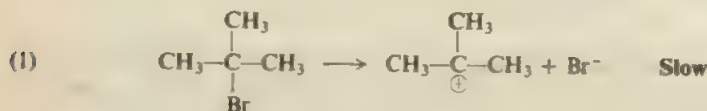
### 6.19 The $S_N1$ reaction: mechanism and kinetics. Rate-determining step

The reaction between *tert*-butyl bromide and hydroxide ion to yield *tert*-butyl alcohol follows first-order kinetics; that is, the rate depends upon the concentration of only one reactant, *tert*-butyl bromide.

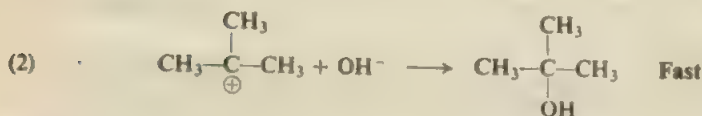


How are we to interpret the fact that the rate is independent of  $[\text{OH}^-]$ ? If the rate of reaction does not depend upon  $[\text{OH}^-]$ , it can only mean that the reaction whose rate we are measuring does not involve  $\text{OH}^-$ .

These observations are quite consistent with the following mechanism. *tert*-Butyl bromide slowly dissociates (step 1) into a bromide ion and a cation derived



$S_N1$



from the *tert*-butyl group: a *carbocation*. This carbocation then combines rapidly (step 2) with a hydroxide ion to yield *tert*-butyl alcohol.

The rate of the overall reaction is determined by the slow breaking of the C—Br bond to form the carbocation; once formed, the carbocation reacts rapidly to form the product. It is step (1) whose rate we are actually measuring; this step does not involve  $\text{OH}^-$ , and its rate does not depend upon  $[\text{OH}^-]$ . A single step whose rate determines the overall rate of a stepwise reaction is called a **rate-determining step**.

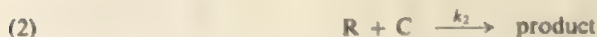
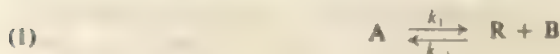
It is not surprising that the rate-determining step here is the one that involves the *breaking* of a bond, an energy-demanding process. We recognize this particular bond-breaking as an example of *heterolysis*, cleavage in which both bonding electrons go to the same fragment: a process that takes even more energy (Sec. 1.14) than the *homolysis* that we encountered in free-radical substitution. (In Sec. 6.27, we shall find out just where all this energy comes from.)

Nor is it surprising that the combining of the carbocation with hydroxide ion is a very fast step, since it involves only the *formation* of a bond, an energy-releasing process. We recognize this combining as an acid–base reaction in the Lewis sense. We are familiar with hydroxide ion as a strong base; as we shall see, carbocations are powerful Lewis acids.

This is the mechanism that is called  $S_N1$ : *substitution nucleophilic unimolecular*. The term *unimolecular* is used here since the rate-determining step involves only *one* molecule (the many necessary solvent molecules being disregarded).

We must not imagine that the laws of chemistry are somehow magically suspended for the second, fast step. It involves a reaction with  $OH^-$  and its rate depends on  $[OH^-]$ . What is special here is that, even if step (2) is slowed down by a low  $[OH^-]$ , it is still *much* faster than step (1), and any change in its rate does not affect the overall rate.

Let us see what we mean by rate-determining step in a reaction like this,



where  $R$  is a reactive intermediate (carbocation, free radical) whose concentration is maintained at some low *steady state* throughout the reaction. The exact kinetics expression for the formation of the product is

$$(3) \quad \text{rate} = \frac{k_1[A]}{1 + \frac{k_{-1}[B]}{k_2[C]}}$$

Without going into the derivation of this equation, let us see what it means.

The term  $k_1[A]$  is in the numerator and the term  $k_2[C]$  is in the denominator of the denominator, the bigger they are, the faster the rate. This is reasonable, since  $k_1[A]$  is the rate of step (1) and  $k_2[C]$  contributes to the rate of step (2). The term  $k_{-1}[B]$  is in the denominator; the bigger it is, the slower the rate. This, too, is understandable, since it contributes to the rate of the reverse of step (1).

Now if  $k_2[C]$  happens to be *much larger* than  $k_{-1}[B]$ , the term  $k_{-1}[B]/k_2[C]$  is very small—insignificant relative to 1—and drops out. Under these conditions we get our familiar rate expression for first-order kinetics:

$$\text{rate} = k_1[A]$$

But if  $k_2[C]$  is much larger than  $k_{-1}[B]$ , it must mean that *step (2) is much faster than the reverse of step (1)*. This is the *real* requirement for step (1) to be rate-determining. Does this mean that, contrary to what was said before, step (1)—in the forward direction—need not be slower than step (2)? Step (1) must still be a slow step, for otherwise the reactive intermediate would be formed faster than it could be consumed, and its concentration would build up—contrary to the nature of the reactive intermediate, and a condition different from the one for which the kinetics expression (3) holds.

What evidence is there that alkyl halides can react by the  $S_N1$  mechanism? As we have just seen, the mechanism is consistent with the first-order kinetics of a reaction like the one between *tert*-butyl bromide and hydroxide ion. In general, **an  $S_N1$  reaction follows first-order kinetics**. The rate of the entire reaction is determined by how fast the alkyl halide ionizes, and hence depends only upon the concentration of alkyl halide.

In following sections, we shall look at some of the other evidence. But to understand this evidence, we must know something about the intermediate that lies at the heart of the mechanism—and, indeed, at the heart of much of organic chemistry—the *carbocation*. And so, for a time, we shall find ourselves tracing two intertwining threads through the pattern of organic chemistry: concentrating alternately on the  $S_N1$  reaction and on the fundamental chemistry of carbocations

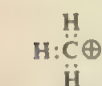


## 6.20 Carbocations

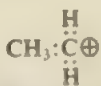
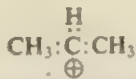
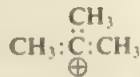
To account for the observed facts, we saw earlier, a certain mechanism was advanced for the halogenation of alkanes; central to this mechanism is the fleeting existence of free radicals, highly reactive neutral particles bearing an odd electron.

To account for a host of observations—of which the first-order kinetics described in the preceding section is just one—another kind of reactive particle has been proposed: the **carbocation**, a group of atoms that contains a carbon atom bearing only six electrons.

Carbocations are classified as primary, secondary, or tertiary after the carbon bearing the positive charge. They are named by use of the word *cation*. For example:



Methyl cation

Ethyl cation  
(primary, 1°)Isopropyl cation  
(secondary, 2°)*tert*-Butyl cation  
(tertiary, 3°)

We must expect to encounter two other names for what we have called the *carbocation*. *Carbonium ion* is almost the only name used in the older literature; it is still very commonly used, although sometimes with a special meaning. Olah (below) has proposed that *carbenium ion* be used for the species we have described above, with the name *carbonium ion* reserved for such species as  $\text{CH}_5^+$  (analogous to *ammonium ion*, etc.); carbenium ions and carbonium ions together would be called *carbocations*.

Like the free radical, the carbocation is an exceedingly reactive particle, and for the same reason: the tendency to complete the octet of carbon. Since it takes a pair of electrons to complete the octet here, the carbocation is a Lewis acid, and an extremely powerful one. Unlike the free radical, the carbocation carries a positive charge.

One kind of unusually stable carbocation (Problem 16.10, p. 650) was recognized as early as 1902 by the salt-like character of certain organic compounds. But for simple alkyl cations such direct observation should be exceedingly difficult, because of the very reactivity—and hence short life—that is attributed to them. Nevertheless, during the 1920's and 1930's, alkyl cations were proposed as intermediates in many organic reactions, and their existence was generally accepted, due largely to the work of three chemists: Hans Meerwein of Germany, "the father of modern carbonium ion chemistry"; Sir Christopher Ingold of England; and Frank Whitmore of the United States. The evidence consisted of a wide variety of observations made in studying the chemistry of alkyl halides, alcohols, alkenes, and many other kinds of organic compounds: observations that revealed a basically similar pattern of behavior most logically attributed to intermediate carbocations. A sizeable part of this book will be devoted to seeing what that pattern is.

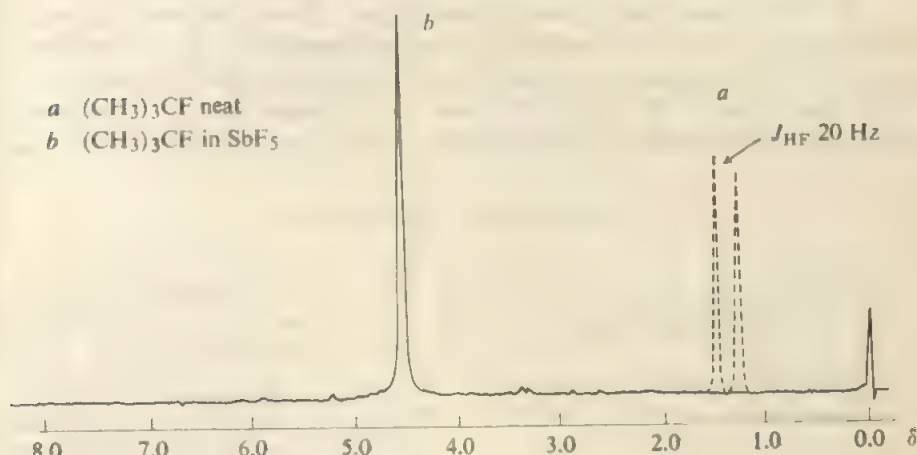
In 1963, George Olah (now at University of Southern California) reported the *direct observation* of simple alkyl cations. Dissolved in the extremely powerful Lewis acid  $\text{SbF}_5$ , alkyl fluorides (and, later, other halides) were found to undergo ionization to form the cation, which could be studied at leisure. There was a



dramatic change in the NMR spectrum (Chap. 17), from the spectrum of the alkyl

fluoride to the spectrum of a molecule that contains no fluorine but instead  $sp^2$ -hybridized carbon with a very low electron density.

Figure 6.5 shows what was observed for the *tert*-butyl fluoride system: a simple spectrum but, by its very simplicity, enormously significant. Although potentially very reactive, the *tert*-butyl cation can do little in this environment except try to regain the fluoride ion—and the  $SbF_5$  is an even stronger Lewis acid than the cation. This is an acid–base reaction; the  $SbF_5$  (a so-called *superacid*) is an even



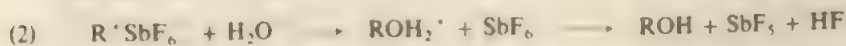
Courtesy of The Journal of American Chemical Society

**Figure 6.5.** Proton NMR spectrum of (a) *tert*-butyl fluoride and (b) *tert*-butyl cation. In (a), proton signal split into two peaks by coupling with nearby fluorine. In (b), single peak, shifted far downfield; strong deshielding due to low electron density on positive carbon.

stronger Lewis acid than the alkyl cation, and keeps the base it has won, the fluoride ion.

By methods like this, Olah opened the door to the study not just of the existence of organic cations of many kinds, but of intimate details of their structure.

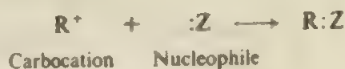
A highly meaningful sequel to this reaction can be carried out. If, now, the solution containing  $R^+ SbF_6^-$  is diluted with water, there is obtained the alcohol, ROH. What we have here are, essentially, the two steps proposed for the  $S_N1$  reaction—generation of a carbocation, and its combination with a nucleophile—



but observed as discrete processes, separated by as long a time period as we care to wait.

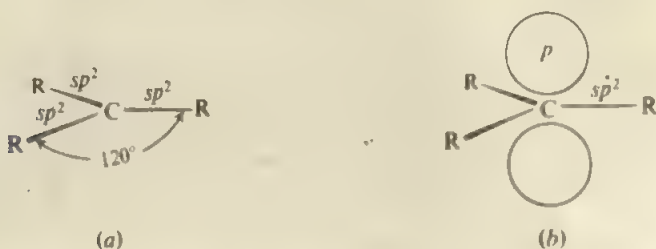
With only a sextet of electrons on carbon, a carbocation is an unstable, highly reactive particle. It can undergo a wide variety of reactions, as we shall see, just which one occurs depends upon the experimental conditions. But all reactions of a carbocation have a common end: to provide a pair of electrons to complete the octet of the positively charged carbon. In the second step of an  $S_N1$  reaction we see perhaps

the most direct way of going about this: combining with a nucleophile, a basic, electron-rich molecule.



## 6.21 Structure of carbocations

In a carbocation, the electron-deficient carbon is bonded to three other atoms, and for this bonding uses  $sp^2$  orbitals. As we have seen (Sec. 1.10),  $sp^2$  orbitals lie in one plane, that of the carbon nucleus, and are directed toward the corners of an equilateral triangle. This part of a carbocation is therefore *flat*, the electron-deficient carbon and the three atoms attached to it lying in the same plane (Fig. 6.6a).



**Figure 6.6.** A carbocation. (a) Only  $\sigma$  bonds shown. (b) Empty  $p$  orbital above and below plane of  $\sigma$  bonds.

But our description of the molecule is not yet quite complete. Carbon still has a  $p$  orbital, with its two lobes lying above and below the plane of the  $\sigma$  bonds (Fig. 6.6b); in a carbocation, the  $p$  orbital is *empty*. Although formally empty, this  $p$  orbital, we shall find, is intimately involved in the chemistry of carbocations: in their stability, and in the stability of various transition states leading to their formation. This comes about through overlap of the  $p$  orbital with certain nearby orbitals—overlap that is made geometrically possible by the flatness of the carbocation.

There can be little doubt that carbocations actually are flat. The quantum mechanical picture of a carbocation is exactly the same as that of boron trifluoride (Sec. 1.10), a molecule whose flatness is firmly established. NMR and infrared spectra of the stabilized carbocations studied by Olah are consistent with  $sp^2$  hybridization and flatness: in particular, infrared and Raman spectra of the *tert*-butyl cation are strikingly similar to those of trimethylboron, known to be flat.

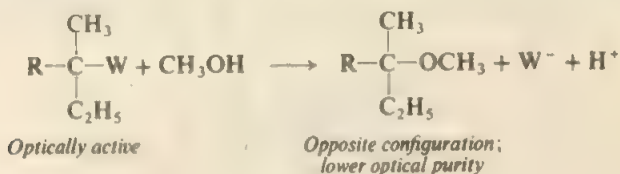
## 6.22 The $S_N1$ reaction: stereochemistry

We shall continue with the fundamental chemistry of carbocations in Sec. 6.23, but for now let us pick up the thread of our original discussion, nucleophilic substitution, and look at an aspect that is directly related to the shape of carbocations: the stereochemistry of the  $S_N1$  reaction. Here, as in stereochemical studies of the  $S_N2$  reaction (Sec. 6.16), substitution is carried out on an optically active substrate, the product is isolated, and its configuration and optical purity are



compared with those of the starting material. As before, relative configurations of reactant and product must have been assigned, and rotations of optically pure samples must be known so that optical purities can be calculated.

Such studies have been made of the reactions between several tertiary substrates and the solvent methanol,  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ : reactions of a type most likely to proceed by  $S_N1$ . In each case there is obtained a product of opposite configuration



### $S_N1$ : racemization plus inversion

from the starting material, and of considerably *lower optical purity*. Optically pure substrate, for example, gives a product that is only about 50% optically pure—and in some cases much less pure than that.

Now, optically pure starting material contains only the one enantiomer, whereas the product clearly must contain both. The product is thus a mixture of the inverted compound and the racemic modification, and we say that the reaction has proceeded with inversion plus *partial racemization*.

Let us get our terms straight. Consider the case where optically pure substrate gives product of opposite configuration and 50% optical purity. Of every 100 molecules of product, 75 are formed with inversion of configuration, and 25 with retention. The 25 of retained configuration cancel the rotation of 25 of the molecules of inverted configuration, leaving an excess of 50 molecules of inverted configuration to provide the observed optical rotation: 50% of the maximum value.

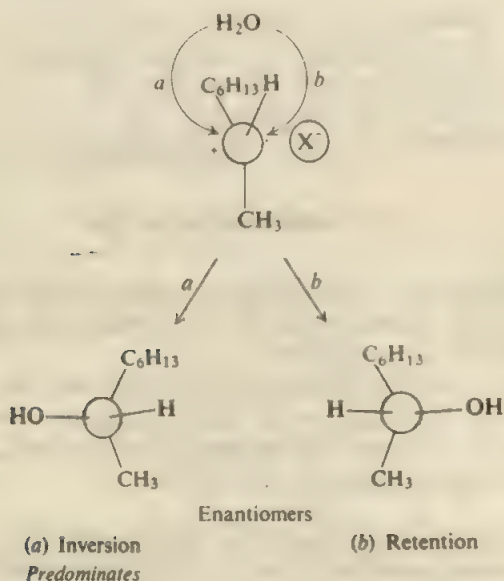
One could say that the reaction proceeds with 75% inversion and 25% retention; equally accurately one could say that reaction proceeds with 50% inversion and 50% racemization. But it is the latter way that we generally use: the percentage of racemization, as we shall see, is a measure of stereochemical randomness, and the percentage of *net inversion* (or, as happens in some kinds of reactions, *net retention*) is a measure of stereospecificity.

**Problem 6.8** Optically pure (*R*)- $\alpha$ -phenylethyl chloride ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHClCH}_3$ ) has  $[\alpha] -109^\circ$ ; optically pure (*R*)- $\alpha$ -phenylethyl alcohol has  $[\alpha] -42.3^\circ$ . When chloride of  $[\alpha] -34^\circ$  is treated with dilute aqueous  $\text{NaOH}$ , there is obtained alcohol of  $[\alpha] +1.7^\circ$ . Calculate (a) the optical purity of reactant and of product; (b) the percentage of retention and of inversion; (c) the percentage of racemization and of retention or inversion.

How do we account for the stereochemistry observed for the  $S_N1$  reaction? Let us see first why racemization occurs, and then why it is only partial and is accompanied by some net inversion.

In an  $S_N2$  reaction, we saw (Sec. 6.16), the nucleophile attacks the substrate molecule itself, and the complete stereospecificity observed is a direct consequence of that fact: the leaving group is still attached to carbon at the time of attack, and directs this attack on every molecule in the same way—to the back side. Now, in an  $S_N1$  reaction the nucleophile attacks, *not* the substrate, but the intermediate, the carbocation; the leaving group has already become detached and, we might have thought, can no longer affect the spatial orientation of attack.

Let us see where this line of reasoning leads us. In the first step the optically active substrate—an alkyl halide, say—dissociates to form halide ion and the carbocation. The nucleophilic reagent,  $Z^-$ , then attaches itself to the carbocation. But it may attach itself to either face of this flat ion and, depending upon which face, yield one or the other of the two enantiomeric products (see Fig. 6.7). Together, the two enantiomers constitute the racemic modification. Thus, the



**Figure 6.7.** The  $S_N1$  reaction: racemization plus inversion. Nucleophilic reagent attacks both (a) back side and (b) front side of carbocation. Back-side attack predominates.

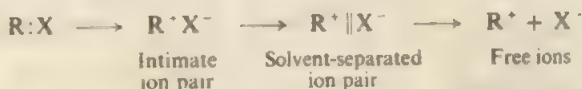
racemization that accompanies these reactions is consistent with the  $S_N1$  mechanism and the formation of an intermediate carbocation.

(So far, our discussion parallels what was said about the stereochemistry of free-radical chlorination (Sec. 4.29) where, we remember, random attack on the two faces of a free radical gives total racemization.)

Now, if attack on the two faces of the carbocation were purely random, we would expect to obtain equal amounts of the two enantiomers, that is to say, we would expect to obtain only the racemic modification. Yet, although racemization is sometimes very high—90% or more—it is seldom complete, and in general the inverted product exceeds its enantiomer. Reaction proceeds with racemization *plus some net inversion*.

How do we accommodate even this limited stereospecificity within the framework of the  $S_N1$  mechanism? How do we account for the fact that attack on the carbocation is *not* purely random? Clearly, the excess of inversion is due, in some way, to the leaving group: it must still be exerting a measure of control over the stereochemistry. In the complete absence of the leaving group, the flat carbocation would lose all chirality and could not yield a product with any optical activity. (*Remember*: synthesis of chiral compounds from achiral reactants always yields the racemic modification.)

How can the leaving group be involved? To find an answer, let us consider the process of heterolysis. As reaction proceeds, the distance between carbon and halogen steadily increases until finally the covalent bond breaks. The two oppositely charged ions are formed—but *not*, immediately, as completely *free* ions. Initially, they must be close together, close enough for electrostatic attraction to be sizeable; and so they exist—for a time—as an *ion pair*. As first formed, the ions are in contact with each other. Then, as they diffuse apart, layer after layer of solvent intervenes until finally they are independent of each other, and we speak of “free” ions.



Now, nucleophilic attack can, conceivably, take place at any time after the heterolysis, and thus can involve any species from the initially formed ion pair to the free carbocation. Attack on the free carbocation is random, and yields the racemic modification. But attack on the ion pair is not random: the anion clings more or less closely to the front side of the carbocation and thus shields this side from attack; as a result, back-side attack is preferred. To the extent, then, that attack occurs before the ion pair has completely separated, inversion of configuration competes with racemization.

Thus the  $S_N1$  mechanism can accommodate the fact that racemization is not complete. But the important thing—the important contrast to the  $S_N2$  stereochemistry—is that racemization occurs at all. Unlike an  $S_N2$  reaction; which proceeds with complete inversion, **an  $S_N1$  reaction proceeds with racemization.**

That there are two kinds of stereochemistry supports the central idea that there are two different mechanisms. The particular form of the stereochemistry gives powerful support for the particular mechanisms proposed. Complete stereospecificity in the  $S_N2$  reaction supports the idea of concerted bond-breaking and bond-making, *in a single step*; lack of complete stereospecificity in the  $S_N1$  reaction shows that bond-breaking and bond-making occur separately, *in different steps*.

The next aspect of the  $S_N1$  reaction that we shall take up is the matter of *reactivity*. But to understand that, we must first return to the chemistry of carbocations, and examine what will be to us their most important property: their *relative stabilities*.

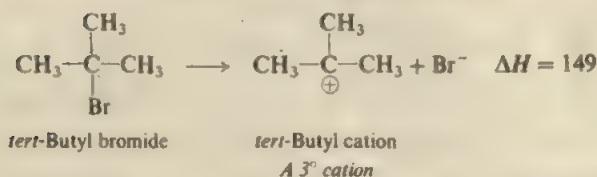
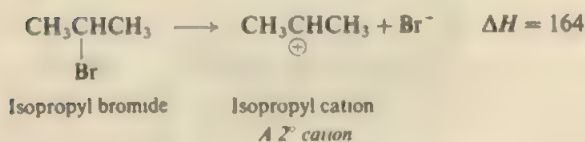
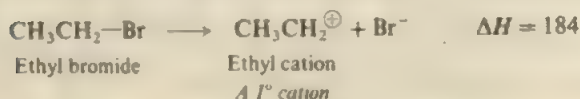
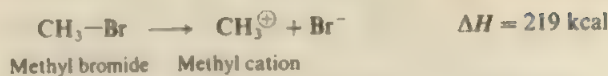
## 6.23 Relative stabilities of carbocations

When we wished to compare stabilities of free radicals (Sec. 3.24), we made use of homolytic bond dissociation energies, since these apply to reactions in which free radicals are generated.

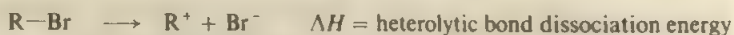
Now we wish to compare stabilities of carbocations, and to do this we shall follow exactly the same line of reasoning that we followed for free radicals. This time, however, we must start with the *heterolytic* bond dissociation energies in Table 1.3 (p. 21), since these apply to reactions in which carbocations are generated. In this table we find energies of the bonds that hold bromine to a number of groups.



These values are the  $\Delta H$ 's of the following reactions:



By definition, this bond dissociation energy is the amount of energy that must be supplied to convert a mole of alkyl bromide into carbocations and bromide ions.



As we can see, the amount of energy needed to form the various classes of carbocations decreases in the order:  $\text{CH}_3^+ > 1^\circ > 2^\circ > 3^\circ$ .

If less energy is needed to form one carbocation than another, it can only mean that, *relative to the alkyl bromide from which it is formed*, the one carbocation contains less energy than the other, that is to say, is *more stable* (see Fig. 6.8).

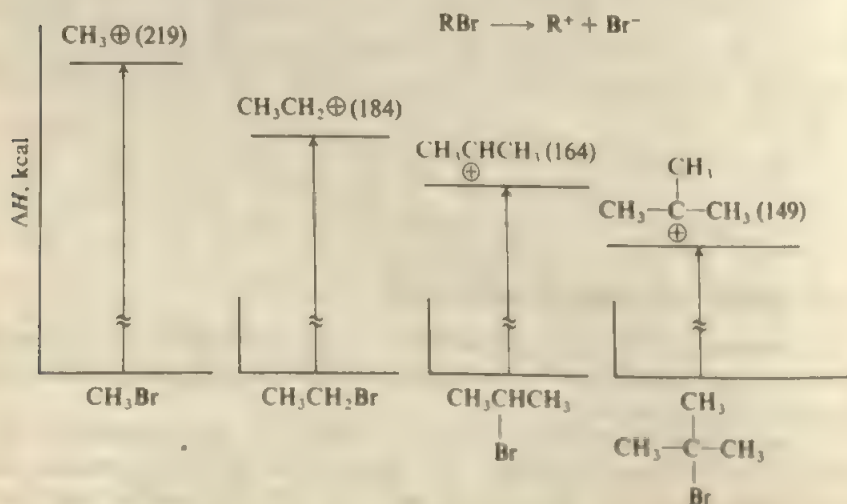


Figure 6.8. Stabilities of carbocations relative to alkyl bromides (Plots aligned with each other for easy comparison.)

We are not attempting to compare the absolute energy contents of, say, isopropyl and *tert*-butyl cations; we are simply saying that the difference in energy between isopropyl bromide and isopropyl cations is greater than the difference between *tert*-butyl bromide and *tert*-butyl cations. *When we compare stabilities of carbocations, it must be understood that our standard for each cation is the substrate from which it is formed.* As we shall see, this is precisely the kind of stability that we are interested in.

We used alkyl bromides for our comparison above, but we could just as well have used alkyl fluorides, chlorides, or iodides, or the corresponding alcohols. For all these compounds the bond dissociation energies in Table 1.3 show the same order of stability of carbocations. Even the sizes of the energy differences, in kcal/mol, are very nearly the same, whatever the class of parent compounds. The difference between methyl and *tert*-butyl cations, for example, relative to various substrates is: fluorides, 67 kcal; chlorides, 70 kcal; bromides, 70 kcal; iodides, 72 kcal; and alcohols, 66 kcal.

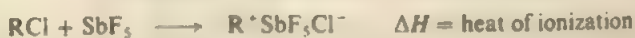
Relative to the substrate from which each is formed, then, the order of stability of carbocations is:

**Stability of carbocations**  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ > \text{CH}_3^+$

We shall find that this same order of stability applies not only when carbocations are formed by heterolysis, but also when they are formed by entirely different processes.

Differences in stability between carbocations are *much* larger than between free radicals. The *tert*-butyl free radical, for example, is only 12 kcal more stable than the methyl free radical; the *tert*-butyl cation is, depending upon the substrate, 66–72 kcal more stable than the methyl cation. As we shall see, these much larger differences in stability give rise to much larger effects on reactivity.

So far in this section, our discussion has been based on bond dissociation energies, which are measured in the gas phase. But nearly all carbocation chemistry takes place in solution, and solvents, as we know, can exert powerful stabilizing effects on ionic solutes. Does the order of stability that we have arrived at hold for carbocations in solution? The answer to this question has been given most directly by measurement, in a variety of solvents, of the  $\Delta H$ 's for the generation of carbocations by Olah's superacid method. The values obtained reveal the same



order of carbocation stability, relative to the parent substrate, as do the dissociation energies. Even the *differences* in stability, in kcal/mol, are much the same.

So now we have arrived at an order of stability of carbocations which holds for solution as well as for gas phase, and which applies to the generation of carbocations from a wide variety of substrates and, we shall see, in a wide variety of chemical reactions. As we continue our study, we shall add other kinds of carbocations to our series, and examine other kinds of reactions by which they can be generated.

Now, let us see how this order of stability can be accounted for.

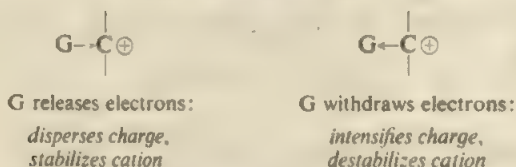
## 6.24 Stabilization of carbocations. Accommodation of charge. Polar effects

The characteristic feature of a carbocation is, by definition, the electron-deficient carbon and the attendant positive charge. The relative stability of a carbocation is determined chiefly by how well it *accommodates* that charge.

According to the laws of electrostatics, **the stability of a charged system is increased by dispersal of the charge**. Any factor, therefore, that tends to spread out the positive charge of the electron-deficient carbon and distribute it over the rest of the ion must stabilize a carbocation.

Consider a substituent, G, attached to an electron-deficient carbon in place of a hydrogen atom. Compared with hydrogen, G may either release electrons or withdraw electrons. Such an effect on the availability of electrons at the reaction center is called a **polar effect**.

### Carbocation stability



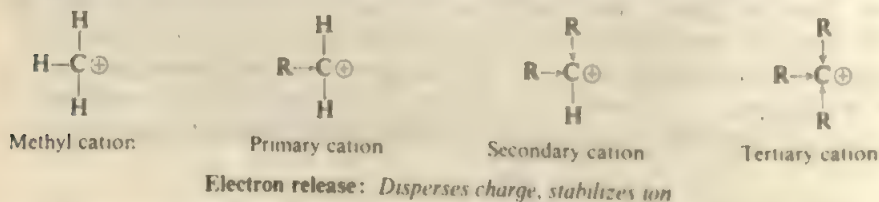
An electron-releasing substituent tends to reduce the positive charge at the electron-deficient carbon; in doing this, the substituent itself becomes somewhat positive. This dispersal of the charge stabilizes the carbocation.

An electron-withdrawing substituent tends to intensify the positive charge on the electron-deficient carbon, and hence makes the carbocation less stable.

The order of stability of carbocations, we have just seen, is the following.

**Stability of carbocations**       $3^{\circ} > 2^{\circ} > 1^{\circ} > \text{CH}_3^+$

Now, by definition, the distinction among primary, secondary, and tertiary cations is the number of alkyl groups attached to the electron-deficient carbon. The facts are, then, *that the greater the number of alkyl groups, the more stable the carbocation*.



If our generalization about dispersal of charge applies in this case, alkyl groups must *release electrons* here.

Is electron-release what we would have expected of alkyl groups? Ingold (p. 214) has suggested that alkyl groups, lacking strong polar tendencies of their own, can do pretty much what is demanded of them by other groups in the molecule. There is increasing evidence that this is so: alkyl groups often tend to stabilize both cations and anions, indicating electron-release or electron-withdrawal *on demand*. In a carbocation, electron-deficient carbon has an urgent need for electrons—it is like a different element, a very electronegative one—and it *induces* alkyl groups to release electrons to meet that need.

Now, how does a substituent exert its polar effect? Despite the vast amount of



work that has been done—and is still being done—on this problem, there is no general agreement, except that at least two factors must be at work. We shall consider electron withdrawal and electron release to result from the operation of two factors: the *inductive effect* and the *resonance effect*.

The **inductive effect** depends upon the "intrinsic" tendency of a substituent to release or withdraw electrons—by definition, its electronegativity—acting either through the molecular chain or through space. The effect weakens steadily with increasing distance from the substituent. Most elements likely to be substituted for hydrogen in an organic molecule are more electronegative than hydrogen, so that most substituents exert electron-withdrawing inductive effects: for example,  $-\text{F}$ ,  $-\text{Cl}$ ,  $-\text{Br}$ ,  $-\text{I}$ ,  $-\text{OH}$ ,  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,  $-\text{NO}_2$ .

The **resonance effect** involves *delocalization* of electrons—typically, those called  $\pi$  (pi) electrons. It depends upon the overlap of certain orbitals, and therefore can only operate when the substituent is located in certain special ways relative to the charge center. By its very nature, as we shall see (Sec. 9.14), the resonance effect is a stabilizing effect, and so it amounts to electron withdrawal from a negatively charged center, and electron release to a positively charged center.

The nature of the electron release by alkyl groups is not clear. It may be an inductive effect; it may be a resonance effect (*hyperconjugation*, Sec. 9.16), electrons being provided by overlap of  $\sigma$  bonds with the empty  $p$  orbital of the electron-deficient carbon. It may very well be a combination of the two. When we refer to the inductive effect of alkyl groups in this book, it should be understood that this may well include a contribution from hyperconjugation.

However it arises, the polar effect of alkyl groups is not a powerful one, as such effects go. Yet it leads to very large differences in stability among the various classes of carbocations. And it is these differences that we must keep uppermost in our minds in dealing with the varied chemistry of carbocations.

## 6.25 The S<sub>N</sub>1 reaction: reactivity. Ease of formation of carbocations

Once again let us return to nucleophilic substitution, and the matter of how the structure of the alkyl group affects reactivity. We have already seen (Sec. 6.18) that reactivity in S<sub>N</sub>2 decreases along the series  $\text{CH}_3\text{W}$ ,  $1^\circ$ ,  $2^\circ$ ,  $3^\circ$ , as postulated by Hughes and Ingold (Sec. 6.14). Now, what are the facts with regard to the other half of their duality theory: does reactivity by S<sub>N</sub>1 change in the opposite direction along this same series?

Under conditions that greatly favor S<sub>N</sub>1, results like the following have been obtained:

### S<sub>N</sub>1 substitution: relative reactivity



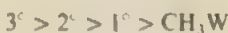
	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\   \\ \text{CH}_3 - \text{C} - \text{W} \\   \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$	>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\   \\ \text{CH}_3 - \text{C} - \text{W} \\   \\ \text{H} \end{array}$	>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\   \\ \text{CH}_3 - \text{C} - \text{W} \\   \\ \text{H} \end{array}$	>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\   \\ \text{H} - \text{C} - \text{W} \\   \\ \text{H} \end{array}$
	<i>tert</i> -Butyl		Isopropyl		Ethyl		Methyl
Relative rate (S <sub>N</sub> 1)	> 10 <sup>6</sup>		1.0		< 10 <sup>-6</sup>		< 10 <sup>-7</sup>

Thus, the postulated order of reactivity is confirmed. Also as postulated—see the sharply rising  $S_N1$  curve of Figure 6.2 (p. 214)—the differences in reactivity are much greater than those found for the  $S_N2$  reaction. By  $S_N1$ , tertiary substrates are more than a million times as reactive as secondary, which in turn are at least ten thousand—and probably more than a million—times as reactive as primary.

Even these differences are believed to be underestimations. Reactivities of primary and methyl substrates are *very* much less than the maximum values indicated; it is likely that even the small rates measured for them are in large part not for  $S_N1$ , but for  $S_N2$  with the solvent acting as nucleophile (Sec. 6.31).

The reactivity of substrates in the  $S_N1$  reaction, then, follows the sequence:

#### Reactivity in $S_N1$



Now, the rate-determining step in  $S_N1$  is formation of the carbocation; that is to say, one substrate undergoes  $S_N1$  faster than another because it forms a carbocation faster. Our reactivity sequence therefore leads directly to a sequence showing the relative rates of formation of carbocations:

#### Rate of formation of carbocations



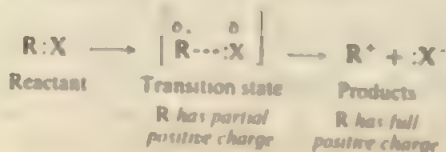
In listing carbocations in order of their rates of formation, we find we have at the same time listed them in order of their stability. **The more stable the carbocation, the faster it is formed.**

This is probably the most useful generalization about structure and reactivity that appears in this book— or, indeed, that exists in organic chemistry. Carbocations are formed from many compounds other than alkyl halides, and in reactions quite different from nucleophilic substitution. *Yet in all these reactions in which carbocations are formed, carbocation stability plays a leading role in governing reactivity and orientation.*

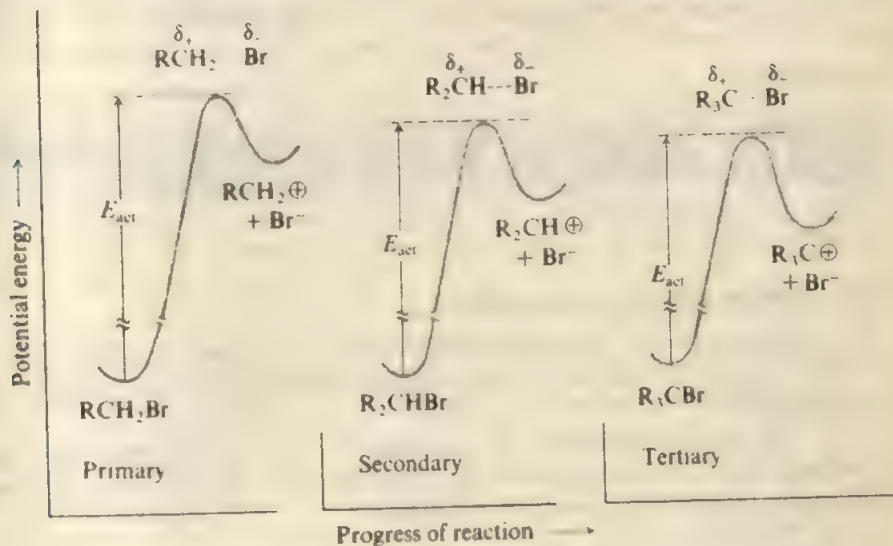
How can we account for the fact that the rate of formation of a carbocation depends upon its stability? As always to answer a question like this, we must take the specific reaction involved— here, the  $S_N1$  reaction— and compare the structure of the reactants with the structure of the transition state.

In an  $S_N1$  reaction of an alkyl halide, the carbocation is formed by heterolysis of the substrate molecule, that is, by breaking of the carbon-halogen bond. In the reactant an electron pair is shared by carbon and halogen, except for a modest polarity, these two atoms are neutral. In the products, halogen has taken away the electron pair, and carbon is left with only a sextet, halide carries a full negative charge, and the carbocation carries a full positive charge centered on carbon.

In the transition state, the  $\text{C}-\text{X}$  bond must be partly broken, halogen having partly pulled the electron pair away from carbon. Halogen has partly gained the negative charge it is to carry in the halide ion. Most important, *carbon has partly gained the positive charge it is to carry in the carbocation.*



Electron-releasing groups tend to disperse the partial positive charge ( $\delta_+$ ) developing on carbon, and in this way stabilize the transition state. Stabilization of the transition state lowers the  $E_{act}$  and permits a faster reaction (See Fig. 6.9).



**Figure 6.9.** Molecular structure and rate of reaction. Stability of transition state parallels stability of carbocation; more stable carbocation formed faster. (Plots aligned with each other for easy comparison.)

Thus, to the extent that the  $C-X$  bond is broken, the alkyl group possesses character of the carbocation it is to become. The same factor, electron release, that stabilizes the carbocation also stabilizes the *incipient* carbocation in the transition state.

In 1979, Edward Arnett (University of Pittsburgh) and Paul Schleyer (University of Erlangen-Nürnberg) reported "an extraordinary corroboration of the fundamental soundness of the 'carbocation theory of organic chemistry'." For a set of substrates of widely varying structures, they compared the  $E_{act}$ 's of  $S_N1$  reactions with the heats of ionization in superacid solutions, and found a direct *quantitative* dependence of rate of formation of carbocations on carbocation stability. The more stable the carbocation, they found, the faster it is formed.

As we encounter other reactions in which carbocations are formed, we must, for each of these reactions, examine the structure of the transition state. In most, if not all, of these reactions, we shall find that the transition state differs from the reactants chiefly in being like the product. The *carbocation character of the transition state* will be the factor most affecting  $E_{act}$ ; hence, the more stable the carbocation, the more stable the transition state leading to its formation, and the faster the carbocation will be formed.

But what we have just learned here will be applied in an even more general way. We shall return again and again to the relationship between polar effects and dispersal of charge, and between dispersal of charge and stability. We shall find that these relationships will help us to understand, not only carbocation reactions of many kinds, but all reactions in which a charge—positive or negative—develops or disappears. These will include reactions as seemingly different from  $S_N1$



substitution as dehydration of alcohols, addition to alkenes, and aromatic substitution—both electrophilic and nucleophilic—and the fundamental properties of acidity and basicity.

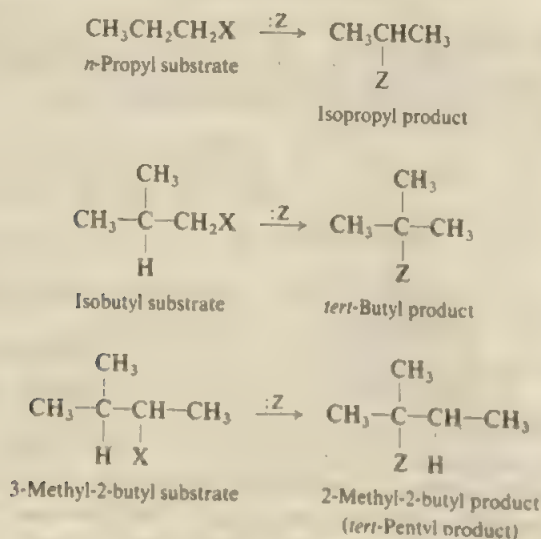
Differences in reactivity by  $S_N1$ , then, depend upon differences in stability among the various classes of carbocations. In the next section, we shall see how these same differences in stability lead to rather surprising behavior on the part of carbocations.

**Problem 6.9** Neopentyl halides are notoriously slow in nucleophilic substitution, whatever the experimental conditions. How can you account for this?

## 6.26 Rearrangement of carbocations

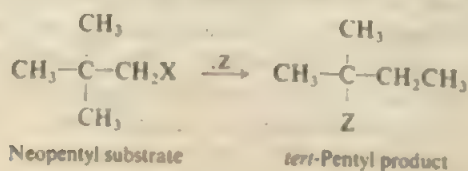
We spoke earlier of a pattern of behavior that led to the development of the carbocation theory. The most striking feature of that pattern is the occurrence of *rearrangements*.

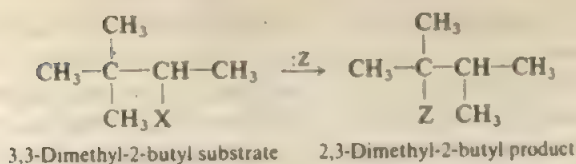
In nucleophilic substitution, for example, it is sometimes observed that the entering group, Z, becomes attached to a different carbon atom than the one that originally held the leaving group, X. For example:



In each of these cases we see that, to accommodate Z in the new position, there must be a rearrangement of hydrogen atoms in the substrate. The transformation of a *n*-propyl group into an isopropyl group, for example, requires removal of one H from C-2, and attachment of one H to C-1.

Sometimes, there is even a rearrangement of the carbon skeleton:

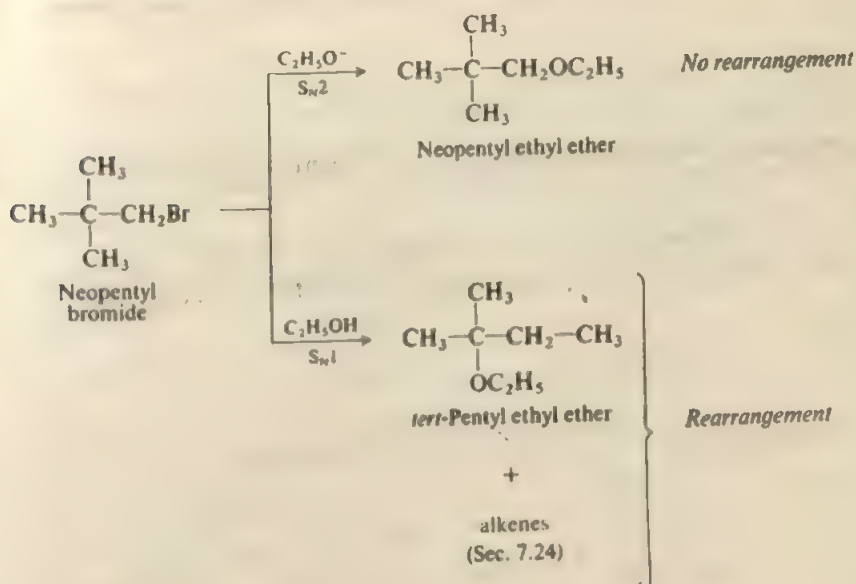




In reactions of quite different types—elimination, addition—rearrangements are also observed, and these rearrangements are of the same pattern as those above. This similarity in behavior suggests a similarity in mechanism. However different the various mechanisms might be, they all have one feature in common: at some stage the same intermediate is formed, and it is this that undergoes the actual rearrangement. This intermediate, as was first clearly proposed in 1922 by Hans Meerwein (p. 226), is the *carbocation*.

Now, of the two mechanisms advanced for nucleophilic substitution, only  $S_N1$  is postulated to involve an intermediate carbocation, and therefore we expect only reactions proceeding by  $S_N1$  to be accompanied by these characteristic rearrangements. By contrast, the single step postulated for  $S_N2$  simply provides no opportunity for such rearrangements.

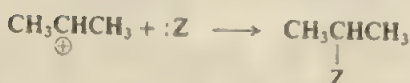
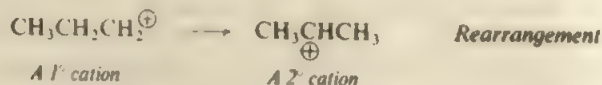
This expectation is borne out by experiment, as the following example illustrates. Neopentyl substrates are particularly prone to rearrange to *tert*-pentyl products. In a solution of sodium ethoxide in ethanol, neopentyl bromide undergoes a (slow) second-order reaction to yield the unrearranged neopentyl ethyl ether. In a solution of ethanol alone, it undergoes a (slow) first-order reaction to yield *tert*-pentyl ethyl ether (and other rearrangement products.)



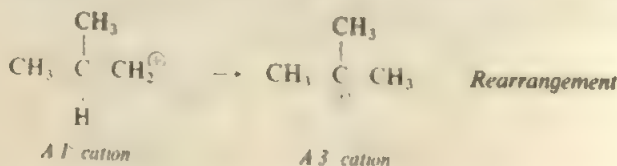
The occurrence or non-occurrence of rearrangement is a striking difference, and it provides one more piece of evidence that there are two mechanisms for nucleophilic substitution. In addition, rearrangement gives powerful support to

the particular form of the  $S_N1$  mechanism—the intermediacy of carbocations—by linking this mechanism to the mechanisms of those other kinds of reactions where rearrangements are observed. The correlation between rearrangement and intermediate cations is so strong that, in the absence of other information about a particular example of nucleophilic substitution, rearrangement is generally taken as evidence that reaction is by  $S_N1$ .

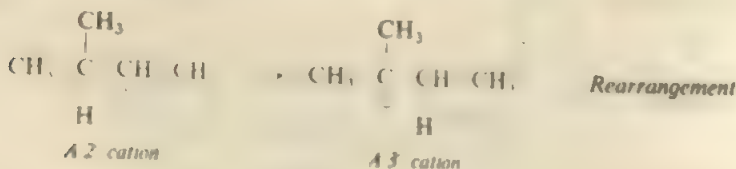
On this basis, then, we can account for the observed products in the following way. A *n*-propyl substrate, for example, yields the *n*-propyl cation; this rearranges to the isopropyl cation, which combines with the nucleophile to give the isopropyl product.



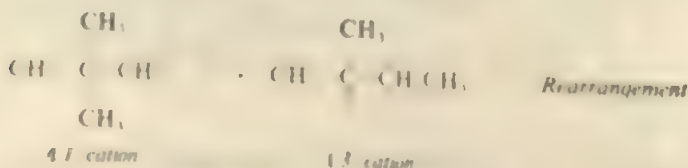
In a similar way, the isobutyl cation rearranges to the *tert*-butyl cation,



the 3-methyl-2-butyl cation rearranges to the 2-methyl-2-butyl cation,

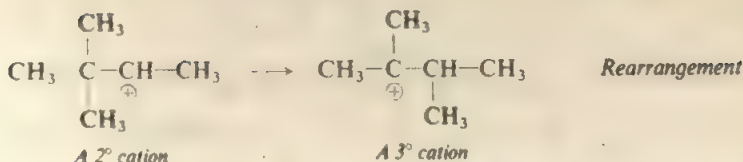


the neopentyl cation rearranges to the *tert*-pentyl cation,



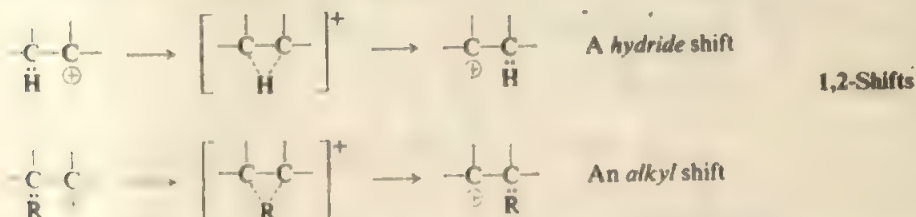
and the 3,3-dimethyl-2-butyl cation rearranges to the 2,3-dimethyl-2-butyl cation





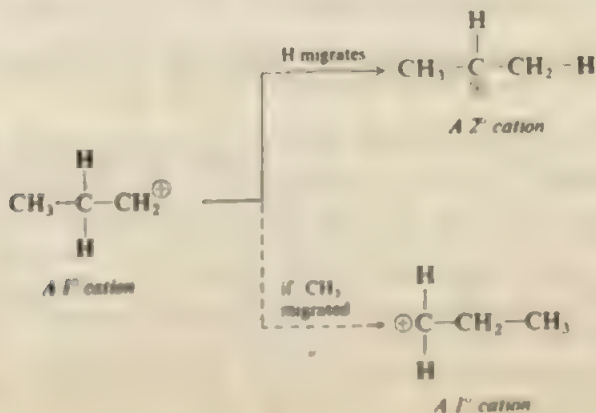
We see that in each case rearrangement takes place in such a way that a less stable carbocation is converted into a more stable one: a primary into a secondary, a primary into a tertiary, or a secondary into a tertiary.

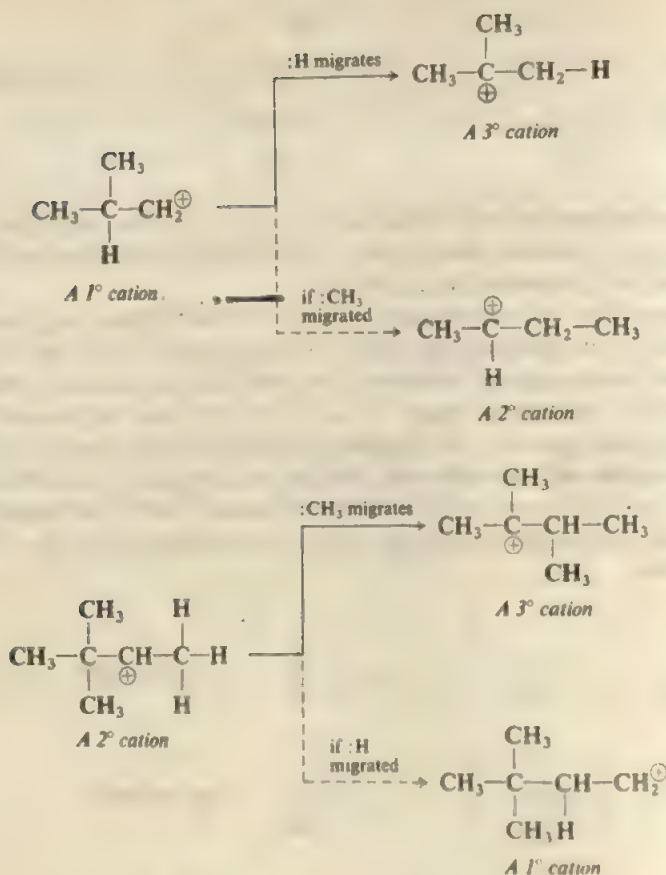
Just how does this rearrangement occur? Frank Whitmore (Pennsylvania State University) pictured rearrangement as taking place in this way: a hydrogen atom or alkyl group migrates with a pair of electrons from an adjacent carbon to the carbon bearing the positive charge. The carbon that loses the migrating group acquires the positive charge. A migration of hydrogen with a pair of electrons is known as a **hydride shift**; a similar migration of an alkyl group is known as an **alkyl shift**. These are just two examples of the most common kind of rearrangement, the **1,2-shifts**: rearrangements in which the migrating group moves from one atom to the very next atom.



We can account for rearrangements in  $S_N1$  reactions in the following way. A carbocation is formed by loss of the leaving group from the substrate. If a 1,2-shift of hydrogen or alkyl can form a more stable carbocation, then such a rearrangement takes place. The new carbocation now combines with the nucleophile to yield the substitution product.

In the case of *n*-propyl cation, for example, a shift of hydrogen yields the more stable isopropyl cation; migration of a methyl group would simply form a different *n*-propyl cation.





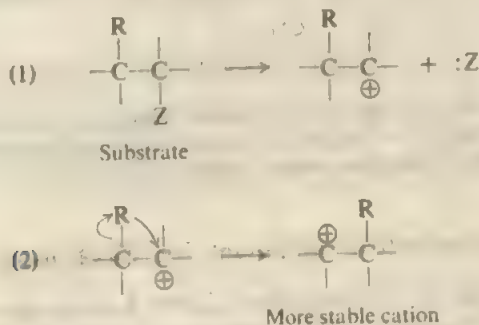
In the case of the isobutyl cation, a hydride shift yields a tertiary cation, and hence is preferred over a methyl shift, which would only yield a secondary cation. In the case of the 3,3-dimethyl-2-butyl cation, on the other hand, a methyl shift can yield a tertiary cation and is the rearrangement that takes place.

We can view rearrangement as an intramolecular acid-base reaction in which, as usual, the stronger acid gets the base. The base is the migrating group with its electrons (hydride or alkyl). Competing for it are two Lewis acids—the electron-deficient carbons in the alternative carbocations. In the *n*-propyl isopropyl rearrangement, for example, C-1 is more electron-deficient and hence the stronger acid, and it ends up holding the base.

What we have described so far is the theory of carbocation rearrangement as it had developed by about 1950. What developments have there been since that time?

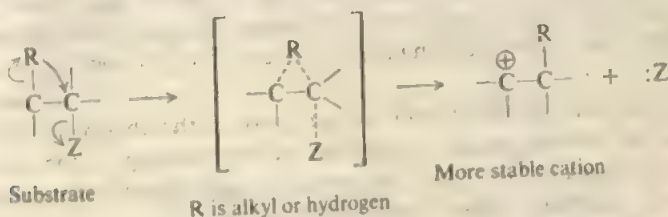
First, just as the reality of carbocations has been verified, so has the reality of their rearrangement. Prepared under the superacid conditions of Olah, and studied by spectroscopy, carbocations have been *observed* to rearrange, the rates of some rearrangements have even been measured, and the  $E_{\text{act}}$ 's estimated. If water is added, it combines with the rearranged cation, and the  $-\text{OH}$  appears at the new position in the molecule. Here again we are observing as discrete processes steps proposed for  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$ , this time with rearrangement—first, formation of a carbocation, then, its rearrangement into a new cation, and finally, combination of this new cation with the nucleophile.

In the field of nucleophilic substitution, the theory of carbocation rearrangement has been modified chiefly as to the *timing* of the steps involved. For some substrates, there seem to be two separate steps, as we have shown: first (step 1), departure of a leaving group to yield a carbocation, and then (step 2), rearrangement to a more stable cation:



R is alkyl or hydrogen

But for other substrates, it has been widely accepted that rearrangement is *concerted* with the departure of the leaving group; the migrating group, with its electrons, acts as an internal nucleophile, and helps to push out the leaving group. There is a single transition state leading from substrate to the rearranged cation: a more



stable cation, and more easily formed. We shall generally discuss rearrangement in terms of the two-step process, but it should be understood that *in some cases* it is most likely that steps (1) and (2) occur simultaneously (Sec. 11.5).

Such a modification in the theory does not detract from the contribution made by earlier workers. Rather, it speaks for the soundness of their original concepts that new facts are accommodated so well within the original theoretical framework. Rearrangement is seen, not as just *happening*, incidental to the main course of events, but as playing a vital role in bringing about reaction in the first place. In those cases where the migrating group acts as a nucleophile, rearrangement itself becomes an example of nucleophilic substitution, a kind of intramolecular  $S_N2$  reaction. Most important of all, perhaps, difference in stability between carbocations emerges as an important driving force to reaction. Once more we see the course of reaction being determined by energy factors—reaction occurs in the way that is *easiest*.

In our short acquaintance with the carbocation, we have encountered two of its reactions. A carbocation may:

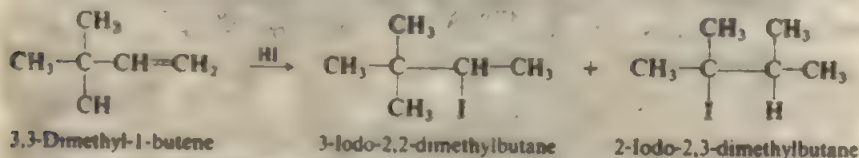
- (a) combine with a nucleophile;
- (b) rearrange to a more stable carbocation.

This list will grow rapidly

In rearrangement, as in every other reaction of a carbocation, the electron-deficient carbon atom gains a pair of electrons, this time at the expense of a neighboring carbon atom, one that can better accommodate the positive charge



**Problem 6.10** When the alkene 3,3-dimethyl-1-butene is treated with hydrogen iodide there is obtained a mixture of products:



What does the formation of the second product suggest to you? Propose a likely mechanism for this reaction, which is an example of *electrophilic addition*, the reaction most typical of alkenes. Check your answer in Secs. 8.12 and 8.13.

## 6.27 The $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$ reaction: role of the solvent. Ion-dipole bonds

In discussing each of the reactions,  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  and  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$ , we have accounted for differences in reactivity among various substrates on the basis of differences in the amount of energy required: one substrate reacts faster than another chiefly because of a lower  $E_{\text{act}}$ . In  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$ , for example, the difference in rate between tertiary and secondary substrates corresponds to a difference in  $E_{\text{act}}$  of about 15 kcal.

Now let us turn to a more basic matter—one that involves much larger amounts of energy. How do we account for the fact that substitution occurs *at all*, even for the most reactive substrates? By either mechanism,  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  or  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$ , a bond is broken between carbon and the leaving group—the carbon-halogen bond, for example, in an alkyl halide—and bond-breaking requires energy. Where does this energy come from?

For an  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  reaction, the answer is clear: most of the energy needed to break the bond to the leaving group is supplied by the making of the bond to the nucleophile. In attack by  $\text{OH}^-$ , say, the carbon-halogen bond is being broken, and simultaneously a carbon-oxygen bond is being formed.

But what can we say about an  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  reaction? Here, the rate-determining step is “simple” heterolysis—bond-breaking without, apparently, bond-making to balance it. In the gas phase, bond dissociation energies show, heterolysis of an alkyl halide requires a great deal of energy: 149 kcal/mol for *tert*-butyl bromide, and even more for other substrates. Yet, in an  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  reaction heterolysis occurs readily at moderate temperatures with an  $E_{\text{act}}$  of only 20 to 30 kcal/mol. This leaves a difference of 130 kcal or more to be provided. Where does this very large amount of energy come from?

The answer is, once again, from bond formation: not formation of one bond, as in the  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  reaction, but formation of *many* bonds—bonds between the ions produced and the *solvent*. The ions are not generated as naked particles in the near-emptiness of the gas phase; instead, they are generated as *solvated* ions. Clustered about each ion is a group of polar solvent molecules, oriented with their negative ends toward the carbocation and their positive ends toward the anion (Fig. 6.10). Individually, each of these ion-dipole bonds is relatively weak, but altogether they provide a great deal of energy. (See Sec. 1.22.)

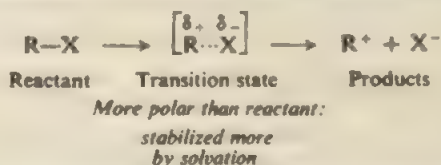
But the ions are the *products* of heterolysis. Since we are concerned here with the rate of heterolysis, we must consider not the products but the transition state, and compare *its* stability with the stability of the reactant.

The reactant has a dipole moment, and forms dipole-dipole bonds to solvent molecules. (Indeed, the solvent would have been selected partly for this purpose,



Figure 6.10. Ion-dipole interactions: solvated carbocation and anion.

since otherwise the reactant would not have dissolved in the first place.) The transition state, we have seen, has a stretched carbon-halogen bond and well-developed positive and negative charges. It has a *much* greater dipole moment than



the reactant, and forms *much* stronger dipole-dipole bonds to the solvent. The solvent thus stabilizes the transition state more than it does the reactant, lowers the  $E_{\text{act}}$ , and speeds up reaction (Fig. 6.11). Just as a polar solvent stabilizes the ions formed in heterolysis, so it stabilizes the *incipient* ions in the transition state leading

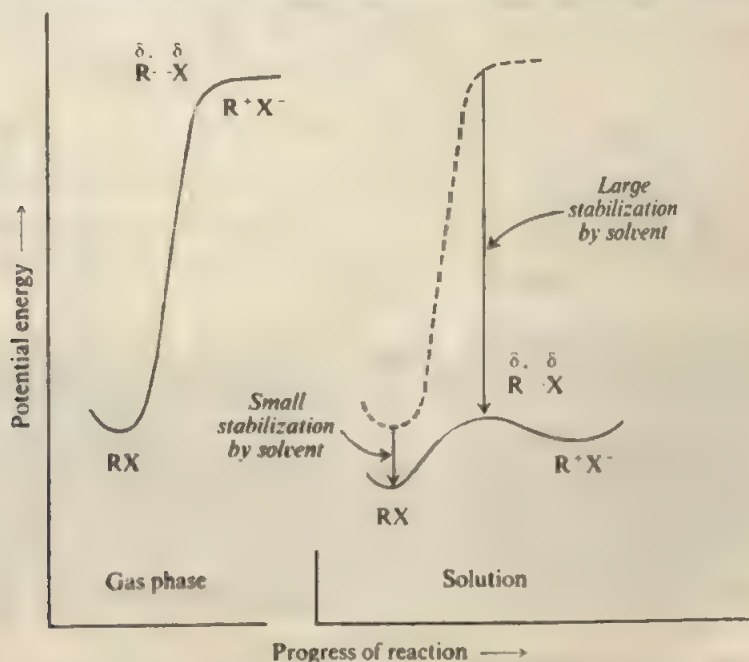


Figure 6.11. Effect of solvent on rate of heterolysis of an alkyl halide. Transition state is more polar than reactant, and is more stabilized by dipole-dipole bonds.

to their formation. In an  $S_N1$  reaction, the substrate molecule does not simply fall apart; it is *pulled* apart by the solvent molecules.

What we have been discussing so far is the difference between heterolysis in the absence and in the presence of a solvent. Clearly the effect of the solvent is enormous: it lowers the  $E_{act}$  by 130 kcal or more, and thus allows the reaction to take place.

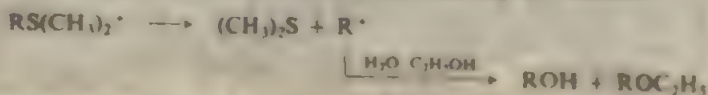
Now let us take the next step in our analysis and ask: what kind of solvents are best at promoting heterolysis? That is, what kind of solvents have the greatest *ionizing power*? For sake of simplicity, let us discuss solvation of the products, the ions, on the reasonable assumption that the same factors that stabilize them also stabilize the incipient ions in the transition state. On this basis, then, the ionizing power of the solvent depends upon how well it solvates ions. In turn, the ability to solvate ions depends, *in part*, on the polarity of the solvent: other things being equal, the more polar the solvent, the stronger the ion-dipole bonds. Thus,  $S_N1$  reactions of neutral substrates go faster in water than in ethanol; they go faster in, say, 20% ethanol (a 20:80 ethanol:water mixture) than in 80% ethanol.

But, we saw in Sec. 1.22, much more than simple polarity is involved. Cations are solvated chiefly through unshared pairs of electrons; anions are solvated chiefly through hydrogen bonding. Now, in the ionization of organic substrates solvation of the anion is particularly important. (The cations are *carbocations* and, because of their dispersed charge, they form weaker ion-dipole bonds than smaller metal cations.) The best ionizing solvents are therefore those that are capable of hydrogen bonding, that is, *protic* solvents (Sec. 1.22). And among protic solvents, ionizing power is highest for the solvents that form the *strongest* hydrogen bonds, that is, solvents with the most acidic hydrogens. Thus,  $S_N1$  reactions proceed more rapidly in water, alcohols, and mixtures of water and alcohols than in aprotic solvents like DMF, DMSO, and HMPT (Sec. 1.22). They go faster yet in 2,2,2-trifluoroethanol ( $CF_3CH_2OH$ ). This compound is much more acidic than ethanol and it forms stronger hydrogen bonds to the leaving group. (It is more acidic because powerful electron withdrawal by the fluorine atoms stabilizes—through dispersal of *negative* charge—the conjugate base, the alkoxide ion. See Sec. 19.14.) Similarly, formic ( $HCOOH$ ) and trifluoroacetic acid ( $CF_3COOH$ ) are excellent ionizing solvents.

What we have seen in this section, then, is how the solvent promotes heterolysis by pulling apart the substrate molecule. In Sec. 6.31 we shall see that the solvent can sometimes do more than pull—it can *push*, too.

**Problem 6.11** Bulky carbocations are sometimes described as being “self-solvated.” How would you justify the use of this term? What fundamental similarity is being referred to?

**Problem 6.12** What we have discussed in this section is heterolysis of a *neutral* substrate. Using the same approach, account for the fact that increasing the solvent polarity causes a modest *decrease* in the rate of the following  $S_N1$  reaction



## 6.28 The $S_N2$ reaction: role of the solvent. Protic and aprotic solvents

Now let us turn to the  $S_N2$  reaction, and see how it is affected by the solvent. Let us consider what is by far the most common kind of system, one in which the

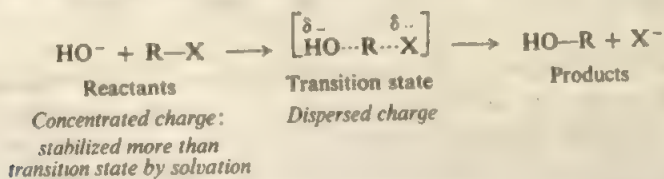


substrate is a neutral molecule and the nucleophile is an anion: the reaction of an alkyl halide with hydroxide ion, for example.

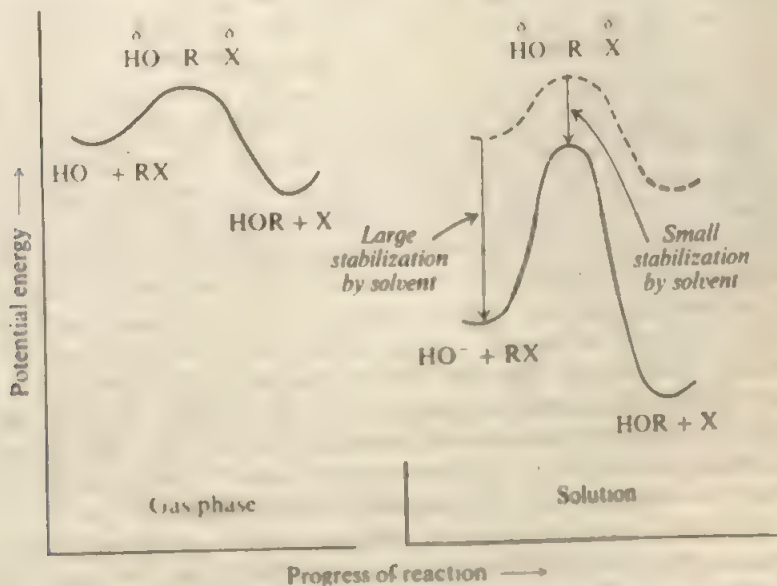


Let us begin as we did with  $S_N1$ , and see how the reaction as it is ordinarily carried out, in solution, compares with the reaction in the gas phase—that is, with no solvent at all. Once again, it is found, the solvent exerts a powerful effect—but *in the opposite direction*. Where the solvent speeds up an  $S_N1$  reaction enormously, it *slows down* the  $S_N2$  reaction: and by a factor as large as  $10^{20}$ !

As always when dealing with an effect on rate of reaction, we must compare the reactants with the transition state; this time, we must see how each is affected by the solvent. By definition, there are *two* reactants to consider in the rate-determining step of an  $S_N2$  reaction: here, the alkyl halide and the hydroxide ion. The alkyl halide, as we saw, has a dipole moment and forms weak dipole-dipole bonds to the solvent. The hydroxide ion carries a full negative charge, and forms very powerful ion-dipole bonds to the solvent. The transition state carries a full



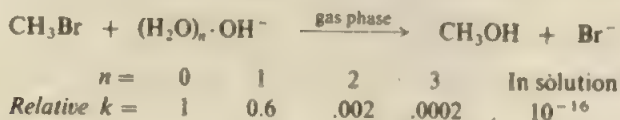
negative charge, too, but the charge here is divided between the attacking hydroxyl and the departing halide. Bonding of the solvent to this dispersed charge is much weaker than to the concentrated charge of the small hydroxide ion. The solvent thus stabilizes the reactants—specifically, the nucleophile—more than it does the transition state, raises the  $E_{act}$ , and slows down reaction (Fig. 6.12).



**Figure 6.12.** Effect of solvent on rate of attack by hydroxide ion on an alkyl halide. Nucleophile has more concentrated charge than transition state, and is more stabilized by ion-dipole bonds.

In the effect of the solvent we see one more piece of evidence that there are two mechanisms for nucleophilic substitution: one more difference between the two kinds of reaction which, in sheer magnitude, is the most striking of all. We have two reactions that in the gas phase differ in rate by a factor of astronomical size: one reaction immeasurably slow, the other extremely fast. Yet the solvent speeds one up and slows the other down to such an extent that, in dealing with ordinary solution chemistry, we must actually concern ourselves with competition between the two.

Solvation of the anionic nucleophile is thus the overriding factor here. By stabilizing it—relative to the transition state—the solvent *deactivates* the nucleophile. Deactivation of the nucleophile by the solvent, *molecule by molecule*, has actually been measured. The gas-phase reaction of methyl bromide with hydroxide ions hydrated to varying degrees has been studied, and the following results have been obtained:



Starting from the water-free system, we see that as the number of water molecules per hydroxide ion goes up, the rate goes steadily down; finally, in solution, the rate drops to a tiny fraction of its original value.

But the strength of solvation varies from anion to anion, and so does the deactivation it causes. Consider the reaction of methyl bromide with various halide ions.



In the gas phase, the order of reactivity of halide ions is  $\text{F}^- > \text{Cl}^- > \text{Br}^- > \text{I}^-$ , reflecting, probably, the strength of the C—X bond being formed. Yet in methanol solution the order of reactivity is *reversed*, and becomes  $\text{I}^- > \text{Br}^- > \text{Cl}^- > \text{F}^-$ .

The explanation is straightforward. The strength of solvation varies from anion to anion and, with it, the degree of deactivation. Fluoride is the smallest halide, with the most concentrated charge, as we saw (Sec. 1.22), it forms the strongest ion-dipole bonds—hydrogen bonds in methanol—and hence is the most deactivated. Iodide is the biggest of these halides, with a dispersed charge; it is solvated the least strongly and hence is deactivated the least. In methanol we are not comparing a naked fluoride ion with a naked iodide ion, we are comparing a strongly solvated fluoride ion with a weakly solvated iodide ion. Iodide reacts fastest, not—as was once thought—because of its greater intrinsic reactivity, but because it is solvated least. The solvent is an integral part of the structure of a dissolved molecule; fluoride ion in methanol is a *different reagent* from fluoride ion in the gas phase—or, for that matter, from fluoride ion in DMF. We observe two different orders of reactivity for the reaction with methyl bromide because we are dealing with two different sets of nucleophiles—unsolvated and solvated.

So far, we have been discussing the difference between an  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  reaction in the absence and in the presence of a solvent. Now, what is the effect of changing from one solvent to another?

Among similar solvents, in general, the greater the polarity, the slower the  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  reaction, stabilization by the more polar solvent is stronger for the anionic





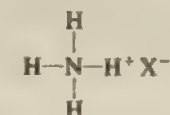
Take, for example, the reaction of an alkyl halide with sodium cyanide. Cyanide is a strongly basic, nucleophilic anion, and displaces halide to yield the



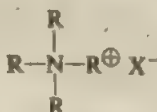
alkyl cyanide or *nitrile*. (As we shall see in Sec. 19.8, this is an important step in the synthesis of carboxylic acids.) The traditional way to carry out this reaction would be to use a solvent—protic or aprotic—that dissolves both reagents.

Consider, instead, that we have a solution of the alkyl halide in a non-polar organic solvent and a solution of sodium cyanide in water, and that we mix the two solutions together. The solvents are immiscible and form two layers—two *phases*. We can heat this mixture for a very long time, but nothing will happen. The substrate remains in the organic layer and the nucleophile remains in the water layer, and they cannot do what they must do if they are to react: they cannot *collide*.

Next, to this mixture we add a small amount of a *quaternary ammonium salt*: a compound in which the hydrogens of the ammonium ion have been replaced by



An ammonium salt

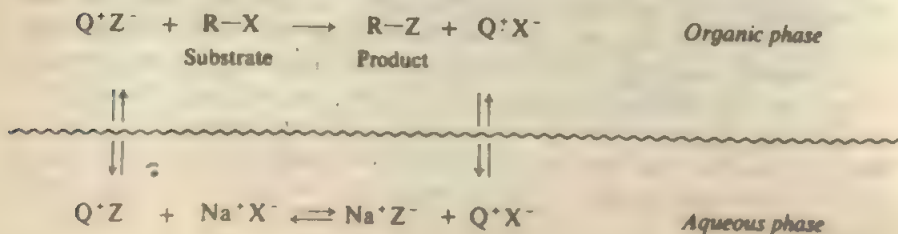


A quaternary ammonium salt

alkyl groups—methyl or, even better, *n*-butyl groups. For simplicity we shall refer to this cation as *quat* ( $\text{Q}^+$ ). For reasons that will become clear, the anion of this salt might well be bisulfate,  $\text{HSO}_4^-$ .

And now, a remarkable thing happens: in the presence of a catalytic amount of this quat salt, alkyl halide and cyanide—apparently still separated, each in its own phase—react rapidly and under mild conditions to give a high yield of the nitrile.

This is an example of what Charles M. Starks (Continental Oil Company), one of the pioneers in the field, has named **phase-transfer catalysis**. Now, just how does it work? Starks has summarized the catalytic cycle as in the following diagram:



Everything hinges on the fact that the alkyl groups of the quat ion make it lipophilic, and hence capable of entering the organic phase. But it cannot go alone; to balance its positive charge it must take an anion along. This anion will occasionally be its original counter-ion, bisulfate; this weakly basic anion has virtually no nucleophilic power, and does nothing.

But most of the anions in the aqueous phase are cyanide ions (or whatever nucleophile is being used), and they are the ones most likely to be conducted into the organic phase. We now have cyanide ions in a very unlikely medium: a non-polar solvent. Their concentration there may be very low, but they are virtually unsolvated and highly reactive. Substitution rapidly takes place. The nitrile is formed and a halide ion is liberated. This halide ion is conducted into the aqueous phase by the quat ion as it makes its return trip.

And so reaction continues. The quat ion shuttles back and forth between the two phases taking anions with it: sometimes the original counter-ion; sometimes one of the displaced halide ions; and sometimes the nucleophile, cyanide ion. And when this last happens, reaction can occur. Catalysis is thus due to the *transfer* of the nucleophile from one phase to another.

There is another factor involved here. In most solvents, as we have seen (Sec. 1.22), salts exist to some extent as *ion pairs*. An ion feels the opposite charge of its counter-ion, and is attracted by it. The less polar the solvent—that is, the weaker the solvation—the stronger the ion pairing: the one kind of bonding is replaced by another. This electrostatic attraction, too, tends to stabilize an anion; and in doing this it deactivates the anion as a nucleophile and as a base. And so, we might think, in going to a non-polar solvent we are simply exchanging one kind of deactivation for another.

But here we find another advantage of the quat ion as a phase-transfer catalyst. The alkyl groups that make it lipophilic are bulky groups, and they shield the anion from the positive charge on nitrogen. The anion is attracted much less strongly to this charge buried within the quat ion than to the concentrated charge on a metal cation. The ion pair is only a loose one, and the anion is comparatively free and very reactive.

The power of phase-transfer catalysis thus lies in the fact that it minimizes the two chief deactivating forces acting on the anion: solvation and ion pairing. There are many variations of the method. There need be no aqueous phase: cyanide can be transferred into the organic phase directly from solid sodium cyanide. There need be no added organic solvent: the substrate itself, if it is a liquid, can act as solvent. The phase-transfer agent need not be ionic, but can be a neutral molecule instead; the most important of these neutral catalysts, as we shall find, are the *crown ethers*—and with the study of them we enter the fascinating area of *host-guest* relationships (Sec. 12.9).

In its various forms phase-transfer catalysis has started a revolution in the technique by which organic reactions are carried out, in the laboratory and in industry: not just nucleophilic substitution, but reactions of all kinds—elimination, addition, oxidation, reduction. It has added a new dimension to what is a major aim of the organic chemist: *control* of the organic reaction.

**Problem 6.14** What is the advantage of using a quat bisulfate as catalyst instead of, say, a quat hydroxide?

6.30  $S_N2$  vs.  $S_N1$ 

We have so far described two mechanisms for nucleophilic substitution: the  $S_N2$ , characterized by

- (a) second-order kinetics,
- (b) complete stereochemical inversion,
- (c) absence of rearrangement, and
- (d) the reactivity sequence  $CH_3W > 1^\circ > 2^\circ > 3^\circ$ ;

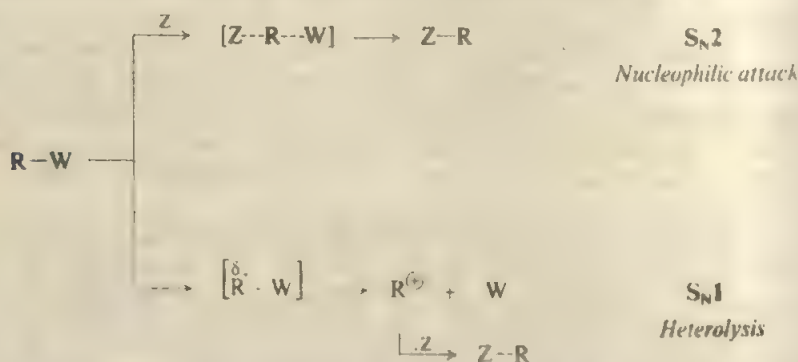
and the  $S_N1$ , characterized by

- (a) first-order kinetics,
- (b) racemization,
- (c) rearrangement, and
- (d) the reactivity sequence  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ > CH_3W$ .

We have seen that reactions proceeding by the two mechanisms can differ dramatically in the way they are affected by the solvent: by its presence or absence, and by its nature.

Except for a brief discussion in Sec. 6.14, we have discussed these mechanisms as separate topics. Now let us turn to the relationship between the two. For a given substrate under a given set of conditions, which mechanism will be followed? And what, if anything, can we do to throw reaction toward one mechanism or another?

To answer these questions, let us consider just what can happen to a molecule of substrate. It can either suffer back-side attack by the nucleophile, or undergo heterolysis to form a carbocation. Whichever of these two processes goes faster



determines which mechanism predominates. (Remember: heterolysis is the first- and rate-determining step of the  $S_N1$  mechanism.) Once again, we find, we must turn to the matter of *relative rates of competing reactions*.

Let us examine each of the components of the reaction system—substrate, nucleophile, and solvent—and see what effect it exerts on this competition between nucleophilic attack and heterolysis.

Let us begin with the **substrate**, which consists of two parts, the alkyl group and the leaving group. The *nature of the leaving group* is, of course, vital to the very occurrence of substitution. Whichever process is taking place, nucleophilic attack or heterolysis, the bond to the leaving group is being broken, the easier it is to break this bond—that is, the better the leaving group—the faster the reaction occurs. A better leaving group thus speeds up reaction by both mechanisms, and, as it happens, it speeds up both to about the same degree. As a result, the nature of the leaving group has little effect on which mechanism,  $S_N2$  or  $S_N1$ , is predominant.



In contrast, the *nature of the alkyl group, R, of the substrate* exerts a profound effect on which mechanism is to be followed. In R, two structural factors are at work: *steric hindrance*, which largely determines ease of back-side attack, and *ability to accommodate a positive charge*, which largely determines ease of heterolysis. As we proceed along the simple alkyl series  $\text{CH}_3, 1^\circ, 2^\circ, 3^\circ$ , the group R becomes, by definition, more branched. There is a regular increase in the number of substituents on carbon: bulky, electron-releasing substituents. Steric hindrance increases; back-side attack becomes more difficult and hence slower. At the same time, ability to accommodate a positive charge increases; heterolysis becomes easier and hence faster.



The result is the pattern we encountered earlier: for methyl and primary substrates, a predisposition toward  $S_N2$ ; for tertiary substrates, a predisposition toward  $S_N1$ . For secondary substrates there is a tendency toward intermediate behavior: a mixture of the two mechanisms or, as we shall see in the following section, perhaps a mechanism with characteristics of both  $S_N2$  and  $S_N1$ .

Despite this predisposition of a particular substrate toward a particular mechanism, we can still control the course of reaction to a considerable degree by our choice of experimental conditions. To see how this can be done, we must examine the other components of the reaction system.

Next, then, let us turn to the **nucleophile**. The key difference between the  $S_N2$  and  $S_N1$  mechanisms is the matter of *when* the nucleophile participates: *in* the rate-determining step of  $S_N2$ , but *after* the rate-determining step of  $S_N1$ . This difference in timing leads directly to two factors that help determine the mechanism to be followed: the *concentration of the nucleophile*, and the *nature of the nucleophile*.

The rate of  $S_N2$  depends upon the concentration of the nucleophile,  $[:Z]$ ; reaction, as we have seen (Sec. 6.15), is second-order.

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{RW}][:Z] \quad S_N2$$

The rate of  $S_N1$  is independent of  $[:Z]$ ; reaction (Sec. 6.19) is first-order.

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{RW}] \quad S_N1$$

An increase in  $[:Z]$  speeds up the second-order reaction but has no effect on the first-order reaction; the fraction of reaction by  $S_N2$  increases. A decrease in  $[:Z]$  slows down the second-order reaction but has no effect on the first-order reaction; the fraction of reaction by  $S_N2$  decreases. The net result is that, other things being equal, a *high concentration of nucleophile favors the  $S_N2$  reaction*, and a *low concentration favors the  $S_N1$  reaction*.

**Problem 6.15** In 80% ethanol at  $55^\circ$ , isopropyl bromide reacts with hydroxide ion according to the following kinetic equation, where the rate is expressed as moles per liter per second:

$$\text{rate} = 4.7 \times 10^{-5}[\text{RX}][\text{OH}^-] + 0.24 \times 10^{-5}[\text{RX}]$$

What percentage of the isopropyl bromide reacts by the  $S_N2$  mechanism when  $[\text{OH}^-]$  is: (a) 0.001 molar, (b) 0.01 molar, (c) 0.1 molar, (d) 1.0 molar, (e) 5.0 molar?

In the same way, the rate of  $S_N2$  depends upon the nature of the nucleophile: a stronger nucleophile attacks the substrate faster. The rate of  $S_N1$  is independent of the nature of the nucleophile—stronger or weaker, the nucleophile waits until the carbocation is formed. The net result is that, other things being equal, a *strong nucleophile favors the  $S_N2$  reaction*, and a *weak nucleophile favors the  $S_N1$  reaction*.

We have already seen an illustration of this effect in Sec. 6.26. Neopentyl bromide reacts with the strong nucleophile, ethoxide, to give the unrearranged neopentyl ethyl ether: clearly an  $S_N2$  reaction. It reacts with the weak nucleophile, ethanol, to give the rearranged *tert*-pentyl ethyl ether: clearly an  $S_N1$  reaction.

Finally, let us turn to the third component of the reaction system, the **solvent**. To predict the solvent effect on reaction by either mechanism, as we know, we must compare the reactants with the transition state for the particular kind of system involved. Let us consider the commonest type of nucleophilic substitution: attack by an anionic nucleophile on a neutral substrate. We examined this system in detail in Secs. 6.27–6.29, and saw that solvent effects are sharply different for reactions by the two mechanisms. Reaction by  $S_N1$  is favored by solvents of high ionizing power, that is, by polar, protic solvents. Reaction by  $S_N2$  is favored by solvents that stabilize (and thus deactivate) the anionic nucleophile *least*: aprotic solvents, or solvents of low polarity as with phase-transfer catalysis. It is not accidental that, to illustrate the effect of structure on reactivity, we chose for  $S_N1$  a reaction carried out in the polar, strongly hydrogen-bonding (and weakly nucleophilic) solvent  $CF_3CH_2OH$ , and for  $S_N2$  a reaction carried out in the aprotic solvent DMSO.

(In the effect of the solvent we are really seeing a factor already discussed: the nature of the nucleophile. In an aprotic solvent or under phase-transfer conditions, we are providing a more powerful nucleophile, and this of course favors  $S_N2$ .)

Of all the components of the reaction system, it is the solvent that offers the most scope for control of the reaction. We are restricted in our selection of substrate and nucleophile by our desire to make a particular product. But in choosing the environment in which to carry out the reaction, we have open to us a rapidly widening range of possibilities: from strongly ionizing, weakly nucleophilic solvents at one end to aprotic solvents or phase-transfer at the other.

What we have said here about control of the medium in which nucleophilic substitution takes place is only the beginning. We shall see that reactions of many kinds can be carried out between reagents held in the coordination sphere of transition metals (Secs. 8.5–8.7, for example) or residing as *guests* within cavities of large, tailor-made *host* molecules (Sec. 12.9). Control of the reaction medium can be used to bring about new reactions or to speed up old ones, and to achieve a degree of selectivity—in stereochemistry, and in orientation and relative reactivity—never before possible. And yet *this*, too, is only a beginning.

In this section we have discussed competition between reactions occurring by the two mechanisms,  $S_N2$  and  $S_N1$ . Now let us continue with the matter of competition, but on a deeper level. Let us discuss competition, not between two neatly separated mechanisms, but between the factors that actually determine what happens: nucleophilic attack and dispersal of charge.

### 6.31 Solvolysis. Nucleophilic assistance by the solvent

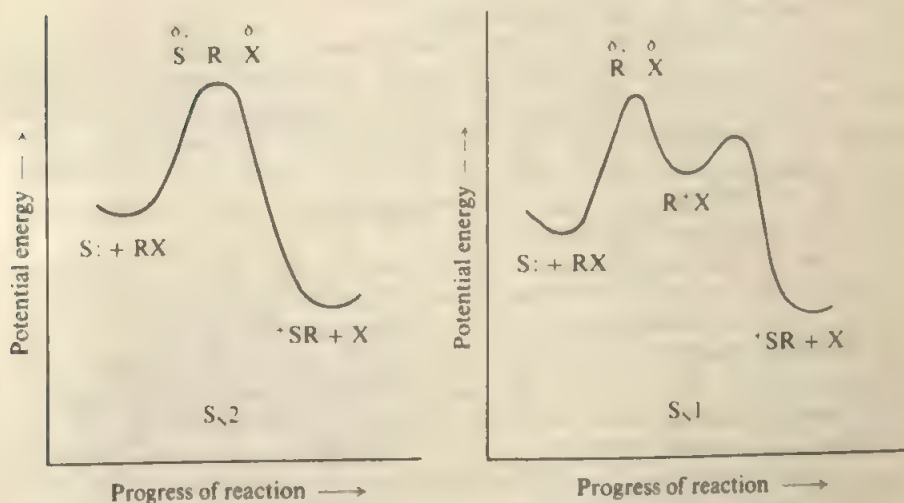
We said earlier (Sec. 6.11) that, in its various aspects, nucleophilic aliphatic substitution is the most widely studied—and most strongly disputed—area of organic chemistry. The particular aspect about which most of the study—and most

of the dispute—centers is the special case in which the nucleophile is the solvent: *solvolysis*.



There is no added strong nucleophile and so, for many substrates, solvolysis falls into the category we have called  $S_N1$ ; that is, reaction proceeds by two—or more—steps, with the intermediate formation of an organic cation. It is this intermediate that lies at the center of the problem: its nature, how it is formed, and how it reacts. In studying solvolysis we are studying all  $S_N1$  reactions and, in many ways, all reactions involving intermediate carbocations.

Perhaps the biggest question to be answered is: just what is the role played by the solvent? Does it, at one extreme, simply cluster about the carbocation and the anion—and the transition state leading to their formation—and thus aid in heterolysis through formation of ion-dipole bonds? Or, at the other extreme, does a single solvent molecule act as a nucleophile and help push the leaving group out of the molecule? (See Fig. 6.13.)



**Figure 6.13.** Potential energy changes during progress of reaction: solvolysis by classical  $S_N2$  and  $S_N1$  mechanisms.  $S_N2$  involves a single step, with nucleophilic attack on substrate by solvent to yield product directly.  $S_N1$  involves two (or more) steps, with no nucleophilic attack by solvent on substrate; intermediate is a carbocation.

The two extremes that we have just described correspond, of course, to our descriptions of the mechanisms  $S_N2$  and  $S_N1$ . Can we not, then, simply resolve the problem by study of the kinetics? Does the rate depend upon the concentration of the nucleophile, or does it not? Here we encounter the special problem posed by solvolysis. The nucleophile is the solvent, and the solvent's concentration *does not change* during the course of reaction. Regardless of the role played by the solvent in the rate-determining step, we *observe* first-order kinetics; the rate



depends only upon the concentration of the substrate. Reaction *could* be full-

$$\text{rate} = k_{\text{obs}}[\text{RX}]$$

fledged  $S_N1$ . But, for all the kinetics tells us, it could equally well be full-fledged  $S_N2$ ; the kinetics could be *pseudo* first-order, and the observed rate constant,  $k_{\text{obs}}$ , could actually be a true rate constant multiplied by the concentration of the solvent, that is,  $k_{\text{obs}} = k[\text{S}]$ .

We cannot tell, then, whether or not the rate depends upon the concentration of the nucleophile. This fact is undoubtedly the origin of much of the interest in solvolysis: the sheer difficulty of the problem is a challenge to the organic chemist. But that is not all. Compared with anions like hydroxide, alkoxides, or cyanide, solvents are mild nucleophiles. Against the mildness of their action other forces can compete, and this competition can be observed and measured: the force exerted by a migrating group in rearrangement, for example, or by the just-departed leaving group. Mild nucleophiles permit the formation of carbocations, and the study of these particles is always fascinating.

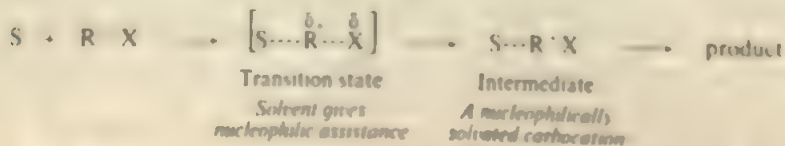
It seems clear that the solvent can give *nucleophilic assistance* to solvolysis. How strong this assistance is depends upon:

- (a) the nucleophilic power of the solvent;
- (b) how badly assistance is needed; and
- (c) how accessible, sterically, carbon is to the assisting molecule.

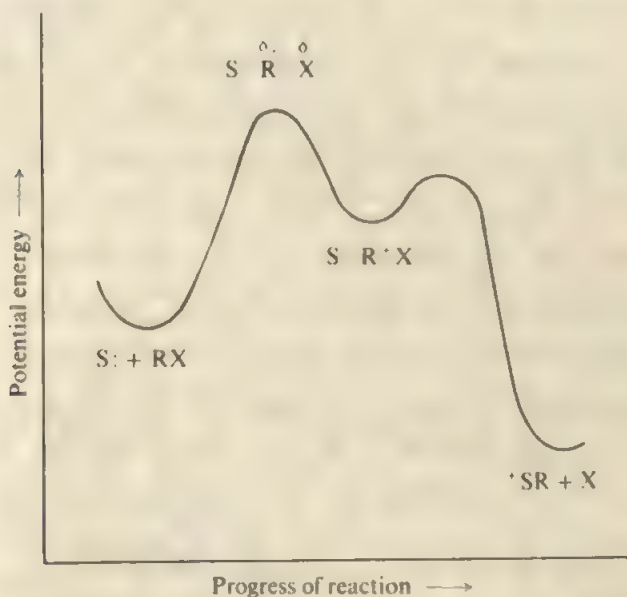
Water, methanol, and ethanol, for example, are strongly nucleophilic for solvents, that is; acetic acid ( $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$ ) is weaker, and formic acid ( $\text{HCOOH}$ ) is weaker yet. Trifluoroacetic acid ( $\text{CF}_3\text{COOH}$ ), trifluoroethyl alcohol ( $\text{CF}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ), and hexafluoroisopropyl alcohol ( $\text{CF}_3\text{CHOHCF}_3$ ) are very weak; the highly electronegative fluorine atoms pull electrons strongly from oxygen, and thus lower its basicity and nucleophilic power.

Reactivity of tertiary substrates is found to depend little upon the nucleophilic power of the solvent and chiefly upon its ionizing power (Sec. 6.27). Formation of tertiary cations is relatively easy and needs little nucleophilic assistance; in any case, crowding would discourage such assistance. Reactivity of secondary substrates is found to depend upon both nucleophilic power and ionizing power of the solvent. Formation of secondary cations is more difficult, and needs much nucleophilic assistance. With most primary substrates, reaction is probably straightforward  $S_N2$ : a single step with solvent acting as nucleophile.

Let us concentrate, then, on secondary alkyl substrates. Just what is meant by the term *nucleophilic assistance*? First of all, it differs from the  $S_N2$  kind of attack in this way: it leads to the formation, not of the product, but of an intermediate cation. Next, it differs from general "solvation" in this way: a single solvent molecule is involved, not a cluster. The solvent molecule attacks the substrate at the back side and, acting as a nucleophile, helps to push the leaving group out the front side. There is formed a carbocation—or, rather, something with a great deal of carbocation character. Clinging to its back side is the solvent molecule and to



the front side, the leaving group. Each may be bonded to carbon through overlap of a lobe of a  $p$  orbital on carbon—the empty  $p$  orbital of the classical carbocation. The geometry is similar to that of the  $S_N2$  transition state, but this is an *intermediate*, and corresponds to an energy minimum in a progress-of-reaction plot. (Compare Fig. 6.14 with Fig. 6.13.) If the leaving group is an anion, and if the solvent is of



**Figure 6.14.** Potential energy changes during progress of reaction: solvolysis with nucleophilic assistance by solvent. Reaction involves two (or more) steps with nucleophilic attack on substrate by solvent; intermediate is a nucleophilically solvated carbocation.

only moderate polarity, bonding between cation and anion may be chiefly electrostatic and one speaks of an *ion pair*.

This cationic intermediate—this nucleophilically solvated carbocation—now reacts. It has open to it the wide variety of reactions that, as we shall find, carbocations may undergo. In the reaction that we are concerned with here, it combines with the solvent molecule—with formation of a full-fledged bond—to yield product. If, at the time of reaction the leaving group is still bonded to the front side—or is still lurking there—reaction with solvent occurs at the back side. If, on the other hand, the cation has lasted long enough for the leaving group to be exchanged for a second solvent molecule—thus forming a symmetrical intermediate—reaction is equally likely at front or back. Solvolysis can occur with complete inversion or with inversion plus varying amounts of racemization.

Elegant work by Saul Winstein (University of California, Los Angeles) revealed the detailed behavior of ion pairs that are intermediates in certain cases of solvolysis—*tight* (or *intimate*) ion pairs, the cation of which is free enough to pivot about and lose configuration, and yet is held tightly enough that recombination to the covalently bonded compound is the favored process—*loose* (or *solvent-separated*) ion pairs, the cation of which is susceptible to attack by outside nucleophiles. The exact role played by ion pairs in nucleophilic substitution is the subject of a great deal of research, and is perhaps more hotly debated than the role of the solvent, but this is a big area of complicated chemistry, and we cannot go into it here.

It has been suggested that there is a continuous spectrum of mechanisms for solvolysis ranging from the classical  $S_N1$  reaction at the one end to the single-step  $S_N2$  reaction at the other. On progress-of-reaction plots, the energy minimum for the carbocation becomes shallower and shallower as we move away from the  $S_N1$  end; at the  $S_N2$  end the minimum has disappeared, and we have a single maximum.

In between the ends of the spectrum, there lie mechanisms involving varying degrees of nucleophilic assistance by the solvent. Paul Schleyer (p. 237), whose picture of nucleophilic assistance is essentially the one we have described, has called these mechanisms " $S_N2$  (intermediate)," that is,  $S_N2$  reactions involving formation of an intermediate. Such a mechanism has characteristics of both classical mechanisms, the single-step  $S_N2$  and the  $S_N1$ . Schleyer's terminology emphasizes the  $S_N2$  aspect: that nucleophilic attack provides part of the driving force for the reaction. In this book, however, we shall treat the mechanism as a modification of  $S_N1$ : there is a cationic intermediate formed—one that, presumably, is capable of all that a carbocation is capable—and dispersal of the developing positive charge provides much of the driving force for reaction. We shall refer to such a reaction as one following the  $S_N1$  mechanism with nucleophilic assistance from the solvent, and shall call the intermediate a *nucleophilically solvated carbocation* or, sometimes, an *encumbered carbocation*. The exact terminology we use is not important, so long as we understand each other. What is important is that we see here the operation of the same basic factors first recognized by Hughes and Ingold fifty years ago: nucleophilic attack, with its susceptibility to steric hindrance; and dispersal of charge, by substituents and by the solvent. What is new is a growing understanding of how important *both* these factors can be.

We must keep our sense of perspective here. We are discussing the special case of solvolysis, and most of what we say has to do only with secondary alkyl substrates. The differences in stability between the various classes of carbocations are great enough that, by and large, reactions fall into three separate groups: (a) for primary substrates, single-step  $S_N2$ ; (b) for tertiary substrates,  $S_N1$  with an intermediate that approximates our idea of a simple (solvated) carbocation; (c) for secondary substrates, a two-step reaction that is  $S_N1$ -like to the extent that there is a cationic intermediate, but one formed with nucleophilic assistance and still encumbered with nucleophile (solvent) and leaving group. Nucleophilic assistance is an important factor in determining the relative reactivities among secondary substrates, and their reactivities in various solvents—but so is the ionizing power of the solvent. And nucleophilic assistance is not as powerful a factor as the dispersal of charge that makes tertiary substrates react—without any nucleophilic assistance—more rapidly than secondary substrates.

### 6.32 Reaction of alcohols with hydrogen halides

One method of making alkyl halides, we saw (Sec. 6.9), is by the reaction of alcohols with hydrogen halides. Let us look more closely at this reaction, not just as an important synthetic method, but as an example of nucleophilic substitution.



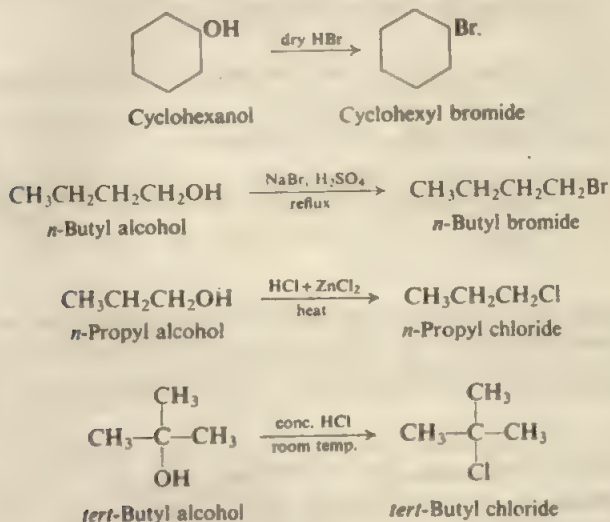
In doing this, we shall see something completely new to us: how we can change a very poor leaving group into a very good leaving group *instantaneously*, and with



no more effort than it takes to pour a solution from a bottle into a flask. What we shall see is the most important and simplest kind of catalytic effect known to the organic chemist: an effect that plays a key role in the chemistry of compounds of all kinds, in the test tube and in the living organism.

Alcohols react readily with hydrogen halides to yield alkyl halides and water. The reaction is carried out either by passing the dry halogen halide gas into the alcohol, or by heating the alcohol with the concentrated aqueous acid. Sometimes hydrogen bromide is generated in the presence of the alcohol by reaction between sulfuric acid and sodium bromide.

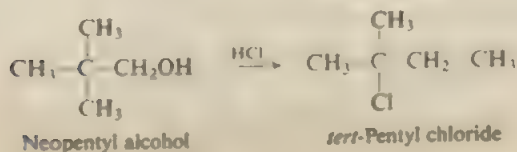
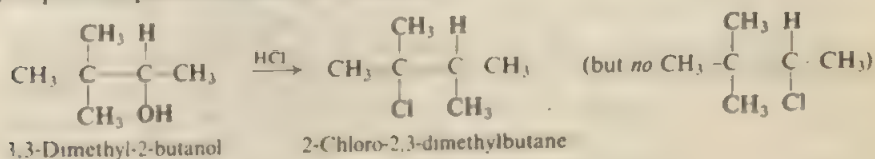
The least reactive of the hydrogen halides, HCl, generally requires the presence of zinc chloride for reaction with primary and secondary alcohols; on the other hand, the very reactive *tert*-butyl alcohol is converted to the chloride by simply being shaken with concentrated hydrochloric acid at room temperature. For example:



Let us list some of the facts that are known about the reaction between alcohols and hydrogen halides.

(a) **The reaction is catalyzed by acids.** Even though the aqueous hydrogen halides are themselves strong acids, the presence of additional sulfuric acid speeds up the formation of alkyl halides.

(b) **Rearrangement of the alkyl group occurs, except with most primary alcohols.** The alkyl group in the halide does not always have the same structure as the alkyl group in the parent alcohol. For example:



We see that the halogen does not always become attached to the carbon that originally held the hydroxyl (the first example); even the carbon skeleton may be different from that of the starting material (the second example).

On the other hand, as shown above for *n*-propyl and *n*-butyl alcohols, most primary alcohols give high yields of primary halides *without* rearrangement.

(c) **The order of reactivity of alcohols toward HX is  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ < \text{CH}_3$ .** Reactivity decreases through most of the series (and this order is the basis of the Lucas test, Sec. 11.14), passes through a *minimum* at  $1^\circ$ , and rises again at  $\text{CH}_3$ .

What do the facts that we have just listed suggest to us about the mechanism of reaction between alcohols and hydrogen halides?

*Catalysis by acid* suggests that the protonated alcohol  $\text{ROH}_2^+$  is involved. The occurrence of *rearrangement* suggests that carbocations are intermediates—although *not* with primary alcohols. The idea of carbocations is strongly supported by the *order of reactivity* of alcohols, which parallels the stability of carbocations *except* for methyl.

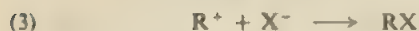
On the basis of this evidence, we formulate the following mechanism. The



**$\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$ :**



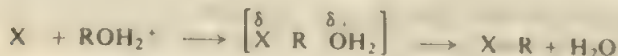
*all except methanol and  
most  $1^\circ$  alcohols*



alcohol accepts (step 1) the hydrogen ion to form the protonated alcohol, which dissociates (step 2) into water and a carbocation; the carbocation then combines (step 3) with a halide ion (not necessarily the one from step 1) to form the alkyl halide.

Looking at the mechanism we have written, we recognize the reaction for what it is: *nucleophilic substitution*, with the protonated alcohol as substrate and halide ion as the nucleophile. Once the reaction type is recognized, the other pieces of evidence fall into place.

The particular set of equations written above is, of course, the  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  mechanism for substitution. Primary alcohols do not undergo rearrangement simply because they do not react by this mechanism. Instead, they react by the alternative  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  mechanism:



**$\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$ :**

*most  $1^\circ$  alcohols  
and methanol*

What we see here is another example of that characteristic of nucleophilic substitution: a shift in the molecularity of reaction, in this particular case occurring between 2 and 1. This shift is confirmed by the fact that reactivity passes through a minimum at  $1^\circ$  and rises again at methyl.

Let us review what is probably happening here, beginning at the methyl end of the series. The methyl substrate is least capable of heterolysis and most open to nucleophilic attack; it reacts by a full-fledged  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  reaction. So do primary substrates but, because of greater steric hindrance, they react less rapidly than the methyl. Secondary substrates give still more steric hindrance, but are more capable of forming carbocations. For them heterolysis is faster than nucleophilic attack by a

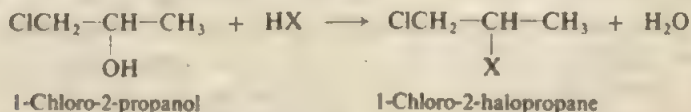
halide ion, and the mechanism changes here: to  $S_N1$  with, probably, nucleophilic assistance by the solvent. With the change in mechanism, the rate begins to rise. Tertiary substrates, too, react by an  $S_N1$  mechanism, this time of the classical kind. They are too hindered to permit much nucleophilic assistance, and have little need of it anyway since they form the most stable carbocations. Despite this lack of nucleophilic assistance, they react faster than secondary substrates because of the greater dispersal of charge in the incipient carbocations.

So far, we have discussed this reaction in terms of the very useful classification of substrates as  $1^\circ$ ,  $2^\circ$ , or  $3^\circ$ . But we must always keep in mind that it is not this classification—as such—that is important. It is the factors actually at work: in this reaction, *steric hindrance* to nucleophilic attack, and *dispersal of charge* in the incipient carbocation. These factors give rise—among other things—to the relationship between  $1^\circ$ ,  $2^\circ$ ,  $3^\circ$  and the  $S_N2$ – $S_N1$  competition. But they do more than that. They can make a substrate of one class act like a substrate of another class; and yet such behavior is understandable if we simply examine the structures involved. Let us look at two such examples.

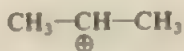
As shown above, neopentyl alcohol reacts with almost complete rearrangement, showing that, although primary, it follows the carbocation mechanism. This is contrary to our generalization, but readily accounted for. Although neopentyl is a primary group, it is a very bulky one and, as we have seen (Sec. 6.18), neopentyl substrates undergo  $S_N2$  reactions very slowly. Formation of the neopentyl cation here is slow, too, but is nevertheless much faster than the alternative bimolecular reaction.

It may be that rearrangement is *concerted with loss of*  $-\text{OH}_2^+$ , so that the very stable *tert*-pentyl cation is the product of the initial heterolysis. We have mentioned this possibility before, and shall return to it in Sec. 16.22. The point is the same, however: the bimolecular reaction is slowed down by steric hindrance to such an extent that a unimolecular reaction can successfully compete.

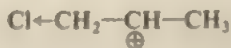
Our second example involves 1-chloro-2-propanol. Although technically a secondary alcohol, it reacts with hydrogen halides “abnormally” slowly, and at about the rate of a primary alcohol. This time we are dealing, not with a steric



effect, but with a polar effect. The rate of an  $S_N1$  reaction, we have seen (Sec. 6.25), depends upon the stability of the carbocation being formed. Let us compare, then, the 1-chloro-2-propyl cation with a simple secondary cation, the isopropyl cation, say. Electronegative chlorine has an electron-withdrawing inductive effect. As we have seen (Sec. 6.24), this intensifies the positive charge on the electron-deficient



Isopropyl cation



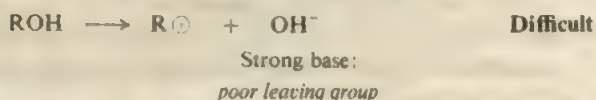
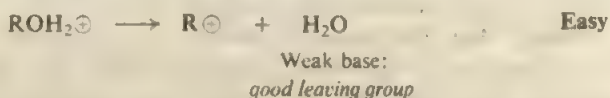
1-Chloro-2-propyl cation  
Chlorine withdraws electrons.  
intensifies charge,  
destabilizes cation

carbon and makes the carbocation less stable. This same electron-withdrawal



destabilizes the incipient cation in the transition state, raises  $E_{act}$ , and slows down the reaction.

Now let us turn to what is to us the most important aspect of the reaction between alcohol and hydrogen halides: the *acid catalysis*. What does acid do? In the first step, it converts the alcohol into the protonated alcohol, which is the substrate actually undergoing substitution. In the absence of acid, substitution—by either mechanism—would require loss of the hydroxide ion: strongly basic, and an extremely poor leaving group. Substitution with the protonated alcohol as



substrate, on the other hand, involves loss of water: weakly basic, and a very good leaving group. Protonation of the alcohol involves a simple acid-base equilibrium, and takes place instantaneously on mixing of the reagents. Yet it changes a very poor leaving group to a very good one and permits reaction to occur. The evidence indicates that separation of a hydroxide ion from an alcohol almost never occurs; reactions involving cleavage of the C—O bond of an alcohol seem in nearly every case to require an acidic catalyst, the purpose of which, as here, is to form the protonated alcohol.

Thus alcohols, like alkyl halides, undergo nucleophilic substitution by both  $S_N2$  and  $S_N1$  mechanisms, but alcohols lean more toward the unimolecular mechanism. We can see, in a general way, why this is so. To undergo substitution an alcohol must be protonated, and this requires an acidic medium. An  $S_N2$  reaction, we have seen, is favored by the use of a strong nucleophile, something that is quite feasible in reactions of alkyl halides. But we cannot have a strong nucleophile—a strong *base*—present in the acidic medium required for protonation of an alcohol; any base much stronger than the alcohol itself would become protonated at the expense of the alcohol. Restricted, then, to reaction with weakly basic, weakly nucleophilic reagents, alcohols react chiefly by the carbocation mechanism.

In the opening paragraph of this section it was, of course, protonation that was referred to as the most important and simplest catalytic effect in organic chemistry. In the presence of acid many kinds of atoms found in organic compounds are protonated to a significant degree: oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, often even carbon. And, as we shall see in nearly every chapter of this book, this protonation exerts powerful effects on reactions of many kinds involving nearly every class of compound.

**Problem 6.16** Because of the great tendency of the neopentyl cation to rearrange, neopentyl chloride cannot be prepared from the alcohol. How might neopentyl chloride be prepared?

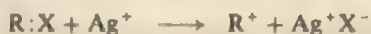
**Problem 6.17** (a) Write the steps in the reaction of an alcohol with HCl by the  $S_N1$  mechanism. (b) What is the rate-determining step? (c) The rate of reaction depends upon the concentration of what substance? (d) The concentration of this substance depends in turn upon the concentrations of what other compounds? (e) Will the rate depend *only* on  $[\text{ROH}]$ ? Does an  $S_N1$  reaction always follow first-order kinetics?

### 6.33 Analysis of alkyl halides

Simple alkyl halides respond to the common characterization tests in the same manner as alkanes: they are insoluble in cold concentrated sulfuric acid; they are inert to bromine in carbon tetrachloride, to aqueous permanganate, and to chromic anhydride. They are readily distinguished from alkanes, however, by qualitative analysis (Sec. 2.26), which shows the presence of halogen.

In many cases, the presence of halogen can be detected without a sodium fusion or Schöniger oxidation. An unknown is warmed for a few minutes with alcoholic silver nitrate (the alcohol dissolves both the ionic reagent and the organic compound); halogen is indicated by formation of a precipitate that is insoluble in dilute nitric acid.

As in almost all reactions of organic halides, reactivity toward alcoholic silver nitrate follows the sequence  $RI > RBr > RCl$ . For a given halogen atom, reactivity decreases in the order  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ$ , the sequence typical of carbocation formation; as we shall see, allylic halides (Sec. 9.13) and benzylic halides (Sec. 16.18) are highly reactive. Other evidence (stereochemistry, rearrangements) suggests that this reaction is of the  $S_N1$  type. Silver ion is believed to accelerate reaction by *pulling* halide away from the alkyl group.



(Vinyl and aryl halides do not react, Secs. 9.18 and 25.5.)

As mentioned earlier (Sec. 6.3), substituted alkyl halides also undergo the reactions characteristic of their other functional groups.

(Analysis of alkyl halides by spectroscopy will be discussed in Chap. 17.)

## PROBLEMS

### 1. Give the structural formula of:

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| (a) 3-methyl-2-pentanol                         | (e) potassium ethoxide               |
| (b) 2-bromo-1-propanol                          | (f) <i>cis</i> -4-methylcyclohexanol |
| (c) 1,2,3-propanetriol                          | (g) 2,2,2-trifluoroethanol           |
| (d) <i>trans</i> -1-chloro-2-methylcyclopentane | (h) <i>tert</i> -butyl tosylate      |

### 2. Draw out the formula and give the IUPAC name of:

- |                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) $FCH_2CH_2OH$        | (d) $CH_3CHClCHOHCH_3$      |
| (b) $(CH_3)_3COH$        | (e) $HOCH_2CH_2CH_2OH$      |
| (c) $CH_3CHOHCH(CH_3)_2$ | (f) $(CH_3)_2CBrCH_2CH_2OH$ |

### 3. Write equations for the preparation of *n*-propyl iodide from.

- |                              |                              |                               |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (a) <i>n</i> -propyl alcohol | (b) <i>n</i> -propyl bromide | (c) <i>n</i> -propyl tosylate |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|

4. Give the structures and names of the chief organic products expected from the reaction (if any) of *n*-butyl bromide with:

- |                                       |                             |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) $NaOH(aq)$                        | (f) product (e) + $D_2O$    |
| (b) cold conc. $H_2SO_4$              | (g) dilute neutral $KMnO_4$ |
| (c) $Zn, H^+$                         | (h) $NaI$ in acetone        |
| (d) $Li$ , then $CuI$ , ethyl bromide | (i) $Br_2/CCl_4$            |
| (e) $Mg$ , ether                      | (j) tosyl chloride          |

5. Referring when necessary to the list on page 206, give structures of the chief organic products expected from the reaction of *n*-butyl bromide with:

- |                                       |                               |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (a) $\text{NH}_3$                     | (d) $\text{NaOC}_2\text{H}_5$ |
| (b) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2$ | (e) $\text{CH}_3\text{COOAg}$ |
| (c) $\text{NaCN}$                     | (f) $\text{NaSCH}_3$          |

6. Give the reagents, inorganic or organic, needed to convert *n*-butyl bromide into:

- n*-butyl iodide
- n*-butyl chloride
- n*-butyl methyl ether ( $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_3$ )
- n*-butyl alcohol
- pentanenitrile ( $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$ )
- n*-butylamine ( $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$ )
- n*-butylmagnesium bromide
- lithium di-*n*-butylcopper

7. Arrange the compounds of each set in order of reactivity toward  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  displacement:

- 2-bromo-2-methylbutane, 1-bromopentane, 2-bromopentane
- 1-bromo-3-methylbutane, 2-bromo-2-methylbutane, 2-bromo-3-methylbutane
- 1-bromobutane, 1-bromo-2,2-dimethylpropane, 1-bromo-2-methylbutane, 1-bromo-3-methylbutane
- bromocyclohexane, 1-bromo-1-methylcyclohexane, (bromomethyl)cyclohexane

8. Arrange the compounds of each set in order of reactivity toward  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  displacement:

- the compounds of Problem 7(a)
- the compounds of Problem 7(b)
- the compounds of Problem 7(d)

9. Consider, as an example, the reaction between an alkyl halide and  $\text{NaOH}$  in a mixture of water and ethanol. In a table, with one column for  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  and another for  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$ , compare the two mechanisms with regard to:

- stereochemistry
- kinetic order
- occurrence of rearrangements
- relative rates for  $\text{CH}_3\text{X}$ ,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{X}$ ,  $\text{iso-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{X}$ ,  $\text{tert-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{X}$
- relative rates for  $\text{RCl}$ ,  $\text{RBr}$ , and  $\text{RI}$
- effect on rate of a rise in temperature
- effect on rate of doubling  $[\text{RX}]$
- effect on rate of doubling  $[\text{OH}^-]$
- effect on rate of increasing the water content of the solvent
- effect on rate of increasing the alcohol content of the solvent

10. Arrange the isomeric pentyl alcohols of Problem 6.2(a), p. 198, in order of reactivity toward aqueous  $\text{HBr}$ . (Note: It may be necessary to list them in groups of about the same reactivity.)

11. Account for the fact that either 2-pentanol or 3-pentanol reacts with  $\text{HCl}$  to give both 2-chloropentane and 3-chloropentane.

12. Starting from (*R*)-*sec*-butyl alcohol, and using any optically inactive reagents, show all steps in the synthesis of:

- (*R*)-*sec*-butyl ethyl ether ( $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5$ )
- (*S*)-*sec*-butyl ethyl ether

13. Optically active *sec*-butyl alcohol retains its activity indefinitely in contact with aqueous base, but is rapidly converted into optically inactive (racemic) *sec*-butyl alcohol by dilute sulfuric acid. How do you account for these facts? Suggest a detailed mechanism or mechanisms for the racemization by dilute acid.



### About Synthesis

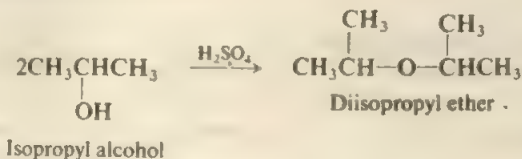
Each synthesis should be the one that gives a reasonably pure product in reasonably good yield.

It is not necessary to complete and balance each equation. Simply draw the structure of the organic compounds, and write on the arrow the necessary reagents and any critical conditions. For example:



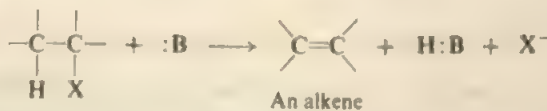
At this stage you may be asked to make a particular compound that can readily be bought, or that might better be made by another method: the synthesis of propane in Problem 17, for example. But if you can work out a way to make propane from *n*-propyl alcohol, then, when the need arises, you will also know how to make a complicated alkane from a complicated alcohol, and, in fact, how to replace an -OH group by -H in just about any compound you encounter. Furthermore, you will have gained practice in putting together what you have learned about several different kinds of compounds.

14. When isopropyl alcohol is heated in the presence of  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , there can be obtained diisopropyl ether (i-Pr<sub>2</sub>O).

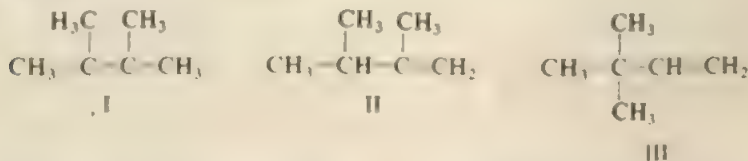


- (a) To what type of reaction does this belong?  
 (b) Show all steps in a likely mechanism or mechanisms.

15. The most important way to make *alkenes* (Chap. 7) is through *base-promoted 1,2-elimination*:



(a) When 3-bromo-2,2-dimethylbutane is heated with a dilute solution of  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{ONa}$  in  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$ , or with  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$  alone, reaction follows first-order kinetics; along with substitution, there also occurs elimination, to yield alkenes I and II. What does the formation of these particular alkenes suggest to you? Propose a likely mechanism for the reaction by which they are formed.



(b) When the same halide is allowed to react with a concentrated solution of  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{ONa}$  in  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$ , reaction follows second-order kinetics, again elimination accompanies substitution, this time to yield, not alkenes I and II, but alkene III. Propose a likely mechanism or mechanisms for the elimination taking place under these conditions.

- (c) How do you account for the shift in mechanism between (a) and (b)?  
 (d) What substitution product or products would you expect in each case?

16. A liquid of boiling point 39–41° was insoluble in water, dilute acids or bases, or concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ . It did not react with  $\text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4$  or dilute  $\text{KMnO}_4$ . It was subjected to sodium fusion, and the resulting solution was filtered, acidified with nitric acid, and boiled. Addition of  $\text{AgNO}_3$  gave a precipitate.

(a) On the basis of Table 6.1, what compound or compounds might this have been? (b) Several milliliters of  $\text{CCl}_4$  were added to a portion of the acidified solution from the fusion, and the mixture was shaken with chlorine water. A violet color appeared in the  $\text{CCl}_4$  layer. Which compound or compounds of (a) are still possible? (c) How would each of the other possibilities have responded in (b)?

17. Outline all steps in the conversion of *n*-propyl alcohol into each of the following compounds. (See general instructions about synthesis in box on page 265.)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) <i>n</i> -propyl bromide   | (f) di- <i>n</i> -propylamine $((\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2)_2\text{NH})$ |
| (b) <i>n</i> -propyl iodide  | (g) di- <i>n</i> -propylether $((\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2)_2\text{O})$  |
| (c) sodium <i>n</i> -propoxide   | (h) propane  |
| (d) butanenitrile $(\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN})$           | (i) propane-1- <i>d</i> $(\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{D})$            |
| (e) <i>n</i> -propylamine $(\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2)$ | (j) <i>n</i> -hexane   |

18. Starting from alcohols of four carbons or fewer, and making use of any necessary solvents or reagents, outline a possible synthesis for each of the following compounds:

- (a) 2-chloropropane
- (b) ethyl tosylate
- (c) potassium *tert*-butoxide
- (d) propanenitrile  $(\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CN})$
- (e) isobutane
- (f) *n*-propyl ethyl ether  $(\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)$
- (g) butane-2-*d*  $(\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CHDCH}_3)$
- (h) 3-methylhexane

# Alkenes I.

## Structure and Preparation

### *Elimination*

---

#### 7.1 Unsaturated hydrocarbons

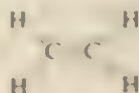
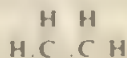
In our discussion of the alkanes we mentioned briefly another family of hydrocarbons, the **alkenes**, which contain less hydrogen, carbon for carbon, than the alkanes, and which can be converted into alkanes by addition of hydrogen. The alkenes were further described as being obtained from alkanes by loss of hydrogen in the cracking process.

Since alkenes evidently contain less than the maximum quantity of hydrogen, they are referred to as **unsaturated hydrocarbons**. This unsaturation can be satisfied by reagents other than hydrogen and gives rise to the characteristic chemical properties of alkenes.

#### 7.2 Structure of ethylene. The carbon-carbon double bond

The simplest member of the alkene family is **ethylene**,  $C_2H_4$ . In view of the ready conversion of ethylene into ethane, we can reasonably expect certain structural similarities between the two compounds.

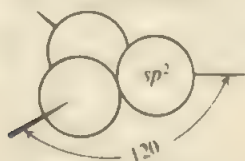
To start, then, we connect the carbon atoms by a covalent bond, and then attach two hydrogen atoms to each carbon atom. At this stage we find that each carbon atom possesses only six electrons in its valence shell, instead of the required eight, and that the entire molecule needs an additional pair of electrons if it is to be neutral. We can solve both these problems by assuming that the carbon atoms can share two pairs of electrons. To describe this sharing of two pairs of electrons, we say that the carbon atoms are joined by a *double bond*. *The carbon-carbon double bond is the distinguishing feature of the alkene structure.*



Ethylene



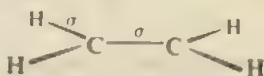
Quantum mechanics gives a more detailed picture of ethylene and the carbon-carbon double bond. To form bonds with three other atoms, carbon makes use of three equivalent hybrid orbitals:  $sp^2$  orbitals, formed by the mixing of one  $s$  and two  $p$  orbitals. As we have seen (Sec. 1.10),  $sp^2$  orbitals lie in one plane, that of the carbon nucleus, and are directed toward the corners of an equilateral triangle; the angle between any pair of orbitals is thus  $120^\circ$ . This **trigonal arrangement** (Fig. 7.1)



**Figure 7.1.** Atomic orbitals: hybrid  $sp^2$  orbitals. Axes directed toward corners of equilateral triangle.

permits the hybrid orbitals to be as far apart as possible. Just as mutual repulsion among orbitals gives four tetrahedral bonds, so it gives three trigonal bonds.

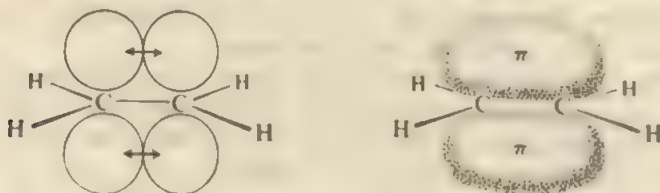
If we arrange the two carbons and four hydrogens of ethylene to permit maximum overlap of orbitals, we obtain the structure shown in Fig. 7.2. Each



**Figure 7.2.** Ethylene molecule: only  $\sigma$  bonds shown.

carbon atom lies at the center of a triangle, at whose corners are located the two hydrogen atoms and the other carbon atom. Every bond angle is  $120^\circ$ . Although distributed differently about the carbon nucleus, these bonds individually are very similar to the bonds in ethane, being cylindrically symmetrical about a line joining the nuclei, and are given the same designation:  $\sigma$  bond (*sigma bond*).

The molecule is not yet complete, however. In forming the  $sp^2$  orbitals, each carbon atom has used only two of its three  $p$  orbitals. The remaining  $p$  orbital consists of two equal lobes, one lying above and the other lying below the plane of the three  $sp^2$  orbitals (Fig. 7.3); it is occupied by a single electron. If the  $p$  orbital



**Figure 7.3.** Ethylene molecule: carbon-carbon double bond. Overlap of  $p$  orbitals gives  $\pi$  bond;  $\pi$  cloud above and below plane.

of one carbon atom overlaps the  $p$  orbital of the other carbon atom, the electrons pair up and an additional bond is formed.

Because it is formed by the overlap of  $p$  orbitals, and to distinguish it from the differently shaped  $\sigma$  bonds, this bond is called a  $\pi$  bond (*pi bond*). It consists of two parts, one electron cloud that lies above the plane of the atoms, and another electron cloud that lies below. Because of lesser overlap, the  $\pi$  bond is weaker than

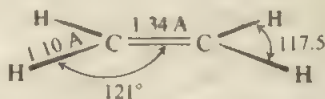
the carbon-carbon  $\sigma$  bond. As we can see from Fig. 7.3, this overlap can occur only when all six atoms lie in the same plane. Ethylene, then, is a *flat molecule*.

The carbon-carbon "double bond" is thus made up of a strong  $\sigma$  bond and a weak  $\pi$  bond. The total bond energy of 146 kcal is greater than that of the carbon-carbon single bond of ethane (88 kcal). Since the carbon atoms are held more tightly together, the C—C distance in ethylene is less than the C—C distance in ethane; that is to say, the carbon-carbon double bond is shorter than the carbon-carbon single bond.

The  $\sigma$  bond in ethylene has been estimated to have a strength of about 95 kcal: stronger than the one in ethane because it is formed by overlap of  $sp^2$  orbitals (Sec. 7.4). On this basis, we would estimate the strength of the  $\pi$  bond to be 51 kcal.

This quantum mechanical structure of ethylene is verified by direct evidence. Electron diffraction and spectroscopic studies show ethylene (Fig. 7.4) to be a flat molecule, with bond angles very close to  $120^\circ$ . The C—C distance is 1.34 Å as compared with the C—C distance of 1.53 Å in ethane.

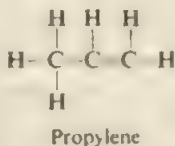
Figure 7.4. Ethylene molecule: shape and size.



In addition to these direct measurements, we shall soon see that two important aspects of alkene chemistry are consistent with the quantum mechanical picture of the double bond, and are most readily understood in terms of that picture. These are (a) the concept of *hindered rotation* and the accompanying phenomenon of *geometric isomerism* (Sec. 7.6), and (b) the kind of reactivity characteristic of the carbon-carbon double bond (Sec. 8.2).

### 7.3 Propylene

The next member of the alkene family is **propylene**,  $C_3H_6$ . In view of its great similarity to ethylene, it seems reasonable to assume that this compound also contains a carbon-carbon double bond. Starting with two carbons joined by a double bond, and attaching the other atoms according to our rule of one bond per hydrogen and four bonds per carbon, we arrive at the structure



### 7.4 Hybridization and orbital size

The carbon-carbon double bond in alkenes is shorter than the carbon-carbon single bond in alkanes because four electrons bind more tightly than two. But, in addition, certain other bonds in alkenes are significantly shorter than their counterparts in alkanes: for example, the C—H distance is 1.103 Å in ethylene compared with 1.112 Å in ethane. To account for this and other differences in bond length, we must consider differences in hybridization of carbon.

The carbon hydrogen bonds of ethylene are single bonds just as in, say, ethane, but they are formed by overlap of  $sp^2$  orbitals of carbon, instead of  $sp^3$  orbitals as in ethane. Now, compared with an  $sp^3$  orbital, an  $sp^2$  orbital has less  $p$  character and more  $s$  character. A  $p$  orbital extends some distance from the nucleus; an  $s$  orbital, on the other hand, lies close about the nucleus. As the  $s$  character of a hybrid orbital increases, the effective size of the orbital decreases and, with it, the length of the bond to a given second atom. Thus an  $sp^2$   $s$  carbon-hydrogen bond should be shorter than an  $sp^3$   $s$  carbon hydrogen bond.

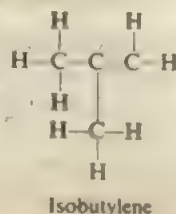
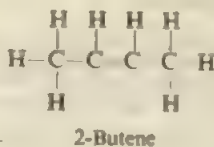
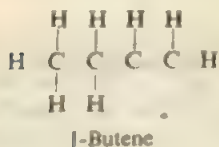
Benzene, in most ways a quite different kind of molecule from ethylene (Sec. 14.8), also contains  $sp^2$   $s$  carbon-hydrogen bonds; the C—H bond distance is 1.10 Å, almost exactly the same as in ethylene. Acetylene (Sec. 13.2) contains  $sp$ -hybridized carbon which, in view of the even greater  $s$  character of the orbitals, should form even shorter bonds than in ethylene; this expectation is correct, the  $sp$ - $s$  bond being only 1.079 Å.

A consideration of hybridization and orbital size would lead one to expect an  $sp^2$   $sp^3$  bond to be shorter than an  $sp^3$   $sp^3$  bond. In agreement, the carbon-carbon single bond distance in propylene is 1.501 Å, as compared with the carbon-carbon distance of 1.534 Å in ethane. The  $sp$ - $sp^3$  carbon-carbon single bond in methylacetylene (Sec. 9.24) is even shorter, 1.459 Å. These differences in carbon-carbon single bond lengths are greater than the corresponding differences in carbon-hydrogen bond lengths; however, another factor (Sec. 9.23) besides the particular hybridization of carbon may be at work here.

Consideration of hybridization and orbital size helps us to understand other properties of molecules besides bond length: the relative acidities of certain hydrocarbons (Sec. 13.11), for example, and the relative basicities of certain amines (Sec. 35.11). We might reasonably expect shorter bonds to be stronger bonds, and in agreement Table 1.2 (p. 20) shows that the C—H bond dissociation energy in ethylene (108 kcal) is larger than that in ethane (98 kcal), and the C—C (single) bond dissociation energy in propylene (92 kcal) is greater than that in ethane (88 kcal). Indeed, as will be discussed in Sec. 9.24, by affecting the stability of molecules, changes in hybridization may be of more fundamental importance than has been generally recognized.

## 7.5 The butylenes

Going on to the **butylenes**,  $C_4H_8$ , we find that there are a number of possible arrangements. First of all, we may have a straight-chain skeleton as in *n*-butane, or a branched-chain structure as in isobutane. Next, even when we restrict ourselves to the straight-chain skeleton, we find that there are two possible arrangements that differ in position of the double bond in the chain. So far, then, we have a total of three structures; as indicated, these are given the names *1-butene*, *2-butene*, and *isobutylene*.





How do the facts agree with the prediction of three isomeric butylenes? Experiment has shown that not three but *four* alkenes of the formula  $C_4H_8$  exist, they have the physical properties shown in Table 7.1.

Table 7.1 PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF THE BUTYLENES

Name	B.p., °C	M.p., °C	Density (–20°)	Refractive Index (–12.7°)
Isobutylene	–7	–141	0.640	1.3727
1-Butene	–6	< –195	.641	1.3711
<i>trans</i> -2-Butene	+1	–106	.649	1.3778
<i>cis</i> -2-Butene	+4	–139	.667	1.3868

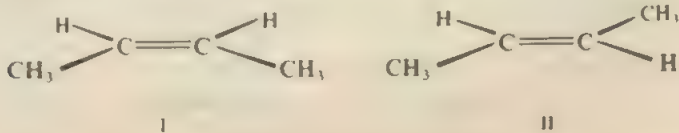
On hydrogenation, the isomer of b.p. –7° yields isobutane; this butylene evidently contains a branched chain, and has therefore the structure we have designated isobutylene.

On hydrogenation, the other three isomers all yield the same compound, *n*-butane; they evidently have a straight-chain skeleton. In ways that we shall study later (Sec. 8.28), it is possible to break an alkene molecule apart at the double bond and from the fragments obtained deduce the position of the double bond in the molecule. When this procedure is carried out, the isomer of b.p. –6° yields product indicating clearly that the double bond is at the end of the chain; this butylene has therefore the structure we have designated 1-butene. When the same procedure is carried out on the two remaining isomers, both yield the same mixture of products; these products show that the double bond is in the middle of the chain.

Judging from the products of hydrogenation and the products of cleavage, we would conclude that the butylenes of b.p. +1° and +4° *both* have the structure we have designated 2-butene. Yet the differences in boiling point, melting point, and other physical properties show clearly that they are not the same compound, that is, that they are isomers. In what way can their structures differ?

To understand the kind of isomerism that gives rise to two 2-butenes, we must examine more closely the structure of alkenes and the nature of the carbon-carbon double bond. Ethylene is a flat molecule. We have seen that this flatness is a result of the geometric arrangement of the bonding orbitals, and in particular the overlap that gives rise to the  $\pi$  orbital. For the same reasons, a portion of any alkene must also be flat, the two doubly-bonded carbons and the four atoms attached to them lying in the same plane.

If we examine the structure of 2-butene more closely, and particularly if we use molecular models, we find that there are two quite different ways, I and II, in which the atoms can be arranged (aside from the infinite number of possibilities arising from rotation about the single bonds). In one of the structures the methyl groups lie on the same side of the molecule (I), and in the other structure they lie on opposite sides of the molecule (II).



Now the question arises: can we expect to isolate two isomeric 2-butenes corresponding to these two different structures, or are they too readily interconverted—like, say, the conformations of *n*-butane (Sec. 3.5)?

Conversion of I into II involves rotation about the carbon-carbon double bond. The possibility of isolating isomers depends upon the energy required for this rotation. We have seen that the formation of the  $\pi$  bond involves overlap of the *p* orbitals that lie above and below the plane of the  $\sigma$  orbitals. To pass from one of these 2-butenes to the other, the molecule must be twisted so that the *p* orbitals no longer overlap; that is, the  $\pi$  bond must be broken (see Fig. 7.5). Breaking the  $\pi$

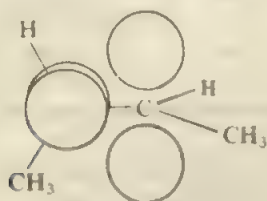


Figure 7.5. Hindered rotation about carbon-carbon double bond. Rotation would prevent overlap of *p* orbitals and would break  $\pi$  bond.

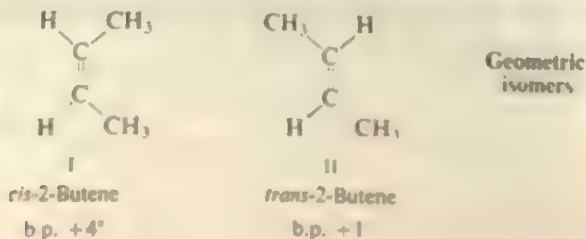
bond requires about 70 kcal of energy; at room temperature an insignificant proportion of collisions possess this necessary energy, and hence the rate of this interconversion is extremely small. Because of this 70-kcal energy barrier, then, *there is hindered rotation about the carbon-carbon double bond*. As a result of this hindered rotation, two isomeric 2-butenes can be isolated. These are, of course, the butylenes of b.p. + 1° and b.p. + 4°.

## 7.6 Geometric isomerism

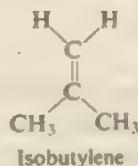
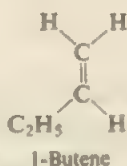
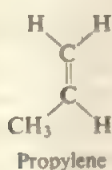
Since the isomeric 2-butenes differ from one another *only* in the way the atoms are oriented in space (but are like one another with respect to which atoms are attached to which other atoms), they belong to the general class we have called *stereoisomers* (Sec. 4.1). They are not, however, mirror images of each other, and hence are not enantiomers. As we have already said, *stereoisomers that are not mirror images of each other are called diastereomers*.

The particular kind of diastereomers that owe their existence to hindered rotation about double bonds are called **geometric isomers**. The isomeric 2-butenes, then, are diastereomers, and more specifically, geometric isomers.

We recall that the arrangement of atoms that characterizes a particular stereoisomer is called its *configuration*. The configurations of the isomeric 2-butenes are the structures I and II. These configurations are differentiated in their names by the prefixes **cis-** (Latin: on this side) and **trans-** (Latin: across), which indicate that the methyl groups are on the same side or on opposite sides of the molecule. In a way that we shall take up shortly (Sec. 7.9), the isomer of b.p. + 4° has been assigned the *cis* configuration and the isomer of b.p. + 1° the *trans* configuration.



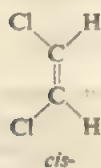
There is hindered rotation about *any* carbon-carbon double bond, but it gives rise to geometric isomerism only if there is a certain relationship among the groups attached to the doubly-bonded carbons. We can look for this isomerism by drawing the possible structures (or better yet, by constructing them from molecular models), and then seeing if these are indeed isomeric, or actually identical. On this basis we find that propylene, 1-butene, and isobutylene should not show isomerism; this



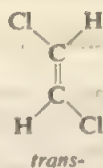
No geometric isomerism

conclusion agrees with the facts. Many higher alkenes may, of course, show geometric isomerism.

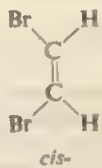
If we consider compounds other than hydrocarbons, we find that 1,1-dichloro- and 1,1-dibromoethene should not show isomerism, whereas the 1,2-dichloro- and 1,2-dibromoethenes should. In every case these predictions have been found correct. Isomers of the following physical properties have been isolated.



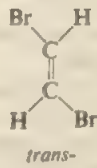
1,2-Dichloroethene  
b.p. 60°  
m.p. -80°



b.p. 48°  
m.p. -50°

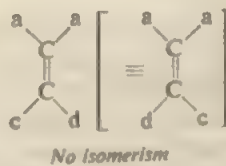
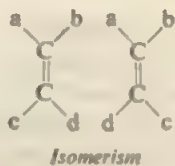
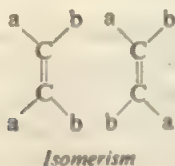


1,2-Dibromoethene  
b.p. 110°  
m.p. -53°



b.p. 108°  
m.p. -6°

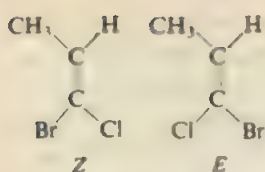
As we soon conclude from our examination of these structures, geometric isomerism cannot exist if either carbon carries two identical groups. Some possible combinations are shown below.



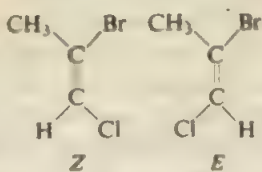
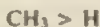
The phenomenon of geometric isomerism is a general one and can be encountered in any class of compounds that contain carbon-carbon double bonds (or even double bonds of other kinds).

The prefixes *cis* and *trans* work very well for disubstituted ethylenes and some trisubstituted ethylenes. But how are we to specify configurations like the following?

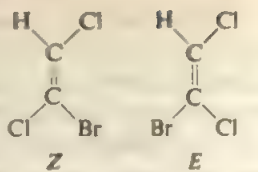
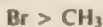




1-Bromo-1-chloropropene



2-Bromo-1-chloropropene



1-Bromo-1,2-dichloroethene



Which groups are our reference points? Looking at each doubly-bonded carbon in turn, we arrange its two atoms or groups in their Cahn-Ingold-Prelog sequence (Sec. 4.16). We then take the group of higher priority on the one carbon and the group of higher priority on the other carbon, and tell whether they are on the same side of the molecule or on opposite sides. So that it will be clear that we are using this method of specification, we use the letter *Z* to mean *on the same side*, and the letter *E* to mean *on opposite sides*. (From the German: *zusammen*, together, and *entgegen*, opposite.) The appropriate letter then becomes part of the name of such an alkene: (*Z*)-1-bromo-1-chloropropene, for example.

A pair of geometric isomers are, then, diastereomers. Where do they fit into the other classification scheme, the one based on how stereoisomers are interconverted (Sec. 4.20)? There are, we saw:

(a) *configurational isomers*, interconverted by inversion (turning-inside-out) at a chiral center; and

(b) *conformational isomers*, interconverted by rotations about single bonds.

Now, we add:

(c) *geometric isomers*, interconverted—in principle—by rotation about a double bond.

The operation required—rotation—is the same for interconversion of geometric and conformational isomers, and it has been suggested that they be called collectively *rotational* (or *torsional*) *isomers*. Geometric isomers are thus double-bond rotational isomers, and conformational isomers are single-bond rotational isomers.

On the other hand, from the very practical standpoint of *isolability*, geometric isomers are more akin to configurational isomers: interconversion requires bond-breaking—a  $\pi$  bond in the case of geometric isomers—and hence is always a difficult process. Conformational isomers are interconverted by the (usually) easy process of rotation about single bonds.

For convenience, we laid down the following “ground rule” for discussions and problems in this book: unless specifically indicated otherwise, the terms “stereoisomers,” “enantiomers,” and “diastereomers” will refer only to configurational isomers and geometric isomers, and will exclude conformational isomers. The latter will be referred to as “conformational isomers,” “conformers,” “conformational enantiomers,” and “conformational diastereomers.”

In so far as chemical and physical properties are concerned, geometric isomers show the same relationship to each other as do the other diastereomers we have encountered (Sec. 4.17). They contain the same functional groups and hence show similar chemical properties. Their chemical properties are *not identical*, however, since their structures are neither identical nor mirror images; they react with the same reagents, but at different rates.

As the examples above illustrate, geometric isomers have different physical properties: different melting points, boiling points, refractive indices, solubilities, densities, and so on. On the basis of these different physical properties, they can be distinguished from each other and, once the configuration of each has been determined, identified. On the basis of these differences in physical properties they can, in principle at least, be separated. (See Sec. 4.17.)

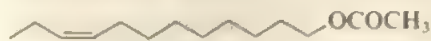
When we take up the physical properties of the alkenes (Sec. 7.9), we shall discuss one of the ways in which we can tell whether a particular substance is the *cis*- or *trans*-isomer, that is, one of the ways in which we *assign configuration*.

Biological systems, we have seen (Sec. 4.11), generally show a high degree of stereospecificity, and this specificity is shown not only toward enantiomers but also toward geometric isomers; that is, there is not only *enantiospecificity* but also *diastereospecificity*.

This is especially evident in the action of *pheromones*, compounds produced by an organism for the purpose of communicating with other organisms of the same species: to attract members of the opposite sex, to spread an alarm, to mark the trail to food. (This communication can span remarkable distances: the male gypsy moth receives the signal from a female a mile away!) There are, for example, four geometric isomers of 10,12-hexadecadien-1-ol; only one of these, the (10*E*,12*Z*)-isomer, is the sex attractant produced by the female silk moth—and it is a billion times as attractive to the male as any of the other isomers. The male grape berry



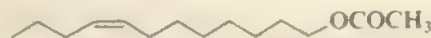
(10*E*,12*Z*)-10,12-Hexadecadien-1-ol  
*Sex attractant of silk moth*



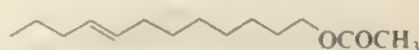
(*Z*)-9-Dodecen-1-yl acetate  
*Sex attractant of grape berry moth*



(*E*)-9-Dodecen-1-yl acetate  
*Sex attractant of European pine shoot moth*



(*Z*)-8-Dodecen-1-yl acetate  
(93%)



(*E*)-8-Dodecen-1-yl acetate  
(7%)

*Sex attractant of Oriental fruit moth*

moth is attracted by (*Z*)-9-dodecen-1-yl acetate; the male European pine shoot moth is attracted by the (*E*)-isomer of the same compound – yet this attraction is completely nullified by the presence of only 3% of the (*Z*)-isomer. Moving the double bond over one position gives (*Z*)-8-dodecen-1-yl acetate, which is the sex attractant of the oriental fruit moth—but only if 7% of the (*E*)-isomer is present; pure (*Z*) is completely inactive. (This requirement of a precise *mixture* of stereoisomers is very common.)

The sex attractants of insects have been studied extensively in recent years, with the aim—already realized in some cases—of synthesizing them to serve as bait with which to lure and entrap the female-seeking males of a species before they can mate, or to confuse them and disrupt their search. To be effective these synthetic materials must duplicate the stereochemical make-up of the natural pheromones; the stereospecificity of their action demands an equal stereoselectivity in their synthesis—*enantioselectivity* to match *enantiospecificity*, and *diastereoselectivity* to match *diastereospecificity*. And so a large part of the research in the field of pheromones—and of other biologically active substances—involves development of new, highly stereoselective ways to introduce the carbon-carbon double bond into a molecule. Later on (Sec. 13.8), we shall look at the most important of these ways.

## 7.7 Higher alkenes

As we can see, the butylenes contain one carbon and two hydrogens more than propylene, which in turn contains one carbon and two hydrogens more than ethylene. The alkenes, therefore, form another homologous series, the increment being the same as for the alkanes:  $\text{CH}_2$ . The general formula for this family is  $\text{C}_n\text{H}_{2n}$ .

As we ascend the series of alkenes, the number of isomeric structures for each member increases even more rapidly than in the case of the alkane series; in addition to variations in the carbon skeletons, there are variations in the position of the double bond for a given skeleton, and the possibility of geometric isomerism.

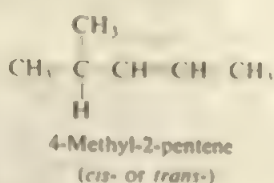
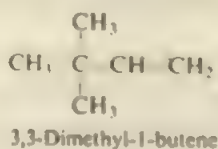
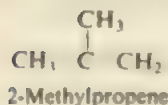
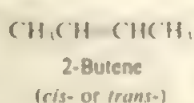
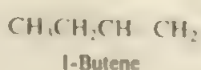
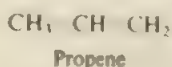
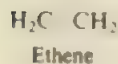
**Problem 7.1** Neglecting enantiomerism, draw structures of: (a) the six isomeric pentylenes ( $\text{C}_5\text{H}_{10}$ ); (b) the four chloropropylenes ( $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$ ); (c) the eleven chlorobutylenes ( $\text{C}_4\text{H}_7\text{Cl}$ ). Specify as *Z* or *E* each geometric isomer.

## 7.8 Names of alkenes

Common names are seldom used except for three simple alkenes: *ethylene*, *propylene*, and *isobutylene*. The various alkenes of a given carbon number are, however, sometimes referred to collectively as the *pentylenes* (*amylenes*), *hexylenes*, *heptylenes*, and so on. (One sometimes encounters the naming of alkenes as derivatives of ethylene: as, for example, *tetramethylethylene* for  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ .) Most alkenes are named by the IUPAC system.

The rules of the IUPAC system are:

1. Select as the parent structure the longest continuous chain *that contains the carbon-carbon double bond*; then consider the compound to have been derived from this structure by replacement of hydrogen by various alkyl groups. The parent structure is known as *ethene*, *propene*, *butene*, *pentene*, and so on, depending upon the number of carbon atoms; each name is derived by changing the ending *-ane* of the corresponding alkane name to *-ene*:



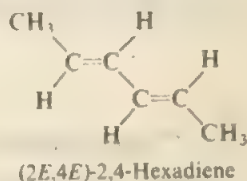
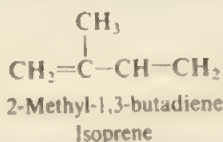
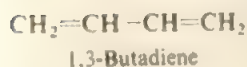
2. Indicate by a number the position of the double bond in the parent chain. Although the double bond involves two carbon atoms, designate its position by the number of the *first* doubly-bonded carbon encountered when numbering from the end of the chain nearest the double bond, thus *1-butene* and *2-butene*.

3. Indicate by numbers the positions of the alkyl groups attached to the parent chain.

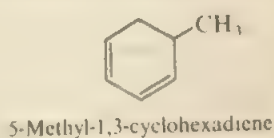
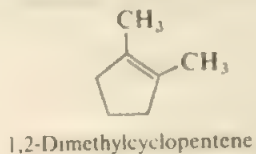
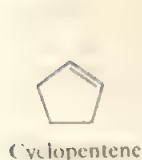


When a geometric isomer is to be specified, a prefix is added: *cis*- or *trans*-, or (*Z*)- or (*E*)-.

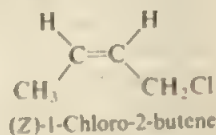
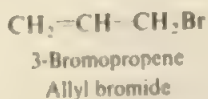
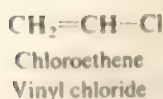
An alkene containing more than one double bond is named as a *-diene*, *-triene*, *-tetraene*, etc., with two or three or four numbers to indicate the positions of all the double bonds. Where geometric isomerism exists, the configuration about *each* double bond is specified.



A cyclic alkene is named by prefixing **cyclo-** to the name of the open-chain alkene having the same number of carbons as the ring. Doubly-bonded carbons are considered to occupy positions 1 and 2.

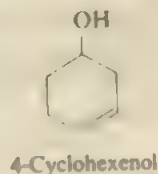
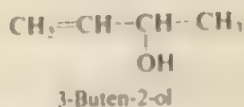
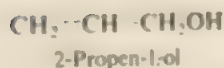


An alkene containing halogen is generally named as a **haloalkene**, that is, as an alkene containing halogen as a side chain.



Two unsaturated groups are so commonly encountered that they are given special names: **vinyl**,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-$ ; and **allyl**,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2-$ .

An alkene containing  $\text{OH}$  is named as an **alkenol**, with numbers to indicate the positions of the double bond and the hydroxyl group.



Note that *-ol* takes priority over *-ene*, *-ol* appears last in the name, and, where possible, is given the lower number (See also the names of the pheromones shown on p. 275.)

**Problem 7.2** Give the structural formula of:

- |                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (a) 2,3-dimethyl-2-butene          | (e) 1,4-pentadiene            |
| (b) 3-bromo-2-methylpropene        | (f) (Z)-1,3-pentadiene        |
| (c) <i>cis</i> -2-methyl-3-heptene | (g) ( <i>E</i> )-2-buten-1-ol |
| (d) ( <i>E</i> )-2-chloro-2-butene | (h) 4-methylcyclopentene      |

**Problem 7.3** Referring to your answer to Problem 7.1 (p. 276), give IUPAC names for: (a) the isomeric pentylenes; (b) the isomeric chloropropenes.

## 7.9 Physical properties

As a class, the alkenes possess physical properties that are essentially the same as those of the alkanes. They are insoluble in water, but quite soluble in non-polar solvents like benzene, ether, chloroform, or ligroin. They are less dense than water. As we can see from Table 7.2, the boiling point rises with increasing carbon

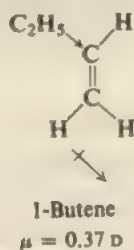
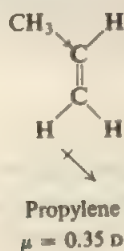
**Table 7.2** ALKENES

Name	Formula	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Density (at 20°C)
Ethylene	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}_2$	-169	-102	
Propylene	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_3$	-185	-48	
1-Butene	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_3$		-6.5	
1-Pentene	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}_3$		30	0.643
1-Hexene	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}_3$	-138	63.5	.675
1-Heptene	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CH}_3$	-119	93	.698
1-Octene	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{CH}_3$	-104	122.5	.716
1-Nonene	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_6\text{CH}_3$		146	.731
1-Decene	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{CH}_3$	-87	171	.743
<i>cis</i> -2-Butene	<i>cis</i> - $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_3$	-139	4	
<i>trans</i> -2-Butene	<i>trans</i> - $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_3$	-106	1	
Isobutylene	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2$	-141	-7	
<i>cis</i> -2-Pentene	<i>cis</i> - $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_3$	-151	37	.655
<i>trans</i> -2-Pentene	<i>trans</i> - $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_3$		36	.647
3-Methyl-1-butene	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_3$	135	25	.648
2-Methyl-2-butene	$\text{CH}_3\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{CHCH}_3$	123	39	.660
2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2$	74	73	.705

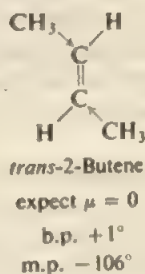
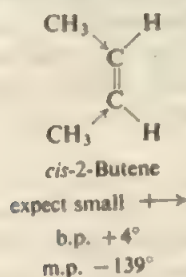
number, as with the alkanes, the boiling point rise is 20–30° for each added carbon, except for the very small homologs. As before, branching lowers the boiling point. A comparison of Table 7.2 with Table 3.3 (p. 92) shows that the boiling point of an alkene is very nearly the same as that of the alkane with the corresponding carbon skeleton.

Like alkanes, alkenes are at most only weakly polar. Since the loosely held  $\pi$  electrons of the double bond are easily pulled or pushed, dipole moments are larger than for alkanes. They are still small, however—compare the dipole moments shown for propylene and 1-butene, for example, with the moment of 1.83 D for methyl chloride. The bond joining the alkyl group to the doubly-bonded carbon has a small polarity, which is believed to be in the direction shown, that is, with the alkyl

group releasing electrons to the doubly-bonded carbon. Since this polarity is not canceled by a corresponding polarity in the opposite direction, it gives a net dipole moment to the molecule.



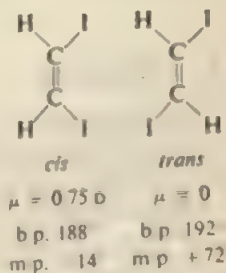
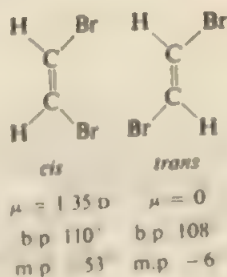
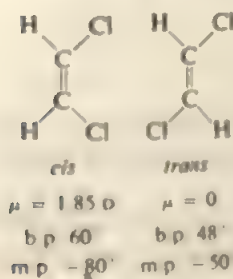
*cis*-2-Butene, with two methyl groups on one side of the molecule and two hydrogens on the other, should have a small dipole moment. In *trans*-2-butene, on the other hand, with one methyl and one hydrogen on each side of the molecule, the bond moments should cancel out. Although the dipole moments have not been



measured directly, a small difference in polarity is reflected in the higher boiling point of the *cis*-isomer.

This same relationship exists for many pairs of geometric isomers. Because of its higher polarity the *cis*-isomer is generally the higher boiling of a pair; because of its lower symmetry it fits into a crystalline lattice more poorly, and thus generally has the lower melting point.

The differences in polarity, and hence the differences in melting point and boiling point, are greater for alkenes that contain elements whose electronegativities differ widely from that of carbon. For example:



The relationship between configuration and boiling point or melting point is only a rule of thumb, to which there are many exceptions (for example, the boiling points of the diiodoethenes). Measurement of dipole moment, on the other hand, frequently enables us positively to designate a particular isomer as *cis* or *trans*.



**Problem 7.4** (a) Indicate the direction of the net dipole moment for each of the dihaloethenes. (b) Would *cis*-2,3-dichloro-2-butene have a larger or smaller dipole moment than *cis*-1,2-dichloroethene? (c) Indicate the direction of the net dipole moment of *cis*-1,2-dibromo-1,2-dichloroethene. Will it be larger or smaller than the dipole moment of *cis*-1,2-dichloroethene? Why?

## 7.10 Industrial source

Petroleum and natural gas provide the alkanes that are the chief primary source of organic chemicals: the chemicals on which a vast industry is built and the chemicals we use in the laboratory. Now, alkanes themselves are ill-suited for direct conversion into a variety of other compounds: they are comparatively unreactive, and the reactions they do undergo take place more or less indiscriminately over the molecule to yield complex mixtures.

But from alkanes there are obtained, by cracking in its various forms (Sec. 3.31), certain more reactive substances: the *aromatic hydrocarbons* benzene, toluene, and the xylenes (Chap. 16); and the smaller *alkenes* ethylene, propylene, and the butylenes. From these few compounds, plus methane, most aromatic and aliphatic chemicals are ultimately made. Ethylene, for example, is the organic compound consumed in the largest amount by the chemical industry—and it ranks fifth among all compounds, following only sulfuric acid, lime, ammonia, and oxygen.

In contrast to alkanes, we shall find, alkenes are highly reactive by virtue of their functional group, the carbon-carbon double bond. (Alkanes really have *no* functional group—or, if they do, it is  $-\text{H}$ , which occurs everywhere in the molecule.) Not only do alkenes undergo a wide variety of reactions, but these reactions take place at well-defined places in the molecule: at the double bond itself, or at certain positions having a specific relationship to the double bond. The conditions under which alkenes are allowed to react on an industrial scale may, for practical, economic reasons, differ vastly from those used in the laboratory, but in the final analysis the reactions actually taking place are the same ones that we shall study in Chap. 8.

To the extent that the renewable biomass some day replaces the non-renewable fossil mass as the primary source of organic chemicals, alkenes will undoubtedly continue to play a central role. Ethylene, for example, is readily formed by dehydration of ethanol, produced by fermentation of carbohydrates.

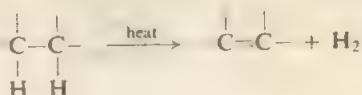
## 7.11 Preparation

Alkenes containing up to four carbon atoms can be obtained in pure form from the petroleum industry. Pure samples of more complicated alkenes must be prepared by methods like those outlined below.

The introduction of a carbon-carbon double bond into a molecule containing only single bonds must necessarily involve the **elimination** of atoms or groups from two adjacent carbons:



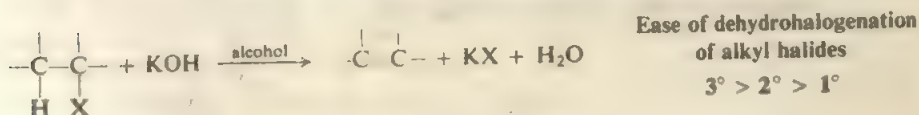
In the cracking process already discussed, for example, the atoms eliminated are both hydrogen atoms:



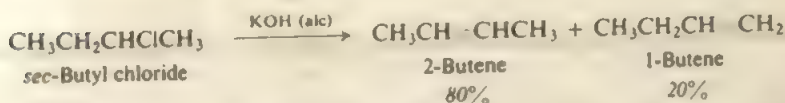
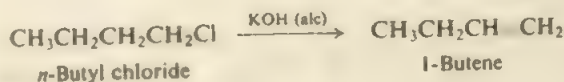
The elimination reactions described below not only can be used to make simple alkenes, but also—and this is much more important—provide the best general ways to introduce carbon-carbon double bonds into molecules of all kinds.

### PREPARATION OF ALKENES

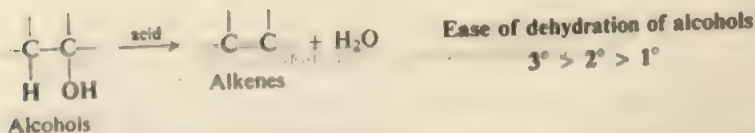
1. Dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides. Discussed in Secs. 7.12 and 7.27.



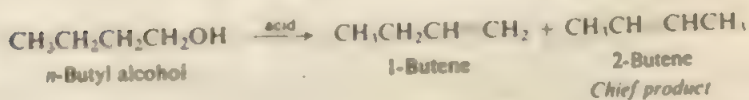
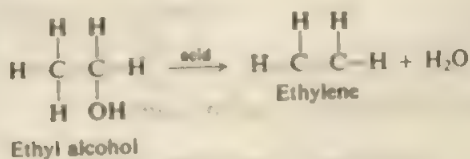
Examples:



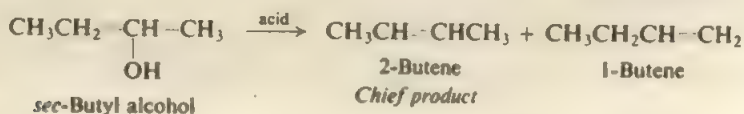
2. Dehydration of alcohols. Discussed in Sec. 7.28.



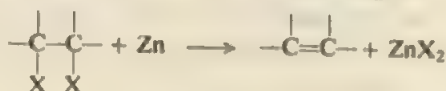
Examples:



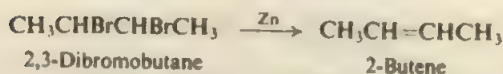
CONT.



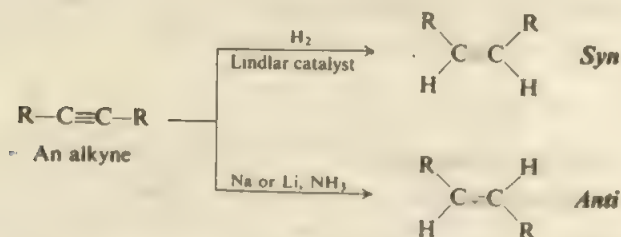
### 3. Dehalogenation of vicinal dihalides. Discussed in Sec. 7.11.



Example:

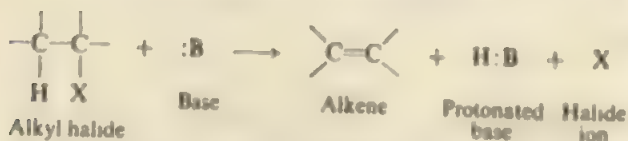


### 4. Reduction of alkynes. Discussed in Sec. 13.8.



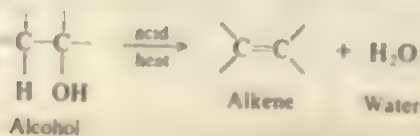
The most important of these methods of preparation—since they are the most generally applicable—are the *dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides*, promoted by base,

#### Dehydrohalogenation: 1,2-elimination of HX



and the *dehydration of alcohols*, catalyzed by acid.

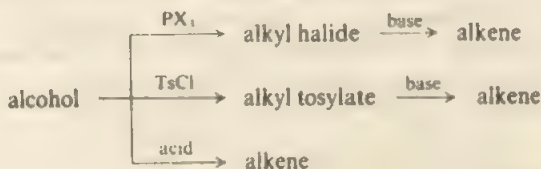
#### Dehydration: 1,2-elimination of H<sub>2</sub>O





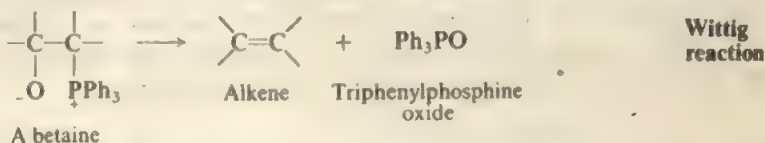
Not surprisingly, alkyl sulfonates undergo a base-promoted elimination closely analogous to dehydrohalogenation; most of what we have to say about dehydrohalogenation applies equally well to this reaction, too.

As we have seen (Sec. 6.9), alkyl halides and sulfonates are nearly always prepared from the corresponding alcohols, and hence all these methods ultimately involve preparation from alcohols; however, base-promoted elimination generally

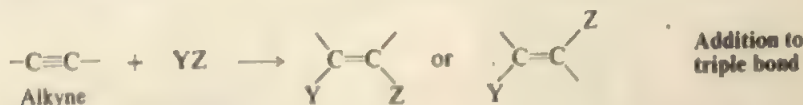


leads to fewer complications and is often the preferred method despite the extra step in the sequence.

Both dehydrohalogenation and dehydration suffer from the disadvantage that, where the structure permits, hydrogen can be eliminated from the carbon on either side of the carbon bearing the  $-\text{X}$  or  $-\text{OH}$ ; this frequently produces isomers. To make certain that the double bond appears only between a given pair of carbon atoms, we need a substrate from which only a given pair of substituents—neither of them ubiquitous hydrogen—can be eliminated, as, for example, in the *Wittig reaction* (Sec. 21.10):



Just as a carbon-carbon double bond can be generated from a carbon-carbon single bond by elimination, so it can be generated from a carbon-carbon triple bond by addition.



Since such addition is often stereoselective, triply-bonded compounds (the *alkynes*, Chap. 13) are important intermediates in the synthesis of stereochemically pure *cis*- or *trans*-alkenes.

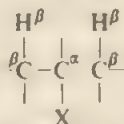
Key intermediates in the above syntheses are alcohols and alkynes. Both these kinds of compounds, we shall find, are themselves readily prepared from smaller, simpler substances. By combining the chemistry of alkenes with the chemistry of alcohols and alkynes, we shall be able to make alkenes in a wide variety of sizes and shapes.

## 7.12 Dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides: 1,2-elimination

When isopropyl bromide is treated with a hot concentrated alcoholic solution of a strong base like potassium hydroxide, there is obtained propylene, potassium bromide, and water.

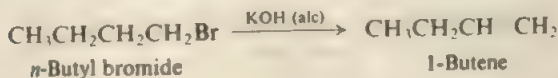
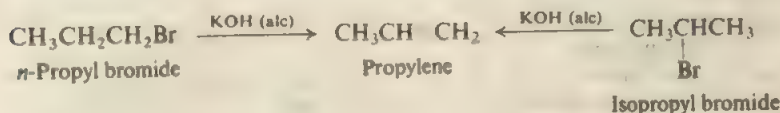


We have called this *1,2-elimination*: for the double bond to form, the hydrogen must come from a carbon that is adjacent to the carbon holding the halogen. Now, the carbon holding the halogen is commonly called the  $\alpha$ -carbon (*alpha*-carbon).

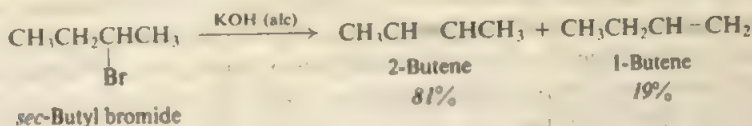


Any carbon attached to the  $\alpha$ -carbon is a  $\beta$ -carbon (*beta*-carbon), and its hydrogens are  $\beta$ -hydrogens. *Elimination, then, involves loss of a  $\beta$ -hydrogen.*

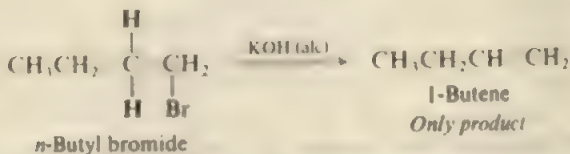
In some cases, dehydrohalogenation yields a single alkene,



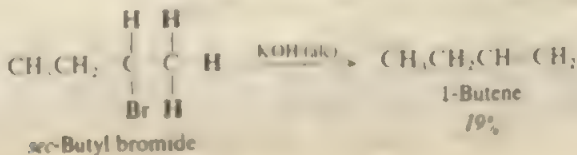
and in other cases yields a mixture.



To predict which products can be formed in a given reaction, we have only to examine the structure of the substrate. We can expect an alkene corresponding to the loss of *any* one of the  $\beta$ -hydrogens—but *no other alkenes*. *n*-Butyl bromide, for example, can lose hydrogen only from C-2,

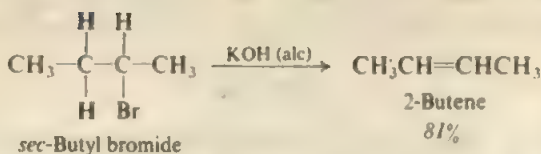


and hence yields only 1-butene. *sec*-Butyl bromide on the other hand, can lose hydrogen either from C-1,





or from C-3,



and hence yields both 1-butene and 2-butene. Where the two alkenes can be formed, 2-butene is the chief product; this fact fits into a general pattern for dehydrohalogenation which we shall discuss later (Sec. 7.21).

**Problem 7.5** Give structures of all alkenes expected from dehydrohalogenation by strong base of:

- |                             |                                   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| (a) 1-chloropentane         | (f) 2-chloro-2,3-dimethylbutane   |
| (b) 2-chloropentane         | (g) 1-chloro-2,2-dimethylpropane  |
| (c) 3-chloropentane         | (h) (chloromethyl)cyclopentane    |
| (d) 2-chloro-2-methylbutane | (i) 1-chloro-1-methylcyclopentane |
| (e) 3-chloro-2-methylbutane |                                   |

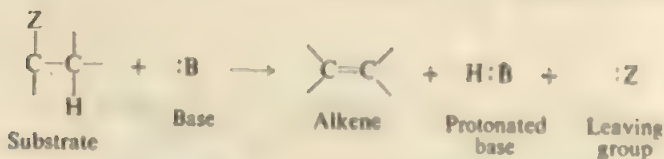
**Problem 7.6** What alkyl halide (if any) would yield each of the following pure alkenes upon dehydrohalogenation by strong base?

- |                 |                       |                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| (a) isobutylene | (c) 2-pentene         | (e) 2-methyl-2-butene |
| (b) 1-pentene   | (d) 2-methyl-1-butene | (f) 3-methyl-1-butene |

(What we have just discussed assumes that no rearrangement takes place, an assumption that is justified for dehydrohalogenation carried out under the usual conditions: in concentrated alcoholic solutions of strong base. We shall learn to recognize situations where rearrangements are likely, and to predict the elimination products in those cases, too.)

In studying dehydrohalogenation we shall learn a good deal about the entire class of reactions to which it belongs, and of which it is typical: **1,2-elimination**.

### 1,2-Elimination



Such elimination reactions are characterized by the following:

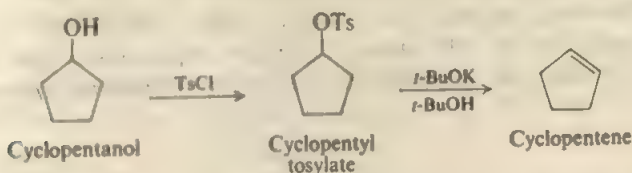
- The substrate contains a **leaving group**, an atom or group that leaves the molecule, taking its electron pair with it.
- In a position *beta* to the leaving group, the substrate contains an atom or group—nearly always **hydrogen**—that can be extracted by a base, leaving its electron pair behind.
- Reaction is brought about by action of a **base**.

Typically, the base is a strongly basic anion like hydroxide, or an alkoxide derived from an alcohol (Sec. 6.8) ethoxide,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}^-$ , *tert*-butoxide,  $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CO}^-$ , etc. But the solvent itself, a neutral substance like an alcohol or water, sometimes serves as the base, although a considerably weaker one.

For convenience, particularly in designating solvents or reagents, one often abbreviates the names of the simpler alkyl groups: methyl, Me; ethyl, Et; *n*-propyl, *n*-Pr; isopropyl, *i*-Pr; *tert*-butyl, *t*-Bu. Thus, methanol becomes MeOH; sodium methoxide, NaOMe; methoxide ion, MeO<sup>-</sup>.

In elimination, a good leaving group is a weakly basic anion or molecule, just as in nucleophilic substitution—and for exactly the same reasons. As a weak base, it readily releases a proton; as a good leaving group, it readily releases carbon (Sec. 6.11). In dehydrohalogenation the leaving group is the very weakly basic halide ion; it is not just accidental that alkyl halides are important substrates in both nucleophilic substitution and elimination.

Nor is it just accidental that the same alternatives to alkyl halides can be used in both kinds of reaction—other substrates that can release weakly basic anions. Chief among these other substrates are sulfonic esters: tosylates, brosylates, mesylates, and triflates (Sec. 6.11). Thus, in the preparation of a particular alkene or in the testing of a certain point of mechanism, a tosylate may serve just as well as a halide, and sometimes more conveniently. These, too, we recall (Sec. 6.11), are made from alcohols. For example:



(The similarity of substrates in nucleophilic substitution and in elimination, coupled with the fact that both nucleophiles and bases are electron-rich reagents—indeed, are very often the *same* reagent—can lead to problems: potentially, there is always *competition* between the two reactions (Sec. 7.27).)

Now, what mechanism or mechanisms does dehydrohalogenation follow? Just by examining the structures of the reactants and products, we have arrived at certain conclusions about what happens during the reaction: the carbon-halogen and carbon-hydrogen bonds are broken; the base-hydrogen bond and the  $\pi$  bond are formed. But this description is still far from being a mechanism. Bonds are being broken and bonds are being formed, and we must ask the question: what is the *timing* of all these bond-breakings and bond-makings? Do they all happen at once, or one after another? And, if one after another, which is first?

So far as timing is concerned, there are a number of possibilities, each one corresponding to a different mechanism. In following sections, we shall take up the experimental evidence—the collection of *facts*—that shows which of these mechanisms elimination actually follows under a particular set of conditions. But first let us see what these various mechanisms are, so that we can then better grasp the significance of each fact as it is presented. In all this, we should realize that more important than what we learn about elimination is what we learn about the methods one uses to find out what is going on in a chemical reaction.

**Problem 7.7** Starting with an alcohol in each case, outline the synthesis of isobutylene by three different routes.

### 7.13 Kinetics of dehydrohalogenation. Duality of mechanism

The theory of elimination reactions developed in a way remarkably similar to the way the theory of nucleophilic substitution developed (Sec. 6.14). Again it was in the mid-1930's that a broad theory of the reaction was proposed, and again it was Hughes and Ingold who proposed it. Here, too, they proposed two mechanisms differing in molecularity. Much of what we shall discuss is based on work done since their initial proposals, and by other workers. This subsequent work has led to refinements in the theory, and has given us a closer look at just what is going on; but, by and large, it has fitted remarkably well into the pattern they laid out.

Let us begin our study where Hughes and Ingold did, with the *kinetics* of elimination. As ordinarily carried out, with a concentrated solution of a strong base, dehydrohalogenation *follows second-order kinetics*. That is, the rate of alkene formation depends upon the concentration of *two* substances: alkyl halide and base. This second-order reaction is observed for all classes of alkyl halides.

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{RX}][\text{:B}]$$

Now, if one proceeds along a series of substrates,  $1^\circ$  to  $2^\circ$  to  $3^\circ$ , and if one reduces the strength or concentration of the base, a second kind of behavior begins to appear: *first-order kinetics*. The rate of elimination depends only upon the concentration of alkyl halide, and is independent of the concentration of base. In general,

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{RX}]$$

this first-order reaction is encountered only with secondary or tertiary substrates, and in solutions where the base is either weak or in low concentration.

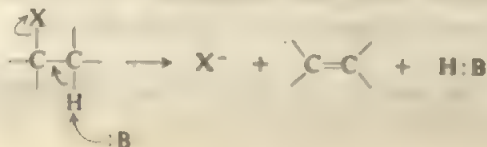
To account for the two kinds of kinetics behavior, Hughes and Ingold proposed that elimination, like nucleophilic substitution, can proceed by two different mechanisms. These mechanisms, for reasons that will emerge, they named **E2** and **E1**.

### 7.14 The E2 mechanism

For the reaction that proceeds by second-order kinetics, Hughes and Ingold proposed the **E2 mechanism**. Reaction involves a *single step*: base pulls a proton away from carbon; simultaneously a halide ion departs and the double bond forms. Halogen takes its electron pair with it; hydrogen leaves its electron pair behind, to form the double bond. These are the electronic changes that we said must happen in dehydrohalogenation; what characterizes this particular mechanism is that they are all happening simultaneously, in a single step, via a single transition state.

#### E2

*Bimolecular elimination*





In this transition state, two bonds are being broken: C—H and C—X. Now, where does the energy for this bond-breaking come from? As usual, it comes *from bond-making*: formation of the bond between the proton and the base, and formation of the  $\pi$  bond. (Although weaker than a  $\sigma$  bond, the  $\pi$  bond does supply about 70 kcal/mol.)

Consider what happens as the base begins to pull the proton away from the molecule. The  $\beta$ -carbon, armed with the electron pair the departing proton is leaving behind, begins to form a bond to the  $\alpha$ -carbon: a second bond, the  $\pi$  bond. As the  $\pi$  bond starts to form, the carbon-halogen bond starts to break: the  $\pi$  bond-making helps to supply energy for the carbon-halogen bond-breaking. Halogen is being *pushed out* in what, from the viewpoint of the  $\alpha$ -carbon, is a kind of nucleophilic attack, not unlike an  $S_N2$  reaction. (We shall return to this point in Sec. 7.22.)

This mechanism, we said, was proposed for second-order elimination. Second-order kinetics is, of course, exactly what must be observed for a reaction proceeding by the E2 mechanism. The rate-determining step—the *only* step—involves reaction between a molecule of alkyl halide and a molecule of base, and its rate is proportional

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{RX}][\text{:B}]$$

**E2 reaction**  
Second-order kinetics

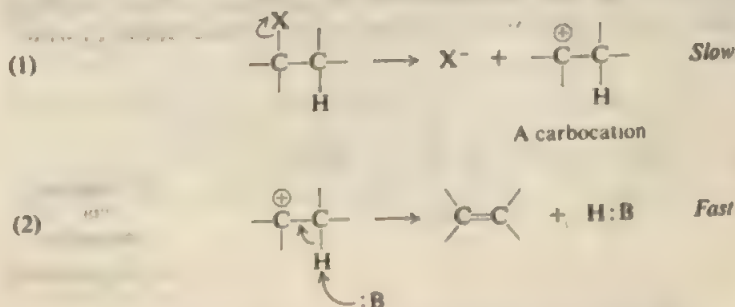
to the concentration of both reactants. This mechanism was named E2, that is, *elimination, bimolecular*, because in the rate-determining step two molecules undergo covalency changes.

## 7.15 The E1 mechanism

For the reaction proceeding by first-order kinetics, Hughes and Ingold proposed the **E1 mechanism**. In this mechanism the electronic changes—the bond-breaking and bond-making—are the same as in E2; here, however, they are taking place, not simultaneously, but one after the other. Where E2 involves a single step, E1 involves two steps. In step (1) the substrate undergoes slow heterolysis to form halide ion and a carbocation. In step (2) the carbocation rapidly loses a proton to the base and forms the alkene.

### E1

#### Unimolecular elimination



We recognize step (1) as identical to the first step in  $S_N1$ . In the second step of  $S_N1$  the carbocation combines with a nucleophile to yield the substitution product.

in step (2) of E1 the carbocation reacts with the base to yield the elimination product.

Here, as always, the reactions of a carbocation have a common end: *they provide a pair of electrons to complete the octet of the electron-deficient carbon*. In  $S_N1$  these electrons are an unshared pair on the nucleophile; in E1 they are the pair originally shared by the proton, and made available—through  $\pi$  bond formation—by departure of the proton.

On the basis of step (2), we can add another reaction to our list of Sec. 6.26.

**A carbocation may:**

- (a) combine with a nucleophile;
- (b) rearrange to a more stable carbocation;
- (c) eliminate a proton to form an alkene.

This list will continue to grow (Sec. 8.20).

The E1 reaction follows first-order kinetics just as an  $S_N1$  reaction does, and for exactly the same reason. The overall rate of reaction is determined only by the slow first step. Except for the many necessary solvent molecules, this *rate-determining* step involves only substrate, and its rate depends only on the concentration of substrate. The rate of an E1 reaction is independent of base concentration

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{RX}]$$

**E1 reaction**  
First-order kinetics

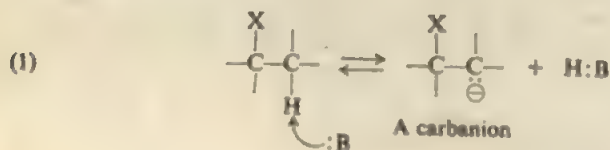
because the reaction *whose rate we are measuring* does not involve base. Again it is the rate of formation of carbocations that determines how fast a reaction goes. Once formed, the carbocations rapidly react to yield product—in this case, the alkene.

This mechanism was named E1, that is, *elimination, unimolecular*, because in the rate-determining step only one molecule, substrate, undergoes covalency change.

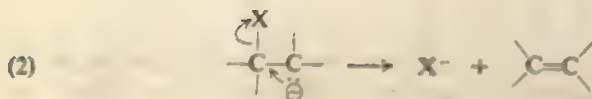
The intermediate here is the same as that in  $S_N1$ , and it is formed in the same way. This means that, for secondary substrates, heterolysis probably depends upon nucleophilic assistance by the solvent (Sec. 6.31), and the intermediate is what we have called a nucleophilically solvated cation.

## 7.16 Elimination via carbanions

So far we have discussed two mechanisms for dehydrohalogenation: E2, in which halogen and hydrogen leave the substrate at the same time; and E1, in which halogen leaves first. Now, let us look at a third possibility, a mechanism in which hydrogen leaves first.



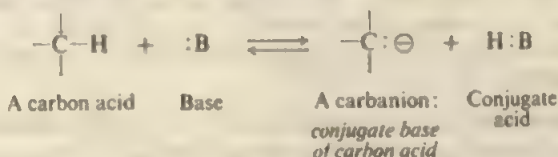
**Elimination via carbanion**  
Seldom observed



Such a mechanism involves two steps. In step (1) the substrate loses a proton to the base to form a negatively charged particle, a *carbanion*. In step (2) this carbanion loses halide ion to yield the alkene.

Step (1) is an acid base reaction in the Lowry-Brønsted sense, with the substrate acting as an acid. *Since the acidic proton is attached to carbon, the substrate is called a carbon acid.* Like most carbon acids, it is extremely weak.

The products of step (1) are the conjugate acid of the base—water, say, from the base, hydroxide ion—and the conjugate base of the carbon acid, a carbanion. *A carbanion is the conjugate base of a carbon acid.*

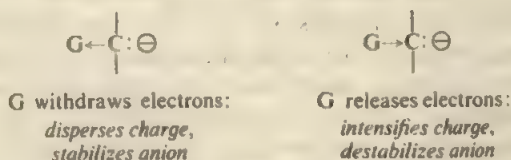


Elimination via carbanions is often called *E1cB*, *elimination, unimolecular, of the conjugate base*.

Let us look briefly at these particles called carbanions. They are our third class of reactive intermediates, and rival carbocations in their importance to organic synthesis.

Like a carbocation, a carbanion is a charged particle; and, like a carbocation, a carbanion is stabilized by dispersal of the charge (Sec. 6.24). But, since the charge is negative instead of positive, the polar effects of substituents are exactly opposite to those we saw for carbocations: a carbanion is stabilized by electron-withdrawing substituents, and destabilized by electron-releasing substituents.

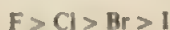
#### Carbanion stability



Now, consider the formation of a carbanion by the loss of a proton from a carbon acid. In the transition state, the C—H bond is partly broken, and carbon has partly gained the negative charge it is to carry in the carbanion. Electron-withdrawing groups tend to disperse this developing negative charge; the same factor that stabilizes the carbanion stabilizes the incipient carbanion in the transition state.  $E_{\text{act}}$  is lowered, and reaction is speeded up. Thus, *the more stable the carbanion, the faster we expect it to be formed.*

Halogens are electronegative elements and tend to withdraw electrons. This electron-withdrawing tendency decreases along the sequence

**Electron-withdrawing  
tendency**



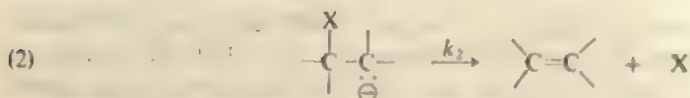
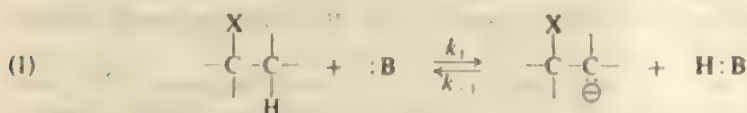
with fluorine, the most electronegative halogen—indeed, the most electronegative of all elements—withdrawing electrons the most powerfully. Of alkyl halides, then,



we would expect alkyl fluorides to form the most stable carbanions, and to form them the fastest.

The kind of polar effect we have just described for the halogens is an *inductive effect*: withdrawal or release of electrons by a substituent, acting through the molecular framework or through space (Sec. 6.24). But there is another kind of polar effect, the *resonance effect*, due to delocalization of electrons through overlap of certain orbitals. Resonance effects, we shall find, can lead to more extensive dispersal of charge and hence greater stabilization of carbanions than inductive effects. Indeed, the more stable and more easily prepared carbanions—the ones on which the importance of carbanions chiefly rests—owe their stability to the fact that most of the charge is carried, not by carbon, but by other, more electronegative atoms—atoms better qualified than carbon to accommodate the charge. It is for this reason that carbanions are defined, not as particles in which carbon carries negative charge—it may actually carry very little—but on the quality they have in common, of being the conjugate bases of carbon acids.

Now, what kind of kinetics would we expect from elimination proceeding via carbanions? Let us look more closely at the two steps of this mechanism.



Step (2) is shown as irreversible, in accordance with the facts: alkenes are inert toward halide ions.

Step (1), formation of the carbanion, is shown as reversible, as must be true *in principle* for an acid base reaction involving proton-transfer. Once formed, a carbanion has either of two reactions open to it: the reversal of step (1), or step (2). It can either regain a proton to regenerate the substrate, or lose halide to form the alkene. Whether or not carbanions are formed reversibly *in practice*—in the reaction system we are discussing—depends on the relative rates of these two reactions open to the carbanion: that is, on the relative sizes of  $k_{-1}$  and  $k_2$ . Let us see what kinetics we would expect in each of these situations.

Consider first that carbanions are formed **reversibly**, that is, that  $k_{-1}$  is much larger than  $k_2$ . Carbanions are in equilibrium with base and substrate, and every so often a carbanion loses a halide ion to form alkene.



Step (2) is the slow step, and its rate determines the overall rate of reaction. The rate of (2) is proportional to the concentration of the carbanion.

$$\text{rate} = k_2[\text{carbanion}]$$

But the concentration of the carbanion is determined by the position of the equilibrium of step (1).

$$K_{\text{eq}} = \frac{[\text{carbanion}][\text{H}:\text{B}]}{[\text{RX}][:\text{B}]} \quad \text{from which} \quad [\text{carbanion}] = \frac{K_{\text{eq}}[\text{RX}][:\text{B}]}{[\text{H}:\text{B}]}$$

As we see, [carbanion] is proportional to the concentrations of the two substances that generate it, substrate and base. It is also inversely proportional to the concentration of the conjugate acid of the base; this, however, is generally the solvent, whose concentration remains constant. Under these conditions, then, reaction with reversible carbanion formation would follow second-order kinetics.

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{RX}][:\text{B}]$$

where

$$k = \frac{k_2 K_{\text{eq}}}{[\text{H}:\text{B}]}$$

Next let us assume that carbanions are formed **irreversibly**, that is, that  $k_2$  is much larger than  $k_{-1}$ . The substrate slowly loses a proton to form a carbanion; every carbanion then rapidly loses halide to yield the alkene.



$$k_2 \gg k_{-1} \quad \text{Carbanions formed irreversibly}$$

Step (1) is the slow, rate-determining step, and the rate of (2) has no effect on the rate at which substrate is consumed. The rate of (1) depends upon the concentrations of the two substances involved in that step, and the kinetics would be second-order.

$$\text{rate} = k_1[\text{RX}][:\text{B}]$$

Thus, whether carbanions are formed reversibly or irreversibly, reaction would lead to second-order kinetics. On the basis of kinetics alone, we cannot decide between E2 and these mechanisms involving carbanions, and must consider all of them as possible mechanisms for second-order elimination.

### 7.17 Evidence for the E2 mechanism. Absence of rearrangement

Now let us look at the evidence that shows which of these mechanisms is actually followed under a particular set of conditions. Let us begin with the kind of system we have already described: dehydrohalogenation by a concentrated alcoholic solution of a strong base. Under these conditions, we have seen, reaction follows second-order kinetics.

Elimination reactions that

(a) *follow second-order kinetics*

also:

(b) *are not accompanied by rearrangements;*

(c) *show a large hydrogen isotope effect;*

(d) *are not accompanied by hydrogen exchange;* and

(e) *show a large element effect.*

The mechanism that is consistent with all these facts, and is therefore generally accepted for the second-order reaction, is the E2 mechanism. It is the most important of the mechanisms that we have described, since it is the principal path followed, not only by dehydrohalogenation, but by 1,2-elimination in general. Let us take up each piece of evidence: let us see how it supports the E2 mechanism and helps to rule out the alternative mechanisms.

First, these reactions (a) *follow second-order kinetics*. As we have seen (Sec. 7.14), this is consistent with the E2 mechanism. It is *not* consistent with the E1 mechanism, which must lead to first-order kinetics.

Next, these second-order eliminations (b) *are not accompanied by rearrangements*. This fact, too, is consistent with the E2 mechanism, whose single step simply provides no opportunity for rearrangement. Like the kinetics, this fact is inconsistent with the E1 mechanism, since carbocations, as we know (Sec. 6.26), are particularly prone to rearrangement.

But facts (a) and (b) are both consistent with elimination via carbanions. Such a reaction—whether carbanions are formed reversibly or irreversibly—would lead to second-order kinetics. Carbanions are *not* prone to the rearrangements so characteristic of carbocations.

### 7.18 Evidence for the E2 mechanism. Isotope effects

Now we come to the third piece of evidence for the E2 mechanism. These second-order eliminations (c) *show a large hydrogen isotope effect*. To understand what this means, we must first learn what an isotope effect is and what, in general, it signifies.

Different isotopes of the same element have, by definition, the same electronic configuration, and hence similar chemical properties. This similarity is the basis of the isotopic tracer technique (Sec. 3.29): one isotope does pretty much what another will do, but, from its radioactivity or unusual mass, can be traced through a chemical sequence.

Yet different isotopes have, also by definition, different masses, and because of this their chemical properties are *not identical*: the same reactions can occur but at somewhat different rates (or, for reversible reactions, with different positions of equilibrium). A difference in rate (or position of equilibrium) due to a difference in the isotope present in the reaction system is called an **isotope effect**.

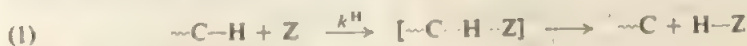
Theoretical considerations, which we cannot go into, supported by much



experimental evidence, lead to the conclusion: *if a particular atom is less tightly bound in the transition state of a reaction than in the reactant, the reaction involving the heavier isotope of that atom will go more slowly.* The hydrogen isotopes have the greatest proportional differences in mass: deuterium (D) is twice as heavy as protium (H), and tritium (T) is three times as heavy. As a result, hydrogen isotope effects are the biggest, the easiest to measure, and—because of the special importance of hydrogen in organic chemistry—the most often studied. (If you doubt the importance of hydrogen, look at the structure of almost any compound in this book.)

One kind of reaction in which an atom is less tightly bound in the transition state than in the reactant is a reaction in which a bond to that atom is being broken. Isotope effects due to the breaking of a bond to the isotopic atom are called *primary isotope effects*. They are in general the biggest effects observed for a particular set of isotopes.

In this book we shall be concerned with **primary hydrogen isotope effects**, which amount to this: *a bond to protium (H) is broken faster than a bond to deuterium (D).* For many reactions of this kind,

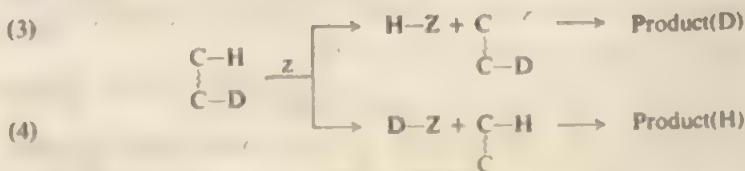


in which hydrogen is abstracted as an atom, positive ion, or negative ion, deuterium isotope effects ( $k^{\text{H}}/k^{\text{D}}$ ) as large as 5 to 8 (at room temperature) have been observed; that is to say, the reaction is 5 to 8 times as fast for ordinary hydrogen as for deuterium. (Tritium isotope effects,  $k^{\text{H}}/k^{\text{T}}$ , are about twice as large as deuterium isotope effects.)

These differences in rate can be measured in a variety of ways. In some cases, the rates of the two individual reactions (1) and (2) can be measured directly and the rate constants  $k^{\text{H}}$  and  $k^{\text{D}}$  compared. Often, however, it is more feasible to use our familiar method of competition (Sec. 3.22) in either of two ways.

In *intermolecular* competition, a mixture of labeled and unlabeled reactants compete for a limited amount of reagent; reactions (1) and (2) thus go on in the same mixture, and we measure the relative amounts of  $\text{H}-\text{Z}$  and  $\text{D}-\text{Z}$  produced. (Sometimes, larger amounts of the reagent Z are used, and the relative amounts of the two reactants—ordinary and labeled—left *unconsumed* are measured; the less reactive will have been used up more slowly and will predominate. The relative rates of reaction can be calculated without much difficulty.)

In *intramolecular* competition, a single reactant is used which contains several equivalent positions, some labeled and some not:



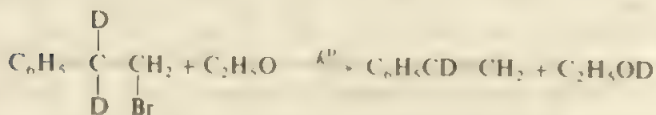
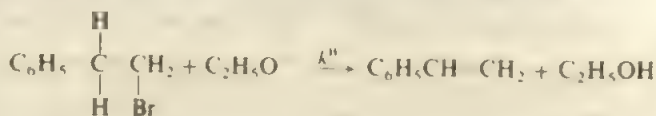
One can then measure either the relative amounts of  $\text{H}-\text{Z}$  and  $\text{D}-\text{Z}$ , or the relative amounts of the D-containing product formed by reaction (3) and the H-containing product formed by reaction (4).

**Problem 7.8** (a) When excess toluene- $\alpha$ - $d$  ( $C_6H_5CH_2D$ ) was photochemically monochlorinated at  $80^\circ$  with 0.1 mol of chlorine, there were obtained 0.0212 mol DCl and 0.0868 mol HCl. What is the value of the isotope effect  $k^H/k^D$  (per hydrogen atom, of course)? (b) What relative amounts of DCl and HCl would you expect to get from  $C_6H_5CHD_2$ ?

The presence—or *absence*—of an isotope effect for a particular reaction can be of enormous significance to the organic chemist. As our first example of how this concept can be used, let us return to our original topic, the evidence supporting the E2 mechanism.

Let us consider the substituted alkyl halide 2-phenylethyl bromide,  $C_6H_5CH_2CH_2Br$ . The *phenyl* group,  $-C_6H_5$ , is derived from the aromatic compound *benzene*,  $C_6H_6$ . (Phenyl is often represented by  $-Ph$ .) When attached to an alkyl halide, the group exerts certain effects on the reactions undergone by the halide, including elimination; we shall point out these effects as we encounter them, and discuss later how they arise (Chap. 16). But for the present we need only know that the  $-C_6H_5$  group itself is inert toward the reagents that bring about elimination, and can be considered as just another substituent.

The labeled 2-phenylethyl bromide,  $C_6H_5CD_2CH_2Br$ , was prepared. This compound, we see, contains deuterium at both  $\beta$ -positions, the positions from which hydrogen must be lost in elimination. The rate constant ( $k^D$ ) for its dehydrobromination by sodium ethoxide was measured, and compared with the rate constant ( $k^H$ ) for reaction of ordinary (unlabeled) 2-phenylethyl bromide under the same conditions. It was found that  $k^H/k^D = 7$ , that is, the compound containing



$$k^H/k^D = 7$$

protium reacts *seven times as fast* as the compound containing deuterium. An isotope effect of this size, we saw, is what we would expect for the breaking of a carbon-hydrogen bond.

Now, what is significant about the existence of an isotope effect here? Not that it shows the breaking of a  $\beta$ -carbon-hydrogen bond, we already know that, just from the products of reaction. What is significant is that it shows the breaking of a  $\beta$ -carbon-hydrogen bond *in a rate-determining step*.

This fact is, of course, consistent with the E2 mechanism—a  $\beta$ -carbon-hydrogen bond is broken in the only—and, hence, rate-determining—step.

To appreciate the significance of this point, consider what would be expected of a reaction proceeding by the E1 mechanism. Here, too, a  $\beta$ -carbon-hydrogen bond is broken, and protium would be lost faster than deuterium—but from the carbocation, in the second, fast step, whose rate has no effect on the overall rate of reaction. The rate is determined by the first step, formation of the carbocation, and this step does not involve the breaking of a carbon-hydrogen bond. (There would

be an isotope effect on this first step, but it would be a secondary isotope effect, and much smaller than the primary effect observed for the E2 reaction.) The overall rate of reaction by E1, as measured by the disappearance of the substrate, would show no primary isotope effect.

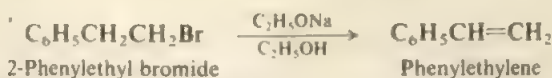
Now, what would we expect of a reaction proceeding via carbanions? If carbanions are formed irreversibly, the first step is rate-determining; this, of course, involves loss of the proton to base, and would occur more slowly for deuterium than protium. Thus, a primary isotope effect would be expected.

(If carbanions are formed reversibly, the deuterium would be rapidly exchanged for protium, as shown in the following section, and any isotope effect would be obscured.)

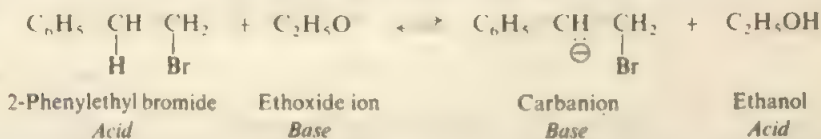
## 7.19 Evidence for the E2 mechanism. Absence of hydrogen exchange

These second-order eliminations (d) *are not accompanied by hydrogen exchange*. Experiments have been carried out aimed specifically at detecting the reversible formation of carbanions. In these experiments, deuterium was used as a label: this time, not to test for isotope effects, but simply as a tracer, to test for *hydrogen exchange*. Let us see how this approach works.

Consider the dehydrohalogenation of 2-phenylethyl bromide. This substrate was selected because, for reasons that we shall see (Sec. 16.17), the phenyl group

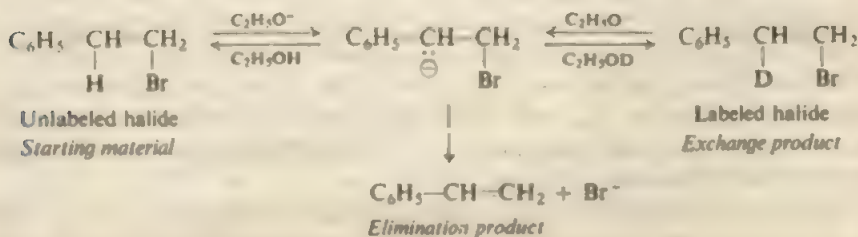


should strongly favor formation of carbanions. Dehydrohalogenation was brought about by sodium ethoxide,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{ONa}$ , in ethanol solution. Formation of carbanions



would involve conversion of the base, ethoxide ion, into its conjugate acid, ethanol, which is the solvent.

Now, in the actual experiment, the substrate was ordinary (unlabeled) 2-phenylethyl bromide, and the solvent was *labeled* ethanol,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OD}$ . Consider what would happen if carbanions were formed—and formed reversibly. Most of them would regain hydrogen many times to regenerate starting material before eventually losing halide ion to yield alkene. And they would regain this hydrogen *from the solvent*, the conjugate acid of the base and, in fact, the only acid around of





appreciable acidity. But nearly all the molecules of solvent are  $C_2H_5OD$ , not  $C_2H_5OH$ ; and so, in this reversal, the carbanion would be almost certain to gain a *deuteron*, not a proton.

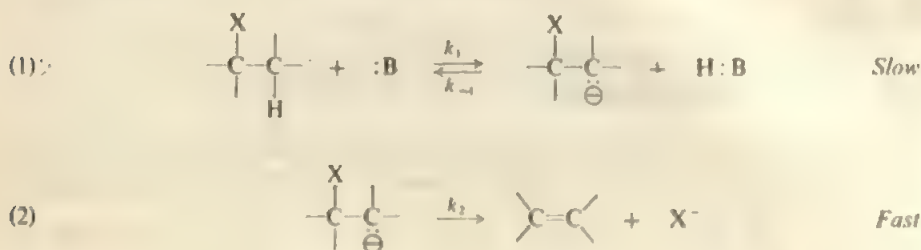
Reaction was allowed to run until about half the substrate had been converted into alkene. Reaction was then interrupted, and unconsumed 2-phenylethyl bromide was recovered. Mass spectrometric analysis showed that it contained *no deuterium*. Similar experiments with other systems have given similar results. Typical second-order elimination reactions (d) *are not accompanied by hydrogen exchange*.

Fact (d) thus rules out the mechanism in which carbanions are formed reversibly. It is, of course, consistent with the E2 mechanism, which provides no opportunity for hydrogen exchange.

## 7.20 Evidence for the E2 mechanism. The element effect

These second-order eliminations (e) *show a large element effect*.

Let us look at the two steps of the carbanion mechanism again. The absence of hydrogen exchange discussed in the preceding section does not completely rule out such a mechanism. It simply shows that *if* carbanions are formed, they are



$k_2 \gg k_{-1}$  Carbanions formed irreversibly

formed *irreversibly*: that they lose halide ions much faster than they regain protons. That is,  $k_2$  would have to be much larger than  $k_{-1}$ .

Now, if this were so, we saw (Sec. 7.16), step (1) would be rate-determining, and the rate of step (2) would have no effect on the overall rate of reaction. Depending upon conditions, step (2) might go faster or slower, but it really would not matter; step (1) would be the bottle-neck and its rate would determine how fast elimination occurs.

So, at this point in our analysis, we are left with two possible mechanisms for second-order elimination: the E2 mechanism, and a carbanion mechanism whose rate-determining step is formation of the carbanion. To choose between these two, we must recognize this key difference: the carbon-halogen bond is being broken in the rate-determining step of E2, but not in the rate-determining step of the carbanion mechanism. The ease of breaking the carbon-halogen bond should therefore affect the rate of elimination by E2, but not the rate of elimination by the (irreversible) carbanion mechanism.

Now, to tell whether or not a particular bond is being broken in the rate-determining step, we might consider looking for an isotope effect, as was done in

studying the cleavage of the carbon-hydrogen bond (Sec. 7.18). But here that would be a more difficult job. We are not dealing with loss of hydrogen, whose isotopes differ two- and three-fold in mass. We are dealing with loss of heavier elements like chlorine, whose isotopes differ by only a few percent, with correspondingly small differences in the ease with which bonds are broken.

It has been pointed out by Joseph Bunnett (University of California, Santa Cruz) that evidence on this point has existed for many years in what he has named the *element effect*.

Heterolytic bond dissociation energies (Table 1.3, p. 21) show that the strength of carbon-halogen bonds follows the sequence

**Heterolytic bond  
dissociation energy**



In both  $S_N2$  and  $S_N1$  reactions the carbon-halogen bond is broken in the rate-determining step. And, as expected, reactivity in nucleophilic substitution follows the sequence,

**Reactivity toward  
 $S_N2$  or  $S_N1$**



with the rate of reaction reflecting the ease of breaking the carbon-halogen bond. The differences in rate here are quite large: alkyl bromides, for example, react 25 to 50 times as fast as the corresponding alkyl chlorides. These element effects are, in fact, much larger than the isotope effects observed for the breaking of bonds to protium and deuterium—as, indeed, they *should* be, in view of the much greater differences in bond strength.

Now, in these elimination reactions the reactivity of alkyl halides follows the same sequence as for substitution,

**Reactivity toward E2**



and with element effects of just about the same size: alkyl bromides react 40 to 60 times as fast as the chlorides, and to take the full range of reactivity alkyl iodides react more than 25,000 times as fast as the fluorides. Clearly, the rate of breaking the carbon-halogen bond *does* affect the overall rate of elimination.

Leaving-group isotope effects have, in fact, been measured for elimination reactions, and found to be of a size consistent with considerable bond-breaking in the transition state.

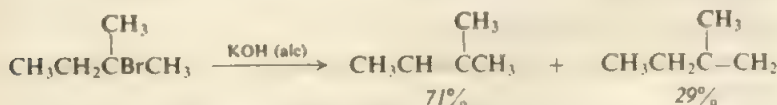
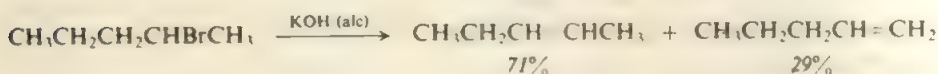
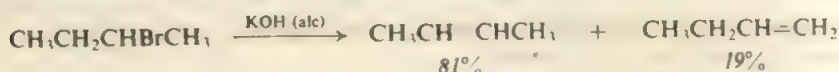
Thus, only the E2 mechanism fits all the facts, and is generally accepted as the principal pathway followed by 1,2-elimination.

## 7.21 The E2 reaction: orientation and reactivity

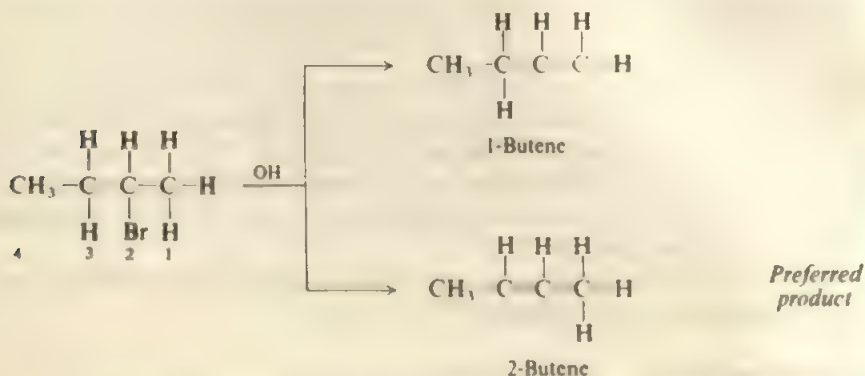
So far we have been concerned with the evidence that second-order dehydrohalogenation proceeds by the E2 mechanism. Now let us look at some other characteristics of this reaction.

Dehydrohalogenation, we have seen (Sec. 7.12), often yields a mixture of isomeric alkenes. In such a case, which isomer, if any, will predominate? Study of many reactions has shown that one isomer generally does predominate, and that it

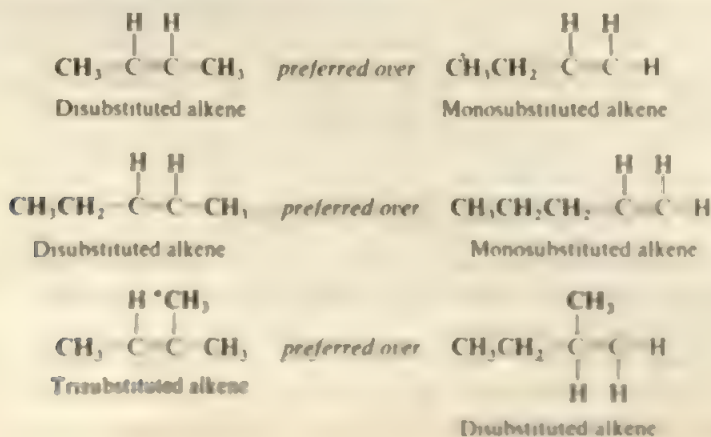
is possible to predict which isomer this will be—that is, to predict the *orientation* of elimination—on the basis of molecular structure.



Take, for example, *sec*-butyl bromide. Attack by base at any one of three  $\beta$ -hydrogens (those on C-1) can lead to the formation of 1-butene; attack at either of two  $\beta$ -hydrogens (on C-3) can lead to the formation of 2-butene. We see that 2-butene is the preferred product *despite* a probability factor of 3:2 working against its formation.



If we focus our attention, not on the hydrogen being lost, but on the alkene being formed, we see the following. The preferred product, 2-butene, is a *disubstituted* alkene, whereas 1-butene is a *monosubstituted* alkene; that is, in 2-butene there are two alkyl groups (two  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ 's) attached to the doubly-bonded carbons, and in 1-butene there is only one alkyl group ( $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ ).



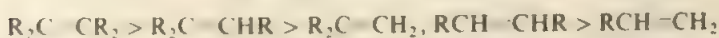


In the other examples we see that a disubstituted alkene is preferred over a monosubstituted alkene, and a trisubstituted alkene is preferred over a disubstituted alkene.

These form part of a pattern first observed by the Russian chemist Alexander Saytzeff (University of Kazan), who in 1875 formulated a "rule" which can be summarized as: *in dehydrohalogenation the preferred product is the alkene that has the greater number of alkyl groups attached to the doubly-bonded carbon atoms.*

Now, dehydrohalogenation is an irreversible reaction, so that once again orientation is determined by the relative rates of competing reactions. More 2-butene than 1-butene is obtained from *sec*-butyl bromide because 2-butene is formed faster than 1-butene. The alkene with the greater number of alkyl groups is the preferred product because it is formed faster than alternative alkenes. What the Saytzeff rule gives us, then, is a sequence showing the relative rates of formation of alkenes.

#### Ease of formation of alkenes



In Section 8.4 we shall find evidence that the stability of alkenes follows exactly the same sequence.

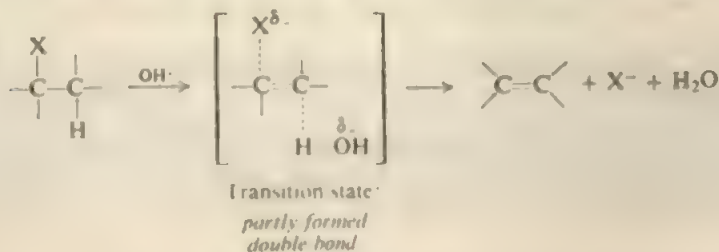
#### Stability of alkenes



On this basis we can recast Saytzeff's rule to read: **in dehydrohalogenation, the more stable the alkene, the faster it is formed.** Predominant formation of the more stable isomer is called **Saytzeff orientation**.

In this form the rule is more generally useful, since it applies to cases where alkene stability is determined by structural features other than alkyl substituents (Secs. 9.12 and 16.23). Furthermore, this formulation leads directly to the factor actually at work.

Consider the transition state for the E2 reaction. Bonds to hydrogen and the leaving group are partly broken, and the double bond is partly formed. The transition state has thus acquired considerable *alkene character*. Factors that



stabilize the alkene—alkyl groups in these cases—also stabilize the incipient alkene in the transition state.  $E_{\text{act}}$  is lowered, and the alkene is formed faster. Once again, as in the formation of free radicals and of carbocations, the product character of

the transition state is a major factor in determining its stability, and hence the rate of reaction.

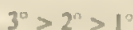
But the alkene character of the transition state is not the only factor at work in elimination and, as a result, orientation is not always Saytzeff. This is particularly true when substrates other than alkyl halides and alkyl sulfonates are involved. In Sec. 24.6, we shall look at another kind of orientation, *Hofmann*, and at the factors that lie behind it, too. We shall see that orientation in elimination is the net result of the working of several factors—often opposing each other—and that the Saytzeff orientation is generally observed for elimination from alkyl halides and sulfonates simply because a transition state where one factor, alkene stability, is dominant.

Alkene stability not only determines *orientation* of dehydrohalogenation, but also is an important factor in determining the *reactivity* of an alkyl halide toward elimination, as shown below, for example, for reaction with sodium ethoxide in ethanol at 55°. We see that, even after we have allowed for the number of  $\beta$ -hydrogens, the relative rate *per hydrogen* increases as the alkene becomes more highly substituted.

Substrate	Product	Relative rates	Relative rates per H
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{Br} \longrightarrow$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}_2$	1.0	1.0
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Br} \longrightarrow$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$	3.3	5.0
$\text{CH}_3\text{CHBrCH}_3 \longrightarrow$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$	9.4	4.7
$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CBr} \longrightarrow$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$	120	40

As one proceeds along a series of alkyl halides from 1° to 2° to 3°, the structure by definition becomes more branched at the carbon carrying the halogen. This increased branching has two results: it provides a greater number of  $\beta$ -hydrogens for attack by base, and hence a more favorable probability factor toward elimination; and it leads to a more highly branched, more stable alkene, and hence a more stable transition state and lower  $E_{\text{act}}$ . As a result of this combination of factors, **in E2 dehydrohalogenation the order of reactivity of alkyl halides is**

**Reactivity of RX toward E2**



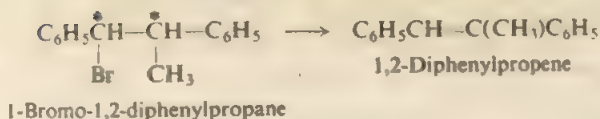
We can, however, look deeper than this in analyzing the structures of substrates. A substrate may be of the same class as another and yet yield a more highly branched alkene, and, in general, we expect it to be more reactive. This is usually true even though the number of  $\beta$ -hydrogens is smaller, where the two factors oppose each other, alkene stability tends to outweigh the probability factor.

**Problem 7.9** Predict the major product of each dehydrohalogenation in Problem 7.5, page 286.

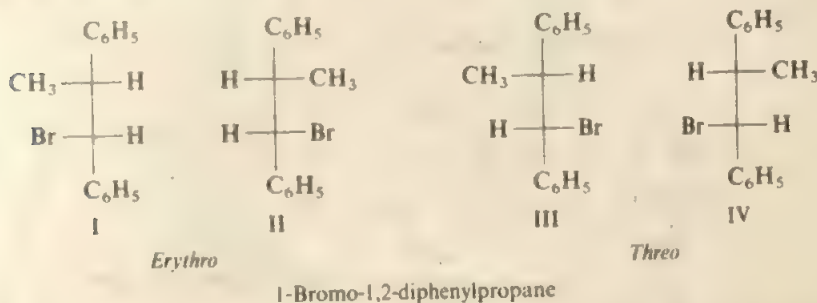
**Problem 7.10** Predict the order of reactivity toward E2 dehydrohalogenation of the following compounds: ethyl bromide, *n*-propyl bromide, isobutyl bromide, neopentyl bromide. Explain your answer in detail.

## 7.22 The E2 reaction: stereochemistry, *syn*- and *anti*-Elimination

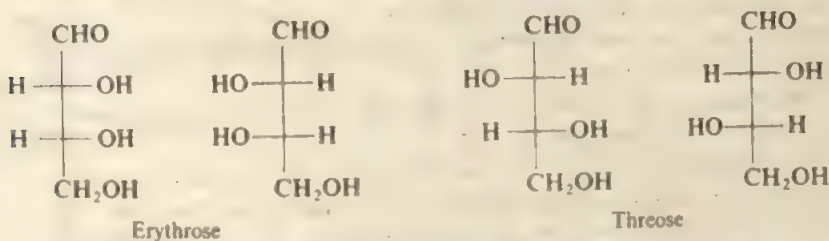
Consider dehydrohalogenation of the alkyl halide 1-bromo-1,2-diphenylpropane. This compound contains two chiral centers, and we can easily show that it



can exist as two pairs of enantiomers: I and II, called *erythro*; and III and IV, called *threo*. Each pair is diastereomeric with the other pair.

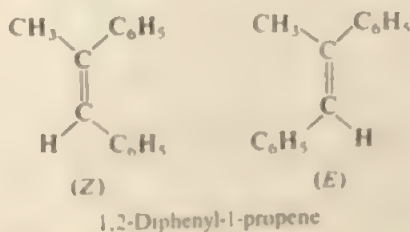


The designations *erythro* and *threo* are very commonly used by organic chemists to distinguish between certain diastereomers containing two chiral carbons. They are derived from the names of diastereomeric aldoses (Carbohydrates I, Chap. 28), *erythrose* and *threose*. If we draw cross formulas for these aldoses so that the biggest groups are at top and bottom,



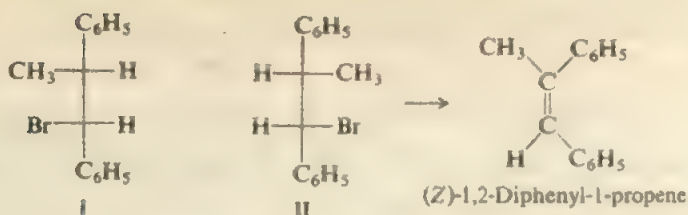
the H's and OH's lie on the two sides. In erythrose, we see, the similar substituents (the two H's, say) lie on the same side of the formula; in threose they lie on opposite sides. In the same way, in the 1-bromo-1,2-diphenylpropanes with the large C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>'s at top and bottom the H's are on the same side in the *erythro* isomers, and on opposite sides in the *threo* isomers.

The product, too, exists as stereoisomers—a pair of geometric isomers, *Z* and *E*.

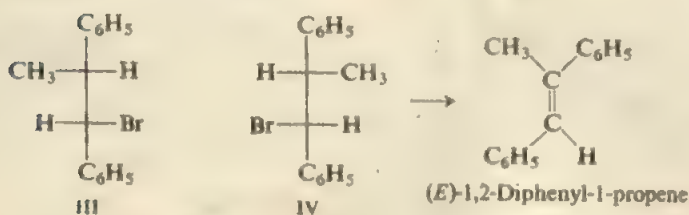


If we start with, say, the *erythro* halide, I and II, which of the stereoisomeric alkenes do we get? A mixture of both of them? *No*. The *erythro* halide yields *only Z*-alkene. Since the reaction yields only one diastereomer of a possible pair, it is *stereoselective* (Sec. 6.17).



*Erythro*

1-Bromo-1,2-diphenylpropane

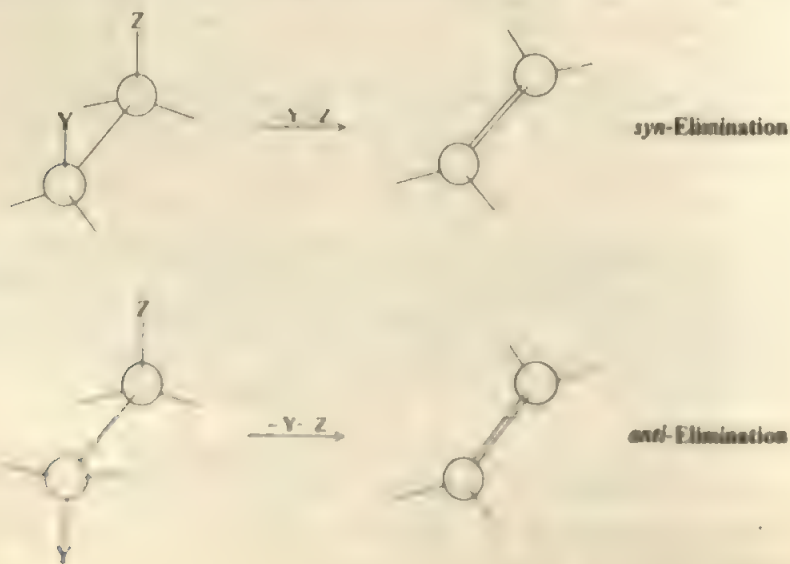
*Threo*

1-Bromo-1,2-diphenylpropane

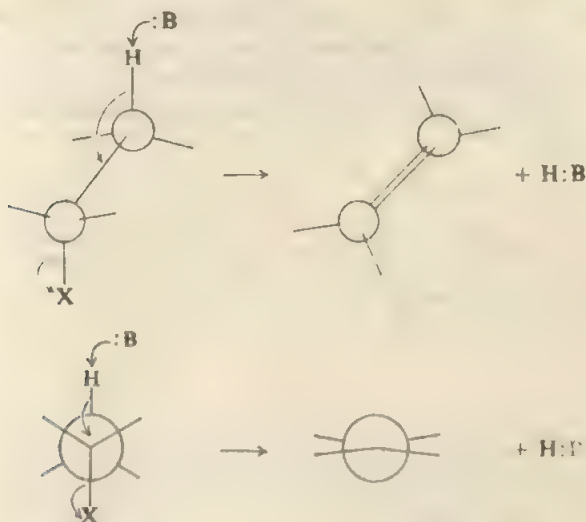
Now, suppose that we start with *threo* halide, III and IV. Does this, too, yield the *Z*-alkene? *No*. The *threo* halide yields *only* the *E*-alkene. Just which product we obtain depends on which stereoisomers we start with. Since stereochemically different molecules react differently—they yield stereoisomeric products—the reaction is *stereospecific* (Sec. 6.17).

Other studies have shown that these results are typical: *E2 elimination is both stereoselective and stereospecific*.

To describe the kind of stereospecificity that may be observed in elimination reactions, the concepts of **syn**-elimination and **anti**-elimination are used. These terms are not the names of specific mechanisms. They simply indicate the stereochemical facts: that the eliminated groups are lost from the same face (**syn**) or opposite faces (**anti**) of the developing double bond.

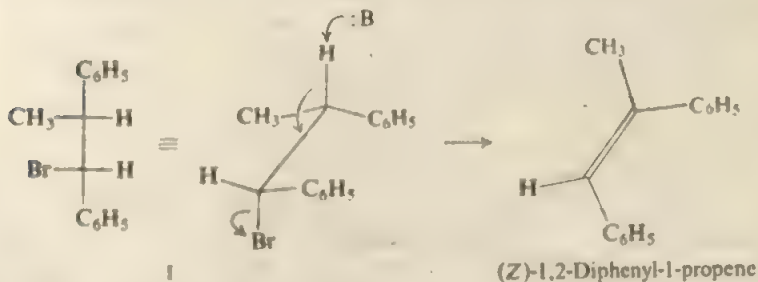


As this example and many others show, E2 elimination typically involves *anti*-elimination: in the transition state the hydrogen and the leaving group are located in the *anti* relationship (Sec. 3.5) as contrasted to *gauche* or *eclipsed* (Fig. 7.6).

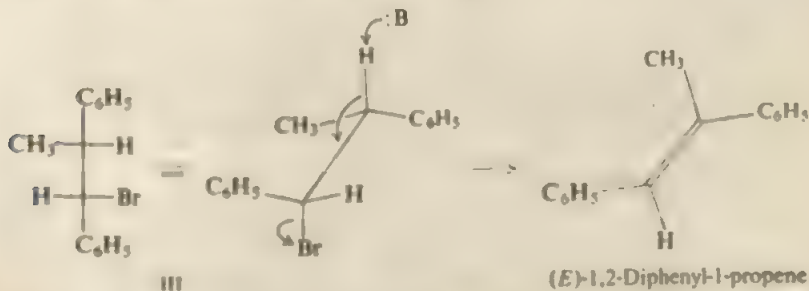


**Figure 7.6.** The E2 reaction of alkyl halides: *anti*-elimination. Hydrogen and the leaving group, X, are as far apart as possible, in the *anti* relationship.

Thus, diastereomer I (or its enantiomer, II) gives the *Z*-alkene.



and diastereomer III (or its enantiomer, IV) gives the *E*-alkene:



Earlier (Sec. 7.14), we likened E2 to  $S_N2$  in that halide is pushed out of the molecule by a kind of nucleophilic attack; the "nucleophile" is the  $\beta$ -carbon which, using the electron

pair left behind by the departing proton, begins to form a bond—the  $\pi$  bond—to the  $\alpha$ -carbon. On this basis, the preference for *anti*-elimination indicates that this "nucleophilic attack" takes place preferentially at the face of the  $\alpha$ -carbon most remote from the departing halide—the familiar *back-side attack* of nucleophilic substitution.

The preference for *anti*-elimination from halides can be very strong. To see this is so, we must turn from open-chain compounds to cyclic compounds. In cyclohexane rings, 1,2-substituents can take up the *anti* conformation only by occupying axial positions; this, in turn, is possible only if they are *trans* to each other (see Fig. 7.7).

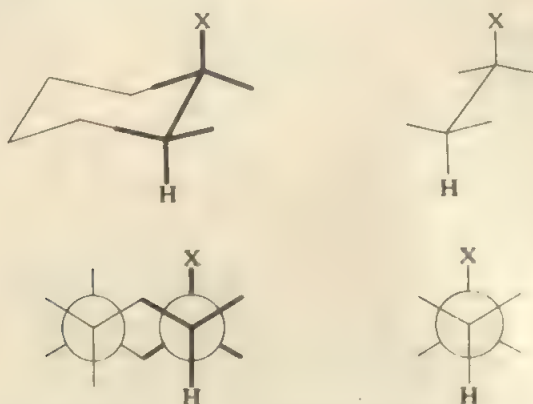
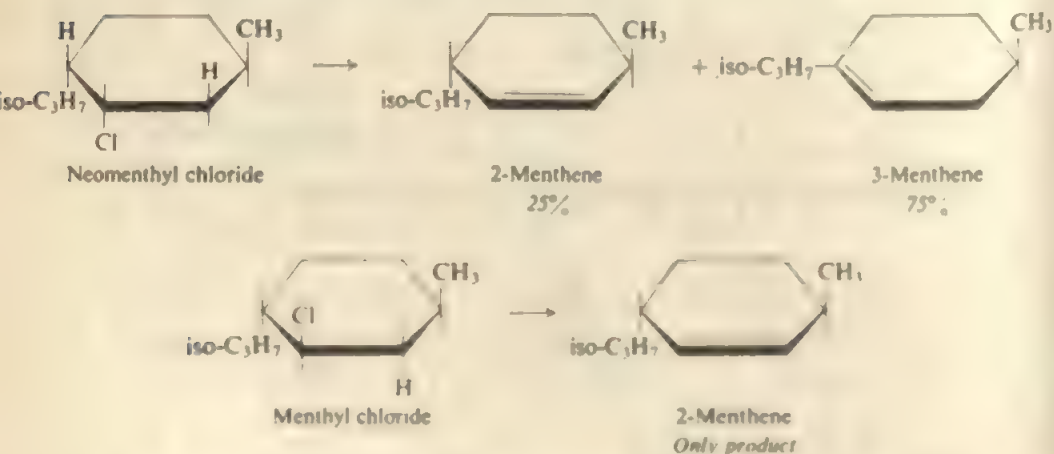


Figure 7.7. Only *trans*-1,2-substituents can assume the *anti* relationship.

To take a specific example: E2 elimination converts *neomenthyl chloride* into a mixture of 75% 3-menthene and 25% 2-menthene. This is about what we might expect, the more stable—because more highly substituted—3-menthene being the preferred product. But, in marked contrast, E2 elimination converts the diastereomeric *menthyl chloride* exclusively into the less stable 2-menthene.



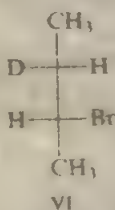
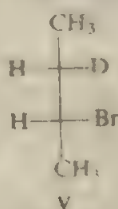
How are we to account for these differences in behavior? In *neomenthyl chloride* there is a hydrogen on either side of the chlorine which is *trans* to the chlorine, and which can take up a conformation *anti* to it. Either hydrogen can be eliminated, and the ratio of products is determined in the usual way, by the relative



stabilities of the alkenes being formed. In menthyl chloride, on the other hand, only one hydrogen is *trans* to the chlorine, and it is the only one that is eliminated, despite the fact that this yields the less stable alkene.

It is clear that E2 reactions can also proceed by *syn*-elimination: in the transition state the hydrogen and leaving group are in the *eclipsed* (or *gauche*) relationship. Although uncommon for alkyl halides, *syn*-elimination is often observed for quaternary ammonium salts (Sec. 23.6) and sometimes for alkyl sulfonates. On electronic grounds, the most stable transition states seem to be those in which the hydrogen and leaving group are *periplanar* (in the same plane) to permit overlap of incipient *p* orbitals in the partially-formed double bond. Of the two *periplanar* eliminations, the *anti* is probably easier than the *syn*—other things being equal. But various factors may throw the stereochemistry one way or the other. Conformational effects enter in, and the degree of carbanion character; the stereochemistry is affected by the strength of the base and by its bulk and the bulk of the leaving group. Ring systems present special situations: it is difficult for *cis*-1,2-substituents to become *syn*-*periplanar* in cyclohexanes, but easy in cyclopentanes.

**Problem 7.11** When treated with  $C_2H_5OK$  in  $C_2H_5OH$ , diastereomer V (and its



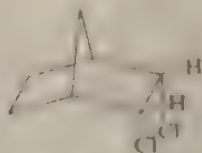
enantiomer) gave *cis*-2-butene without loss of deuterium and *trans*-2-butene with loss of deuterium. diastereomer VI (and its enantiomer) gave *trans*-2-butene without loss of deuterium. How do you account for these findings? What is the stereochemistry of elimination here?

**Problem 7.12** Of the various isomeric 1,2,3,4,5,6-hexachlorocyclohexanes, one isomer undergoes dehydrohalogenation by base much more slowly than the others. Which isomer is probably the unreactive one, and why is it unreactive?

**Problem 7.13** Using models, suggest explanations for the following.

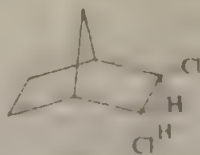
(a) Attached to a doubly-bonded carbon, phenyl greatly stabilizes an alkene (Sec. 16.23), and hence exerts a powerful effect on the orientation of elimination. On E2 elimination with  $t\text{-BuOK}$ ,  $t\text{-BuOH}$ , both *cis*- and *trans*-2-phenylcyclopentyl tosylates give 1-phenylcyclopentene as the only alkene, the *cis*-isomer reacts nine times as fast as the *trans*.

(b) On E2 elimination with  $n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{ONa}$ ,  $n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{OH}$  to give 2-chloronorbornene, VIII reacts about 100 times as fast as its diastereomer, VII.



VII

*endo-cis*-2,3-Dichloronorbornane



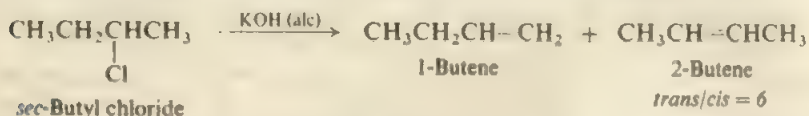
VIII

*trans*-2,3-Dichloronorbornane

### 7.23 The E2 mechanism: stereochemistry. Conformational effects

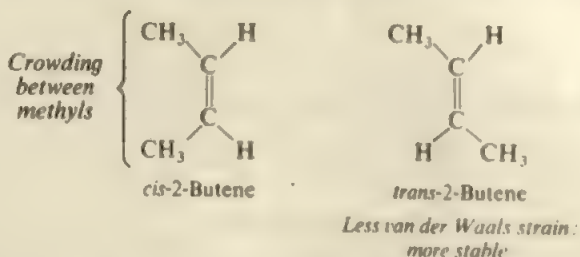
Superimposed on the basic pattern of *anti*-elimination for the E2 reaction can be another stereochemical factor: *conformational effects*. Let us examine these effects closely, since they are typical of the kind of thing we may expect to encounter in a wide variety of reactions.

Consider, for example, dehydrohalogenation of *sec*-butyl chloride. This follows Saytzeff orientation, and yields considerably more 2-butene than 1-butene.



But 2-butene exists as a pair of geometric isomers, and we find that, of these, the *trans*-isomer greatly exceeds the *cis*, by a factor of 6:1. So our problem now is: how do we account for the preferential formation of *trans* over *cis*?

The *trans*-2-butene, we shall find (Sec. 8.4), is more stable than the *cis*. This difference in stability is attributed to a difference in van der Waals strain: in the *cis*-isomer the two bulky methyl groups are crowded together on the same side of the molecule; in the *trans*-isomer they lie on opposite sides. So here, as in orientation,

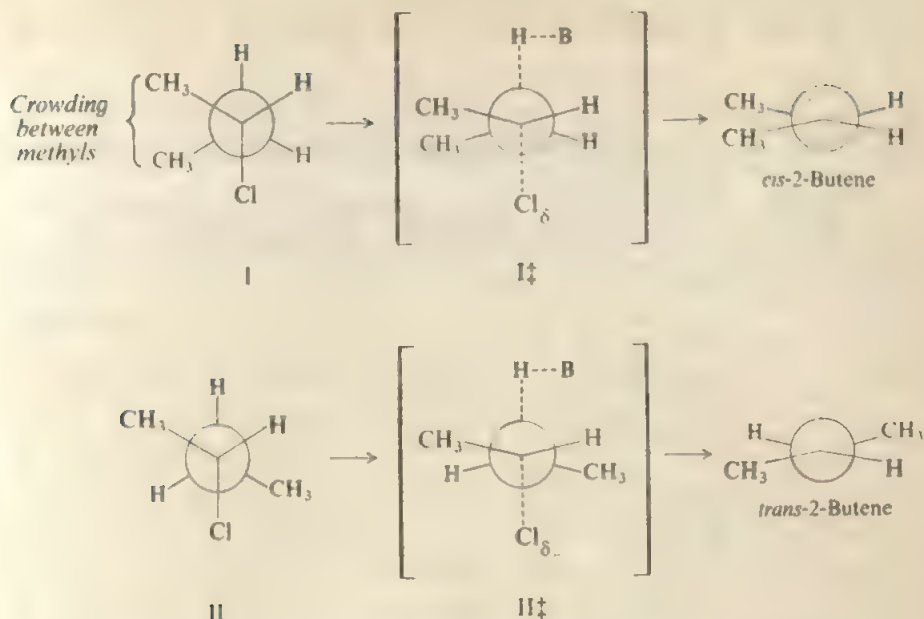


the preferred product of elimination is the more stable alkene: more stable this time, not because of the position of the double bond in the chain, but because of the geometry of the molecule.

Now, the predominance of *trans*-alkene in the product means that it is formed *faster* than the *cis*-alkene. We are dealing once more with relative rates of reaction, and must again compare transition states for the competing reactions.

Elimination is *anti*. To yield the *cis*-alkene, reaction must pass through transition state I‡, derived from conformation I of the substrate, in I‡, as in conformation I, the methyl groups are on the same side of the molecule—as they will be in the product (Fig. 7.8). To yield the *trans*-alkene, reaction must pass through transition state II‡, derived from conformation II of the substrate, in II‡, as in conformation II, the methyl groups are on opposite sides of the molecule—again, as they will be in the product.

We have, then, the following situation. The reactant exists as conformers, two of which can give rise to different products via different transition states. The  $E_{act}$  for the reaction, elimination, is very large (20–25 kcal) compared with the  $E_{int}$  for interconversion of the conformers, which requires only rotation about a single bond. In a situation like this, it can be shown mathematically, the relative rates of formation of the two products are independent of the relative populations of the two conformers, and depends only on the relative stabilities of the two transition states.



**Figure 7.8.** Conformational effects on *anti*-elimination: E2 dehydrohalogenation of *sec*-butyl chloride. Crowding between methyl groups on same side of molecule makes transition state I $\ddagger$  less stable than transition state II $\ddagger$ .

Let us, then, compare transition states I $\ddagger$  and II $\ddagger$ . In I $\ddagger$  the bulky methyl groups are crowded together on the same side of the molecule: at least as close together as in conformer I and, to the extent that the double bond has formed and the molecule started to flatten, even closer together, as in the *cis*-alkene itself. In II $\ddagger$ , by contrast, the methyls lie in roomier positions on opposite sides of the molecule. Because of greater van der Waals strain, I $\ddagger$  is less stable than II $\ddagger$ .  $E_{\text{act}}$  for formation of the *cis*-isomer is greater than for formation of the *trans*-isomer; the *cis*-isomer is formed more slowly and hence in lesser amount. The same factor, van der Waals strain, that determines the relative stabilities of the products also determines the relative stabilities of the transition states leading to their formation.

We have already discussed (Sec. 4.27) the alternative kind of situation, where reaction is much easier and faster than interconversion of conformers. There, we saw, the relative rates of competing reactions—and hence the ratio of products—were determined only by the relative populations of the conformers. If that were the case in E2 elimination, we would still expect preferential formation of the *trans*-isomer, since II is more stable than I for the same basic reason that II $\ddagger$  is more stable than I $\ddagger$ . But the preference for *trans* should be less marked, since the crowding in I is less than in I $\ddagger$ , where flattening of the molecule has begun.

**Problem 7.14** When neomenthyl chloride undergoes E2 elimination, 2-menthene makes up one-fourth of the reaction product (Sec. 7.22). Since menthyl chloride can yield *only* 2-menthene, we might expect it to react at one-fourth of the rate of neomenthyl chloride. Actually, however, it reacts only 1/200 as fast as neomenthyl chloride—that is, only 1/50 as fast as we would have expected. How do you account for this unusually slow elimination from menthyl chloride? (*Hint.* Use models.)

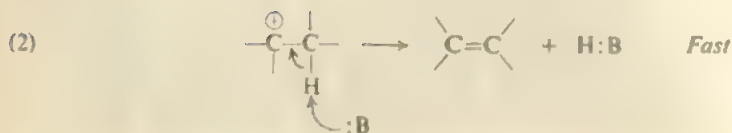
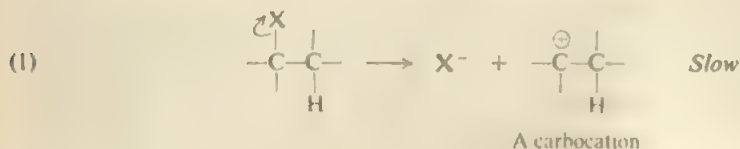


## 7.24 Evidence for the E1 mechanism

So far our focus has been on E2, the mechanism Hughes and Ingold proposed for dehydrohalogenation with second-order kinetics. But dehydrohalogenation can also proceed by first-order kinetics, and for this reaction Hughes and Ingold proposed another mechanism, the E1.

This mechanism, we saw (Sec. 7.15), involves two steps: slow heterolysis of the alkyl halide (step 1) to form the carbocation, which then rapidly loses a proton to the base (step 2) to yield the alkene.

### E1 Unimolecular elimination

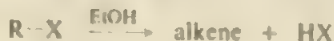


Reaction by E1 follows first-order kinetics because step (1) is rate-determining, and the rate of this step depends only on [substrate]. The overall rate is independent of [base] because base does not enter into the reaction until the second, fast step.

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{RX}]$$

**E1 reaction**  
First-order kinetics

But consider the situation in which elimination is brought about, not by an added base, but by the solvent itself: by ethanol, say. For all the kinetics tells us,



reaction *could* be taking place by the E2 mechanism, with the solvent abstracting a proton in the single, rate-determining step. Yet the kinetics would not reveal this: the concentration of the solvent does not change throughout the reaction, and we would observe first-order kinetics — *pseudo* first-order kinetics, but indistinguishable from true first-order kinetics. (The observed rate constant,  $k_{\text{obs}}$ , would actually

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{RX}][\text{EtOH}] = k_{\text{obs}}[\text{RX}]$$

where

$$k_{\text{obs}} = k[\text{EtOH}]$$

be a true rate constant multiplied by the concentration of the solvent.) The situation is strictly analogous to that in solvolysis (Sec. 6.31): in fact, it is under solvolytic conditions that the E1 mechanism is most commonly followed. Clearly, in this situation **other evidence is needed**

Besides the kinetics, then, what is the evidence for the E1 mechanism? The elimination reactions that

(a) follow first-order kinetics

also

(b) are not accompanied by a primary hydrogen isotope effect;

(c) show the same effect of structure on reactivity as  $S_N1$  reactions do; and

(d) where the structure permits, are accompanied by rearrangement.

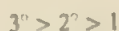
Let us examine each piece of evidence.

These first-order reactions (b) are not accompanied by a primary hydrogen isotope effect. Such an isotope effect, we have seen (Sec. 7.18), would be expected in elimination only if the  $\beta$ -carbon hydrogen bond is broken in the rate-determining step. It is expected in E2, with its single step; and a large, primary isotope effect is in fact observed in second-order eliminations. It is not expected in E1, where the proton is lost in the second, fast step (see Sec. 7.15). And it is a fact that a primary isotope effect is not observed in first-order eliminations.

Next, first-order eliminations (c) show the same effect of structure on reactivity as  $S_N1$  reactions do. To understand this evidence, we need only recall something we recognized earlier (Sec. 7.15): that E1 involves exactly the same first step as  $S_N1$ .

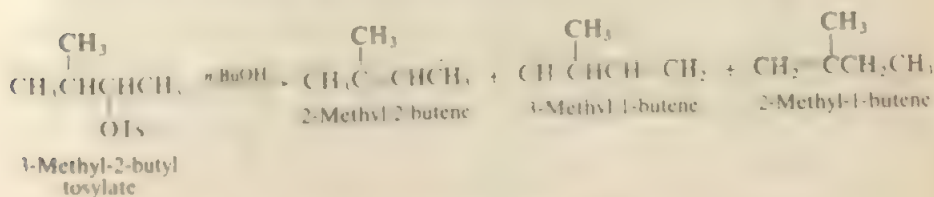
Since this first step is rate-determining, it follows that the order of reactivity of alkyl halides in E1 must be the same as in  $S_N1$ . Experiment has shown that this is so.

### Reactivity in E1

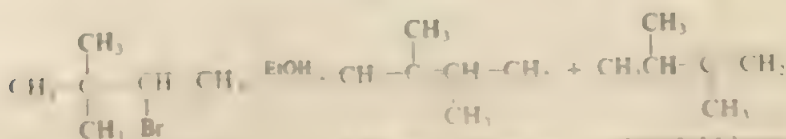


In E1, as in  $S_N1$ , reactivity is determined by the rate of formation of the carbocation; and this, we have seen (Sec. 6.25), depends upon the stability of the carbocation.

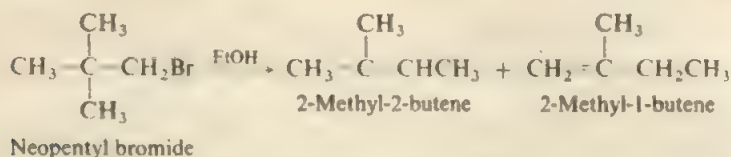
Where the structure permits, these first-order eliminations (d) are accompanied by rearrangement. Again we turn to the fact that the first step is the same as in  $S_N1$ . Since this first step yields carbocations, it follows that E1 should be susceptible to rearrangements, and of exactly the same kind as those characteristic of  $S_N1$  (Sec. 6.26). This, too, is confirmed by experiment. The double bond appears in places remote from the carbon that held the leaving group:



Sometimes the carbon skeleton is changed:

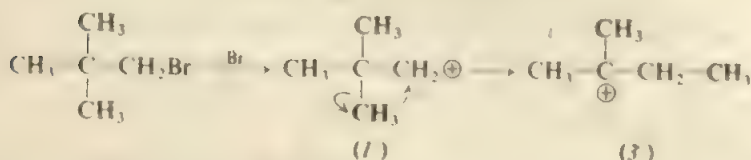
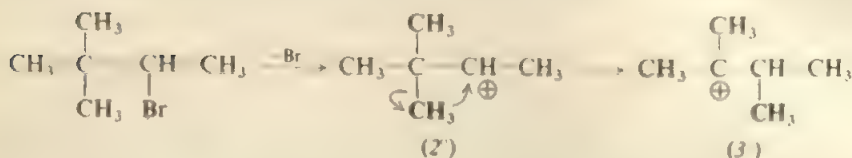
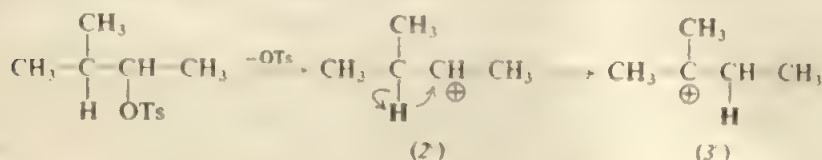


Alkenes are even obtained from substrates that do not contain a  $\beta$ -hydrogen:

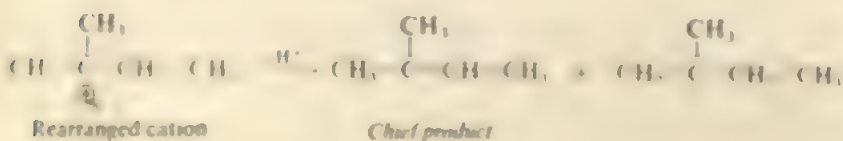
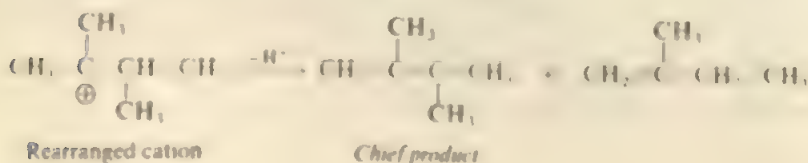
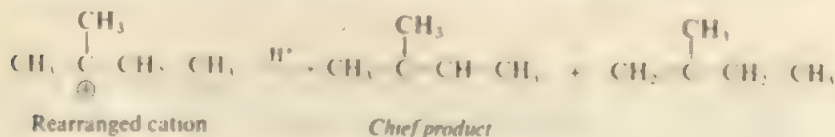


In each case it is evident that if, indeed, the alkene is formed from a carbocation, *it is not the same carbocation that was initially formed from the substrate*. And, of course, it is not.

In each of these examples the initially formed carbocation can rearrange by a 1,2-shift to form a more stable carbocation. And—as we saw for  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  reactions (Sec. 6.26)—when this can happen, it *does*.



It is this new carbocation that loses the proton—in a perfectly straightforward way from the  $\beta$ -position—to yield the “unexpected” alkenes.





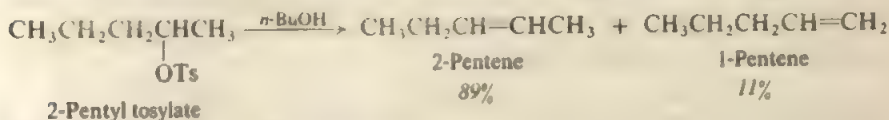
We can begin to see the pattern of rearrangements that runs through reactions of many different types, the pattern first glimpsed by Meerwein (p. 226) in 1922, and which led him to conceive of the carbocation as a reactive intermediate.

**Problem 7.15** When heated with catalytic amounts of strong acids like  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  or  $\text{HClO}_4$ , alcohols are converted into alkenes. The order of reactivity of alcohols is *tert*-butyl > isopropyl > ethyl. The alcohol 3,3-dimethyl-2-butanol gives 2,3-dimethyl-2-butene together with a smaller amount of 2,3-dimethyl-1-butene.

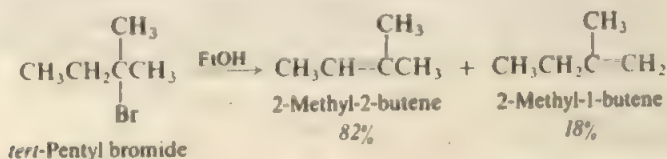
Assuming that these observations represent typical behavior (they do), write all steps in a possible mechanism for dehydration of alcohols.

## 7.25 The E1 reaction: orientation

Elimination by E1 shows strong Saytzeff orientation. That is to say, when more than one alkene can be formed, the more highly branched—the *more stable*—alkene is the preferred product. Thus a disubstituted alkene is preferred over a monosubstituted,

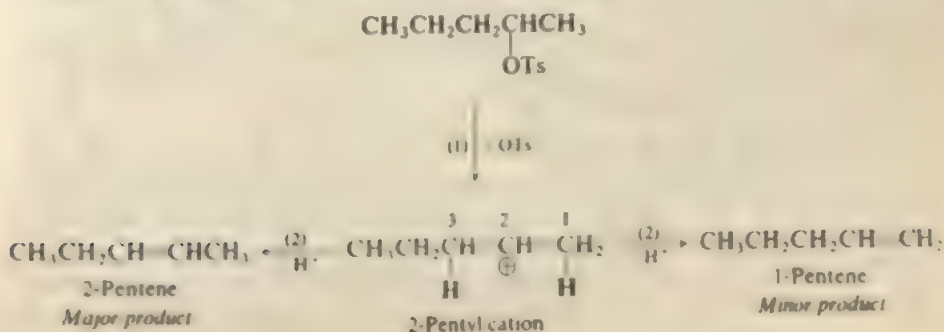


and a trisubstituted over a disubstituted.



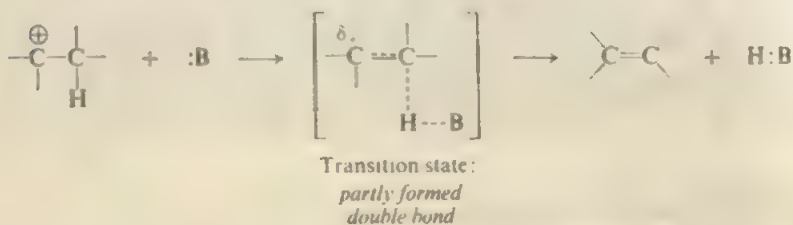
How do we account for this kind of orientation? In other reactions that we have taken up so far, orientation and reactivity have gone hand-in-hand. Both are determined by relative rates of reaction, and *in the same step*: abstraction of a hydrogen by a chlorine atom, say, or the formation of a double bond by concerted loss of a proton and the leaving group.

But here, in E1, we find a difference. Orientation and reactivity are still determined by relative rates of reaction but *in different steps*. How fast the substrate reacts is determined by the rate of step (1). But which alkene is produced is clearly determined by which  $\beta$ -proton is lost faster from the carbocation in step (2). The 2-pentyl cation, for example, can lose either a proton from C-3 to form



2-pentene or a proton from C-1 to form 1-pentene. There is a competition, and more 2-pentene is obtained because 2-pentene is formed faster.

Let us examine the transition state, then, for this product-determining step. The carbon-hydrogen bond is partly broken, and the double bond is partly formed.



The transition state has acquired *alkene character*. As in E2, factors that stabilize the alkene also stabilize the incipient alkene in the transition state.  $E_{\text{act}}$  is lowered, and the alkene is formed faster.

When rearrangement occurs in E1, we still predict orientation by Saytzeff's rule. But now we must consider the loss of  $\beta$ -protons from the rearranged cations as well as from the cations initially formed.

**Problem 7.16** When 2-methyl-3-pentyl tosylate was heated in *n*-butyl alcohol with no added base, the following alkenes were obtained in the proportions indicated: 2-methyl-2-pentene (80%), 4-methyl-2-pentene (11%), 2-methyl-1-pentene (9%). How do you account for (a) the formation of each of these products, (b) their relative proportions, and (c) the fact that the 4-methyl-2-pentene was entirely the *trans*-isomer?

## 7.26 Elimination: E2 vs. E1

How can we tell which mechanism, E2 or E1, is likely to operate under a particular set of conditions?

First, let us look at the effect of the nature of the alkyl group of the substrate. As one proceeds along the sequence 1, 2, 3, reactivity by both mechanisms increases, although for different reasons. Reactivity by E2 increases chiefly because of the greater stability of the more highly branched alkenes being formed. Reactivity by E1 increases because of the greater stability of the carbocations being formed in the rate-determining step. Thus, except that it is very difficult for primary substrates even to form carbocations, we can expect no abrupt shift in mechanism due simply to changes in the alkyl group.

But if we turn to the role played by the other reagent, the base, we find a striking difference between the two mechanisms: in E2, base takes part in the rate-determining step; in E1, it does not. (We have already (Sec. 6.30) encountered an analogous competition between a bimolecular ( $S_N2$ ) and a unimolecular ( $S_N1$ ) mechanism, and what follows will come as no surprise to us.)

The rate of E2 depends upon the *concentration* of the base; the rate of E1 does not. The rate of E2 depends upon the *nature* of the base; a stronger base pulls a proton away from the substrate faster. The rate of E1 is independent of the nature of the base, stronger or weaker, the base waits until the carbocation is formed.

For a given substrate, then, the more concentrated the base, or the stronger the base, the more E2 is favored over E1. Under the conditions typically used to

bring about dehydrohalogenation—a concentrated solution of a strong base—the E2 mechanism is the path taken by elimination. In general, the E1 mechanism is encountered only with secondary or tertiary substrates, and in solutions where the base is either in low concentration or weak—typically, where the base is the solvent.

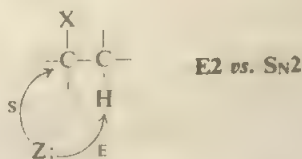
**Problem 7.17** The behavior of menthyl chloride described in Section 7.22 is that observed to react with sodium ethoxide in ethanol. By contrast, when menthyl chloride is heated in ethanol in the absence of added base, it yields both *o*-menthene (68%) and *l*-menthene (32%). How do you account for this difference in behavior?

**Problem 7.18** Dehydrohalogenation of isopropyl bromide, which requires several hours of refluxing in alcoholic KOH, is brought about in less than a minute at room temperature by  $t\text{-BuO}^-\text{K}^+$  in DMSO. Suggest a possible explanation for this.

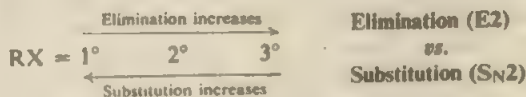
## 7.27 Elimination vs. substitution

The most commonly used substrates for base-promoted 1,2-elimination, we have said, are alkyl halides and alkyl sulfonates. These are, of course, the same compounds that also serve as substrates for nucleophilic substitution—and for a very good reason: both reactions require substrates with good leaving groups. Furthermore, the reagents required to bring about the two kinds of reactions, bases and nucleophiles, are similar—indeed, are very often the same reagent. Both reagents are electron-rich; bases are nucleophilic, and nucleophiles are basic. It follows, then, that there will nearly always be—in principle, at least—*competition* between substitution and elimination.

Let us consider first the bimolecular reactions,  $S_N2$  and E2. Both reactions result from attack on the substrate by the reagent  $\text{:Z}$ . Acting as a nucleophile, it attacks carbon to bring about substitution; acting as a base, it attacks hydrogen to bring about elimination.



Among substrates, we have seen that the order of reactivity by E2 is  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ$ . In  $S_N2$ , we recall (Sec. 6.18), the order of reactivity is just the opposite. As one proceeds along the series  $1^\circ, 2^\circ, 3^\circ$ , then, reactivity by E2 increases, and reactivity by  $S_N2$  decreases.



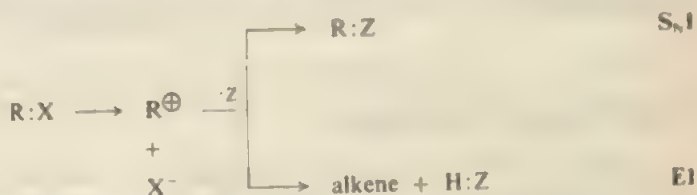
Primary substrates undergo elimination slowest and substitution fastest; tertiary substrates undergo elimination fastest and substitution slowest. *Where bimolecular substitution and elimination are competing reactions, the proportion of elimination increases as the structure of the substrate is changed from primary to secondary to tertiary.* Many tertiary substrates yield almost exclusively alkenes under these conditions.



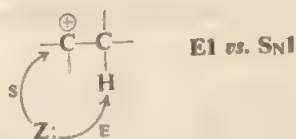


A less polar solvent tends to favor elimination, so does a higher temperature. Thus, hot alcoholic KOH is the classical reagent for dehydrohalogenation; a lower temperature and the presence of the more polar water in the solvent tend to increase the proportion of the substitution product, the alcohol.

Now let us turn to the competition between the unimolecular reactions,  $S_N1$  and  $E1$ . Both, as we have seen, have the same first step, heterolysis to form the carbocation. It is at the second step that the reaction path forks: one branch leads to substitution; the other leads to elimination.



in this second step there is attack by the nucleophilic, basic reagent  $\text{:Z}$ , which is typically the solvent. This time the attack is not on the substrate itself, but on the carbocation. Attack at carbon brings about substitution; attack at hydrogen brings about elimination.



Now, the proportions of products that are ultimately obtained—how much substitution product, how much alkene—are determined by the relative rates of these alternative second steps. How fast a carbocation loses a proton, we concluded earlier (Sec. 7.25), depends upon the stability of the alkene being formed—for simple alkenes, upon how branched it is. The rate of elimination from a carbocation, therefore, follows the sequence  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ$ . We would expect the rate of substitution—the combining with a nucleophile—to follow the opposite sequence,  $1^\circ > 2^\circ > 3^\circ$ , with the least stable being the shortest-lived. (In fact, we have seen (Sec. 6.31), heterolysis of even secondary substrates generally involves nucleophilic assistance from the solvent. The cation formed has clinging to its back side a solvent molecule; nucleophilic substitution has, to a degree, already begun.)

The facts agree with our analysis: in the unimolecular reactions tertiary substrates give the highest proportion of elimination. In aqueous ethanol at  $80^\circ$ , for example, *tert*-butyl bromide gives 19% of the alkene, whereas isopropyl bromide gives only 5%.

What we are faced with, then, is this. When we want the product of a substitution reaction, elimination is a nuisance to be avoided. But we cannot always do this. With some nucleophiles, we are faced with the fact that an acceptable yield can be obtained only with primary and possibly secondary substrates, and that tertiary substrates give virtually all elimination. But when we want an alkene, elimination is what we are trying to bring about. To do this, we generally try to drive reaction toward bimolecular elimination: we use a solvent of low polarity, and a high concentration of a strong base.

**Problem 7.19** Account in detail for the difference in the percentage of alkene obtained within each set of compounds on treatment with aqueous ethanol at 80°: (a) isopropyl bromide, 5%; *sec*-butyl bromide, 9%; (b) 2-bromopentane, 7%; 3-bromopentane, 15%; (c) *tert*-butyl bromide, 19%; *tert*-pentyl bromide, 36%.

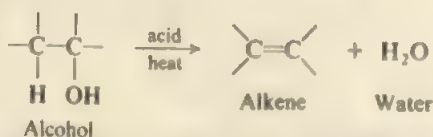
**Problem 7.20** The reaction of *tert*-butyl chloride in water to yield (chiefly) *tert*-butyl alcohol is not appreciably affected by dissolved sodium fluoride; in DMSO, however, sodium fluoride brings about rapid formation of isobutylene. How do you account for this contrast?

## 7.28 Dehydration of alcohols

So far, we have been dealing with the kind of 1,2-elimination that is promoted by *base*. Now let us turn to 1,2-elimination that is catalyzed by *acid*: the *dehydration of alcohols*. Despite the drastic change in reaction conditions, we shall find, dehydration is fundamentally not very different from the elimination we have already discussed.

An alcohol is converted into an alkene by **dehydration**: *elimination of a molecule of water*.

### Dehydration: 1,2-elimination of H<sub>2</sub>O

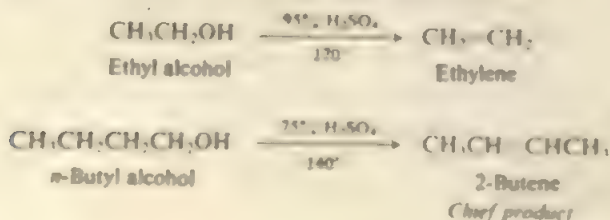


Dehydration requires the presence of an acid and the application of heat. It is generally carried out in either of two ways: (a) by heating the alcohol with sulfuric or phosphoric acid; or (b) by passing the alcohol vapor over a catalyst, commonly alumina (Al<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>), at high temperatures. (The alumina functions as an acid: either as a Lewis acid or, through —OH groups on its surface, as a Lowry-Brønsted acid.)

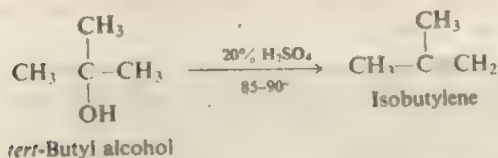
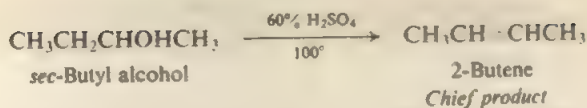
The various classes of alcohols differ widely in ease of dehydration, the order of reactivity being

**Ease of dehydration of alcohols**  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ$

The following examples show how these differences in reactivity affect the experimental conditions of the dehydration. (Certain tertiary alcohols are so prone to dehydration that they can be distilled only if precautions are taken to protect the system from the acid fumes present in the ordinary laboratory.)

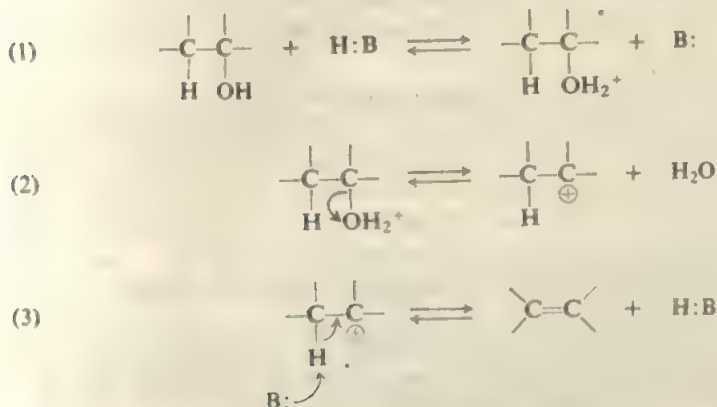






For dehydration of secondary and tertiary alcohols the following mechanism is generally accepted. Step (1) is a fast acid-base reaction between the alcohol and

#### Dehydration



the catalyzing acid which gives the protonated alcohol and the conjugate base of the acid. In step (2) the protonated alcohol undergoes heterolysis to form the carbocation and water. In step (3) the carbocation loses a proton to the base to yield alkene.

In steps (2) and (3) of this mechanism we recognize a kind of E1 elimination with the protonated alcohol as substrate. Step (1) is simply the fast, reversible prelude that produces the actual substrate.

Let us look at the facts about dehydration and see how they are accounted for by this mechanism.

**Dehydration is acid-catalyzed.** Acid is needed to convert the alcohol into the protonated alcohol, which can then undergo heterolysis to lose the weakly basic water molecule. In the absence of acid, heterolysis would require loss of the strongly basic hydroxide ion: a process which, as we have seen (Sec. 6.32), is so difficult that it seldom if ever happens. Acid transforms the very poor leaving group,  $\text{—OH}$ , into the very good leaving group,  $\text{—OH}_2^+$ .

We spoke of dehydrohalogenation as being *base-promoted*: base is consumed by the reaction, and must be present in molar amounts. We speak of dehydration as being *acid-catalyzed*: acid is not consumed and, for the more reactive alcohols, need be present in only trace amounts. This fact is consistent with the mechanism: the acid used in step (1) is regenerated in step (3). Take, for example, dehydration in aqueous sulfuric acid. The acid  $\text{H}:\text{B}$  is the hydronium ion,  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ ; the conjugate

base :B is water. In step (1)  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$  loses a proton to form  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; in step (3)  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  is the base that takes a proton from the carbocation and, in doing this, is reconverted into  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ .

We notice here the fundamental similarity of dehydration to dehydrohalogenation. Once the alcohol has been protonated—and this requires an acidic medium—a base plays its customary essential role in the elimination process by abstracting a proton.

**Problem 7.21** In the dehydration of *tert*-butyl alcohol by the addition of a drop of concentrated sulfuric acid to the dry alcohol, what is the principal base :B of our mechanism? What is the acid H:B? Write equations to show exactly what happens.

**Dehydration is reversible.** Unlike base-promoted 1,2-elimination, this elimination is reversible. As we shall soon see, acid catalyzes the hydration of alkenes to give alcohols. In agreement with this fact, each step of the mechanism is shown as reversible. Under the conditions of dehydration the alkene, being quite volatile, is generally driven from the reaction mixture, and thus equilibrium (3) is shifted to the right. As a consequence the entire reaction sequence is forced toward elimination.

Now, according to the **principle of microscopic reversibility**, a reaction and its reverse follow exactly the same path but in opposite directions. (The lowest pass across a mountain ridge from one side is also the lowest from the other side.) On this basis, dehydration of alcohols must involve exactly the same steps—but in reverse—that are involved in hydration of alkenes. Any evidence, therefore, that is gathered about the mechanism of hydration—and there is a good deal (Secs. 8.12–8.15)—adds to our understanding of the mechanism of dehydration.

**Problem 7.22** Hydration of alkenes involves *electrophilic addition*, the most important class of reaction undergone by alkenes. Using hydration as your example, show all steps in the mechanism of this fundamental reaction.

The order of reactivity of alcohols toward dehydration, we have seen, is

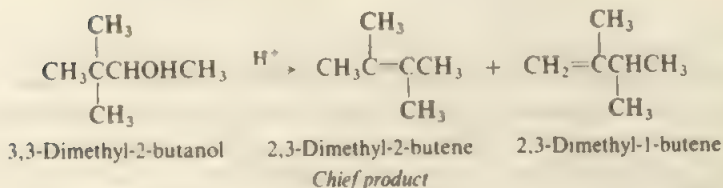
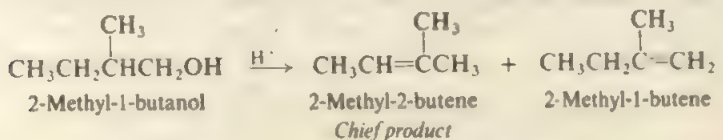
**Ease of dehydration of alcohols**  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ$

There is evidence (some of it from the study of hydration) that the rate of dehydration depends upon both step (2), formation of the carbocation, and step (3), its loss of a proton. Tertiary alcohols undergo dehydration the most rapidly of the alcohols, because they form the most stable carbocations and then, once formed, these cations yield the most stable alkenes.

Strictly speaking, then, dehydration is not an E1 reaction of the protonated alcohol. In a true E1 elimination, the rate of reaction depends only upon the heterolysis step, since every carbocation formed goes rapidly on to product, that is, loss of a proton is much faster than regeneration of substrate. Here that is not the case: carbocations are formed reversibly from the protonated alcohol, and every so often one loses a proton to yield alkene.

**Problem 7.23** *tert*-Butyl alcohol was heated with sulfuric acid in water that was enriched with the isotope  $^{18}\text{O}$ . At intervals samples were withdrawn and analyzed for isobutylene and for labeled alcohol,  $t\text{-Bu-}^{18}\text{OH}$ . The kinetics showed that formation of the labeled alcohol (that is, isotopic exchange) was 20 to 30 times as fast as alkene formation. How do you interpret these findings, and what is their significance?

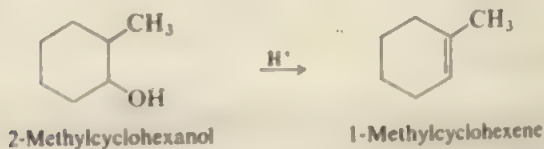
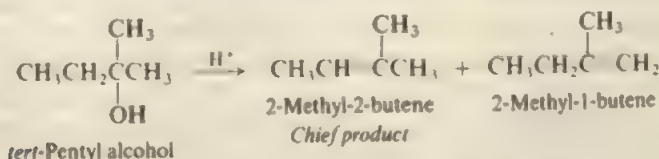
Where the structure of the alkyl group permits, **rearrangement takes place**. This follows the pattern we observed for E1 dehydrohalogenation (Sec. 7.24). For example:



In each case we can account for the products on the usual basis: the initially formed carbocation rearranges to a more stable carbocation. The alkenes obtained are those formed by loss of a proton from this rearranged carbocation as well as from the original one.

**Problem 7.24** As was done on page 312, account in detail for all the alkenes formed in the examples shown above.

**Orientation is strongly Saytzeff.** Where more than one alkene can be formed, the preferred product is the more stable one. For example:



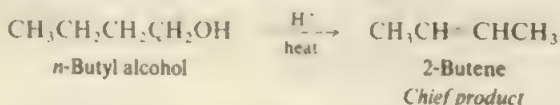
(In addition, look again at the examples of rearrangement given above.) This is, of course, exactly what we would expect for loss of a proton from a carbocation, as we discussed in Sec. 7.25.

Another factor comes in here. Since dehydration is reversible, the composition of the product does not necessarily reflect which alkene is formed faster but depending upon how nearly reaction approaches equilibrium which alkene is more stable. As we have seen, however, the more stable alkene generally is formed faster. On either basis orientation



is consistent with the mechanism, and the predictions we make about orientation are likely to be good ones.

Secondary and tertiary alcohols, we have said, react by this carbocation mechanism. Primary alcohols pose a special problem. As we have seen (Sec. 6.25), primary carbocations are extremely difficult to form. Yet dehydration of primary alcohols typically gives the rearrangements so characteristic of carbocation reactions. For example:

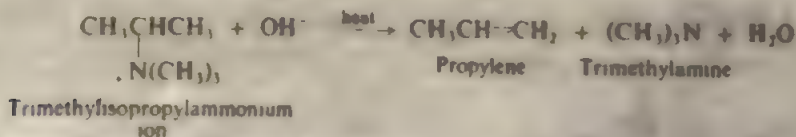


There are several possible explanations. It may be that, in the concentrated acid used to dehydrate primary alcohols, a primary cation *is* generated—heavily encumbered, but capable of rearrangement. Or it may be that rearrangement is concerted with the departure of the leaving group,  $-\text{OH}_2^+$ , so that the more stable, rearranged cation is formed in the initial heterolysis (Secs. 6.26 and 16.22). Finally, it may be that for these substrates dehydration is an E2 reaction of the protonated alcohol. In that case, the rearranged alkenes result, not from the rearrangement of a primary cation, but from the *reversibility* of dehydration. (See Problem 8.6, p. 358.)

In dehydration we see once again the vital role played by protonation of the  $-\text{OH}$  group: to transform a very poor leaving group into a very good leaving group. In the reaction of alcohols with hydrogen halides (Sec. 6.32), this transformation makes nucleophilic substitution possible; here, it makes elimination possible.

In dehydration the protonated alcohol reacts, in most cases, by the carbocation route, as in E1; alkyl halides, on the other hand, mostly undergo E2. We encountered the same situation in nucleophilic substitution (Sec. 6.32), and the explanation here is essentially the same. To undergo dehydration an alcohol must be protonated, and therefore an acidic medium is required. For E2 elimination we need a fairly strong base to attack the substrate without waiting for it to dissociate into carbocations. But a strong base and an acidic medium are, of course, incompatible: any base much stronger than the alcohol itself would become protonated at the expense of the alcohol. Forced, then, to take place in the absence of strong base, dehydration generally follows the carbocation route. Since alcohols are the usual precursors of alkyl halides and sulfonates, all the eliminations in this chapter are, in a sense, illustrations of the same thing: transformation of  $-\text{OH}$  into a better leaving group. Conversion into an alkyl halide or sulfonate accomplishes this. So does protonation; it is simpler, but it exacts a price—we are limited in our choice of that key reagent, the base.

**Problem 7.25** On treatment with strong base, quaternary ammonium ions,  $\text{R}_4\text{N}^+$ , undergo elimination. For example:



The corresponding ammonium ions  $\text{RNH}_3^+$  do not, although the basicity of  $\text{NH}_3$  is not very different from that of  $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{N}$ . How do you account for this difference in behavior?

**Problem 7.26** When *trans*-2-methylcyclopentanol is heated with acid, it gives chiefly 1-methylcyclopentene. When the same alcohol is treated, instead, with tosyl chloride and the product with potassium *tert*-butoxide, the only alkene obtained is 3-methylcyclopentene. Account in detail for the contrast between these two synthetic routes.

## PROBLEMS

### 1. Give the structural formula of:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) 3,6-dimethyl-1-octene                   | (f) ( <i>E</i> )-1-deuterio-2-chloropropene       |
| (b) 3-chloropropene                         | (g) ( <i>R</i> )-3-bromo-1-butene                 |
| (c) 2,4,4-trimethyl-2-pentene               | (h) ( <i>S</i> )- <i>trans</i> -4-methyl-2-hexene |
| (d) <i>trans</i> -3,4-dimethyl-3-hexene     | (i) 3-methylcyclohexene                           |
| (e) ( <i>Z</i> )-3-chloro-4-methyl-3-hexene | (j) bicyclo[2.2.1]hepta-2,5-diene                 |

### 2. Draw out the structural formula and give the IUPAC name of:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) isobutylene  | (d) <i>trans</i> -(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CHCH=CHCH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> |
| (b) <i>cis</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> CH=CHCH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> | (e) (CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CHCH <sub>2</sub> CH=C(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>  |
| (c) (CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> CCH=CH <sub>2</sub>                              | (f) (CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> C=CH <sub>2</sub>                      |

3. Indicate which of the following compounds show geometric (*cis-trans*) isomerism, draw the isomeric structures, and specify each as *Z* or *E*.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| (a) 1-butene           | (g) 2-pentene                                |
| (b) 2-butene           | (h) 1-chloropropene                          |
| (c) 1,1-dichloroethene | (i) 1-chloro-2-methyl-2-butene               |
| (d) 1,2-dichloroethene | (j) 4-ethyl-3-methyl-3-hexene                |
| (e) 2-methyl-2-butene  | (k) 2,4-hexadiene                            |
| (f) 1-pentene          | (CH <sub>3</sub> CH=CHCH=CHCH <sub>3</sub> ) |

4. There are 13 isomeric hexylenes (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>12</sub>) disregarding geometric isomerism.

(a) Draw the structure and give the IUPAC name for each. (b) Indicate which ones show geometric isomerism, draw the isomeric structures, and specify each as *Z* or *E*. (c) One of the hexylenes is chiral. Which one is it? Draw structures of the enantiomers, and specify each as *R* or *S*.

5. In which of the following will *cis*-3-hexene differ from *trans*-3-hexene?

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| (a) b.p.                  | (g) rate of hydrogenation                |
| (b) m.p.                  | (h) product of hydrogenation             |
| (c) adsorption on alumina | (i) solubility in ethyl alcohol          |
| (d) infrared spectrum     | (j) density                              |
| (e) dipole moment         | (k) retention time in gas chromatography |
| (f) refractive index      |  |

(l) Which *one* of the above would absolutely prove the configuration of each isomer?

6. Write balanced equations for preparation of propylene from:

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| (a) CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH ( <i>n</i> -propyl alcohol) | (d) <i>n</i> -propyl tosylate        |
| (b) CH <sub>3</sub> CHOHCH <sub>3</sub> (isopropyl alcohol)                        | (e) 1,2-dibromopropane               |
| (c) isopropyl chloride   | (f) the alkyne, CH <sub>3</sub> C≡CH |

7. Give structures of the products expected from dehydrohalogenation of:

- |                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| (a) 1-bromohexane           | (e) 3-bromo-2-methylpentane     |
| (b) 2-bromohexane           | (f) 2-bromo-4-methylpentane     |
| (c) 1-bromo-2-methylpentane | (g) 1-bromo-4-methylpentane     |
| (d) 2-bromo-2-methylpentane | (h) 3-bromo-2,3-dimethylpentane |

8. In those cases in Problem 7 where more than one product can be formed, predict the *major* product.

9. Which alcohol of each pair would you expect to be more easily dehydrated?

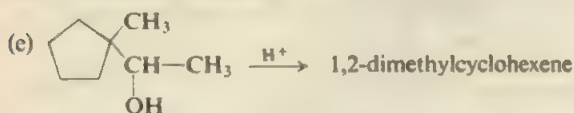
- (a)  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  or  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHOHCH}_3$   
 (b)  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$  or  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCHOHCH}_3$   
 (c)  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHC}(\text{OH})(\text{CH}_3)_2$  or  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$

10. Arrange the compounds of each set in order of reactivity toward dehydrohalogenation by strong base:

- (a) 2-bromo-2-methylbutane, 1-bromopentane, 2-bromopentane, 3-bromopentane  
 (b) 1-bromo-3-methylbutane, 2-bromo-2-methylbutane, 2-bromo-3-methylbutane  
 (c) 1-bromobutane, 1-bromo-2,2-dimethylpropane, 1-bromo-2-methylbutane, 1-bromo-3-methylbutane  
 (d) *cis*- and *trans*-2-bromo-1-methylcyclohexane

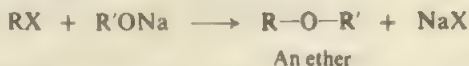
11. Outline the sequence of steps that best accounts for the following facts.

- (a) neopentyl alcohol  $\xrightarrow{\text{H}^+}$  2-methyl-2-butene (85%) + 2-methyl-1-butene (15%)  
 (b) 2,2,4-trimethyl-3-pentanol  $\xrightarrow{\text{AlO}_3, \text{heat}}$  2,4,4-trimethyl-2-pentene + 2,4,4-trimethyl-1-pentene + 2,3,4-trimethyl-2-pentene + 2,3,4-trimethyl-1-pentene + 3-methyl-2-isopropyl-1-butene + 3,3,4-trimethyl-1-pentene  
 (c) 2,2-dimethylcyclohexanol  $\xrightarrow{\text{H}^+}$  1,2-dimethylcyclohexene + 1-isopropylcyclopentene. (Hint: Use models.)  
 (d) 3-cyclobutyl-3-pentanol  $\xrightarrow{\text{H}^+}$  1,2-diethylcyclopentene



12. On dehydrohalogenation with strong base, *sec*-butyl bromide, like the chloride (Sec. 7.23), yields more *trans*- than *cis*-2-butene. But the *trans*:*cis* ratio from the bromide is only 3:1 in contrast to the ratio of 6:1 from the chloride. How do you account for this lower ratio? Be specific. (Hint: See Secs. 2.24 and 7.20.)

13. Ethers, we have seen (Sec. 6.11), can be made by the reaction between alkyl halides and sodium or potassium alkoxides:



(a) Using this method, outline all steps in two conceivable alternative routes to *tert*-butyl ethyl ether.

(b) One of these routes gives excellent yields, and the other is worthless. Which is the worthless route, and why? Write equations to show exactly what is happening.

14. (a) In the work described in Problem 7.11 (p. 307) the 2-butenes were obtained in the following *trans*:*cis* ratios: from the *erythro* isomer (V and its enantiomer), 0.82; from the *threo* isomer (VI and its enantiomer), 10.6; from the unlabeled *sec*-butyl bromide under the same conditions, 2.84. How do you account for these differences in the *trans*:*cis* ratio?

(b) In the same work the ratios of each 2-butene to 1-butene were measured. The *trans*-2-butene:1-butene ratios were: from unlabeled, 2.82; from *erythro*, 0.82; from *threo*, 2.82. The *cis*-2-butene:1-butene ratios were: unlabeled, 0.99; *erythro*, 0.98; *threo*, 0.27. How do you account for the differences in this ratio? Is your answer consistent with your answer to part (a)? Be as quantitative as you can.

15. *cis*-4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexyl tosylate reacts rapidly with NaOEt in EtOH to yield 4-*tert*-butylcyclohexene, the rate of reaction is proportional to the concentration of both tosylate and ethoxide ion. Under the same conditions, *trans*-4-*tert*-butylcyclohexyl tosylate reacts slowly to yield the alkene (plus 4-*tert*-butylcyclohexyl ethyl ether), the rate of reaction depends only on the concentration of the tosylate.

How do you account for these observations?



# Alkenes II. Reactions of the Carbon-Carbon Double Bond

## *Electrophilic and Free-Radical Addition*

### 8.1 Reactions of alkenes

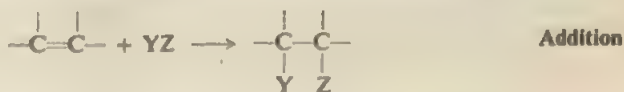
The characteristic feature of the alkene structure, we have said, is the carbon-carbon double bond. It is thus the *functional group* of alkenes and, as the functional group, it determines the characteristic reactions that alkenes undergo.

These reactions are of two kinds. (a) First, there are those that take place at the double bond itself and, in doing this, destroy the double bond. These reactions we shall take up in the present chapter.

(b) Next, there are the reactions that take place, not at the double bond, but at certain positions having special relationships to the double bond. Outwardly the double bond is not involved; it is found intact in the product. Yet it plays an essential, though hidden, part in the reaction: it determines how fast reaction takes place and by which mechanism—even whether it takes place at all. Reactions of this kind we shall take up in Chapter 9.

### 8.2 Reactions at the carbon-carbon double bond. Addition

What kind of reactions can we expect of the carbon-carbon double bond? The double bond consists of a strong  $\sigma$  bond and a weak  $\pi$  bond; we might expect, therefore, that reaction would involve breaking of this weaker bond. This expectation is correct; the typical reactions of the double bond are of the sort,



where the  $\pi$  bond is broken and two strong  $\sigma$  bonds are formed in its place.

A reaction in which two molecules combine to yield a single molecule of product is called an **addition reaction**. The reagent is simply *added* to the substrate, in contrast

to a substitution reaction where part of the reagent is *substituted* for a part of the substrate. Addition reactions are necessarily limited to compounds that contain atoms sharing more than one pair of electrons, that is, to compounds that contain multiply-bonded atoms. Formally, addition is the opposite of elimination; just as elimination generates a multiple bond, so addition destroys it.

What kind of reagent can we expect to add to the carbon-carbon double bond? In our structure of the bond there is a cloud of  $\pi$  electrons above and below the plane of the atoms (see Fig. 8.1). These  $\pi$  electrons are less involved than the  $\sigma$

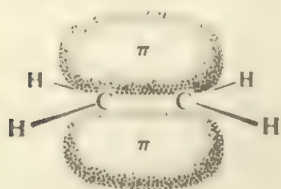


Figure 8.1. Carbon-carbon double bond:  $\pi$  bond is source of electrons.

electrons in holding together the carbon nuclei. As a result, they are themselves held less tightly. These loosely held  $\pi$  electrons are particularly available to a reagent that is seeking electrons. It is not surprising, then, that in many of its reactions the carbon-carbon double bond serves as a **source of electrons**: that is, it acts as a **base**. The compounds with which it reacts are those that are deficient in electrons, that is, are *acids*. *These acidic reagents that are seeking a pair of electrons are called electrophilic reagents* (Greek: electron-loving). *The typical reaction of an alkene is electrophilic addition*, or, in other words, addition of acidic reagents.

Reagents of another kind, *free radicals*, seek electrons—or, rather, seek *an* electron. And so we find that alkenes also undergo **free-radical addition**.

Most alkenes contain not only the carbon-carbon double bond but also alkyl groups, which have essentially the alkane structure. Besides the addition reactions characteristic of the carbon-carbon double bond, therefore, alkenes may undergo the free-radical substitution characteristic of alkanes. The most important of these addition and substitution reactions are summarized below, and will be discussed in detail in following sections: in this chapter and later chapters.

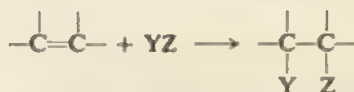
There are reagents that can add either as acids or as free radicals, and with strikingly different results; there are reagents that are capable both of adding to the double bond and of bringing about substitution. We shall see how, by our choice of conditions, we can lead these reagents along the particular reaction path—electrophilic or free-radical, addition or substitution—we want them to follow.

The alkyl groups attached to the doubly-bonded carbons modify the reactions of the double bond; the double bond modifies the reactions of the alkyl groups. We shall see what these modifications are and, where possible, how they can be accounted for.

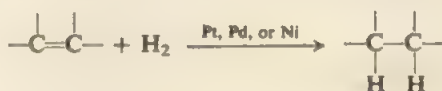
We shall be much concerned with the stereochemistry of these addition reactions, both for the practical reason of knowing what we are likely to obtain in a synthesis, and for what it can tell us about how these reactions take place. They can be *stereoselective*, and yield predominantly one or two of a larger number of possible stereoisomeric products. They can also be *stereospecific*; stereoisomeric alkenes—geometric isomers—can yield stereochemically different products.

## REACTIONS OF ALKENES

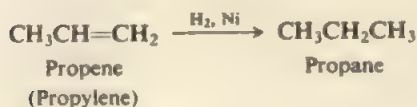
## Addition Reactions



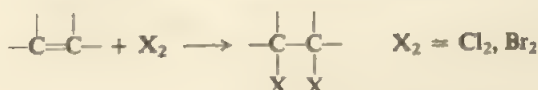
1. Addition of hydrogen. Catalytic hydrogenation. Discussed in Secs. 8.3 and 8.5–8.7.



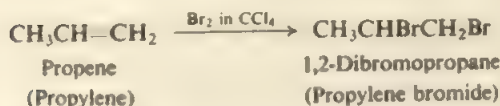
Example:



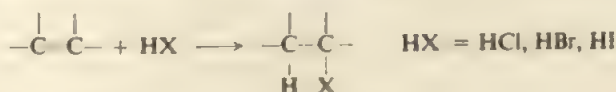
2. Addition of halogens. Discussed in Secs. 8.16–8.18.



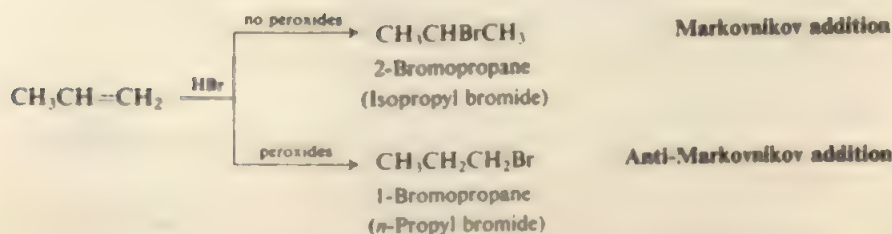
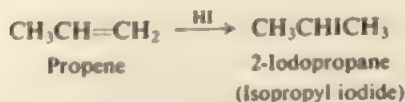
Example:



3. Addition of hydrogen halides. Discussed in Secs. 8.8–8.9 and 8.22–8.23.



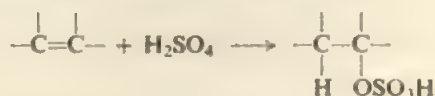
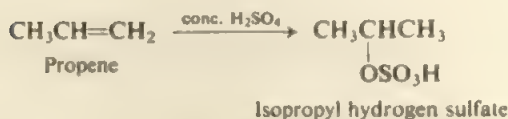
Examples:



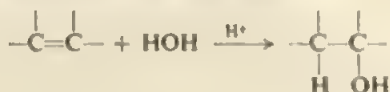
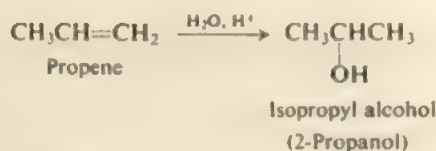


CONT.

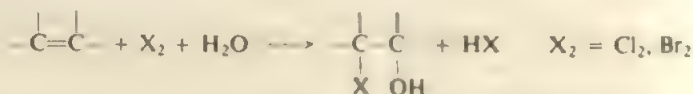
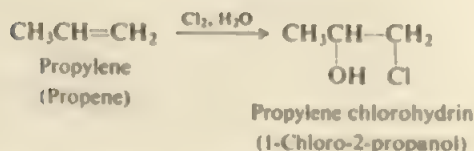
## 4. Addition of sulfuric acid. Discussed in Sec. 8.10.

*Example:*

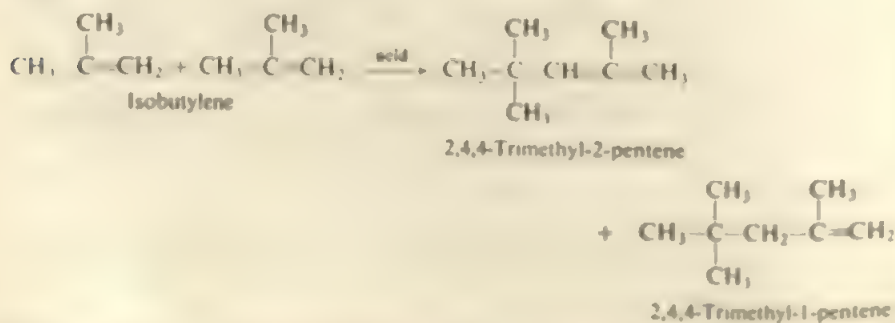
## 5. Addition of water. Hydration. Discussed in Sec. 8.11.

*Example:*

## 6. Halohydrin formation. Discussed in Sec. 8.19.

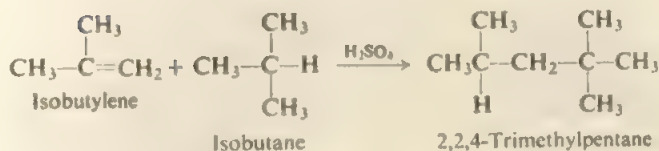
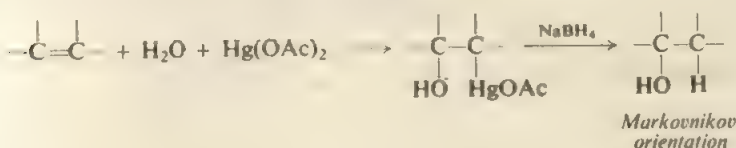
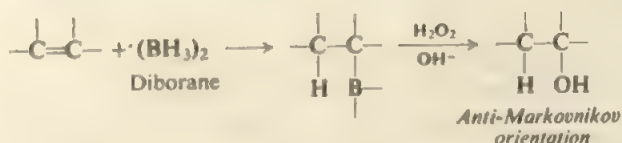
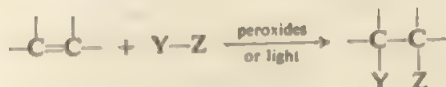
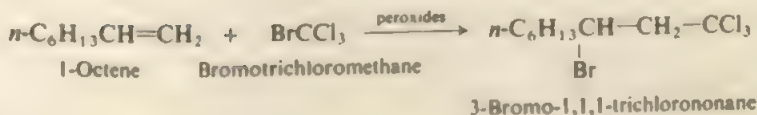
*Example:*

## 7. Dimerization. Discussed in Sec. 8.20.

*Example:*

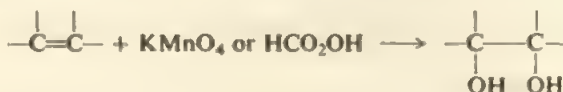
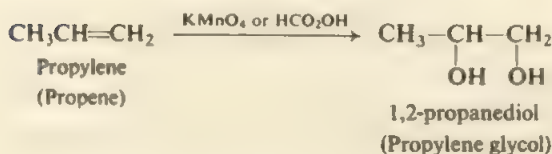
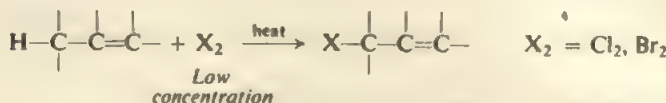
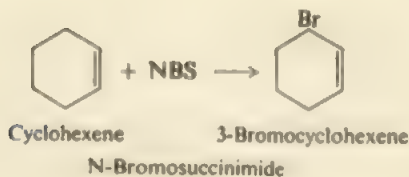
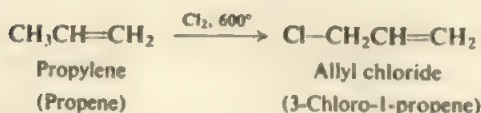
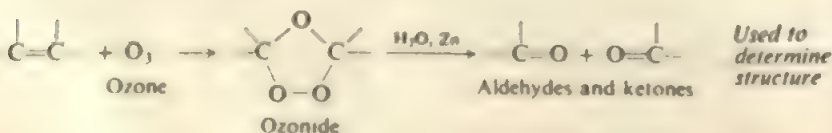
CONT.

CONT.

**8. Alkylation.** Discussed in Sec. 8.21.*Example:***9. Oxymercuration-demercuration.** Discussed in Sec. 10.7.**10. Hydroboration-oxidation.** Discussed in Secs. 10.8–10.10.**11. Addition of free radicals.** Discussed in Secs. 8.23 and 8.24.*Example:***12. Polymerization.** Discussed in Secs. 9.31–9.32 and 9.34–9.36.**13. Addition of carbenes.** Discussed in Secs. 8.25–8.26.

CONT.

CONT.

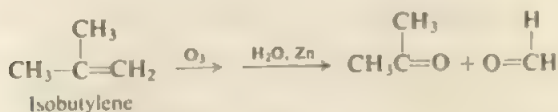
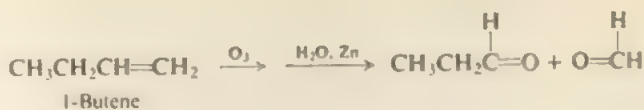
**14. Hydroxylation. Glycol formation.** Discussed in Secs. 8.27 and 12.12.*Example:***Substitution Reactions****15. Halogenation. Allylic substitution.** Discussed in Secs. 9.1–9.4.*Examples:***Cleavage Reactions****16. Ozonolysis.** Discussed in Sec. 8.28.

CONT.



CONT.

Examples:



### 8.3 Hydrogenation. Heat of hydrogenation

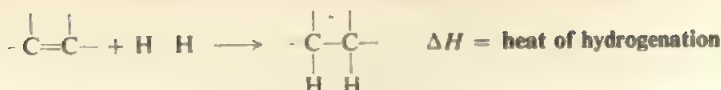
We have already encountered hydrogenation as the most useful method for preparing alkanes (Sec. 3.15). It is not limited to the synthesis of alkanes, but is a general method for the conversion of a carbon-carbon double bond into a carbon-carbon single bond in almost any kind of compound we encounter. Using the same apparatus, the same catalyst, and very nearly the same conditions, we can convert an alkene into an alkane, an unsaturated alcohol into a saturated alcohol, or an unsaturated ester into a saturated ester. By varying the catalyst and conditions, we can *selectively* hydrogenate one multiple bond but not another in the same molecule: a carbon-carbon double bond but not a carbon-oxygen double bond; a triple bond but not a double bond; even one carbon-carbon double bond but not another. We can even, as we shall see, convert an optically inactive unsaturated compound into an optically active product!

Hydrogenation is of two general kinds, (a) *heterogeneous* (two-phase) and (b) *homogeneous* (one-phase). In both cases a catalyst brings about addition of molecular hydrogen,  $\text{H}_2$ , to the double bond.

**Heterogeneous hydrogenation** is the classical method, and is still widely used. The catalyst is a finely divided metal, usually platinum, palladium, or nickel. A solution of the alkene is shaken under a slight pressure of hydrogen gas in the presence of a small amount of the catalyst. Reaction takes place rapidly and smoothly and, when it is complete, the solution of the saturated product is simply filtered from the insoluble catalyst.

The much newer **homogeneous hydrogenation** offers a flexibility not possible with the old-style catalysts. Through modifications in the catalysts, hydrogenation can be carried out with unprecedented selectivity. The catalysts are organic complexes of transition metals like rhodium or iridium. They are soluble in organic solvents, and hydrogenation thus takes place in a single phase, the solution. An inconvenience of the method has been the difficulty of separating the catalyst from the product once reaction is over. Methods are, however, being worked out to avoid this problem: the catalyst is attached—built-in chemically—to a solid soluble polymer (giant molecule), thus permitting easy filtration at the end of the reaction. Homogeneous hydrogenation thus becomes heterogeneous; but the mode of action seems to remain the same.

Since the reaction is generally quantitative, and since the volume of hydrogen consumed can be easily measured, hydrogenation is frequently used as an analytical tool; it can, for example, tell us the number of double bonds in a compound.



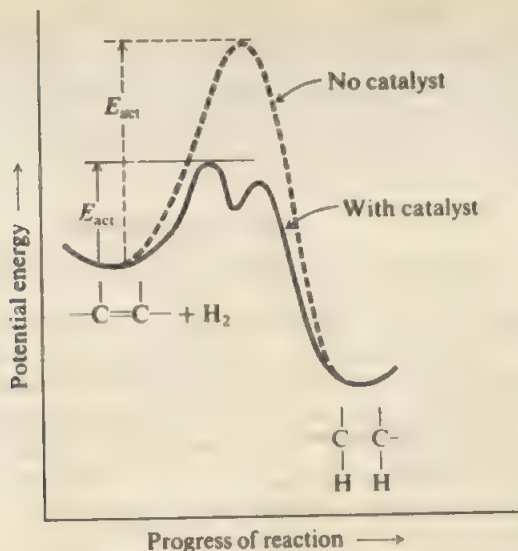
Hydrogenation is exothermic: the two  $\sigma$  bonds (C—H) being formed are, together, stronger than the  $\sigma$  bond (H—H) and  $\pi$  bond being broken. *The quantity of heat evolved when one mole of an unsaturated compound is hydrogenated is called the heat of hydrogenation*; it is simply  $\Delta H$  of the reaction, but the minus sign is not included. The heat of hydrogenation of nearly every alkene is fairly close to a value of 30 kcal for each double bond in the compound (see Table 8.1).

**Table 8.1** HEATS OF HYDROGENATION OF ALKENES

Alkene	Heat of hydrogenation, kcal/mol
Ethylene	32.8
Propylene	30.1
1-Butene	30.3
1-Pentene	30.1
1-Heptene	30.1
3-Methyl-1-butene	30.3
3,3-Dimethyl-1-butene	30.3
4,4-Dimethyl-1-pentene	29.5
<i>cis</i> -2-Butene	28.6
<i>trans</i> -2-Butene	27.6
Isobutylene	28.4
<i>cis</i> -2-Pentene	28.6
<i>trans</i> -2-Pentene	27.6
2-Methyl-1-butene	28.5
2,3-Dimethyl-1-butene	28.0
2-Methyl-2-butene	26.9
2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene	26.6

Although hydrogenation is an exothermic reaction, it proceeds at a negligible rate in the absence of a catalyst, even at elevated temperatures. The uncatalyzed reaction must have, therefore, a very large energy of activation. The function of the catalyst is to lower the energy of activation ( $E_{act}$ ) so that the reaction can proceed rapidly at room temperature. The catalyst does not, of course, affect the net energy change of the overall reaction; it simply lowers the energy hill between the reactants and products (see Fig. 8.2).

A catalyst lowers  $E_{act}$  by permitting reaction to take place in a different way, that is, by a different mechanism. In this case, the reactants are adsorbed on the enormous surface of a finely divided solid metal, or bonded temporarily to a soluble metal ion. Reaction under these conditions is very different from the reaction that would have to take place otherwise. It is believed, for example, that the surface of a solid catalyst breaks the  $\pi$  bond of the alkene prior to reaction with hydrogen

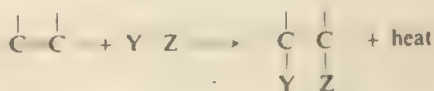


**Figure 8.2.** Potential energy changes during progress of reaction: effect of catalyst.

The metal ion breaks the hydrogen-hydrogen bond and transfers the hydrogens, one at a time, to the double bond.

Lowering the energy hill, as we can see, decreases the energy of activation of the reverse reaction as well, and thus increases the rate of *dehydrogenation*. We might expect, therefore, that the solid catalysts platinum, palladium, and nickel, under the proper conditions, should serve as dehydrogenation catalysts; this is indeed the case (Sec. 34.7). We are familiar with the fact that, although a catalyst speeds up a reaction, it does not shift the position of equilibrium; this is, of course, because it speeds up *both* the forward and reverse reactions.

Like hydrogenation, the addition of other reagents to the double bond is generally exothermic. The energy consumed by the breaking of the  $Y-Z$  and  $\pi$  bonds is almost always less than that liberated by formation of the  $C-Y$  and  $C-Z$  bonds.



## 8.4 Heat of hydrogenation and stability of alkenes

Heats of hydrogenation can often give us valuable information about the relative stabilities of unsaturated compounds. For example, of the isomeric 2-butenes, the *cis*-isomer has a heat of hydrogenation of 28.6 kcal, the *trans*-isomer one of 27.6 kcal. Both reactions consume one mole of hydrogen and yield the same product, *n*-butane. Therefore, if the *trans*-isomer evolves 1 kcal less energy than the *cis*-isomer, it can only mean that it *contains* 1 kcal less energy; in other words, the



*trans*-isomer is more stable by 1 kcal than the *cis*-isomer (see Fig. 8.3). In a similar way, *trans*-2-pentene (heat of hydrogenation = 27.6 kcal) must be more stable by 1.0 kcal than *cis*-2-pentene (heat of hydrogenation = 28.6 kcal).

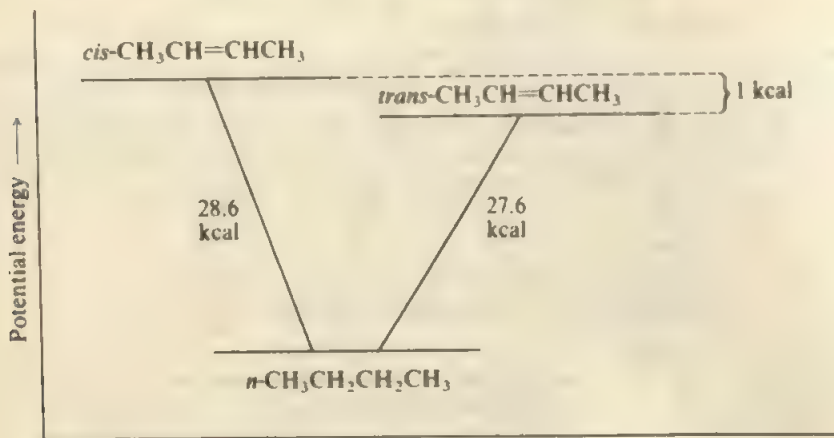


Figure 8.3. Heats of hydrogenation and stability: *cis*- and *trans*-2-butene.

Of simple dialkylethylenes, it is usually the *trans*-isomer that is the more stable. The two larger substituents are located farther apart than in the *cis*-isomer; there is less crowding, and less van der Waals strain (Sec. 3.5).

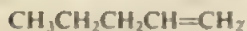
Heats of hydrogenation show that the stability of an alkene also depends upon the position of the double bond. The following examples are typical:



30.3 kcal



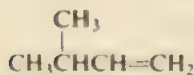
*cis* 28.6; *trans* 27.6



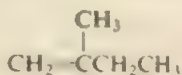
30.1 kcal



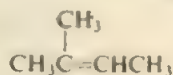
*cis* 28.6; *trans* 27.6



30.3 kcal



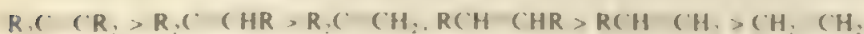
28.5



26.9

Each set of isomeric alkenes yields the same alkane. The differences in heat of hydrogenation must therefore be due to differences in stability. In each case, the greater the number of alkyl groups attached to the doubly-bonded carbon atoms, the more stable the alkene.

#### Stability of alkenes



We have already seen the important role that stability of alkenes plays in orientation and reactivity in elimination reactions.

**Problem 8.1** (a) Write a balanced equation for combustion of 1-butene. (b) How does this equation compare with the corresponding one for *cis*-2-butene? For *trans*-2-butene? (c) The following heats of combustion have been measured for these three butenes: 648.1, 647.1, 649.8 kcal. Which heat of combustion do you think applies to each butene? (d) Assign the following heats of combustion to 1-pentene, and *cis*- and *trans*-2-pentene: 804.3, 806.9, 805.3.

## 8.5 Homogeneous hydrogenation. Transition metal complexes

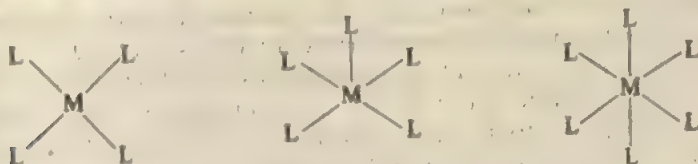
In 1951 the organoiron compound *ferrocene* (p. 585) was first prepared, and by 1952 its structure had been worked out. The unexpected stability of this compound, and the (then) unusual kind of bonding holding iron to carbon, caught the imagination of chemists and set off a revolution in the field of organic complexes of the transition metals. A broad theory of the mechanisms of reaction of these "inorganic" compounds has grown up; in its form and rapid growth, this theory has been likened to the theory of organic reactions, whose origins go back more than 20 years earlier. Technically, of course, these compounds *are* organic, since they contain carbon. The distinction lies in the element about which reaction centers: a transition metal, or carbon.

Inorganic compounds or not, these transition metal complexes are of increasing importance to organic chemists today as catalysts of unprecedented power and selectivity. We shall be concerned with them because of their usefulness and because, as we shall see, their mode of action fits into a basic pattern of chemical reactivity that extends all the way to the action of enzymes in living organisms: that is, from "inorganic" chemistry to the most "organic"—in the old sense—of all chemistry.

Now, how do these metal complexes work? As always, we begin by examining their *structure*.

By definition, transition metals have outer shells (*d* and sometimes *f*) that are only partly filled, and it is these vacant bonding sites—this "unsaturation"—that enable the metals to act as catalysts.

A metal complex is made up of the metal and certain ions and molecules, called *ligands* (from the Latin, *ligare*, to bind), that are held by it. Each ligand (L) is bonded to the metal by overlap of an empty orbital on the metal with a filled

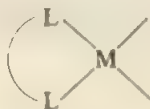


M = transition metal      L = ligand

orbital on the ligand. (Sometimes, besides this  $\sigma$  bonding there is  $\pi$  bonding as well, involving overlap of a filled orbital on the metal with an empty orbital on the ligand: so-called *back-bonding*.) The bonding is thus covalent, with varying degrees of ionic character depending upon the extent to which positive and negative charges on the metal and ligand help to hold them together.

In some ligand molecules, more than one atom has an electron pair to share with the metal. The ligand has more than one binding site, and is said to be

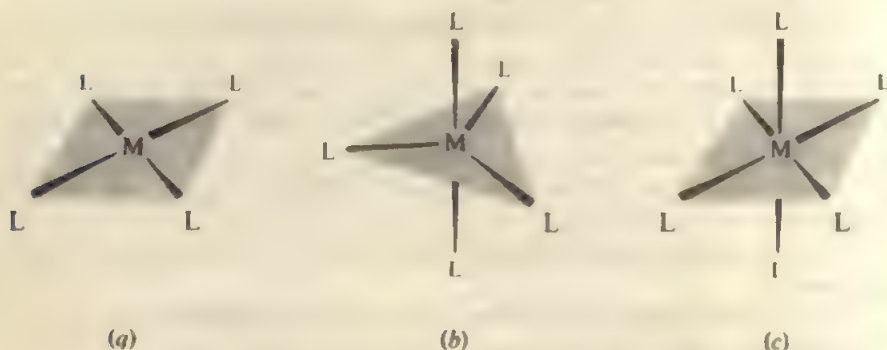
*bidentate*, *tridentate*, etc. (that is to say, "two-toothed," "three-toothed," etc.). Such a ligand can, by forming a ring, hold the metal by two (or more) of its binding sites—between its "teeth":



**Chelation:**  
makes complex ion  
especially stable

Binding of this kind is called **chelation** (Greek: *chele*, claw). In general chelation gives a much more stable complex than one formed by binding of analogous separate ligands. (For examples of the chelation of metals, see *chlorophyll* (p. 1269) and *heme* (p. 1137).)

The spatial arrangement of a metal complex depends upon the orbitals used to hold the ligands, which in turn depend upon the particular metal involved and the number of ligands it holds. Some of the ways in which ligands (L) are commonly arranged, and the ways these configurations are often represented, are shown in Fig. 8.4.



**Figure 8.4.** Some configurations commonly observed for transition metal complexes (a) Square planar: four ligands (L) (b) Trigonal bipyramidal: five ligands. (c) Octahedral (two square pyramids base-to-base) six ligands

These ligands take no direct part in the reaction that is being catalyzed, but their presence on the metal is absolutely necessary. Like substituents in an organic molecule, ligands can—through their electronic or steric effect, their lipophilicity, or their chirality—help to determine the course of reaction. They stabilize the complex, modify its reactivity, make it soluble in organic solvents, and can even bring about stereoselectivity in the product formed.

Finally, and outside this *coordination sphere*, there are whatever counter-ions are needed to balance any net charge, positive or negative, that may reside on the metal complex.

The metal exerts its catalytic effect by, first, bringing the substrate and reagent near to each other. It does this by forming bonds to them. The reactants thus become ligands in a new metal complex, often by taking the place of some of the old ligands. In forming these bonds the metal may change one or both of the reactants profoundly—it may, for example, break the bond of molecular hydrogen,  $H_2$ , and bind two hydride ions as separate ligands.

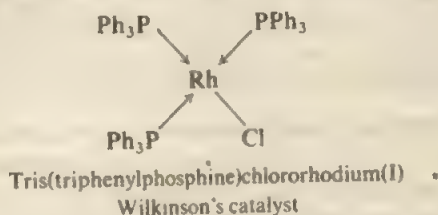


Now, while holding the reactants in just the right spatial relationship to each other, the metal allows them to interact, often in several steps, to yield the product. The product then departs, and the metal complex is available to begin the catalytic cycle all over again.

As an illustration of what has just been said, let us look fairly closely at one catalyst and see how it is believed to exert its effect. It is *Wilkinson's catalyst*, the most widely used of all catalysts for homogeneous hydrogenation. From this single example we can learn a good deal about how all these catalysts work: to promote, not just hydrogenation, but many other reactions as well.

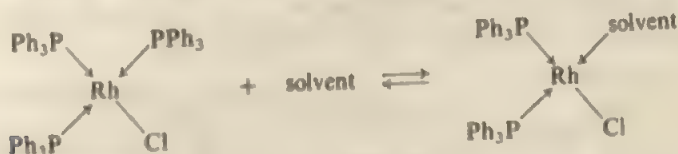
It is especially fitting that we begin with this particular catalyst, discovered by the inorganic chemist Sir Geoffrey Wilkinson (Imperial College, London). Wilkinson received the Nobel Prize for his work on the elucidation of the structure of ferrocene: work which, as we said earlier, opened the door to the "new" chemistry of transition metal complexes. Under Wilkinson's name in *Who's Who* is found the entry, "Leisure interest: organic chemistry."

Wilkinson's catalyst is a complex of the transition metal rhodium called tris(triphenylphosphine)chlororhodium(I). Its formula is  $\text{RhCl}(\text{PPh}_3)_3$ , where Ph stands for phenyl,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ . The ligand  $\text{Ph}_3\text{P}$  is triphenylphosphine. Phosphorus

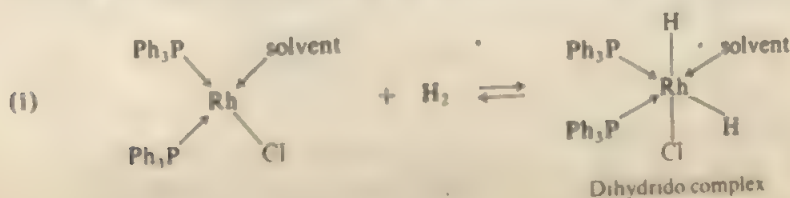


belongs to the same family of the Periodic Table as nitrogen, and phosphines,  $\text{R}_3\text{P}$ , are structurally similar to amines,  $\text{R}_3\text{N}$ , which in turn are derived from ammonia. Like the nitrogen of ammonia and amines, the phosphorus of phosphines has an unshared electron pair, which confers basicity—although weaker than that of the nitrogen analogs—on these molecules. It is through this electron pair that triphenylphosphine is bonded to rhodium.

In solution the complex  $\text{RhCl}(\text{PPh}_3)_3$  is believed to exchange reversibly one  $\text{Ph}_3\text{P}$  for a loosely held solvent molecule, to give the complex  $\text{RhCl}(\text{PPh}_3)_2(\text{solvent})$ .

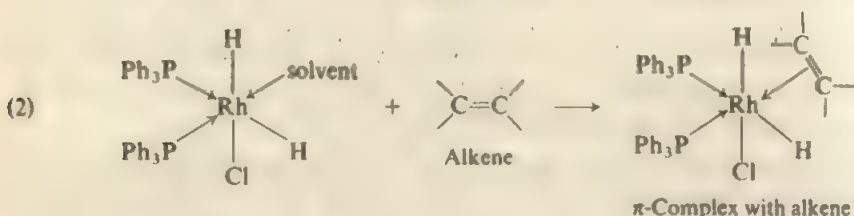


Now the catalyst is brought into contact with the reactants, the alkene and molecular hydrogen,  $\text{H}_2$ . It reacts (step 1) with the hydrogen to form the *dihydrido* complex,  $\text{RhH}_2\text{Cl}(\text{PPh}_3)_2$ . The  $\text{H}-\text{H}$  bond is broken, and each hydrogen becomes



bonded separately to rhodium. (To do this the metal uses one of its electron pairs, and is thereby oxidized to the rhodium(III) state.)

Next, the alkene reacts (step 2) with the complex and, perhaps by replacing a solvent molecule, attaches itself to rhodium. The alkene-metal bond involves

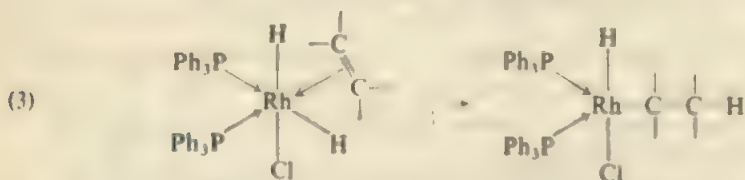


overlap of an empty orbital of the metal with the  $\pi$  cloud of the alkene; rhodium is bonded, not just to one of the alkene carbons, but to both.

This kind of bonding has been shown to exist between compounds with  $\pi$  electrons—alkenes, aromatics and acidic molecules of many kinds—silver ion, for example, or halogens. Such  $\pi$ -complexes have been detected spectroscopically and, in some cases, isolated. The ferrocene referred to above is a  $\pi$ -complex, and the interest it aroused lay primarily in just that fact: the strong binding between iron and the  $\pi$  cloud of the organic moiety (p. 585). Reversible formation of  $\pi$ -complexes has been postulated as a step preliminary to the reaction of many electrophiles with alkenes and aromatic compounds.

At this point both reactants are bonded to rhodium, and the stage is set for hydrogenation to occur. The two hydrogens are transferred to the two doubly-bonded carbons—not simultaneously, but one at a time, in two separate reactions.

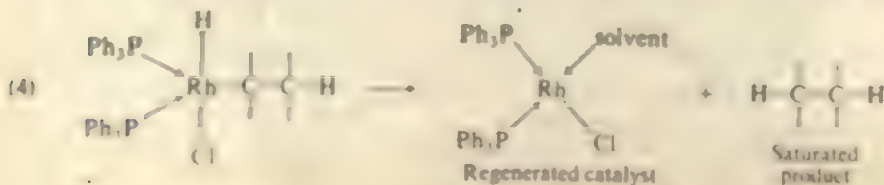
In step (3) a hydrogen migrates from the metal to one of the doubly-bonded



carbons. The other doubly-bonded carbon becomes attached to the metal by a straightforward  $\sigma$  bond, and a metal alkyl has been formed.

One can view this step in several ways: as a 1,2-shift of hydrogen from the metal to carbon, for example, or addition of hydrogen and the metal to the carbon-carbon double bond. It is often considered as *insertion* of the alkene into the metal-hydrogen bond. Such insertion of an alkene into a metal-ligand bond is a key step in important catalyzed processes other than hydrogenation (Secs. 9.36 and 10.4).

Now, in step (4), the second hydrogen migrates from the metal to carbon: this time to the carbon that is still bonded to the metal—the second of the two original



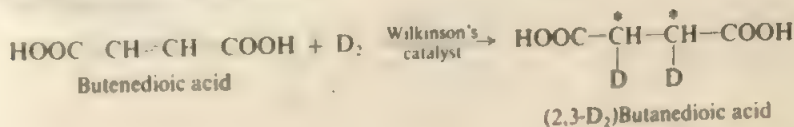
alkene carbons. Addition of hydrogen is complete, and the saturated product leaves the coordination sphere of the regenerated catalyst. (The metal has regained the electrons it used to cleave  $H_2$ , and is reduced to its original rhodium(I) state.)

The mechanism we have given is strongly supported by evidence of many kinds, including kinetics studies. The postulated intermediates have been detected in solution and even in some cases isolated, and their structures have been established by spectroscopic methods (chiefly NMR, Chap. 17) and x-ray analysis. One of the enormous advantages of homogeneous catalysis over heterogeneous catalysis is that mechanisms of reaction *can* readily be studied and, by use of the power this knowledge gives, catalysts can be modified to accomplish things never before possible.

Let us look at just one of these accomplishments, in the area of stereochemistry. We shall do this in two stages, beginning with the fundamental stereochemistry of addition reactions.

## 8.6 Stereochemistry of homogeneous hydrogenation: diastereoselectivity. *syn*- and *anti*-Addition

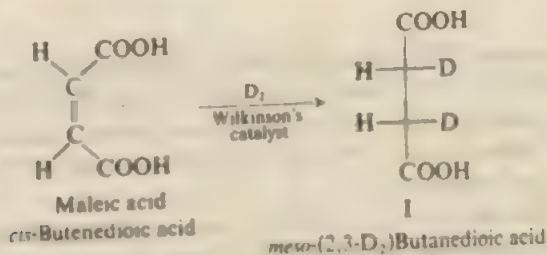
Consider the homogeneous hydrogenation with Wilkinson's catalyst of the unsaturated carboxylic acid *butenedioic acid*. The hydrogen used is not ordinary hydrogen but deuterium,  $D_2$ . There is formed the saturated acid *butanedioic acid* containing two deuterium atoms.



Two chiral centers are generated in the reaction, and the product, we can easily show (as in Sec. 4.18), can exist as a *meso* compound and a pair of enantiomers.

The reactant, too, exists as stereoisomers: a pair of geometric isomers. These are nearly always given their common names of *maleic acid* (the *cis*-isomer) and *fumaric acid* (the *trans*-isomer).

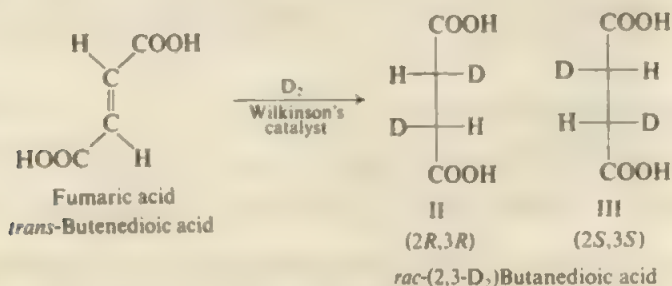
If we start with, say, maleic acid, which of the stereoisomeric products do we get? A mixture of all of them? *No*. Maleic acid yields *only* the *meso* butanedioic acid; none of the racemic compound is obtained.



The reaction is completely *stereoselective* (Sec. 6.17). Since the selectivity is between diastereomeric products, it is of the kind called *diastereoselectivity*.

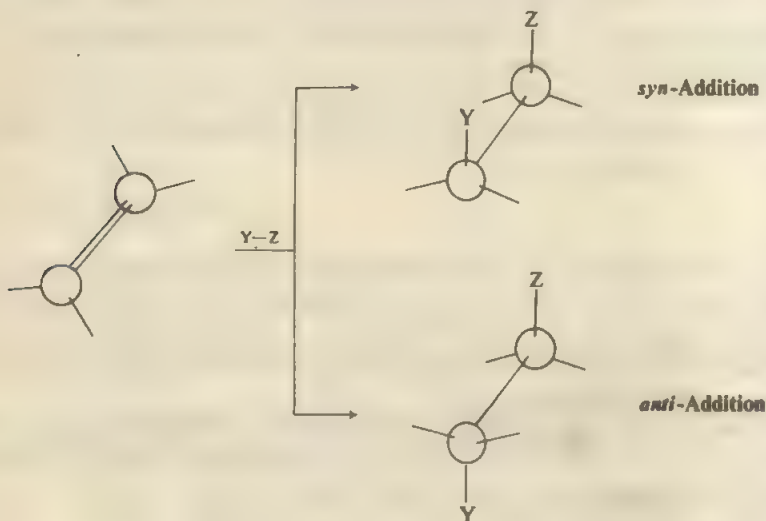


If, on the other hand, we start with fumaric acid, we obtain *only* the racemic butanedioic acid.



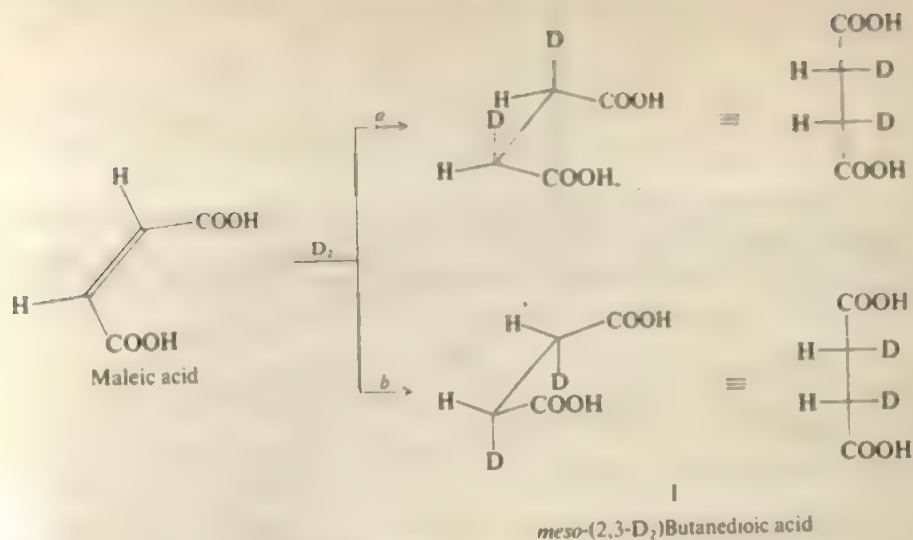
Stereochemically different starting materials thus react differently: they yield stereochemically different products. Reaction is not only stereoselective, but *stereospecific*, too.

To describe stereospecificity in addition reactions, the concepts of *syn*-addition and *anti*-addition are used. These terms are not the names of specific mechanisms, but simply indicate the stereochemical facts: that the added groups become attached to the same face (*syn*) or opposite faces (*anti*) of the double bond.

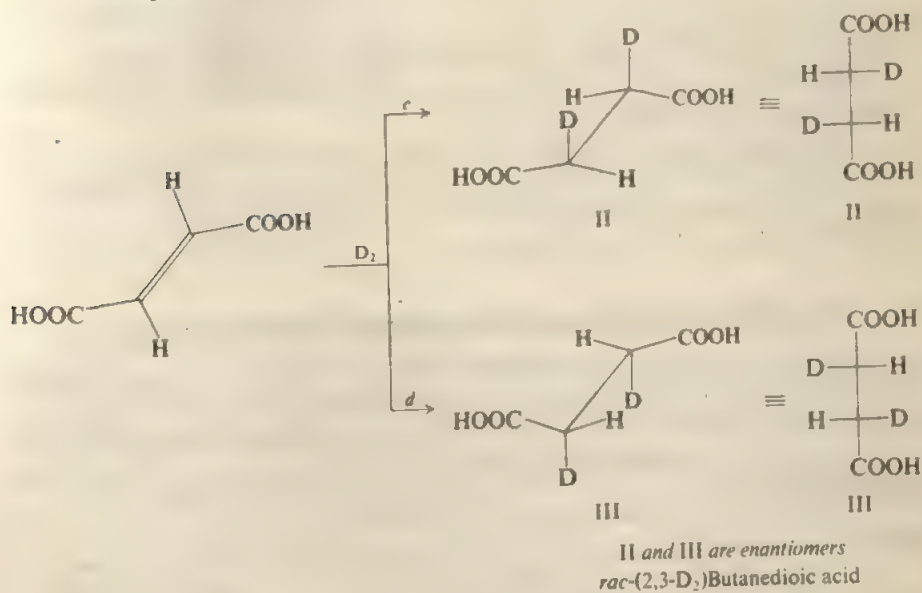


Hydrogenation with Wilkinson's catalyst involves *syn*-addition. Let us see that this is so. If we start (Fig. 8.5) with maleic acid, we can attach the two hydrogens to the same face of the double bond in two different ways: either from the top as in (a) or from the bottom as in (b). Whichever way we choose, we obtain I, which we recognize as the *meso* product.

Starting with fumaric acid (Fig. 8.6), we can again attach the hydrogens to the same face of the double bond in two different ways. Attachment from the top, path (c), gives enantiomer II; attachment from the bottom, path (d), gives enantiomer III. Since, whatever the mechanism, (c) and (d) are equally likely, we obtain the racemic modification.

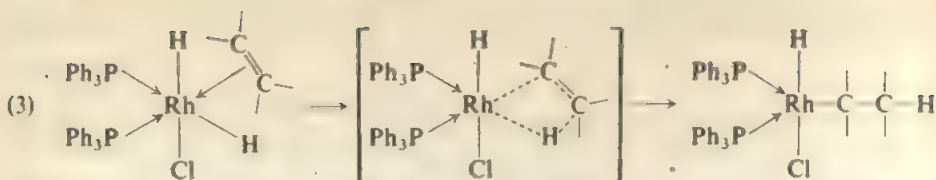


**Figure 8.5.** *syn*-Addition to maleic acid. Attachment as in (a) or (b) gives *meso* product.

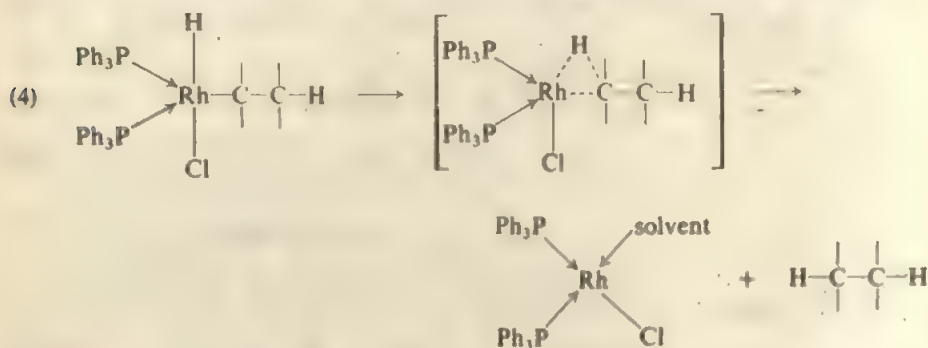


**Figure 8.6.** *syn*-Addition to fumaric acid. Attachment as in (c) or (d) equally likely: gives racemic modification.

This observed overall *syn*-addition is interpreted the following way. In step (3) the metal and a hydrogen attach themselves simultaneously to the doubly-bonded carbons. Because of the juxtaposition of metal and hydrogen—they are bonded to each other in the reactant—this addition of the two atoms necessarily, on geometric grounds, takes place to the same face of the double bond. This step thus involves *syn*-addition.



In step (4) hydrogen migrates from the metal to carbon, and in doing this attaches itself to the same face of carbon that was attached to the metal. That is, there is *front-side* attack leading to *retention* of configuration about the carbon. The

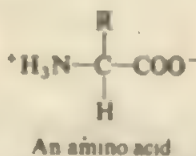


alternative, back-side attack is impossible, again on geometric grounds; the hydrogen is held near the front side of carbon by the metal, which in the transition state is bonded to both hydrogen and carbon.

The net result of *syn*-addition in step (3) and retention of configuration in step (4) is overall *syn*-addition in the hydrogenation. One face or the other of the alkene is held toward the metal in the initial metal-alkene complex, and it is to that face that both hydrogens become attached.

## 8.7 Stereochemistry of homogeneous hydrogenation: enantioselectivity

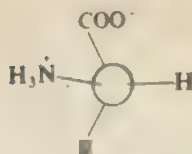
Now let us turn to another aspect of the stereochemistry of homogeneous hydrogenation. Let us use as our example a reaction of great practical importance: the synthesis of amino acids. Amino acids are the building blocks from which those vital giant molecules, the proteins (Chap. 30), are made. They have the general formula:



Except for the simplest case, where R is H, an amino acid contains a chiral center—the  $\alpha$ -carbon (*alpha* carbon)—and hence can exist as a pair of enantiomers. As ordinarily prepared, from an optically inactive substrate and optically inactive reagents, an amino acid is of course obtained as equal amounts of the two enantiomers, that is, as the racemic modification.

But naturally occurring amino acids—the ones that help to make up proteins—are not racemic, but optically active. They occur in just one enantiomeric form, with rare exceptions, this has the absolute configuration.





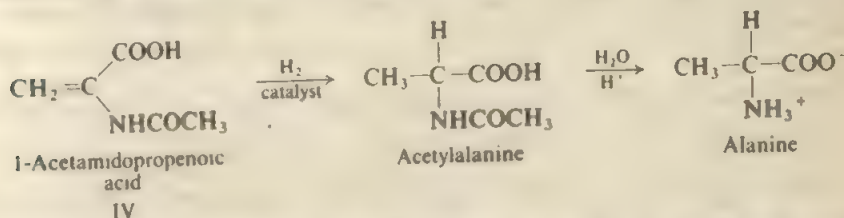
L-Amino acid  
Has *S* configuration

designated, for reasons that we shall see later, as *L*. Since the group *R* in these compounds happens always to be of lower priority than  $\text{COOH}$ , the natural *L*-amino acids have, by the Cahn-Ingold-Prelog convention, the *S* configuration (Sec. 4.15).

And so, to prepare a synthetic protein, one needs to start with amino acids that are optically active and of the correct configuration. If the synthetic amino acids have been prepared by ordinary methods, they must be resolved (Sec. 4.28) before they can be used: an additional, often lengthy, step which involves loss of half the material.

Clearly, what is needed is a synthesis of amino acids that yields directly only one enantiomer—an *enantioselective* synthesis. In work carried out since about 1970, just such a synthesis has been developed, based upon hydrogenation with homogeneous catalysis.

Consider the synthesis of the simple amino acid *alanine* from the unsaturated (and achiral) starting material IV.



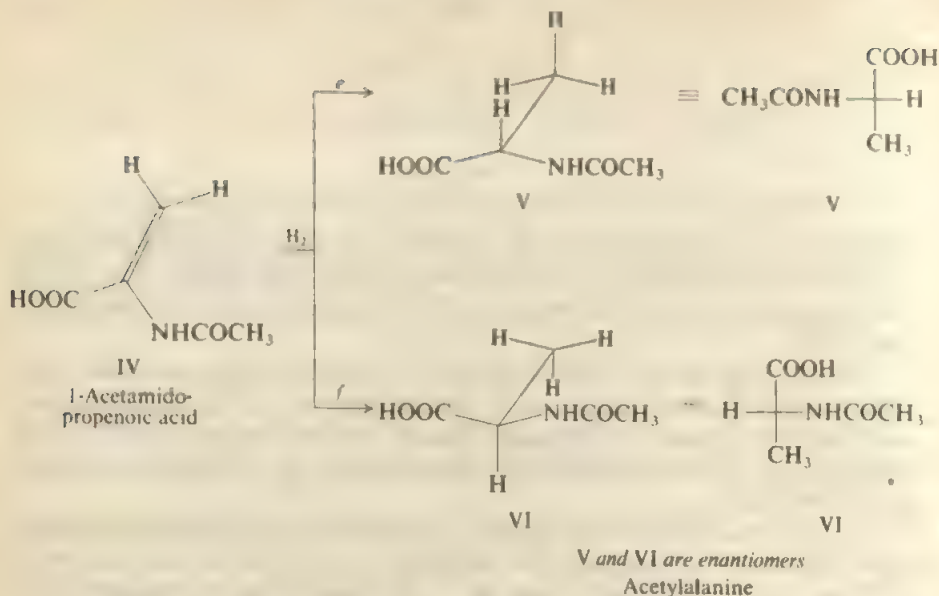
(The acetyl group,  $-\text{COCH}_3$ , is often used to *protect* the amino group, and is readily removed in the final step by hydrolysis.) In the hydrogenation step a chiral center is generated; just which enantiomer is obtained depends upon which face of IV the hydrogen adds to. Compound IV thus contains *enantiotopic faces* (Sec. 11.11).

As shown in Fig. 8.7 (p. 344), attachment from the top, by path (*e*), gives enantiomer V; attachment from the bottom, by path (*f*), gives enantiomer VI. Examination shows that enantiomer V has the *S* configuration and is the naturally occurring isomer.

Now, if we use the ordinary, optically inactive Wilkinson's catalyst that we have so far described, we can expect that attachment to the two faces will be equally likely, and that we will obtain the racemic modification. And this, of course, is exactly what happens.

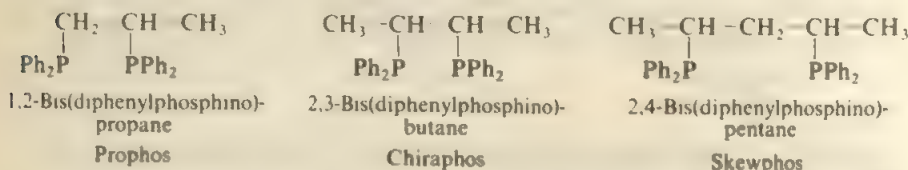
Suppose, however, that we were to modify the catalyst to make it optically active. Reagents attached to the metal would now be reacting in a *chiral medium*: the chiral coordination sphere of the metal. Under these conditions, we might expect—to a degree, in any case—preferential formation of one of the two enantiomers, that is, *enantioselectivity*.

But how could one make a complex optically active? The answer, of course, is to prepare a catalyst containing an *optically active ligand*. A number of such



**Figure 8.7.** Generation of a chiral center by addition to enantiotopic faces of a carbon-carbon double bond.

ligands have been developed, many of them by Brice Bosnich (University of Toronto). For example:

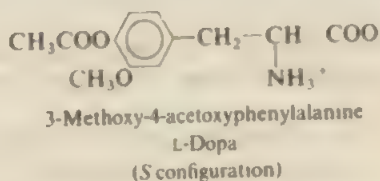


These are bidentate ligands, and chelate with rhodium to give optically active catalysts. The results obtained by use of these catalysts have been spectacular. Amino acids and other kinds of compounds have been prepared from achiral unsaturated compounds with a degree of enantioselectivity that rivals that of enzymes: optical purities in some cases of nearly 100%!

One encounters several terms used in connection with enantioselective syntheses: *optical purity*, *optical yield*, and *enantiomeric excess*. These all mean the same thing: percentage of the total that the predominant enantiomer makes up, with the other component considered to be the racemic modification. To calculate these values, we simply divide the observed optical rotation by the rotation of optically pure material, and multiply by 100.

We can visualize two different ways in which the enantioselectivity could arise. First, there could be preferential binding of the metal to one of the faces of the alkene rather than to the other: there is a *better fit* of the alkene in the coordination sphere, and one diastereomeric  $\pi$ -complex is formed in preference to the other. Alternatively, both  $\pi$ -complexes are formed, but one is more reactive than the other: transfer of hydrogen occurs more readily within it, perhaps because of a better spatial relationship between hydrogen and the bound alkene. Recent evidence suggests that, in one case at least, the latter explanation is the correct one.

Just which enantiomer is obtained can be controlled by the choice of configuration of the chiral ligand: (*R*)-prophos, for example, gives amino acids of the natural, *S* configuration: (*S,S*)-chiraphos gives amino acids of the opposite configuration. This method is even being used on an industrial scale, to make, for example, L-dopa, an amino acid used in the treatment of Parkinson's disease.



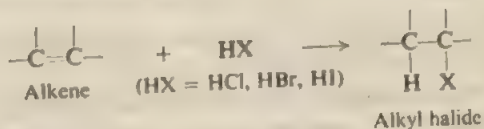
Metal complexes have been developed to catalyze many reactions other than hydrogenation with, in many cases, the special advantage of stereoselectivity. And this is only a beginning; the field is growing by leaps and bounds. We shall look at some examples of these other reactions later.

Enzymes are catalysts for the reactions involved in life processes. They speed up these reactions enormously, and with a high degree of selectivity. An enzyme accomplishes this, first, by binding the substrate. The substrate molecule just fits in a pocket in the giant convoluted enzyme molecule, where it is held by a combination of forces: van der Waals; dipole-dipole interaction, particularly hydrogen bonding; ionic bonding. Now, held in just the right position, the substrate is attacked by the reagent: a functional group that is either a permanent part of the enzyme molecule, or a molecule temporarily bonded to the enzyme. (See, for example, Sec. 31.2.)

The similarity to the action of metal complexes is striking. A metal complex has a much simpler structure than an enzyme, and it binds the substrate by different forces. But fundamentally the mode of action is the same: to bring together into just the right relationship the substrate and the reagent. Underlying both enzyme action and catalysis by metal complexes are what we shall call *neighboring group effects* (Sec. 11.5). This kind of action, brought about by sheer juxtaposition of reacting atoms, is one of the fundamental factors in determining reactivity; and, as we shall see, it can be tremendously more powerful than the polar or simple steric factors we have so far discussed.

## 8.8 Addition of hydrogen halides. Markovnikov's rule. Regioselective reactions

An alkene is converted by hydrogen chloride, hydrogen bromide, or hydrogen iodide into the corresponding alkyl halide.



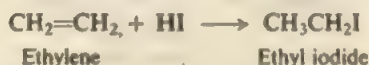
The reaction is frequently carried out by passing the dry gaseous hydrogen halide directly into the alkene. Sometimes the moderately polar solvent, acetic acid, which will dissolve both the polar hydrogen halide and the non-polar alkene,



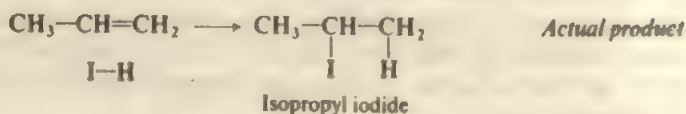
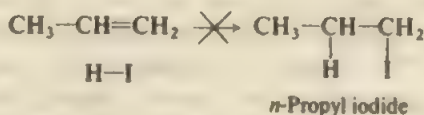
is used. The familiar aqueous solutions of the hydrogen halides are not generally used; in part, this is to avoid the addition of water to the alkene (Sec. 8.11).

**Problem 8.2** (a) What is the acid in an aqueous solution of HBr? In dry HBr? (b) Which is the stronger acid? (c) Which can better transfer a hydrogen ion to an alkene?

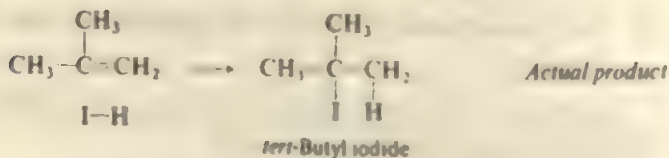
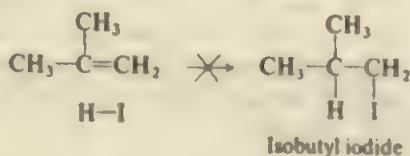
In this way, ethylene is converted into ethyl halide, the hydrogen becoming attached to one doubly-bonded carbon and the halogen to the other.



Propylene could yield either of two products, the *n*-propyl halide or the isopropyl halide, depending upon the orientation of addition, that is, depending upon which carbon atoms the hydrogen and halogen become attached to. Actually, only the isopropyl halide is formed.



In the same way, isobutylene could yield either of two products, isobutyl halide or *tert*-butyl halide; here the orientation of addition is such that only the *tert*-butyl halide is formed.



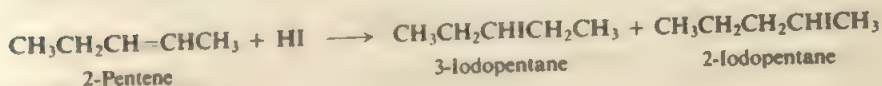
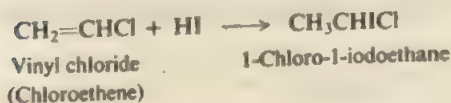
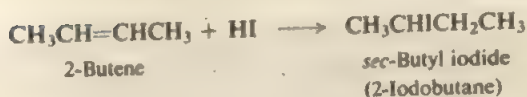
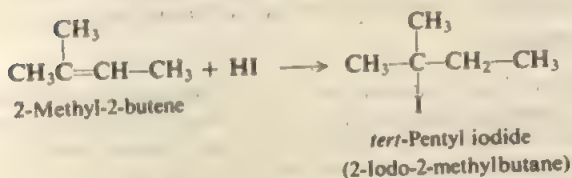
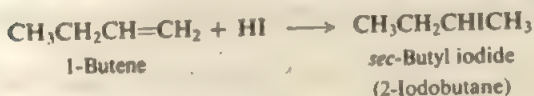
Thus, in the addition of a reagent YZ to an alkene, orientation depends upon which doubly-bonded carbon accepts Y and which accepts Z.

On examination of a large number of such additions, the Russian chemist Vladimir Markovnikov (University of Kazan) observed that where two isomeric products are possible, one of them usually predominates. He pointed out in 1869 that the orientation of addition follows a pattern which we can summarize as *in the addition of an acid to the carbon-carbon double bond of an alkene, the hydrogen of the acid attaches itself to the carbon that already holds the greater number of hydrogens.*

This statement is generally known as **Markovnikov's rule**. Thus: "Unto everyone that hath shall be given," or "Them as has, gits."

Thus, in the addition to propylene we see that the hydrogen goes to the carbon bearing two hydrogen atoms rather than to the carbon bearing one. In the addition to isobutylene, the hydrogen goes to the carbon bearing two hydrogens rather than to the carbon bearing none.

Using Markovnikov's rule, we can correctly predict the principal product of many reactions. For example:



In 2-pentene each of the doubly-bonded carbons holds one hydrogen, so that according to the rule we should expect neither product to predominate. Here again the prediction is essentially correct, roughly equal quantities of the two isomers actually being obtained.

The examples have involved the addition of hydrogen iodide; exactly similar results are obtained in the addition of hydrogen chloride and, except for special conditions indicated in the following section, of hydrogen bromide.

Reactions that, from the standpoint of orientation, give exclusively or nearly exclusively one of several possible isomeric products are called *regioselective*. (From the Latin *regio*, direction, and pronounced "reejio.") Like stereoselectivity, regioselectivity is a characteristic of a reaction that must be accounted for by a satisfactory mechanism. And, like stereoselectivity, regioselectivity is a characteristic that is sought for in an ideal synthetic reaction.

**Problem 8.3** Saytzeff actually stated his rule for orientation of elimination (Sec. 7.21) in terms, not of alkyl groups on the alkene being formed, but, like Markovnikov, of numbers of hydrogens on carbon atoms of the substrate. Suggest a wording for this original Saytzeff rule.

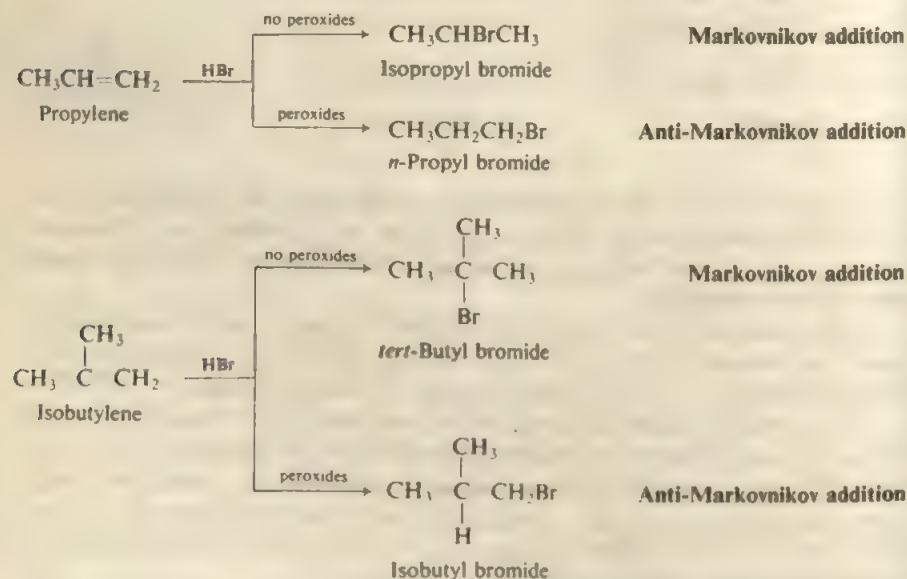
## 8.9 Addition of hydrogen bromide. Peroxide effect

Addition of hydrogen chloride and hydrogen iodide to alkenes follows Markovnikov's rule. Until 1933 the situation with respect to hydrogen bromide was exceedingly confused. It had been reported by some workers that addition of hydrogen bromide to a particular alkene yields a product in agreement with Markovnikov's rule; by others, a product in contradiction to Markovnikov's rule; and by still others, a mixture of both products. It had been variously reported that the product obtained depended upon the presence or absence of water, or of light, or of certain metallic halides; it had been reported that the product obtained depended upon the solvent used, or upon the nature of the surface of the reaction vessel.

In 1933, M. S. Kharasch and F. R. Mayo at the University of Chicago brought order to this chemical chaos by discovering that the orientation of addition of hydrogen bromide to the carbon-carbon double bond is determined solely by the presence or absence of **peroxides**.

Organic peroxides are compounds containing the —O—O— linkage. They are encountered, generally in only very small amounts, as impurities in many organic compounds, where they have been slowly formed by the action of oxygen. Certain peroxides are deliberately synthesized, and used as reagents: *tert*-butyl peroxide (p. 121) or benzoyl peroxide,  $(C_6H_5COO)_2$ , for example.

Kharasch and Mayo found that if one carefully excludes peroxides from the reaction system, or if one adds certain **inhibitors**—*hydroquinone* (p. 1184), for example, or *diphenylamine* (p. 888)—the addition of HBr to alkenes follows Markovnikov's rule. On the other hand, if one does not exclude peroxides, or if one



deliberately puts peroxides into the reaction system, HBr adds to alkenes in exactly the reverse direction.

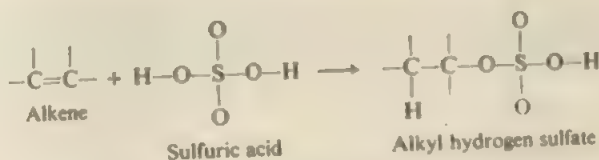
This reversal of the orientation of addition caused by the presence of peroxides is known as the **peroxide effect**. Of the reactions we are studying, *only* the



addition of hydrogen bromide shows the peroxide effect. The presence or absence of peroxides has no effect on the orientation of addition of hydrogen chloride, hydrogen iodide, sulfuric acid, water, etc. As we shall see (Secs. 8.15 and 8.22), both Markovnikov's rule and the peroxide effect can readily be accounted for in ways that are quite consistent with the chemistry we have learned so far.

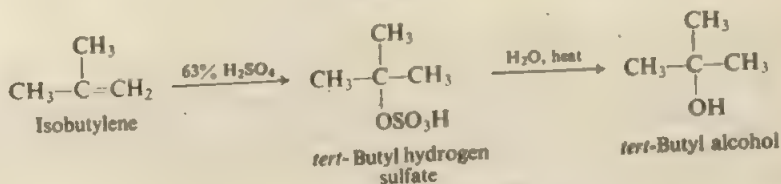
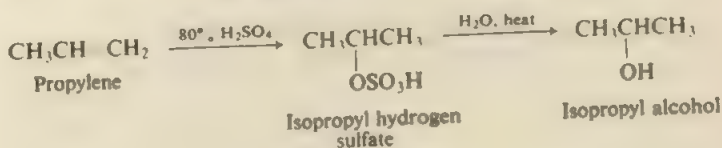
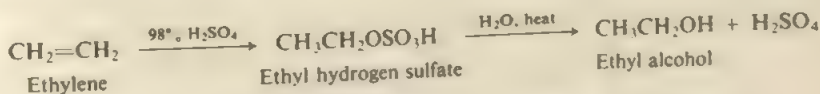
## 8.10 Addition of sulfuric acid

Alkenes react with cold concentrated sulfuric acid to form compounds of the general formula  $\text{ROSO}_3\text{H}$ , known as **alkyl hydrogen sulfates**. These products are formed by addition of hydrogen to one carbon of the double bond and bisulfate ion to the other.



Like alkyl sulfonates (Sec. 6.11), these compounds are *esters*: esters of sulfuric acid, just as alkyl sulfonates are esters of sulfonic acids.

Reaction is carried out simply by bringing the reactants into contact: a gaseous alkene is bubbled into the acid, and a liquid alkene is stirred or shaken with the acid. Since alkyl hydrogen sulfates are soluble in sulfuric acid, a clear solution results. The alkyl hydrogen sulfates are deliquescent solids, and are difficult to isolate. As the examples below show, the concentration of sulfuric acid required for reaction depends upon the particular alkene involved; we shall account for this later.



If the sulfuric acid solution of the alkyl hydrogen sulfate is diluted with water and heated, there is obtained an alcohol bearing the same alkyl group as the original alkyl hydrogen sulfate. The ester has been cleaved by water to form the alcohol and sulfuric acid, and is said to have been *hydrolyzed*. This sequence of reactions affords a route to the alcohols, and it is for this purpose that addition of

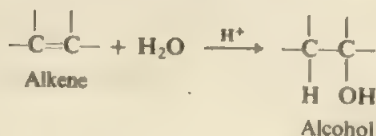
sulfuric acid to alkenes is generally carried out. This is an excellent method for the large-scale manufacture of alcohols, since alkenes are readily obtained by the cracking of petroleum. As the examples show, *the addition of sulfuric acid follows Markovnikov's rule*. Consequently, certain alcohols cannot be obtained by this method. For example, isopropyl alcohol can be made, but not *n*-propyl alcohol; *tert*-butyl alcohol, but not isobutyl alcohol.

The fact that alkenes dissolve in cold, concentrated sulfuric acid to form the alkyl hydrogen sulfates is made use of in the purification of certain other kinds of compounds. Alkanes or alkyl halides, for example, which are insoluble in sulfuric acid, can be freed from alkene impurities by washing with sulfuric acid. A gaseous alkane is bubbled through several bottles of sulfuric acid, and a liquid alkane is shaken with sulfuric acid in a separatory funnel.

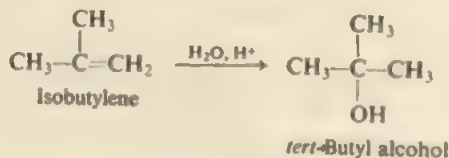
**Problem 8.4** (a) To what class of reactions does the hydrolysis of alkyl hydrogen sulfates probably belong? Explain. (b) Suggest a mechanism or mechanisms for hydrolysis of ethyl hydrogen sulfate; (c) for hydrolysis of *tert*-butyl hydrogen sulfate.

### 8.11 Addition of water. Hydration

Water adds to the more reactive alkenes in the presence of acids to yield alcohols. Since this addition, too, follows Markovnikov's rule, the alcohols are the



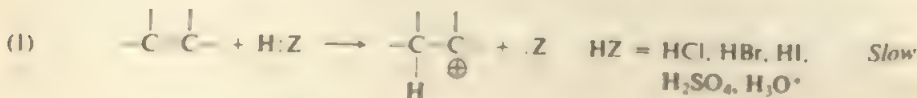
same as those obtained by the two-step synthesis just described. Hydration of alkenes, directly or via the alkyl hydrogen sulfates, is the principal industrial source of those lower alcohols whose formation is consistent with Markovnikov's rule.

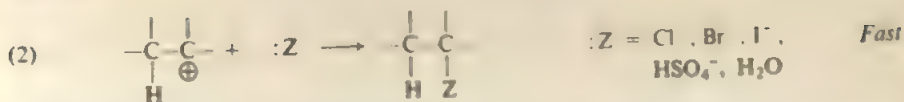


### 8.12 Electrophilic addition: mechanism

Before we take up other reactions of alkenes, let us examine the mechanism of the reactions we have discussed so far. After we have done this, we shall return to our systematic consideration of alkene reactions, prepared to understand them better in terms of these earlier reactions.

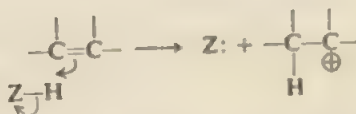
Addition of the acidic reagent, HZ, involves two steps:





Step (1) is the transfer of hydrogen ion from :Z to the alkene to form a carbocation: a transfer of a proton from one base to another.

#### Electrophilic addition

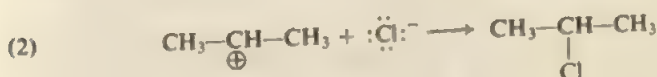
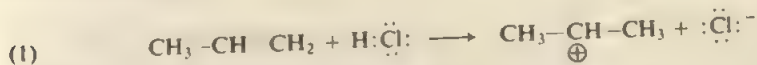


Step (2) is the combining of the carbocation with the base :Z.

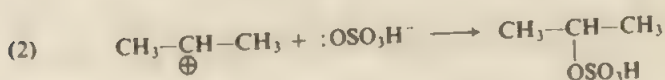
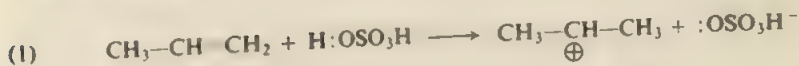
Let us see what happens in step (1), focusing our attention on HZ and the two doubly-bonded carbons of the alkene. Hydrogen is transferred as a proton—that is, *without its electrons*, which are left behind on the base :Z. To form the bond to hydrogen, carbon uses the  $\pi$  electrons formerly shared with the other carbon. This leaves this other carbon with only a sextet of electrons; it thus becomes the electron-deficient carbon of a carbocation.

Step (1) is the slow, difficult step, and its rate largely or entirely controls the overall rate of addition. This step involves attack by an acidic, electron-seeking reagent—that is, an *electrophilic* reagent—and hence the reaction is an example of **electrophilic addition**. The electrophile is not necessarily a Lowry-Brønsted acid transferring a proton, as shown here, but, as we shall see, can be almost any kind of electron-deficient molecule (Lewis acid).

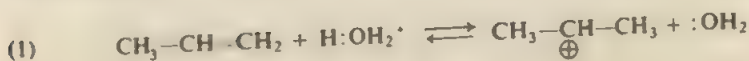
The general mechanism can be illustrated by specific examples: addition of hydrogen chloride,



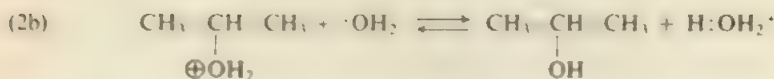
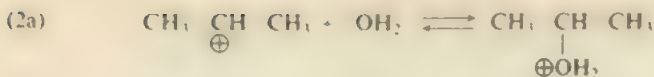
of sulfuric acid,



and of water.







We notice that the carbocation combines with water to form not the alcohol but the protonated alcohol, in a subsequent reaction this protonated alcohol releases a hydrogen ion to another base to form the alcohol. This sequence of reactions, we can see, is just the reverse of that proposed for the dehydration of alcohols (Sec. 7.28). In dehydration, the equilibria are shifted in favor of the alkene chiefly by the removal of the alkene from the reaction mixture by distillation; in hydration, the equilibria are shifted in favor of the alcohol partly by the high concentration of water.

Now, what is the evidence for this mechanism? It includes the following:

(a) The *rate of reaction* depends upon the concentration of both the alkene and the reagent HZ.

(b) *Reaction requires an acidic reagent.*

(c) Where the structure permits, *reaction is accompanied by rearrangements.*

(d) *The alkene does not undergo appreciable hydrogen exchange.*

In addition, the mechanism is consistent with:

(e) the *orientation of addition*; and

(f) the *relative reactivities of alkenes.*

Let us examine this evidence.

First, (a) the *rate of reaction* depends upon concentration of both the alkene and the reagent HZ. This fact is, of course, consistent with a mechanism that starts with reaction between these two reagents.

Next, (b) *reaction requires an acidic reagent.* According to the mechanism, the first step in all these reactions is the transfer of a proton to the alkene. This agrees with the fact that all these reagents except water are strong acids in the Lowry-Brønsted sense; that is, they can readily transfer protons. The exception, water, requires the presence of added strong acid for reaction to occur. An alkene is a *weak base*, and accepts protons to a significant degree only from strong acids.

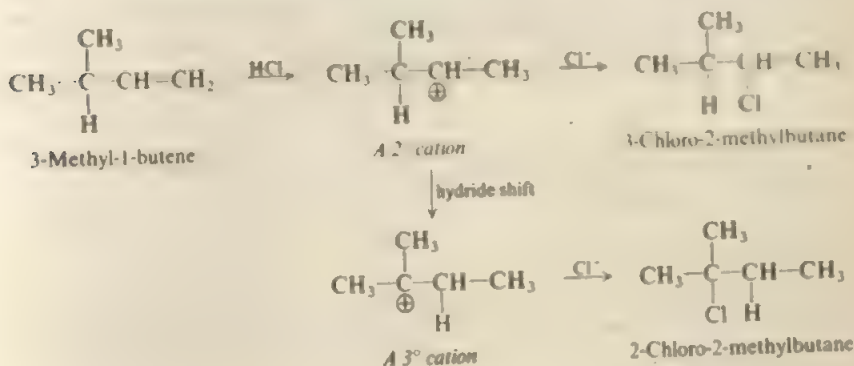
Even the familiar acetic acid ( $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$ ) is not strong enough and, alone, does not react with alkenes. Yet when acetic acid is used as the solvent for the addition of HCl, there is obtained, along with the alkyl chloride, a smaller amount of alkyl acetate ( $\text{CH}_3\text{COOR}$ ). This is not formed by a substitution reaction between acetic acid and alkyl chloride already formed by addition; under the reaction conditions, the alkyl chloride is inert to acetic acid. The simplest interpretation is that strong acid converts the alkene into *something* that can react with water or with acetic acid. According to the mechanism, that "something" is the carbocation.

### 8.13 Electrophilic addition: rearrangements

Where the structure permits, (c) *reaction is accompanied by rearrangements.* The product sometimes contains the group Z attached to a carbon that was not doubly bonded in the substrate; sometimes the product even has a carbon skeleton different from that of the substrate.

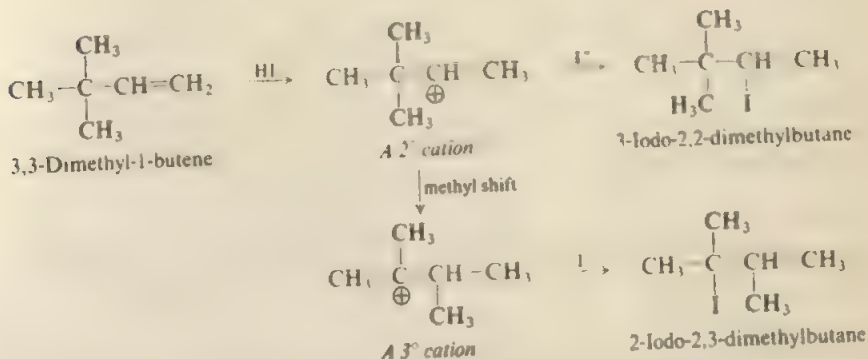
These "unexpected" products, it turns out, are readily accounted for by rearrangements of the carbocations proposed as intermediates. These rearrangements follow exactly the same pattern that we have come to expect from our study of carbocations in  $S_N1$  substitution (Sec. 6.26) and in  $E1$  elimination (Secs. 7.24 and 7.28).

Addition of hydrogen chloride to 3-methyl-1-butene, for example, yields not only the expected 2-chloro-3-methylbutane, but also 2-chloro-2-methylbutane.



Since a 1,2-shift of hydrogen can convert the initially formed secondary cation into a more stable tertiary cation, such a rearrangement does occur, and much of the product is derived from this new cation.

Addition of hydrogen iodide to 3,3-dimethyl-1-butene yields not only the expected 3-iodo-2,2-dimethylbutane, but also 2-iodo-2,3-dimethylbutane:



Here again we see the conversion of a secondary cation into a tertiary, this time brought about by a 1,2-shift of a methyl group.

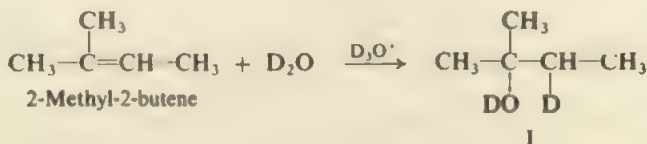
The change in carbon skeleton accompanying this last example of addition is identical to that accompanying two reactions of 3,3-dimethyl-2-butanol: dehydration (p. 321), an *elimination* reaction; and conversion into the chloride (p. 259), a *substitution* reaction. This is a particularly dramatic example of the kind of evidence

that gave rise to the idea that these apparently unrelated reactions proceed through the same intermediate: the carbocation.

Of all the evidence supporting the mechanism we have given for electrophilic addition, the strongest single piece is the occurrence of rearrangements, since this bears directly on the heart of the mechanism: the formation of the carbocation.

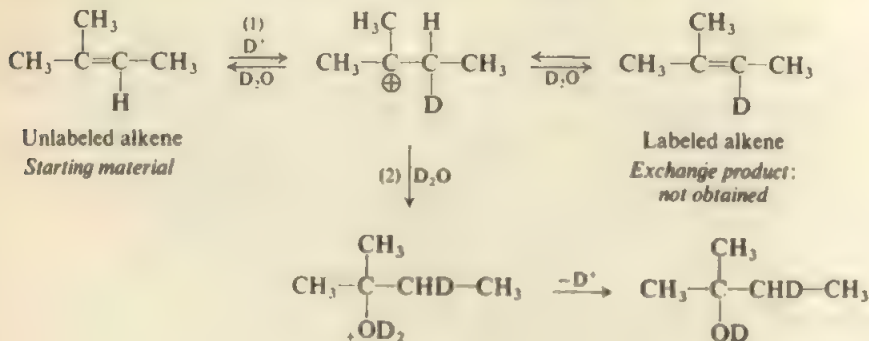
### 8.14 Electrophilic addition: absence of hydrogen exchange

In electrophilic addition, (d) *the alkene does not undergo appreciable hydrogen exchange*. Addition of  $D_2O$  to 2-methyl-2-butene in the presence of  $D_3O^+$  was found, as we might expect, to yield the deuterated alcohol I.



When the reaction was about half over, it was interrupted and the unconsumed alkene was isolated. Mass spectrometric analysis showed that it contained almost no deuterium; that is, the alkene had not undergone appreciable exchange of hydrogen or deuterium.

Now, what is the significance of this finding? (We have already encountered this technique (Sec. 7.19), and should have a suspicion of where the discussion is leading.) Consider what would happen if carbocations were formed rapidly and reversibly in step (1), and then—every so often—slowly combined with the base to complete the addition. In that case most carbocations would lose hydrogen many times to regenerate the alkene before eventually going on to product. But in the



carbocation there are *two* hydrogens on C-3: the protium (H) that has been there all along, and the newly acquired deuterium (D). In reverting to alkene, the carbocation would be just as likely—*more* likely, actually (*Why?*)—to lose protium as deuterium, and thus leave deuterium in the alkene. While stewing in the solution until half-reaction time, unconsumed alkene would exchange much of its protium for deuterium and, on recovery, would be found to be heavily deuterated—*contrary to fact*.

What this evidence shows is that *if* carbocations are formed—and other evidence shows that they *are*—they combine with base much faster than they revert

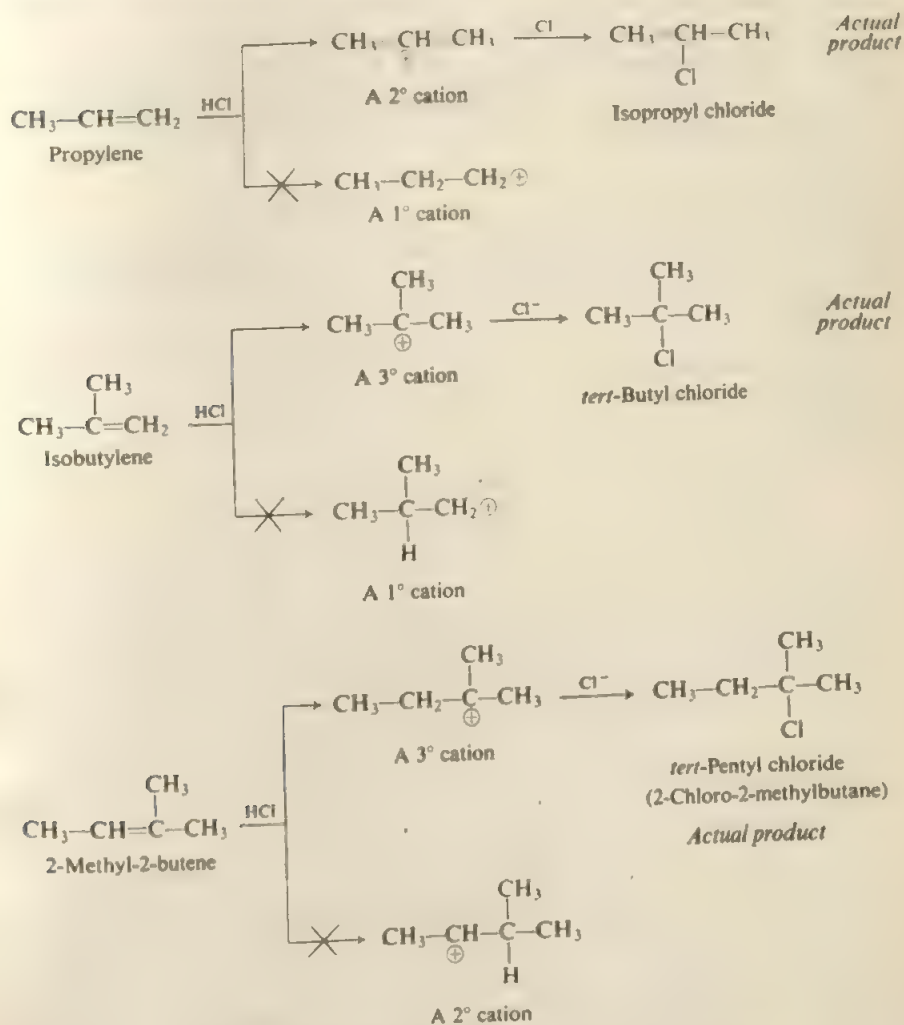


to alkene. That is to say, as the mechanism on page 350 shows, step (1) is the slow, rate-determining step. How fast addition takes place depends chiefly on how fast the carbocation is formed.

### 8.15 Electrophilic addition: orientation and reactivity

The mechanism is consistent (e) with the *orientation* of addition of acidic reagents, and (f) with the effect of structure on the *relative reactivities* of alkenes.

Addition of hydrogen chloride to three typical alkenes is outlined below, with the two steps of the mechanism shown. In accord with Markovnikov's rule, propylene yields isopropyl chloride, isobutylene yields *tert*-butyl chloride, and 2-methyl-2-butene yields *tert*-pentyl chloride.



According to the mechanism, hydrogen from the reagent adds to one or the other of the two doubly-bonded carbons to give one or the other of two possible carbocations. For example, if hydrogen goes to C-2 of propylene, there is formed

the *n*-propyl cation; if it goes to C-1, there is formed the isopropyl cation. Once formed, the carbocation rapidly reacts to yield product. Which halide is obtained, then, depends upon which carbocation is formed in the first step. The fact that propylene yields isopropyl chloride rather than *n*-propyl chloride shows that the isopropyl cation is formed rather than—that is, *faster than*—the *n*-propyl cation. Thus, orientation in electrophilic addition is determined by the relative rates of two competing reactions: *formation of one carbocation or the other*.

In each of the examples given above, the product obtained shows that in the initial step a secondary cation is formed faster than a primary, or a tertiary faster than a primary, or a tertiary faster than a secondary. Examination of the orientation in many cases shows that this is a general rule: in electrophilic addition the rate of formation of carbocations follows the sequence

**Rate of formation of carbocations**  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ > \text{CH}_3^\dagger$

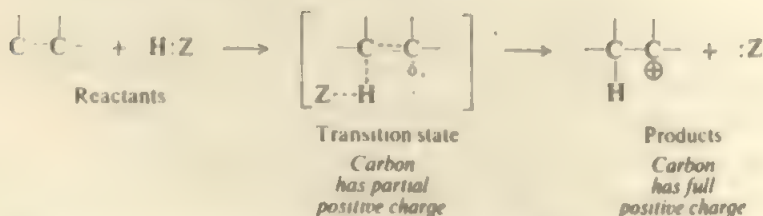
In listing carbocations in order of their rate of formation from alkenes, we find that once again (compare Sec. 6.25), we have listed them in order of their stability (Sec. 6.23).

**Stability of carbocations**  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ > \text{CH}_3^\dagger$

We can now reword Markovnikov's rule as: **electrophilic addition to a carbon-carbon double bond involves the intermediate formation of the more stable carbocation.**

As with Saytzeff's rule (Sec. 7.21), this rewording gives a rule that not only is more generally applicable, but leads us to the factor actually at work.

How can we account for the fact that the rate of formation of a carbocation in electrophilic addition depends upon its stability? Once more we must compare the structure of the reactants with the structure of the transition state. In the reactants, hydrogen is attached to :Z, and the doubly-bonded carbons are held to each other not only by a  $\sigma$  bond but also by a  $\pi$  bond. In the products, hydrogen is attached to one of the carbons; the  $\pi$  bond is broken, and the other carbon is left with only a sextet of electrons and hence a positive charge. In the transition state, the bond between hydrogen and :Z is partly broken, and the bond between hydrogen and carbon is partly formed. The  $\pi$  bond is partly broken, and *carbon has partly gained the positive charge it will carry in the carbocation*.



Electron-releasing groups tend to disperse the partial positive charge developing on carbon, and in this way stabilize the transition state. Stabilization of the transition state lowers  $E_{\text{act}}$  and permits a faster reaction (see Fig. 8.8). To the extent that the  $\pi$  bond is broken, the organic group possesses the character of the carbocation it is to become. As before, the same factor, electron release, that

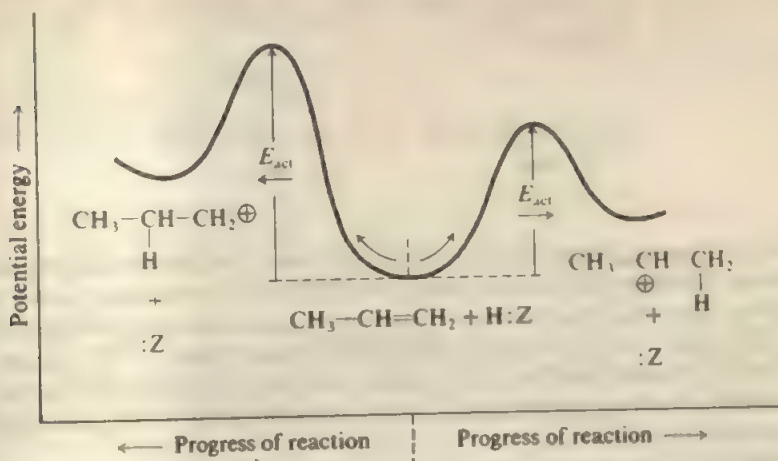


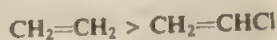
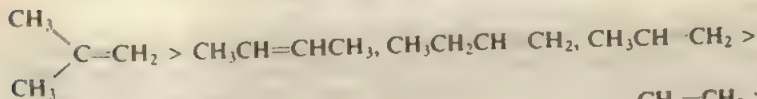
Figure 8.8. Molecular structure and orientation of reaction. Stability of transition state parallels stability of carbocation: more stable carbocation formed faster.

stabilizes the carbocation also stabilizes the *incipient* carbocation in the transition state. Once again, we find, *the more stable the carbocation, the faster it is formed.*

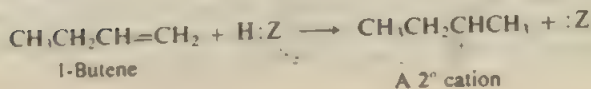
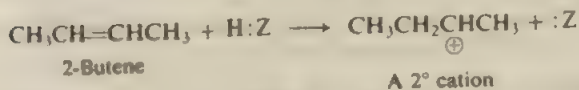
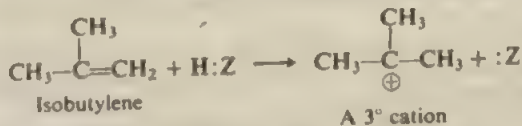
Thus, the rate of addition of a hydrogen ion to a double bond depends upon the stability of the carbocation being formed. As we might expect, this factor determines not only the **orientation** of addition to a single alkene, but also the **relative reactivities** of different alkenes.

Alkenes generally show the following order of reactivity toward addition of acids:

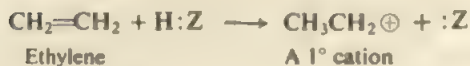
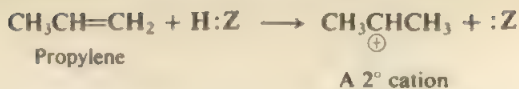
#### Reactivity of alkenes toward acids



Isobutylene, which forms a tertiary cation, reacts faster than 2-butene, which forms a secondary cation. 1-Butene, 2-butene, and propylene, which form secondary cations, react faster than ethylene, which forms a primary cation.





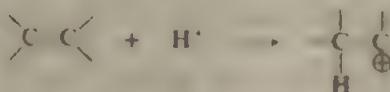


As substituents, halogens tend to attract electrons. Just as electron release by alkyl groups disperses the positive charge and stabilizes a carbocation, so electron withdrawal by halogens intensifies the positive charge and destabilizes the carbocation. We saw that this electron withdrawal slows down the formation of carbocations in heterolysis (Sec. 6.31); in the same way, it slows down formation of carbocations in electrophilic addition. Vinyl chloride,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCl}$ , for example is *less* reactive than ethylene.

When we said that the carbocation is the heart of the mechanism of electrophilic addition, we meant not just that it is an intermediate; we meant that, as in other carbocation reactions we have studied, it is the *rate of formation of the carbocation* that determines the course of reaction.

We can begin to see what a powerful weapon we have for attacking the problems that arise in connection with a wide variety of reactions that involve carbocations. We know that the more stable the carbocation, the faster it is formed; that its stability depends upon dispersal of charge; and that dispersal of charge is determined by the electronic effect of the attached groups. We have already found that this same approach enables us to deal with such seemingly different matters as (a) the relative reactivities of substrates in  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  substitution; (b) the relative ease of dehydration of alcohols; (c) the relative reactivities of alkenes toward addition of acids; (d) the orientation of addition of acids to alkenes; and (e) the pattern of rearrangements that can occur in all these reactions.

**Problem 8.5** What we really want as standards for the stabilities of carbocations are the compounds they are being generated from—alkenes at this point, not the alkyl halides on which the discussion of Sec. 6.23 was based. For the addition of protons to alkenes in the gas phase,



the following  $\Delta H^\circ$ 's have been measured: ethylene,  $-160.6$  kcal; propylene,  $-180.4$  kcal; isobutylene,  $-193.5$  kcal

(a) Using a diagram similar to Fig. 6.8 (p. 232), derive the order of stability of ethyl, isopropyl, and *tert*-butyl cations *relative to the alkene from which each is formed*. (Caution: be sure to note the *sign* of  $\Delta H^\circ$ .)

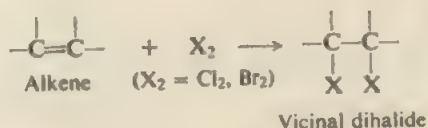
(b) On this basis, what is the difference in stability between the ethyl and isopropyl cations? Between the ethyl and *tert*-butyl cations?

(c) How does each of these differences compare with the corresponding differences based on alkyl bromides as standards? Alkyl chlorides? Alkyl iodides?

**Problem 8.6** We have seen (Sec. 7.28) that dehydration of alcohols is reversible; its reverse is, of course, hydration of alkenes. On the basis of what you have just learned, show how dehydration of 1-butanol could give rise to 2-butene without involving rearrangement of—or even formation of—a *n*-butyl cation.

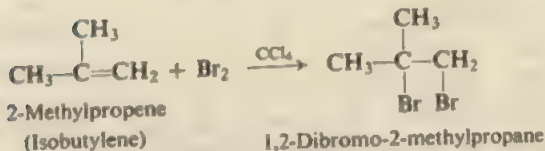
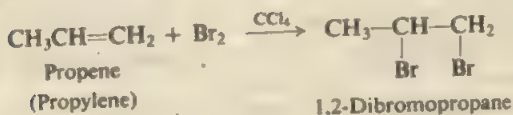
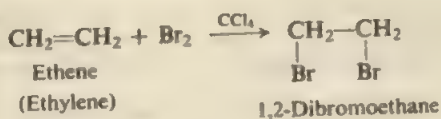
## 8.16 Addition of halogens

Alkenes are readily converted by chlorine or bromine into saturated compounds that contain two atoms of halogen attached to adjacent carbons; iodine generally fails to react.



The reaction is carried out simply by mixing together the two reactants, usually in an inert solvent like carbon tetrachloride. The addition proceeds rapidly at room temperature or below, and does not require exposure to ultraviolet light; in fact, we deliberately avoid higher temperatures and undue exposure to light, as well as the presence of excess halogen, since under those conditions substitution might become an important side reaction.

This reaction is by far the best method of preparing **vicinal dihalides**. For example:

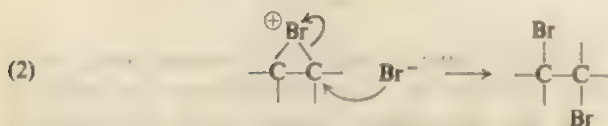
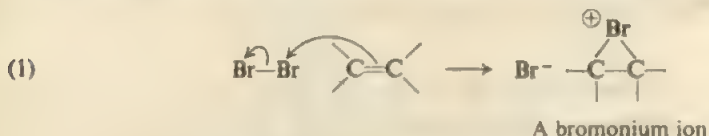


Addition of bromine is extremely useful for detection of the carbon-carbon double bond. A solution of bromine in carbon tetrachloride is red; the dihalide, like the alkene, is colorless. Rapid decolorization of a bromine solution is characteristic of compounds containing the carbon-carbon double bond. (However, see Sec. 8.29.)

## 8.17 Mechanism of addition of halogens

The addition of halogens to alkenes, like the addition of protic acids, is believed to be electrophilic addition, and to involve two steps. Again, the first step involves the formation of a cation. But this cation, in most cases, is not a carbocation, but something new to us: a **halonium ion**. Let us see what a halonium ion is, and what evidence there is for its formation.

Let us use addition of bromine as our example. In step (1) bromine is transferred from a bromine molecule to the alkene: not to just one of the doubly-bonded carbons, but to both, forming a cyclic **bromonium ion**.



Step (1) does indeed represent electrophilic addition. Bromine is transferred as *positive* bromine: that is, without a pair of electrons, which are left behind on the newly formed bromide ion. In step (2) this bromide ion, or more probably another just like it, reacts with the bromonium ion to yield the product, the dibromide.

What is being proposed here is *not* a  $\pi$ -complex (Sec. 8.5). Bromine is bonded by two  $\sigma$  bonds—one to each carbon—to form a ring. A  $\pi$ -complex of molecular  $\text{Br}_2$  and alkene may, however, be a reversibly formed precursor of the bromonium ion.

The transfer of a proton from a strong acid to an alkene, while new to us, does fit into a familiar framework of acid-base reactions. But how are we to understand the transfer of positive bromine from a bromine molecule? To begin with, it is an acid-base reaction—although not in the Lowry-Brønsted sense. Just as alkenes are bases, so halogens are acids, of the Lewis type.

We can understand this reaction better if we change our viewpoint. An acid is an acid only in the presence of a base, and vice versa. In the same way, an electrophile is an electrophile only in the presence of a nucleophile. By definition, whatever reacts with an electrophile must be a nucleophile; and, again, vice versa. As organic chemists we tend to speak of reactions from the standpoint of the organic molecule, the substrate. It, we say, undergoes nucleophilic substitution or electrophilic addition. But in nucleophilic substitution, the substrate is acting as an electrophile; and in electrophilic addition, the substrate is acting as nucleophile. From the standpoint of a halogen molecule, the reaction with an alkene is nucleophilic substitution. Acting as a nucleophile, the alkene attaches itself to one of the bromines and pushes the other bromine out as bromide ion. Bromide ion is the leaving group; and, as we have seen, bromide ion is a very *good* leaving group.

What are the facts upon which this mechanism is based? They are:

- (a) the effect of the structure of the alkene on reactivity,
- (b) the effect of added nucleophiles on the products obtained,
- (c) the fact that halogens add with *complete stereospecificity* and in the *anti* sense;
- (d) the *direct observation of halonium ions* under superacid conditions, and
- (e) the role played by halonium ions in *neighboring group effects*

We shall examine each of these pieces of evidence. (a)–(d) now, and (e) later (Secs. 11.4–11.6).

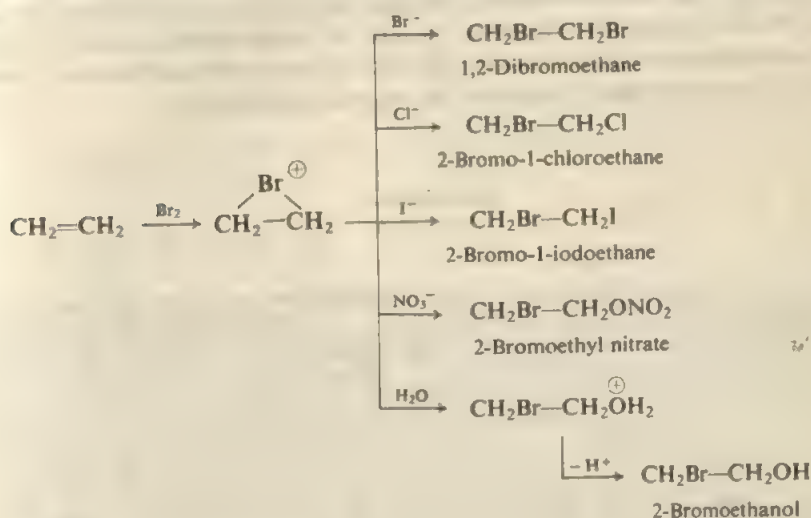
First, there is (a) the *effect of the structure of the alkene on reactivity*. Alkenes



show the same order of reactivity toward halogens as toward the acids already studied: electron-releasing substituents activate an alkene, and electron-withdrawing substituents deactivate. This fact supports the idea that addition is indeed electrophilic—that the alkene is acting as an electron source, and that halogen acts as an acid.

Next, there is (b) the *effect of added nucleophiles* on the products obtained. If a halonium ion is the intermediate, and capable of reacting with halide ion, then we might expect it to react with almost any negative ion or basic molecule we care to provide. The bromonium ion formed in the reaction between ethylene and bromine, for example, should be able to react not only with bromide ion but also—if these are present—with fluoride ion, iodide ion, nitrate ion, or water.

The facts are in complete agreement with this expectation. When ethylene is bubbled into an aqueous solution of bromine and sodium chloride, there is formed not only the dibromo compound but also the bromochloro compound and the



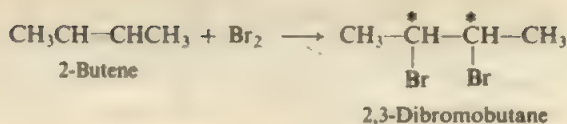
bromoalcohol. Aqueous sodium chloride *alone* is completely inert toward ethylene; chloride ion or water can react only after the halonium ion has been formed by the action of bromine. In a similar way bromine and aqueous sodium iodide or sodium nitrate convert ethylene into the bromiodo compound or the bromonitrate, as well as the dibromo compound and the bromoalcohol. Bromine in water with no added ion yields the dibromo compound and the bromoalcohol.

Now, this elegant work certainly shows that ethylene reacts with bromine to form *something* that can react with these other nucleophiles—but it need not be a bromonium ion. On this evidence alone the intermediate cation could be the simple open carbocation  $\text{BrCH}_2\text{CH}_2^+$ .

Let us turn to the evidence of the stereochemistry of halogen addition.

## 8.18 Stereochemistry of addition of halogens

Addition of bromine to 2-butene yields 2,3-dibromobutane. Two chiral centers are generated in the reaction, and the product, we know, can exist as a *meso* compound and a pair of enantiomers.

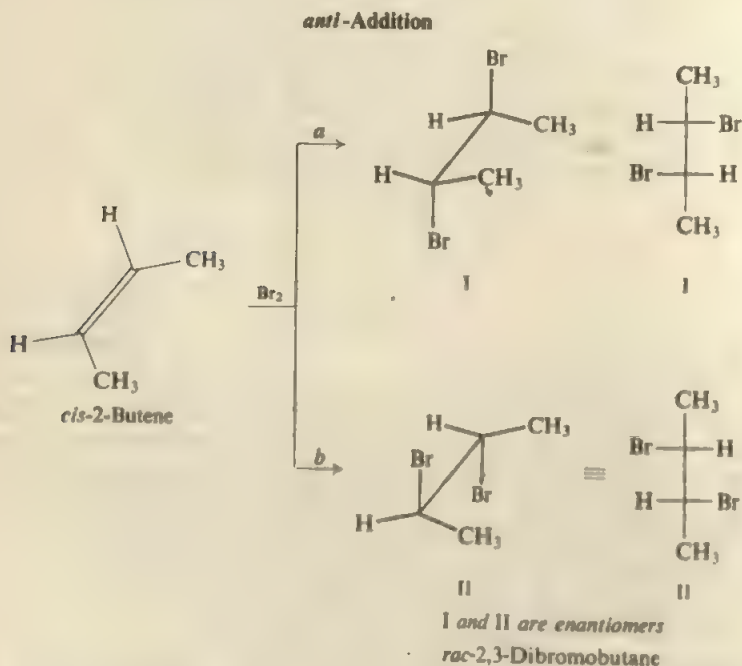


The reactants, too, exist as stereoisomers: a pair of geometric isomers.

If we start with *cis*-2-butene, we obtain *only* racemic 2,3-dibromobutane. If we start with *trans*-2-butene, we obtain *only* the *meso* product. Reaction is thus completely stereoselective and completely stereospecific.

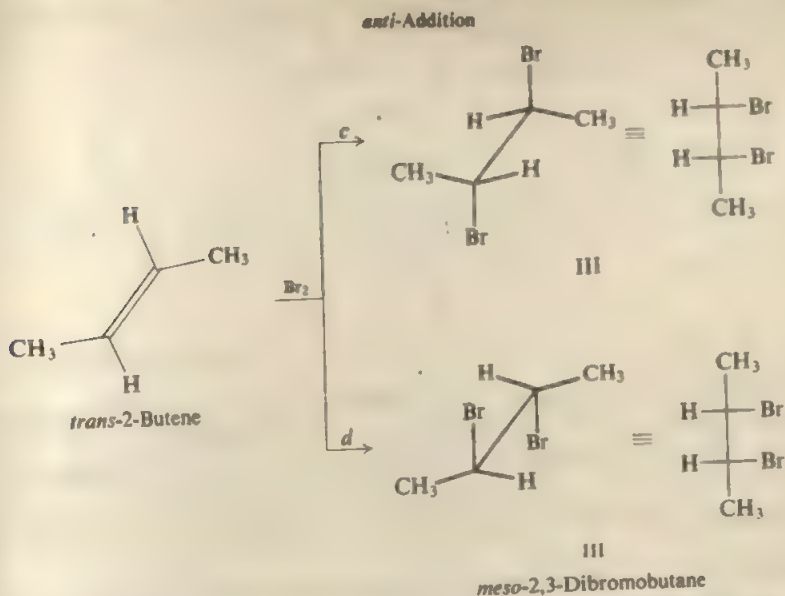
We have seen (Sec. 8.6) that stereospecific additions are of two kinds, *syn* and *anti*, depending upon whether the added groups become attached to the same face or opposite faces of the double bond. In homogeneous hydrogenation we saw an example of *syn*-addition. Which kind is the addition of bromine?

Examination of the structures involved shows us that addition of bromine to the 2-butenes involves *anti*-addition. If we start (Fig 8.9) with *cis*-2-butene, we can attach the bromine atoms to opposite faces of the alkene either as in (a) or in (b) and thus obtain the enantiomers I and II. Since, whatever the mechanism, (a) and (b) should be equally likely, we obtain the racemic modification.



**Figure 8.9.** *anti*-Addition to *cis*-2-butene. Attachment as in (a) or (b) equally likely: gives racemic modification.

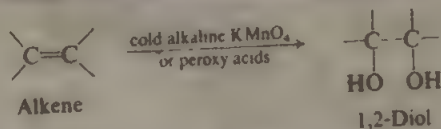
Starting with *trans*-2-butene (Fig. 8.10), we can again attach the bromine atoms to opposite faces of the alkene in two ways but, whichever way we choose, we obtain the *meso*-dibromide, III.



**Figure 8.10.** *anti*-Addition to *trans*-2-butene. Attachment as in (c) or (d) gives *meso* product.

*anti*-Addition is the general rule for the reaction of bromine or chlorine with simple alkenes.

**Problem 8.7** On treatment with certain oxidizing agents, alkenes are *hydroxylated*:



Permanganate converts *cis*-2-butene into 2,3-butanediol,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHOHCHOHCH}_3$ , of m.p.  $34^\circ$ , and *trans*-2-butene into 2,3-butanediol of m.p.  $19^\circ$ . Handling as described in Sec. 4.28 converts the diol of m.p.  $19^\circ$  (but not the one of m.p.  $34^\circ$ ) into two optically active fractions of equal but opposite rotations.

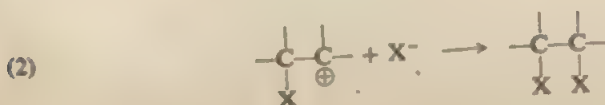
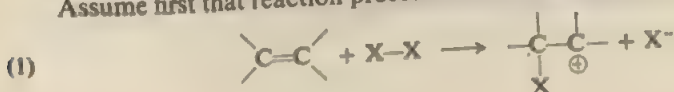
(a) What is the configuration of the diol of m.p.  $19^\circ$ ? Of m.p.  $34^\circ$ ?

(b) Assuming these results are typical (they are), what is the stereochemistry of hydroxylation with permanganate?

(c) Treatment of the same alkenes with peroxy acids gives the opposite results: the diol of m.p.  $19^\circ$  from *cis*-2-butene, and the diol of m.p.  $34^\circ$  from *trans*-2-butene. What is the stereochemistry of hydroxylation with peroxy acids?

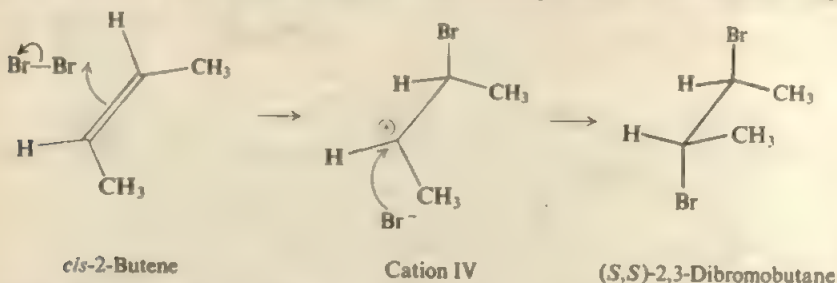
Now, what does the stereochemistry of halogen addition tell us about the mechanism?

Assume first that reaction proceeds via an open carbocation.



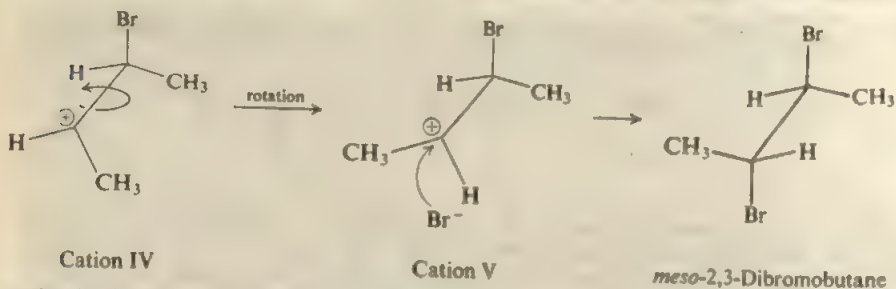


Is the observed stereochemistry consistent with a mechanism involving such an intermediate? Let us use addition of bromine to *cis*-2-butene as an example. A positive bromine ion is transferred to, say, the top face of the alkene to form



carbocation IV. Then, a bromide ion attacks the *bottom* face of the positively charged carbon to complete the *anti*-addition; attack at this face is preferred, we might say, because it permits the two bromines to be as far apart as possible in the transition state. (We obtain the racemic product: the *S,S*-dibromide as shown, the *R,R*-dibromide through attachment of positive bromine to the near end of the alkene molecule.)

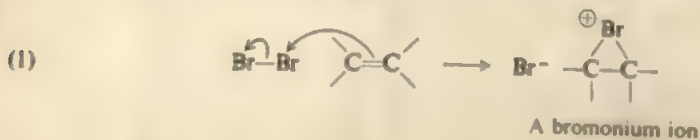
But this picture of the reaction is not satisfactory, and for two reasons. First, to account for the *complete* stereospecificity of addition, we must assume that attack at the bottom face of the cation is not just preferred, but is the *only* line of attack: conceivable, but—especially in view of other reactions of carbocations (Sec. 6.22)—not likely. Then, even if we accept this exclusively bottom-side attack, we are faced with a second problem. Rotation about the carbon-carbon bond would convert



cation IV into cation V; bottom-side attack on cation V would yield not the racemic dibromide but the *meso* dibromide—in effect *syn*-addition, and contrary to fact.

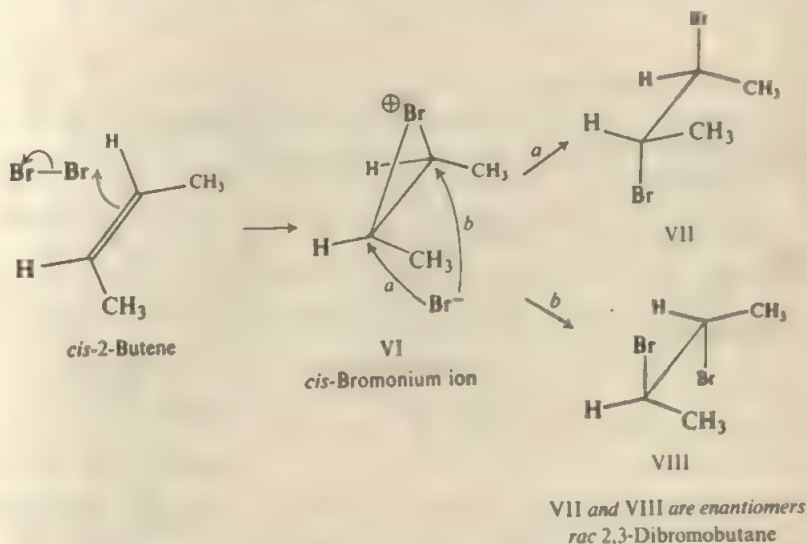
To accommodate the stereochemical facts, then, we would have to make two assumptions about halogen addition: after the carbocation is formed, it is attacked by bromide ion (a) before rotation about the single bond can occur, and (b) exclusively from the face away from the halogen already in the cation. Neither of these assumptions is very likely; together, they make the idea of an open carbocation intermediate hard to accept.

It was to account better for the observed stereochemistry that, in 1937, I. Roberts and G. E. Kimball at Columbia University proposed the bromonium ion mechanism that we have given.





Now, how does the bromonium ion mechanism account for *anti*-addition? Using models, let us first consider addition of bromine to *cis*-2-butene (Fig. 8.11).



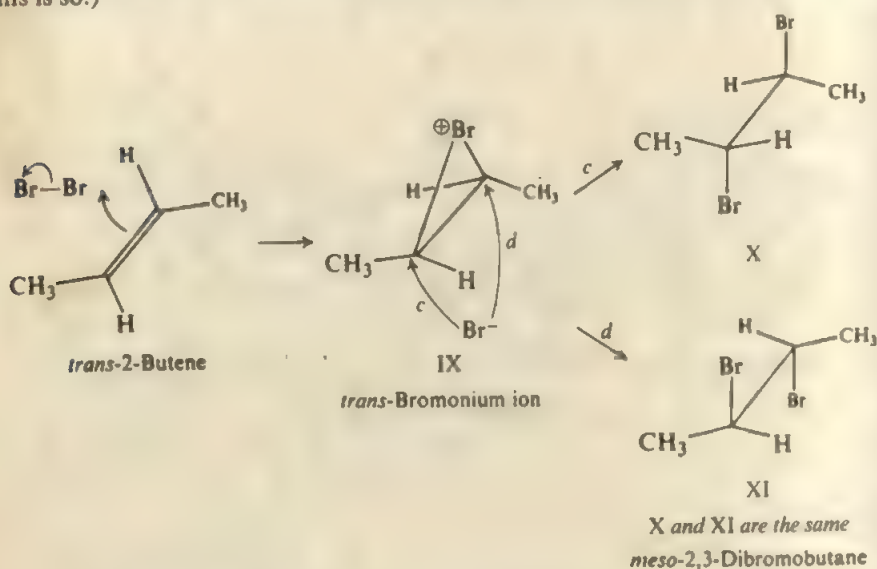
**Figure 8.11.** Addition of bromine to *cis*-2-butene via cyclic bromonium ion. Opposite-side attacks (*a*) and (*b*) equally likely, give enantiomers in equal amounts.

In the first step, positive bromine becomes attached to either the top or bottom face of the alkene. Let us see what we would get if bromine becomes attached to the top face. When this happens, the carbon atoms of the double bond tend to become tetrahedral, and the hydrogens and methyls are displaced downward. The methyl groups are, however, still located across from each other, as they were in the alkene. In this way, bromonium ion VI is formed.

Now bromonium ion VI is attacked by bromide ion. A new carbon-bromine bond is formed, and an old carbon-bromine bond is broken. This is a familiar reaction, nucleophilic substitution; bromide ion is the nucleophile, and the positive bromine is the leaving group. As we might expect, then, attack by bromide ion is *from the back side*: on the bottom face of VI, so that the bond being formed is on the opposite side of carbon from the bond being broken. There is *inversion of configuration* about the carbon being attacked.

Attack on VI can occur by path (*a*) to yield structure VII or by path (*b*) to yield structure VIII. We recognize VII and VIII as enantiomers. Since attack by either (*a*) or (*b*) is equally likely, the enantiomers are formed in equal amounts, and thus we obtain the racemic modification. The same results are obtained if positive bromine initially becomes attached to the bottom face of *cis*-2-butene. (Show with models that this is so.)

Next, let us carry through the same operation on *trans*-2-butene (Fig. 8.12). This time, bromonium ion IX is formed. Attack on it by path (c) yields X, attack by (d) yields XI. If we simply rotate either X or XI about the carbon-carbon bond, we readily recognize the symmetry of the compound. It is *meso*-2,3-dibromobutane; X and XI are identical. The same results are obtained if positive bromine is initially attached to the bottom face of *trans*-2-butene. (Show with models that this is so.)



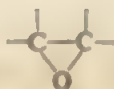
**Figure 8.12.** Addition of bromine to *trans*-2-butene via cyclic bromonium ion. Opposite-side attacks (c) and (d) give same product.

**Problem 8.8** (a) What is the relationship between the bromonium ions formed by attachment of positive bromine to the top and bottom faces of *trans*-2-butene? In what proportions are they formed? (b) Answer the same questions for *cis*-2-butene. (c) For *trans*-2-pentene. (d) For *cis*-2-pentene.

**Problem 8.9** (a) Predict the products of addition of bromine to *trans*-2-pentene. Is attack by bromide ion by the two paths equally likely? Account for the fact that inactive material is actually obtained. (b) Do the same for *cis*-2-pentene.

The concept of a halonium ion solves both of the problems associated with an open carbocation: a halogen bridge prevents rotation about the carbon-carbon bond, and at the same time restricts attack by bromide ion exclusively to the opposite face of the intermediate. The stereochemistry of halogen addition thus not only gives powerful support for a two-step mechanism, but it shows, in a way no other evidence could, just what those two steps almost certainly are.

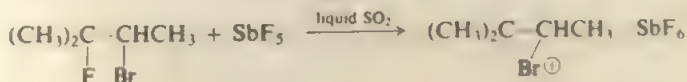
That such cyclic intermediates *can* give rise to *anti*-addition is demonstrated by hydroxylation with peroxy acids (Problem 8.7, p. 363): there, analogous intermediates—perfectly respectable compounds called *epoxides* (Chap. 12)—*can* actually be isolated and studied.



An epoxide



Cyclic halonium ions were first proposed, then, simply as the most reasonable explanation for the observed stereochemistry. Since that time, however, more positive evidence has been discovered. In 1967, Olah (p. 226) prepared cations whose NMR spectra indicate that they are indeed cyclic halonium ions. For example:



The idea of a bromonium or chloronium ion may appear strange to us, in contrast to the already familiar oxonium and ammonium ions. The tendency for halogen to share two pairs of electrons and acquire a positive charge, we might say, should be weak because of the high electronegativity of halogens. But the evidence—here and, as we shall see, in other connections—shows that this tendency is *appreciable*. In halogen addition we are concerned with this question: which is more stable, an open carbocation in which carbon has only a sextet of electrons, or a halonium ion in which each atom (except hydrogen, of course) has a complete octet? It is not a matter of which atom, halogen or carbon, can better accommodate a positive charge; it is a matter of completeness or incompleteness of octets.

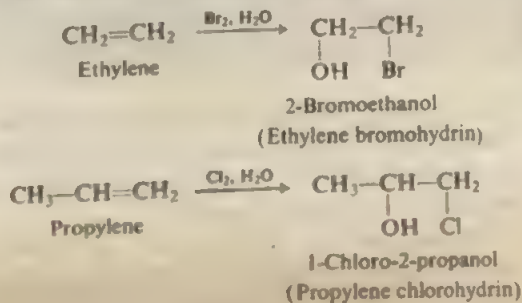
In halonium ion formation we see one more example of what underlies all carbocation behavior: *the need to get a pair of electrons to complete the octet of the positively charged carbon*.

There are exceptions to the rule of *anti*-addition of halogens, but exceptions that are quite understandable. If the alkene contains substituents that can strongly stabilize the open carbocation—as, for example, in a *benzyl* cation (Sec. 12.19)—then addition proceeds with little or no stereospecificity. Carbon is getting the electrons it needs, but in a different way.

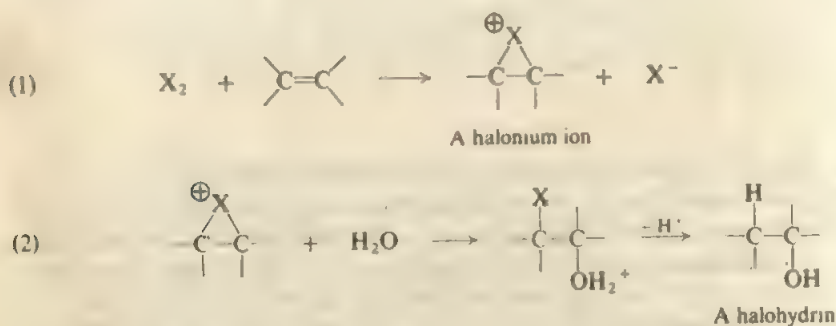
**Problem 8.10** Olah treated compounds of the formula  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CXCF}(\text{CH}_3)_2$  with  $\text{SbF}_5$ . He observed the formation of halonium ions when  $\text{X} = \text{Cl}, \text{Br}, \text{or I}$ , but an open carbocation when  $\text{X} = \text{F}$ . How do you account for the difference in behavior of the difluoro compound? (*Hint*: See Sec. 1.15.)

## 8.19 Halohydrin formation: addition of the elements of hypohalous acids

As we have seen (Sec. 8.17), addition of chlorine or bromine in the presence of water can yield compounds containing halogen and hydroxyl on adjacent carbon atoms. These compounds are thus chloro- or bromoalcohols. They are commonly referred to as **halohydrins**: *chlorohydrins* or *bromohydrins*. Under proper conditions they can be made the major products. For example:

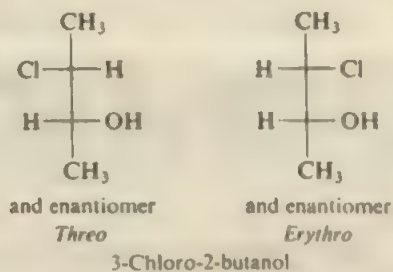


There is evidence, of a kind we are not prepared to go into here, that these compounds are not formed by addition of preformed hypohalous acid, HOX, but by reaction of the alkene with, successively, halogen and water, as was shown in Sec. 8.17.



Halogen adds (step 1) to form the halonium ion; this then reacts, in part, not with bromide ion, but with water (step 2) to yield the protonated alcohol. Whatever the mechanism, the result is addition of the elements of hypohalous acid (HO— and —X), and the reaction is often referred to in that way.

As we might expect, with simple alkenes this reaction, too, is stereospecific and results in *anti*-addition. For example, chlorine water reacts with *cis*-2-butene to give only the (racemic) *threo* chlorohydrin, and with *trans*-2-butene to give only the (racemic) *erythro* chlorohydrin.



**Problem 8.11** (a) Following the pattern of Fig. 8.11 (p. 365) and Fig. 8.12 (p. 366), show all steps in the formation of the chlorohydrin from *cis*-2-butene. (Be sure to consider attachment of halogen to either face of the alkene, and subsequent nucleophilic attack at either carbon.)

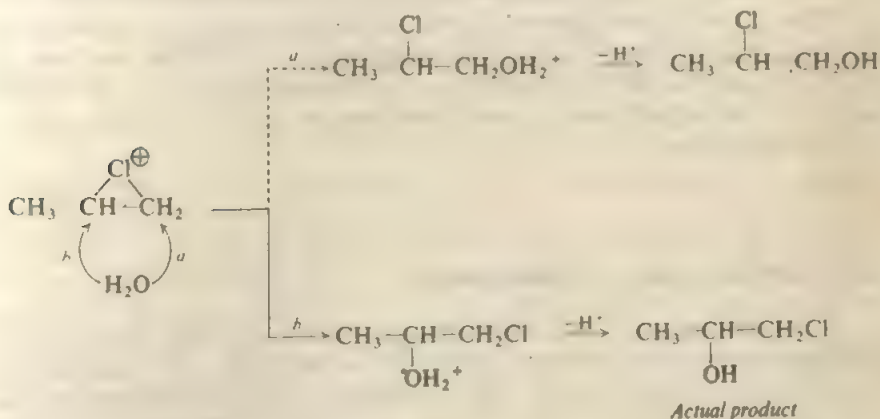
(b) Do the same thing starting with *trans*-2-butene.

(c) For each of the reactions (a) and (b) identify the step that actually leads to a racemic product.

Propylene, we see above, gives the chlorohydrin in which chlorine is attached to the terminal carbon. This is typical behavior for an unsymmetrical alkene; orientation follows Markovnikov's rule, with positive halogen going to the same carbon that the hydrogen of a protic reagent would.

Now, this orientation would be perfectly understandable if the intermediate were an open carbocation: the initial addition of halogen yields the more stable carbocation—secondary, in the case of propylene. But the stereochemistry indicates

that in halohydrin formation, too, the intermediate is a cyclic halonium ion. Orientation depends upon which carbon of the cation suffers nucleophilic attack by water: the terminal carbon (path *a*) or the middle carbon (path *b*). The product obtained shows that the path (*b*) is greatly favored.

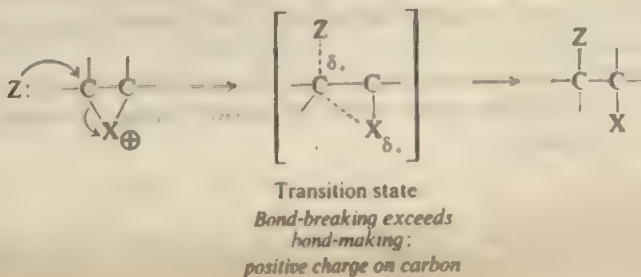


The complete stereospecificity strongly indicates that this nucleophilic attack is of the  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  type: cleavage of the carbon-halogen bond and formation of the carbon-oxygen bond occur in a single step. Reactivity in  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$ , we saw (Sec. 6.18), typically depends upon steric hindrance. How, then, are we to account for preferential attack at the *more hindered* carbon of the halonium ion?

In an  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  reaction, we said earlier, carbon loses electrons to the leaving group and gains electrons from the nucleophile, and as a result does not become appreciably positive or negative in the transition state; electronic factors are unimportant, and steric factors largely control reactivity.

But here the substrate is a halonium ion. Bonding between carbon and halogen is very weak: partly because of angle strain in the three-membered ring, but mostly because halogen is, after all, sharing a second pair of electrons and carrying a positive charge. And so this halogen is an *exceedingly good leaving group*. (Remember: the leaving group here is not a halide ion—a good leaving group itself—but a neutral halogen already attached to another carbon.)

The nucleophile, on the other hand, is a poor one: water. Although there are both partly broken and partly formed bonds in the transition state, bond-breaking has proceeded further than bond-making; the leaving group has taken electrons away to a much greater extent than the nucleophile has brought them up, and the carbon has acquired a considerable positive charge.



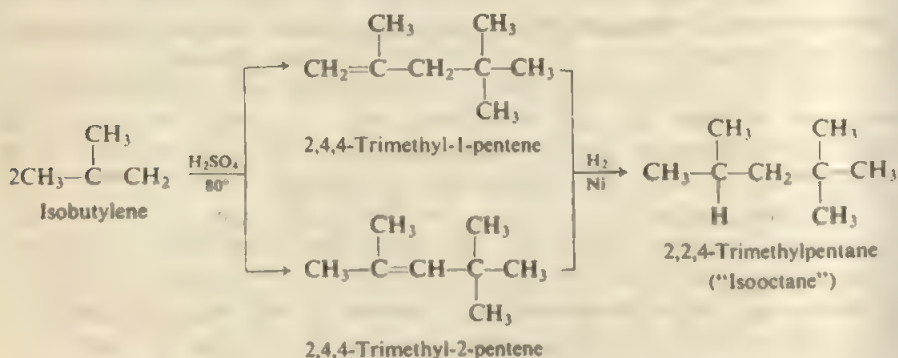


Crowding, on the other hand, is relatively unimportant, because both leaving group and nucleophile are far away. Stability of the transition state is determined chiefly, therefore, by electronic factors, not steric factors. We speak of such a reaction as having considerable  $S_N1$  character. Attack occurs, not at the less hindered carbon, but *at the carbon that can best accommodate the positive charge*.

Thus, the orientation observed is what would be expected if an open carbocation were the intermediate. This kind of orientation, we shall find, is commonly observed in cases like this one, where there is a three-membered cyclic intermediate with weak bonding to the leaving group: a *mercurinium ion* (Sec. 10.7), for example, or a *protonated epoxide* (Sec. 12.12).

## 8.20 Addition of alkenes. Dimerization

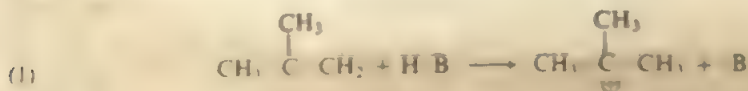
Under proper conditions, isobutylene is converted by sulfuric or phosphoric acid into a mixture of two alkenes of molecular formula  $C_8H_{16}$ . Hydrogenation of either of these alkenes produces the same alkane, 2,2,4-trimethylpentane (Sec. 3.30). The two alkenes are isomers, then, and differ only in position of the double bond. (*Problem*: Could they, instead, be geometric isomers?) When studied by the methods discussed at the end of this chapter (Sec. 8.28), these two alkenes are found to have the structures shown:



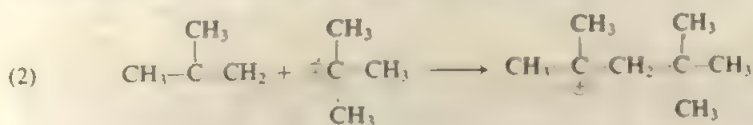
Since the alkenes produced contain exactly twice the number of carbon and hydrogen atoms as the original isobutylene, they are known as **dimers** (*di* = two, *mer* = part) of isobutylene, and the reaction is called **dimerization**. Other alkenes undergo analogous dimerizations.

Let us see if we can devise an acceptable mechanism for this dimerization. There are a great many isomeric octenes; if our mechanism should lead us to just the two that are actually formed, this in itself would provide considerable support for the mechanism.

Since the reaction is catalyzed by acid, let us write as step (1) addition of a hydrogen ion to isobutylene to form the carbocation; the tertiary cation would, of course, be the preferred ion.

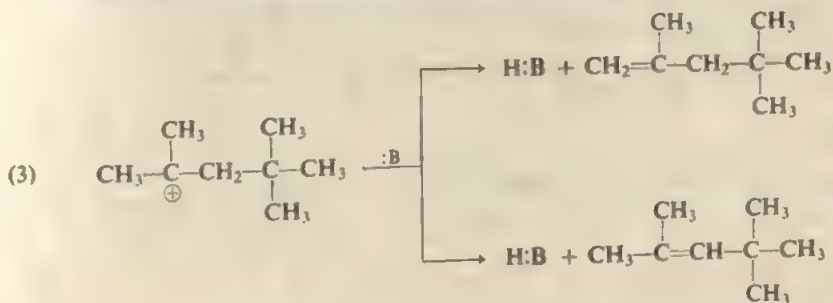


A carbocation undergoes reactions that provide electrons to complete the octet of the positively charged carbon atom. But a carbon-carbon double bond is an excellent electron source, and a carbocation might well go there in its quest for electrons. Let us write as step (2), then, addition of the *tert*-butyl cation to isobutylene, again, the orientation of addition is such as to yield the more stable



tertiary cation. Step (2) brings about the union of two isobutylene units, which is, of course, necessary to account for the products.

What is this new carbocation likely to do? We might expect that it could add to another molecule of alkene and thus make an even larger molecule; under certain conditions this does indeed happen. Under the present conditions, however, we know that this reaction stops at eight-carbon compounds, and that these compounds are alkenes. Evidently, the carbocation undergoes a reaction familiar to us: loss of a hydrogen ion (step 3). Since the hydrogen ion can be lost from a carbon on either side of the positively charged carbon, two products should be possible.



We find that the products expected on the basis of our mechanism are just the ones that are actually obtained. The fact that we can make this prediction simply on the basis of the fundamental properties of carbocations as we understand them is, of course, powerful support for the entire carbocation theory.

From what we have seen here, we can add one more reaction to those undergone by carbocations. A carbocation may:

(d) add to an alkene to form a larger carbocation.

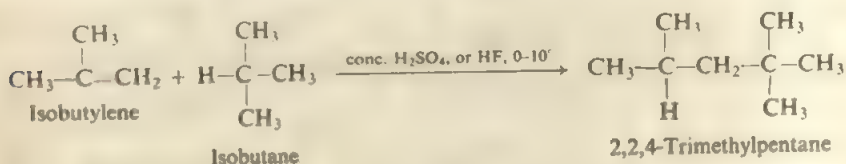
We have studied this dimerization, not for its great industrial importance—"isooctane" is made by a new, cheaper process—but for what it reveals about carbocations and alkenes. The attachment of carbocations (or carbocation-like species) to  $\pi$ -electron systems is a fundamental reaction type that is encountered both in ordinary organic chemistry (Secs. 9.35 and 16.8) and—in a modified form—in biogenesis, the sequence of reactions by which a compound is formed in living systems, plant or animal (Sec. 9.33 and Problem 26, p. 453).

## 8.21 Addition of alkanes. Alkylation

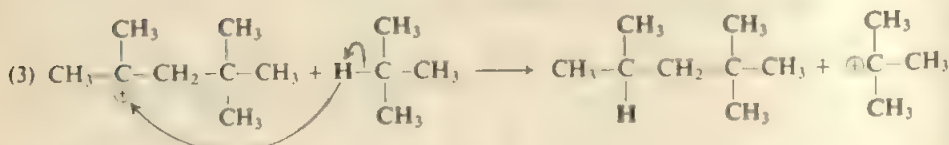
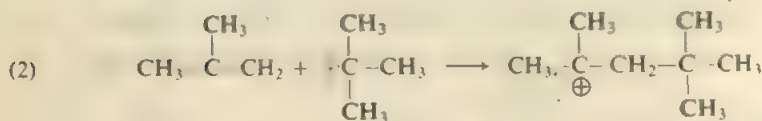
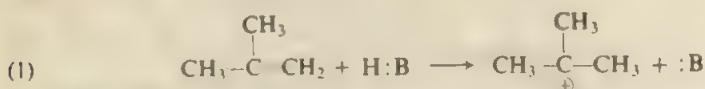
Now let us look at the industrial method that is used today to make the large amounts of 2,2,4-trimethylpentane ("iso-octane") that are consumed as high-test

gasoline (Sec. 3.30). In doing this we shall learn still more about the fundamental properties of carbocations—and something rather surprising about alkanes.

When isobutylene and isobutane are allowed to react in the presence of an acidic catalyst, they form directly 2,2,4-trimethylpentane. This reaction is, in effect, addition of an alkane to an alkene.



The commonly accepted mechanism of this **alkylation** is based on the study of many related reactions and involves in step (3) a reaction of carbocations that we have not previously encountered.



then (2), (3), (2), (3), etc.

The first two steps are identical with those of the dimerization reaction. In step (3) a carbocation abstracts a hydrogen atom *with its pair of electrons* (a **hydride ion**, essentially) from a molecule of alkane. This abstraction of hydride ion yields an alkane of eight carbons, and a new carbocation to continue the chain. As we might expect, abstraction occurs in the way that yields the *tert*-butyl cation rather than the less stable ( $1^\circ$ ) isobutyl cation.

This is not our first encounter with the transfer of hydride ion to an electron-deficient carbon; we saw much the same thing in the 1,2-shifts accompanying the rearrangement of carbocations (Sec. 6.26). There, transfer was *intramolecular* (within a molecule); here, it is *intermolecular* (between molecules). This reaction shows us what an extremely strong acid a carbocation is. At the same time, it illustrates something we hinted at earlier (Sec. 3.18): that the "inertness" of alkanes is greatly exaggerated. With a strong enough acid as reagent, an alkane reacts quite readily, and in a heterolytic fashion, too.

Now let us bring our list of carbocation reactions up to date. A carbocation may:

- combine with a negative ion or other basic molecule
- rearrange to a more stable carbocation.



- (c) eliminate a hydrogen ion to form an alkene;
- (d) add to an alkene to form a larger carbocation;
- (e) abstract a hydride ion from an alkane.

A carbocation formed by (b) or (d) can subsequently undergo any of the reactions.

As we see, all reactions of a carbocation have a common end: *they provide a pair of electrons to complete the octet of the positively charged carbon.*

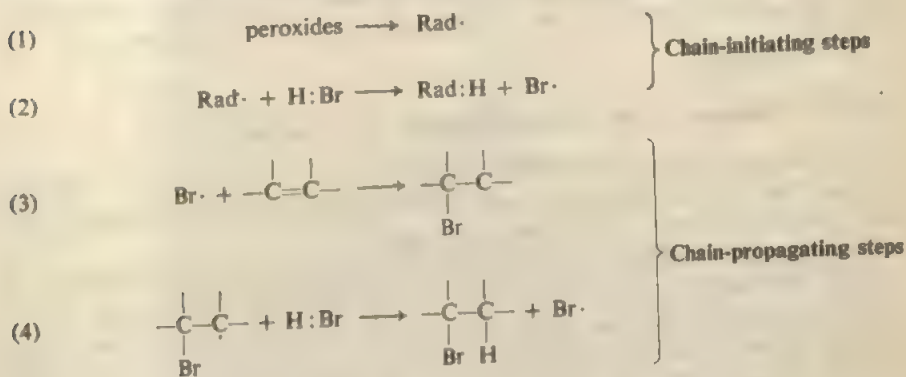
**Problem 8.12** When ethylene is alkylated by isobutane in the presence of acid, there is obtained, not neohexane,  $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}_3$ , but chiefly 2,3-dimethylbutane. Account in detail for the formation of this product.

## 8.22 Free-radical addition. Mechanism of the peroxide-initiated addition of HBr

In the absence of peroxides, hydrogen bromide adds to alkenes in agreement with Markovnikov's rule; in the presence of peroxides, the direction of addition is exactly reversed (see Sec. 8.9).

To account for this *peroxide effect*, Kharasch and Mayo proposed that addition can take place by two entirely different mechanisms: Markovnikov addition by the electrophilic mechanism that we have just discussed, and anti-Markovnikov addition by a free-radical mechanism. Peroxides initiate the free-radical reaction; in their absence (or if an inhibitor, p. 348, is added), addition follows the usual electrophilic path.

The essence of the mechanism is that hydrogen and bromine add to the double bond homolytically rather than heterolytically; the intermediate is a *free radical*



then (3), (4), (3), (4), etc.

rather than a carbocation. Like halogenation of alkanes, this is a chain reaction, this time involving addition rather than substitution.

Decomposition of the peroxide (step 1) to yield free radicals is a well-known reaction. The free radical thus formed abstracts hydrogen from hydrogen bromide (step 2) to form a bromine atom. In step (3) this bromine atom attaches itself to one of the doubly-bonded carbons; in doing this, it uses its odd electron and *one* of the  $\pi$  electrons. The other carbon is left with an odd electron, and the alkene is thus converted into a free radical.

Free-radical  
addition

This free radical, like the free radical initially generated from the peroxide, abstracts hydrogen from hydrogen bromide (step 4). Addition is now complete, and a new bromine atom has been generated to continue the chain. As in halogenation of alkanes, every so often a reactive particle combines with another one, or is captured by the wall of the reaction vessel, and a chain is terminated.

The mechanism is well supported by the facts. The fact that a very few molecules of peroxide can change the orientation of addition of many molecules of hydrogen bromide strongly indicates a chain reaction. So, too, does the fact that a very few molecules of inhibitor can prevent this change in orientation. It is not surprising to find that these same compounds are efficient inhibitors of many other chain reactions. Although their exact mode of action is not understood, it seems clear that they break the chain, presumably by forming unreactive radicals.

We must not confuse the effects of peroxides, which may have been formed by the action of oxygen, with the effects of oxygen itself. Peroxides *initiate* free-radical reactions; oxygen *inhibits* free-radical reactions (see Sec. 2.14).

The mechanism involves addition of a bromine atom to the double bond. It is supported, therefore, by the fact that anti-Markovnikov addition is caused not only by the presence of peroxides but also by irradiation with light of a wavelength known to dissociate hydrogen bromide into hydrogen and bromine atoms.

The light-catalyzed addition of hydrogen bromide to several alkenes was studied by means of ESR (electron spin resonance) spectroscopy, which not only can detect the presence of free radicals at extremely low concentrations, but also can tell something about their structure (see Sec. 17.19). Organic free radicals were shown to be present at appreciable concentration, in agreement with the mechanism.

### 8.23 Orientation of free-radical addition. Polar factors

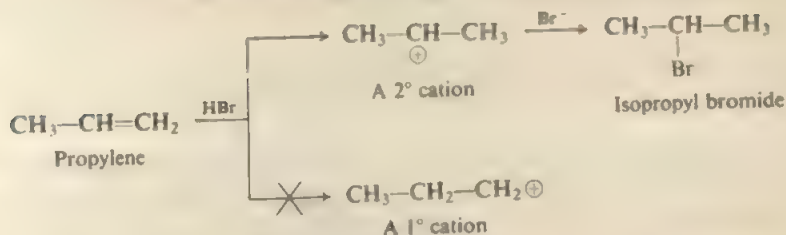
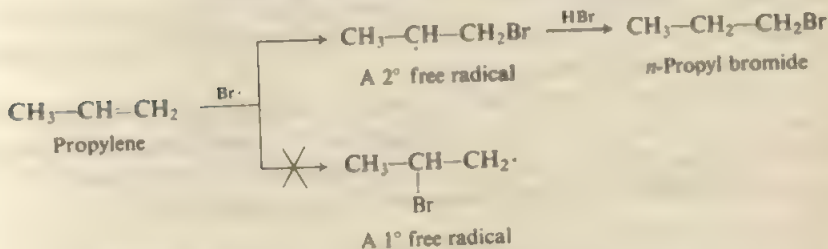
Now, how do we account for the fact that free-radical addition of hydrogen bromide occurs with orientation opposite to that of electrophilic addition? Let us compare the two kinds of addition to propylene.

Electrophilic addition yields isopropyl bromide because the isopropyl cation is formed faster than the *n*-propyl cation. This we have already accounted for: the isopropyl cation is the more stable cation, and the same factors that stabilize it stabilize the transition state leading to its formation (Sec. 8.15).

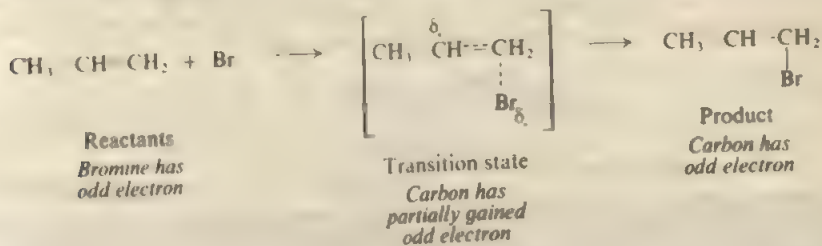
Free-radical addition yields *n*-propyl bromide because the secondary free radical is formed faster than the primary. Now, why does this happen? Study of the addition of many different free radicals to many different alkenes indicates that **three factors can be involved**:

- (a) the stability of the free radical being formed,
- (b) polar factors; and
- (c) steric factors.

Let us look at each of these, using free-radical addition of HBr as our example. As always in dealing with relative rates, we must consider the transition state for the reaction, and see how its stability might be affected by each of these factors.

**Electrophilic addition: Markovnikov orientation****Free-radical addition: Anti-Markovnikov orientation**

Let us begin with the **stability of the free radical being formed**. This is a factor with which we are already familiar (Sec. 3.26). In the transition state, the bond between bromine and one of the carbons is partly formed. The  $\pi$  bond is partly broken and the other carbon has partly gained the odd electron it will carry in the



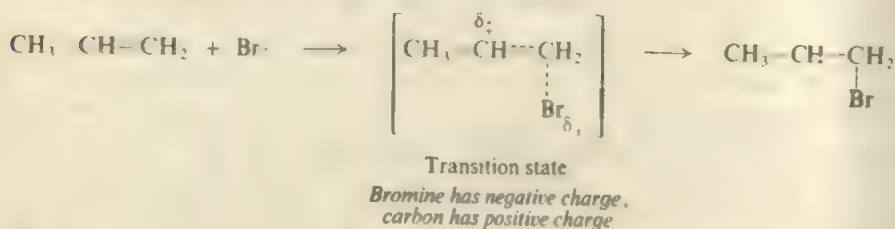
intermediate free radical. To some degree, the organic group possesses the character of the free radical it is to become. Factors that stabilize the free radical also stabilize the incipient free radical in the transition state. Thus, in our example, the secondary free radical is formed faster than the primary because it is more stable. That is one interpretation, then, and the most obvious: rate of reaction depends upon the free-radical character of the transition state.

A great many observations in other areas of free-radical chemistry have made it clear that reactions of free radicals can be affected—and sometimes even controlled—by **polar factors**. Although free radicals are neutral, they have certain tendencies to gain or lose electrons, and hence they partake of the character of electrophilic or nucleophilic reagents. The transition states for their reactions can be polar, with the radical moiety acquiring a partial negative or positive charge at the expense of the substrate.

Now, because of its electronegativity we would expect the bromine atom to be **electrophilic**. In the transition state, bromine holds more than its share of electrons,



at the expense of the alkene. The transition state is thus a polar one, and the substrate moiety has not only free-radical character, but also carbocation character.



The stability of the transition state, and hence the rate of reaction, depends upon the ability of the substrate not only to accommodate the odd electron, but also to accommodate the partial positive charge.

The polar factor will thus favor the orientation that places the charge on the carbon that can best accommodate it. In our example, addition of  $\text{Br}\cdot$  to C-1 is favored, since in this way positive charge develops on C-2 rather than C-1; and secondary carbocation character is more stabilizing than primary.

Polar factors in free-radical chemistry were first clearly demonstrated—and on a quantitative basis—by Frank R. Mayo (Stanford Research Institute) and Cheves Walling (University of Utah) in work on free-radical addition of a different kind: copolymerization (Sec. 9.34). Their work was fundamental to the development of free-radical chemistry, since it showed clearly for the first time the dependence of reactivity on the nature of the attacking radical, and led directly to the concept that polar factors are important not only in copolymerization and other addition reactions of free radicals, but in free-radical reactions of all kinds. Their work also made it clear that polar effects are *superimposed on* effects due to the stability of the radical being formed. In some cases radical stability is clearly a controlling factor; in other cases polar factors are dominant.

Finally, there is the **steric factor**. Addition of a free radical to the terminal carbon, C-1, is less hindered than addition to C-2; the transition state is less crowded (compare Sec. 6.18), and therefore more stable.

In the particular reaction we are studying here, free-radical addition of hydrogen bromide, all three factors would be expected to favor formation of the same intermediate and hence bring about the same orientation. The question is: what is the relative importance of each? Which, if any, is the controlling factor?

This is a difficult question to answer. There is little doubt that each factor exists and, in the proper system, can be dominant. Free-radical addition to conjugated dienes (Sec. 9.28) and styrenes (Sec. 16.25) is clearly controlled by the stability of the radical being formed. Orientation of addition of very bulky radicals like  $\cdot\text{CBr}_3$  is very probably determined by steric factors. Addition of powerfully electrophilic radicals like  $\cdot\text{CF}_3$  is subject to marked polar effects—particularly if the alkene, too, contains substituents with strongly electron-withdrawing or electron-releasing tendencies.

But each of these examples is an extreme case—a very stable radical is being formed, a very bulky or a very electrophilic radical is the reagent. What does this tell us about the addition of the bromine atom—only moderately electrophilic and not very big—to a simple alkene, with formation of the only moderately stable secondary radical? Probably, just this—that all three factors may well be at work.

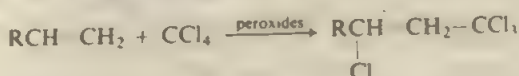
Orientation in both electrophilic and free-radical addition of hydrogen bromide is determined by preferential formation of the more highly substituted

particle, whether carbocation or free radical. Orientation is reversed simply because the hydrogen adds first in the electrophilic reaction, and bromine adds first in the radical reaction.

## 8.24 Other free-radical additions

In the years since the discovery of the peroxide effect, dozens of reagents besides HBr have been found (mostly by Kharasch) to add to alkenes in the presence of peroxides or light. Exactly analogous free-radical mechanisms are generally accepted for these reactions, too.

For the addition of carbon tetrachloride to an alkene, for example,



the following mechanism has been proposed:

- (1)  $\text{peroxide} \longrightarrow \text{Rad}\cdot$
- (2)  $\text{Rad}\cdot + \text{Cl:CCl}_3 \longrightarrow \text{Rad:Cl} + \cdot\text{CCl}_3$
- (3)  $\cdot\text{CCl}_3 + \text{RCH=CH}_2 \longrightarrow \text{RCH-CH}_2\text{-CCl}_3$
- (4)  $\text{RCH-CH}_2\text{-CCl}_3 + \text{Cl:CCl}_3 \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{RCH-CH}_2\text{-CCl}_3 \\ | \\ \text{Cl} \end{array} + \cdot\text{CCl}_3$

then (3), (4), (3), (4), etc.

In the next chapter, we shall encounter another example of free-radical addition—*polymerization*—which has played a key part in the creation of this age of plastics.

**Problem 8.13** In the presence of a trace of peroxide or under the influence of ultraviolet light, 1-octene reacts:

- (a) with  $\text{CHCl}_3$  to form 1,1,1-trichlorooctane,
- (b) with  $\text{CHBr}_3$  to form 1,1,1,3-tetrabromooctane,
- (c) with  $\text{CBrCl}_3$  to form 1,1,1-trichloro-3-bromooctane;
- (d) with  $\text{H-S-CH}_2\text{COOH}$  (thioglycolic acid) to yield  $n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{-S-CH}_2\text{COOH}$ ;
- (e) with aldehydes,  $\text{R}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{H}$ , to yield ketones,  $n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{-C}(=\text{O})-\text{R}$ .

Show all steps of a likely mechanism for these reactions.

**Problem 8.14** From the addition of  $\text{CCl}_4$  to alkenes,  $\text{RCH=CH}_2$ , there is obtained not only  $\text{RCHClCH}_2\text{CCl}_3$ , but also  $\text{RCHClCH}_2\text{-}\begin{array}{c} \text{CHCH-CCl}_3 \\ | \\ \text{R} \end{array}$ . Using only the

kinds of reactions you have already encountered, suggest a mechanism for the formation of this second product.

**Problem 8.15** In the dark at room temperature a solution of chlorine in tetrachloroethylene can be kept for long periods with no appreciable reaction. When irradiated with ultraviolet light, however, the mixture is rapidly consumed, with evolution of

hexachloroethane; many molecules of product are formed for each photon of light absorbed; this reaction is slowed down markedly when oxygen is bubbled through the solution.

(a) How do you account for the absence of reaction in the dark? (b) Outline all steps in the most likely mechanism for the photochemical reaction. Show how it accounts for the facts, including the effect of oxygen.

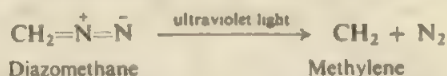
Free-radical addition is probably even commoner than has been suspected. There is evidence that indicates that free-radical chains do not always require light or decomposition of highly unstable compounds like peroxides for their initiation. Sometimes a change from a polar solvent which can stabilize a polar transition state—to a non-polar solvent causes a change from a heterolytic reaction to a homolytic one (Sec. 6.1). In some cases, it may even be that chains are started by *concerted homolysis*, in which cleavage of comparatively stable molecules (halogens, for example) is aided by the simultaneous breaking and making of other bonds. In the absence of the clue usually given by the method of initiation, the free-radical nature of such reactions is harder to detect; one depends upon inhibition by oxygen, detailed analysis of reaction kinetics, or a change in orientation or stereochemistry.

## 8.25 Addition of carbenes. Cycloaddition

Now let us turn to another reaction of alkenes: addition, once more, but addition that is special in several ways. It is of the kind called *cycloaddition*; and it involves a highly unusual class of reagents. Like addition of hydrogen bromide, this reaction can proceed by either an electrophilic or a free-radical pathway.

The difference between successive members of a homologous series, we have seen, is the  $\text{CH}_2$  unit, or *methylene*. But methylene is more than just a building block for the mental construction of compounds; it is an actual molecule, and its chemistry and the chemistry of its derivatives, the **carbenes**, has become one of the most exciting and productive fields of organic research.

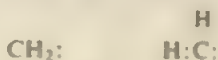
Methylene is formed by the photolysis of either *diazomethane*,  $\text{CH}_2\text{N}_2$ , or *ketene*,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{C}=\text{O}$ . (Notice that the two starting materials and the two other



products, nitrogen and carbon monoxide, are pairs of *isoelectronic* molecules, that is, molecules containing the same number of valence electrons.)

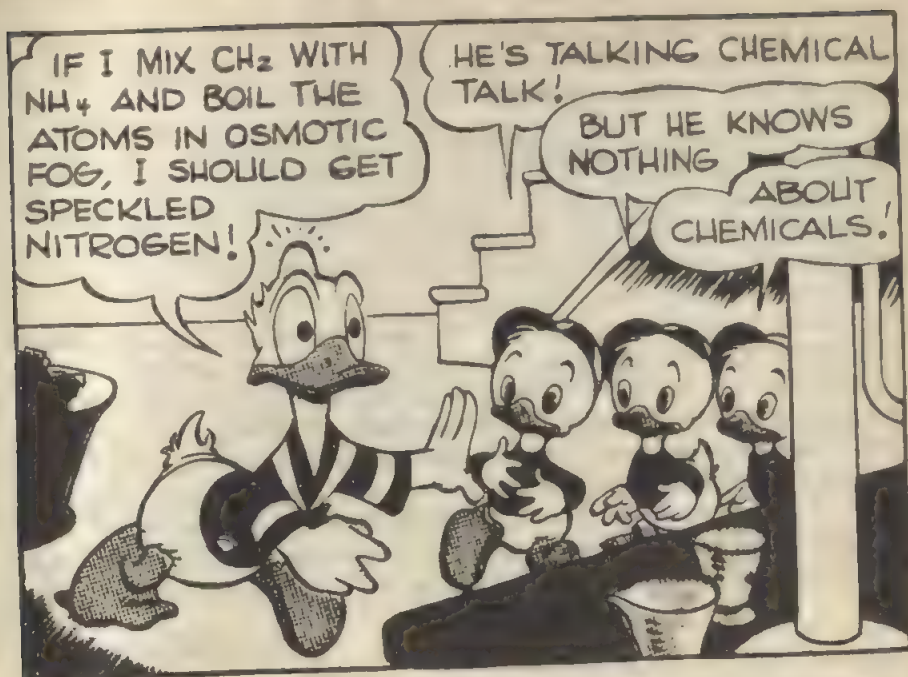
Methylene as a highly reactive molecule was first proposed in the 1930's to account for the fact that something formed by the above reactions was capable of removing certain metal mirrors (compare Problem 15, p. 77). Its existence was definitely established in 1959 by spectroscopic studies.

These studies revealed that methylene not only exists but exists in two different forms (different spin states), generally referred to by their spectroscopic designations: *singlet* methylene, in which the unshared electrons are paired:



Singlet methylene  
Unshared electrons paired

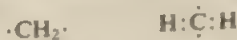




© Walt Disney Productions

**Figure 8.13.** Evidence of early (1944) research on methylene,  $\text{CH}_2$ , by D. Duck. (As unearthed by Professors P. P. Gaspar and G. S. Hammond of the California Institute of Technology.)

and *triplet* methylene, in which the unshared electrons are *not* paired.

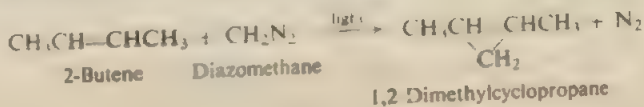


Triplet methylene  
Unshared electrons *not* paired:  
a diradical

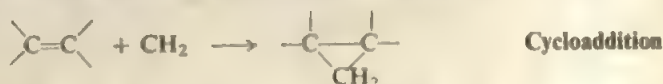
Triplet methylene is thus a free radical; in fact, it is a *diradical*. As a result of the difference in electronic configuration, the two kinds of molecules differ in shape and in chemical properties. Singlet methylene is the less stable form, and is often the form first generated, in the initial photolysis.

The exact chemical properties observed depend upon which form of methylene is reacting, and this in turn depends upon the experimental conditions. In the liquid phase, the first-formed singlet methylene reacts rapidly with the abundant solvent molecules before it loses energy. In the gas phase—especially in the presence of an inert gas like nitrogen or argon—singlet methylene loses energy through collisions and is converted into triplet methylene, which then reacts.

When methylene is generated in the presence of alkenes, there are obtained cyclopropanes. For example:



This is an example of the most important reaction of methylene and other carbenes: *addition to the carbon-carbon double bond*. This particular kind of addition, in which a ring is generated, is called **cycloaddition**. In its various forms (Secs. 32.8 and 33.9)



cycloaddition provides the most important route to rings of various sizes.

The most striking feature of the addition of methylene is that it can occur with two different kinds of stereochemistry. For example, photolysis of diazomethane in liquid *cis*-2-butene gives only *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropane, and in liquid *trans*-2-butene gives only *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropane. Addition here is stereospecific and *syn*. Photolysis of diazomethane in gaseous 2-butene—either *cis* or *trans*—gives both *cis*- and *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropanes. Addition here is non-stereospecific.

There seems to be little doubt that the following interpretation (due to P. S. Skell of Pennsylvania State University) is, in broad outline, the correct one.

It is **singlet** methylene that undergoes the *stereospecific addition*. Although neutral, singlet methylene is electron-deficient and hence *electrophilic*; like other



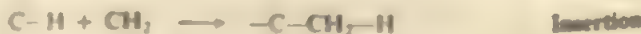
electrophiles, it can find electrons at the carbon-carbon double bond. The stereochemistry strongly indicates simultaneous attachment to both doubly-bonded carbon atoms. Reaction involves overlap of the  $\pi$  cloud of the alkene with the empty  $p$  orbital of the carbene. Electron density flows into this empty orbital, and the alkene carbons become relatively positive in the transition state. Electron-releasing substituents in the alkene disperse this developing charge, stabilize the transition state, and speed up reaction. The reactivity pattern of alkenes is quite similar to that observed for addition of halogens, another reaction we have pictured as involving simultaneous attachment of the electrophile to both alkene carbons.

It is **triplet** methylene that undergoes the *non-stereospecific addition*. Triplet



methylene is a diradical, and it adds by a *free-radical two-step mechanism*—actually, addition followed by combination. The intermediate diradical I lasts long enough for rotation to occur about the central carbon-carbon bond, and both *cis* and *trans* products are formed (*Problem* Using the approach of Sec. 8.17, assure yourself that this is so.)

Besides addition, methylene undergoes another reaction which, quite literally, belongs in a class by itself: *insertion*.



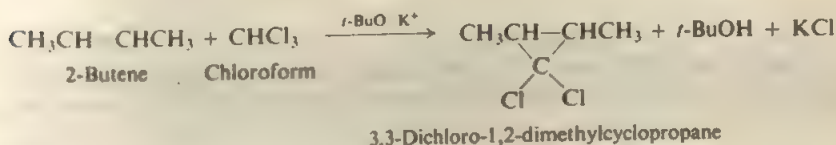
Methylene can *insert itself* into every carbon-hydrogen bond of most kinds of molecules. We cannot take time to say more here about this remarkable reaction, except that when addition is the desired reaction, insertion becomes an annoying side-reaction.

**Problem 8.16** In the gas phase, with low alkene concentration and in the presence of an inert gas, addition of methylene to the 2-butenes is, we have seen, non-stereospecific. If, however, there is present in this system a little oxygen, addition becomes almost completely stereospecific (*syn*). Account in detail for the effect of oxygen. (*Hint*: See Sec. 2.14.)

## 8.26 Addition of substituted carbenes. 1,1-Elimination

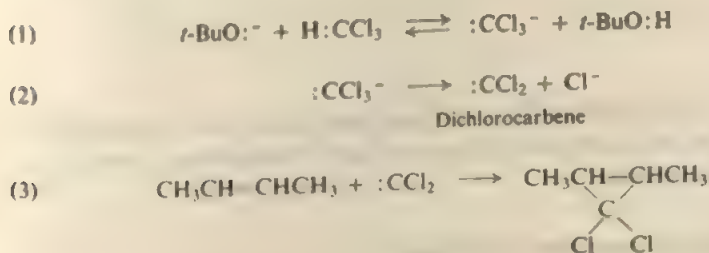
The addition of carbenes to alkenes is used principally to make cyclopropanes. For this purpose one seldom uses methylene itself, but rather various substituted carbenes. These are often generated in ways quite different from the photochemical reactions described in the preceding section.

A common method for making cyclopropanes is illustrated by the reaction of 2-butene with chloroform in the presence of potassium *tert*-butoxide:



The dichlorocyclopropanes obtained can be reduced to hydrocarbons or hydrolyzed to *ketones*, the starting point for many syntheses (Chap. 18).

Here, too, reaction involves a divalent carbon compound, a derivative of methylene: *dichlorocarbene*,  $:\text{CCl}_2$ . It is generated in two steps, initiated by attack on chloroform by the very strong base, *tert*-butoxide ion, and then adds to the alkene.



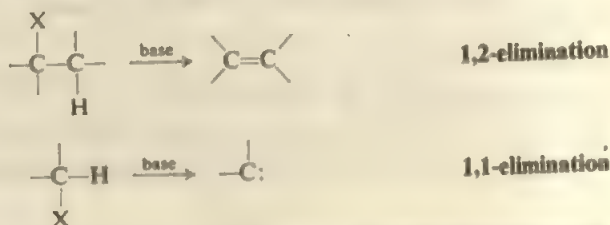
It is believed that, because of the presence of the halogen atoms, the singlet form, with the electrons paired, is the more stable form of dichlorocarbene, and is the one adding to the double bond. (Stabilization by the halogen atoms is presumably one reason why dihalocarbenes do not generally undergo the insertion reaction that is so characteristic of unsubstituted singlet methylene.)

The addition of dihalocarbenes, like that of singlet methylene, is *stereospecific* and *syn*.



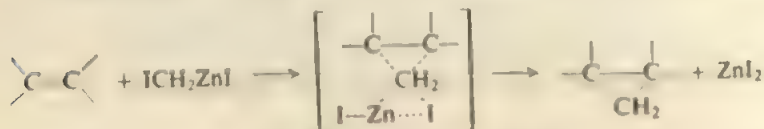
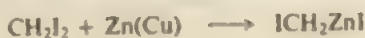
**Problem 8.17** (a) Addition of  $\text{CCl}_2$  to cyclopentene yields a single compound. What is it? (b) Addition of  $\text{CBrCl}$  to cyclopentene yields a mixture of stereoisomers. In light of (a), how do you account for this? What are the isomers likely to be? (Hint: Use models.)

In dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides (Sec. 7.12), we have encountered a reaction in which hydrogen ion and halide ion are eliminated from a molecule by the action of base; there  $-\text{H}$  and  $-\text{X}$  are lost from adjacent carbons, and so the process is called *1,2-elimination* (or  $\beta$ -elimination). In the generation of the carbene shown here, both  $-\text{H}$  and  $-\text{X}$  are eliminated from the same carbon, and the process is called *1,1-elimination* (or  $\alpha$ -elimination). (Later on, in Sec. 24.14 we shall see some of the evidence for the mechanism of 1,1-elimination shown above.



**Problem 8.18** (a) Why does  $\text{CHCl}_3$  not undergo  $\beta$ -elimination through the action of base? (b) What factor would you expect to make  $\alpha$ -elimination from  $\text{CHCl}_3$  easier than from, say  $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$ ?

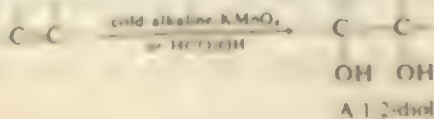
There are many ways of generating what appear to be carbenes. But in some cases at least, it seems clear that no *free* carbene is actually an intermediate; instead, a *carbenoid* (carbene-like) reagent transfers a carbene unit directly to a double bond. For example, in the extremely useful Simmons-Smith reaction (H. E.



Simmons and P. D. Smith of the du Pont Company) the carbenoid is an organozinc compound which delivers methylene stereospecifically (and without competing insertion) to the double bond.

## 8.27 Hydroxylation. Formation of 1,2-diols

Certain oxidizing agents convert alkenes into **1,2-diols**—dihydroxy alcohols containing the two  $-\text{OH}$  groups on adjacent carbons. (They are also known as *glycols*.) The reaction amounts to addition of two hydroxyl groups to the double bond.



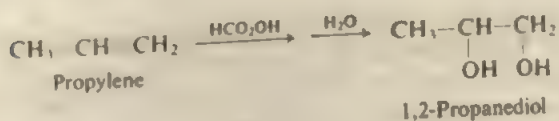
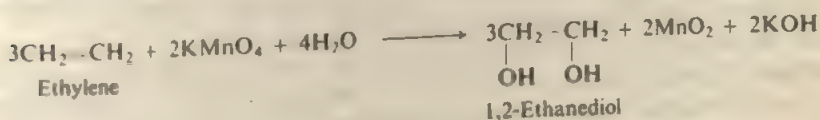
Of the numerous oxidizing agents that bring about hydroxylation, two of the most commonly used are (a) cold alkaline potassium *permanganate* ( $\text{KMnO}_4$ ), and (b) *peroxy acids*, such as peroxyformic acid ( $\text{HCO}_2\text{OH}$ ).

Since permanganate is one of the most important oxidizing agents in organic chemistry, we should perhaps become familiar now with certain of its general characteristics. It is a powerful oxidizing agent, and conditions must be carefully selected—acidity or alkalinity, temperature, quantity of the reagent used—to avoid over-oxidation, that is, taking reaction past the oxidation stage we want. A major problem has been that of solubility: one must get the water-soluble permanganate into contact with the very often water-insoluble substrate. Yet many solvents commonly used to bring polar and non-polar reagents together—alcohols, for example—are themselves oxidized by permanganate. In recent years, this problem has been solved in part by use of phase-transfer catalysts (Sec. 6.29). Quaternary ammonium ions can carry permanganate ions from an aqueous layer into a non-aqueous layer (benzene, say, or dichloromethane) where the substrate awaits. Crown ethers (Sec. 12.9) can complex potassium ions and thus make solid  $\text{KMnO}_4$  soluble in benzene; the resulting “purple benzene” is an excellent oxidizing agent.

*Hydroxylation with permanganate* is carried out by stirring together at room temperature the alkene and the aqueous permanganate solution: either neutral—the reaction produces  $\text{OH}^-$ —or, better, slightly alkaline. Higher yields are sometimes obtained by use of “purple benzene” solutions. *Mild conditions* are the key consideration. Heat and the addition of acid are avoided, since these more vigorous conditions promote further oxidation of the diol, with cleavage of the carbon-carbon double bond (Sec. 8.28).

*Hydroxylation with peroxyformic acid* is carried out by allowing the alkene to stand with a mixture of hydrogen peroxide and formic acid,  $\text{HCOOH}$ , for a few hours, and then heating the product with water to hydrolyze certain intermediate compounds.

For example:



As we have already seen (Problem 8.7, p. 363), hydroxylation by either reagent is stereoselective and stereospecific. *Permanganate gives syn-addition* and *peroxy acids give anti-addition*. This difference in stereochemistry, we shall find (Sec. 12.12), arises from a difference in mechanism.

Hydroxylation of alkenes is the most important method for the synthesis of 1,2-diols, with the special feature of permitting stereochemical control by the choice of reagent. See, for example, Fig. 8.14 (p. 384).

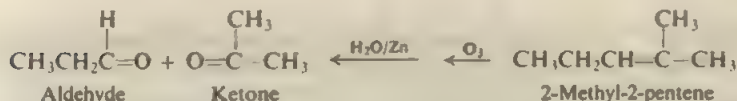
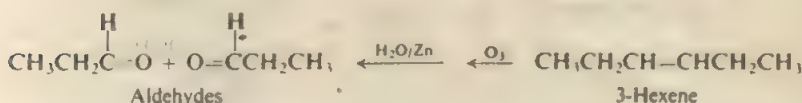
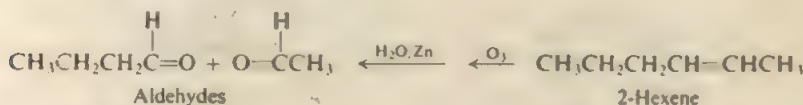
Oxidation by permanganate is the basis of a very useful analytical test known as the *Baeyer test* (Sec. 8.29).





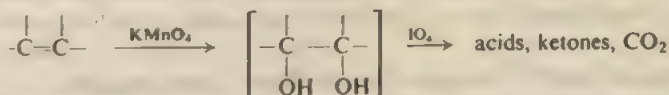
These compounds containing the  $C=O$  group are called *aldehydes* and *ketones*; at this point we need only know that they are compounds that can readily be identified (Sec. 18.16). The function of the reducing agent, which is frequently zinc dust, is to prevent formation of hydrogen peroxide, which would otherwise react with the aldehydes and ketones. (Aldehydes,  $RCHO$ , are often converted into acids,  $RCOOH$ , for ease of isolation.)

Knowing the number and arrangement of carbon atoms in these aldehydes and ketones, we can work back to the structure of the original alkene. For example, for three of the isomeric hexylenes:

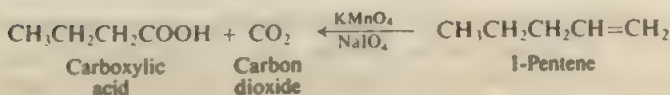
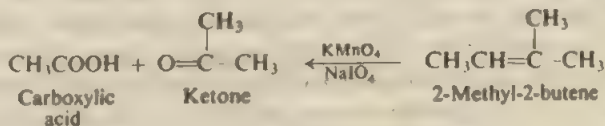


One general approach to the determination of the structure of an unknown compound is **degradation**, the breaking down of the unknown compound into a number of smaller, more easily identifiable fragments. Ozonolysis is a typical means of degradation.

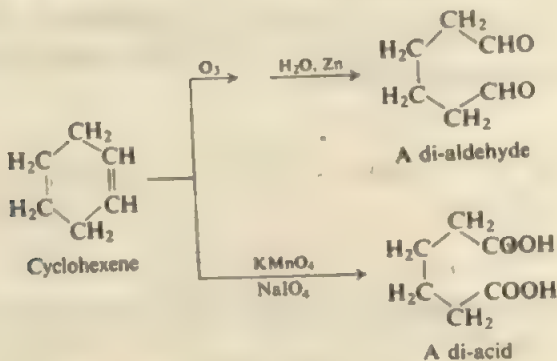
Another method of degradation that gives essentially the same information is oxidation by sodium periodate ( $\text{NaIO}_4$ ) in the presence of *catalytic amounts* of permanganate. Periodate, we shall find, is much used for cleavage of 1,2-diols (Secs. 11.15 and 28.6). The permanganate hydroxylates the double bond (Sec. 8.27) to give the 1,2-diol, and is itself reduced to the manganate state. The periodate then (a) cleaves the 1,2-diol and (b) oxidizes manganate back up to permanganate, and the reaction continues.



Carboxylic acids,  $RCOOH$ , are generally obtained instead of aldehydes,  $RCHO$ . A terminal  $=\text{CH}_2$  group is oxidized to  $\text{CO}_2$ . For example:



Cleavage of cycloalkenes follows exactly the same pattern, but the cyclic structure of the alkene is reflected in the special nature of the products. Ozonolysis of cyclohexene, for example, does not break the molecule into two aldehydes of lower carbon number, but simply into a single six-carbon compound containing two aldehyde groups.



**Problem 8.19** What products would you expect from each of the dimers of isobutylene (Sec. 8.20) upon cleavage by: (a) ozonolysis; (b)  $NaIO_4/KMnO_4$ ?

**Problem 8.20** Predict the ozonolysis products of: (a) cyclopentene; (b) 1-methylcyclopentene; (c) 3-methylcyclopentene.

## 8.29 Analysis of alkenes

The functional group of an alkene is the carbon-carbon double bond. To characterize an unknown compound as an alkene, therefore, we must show that it undergoes the reactions typical of the carbon-carbon double bond. Since there are so many of these reactions, we might at first assume that this is an easy job. But let us look at the problem more closely.

First of all, which of the many reactions of alkenes do we select? Addition of hydrogen bromide, for example? Hydrogenation? Let us imagine ourselves in the laboratory, working with gases and liquids and solids, with flasks and test tubes and bottles.

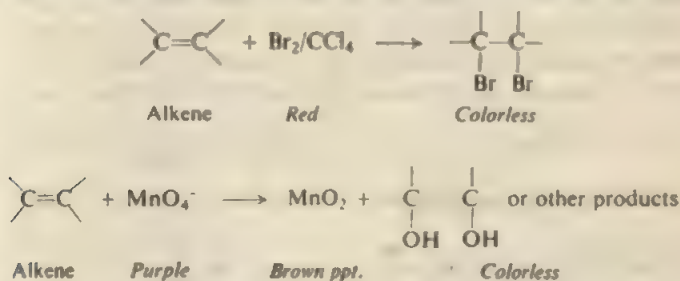
We could pass dry hydrogen bromide from a tank through a test tube of an unknown liquid. But what would we see? How could we tell whether or not a reaction takes place? A colorless gas bubbles through a colorless liquid; a different colorless liquid may or may not be formed.

We could attempt to hydrogenate the unknown compound. Here, we might say, we could certainly tell whether or not reaction takes place: a drop in the hydrogen pressure would show us that addition had occurred. This is true, and hydrogenation can be a useful analytical tool. But a catalyst must be prepared, and a fairly elaborate piece of apparatus must be used, the whole operation might take hours.

Whenever possible, we select for a characterization test a reaction that is rapidly and conveniently carried out, and that gives rise to an easily observed change. We select a test that requires a few minutes and a few test tubes, a test in which a color

appears or disappears, or bubbles of gas are evolved, or a precipitate forms or dissolves.

Experience has shown that an alkene is best characterized, then, by its property of decolorizing both a solution of bromine in carbon tetrachloride (Sec. 8.16) and a cold, dilute, neutral permanganate solution (the Baeyer test, Sec. 8.27). Both tests are easily carried out; in one, a red color disappears, and in the other, a purple color disappears and is replaced by brown manganese dioxide.



Granting that we have selected the best tests for the characterization of alkenes, let us go on to another question. We add bromine in carbon tetrachloride to an unknown organic compound, let us say, and the red color disappears. What does this tell us? Only that our unknown is a compound that reacts with bromine. It *may* be an alkene. But it is not enough merely to know that a particular kind of compound reacts with a given reagent; we must also know what *other* kinds of compounds also react with the reagent. In this case, the unknown may equally well be an alkyne. (It may also be any of a number of compounds that undergo rapid *substitution* by bromine; in that case, however, hydrogen bromide would be evolved and could be detected by the cloud it forms when we blow our breath over the test tube.)

In the same way, decolorization of permanganate does not prove that a compound is an alkene, but only that it contains some functional group that can be oxidized by permanganate. The compound *may* be an alkene; but it may instead be an alkyne, an aldehyde, or any of a number of easily oxidized compounds. It may even be a compound that is contaminated with an *impurity* that is oxidized; alcohols, for example, are not oxidized under these conditions, but often contain impurities that *are*. We can usually rule out this by making sure that more than a drop or two of the reagent is decolorized.

By itself, a single characterization test seldom proves that an unknown is one particular kind of compound. It may limit the number of possibilities, so that a final decision can then be made on the basis of additional tests. Or, conversely, if certain possibilities have already been eliminated, a single test may permit a final choice to be made. Thus, the bromine or permanganate test would be sufficient to differentiate an alkene from an alkane, or an alkene from an alkyl halide, or an alkene from an alcohol.

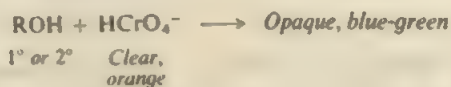
The tests most used in characterizing alkenes, then, are the following: (a) rapid decolorization of bromine in carbon tetrachloride without evolution of HBr, a test also given by alkynes; (b) decolorization of cold, dilute, neutral, aqueous permanganate solution (the Baeyer test), a test also given by alkynes and aldehydes. Also helpful is the solubility of alkenes in cold concentrated sulfuric acid, a test also given by a great many other compounds, including all those containing oxygen



(they form soluble oxonium salts) and compounds that are readily sulfonated (Secs. 16.12 and 24.12). Alkanes or alkyl halides are not soluble in cold concentrated sulfuric acid.

(A cyclopropane readily dissolves in concentrated sulfuric acid, but is not oxidized by permanganate.)

Of the compounds we have dealt with so far, alcohols also dissolve in sulfuric acid. Alcohols can be distinguished from alkenes, however, by the fact that alcohols give a negative test with bromine in carbon tetrachloride and a negative Baeyer test—so long as we are not misled by impurities. Primary and secondary alcohols are oxidized by chromic anhydride,  $\text{CrO}_3$ , in aqueous sulfuric acid: within two seconds, the clear orange solution turns blue-green and becomes opaque.



Tertiary alcohols do not give this test; nor do alkenes.

**Problem 8.21** Describe simple chemical tests (if any) that would distinguish between: (a) an alkene and an alkane; (b) an alkene and an alkyl halide; (c) an alkene and a secondary alcohol; (d) an alkene, an alkane, an alkyl halide, and a secondary alcohol. Tell exactly what you would *do* and *see*.

**Problem 8.22** Assuming the choice to be limited to alkane, alkene, alkyl halide, secondary alcohol, and tertiary alcohol, characterize compounds A, B, C, D, and E on the basis of the following information:

Compound	Qual. elem. anal.	$\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$	$\text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4$	$\text{KMnO}_4$	$\text{CrO}_3$
A	----	Insoluble	—	—	—
B	----	Soluble	—	—	+
C	Cl	Insoluble	—	—	—
D	----	Soluble	+	+	—
E	----	Soluble	—	—	—

Once characterized as an alkene, an unknown may then be identified as a previously reported alkene on the basis of its physical properties, including its infrared spectrum and molecular weight. Proof of structure of a new compound is best accomplished by degradation: cleavage by ozone or periodate/permanganate, followed by identification of the fragments formed (Sec. 8.28).

Cycloalkenes are characterized in the same way as open-chain alkenes. That one is dealing with cyclic compounds is shown by their molecular formulas and degradation products (Sec. 8.28). For example, the absorption of only one mole of hydrogen shows that cyclohexene contains only one carbon-carbon double bond; yet its molecular formula is  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{10}$ , which in an open-chain compound would correspond to two carbon-carbon double bonds (or one triple bond). Only a cyclic structure fits the facts.

(Spectroscopic analysis of alkenes will be discussed in Chap. 17, particularly in Sec. 17.5.)

**Problem 8.23** Describe simple chemical tests (if any) that would distinguish between

- (a) 2-bromoethanol and 1,2-dibromoethane
- (b) 4-chloro-1-butene and *n*-butyl chloride
- (c) cyclohexene and cyclohexanol
- (d) 1-chloro-2-methyl-2-propanol and 1,2-dichloro-2-methylpropane

Tell exactly what you would *do* and *see*.

## PROBLEMS

1. Give structures and names of the products (if any) expected from reaction of isobutylene with:

- |                       |  |   |
|-----------------------|--|---|
| (a) $\text{H}_2$ , Ni | (g) HI                                   | (m) $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 \longrightarrow \text{C}_4\text{H}_{10}$ |
| (b) $\text{Cl}_2$     | (h) HI (peroxides)                       | (n) isobutane + HF  |
| (c) $\text{Br}_2$     | (i) $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$              | (o) cold alkaline $\text{KMnO}_4$                                   |
| (d) $\text{I}_2$      | (j) $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , $\text{H}^+$  | (p) hot $\text{KMnO}_4$   |
| (e) HBr               | (k) $\text{Br}_2$ , $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ | (q) $\text{HCO}_2\text{OH}$   |
| (f) HBr (peroxides)   | (l) $\text{Br}_2 + \text{NaCl(aq)}$      | (r) $\text{O}_3$ , then Zn, $\text{H}_2\text{O}$                    |

2. Which alkene of each pair would you expect to be more reactive toward addition of  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ?

- |                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| (a) ethylene or propylene     | (e) vinyl chloride or 1,2-dichloroethene                               |
| (b) ethylene or vinyl bromide | (f) 1-pentene or 2-methyl-1-butene                                     |
| (c) propylene or 2-butene     | (g) ethylene or $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{COOH}$ |
| (d) 2-butene or isobutylene   | (h) propylene or 3,3,3-trifluoropropene                                |

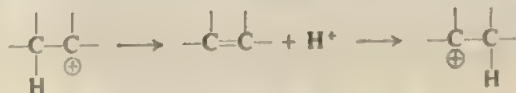
3. Give structures and names of the principal products expected from addition of HI to:

- |                       |                                    |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| (a) 2-butene          | (e) 3-methyl-1-butene (2 products) |
| (b) 2-pentene         | (f) vinyl bromide                  |
| (c) 2-methyl-1-butene | (g) 2,3-dimethyl-1-butene          |
| (d) 2-methyl-2-butene | (h) 2,4,4-trimethyl-2-pentene      |

4. Account for the fact that addition of  $\text{CBrCl}_3$  in the presence of peroxides takes place faster to 2-ethyl-1-hexene than to 1-octene.

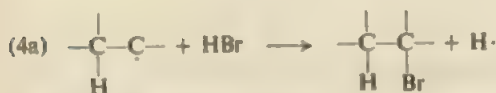
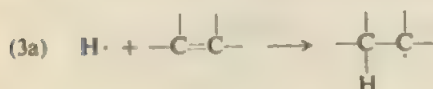
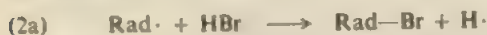
5. (a) In methyl alcohol solution ( $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ ), bromine adds to ethylene to yield not only ethylene bromide but also  $\text{Br}-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-\text{OCH}_3$ . How can you account for this? Write equations for all steps. (b) Predict the products formed under the same conditions from propylene. (c) From *cis*-2-butene.

6. As an alternative to the one-step 1,2-hydride shift described in Sec. 6.26, one might instead propose—in view of the reactions we have studied in this chapter—that carbocations rearrange by a two-step mechanism, involving the intermediate formation of an alkene:



When (by a reaction we have not yet taken up) the isobutyl cation was generated in  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$  containing  $\text{D}_3\text{O}^+$ , there was obtained *tert*-butyl alcohol containing *no* deuterium attached to carbon. How does this experiment permit one to rule out the two-step mechanism?

7. In Sec. 8.22 a mechanism was presented for free-radical addition of hydrogen bromide. Equally consistent with the evidence given there is the following alternative mechanism:



then (3a), (4a), (3a), (4a), etc.

(a) In steps (2a) and (4a) an alkyl radical abstracts bromine instead of hydrogen from hydrogen bromide. On the basis of homolytic bond dissociation energies (Table 1.2, p. 20), is this mechanism more or less likely than (2)-(4) in Sec. 8.22? Explain.

(b) The ESR study (Sec. 8.22) showed that the intermediate free radical from a given alkene is the *same* whether HBr or DBr (deuterium bromide) is being added to the double bond. Explain how this evidence permits a definite choice between mechanism (2a)-(4a) and mechanism (2)-(4).

8. (a) Write all steps in the free-radical addition of HBr to propylene. (b) Write all steps that would be involved in the free-radical addition of HCl to propylene.

(c) List  $\Delta H$  for each reaction in (a) and (b). Assume the following homolytic bond dissociation energies:  $\pi$  bond, 51 kcal;  $1^\circ \text{R}-\text{Br}$ , 69 kcal;  $1^\circ \text{R}-\text{Cl}$ , 82 kcal;  $2^\circ \text{R}-\text{H}$ , 95 kcal.

(d) Suggest a possible reason why the peroxide effect is observed for HBr but not for HCl.

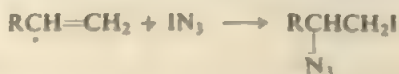
9. When isobutylene and chlorine are allowed to react in the dark at  $0^\circ$  in the absence of peroxides, the principal product is not the addition product but methallyl chloride (3-chloro-2-methyl-1-propene). Bubbling oxygen through the reaction mixture produces no change.

This reaction was carried out with labeled isobutylene ( $1\text{-}^{14}\text{C}$ -2-methyl-1-propene,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{}^{14}\text{CH}_2$ ), and the methallyl chloride contained was collected, purified, and subjected to ozonolysis. Formaldehyde ( $\text{H}_2\text{C}-\text{O}$ ) and chloroacetone ( $\text{ClCH}_2\text{COCH}_3$ ) were obtained; all (97% or more) of the radioactivity was present in the chloroacetone.

(a) Give the structure, including the position of the isotopic label, of the methallyl chloride obtained. (b) Judging from the evidence, is the reaction ionic or free-radical? (c) Using only steps with which you are already familiar, outline a mechanism that accounts for the formation of this product. (d) Can you suggest one reason why isobutylene is more prone than 1- or 2-butene to undergo this particular reaction? (e) Under similar conditions, and in the presence of oxygen, 3,3-dimethyl-1-butene yields mostly the addition product, but also a small yield of 4-chloro-2,3-dimethyl-1-butene. In light of your answer to (c) how do you account for the formation of this minor product?

10. When treated with bromine and water, allyl bromide gives chiefly (80%) the primary alcohol,  $\text{CH}_3\text{BrCHBrCH}_2\text{OH}$ , in contrast to propylene, which gives the secondary alcohol,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHOHCH}_2\text{Br}$ . In light of the discussion of Sec. 8.19, can you suggest an explanation for this difference in orientation?

11. (a) Alfred Hassner (at the University of Colorado) found iodine azide,  $\text{IN}_3$ , to add to terminal alkenes with the orientation shown, and with complete stereospecificity (*anti*)



to the 2-butenes. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction.



(b) In polar solvents like nitromethane,  $\text{BrN}_3$  adds with the same orientation and stereospecificity as  $\text{IN}_3$ . In non-polar solvents like *n*-pentene, however, orientation is reversed, and addition is non-stereospecific. In solvents of intermediate polarity like methylene chloride, mixtures of products are obtained, light or peroxides favor formation of  $\text{RCHBrCH}_2\text{N}_3$ ; oxygen favors formation of  $\text{RCH(N}_3\text{)CH}_2\text{Br}$ . Account in detail for these observations.

12. Each of the following reactions is carried out, and the products are separated by careful distillation, recrystallization, or chromatography. For each reaction tell how many fractions will be collected. Draw a stereochemical formula of the compound or compounds making up each fraction. Tell whether each fraction, as collected, will be optically active or optically inactive.

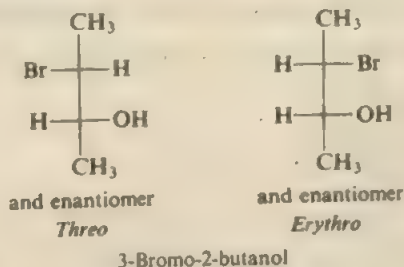
- (a) (*R*)-3-hydroxycyclohexene +  $\text{KMnO}_4 \rightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_3$   
 (b) (*R*)-3-hydroxycyclohexene +  $\text{HCO}_2\text{OH} \rightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_3$   
 (c) *trans*-2-pentene +  $\text{D}_2$  (Wilkinson's catalyst)  $\rightarrow \text{C}_5\text{H}_{10}\text{D}_2$   
 (d) racemic 4-methylcyclohexene +  $\text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4$   
 (e) (*S*)- $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CHOHCH}_2\text{CH}_3$  +  $\text{KMnO}_4 \rightarrow \text{C}_4\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_4$   
 (f) (*R*)-3-methyl-2-ethyl-1-pentene +  $\text{H}_2$  Ni  $\rightarrow \text{C}_8\text{H}_{18}$

13. (a) Hydration of either 2-methyl-1-butene or 2-methyl-2-butene yields the same alcohol. Which alcohol would you expect this to be? Showing all steps in the reactions, explain your answer.

(b) Each of these alkenes *separately* was allowed to react with aqueous  $\text{HNO}_3$ . When hydration was about half over, reaction was interrupted and unconsumed alkene was recovered. In each case, *only* the original alkene was recovered; there was *none* of its isomer present.

How do you interpret this finding? What is its fundamental significance to the mechanism of electrophilic addition?

14. (a) On treatment with  $\text{HBr}$ , *threo*-3-bromo-2-butanol is converted into racemic 2,3-dibromobutane, and *erythro*-3-bromo-2-butanol is converted into *meso*-2,3-dibromobutane. What appears to be the stereochemistry of the reaction? Does it proceed with inversion or retention of configuration?



(b) When optically active *threo*-3-bromo-2-butanol is treated with  $\text{HBr}$ , *racemic* 2,3-dibromobutane is obtained. Now what is the stereochemistry of the reaction? Can you think of a mechanism that accounts for this stereochemistry?

(c) These observations, reported in 1939 by Saul Winstein (p. 257) and Howard J. Lucas (of The California Institute of Technology), are the first of many described as "neighboring group effects." Does this term help you find an answer to (b)?

(d) On treatment with aqueous  $\text{HBr}$ , both *cis*- and *trans*-2-bromocyclohexanol are converted into the same product. In light of (b), what would you expect this product to be?

15. (a) It has been proposed that the conversion of vicinal dihalides into alkenes by the action of iodide ion can proceed by either a one-step mechanism (i) or a three-step mechanism (ii).





- (g) *cis*-1,2-cyclohexanediol
- (h) 2-methyl-*trans*-1,2-cyclopentanediol
- (i) *trans*-2-chlorocyclopentanol
- (j) racemic butane-2,3-*d*, ( $\text{CH}_3\text{CHDCHDCH}_3$ )
- (k) *erythro*-2,3-dichloropentane
- (l) *meso*-3,4-hexanediol
- (m) *meso*-3,4-hexanediol (from a different alkene)
- (n) *threo*-3-bromo-2-butanol
- (o) racemic 1,1-dichloro-2,3-disopropylcyclopropane
- (p) bicyclo[3.1.0]hexane



# Conjugation and Resonance

## Dienes

### 9.1 The carbon-carbon double bond as a substituent

In the preceding chapter we began our study of the chemistry of the carbon-carbon double bond. We saw the double bond as a place in the alkene molecule where reaction can occur: electrophilic or free-radical addition. But that is only part of the story. Besides providing a site for addition, the double bond exerts powerful effects on certain reactions taking place elsewhere on the molecule. Although suffering no permanent change itself, the double bond plays an essential role in determining the course of reaction. It is this part of alkene chemistry that we shall take up in this chapter: the carbon-carbon double bond, not as a functional group, but as a *substituent*.

Now, at this point in our study we have discussed several families of compounds: alkanes, alkyl halides (and related compounds), alcohols, and alkenes. We have seen some of the chemical properties that are associated with the functional group of each of these families: C-H of alkanes, X and -OH of alkyl halides and alcohols, the carbon-carbon double bond of alkenes. This approach has led us to several of the major types of organic reactions: free-radical substitution, nucleophilic substitution, elimination, and addition. We have discussed the effects exerted on these reactions by substituents: alkyl groups, mostly; their polar effects, steric effects, and (until now unspecified) effects on the stability of free radicals and alkenes. We have looked at the inductive effect of halogens.

In this chapter we shall return to each of these families of compounds and each of these reaction types, and look at the effects exerted by a different kind of substituent: the carbon-carbon double bond. A double bond, we shall find, exerts its effect differently from an alkyl group, and, as a result, its effects are often more powerful. Most of these effects stem from the structural feature called *conjugation*: the location of the  $\pi$  orbital in such a way that it can overlap other orbitals in the molecule. And to implement our discussion of conjugation we shall make use of the structural theory called *resonance*.

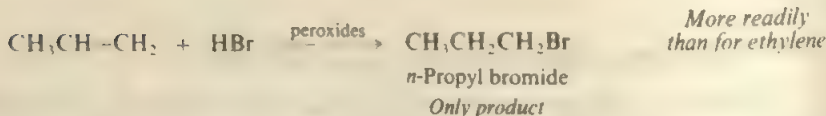
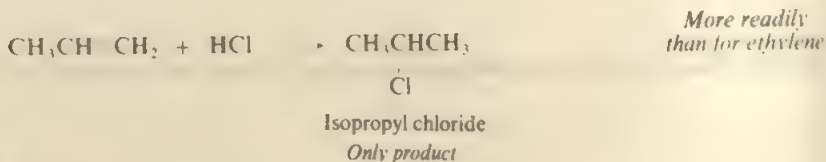
## 9.2 Free-radical halogenation of alkenes: substitution vs. addition

Let us look at the structure of the simple alkene, propylene. It contains a carbon-carbon double bond, where the same addition reactions that are characteristic of ethylene take place. With hydrogen chloride, for example, propylene



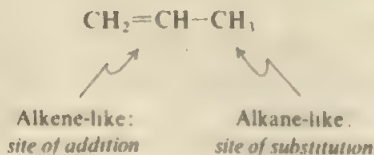
Propylene

undergoes electrophilic addition; with hydrogen bromide in the presence of peroxides, it undergoes free-radical addition.



But propylene also contains a methyl group, and this modifies the reactions taking place at the double bond. Because of the methyl group, the electrophilic addition takes place faster than with ethylene itself, and gives exclusively isopropyl chloride. And because of the methyl group, the free-radical addition takes place faster than with ethylene, and gives exclusively *n*-propyl bromide. Thus, as a substituent, the methyl group affects the reactivity of the carbon-carbon double bond and determines the orientation of attack.

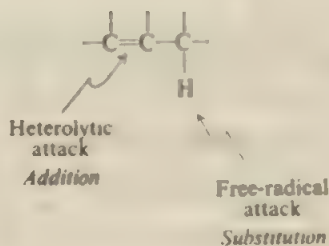
Now let us change our point of view and consider the methyl group, not as a substituent, but as the site of reaction. What kind of reactions can we expect to take place here? The methyl group has an alkane-like structure, and hence we might expect it to undergo alkane-like reactions: free-radical substitution of a halogen, for example.



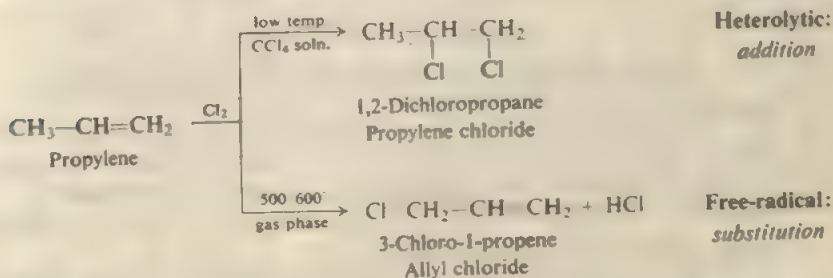
Let us consider, then, the reaction of propylene with halogens. But the propylene molecule presents *two* sites where halogen can attack, the double bond and the methyl group. Can we direct the attack to just one of these sites? The answer is yes, by our choice of reaction conditions.

We know that alkanes undergo substitution by halogen at high temperatures or under the influence of ultraviolet light, and generally in the gas phase: conditions

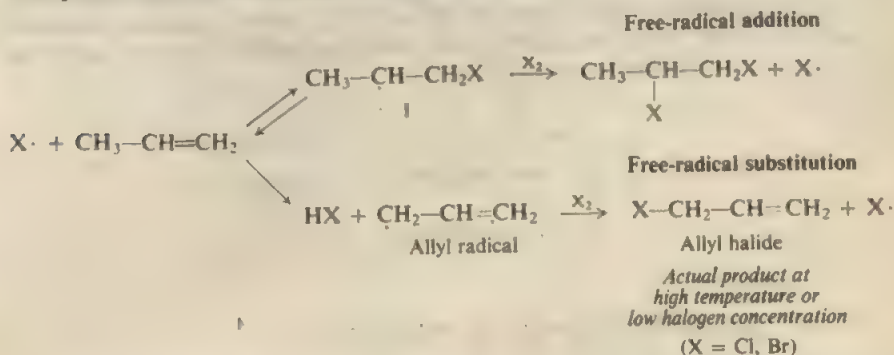
that favor formation of free radicals. We know that alkenes undergo addition of halogen at low temperatures and in the absence of light, and generally in the liquid phase: conditions that favor heterolytic reactions, or at least do not aid formation of radicals.



If we wish to direct the attack of halogen to the alkyl portion of an alkene molecule, then, we choose conditions that are favorable for the free-radical reaction and unfavorable for the heterolytic reaction. Chemists of the Shell Development Company found that, at a temperature of 500–600°, a mixture of gaseous propylene and chlorine yields chiefly the substitution product, 3-chloro-1-propene, known as *allyl chloride* ( $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2-$  = *allyl*). Bromine behaves similarly.



In view of Secs. 8.22–8.23, we might wonder why a halogen atom does not add to a double bond, instead of abstracting a hydrogen atom. H. C. Brown (of Purdue University) has suggested that the halogen atom *does* add but, at high temperatures, is expelled before the second step of free-radical addition can occur.



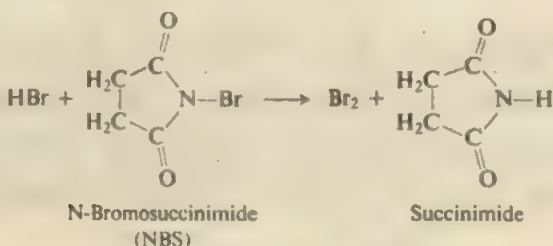
Consistent with Brown's explanation is the finding that *low concentration* of halogen can be used instead of high temperature to favor substitution over (free-



radical) addition. Addition of the halogen atom gives radical I, which falls apart (to regenerate the starting material) if the temperature is high or if it does not soon encounter a halogen molecule to complete the addition. The allyl radical, on the other hand, once formed, has little option but to wait for a halogen molecule, whatever the temperature or however low the halogen concentration.

**Problem 9.1** (a) What would the allyl radical have to do to return to the starting material? (b) From bond dissociation energies, calculate the minimum  $E_{act}$  for this reaction.

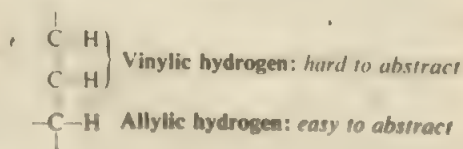
The compound **N-bromosuccinimide (NBS)** is a reagent used for the specific purpose of brominating alkenes at the allylic position; NBS functions simply by providing a constant, low concentration of bromine. As each molecule of HBr is formed by the halogenation, NBS converts it into a molecule of  $Br_2$ .



### 9.3 Free-radical substitution in alkenes: orientation and reactivity

The alkyl groups of alkenes, then, undergo substitution by halogen in exactly the same manner as alkanes do. But attached to these alkyl groups there is a substituent, the double bond. Just as the alkyl groups affect the reactivity of the double bond, so the double bond affects the reactivity of the alkyl groups. Let us see what this effect is, and how it arises.

Halogenation of many alkenes has shown that: (a) hydrogens attached to doubly-bonded carbons undergo very little substitution; and (b) hydrogens attached to carbons adjacent to doubly-bonded carbons are particularly reactive toward substitution. Examination of reactions which involve attack not only by halogen atoms but by other free radicals as well has shown that this is a general rule: hydrogens attached to doubly-bonded carbons, known as **vinyllic** hydrogens, are harder to abstract than ordinary primary hydrogens; hydrogens attached to a carbon atom next to a double bond, known as **allylic** hydrogens, are even easier to abstract than tertiary hydrogens.

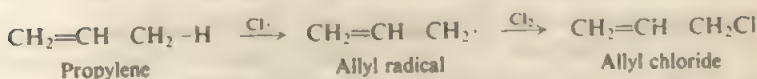
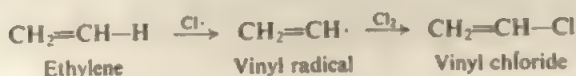


We can now expand the reactivity sequence of Sec. 3.23.

Ease of abstraction  
of hydrogen atoms

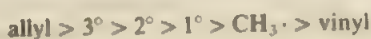
allylic > 3° > 2° > 1° >  $\text{CH}_4$  > vinyllic

Substitution in alkenes proceeds by the same mechanism as substitution in alkanes. For example:



Evidently the vinyl radical is formed very slowly and the allyl radical is formed very rapidly. We can now expand the sequence of Sec. 3.25.

**Ease of formation  
of free radicals**



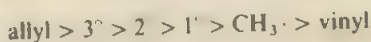
Are these findings in accord with our rule that *the more stable the radical, the more rapidly it is formed*? Is the slowly formed vinyl radical relatively unstable, and the rapidly formed allyl radical relatively stable?

The bond dissociation energies in Table 1.2 (p. 20) show that 108 kcal of energy is needed to form vinyl radicals from a mole of ethylene, as compared with 98 kcal for formation of ethyl radicals from ethane. Relative to the hydrocarbon from which each is formed, then, the vinyl radical contains more energy and is less stable than a methyl radical.

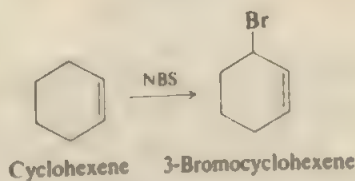
On the other hand, bond dissociation energies show that only 88 kcal is needed for formation of allyl radicals from propylene, as compared with 92 kcal for formation of *tert*-butyl radicals. Relative to the hydrocarbon from which each is formed, the allyl radical contains less energy and is more stable than the *tert*-butyl radical.

We can now expand the sequence of Sec. 3.24; relative to the hydrocarbon from which each is formed, the order of stability of free radicals is:

**Stability of  
free radicals**



In some way, then, the double bond affects the stability of certain free radicals; it exerts a similar effect on the incipient radicals of the transition state, and thus affects the rate of their formation. Through these effects on rate of reaction, the double bond helps to determine both the *orientation* of free-radical substitution in an alkene, and the *relative reactivities* of different alkenes. Thus, cyclohexene is brominated almost exclusively at the allylic positions,



and reacts much faster than cyclohexane despite a probability factor of 12:4 favoring attack on the saturated compound. (*Problem*: Why 12:4?)

As we know, free radicals are formed, not only by abstraction of hydrogen atoms, but also by addition to a double bond. Here too, we shall find, a double bond—a *second* double bond, not the one undergoing addition—can, through its effect on the stability of the incipient free radical, help to determine orientation and reactivity.

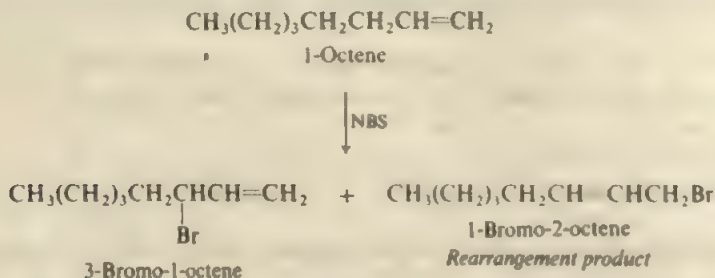
We have already seen (Sec. 7.4) a possible explanation for the low stability of vinylic radicals. Bonding of a vinylic hydrogen to carbon results from overlap with an  $sp^2$  orbital of carbon rather than the  $sp^3$  orbital of saturated carbon; this carbon-hydrogen bond is therefore shorter and stronger, and more energy must be supplied to break it. Relative to the hydrocarbon from which it is made, then, a vinylic radical is relatively unstable.

The high stability of allylic radicals is, as we shall see, readily accounted for by the structural theory: specifically, by the concept of resonance. But before we turn to resonance, let us look at some other characteristics of allylic radicals which, like their stability, are unusual.

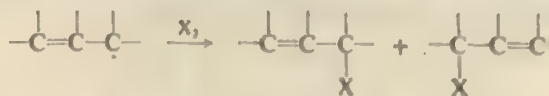
## 9.4 Free-radical substitution in alkenes: allylic rearrangement

Since we shall use the allyl radical as our introduction to both the concept of conjugation and the theory of resonance, let us examine its structure in detail. Besides the fact that (a) *the allyl radical is especially stable*, there are other facts that must be accounted for by a satisfactory structure. Let us see what these facts are.

(b) *Free-radical substitution at allylic positions can lead to allylic rearrangement.* When 1-octene, for example, is treated with N-bromosuccinimide, there is obtained not only the expected 3-bromo-1-octene, but also—and in larger amounts—1-bromo-2-octene (both *Z* and *E*). It is an allylic hydrogen on C-3 that is abstracted,



but in much of the product bromine appears on C-1. Whenever the structure permits, such allylic rearrangement occurs, and according to a well-defined pattern:



As we see, the allylic radical reacts to give two different products: one in which halogen has become attached to the carbon that lost the hydrogen; and the other in which halogen has become attached to the carbon at the other end of the three-carbon unit—the allylic system—we represent as  $\text{C}=\text{C}-\text{C}\cdot$ .

Examination of the structures involved shows us that such rearrangement involves no migration of atoms or groups; only the double bond appears in a different position from the one it occupied in the reactant.



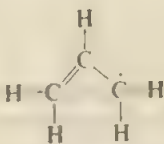
**Problem 9.2** Free-radical chlorination with *tert*-butyl hypochlorite (*t*-BuOCl, Problem 20, p. 121) shows a strong preference for allylic substitution rather than addition. Whether one starts with 1-butene or 2-butene (*cis* or *trans*), such chlorination yields a mixture of the same chloroalkenes (neglecting stereoisomerism). What are these chloroalkenes likely to be, and how are they formed?

## 9.5 Symmetry of the allyl radical

(c) *The allyl radical is a symmetrical molecule.*

A carbon-carbon double bond, we have seen, is quite different from a carbon-carbon single bond: it is shorter and stronger; rotation about it is hindered; the doubly-bonded carbons hold other atoms—hydrogens, say—by shorter, stronger bonds.

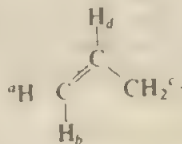
If the allyl radical actually possessed the “classical” structure that we have so far drawn for it,



it would be unsymmetrical about the central carbon atom; that is, the two ends of the molecule would be different from each other. It would contain two kinds of carbon-carbon bonds: a long single bond and a short double bond.

Now, an ESR spectrum (electron spin resonance spectrum, Sec. 17.19) reflects the structure of a free radical by what it shows about the *hydrogens* in the molecule: among other things, how many different “kinds” of hydrogen the free radical contains. It gives a signal for each hydrogen or each set of *equivalent* hydrogens—that is, each set of hydrogens in the same environment (Sec. 17.10).

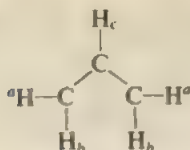
Let us examine the classical structure of the allyl radical. The two vinylic hydrogens ( $H_a$  and  $H_b$ ) on the terminal carbon would be non-equivalent (diastereotopic, actually), since one is *cis* and the other *trans* to  $-\text{CH}_2$ . The two hydrogens ( $H_c$ ) of  $-\text{CH}_2$  would be equivalent; because of rapid rotation about the



Allyl radical  
Classical structure:  
expect 4 ESR signals

carbon-carbon single bond they would be in the same *average* environment. Finally, there is the vinylic hydrogen ( $H_a$ ) on the central carbon; it is different from all the others. If the allyl radical had the classical structure, then, we would expect an ESR spectrum corresponding to *four* kinds of hydrogens.

In fact, however, the ESR spectrum actually measured reveals only *three* kinds of hydrogens. Each vinylic hydrogen at one end of the molecule has an exact counterpart at the other end.



Allyl radical

Actual structure:  
gives 3 ESR signals

(The two hydrogens labeled  $\text{H}_a$  are equivalent, and so are the ones labeled  $\text{H}_b$ .) The two ends of the molecule are equivalent; both carbon-carbon bonds are of exactly the same kind. The allyl radical is perfectly *symmetrical* about the central carbon.

Our classical structure of the allyl radical is clearly not satisfactory. What is required is a structure that accounts for the unusual stability of this radical, the occurrence of allylic rearrangements, and the symmetry revealed by ESR. To see what the structure is, we must turn to the theory of *resonance*.

## 9.6 The theory of resonance

It will be helpful first to list some of the general principles of the concept of resonance, and then to discuss these principles in terms of a specific example, the structure of the allyl radical.

(a) *Whenever a molecule can be represented by two or more structures that differ only in the arrangement of electrons—that is, by structures that have the same arrangement of atomic nuclei—there is resonance.* The molecule is a **hybrid** of all these structures, and cannot be represented satisfactorily by any one of them. Each of these structures is said to **contribute** to the hybrid.

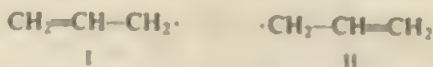
(b) *When these contributing structures are of about the same stability (that is, have about the same energy content), then resonance is important.* The contribution of each structure to the hybrid depends upon the relative stability of that structure: the more stable structures make the larger contribution.

(c) *The resonance hybrid is more stable than any of the contributing structures.* This increase in stability is called the **resonance energy**. The more nearly equal in stability the contributing structures, the greater the resonance energy.

There can be resonance only between structures that contain the *same number of odd electrons*. We need concern ourselves about this restriction only in dealing with *di-radicals*: molecules that contain *two* unpaired electrons. There cannot be resonance between a diradical structure and a structure with all electrons paired.

## 9.7 The allyl radical as a resonance hybrid

In the language of the resonance theory, then, the allyl radical is a resonance hybrid of the two structures, I and II.



This simply means that the allyl radical does not correspond to either I or II, but rather to a structure intermediate between I and II. Furthermore, since I and II are exactly equivalent, and hence have exactly the same stability, the resonance

hybrid is equally related to I and to II; that is, I and II are said to make *equal contributions to the hybrid*.

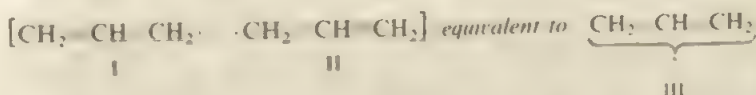
This does *not* mean that the allyl radical consists of molecules half of which correspond to I and half to II, nor does it mean that an individual molecule changes back and forth between I and II. All molecules are the same; each one has a structure intermediate between I and II.

An analogy to biological hybrids that was suggested by Professor G. W. Wheland of the University of Chicago is helpful. When we refer to a mule as a hybrid of a horse and a donkey, we do not mean that some mules are horses and some mules are donkeys; nor do we mean that an individual mule is a horse part of the time and a donkey part of the time. We mean simply that a mule is an animal that is related to both a horse and a donkey, and that can be conveniently defined in terms of those familiar animals.

An analogy used by Professor John D. Roberts of the California Institute of Technology is even more apt. A medieval European traveler returns home from a journey to India, and describes a rhinoceros as a sort of cross between a dragon and a unicorn—a quite satisfactory description of a real animal in terms of two familiar but entirely imaginary animals.

*It must be understood that our drawing of two structures to represent the allyl radical does not imply that either of these structures (or the molecules each would singly represent) has any existence.* The two pictures are necessary because of the limitations of our rather crude methods of representing molecules. We draw two pictures because no *single* one would suffice. It is not surprising that certain molecules cannot be represented by one structure of the sort we have employed; on the contrary, the surprising fact is that the crude dot-and-dash representation used by organic chemists has worked out to the extent that it has.

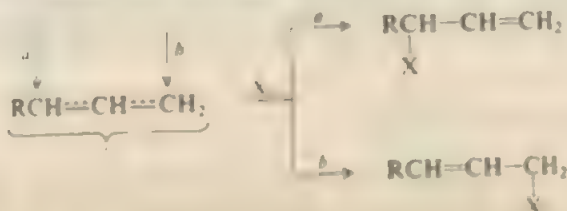
The resonance theory further tells us that the allyl radical does not contain one carbon-carbon single bond and one carbon-carbon double bond (as in I or II), but rather contains two *identical* bonds, each one intermediate between a single and a double bond. This new type of bond—this **hybrid bond**—has been described as a *one-and-a-half bond*. It is said to possess one-half single-bond character and one-half double-bond character.



The odd electron is not localized on one carbon or the other but is *delocalized*, being equally distributed over both terminal carbons. We might represent this symmetrical hybrid molecule as in III, where the broken lines represent half bonds.

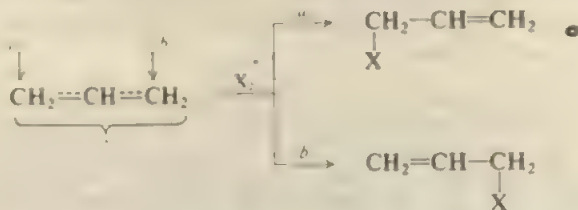
What we have arrived at is, of course, exactly the kind of highly symmetrical structure indicated by the ESR spectrum of the allyl radical.

Allylic rearrangement is a natural consequence of the hybrid character of an allylic radical. The terminal carbons of the three-carbon allylic system are exactly equivalent in the allyl radical itself, and very similar in an unsymmetrically substituted allylic radical. When halogen reacts with such a radical, it can become





attached to either of these terminal carbons. Where the structure permits, as in 1-octene for example, this attachment to either end is shown by the formation of two different products. In the case of the unsubstituted allyl radical itself, the same



product is obtained whichever end receives the halogen, and so no rearrangement is *seen*; but there can be little doubt that here, too, both carbons are subject to attack.

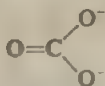
**Problem 9.3** Actually, one *could* detect "rearrangement"—that is, attachment to either end of the allyl radical—in the chlorination of propylene. Tell how.

**Problem 9.4** The nitro group,  $-\text{NO}_2$ , is usually represented as



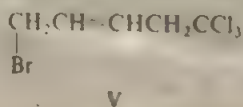
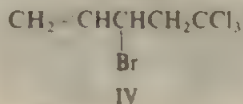
Actual measurement shows that the two nitrogen-oxygen bonds of a nitro compound have exactly the same length. In nitromethane,  $\text{CH}_3\text{NO}_2$ , for example, the two nitrogen-oxygen bond lengths are each 1.21 Å, as compared with a usual length of 1.36 Å for a nitrogen-oxygen single bond and 1.18 Å for a nitrogen-oxygen double bond. What is a better representation of the  $-\text{NO}_2$  group?

**Problem 9.5** The carbonate ion,  $\text{CO}_3^{2-}$ , might be represented as



Actual measurement shows that all the carbon-oxygen bonds in  $\text{CaCO}_3$  have the same length, 1.31 Å, as compared with a usual length of about 1.36 Å for a carbon-oxygen single bond and about 1.23 Å for a carbon-oxygen double bond. What is a better representation of the  $\text{CO}_3^{2-}$  ion?

**Problem 9.6** The addition of  $\text{BrCCl}_3$  to 1,3-butadiene in the presence of a peroxide gives a mixture of IV and V. How do you account for the formation of these two products?

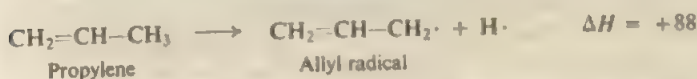
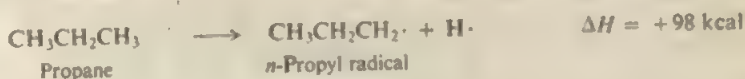


## 9.8 Stability of the allyl radical

A further, most important outcome of the resonance theory is this: *as a resonance hybrid, the allyl radical is more stable (that is, contains less energy) than*

either of the contributing structures. This additional stability possessed by the molecule is referred to as *resonance energy*. Since these particular contributing structures are exactly equivalent and hence of the same stability, we expect stabilization due to resonance to be large.

Just how large is the resonance energy of the allyl radical? To know the exact value, we would have to compare the actual, hybrid allyl radical with a *non-existent* radical of structure I or II—something we cannot do, experimentally. We can, however, estimate the resonance energy by comparing two reactions: dissociation of propane to form a *n*-propyl radical, and dissociation of propylene to form an allyl radical.

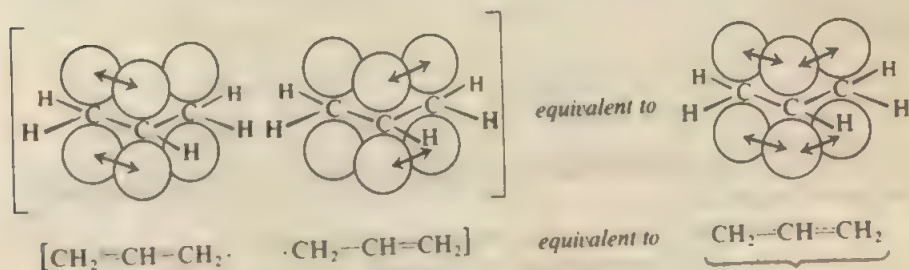


Propane, the *n*-propyl radical, and propylene are each fairly satisfactorily represented by a single structure; the allyl radical, on the other hand, is a resonance hybrid. We see that the energy difference between propylene and the allyl radical is 10 kcal/mol less (98 – 88) than the energy difference between propane and the *n*-propyl radical; we attribute the lower dissociation energy entirely to resonance stabilization of the allyl radical, and estimate the resonance energy to be 10 kcal/mol.

## 9.9 Orbital picture of the allyl radical

To get a clearer picture of what a resonance hybrid is—and, especially, to understand how resonance stabilization arises—let us consider the bond orbitals in the allyl radical.

Since each carbon is bonded to three other atoms, it uses  $sp^2$  orbitals (as in ethylene, Sec. 7.2). Overlap of these orbitals with each other and with the  $s$  orbitals of five hydrogen atoms gives the molecular skeleton shown in Fig. 9.1, with all bond angles  $120^\circ$ . In addition, each carbon atom has a  $p$  orbital which, as we know, consists of two equal lobes, one lying above and the other lying below the plane of the  $\sigma$  bonds; it is occupied by a single electron.



**Figure 9.1.** Allyl radical. The  $p$  orbital of the middle carbon overlaps  $p$  orbitals on both sides to permit delocalization of electrons.

As in the case of ethylene, the  $p$  orbital of one carbon can overlap the  $p$  orbital of an adjacent carbon atom, permitting the electrons to pair and a bond to be formed. In this way we would arrive at either of the contributing structures, I or II, with the odd electron occupying the  $p$  orbital of the remaining carbon atom. But the overlap is not limited to a pair of  $p$  orbitals as it was in ethylene; the  $p$  orbital of the middle carbon atom overlaps equally well the  $p$  orbitals of *both* the carbon atoms to which it is bonded. The result is two continuous  $\pi$  electron clouds, one lying above and one lying below the plane of the atoms.

Since no more than two electrons may occupy the same orbital (Pauli exclusion principle), these  $\pi$  clouds are actually made up of *two* orbitals (Sec. 33.5). One of these, containing two  $\pi$  electrons, encompasses all three carbon atoms; the other, containing the third (odd)  $\pi$  electron, is divided equally between the terminal carbons.

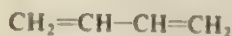
The overlap of the  $p$  orbitals in both directions, and the resulting participation of each electron in two bonds, is equivalent to our earlier description of the allyl radical as a resonance hybrid of two structures. These two methods of representation, the drawing of several resonance structures and the drawing of an electron cloud, are merely our crude attempts to convey by means of pictures the idea that *a given pair of electrons may serve to bind together more than two nuclei*. It is this ability of  $\pi$  electrons to participate in several bonds, this **delocalization of electrons**, that results in stronger bonds and a more stable molecule. For this reason the term *delocalization energy* is frequently used instead of *resonance energy*.

The covalent bond owes its strength to the fact that an electron is attracted more strongly by two nuclei than by one. In the same way an electron is more strongly attracted by three nuclei than by two.

We saw earlier (Sec. 2.22) that the methyl radical may not be quite flat: that hybridization of carbon may be intermediate between  $sp^2$  and  $sp^3$ . For the allyl radical, on the other hand—and for many other free radicals—flatness is clearly required to permit the overlap of  $p$  orbitals that leads to stabilization of the radical.

In terms of the conventional valence-bond structures we employ, it is difficult to visualize a single structure that is intermediate between the two structures, I and II. The orbital approach, on the other hand, gives us a rather clear picture of the allyl radical: the density of electrons holding the central carbon to each of the others is intermediate between that of a single bond and that of a double bond.

For generations, chemists have used the word *conjugated* to describe molecules containing alternating single and double (or triple) bonds: 1,3-butadiene, for example, or (and especially) benzene. A special name was given to compounds



1,3-Butadiene



Benzene

with this structural feature since it was observed that they had certain special properties in common.

With the advent of the theory of resonance in the 1930's, the special properties of these conjugated molecules were attributed to interaction of the  $\pi$  orbitals of two or more double bonds: overlap much like what we have just described for the "double bond" of an allyl radical with the  $p$  orbital containing the odd electron. The meaning of the word *conjugation* became broadened to include the



juxtaposition of a double bond and any  $\pi$  or  $p$  orbital juxtaposition that permits overlap. And with *hyperconjugation*, the concept has been further broadened to include a similar juxtaposition of bonds of any kind  $\sigma$  as well as  $\pi$  or  $p$ —juxtaposition, again, that permits sideways overlap.

The allyl radical is, then, a conjugated molecule. We interpret its special properties, as we shall do for other conjugated molecules, by the use of the theory of resonance. We can expect the carbon-carbon double bond to play a special role as a substituent whenever its location in a molecule creates a conjugated system: a system that, according to our interpretation, must exist as a resonance hybrid.

**Problem 9.7** In the reaction described in Problem 9.2 (p. 401), the 1-chloro-2-butene obtained from *cis*-2-butene is exclusively the *cis*-isomer, and the 1-chloro-2-butene obtained from *trans*-2-butene is exclusively the *trans*-isomer. What does this show about the intermediate allylic radicals? How do you account for this on the basis of their structure? (*Hint*: See Sec. 7.5.)

## 9.10 Using the resonance theory

The great usefulness, and hence the great value, of the resonance theory lies in the fact that it retains the simple though crude type of structural representation which we have used so far in this book. Particularly helpful is the fact that the stability of a structure can often be roughly estimated from its **reasonableness**. If only one reasonable structure can be drawn for a molecule, the chances are good that this one structure adequately describes the molecule.

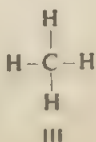
The criterion of reasonableness is not so vague as it might appear. The fact that a particular structure seems reasonable to us means that we have previously encountered a compound whose properties are pretty well accounted for by a structure of that type; the structure must, therefore, represent a fairly stable kind of arrangement of atoms and electrons. For example, each of the contributing structures for the allyl radical appears quite reasonable because we have encountered compounds, alkenes and free radicals, that possess the features of this structure.

There are a number of other criteria that we can use to estimate relative stabilities, and hence relative importance, of contributing structures. One of these has to do with (a) *electronegativity and location of charge*.

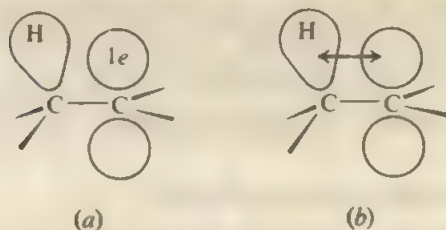
For example, a convenient way of indicating the polarity (*ionic character*) of the hydrogen-chlorine bond is to represent HCl as a hybrid of structures I and II. We judge that II is appreciably stable and hence makes significant contribution, because in it a negative charge is located on a highly electronegative atom, chlorine.



On the other hand, we consider methane to be represented adequately by the single structure III.



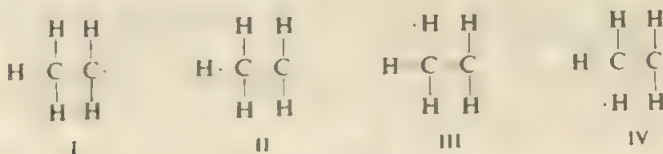




**Figure 9.2.** Hyperconjugation in an alkyl free radical. (a) Separate  $\sigma$  and  $p$  orbitals. (b) Overlapping orbitals.

overlap, individual electrons can, to an extent, help bind together three nuclei, two carbons and one hydrogen. This kind of delocalization, involving  $\sigma$  bond orbitals, is called **hyperconjugation**.

In resonance language, we would say that the ethyl radical, for example, is a hybrid of not only the usual structure, I, but also three additional structures, II, III,



and IV, in which a double bond joins the two carbons, and the odd electron is held by a hydrogen atom.

Individually, each of these "no-bond" resonance structures appears strange but, taken together, they mean that the carbon-hydrogen bond is something less than a single bond, that the carbon-carbon bond has some double bond character, and that the odd electron is partly accommodated by hydrogen atoms. Contribution from these unstable structures is not nearly so important as from, say, the equivalent structures for the allyl radical, and the resulting stabilization is not nearly so large. It is believed, however, to stabilize the ethyl radical to the extent of 6 kcal relative to the methyl radical ( $104 - 98$ , Sec. 3.24) for which such resonance is not possible.

If we extend this idea to the isopropyl radical, we find that instead of three hyperconjugation structures we now have six. (*Draw them.*) The larger number of contributing structures means more extensive delocalization of the odd electron, and hence greater stabilization of the radical. In agreement with this expectation, we find that the bond dissociation energy of the isopropyl hydrogen bond is only 95 kcal, indicating a resonance energy of 9 kcal/mol ( $104 - 95$ ).

For the *tert*-butyl radical there should be nine such hyperconjugation structures. (*Draw them*) Here we find a bond dissociation energy of 92 kcal, indicating a resonance stabilization of 12 kcal/mol ( $104 - 92$ ).

In summary, the relative stabilities of the free radicals we have studied are determined by delocalization of electrons. Delocalization takes place through overlap of the  $p$  orbital occupied by the odd electron: overlap with the  $\pi$  cloud of a double bond in the allyl radical, or overlap with  $\sigma$  bonds in alkyl radicals.

First advanced in 1939 by R. S. Mulliken at the University of Chicago, the idea of hyperconjugation, in some of its applications at least, has aroused considerable controversy (see Sec. 9.24). A great deal of research has been done—and is still going on—in an effort to evaluate the importance of hyperconjugative effects.



**Problem 9.9** It has been postulated that the relative stabilities of alkyl cations are determined not only by inductive effects but also by resonance stabilization. How might you account for the following order of stability of cations?



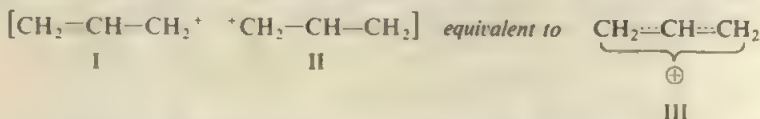
## 9.12 The allyl cation as a resonance hybrid

Let us turn to heterolytic chemistry, and see how this is affected by the presence of a double bond in the substrate molecule. Since carbocations are key intermediates in much of heterolytic chemistry, let us begin by examining the structure of the *allyl cation*:



Allyl cation  
Classical structure

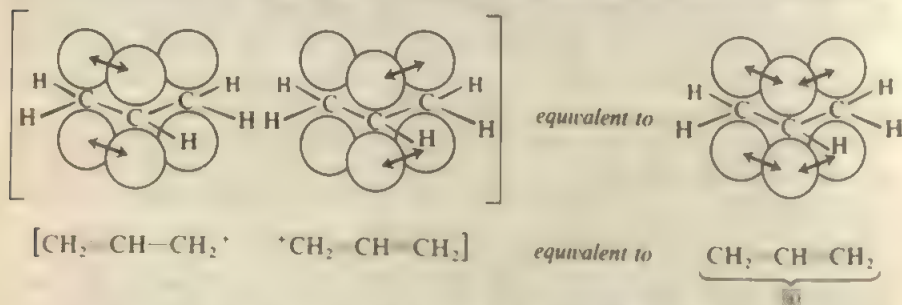
Before we look at the facts, let us see what predictions we might make about this carbocation, using our newly acquired theory of resonance. We begin, as usual, by examining the structure of the molecule. We have drawn the allyl cation as I, but we could just as well have drawn its structure as II. The structures I and II, we



now immediately recognize, meet the conditions for resonance: *structures that differ only in the arrangement of electrons*.

According to the resonance theory, neither I nor II adequately represents the cation; it is, instead, a *hybrid* of I and II, and has a structure we might represent as III. Since I and II are exactly equivalent, and hence of exactly the same stability, they make equal contributions to the hybrid. Like the allyl radical, the allyl cation does not contain one carbon-carbon single bond and one carbon-carbon double bond; it contains two identical bonds, each one intermediate between a single and double bond. The positive charge is not located on either terminal carbon atom, but is spread over both.

As was true with the allyl radical, we can get a clearer picture of this molecule by examining the bond orbitals involved. In either of the contributing structures, there is an empty *p* orbital on the electron-deficient carbon. Overlap of this empty *p* orbital with  $\pi$  cloud of the double bond results in delocalization of the  $\pi$  electrons: each of these two electrons helps to hold together all three carbon nuclei (Fig. 9.3).



**Figure 9.3.** Allyl cation. The *p* orbital of the middle carbon overlaps *p* orbitals on both sides to permit delocalization of electrons.

Now, on the basis of the structure we have arrived at, what predictions can we make about the properties of the allyl cation? First, since I and II are exactly equivalent, we expect resonance to be *important*, and *to give rise to considerable stabilization of the molecule*.

This prediction is borne out by the facts, as Table 1.3 (p. 21) shows. The heterolytic bond dissociation energy for allyl chloride is 173 kcal, 12 kcal less than for *n*-propyl chloride, and about the same as for isopropyl chloride (170 kcal). Thus, although structure I or II is, formally, that of a primary cation, the allyl cation is about as stable as a secondary cation. We can now expand the sequence of Sec. 6.23.

### Stability of carbocations

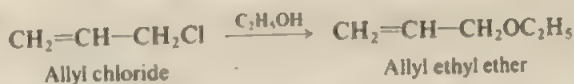


Next, we expect the allyl cation to be *symmetrical about the central carbon*. Again the facts show that this is so. The allyl cation and symmetrically substituted allylic cations have been prepared under strongly acidic conditions and studied spectroscopically. The infrared spectrum for such a cation is particularly revealing. There are not two absorption bands for carbon-carbon stretching (Sec. 17.5), one for C—C and one for C=C; instead, there is just *one*. This band appears at a frequency intermediate between those characteristic of C—C and of C=C, indicating two equivalent C=C bonds. The intensity of this band—it is the most intense infrared band observed for organic compounds—indicates a system with positive charge located on both terminal carbons.

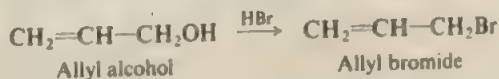
### 9.13 Nucleophilic substitution in allylic substrates: S<sub>N</sub>1. Reactivity. Allylic rearrangement

So far, our predictions about the properties of the allyl cation have been correct. Now let us see what we might expect of a reaction in which allylic cations are intermediates: nucleophilic substitution of the  $S_N1$  kind.

Consider, for example, the solvolysis of allyl chloride,

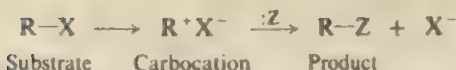


or the reaction of allyl alcohol with a hydrogen halide.

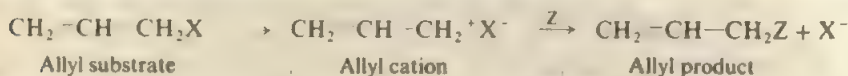


As their names indicate, these are *allylic substrates*, since the leaving group is attached to a carbon *next* to a doubly-bonded carbon. What is the effect of this double bond on the way these substrates react? Will they behave differently from, say, their saturated analogs, *n*-propyl chloride and *n*-propyl alcohol?

Let us assume for the moment that these reactions proceed by the  $S_N1$  mechanism. According to this mechanism the rate-determining step is heterolysis to give a carbocation; and, as we have seen, it is the nature of this carbocation that



largely controls the course of reaction. In these cases, since the substrates are allyl substrates, the intermediate cation will be the allyl cation. From what we have just

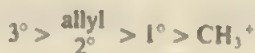


learned about the allyl cation, what can we predict about these  $S_N1$  reactions?

In  $S_N1$  it is the rate of formation of the carbocation that determines the overall rate of reaction. So far, we have found that the rate of formation of carbocations—whether in nucleophilic substitution, elimination, or addition—parallels their stability. The allyl cation, we concluded in the preceding section, is about as stable as a secondary cation. We expect, therefore, that *allyl substrates will react about as fast by  $S_N1$  as secondary substrates*.

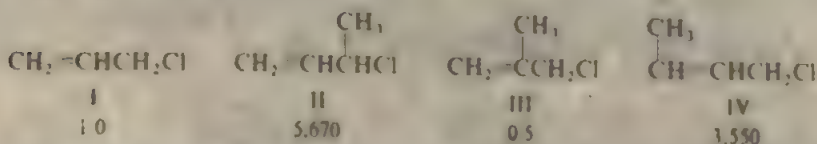
Once more our prediction is correct. Solvolysis of allyl substrates (allyl chloride, for example, or allyl tosylate), which appears to follow an  $S_N1$  mechanism, takes place roughly as fast as the corresponding reaction of secondary substrates. (Often, it is somewhat faster.) Secondary substrates, we have seen, react *much* faster by  $S_N1$  than primary substrates. (Remember: It is very likely that all or nearly all of the rate measured for solvolysis of primary substrates (Sec. 6.25) is for reaction by  $S_N2$ .) In nucleophilic substitution, then, the allyl cation—like the secondary cation—is formed perhaps a million times as fast as its saturated analog, the *n*-propyl cation. We can now expand our sequence of Sec. 6.25.

Rate of formation  
of carbocations



The reactivity we have just been discussing is that of substrates containing the simple allyl group itself,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2-$ . The presence of alkyl substituents—*at either end* of the allylic system—increases the reactivity still further.

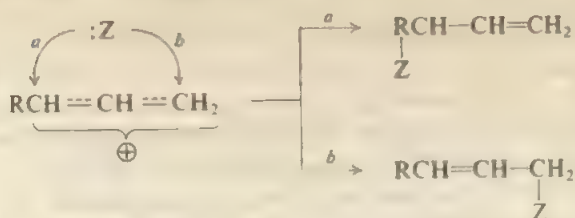
**Problem 9.10** For solvolysis of several allylic chlorides in formic acid ( $\text{HCOOH}$ ) containing a small amount of water, the following relative rates have been measured.



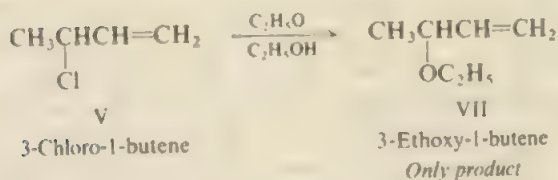
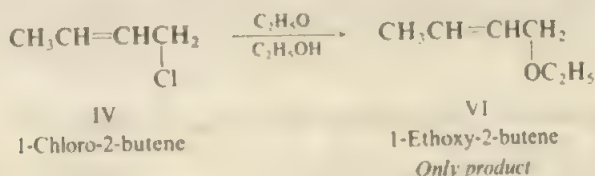
Drawing all pertinent structures, account for the fact that, while the methyl group in III actually deactivates slightly, the methyl group in IV (farther from the center of reaction) activates powerfully, and nearly as much as the methyl group in II.

Let us make one more prediction: we expect that  *$S_N1$  reactions of allylic substrates can show allylic rearrangement*. In the second step of  $S_N1$ , the combining of the carbocation with the nucleophile should take place at either terminal carbon of the allylic system and thus, if the structure permits, give two different products



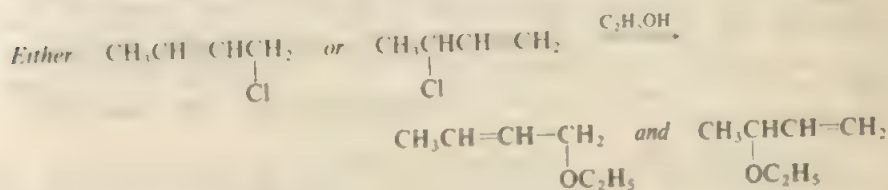


What are the facts? Consider the conversion of the isomeric allylic chlorides IV and V into the ethyl ethers, VI and VII. In a concentrated solution of sodium ethoxide in ethanol, each chloride reacts by second-order kinetics; IV gives exclusively VI, and V gives exclusively VII. With a high concentration of a strong



nucleophile, reaction is straightforward  $S_N2$ ; the incoming nucleophile attaches itself to the same carbon that is losing the chloride ion.

If, now, the same chlorides are heated in ethanol in the absence of added base, the course of reaction changes dramatically. Whichever allylic substrate one starts with, *both* ethers are found in the product. Under solvolytic conditions reaction



shifts to the  $S_N1$  mechanism, and, as we predicted, allylic rearrangement takes place.

In the example above, we have shown the isomeric chlorides as forming the same hybrid allylic cation. If that were exactly the case, we would expect identical mixtures of products from the two substrates. That is *not true*: not here or, indeed, in most cases of allylic rearrangement. Although both chlorides give mixtures of the same isomeric products, the exact composition of the mixture—the *proportions* of the two products—differs somewhat, and depends upon which chloride it is obtained from.

If we think about this, we find that it is not, after all, surprising. The cations—as formed by heterolysis—are *not* identical, and for two reasons. First, there is

evidence that the intermediates are ion pairs. (Indeed, some of the earliest and strongest evidence for the intermediacy of ion pairs in solvolysis came from the study of just such allylic systems.) These ion pairs will, of course, not be identical: the exact structure of the ion pair—the location of the chloride ion—will depend upon which carbon the chloride ion has just left, C-1 or C-3.

Second, it is likely that, like secondary cations, allylic cations are formed with nucleophilic assistance (Sec. 6.31). This, too, should differ depending upon the substrate, and the structure of the two nucleophilically solvated cations will differ. (It may even be that a fraction of the reaction occurs by a full-fledged  $S_N2$  mechanism.)

**Problem 9.11** On treatment with HCl, 1,3-butadiene yields a mixture of 3-chloro-1-butene and 1-chloro-2-butene. How do you account for the formation of these two products?

### 9.14 Stabilization of carbocations: the resonance effect

In our introduction to carbocations (Sec. 6.22) we spoke of their relative stabilities as being the property of greatest importance to our understanding of their chemistry. Since then we have seen the remarkable parallel between the stability of carbocations and the stability of transition states leading to their formation—transition states of reactions of many different kinds.

The stabilization of a carbocation, we said (Sec. 6.24), depends upon *dispersal of charge*. This, in turn, depends upon how well the electron-deficient carbon can get electrons from elsewhere in the molecule. One way in which this can happen, we saw, was through the *inductive effect* of a substituent: electron release acting through the molecular framework or through space, and steadily weakening with increasing distance between the substituent and the reaction center. (Electron withdrawal, of course, has the opposite effect: it intensifies the charge and destabilizes the carbocation.)

Now we have encountered a second way in which charge can be dispersed: a **resonance effect** (or *conjugative effect*), due to overlap between certain orbitals. Unlike the inductive effect, the resonance effect does not vary in strength in a gradual way depending upon distance. It is an all-or-nothing effect, which depends upon a specific relationship between the interacting atoms: the relationship we have called *conjugation*.

We said earlier (Sec. 6.21) that two features of a carbocation's structure are intimately involved in determining its stability: the *p* orbital, even though formally empty; and the flatness about the electron-deficient carbon. We see now how this comes about. In a conjugated carbocation, the empty *p* orbital is available for the overlap that provides electrons to the electron-deficient carbon; and the flatness makes this overlap geometrically possible.

The electron-deficient carbon, we shall find, can be conjugated with atoms or groups other than a simple carbon-carbon double bond: most notably with an *aryl* group in what are called *benzylic* cations (Sec. 16.17). The empty *p* orbital can overlap orbitals other than  $\pi$  orbitals: unshared electrons on a properly located atom (Sec. 9.15); even, perhaps,  $\sigma$  orbitals of carbon-hydrogen bonds (Sec. 9.16). And, in all these cases, the resulting delocalization of electrons and dispersal of charge results in stabilization of the carbocation.

But in some reactions it is not a positive but a negative charge that develops.

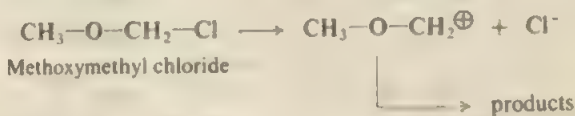
The most stable, most easily formed, and most important of these anionic compounds, we shall find, are conjugated; and they owe their stability and, ultimately, their importance to dispersal of their charge through resonance.

Delocalization of electrons through resonance is the most powerful of the polar factors affecting the stability of charged molecules, positive or negative, and as such plays a leading part in determining orientation and reactivity in a wide variety of organic reactions, and even the course of reaction itself.

### 9.15 Stabilization of carbocations: the role of unshared pairs

Let us look at an example of conjugation of an electron-deficient carbon with an atom bearing unshared pairs of electrons.

The chloroether, methoxymethyl chloride, undergoes solvolysis (evidently by the  $S_N1$  mechanism) more than  $10^{14}$  times as fast as methyl chloride—faster, even,

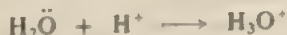


than simple alkyl chlorides of any class. How are we to account for the enormous rate enhancement brought about by the  $\text{CH}_3\text{O—}$  group?

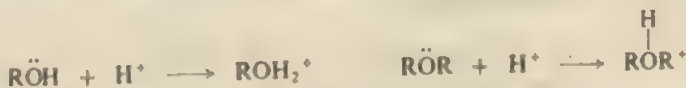
As always with  $S_N1$  reactions, let us look at the structure of the intermediate carbocation. To the electron-deficient carbon is attached an oxygen atom. Oxygen is electronegative and, like halogen, should exert an electron-withdrawing inductive effect—an effect that, as we have seen (Sec. 6.31), tends to destabilize a carbocation. Yet here, if the parallel between rate of formation and stability holds, we have evidence of powerful *stabilization*.

The parallel *does* hold: measurements have shown the methoxymethyl cation to be 76 kcal/mol more stable than the methyl cation—more stable, even, than *tert*-butyl. Can oxygen, then, release electrons? The answer is *yes, by its resonance effect*.

Although electronegative, the oxygen of the  $\text{CH}_3\text{O—}$  group is basic; it has unshared pairs of electrons that it tends to share, thus acquiring a positive charge. Just as water accepts a proton to form the hydronium (oxonium) ion,



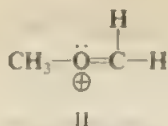
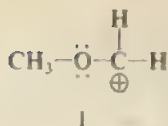
so alcohols and ethers, as we have found, accept protons to form substituted oxonium ions.



The effects of properly placed oxygen on the stability of carbocations—here, and in other kinds of reactions—can be accounted for by assuming that oxygen can share more than one pair of electrons with electron-deficient carbon and can accommodate a positive charge. Fundamentally, it is the *basicity* of oxygen that is involved.

With that background, let us return to the structure of the methoxymethyl cation. We have written its structure as I, but we could just as well have written it





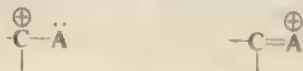
*Especially stable:  
every atom has octet*

as II. Again the conditions for resonance have been met: two structures that differ only in the arrangement of electrons.

Of the two structures, we would expect II to be by far the more stable, since in it *every atom* (except hydrogen, of course) *has a complete octet of electrons*. By sharing *two* pairs of electrons with carbon—and thus acquiring the positive charge itself—oxygen has provided carbon with the electrons needed to complete its octet. Structure II is so much more stable than I that, by itself, it must pretty well represent the structure of the cation. The cation is thus hardly a *carbocation* at all, but an *oxonium ion*. This oxonium ion formed from methoxymethyl chloride is enormously more stable than the carbocation that would be formed from a simple alkyl chloride, and it is formed at a vastly faster rate.

(Compare, for example, the structures of  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$  and  $\text{CH}_3^+$ . Here it is not a matter of which atom, oxygen or carbon, can better accommodate a positive charge; it is a matter of complete *vs.* incomplete octets.)

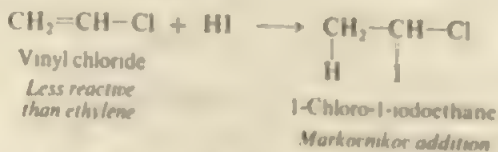
This is a conjugated system: the double bond is formed by overlap of the empty *p* orbital of carbon with a filled *p* orbital of oxygen. The electron-deficient carbon of a carbocation can be conjugated with an unshared pair on atoms other than oxygen: nitrogen, sulfur, even halogen. There, too, we shall find, the resulting



Conjugation with an unshared pair

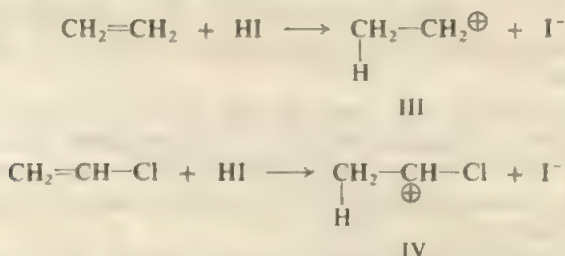
stabilization of the carbocation can have spectacular effects on the rate, not just of heterolysis, but of reactions of many other types.

In the case of the oxonium ion, then, electron release through the resonance effect is clearly much more powerful than electron withdrawal through the inductive effect, and controls reactivity. Now let us look at a situation where the two factors are more closely balanced. To do this, let us turn to the formation of a carbocation in a reaction of a different type, electrophilic addition, and examine the effect of a different element, chlorine. Let us take as our example the addition of hydrogen iodide to vinyl chloride, and consider both reactivity and orientation in this reaction. The facts are these: the addition takes place more slowly than to ethylene itself, and yields 1-chloro-1-iodoethane.



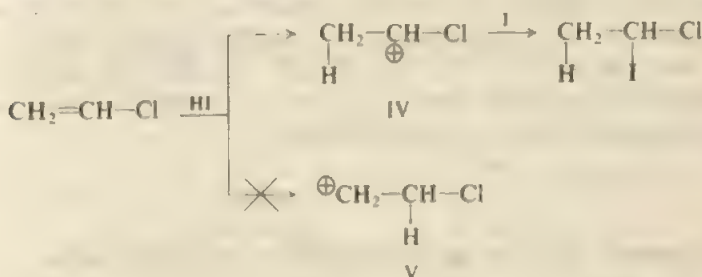
Let us examine first the matter of *reactivity*. Electrophilic addition, we have seen (Sec. 8.12), is a two-step process. The first, slow step is formation of a carbocation; the stability of this carbocation determines how fast it is formed and hence how fast addition occurs (Sec. 8.15). Addition to ethylene gives the ethyl

cation, III; addition to vinyl chloride gives the 1-chloroethyl cation, IV. The



electron-withdrawing inductive effect of chlorine intensifies the positive charge in IV, makes the cation less stable, and causes a slower reaction.

So far, so good. But now let us turn to the *orientation* of this reaction. Orientation in electrophilic addition, we have seen (Sec. 8.15), is determined by which of two possible carbocations is formed in the first step; and, again, the more stable carbocation is formed faster. Addition to vinyl chloride could involve either of two cations, IV or V. The product actually obtained, 1-chloro-1-iodoethane,



shows that IV is formed preferentially and hence, presumably, is the more stable. Yet in IV the positive charge is located on C-1, the position closest to the chlorine and where we would expect the inductive effect to be strongest and most destabilizing. How are we to account for this puzzling orientation?

The answer is found in conjugation: conjugation between the electron-deficient carbon and an unshared pair of electrons on chlorine. The cation actually formed is not adequately represented by structure IV; it is a hybrid of IV with structure VI,



in which carbon and chlorine are joined by a double bond, and chlorine carries the positive charge. Like the oxonium ion we discussed earlier, structure VI is comparatively stable because in it every atom (except hydrogen) has a *complete octet*. In the alternative cation V, with the positive charge on C-2, there is no comparable conjugation, and no possible contribution from a structure like VI. To the extent, then, that structure VI contributes to the hybrid, it makes the cation with the charge on C-1 the more stable one.

Through its inductive effect chlorine tends to withdraw electrons and thus to destabilize the intermediate carbocation. This effect is felt at both carbons, but more strongly at C-1. Through its resonance effect chlorine tends to release electrons and thus to stabilize the intermediate carbocation. This electron release is effective *only* at C-1.

The inductive effect is stronger than the resonance effect and causes net electron withdrawal and hence deactivation of the molecule relative to unsubstituted ethylene. The resonance effect tends to oppose the inductive effect for formation of the cation with charge on C-1, and hence makes this less destabilized than the alternative cation.

Reactivity is thus controlled by the stronger inductive effect, and orientation is controlled by the resonance effect, which, although weaker, is more selective.

(In Sec. 15.19 we shall find exactly the same interplay of inductive and resonance effects determining reactivity and orientation in a reaction—electrophilic aromatic substitution—which on the surface seems to be quite different from this one, but which is basically quite similar.)

To account for the stereochemistry of addition of halogens to alkenes, we saw (Sec. 8.18), an intermediate halonium ion has been proposed: halogen is pictured as sharing two pairs of electrons and acquiring a positive charge. Despite the high electronegativity of halogen, such an intermediate is—on the basis of the stereochemical evidence—more stable than the open cation. In the resonance effect we have just described, as in the formation of cyclic halonium ions, relative stability is a matter, not of the electronegativity of the atom carrying the positive charge, but of completeness *vs.* incompleteness of octets.

## 9.16 Resonance stabilization of alkyl cations: hyperconjugation

Let us look at one more place where the electron-deficient carbon of a carbocation may get electrons: carbon-hydrogen bonds. It has been proposed that, like the *p* orbital of a free radical, the empty *p* orbital of a carbocation can overlap  $\sigma$  orbitals of alkyl groups to which it is attached (Fig. 9.4).

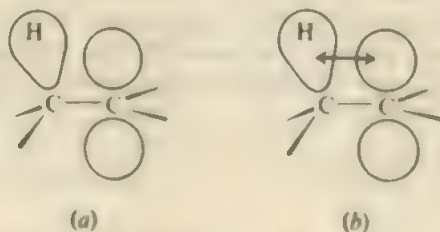
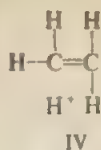
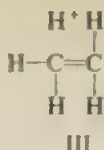
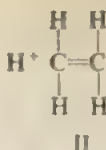
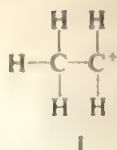


Figure 9.4. Hyperconjugation in a carbocation (a) Separate  $\sigma$  and *p* orbitals. (b) Overlapping orbitals.

As we discussed for free radicals, this kind of overlap permits individual electrons to help bind together three nuclei, two carbons and one hydrogen. This kind of delocalization we recognize as hyperconjugation.

In resonance language, the ethyl cation, for example, would be described as a hybrid of not only structure I, but also the three structures II, III, and IV, in which a double bond joins the two carbons, and the positive charge is carried by a





hydrogen. To the extent that the carbon-carbon bond has acquired double-bond character, the electron-deficient carbon has gained electrons, and the positive charge is dispersed over the three hydrogens.

With increased branching of the carbocation, dispersal of charge and the resulting stabilization is greater: dispersal over six hydrogens for the isopropyl cation and nine for the *tert*-butyl cation.

Earlier (Sec. 6.24), we described electron-release by alkyl groups as an inductive effect; here, we see it as a resonance effect. Despite a great deal of work on the problem, the relative importance of these two factors is not clear. One frequently finds the two lumped together as the "inductive-hyperconjugative" effect of alkyl groups. In this book we may often refer to the inductive effect of alkyl groups, but it should be understood that this may well include a contribution from hyperconjugation.

### 9.17 Nucleophilic substitution in allylic substrates: $S_N2$

Let us return to the behavior of allyl substrates in nucleophilic substitution. In reactions by  $S_N1$ , we saw, they are about as reactive as saturated secondary substrates. We attributed this to dispersal, through resonance, of the positive charge developing in the transition state of the rate-determining step.

Now, in nucleophilic substitution by  $S_N2$ , it has been found, allyl substrates are roughly as reactive as saturated primary substrates. (Often the allyl substrates are somewhat—up to 40 times or so—more reactive.) This, too, is understandable: the chief factor governing  $S_N2$  reactivity is steric hindrance, and the allyl group is about as bulky as an unbranched primary group.

In a sense, the allyl group has the best of both worlds: a capacity for charge dispersal comparable to that of a secondary group, but without the bulkiness that would hinder direct nucleophilic attack.

**Problem 9.12** In solvolysis, we saw (Problem 9.10, p. 412), 3-chloro-1-butene is some 5600 times as reactive as allyl chloride. In the second-order reaction with sodium ethoxide in ethanol, by contrast, it is only about one-twentieth as reactive as allyl chloride. How do you account for this dramatic switch in relative reactivities?

### 9.18 Nucleophilic substitution in vinylic substrates

Let us continue our examination of the effect of the double bond on nucleophilic substitution, and look at substrates in which the leaving group is attached to one of the doubly-bonded carbons, that is, *vinylic substrates*.



A vinylic substrate

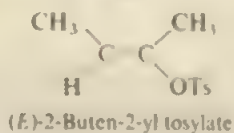
We have seen (Sec. 6.33) that an alkyl halide is conveniently detected by the precipitation of insoluble silver halide when it is warmed with alcoholic silver nitrate. This reaction is an example of nucleophilic substitution—solvolysis—with the silver ion lending assistance by pulling away halide ion. The reaction occurs instantaneously with tertiary, allylic, and benzylic (Sec. 16.18) bromides, and within five minutes or so with primary and secondary bromides.

Vinylic halides (or aryl halides, Sec. 25.5), however, do *not* yield silver halide under these conditions. Vinyl bromide can be heated with alcoholic  $\text{AgNO}_3$  for days without  $\text{AgBr}$  being detected. Toward nucleophilic substitution in general vinylic halides are *very much less reactive* than their saturated counterparts. They are not ordinarily used in the array of syntheses (Sec. 6.10) based upon nucleophilic substitution reactions of alkyl halides.

How are we to account for this low reactivity of vinylic halides? Fundamental to the understanding of these compounds is the fact that they contain *an unusually strong carbon halogen bond*. Table 1.3 (p. 21) shows that the heterolytic bond dissociation energy for vinyl chloride is 207 kcal, as compared with 191 kcal for ethyl chloride and 227 kcal for methyl chloride. Values for the fluorides, bromides, and iodides show similar differences. It takes 16 to 18 kcal more energy to break the carbon-halogen bond in a vinyl halide than in the corresponding ethyl halide. Except for the bond in methyl halides, this is the strongest carbon-halogen bond we have so far encountered.

Two factors have been proposed as being responsible for the unusual strength of the vinyl-halogen bond: (a) it results from overlap with an  $sp^2$  orbital of carbon rather than the  $sp^3$  orbital of saturated carbon (Secs. 7.4 and 9.3); (b) it has, through resonance, some double-bond character. We shall discuss this matter in more detail later (Sec. 25.6). For now, we can say this much: it seems quite likely that both factors are at work.

It also seems quite likely that these same two factors strengthen the bond between doubly-bonded carbon and the oxygen of such leaving groups as tosylates. In any case, vinylic substrates containing other commonly-used leaving groups share in the low reactivity of vinylic halides. Thus, (*E*)-2-buten-2-yl tosylate reacts with aqueous methanol only *one-millionth as fast* as *sec*-butyl tosylate.



The fact is, then, the vinyl halogen bond is a very strong one. Now, whether nucleophilic substitution takes place by  $S_N2$  or  $S_N1$ , the rate-determining step involves breaking of the carbon-halogen bond. The stronger bond in vinyl halides is harder to break, and reaction is slower. With this as a starting point, let us examine these reactions more closely.

### 9.19 Nucleophilic substitution in vinylic substrates: vinylic cations

As we shall shortly find, vinylic substrates of certain special kinds do undergo nucleophilic substitution by  $S_N1$ —but not, evidently, by  $S_N2$ . Let us therefore consider first substitution of the  $S_N1$  kind. Such reactions of vinylic substrates would, of course, involve *vinylic cations*.



The extremely low reactivity of vinylic halides by  $S_N1$  indicates that, from these substrates, vinylic cations are formed extremely slowly. In view of the parallel we have so far observed between the stability of carbocations and the rate of their formation, we ask: are vinylic cations relatively unstable?

We have just seen evidence that this is so. If it takes 16–18 kcal more energy to make vinyl cations from vinyl halides than to make ethyl cations from ethyl halides, then, by definition, vinyl cations are less stable than ethyl cations—*relative to the halide from which each is formed*. In the same way, vinyl cations are more stable than methyl cations by 16–20 kcal. We can therefore expand our sequence of Sec. 9.12.

Stability of  
carbocations



(It must be emphasized that, until we find differently, the position of the vinyl cation in this sequence applies only to its stability *relative to substrates for heterolysis*. We shall see the importance of this limitation in Sec. 13.9.)

How do we account for this low stability of the vinyl cation? Let us remind ourselves of how we approach this kind of problem. The measure of stability of a carbocation is simply the amount of energy it takes to generate it from whatever substrate we have selected. This amount of energy varies from cation to cation. So much is fact.

Now the intellectual process starts. We try to explain these variations—to find the broader pattern into which they fit. We look for factors that will account for these variations and at the same time be consistent with the rest of the structural theory. So far in our mental analysis of carbocation stability, we have focused our attention on differences between the cations themselves. For example, the energy climb from *tert*-butyl chloride to the *tert*-butyl cation is less than from isopropyl chloride to the isopropyl cation because, we say, the energy level of the *tert*-butyl cation is *lowered* by dispersal of charge. There is no particular factor that we can see to make *tert*-butyl chloride very different from isopropyl chloride; but there is a factor to make the cations different from each other: charge dispersal. And this approach has worked very well.

But in the generation of vinyl cations, the situation is different. First, as we shall see in Sec. 13.9, vinyl cations *can* be generated without undue difficulty by a reaction other than heterolysis. Second, it is clear that vinyl halides differ considerably from saturated alkyl halides of all classes. Despite the differences in stability among  $1^\circ$ ,  $2^\circ$ , and  $3^\circ$  cations, the carbon-halogen bonds in the parent halides are of almost identical length. In vinyl halides, by contrast, the carbon-halogen bonds are significantly shorter: consistent with the picture of a tighter, stronger bond due to overlap of an  $sp^2$  orbital of carbon and to partial double-bond character (Sec. 25.6).

Our interpretation, then, is this. When starting from the organic halides, the energy climb to the vinyl cation is greater than the climb to the ethyl cation, not



because factors are at work raising the energy level of the vinyl cation, but because factors are at work *lowering* the energy level of the vinyl halide.

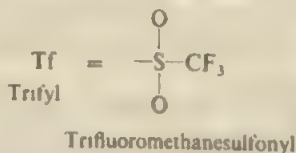
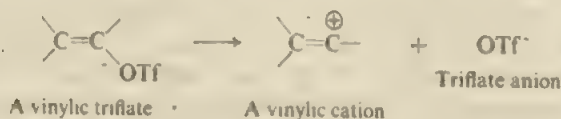
There is one destabilizing factor probably at work in the vinyl cation, but it is hard to estimate its importance. Although hydrocarbons are in general extremely weak acids, their relative acidities have been measured. Hydrogen is more acidic when attached to doubly-bonded carbon than when attached to singly-bonded carbon (It is still more acidic when bonded to triply-bonded carbon, as we shall see in Sec. 13.11.) Doubly-bonded carbon behaves as though it were a different element from singly-bonded carbon: a more electronegative one. This greater electronegativity makes it more capable of accommodating the negative charge of the conjugate base and, we might expect, makes it less capable of accommodating the positive charge of a cation.

This is an illustration of a fundamental chemical principle. In interpreting differences in reactivity we tend to look at factors that stabilize one transition state more than another—generally reflecting the product-character it possesses—and thus decrease  $E_{act}$ ; and, more often than not, this approach works well. But we must always have an eye open for factors that might stabilize one reactant more than another and thus increase  $E_{act}$ .

What we have said so far has had to do with the difficulty of generating vinylic cations by heterolysis. Not surprisingly, this difficulty has been taken as a challenge to the organic chemist, and, in work done mostly since about 1970, vinylic cations have emerged as accessible intermediates with fascinating properties. Many people from many countries have been involved in this research, among them being Michael Hanack (University of Tübingen), Zvi Rappaport (Hebrew University of Jerusalem), Giorgio Modena (University of Padua), and Peter Stang (University of Utah).

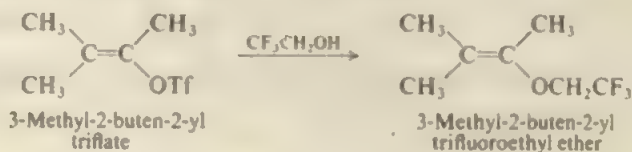
Vinylic cations can readily be made through solvolysis of the  $S_N1$  kind if two conditions are met: (a) the leaving group is an *extremely* good one; and (b) the vinylic group contains electron-releasing substituents.

Most commonly used for this purpose is the “super” leaving group, trifluoromethanesulfonate,  $-\text{OSO}_2\text{CF}_3$ , known as *triflate*.



The powerfully electron-withdrawing fluorine atoms (through dispersal of the *negative* charge) help to stabilize the triflate anion,  $\text{CF}_3\text{SO}_2\text{O}^-$ , and make the parent acid  $\text{CF}_3\text{SO}_2\text{OH}$  one of the strongest Lowry–Brønsted acids known—much stronger than the familiar  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  or  $\text{HClO}_4$ . The triflate anion is, correspondingly, an extremely weak base, and one of the best leaving groups in organic chemistry. Towards solvolysis, saturated alkyl triflates have been found to be 10,000 to 100,000 times as reactive as the corresponding tosylates, and as much as a *billion* times as reactive as the chlorides or bromides!

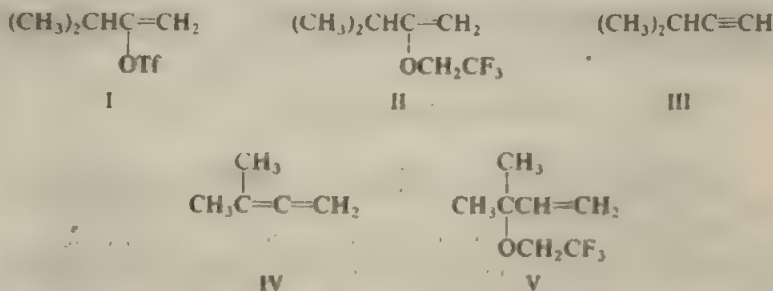
The electron-releasing substituents in the vinylic moiety are very commonly aryl groups (Sec. 16.18), but alkyl groups are sufficient to allow reaction by  $S_N1$ . For example:



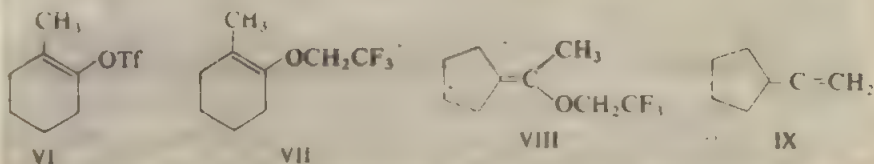
We cannot take more time here to discuss vinylic cations, except to say that, like saturated alkyl cations, they have a rich and varied chemistry. They can be made from different kinds of substrates in different kinds of reactions; they can lead to elimination as well as substitution; they can rearrange. We shall encounter them again in Sec. 13.9.

Perhaps the most important lesson we can learn from all this is not the chemistry of vinyl cations as such—interesting as it is—but that a problem was solved in a logical way by recognizing straightforward principles that we have learned: the importance to the heterolytic process of (a) a good—weakly basic—leaving group and (b) electron-release in the cation being formed.

**Problem 9.13** On treatment with  $\text{CF}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , the triflate I gives not only II, but also III, IV, and V. (a) How do you account for the formation of III and IV? (b) The formation of V?



**Problem 9.14** Treatment of the triflate VI with  $\text{CF}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  gives not only VII but also VIII and IX. (a) How do you account for the formation of VIII? (b) The formation of IX?



What we have just discussed is unimolecular nucleophilic substitution,  $S_N1$ . Reaction by  $S_N2$ , we indicated earlier, does not appear to happen with vinylic substrates. This lower reactivity has been attributed to steric hindrance to back-side attack by the nucleophile, hindrance due to the  $\pi$  cloud.

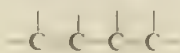
If strong nucleophiles are used, and if the vinylic substrate contains electron-withdrawing groups, a bimolecular substitution reaction does occur. But it is not  $S_N2$ . With reaction by  $S_N2$  difficult, reaction takes an easier course: it follows a mechanism of a different type which, significantly, *does not* involve breaking of the bond to the leaving group in the rate-determining step. Also significantly, this mechanism closely resembles the kind of nucleophilic substitution characteristic of aryl halides (Chap. 25), another class of substrates with unusually strong carbon-halogen bonds. (See Problem 15, p. 452.)

## 9.20 Dienes: structure and properties

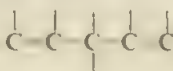
So far in this chapter, we have discussed the effect of the double bond, acting as a substituent, on certain reactions taking place elsewhere in the molecule: free-radical substitution and nucleophilic substitution. Now let us look at its effect on alkene chemistry. That is, let us look at the effect of a double bond on the chemistry of *another* double bond in the same molecule: on its formation and on the reactions it undergoes.

To do this we shall study chiefly **dienes**, alkenes that contain two carbon-carbon double bonds. What we shall say applies equally well to compounds with more than two double bonds. The double bond in a diene has essentially the same properties as a double bond in the alkenes we have already studied. But in certain of the dienes, these properties are *modified* by the presence of the second double bond; we shall focus our attention on these modifications.

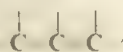
Dienes are divided into three classes according to the arrangement of the double bonds. Double bonds that alternate with single bonds are **conjugated**.



Conjugated  
double bonds

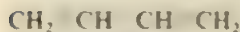


Isolated  
double bonds



Cumulated  
double bonds

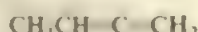
Double bonds that are separated by more than one single bond are **isolated**. Double bonds that share a carbon are **cumulated**, and the compounds are called **allenes**. For example:



1,3-Butadiene  
*A conjugated diene*



1,4-Pentadiene



1,2-Butadiene  
*An allene*

The chemical properties of a diene depend upon this arrangement of its double bonds. Isolated double bonds exert little effect on each other, and hence each reacts as though it were the only double bond in the molecule. Except for the consumption of larger amounts of reagents, then, the chemical properties of the non-conjugated dienes are identical with those of the simple alkenes. Allenes are of increasing interest to organic chemists, but we shall have time to do very little with them.

We shall concentrate our attention on conjugated dienes. They differ from simple alkenes in four ways: (a) they are *more stable*, (b) they are the *preferred products of elimination*, (c) they undergo *1,4-addition*, both electrophilic and free-radical, and (d) toward free-radical addition, they are *more reactive*.



## 9.21 Stability of conjugated dienes

If we look closely at Table 8.1 (p. 332), we find that the heats of hydrogenation of alkenes having similar structures are remarkably constant. For monosubstituted alkenes ( $\text{RCH}=\text{CH}_2$ ) the values are very close to 30 kcal/mol; for disubstituted alkenes ( $\text{R}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$  or  $\text{RCH}=\text{CHR}$ ), 28 kcal/mol; and for trisubstituted alkenes ( $\text{R}_2\text{C}=\text{CHR}$ ), 27 kcal/mol. For a compound containing more than one double bond we might expect a heat of hydrogenation that is the sum of the heats of hydrogenation of the individual double bonds.

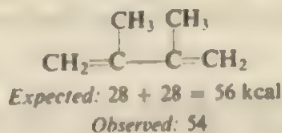
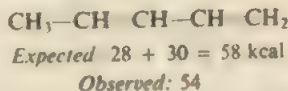
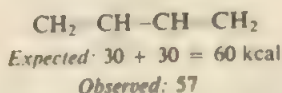
For non-conjugated dienes this additive relationship is found to hold. As shown in Table 9.1, 1,4-pentadiene and 1,5-hexadiene, for example, have heats of hydrogenation very close to  $2 \times 30$  kcal, or 60 kcal/mol.

Table 9.1 HEATS OF HYDROGENATION OF DIENES

Diene	$\Delta H$ of Hydrogenation, kcal/mol
1,4-Pentadiene	60.8
1,5-Hexadiene	60.5
1,3-Butadiene	57.1
1,3-Pentadiene	54.1
2-Methyl-1,3-butadiene (Isoprene)	53.4
2,3-Dimethyl-1,3-butadiene	53.9
1,2-Propadiene (Allene)	71.3

For conjugated dienes, however, the measured values are slightly lower than expected. For 1,3-butadiene we might expect  $2 \times 30$ , or 60 kcal: the actual value, 57 kcal, is 3 kcal lower. In the same way the values for 1,3-pentadiene and 2,3-dimethyl-1,3-butadiene are also below the expected values by 2–4 kcal.

### Heats of Hydrogenation



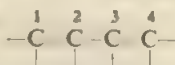
What do these heats of hydrogenation tell us about the conjugated dienes? Using the approach of Sec. 8.4, let us compare, for example, 1,3-pentadiene (heat of hydrogenation, 54 kcal) and 1,4-pentadiene (heat of hydrogenation, 61 kcal). They both consume two moles of hydrogen and yield the same product, *n*-pentane. If 1,3-pentadiene evolves less energy than 1,4-pentadiene, it can only mean that it contains less energy; that is to say, the conjugated 1,3-pentadiene is more stable than the non-conjugated 1,4-pentadiene.

In the next three sections we shall see how two different factors have been invoked to account for the relative stabilities of conjugated dienes, and of simple alkenes as well. (a) delocalization of  $\pi$  electrons, and (b) strengthening of  $\sigma$  bonds through changes in hybridization of carbon.

**Problem 9.13** (a) Predict the heat of hydrogenation of *allene*,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ .  
 (b) The actual value is 71 kcal. What can you say about the stability of a *cumulated* diene?

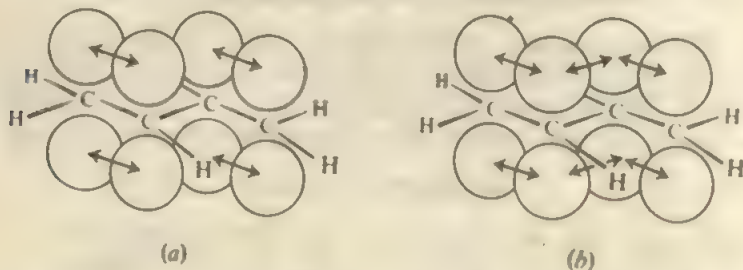
## 9.22 Resonance in conjugated dienes

Let us focus our attention on the four key carbon atoms of any conjugated diene system. We ordinarily write the  $\text{C}_1\text{—C}_2$  and  $\text{C}_3\text{—C}_4$  bonds as double, and the  $\text{C}_2\text{—C}_3$  bond as single:



This would correspond to an orbital picture of the molecule (see Fig. 9.5a), in which  $\pi$  bonds are formed by overlap of the  $p$  orbitals of  $\text{C}_1$  and  $\text{C}_2$ , and overlap of the  $p$  orbitals of  $\text{C}_3$  and  $\text{C}_4$ .

In the allyl radical and cation we saw that resonance resulted from the overlap of the  $p$  orbital of a carbon atom with  $p$  orbitals on *both* sides. We might expect that, in the same way, there could be a certain amount of overlap between the  $p$  orbitals of  $\text{C}_2$  and  $\text{C}_3$ , as shown in Fig. 9.5b. The resulting delocalization of the  $\pi$  electrons makes the molecule more stable: each pair of electrons attracts—and is attracted by—not just two carbon nuclei, but *four*.



**Figure 9.5.** Conjugated diene. (a) Overlap of  $p$  orbitals to form two double bonds (b) Overlap of  $p$  orbitals to form conjugated system: delocalization of  $\pi$  electrons.

Using the language of conventional valence-bond structures, we say that a conjugated diene is a resonance hybrid of I and II. The dotted line in II represents



a *formal bond*, and simply means that an electron on  $\text{C}_1$  and an electron on  $\text{C}_4$  have opposite spins, that is to say, are *paired*.

To the extent that II contributes to the structure, it gives a certain double-bond character to the  $\text{C}_2\text{—C}_3$  bond and a certain single-bond character to the  $\text{C}_1\text{—C}_2$  and  $\text{C}_3\text{—C}_4$  bonds, most important, it makes the molecule more stable than we would expect I (the most stable contributing structure) to be

Formation of a bond releases energy and stabilizes a system; all other things being equal, the more bonds, the more stable a structure. Consideration of *number of bonds* is one of the criteria (Sec. 9.10) that can be used to estimate relative stability and hence relative importance of a contributing structure. On this basis we would expect II with 10 bonds (the formal bond does not count) to be less stable than I with 11 bonds. The resonance energy for such a hybrid of non-equivalent structures should be less than for a hybrid made up of equivalent structures. The structure of a conjugated diene should resemble I more than II, since the more stable structure I makes the larger contribution to the hybrid.

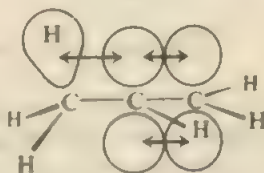
Consistent with partial double-bond character, the  $C_2 - C_3$  bond in 1,3-butadiene is 1.48 Å long, as compared with 1.53 Å for a pure single bond. The resonance energy of a conjugated diene is only 2–4 kcal/mol, compared with 10 kcal/mol for the allyl radical. (However, for an alternative interpretation, see Sec. 9.24.)

### 9.23 Resonance in alkenes. Hyperconjugation

Heats of hydrogenation showed us (Sec. 8.4) that alkenes are stabilized not only by conjugation but also by the presence of alkyl groups: *the greater the number of alkyl groups attached to the doubly-bonded carbon atoms, the more stable the alkene*. To take the simplest example, the heat of hydrogenation of propylene is 2.7 kcal lower than that of ethylene, indicating that (relative to the corresponding alkane) propylene is 2.7 kcal more stable than ethylene.

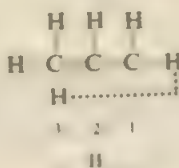
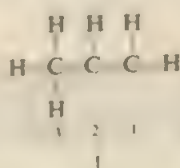
Stabilization by alkyl groups has been attributed to the same fundamental factor as stabilization by a second double bond: *delocalization of electrons*, this time through overlap between a  $\pi$  orbital and a  $\sigma$  orbital of the alkyl group (Fig. 9.6).

**Figure 9.6.** Hyperconjugation in an alkene: overlap between  $\sigma$  and  $\pi$  orbitals.



Through this overlap, individual electrons can, to an extent, help bind together four nuclei. Delocalization of this kind, involving  $\sigma$  bond orbitals, we recognize as *hyperconjugation* (Sec. 9.11).

Translated into resonance terminology, such hyperconjugation is represented by contribution from structures like II. (As before, the dotted line in II represents



and two more  
equivalent  
structures

a formal bond, indicating that electrons on the two atoms are paired.) Considered by itself, a structure like II is indeed strange, since there is no real bond joining the



hydrogen to carbon. This is, however, simply a rough way of indicating that the carbon-hydrogen bond is something *less* than a single bond, that the  $C_2-C_3$  bond has some double-bond character, and that the  $C_1-C_2$  bond has some single-bond character.

Consistent with partial double-bond character, the carbon-carbon "single" bond in propylene is 1.50 Å long, as compared to 1.53 Å for a pure single bond.

The greater the number of alkyl groups attached to the doubly-bonded carbons, the greater the number of contributing structures like II, the greater the delocalization of electrons, and the more stable the alkene.

Hyperconjugation of the kind described above is called *sacrificial hyperconjugation*, since there is one less real bond in structures like II than in I. In contrast, the kind of hyperconjugation we encountered in connection with free radicals and carbocations involves no "sacrifice" of a bond and is called *isovalent hyperconjugation*.

## 9.24 Stability of dienes and alkenes: an alternative interpretation

We have seen that the carbon-hydrogen bond length decreases as we proceed along the series ethane, ethylene, acetylene, and we attributed this to changes in hybridization of carbon (see Table 9.2). As the *p* character of the bonding orbital

Table 9.2 CARBON-HYDROGEN SINGLE BOND LENGTHS AND HYBRIDIZATION

Compound	Length, Å	Hybridization
$CH_3-CH_3$	1.112	$sp^3-s$
$CH_2=CH_2$	1.103	$sp^2-s$
$HC\equiv CH$	1.079	$sp-s$

decreases, the orbital size decreases, and the bond becomes shorter (Sec. 7.4).

The carbon-carbon single bond length also decreases along an analogous series, ethane, propylene, propyne (Table 9.3). We notice that these differences are

Table 9.3 CARBON-CARBON SINGLE BOND LENGTHS AND HYBRIDIZATION

Compound	Length, Å	Hybridization
$CH_3-CH_3$	1.53	$sp^3-sp^3$
$CH_2=CH-CH_3$	1.50	$sp^2-sp^3$
$HC\equiv C-CH_3$	1.46	$sp-sp^3$

bigger than for carbon-hydrogen bonds. Here, the bond-shortening has been attributed to hyperconjugation, as discussed in Sec. 9.23.

It has been argued, most notably by M. J. S. Dewar of the University of Texas, that there is no need to invoke hyperconjugation in molecules like these, and that the changes in C—C bond length—like the changes in C—H bond length—are due simply to changes in hybridization of carbon.

Furthermore, Dewar has proposed that such shortening of bonds is accom-

panied by a proportional increase in bond energies ( $E$ ); that is, shortening a bond makes the molecule more stable. Change in hybridization affects bond lengths more and hence affects molecular stability more—when carbon-carbon bonds are involved than when carbon-hydrogen bonds are involved. An alkyl substituent stabilizes an alkene, relative to the corresponding alkane, because  $sp^2$  hybridization strengthens a carbon-carbon bond more than a carbon-hydrogen bond.

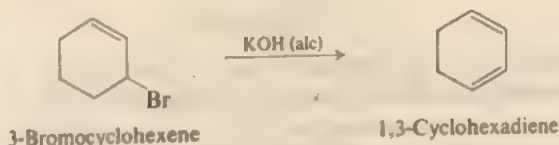
In a similar way, the unusual stability of conjugated dienes is attributed, not to delocalization of the  $\pi$  electrons, but to the fact that  $sp^2$ - $sp^2$  hybridization makes the  $C_2$ - $C_3$  bond short (1.48 Å) and strong.

There is little doubt that both factors, delocalization of  $\pi$  electrons and change in  $\sigma$  bonds, are at work. The question is: what is the relative importance of each? The answer may well turn out to be: *both* are important.

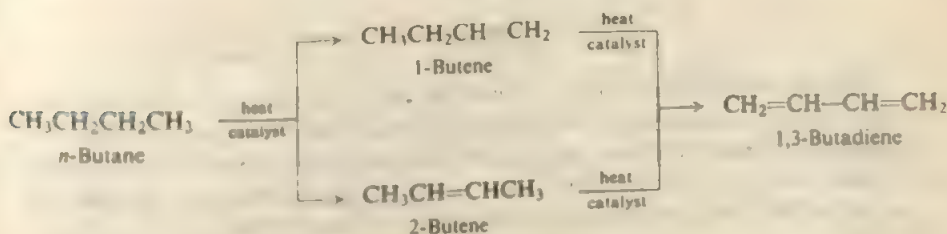
In the case of molecules like the allyl radical, where clearly no single structure is acceptable, Dewar has not questioned the importance of  $\pi$ -electron delocalization, although he considers  $\sigma$ -bond stability to play a larger part than has been recognized. He also accepts a more important role for isovalent hyperconjugation in free radicals and carbocations—than for the sacrificial hyperconjugation we have so far discussed.

### 9.25 Ease of formation of conjugated dienes: orientation of elimination

The greater stability of conjugated dienes is reflected in their greater ease of formation. Where possible, they are the preferred diene products of elimination reactions. For example:



The most important diene, 1,3-butadiene (used to make rubber substitutes, Sec. 9.32), is obtained industrially in very large amounts by the cracking of hydrocarbons:



**Problem 9.16** Predict the major product of: (a) dehydrohalogenation of 4-bromo-1-hexene, (b) dehydration of 1,4-cyclohexanediol.

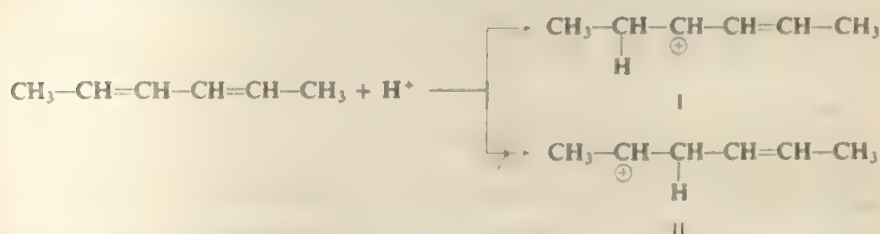
### 9.26 Electrophilic addition to conjugated dienes. 1,4-Addition

When 1,4-pentadiene is treated with bromine under conditions (what are they?) that favor formation of the *dihalide*, there is obtained the expected product, 4,5-dibromo-1-pentene. Addition of more bromine yields the 1,2,4,5-tetrabromo-

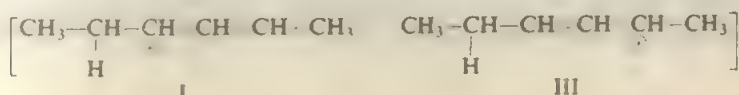




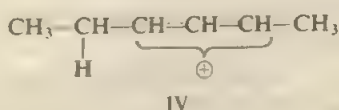
These products show, first of all, that hydrogen adds to C-2 to yield carbocation I, rather than to C-3 to yield carbocation II:



Since both I and II are secondary cations, how can we account for this preference? The answer is, of course, found in the structure of I: it is not simply a secondary cation, but is an *allylic* cation as well, since the carbon bearing the positive charge is attached to a doubly-bonded carbon. It is, then, a resonance hybrid:

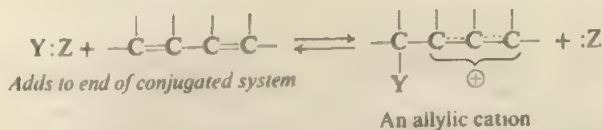


equivalent to

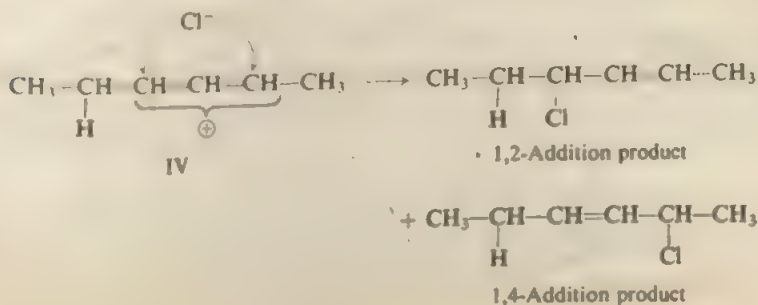


As a cation that is both secondary and allylic, I is more stable than II, and is the preferred cationic intermediate.

The products obtained from addition to conjugated dienes are always consistent with the formation of the most stable intermediate carbocation: an allylic cation. This requires the first step to be *addition to one of the ends* of the conjugated



system. Now, in the second step cation IV combines with chloride ion to form the product. The chloride ion can attach itself to either end of the allylic system and thus yield the 1,2- or 1,4-product.





The fact that more 1,2- than 1,4-product is obtained at  $-80^\circ$  indicates that the 1,2-product is formed *faster* than the 1,4-product, since each compound remains unchanged at  $-80^\circ$ , the proportions in which they are isolated show the proportions in which they were initially formed. As the reaction temperature is raised, the proportions in which the products are initially formed may remain the same, but there is faster conversion of the initially formed products into the equilibrium mixture.

The proportions of products actually isolated from the low-temperature addition are determined by the **rates** of addition, whereas for the high-temperature addition they are determined by the **equilibrium** between the two isomers.

Let us examine the matter of 1,2- and 1,4-addition more closely by drawing a potential energy curve for the reactions involved (Fig. 9.7). The carbocation initially formed reacts to yield the 1,2-product faster than the 1,4-product, consequently, the energy of activation leading to the 1,2-product must be less than that

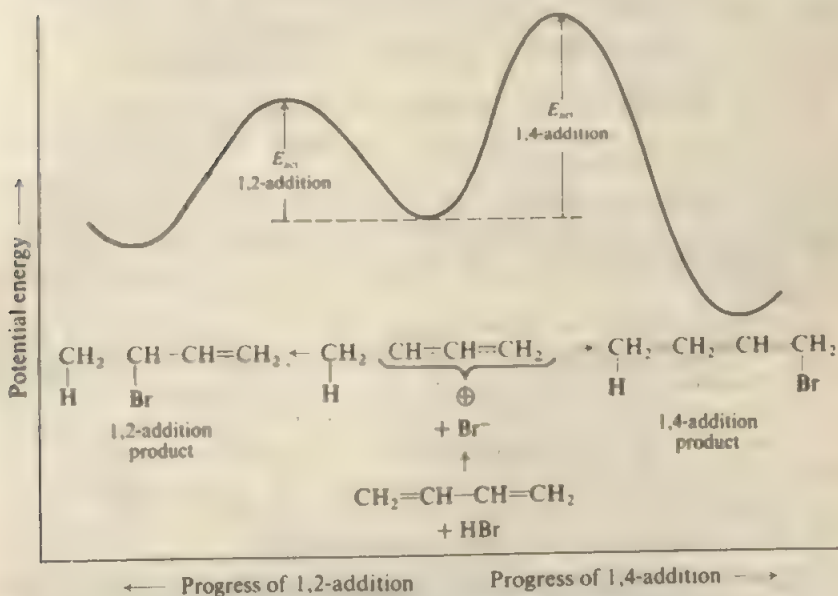


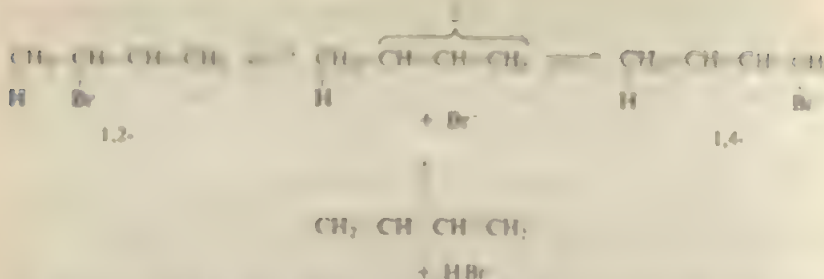
Figure 9.7. Potential energy changes during progress of reaction: 1,2- vs. 1,4-addition.

leading to the 1,4-product. We represent this by the lower hill leading from the cation to the 1,2-product. More collisions have enough energy to climb the low hill than the high hill, so that the 1,2-compound is formed faster than the 1,4-compound. The 1,4-product, however, is more stable than the 1,2-product, and hence we must place its valley at a lower level than that of the 1,2-product.

As we know (Sec. 9.13), allylic halides readily undergo heterolysis, that is, ionization. Now ionization of either bromo compound yields the same carbocation; the most likely—and simplest—way in which the 1,2- and 1,4-products reach



equilibrium is through this cation



Ionization of the bromides involves climbing the potential hills back toward this carbocation. But there is a higher hill separating the cation from the 1,4-product than from the 1,2-product; consequently the 1,4-product will ionize more slowly than the 1,2-product. Equilibrium is reached when the rates of the opposing reactions are equal. The 1,2-product is formed rapidly, but ionizes rapidly. The 1,4-product is formed slowly, but ionizes even more slowly; once formed, the 1,4-product tends to persist. At temperatures high enough for equilibrium to be reached—that is, high enough for significantly fast ionization—the more stable **1,4-product predominates**.

We have not tried to account for the fact that the 1,2-product is formed faster than the 1,4-product, or for the fact that the 1,4-product is more stable than the 1,2-product (although we notice that this is consistent with our generalization that disubstituted alkenes are more stable than monosubstituted alkenes). We have accepted these facts and have simply tried to show what they mean in terms of energy considerations. Similar relationships have been observed for other dienes and reagents.

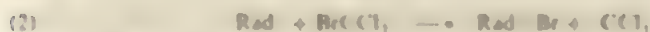
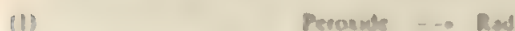
These facts illustrate two important points. First, we must be cautious when we interpret product composition in terms of rates of reaction; we must be sure that one product is not converted into the other *after* its formation. Second, the more stable product is by no means *always* formed faster. *On the basis of much evidence*, we have concluded that *generally* the more stable a carbocation or free radical, the faster it is formed; a consideration of the transition states for the various reactions has shown that this is reasonable. *We must not, however, extend this principle to other reactions unless the evidence warrants it.*

**Problem 9.18** Addition of one mole of bromine to 1,3,5-hexatriene yields only 5,6-dibromo-1,3-hexadiene and 1,6-dibromo-2,4-hexadiene. (a) Are these products consistent with the formation of the most stable intermediate carbocation? (b) What other product or products would also be consistent? (c) Actually, which factor appears to be in control, rate or position of equilibrium?

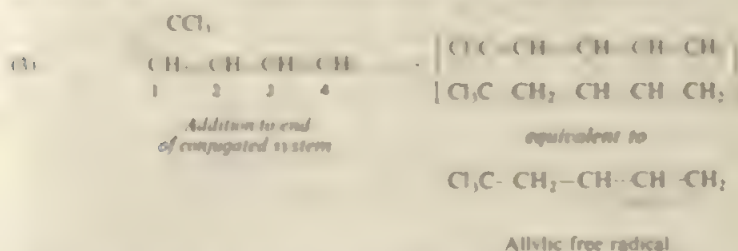
## 9.28 Free-radical addition to conjugated dienes: orientation

Like other alkenes, conjugated dienes undergo addition not only by electrophilic reagents but also by free radicals. In free-radical addition, conjugated dienes show two special features: they undergo **1,4-addition** as well as 1,2-addition, and they are **much more reactive** than ordinary alkenes. We can account for both features—*orientation* and *reactivity*—by examining the structure of the intermediate free radical.

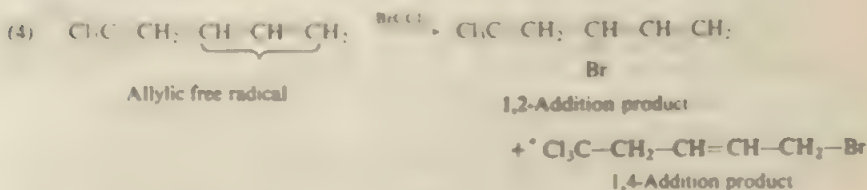
Let us take as an example addition of  $\text{BrCCl}_3$  to 1,3-butadiene in the presence of a peroxide. As we have seen (Sec. 8.4), the peroxide decomposes (step 1) to yield a free radical, which abstracts bromine from  $\text{BrCCl}_3$  (step 2) to generate a  $\cdot\text{CCl}_3$  radical.



The  $\cdot\text{CCl}_3$  radical thus formed adds to the butadiene (step 3). The products obtained show that this addition is to one of the ends of the conjugated system. Why is this? In free-radical addition to conjugated dienes, it seems clear that orientation (as well as reactivity) is controlled by the stability of the radical being formed, and not by polar factors (Sec. 8.23). Thus  $\cdot\text{CCl}_3$  adds where it does because in this way a resonance-stabilized allylic free radical is formed.



The allylic free radical then abstracts bromine from a molecule of  $\text{BrCCl}_3$  (step 4) to complete the addition, and in doing so forms a new  $\cdot\text{CCl}_3$  radical which can carry on the chain. In step (4) bromine can become attached to either C-2 or C-4 to yield either the 1,2- or 1,4-product.



## 9.29 Free-radical addition to conjugated dienes: reactivity

If  $\text{BrCCl}_3$  is allowed to react with a 50:50 mixture of 1,3-butadiene and a simple alkene like 1-octene, addition occurs almost exclusively to the 1,3-butadiene. Evidently the  $\cdot\text{CCl}_3$  radical adds much more rapidly to the conjugated diene than to the simple alkene. Similar results have been observed in a great many free-radical additions.

How can we account for the unusual reactivity of conjugated dienes? In our discussion of halogenation of the simple alkanes (Sec. 3.27), we found that not only orientation but also relative reactivity was related to the stability of the free radical formed in the first step. On this basis alone, we might expect addition to a conjugated diene, which yields a stable allylic free radical, to occur faster than addition to a simple alkene. (There is evidence showing that polar factors (Sec. 8.23) are of only minor importance here.)

On the other hand, we have just seen (Sec. 9.21) that conjugated dienes are more stable than simple alkenes. On this basis alone, we might expect addition to conjugated dienes to occur more slowly than to simple alkenes.

The relative rates of the two reactions depend chiefly upon the  $E_{\text{act}}$ 's. Stabilization of the incipient allylic free radical lowers the energy level of the transition state; stabilization of the diene lowers the energy of the reactants. Whether the net  $E_{\text{act}}$  is larger or smaller than for addition to a simple alkene depends upon *which* is stabilized *more* (see Fig. 9.8).

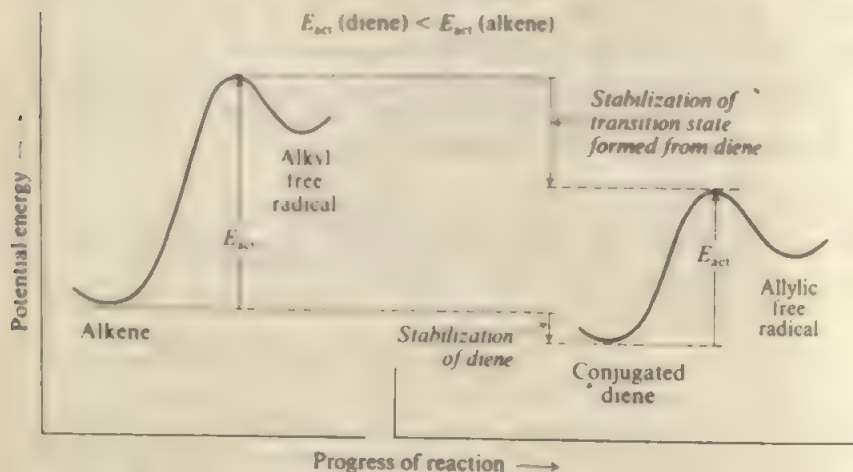


Figure 9.8. Molecular structure and rate of reaction. Transition state from diene stabilized more than diene itself:  $E_{\text{act}}$  is lowered. (Plots aligned with each other for easy comparison.)

The fact is that conjugated dienes are more reactive than simple alkenes. In the present case, then—and in most cases involving alkenes and free radicals, or alkenes and carbocations—the factors stabilizing the transition state are more important than the factors stabilizing the reactant. However, this is *not always* true. (It does not seem to be true, for example, in electrophilic addition to conjugated dienes.)

## POLYMERS AND POLYMERIZATION

### 9.30 Macromolecules

Now that we know something about both simple alkenes and conjugated dienes, let us turn to an aspect of their chemistry that, in the past fifty years or so, has helped revolutionize our everyday living: *polymerization*. As we shall see, polymerization involves not so much new reactions of the carbon-carbon double bond as modifications in old, familiar ones: addition reactions, both heterolytic and free-radical. First, some background.

So far, our study of organic chemistry has dealt mainly with rather small molecules, containing perhaps as many as 50 to 75 atoms. But there also exist enormous molecules called *macromolecules*, which contain hundreds of thousands of atoms. Some of these are naturally occurring, and make up classes of compounds



that are, quite literally, vital: the *polysaccharides* (starch and cellulose, which provide us with food, clothing, and shelter (Chap. 29), *proteins*, which constitute much of the animal body, hold it together, and run it (Chap. 30), and *nucleic acids*, which control heredity on the molecular level (Chap. 31).

Macromolecules can be man-made, too. The first syntheses were aimed at making substitutes for the natural macromolecules, rubber and silk, but a vast technology has grown up that now produces hundreds of substances that have no natural counterparts. Synthetic macromolecular compounds include **elastomers**, which have the particular kind of elasticity characteristic of rubber; **fibers**, long, thin, and threadlike, with the great strength *along the fiber* that characterizes cotton, wool, and silk; and **plastics**, which can be extruded as sheets or pipes, painted on surfaces, or molded to form countless objects. We wear these man-made materials, eat and drink from them, sleep between them, sit and stand on them, turn knobs, pull switches, and grasp handles made of them; with their help we hear sounds and see sights remote from us in time and space, we live in houses and move about in vehicles that are increasingly made of them.

We sometimes deplore the resistance to the elements of these seemingly all too immortal materials, and fear that civilization may some day be buried beneath a pile of plastic debris—plastic cigar tips have been found floating in the Sargasso Sea—but with them we can do things never before possible. By use of plastics, blind people can be made to see, and cripples to walk; heart valves can be repaired and arteries patched; damaged tracheas, larynxes, and ureters can be replaced, and even, recently, entire hearts. These materials protect us against heat and cold, electric shock and fire, rust and decay. As tailor-made solvents, they may soon be used to extract fresh water from the sea. Surely the ingenuity that has produced these substances can devise ways of disposing of the waste they create: the problem is not one of technology, but of sociology and, ultimately, of politics.

Here, and in later chapters, we shall be chiefly concerned with the chemical reactions by which macromolecules are formed, and the structures that these reactions produce. We shall look briefly at how these structures lead to the properties on which the use of the macromolecules depends: why rubber is elastic, for example, and why nylon is a strong fiber. Then, in the chapters on biomolecules, we shall take up the natural macromolecules—polysaccharides, proteins, and nucleic acids—and study them in much the same way.

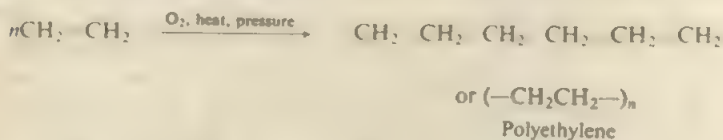
In all this, we must remember that what makes macromolecules special is, of course, their great size. This great size permits a certain complexity of structure, not just on the molecular level, but on a *secondary* level that involves the disposition of molecules with respect to each other. Are the molecules stretched out neatly alongside one another, or coiled up independently? What forces act between different molecules? What happens to a collection of giant molecules when it is heated, or cooled, or stretched? As we shall see, the answers to questions like these are found ultimately in structure as we have known it: the nature of functional groups and substituents, their sequence in the molecule, and their arrangement in space.

### 9.31 Free-radical polymerization of alkenes

Macromolecules, both natural and man-made, owe their great size to the fact that they are *polymers* (Greek: many parts); that is, each one is made up of a great many simpler units—identical to each other or at least chemically similar—joined

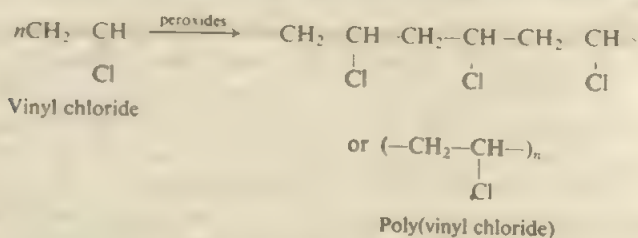
together in a regular way. They are formed by **polymerization**, the *joining together of many small molecules to form very large molecules*. The simple compounds from which polymers are made are called *monomers*.

When ethylene is heated under pressure with oxygen, there is obtained a compound of high molecular weight (about 20,000), which is essentially an alkane with a very long chain. This compound is made up of many ethylene units and



hence is called *polyethylene*. It is familiar to most of us as the plastic material of packaging films.

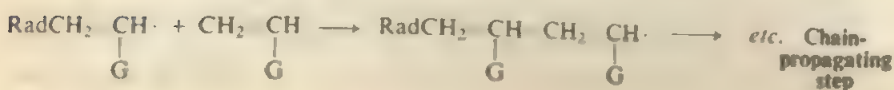
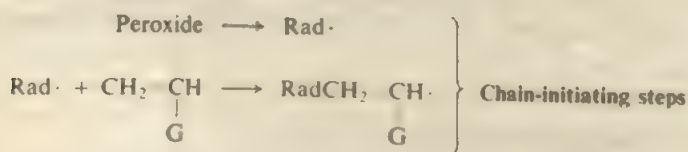
Polymerization of substituted ethylenes yields compounds whose structures contain the long chain of polyethylene, with substituents attached at more or less regular intervals. For example, vinyl chloride yields *poly(vinyl chloride)*, used to



make phonograph records, plastic pipe, and—when plasticized with high-boiling esters—raincoats, shower curtains, and coatings for metals and upholstery fabrics.

Many other groups (e.g.,  $-\text{COOCH}_3$ ,  $-\text{CH}_3$ ,  $-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ ) may be attached to the doubly-bonded carbons. These substituted ethylenes polymerize more or less readily, and yield plastics of widely differing physical properties and uses, but the polymerization process and the structure of the polymer are basically the same as for ethylene or vinyl chloride.

Polymerization requires the presence of a small amount of an **initiator**. Among the commonest of these initiators are peroxides, which function by breaking down to form a free radical. This radical adds to a molecule of alkene, and in doing so generates another free radical. This radical adds to another molecule of alkene to generate a still larger radical, which in turn adds to another molecule of alkene, and so on. Eventually the chain is terminated by steps, such as union of two radicals, that consume but do not generate radicals.



This kind of polymerization, each step of which consumes a reactive particle and produces another, similar particle, is an example of *chain-reaction polymerization*. In later sections, we shall encounter chain-reaction polymerization that takes place, not by way of free radicals, but by way of organic ions, or within the coordination sphere of a transition metal complex. In later chapters, we shall encounter *step-reaction polymerization*, which involves a series of reactions each of which is essentially independent of the others.

**Problem 9.19** Give the structure of the monomer from which each of the following polymers would most likely be made:

(a) Orlon (fibers, fabrics),  $\sim\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\sim$

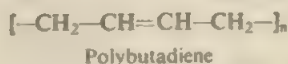
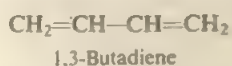
(b) Saran (packaging film, seat covers),  $\sim\text{CH}_2\text{CCl}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CCl}_2\sim$

(c) Teflon (chemically resistant articles),  $\sim\text{CF}_2\text{CF}_2\text{CF}_2\text{CF}_2\sim$

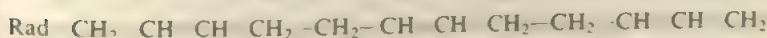
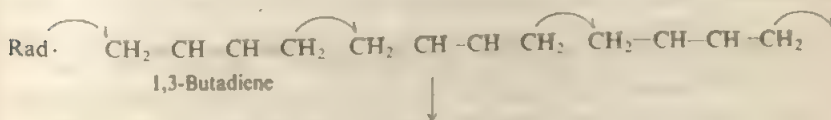
**Problem 9.20** Can you suggest a reason why polymerization should take place in a way ("head-to-tail") that yields a polymer with regularly alternating groups?

### 9.32 Free-radical polymerization of dienes. Rubber and rubber substitutes

Like substituted ethylenes, conjugated dienes, too, undergo free-radical polymerization. From 1,3-butadiene, for example, there is obtained a polymer

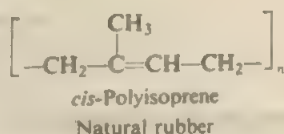
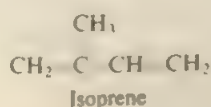


whose structure indicates that 1,4-addition occurs predominantly:



Such a polymer differs from the polymers of simple alkenes in one very important way: each unit still contains one double bond.

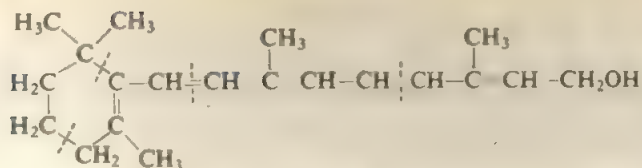
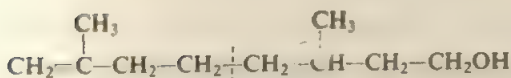
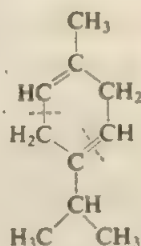
Natural rubber has a structure that strongly resembles these synthetic polydienes. We could consider it to be a polymer of the conjugated diene 2-methyl-1,3-butadiene, **isoprene**.



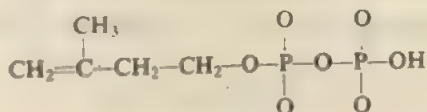
The double bonds in the rubber molecule are highly important, since—apparently by providing reactive allylic hydrogens—they permit *vulcanization*, the formation of sulfur bridges between different chains. These *cross-links* make the rubber harder and stronger, and do away with the tackiness of the untreated rubber.





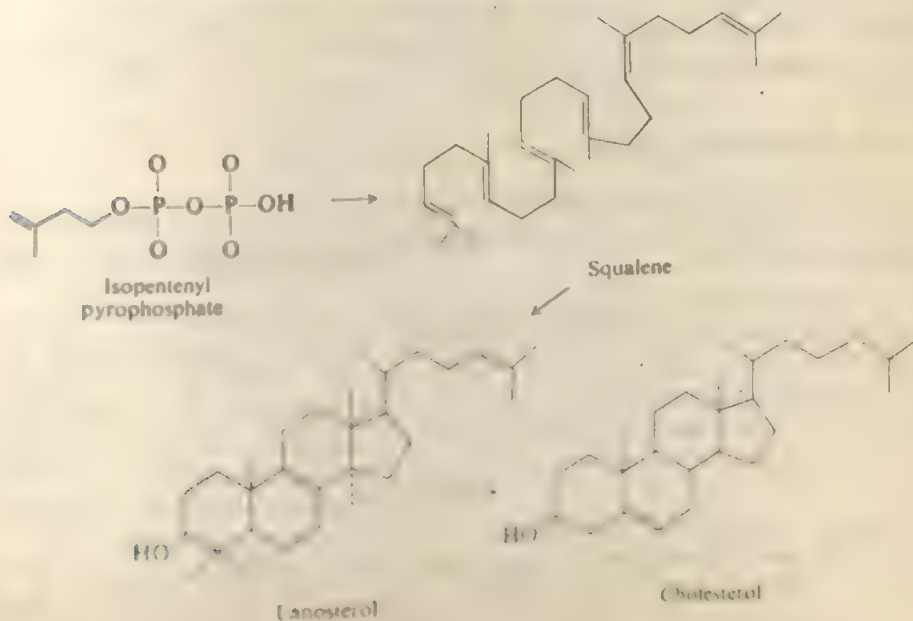
Vitamin A<sub>1</sub>Citronellol: a terpene  
(found in oil of geranium) $\gamma$ -Terpinene: a terpene  
(found in coriander oil)

A fascinating area of research linking organic chemistry and biology is the study of the *biogenesis* of natural products: the detailed sequence of reactions by which a compound is formed in living systems, plant or animal. All the isoprene units in nature, it appears, originate from the same compound, "isopentenyl" pyrophosphate.



Isopentenyl pyrophosphate

Work done since about 1950 has shown how compounds as seemingly different from rubber as *cholesterol* (p. 472) are built up, step by step, from isoprene units.



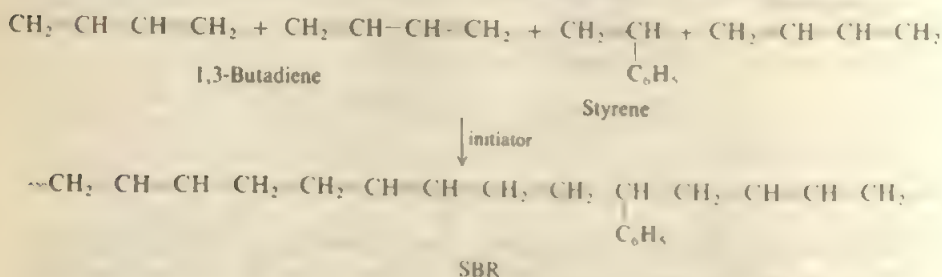
**Problem 9.21** (a) Mark off the isoprene units making up the squalene molecule. (b) There is one deviation from the head-to-tail sequence. Where is it? Does its particular location suggest anything to you—in general terms—about the biogenesis of this molecule? (c) What skeletal changes, if any, accompany the conversion of squalene into lanosterol? Of lanosterol into cholesterol?

### 9.34 Copolymerization

So far, we have discussed only polymerization of a single monomeric compound to form a *homopolymer*, a polymer made up—except, of course, at the two ends of the long molecule—of identical units.

Now, if a mixture of two (or more) monomers is allowed to undergo polymerization, there is obtained a **copolymer**: a polymer that contains two (or more) kinds of monomeric units in the same molecule. The distribution of these units can range from complete randomness to strict alternation along the chain. (It was in the pattern of distribution that Mayo and Walling found their evidence for the operation of polar factors (Sec. 8.23) in free-radical addition.)

Through copolymerization there can be made molecules with different properties from those of either homopolymer, and thus another dimension is added to the technology. A particularly important copolymer, for example, is the one between butadiene and styrene (phenylethylene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ ). This material,

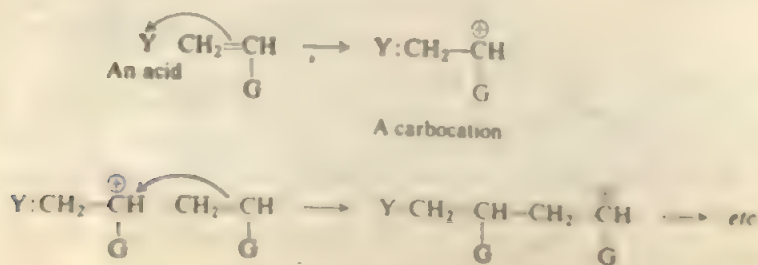


in the proportions of 75% butadiene and 25% styrene is SBR. Since World War II, when it was used to replace unavailable natural rubber, it has been the principal rubber substitute manufactured in the United States.

### 9.35 Ionic polymerization

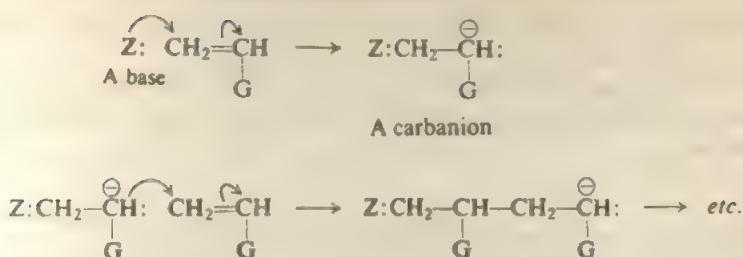
Chain-reaction polymerization can proceed with ions instead of free radicals as the chain-carrying particles, either cations or anions, depending on the kind of initiator that is used.

#### Cationic polymerization

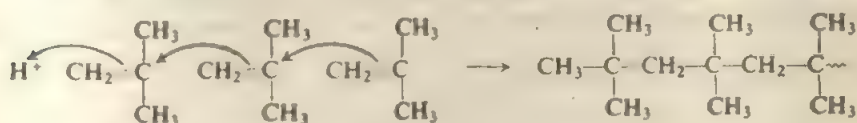




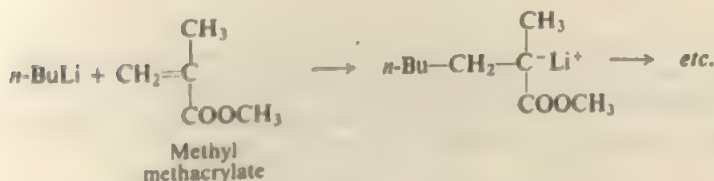
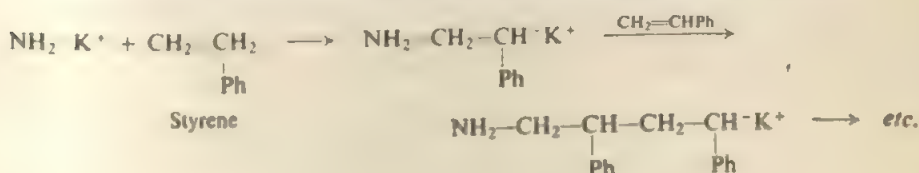
## Anionic polymerization



**Cationic polymerization** is initiated by *acids*. Isobutylene, for example, undergoes cationic polymerization to a tacky material used in adhesives. Copolymerization with a little isoprene gives *butyl rubber*, used to make automobile innertubes and tire liners. A variety of acids can be used: sulfuric acid;  $\text{AlCl}_3$  or  $\text{BF}_3$  plus a trace of water. We recognize this process as an extension of the dimerization discussed in Sec. 8.20.



**Anionic polymerization**, as we might expect, is initiated by *bases*:  $\text{Li}^+\text{NH}_2^-$ , for example, or organometallic compounds like *n*-butyllithium. For example:



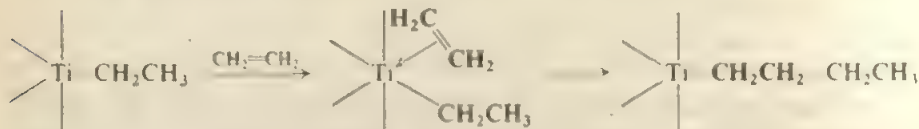
## 9.36 Coordination polymerization

Until 1953, almost all vinyl polymerization of commercial importance was of the free-radical type. Since that time, however, a new kind of polymerization, *coordination polymerization*, has revolutionized the field. Following discoveries by Karl Ziegler (Max Planck Institute for Coal Research) and by Giulio Natta (Polytechnic Institute of Milan)—who jointly received the Nobel Prize in 1963 for this work—catalysts have been developed that permit control of the polymerization process to a degree never before possible.

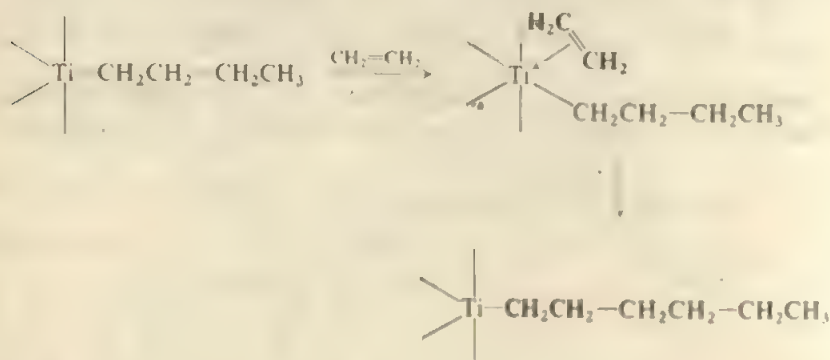
In Wilkinson's catalyst for hydrogenation (Secs. 8.5–8.7) we saw an example of the remarkable power of transition metal complexes to bring about and control organic reactions. Here, in these polymerization catalysts, we see another.

Ziegler-Natta catalysts are made up of a transition metal salt—typically titanium trichloride—and a metal alkyl like triethylaluminum. These react to form the active catalyst: a titanium complex holding an ethyl group.

Now the alkene—ethylene, say—is introduced. According to the generally accepted mechanism, the alkene attaches itself to titanium by a  $\pi$  bond: the  $\pi$  cloud of the alkene overlaps an empty orbital of the metal (Sec. 8.5). Next, with ethyl and



the alkene both held by the metal, the first of many similar steps takes place. The ethylene unit *inserts itself* between metal and the ethyl group. In place of ethyl there is now a *n*-butyl group attached to titanium. The bonding site where ethylene was held is vacant again, and the catalyst is ready to work again. Another ethylene becomes  $\pi$  bonded to the metal, and then inserts itself between the metal and

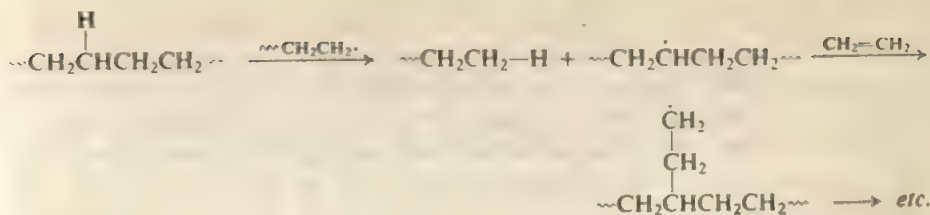


alkyl to form, this time, a *n*-hexyl group. And so the process continues over and over again, with the alkyl group growing by two carbons in each cycle. Finally, perhaps through the insertion of hydrogen, the long chain separates from the metal and a molecule of polyethylene has been formed.

The basic similarity of this mechanism to the one for homogeneous hydrogenation (Sec. 8.5) is striking. Titanium holds an alkyl group where rhodium held hydrogen. In both cases there is a vacant bonding site—an empty orbital—on the metal, through which the alkene can become  $\pi$  bonded before it inserts itself into a bond between titanium and alkyl, or between rhodium and hydrogen. Here, as in hydrogenation, the net process is *addition*: the insertion amounts to the addition of metal and alkyl across the double bond.

Polymerization with Ziegler-Natta catalysts has two important advantages over free-radical polymerization. (a) it gives *linear* polymer molecules, and (b) it permits *stereochemical control*.

Polyethylene made by the free-radical process has highly branched chains. At the high temperatures required for this particular polymerization, the growing free radicals not only *add* to the double bond of a monomer but also *abstract* hydrogen



from a chain already formed. This abstraction generates a free-radical center from which a branch can now grow. These highly branched polyethylene molecules fit together poorly and in a random way; the compound is said to have low *crystallinity*. It has a low melting point and is mechanically weak.

In contrast, polyethylene made by the coordination process is virtually unbranched. These unbranched molecules fit together well, and the polymer has a high degree of crystallinity. It has a higher melting point and higher density than the older (*low density*) polyethylene, and is mechanically much stronger. (We shall look at the crystallinity of polymers and its effect on their properties in Sec. 9.37.)

A second, far-reaching development in coordination polymerization is *stereochemical control*. Propylene, for example, could polymerize to any of three different arrangements (Fig. 9.9): *isotactic*, with all methyl groups on one side of an extended chain; *syndiotactic*, with methyl groups alternating regularly from side to side; and *atactic*, with methyl groups distributed at random.

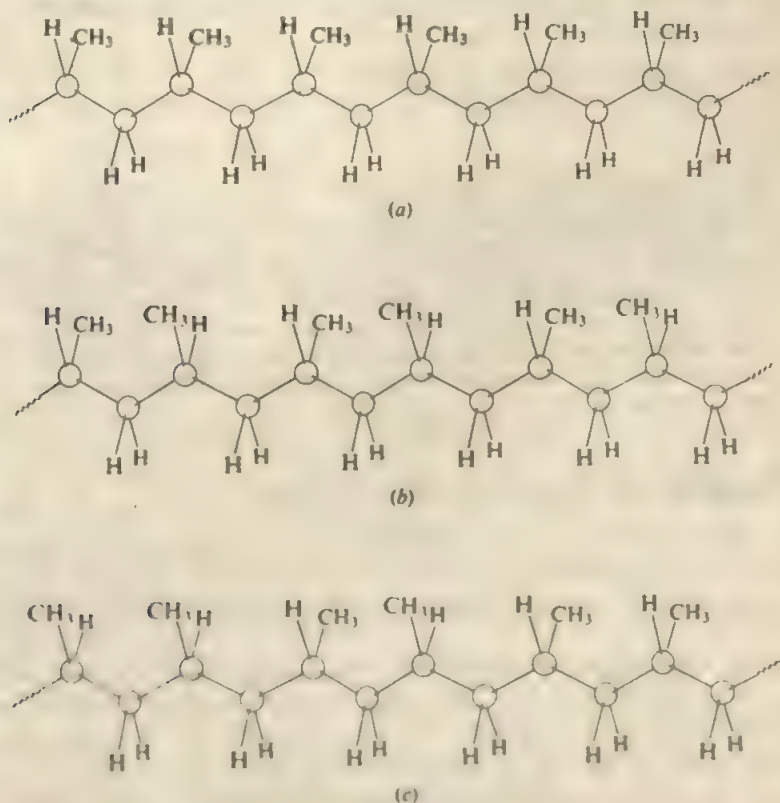


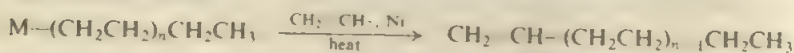
Figure 9.9. Polypropylene (a) Isotactic (b) Syndiotactic (c) Atactic.



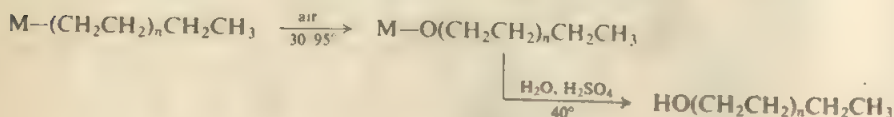
By proper choice of experimental conditions—catalyst, temperature, solvent—each of these stereoisomeric polymers has been made. Atactic polypropylene is a soft, elastic, rubbery material. Both isotactic and syndiotactic polypropylenes are highly crystalline: regularity of structure permits their molecules to fit together well. Over three billion pounds of isotactic polypropylene is produced every year, to be molded or extruded as sheets, pipes, and filaments; it is one of the principal synthetic fibers.

Coordination catalysts also permit stereochemical control about the carbon-carbon double bond. By their use, isoprene has been polymerized to a material virtually identical with natural rubber: *cis*-1,4-polyisoprene. (See Sec. 9.32.) This, like formation of isotactic polypropylene—and like hydrogenation with Wilkinson's catalyst—we recognize as an example of stereoselective synthesis (Sec. 6.17).

The Ziegler-Natta polymerization of ethylene can be adapted to make molecules of only modest size ( $C_6$ – $C_{20}$ ) and containing certain functional groups. If, for example, the metal-alkyls initially obtained are heated (in the presence of ethylene and a nickel catalyst), the hydrocarbon groups are displaced as straight-chain 1-alkenes of even carbon number. Large quantities of such alkenes in the  $C_{12}$ – $C_{20}$



range are consumed in the manufacture of detergents (Sec. 27.5). Alternatively, the metal-alkyls can be oxidized by air to give straight-chain primary alcohols:



"A chemist setting out to build a giant molecule is in the same position as an architect designing a building. He has a number of building blocks of certain shapes and sizes, and his task is to put them together in a structure to serve a particular purpose. . . . What makes high polymer chemistry still more exciting just now is that almost overnight, within the last few years, there have come discoveries of new ways to put the building blocks together—discoveries which promise a great harvest of materials that have never existed on the earth." (Giulio Natta, *Scientific American*, September, 1957, p. 98.)

### 9.37 Structure and properties of macromolecules

The characteristic thing about macromolecules, we have said, is their great size. This size has little effect on chemical properties. A double bond undergoes addition or cleavage; an allylic hydrogen is susceptible to abstraction by free radicals.

It is in their physical properties that macromolecules differ from ordinary molecules, and it is on these that their special functions depend. To begin with, let us look at the property of *crystallinity*. In a crystalline solid, we know, the structural units—molecules, in the case of a non-ionic compound—are arranged in a very regular, symmetrical way, with a geometric pattern repeated over and over. If a long molecule is to fit into such a pattern, it cannot be looped and coiled into a random conformation, but must be extended in a regular zig-zag (see Fig. 9.10).

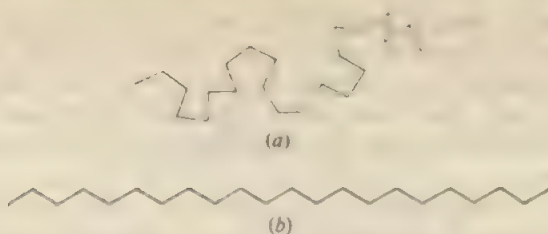


Figure 9.10. Long chain (a) in a random conformation, and (b) extended.

This lack of randomness corresponds to an unfavorable entropy for the system (Secs. 2.23 and 19.11). On the other hand, the regularity and close fitting of the molecules in a crystal permits operation of strong intermolecular forces—hydrogen bonding, dipole-dipole attractions, van der Waals forces—which result in a favorable enthalpy (heat content). As we shall see, this tug-of-war between entropy and enthalpy is a key factor in determining the use to which a macromolecule can be put.

Now, in general, a high polymer does not exist entirely in crystalline form—not even a polymer whose regularity of molecular structure might be expected to permit this. The problem is the size of the molecule. As solidification begins, the viscosity of the material rises and the polymer molecules find it difficult to move about and arrange their long chains in the regular pattern needed for crystal formation. Chains become entangled; a change in shape of a chain must involve rotation about single bonds, and this becomes difficult because of hindrance to the swinging about of pendant groups. Polymers, then, form solids made up of regions of crystallinity, called *crystallites*, embedded in amorphous material. We speak of the *degree of crystallinity* of a polymer to mean the extent to which it is composed of crystallites.

**Problem 9.22** Although both polymers are prepared by free-radical processes, poly(vinyl chloride) is amorphous and poly(vinylidene chloride) (Saran) is highly crystalline. How do you account for the difference? (Vinylidene chloride is 1,1-dichloroethene.)

Let us examine the various uses of polymers, and see how these depend on their structure—molecular and intermolecular.

**Fibers** are long, thin, threadlike bits of material that are characterized by great tensile (pulling) strength *in the direction of the fiber*. The natural fibers—cotton, wool, silk—are typical. Fibers are twisted into threads, which can then be woven into cloth, or embedded in plastic material to impart strength. The tensile strength can be enormous, some synthetic fibers rivaling—on a weight basis—steel.

The gross characteristics of fibers are reflected on the molecular level—the molecules, too, are long, thin, and threadlike. Furthermore, and most essential, they lie stretched out alongside each other, *lined up in the direction of the fiber*. The strength of the fiber resides, ultimately, in the strength of the chemical bonds of the polymer chains. The lining-up is brought about by *drawing*—stretching—the polymeric material. Once lined up, the molecules stay that way; the tendency to return to random looping and coiling is overcome by strong intermolecular attractions. In a fiber, enthalpy wins out over entropy. This high degree of molecular orientation is usually—although not always—accompanied by appreciable crystallinity.

The key requirements of a fiber are, then, a molecular shape—linear—that permits side-by-side alignment, and strong intermolecular forces to maintain this alignment. In addition, the intermolecular forces prevent “slipping” of one molecule past another. Now, what are these intermolecular forces?

The principal synthetic fibers are polyamides (the nylons), polyesters (Dacron, Terylene, Vycron), polyacrylonitrile (“acrylic fibers,” Orlon, Acrilan), polyurethanes (Spandex, Vycra), and isotactic polypropylene. Now, amides and urethanes, we shall find, contain N—H and are capable of hydrogen bonding; esters and nitriles contain very polar carbonyl ( $C=O$ ) and cyano ( $C\equiv N$ ) groups. In nylon and polyurethanes, molecular chains are held to each other by hydrogen bonds (Fig. 9.11). In polyesters and polyacrylonitriles, there are powerful dipole-dipole attractions. The stereoregular chains of isotactic polypropylene fit together so well that van der Waals forces are strong enough to maintain alignment.

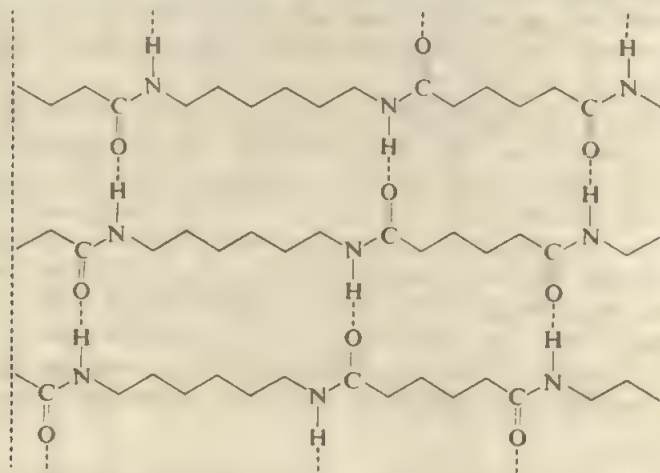


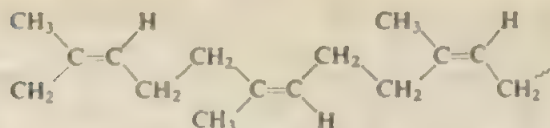
Figure 9.11. Hydrogen bonding in crystallites of nylon 66.

An **elastomer** possesses the high degree of elasticity that is characteristic of rubber: it can be greatly deformed—stretched to eight times its original length, for example—and yet return to its original shape. Here, as in fibers, the molecules are long and thin; as in fibers, they become lined up when the material is stretched. The big difference is this: when the stretching force is removed, the molecular chains of an elastomer do not remain extended and aligned but return to their original random conformations favored by entropy. They do not remain aligned because the intermolecular forces necessary to hold them that way are weaker than in a fiber. In general, elastomers do not contain highly polar groups or sites for hydrogen bonding; the extended chains do not fit together well enough for van der Waals forces to do the job. In an elastomer entropy beats enthalpy.

One further requirement: the long chains of an elastomer must be connected to each other by occasional cross-links: enough of them to prevent slipping of molecules past one another; not so many as to deprive the chains of the flexibility that is needed for ready extension and return to randomness.

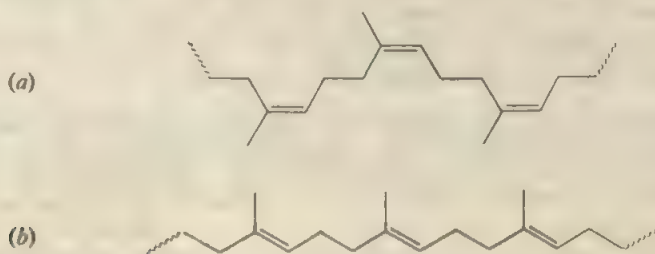
Natural rubber illustrates these structural requirements of an elastomer: long, flexible chains; weak intermolecular forces, and occasional cross-linking. Rubber is *cis*-1,4-polyisoprene. With no highly polar substituents, intermolecular attraction is largely limited to van der Waals forces. But these are weak because of the all-*cis*





Natural rubber  
All-cis configuration

configuration about the double bond. Fig. 9.12 compares the extended chains of rubber with those of its *trans* stereoisomer. As we can see, the *trans* configuration permits highly regular zig-zags that fit together well; the *cis* configuration does not. The all-*trans* stereoisomer occurs naturally as *gutta percha*; it is highly crystalline and non-elastic.



**Figure 9.12.** Extended chains of (a) natural rubber, *cis*-1,4-polyisoprene, and of (b) gutta percha, its *trans* stereoisomer.

Cross-linking in rubber, as we have seen (Sec. 9.32), is brought about by *vulcanizing*—heating with sulfur—which causes formation of sulfur bridges between molecules. This reaction involves reactive allylic positions, and thus depends on the double bond in the polymer.

Chief among the synthetic elastomers is SBR, a copolymer of butadiene (75%) and styrene (25%) produced under free-radical conditions (Sec. 9.34); it competes with natural rubber in the main use of elastomers, the making of automobile tires. All-*cis* polybutadiene and polyisoprene can be made by Ziegler-Natta polymerization.

An elastomer that is entirely or mostly polydiene is, of course, highly unsaturated. All that is required of an elastomer, however, is enough unsaturation to permit cross-linking. In making butyl rubber (Sec. 9.35), for example, only 5% of isoprene is copolymerized with isobutylene.

**Problem 9.23** (a) A versatile elastomer is obtained by Ziegler-Natta copolymerization of ethylene and propylene in the presence of a little diene, followed by vulcanization. How does the use of ethylene *and* propylene—instead of just one or the other—help to give the polymer elasticity?

(b) A similar copolymer can be made without the diene. This is cured by heating, not with sulfur, but with benzoyl peroxide: Why is this? What is the nature of the cross-links generated here?

Although enormous quantities of man-made fibers and elastomers are produced each year, the major consumption of synthetic polymers is as **plastics**, materials used in the form of sheets, pipes, films, and, most important of all, molded objects: toys and bottles; knobs, handles, and switches; dishes, fountain pens, toothbrushes; valves, gears, bearings; cases for radios and television sets; boats, automobile bodies, and even houses.

The molecular structure of plastics is of two general kinds: long molecules, either linear or branched; and space-network molecules.

The *linear* and *branched* polymers may be more or less crystalline, and include some of the materials also used as fibers: nylon, for example. They include the various polyalkenes we have mentioned: polyethylene, poly(vinyl chloride), polystyrene, etc. On heating, these polymers soften, and for this reason are called *thermoplastic*. It is in this softened state that they can be molded or extruded.

*Space-network* polymers (or *resins*) are highly cross-linked to form a rigid but irregular three-dimensional structure, as in phenol-formaldehyde (Sec. 24.15) or urea-formaldehyde (Sec. 20.24) resins. A sample of such material is essentially one gigantic molecule; heating does not soften it, since softening would require breaking of covalent bonds. Indeed, heating may cause formation of additional cross-links and thus make the material harder; for this reason, these polymers are called *thermosetting* polymers. This continuation of the polymerization process through heating is often coupled with the shaping of the product.

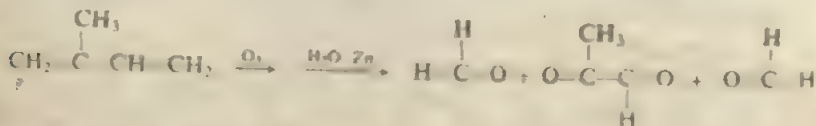
Certain linear, thermoplastic polymers are, like the space-network polymers, amorphous— and for basically the same reason. On cooling, their molecules form a rigid but irregular three-dimensional structure, they are held there, not by covalent cross-links, but by powerful dipole-dipole forces which lock the molecules into position before they can shake down into the regular arrangement required of a crystal. These materials are called *glasses*; poly(methyl methacrylate)—Plexiglas, Lucite—is the commonest one. Like ordinary (inorganic) glass, they lack crystalline planes for reflecting light, and are transparent. Like ordinary glass—and like the space-network polymers—they are brittle; when struck, these molecules cannot “give” with the blow through the sliding of crystalline planes over one another; they either resist—or break.

In later chapters we shall take up organic compounds of biological importance. Many of these are macromolecules. We shall find that, just as the technological function of a macromolecule—fiber, elastomer, plastic—depends upon its structure, so does the biological function: to hold the organism together, to nourish it, to control it, to allow it to reproduce itself.

### 9.38 Analysis of dienes

Dienes respond to characterization tests in the same way as alkenes: they decolorize bromine in carbon tetrachloride without evolution of hydrogen bromide, and they decolorize cold, neutral, dilute permanganate, they are not oxidized by chromic anhydride. They are, however, more unsaturated than alkenes. This property can be detected by determination of their molecular formulas ( $C_nH_{2n-2}$ ) and by a quantitative hydrogenation (two moles of hydrogen are taken up per mole of hydrocarbon).

Proof of structure is best accomplished by the same degradative methods that are used in studying alkenes. Ozonolysis of dienes yields aldehydes and ketones, including double-ended ones containing two C=O groups per molecule. For example:

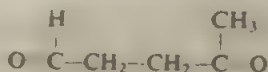


(Spectroscopic analysis of dienes is discussed in Chap. 17.)

**Problem 9.24** Contrast the ozonolysis products of the following isomers: (a) 1,3-pentadiene, (b) 1,4-pentadiene, (c) isoprene (2-methyl-1,3-butadiene).

**Problem 9.25** Predict the ozonolysis products from polybutadiene,  $(C_4H_6)_n$ : (a) if 1,2-addition is involved in the polymerization, (b) if 1,4-addition is involved.

**Problem 9.26** Ozonolysis of natural rubber yields chiefly (90%) the compound



What does this tell us about the structure of rubber?

**Problem 9.27** The yellow plant pigments  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -, and  $\gamma$ -carotene, and the red pigment of tomatoes, *lycopene*, are converted into Vitamin A in the liver. All four have the molecular formula  $C_{40}H_{56}$ . Upon catalytic hydrogenation,  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -carotene yield  $C_{40}H_{74}$ ,  $\gamma$ -carotene yields  $C_{40}H_{80}$ , and lycopene yields  $C_{40}H_{82}$ . How many rings, if any, are there in each compound?

**Problem 9.28** Both cyclohexene and 1,7-octadiene yield the di-aldehyde  $\text{OHC}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CHO}$  upon ozonolysis. What other facts would enable you to distinguish between the two compounds?

## PROBLEMS

1. Draw the structure of 6-methyl-2-heptene. Label each set of hydrogen atoms to show their relative reactivities toward chlorine atoms, using (1) for the most reactive, (2) for the next, etc.

2. (a) Draw structures of all isomeric dienes of formula  $C_6H_{10}$ , omitting cumulated dienes. (b) Name each one. (c) Indicate which ones are conjugated. (d) Indicate which ones can show geometric isomerism, and draw the isomeric structures. (e) Draw structures of the ozonolysis products expected from each. (f) Which isomers (other than *cis-trans* pairs) could not be distinguished on the basis of (e)?

3. Give structures and names of the organic products expected from the reaction (if any) of 1,3-butadiene with:

- |                             |                         |                        |  |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|--|
| (a) 1 mol $\text{H}_2$ , Ni | (c) 1 mol $\text{Br}_2$ | (e) 1 mol $\text{HCl}$ | (g) $\text{O}_3$ , then $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ |
| (b) 2 mol $\text{H}_2$ , Ni | (d) 2 mol $\text{Br}_2$ | (f) 2 mol $\text{HCl}$ | (h) $\text{KMnO}_4/\text{NaIO}_4$            |

4. Answer Problem 3 for 1,4-pentadiene instead of 1,3-butadiene.

5. Give structures and names of the products from dehydrohalogenation by strong base of each of the following halides. Where more than one product is expected, indicate which will be the major product.

- 1-chlorobutane; 2-chlorobutane
- 1-chlorobutane; 4-chloro-1-butene
- 2-bromo-2-methylbutane; 2-bromo-3-methylbutane
- 1-bromo-2-methylbutane; 1-bromo-3-methylbutane
- 1-chloro-2,3-dimethylbutane; 2-chloro-2,3-dimethylbutane
- 4-chloro-1-butene; 5-chloro-1-pentene
- 5-bromo-1,3-cyclohexadiene, bromocyclohexane, 3-bromocyclohexene

6. Which alkyl halide of each set in Problem 5 would you expect to undergo dehydrohalogenation faster?

7. Give structures of the chief product or products expected from addition of one mole of  $\text{HCl}$  to each of the following compounds

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| (a) 1,3-butadiene, 1-butene   | (c) 1,3-butadiene, 2-methyl-1,3-butadiene |
| (b) 1,3-pentadiene, 1-pentene | (d) 1,3-butadiene, 1,3-pentadiene         |



8. Answer Problem 7 for the addition of  $\text{BrCCl}_3$  in the presence of peroxides instead of addition of  $\text{HCl}$ .

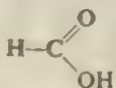
9. Which compound of each pair in Problem 8 would you expect to be more reactive toward addition of  $\text{BrCCl}_3$ ?

10. Arrange the compounds of each set in order of reactivity toward  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  substitution. (If you expect two of them to be of about the same reactivity, say so.)

- (a) 1-chloropropene, 3-chloropropene, *n*-propyl chloride
- (b) 2-bromobutane, 3-bromo-1-butene, 2-bromo-1-butene
- (c) 4-bromo-2-pentene, 4-bromo-2-methyl-2-pentene, 4-bromo-3-methyl-2-pentene
- (d) 2-buten-1-yl tosylate, 2-penten-4-yl tosylate, 4-methyl-2-penten-4-yl tosylate
- (e) *sec*-butyl tosylate, *sec*-butyl triflate, *sec*-butyl chloride, *sec*-butyl bromide

11. Answer Problem 10 for reactivity toward  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  substitution.

12. How do you account for the following facts: formic acid,  $\text{HCOOH}$ , contains one carbon-oxygen bond of 1.36 Å and another of 1.23 Å, yet sodium formate,  $\text{HCOO}^- \text{Na}^+$ , contains two equal carbon-oxygen bonds, each of 1.27 Å. (Check your answer in Sec. 19.13.)



Formic acid

13. (a) Make a model of *allene*,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ , a cumulated diene. What is the spatial relationship between the pair of hydrogens at one end of the molecule and the pair of hydrogens at the other end? (b) Substituted allenes of the type  $\text{RCH}=\text{C}=\text{CHR}$  have been obtained in optically active form. Is this consistent with the shape of the molecule in (a)? Where are the chiral centers in the substituted allene? (c) Work out the electronic configuration of allene. (*Hint*: How many atoms are attached to the middle carbon? To each of the end carbons?) Does this lead to the same shape of molecule that you worked out in (a) and (b)?

14. When allowed to react with aqueous  $\text{HBr}$ , 3-buten-2-ol ( $\text{CH}_3\text{CHOHCH}=\text{CH}_2$ ) yields not only 3-bromo-1-butene ( $\text{CH}_3\text{CHBrCH}=\text{CH}_2$ ) but also 1-bromo-2-butene ( $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$ ). (a) How do you account for these results? (b) Predict the product of the reaction between  $\text{HBr}$  and 2-buten-1-ol ( $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ).

15. Treatment of  $\text{CF}_3(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{C}=\text{CF}_2$  with  $\text{EtONa/EtOH}$  yields chiefly  $\text{CF}_3(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{C}=\text{CF}(\text{OEt})$ . Similar treatment of  $\text{CF}_2\text{Cl}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{C}=\text{CF}_2$  yields  $\text{EtOCF}_2(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{C}=\text{CF}_2$ . The rates of the two reactions are almost identical. It has been suggested that both reactions proceed by the same mechanism.

Show all steps in a mechanism that is consistent with the nature of these reactants, and that accounts for the similarity in rate despite the difference in final product.

16. Like other oxygen-containing compounds, alcohols dissolve in cold concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  (Sec. 8.29). In the case of some secondary and tertiary alcohols, dissolution is followed by the gradual separation of an insoluble liquid of high boiling point. How do you account for this behavior?

17. Isobutylene does not give the kinds of stereoisomeric polymers (isotactic, etc.) that propylene does. Why not? What can you say about 1-butene?

18. Account for each of the following observations. (a) In the presence of peroxides,  $\text{CCl}_4$  reacts with 1-octene,  $\text{RCH}=\text{CH}_2$ , to give not only the 1:1 adduct,  $\text{RCHClCH}_2\text{CCl}_3$ , but also the 2:1 adduct,  $\text{RCHClCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{R})\text{CH}_2\text{CCl}_3$ . (b) In contrast,  $\text{CBr}_4$  adds to the 1-octene to give *only* the 1:1 product. (c) Styrene reacts with peroxides in the presence of  $\text{CCl}_4$  to give *only* polymer.

19. (a) When the alkane 2,4,6,8-tetramethylnonane was synthesized by an unambiguous method (Problem 20 (l), p. 530), there was obtained a product which was separated by gas

chromatography into two components, A and B. The two components had identical mol. wt. and elemental composition, but different m.p., b.p., and infrared and NMR spectra. Looking at the structure of the expected product, what are these two components?

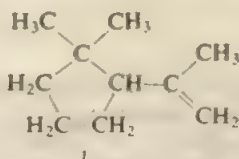
(b) When the same synthesis was carried out starting with an optically active reactant, compound B was obtained in optically active form, but A was still inactive. What is the structure of A? Of B?

(c) The NMR and infrared spectra of A and B were compared with the spectra of isotactic and syndiotactic polypropylenes (Fig. 9.9, p. 445). With regard to their spectra, A showed a marked resemblance to one of the polymers, and B showed a marked resemblance to the other. It was concluded that the results "confirm the structures originally assigned [by Natta, p. 443] for the two crystalline polymers of propylene." Which polymer did A resemble? Which polymer did B resemble?

20. When 1,4-hexadien-3-ol is dissolved in  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , it is converted completely into 3,5-hexadien-2-ol. How do you account for this?

21. When 1,3,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3-cyclohexadiene is dissolved in cold concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , the solution shows a freezing-point lowering that corresponds to two particles for each molecule of diene dissolved. On addition of water to the solution, the diene is completely regenerated. How do you account for these observations? Just what is happening and why?

22. Treatment with phosphoric acid converts 2,7-dimethyl-2,6-octadiene into I.



I, 1,1-Dimethyl-2-isopropenylcyclopentane

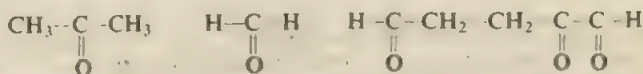
Using reaction steps already familiar to you, suggest a mechanism for this reaction.

23. Describe simple chemical tests that would distinguish between:

- (a) 1,3-pentadiene and *n*-pentane
- (b) allyl bromide and 2,3-dimethyl-1,3-butadiene
- (c) 1-chloro-2-butene and 2-chloro-2-butene

Tell exactly what you would *do* and *see*.

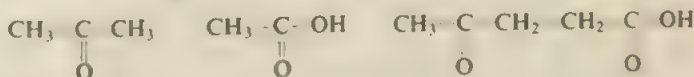
24. *Myrcene*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}$ , a terpene isolated from oil of bay, absorbs three moles of hydrogen to form  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{22}$ . Upon ozonolysis myrcene yields:



(a) What structures are consistent with these facts?

(b) On the basis of the isoprene rule (Sec. 9.33), what is the most likely structure for myrcene?

25. *Dihydromyrcene*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{18}$ , formed from myrcene (Problem 24), absorbs two moles of hydrogen to form  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{22}$ . Upon cleavage by  $\text{KMnO}_4$ , dihydromyrcene yields:

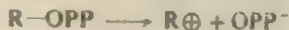


(a) Keeping in mind the isoprene rule, what is the most likely structure for dihydromyrcene?

(b) Is it surprising that a compound of this structure is formed by reduction of myrcene?

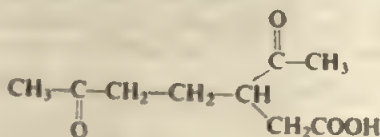
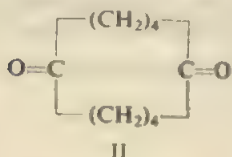
26. At the beginning of the biogenesis of squalene (Sec. 9.33) isopentenyl pyrophosphate,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OPP}$ , is enzymatically isomerized to dimethylallyl pyro-

phosphate,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{OPP}$ . These two compounds then react together to yield *geranyl pyrophosphate*,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{CHCH}_2\text{OPP}$ . (a) Assuming that the weakly basic pyrophosphate anion is, like the protonated hydroxyl group, a good leaving group,



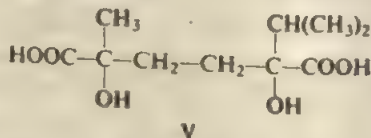
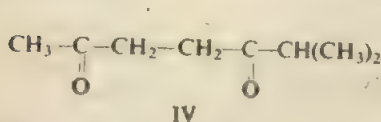
can you suggest a series of familiar steps by which *geranyl pyrophosphate* might be formed? (b) *Geranyl pyrophosphate* then reacts with another molecule of *isopentenyl pyrophosphate* to form *farnesyl pyrophosphate*. What is the structure of *farnesyl pyrophosphate*? (c) What is the relationship between *farnesyl pyrophosphate* and *squalene*? (d) An enzyme system from the rubber plant catalyzes the conversion of *isopentenyl pyrophosphate* into rubber: *dimethylallyl pyrophosphate* appears to act as an initiator for the process. Can you suggest a "mechanism" for the formation of natural rubber?

27. (a) A hydrocarbon of formula  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}$  absorbs only one mole of  $\text{H}_2$  upon hydrogenation. How many rings does it contain? (b) Upon ozonolysis it yields 1,6-cyclodecane-dione (II). What is the hydrocarbon?



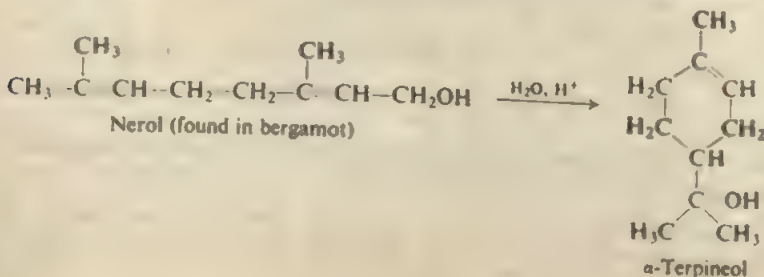
28. *Limonene*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}$ , a terpene found in orange, lemon, and grapefruit peel, absorbs only two moles of hydrogen, forming *p-menthane*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{20}$ . Oxidation by permanganate converts limonene into III. (a) How many rings, if any, are there in limonene? (b) What structures are consistent with the oxidation product? (c) On the basis of the isoprene rule, which structure is most likely for limonene? For *p-menthane*? (d) Addition of one mole of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  converts limonene into an alcohol. What are the most likely structures for this alcohol? (e) Addition of two moles of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  to limonene yields *terpin hydrate*. What is the most likely structure for *terpin hydrate*?

29.  $\alpha$ -*Terpinene*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}$ , a terpene found in coriander oil, absorbs only two moles of hydrogen, forming *p-menthane*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{20}$ . Ozonolysis of  $\alpha$ -terpinene yields IV; permanganate cleavage yields V.



(a) How many rings, if any, are there in  $\alpha$ -terpinene? (b) On the basis of the cleavage products, IV and V, and the isoprene rule, what is the most likely structure for  $\alpha$ -terpinene? (c) How do you account for the presence of the  $-\text{OH}$  groups in V?

30. Using only chemistry that you have already encountered, can you suggest a mechanism for the conversion of *nerol* ( $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}$ ) into  $\alpha$ -terpineol ( $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}$ ) in the presence of dilute  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ?





# Alcohols I. Preparation and Physical Properties

---

## 10.1 Introduction

If, as an organic chemist, you were allowed to choose the ten aliphatic compounds with which to be stranded on a desert island, you would almost certainly pick alcohols. From them you could make nearly every other kind of aliphatic compound: alkyl halides, alkenes, ethers, aldehydes, ketones, acids, esters, and a host of others. From the alkyl halides, you could make Grignard reagents, and from the reaction between these and the aldehydes and ketones obtain more complicated alcohols and so on. On your desert island you would use your alcohols not only as raw materials, but frequently as the solvents in which reactions are carried out and from which products are recrystallized. Finally, hot and tired after a long day in the laboratory, you could refresh yourself with an (isopropyl) alcohol rub and perhaps relax over a cool (ethyl) alcoholic drink.

We have already encountered alcohols playing a variety of roles: as *substrates* in nucleophilic substitution (Sec. 6.32) and in elimination (Sec. 7.28); as *nucleophiles* (Sec. 6.11) and as *bases* (Sec. 7.12); and, nearly everywhere, as solvents. We know that they are basic, and can be protonated (Sec. 6.8). We know that they are acidic and can be converted into alkoxides, and that these alkoxides can serve as nucleophilic and basic reagents (Secs. 6.11 and 7.12).

In this chapter and the following one, we shall study alcohols in a systematic way: review and consolidate what we have already learned about them, and look at new aspects of their rich and varied chemistry.

## 10.2 Structure, classification, and nomenclature

Alcohols are compounds of the general formula  $\text{ROH}$ , where R is any alkyl or substituted alkyl group. The group may be open-chain or cyclic; it may contain a double bond, a halogen atom, an aromatic ring, or additional hydroxyl groups.

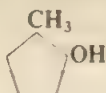


1-Propanol

Isopropyl alcohol



1-Bromo-2-propanol



2-Methylcyclopentanol

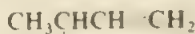


2-Propen-1-ol

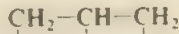
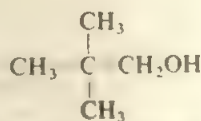
Allyl alcohol



2-Phenylethanol



3-Buten-2-ol

1,2,3-Propanetriol  
Glycerol2,2-Dimethyl-1-propanol  
Neopentyl alcohol

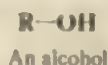
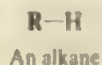
As we saw in Sec. 6.5, alcohols are given either common names (for the simpler alcohols), or IUPAC names. They are classified as *primary*, *secondary*, or *tertiary* according to the kind of carbon that bears the  $-\text{OH}$  group.

As the functional group of alcohols, the hydroxyl group ( $-\text{OH}$ ) determines the properties characteristic of the family. Variations in the structure of the R group bring about variations in these properties. Primary, secondary, and tertiary alcohols, for example, undergo a given reaction at different rates and sometimes by different mechanisms. One reaction, oxidation, which directly involves the hydrogen atoms attached to the carbon bearing the  $-\text{OH}$  group, takes an entirely different course for each class of alcohols. Certain substituents may affect reactivity in such a way as to make an alcohol of one class resemble members of a different class. The presence of  $-\text{Cl}$ , we have already seen (Sec. 6.32), makes the secondary alcohol, 1-chloro-2-propanol, act like a primary alcohol. This effect of chlorine we attributed to its powerful electron-withdrawing tendency. Other variations in properties of alcohols, we shall find, are consistent with the structures involved.

Compounds in which the hydroxyl group is attached directly to an aromatic ring are not alcohols; they are *phenols*, and differ so markedly from the alcohols that we shall consider them in a separate chapter.

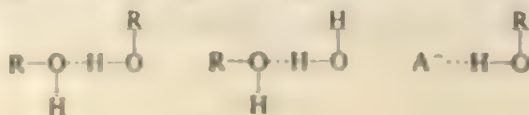
### 10.3 Physical properties

The physical properties of an alcohol are best understood, we have seen (Sec. 6.7), if we recognize this simple fact: structurally, an alcohol is a composite of an alkane and water. It contains a lipophilic, alkane-like group and a hydrophilic,



water-like hydroxyl group. Of these two structural units, it is the  $-\text{OH}$  group which gives the alcohol its characteristic physical properties and the alkyl group which, depending upon its size and shape, modifies these properties.

The  $-\text{OH}$  group is highly polar and, most important, is capable of hydrogen bonding—hydrogen bonding to its fellow alcohol molecules (Sec. 1.19), to other



neutral molecules (Sec. 1.21), and to anions (Sec. 1.22). The physical properties (Table 10.1) show some of the effects of this hydrogen bonding.

Table 10.1 ALCOHOLS

Name	Formula	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Density at 20°C	Solub., g/100 g H <sub>2</sub> O
Methyl	CH <sub>3</sub> OH	- 97	64.5	0.793	∞
Ethyl	CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	-115	78.3	.789	∞
<i>n</i> -Propyl	CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	-126	97	.804	∞
<i>n</i> -Butyl	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	- 90	118	.810	7.9
<i>n</i> -Pentyl	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	- 78.5	138	.817	2.3
<i>n</i> -Hexyl	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	- 52	156.5	.819	0.6
<i>n</i> -Heptyl	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	- 34	176	.822	.2
<i>n</i> -Octyl	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>6</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	- 15	195	.825	.05
<i>n</i> -Decyl	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>8</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	6	228	.829	
<i>n</i> -Dodecyl	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>10</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	24			
<i>n</i> -Tetradecyl	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>12</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	38			
<i>n</i> -Hexadecyl	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>14</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	49			
<i>n</i> -Octadecyl	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>16</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	58.5			
Isopropyl	CH <sub>3</sub> CHOHCH <sub>3</sub>	- 86	82.5	.789	x
Isobutyl	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CHCH <sub>2</sub> OH	-108	108	.802	10.0
<i>sec</i> -Butyl	CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> CHOHCH <sub>3</sub>	-114	99.5	.806	12.5
<i>tert</i> -Butyl	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> COH	25.5	83	.789	∞
Isopentyl	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CHCH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	-117	132	.813	2
<i>active</i> -Amyl	(-)-CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> CH(CH <sub>3</sub> )CH <sub>2</sub> OH		128	.816	3.6
<i>tert</i> -Pentyl	CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> C(OH)(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	- 12	102	.809	12.5
Cyclopentanol	<i>cyclo</i> -C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>9</sub> OH		140	.949	
Cyclohexanol	<i>cyclo</i> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>11</sub> OH	24	161.5	.962	
Allyl	CH <sub>2</sub> =CHCH <sub>2</sub> OH	-129	97	.855	∞
Crotyl	CH <sub>3</sub> CH=CHCH <sub>2</sub> OH		118	.853	16.6
Methylvinyl- carbinol	CH <sub>2</sub> =CHCHOHCH <sub>3</sub>		97		
Benzyl	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	- 15	205	1.046	4
$\alpha$ -Phenylethyl	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CHOHCH <sub>3</sub>		205	1.013	
$\beta$ -Phenylethyl	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	- 27	221	1.02	1.6
Diphenylcarbinol (Benzhydrol)	(C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CHOH	69	298		.05
Triphenylcarbinol	(C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> COH	162.5			
Cinnamyl	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH=CHCH <sub>2</sub> OH	33	257.5		
Ethylene glycol	CH <sub>2</sub> OHCH <sub>2</sub> OH	- 16	197	1.113	
Propylene glycol	CH <sub>3</sub> CHOHCH <sub>2</sub> OH		187	1.040	
1,3-Propanediol	HOCH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH		215	1.060	
Glycerol	HOCH <sub>2</sub> CHOHCH <sub>2</sub> OH	18	290	1.261	
Pentaerythritol	C(CH <sub>2</sub> OH) <sub>4</sub>	260			6

Let us look first at **boiling points**. Among hydrocarbons the factors that determine boiling point seem to be chiefly molecular weight and shape; this is to be expected of molecules that are held together chiefly by van der Waals forces. Alcohols, too, show increase in boiling point with increasing carbon number, and decrease in boiling point with branching. But the unusual thing about alcohols is



that they boil so *high*: as Table 10.2 shows, much higher than hydrocarbons of the same molecular weight, and higher, even, than many other compounds of considerable polarity. How are we to account for this?

Table 10.2 · STRUCTURE AND BOILING POINT

Name	Structure	Mol. Wt.	Dipole Moment, D	B.p., °C
<i>n</i> -Pentane	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$	72	0	36
Diethyl ether	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{—O—CH}_2\text{CH}_3$	74	1.18	35
<i>n</i> -Propyl chloride	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	79	2.10	47
<i>n</i> -Butyraldehyde	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHO}$	72	2.72	76
<i>n</i> -Butyl alcohol	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	74	1.63	118

The answer is, of course, that alcohols, like water, are *associated liquids* (Sec. 1.20): their abnormally high boiling points are due to the greater energy needed to break the hydrogen bonds that hold the molecules together. Although ethers and aldehydes contain oxygen, they contain hydrogen that is bonded only to carbon; these hydrogens are not positive enough to bond appreciably with oxygen.

Infrared spectroscopy (Sec. 17.6) has played a key role in the study of hydrogen bonding. In dilute solution in a non-polar solvent like carbon tetrachloride (or in the gas phase), where association between molecules is minimal, ethanol, for example, shows an O—H stretching band at  $3640\text{ cm}^{-1}$ . As the concentration of ethanol is increased, this band is gradually replaced by a broader band at  $3350\text{ cm}^{-1}$ . The bonding of hydrogen to the second oxygen weakens the O—H bond, and lowers the energy and hence the frequency of vibration.

**Problem 10.1** The infrared spectrum of *cis*-1,2-cyclopentanediol has an O—H stretching band at a lower frequency than for a free —OH group, and this band does not disappear even at high dilution. *trans*-1,2-Cyclopentanediol shows no such band. Can you suggest a possible explanation?

The behavior of alcohols as **solutes** also reflects their ability to form hydrogen bonds. In sharp contrast to hydrocarbons, the lower alcohols are miscible with water. Since alcohol molecules are held together by the same sort of intermolecular forces as water molecules, there can be mixing of the two kinds of molecules: the energy required to break a hydrogen bond between two water molecules or two alcohol molecules is provided by formation of a hydrogen bond between a water molecule and an alcohol molecule.

But, as we saw in Sec. 1.21, this is true only for the lower alcohols, where the hydrophilic —OH group constitutes a large part of the molecule. As the lipophilic alkyl group becomes larger, water solubility decreases. For practical purposes we consider that the borderline between solubility and insolubility in water occurs at about four to five carbon atoms for normal primary alcohols.

Polyhydroxy alcohols provide more than one site per molecule for hydrogen bonding, and their properties reflect this. The simplest diol, 1,2-ethanediol (ethylene glycol), boils at  $197^\circ$ . The lower diols are miscible with water, and those containing as many as seven carbon atoms show appreciable solubility in water. (Ethylene glycol owes its use as an antifreeze—e.g., Prestone—to its high boiling point, low freezing point, and high solubility in water.)

**Problem 10.2** The disaccharide *sucrose*,  $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ , is a big molecule and yet (it is ordinary table sugar) is extremely soluble in water. What might you guess about its structure? (Check your answer on p. 1104.)

**Problem 10.3** How do you account for the fact that, although diethyl ether has a much lower boiling point than *n*-butyl alcohol, it has the same solubility (8 g per 100 g) in water?

We have already (Secs. 1.22 and 6.7) discussed the behavior of alcohols as *solvents*. Through their lipophilic alkyl groups, they can dissolve non-ionic compounds: organic substrates, for example. Through their  $-OH$  groups, they can dissolve ionic compounds: inorganic reagents, for example. As *protic* solvents, they solvate anions especially strongly through hydrogen bonding. They solvate cations through unshared pairs of electrons on oxygen.

As solvents, we have seen, alcohols are far from being innocent by-standers. Their oxygen is basic and nucleophilic. In elimination of the  $El$  kind, alcohols can serve as the base as well as the solvent. In nucleophilic substitution, alcohols can act as the nucleophile in  $S_N2$  reactions, and render nucleophilic assistance in the formation of cationic intermediates.

## 10.4 Industrial source

For alcohols to be such important starting materials in aliphatic chemistry, they must be not only versatile in their reactions but also available in large amounts and at low prices. There are three principal ways to get the simple alcohols that are the backbone of aliphatic organic synthesis, ways that can utilize all our sources of organic raw material—petroleum, natural gas, coal, and the biomass. These methods are: (a) by *hydration of alkenes* obtained from the cracking of petroleum; (b) by the *oxo process* from alkenes, carbon monoxide, and hydrogen; and (c) by *fermentation of carbohydrates*. In addition to these three chief methods, there are others that have more limited application (see Fig. 10.1). Methanol, for example,

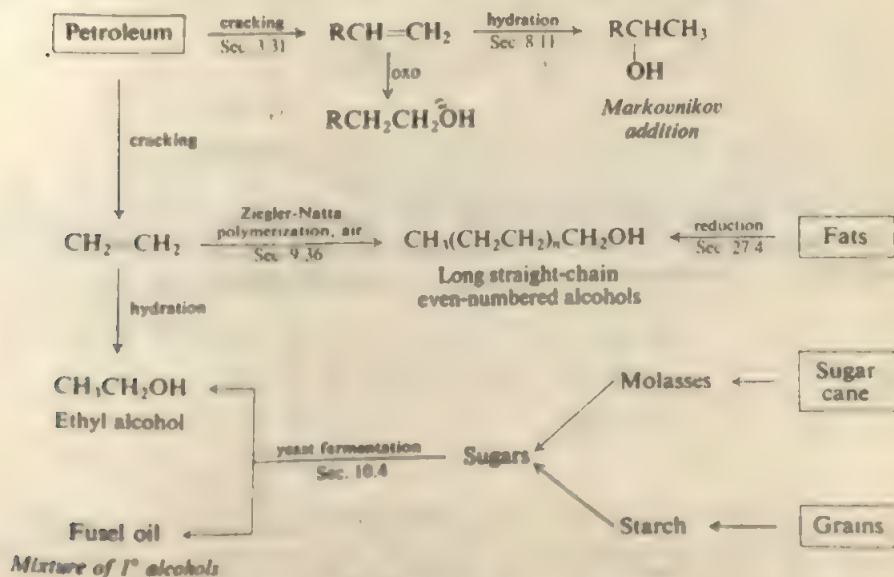
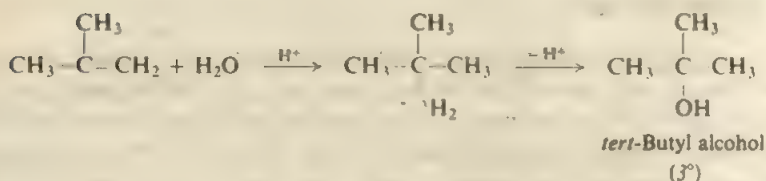
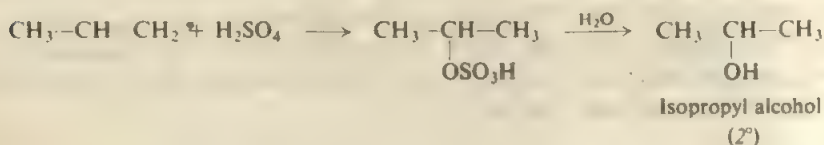


Figure 10.1. Industrial sources of alcohols.

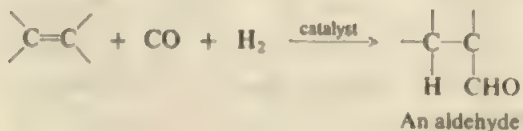
is made by the catalytic hydrogenation of carbon monoxide; the necessary mixture of hydrogen and carbon monoxide is obtained from the high-temperature reaction of water with methane, higher alkanes, or coal.

(a) **Hydration of alkenes.** We have already seen (Sec. 3.31) that alkenes containing up to four or five carbon atoms can be separated from the mixture obtained from the cracking of petroleum. We have also seen (Secs. 8.10 and 8.11) that alkenes are readily converted into alcohols either by direct addition of water, or by addition of sulfuric acid followed by hydrolysis. By this process there can be obtained only those alcohols whose formation is consistent with the application of Markovnikov's rule: for example, isopropyl but not *n*-propyl, *sec*-butyl but not *n*-butyl, *tert*-butyl but not isobutyl. Thus the *only* primary alcohol obtainable in this way is ethyl alcohol.

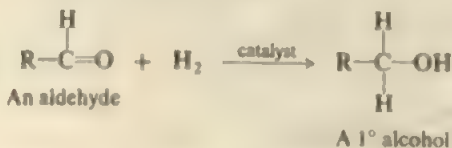


(b) **Oxo process.** Primary alcohols *can* be obtained from alkenes, however, by the oxo process.

In the presence of the proper catalyst, alkenes react with carbon monoxide and hydrogen to yield *aldehydes*, compounds containing the —CHO group.

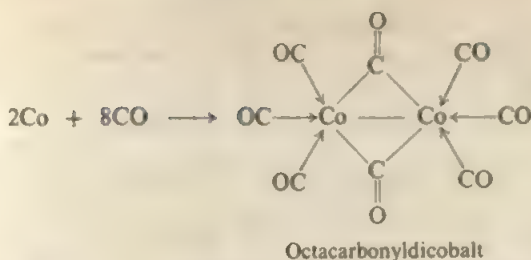


Aldehydes can be readily reduced by catalytic hydrogenation to primary alcohols; indeed, the oxo process is often carried out in such a way that this reduction process takes place as the aldehydes are formed, to give the alcohols directly.



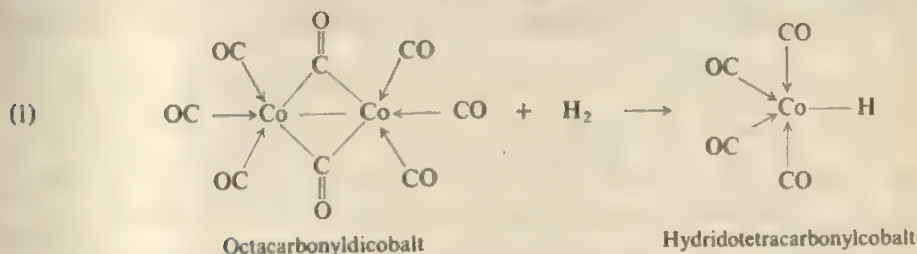
The classical oxo catalyst is octacarbonyldicobalt,  $\text{Co}_2(\text{CO})_8$ , formed by reaction of metallic cobalt with carbon monoxide. The oxo process was discovered in Germany during World War II, and was the first industrial application of catalysis by a transition metal complex. We have already encountered such catalysis



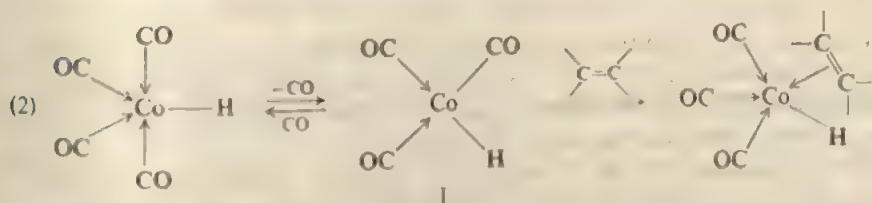


in homogeneous hydrogenation (Secs. 8.5–8.7) and Ziegler-Natta polymerization (Sec. 9.36). We shall find that in the oxo process the catalyst exerts its effect in basically the same manner as in those other examples.

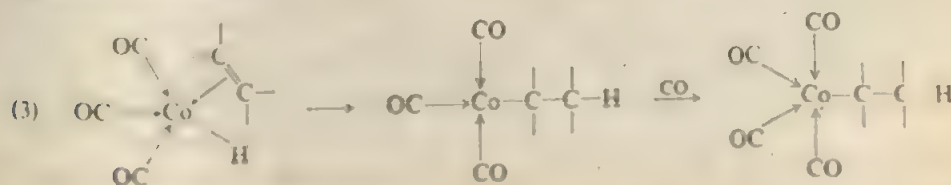
The following steps are believed to take place during the oxo process. The octacarbonyldicobalt reacts with hydrogen (step 1) to form the hydrido complex  $\text{CoH}(\text{CO})_4$ , the active catalyst. (This is soluble in hydrocarbons, so that once again



we are dealing with a case of homogeneous catalysis.) Next, the alkene replaces (step 2) one molecule of carbon monoxide to form our familiar  $\pi$ -complex

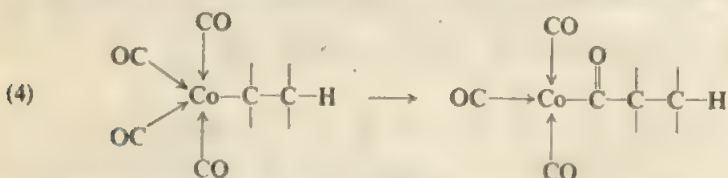


At this point, cobalt holds as ligands the three units that must react with each other: the alkene, carbon monoxide, and a hydrogen. Now, as in homogeneous hydrogenation, the hydrogen migrates (step 3) from cobalt to one of the doubly-bonded carbons; simultaneously the other doubly-bonded carbon attaches itself to cobalt, and a metal alkyl has been formed. This acquires an additional molecule of carbon monoxide.



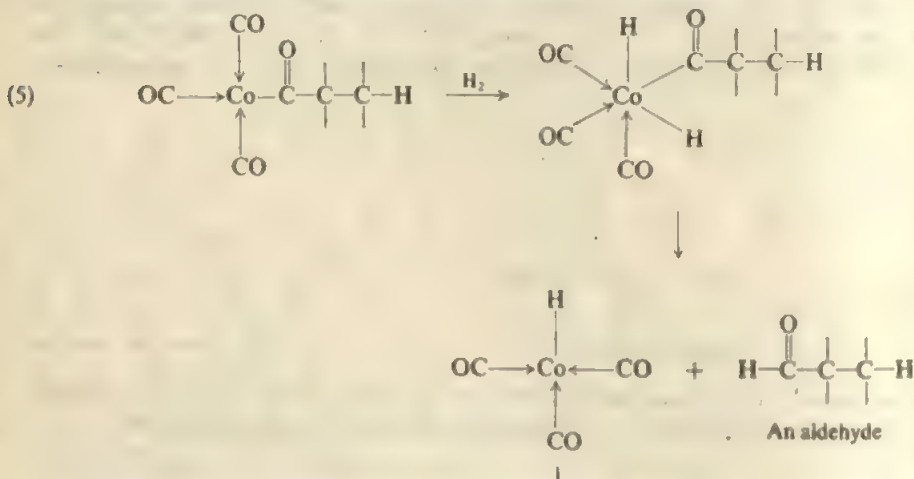
Next, the newly-formed alkyl group migrates (step 4) to the carbon of a carbon monoxide ligand. This is the key step, since in it a carbon-carbon bond is formed.

It is analogous to the chain-lengthening step of Ziegler-Natta polymerization: there, alkyl becomes attached to the doubly-bonded carbon of an alkene, and here,



to the multiply-bonded carbon of carbon monoxide.

Now hydrogen is absorbed (step 5) to form a dihydrido complex. One of these hydrogens migrates to carbon of the  $\text{C}=\text{O}$  group to form an aldehyde molecule, which leaves the coordination sphere of the regenerated catalyst.

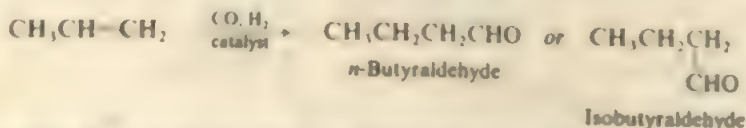


Wilkinson has found that the complex  $\text{RhH}(\text{CO})(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_3$ , which is very like his hydrogenation catalyst (Sec. 8.5), is even more efficient than the cobalt complex at promoting the oxo process. Using his catalyst, he has found evidence for a series of steps analogous to those we have just outlined.

The oxo process amounts to addition of  $\text{H}$  and  $-\text{CHO}$  across a carbon-carbon double bond. The  $-\text{CHO}$  group is the *formyl* group, and so the process is called *hydroformylation*. Like other such addition reactions, it can take place with either of two orientations and, if the structure permits, yield either of two products.



Propylene, for example, can yield either a straight-chain or a branched-chain aldehyde:



Straight-chain aldehydes are usually the more desired products. The process tends to form these preferentially, and this tendency can be increased by modifications in reaction conditions—including the incorporation as ligands of our old friends, the phosphines (Secs. 8.5–8.7).

There are a number of attractive features to the oxo process. First, it can give primary alcohols, not available through hydration of alkenes. Next, the aldehydes need not be reduced to alcohols, but can be converted into other products: oxidized to carboxylic acids (Chap. 19), for example, or allowed to undergo the aldol condensation (Sec. 21.5). Finally, part of the carbon in oxo products comes from carbon monoxide, which can be made from coal rather than scarce petroleum or even scarcer natural gas.

**Problem 10.4** (a) In which step of the mechanism does the orientation of hydroformylation appear to be determined?

(b) Under one set of conditions, propylene gives a *n*-butyraldehyde:isobutyraldehyde ratio of about 4:1. Incorporation of triphenylphosphine,  $\text{Ph}_3\text{P}$ , in the catalyst raises this ratio to 10:1. Can you suggest one possible explanation for this?

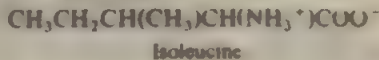
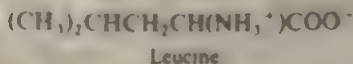
**Problem 10.5** "Nonanol," a mixture of 3,5,5-trimethyl-1-hexanol and some of its isomers, is used as a plasticizer for polymers. It is manufactured via the oxo process. Can you suggest how it might be made starting from hydrocarbons of four carbons or fewer?

(c) **Fermentation of carbohydrates.** Fermentation of sugars by yeast, the oldest synthetic chemical process used by man, is still of enormous importance for the preparation of **ethyl alcohol** and certain other alcohols. The sugars come from a variety of sources, mostly molasses from sugar cane, or starch obtained from various grains; the name "grain alcohol" has been given to ethyl alcohol for this reason.

When starch is the starting material, there is obtained, in addition to ethyl alcohol, a smaller amount of *fusel oil* (German: *Fusel* = inferior liquor), a mixture of primary alcohols: mostly isopentyl alcohol with smaller amounts of *n*-propyl alcohol, isobutyl alcohol, and 2-methyl-1-butanol, known as *active amyl alcohol* (*amyl* = *pentyl*).

In the future there will undoubtedly be a shift toward carbohydrates as our source of carbon:carbon for organic chemicals and carbon in the form of fuels. With this shift, fermentation processes will take on greater and greater importance. But there is no free lunch. A great deal of energy is required for the distillation that separates fermentation products from the dilute solutions in which they are formed. And all the carbohydrates being grown today to feed mankind could supply only a small fraction of the energy now provided by petroleum.

**Problem 10.6** The isopentyl and active amyl alcohols are formed by enzymatic transformation of the amino acids *leucine* and *isoleucine*, which come from hydrolysis of protein material in the starch.



(a) Which amino acid gives which alcohol? (b) Although both amino acids are optically active, and the transformation processes are analogous, only one gives an alcohol that is optically active. Why is this?

## 10.5 Ethyl alcohol

Ethyl alcohol is not only the oldest synthetic organic chemical used by man, but it is also one of the most important.



In industry ethyl alcohol is widely used as a solvent for lacquers, varnishes, perfumes, and flavorings, as a medium for chemical reactions; and in recrystallizations. In addition, it is an important raw material for synthesis; after we have learned more about the reactions of alcohols (Chap. 11), we can better appreciate the role played by the leading member of the family. For these industrial purposes ethyl alcohol is prepared both by hydration of ethylene and by fermentation of sugar from molasses (or sometimes starch); thus its ultimate source is petroleum, sugar cane, and various grains.

Ethyl alcohol is the alcohol of "alcoholic" beverages. For this purpose it is prepared by fermentation of sugar from a truly amazing variety of vegetable sources. The particular beverage obtained depends upon what is fermented (rye or corn, grapes or elderberries, cactus pulp or dandelions), how it is fermented (whether carbon dioxide is allowed to escape or is bottled up, for example), and what is done after fermentation (whether or not it is distilled). The special flavor of a beverage is not due to the ethyl alcohol but to other substances, either characteristic of the particular source, or deliberately added.

Medically, ethyl alcohol is classified as a *hypnotic* (sleep producer); it is less toxic than other alcohols. (Methanol, for example, is quite *poisonous*: drinking it, breathing it for prolonged periods, or allowing it to remain long on the skin can lead to blindness or death.)

Because of its unique position as both a highly taxed beverage and an important industrial chemical, ethyl alcohol poses a special problem: it must be made available to the chemical industry in a form that is unfit to drink. This problem is solved by addition of a *denaturant*, a substance that makes it unpalatable or even poisonous. Two of the eighty-odd legal denaturants, for example, are methanol and high-test gasoline. When necessary, pure undenatured ethyl alcohol is available for chemical purposes, but its use is strictly controlled by the Federal Government.

Except for alcoholic beverages, nearly all the ethyl alcohol used is a mixture of 95% alcohol and 5% water, known simply as 95% *alcohol*. What is so special about the concentration of 95%? Whatever the method of preparation, ethyl alcohol is obtained first mixed with water; this mixture is then concentrated by fractional distillation. But it happens that the component of lowest boiling point is not ethyl alcohol (b.p. 78.3°) but a *binary azeotrope* containing 95% alcohol and 5% water (b.p. 78.15°). As an azeotrope, it of course gives a vapor of the same composition, and hence cannot be further concentrated by distillation no matter how efficient the fractionating column used.

Pure ethyl alcohol is known as *absolute alcohol*. Although more expensive than 95% alcohol, it is available for use when specifically required. It is obtained by taking advantage of the existence of another azeotrope, this time a *ternary* one of b.p. 64.9°: 7.5% water, 18.5% ethyl alcohol, and 74% benzene.

**Problem 10.7** Describe exactly what will happen if one distills a mixture of 150 g of 95% alcohol and 74 g of benzene.

For certain special purposes (Secs. 26.2 and 26.3) even the slight trace of water found in commercial absolute alcohol must be removed. This can be accomplished by treatment of the alcohol with metallic magnesium, water is converted into insoluble  $\text{Mg}(\text{OH})_2$ , from which the alcohol is then distilled.

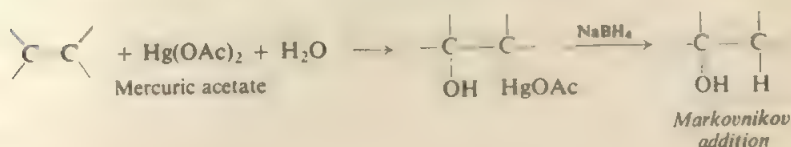
## 10.6 Preparation of alcohols

Most of the simple alcohols and a few of the complicated ones are available

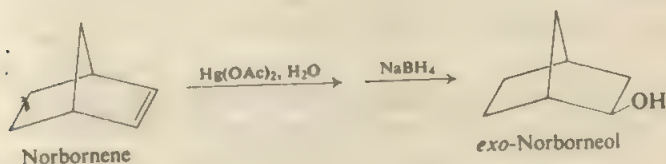
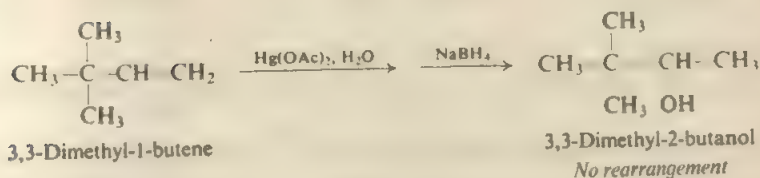
from the industrial sources described in Sec. 10.4. Other alcohols must be prepared by one of the methods outlined below.

## PREPARATION OF ALCOHOLS

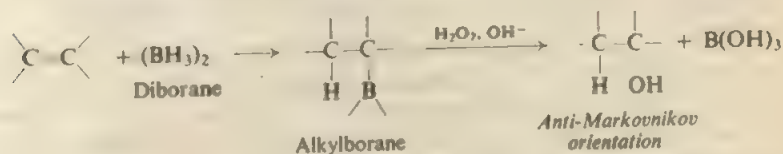
### 1. Oxymercuration–demercuration. Discussed in Sec. 10.7.



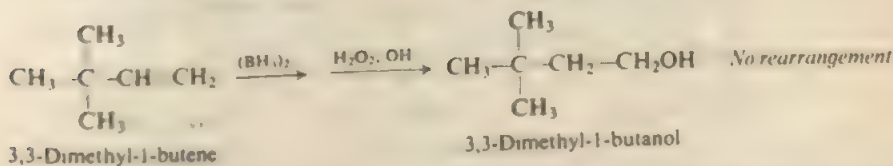
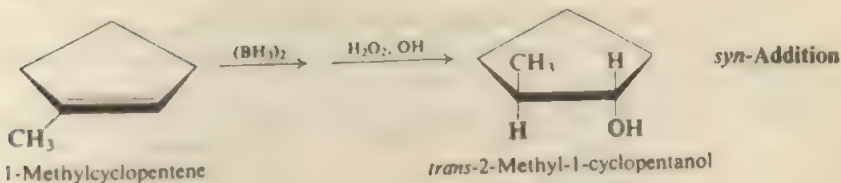
Examples:



### 2. Hydroboration–oxidation. Discussed in Secs. 10.8–10.10.

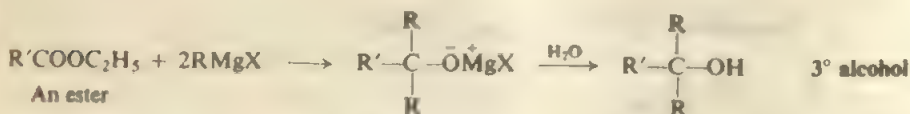
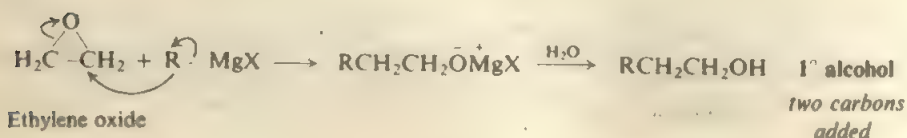
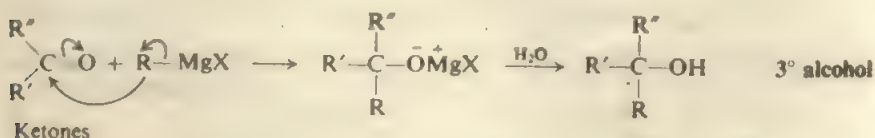
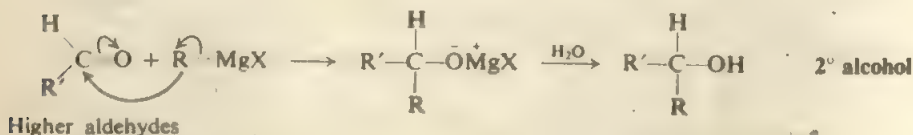
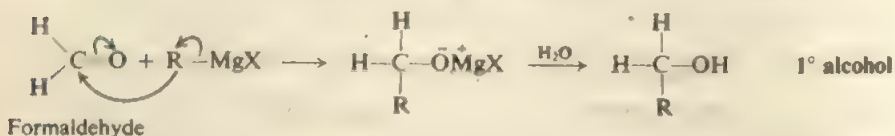
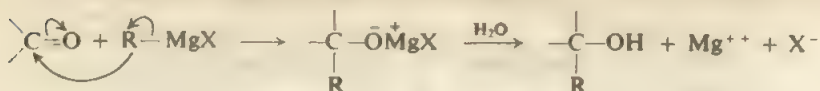


Examples:



CONT.

### 3. Grignard synthesis. Discussed in Secs. 10.12-10.16.

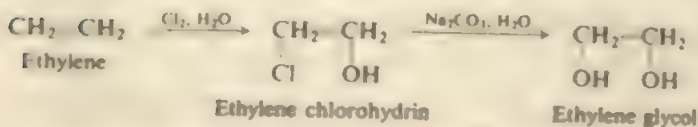
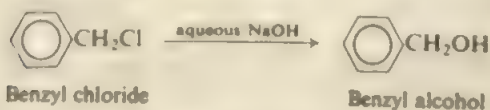


Discussed in Sec. 20.21.

### 4. Hydrolysis of alkyl halides. Discussed in Sec. 10.6.



Examples:

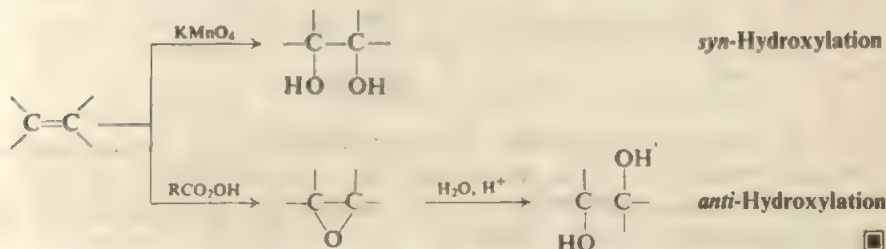


CONT.



CONT.

5. **Aldol condensation.** Discussed in Sec. 21.7.
6. **Reduction of carbonyl compounds.** Discussed in Sec. 18.10.
7. **Reduction of acids and esters.** Discussed in Secs. 18.18 and 20.22.
8. **Hydroxylation of alkenes.** Discussed in Secs. 8.27 and 12.12.

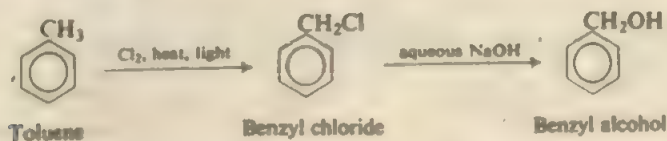


We can follow either of two approaches to the synthesis of alcohols—or, for that matter, of most other kinds of compounds. (a) We can retain the original carbon skeleton, and simply convert one functional group into another until we arrive at an alcohol; or (b) we can generate a new, bigger carbon skeleton and at the same time produce an alcohol.

By far the most important method of preparing alcohols is the **Grignard synthesis**. This is an example of the second approach, since it leads to the formation of carbon-carbon bonds. In the laboratory a chemist is chiefly concerned with preparing the more complicated alcohols that cannot be bought; these are prepared by the Grignard synthesis from rather simple starting materials. The alkyl halides from which the Grignard reagents are made, as well as the aldehydes and ketones themselves, are most conveniently prepared from alcohols; thus the method ultimately involves the synthesis of alcohols from less complicated alcohols.

Alcohols can be conveniently made from compounds containing carbon-carbon double bonds in two ways; by **oxymercuration-demercuration** and by **hydroboration-oxidation**. Both amount to addition of water to the double bond, but with *opposite orientation*—Markovnikov and anti-Markovnikov—and hence the two methods neatly complement each other.

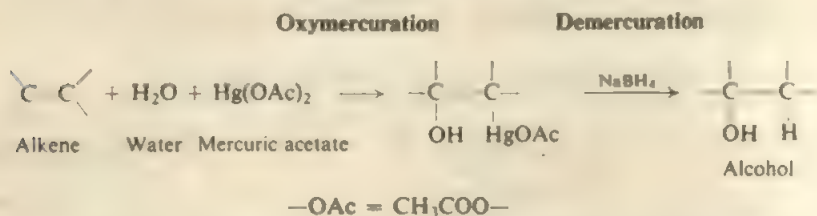
Hydrolysis of alkyl halides is severely limited as a method of synthesizing alcohols, since alcohols are usually more available than the corresponding halides; indeed, the best general preparation of halides is from alcohols. The synthesis of benzyl alcohol from toluene, however, is an example of a useful application of this method (Sec. 16.13).



For those halides that can undergo elimination, the formation of alkene must always be considered a possible side reaction.

## 10.7 Oxymercuration-demercuration

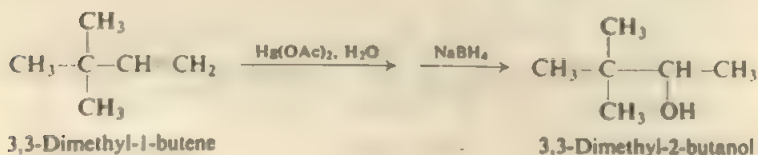
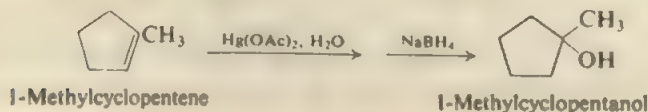
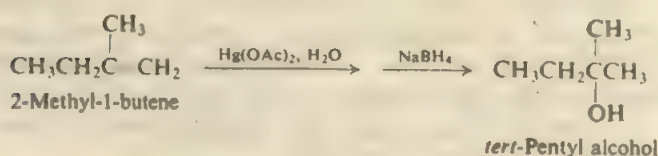
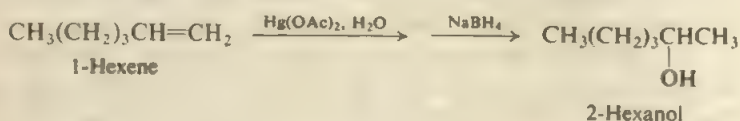
Alkenes react with mercuric acetate in the presence of water to give hydroxy-mercurial compounds which on reduction yield alcohols.



The first stage, *oxymercuration*, involves addition to the carbon-carbon double bond of  $-\text{OH}$  and  $\text{HgOAc}$ . Then, in *demercuration*, the  $-\text{HgOAc}$  is replaced by  $-\text{H}$ . The reaction sequence amounts to hydration of the alkene, but is much more widely applicable than direct hydration.

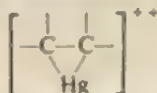
The two-stage process of oxymercuration-demercuration is fast and convenient, takes place under mild conditions, and gives excellent yields—often over 90%. The alkene is added at room temperature to an aqueous solution of mercuric acetate diluted with the solvent tetrahydrofuran. Reaction is generally complete within minutes. The organomercurial compound is not isolated but is simply reduced *in situ* by sodium borohydride,  $\text{NaBH}_4$ . (The mercury is recovered as a ball of elemental mercury.)

Oxymercuration-demercuration is highly regiospecific, and gives alcohols corresponding to *Markovnikov* addition of water to the carbon-carbon double bond. For example:



Oxymercuration involves electrophilic addition to the carbon-carbon double bond, with the mercuric ion acting as electrophile. The absence of rearrangement

and the high degree of stereospecificity (typically *anti*)—in the oxymercuration step—argues against an open carbocation as intermediate. Instead, it has been proposed, there is formed a cyclic mercurinium ion, analogous to the bromonium



and chloronium ions involved in the addition of halogens. In 1971, Olah (p. 226) reported spectroscopic evidence for the preparation of stable solutions of such mercurinium ions, and they have since been observed in the gas phase.

The mercurinium ion is attacked by the nucleophilic solvent—water, in the present case—to yield the addition product. This attack is back-side (unless prevented by some structural feature) and the net result is *anti* addition, as in the addition of halogens (Sec. 8.18). Attack is thus of the  $S_N2$  type; yet the orientation of addition shows that the nucleophile becomes attached to the more highly substituted carbon—as though there were a carbocation intermediate. Here, as with a halonium ion, we have an unstable three-membered ring; when it reacts, the transition state evidently has much  $S_N1$  character (Sec. 8.19), and orientation is controlled by polar factors, not steric hindrance.

Although the demercuration reaction is not really understood, free radicals have been proposed as intermediates. Whatever the mechanism, demercuration is generally not stereospecific and can, in certain special cases, be accompanied by rearrangement.

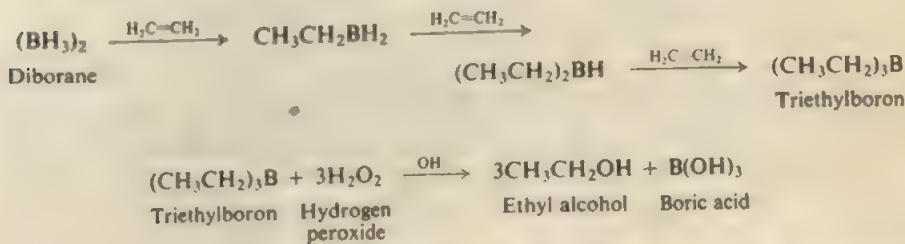
Despite the stereospecificity of the first stage, then, the overall process is not, in general, stereospecific. Rearrangements *can* occur, but are not common. The reaction of 3,3-dimethyl-1-butene illustrates the absence of the rearrangements that are typical of intermediate carbocations.

Mercuration can be carried out in different solvents to yield products other than alcohols. This use of *solvomercuration* as a general synthetic tool is due largely to H. C. Brown (p. 471).

**Problem 10.8** Predict the product of the reaction of propylene with mercuric acetate in methanol solution, followed by reduction with  $\text{NaBH}_4$ .

## 10.8 Hydroboration-oxidation

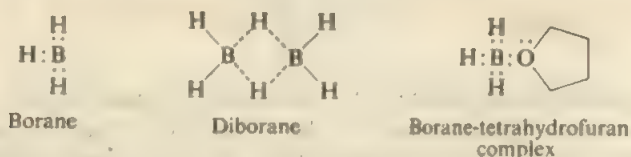
With the reagent *diborane*,  $(\text{BH}_3)_2$ , alkenes undergo *hydroboration* to yield alkylboranes,  $\text{R}_3\text{B}$ , which on oxidation give alcohols. For example:



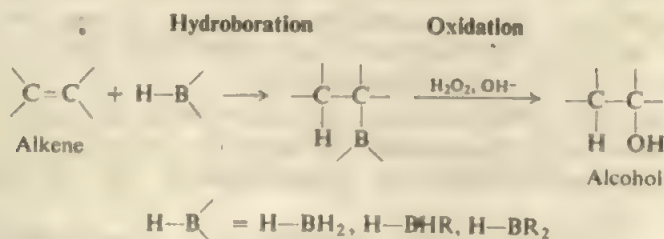
The reaction procedure is simple and convenient, the yields are exceedingly high, and, as we shall see, the products are ones difficult to obtain from alkenes in any other way.



Diborane is the dimer of the hypothetical  $\text{BH}_3$  (*borane*) and, in the reactions that concern us, acts much as though it were  $\text{BH}_3$ . Indeed, in tetrahydrofuran, one of the solvents used for hydroboration, the reagent exists as the monomer, in the form of an acid-base complex with the solvent.



Hydroboration involves addition to the double bond of  $\text{BH}_3$  (or, in following stages,  $\text{BH}_2\text{R}$  and  $\text{BHR}_2$ ), with hydrogen becoming attached to one doubly-bonded carbon, and boron to the other. The alkylborane can then undergo oxidation, in which the boron is replaced by  $\text{OH}$  (by a mechanism we shall encounter in Sec. 24.5).

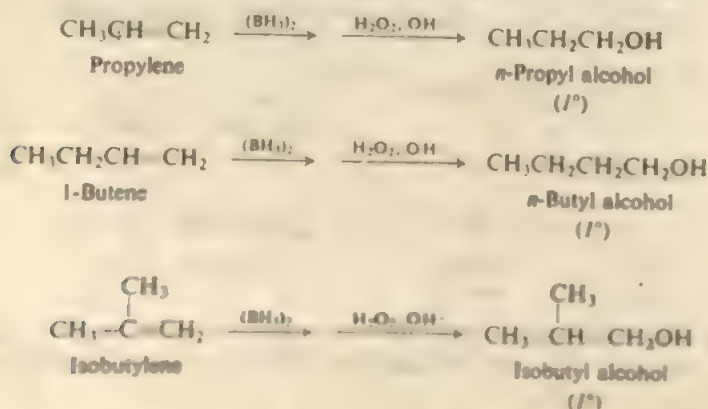


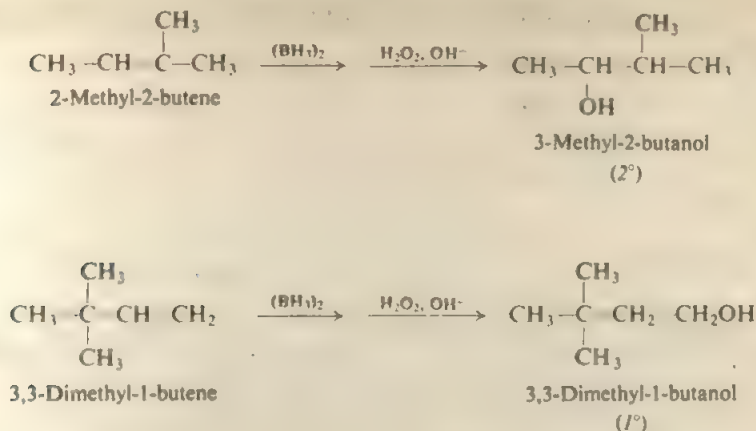
Thus, the two-stage reaction process of hydroboration-oxidation permits, in effect, the addition to the carbon-carbon double bond of the elements of  $\text{H}-\text{OH}$ .

Reaction is carried out in an ether, commonly tetrahydrofuran or "diglyme" (diethylene glycol methyl ether,  $\text{CH}_3\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_3$ ). Diborane is commercially available in tetrahydrofuran solution. The alkylboranes are not isolated, but are simply treated *in situ* with alkaline hydrogen peroxide.

## 10.9 Orientation and stereochemistry of hydroboration

Hydroboration-oxidation, then, converts alkenes into alcohols. Addition is highly regiospecific; the preferred product here, however, is exactly *opposite* to the one formed by oxymercuration-demercuration or by direct acid-catalyzed hydration. For example:

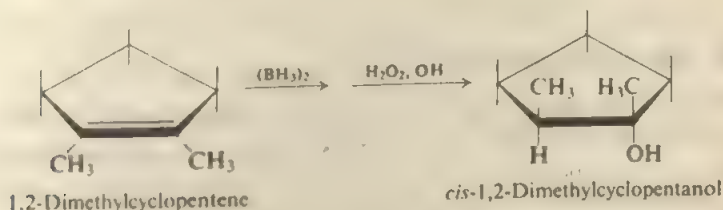




The hydroboration oxidation process gives products corresponding to **anti-Markovnikov** addition of water to the carbon-carbon double bond.

The reaction of 3,3-dimethyl-1-butene illustrates a particular advantage of the method. *Rearrangement does not occur in hydroboration*—evidently because carbocations are not intermediates—and hence the method can be used without the complications that often accompany other addition reactions.

The reaction of 1,2-dimethylcyclopentene illustrates the stereochemistry of the synthesis: *hydroboration-oxidation involves overall syn-addition*.

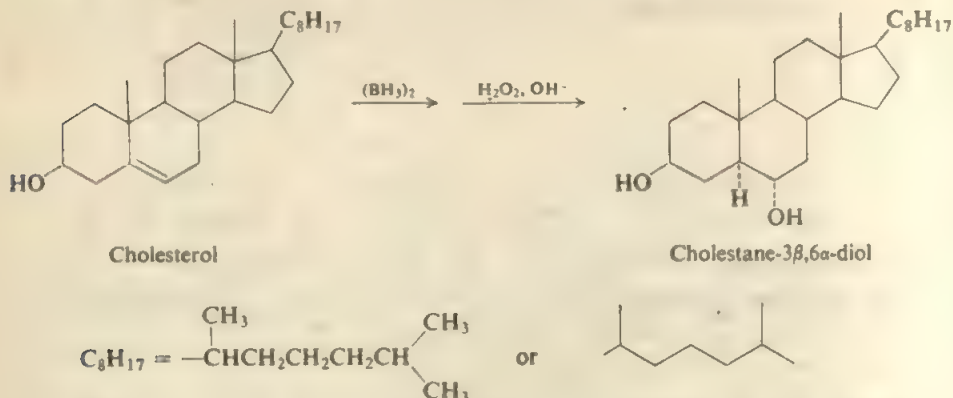


Through a combination of features of which we take up only three—orientation, stereochemistry, and freedom from rearrangements—hydroboration-oxidation gains its great synthetic utility; it gives a set of alcohols not obtainable from alkenes by other methods and, through these alcohols (Sec. 11.13), provides a convenient route to corresponding members of many chemical families.

We catch here a brief glimpse of just one of the many applications of hydroboration to organic synthesis that have been discovered by H. C. Brown (of Purdue University). Although generally recognized as an outstanding organic chemist, Professor Brown was originally trained as an inorganic chemist, in the laboratory of H. I. Schlesinger at the University of Chicago. It was in this laboratory—in the course of a search for volatile uranium compounds, during World War II—that lithium aluminum hydride and sodium borohydride (Sec. 18.10) were first made and their reducing properties first observed, and it was here that Brown's interest in borohydrides originated—an interest that culminated in his receiving the Nobel Prize in 1979.

The examples we have used to show the fundamentals of hydroboration-oxidation have been, necessarily, simple ones. In practice, synthesis generally

involves more complicated molecules, but the principles remain the same. For example:



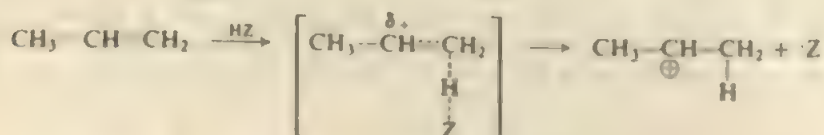
**Problem 10.9** Predict the products of hydroboration-oxidation of:  
 (a) (*E*)-3-methyl-2-pentene; (b) (*Z*)-3-methyl-2-pentene; (c) 1-methylcyclohexene.

**Problem 10.10** The stereochemistry of hydroboration-oxidation is the *net* result of the stereochemistry of the two steps. The hydroboration step has been shown to involve *syn*-addition. What, then, must the stereochemistry of the oxidation step be?

## 10.10 Mechanism of hydroboration

Much of the usefulness of hydroboration-oxidation lies in the “unusual” orientation of the hydration. The  $-\text{OH}$  takes the position occupied by boron in the intermediate alkylborane, and hence the final product reflects the orientation of the hydroboration step. Is this orientation really “unusual”?

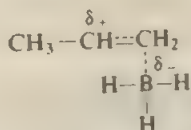
The orientation appears to be unusual because hydrogen adds to the opposite end of the double bond from where it adds in ordinary electrophilic addition. But the fundamental idea in electrophilic addition is that the *electrophilic* part of the reagent—the *acidic* part—becomes attached, using the  $\pi$  electrons, in such a way that the carbon being deprived of the  $\pi$  electrons is the one best able to stand the deprivation. In the addition of  $\text{HZ}$  to propylene, for example, the proton attaches itself to  $\text{C}_1$ ; in that way the positive charge develops on  $\text{C}_2$ , where it can be dispersed by the methyl group. A secondary carbocation is formed instead of a primary.



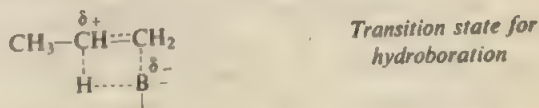
Now, what is the center of acidity in  $\text{BH}_3$ ? Clearly, *boron*, with only six electrons. It is not at all surprising that boron should seek out the  $\pi$  electrons of the double bond and begin to attach itself to carbon. In doing this, it attaches itself in



such a way that the positive charge can develop on the carbon best able to accommodate it. Thus:



Unlike ordinary electrophilic addition, however, the reaction does not proceed to give a carbocation. As the transition state is approached, the carbon that is losing the  $\pi$  electrons becomes itself increasingly acidic: electron-deficient boron is acidic but so, too, is electron-deficient carbon. Not too far away is a hydrogen atom held to boron by a pair of electrons. Carbon begins to take that hydrogen, with its electron pair; boron, as it gains the  $\pi$  electrons, is increasingly willing to release that hydrogen. Boron and hydrogen both add to the doubly-bonded carbons in the same transition state:



In view of the basic nature of alkenes and the acidic nature of  $\text{BH}_3$ , the principal driving force of the reaction is almost certainly *attachment of boron to carbon*. In the transition state attachment of boron to C-1 has proceeded to a greater extent than attachment of hydrogen to C-2. Thus loss of ( $\pi$ ) electrons by C-2 to the C<sub>1</sub>-B bond exceeds its gain of electrons from hydrogen, and so C-2, the carbon that can best accommodate the charge, has become positive.

On theoretical grounds (Chap. 33) it has been postulated that the step we have described must follow a preliminary step in which boron attaches itself to both carbon atoms, or perhaps to the  $\pi$  electrons.

Thus orientation of addition in hydroboration is controlled in fundamentally the same way as in two-step electrophilic addition. Hydrogen becomes attached to opposite ends of the double bond in the two reactions because it adds without electrons in one case (as a *proton*, an acid), and with electrons in the other case (as a *hydride ion*, a base).

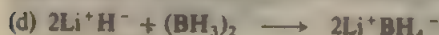
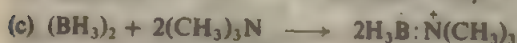
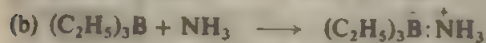
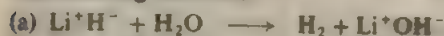
Because of the Lowry-Bronsted treatment of acids and bases, we tend to think of hydrogen chiefly in its proton character. Actually, its hydride character has considerably more *reality*. Solid lithium hydride, for example, has an ionic crystalline lattice made up of  $\text{Li}^+$  and  $\text{H}^-$ ; by contrast, a naked unsolvated proton is not encountered by the organic chemist.

We are already familiar with the *facile transfer of hydride from carbon to carbon*: within a single molecule (hydride shift in rearrangements), and between molecules (abstracted by carbocation, Sec. 8.21). Later on we shall encounter a set of remarkably versatile reducing agents (hydrides like *lithium aluminum hydride*,  $\text{LiAlH}_4$ , and *sodium borohydride*,  $\text{NaBH}_4$ ) that function by transfer of hydride ion to organic molecules.

The orientation of hydroboration is affected, not just by the polar factor we have just described, but also by a steric factor. attachment of the boron moiety of the reagent (not just  $\text{BH}_2$ ; remember, but the larger  $-\text{BHR}$  and  $-\text{BR}_2$ ) takes place more readily to the less crowded carbon of the double bond. Since this in general would lead to the same orientation as would the polar factor alone, it is not

easy to tell which factor is in control. We can, however, expect this much: the bulkier the substituents on the alkene, the more important the steric factor; the more strongly electron-releasing or electron-withdrawing the substituents, the more important the polar factor.

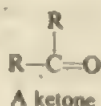
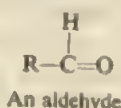
**Problem 10.11** Identify the acids and bases (Lewis or Lowry-Bronsted) in each of the following reactions:



## 10.11 Aldehydes and ketones: an introduction

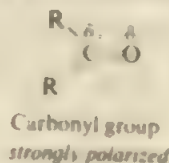
To discuss the chemistry of alkyl halides and alkenes, we found it necessary in Chapter 6 to learn something about alcohols. In the same way, to discuss the chemistry of alcohols, we need to know something about another class of compounds, the *aldehydes* and *ketones*.

Aldehydes and ketones have the general formulas:



The functional group of both is the **carbonyl group**,  $-\text{C}=\text{O}$ , and, as we shall see later (Chap. 18), aldehydes and ketones resemble each other closely in most of their reactions. Like the carbon-carbon double bond, the carbonyl group is unsaturated, and like the carbon-carbon double bond, it undergoes addition. But this addition differs in several important ways from addition to the carbon-carbon double bond.

Since the electrons of the carbonyl double bond hold together atoms of quite different electronegativity, they are not shared equally; in particular, the mobile  $\pi$  cloud is pulled strongly toward the more electronegative atom, oxygen. As a result, carbonyl carbon is electron-deficient and carbonyl oxygen is electron-rich.

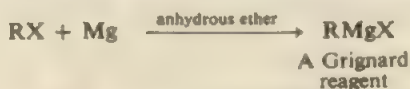


This strong polarization of the carbonyl group has two important consequences. First, we are in no doubt as to the orientation of addition to a carbonyl group: whatever the mechanism involved, addition of an unsymmetrical reagent is oriented so that the nucleophilic (basic) portion attaches itself to carbon, and the electrophilic (acidic) portion attaches itself to oxygen. Second, the electron-deficient carbonyl carbon is especially susceptible to attack by nucleophiles. Where the typical reaction of alkenes is electrophilic addition, the typical reaction of aldehydes and ketones is nucleophilic addition.

At this point we shall be concerned with just one example of such addition.

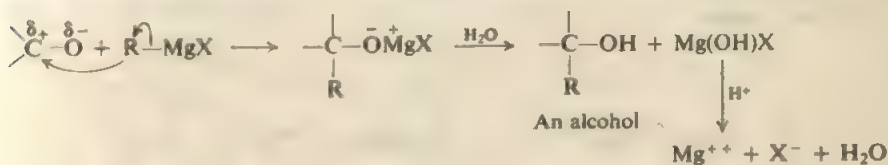
## 10.12 Grignard synthesis of alcohols

The Grignard reagent, we recall, has the formula  $\text{RMgX}$ , and is prepared by the reaction of metallic magnesium with the appropriate organic halide (Sec. 3.16). This halide can be alkyl ( $1^\circ$ ,  $2^\circ$ ,  $3^\circ$ ), allylic, aralkyl (e.g., benzyl), or aryl (phenyl or



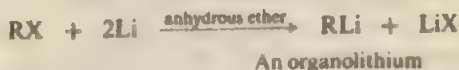
substituted phenyl). The halogen may be  $-\text{Cl}$ ,  $-\text{Br}$  or  $-\text{I}$ . (Arylmagnesium chlorides must be made in the cyclic ether tetrahydrofuran instead of diethyl ether.)

One of the most important uses of the Grignard reagent lies in its reaction with aldehydes and ketones. The carbon-magnesium bond of the Grignard reagent is a highly polar bond, carbon being negative relative to electropositive magnesium. It is not surprising, then, that in the addition to carbonyl compounds, the organic group becomes attached to carbon and magnesium to oxygen. The product is the



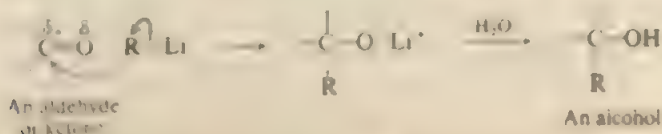
magnesium salt of the weakly acidic alcohol and is easily converted into the alcohol itself by the addition of the stronger acid, water. Since the  $\text{Mg}(\text{OH})\text{X}$  thus formed is a gelatinous material difficult to handle, dilute mineral acid ( $\text{HCl}$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) is commonly used instead of water, so that water-soluble magnesium salts are formed.

Grignard reagents are the classical reagents for such syntheses. Increasingly, however, *organolithium* compounds are being used instead, chiefly because they are less prone to unwanted side-reactions. Organolithiums can be prepared in the same way as Grignard reagents, by reaction of the metal with organic halides. Because lithium is more electropositive than magnesium, carbon-lithium bonds are more



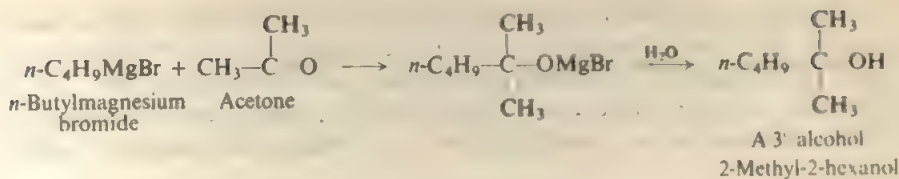
polar than carbon-magnesium bonds; carbon is more negative—more carbanion-like—and organolithiums are in general somewhat more reactive than Grignard reagents.

Organolithiums react with aldehydes and ketones in the same manner that we have shown for Grignard reagents, and yield the same kinds of products. We shall consider this reaction to be an extension of Grignard's original synthesis. We shall refer to the general method as the *Grignard synthesis of alcohols*, and often discuss

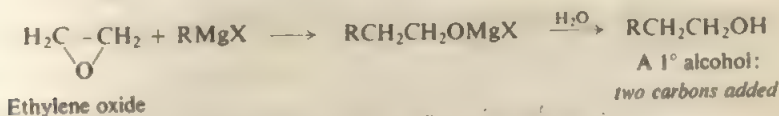




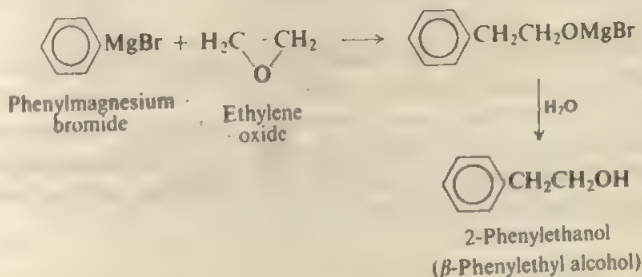




A related synthesis utilizes *ethylene oxide* (Sec. 12.14) to make *primary alcohols* containing two more carbons than the Grignard reagent. Here, too, the organic group



becomes attached to carbon and magnesium to oxygen, this time with the breaking of a carbon-oxygen  $\sigma$  bond in the highly strained three-membered ring (Sec. 8.19). For example:



## 10.14 Formation of carbon-carbon bonds. Role played by organometallic compounds

Why is the kind of synthesis that we have just described so important? Because we have taken two organic molecules and converted them into a bigger molecule. We have done something that lies at the heart of organic synthesis: *we have formed a carbon-carbon bond*. Let us look more closely at this process, and at the special role played by organometallic compounds.

Carbon-carbon bonds are most commonly formed heterolytically. This means that one of the carbons furnishes a pair of electrons, and the other carbon accepts them—that is, reaction occurs between a nucleophilic carbon and an electrophilic carbon.

Except for hydrogen or another carbon, the elements that we generally find attached to carbon are more electronegative than carbon, and pull electrons away from it—halogen in alkyl halides, for example, or oxygen in aldehydes and ketones. The carbon in such compounds is electron-deficient and hence *electrophilic*; it tends to react with nucleophiles. And so, we find alkyl halides typically undergoing nucleophilic substitution, and aldehydes and ketones typically undergoing nucleophilic addition.

Now, if such reactions are to result in the formation of a carbon-carbon bond, we must use reagents in which the nucleophilic element is carbon. Where are we to find such reagents? The answer is: *in organometallic compounds*. Just as electronegative elements make carbon electrophilic, so electropositive elements—metals—make carbon nucleophilic. It is reaction between the nucleophilic carbon



of an organometallic reagent and the electrophilic carbon of a substrate that gives rise to a new carbon-carbon bond.

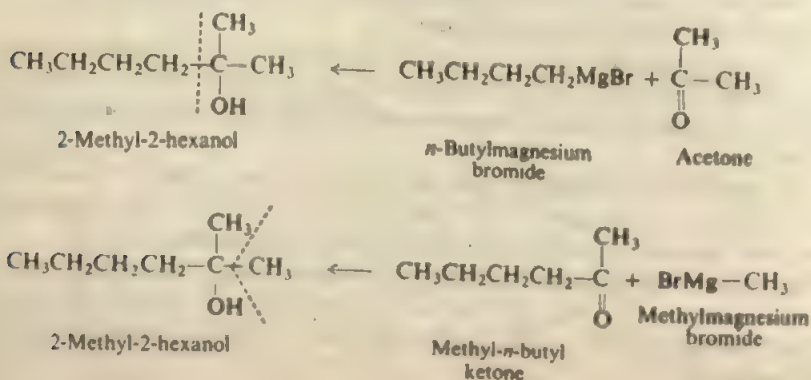
Organometallic compounds are most commonly synthesized from organic halides. In this synthesis, the nature of carbon is changed, from electrophilic to nucleophilic. This reaction is perhaps the oldest and simplest example of what is called *umpolung*, that is, the reversal of polarity of carbon. The concept of *umpolung* is applied today in a variety of ways in an effort to create nucleophilic carbon. In the formation of an organometallic compound, the electrons that make carbon electron-rich come ultimately from the free metal, as it does what metals, by their very nature, do: give up electrons.

We saw earlier one use of organometallic reagents in making carbon-carbon bonds: the Corey-House synthesis of hydrocarbons. Compared with that reaction the Grignard synthesis has a special advantage: not only is a new carbon-carbon bond formed, but the product contains the highly versatile functional group, —OH. As we shall soon see, the way is open to further synthesis, and the building of still bigger and more elaborate structures.

### 10.15 Planning a Grignard synthesis

How do we decide which Grignard reagent and which carbonyl compound to use in preparing a particular alcohol? We have only to look at the structure of the alcohol we want. Of groups attached to the carbon bearing the —OH group, one must come from the Grignard reagent, the other two (including any hydrogens) must come from the carbonyl compound.

Most alcohols can be obtained from more than one combination of reagents; we usually choose the combination that is most readily available. Consider, for example, the synthesis of 2-methyl-2-hexanol:





As shown, we could make this either from the four-carbon Grignard reagent and acetone, or from the methyl Grignard reagent and the six-carbon aliphatic ketone. As we shall know when we have studied aldehydes and ketones (Chap. 18), the first route uses the more readily available carbonyl compound and is the one actually used to make this alcohol.

## 10.16 Limitations of the Grignard synthesis

The very reactivity that makes a Grignard reagent so useful strictly limits how we may use it. We must keep this reactivity in mind when we plan the experimental conditions of the synthesis, when we select the halide that is to become the Grignard reagent, and when we select the compound with which it is to react.

In our first encounter with the Grignard reagent (Sec. 3.16), we allowed it to react with water to form an alkane; the stronger acid, water, displaced the extremely weak acid, the alkane, from its salt. In the same way, *any* compound containing hydrogen attached to an electronegative element—oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, or even triply-bonded carbon—is acidic enough to decompose a Grignard reagent. A Grignard reagent reacts rapidly with oxygen and carbon dioxide, and with nearly every organic compound containing a carbon-oxygen or carbon-nitrogen multiple bond.

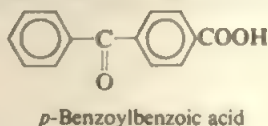
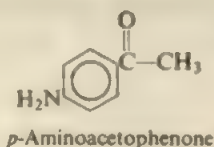
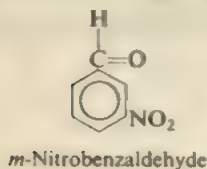
How does all this affect our reaction between a Grignard reagent and, say, an aldehyde? First of all, alkyl halide, aldehyde, and the ether used as solvent must be scrupulously dried and freed of the alcohol from which each was very probably made; a Grignard reagent will not even form in the presence of water. Our apparatus must be completely dry before we start. We must protect the reaction system from the water vapor, oxygen, and carbon dioxide of the air: water vapor can be kept out by use of calcium chloride tubes, and oxygen and carbon dioxide can be swept out of the system with dry nitrogen. Having done all this we may hope to obtain a good yield of product—providing we have properly chosen the halide and the aldehyde.

We cannot prepare a Grignard reagent from a compound (e.g.,  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$ ) that contains, in addition to halogen, some group (e.g.,  $-\text{OH}$ ) that will react with a Grignard reagent; if this were tried, as fast as a molecule of Grignard reagent formed it would react with the active group ( $-\text{OH}$ ) in another molecule to yield an undesired product ( $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CH}_2-\text{H}$ ).

We must be particularly watchful in the preparation of an arylmagnesium halide, in view of the wide variety of substituents that might be present on the benzene ring. Carboxyl ( $-\text{COOH}$ ), hydroxyl ( $-\text{OH}$ ), amino ( $-\text{NH}_2$ ), and  $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$  all contain hydrogen attached to oxygen or nitrogen, and therefore are so acidic that they will decompose a Grignard reagent. We have just learned that a Grignard reagent adds to the carbonyl group ( $\text{C}=\text{O}$ ), and we shall learn that it adds similarly to  $-\text{COOR}$  and  $-\text{C}\equiv\text{N}$  groups. The nitro ( $-\text{NO}_2$ ) group oxidizes a Grignard reagent. It turns out that only a comparatively few groups may be present in the halide molecule from which we prepare a Grignard reagent; among these are  $-\text{R}$ ,  $-\text{Ar}$ ,  $-\text{OR}$ , and  $-\text{Cl}$  (of an aryl chloride).

By the same token, the aldehyde (or other compound) with which a Grignard reagent is to react may not contain other groups that are reactive toward a Grignard

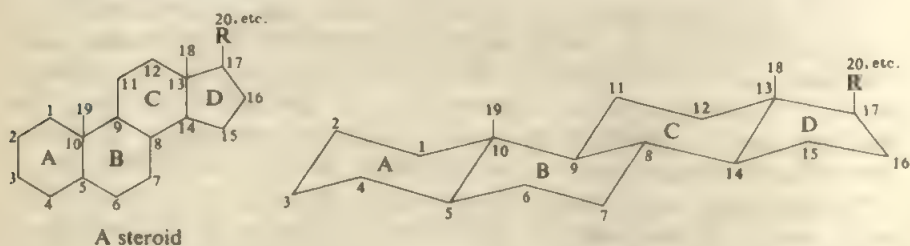
reagent. For example, a Grignard reagent would be decomposed before it could add to the carbonyl group of:



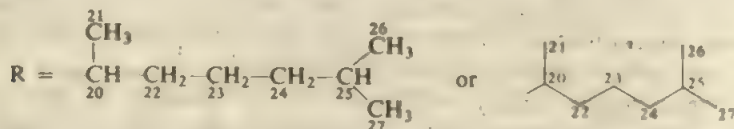
These may seem like severe limitations, and they are. Nevertheless, the number of acceptable combinations is so great that the Grignard reagent is one of our most valuable synthetic tools. The kind of precautions described here must be taken in any kind of organic synthesis: we must not restrict our attention to the group we happen to be interested in, but must look for possible interference by other functional groups.

## 10.17 Steroids

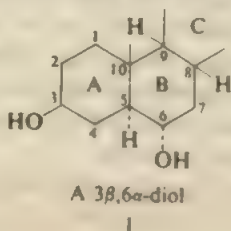
*Cholesterol* (p. 472), notorious as the substance deposited on the walls of arteries and as the chief constituent of gallstones, is the kind of alcohol called a *sterol*. Sterols belong, in turn, to the class of compounds called **steroids**: compounds of the general formula



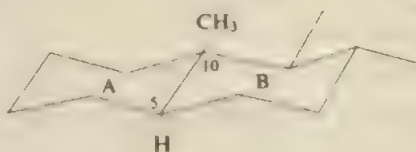
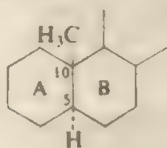
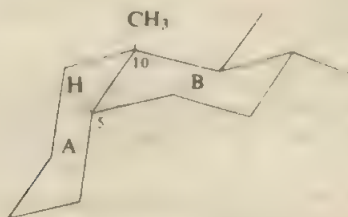
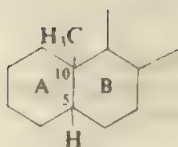
The rings are (generally) aliphatic. Lines like the vertical ones attached to the 10- and 13-positions represent *angular methyl groups*. Commonly, in cholesterol, for example,



Stereochemistry is indicated by solid lines ( $\beta$ -bonds, coming out of the plane of the paper) and broken lines ( $\alpha$ -bonds, going behind the plane of the paper).

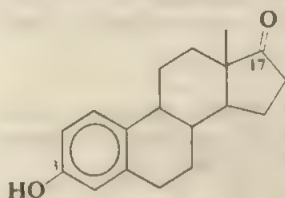


Thus in I the  $\text{—H}$  and  $\text{—OH}$  at the 5- and 6-positions are *cis* to each other, but *trans* to the 3-OH and to the angular methyl at the 10-position. Fusion of the rings to each other can be *cis* or *trans*, thus increasing the complications of the stereochemistry.

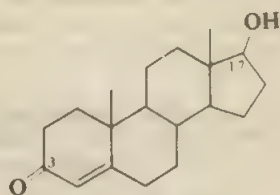
*trans*-Fusion*cis*-Fusion

Finally, in any rigid cyclic system like this, conformational effects are marked, and often completely control the course of reaction.

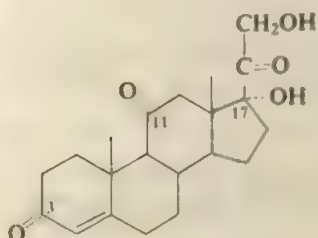
Steroids include sex hormones and adrenal cortical hormones (*cortisone* is one), cardiac glycosides, and bile acids. Because of their biological importance—and, undoubtedly, because of the fascinating complexity of the chemistry—the study of steroids has been, and is now, one of the most active areas of organic chemical research.



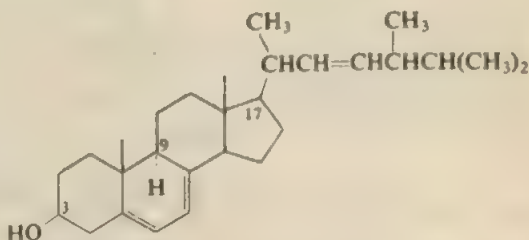
Estrone  
An estrogen, or  
female sex hormone



Testosterone  
An androgen, or  
male sex hormone



Cortisone  
An adrenocortical  
hormone



Ergosterol  
A precursor of  
Vitamin D



## PROBLEMS

1. (a) Ignoring enantiomerism, draw the structures of the eight isomeric pentyl alcohols,  $C_5H_{11}OH$ . (b) Name each by the IUPAC system. (c) Label each as primary, secondary, or tertiary. (d) Which one is isopentyl alcohol? *n*-Pentyl alcohol? *tert*-Pentyl alcohol? (e) Give the structure of a primary, a secondary, and a tertiary alcohol of the formula  $C_6H_{13}OH$ . (f) Give the structure of a primary, a secondary, and a tertiary *cyclic* alcohol of the formula  $C_5H_9OH$ .

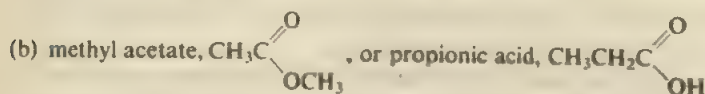
2. Without referring to tables, arrange the following compounds in order of decreasing boiling point:

- (a) 3-hexanol
- (b) *n*-hexane
- (c) 2-methyl-2-pentanol
- (d) *n*-octyl alcohol
- (e) *n*-hexyl alcohol

3. Looking at the beginning of each chapter for the structure involved, tell which families of compounds discussed in this book can: (a) form hydrogen bonds with other molecules of the same kind; (b) form hydrogen bonds with water.

4. Which compound would you expect to have the higher boiling point? (Check your answers in the proper tables.)

- (a) *p*-cresol ( $p\text{-CH}_3C_6H_4OH$ ) or anisole ( $C_6H_5OCH_3$ )



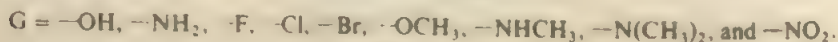
- (c) propionic acid or *n*-pentyl alcohol.

5. Consider the possible synthesis of the eight isomeric pentyl alcohols of Problem 1(a) by oxymercuration-demercuration and hydroboration-oxidation. For each alcohol show the alkene or alkenes (if any) from which it could be made in pure form, and the synthetic method that would be used in each case.

6. Give structures of the Grignard reagent and the substrate (aldehyde, ketone, or ethylene oxide) that would react to yield each of the following alcohols. If more than one combination of reactants is possible, show each of the combinations.

- (a) (h) each of the isomeric pentyl alcohols of Problem 1(a)
- (i) 1-phenyl-1-propanol
- (j) 2-phenyl-2-propanol
- (k) 1-phenyl-2-propanol
- (l) 3-phenyl-1-propanol
- (m) 1-methylcyclohexanol
- (n) cyclohexylcarbinol (cyclohexylmethanol)
- (o) 1-cyclohexylethanol
- (p) 2,4-dimethyl-3-pentanol
- (q) triphenylcarbinol,  $(C_6H_5)_3COH$

7. For many 2-substituted ethanols,  $GCH_2CH_2OH$ , the *gauche* conformation is more stable than the *anti*:



How might this be accounted for?

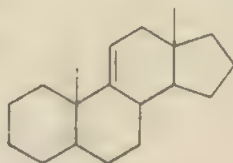
8. Some Grignard reagents or organolithiums can be prepared by methods other than reaction of an organic halide with the metal. An important example is



What fundamental type of reaction does this preparation represent? What does it reveal about the properties of the two hydrocarbons, acetylene and ethane?

9. (a) As shown in Sec. 10.9, cholesterol is converted into cholestane-3 $\beta$ ,6 $\alpha$ -diol through *syn*-hydration by hydroboration-oxidation. What stereoisomeric product could also have been formed by *syn*-hydration? Actually, the reaction gives a 78% yield of cholestane-3 $\beta$ ,6 $\alpha$ -diol, and only a small amount of its stereoisomer. What factor do you think is responsible for this particular stereospecificity? (Hint: See Sec. 10.17.)

(b) Hydroboration of androst-9(11)-ene gives 90% of a single stereoisomer. Which would you expect this to be?



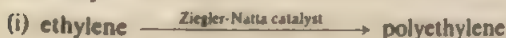
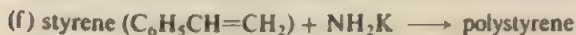
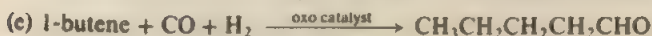
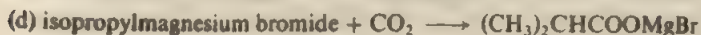
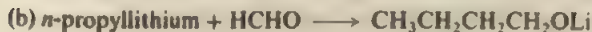
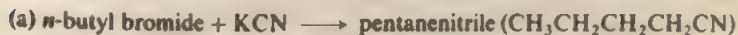
Androst-9(11)-ene

10. (a) Using models and then drawing formulas, show the possible chair conformations for *cis*-1,3-cyclohexanediol. (b) On the basis solely of 1,3-interaction, which would you expect to be the more stable conformation? (c) Infrared evidence indicates intramolecular hydrogen bonding in *cis*-1,3-cyclohexanediol. Just how would the infrared spectrum show this? Which conformation in (a) is indicated by this evidence, and what is the source of its stability?

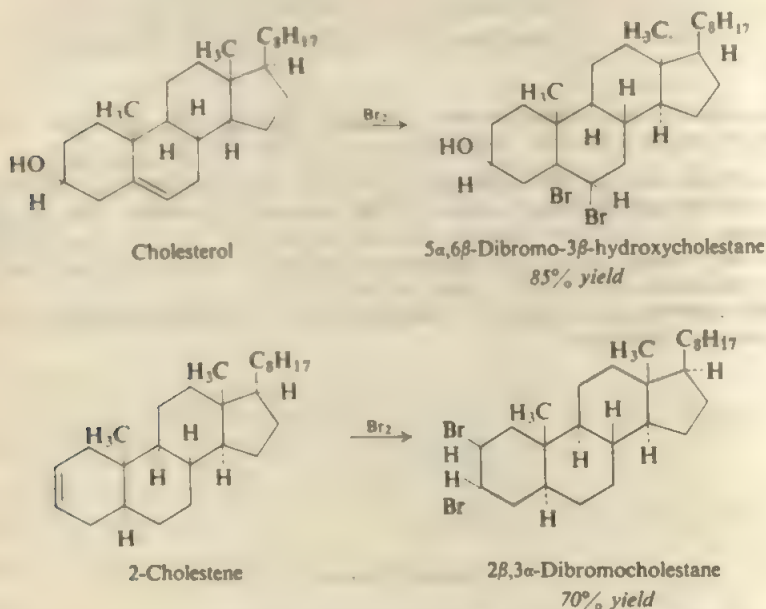
11. The infrared spectrum of the stereoisomer of 2,5-di-*tert*-butyl-1,4-cyclohexanediol in which all four substituents are *cis* to each other shows the presence of an intramolecular hydrogen bond. In what conformation does the molecule exist? (Hint: Use models.)

12. The carbon-metal bond in *n*-propyllithium is more polar than that in *n*-propylmagnesium bromide, but is still essentially covalent. Spectroscopic studies of allyllithium show that it contains four equivalent hydrogens. What does this suggest about the structure of the molecule? How do you account for this?

13. In each of the following examples of carbon-carbon bond formation, show (where you can) the step in which this bond is formed. Identify the nucleophilic carbon and the electrophilic carbon.



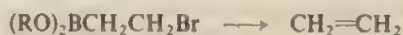
14. (a) What are the two diastereomeric products that could be formed by *anti*-addition of bromine to cholesterol? To 2-cholestene? (b) Actually, one product greatly predominates in each case, as shown:



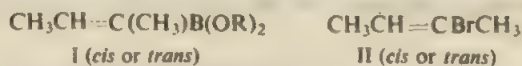
How do you account for the observed stereochemistry? (It is *not* a matter of relative stability of the diastereomers.) (*Hint*: Consider carefully the stereochemical possibilities at each step of the mechanism.)

15. When (*E*)-3-methyl-2-pentene reacts with CO and H<sub>2</sub> in the presence of RhH(CO)(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>, there is obtained (to the extent of 95%) racemic *threo*-2,3-dimethyl-1-pentanol. What is the stereochemistry of this reaction? How do you account for it?

16. On treatment with a variety of reagents (water, for example), borate esters of the kind shown are converted into alkenes:



The *cis* and *trans* esters (I) were prepared, and their configurations were assigned by NMR. Each ester was treated with bromine, and the resulting dibromide was treated with water, *cis*-I gave only *trans*-II as the final product, and *trans*-I gave only *cis*-II.



Making use of what you know about the addition of bromine to alkenes, what do you conclude about the stereochemistry of this elimination reaction? Show the most likely mechanism for the elimination, including the part played by water.



## Alcohols II. Reactions

### 11.1 Chemistry of the —OH group

The chemical properties of an alcohol, ROH, are determined by its functional group, —OH, the hydroxyl group. When we have learned the chemistry of the alcohols, we shall have learned much of the chemistry of the hydroxyl group in whatever compound it may occur; we shall know, in part at least, what to expect of hydroxyhalides, hydroxyacids, hydroxyaldehydes, etc.

Reactions of an alcohol can involve the breaking of either of two bonds: the C—OH bond, with removal of the —OH group; or the O—H bond, with removal of —H. Either kind of reaction can involve substitution, in which a group replaces the —OH or —H, or elimination, in which a double bond is formed.

We are already acquainted with some of the chemical properties of alcohols: their acidity and basicity, their nucleophilic power, their conversion into compounds of many kinds —alkyl halides and sulfonates, ethers, alkenes. We have seen how the —OH group —either directly or, more often, via an alkyl halide or sulfonate— can be replaced by a host of other groups, or be eliminated to form a carbon—carbon double bond. In this chapter we shall review that familiar chemistry, going more deeply into some of it.

But we shall take up a good deal of new chemistry, too. We shall look at an entirely different facet of the chemistry of alcohols: their conversion into oxygen compounds of higher oxidation states: aldehydes and ketones, and carboxylic acids. We shall see how, by combining the chemistry of this chapter with that of the preceding one, we can broaden our approach to organic synthesis. Finally, with reactions of alcohols as convenient models, we shall begin the study of two topics that are new to us and absolutely basic to an understanding of organic chemistry: *neighboring group effects*, and the concept of *heterotopic ligands and faces*.

### 11.2 Reactions

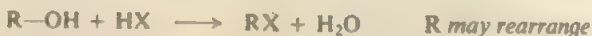
Some of the more important reactions of alcohols are listed below, and are discussed in following sections.

## REACTIONS OF ALCOHOLS

## C-OH BOND CLEAVAGE



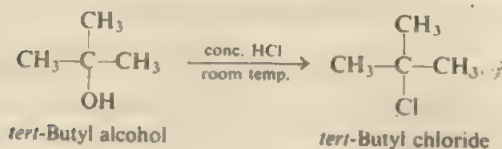
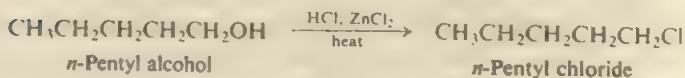
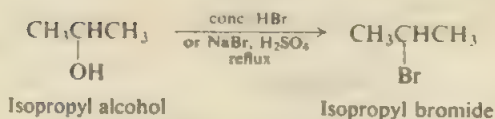
1. Reaction with hydrogen halides. Discussed in Secs. 6.32 and 11.3



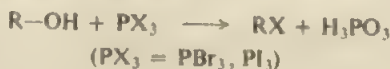
Reactivity of HX:  $\text{HI} > \text{HBr} > \text{HCl}$

Reactivity of ROH: allyl, benzyl  $> 3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ$

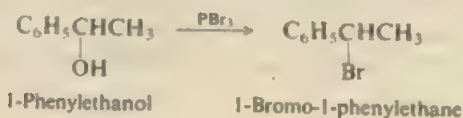
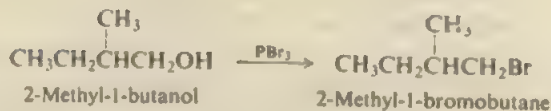
Examples:



2. Reaction with phosphorus trihalides. Discussed in Sec. 11.13.

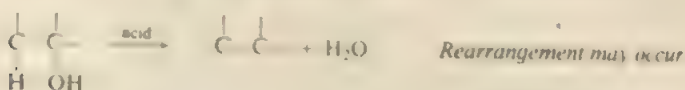


Examples:

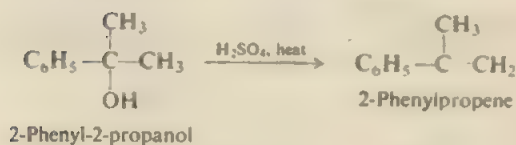
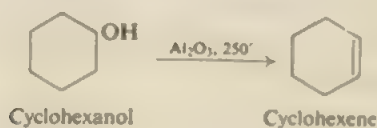
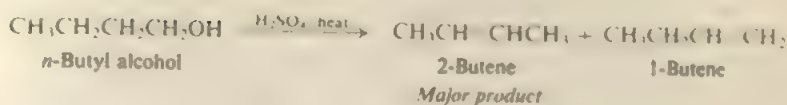


CONT.

## 3. Dehydration. Discussed in Secs. 7.28 and 11.3.

Reactivity of ROH:  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ$ 

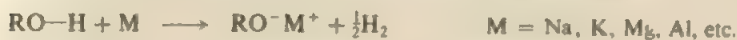
Examples:



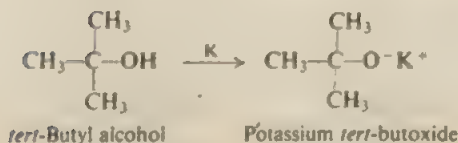
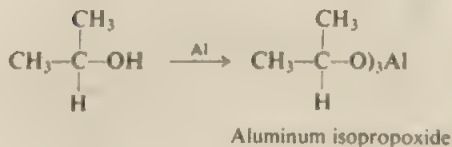
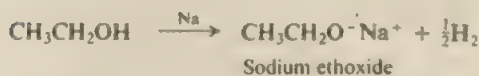
## O-H BOND CLEAVAGE



## 4. Reaction as acids: reaction with active metals. Discussed in Sec. 11.7

Reactivity of ROH:  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH} > 1^\circ > 2^\circ > 3^\circ$ 

Examples:

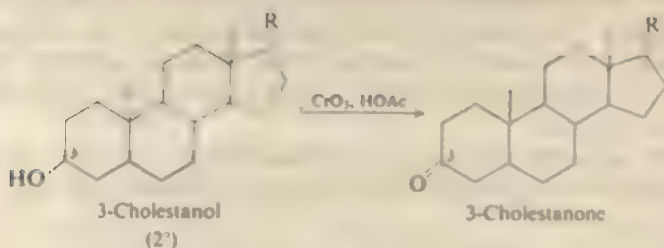


CONT.





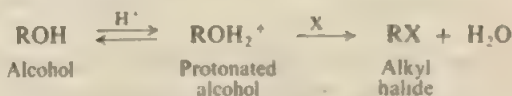
CONT



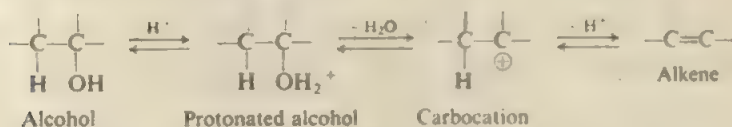
We can see that alcohols undergo many kinds of reactions, to yield many kinds of products. Because of the availability of alcohols, each of these reactions is one of the best ways to make the particular kind of product. After we have learned a little more about the reactions themselves, we shall look at some of the ways in which they can be applied to synthetic problems.

### 11.3 Cleavage of the C---OH bond

We have already studied two important reactions of alcohols: their reaction with hydrogen halides to form alkyl halides,



and their dehydration to form alkenes.



These are, of course, examples of the two principal types of reactions that we have studied so far, nucleophilic substitution and elimination.

Each of these reactions requires the presence of acid to convert the alcohol into the actual substrate, the *protonated* alcohol. Whether the reaction is substitution or elimination, and whether it follows a bimolecular or unimolecular mechanism, the carbon-oxygen bond must undergo heterolytic cleavage—the substrate must lose a leaving group. The protonated alcohol readily loses the weakly basic water molecule. The unprotonated alcohol would have to lose the strongly basic hydroxide ion, a process so difficult that it seldom if ever happens.

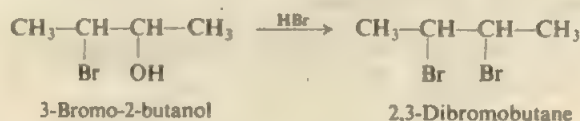
Alcohols are the precursors of a wide variety of compounds in which the —OH group has been lost: replaced by some other group, or eliminated with formation of a double bond. But this loss of —OH is not brought about directly, in a single step, from the alcohol itself; it must be brought about indirectly, by first converting the alcohol into something else; the very poor leaving group must be converted into a good leaving group. The simplest way to accomplish this is through protonation. But the acidic medium required for protonation severely limits us in our choice of

nucleophiles or bases; any appreciably basic reagent will rapidly neutralize the acid. With only a weak nucleophile or a weak base present, reaction tends to follow a unimolecular mechanism: via carbocations, and hence with the likelihood of rearrangement. As we shall discuss in Sec. 11.8, there is another way to change the  $-OH$  into a good leaving group: more elaborate than protonation, but with certain important advantages.

Now let us look at an example of acid-catalyzed substitution in an alcohol—a very special example, which changed the course of organic chemistry.

### 11.4 Neighboring group effects: the discovery. Stereochemistry

When treated with concentrated hydrobromic acid, the bromohydrin 3-bromo-2-butanol is converted into 2,3-dibromobutane. This, we say, involves nothing out of the ordinary; it is simply nucleophilic attack ( $S_N1$  or  $S_N2$ ) by bromide ion on the protonated alcohol (Sec. 6.32). But in 1939 Saul Winstein (p. 257) and Howard J. Lucas (California Institute of Technology) described the stereochemistry of this reaction and, in doing this, opened the door to an entirely new concept in organic chemistry: the *neighboring group effect*.



First, Winstein and Lucas found (Fig. 11.1) that (racemic) *erythro* bromohydrin yields only the *meso* dibromide, and (racemic) *threo* bromohydrin yields only the

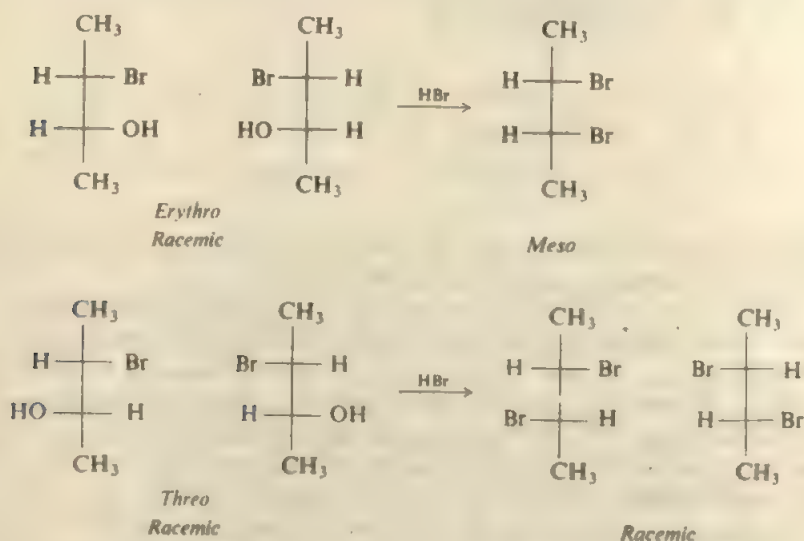
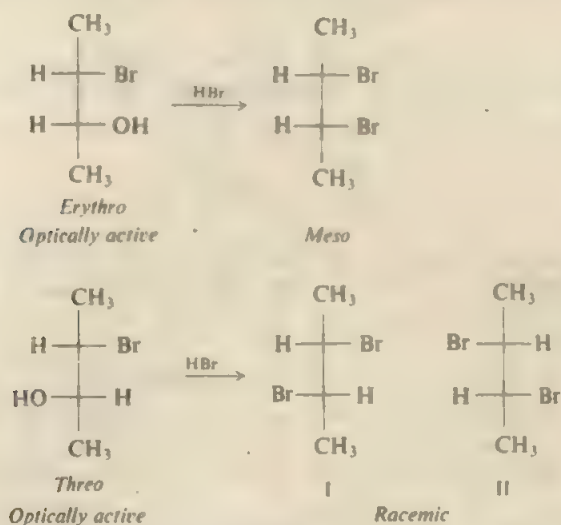


Figure 11.1. Conversion of racemic 3-bromo-2-butanol isomers into 2,3-dibromobutanes.

*racemic* dibromide. Apparently, then, reaction proceeds with complete retention of configuration—unusual for nucleophilic substitution. But something even more unusual was still to come.



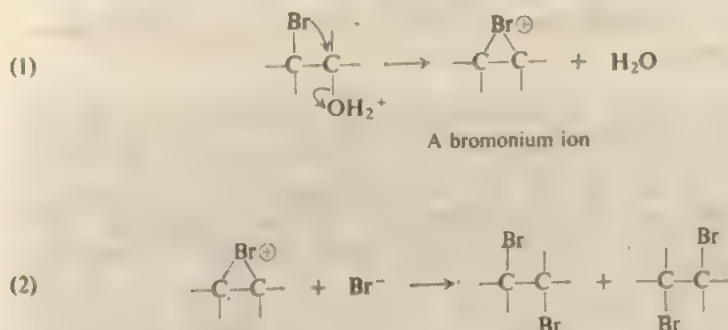
They carried out the same reaction again but this time used *optically active* starting materials (Fig. 11.2). From optically active *erythro* bromohydrin they obtained, of course, optically inactive product, the *meso* dibromide. But *optically active threo* bromohydrin also yielded optically inactive product, the *racemic* dibromide



**Figure 11.2.** Conversion of optically active 3-bromo-2-butanol into 2,3-dibromobutanes.

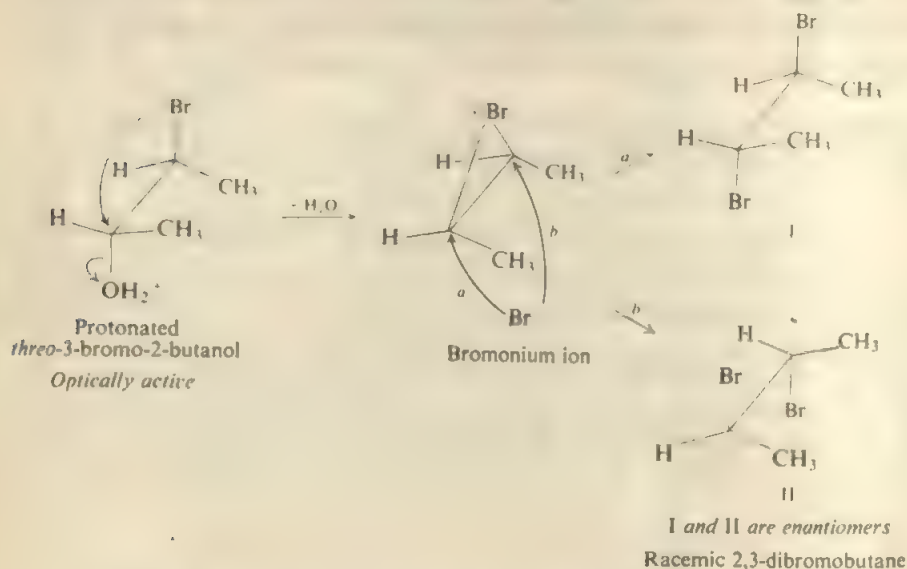
In one of the products (I) from the *threo* bromohydrin, there is retention of configuration. But in the other product (II), there is inversion, not only at the carbon that held the hydroxyl group, but also at the carbon that held bromine—a carbon that, on the surface, is not even involved in the reaction. How is one to account for the fact that exactly half the molecules react with complete retention, and the other half with this strange double inversion?

Winsten and Lucas gave the following interpretation of these facts. In step (1) the protonated bromohydrin loses water to yield, not the open carbocation, but a bridged bromonium ion. In step (2) bromide ion attacks this bromonium ion to



give the dibromide. But it can attack the bromonium ion *at either of two carbon atoms*: attack at one gives the product with retention at both chiral centers; attack

at the other gives the product with inversion about both centers. Figure 11.3 depicts the reaction of the optically active *threo* bromohydrin.



**Figure 11.3.** Conversion of optically active *threo*-3-bromo-2-butanol into racemic 2,3-dibromobutane via cyclic bromonium ion. Opposite-side attacks *a* and *b* equally likely, give enantiomers in equal amounts.

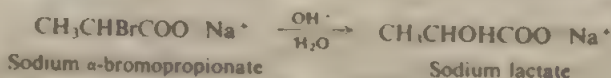
The bromonium ion has the same structure as that proposed two years earlier by Roberts and Kimball (Sec. 8.18) as an intermediate in the addition of bromine to alkenes. Here it is formed in a different way, but its reaction is the same, and so is the final product.

Reaction consists of two successive nucleophilic substitutions. In the first one nucleophile is the neighboring bromine; in the second, it is bromide ion from outside the molecule. Both substitutions are pictured as being  $S_N2$ -like; that is, single-step processes with attachment of the nucleophile and loss of the leaving group taking place in the same transition state. This is consistent with the complete stereospecificity: an open carbocation in either (1) or (2) might be expected to result in the formation of a mixture of diastereomers.

(As we shall see, a neighboring bromine can affect more than the stereochemistry of such a reaction.)

**Problem 11.1** Drawing structures like those in Fig. 11.3, show the stereochemical course of reaction of optically active *erythro*-3-bromo-2-butanol with hydrogen bromide.

**Problem 11.2** Actually, the door opened by Winstein and Lucas was already ajar. In 1937, E. D. Hughes, Ingold (p. 214), and their co-workers reported that, in contrast to the neutral acid or its ester, sodium  $\alpha$ -bromopropionate undergoes hydrolysis with retention of configuration.



Give a likely interpretation of these findings

## 11.5 Neighboring group effects: intramolecular nucleophilic attack

Let us see just what is involved in neighboring group effects. The basic process, it turns out, is closely related to a process we have already spent some time with: rearrangement of carbocations. And so, let us begin by taking another look at rearrangement.

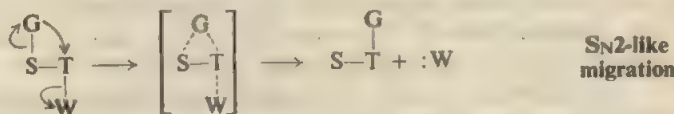
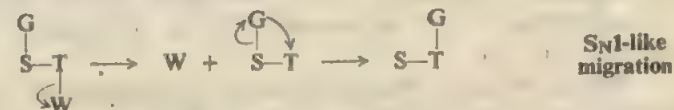
Carbocations, we know, can rearrange through migration of an organic group or a hydrogen atom, with its pair of electrons, to the electron-deficient carbon.



Indeed, when carbocations were first postulated as reactive intermediates (Sec. 6.20), it was to account for rearrangements of a particular kind. Such rearrangements still provide the best single clue that we are dealing with a carbocation reaction.

The driving force behind all carbocation reactions is the need to provide electrons to the electron-deficient carbon. When an electron-deficient carbon is generated, a nearby group may help to relieve this deficiency. It may, of course, remain in place and release electrons through space or through the molecular framework, inductively or by resonance. Or—and this is what we are concerned with here—it may actually *carry the electrons* to where they are needed.

An electron-deficient carbon is most commonly generated by the departure of a leaving group which takes the bonding electrons with it. The migrating group is, of course, a nucleophile, and so a rearrangement of this sort amounts to *intramolecular nucleophilic substitution*. Now, as we have seen, nucleophilic substitution can be of two kinds,  $S_N2$  and  $S_N1$ . Exactly the same possibilities exist for a rearrangement. As we have described rearrangement so far, it is  $S_N1$ -like, with the migrating group waiting for the departure of the leaving group before it



G = migrating group

S = migration source

T = migration terminus

moves. But it *could* be  $S_N2$ -like, with the neighboring group helping to push out the leaving group in a single-step reaction. This matter of *timing* of bond-breaking and bond-making is—as it is with all reactions—of major concern in the study of rearrangements.

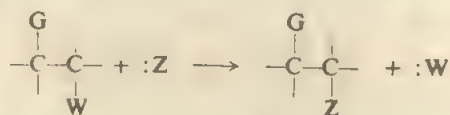
When the migrating group helps to expel the leaving group, it is said to give *anchimeric assistance* (Greek: *anchi* + *meros*, adjacent parts).

Now, in a rearrangement, a nearby group carries electrons to an electron-deficient atom, and then *stays there*. But sometimes, it happens, a group brings

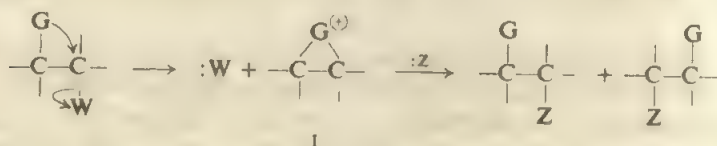


electrons and then *goes back to where it came from*. This gives rise to what are called **neighboring group effects**: intramolecular effects exerted on a reaction through direct participation—that is, through movement to within bonding distance—by a group near the reaction center.

Neighboring group effects involve the same basic process as rearrangement. Indeed, in many cases there *is* rearrangement, but it is *hidden*. What we see on the surface may be this:



But what is actually happening may be this:

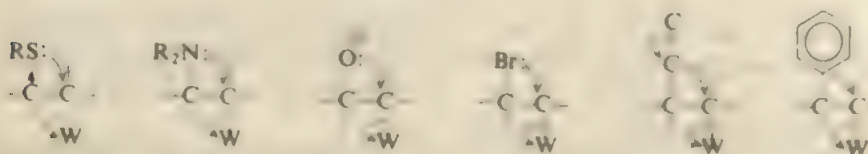


The neighboring group, acting as an internal nucleophile, attacks carbon at the reaction center; the leaving group is lost, and there is formed a *bridged intermediate* (I), usually a cation. This undergoes attack by an external nucleophile to yield the product. The overall stereochemistry is determined by the way in which the bridged ion is formed and the way in which it reacts, and typically differs from the stereochemistry observed for simple attack by an external nucleophile.

In the rearrangement of 3-bromo-2-butanol we saw a typical example of this "abnormal" stereochemistry. The basic process there was the same as in a rearrangement: intramolecular (1,2) nucleophilic attack. Indeed, rearrangement *did* occur there; in half the molecules formed, the bromine migrated from one carbon to the next.

But something besides stereochemistry can be involved here. If a neighboring group helps to push out the leaving group—that is, gives anchimeric assistance—it may accelerate the reaction, sometimes tremendously. Thus, neighboring group participation is most often revealed by a *special kind of stereochemistry* or by an *unusually fast rate of reaction*—and often by both.

If a neighboring group is to form a bridged cation, it must have electrons to form the extra bond. These may be *unshared pairs* on atoms like sulfur, nitrogen, oxygen, or bromine;  $\pi$  *electrons* of a double bond or aromatic ring; or even, in some cases,  $\sigma$  *electrons*.



In making its nucleophilic attack, a neighboring group competes with outside molecules that are often intrinsically much stronger nucleophiles. Yet the evidence

clearly shows that the neighboring group enjoys for its nucleophilic power a tremendous advantage over these outside nucleophiles. Why is this? The answer is quite simple: *because it is there*.

The neighboring group is there, in the same molecule, poised in the proper position for attack. It does not have to wait until its path happens to cross that of the substrate; its "effective concentration" is extremely high. It does not have to give up precious freedom of motion (translational entropy) when it becomes locked into a transition state. Between it and the reaction center there are no tightly clinging solvent molecules that must be stripped away as reaction takes place. Finally, the electronic reorganization—changes in overlap—that accompanies reaction undoubtedly happens more easily in this cyclic system.

The kind of neighboring group effect that we have described here is just a single manifestation of one of the most powerful factors affecting the course of organic reactions: the relative locations of reacting atoms. Reaction occurs the way it does because these atoms are *near* each other and *in exactly the right positions*.

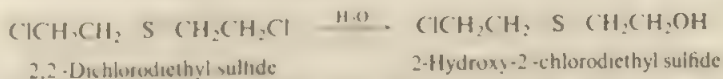
We have already seen some of the spectacular results of catalysis by transition metal complexes: in homogeneous hydrogenation (Secs. 8.5–8.7), Ziegler-Natta polymerization (Sec. 9.36), and the oxo process (Sec. 10.4). The reaction involved there, addition, was different from the nucleophilic substitution involved here; the central element holding the interacting atoms was a transition metal instead of carbon. But the factor at work was *exactly the same*: the juxtaposition of reacting groups.

Enzymes exert their vital effects by speeding up, enormously and quite specifically, the reactions involved in life processes. They do this by bringing together substrate and reagent and holding them in just the right positions for reaction to occur. While they are being held by the enzyme, these reactants are parts of the same gigantic molecule; they are, in effect, neighboring groups.

Now let us return to nucleophilic substitution and look at evidence that anchimeric assistance does indeed exist. To do this we shall turn, not to alcohols, but to other substrates.

## 11.6 Neighboring group effects: rate of reaction. Anchimeric assistance

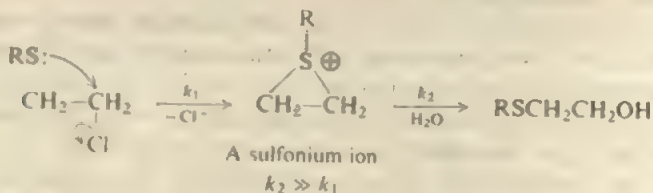
Like other alkyl halides, mustard gas (2,2'-dichlorodiethyl sulfide) undergoes hydrolysis. But this hydrolysis is unusual in several ways: (a) the kinetics is first-order, with the rate independent of added base; and (b) although the substrate is primary, it is *enormously* faster than hydrolysis of ordinary primary alkyl chlorides.



We have encountered this kind of kinetics before in  $S_N1$  reactions and know, in a general way, what it must mean: in the rate-determining step, the substrate is reacting unimolecularly to form an intermediate, which then reacts rapidly with solvent or other nucleophile. But what is this intermediate? It can hardly be the carbocation. A primary cation is highly unstable and hard to form, so that primary alkyl chlorides ordinarily react by  $S_N2$  reactions instead, and here we have electron-withdrawing sulfur further to destabilize a carbocation.

This is another example of a neighboring group effect, one that shows itself not in stereochemistry but in *rate of reaction*. Sulfur helps to push out chloride ion,

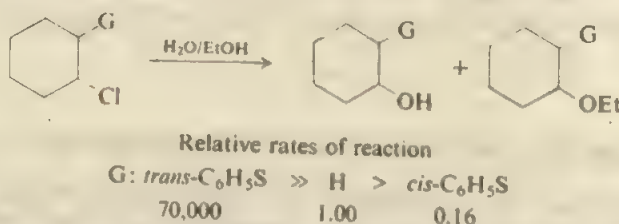
forming a cyclic *sulfonium ion* in the process. As fast as it is formed, this intermediate reacts with water to yield the product.



Reaction thus involves formation of a cation, but not a highly unstable carbocation with its electron-deficient carbon; instead, it is a cation in which *every atom has an octet of electrons*. Open-chain sulfonium ions,  $R_3S^+$ , are well-known, stable molecules; here, because of angle strain, the sulfonium ion is less stable and highly reactive—but still enormously more stable and easier to form than a carbocation.

The first, rate-determining step is unimolecular, but it is  $S_N2$ -like. As with other primary halides, a nucleophile is needed to help push out the leaving group. Here the nucleophile happens to be part of the same molecule. Sulfur has unshared electrons it is willing to share, and hence is highly nucleophilic. Most important, *it is there*: poised in just the right position for attack. The result is an enormous increase in rate.

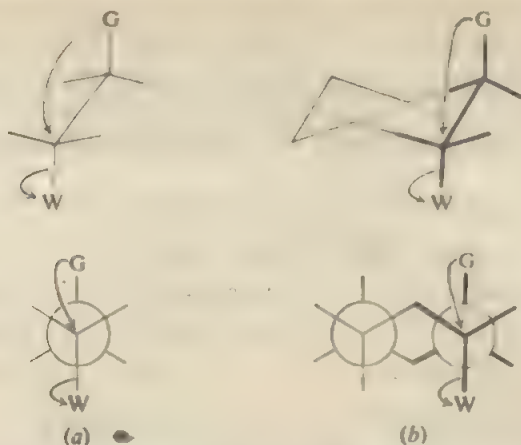
There is much additional evidence to support the postulate that the effect of neighboring sulfur is due to anchimeric assistance. Cyclohexyl chloride undergoes solvolysis in ethanol-water to yield a mixture of alcohol and ether. As usual for secondary alkyl substrates, reaction is  $S_N1$  with nucleophilic assistance from the solvent (see Sec. 6.31). A  $C_6H_5S-$  group on the adjacent carbon can speed up



reaction powerfully—but only if it is *trans* to chlorine. The *cis* substituted chloride actually reacts more slowly than the unsubstituted compound.

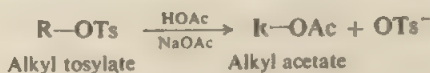
The *trans* sulfide group evidently gives strong anchimeric assistance. Why cannot the *cis* sulfide? The answer is found in the examination of molecular models. Like other nucleophiles, a neighboring group attacks carbon at the side away from the leaving group. In an open-chain compound like mustard gas—or like either diastereomer of 3-bromo-2-butanol—rotation about a carbon-carbon bond can bring the neighboring group into the proper position for back-side attack: *anti* to the leaving group (Fig. 11.4a). But in cyclohexane derivatives, 1,2-substituents are *anti* to each other only when they both occupy axial positions—possible only for *trans* substituents (Fig. 11.4b). Hence, only the *trans* chloride shows the neighboring group effect, anchimeric assistance from sulfur. The *cis* isomer reacts without anchimeric assistance; through its electron-withdrawing inductive effect, sulfur slows down formation of the carbocation, and thus the rate of reaction.





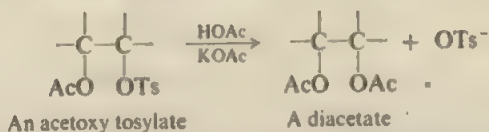
**Figure 11.4.** Anchimeric assistance. (a) *Anti* relationship between neighboring group and leaving group required for back-side attack (b) In cyclohexane derivatives, only *trans*-1,2-substituents can assume *anti* relationship.

Let us look at another example of solvolysis. A very commonly studied system is one in which the solvent is acetic acid,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$  (often represented as  $\text{HOAc}$ ), and the substrate is one already familiar to us, an alkyl ester of a sulfonic acid: a tosylate, ROTs; a brosylate, ROB; etc. Loss of the weakly basic sulfonate anion,



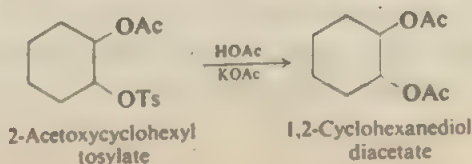
with more or less nucleophilic assistance from the solvent, generates a cation—as part of an ion pair—which combines with the solvent to yield the product. The product is an alkyl ester of acetic acid, an alkyl *acetate*. Such solvolysis is called *acetolysis*, that is, cleavage by acetic acid.

Now, let us consider the special case of a substrate that is not only a tosylate but also an acetate. It is the tosylate that is the leaving group in the reaction. The

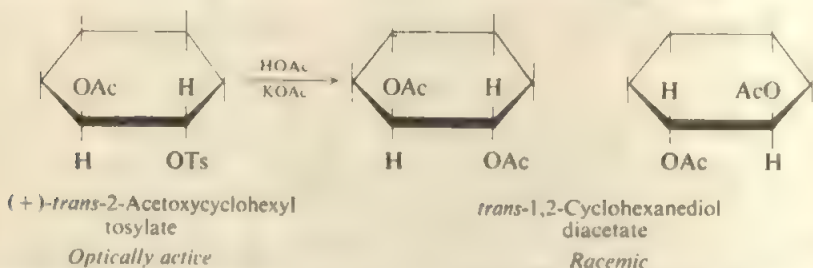


strongly basic acetate is a very poor leaving group and remains in the molecule—doing nothing, apparently. And so, the product of acetolysis is a *diacetate*.

When 2-acetoxycyclohexyl tosylate is heated in acetic acid there is obtained, as expected, the diacetate of 1,2-cyclohexanediol. The reactant exists as diastereomers, and just what happens—and how fast it happens—depends upon which

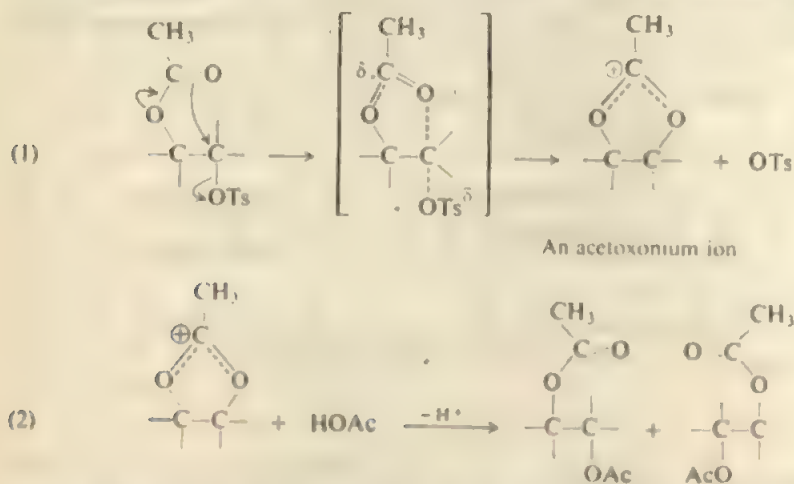


diastereomer we start with. The *cis* tosylate yields chiefly the *trans* diacetate. Reaction takes the usual course for nucleophilic substitution, predominant inversion. But the *trans* tosylate also yields *trans* diacetate. Here, apparently, reaction takes place with *retention*, unusual for nucleophilic substitution, and in contrast to what is observed for the *cis* isomer. Two pieces of evidence show us clearly what



is happening here: (a) optically active *trans* tosylate yields *optically inactive trans* diacetate; and (b) the *trans* tosylate reacts *800 times as fast as the cis isomer*. Here we see a special kind of stereochemistry and an unusually fast rate of reaction: both of the manifestations of a neighboring group effect.

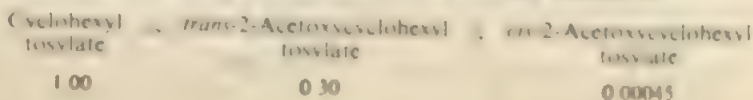
The neighboring group is acetoxy, containing oxygen with unshared electrons. Through back-side nucleophilic attack, acetoxy helps to push out the tosylate anion (step 1) and, in doing this, inverts the configuration at the carbon under attack.



There is formed an *acetoxonium ion*. This symmetrical intermediate undergoes nucleophilic attack (step 2) by the solvent at either of two carbons—again with inversion—and yields the product. The result is half the molecules, retention at both carbons, in the other half, inversion at both carbons.

The *cis* tosylate cannot assume the diaxial conformation needed for back-side attack by acetoxy, and there is no neighboring group effect. Stereochemistry is normal, and reaction is much slower than for the *trans* tosylate.

Compared with unsubstituted cyclohexyl tosylate, the 2-acetoxycyclohexyl tosylates show the following relative reactivities toward acetolysis:



Reaction of the *cis* tosylate is much slower than that of cyclohexyl tosylate, and this we can readily understand: powerful electron-withdrawal by acetoxy slows down formation of the carbocation in the  $S_N1$  process. Reaction of the *trans* tosylate, although much faster than that of its diastereomer, is still somewhat slower than that of cyclohexyl tosylate. But should not the anchimerically assisted reaction be much *faster* than the unassisted reaction of the unsubstituted tosylate? The answer is, *not necessarily*. We must not forget the polar effect of the acetoxy substituent. Although  $S_N2$ -like, attack by acetoxy has considerable  $S_N1$  character (see Sec 8.19); deactivation by electron withdrawal tends to offset activation by anchimeric assistance. The *cis* tosylate is electronically similar to the *trans*, and is a much better standard by which to measure anchimeric assistance. (This point will be discussed further in the next section.)

In Sec. 8.19 we said that the orientation of opening of strained rings like halonium ions and protonated epoxides indicates considerable  $S_N1$  character in the transition state. But if ring-opening has  $S_N1$  character so, according to the principle of microscopic reversibility, must ring-closing—as in the intramolecular attack by the acetoxy group. And it is the ring-closing step, remember, that determines the overall rate of reaction.

**Problem 11.3** How do you account for the following relative rates of acetolysis of 2-substituted cyclohexyl brosylates? In which cases is there evidence of a neighboring group effect?



G	Relative rates	
	<i>cis</i>	<i>trans</i>
Cl	1.6	5.9
Br	1.5	1250
I		$2.2 \times 10^8$
H		$1.2 \times 10^4$

We should note once again the basic similarity between a neighboring group effect and the stabilization of an incipient carbocation by resonance (Secs. 9.14–9.16). In both cases a nearby atom or group provides electrons to a carbon that is becoming electron-deficient through the departure of a leaving group. In both cases the electrons can be an unshared pair on the neighboring atom: an atom like oxygen or sulfur or halogen. And in both cases this atom, even though electronegative, can accommodate the developing positive charge better than carbon can because of the preservation of an octet of electrons (Sec. 9.15). The difference between the two effects lies in the way the electrons are delivered to where they are needed: by sideways overlap of orbitals in a resonance effect, by being carried to the reaction site, in a neighboring group effect.

The similarity goes even further. A resonance effect, we have seen, can involve not only unshared pairs on an atom like oxygen, but also electrons supplied by carbon and hydrogen  $\pi$  electrons and even  $\sigma$  electrons. And, as we shall see in Secs. 16.20–16.22, carbon and hydrogen can furnish electrons in neighboring group effects, too.

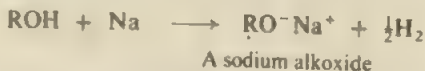


## 11.7 Alcohols as acids and bases

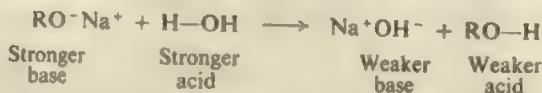
When we first met alcohols (Sec. 6.8), we learned that they are bases, and of about the same strength as water. Like water they contain oxygen, and it is this oxygen, with its unshared pairs, that makes them basic. Since that initial meeting, we have seen many times how their basicity plays a central role in determining their chemical behavior, both as substrates and as reagents. They accept protons from acids to form protonated alcohols, and this protonation permits them to serve as substrates in nucleophilic substitution and elimination—something they could not do in their unprotonated form. They accept protons from carbocations and thus act as basic reagents in bringing about elimination. Their basicity makes them nucleophilic as well, and able to bring about a substitution: in full-fledged  $S_N2$  reactions, or by rendering nucleophilic assistance to the formation of carbocations, or by combining with carbocations once they are formed.

We learned earlier that alcohols are acids, too, and again of roughly the same strength as water. Hydrogen is bonded to the very electronegative element oxygen. The polarity of the O—H bond facilitates the separation of a relatively positive proton; viewed differently, electronegative oxygen readily accommodates the negative charge of electrons left behind.

The acidity of alcohols is shown by their reaction with active metals to liberate hydrogen gas and form alkoxides.

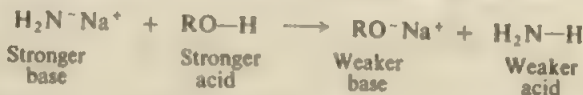


Just *how* acidic are alcohols? With the possible exception of methanol, they are somewhat weaker acids than water. When water is added to an alkoxide, there is obtained sodium hydroxide and the parent alcohol. The weaker acid, RO—H, is

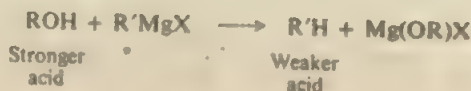


displaced from its salt by the stronger acid, HO—H. In other language, the stronger base,  $\text{RO}^-$ , pulls the proton away from the weaker base,  $\text{HO}^-$ ; if  $\text{RO}^-$  holds the proton more tightly than  $\text{HO}^-$ , then RO—H must necessarily be a weaker acid than HO—H.

Alcohols are stronger acids than ammonia,  $\text{NH}_3$ . Addition of an alcohol to sodamide,  $\text{Na}^+\text{NH}_2^-$ , yields ammonia and the sodium alkoxide. The weaker acid  $\text{H}_2\text{N—H}$  is displaced from its salt by the stronger acid, RO—H.



Alcohols—like water and ammonia—are enormously stronger acids than alkanes, and readily displace them from their “salts”: from Grignard reagents, for example.



We can thus place alcohols in a sequence of acidity relative to other familiar compounds. And when we do this, we necessarily arrive at an order of relative basicity for the corresponding conjugate bases.

**Relative acidities:**  $\text{H}_2\text{O} > \text{ROH} > \text{NH}_3 > \text{RH}$

**Relative basicities:**  $\text{OH}^- < \text{OR}^- < \text{NH}_2^- < \text{R}^-$

The method we have just described for comparing the acidities of alkanes, ammonia, alcohols, and water is a general one, and has been used to determine the relative acidities of a number of extremely weak acids. *One compound is shown to be a stronger acid than another by its ability to displace the second compound from salts.*



Let us look more closely at the relative acidities of alcohols and water. The difference between an alcohol and water is, of course, the alkyl group. Not only does the alkyl group make an alcohol less acidic than water, but the *bigger* the alkyl group, the less acidic the alcohol; methanol is the strongest and tertiary alcohols are the weakest. This acid-weakening effect of alcohols is not a polar effect, as was once believed, with electron release destabilizing the anion and making it a stronger base. In the gas phase, the relative acidities of the various alcohols and of alcohols and water are reversed; evidently, the easily polarized alkyl groups are helping to accommodate the negative charge, just as they help to accommodate the positive charge in carbocations (Sec. 6.24). Alcohols *are* weaker acids than water *in solution*—which is where we are normally concerned with acidity—and this is a solvation effect; a bulky group interferes with ion-dipole interactions that stabilize the anion.

Since an alcohol is a weaker acid than water, an alkoxide is not prepared by the reaction of the alcohol with sodium hydroxide, but rather by reaction of the alcohol with the active metal itself.

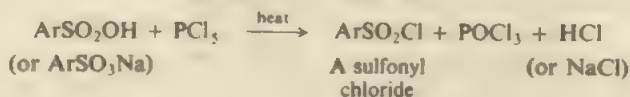
Alkoxides are extremely useful reagents. They are powerful bases—stronger than hydroxide—and, by varying the alkyl group, we can vary their degree of basicity, their steric requirements, and their solubility properties. As nucleophiles, they can be used to introduce the alkoxy group into molecules. We have already made use of alkoxides both as bases and as nucleophiles, and will continue to encounter them throughout our study of organic chemistry.

**Problem 11.4** Which would you expect to be the stronger acid:

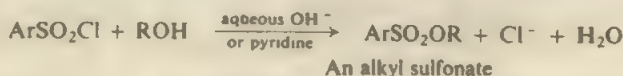
- $\beta$ -chloroethyl alcohol or ethyl alcohol?
- Isopropyl alcohol or hexafluoroisopropyl alcohol?
- n*-Propyl alcohol or glycerol,  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CHOHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ?
- Which alcohol of each pair would you expect to be the stronger nucleophile?

## 11.8 Formation of alkyl sulfonates

Sulfonyl chlorides (the acid chlorides of sulfonic acids) are prepared by the action of phosphorus pentachloride or thionyl chloride on sulfuric acids or their salts:



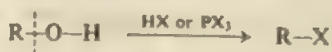
Alcohols react with these sulfonyl chlorides to form esters, *alkyl sulfonates*:



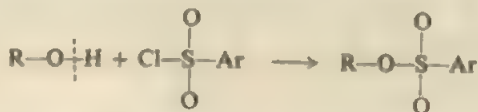
We have already seen (Secs. 6.7 and 7.12) that the weak basicity of sulfonate anions,  $\text{ArSO}_3^-$ , makes them good leaving groups, and that as a result alkyl sulfonates undergo nucleophilic substitution and elimination in much the same manner as alkyl halides. •

Alkyl sulfonates offer a very real advantage over alkyl halides in reactions where stereochemistry is important; this advantage lies not so much in the reactions of alkyl sulfonates as in their *preparation*. Whether we use an alkyl halide or sulfonate, and whether we let it undergo substitution or elimination, our starting point for the study is almost certainly the alcohol. The sulfonate *must* be prepared from the alcohol; the halide nearly always *will* be. It is at the alcohol stage that any resolution will be carried out, or any diastereomers separated; the alcohol is then converted into the halide or sulfonate, the reaction we are studying is carried out, and the products are examined.

Now, any preparation of a halide from an alcohol must involve breaking of the carbon-oxygen bond, and hence is accompanied by the likelihood of stereo-



chemical inversion and the possibility of racemization. Preparation of a sulfonate, on the other hand, does not involve the breaking of the carbon-oxygen bond, and hence proceeds with complete retention; when we carry out a reaction with this sulfonate, we know exactly what we are starting with.



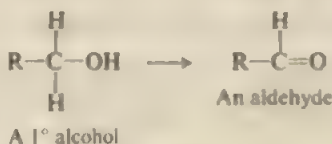
As a way of changing the  $-\text{OH}$  group of an alcohol into a good leaving group, conversion into sulfonates is just about ideal. We do not disturb the stereochemistry of the alkyl group. We can vary the structure of the sulfonate group and thus vary its leaving ability over a tremendous range. (See, for example, Sec. 9.19.) And, unlike dealing with protonation, we can allow these alkyl sulfonates to react with just about any nucleophile or base we care to use.



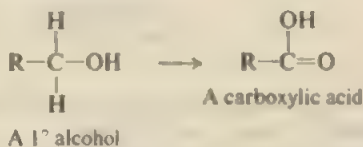
## 11.9 Oxidation of alcohols

The oxidation of an alcohol involves the loss of one or more hydrogens ( $\alpha$ -hydrogens) from the carbon bearing the  $-OH$  group. The kind of product that is formed depends upon how many of these  $\alpha$ -hydrogens the alcohol contains, that is, upon whether the alcohol is primary, secondary, or tertiary.

A **primary alcohol** contains two  $\alpha$ -hydrogens, and can either lose one of them to form an *aldehyde*,

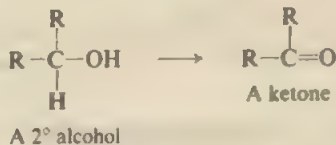


or both of them to form a *carboxylic acid*.

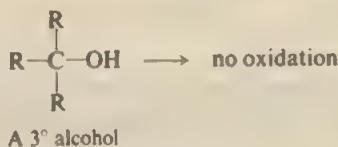


(Under the proper conditions, as we shall find, an aldehyde can itself be oxidized to a carboxylic acid.)

A **secondary alcohol** can lose its only  $\alpha$ -hydrogen to form a *ketone*.



A **tertiary alcohol** contains no  $\alpha$ -hydrogens and is *not oxidized*. (An acidic oxidizing agent can, however, dehydrate the alcohol to an alkene and then oxidize *this*.)

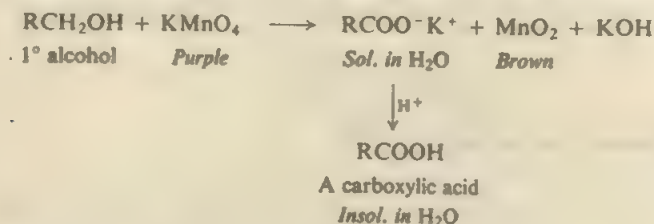


We have already encountered these oxidation products—aldehydes, ketones, and carboxylic acids—and should recognize them from their structures even though we have not yet discussed much of their chemistry. They are important compounds, and their preparation by the oxidation of alcohols is of great value in organic synthesis (Secs. 11.12–11.13).

The number of oxidizing agents available to the organic chemist is growing at a tremendous rate. As with all synthetic methods, emphasis is on the development of highly *selective* reagents, which will operate on only one functional group in a complex molecule, and leave the other functional groups untouched. Of the many reagents that can be used to oxidize alcohols, we can consider only the most

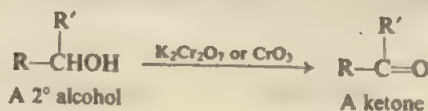
common ones, those containing Mn(VII) or Cr(VI). We have already (Sec. 8.27) encountered heptavalent manganese in the form of potassium permanganate,  $\text{KMnO}_4$ . Also widely used is hexavalent chromium, chromic acid essentially, in a form selected for the job at hand: acidic aqueous  $\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$ ,  $\text{CrO}_3$  in glacial acetic acid,  $\text{CrO}_3$  in pyridine, etc.

Oxidation of primary alcohols to carboxylic acids is usually accomplished by use of potassium permanganate. Best yields are obtained if the permanganate and the alcohol are brought together in a non-polar solvent by use of phase-transfer catalysis (see Sec. 8.27). When reaction is complete, an aqueous solution of the

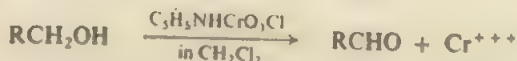


soluble potassium salt of the carboxylic acid is filtered from  $\text{MnO}_2$ , and the acid is liberated by the addition of a stronger mineral acid.

Oxidation of alcohols to the aldehyde or ketone stage is usually accomplished by the use of Cr(VI) in one of the forms described above. Oxidation of secondary alcohols to ketones is generally straightforward.



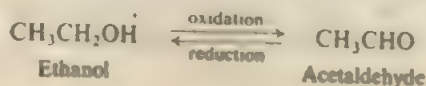
Because aldehydes are susceptible to further oxidation, the conversion of primary alcohols to aldehydes can be troublesome. One of the best and most convenient reagents for this purpose is pyridinium chlorochromate ( $\text{C}_5\text{H}_5\text{NH}^+\text{CrO}_3\text{Cl}^-$ ) formed by the reaction between chromic acid and pyridinium chloride (Sec. 35.11).



In connection with analysis, we shall encounter two reagents used to oxidize alcohols of special kinds: (a) *hypohalite* (Sec. 11.14), and (b) *periodic acid* (Sec. 11.15).

## 11.10 Biological oxidation of ethanol

Alcohols can be oxidized, not only in the test tube, but in living organisms. Let us examine just one example of such an oxidation, the conversion of ethanol into acetaldehyde. This is a simple example, as biological reactions go, but from it we

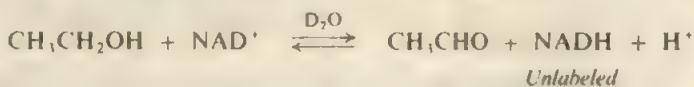




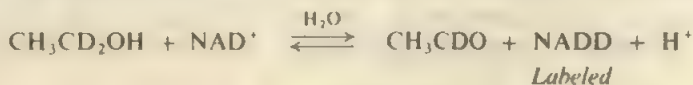


Now let us look at certain classic experiments carried out on this reaction, with alcohol dehydrogenase from yeast as the catalyst, and NAD as the oxidizing and reducing agent.

When ordinary ethanol,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , is oxidized in  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$  solution, there is obtained ordinary, unlabeled NADH.

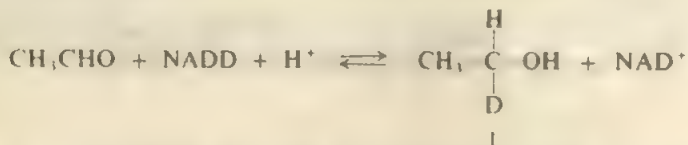


When the dideuterated ethanol  $\text{CH}_3\text{CD}_2\text{OH}$  is oxidized in ordinary water, there is obtained NADD, that is, reduced NAD containing one deuterium per molecule.



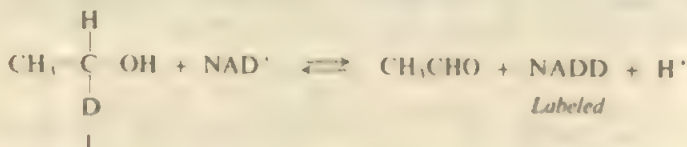
Evidently transfer of hydrogen occurs *directly* from ethanol to  $\text{NAD}^+$ , and not via the solvent.

When the NADD obtained in this way is allowed to reduce ordinary acetaldehyde,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}$ , there is obtained the monodeuterated ethanol I,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHDOH}$ .



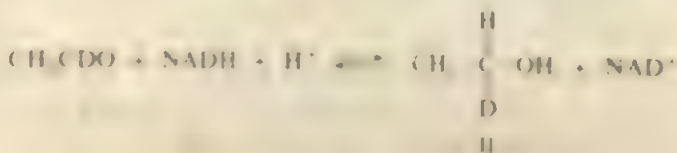
Thus, the NADD transfers back the kind of hydrogen it received earlier, deuterium.

Now, something surprising: when ethanol I is oxidized, *all* of its deuterium is found transferred to the  $\text{NAD}^+$  to give NADD. Only ordinary acetaldehyde is formed. There are two  $\alpha$ -hydrogens in ethanol I, one protium and one deuterium.

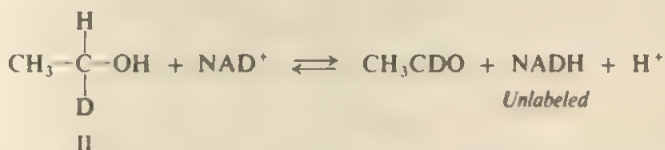


Yet, of these, only *one* is transferred to  $\text{NAD}^+$ : the deuterium, the *same* hydrogen that the NADD previously transferred to the acetaldehyde. How can the NAD molecule "remember" which hydrogen it transferred to acetaldehyde? Clearly, the ethanol must keep this particular hydrogen in a different "drawer" from the other one. But how can this be, if both are  $\alpha$ -hydrogens?

Let us look at another experiment. Labeled acetaldehyde,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CDO}$ , is prepared. On reduction by ordinary NADH, there is obtained monodeuterated ethanol II.

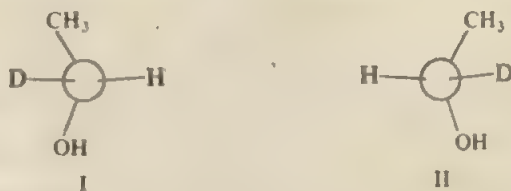


When *this* ethanol is oxidized, *none* of its deuterium is transferred to the  $\text{NAD}^+$ ; only ordinary  $\text{NADH}$  is obtained. The deuterium remains in the acetaldehyde.



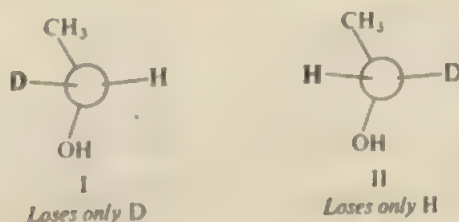
Once more the  $\text{NAD}$  molecule takes back only the hydrogen that had previously been transferred to the aldehyde. This time the ethanol has protium, not deuterium, in its special "drawer."

So here we have two kinds of monodeuterated ethanol, I and II. One transfers only deuterium to  $\text{NAD}^+$ , and the other transfers only protium. How can I and II differ? To find the answer, all we need do is examine the structure of the molecule. With one of the hydrogens deuterium, the molecule is chiral, and can exist as a pair of enantiomers. Ethanol I is one of these enantiomers and ethanol II is the other.



Most of this elegant work was done by Frank H. Westheimer and Birget Vennesland at the University of Chicago, and was reported in 1953. The formation of the enantiomeric alcohols I and II was demonstrated unequivocally without measurement of optical rotation—there was not enough material available! It was not until four years later that the optical activity of the  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHDOH}$  was measured directly. The enantiomers have the configurations shown: I is the (*R*)-(+)-isomer, and II is the (*S*)-(−)-isomer.

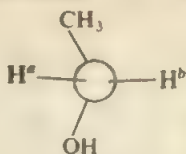
Clearly, then, the special "drawer" in which ethanol keeps its transferrable hydrogen is a particular stereochemical location in the molecule. I can lose only D,



and II can lose only H; as stereochemical formulas show, these atoms occupy the same relative positions in the two molecules—on the "left," as we have drawn them here.

Now, the most important point. There can be no doubt that unlabeled ethanol—the kind that the organism deals with regularly—behaves in exactly the

same way as the labeled molecules: on oxidation by  $\text{NAD}^+$  it gives up only  $\text{H}^a$ , the



Ordinary ethanol  
Loses only  $\text{H}^a$

hydrogen on the "left," and retains  $\text{H}^b$ . The use of deuterium and the formation of enantiomers is only a technique used to show the stereochemical course of the reaction: that the biological oxidizing agent discriminates completely between two seemingly equivalent hydrogens in the ethanol molecule.

But this is only half the story. The evidence we have described shows that there is stereochemical discrimination in the *formation* of ethanol, too—in the reduction as well as in the oxidation. Let us return to our labeled alcohols. Only I is formed by reduction of unlabeled acetaldehyde by NADD, and only II is formed by reduction of labeled acetaldehyde by NADH.

Let us examine this reduction, starting with the formation of I. The carbonyl carbon of acetaldehyde is bonded to three other atoms (it is *trigonal* carbon, Sec. 7.2), and this portion of the molecule is flat. Reduction involves transfer of D from NADD to the carbonyl carbon, that is, to one face or the other of this flat molecule. As Fig. 11.5 shows, just which product is formed depends upon *which* face D becomes attached to. Attack by path (a) would give ethanol I, and attack by path (b) would give ethanol II. The fact that only I is actually obtained shows that attack occurs only by path (a): NADD transfers D to only one of the faces of the aldehyde, and completely shuns the other.

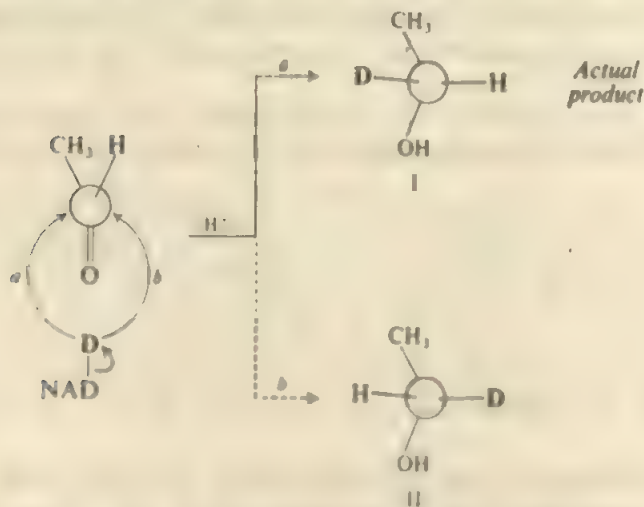
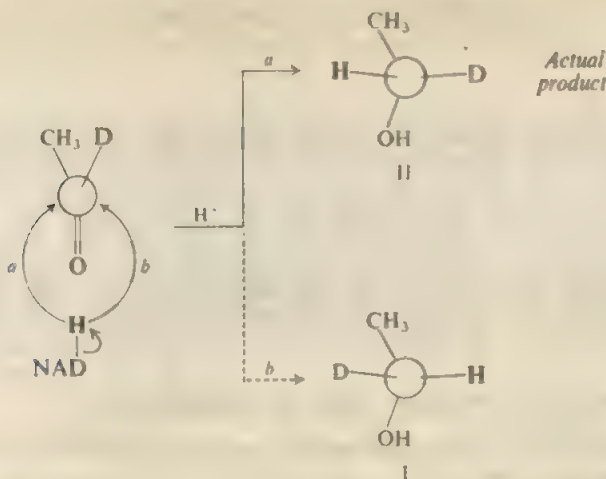


Figure 11.5. Enzymatic reduction of  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}$  by NADD. Attachment of D could take place by either path (a) or path (b), to give either I or II. Path (a) is the one actually followed.

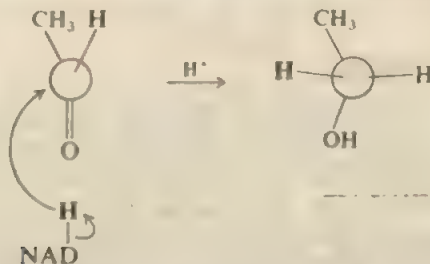




**Figure 11.6.** Enzymatic reduction of  $\text{CH}_3\text{CDO}$  by NADH. Attachment of H could take place by either path (a) or path (b), to give either II or I. Path (a) is the one actually followed.

If we examine the reduction of labeled acetaldehyde by NADH in the same way (Fig. 11.6), we find exactly the same sort of thing: NADH transfers H to only one of the faces of the flat molecule. Furthermore, the face it selects is the *same* face that is selected by NADH in the other reaction. In both cases reduced NAD attacks only along path (a)—from the “left,” as we have oriented the molecules.

Here, too, as in the oxidation, there can be no doubt that the reaction of unlabeled molecules follows exactly the same stereochemical course as the reaction of the labeled ones, and that NADH discriminates absolutely between the two



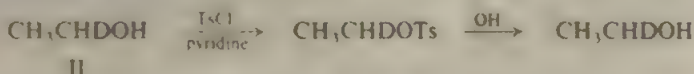
faces of the acetaldehyde molecule. Again the use of deuterium in the formation of enantiomers is simply a device used to reveal the stereochemistry of the reaction.

We call this “stereochemistry”—but it is a strange kind of stereochemistry. Both acetaldehyde and unlabeled ethanol are achiral; so far as they are concerned no chiral center is generated or destroyed in the reactions; so far as they are concerned reaction does not involve the formation or the reaction of stereoisomers. Yet we are dealing with stereochemistry: the enzyme-coenzyme system discriminates on a *three-dimensional* basis between two seemingly equivalent positions in ethanol and between two seemingly equivalent faces of acetaldehyde. And this, according to our definition in Sec. 6.17, is a kind of stereospecificity.

In biological systems such discrimination—such stereospecificity—is the rule, not the exception, and it is being achieved in man-made systems, too. To see just

what is involved which substrates are susceptible, and what special conditions are required—we must turn to a stereochemical concept that we have not yet discussed.

**Problem 11.5** In a further experiment Westheimer and Vennesland treated labeled ethanol **II** in the following way.

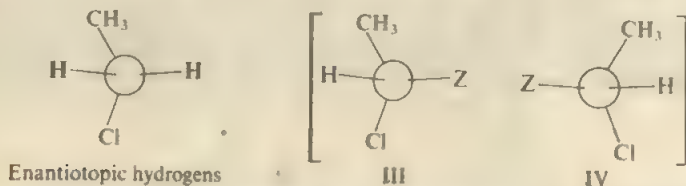


and oxidized the product,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHDOH}$ , with (unlabeled)  $\text{NAD}^+$  (a) What is the product,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHDOH}$ ? (b) Which would you expect to get,  $\text{NADH}$  or  $\text{NADD}$ ?

## 11.11 Enantiotopic and diastereotopic ligands and faces

So far in this book we have discussed the stereochemical relationships between different molecules; some, we have found, are enantiomers, some are diastereomers, and some are not different at all, but are identical. Yet, as the preceding section has shown, this is not enough; we must dig deeper, and examine the stereochemical relationship between different parts of the same molecule: ligands—atoms or groups—which, while equivalent in chemical composition and location on a chain or ring, may or may not be stereochemically equivalent.

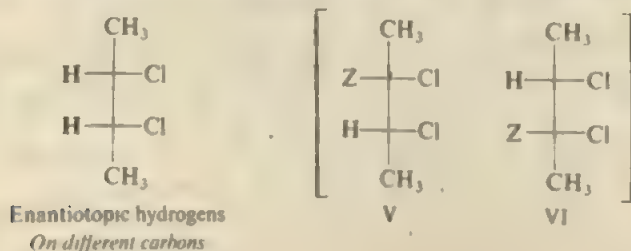
To do this let us use our old tool, the concept of isomer number (Sec. 4.2). If two atoms in a molecule are truly equivalent, replacement of either will give the same product. Let us take a simple molecule like ethyl chloride, and focus our attention on C-1 and the pair of hydrogens attached to it. Let us imagine that one



of these hydrogens is replaced by some other atom or group, Z. Depending upon which hydrogen we replace, we obtain either III or IV. These, we can easily see, are enantiomeric. We have mentally generated a new chiral center.

Since the products are not identical, but are stereoisomeric, the two hydrogens are *not stereochemically equivalent*. Such pairs of ligands are said to be **enantiotopic**: *replacement of one or the other of them gives one or the other of a pair of enantiomers*.

In ethyl chloride the pair of enantiotopic ligands are attached to the same carbon, but this does not have to be the case. In *meso*-2,3-dichlorobutane, for example, the hydrogens printed in bold face are on different carbons; yet our

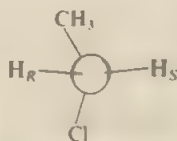


technique of imaginary replacement shows us beyond question that they are enantiotopic. (To assure yourself that V and VI are indeed enantiomers, simply rotate VI end-for-end.)

"Replacement" — either imaginary or actual — does not necessarily mean removing an entire ligand and putting a new one in its place. For example, the ligand  $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  is, in effect, *replaced by*  $-\text{CH}_2\text{Z}$  if Z is substituted for OH.

A carbon to which a pair of enantiotopic ligands are attached is called a *prochiral center*, since replacement of one of its ligands would convert the carbon into a chiral center. Just as the carbon of CWXYZ is a chiral center, so the carbon of C'WXYZ is a prochiral center. This concept can sometimes be useful in detecting enantiotopic ligands, but not all enantiotopic pairs fit into this formulation: the hydrogens of *meso*-2,3-dichlorobutane, for example, as we have just seen. *The safest and easiest way to detect enantiotopic ligands is through imaginary replacement.*

How can we refer to a particular ligand of an enantiotopic pair without having to draw a stereochemical formula and label the ligand? We use the Cahn-Ingold-Prelog procedure (Secs. 4.15–4.16) in a special way. We assign the particular ligand concerned a priority higher than that of its partner: we imagine, for example, that an atom has been replaced by a heavier isotope — deuterium for protium, say. We then specify this imaginary molecule in the usual way as *R* or *S*. If replacement of the ligand concerned gives the *R* configuration, the ligand is specified as *pro-R*; if the *S* configuration, then as *pro-S*. Using this procedure with ethyl chloride, for example, we specify the enantiotopic hydrogens in the following way, where  $\text{H}_R$  is *pro-R* and  $\text{H}_S$  is *pro-S*.



Enantiotopic hydrogens:  
*pro-R* and *pro-S*

We must not confuse these specifications with the specification as *R* and *S* of any real enantiomers formed by actual replacement of a ligand. This latter specification would depend upon the priority of the new ligand. Actual replacement of the *pro-R* hydrogen of ethyl chloride by D would give the (*R*)-enantiomer; but replacement by OH would give the (*S*)-enantiomer.

**Problem 1.6** Draw a stereochemical formula for each of the following compounds. Identify all pairs of enantiotopic ligands, and specify each as *pro-R* or *pro-S*.

- |                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| (a) propane                   | (g) 1,1-dichloroethane            |
| (b) <i>n</i> -butane          | (h) ethanol                       |
| (c) isobutane                 | (i) <i>n</i> -propyl alcohol      |
| (d) <i>n</i> -propyl chloride | (j) isopropyl alcohol             |
| (e) isopropyl chloride        | (k) <i>meso</i> -2,3-butanediol   |
| (f) isobutyl chloride         | (l) ( <i>R,R</i> )-2,3-butanediol |

Now, why are we concerned with this concept? The word *enantiotopic* means "in mirror-image places," and it is here that we find the importance of the relationship: enantiotopic ligands exist in environments that are mirror-images of each other. An ordinary, optically inactive reagent will not feel this difference in environment, and will not distinguish between the enantiotopic ligands. An

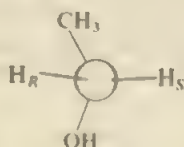


attacking bromine atom, for example, will find the enantiotopic hydrogens of ethyl chloride identical, and will not discriminate between them in its attack: the two will be abstracted at identical rates.

But not all reagents are optically inactive. As we have seen (Sec. 4.11), the enzymes of biological systems *are* optically active, and so are a rapidly growing number of man-made catalysts used in organic synthesis. Optically active reagents (or reagents in the presence of optically active catalysts) do feel the difference between mirror-image environments, and do distinguish between enantiotopic ligands. We cannot hope to understand the important chemistry of such reagents unless we can recognize the enantiotopic relationship.

We must have one point absolutely clear. We use the imaginary replacement of ligands simply as the most convenient way of finding out whether or not they are enantiotopic; it is a purely intellectual process. In an actual reaction, discrimination between enantiotopic ligands by a chiral reagent is not limited to formation of one or the other of a pair of enantiomers. A new chiral center need not be generated at all.

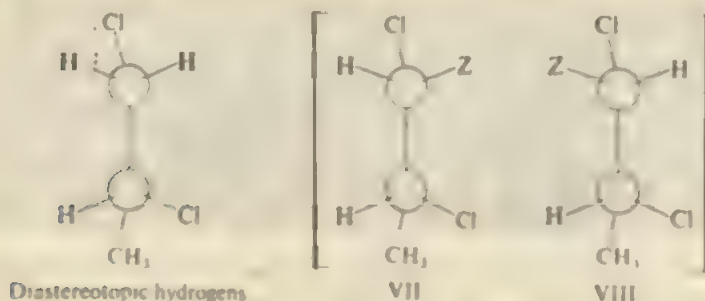
Oxidation of ethanol to acetaldehyde, for example, involves loss of one of the  $\alpha$ -hydrogens of the alcohol. By applying our replacement test, we can easily see that these hydrogens are enantiotopic. (Indeed, we have *already* applied this test; in the



Enantiotopic hydrogens:  
pro-*R* and pro-*S*  
Loses only  $H_R$  to  $NAD^+$

preceding section we saw that replacement by deuterium gives rise to enantiomers.) When the oxidation is enzymatic, we know, the coenzyme  $NAD^+$  abstracts only a particular one of these hydrogens, the hydrogen which we would now specify as pro-*R*. Both the substrate, ethanol, and the product, acetaldehyde, are achiral, yet the optically active oxidizing agent discriminates totally between the mirror-image environments of these enantiotopic hydrogens.

Now let us take another molecule, 1,2-dichloropropane — the *R* isomer, say

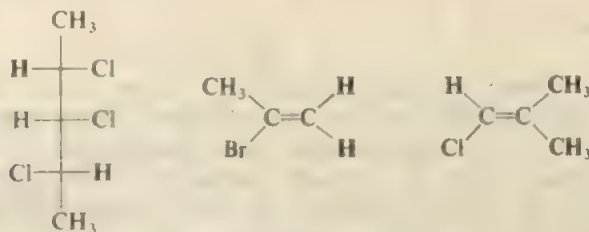


and focus our attention on the hydrogens attached to C-1. Again let us imagine that one of these hydrogens is replaced by *Z*. Depending upon which of the

hydrogens is replaced, we obtain either VII or VIII. These, we see, are diastereomeric.

Again the two hydrogens being replaced are stereochemically non-equivalent, but in a way that is different from what we saw before. Such pairs of ligands are said to be **diastereotopic**: *replacement of one or the other of them gives one or the other of a pair of diastereomers*.

By applying our replacement test, we find that a set of diastereotopic ligands are sometimes attached to different carbons within a molecule, and are sometimes attached to double-bonded carbons—geometric isomers, after all, are one kind of diastereomer. For example:



Diastereotopic ligands

**Problem 11.7** Draw a stereochemical formula for each of the following compounds, and identify all sets of diastereotopic ligands.

(a) propylene

(c) 2-methyl-2-butene

(e) (*S*)-*sec*-butyl chloride

(b) isobutylene

(d) vinyl chloride

(f) (*S*)-2-chloropentane

Diastereotopic ligands exist in environments that are neither identical nor mirror-images of each other. Whether an attacking reagent is optically active or optically inactive, it will feel the difference between these environments, and will distinguish between the ligands. Even an attacking bromine atom, for example, will find the diastereotopic hydrogens of 1,2-dichloropropane different, and will discriminate between them in its attack; the two will be abstracted at different rates.

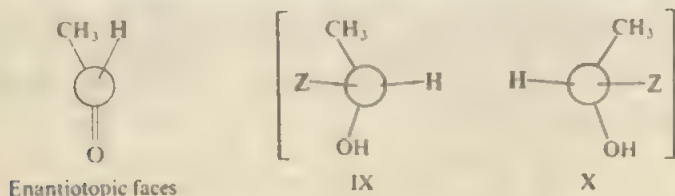
As before, however, the imaginary replacement of ligands is simply our way of detecting the stereochemical relationship. No actual replacement need take place, and no stereoisomers need be formed. A reagent will distinguish between diastereotopic ligands regardless of the kind of reaction that takes place.

Together, enantiotopic and diastereotopic ligands are known as **heterotopic** ligands, that is, ligands "in different places." Sets of ligands in identical stereochemical environments—ligands whose imaginary replacement leads to identical products—are called **homotopic** ligands, that is, ligands "in the same place."

We started out to examine the stereochemical relationship between different parts of the same molecule, and so far we have discussed different ligands—different atoms or groups attached to the molecule. Now, when we are dealing with a flat molecule—or, rather, a molecule containing a flat portion—we speak of it as having *faces*. We did this, for example, in discussing the addition reactions of alkenes (Secs. 8.6 and 8.18) and of carbonyl compounds (Sec. 11.10). So now let us turn to the stereochemical relationship between different faces of the same molecule.

As before, let us use the concept of isomer number. If two faces of a molecule are truly equivalent, attachment of an atom or group to either will give the same

product. Let us consider the simple molecule, acetaldehyde. As an aldehyde, it typically undergoes nucleophilic addition: addition of the Grignard reagent (Sec. 10.12), for example, or of hydride (Sec. 11.10). Let us imagine, then, that some nucleophile,  $:Z$ , becomes attached to the carbonyl carbon and, to complete the reaction, a proton becomes attached to the carbonyl oxygen. Acetaldehyde, we

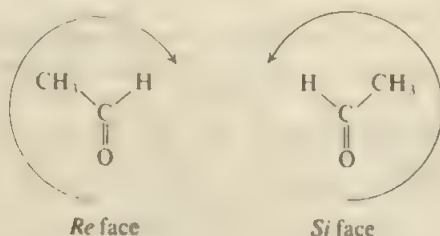


saw, is a flat molecule. We can attach  $:Z$  to one or the other of its faces and, depending upon which face, obtain either IX or X. These we recognize as enantiomers. We have mentally generated a new chiral center.

Since the products are not identical, but are stereoisomeric, the two faces are not stereochemically equivalent. They are examples of **enantiotopic faces**: *attachment of a ligand to one or the other of them gives rise to one or the other of a pair of enantiomers*.

The central atom of enantiotopic faces is another kind of *prochiral* center. Just as the carbon of  $\text{CWWXY}$  is a tetrahedral prochiral center, so the carbon of  $\text{CWXY}$  is a trigonal prochiral center.

To specify a particular face of an enantiotopic pair, we again adapt the Cahn-Ingold-Prelog procedure. We assign priority on the usual basis (Sec. 4.16) to the three ligands attached to the (trigonal) prochiral center, and visualize it as lying flat on the paper before us. If, in proceeding in the usual way in order of decreasing priority of ligands, our eye travels in a clockwise direction, the face turned upward toward us is specified as the **Re face** (*rectus*); if counterclockwise, it is specified as the **Si face** (*sinister*). For example:

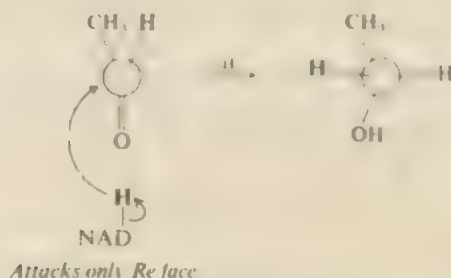


Now, approaching one face or the other of an enantiotopic pair, an optically inactive reagent will feel no difference and will attack them indiscriminately. But an optically active reagent will feel the difference and will discriminate; to a greater or lesser extent, it will attach itself preferentially to one or the other.

Once more, a reminder: the imaginary attachment of a ligand is simply an intellectual test—the easiest way to identify enantiotopic faces. A chiral reagent will discriminate between these faces even if enantiomers are not being formed; in the actual chemical reaction, a new chiral center need not be generated.



In the enzymatic reduction of acetaldehyde to ethanol, we have seen, NADH transfers H to only one of the faces of the aldehyde—a face that we now recognize as the *Re* face. Since the ligand being attached, H, is the same as one already



present in the molecule, enantiomers are not formed. Yet these are enantiotopic faces, and there is total discrimination between them.

Depending upon the structure of the rest of the molecule, there can also be **diastereotopic faces**: attachment of a ligand to one or the other of them gives rise to one or the other of a pair of diastereomers. Like diastereotopic ligands, these diastereotopic faces are discriminated between by any reagent, optically active or inactive.

Together, enantiotopic and diastereotopic faces are called **heterotopic** faces. Faces that are not heterotopic—that are stereochemically equivalent—are called **homotopic**.

**Problem 11.8** Draw a structural formula for each of the following compounds. Identify all pairs of heterotopic faces and tell whether each pair are enantiotopic or diastereotopic. Specify each face as *Re* or *Si*.

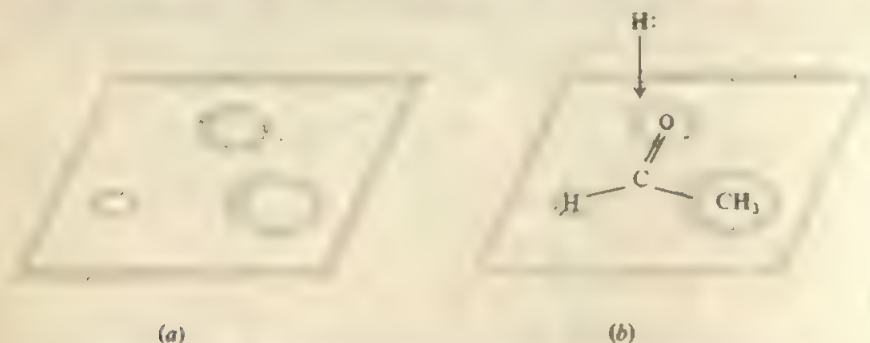
- propionaldehyde,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CHO}$
- acetone,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_3$
- (*R*)-3-methyl-2-pentanone,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{COCH}_3$
- 2-bromopropene
- isobutylene
- 3-bromo-2-methylpropene
- (*Z*)-1-chloropropene
- (*S*)-3-phenyl-1-butene

So far in this section we have spoken only in general terms: an optically active reagent “feels the difference between mirror-image environments,” we have said, and thus “distinguishes between” enantiotopic ligands or faces. Now let us be more specific. Let us take as an example the enzymatic reduction of acetaldehyde, and see the kind of thing that must be involved.

An enzyme, as we shall see, is an enormous molecule, wholly or mostly protein. It is a long chain, looped, coiled, and folded in a complicated, irregular way: at first glance a random arrangement, but actually highly characteristic of every molecule of that enzyme. (See, for example, the three-dimensional structure of  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsin on p. 1148.) This characteristic shape enables the enzyme to do its special job.

Like any substrate, acetaldehyde is bound by the enzyme. At a particular location in the giant molecule there is a site of a size, shape, and chemical nature just right to hold the acetaldehyde. (As Emil Fischer (p. 1144) put it, enzyme and

substrate "must fit together like a lock and key.") Let us represent the site in a purely schematic way (Fig. 11.7) as three holes on the surface of the enzyme: a big



**Figure 11.7.** Schematic representation of enzymatic reduction of acetaldehyde. (a) Binding site on surface of enzyme, with holes for  $\text{CH}_3$ ,  $\text{O}$ , and  $\text{H}$ . (b) Acetaldehyde bound to site in the only way it can fit, with *Re* face upward. Only this face can receive  $\text{H}$  from  $\text{NADH}$ .

hole for  $\text{CH}_3$ , a middle-sized hole for  $\text{O}$ , and a little hole for  $\text{H}$ . As shown, we can place the acetaldehyde on the site so that each ligand fits into its own hole—but only if a particular face of the molecule (the *Re* face) is turned upward. If we flip the molecule over, it can no longer be made to fit: we can, say, place  $\text{O}$  in its middle-sized hole, but then  $\text{CH}_3$  lies over the little hole, and  $\text{H}$  lies in the big hole. (To fit the lock, the key must be right side up.)

The reducing agent, the coenzyme  $\text{NADH}$ , is also bound to the enzyme, and also in a very specific way: in just the right position for it to transfer  $\text{H}$  to acetaldehyde. According to our schematic representation, this transfer can take place only to the upper, exposed face of the acetaldehyde. Since the bound aldehyde must have its *Re* face turned upward, it is to this face only that transfer can occur. (The key can be turned in the lock only when grasped by its projecting end.)

And thus, through its own chirality, the reagent—the enzyme coenzyme—recognizes the mirror-image environments of the two faces, and discriminates between them.

**Problem 11.9** Fig. 8.7 (p. 344) shows the hydrogenation with Wilkinson's catalyst of 1-acetamidopropenoic acid to give acetylalanine, which on hydrolysis yields the amino acid alanine.

(a) When (*R*)-propolis is part of the catalyst, this synthesis gives, ultimately, the natural amino acid, (*S*)-alanine. Considering the nature of the hydrolysis step (look at the structures involved), which of the acetylalanines in Fig. 8.7 would you expect to give this amino acid?

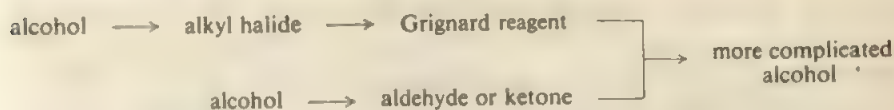
(b) Identify the enantiotopic faces in 1-acetamidopropenoic acid. Label each as *Re* or *Si*.

(c) To which of these faces does hydrogen preferentially add?

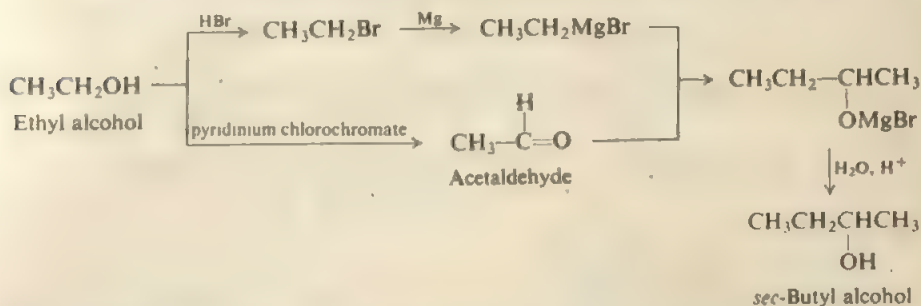
**Problem 11.10** Using the same approach as in Fig. 11.7, show in a schematic way how  $\text{NAD}^+$  discriminates between the enantiotopic hydrogens of ethanol.

## 11.12 Synthesis of alcohols

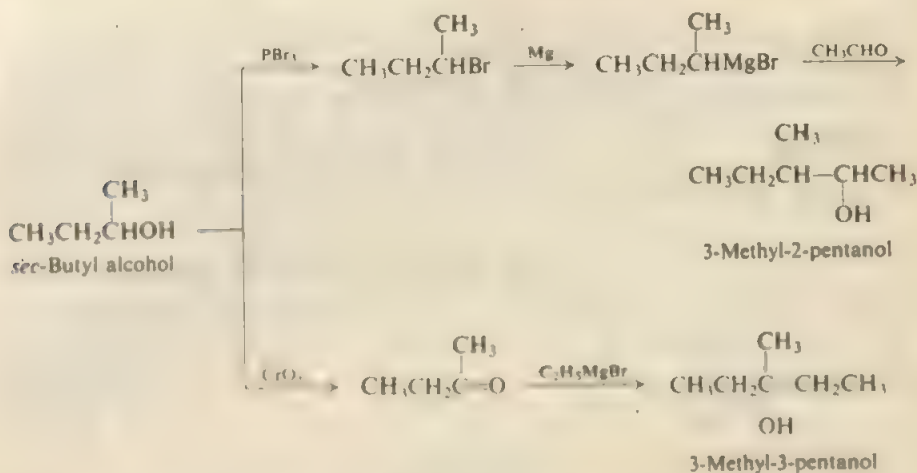
Let us try to get a broader picture of the synthesis of complicated alcohols. We learned (Sec. 10.12) that they are most often prepared by the reaction of Grignard reagents with aldehydes or ketones. In this chapter we have learned that aldehydes and ketones, as well as the alkyl halides from which the Grignard reagents are made, are themselves most often prepared from alcohols. Finally, we know that the simple alcohols are among our most readily available compounds. We have available to us, then, a synthetic route leading from simple alcohols to more complicated ones.



As a simple example, consider conversion of the two-carbon ethyl alcohol into the four-carbon *sec*-butyl alcohol:



Using the *sec*-butyl alcohol thus obtained, we could prepare even larger alcohols:

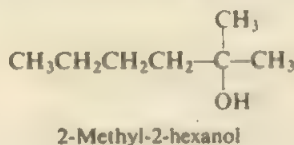


Granting that we know the chemistry of the individual steps, how do we go about planning a route to these more complicated alcohols? In almost every organic synthesis it is best to **work backwards** from the compound we want. There are

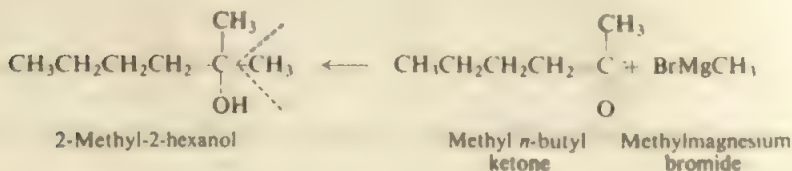
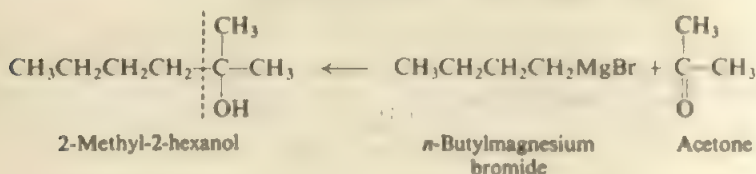


relatively few ways to make a complicated alcohol; there are relatively few ways to make the Grignard reagent or the aldehyde or ketone; and so on back to our ultimate starting materials. On the other hand, alcohols can undergo so many different reactions that, if we go at the problem the other way around, we find a bewildering number of paths, few of which take us where we want to go.

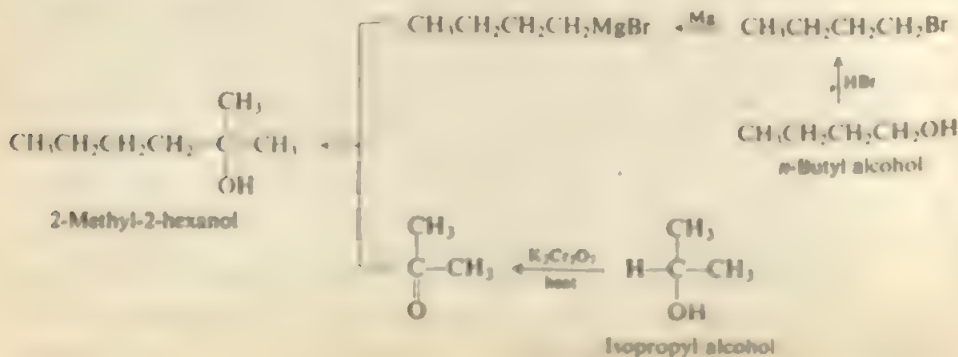
Let us suppose (and this is quite reasonable) that we have available all alcohols of four carbons or fewer, and that we want to make, say, 2-methyl-2-hexanol. Let us set down the structure and see what we need to make it.



Since it is a tertiary alcohol, we must use a Grignard reagent and a ketone. But which Grignard reagent? And which ketone? Using the same approach as before (Sec. 10.15), we see that there are two possibilities:



Of these two possibilities we would select the one involving the four-carbon Grignard reagent and the three-carbon ketone, now how are we to make *them*? The Grignard reagent can be made only from the corresponding alkyl halide, *n*-butyl bromide, and that in turn most likely from an alcohol, *n*-butyl alcohol. Acetone requires, of course, isopropyl alcohol. Putting together the entire synthesis, we have the following sequence:



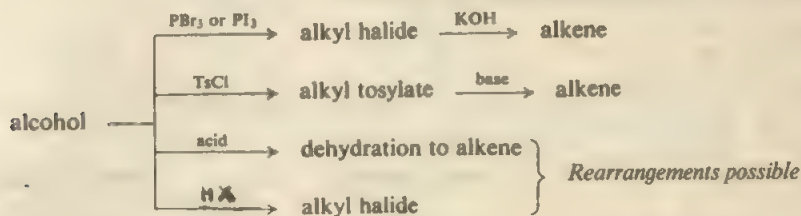
Now that we know how to make complicated alcohols from simple ones, what can we use them for?

### 11.13 Syntheses using alcohols

The alcohols that we have learned to make can be converted into other kinds of compounds having the same carbon skeleton; from complicated alcohols we can make complicated aldehydes, ketones, acids, halides, alkenes, alkynes, alkanes, etc.

Alkyl halides are prepared from alcohols by use of hydrogen halides or phosphorus halides. Phosphorus halides are often preferred because they tend less to bring about rearrangement (Sec. 6.32).

Alkenes are prepared from alcohols either by direct dehydration or by dehydrohalogenation of intermediate alkyl halides; to avoid rearrangement we often select dehydrohalogenation of halides even though this route involves an extra step. Or, sometimes better, we use elimination from alkyl sulfonates.



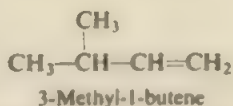
Alkanes, we learned (Sec. 3.15), are best prepared from the corresponding alkenes by hydrogenation, so that now we have a route from complicated alcohols to complicated alkanes.

Complicated aldehydes and ketones are made by oxidizing complicated alcohols. By reaction with Grignard reagents these aldehydes and ketones can be converted into even more complicated alcohols, and so on.

Given the time, necessary inorganic reagents, and the single alcohol ethanol, our chemical Crusoe of Sec. 10.1 could synthesize all the aliphatic compounds that have ever been made—and for that matter the aromatic ones, too.

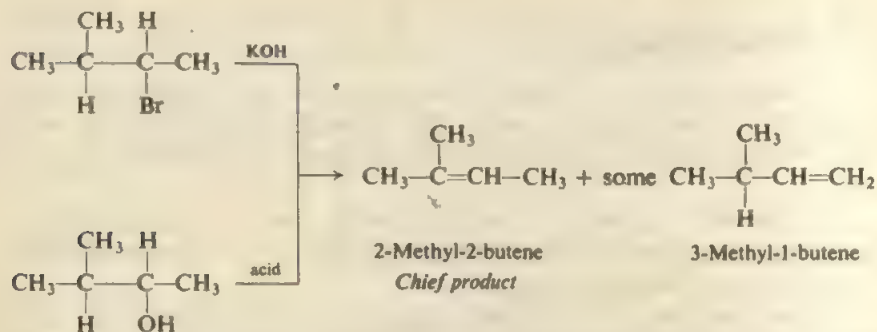
In planning the synthesis of these other kinds of compounds, we again follow our system of working backwards. We try to limit the synthesis to as few steps as possible, but nevertheless do not sacrifice purity for time. For example, where rearrangement is likely to occur we prepare an alkene in two steps via the halide or sulfonate rather than by the single step of dehydration.

Assuming again that we have available alcohols of four carbons or fewer, let us take as an example 3-methyl-1-butene. It could be prepared by dehydrohalogen-

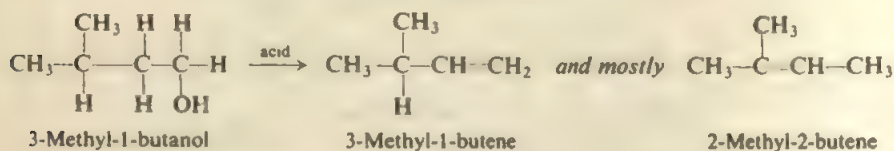


ation of an alkyl halide of the same carbon skeleton, or by dehydration of an alcohol. If the halogen or hydroxyl group were attached to C-2, we would obtain

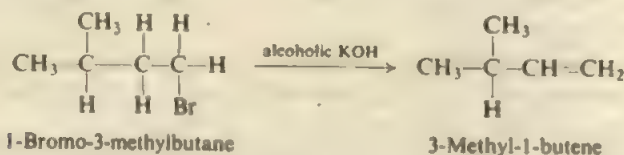
some of the desired product, but much more of its isomer, 2-methyl-2-butene:



We would select, then, the compound with the functional group attached to C-1. Even so, if we were to use the alcohol, there would be extensive rearrangement to yield, again, the more stable 2-methyl-2-butene:



Only dehydrohalogenation of 1-bromo-3-methylbutane would yield the desired product in pure form:

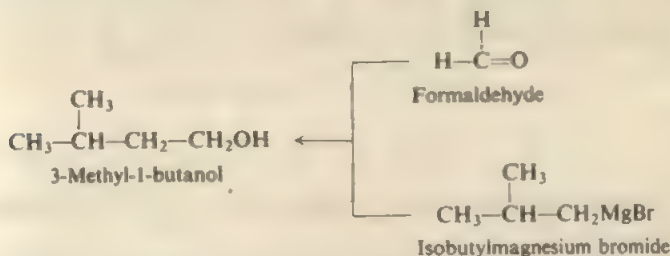


How do we prepare the necessary alkyl halide? Certainly not by bromination of an alkane, since even if we could make the proper alkane in some way, bromination would occur almost entirely at the tertiary position to give the wrong product. (Chlorination would give the proper chloride—but as a minor component of a grand mixture.) As usual, then, we would prepare the halide from the corresponding alcohol, in this case 3-methyl-1-butanol. Since this is a primary alcohol (without branching near the —OH group), and hence does not form the halide via the carbocation, rearrangement is not likely; we might use, then, either hydrogen bromide or PBr<sub>3</sub>.

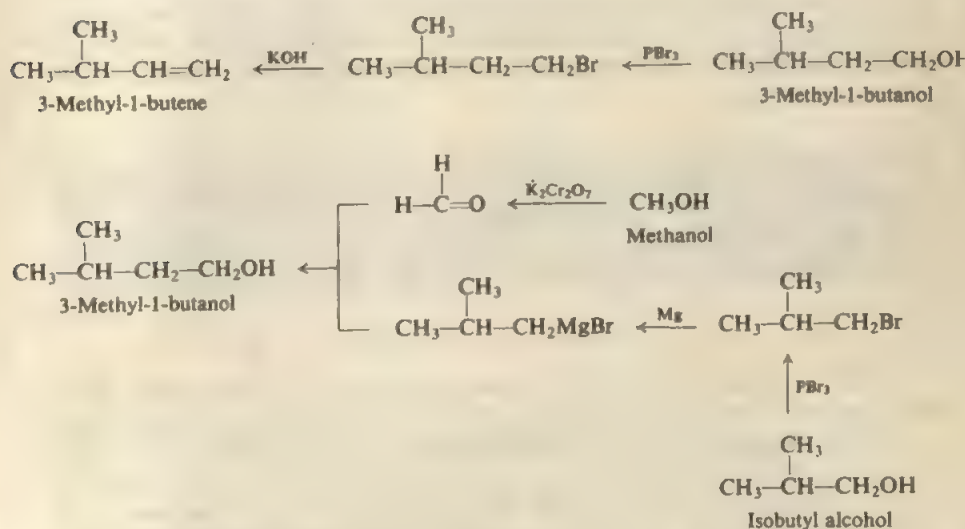


Now, how do we make 3-methyl-1-butanol? It is a primary alcohol and contains one carbon more than our largest available alcohol, therefore we would

use the reaction of a Grignard reagent with formaldehyde. The necessary Grignard reagent is isobutylmagnesium bromide, which we could have prepared from



isobutyl bromide, and that in turn from isobutyl alcohol. The formaldehyde is made by oxidation of methanol. The entire sequence, from which we could expect to obtain quite pure 3-methyl-1-butene, is the following:



## 11.14 Analysis of alcohols. Characterization. Iodoform test

Alcohols dissolve in cold concentrated sulfuric acid. This property they share with alkenes, amines, practically all compounds containing oxygen, and easily sulfonated compounds. (Alcohols, like other oxygen-containing compounds, form oxonium salts, which dissolve in the highly polar sulfuric acid.)

Alcohols are not oxidized by cold, dilute, neutral permanganate (although primary and secondary alcohols are, of course, oxidized by permanganate under more vigorous conditions). However, as we have seen (Sec. 8.29), alcohols often contain impurities that *are* oxidized under these conditions, and so the permanganate test must be interpreted with caution.

Alcohols do not decolorize bromine in carbon tetrachloride. This property serves to distinguish them from alkenes and alkynes.



Alcohols are further distinguished from alkenes and alkynes—and, indeed, from nearly every other kind of compound—by their oxidation by chromic anhydride,  $\text{CrO}_3$ , in aqueous sulfuric acid: within *two seconds*, the clear orange solution turns blue-green and becomes opaque.



Tertiary alcohols do not give this test. Aldehydes do, but are easily differentiated in other ways (Sec. 18.16).

Reaction of alcohols with sodium metal, with the evolution of hydrogen gas, is of some use in characterization; a *wet* compound of any kind, of course, will do the same thing, until the water is used up.

The presence of the  $-\text{OH}$  group in a molecule is often indicated by the formation of an ester upon treatment with an acid chloride or anhydride (Sec. 19.16). Some esters are sweet-smelling; others are solids with sharp melting points, and can be derivatives in identifications. (If the molecular formulas of starting material and product are determined, it is possible to calculate *how many*  $-\text{OH}$  groups are present.)

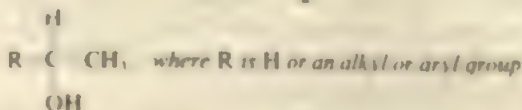
**Problem 11.11** Make a table to show the response of each kind of compound we have studied so far toward the following reagents:

- |   |   |                  |
|---|---|------------------|
| (a) cold concentrated $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ | (c) $\text{Br}_2$ in $\text{CCl}_4$           | (e) sodium metal |
| (b) cold, dilute, neutral $\text{KMnO}_4$     | (d) $\text{CrO}_3$ in $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ |                  |

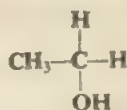
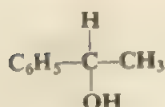
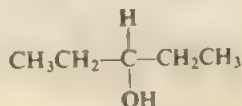
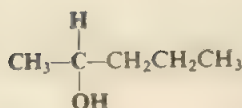
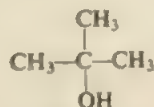
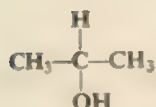
Whether an alcohol is primary, secondary, or tertiary is shown by the **Lucas test**, which is based upon the difference in reactivity of the three classes toward hydrogen halides (Sec. 6.32). Alcohols (of not more than six carbons) are soluble in the *Lucas reagent*, a mixture of concentrated hydrochloric acid and zinc chloride. (Why are they more soluble in this than in water?) The corresponding alkyl chlorides are insoluble. Formation of a chloride from an alcohol is indicated by the cloudiness that appears when the chloride separates from the solution, hence, the time required for cloudiness to appear is a measure of the reactivity of the alcohol.

A tertiary alcohol reacts immediately with the Lucas reagent, and a secondary alcohol reacts within five minutes, a primary alcohol does not react appreciably at room temperature. Allyl alcohol reacts as rapidly as tertiary alcohols with the Lucas reagent, allyl chloride, however, is soluble in the reagent (Why?)

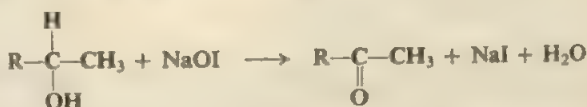
Whether or not an alcohol contains one particular structural unit is shown by the **iodoform test**. The alcohol is treated with iodine and sodium hydroxide (sodium hypiodite,  $\text{NaOI}$ ), an alcohol of the structure



yields a yellow precipitate of iodoform ( $\text{CHI}_3$ , m.p. 119°). For example

Gives positive  
iodoform testGives negative  
iodoform testAny other  
primary alcohol

The reaction involves oxidation, halogenation, and cleavage.



As would be expected from the equations, a compound of structure



also gives a positive test (Sec. 18.16).

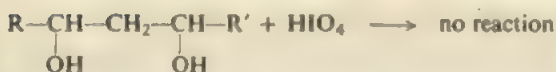
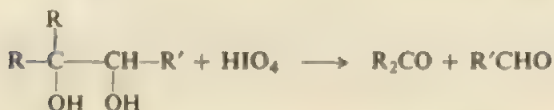
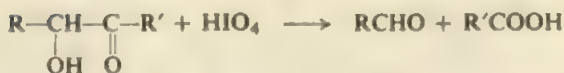
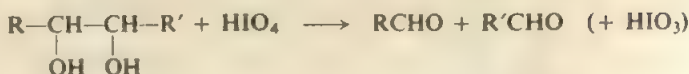
In certain special cases this reaction is used not as a test, but to synthesize the carboxylic acid,  $\text{RCOOH}$ . Here, hypobromite or the cheaper hypochlorite would probably be used.

(Spectroscopic analysis of alcohols will be discussed in Secs. 17.6 and 17.17.)

### 11.15 Analysis of 1,2-diols. Periodic acid oxidation

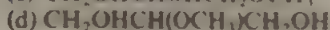
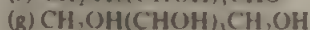
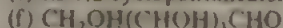
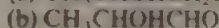
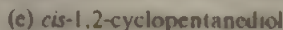
Upon treatment with periodic acid,  $\text{HIO}_4$ , compounds containing two or more  $-\text{OH}$  or  $=\text{O}$  groups attached to *adjacent* carbon atoms undergo oxidation

with cleavage of carbon-carbon bonds. For example:

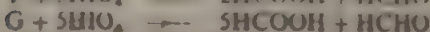
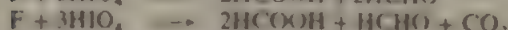
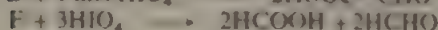


The oxidation is particularly useful in determination of structure. Qualitatively, oxidation by  $\text{HIO}_4$  is indicated by formation of a white precipitate ( $\text{AgIO}_3$ ) upon addition of silver nitrate. Since the reaction is usually quantitative, valuable information is given by the nature and amounts of the products, and by the quantity of periodic acid consumed.

**Problem 11.12** When one mole of each of the following compounds is treated with  $\text{HIO}_4$ , what will the products be, and how many moles of  $\text{HIO}_4$  will be consumed?



**Problem 11.13** Assign a structure to each of the following compounds:



## PROBLEMS

1. Refer to the isomeric pentyl alcohols of Problem 1(a), p. 482. (a) Indicate which (if any) will give a positive iodoform test. (b) Describe how each will respond to the Lucas reagent. (c) Describe how each will respond to chromic anhydride. (d) Outline all steps in a possible synthesis of each, starting from alcohols of four carbons or fewer, and using any necessary inorganic reagents.

2. Give structures and names of the chief products expected from the reaction (if any) of cyclohexanol with:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) cold conc. $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$       | (l) $\text{NaOH(aq)}$                               |
| (b) $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , heat           | (m) product (f) + $\text{Mg}$                       |
| (c) cold dilute $\text{KMnO}_4$              | (n) product (m) + product (d)                       |
| (d) $\text{CrO}_3$ , $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ | (o) product (b) + cold alk. $\text{KMnO}_4$         |
| (e) $\text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4$               | (p) product (b) + $\text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4$        |
| (f) conc. aqueous $\text{HBr}$               | (q) product (b) + $\text{H}_2$ , $\text{Ni}$        |
| (g) $\text{P} + \text{I}_2$                  | (r) product (b) + $\text{N-bromosuccinimide}$       |
| (h) $\text{Na}$                              | (s) product (b) + $\text{CHCl}_3$ + $t\text{-BuOK}$ |
| (i) $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$ , $\text{H}^+$  | (t) product (d) + $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{MgBr}$ |
| (j) $\text{H}_2$ , $\text{Ni}$               | (u) tosyl chloride, $\text{OH}^-$                   |
| (k) $\text{CH}_3\text{MgBr}$                 | (v) product (u) + $t\text{-BuOK}$                   |

3. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following compounds from *n*-butyl alcohol, using any necessary inorganic reagents. Follow the general instructions on p. 265.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) <i>n</i> -butyl bromide   | (k) 1,2-butanediol   |
| (b) 1-butene  | (l) <i>n</i> -octane   |
| (c) <i>n</i> -butyl hydrogen sulfate  | (m) 4-octanol  |
| (d) potassium <i>n</i> -butoxide  | (n) 4-octanone, $\bullet$  |
| (e) <i>n</i> -butyraldehyde,<br>$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHO}$ | $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$   |
| (f) <i>n</i> -butyric acid,<br>$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ | (o) 5-( <i>n</i> -propyl)-5-nonanol  |
| (g) <i>n</i> -butane  | (p) <i>n</i> -butyl <i>n</i> -butoxide,<br>$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ |
| (h) 1,2-dibromobutane   |  |
| (i) 1-chloro-2-butanol  |  |
| (j) ethylcyclopropane   |  |

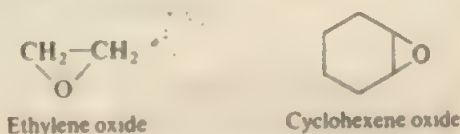
4. Give structures and (where possible) names of the principal organic products of the following:

- (a) isopropyl alcohol +  $\text{Mg}$   
 (b) isobutyl alcohol +  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COOH} + \text{H}^+$   
 (c) ethylene bromide + excess  $\text{NaOH(aq)}$   
 (d) *n*-butyl alcohol +  $\text{H}_2$ ,  $\text{Pt}$   
 (e) crotyl alcohol ( $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ) +  $\text{Br}_2/\text{H}_2\text{O}$   
 (f)  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH} + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{MgBr}$

5. In Great Britain during the past years, thousands of motorists have been (politely) stopped by the police and asked to blow into a "breathalyzer": a glass tube containing silica gel impregnated with certain chemicals, and leading into a plastic bag. If, for more than half the length of the tube, the original yellow color turns green, the motorist looks very unhappy and often turns red. What chemicals are impregnated on the silica gel, why does the tube turn green, and why does the motorist turn red?

6. (a) How do you account for the fact that when allyl bromide is treated with dilute  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , there is obtained not only 1-bromo-2-propanol, but also 2-bromo-1-propanol? (b) In contrast, allyl chloride yields only one product, 1-chloro-2-propanol. How do you account for this difference between the chloride and the bromide?

7. On treatment with concentrated aqueous sodium hydroxide, 2-chloroethanol is converted into the epoxide, *ethylene oxide*.



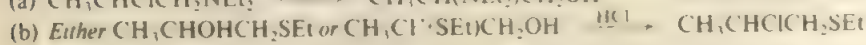
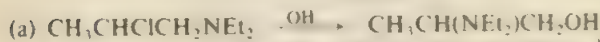
- (a) Showing all steps, suggest a likely mechanism for this reaction.



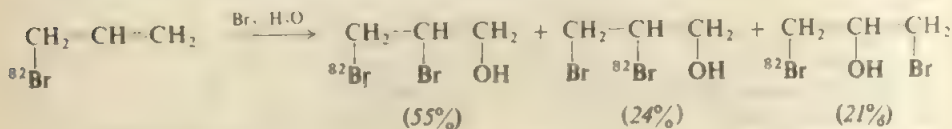
(b) Using models, show the steric course it probably follows.

(c) Suggest a reason why sodium hydroxide readily converts *trans*-2-chlorocyclohexanol into cyclohexene oxide, but converts the *cis*-isomer into entirely different products.

8. Account in detail for each of the following observations:



9. Upon reaction with bromine water, as we have seen (Problem 10, p. 390), allyl bromide gives chiefly the primary alcohol,  $\text{CH}_2\text{BrCHBrCH}_2\text{OH}$ , evidently because of electron withdrawal by the  $-\text{Br}$  already in the molecule. When allyl bromide labeled with  $^{82}\text{Br}$  undergoes this reaction, the following products are obtained:



(a) How do you account for the formation of the 24% of product with  $^{82}\text{Br}$  attached to C-2?

(b) When similarly labeled allyl chloride is used there is obtained only 4% of the product with the label attached to C-2. How do you account for this difference between the chloride and bromide?

10. On treatment with aqueous  $\text{HBr}$  both *cis*- and *trans*-2-bromocyclohexanol are converted into the same product. What would you expect this product to be, and how do you account for its formation from both substrates?

11. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following compounds from cyclohexanol and any necessary aliphatic, aromatic, or inorganic reagents.

(a) cyclohexanone ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{10}\text{O}$ )

(b) bromocyclohexane

(c) 1-methylcyclohexanol

(d) 1-methylcyclohexene

(e) *trans*-2-methylcyclohexanol

(f) 1-cyclohexylethanol

(g) *trans*-1,2-dibromocyclohexane

(h) cyclohexylmethanol

(i) 1-bromo-1-phenylcyclohexane

(j) cyclohexanecarboxylic acid

(k) adipic acid,  $\text{HOOC}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{COOH}$

(l) norcarane (see p. 207)

12. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following compounds from alcohols of four carbons or fewer.

(a) 2,3-dimethyl-2-butanol

(b) 2-methyl-1-butene

(c) isopentane

(d) 1,2-dibromo-2-methylbutane

(e) 3-hexanol

(f) 3-hexanone (I)

(g) 4-ethyl-4-heptanol

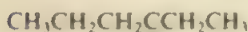
(h) 2-bromo-2-methylhexane

(i) methyl isopropyl ketone (II)

(j) 2-methylhexane

(k) 2,2-dimethylhexane

(l) ethyl propionate (III)



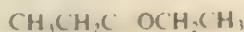
O

I



O

II



O

III

13. Compounds "labeled" at various positions by isotopic atoms are useful in determining reaction mechanisms and in following the fate of compounds in biological systems. Outline a possible synthesis of each of the following labeled compounds using  $^{14}\text{C}$   $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$  as the source of  $^{14}\text{C}$ , and  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$  as the source of deuterium

- (a) 2-methyl-1-propanol-1- $^{14}\text{C}$ ,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}^{14}\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$
- (b) 2-methyl-1-propanol-2- $^{14}\text{C}$ ,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2^{14}\text{CHCH}_2\text{OH}$
- (c) 2-methyl-1-propanol-3- $^{14}\text{C}$ ,  $^{14}\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$
- (d) propene-1- $^{14}\text{C}$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CH}^{14}\text{CH}_2$
- (e) propene-2- $^{14}\text{C}$ ,  $\text{CH}_3^{14}\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$
- (f) propene-3- $^{14}\text{C}$ ,  $^{14}\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$
- (g)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{D}$
- (h)  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CHD}^{14}\text{CH}_3$

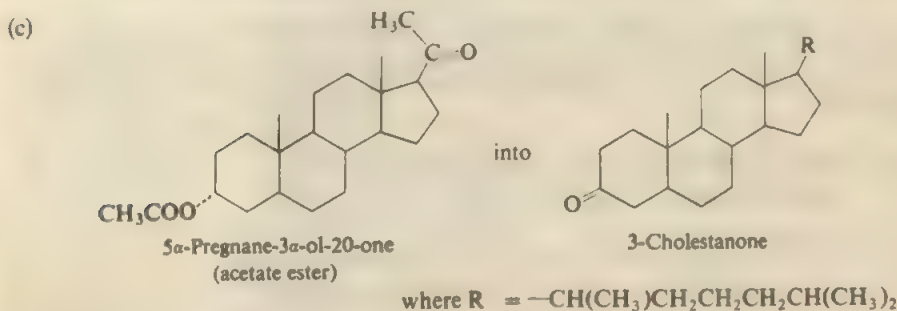
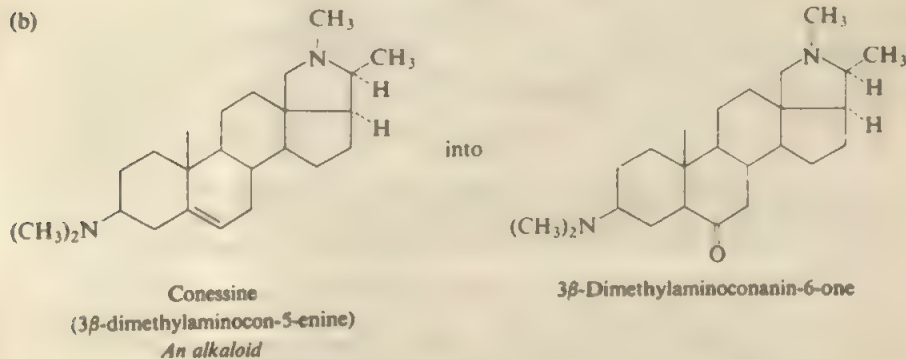
14. When *trans*-2-methylcyclopentanol is treated with tosyl chloride and the product with potassium *tert*-butoxide, the only alkene obtained is 3-methylcyclopentene. (a) What is the stereochemistry of this reaction? (b) This is the final step of a general synthetic route to 3-alkylcyclopentenones, starting from cyclopentanone. Outline all steps in this route,



carefully choosing your reagents in each step. (c) What advantage does this sequence have over an analogous one involving an intermediate halide instead of a tosylate?

15. Making use of any necessary organic or inorganic reagents, outline all steps in the conversion of:

- (a) androst-9(11)-ene (p. 483) into the saturated 11-keto derivative.

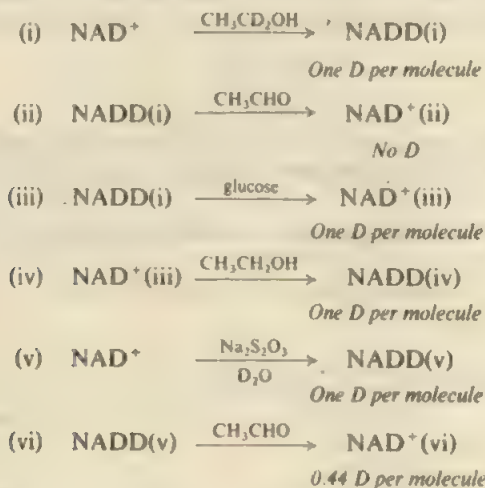


(Hint:  $\text{CH}_3\text{COOCH}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{OH}^-, \text{heat}} \text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- + \text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ .)

16. Draw a stereochemical formula for each of the following compounds. Identify all pairs of heterotopic ligands and faces, and tell whether each pair are enantiotopic or diastereotopic. Specify each ligand as pro-*R* or pro-*S*, and each face as *Re* or *Si*. (Caution: In most of these compounds there may be considerably more than first meets the eye.)

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| (a) 3-chloropentane   | (f) (S)-CH <sub>3</sub> CHOHCHO |
| (b) 1,3-propanediol   | (g) methylcyclopropane          |
| (c) 2-butanone, CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> COCH <sub>3</sub> | (h) 3-methylcyclopropane        |
| (d) (R,S)-2,4-pentanediol   | (i) <i>cis</i> -2-butene        |
| (e) (R,R)-2,4-pentanediol   | (j) 2-methyl-2-butene           |

17. Let us look at the work on the enzymatic oxidation-reduction of ethanol-acetaldehyde (Sec. 11.10) from the standpoint of the NAD. The following observations were made. (The reaction in (v) is ordinary chemical reduction. All the others are enzyme-catalyzed. The oxidation by glucose in (iii) involves an enzyme different from alcohol dehydrogenase.)

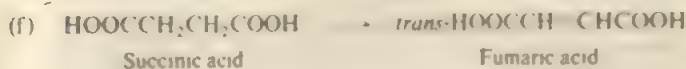
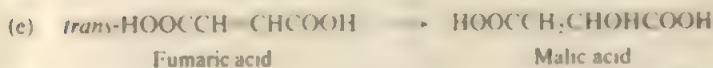
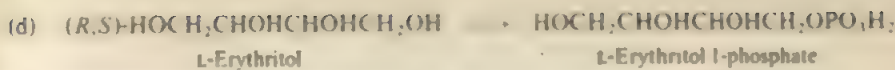


There are thus three samples of NADD, each containing one deuterium atom per molecule: NADD(i), NADD(iv), NADD(v). When oxidized by CH<sub>3</sub>CHO, each NADD gives NAD<sup>+</sup> containing a different number of deuterium atoms per molecule: none, one, and 0.44.

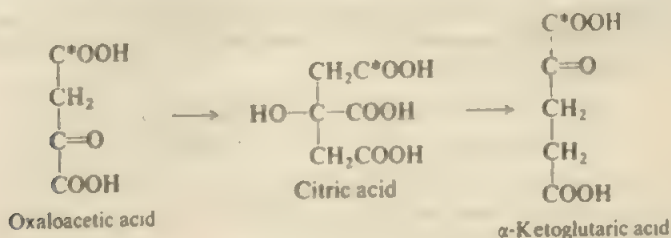
Regardless of the exact structural formula of NADH, what can you conclude about its structure from these observations? Using letters to stand for unknown groups, draw a structural formula for NADH. What is the relationship between NADD(i) and NADD(iv)? What is NADD(v)? Account in detail for each of the observations.

18. Following are some enzyme-catalyzed transformations. For each one, tell whether or not there *could* be discrimination on a stereochemical basis (that is, discrimination *other than* any indicated below). Explain your answer in each case by use of stereochemical formulas.

- |     |  |   |   |
|-----|--|---|---|
| (a) | (R)-CH <sub>3</sub> CHOHCHO                        | → | CH <sub>3</sub> CHOHCH <sub>2</sub> OH                                    |
|     | (R)-Lactaldehyde                                   |   | 1,2-Propanediol   |
| (b) | CH <sub>2</sub> OHCHOHCH <sub>2</sub> OH           | → | CH <sub>2</sub> OHCHOHCH <sub>2</sub> OPO <sub>3</sub> H <sub>2</sub>     |
|     | Glycerol   |   | Glycerol 1-phosphate  |
| (c) | (S,S)-HOCH <sub>2</sub> CHOHCHOHCH <sub>2</sub> OH | → | HOCH <sub>2</sub> CHOHCHOHCH <sub>2</sub> OPO <sub>3</sub> H <sub>2</sub> |
|     | L-Threitol   |   | L-Threitol 1-phosphate  |



19. The system of reactions called *respiration* (Sec. 31.5) is the final and aerobic stage in the biological utilization of food—carbohydrates, proteins, and fats—as fuel. Central to respiration is the interconversion of certain carboxylic acids—a process that occurs in nearly every aerobic organism. In 1937 H. A. Krebs proposed a particular sequence of chemical changes—the *Krebs tricarboxylic acid cycle*—for this interconversion. Part of this cycle involves the following transformation via the key intermediate, *citric acid*.



Krebs made the following prediction: if citric acid were indeed the intermediate, then oxaloacetic acid isotopically labeled on one of the carboxyl groups ( $C^*OOH$ ) would yield  $\alpha$ -ketoglutaric acid with the label evenly divided between its carboxyl groups. In 1941 the results of such labeling experiments were reported: contrary to Krebs' prediction, the  $\alpha$ -ketoglutaric acid formed was found to contain the label in *only one* of its carboxyl groups, as shown above.

- as shown above.
- (a) What, do you think, was the line of reasoning that led Krebs to make his prediction?
- (b) Would this line of reasoning be valid? Explain your answer.
- (c) In light of the labeling experiments, can citric acid be an intermediate in the process shown, or can it not?

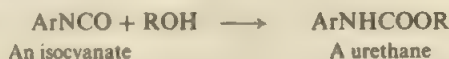
20. Assign structures to the compounds A through HH.

- (a) ethylene +  $\text{Cl}_2(\text{aq}) \longrightarrow \text{A} (\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCl})$   
 $\text{A} + \text{NaHCO}_3(\text{aq}) \longrightarrow \text{B} (\text{C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O}_2)$   
 (b) ethylene +  $\text{Cl}_2(\text{aq}) \longrightarrow \text{A} (\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCl})$   
 $\text{A} + \text{HNO}_3 \longrightarrow \text{C} (\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2\text{Cl})$   
 $\text{C} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{D} (\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{O}_3)$   
 (c)  $\text{E} + 6\text{HIO}_4 \longrightarrow 6\text{HCOOH}$   
 (d)  $\text{F} (\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{34}\text{O}_2) + \text{HCO}_2\text{OH} \longrightarrow \text{G} (\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{36}\text{O}_4)$   
 $\text{G} + \text{HIO}_4 \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{CHO} + \text{OHC}(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{COOH}$   
 (e) allyl alcohol +  $\text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4 \longrightarrow \text{H} (\text{C}_3\text{H}_6\text{OBr}_2)$   
 $\text{H} + \text{HNO}_3 \longrightarrow \text{I} (\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{O}_2\text{Br}_2)$   
 $\text{I} + \text{Zn} \longrightarrow \text{J} (\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{O}_2)$   
 (f) 1,2,3-tribromopropane +  $\text{KOH}(\text{alc}) \longrightarrow \text{K} (\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{Br}_2)$   
 $\text{K} + \text{NaOH}(\text{aq}) \longrightarrow \text{L} (\text{C}_3\text{H}_5\text{OBr})$   
 $\text{L} + \text{KOH}(\text{alc}) \longrightarrow \text{M} (\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{O})$   
 (g) 2,2-dichloropropane +  $\text{NaOH}(\text{aq}) \longrightarrow \text{N} (\text{C}_3\text{H}_8\text{O}_2) \longrightarrow \text{O} (\text{C}_3\text{H}_6\text{O})$



- (h) propyne ( $\text{CH}_3\text{C}\equiv\text{CH}$ ) +  $\text{Cl}_2(\text{aq}) \longrightarrow [\text{P}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{O}_2\text{Cl}_2)] \longrightarrow \text{Q}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{OCl}_2)$   
 $\text{Q} + \text{Cl}_2(\text{aq}) \longrightarrow \text{R}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_3\text{OCl}_3)$   
 $\text{R} + \text{NaOH}(\text{aq}) \longrightarrow \text{CHCl}_3 + \text{S}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2\text{Na})$
- (i) cyclohexene +  $\text{KMnO}_4 \longrightarrow \text{T}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_2)$   
 $\text{T} + \text{CH}_3\text{COOH}, \text{H}^+ \longrightarrow \text{U}(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_4)$
- (j)  $\text{V}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_8\text{O}_1) + \text{CH}_3\text{COOH}, \text{H}^+ \longrightarrow \text{W}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_6)$
- (k) cyclohexanol +  $\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7, \text{H}^+ \longrightarrow \text{X}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{10}\text{O})$   
 $\text{X} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{MgBr}$ , followed by  $\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{Y}(\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{16}\text{O})$   
 $\text{Y} + \text{heat} \longrightarrow \text{Z}(\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{24})$   
 $\text{Z} + \text{KMnO}_4/\text{NaIO}_4 \longrightarrow \text{AA}(\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_3)$
- (l)  $(\text{R})(+)-1\text{-bromo-2,4-dimethylpentane} + \text{Mg} \longrightarrow \text{BB}$   
 $\text{BB} + (\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CHO}$ , then  $\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{CC}(\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{26}\text{O})$ , a mixture  
 $\text{CC} + \text{CrO}_3 \longrightarrow \text{DD}(\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{24}\text{O})$   
 $\text{DD} + \text{CH}_3\text{MgBr}$ , then  $\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{EE}(\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{28}\text{O})$ , a mixture  
 $\text{EE} + \text{I}_2, \text{heat} \longrightarrow \text{FF}(\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{26})$ , a mixture  
 $\text{FF} + \text{H}_2, \text{Ni} \longrightarrow \text{GG}(\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{28}) + \text{HH}(\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{28})$   
*Optically active* *Optically inactive*

21. By use of Table 11.1 tell which alcohol or alcohols each of the following is likely to be. Tell what further steps you would take to identify it or to confirm your identification. (Below, Ar =  $\alpha$ -naphthyl, Sec. 34.2.)



II: b.p.  $115-7^\circ$ ; Lucas test, secondary; 3,5-dinitrobenzoate, m.p.  $95-6$

JJ: b.p.  $128-30^\circ$ ; negative halogen test; Lucas test, primary

KK: b.p.  $128-31^\circ$ ; positive iodoform test

LL: b.p.  $115-8^\circ$ ; 3,5-dinitrobenzoate, m.p.  $60-1^\circ$

MM: b.p.  $117-9^\circ$ ;  $\alpha$ -naphthylurethane, m.p.  $69-71^\circ$

Table 11.1 DERIVATIVES OF SOME ALCOHOLS

Alcohol	B.p., $^\circ\text{C}$	$\alpha$ -Naphthylurethane	3,5-Dinitrobenzoate
		M.p., $^\circ\text{C}$	M.p., $^\circ\text{C}$
3-Methyl-2-butanol	114	112	76
3-Pentanol	116	71	97
<i>n</i> -Butyl alcohol	118	71	64
2-Pentanol	119	76	61
1-Chloro-2-propanol	127	—	83
2-Methyl-1-butanol	128	97	62
Ethylene chlorohydrin	129	101	92
4-Methyl-2-pentanol	131	88	65
3-Methyl-1-butanol	132	67	62
2-Chloro-1-propanol	132	—	76

22. Describe simple chemical tests that would serve to distinguish between:

(a) *n*-butyl alcohol and *n*-octane

(b) *n*-butyl alcohol and 1-octene

(c) *n*-butyl alcohol and *n*-pentyl bromide

(d) *n*-butyl alcohol and 3-buten-1-ol

(e) 3-buten-1-ol and 2-buten-1-ol

(f) 3-pentanol and 1-pentanol

(g) 3-pentanol and 2-pentanol

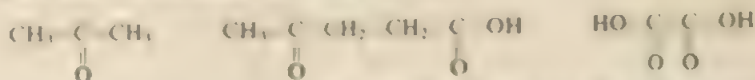
(h) 2-bromoethanol and *n*-butyl alcohol

(i) 1,2-propanediol and 1,3-propanediol

(j) *n*-butyl alcohol and *tert*-pentyl alcohol

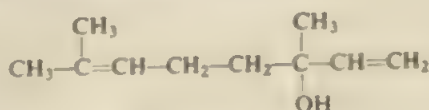
Tell exactly what you would *do* and *see*.

23. *Geraniol*,  $C_{10}H_{18}O$ , a terpene found in rose oil, adds two moles of bromine to form a tetrabromide  $C_{10}H_{18}OBr_4$ . It can be oxidized to a ten-carbon aldehyde or to a ten-carbon carboxylic acid. Upon vigorous oxidation, geraniol yields



(a) Keeping in mind the isoprene rule (Sec. 9.33), what is the most likely structure for geraniol? (b) Nerol (Problem 30, p. 454) can be converted into the same saturated alcohol as geraniol, and yields the same oxidation products as geraniol, yet has different physical properties. What is the most probable structural relationship between geraniol and nerol? (c) Like nerol, geraniol is converted by sulfuric acid into  $\alpha$ -terpineol (Problem 30, p. 454), but much more slowly than nerol. On this basis, what structures might you assign to nerol and geraniol? (*Hint*: Use models.)

24. Upon treatment with  $\text{HBr}$ , both geraniol (preceding problem) and *linalool* (from oil of lavender, bergamot, coriander) yield the same bromide, of formula  $C_{10}H_{17}Br$ . How do you account for this fact?



Linalool

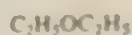
## Ethers and Epoxides

### ETHERS

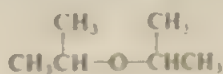
#### 12.1 Structure and nomenclature of ethers

Ethers are compounds of the general formula  $R-O-R$ ,  $Ar-O-R$  or  $Ar-O-Ar$  ( $Ar$  is phenyl or some other aromatic group).

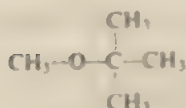
To name ethers we usually name the two groups that are attached to oxygen and follow these names by the word *ether*.



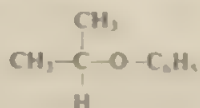
Diethyl ether



Diisopropyl ether

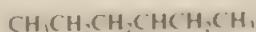


Methyl *tert*-butyl ether

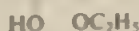


Isopropyl phenyl ether

If one group has no simple name, the compound may be named as an *alkoxy* derivative:



3-Methoxyhexane



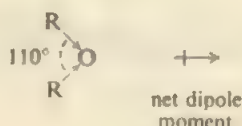
2-Ethoxyethanol

The simplest alkyl aryl ether, methyl phenyl ether, has the special name of *anisole*.

If the two groups are identical, the ether is said to be *symmetrical* (e.g., *diethyl ether*, *diisopropyl ether*); if different, *unsymmetrical* (e.g., *methyl *tert*-butyl ether*).

## 12.2 Physical properties of ethers

Since the C—O—C bond angle is not  $180^\circ$ , the dipole moments of the two C—O bonds do not cancel each other; consequently, ethers possess a small net dipole moment (e.g., 1.18 D for diethyl ether).



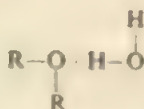
This weak polarity does not appreciably affect the boiling points of ethers, which are about the same as those of alkanes having comparable molecular weights, and much lower than those of isomeric alcohols. Compare, for example, the boiling points of *n*-heptane (98°), methyl *n*-pentyl ether (100°), and *n*-hexyl alcohol (157°). The hydrogen bonding that holds alcohol molecules strongly together is not possible for ethers, since they contain hydrogen bonded only to carbon (Sec. 10.3).

On the other hand, ethers show a solubility in water comparable to that of the alcohols, both diethyl ether and *n*-butyl alcohol, for example, being soluble to the extent of about 8 g per 100 g of water. We attributed the water solubility of the

Table 12.1 ETHERS

Name	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Name	M.p., °C	B.p., °C
Dimethyl ether	-140	-24	Anisole	-37	154
Diethyl ether	-116	34.6	(Methyl phenyl ether)		
Di- <i>n</i> -propyl ether	-122	91	Phenetole	-33	172
Diisopropyl ether	-60	69	(Ethyl phenyl ether)		
Di- <i>n</i> -butyl ether	-95	142	Diphenyl ether	27	259
Divinyl ether		35	1,4-Dioxane	11	101
Diallyl ether		94	Tetrahydrofuran	108	66

lower alcohols to hydrogen bonding between water molecules and alcohol molecules, the water solubility of ether arises in the same way.



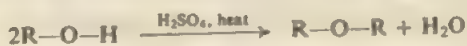
(We shall look at the properties of ethers as solvents in Sec. 12.9.)

## 12.3 Industrial sources of ethers. Dehydration of alcohols

A number of symmetrical ethers containing the lower alkyl groups are prepared on a large scale, chiefly for use as solvents. The most important of these is **diethyl ether**, the familiar solvent we use in extractions and in the preparation of Grignard reagents; others include diisopropyl ether and di-*n*-butyl ether.



These ethers are prepared by reactions of the corresponding alcohols with sulfuric acid. Since a molecule of water is lost for every pair of alcohol molecules, the reaction is a kind of *dehydration*. Dehydration to ethers rather than to alkenes



is controlled by the choice of reaction conditions. For example, ethylene is prepared by heating ethyl alcohol with concentrated sulfuric acid to  $180^\circ$ ; diethyl ether is prepared by heating a mixture of ethyl alcohol and concentrated sulfuric acid to  $140^\circ$ , alcohol being continuously added to keep it in excess.

Dehydration is generally limited to the preparation of symmetrical ethers, because, as we might expect, a combination of two alcohols usually yields a mixture of three ethers.

Ether formation by dehydration is an example of nucleophilic substitution, with the protonated alcohol as substrate and a second molecule of alcohol as nucleophile.

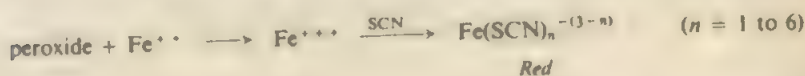
**Problem 12.1** (a) Give all steps of a likely mechanism for the dehydration of an alcohol to an ether. (b) Is this the only possibility? Give all steps of an alternative mechanism. (c) Dehydration of *n*-butyl alcohol gives di-*n*-butyl ether. Which of your alternatives appears to be operating here?

**Problem 12.2** In ether formation by dehydration, as in other cases of substitution, there is a competing elimination reaction. What is this reaction, and what products does it yield? For what alcohols would elimination be most important?

**Problem 12.3** (a) Upon treatment with sulfuric acid, a mixture of ethyl and *n*-propyl alcohols yields a mixture of three ethers. What are they? (b) On the other hand, a mixture of *tert*-butyl alcohol and ethyl alcohol gives a good yield of a single ether. What ether is this likely to be? How do you account for the good yield?

On standing in contact with air, most aliphatic ethers are converted slowly into unstable peroxides. Although present in only low concentrations, these peroxides are very dangerous, since they can cause violent explosions during the distillations that normally follow extractions with ether.

The presence of peroxides is indicated by formation of a red color when the ether is shaken with an aqueous solution of ferrous ammonium sulfate and potassium thiocyanate; the peroxide oxidizes ferrous ion to ferric ion, which reacts with thiocyanate ion to give the characteristic blood-red color of the complex.



Peroxides can be removed from ethers in a number of ways, including washing with solutions of ferrous ion (which reduces peroxides), or distillation from concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  (which oxidizes peroxides).

For use in the preparation of Grignard reagents, the ether (usually diethyl) must be free of traces of water and alcohol. This so-called **absolute ether** can be prepared by distillation of ordinary ether from concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  (which removes not only water and alcohol but also peroxides), and subsequent storing over metallic sodium. There is available today commercial anhydrous ether of such

high quality that only the treatment with sodium is needed to make it ready for the Grignard reaction.

It is hard to overemphasize the hazards met in using diethyl ether, even when it is free of peroxides: it is highly volatile, and the flammability of its vapors makes explosions and fires ever-present dangers unless proper precautions are observed.

## 12.4 Preparation of ethers

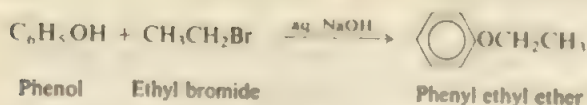
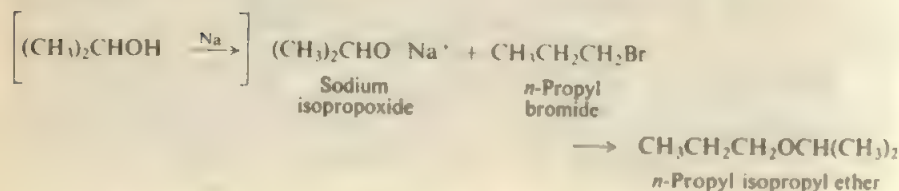
The following methods are generally used for the laboratory preparation of ethers. (The Williamson synthesis is used for the preparation of alkyl aryl ethers industrially, as well.)

### PREPARATION OF ETHERS

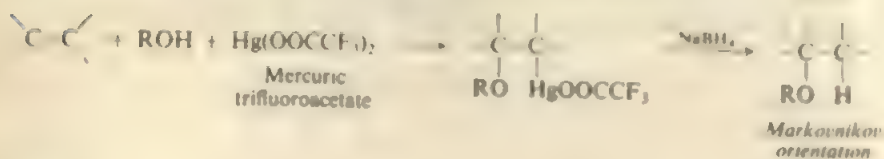
#### 1. Williamson synthesis. Discussed in Secs. 12.5 and 24.10.



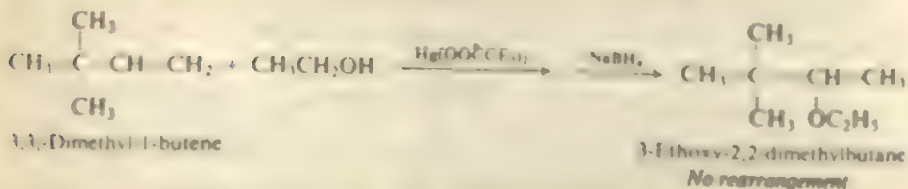
Examples:



#### 2. Alkoxymercuration-demercuration. Discussed in Sec. 12.6



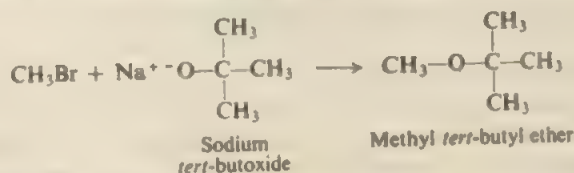
Example:



## 12.5 Preparation of ethers. Williamson synthesis

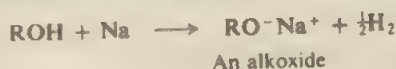
In the laboratory, the Williamson synthesis of ethers is important because of its versatility: it can be used to make unsymmetrical ethers as well as symmetrical ethers.

In the Williamson synthesis an alkyl halide (or substituted alkyl halide) is allowed to react with a sodium alkoxide. For example:

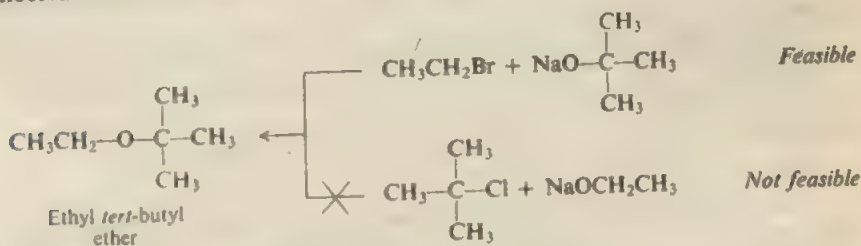


The Williamson synthesis involves nucleophilic substitution of alkoxide ion for halide ion; it is strictly analogous to the preparation of alcohols by treatment of alkyl halides with aqueous hydroxide (Sec. 10.6).

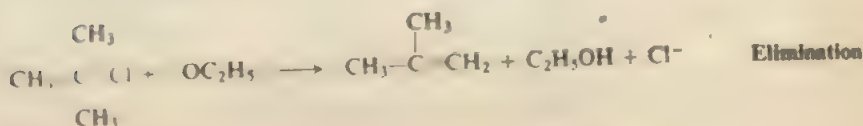
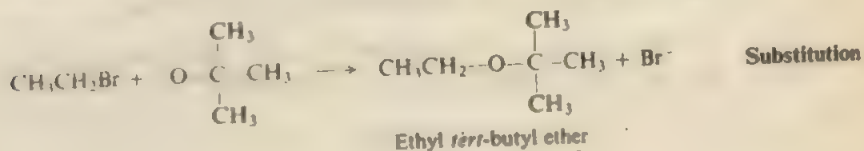
Sodium alkoxides are made by direct action of sodium metal on dry alcohols:



If we wish to make an unsymmetrical dialkyl ether, we have a choice of two combinations of reagents; one of these is nearly always better than the other. In the preparation of ethyl *tert*-butyl ether, for example, the following combinations are conceivable:



Which do we choose? As always, we must consider the danger of elimination competing with the desired substitution; elimination should be particularly serious here because of the strong basicity of the alkoxide reagent. We therefore reject the use of the tertiary halide, which we expect to yield mostly—or all—elimination product; we must use the other combination. The disadvantage of the slow reaction



between sodium and *tert*-butyl alcohol (Sec. 11.7) in the preparation of the alkoxide is more than offset by the tendency of the primary halide to undergo substitution rather than elimination. In planning a Williamson synthesis of a dialkyl ether, we must always keep in mind that the tendency for alkyl halides to undergo dehydrohalogenation is  $3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ$ .

Since alkoxides are prepared from the corresponding alcohols, and since alkyl halides are commonly prepared from the alcohols, the Williamson method ultimately involves the synthesis of a dialkyl ether from two alcohols.

(As we shall find in Section 24.10, the Williamson synthesis is especially useful for making alkyl aryl ethers. There are, however, two important differences from what we have seen above: phenols ( $\text{ArOH}$ ) are appreciably acidic and can be converted into the phenoxides ( $\text{ArO}^- \text{Na}^+$ ) by the simple action of aqueous base; and aryl halides ( $\text{ArX}$ ) are in general too unreactive to serve as substrates.)

**Problem 12.4** Outline the synthesis, from alcohols and/or phenols, of:

- (a) ethyl *tert*-butyl ether                      (c) isobutyl *sec*-butyl ether  
(b) *n*-propyl phenyl ether                    (d) cyclohexyl methyl ether

**Problem 12.5** When optically active 2-octanol of specific rotation  $-8.24^\circ$  is converted into its sodium salt, and the salt is then treated with ethyl bromide, there is obtained the optically active ether, 2-ethoxyoctane, with specific rotation  $-15.6^\circ$ . Making use of the configuration and maximum rotation of 2-octanol given on p. 216, what, if anything, can you say about: (a) the configuration of  $(-)$ -2-ethoxyoctane? (b) the maximum rotation of 2-ethoxyoctane?

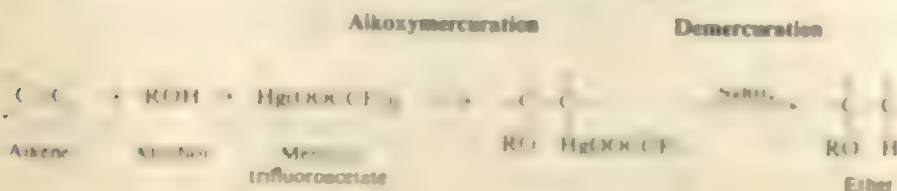
**Problem 12.6** (Work this after Problem 12.5.) When  $(-)$ -2-bromooctane of specific rotation  $-30.3$  is treated with ethoxide ion in ethyl alcohol, there is obtained 2-ethoxyoctane of specific rotation  $+15.3$ . Using the configuration and maximum rotation of the bromide given on p. 216, answer the following questions. (a) Does this reaction involve complete retention of configuration, complete inversion, or inversion plus racemization? (b) By what mechanism does this reaction appear to proceed? (c) In view of the reagent and solvent, is this the mechanism you would have expected to operate? (d) What mechanism do you suppose is involved in the alternative synthesis (Problem 12.5) of 2-ethoxyoctane from the salt of 2-octanol and ethyl bromide? (e) Why, then, do the products of the two syntheses have *opposite* rotations?

**Problem 12.7** A mixture of *n*-butyl chloride and *n*-octyl alcohol gives a 95% yield of *n*-butyl *n*-octyl ether when brought into contact with a concentrated aqueous solution of NaOH containing a little quat salt.

Account in detail for the formation of the ether. What advantage does this method offer over what we have described in this section?

## 12.6 Preparation of ethers. Alkoxymercuration-demercuration

Alkenes react with mercuric trifluoroacetate in the presence of an alcohol to give alkoxymercurial compounds which on reduction yield ethers.

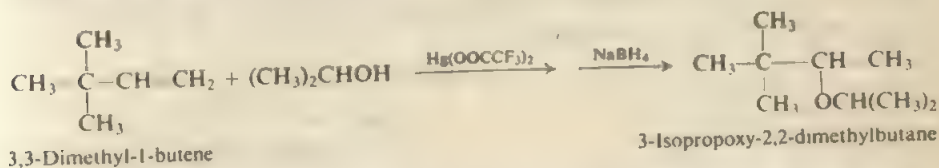




We recognize this two-stage process as the exact analog of the oxymercuration-demercuration synthesis of alcohols (Sec. 10.7). In the place of water we use an alcohol which, not surprisingly, can play exactly the same role. Instead of introducing the hydroxy group to make an alcohol, we introduce an *alkoxy* group to make an ether. This example of *solvomercuration-demercuration* amounts to Markovnikov addition of an alcohol to a carbon-carbon double bond.

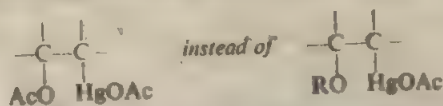
**Problem 12.8** Write all steps of a likely mechanism for alkoxymercuration.

Alkoxymercuration-demercuration has all the advantages we saw for its counterpart: speed, convenience, high yield, and the virtual absence of rearrangement. Compared with the Williamson synthesis, it has one tremendous advantage: there is no competing elimination reaction. As a result, it can be used for the synthesis of nearly every kind of alkyl ether except—evidently for steric reasons—di-*tert*-alkyl ethers. For example:



We notice that, instead of the mercuric acetate which was used in the preparation of alcohols, here mercuric *trifluoroacetate* is used. With a bulky alcohol—secondary or tertiary—as solvent, the trifluoroacetate is required for a good yield of ether.

**Problem 12.9** In the presence of a secondary or tertiary alcohol, mercuric acetate adds to alkenes to give much—or even chiefly—organic acetate instead of ether as the



product. How do you account for the advantage of using mercuric trifluoroacetate? (*Hint*: Trifluoroacetic acid is a much stronger acid than acetic.)

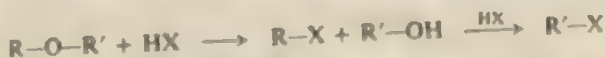
**Problem 12.10** Starting with any alcohols, outline all steps in the synthesis of each of the following ethers, using the Williamson synthesis or alkoxymercuration-demercuration, whichever you think is best suited for the particular job.

- (a) *n*-hexyl isopropyl ether  
(b) 2-hexyl isopropyl ether

- (c) cyclohexyl *tert*-butyl ether  
(d) dicyclohexyl ether

## 12.7 Reactions of ethers. Cleavage by acids

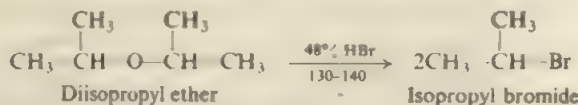
Ethers are comparatively unreactive compounds. The ether linkage is quite stable toward bases, oxidizing agents, and reducing agents. In so far as the ether linkage itself is concerned, ethers undergo just one kind of reaction, **cleavage by acids**:



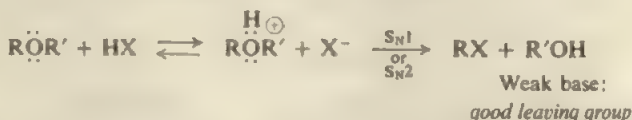
Reactivity of HX:  $\text{HI} > \text{HBr} > \text{HCl}$

Cleavage takes place only under quite vigorous conditions: concentrated acids (usually HI or HBr) and high temperatures.

An alkyl ether yields initially an alkyl halide and an alcohol, the alcohol may react further to form a second mole of alkyl halide. For example:



Cleavage involves nucleophilic attack by halide ion on the protonated ether, with displacement of the weakly basic alcohol molecule:

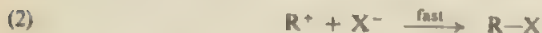


Such a reaction occurs much more readily than displacement of the strongly basic alkoxide ion from the neutral ether.

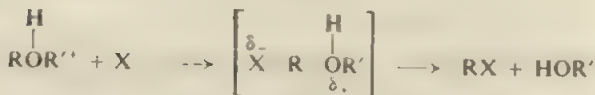


Reaction of a protonated ether with halide ion, like the corresponding reaction of a protonated alcohol, can proceed by either an  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  or  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  mechanism, depending upon conditions and the structure of the ether. As we might expect, a primary alkyl

#### $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$



#### $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$



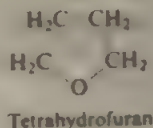
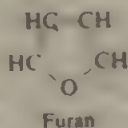
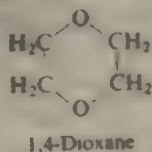
group tends to undergo  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  displacement, whereas a tertiary alkyl group tends to undergo  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  displacement.

**Problem 12.11** Cleavage of optically active methyl *sec*-butyl ether by anhydrous HBr yields chiefly methyl bromide and *sec*-butyl alcohol, the *sec*-butyl alcohol has the same configuration and optical purity as the starting material. How do you interpret these results?

## 12.8 Cyclic ethers

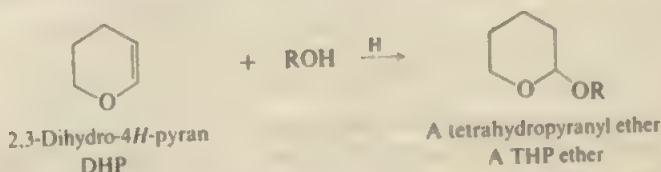
In their preparation and properties, most cyclic ethers are just like the ethers we have already studied—the chemistry of the ether linkage is essentially the same whether it forms part of an open chain or part of an aliphatic ring.

**Problem 12.12** 1,4-Dioxane is prepared industrially (for use as a water-soluble solvent) by dehydration of an alcohol. What alcohol is used?

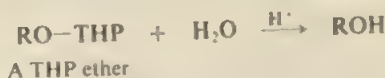


**Problem 12.13** The unsaturated cyclic ether *furan* can readily be made from substances isolated from oat hulls and corncobs, one of its important uses involves its conversion into (a) *tetrahydrofuran*, and (b) 1,4-dichlorobutane. Using your knowledge of alkene chemistry and ether chemistry, show how these conversions can be carried out.

The unsaturated cyclic ether 2,3-dihydro-4*H*-pyran (DHP) reacts readily with alcohols (ROH) in the presence of acid to give alkyl *tetrahydropyranyl ethers* (RO-THP).



Like other ethers, a THP ether is resistant to base and many other reagents, and is cleaved by acid. However, because of its special structure—there are two ether oxygens attached to the same carbon, making it an *acetal* (Sec. 18.14)—a THP ether is *very readily* cleaved by dilute aqueous acid.



The THP group thus has the qualities necessary for a *protecting group*: it is easily attached and easily removed, and under conditions that will not harm other functional groups in the molecule; and while it is present it is resistant to certain reagents that would otherwise attack the group it protects. The —OH group is, for example, acidic, and rapidly destroys organometallic compounds like the Grignard reagent or organolithiums (Sec. 10.16). We cannot, therefore, prepare a Grignard reagent from an organic halide that contains —OH, or allow a Grignard reagent to react with an aldehyde or ketone that contains an —OH. But if the —OH is first converted into —OTHP, we can carry out such reactions; and then, when they are over, simply remove the THP group.

**Problem 12.14** (a) To what class of reactions does the formation of a THP ether belong? (Simply look at the structures involved.)

(b) Show all steps in a likely mechanism for this reaction.

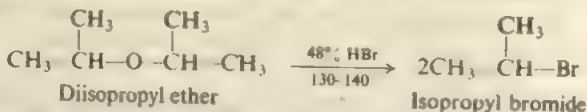
(c) Why does it take place so readily? Why does it yield the product it does and not an isomer of that product? (Hint: See Sec. 9.15.)

(d) Starting from ethanol and making use of DHP, outline all steps in a possible synthesis of 1,3-butanediol.

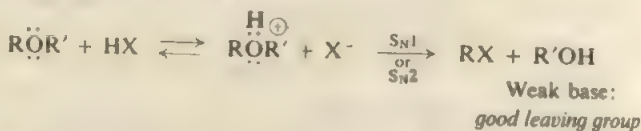
Cyclic ethers of two particular kinds deserve special attention because of their unusual properties: the *crown ethers* (Sec. 12.9) and the *epoxides* (Secs. 12.10–12.15).

Cleavage takes place only under quite vigorous conditions: concentrated acids (usually HI or HBr) and high temperatures.

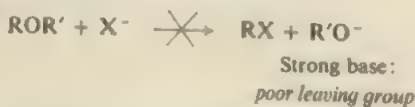
An alkyl ether yields initially an alkyl halide and an alcohol; the alcohol may react further to form a second mole of alkyl halide. For example:



Cleavage involves nucleophilic attack by halide ion on the protonated ether, with displacement of the weakly basic alcohol molecule:

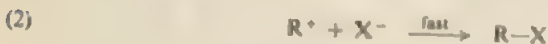


Such a reaction occurs much more readily than displacement of the strongly basic alkoxide ion from the neutral ether.

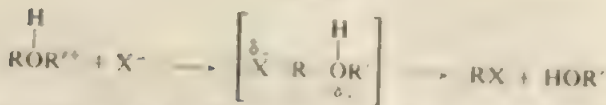


Reaction of a protonated ether with halide ion, like the corresponding reaction of a protonated alcohol, can proceed by either an  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  or  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  mechanism, depending upon conditions and the structure of the ether. As we might expect, a primary alkyl

$\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$



$\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$



group tends to undergo  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  displacement, whereas a tertiary alkyl group tends to undergo  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  displacement.

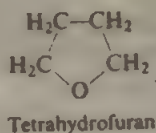
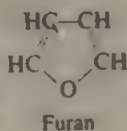
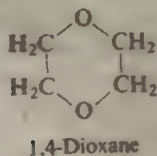
**Problem 12.11** Cleavage of optically active methyl *sec*-butyl ether by anhydrous HBr yields chiefly methyl bromide and *sec*-butyl alcohol; the *sec*-butyl alcohol has the same configuration and optical purity as the starting material. How do you interpret these results?

## 12.8 Cyclic ethers

In their preparation and properties, most cyclic ethers are just like the ethers we have already studied: the chemistry of the ether linkage is essentially the same whether it forms part of an open chain or part of an aliphatic ring.

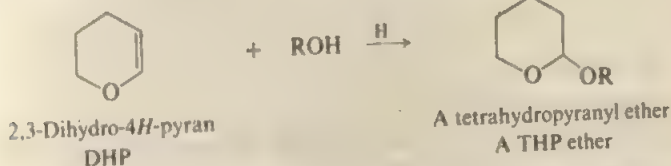


**Problem 12.12** 1,4-Dioxane is prepared industrially (for use as a water-soluble solvent) by dehydration of an alcohol. What alcohol is used?

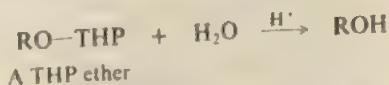


**Problem 12.13** The unsaturated cyclic ether *furan* can readily be made from substances isolated from oat hulls and corncobs; one of its important uses involves its conversion into (a) *tetrahydrofuran*, and (b) 1,4-dichlorobutane. Using your knowledge of alkene chemistry and ether chemistry, show how these conversions can be carried out.

The unsaturated cyclic ether 2,3-dihydro-4*H*-pyran (DHP) reacts readily with alcohols (ROH) in the presence of acid to give alkyl *tetrahydropyranyl ethers* (RO-THP).



Like other ethers, a THP ether is resistant to base and many other reagents, and is cleaved by acid. However, because of its special structure—there are two ether oxygens attached to the same carbon, making it an *acetal* (Sec. 18.14)—a THP ether is *very readily* cleaved by dilute aqueous acid.



The THP group thus has the qualities necessary for a *protecting group*: it is easily attached and easily removed, and under conditions that will not harm other functional groups in the molecule; and while it is present it is resistant to certain reagents that would otherwise attack the group it protects. The —OH group is, for example, acidic, and rapidly destroys organometallic compounds like the Grignard reagent or organolithiums (Sec. 10.16). We cannot, therefore, prepare a Grignard reagent from an organic halide that contains —OH, or allow a Grignard reagent to react with an aldehyde or ketone that contains an —OH. But if the —OH is first converted into —OTHP, we can carry out such reactions; and then, when they are over, simply remove the THP group.

**Problem 12.14** (a) To what class of reactions does the formation of a THP ether belong? (Simply look at the structures involved.)

(b) Show all steps in a likely mechanism for this reaction.

(c) Why does it take place so readily? Why does it yield the product it does and not an isomer of that product? (Hint: See Sec. 9.15)

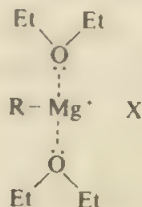
(d) Starting from ethanol and making use of DHP, outline all steps in a possible synthesis of 1,3-butanediol.

Cyclic ethers of two particular kinds deserve special attention because of their unusual properties: the *crown ethers* (Sec. 12.9) and the *epoxides* (Secs. 12.10–12.15).

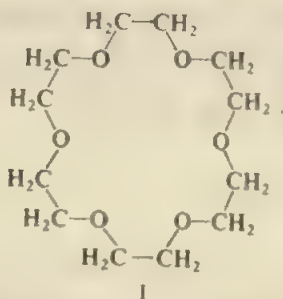
## 12.9 Crown ethers. Host-guest relationship

As we have seen, ethers cannot furnish an acidic proton for hydrogen bonding. They are thus aprotic solvents, but—the simple ones, at least—not very polar, and are essentially insoluble in water. Diethyl ether is very commonly used to extract organic materials from an aqueous solution, leaving ionic compounds behind in the water layer.

But the oxygen of ethers carries unshared electrons, and through these unshared pairs ethers can solvate cations (Sec. 1.22). Diethyl ether and tetrahydrofuran are, for example, the solvents in which Grignard reagents (Sec. 3.16) are usually prepared and used. They are able to dissolve these important reagents because they strongly solvate the magnesium of the  $\text{RMg}^+$  cation.



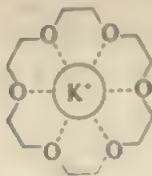
Now, crown ethers are cyclic ethers containing seven, four, five, six, or more—oxygen atoms. Let us take as our example the crown ether I, which is one



of the most effective and widely used of these catalysts. It is called 18-crown-6, to show that there are 18 atoms in the ring, of which 6 are oxygen. The ring contains more than one kind of atom, and hence is a *heterocyclic* ring (Greek: *hetero*, different). Since divalent oxygen has bond angles not very different from those of carbon (Sec. 1.12), the rings of crown ethers can exist in much the same conformations as the alicyclic rings we have already discussed in Chap. 5. The rings of crown ethers are therefore puckered. The name of “crown” was given to the first of these because, as its discoverer Charles J. Pedersen (E. I. Du Pont de Nemours) has said, “its molecular model looks like one and, with it, cations could be crowned and uncrowned without physical damage to either . . .”

This brings us to the function of these crown ethers. They are phase-transfer catalysts, and very powerful ones. They are used to transfer ionic compounds into an organic phase either from a water phase or, more commonly, from the solid crystal. Unlike the quat ions we studied earlier (Sec. 6.29), crown ethers are neutral molecules; yet they do the same job. Now, how do they work?

Let us examine the structure of 18-crown-6 (Fig. 12.1). Unfolded, the molecule is shaped like a doughnut, and has a hole in the middle. Facing into the hole are the



**Figure 12.1.** Host-guest relationship: crown ether. Hole in 18-crown-6 has a diameter of 2.7 Å, and is lined with oxygens. Potassium ion has a diameter of 2.66 Å, and just fits; it is held through ion-dipole bonds.

oxygen atoms; facing outward are the twelve  $\text{CH}_2$  groups. There is thus a hydrophilic interior and a lipophilic exterior. The hole has a diameter of 2.7 Å.

Now, to this crown ether let us add a potassium ion,  $\text{K}^+$ . It has a diameter of 2.66 Å and *just fits* into the hole in the crown, where it is held by unshared pairs of electrons on the six oxygen atoms. Because of the close fit and because there are six oxygens,  $\text{K}^+$  is bound very tightly. The crown ether is not the solvent, but it holds  $\text{K}^+$  by the same forces that a solvent uses; the forces are simply much stronger here.

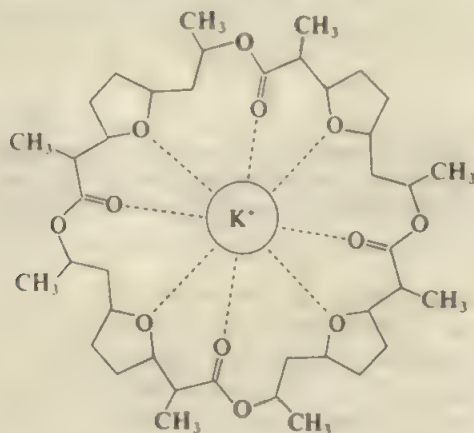
Together,  $\text{K}^+$  and the crown ether make up a new cation. This new cation is much like a quat ion, except that it is held together by ion-dipole bonds instead of covalent bonds. Like a quat ion, it is lipophilic on the outside, and has the positive charge buried within the molecule. The lipophilicity makes it soluble in organic solvents of low polarity. When it enters such solvents, it takes an anion with it. This anion is shielded from the positive charge on  $\text{K}^+$  by the bulky crown, thus forming only loose ion pairs, and is highly reactive.

Crown ethers have been made in a wide variety of shapes and sizes, and their ability to hold cations has been extensively studied. The hole in the ether can be larger than the cation and still bind it:  $\text{Na}^+$ , for example, is smaller than  $\text{K}^+$ , but is still bound by 18-crown-6, although less strongly than  $\text{K}^+$ . (The best size of hole for sodium is provided by 15-crown-5.) The hole can be smaller than the cation; in this case, the cation is simply seated in the cavity on one face or the other of the crown.

What we are seeing here is an example of the **host-guest relationship**. The crown ether is the *host*; the cation is the *guest*. This kind of relationship is of intense interest to the organic chemist, and is the subject of much research: for the practical purpose of designing new and better reagents; and for theoretical reasons, to understand better a wide range of interactions that extends all the way to that ultimate host-guest relationship, the one between enzyme and substrate.

Let us look at one example of a host-guest relationship involving hosts that are made, not by organic chemists, but by microorganisms. For various enzyme systems to function properly, cells must maintain certain concentrations of cations like  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{Na}^+$ . Such maintenance is made feasible by the normally slow passage of these hydrated inorganic ions through the fatty (lipophilic) core of the cell membranes (Sec. 27.8). A large number of antibiotics (*gramicidin*, *valinomycin*, *nonactin*, for example) upset this ionic balance: in their presence cations escape rapidly through the membrane, and the enzyme system must expend its energy forcing them back. It seems clear that these antibiotics exert their effect by *transporting* the cations through the membrane. Like crown ethers they wrap

around the cation, holding it through ion-dipole bonds; then, with their lipophilic parts turned outward and the cation hidden within, they pass easily through the membrane. See, for example, nonactin in Fig. 12.2.

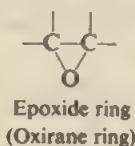


**Figure 12.2.** Host-guest relationship: the antibiotic nonactin holding a  $K^+$  ion. Cation is held by ion-dipole bonds to inward-turning oxygen. Lipophilic parts of nonactin are turned outward.

## EPOXIDES

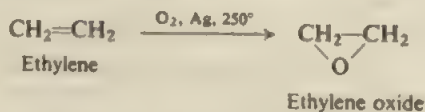
### 12.10 Preparation of epoxides

Epoxides are compounds containing the three-membered ring:



They are ethers, but the three-membered ring gives them unusual properties.

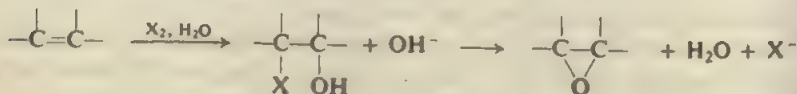
By far the most important epoxide is the simplest one, ethylene oxide. It is prepared on an industrial scale by catalytic oxidation of ethylene by air.



Other epoxides are prepared by the following methods.

### PREPARATION OF EPOXIDES

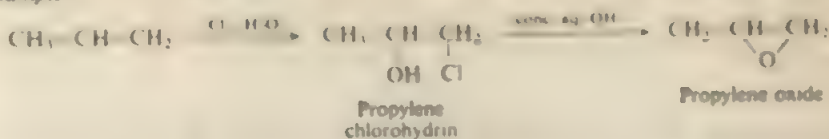
#### 1. From halohydrins. Discussed in Sec. 12.10.



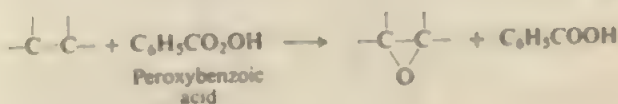


— 432 —

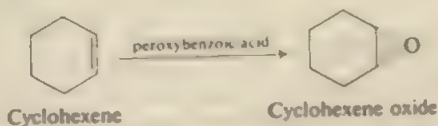
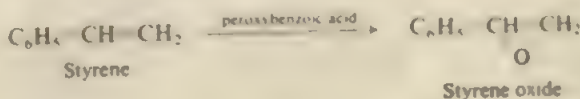
**Example:**



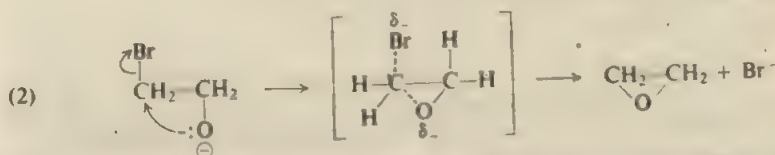
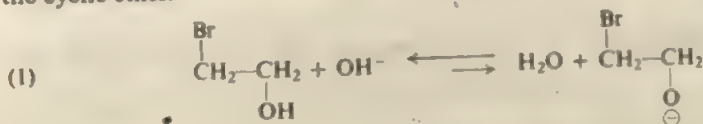
2. Peroxidation of carbon-carbon double bonds. Discussed in Sec. 12.10



**Examples:**



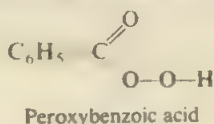
The conversion of halohydrins into epoxides by the action of base is simply an adaptation of the Williamson synthesis (Sec. 12.5): a cyclic compound is obtained because both alcohol and halide happen to be part of the same molecule. In the presence of hydroxide ion a small proportion of the alcohol exists as alkoxide; this alkoxide displaces halide ion from another portion of the same molecule to yield the cyclic ether.



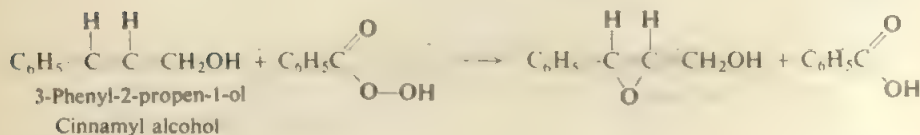
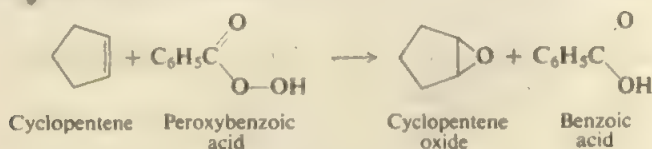
Since halohydrins are nearly always prepared from alkenes by addition of halogen and water to the carbon-carbon double bond (Sec. 8.19), this method amounts to the conversion of an alkene into an epoxide.

**Problem 12.15** (a) What substitution reaction must compete with the formation of ethylene oxide? What is the nucleophile in that reaction? What would the product be? (b) If the concentration of the bromoethoxide ion is low, how can its reaction to form epoxide outstrip the competing reaction? What is involved here?

Alternatively, the carbon-carbon double bond may be oxidized directly to the epoxide group by peroxy compounds, such as peroxybenzoic acid:



When allowed to stand in ether or chloroform solution, the peroxy acid and the unsaturated compound—which need not be a simple alkene—react to yield benzoic acid and the epoxide. For example:



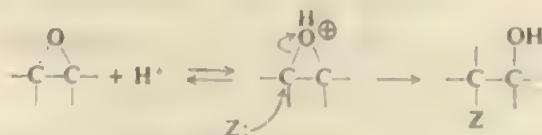
## 12.11 Reactions of epoxides

Epoxides owe their importance to their high reactivity, which is due to the ease of opening of the highly strained three-membered ring. The bond angles of the ring, which average  $60^\circ$ , are considerably less than the normal tetrahedral carbon angle of  $109.5^\circ$ , or the divalent oxygen angle of  $110^\circ$  for open-chain ethers (Sec. 12.2). Since the atoms cannot be located to permit maximum overlap of orbitals (Sec. 5.9), the bonds are weaker than in an ordinary ether, and the molecule is less stable.

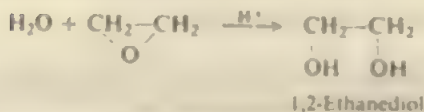
Epoxides undergo acid-catalyzed reactions with extreme ease, and unlike ordinary ethers can even be cleaved by bases. Some of the important reactions are outlined below.

### REACTIONS OF EPOXIDES

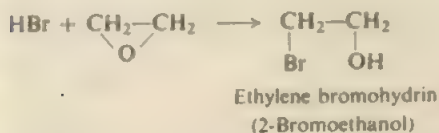
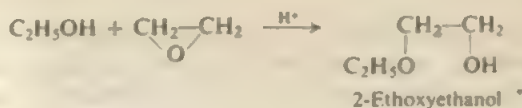
#### 1. Acid-catalyzed cleavage. Discussed in Sec. 12.12.



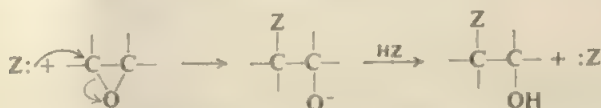
Examples:



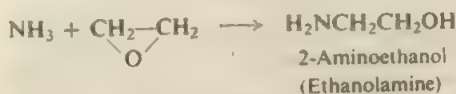
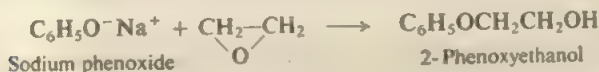
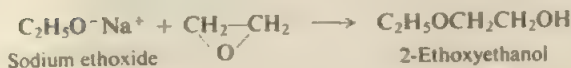
CONT.



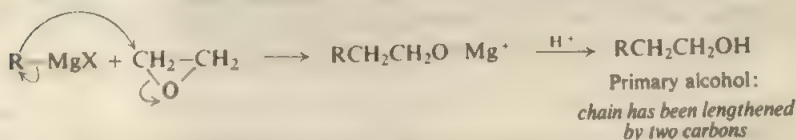
## 2. Base-catalyzed cleavage. Discussed in Sec. 12.13.



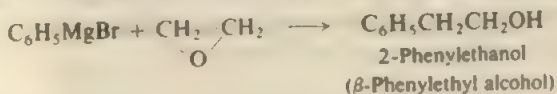
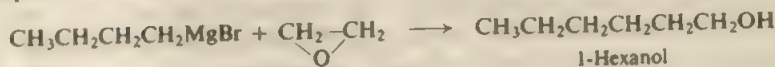
Examples:



## 3. Reaction with Grignard reagents. Discussed in Sec. 12.14.



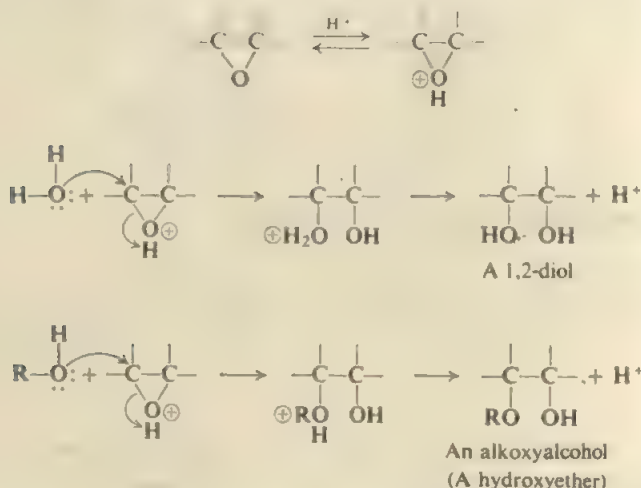
Examples:



## 12.12 Acid-catalyzed cleavage of epoxides. *anti*-Hydroxylation

Like other ethers, an epoxide is converted by acid into the protonated epoxide, which can then undergo attack by any of a number of nucleophilic reagents.

An important feature of the reactions of epoxides is the formation of compounds that contain *two* functional groups. Thus, reaction with water yields a 1,2-diol; reaction with an alcohol yields a compound that is both ether and alcohol.



**Problem 12.16** The following compounds are commercially available for use as water-soluble solvents. How could each be made?

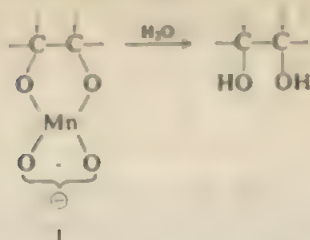
- |   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| (a) $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{---O---CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{---O---CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{---OH}$      | Carbitol           |
| (b) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{---O---CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{---O---CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{---OH}$        | Phenyl carbitol    |
| (c) $\text{HO---CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{---O---CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{---OH}$                              | Diethylene glycol  |
| (d) $\text{HO---CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{---O---CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{---O---CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{---OH}$ | Triethylene glycol |

**Problem 12.17** Show in detail (including structures and transition states) the steps in the acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of ethylene oxide by an  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  mechanism; by an  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  mechanism.

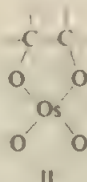
The two-stage process of epoxidation followed by hydrolysis is stereospecific, and gives 1,2-diols corresponding to *anti* addition to the carbon-carbon double bond. Exactly the same stereochemistry was observed (Problem 8.7, p. 363) for hydroxylation of alkenes by peroxyformic acid—and for good reason: an epoxide is formed there, too, but is rapidly cleaved in the acidic medium, formic acid. The interpretation is exactly the same as that given to account for *anti* addition of halogens (Sec. 8.18); indeed, epoxides and their hydrolysis served as a model on which the halonium ion mechanism was patterned.

Hydroxylation with permanganate gives *syn*-addition (Problem 8.7, p. 363). To account for this stereochemistry it has been suggested that an intermediate like I is involved:





Hydrolysis of such an intermediate would yield the *cis*-diol. This mechanism is supported by the fact that osmium tetroxide,  $\text{OsO}_4$ , which also yields the *cis*-diol, actually forms stable intermediates of structure II.

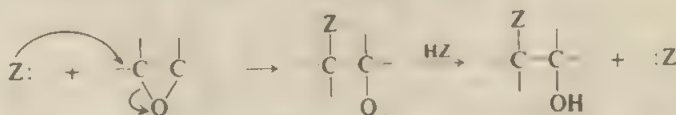


Thus, the two methods of hydroxylation by peroxy acids and by permanganate—differ in stereochemistry because they differ in mechanism.

**Problem 12.18** Using both models and drawings of the kind in Sec. 8.18, show all steps in the formation and hydrolysis of the epoxide of: (a) cyclopentene; (b) *cis*-2-butene; (c) *trans*-2-butene; (d) *cis*-2-pentene; (e) *trans*-2-pentene. (f) Which (if any) of the above products, as obtained, would be optically active?

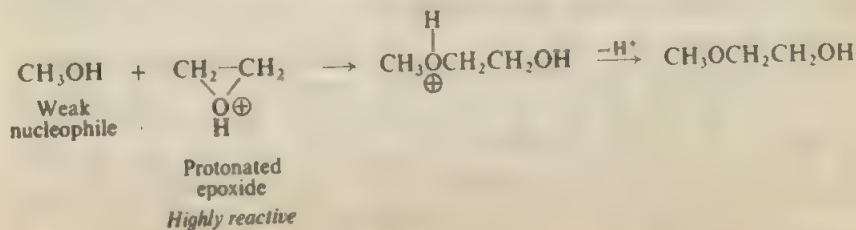
### 12.13 Base-catalyzed cleavage of epoxides

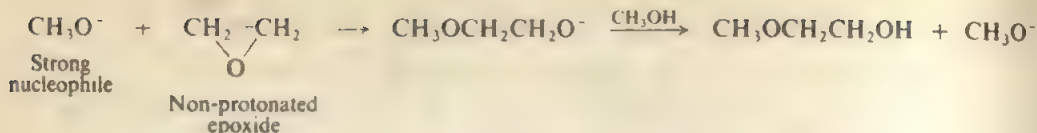
Unlike ordinary ethers, epoxides can be cleaved under alkaline conditions. Here it is the epoxide itself, not the protonated epoxide, that undergoes nucleophilic attack:



The lower reactivity of the non-protonated epoxide is compensated for by the more basic, more strongly nucleophilic reagents that are compatible with the alkaline solution: alkoxides, phenoxides, ammonia; etc.

Let us look, for example, at the reaction of ethylene oxide with methanol. Acid catalyzes reaction by converting the epoxide into the highly reactive protonated epoxide. Base—a little sodium methoxide—catalyzes reaction by providing



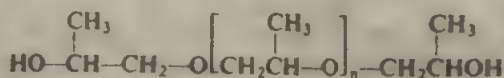


the more strongly nucleophilic methoxide ion; after the nucleophilic attack another methoxide ion is generated from the solvent to continue the reaction.

Like alkyl halides and sulfonates, and like carbonyl compounds, epoxides are an important source of *electrophilic* carbon:carbon that is highly susceptible to attack by a wide variety of nucleophiles. (As we shall see in Sec. 34.20, epoxides generated from carcinogenic hydrocarbons are even attacked by the nucleophilic portion of the genetic material DNA and thereby induce mutation and tumors.)

**Problem 12.19** Write equations for the reaction of ethylene oxide with (a) ethanol in the presence of a little  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ; (b) ethanol in the presence of a little  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}^- \text{Na}^+$ ; (c)  $\text{CH}_3\text{NH}_2$ .

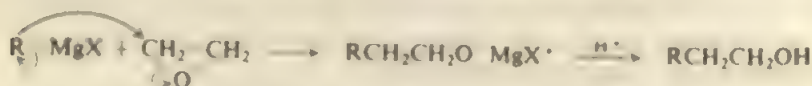
**Problem 12.20** Poly(oxypropylene)glycols,



which are used in the manufacture of polyurethane foam rubber, are formed by the action of base (e.g. hydroxide ion) on propylene oxide in the presence of 1,2-propanediol as an initiator. Write all steps in a likely mechanism for their formation.

## 12.14 Reaction of ethylene oxide with Grignard reagents

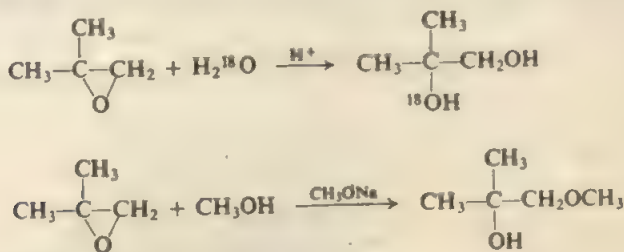
Reaction of Grignard reagents with ethylene oxide is an important method of preparing primary alcohols since the product contains two carbons more than the alkyl or aryl group of the Grignard reagent. As in reaction with the carbonyl group (Sec. 10.12), we see the nucleophilic (basic) alkyl or aryl group of the Grignard reagent attach itself to the relatively positive carbon and the electrophilic (acidic) magnesium attach itself to the relatively negative oxygen. Use of higher epoxides is complicated by rearrangements and formation of mixtures



## 12.15 Orientation of cleavage of epoxides

There are two carbon atoms in an epoxide ring and, in principle, either one can suffer nucleophilic attack. In a symmetrical epoxide like ethylene oxide, the two carbons are equivalent, and attack occurs randomly at both. But in an unsymmetrical epoxide, the carbons are *not* equivalent, and the product we obtain depends upon which one is preferentially attacked. Just what is the orientation of cleavage of epoxides, and how does one account for it?

The preferred point of attack, it turns out, depends chiefly on whether the reaction is acid-catalyzed or base-catalyzed. Consider, for example, two reactions of isobutylene oxide:



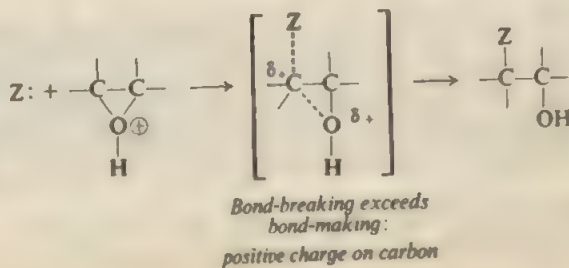
Here, as in general, the nucleophile attacks the more substituted carbon in acid-catalyzed cleavage, and the less substituted carbon in base-catalyzed cleavage.

Our first thought is that two different mechanisms are involved here,  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  and  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$ . But the evidence indicates pretty clearly that both are of the  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  type: cleavage of the carbon-oxygen bond and attack by the nucleophile occur in a single step. (There is not only stereochemical evidence—complete inversion—but also evidence of several kinds that we cannot go into here.) How, then, are we to account for the difference in orientation—in particular, for  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  attack at the *more hindered* position in acid-catalyzed cleavage?

We encountered this same kind of orientation in the formation of halohydrins (Sec. 8.19), and the explanation we gave there applies in the present case, too. In the transition state of most  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  reactions, bond-breaking and bond-making have proceeded to about the same extent, and carbon has not become appreciably positive or negative; as a result steric factors, not electronic factors, chiefly determine reactivity. But in acid-catalyzed cleavage of an epoxide, the carbon-oxygen bond, already weak because of the angle strain of the three-membered ring, is further weakened by protonation: the leaving group is a very good one, the weakly basic alcohol hydroxyl. The nucleophile, on the other hand, is a poor one (water, alcohol). In the transition state bond-breaking has proceeded further than bond-making, and carbon has acquired a considerable positive charge.

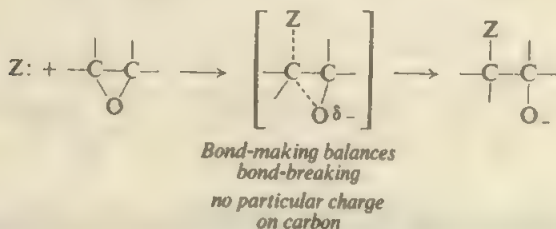
Since both leaving group and nucleophile are far away, crowding is relatively unimportant. As in halohydrin formation, the stability of the transition state is determined chiefly by electronic factors and not steric factors, and the reaction has considerable  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  character. *Attack occurs at the carbon that can best accommodate the positive charge.*

#### Acid-catalyzed $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$ cleavage



In base-catalyzed cleavage, the leaving group is a poorer one—a strongly basic alkoxide oxygen—and the nucleophile is a good one (hydroxide, alkoxide). Bond-breaking and bond-making are more nearly balanced, and reactivity is controlled in the more usual way, by steric factors. *Attack occurs at the less hindered carbon.*

#### Base-catalyzed $S_N2$ cleavage



**Problem 12.21** Predict the chief product of each of the following reactions:

- propylene oxide + dry HCl
- propylene oxide +  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$  + a little  $\text{CH}_3\text{ONa}$
- propylene oxide + ammonia
- trimethylethylene oxide + HCl

One further point. We have encountered the two-step addition of unsymmetrical reagents in which the first step is attack by positive halogen: formation of halohydrins (Sec. 8.19) and heterolytic addition of  $\text{IN}_3$  and  $\text{BrN}_3$  (Problem 11, p. 390). There, we saw, the orientation is like that for acid-catalyzed (*not* base-catalyzed) cleavage of epoxides. This is consistent with what we have just seen in this section. The halonium ring is even less stable than that of a protonated epoxide, and bond-breaking should be even easier; cleavage has much  $S_N1$  character, and takes place at the carbon that can best accommodate the positive charge. (Consider, too, the orientation of solvomercuration, in which the intermediate is a cyclic mercurinium ion.)

## 12.16 Analysis of ethers

Because of the low reactivity of the functional group, the chemical behavior of ethers—both aliphatic and aromatic—resembles that of the hydrocarbons to which they are related. They are distinguished from hydrocarbons, however, by their solubility in cold concentrated sulfuric acid through formation of oxonium salts.

**Problem 12.22** Expand the table you made in Problem 11.11, p. 522, to include ethers.

**Problem 12.23** Describe simple chemical tests (if any) that would distinguish between an aliphatic ether and (a) an alkane, (b) an alkene, (c) an alkyl halide, (d) a primary or secondary alcohol, (e) a tertiary alcohol.

Identification as a previously reported ether is accomplished through the usual comparison of physical properties. This can be confirmed by cleavage with hot



concentrated hydriodic acid (Sec. 12.7) and identification of one or both products (Aromatic ethers can be converted into solid bromination or nitration products whose melting points can then be compared with those of previously reported derivatives.)

Proof of structure of a new ether would involve cleavage by hydriodic acid and identification of the products formed.

(Spectroscopic analysis of ethers will be discussed in Chap. 17, especially in Sec. 17.7.)

## PROBLEMS

### 1. Write structural formulas for:

- |                                       |                                    |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| (a) dimethyl ether                    | (f) divinyl ether                  |
| (b) diisopropyl ether                 | (g) diallyl ether                  |
| (c) methyl <i>n</i> -butyl ether      | (h) di- $\beta$ -chloroethyl ether |
| (d) isobutyl <i>tert</i> -butyl ether | (i) cyclohexene oxide              |
| (e) 3-methoxyhexane                   | (j) 1,2-epoxypentane               |

### 2. Name the following structures:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{—O—CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ | (c) $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C—O—CH}_2\text{CH}_3$   |
| (b) $\text{CH}_3\text{—O—CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$                             | (d) $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{OCH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ |

3. Outline a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following compounds from alcohols and phenols:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) methyl <i>tert</i> -butyl ether                           | (d) isopropyl isobutyl ether           |
| (b) phenetole ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5$ ) | (e) isopropyl <i>tert</i> -butyl ether |
| (c) <i>n</i> -butyl cyclohexyl ether                          |  |

4. Write a balanced equation for each of the following. (If no reaction occurs, indicate "no reaction.")

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) potassium <i>tert</i> -butoxide + ethyl iodide   | (e) methyl ethyl ether + excess HI (hot)               |
| (b) <i>tert</i> -butyl iodide + potassium ethoxide   | (f) dimethyl ether + Na                                |
| (c) ethyl alcohol + $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ (140°)   | (g) diethyl ether + cold conc. $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ |
| (d) di- <i>n</i> -butyl ether + boiling aqueous NaOH | (h) diethyl ether + hot conc. $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  |

5. Like other oxygen-containing compounds, *n*-butyl *tert*-butyl ether dissolves in cold concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ . On standing, however, an acid-insoluble layer, made up of high-boiling hydrocarbon material, slowly separates from the solution. What is this material likely to be, and how is it formed?

6. The propylene oxide used to make the polymers described in Problem 12.20 (p. 550) can be manufactured from propylene by the action of *tert*-butyl hydroperoxide,  $t\text{-BuO—O—OH}$ .

(a) As is often the case with industrial processes, this one is economical only if there is a marketable co-product. What co-product will be formed here?

(b) The *tert*-butyl hydroperoxide is made by a high-temperature chain reaction of isobutane with  $\text{O}_2$ . Suggest a likely series of steps for this reaction.

(c) The air oxidation of alkene to epoxide that is used to manufacture ethylene oxide (Sec. 12.10) cannot be used to make propylene oxide. Tell why this is probably so. (Hint: Look at your answer to part (b).)

7. Describe simple chemical tests that would distinguish between:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) di- <i>n</i> -butyl ether and <i>n</i> -pentyl alcohol | (d) diisopropyl ether and diallyl ether                           |
| (b) diethyl ether and methyl iodide                        | (e) divinyl ether and diethyl ether                               |
| (c) methyl <i>n</i> -propyl ether and 1-pentene            | (f) <i>n</i> -butyl <i>tert</i> -butyl ether and <i>n</i> -octane |

Tell exactly what you would do and see.

8. An unknown compound is believed to be one of the following. Describe how you would go about finding out which of the possibilities the unknown actually is, using simple chemical tests.

- (a) di-*n*-propyl ether (b.p. 91°) and 2-methylhexane (b.p. 91°)  
 (b) ethyl *n*-propyl ether (b.p. 64°), 1-hexene (b.p. 64°), and methanol (b.p. 65°)  
 (c) diethyl ether (b.p. 35°), *n*-pentane (b.p. 36°), and isoprene (b.p. 34°)

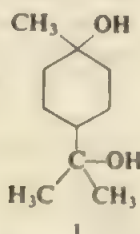
9. Give the structures and names of the products you would expect from the reaction of ethylene oxide with:

- (a)  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ,  $\text{H}^+$   
 (b)  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ,  $\text{OH}^-$   
 (c)  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$ ,  $\text{H}^+$   
 (d) product of (c),  $\text{H}^+$   
 (e)  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ,  $\text{H}^+$   
 (f) product of (e),  $\text{H}^+$   
 (g) anhydrous  $\text{HBr}$   
 (h)  $\text{HCN}$   
 (i)  $\text{HCOOH}$   
 (j)  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{MgBr}$   
 (k)  $\text{NH}_3$   
 (l) diethylamine ( $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{NHC}_2\text{H}_5$ )

10. Propylene oxide can be converted into 1,2-propanediol by the action of either dilute acid or dilute base. When optically active propylene oxide is used, the 1,2-diol obtained from acidic hydrolysis has a rotation opposite to that obtained from alkaline hydrolysis. What is the most likely interpretation of these facts?

11. Account for the fact that addition of chlorine and water to oleic acid (*cis*-9-octadecenoic acid) followed by treatment with base gives the same epoxide (same stereoisomer) as does treatment of oleic acid with a peroxy acid.

12. (a) Draw formulas for all the stereoisomers of I.



(b) Indicate which isomers, when separated from all others, will be optically active, and which will be optically inactive. (c) One of these stereoisomers is very readily converted into an ether,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}$ . Which isomer is this, and what is the structure of the ether?

13. Give the structures (including configurations where pertinent) of compounds A-M:

- (a)  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}_2 + \text{Cl}_2/\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{A} (\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{OCl})$   
 $\text{A} + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 + \text{heat} \longrightarrow \text{B} (\text{C}_4\text{H}_8\text{OCl}_2)$   
 $\text{B} + \text{alc. KOH} \longrightarrow \text{C} (\text{C}_4\text{H}_8\text{O})$   
 (b)  $\text{ClCH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2 + \text{CH}_3\text{OH} + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 \longrightarrow \text{D} (\text{C}_4\text{H}_8\text{O}_2\text{Cl})$   
 $\text{D} + \text{NaOCl} \longrightarrow \text{CHCl}_3 + \text{E} (\text{C}_3\text{H}_6\text{O}_3)$   
 $\text{D} + \text{NaOH(aq)} \longrightarrow \text{F} (\text{C}_4\text{H}_8\text{O}_2)$   
 (c)  $\text{ClCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH} + \text{KOH} \longrightarrow \text{G} (\text{C}_3\text{H}_6\text{O})$   
 (d)  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH} + \text{Hg}(\text{OAc})_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , then  $\text{NaBH}_4 \longrightarrow \text{H} (\text{C}_6\text{H}_{10}\text{O})$   
 (e) cyclohexene oxide + anhydrous  $\text{HCl} \longrightarrow \text{I} (\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{OCl})$   
 (f) 1-methylcyclohexene +  $\text{HCO}_2\text{OH} \longrightarrow \text{J} (\text{C}_7\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_2)$   
 (g) racemic 3,4-epoxy-1-butene + cold alkaline  $\text{KMnO}_4$ , then dilute acid  $\longrightarrow \text{K} (\text{C}_4\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_4)$   
 (h) *cis*-2-butene +  $\text{Cl}_2$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , then  $\text{OH}^-$ , then dilute acid  $\longrightarrow \text{L} (\text{C}_4\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_2)$   
 (i) *trans*-2-butene treated as in (h)  $\longrightarrow \text{M} (\text{C}_4\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_2)$

## Alkynes

### 13.1 Introduction

So far we have discussed two kinds of carbon-carbon bonds: the single bond and the double bond. The carbon-carbon single bond is of low reactivity; its main function is to act as the principal cement holding most organic compounds together. The carbon-carbon double bond is unsaturated and hence highly reactive toward a wide variety of reagents; as a substituent it can exert remarkable effects on the rest of the molecule.

Now we come to the *carbon-carbon triple bond*, the functional group of the family called *alkynes*. Like the double bond it is unsaturated and highly reactive: toward the reagents that double bonds react with, and toward some others besides. It also can exert remarkable effects on the rest of the molecule, and in its own particular way. Through a combination of its characteristic properties, the carbon-carbon triple bond plays a special role—one of increasing importance—in organic synthesis.

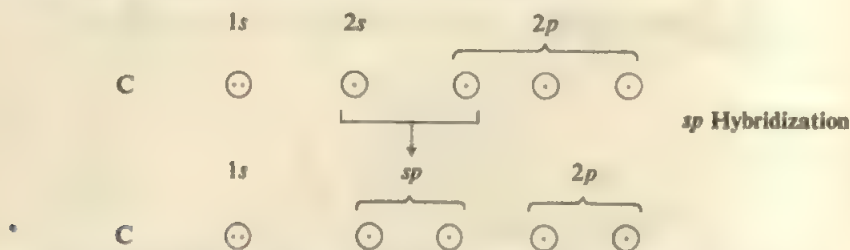
### 13.2 Structure of acetylene. The carbon-carbon triple bond

The simplest member of the alkyne family is **acetylene**,  $C_2H_2$ . Using the methods we applied to the structure of ethylene (Sec. 7.2), we arrive at a structure in which the carbon atoms share *three* pairs of electrons, that is, are joined by a *triple bond*. The **carbon-carbon triple bond** is the distinguishing feature of the alkyne structure.

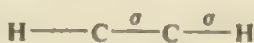


Again, quantum mechanics tells us a good deal more about acetylene, and about the carbon-carbon triple bond. To form bonds with two other atoms, carbon makes use of two equivalent hybrid orbitals: *sp* orbitals, formed by the mixing of

one *s* and one *p* orbital (Sec. 1.9). These *sp* orbitals lie along a straight line that passes through the carbon nucleus; the angle between the two orbitals is thus  $180^\circ$ . This **linear** arrangement (Fig. 1.5) permits the hybrid orbitals to be as far apart as possible. Just as mutual repulsion among orbitals gives four tetrahedral bonds or three trigonal bonds, so it gives two linear bonds.



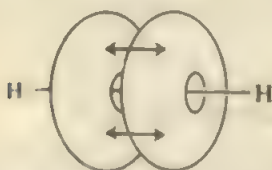
If we arrange the two carbons and the two hydrogens of acetylene to permit maximum overlap of orbitals, we obtain the structure shown in Fig. 13.1.



**Figure 13.1.** Acetylene molecule: only  $\sigma$  bonds shown.

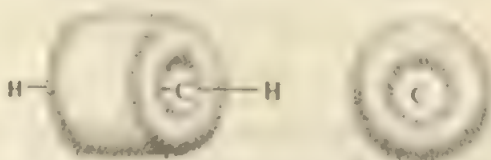
Acetylene is a *linear molecule*, all four atoms lying along a single straight line. Both carbon-hydrogen and carbon-carbon bonds are cylindrically symmetrical about a line joining the nuclei, and are therefore  $\sigma$  bonds.

The molecule is not yet complete, however. In forming the *sp* orbitals already described, each carbon atom has used only one of its three *p* orbitals; it has two remaining *p* orbitals. Each of these consists of two equal lobes, whose axis lies at right angles both to the axis of the other *p* orbital and to the line of the *sp* orbitals; each *p* orbital is occupied by a single electron. But the sum of two perpendicular *p* orbitals is not four spherical lobes, but a single doughnut-shaped cloud (Fig. 13.2). Overlap of the *p* orbitals on one carbon with the *p* orbitals on the other carbon



**Figure 13.2.** Acetylene molecule: two *p* orbitals on one carbon (doughnut-shaped cloud) can overlap two *p* orbitals on other carbon.

permits pairing of electrons. Two  $\pi$  bonds are formed, which together make a single cylindrical sheath about the line joining the nuclei (Fig. 13.3)



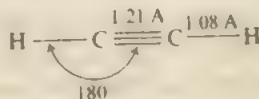
**Figure 13.3.** Acetylene molecule: carbon-carbon triple bond;  $\pi$  cloud forms cylindrical sheath



The carbon-carbon "triple bond" is thus made up of one strong  $\sigma$  bond and two weaker  $\pi$  bonds; it has a total strength of 198 kcal. It is stronger than the carbon-carbon double bond of ethylene (146 kcal) or the carbon-carbon single bond of ethane (88 kcal), and therefore is shorter than either.

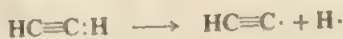
Again, the quantum mechanical structure is verified by direct evidence. Electron diffraction, x-ray diffraction, and spectroscopy show acetylene (Fig. 13.4)

Figure 13.4. Acetylene molecule: shape and size.

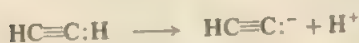


to be a linear molecule. The C—C distance is 1.21 Å, as compared with 1.34 Å in ethylene and 1.53 Å in ethane. As in the case of the double bond, the structure of the triple bond is verified—although this time in a negative way—by the evidence of isomer number. As we can readily see from models, the linearity of the bonding should not permit geometric isomerism; no such isomers have ever been found.

The C—H distance in acetylene is 1.08 Å, even shorter than in ethylene (1.103 Å); because of their greater  $s$  character,  $sp$  orbitals are smaller than  $sp^2$  orbitals, and  $sp$ -hybridized carbon forms shorter bonds than  $sp^2$ -hybridized carbon. The C—H bond dissociation energy in acetylene is not known, but we would expect it to be even greater than in ethylene. Oddly enough, the same  $sp$  hybridization that almost certainly makes cleavage of the C—H bond to form free radicals (*homolysis*) more difficult, makes cleavage to form ions (*heterolysis*) easier, as we shall see (Sec. 13.11).



**Homolysis:**  
one electron to  
each fragment



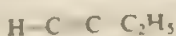
**Heterolysis:**  
both electrons to  
one fragment

**Problem 13.1** Compare the electronic configurations of  $\text{CO}_2$ , which is a linear molecule (check your answer to Problem 1.6, p. 25), and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , which has a bond angle of  $105^\circ$ .

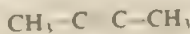
### 13.3 Higher alkynes. Nomenclature

Like the alkanes and alkenes, the alkynes form a homologous series, the increment again being  $-\text{CH}_2-$

The alkynes are named according to two systems. In one, they are considered to be derived from acetylene by replacement of one or both hydrogen atoms by alkyl groups.



Ethylacetylene  
1-Butyne



Dimethylacetylene  
2-Butyne



Methylisopropylacetylene  
4-Methyl-2-pentyne

For more complicated alkynes the IUPAC names are used. The rules are exactly the same as for the naming of alkenes, except that the ending *-yne* replaces

-ene. The parent structure is the longest continuous chain that contains the triple bond, and the positions both of substituents and of the triple bond are indicated by numbers. The triple bond is given the number of the *first* triply-bonded carbon encountered, starting from the end of the chain nearest the triple bond.

### 13.4 Physical properties of alkynes

Being compounds of low polarity, the alkynes have physical properties that are essentially the same as those of the alkanes and alkenes. They are insoluble in water but quite soluble in the usual organic solvents of low polarity: ligroin, ether, benzene, carbon tetrachloride. They are less dense than water. Their boiling points

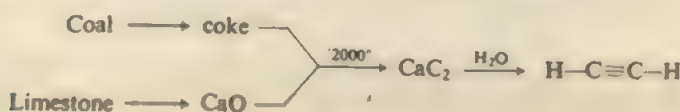
Table 13.1 ALKYNES

Name	Formula	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Density (at 20°)
Acetylene	$\text{HC}\equiv\text{CH}$	- 82	- 75	
Propyne	$\text{HC}\equiv\text{CCH}_3$	-101.5	- 23	
1-Butyne	$\text{HC}\equiv\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}_3$	-122	9	
1-Pentyne	$\text{HC}\equiv\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}_3$	- 98	40	0.695
1-Hexyne	$\text{HC}\equiv\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}_3$	-124	72	.719
1-Heptyne	$\text{HC}\equiv\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CH}_3$	- 80	100	.733
1-Octyne	$\text{HC}\equiv\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{CH}_3$	- 70	126	.747
1-Nonyne	$\text{HC}\equiv\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_6\text{CH}_3$	- 65	151	.763
1-Decyne	$\text{HC}\equiv\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{CH}_3$	- 36	182	.770
2-Butyne	$\text{CH}_3\text{C}\equiv\text{CCH}_3$	- 24	27	.694
2-Pentyne	$\text{CH}_3\text{C}\equiv\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}_3$	-101	55	.714
3-Methyl-1-butyne	$\text{HC}\equiv\text{CCH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$		29	.665
2-Hexyne	$\text{CH}_3\text{C}\equiv\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}_3$	- 92	84	.730
3-Hexyne	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{C}\equiv\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}_3$	- 51	81	.725
3,3-Dimethyl-1-butyne	$\text{HC}\equiv\text{CC}(\text{CH}_3)_3$	- 81	38	.669
4-Octyne	$\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}\equiv\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}_3$		131	.748
5-Decyne	$\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{C}\equiv\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}_3$		175	.769

(Table 13.1) show the usual increase with increasing carbon number, and the usual effects of chain-branching; they are very nearly the same as the boiling points of alkanes or alkenes with the same carbon skeletons.

### 13.5 Industrial source of acetylene

The alkyne of chief industrial importance is the simplest member of the family, **acetylene**. Traditionally, it has been prepared by the action of water on calcium carbide,  $\text{CaC}_2$ , which itself is prepared by the reaction between calcium oxide and coke at the very high temperatures of the electric furnace. The calcium oxide and coke are in turn obtained from limestone and coal, respectively.



An alternative synthesis, based on petroleum, is displacing the carbide process. This involves the controlled, high-temperature partial oxidation of methane



Because of the high cost of acetylene, its formerly huge market has dwindled, and most of the chemicals once made from it are now made from ethylene. It is still the source, however, of a number of compounds used to make polymers.

### 13.6 Preparation of alkynes

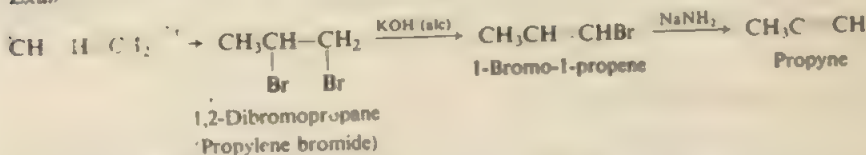
Making alkynes can involve either of two processes generating a carbon-carbon triple bond, or increasing the size of a molecule that already contains a triple bond.

#### PREPARATION OF ALKYNES

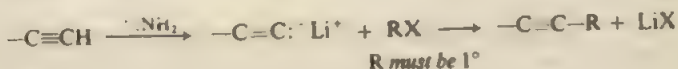
1. Dehydrohalogenation of alkyl dihalides. Discussed in Sec. 13.6.



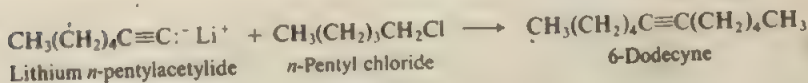
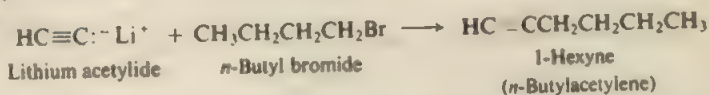
*Exam*



2. Reaction of metal acetylides with primary alkyl halides. Discussed in Sec. 13.12.

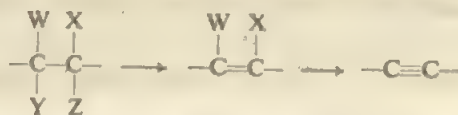


*Examples:*



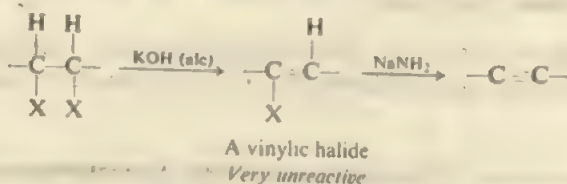
A carbon-carbon triple bond is formed in the same way as a double bond: elimination of atoms or groups from two adjacent carbons. The groups eliminated

and the reagents used are essentially the same as in the preparation of alkenes.



**Dehydrohalogenation of vicinal dihalides** is particularly useful since the dihalides themselves are readily obtained from the corresponding alkenes by addition of halogen. This amounts to conversion by several steps of a double bond into a triple bond.

Dehydrohalogenation can generally be carried out in two stages as shown.



Carried through only the first stage, it is a valuable method for preparing unsaturated halides. The halides thus obtained, with halogen attached directly to double-bonded carbon, we recognize as vinylic halides (Sec. 9.18); as we know, they are very unreactive. Under mild conditions, therefore, dehydrohalogenation stops at the vinylic halide stage; more vigorous conditions use of a stronger base are required for alkyne formation.

Conversion of smaller alkynes into larger ones is done by use of **metal acetylides**. These are particularly easy to generate because of a special property of certain alkynes and, once made, are highly versatile reagents.

### 13.7 Reactions of alkynes

Just as alkene chemistry is the chemistry of the carbon-carbon double bond, so alkyne chemistry is the chemistry of the carbon-carbon triple bond. Like alkenes, alkynes undergo electrophilic addition, and for the same reason availability of the loosely held  $\pi$  electrons.

Addition of hydrogen, halogens, and hydrogen halides to alkynes is very much like addition to alkenes, except that here *two* molecules of reagent can be consumed for each triple bond. As shown, it is generally possible, by proper selection of conditions, to limit reaction to the first stage of addition, formation of alkenes. In some cases at least, this is made simpler because of the way that the substituents introduced in the first stage affect the second stage.

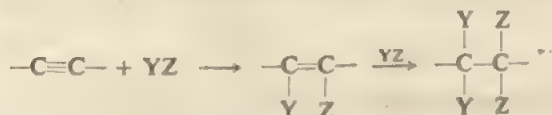
**Problem 13.2** (a) Write the equation for the two-stage addition of bromine to 2-butyne. (b) How will the first two bromine atoms affect the reactivity of the double bond? (c) How will this influence the competition for halogen between 2-butyne and 2,3-dibromo-2-butene? (d) In what proportions would you mix the reagents to help limit reaction to the first stage? (e) Would you bubble 2-butyne into a solution of  $\text{Br}_2$  in  $\text{CCl}_4$ , or drip the bromine solution into a solution of 2-butyne?

Besides addition, alkynes undergo certain reactions that are due to the acidity of a hydrogen atom held by triply-bonded carbon.

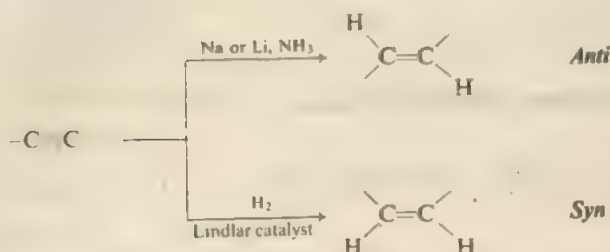
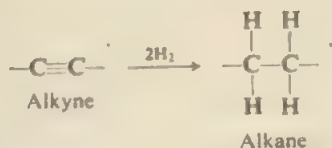


## REACTIONS OF ALKYNES

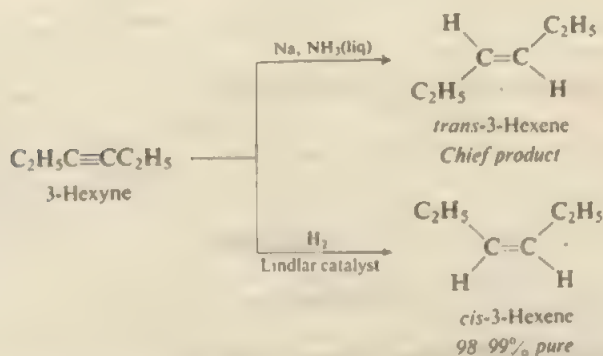
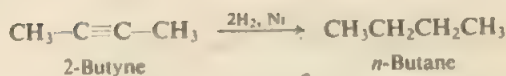
## Addition Reactions



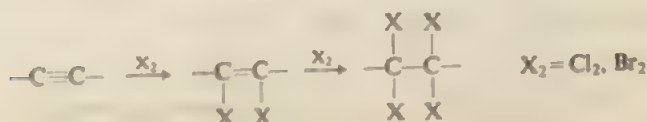
## 1. Addition of hydrogen. Discussed in Sec. 13.8.



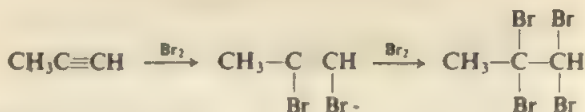
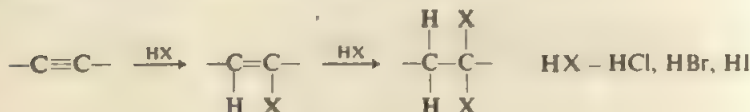
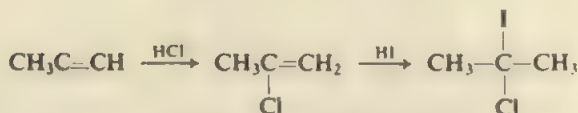
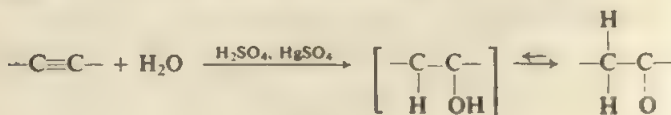
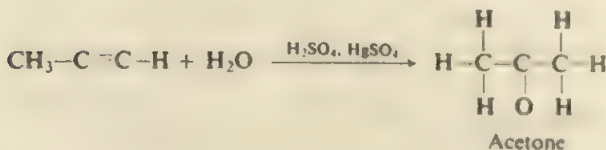
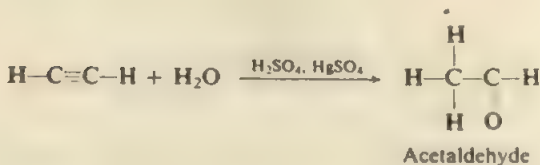
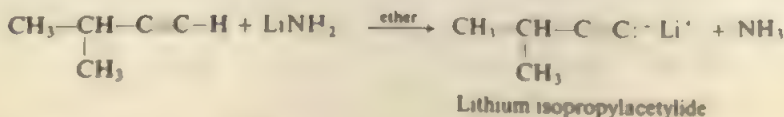
## Examples:



## 2. Addition of halogens. Discussed in Sec. 13.9.

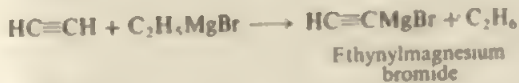
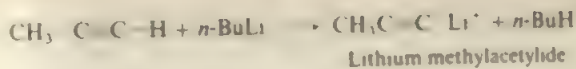


CONT.

*Example:***3. Addition of hydrogen halides.** Discussed in Sec. 13.9.*Example:***4. Addition of water. Hydration.** Discussed in Sec. 13.10.*Examples:***Reactions as Acids****5. Formation of metal acetylides.** Discussed in Sec. 13.12.*Examples:*

CONT.

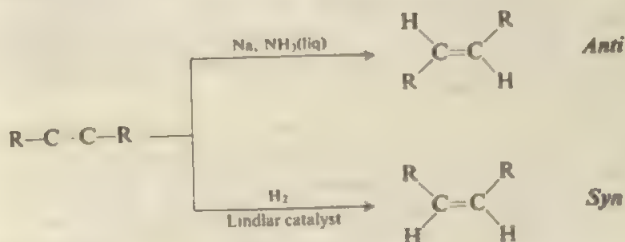
CONT



### 13.8 Reduction to alkenes

Reduction of an alkyne to the double-bond stage can—unless the triple bond is at the end of a chain—yield either a *cis*-alkene or a *trans*-alkene. Just which isomer predominates depends upon the choice of reducing agent.

Predominantly *trans*-alkene is obtained by reduction of alkynes with sodium or lithium in liquid ammonia. Almost entirely *cis*-alkene (as high as 98%) is obtained by hydrogenation of alkynes with several different catalysts: a specially prepared palladium called the *Lindlar catalyst*, for example.



Each of these reactions is, then, highly stereoselective. The stereoselectivity in the *syn*-reduction of alkynes is attributed, in a general way, to the attachment of two hydrogens to the same side of an alkyne sitting on the catalyst surface; presumably this same stereochemistry holds for the hydrogenation of terminal alkynes,  $\text{RC}\equiv\text{CH}$ , which cannot yield *cis*- and *trans*-alkenes.

The mechanism that gives rise to *anti*-reduction will not be taken up here.

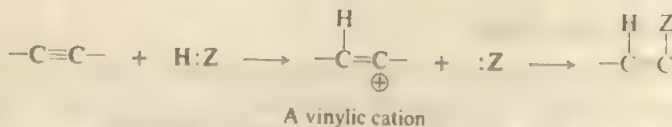
We have discussed many times the stereospecificity of biological systems. Where alkenes are concerned, this takes the form of diastereospecificity: organisms discriminating between geometric isomers. We saw a number of examples of this in the response of insects toward pheromones (Sec. 7.6). For synthetic materials to be effective in a living organism, we said, the stereospecificity of biological action demands an equal stereoselectivity in the synthesis of these materials. Many new methods have been developed to generate double bonds stereoselectively; but the simplest and the one most often turned to is the hydrogenation of alkynes.

The matter goes much further than this. These alkenes may be the final products desired, as with some pheromones. But more often they are simply an intermediate stage. Alkenes undergo a variety of reactions, many of them diastereoselective and even (Sec. 8.7) enantioselective; if the stereoselectivity of these reactions is to be utilized fully, one must start with a stereochemically pure alkene.

**Problem 13.3** Most methods of making alkenes (Secs. 7.12 and 7.28) yield predominantly the more stable isomer, usually the *trans*. Outline all steps in the conversion of a mixture of 75% *trans*-2-pentene and 25% *cis*-2-pentene into essentially pure *cis*-2-pentene.

### 13.9 Electrophilic addition to alkynes

Addition of acids like the hydrogen halides is electrophilic addition, and it appears to follow the same mechanism with alkynes as with alkenes (Sec. 8.12): via an intermediate carbocation. The difference is that here the intermediate is a *vinyl cation*.



In Sec. 9.19 we learned that—relative to the substrates for heterolysis—vinyl cations are even less stable than primary alkyl cations; and we saw that, by heterolysis, they are formed comparatively slowly and can be generated only by the departure of “super” leaving groups.

Now, in electrophilic addition to alkenes, we saw (Sec. 8.15), reactivity depends upon the stability of the intermediate carbocation: the more stable the carbocation, the faster it is formed. Does this mean, then, that addition to alkynes will be a great deal slower than to alkenes?

The fact is, it is *not* very much slower: addition of protic acids to alkynes takes place at very much the same rate as to alkenes. The explanation is found in our definition of stability of a carbocation: *relative to the substrate from which it is generated*. Relative to substrates for heterolysis, vinyl cations *are* unstable, and we have attributed this to the unusually strong bond holding the leaving group in vinyl substrates—not to any inherent instability in the cations themselves. And by heterolysis vinyl cations are slow to form. But in addition reactions the substrates are alkenes and alkynes, and these compounds must be the standards for comparison of carbocation stabilities: an alkene for a saturated carbocation, and an alkyne for a vinyl cation. Relative to the substrate from which each is generated *in an addition reaction*, the two are of about the same stability. The energy climb from alkyne to a vinyl cation is about the same as the climb from an alkene to a saturated cation.

Toward the addition of halogens, alkynes are considerably less reactive than alkenes. For alkenes, as we have seen (Sec. 8.17), this reaction involves the initial formation of a cyclic halonium ion. The lower reactivity of alkynes has been attributed to the greater difficulty of forming such cyclic intermediates.

**Problem 13.4** The addition of HCl to 3,3-dimethyl-1-butyne gives the following products:

- 3,3-dichloro-2,2-dimethylbutane (44%),
- 2,3-dichloro-2,3-dimethylbutane (18%),
- 1,3-dichloro-2,3-dimethylbutane (34%).

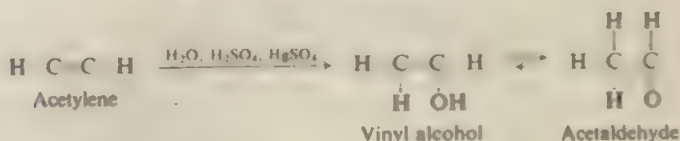
Account in detail for the formation of each of these products (*Hint* If you have trouble, see Sec. 9.19 and Sec. 9.13.)



### 13.10 Hydration of alkynes. Tautomerism

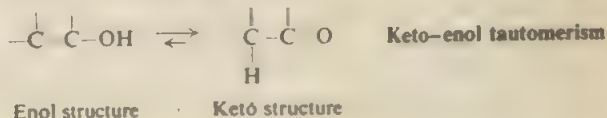
Like alkenes, alkynes can be hydrated. In the presence of acid—and, for simple alkynes,  $\text{HgSO}_4$  as well—a molecule of water adds to the triple bond. Like hydration of alkenes, this involves electrophilic addition, and proceeds by way of carbocations. But at first glance this does not appear to be the case.

Let us consider the simplest example, hydration of acetylene itself. The product obtained is acetaldehyde,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}$ , which seems a strange product from the attachment of groups to the two triply-bonded carbons. Actually, however, the product can be accounted for in a rather simple way.



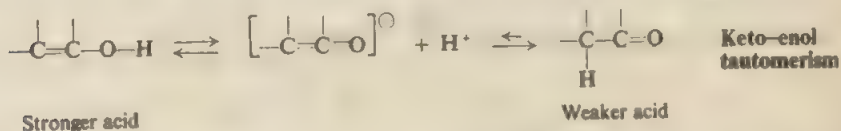
If hydration of acetylene followed the same pattern as hydration of alkenes, we would expect addition of  $\text{H}-$  and  $-\text{OH}$  to the triple bond to yield the structure that we would call *vinyl alcohol*. But all attempts to prepare vinyl alcohol result in the formation of acetaldehyde.

A structure with  $-\text{OH}$  attached to doubly-bonded carbon is called an **enol** (*-ene* for the carbon-carbon double bond, *-ol* for *alcohol*). It is almost always true that when we try to make a compound with the enol structure, we obtain instead a compound with the **keto** structure (one that contains a  $\text{C}=\text{O}$  group). There is an



equilibrium between the two structures, but it generally lies very much in favor of the keto form. Thus, vinyl alcohol is formed initially by hydration of acetylene, but it is rapidly converted into an equilibrium mixture that is almost all acetaldehyde.

Rearrangements of this enol-keto kind take place particularly easily because of the polarity of the  $-\text{O}-\text{H}$  bond. A hydrogen ion separates readily from oxygen to form a hybrid anion; but when a hydrogen ion (most likely a *different* one) returns, it may attach itself either to oxygen or to carbon of the anion. When it returns to oxygen, it may readily come off again; but when it attaches itself to



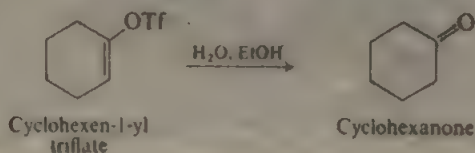
carbon, it tends to stay there. We recognize this reaction as another example of the conversion of a stronger acid into a weaker acid (Sec. 11.7).

Compounds whose structures differ markedly in arrangement of atoms, but which exist in easy and rapid equilibrium, are called **tautomers**. The most common kind of **tautomerism** involves structures that differ in the point of attachment of *hydrogen*.

In these cases, as in **keto-enol tautomerism**, the tautomeric equilibrium generally favors the structure in which hydrogen is bonded to carbon rather than to a more electronegative atom; that is, equilibrium favors the weaker acid.

**Problem 13.3** Hydration of propyne yields the ketone *acetone*,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_3$ , rather than the aldehyde  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CHO}$ . What does this suggest about the orientation of the initial addition?

**Problem 13.6** Account for the fact that, when heated in aqueous ethanol, cyclohexen-1-yl triflate yields only cyclohexanone.

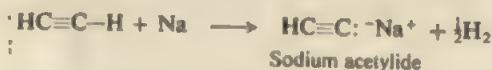


### 13.11 Acidity of alkynes

In our earlier consideration of acids (in the Lowry-Brønsted sense, Sec. 1.23), we took *acidity* to be a measure of the tendency of a compound to lose a hydrogen ion. Appreciable acidity is generally shown by compounds in which hydrogen is attached to a rather electronegative atom (e.g., N, O, S, X). The bond holding the hydrogen is polar, and the relatively positive hydrogen can separate as the positive ion; considered from another viewpoint, an electronegative element can better accommodate the pair of electrons left behind. In view of the electronegativity series,  $\text{F} > \text{O} > \text{N} > \text{C}$ , it is not surprising to find that  $\text{HF}$  is a fairly strong acid,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  a comparatively weak one,  $\text{NH}_3$  still weaker, and  $\text{CH}_4$  so weak that we would not ordinarily consider it an acid at all.

In organic chemistry we are frequently concerned with the acidities of compounds that do not turn litmus red or neutralize aqueous bases, yet have a tendency—even though small—to lose a hydrogen ion.

A triply-bonded carbon acts as though it were an entirely different element—a more electronegative one—from a carbon having only single or double bonds. As a result, hydrogen attached to triply-bonded carbon, as in acetylene or any alkyne with the triple bond at the end of the chain ( $\text{RC}\equiv\text{C}-\text{H}$ ), shows appreciable acidity. For example, sodium reacts with acetylene to liberate hydrogen gas and form the compound *sodium acetylide*.

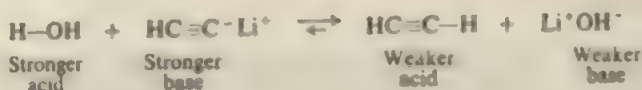


Now, just how strong an acid is acetylene? Using the method of displacement (Sec. 11.7) let us compare acetylene with a number of familiar compounds, inorganic and organic.

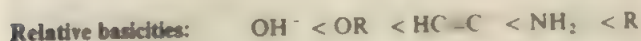
Acetylene is a stronger acid than ammonia,  $\text{NH}_3$ . Addition of acetylene to a salt of ammonia, lithium amide, for example, gives ammonia and lithium acetylide. The weaker acid,  $\text{NH}_3$ , is displaced from a salt by the stronger acid, acetylene.



Acetylene is a weaker acid than water. When water is added to an acetylide, hydroxide ion is formed and acetylene is liberated. In a similar way, acetylene can be shown to be a weaker acid than alcohols, too.



We can now insert acetylene into our sequences of relative acidity and basicity (Sec. 11.7).



Other alkynes that contain a hydrogen attached to triply-bonded carbon—that is, *terminal alkynes*—show comparable acidity.

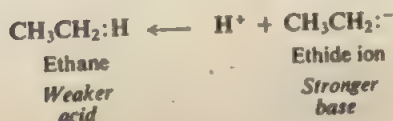
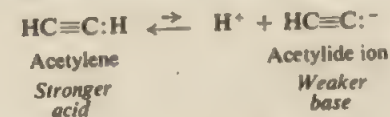
According to our sequence, acetylene should be a stronger acid than an alkane, RH. This is quite true, and the difference in acidity is of considerable use in synthesis. If a terminal acetylene is treated with an alkylmagnesium halide or an alkyllithium, the alkane is displaced from its "salt," and the metal acetylide is obtained. For example:



*Such reactions provide the best route to these important organometallic compounds.*

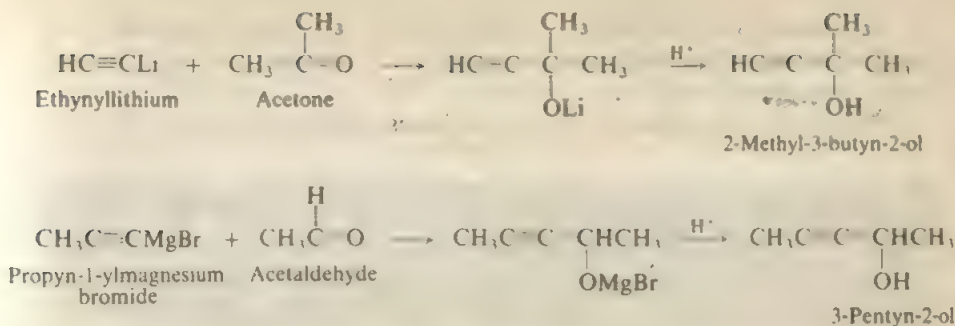
How can we account for the fact that hydrogen attached to triply-bonded carbon is especially acidic? How can we account for the fact that acetylene is a stronger acid than, say, ethane? A possible explanation can be found in the electronic configurations of the anions.

If acetylene is a stronger acid than ethane, then the acetylide ion must be a weaker base than the ethide ion,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5^-$ . In the acetylide anion the unshared pair







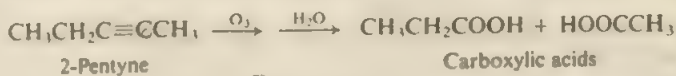


It is little wonder that the carbon-carbon triple bond has become an important building block for organic synthesis. The acidity of a terminal alkyne permits its easy conversion into a metal acetylide. Through this acetylide, a triply-bonded structural unit can be introduced into molecules of many kinds. Through addition, this triple bond can then be converted into many other compounds: in particular, into a double bond, and with a high degree of stereoselectivity. We now have a double bond of known stereochemistry at a specific location in the molecule, and the door is open to the many reactions that take place at this functional group.

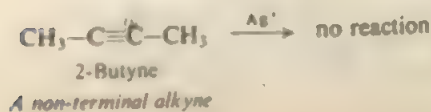
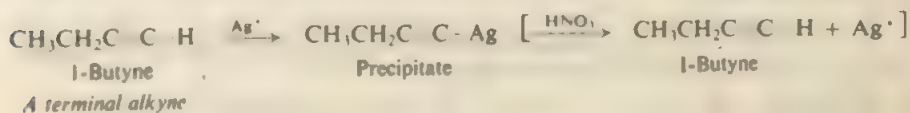
### 13.13 Analysis of alkynes

In their response to characterization tests, alkynes resemble alkenes: they decolorize bromine in carbon tetrachloride without evolution of hydrogen bromide, and they decolorize cold, neutral, dilute permanganate; they are not oxidized by chromic anhydride. Like dienes, however, they are more unsaturated than alkenes. This property can be detected by determination of their molecular formulas ( $\text{C}_n\text{H}_{2n-2}$ ) and by a quantitative hydrogenation (two moles of hydrogen are taken up per mole of hydrocarbon).

Proof of structure is best accomplished by the same degradative methods that are used in studying alkenes. Upon ozonolysis alkynes yield carboxylic acids, whereas alkenes yield aldehydes and ketones. For example:



Acidic alkynes react with certain heavy metal ions, chiefly  $\text{Ag}^+$  and  $\text{Cu}^+$ , to form insoluble acetylides. Formation of a precipitate upon addition of an alkyne to a solution of  $\text{AgNO}_3$  in alcohol, for example, is an indication of hydrogen attached to triply-bonded carbon. This reaction can be used to differentiate *terminal* alkynes (those with the triple bond at the *end* of the chain) from *non-terminal* alkynes.



If allowed to dry, these heavy metal acetylides are likely to explode. They should be destroyed while still wet by warming with nitric acid; the strong mineral acid regenerates the weak acid, acetylene.

(Spectroscopic analysis of alkynes and dienes is discussed in Chap. 17.)

**Problem 13.8** Expand the table you made in Problem 12.22 (p. 552) to include terminal alkynes and non-terminal alkynes.

**Problem 13.9** Contrast the ozonolysis products of the following isomers: (a) 1-pentyne, (b) 2-pentyne, (c) 3-methyl-1-butyne, (d) 1,3-pentadiene, (e) 1,4-pentadiene.

## PROBLEMS

1. (a) Draw structures of the seven isomeric alkynes of formula  $C_6H_{10}$ . (b) Give the IUPAC and derived name of each. (c) Indicate which ones will react with  $Ag^+$  or  $Cu(NH_3)_2^+$ . (d) Draw structures of the ozonolysis products expected from each.

2. Outline all steps in the synthesis of propyne from each of the following compounds, using any needed organic or inorganic reagents. Follow the other directions given on page 265.

- |                        |                              |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| (a) 1,2-dibromopropane | (d) <i>n</i> -propyl alcohol |
| (b) propylene          | (e) 1,1-dichloropropane      |
| (c) isopropyl bromide  | (f) acetylene                |

3. Outline all steps in the synthesis from acetylene of each of the following compounds, using any needed organic or inorganic reagents.

- |                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| (a) ethylene           | (h) 1-butyne               |
| (b) ethane             | (i) 2-butyne               |
| (c) ethylidene bromide | (j) <i>cis</i> -2-butene   |
| (1,1-dibromoethane)    | (k) <i>trans</i> -2-butene |
| (d) vinyl chloride     | (l) 1-pentyne              |
| (e) 1,2-dichloroethane | (m) 2-pentyne              |
| (f) acetaldehyde       | (n) 3-hexyne               |
| (g) propyne            |                            |

4. Give structures and names of the organic products expected from the reaction (if any) of 1-butyne with:

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| (a) 1 mol $H_2$ , Ni           | (j) $LiNH_2$                                  |
| (b) 2 mol $H_2$ , Ni           | (k) product (j) + $C_2H_5Br$                  |
| (c) 1 mol $Br_2$               | (l) product (j) + <i>tert</i> -butyl chloride |
| (d) 2 mol $Br_2$               | (m) $C_2H_5MgBr$                              |
| (e) 1 mol $HCl$                | (n) product (m) + $H_2O$                      |
| (f) 2 mol $HCl$                | (o) product (m) + $CH_3CHO$ , then + $H_2O$   |
| (g) $H_2O$ , $H^+$ , $Hg^{++}$ | (p) $O_3$ , then $H_2O$                       |
| (h) $Ag^+$                     | (q) hot $KMnO_4$                              |
| (i) product (h) + $HNO_3$      |   |

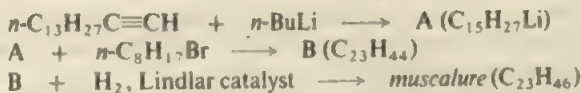
5. Outline all steps in the synthesis from 2-butyne of each of the following compounds, using any needed organic or inorganic reagents.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) <i>cis</i> -2-butene                     | (f) racemic 2,3-butanediol                 |
| (b) <i>trans</i> -2-butene                   | (g) <i>cis</i> -1,2-dimethylcyclopropane   |
| (c) <i>meso</i> -2,3-dibromobutane           | (h) <i>trans</i> -1,2-dimethylcyclopropane |
| (d) racemic <i>threo</i> -3-chloro-2-butanol | (i) 2-butanone, $CH_3CH_2COCH_3$           |
| (e) <i>meso</i> -2,3-butanediol              |  |

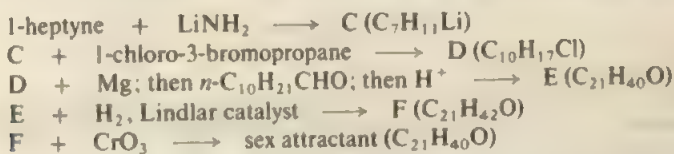
6. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following, using alcohols of four carbons or fewer as your organic source, and any necessary inorganic reagents. (Remember: Work backwards.)

- meso*-3,4-dibromohexane
- racemic (2*R*,3*R*;2*S*,3*S*)-2,3-heptanediol
- cis*-1,2-di(*n*-propyl)cyclopropane
- racemic *trans*-1-methyl-2-ethyl-3,3-dichlorocyclopropane

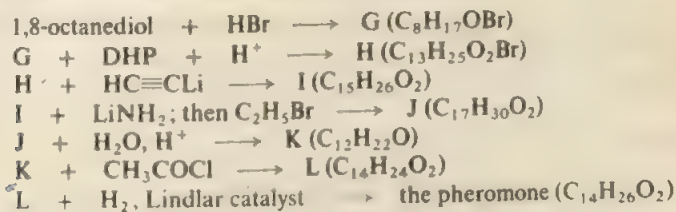
7. *Muscalure* is the sex pheromone (Sec. 7.6) of the common house fly. On the basis of the following synthesis, give the structure of *muscalure* (and, of course, of the intermediates A and B).



8. The sex attractant of the Douglas-fir tussock moth has been synthesized in the following way. Give the structure of the sex attractant and all intermediate compounds.

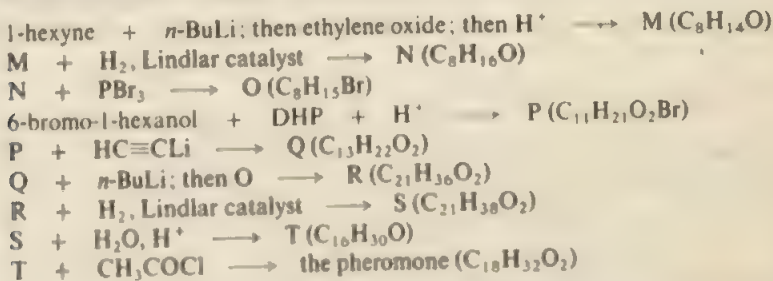


9. An insect pheromone that we have already encountered has been made in the following way. (Useful information: An alcohol, ROH, is often converted into its acetate, CH<sub>3</sub>COOR, by treatment with acetyl chloride, CH<sub>3</sub>COCl.)



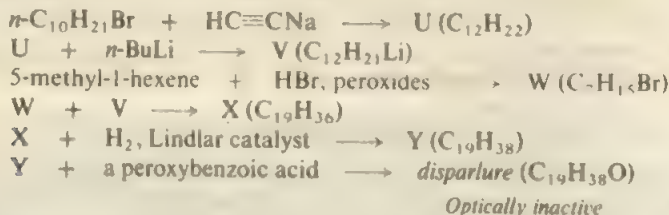
- Give the structure of the pheromone and all intermediate compounds.
- For maximum biological activity there should be present 4% of its geometric isomer. How could you modify the above synthesis to obtain this?

10. The sex attractant of the pink bollworm moth is an approximately 50:50 mixture of two geometric isomers, and is known as *gossyplure*. One component has been synthesized in the following way. (Useful information: An alcohol, ROH, is often converted into its acetate, CH<sub>3</sub>COOR, by treatment with acetyl chloride, CH<sub>3</sub>COCl.)



- What is the structure of the pheromone just formed?
- This synthesis has been modified to obtain each of the geometric isomers of the compound in (a), one of which is the other component of the natural pheromone. Show how this could be done.

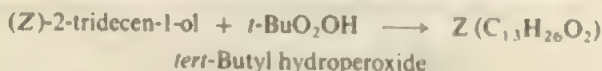
11. (a) *Disparlure*, the sex pheromone of the gypsy moth, has been synthesized in the following way.



What is the structure of *disparlure*?

(b) Unlike the product obtained above, the natural pheromone is optically active. Examining the structure of the molecule, tell just what the optical activity is due to. Account for the formation of optically inactive material in (a).

(c) An alternative route to *disparlure* involves the following intermediate step, carried out in the presence of titanium tetrakisopropoxide and diethyl tartrate.



What is the structure of Z?

(d) When (–)-diethyl tartrate is used in (c), the Z obtained is optically active, and it yields, ultimately, the natural (+)-*disparlure*. What is the function of (–)-diethyl tartrate in this synthesis?

(e) The (+)-*disparlure* is a more powerful attractant than the optically inactive material obtained by synthesis (a). In general terms, how do you account for this?



# Aromaticity

## *Benzene*

---



---

### 14.1 Aliphatic and aromatic compounds

Chemists have found it useful to divide all organic compounds into two broad classes: **aliphatic** compounds and **aromatic** compounds. The original meanings of the words “aliphatic” (*fatty*) and “aromatic” (*fragrant*) no longer have any significance.

Aliphatic compounds are open-chain compounds and those cyclic compounds that resemble open-chain compounds. Except for the occasional appearance of a phenyl ( $C_6H_5$ ) group, the hydrocarbon portions of the compounds that we have studied so far have been aliphatic.

**Aromatic compounds** are *benzene and compounds that resemble benzene in chemical behavior*. Aromatic properties are those properties of benzene that distinguish it from aliphatic hydrocarbons. The benzene molecule is a *ring*: a ring of a very special kind. There are certain compounds—other ring compounds—which seem to differ from benzene in structure, yet which behave very much like benzene. These other compounds, it turns out, actually do resemble benzene in structure—in basic electronic configuration—and they are aromatic, too.

Aliphatic hydrocarbons—alkanes, alkenes, alkynes, and their cyclic analogs—undergo chiefly addition and free-radical substitution: addition at multiple bonds, and free-radical substitution at other points along the aliphatic chain. These same reactions, as we have seen, take place in the hydrocarbon portions of other aliphatic compounds. The reactivity of these hydrocarbon portions is affected by the presence of other functional groups, and the reactivity of these other functional groups is affected by the presence of the hydrocarbon portions.

In contrast to aliphatic hydrocarbons, we shall find, *aromatic hydrocarbons are characterized by a tendency to undergo heterolytic substitution*. Furthermore, these same substitution reactions are characteristic of aromatic rings wherever they appear, regardless of other functional groups the molecule may contain. These other functional groups affect the reactivity of the aromatic rings, and the aromatic rings affect the reactivity of these other functional groups.

In this chapter we shall examine the fundamental quality of *aromaticity*: just how aromatic compounds differ in behavior from aliphatic compounds, and what there is in their structure that makes them different. In Chapter 15 we shall see how these characteristic aromatic reactions take place, and how they are affected by substituents on the aromatic ring. In Chapter 16 we shall take the opposite viewpoint, and look at the remarkable effects that aromatic rings, acting themselves as substituents, exert on reactions taking place in other parts of the molecule.

In the remainder of the book we shall do as organic chemists do, and deal with both aliphatic molecules and aromatic molecules as they happen to appear—or, as is commonly the case, with molecules that are *both* aliphatic *and* aromatic. It is important not to attach undue weight to the division between aliphatic and aromatic compounds. Although extremely useful, it is often less important than some other classification. The similarities between aliphatic and aromatic acids, for example, or between aliphatic and aromatic amines, are more important than the differences.

## 14.2 Structure of benzene

It is obvious from our definition of aromatic compounds that any study of their chemistry must begin with a study of benzene. Benzene has been known since 1825; its chemical and physical properties are perhaps better known than those of any other single organic compound. In spite of this, no satisfactory structure for benzene had been advanced until about 1931, and it was ten to fifteen years before this structure was generally used by organic chemists.

The difficulty was not the complexity of the benzene molecule, but rather the limitations of the structural theory as it had so far developed. Since an understanding of the structure of benzene is important both in our study of aromatic compounds and in extending our knowledge of the structural theory, we shall examine in some detail the facts upon which this structure of benzene is built.

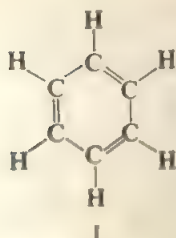
## 14.3 Molecular formula. Isomer number. Kekulé structure

(a) *Benzene has the molecular formula  $C_6H_6$ .* From its elemental composition and molecular weight, benzene was known to contain six carbon atoms and six hydrogen atoms. The question was: how are these atoms arranged?

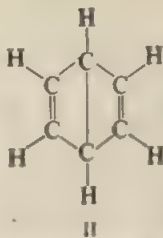
In 1858, August Kekulé had proposed that carbon atoms can join to one another to form *chains*. Then, in 1865, he offered an answer to the question of benzene: these carbon chains can sometimes be closed, to form *rings*. As he described it later:

"I was sitting writing at my textbook, but the work did not progress, my thoughts were elsewhere. I turned my chair to the fire, and dozed. Again the atoms were gamboling before my eyes. This time the smaller groups kept modestly in the background. My mental eye, rendered more acute by repeated visions of this kind, could now distinguish larger structures of manifold conformations, long rows, sometimes more closely fitted together, all twisting and turning in snake-like motion. But look! What was that? One of the snakes had seized hold of its own tail, and the form whirled mockingly before my eyes. As if by a flash of lightning I awoke. I spent the rest of the night working out the consequences of the hypothesis. Let us learn the dream, gentlemen, and then perhaps we shall learn the truth." — August Kekulé, 1890

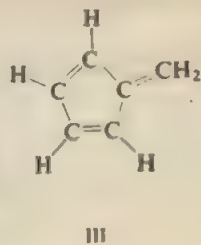
Kekulé's structure of benzene was one that we would represent today as I.



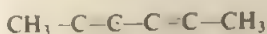
Kekulé formula



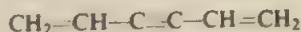
"Dewar" formula



III



IV



V

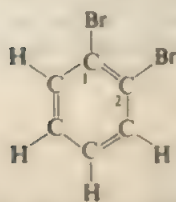
Other structures are, of course, consistent with the formula  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$ ; for example, II-V. Of all these, Kekulé's structure was accepted as the most nearly satisfactory; the evidence was of a kind with which we are already familiar: **isomer number** (Sec. 4.2).

(b) *Benzene yields only one monosubstitution product*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Y}$ . Only one bromobenzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Br}$ , is obtained when one hydrogen atom is replaced by bromine; similarly, only one chlorobenzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$ , or one nitrobenzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NO}_2$ , etc., has ever been made. This fact places a severe limitation on the structure of benzene: each hydrogen must be exactly equivalent to every other hydrogen, since the replacement of any one of them yields the same product.

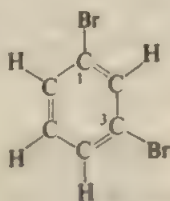
Structure V, for example, must now be rejected, since it would yield two isomeric monobromo derivatives, the 1-bromo and the 2-bromo compounds; all hydrogens are not equivalent in V. Similar reasoning shows us that II and III are likewise unsatisfactory. (How many monosubstitution products would each of these yield?) I and IV, among others, are still possibilities, however.

(c) *Benzene yields three isomeric disubstitution products*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Y}_2$  or  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{YZ}$ . Three and only three isomeric dibromobenzenes,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Br}_2$ , three chloronitrobenzenes,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{ClNO}_2$ , etc., have ever been made. This fact further limits our choice of a structure; for example, IV must now be rejected. (How many disubstitution products would IV yield?)

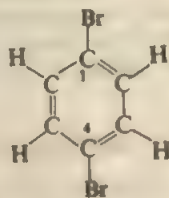
At first glance, structure I seems to be consistent with this new fact; that is, we can expect three isomeric dibromo derivatives, the 1,2-, the 1,3-, and the 1,4-dibromo compounds shown:



1,2-Dibromobenzene



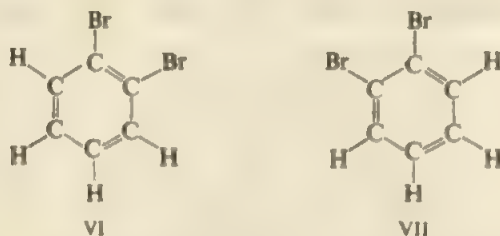
1,3-Dibromobenzene



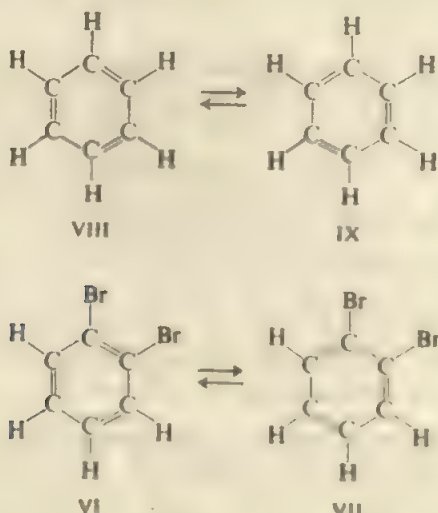
1,4-Dibromobenzene



Closer examination of structure I shows, however, that *two* 1,2-dibromo isomers (VI and VII), differing in the positions of bromine relative to the double bonds, should be possible:



But Kekulé visualized the benzene molecule as a dynamic thing: "... the form whirled mockingly before my eyes ...". He described it in terms of two structures, VIII and IX, between which the benzene molecule alternates. As a consequence, the two 1,2-dibromobenzenes (VI and VII) would be in rapid equilibrium and hence could not be separated.



Later, when the idea of tautomerism (Sec. 13.10) became defined, it was assumed that Kekulé's "alternation" essentially amounted to tautomerism.

On the other hand, it is believed by some that Kekulé had intuitively anticipated by some 75 years our present concept of delocalized electrons, and drew two pictures (VIII and IX) — as we shall do, too — as a crude representation of something that neither picture alone satisfactorily represents. Rightly or wrongly, the term "Kekulé structure" has come to mean a (hypothetical) molecule with alternating single and double bonds — just as the term "Dewar benzene" has come to mean a structure (II) that James Dewar devised in 1867 as an example of what benzene was *not*.

#### 14.4 Stability of the benzene ring. Reactions of benzene

Kekulé's structure, then, accounts satisfactorily for facts (a), (b), and (c) in Sec. 14.3. But there are a number of facts that are still not accounted for by this



structure; most of these unexplained facts seem related to unusual stability of the benzene ring. The most striking evidence of this stability is found in the chemical reactions of benzene.

(d) *Benzene undergoes substitution rather than addition.* Kekulé's structure of benzene is one that we would call "cyclohexatriene." We would expect this cyclohexatriene, like the very similar compounds, cyclohexadiene and cyclohexene, to undergo readily the addition reactions characteristic of the alkene structure. As the examples in Table 14.1 show, this is not the case; under conditions that cause an alkene to undergo rapid addition, benzene reacts either not at all or very slowly.

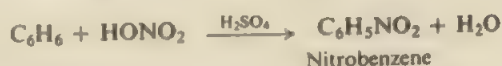
Table 14.1 CYCLOHEXENE vs. BENZENE

Reagent	Cyclohexene gives	Benzene gives
KMnO <sub>4</sub> (cold, dilute, aqueous)	Rapid oxidation	No reaction
Br <sub>2</sub> /CCl <sub>4</sub> (in the dark)	Rapid addition	No reaction
HI	Rapid addition	No reaction
H <sub>2</sub> + Ni	Rapid hydrogenation at 25°, 20 lb/in. <sup>2</sup>	Slow hydrogenation at 100–200°, 1500 lb/in. <sup>2</sup>

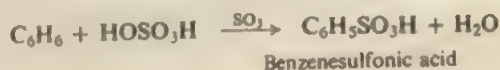
In place of addition reactions, benzene readily undergoes a new set of reactions, all involving **substitution**. The most important are shown below.

## REACTIONS OF BENZENE

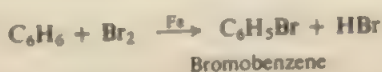
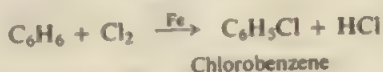
### 1. Nitration. Discussed in Sec. 15.8.



### 2. Sulfonation. Discussed in Sec. 15.9.

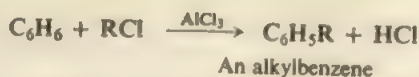


### 3. Halogenation. Discussed in Sec. 15.11.

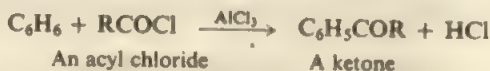


CONT.

4. Friedel-Crafts alkylation. Discussed in Secs. 15.10 and 16.7.



5. Friedel-Crafts acylation. Discussed in Sec. 18.5.



In each of these reactions an atom or group has been substituted for one of the hydrogen atoms of benzene. The product can itself undergo further substitution of the same kind; the fact that it has retained the characteristic properties of benzene indicates that it has retained the characteristic structure of benzene.

It would appear that benzene resists addition, in which the benzene ring system would be destroyed, whereas it readily undergoes substitution, in which the ring system is preserved.

### 14.5 Stability of the benzene ring. Heats of hydrogenation and combustion

Besides the above qualitative indications that the benzene ring is more stable than we would expect cyclohexatriene to be, there exist quantitative data which show *how much* more stable.

(e) *Heats of hydrogenation and combustion of benzene are lower than expected.* We recall (Sec. 8.3) that heat of hydrogenation is the quantity of heat evolved when one mole of an unsaturated compound is hydrogenated. In most cases the value is

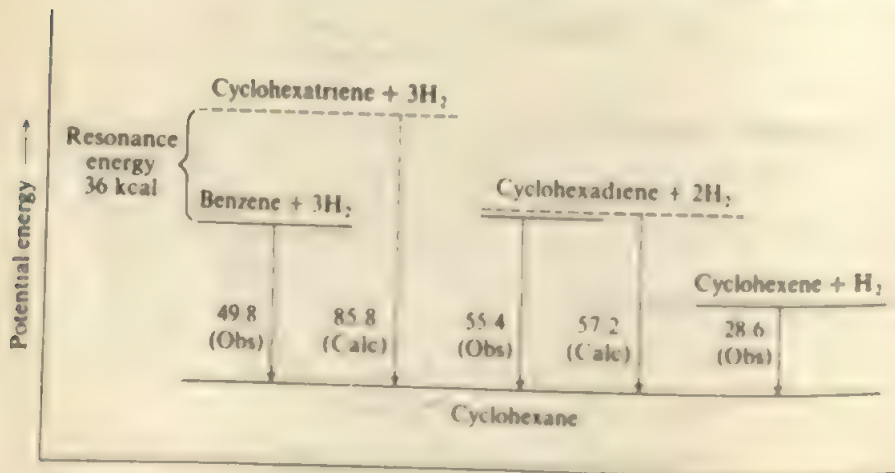


Figure 14.1. Heats of hydrogenation and stability: benzene, cyclohexadiene, and cyclohexene

about 28–30 kcal for each double bond the compound contains. It is not surprising, then, that cyclohexene has a heat of hydrogenation of 28.6 kcal and cyclohexadiene has one about twice that (55.4 kcal).

We might reasonably expect cyclohexatriene to have a heat of hydrogenation about three times as large as cyclohexene, that is, about 85.8 kcal. Actually, the value for benzene (49.8 kcal) is 36 kcal less than this expected amount.

This can be more easily visualized, perhaps, by means of an energy diagram (Fig. 14.1), in which the height of a horizontal line represents the potential energy content of a molecule. The broken lines represent the expected values, based upon three equal steps of 28.6 kcal. The final product, cyclohexane, is the same in all three cases.

The fact that benzene *evolves* 36 kcal less energy than predicted can only mean that benzene *contains* 36 kcal less energy than predicted; in other words, benzene is more stable by 36 kcal than we would have expected cyclohexatriene to be. The heat of combustion of benzene is also lower than that expected, and by about the same amount.

**Problem 14.1** From Fig. 14.1 determine the  $\Delta H$  of the following reactions: (a) benzene +  $H_2 \longrightarrow$  1,3-cyclohexadiene; (b) 1,3-cyclohexadiene +  $H_2 \longrightarrow$  cyclohexene.

**Problem 14.2** For a large number of organic compounds, the heat of combustion actually measured agrees rather closely with that calculated by assuming a certain characteristic contribution from each kind of bond, e.g., 54.0 kcal for each C—H bond, 49.3 kcal for each C—C bond, and 117.4 kcal for each C=C bond (*cis*-1,2-disubstituted). (a) On this basis, what is the calculated heat of combustion for cyclohexatriene? (b) How does this compare with the measured value of 789.1 kcal for benzene?

## 14.6 Carbon-carbon bond lengths in benzene

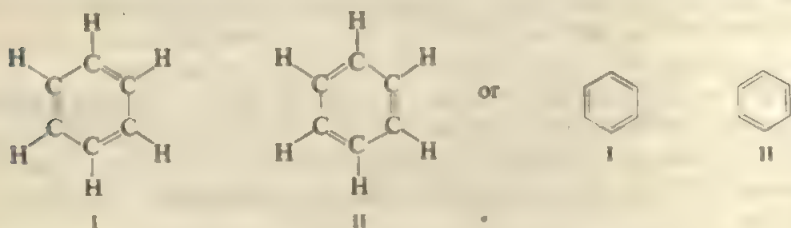
(f) *All carbon-carbon bonds in benzene are equal and are intermediate in length between single and double bonds.* Carbon-carbon double bonds in a wide variety of compounds are found to be about 1.34 Å long. Carbon-carbon single bonds, in which the nuclei are held together by only one pair of electrons, are considerably longer: 1.53 Å in ethane, for example, 1.50 Å in propylene, 1.48 Å in 1,3-butadiene.

If benzene actually possessed three single and three double bonds, as in a Kekulé structure, we would expect to find three short bonds (1.34 Å) and three long bonds (1.48 Å, probably, as in 1,3-butadiene). Actually, x-ray diffraction studies show that the six carbon-carbon bonds in benzene are equal and have a length of 1.39 Å, and are thus intermediate between single and double bonds.

## 14.7 Resonance structure of benzene

The Kekulé structure of benzene, while admittedly unsatisfactory, was generally used by chemists as late as 1945. The currently accepted structure did not arise from the discovery of new facts about benzene, but is the result of an extension or modification of the structural theory; this extension is the concept of *resonance* (Sec. 9.6).

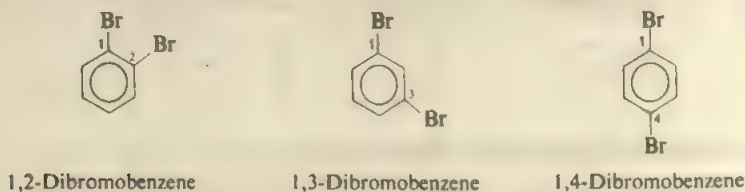
The Kekulé structures I and II, we now immediately recognize, meet the conditions for resonance: structures that differ only in the arrangement of electrons.



Benzene is a *hybrid* of I and II. Since I and II are exactly equivalent, and hence of exactly the same stability, they make equal contributions to the hybrid. And, also since I and II are exactly equivalent, stabilization due to resonance should be large.

The puzzling aspects of benzene's properties now fall into place. The six bond lengths are identical because the six bonds are identical: they are one-and-a-half bonds and their length, 1.39 Å, is intermediate between the lengths of single and double bonds.

When it is realized that all carbon-carbon bonds in benzene are equivalent, there is no longer any difficulty in accounting for the number of isomeric disubstitution products. It is clear that there should be just three, in agreement with experiment:



Finally, the "unusual" stability of benzene is not unusual at all: it is what one would expect of a hybrid of equivalent structures. The 36 kcal of energy that benzene does not contain—compared with cyclohexatriene—is resonance energy. It is the 36 kcal of resonance energy that is responsible for the new set of properties we call *aromatic properties*.

Addition reactions convert an alkene into a more stable saturated compound. Hydrogenation of cyclohexene, for example, is accompanied by the evolution of 28.6 kcal; the product lies 28.6 kcal lower than the reactants on the energy scale (Fig. 14.1).

But addition would convert benzene into a *less* stable product by destroying the resonance-stabilized benzene ring system; for example, according to Fig. 14.1 the first stage of hydrogenation of benzene requires 5.6 kcal to convert benzene into the less stable cyclohexadiene. As a consequence, it is easier for reactions of benzene to take an entirely different course, one in which the ring system is retained: *substitution*.

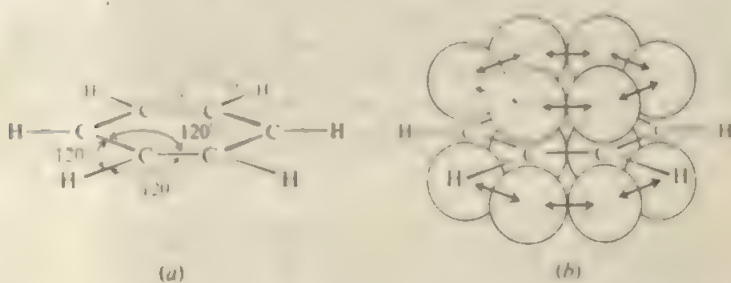
(This is not quite all of the story in so far as stability goes. As we shall see in Sec. 14.10, an additional factor besides resonance is necessary to make benzene what it is.)



## 14.8 Orbital picture of benzene

A more detailed picture of the benzene molecule is obtained from a consideration of the bond orbitals in this molecule.

Since each carbon is bonded to three other atoms, it uses  $sp^2$  orbitals (as in ethylene, Sec. 7.2). These lie in the same plane, that of the carbon nucleus, and are directed toward the corners of an equilateral triangle. If we arrange the six carbons and six hydrogens of benzene to permit maximum overlap of these orbitals, we obtain the structure shown in Fig. 14.2*a*.



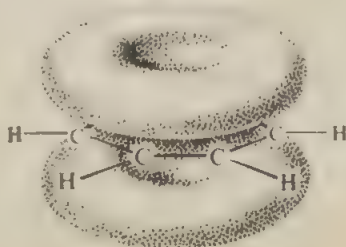
**Figure 14.2.** Benzene molecule (a) Only  $\sigma$  bonds shown (b)  $p$  orbitals overlap to form  $\pi$  bonds.

Benzene is a *flat molecule*, with every carbon and every hydrogen lying in the same plane. It is a very *symmetrical molecule*, too, with each carbon atom lying at the angle of a regular hexagon; every bond angle is  $120^\circ$ . Each bond orbital is cylindrically symmetrical about the line joining the atomic nuclei, and hence, as before, these bonds are designated as  $\sigma$  bonds.

The molecule is not yet complete, however. There are still six electrons to be accounted for. In addition to the three orbitals already used, each carbon atom has a fourth orbital, a  $p$  orbital. As we know, this  $p$  orbital consists of two equal lobes, one lying above and the other lying below the plane of the other three orbitals, that is, above and below the plane of the ring; it is occupied by a single electron.

As in the case of ethylene, the  $p$  orbital of one carbon can overlap the  $p$  orbital of an adjacent carbon atom, permitting the electrons to pair and an additional  $\pi$  bond to be formed (see Fig. 14.2*b*). But the overlap here is not limited to a pair of  $p$  orbitals as it was in ethylene; the  $p$  orbital of any one carbon atom overlaps equally well the  $p$  orbitals of *both* carbon atoms to which it is bonded. The result (see Fig. 14.3) is two continuous doughnut-shaped electron clouds, one lying above and the other below the plane of the atoms.

**Figure 14.3.** Benzene molecule.  $\pi$  clouds above and below plane of ring.

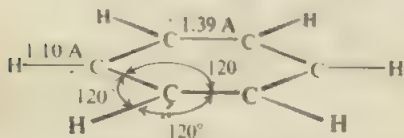


As with the allyl radical, it is the overlap of the  $p$  orbitals in both directions, and the resulting participation of each electron in several bonds, that corresponds to our description of the molecule as a resonance hybrid of two structures. Again it is the *delocalization* of the  $\pi$  electrons—their participation in several bonds—that makes the molecule more stable.

To accommodate six  $\pi$  electrons, there must be *three* orbitals (Sec. 33.5). Their sum is, however, the symmetrical  $\pi$  clouds we have described.

The orbital approach reveals the importance of the planarity of the benzene ring. The ring is flat because the trigonal ( $sp^2$ ) bond angles of carbon just fit the  $120^\circ$  angles of a regular hexagon; it is this flatness that permits the overlap of the  $p$  orbitals in both directions, with the resulting delocalization and stabilization.

The facts are consistent with the orbital picture of the benzene molecule. X-ray and electron diffraction show benzene (Fig. 14.4) to be a completely flat,



**Figure 14.4.** Benzene molecule: shape and size.

symmetrical molecule with all carbon-carbon bonds equal, and all bond angles  $120^\circ$ .

As we shall see, the chemical properties of benzene are just what we would expect of this structure. Despite delocalization, the  $\pi$  electrons are nevertheless more loosely held than the  $\sigma$  electrons. The  $\pi$  electrons are thus particularly available to a reagent that is seeking electrons: *the typical reactions of the benzene ring are those in which it serves as a source of electrons for electrophilic (acidic) reagents. Because of the resonance stabilization of the benzene ring, these reactions lead to substitution*, in which the aromatic character of the benzene ring is preserved.

**Problem 14.3** The carbon-hydrogen homolytic bond dissociation energy for benzene (110 kcal) is considerably larger than for cyclohexane. On the basis of the orbital picture of benzene, what is one factor that may be responsible for this? What piece of physical evidence tends to support your answer? (*Hint*: Look at Fig. 14.4 and see Sec. 7.4.)

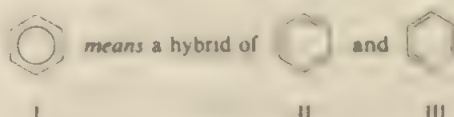
**Problem 14.4** The molecules of *pyridine*,  $C_5H_5N$ , are flat, with all bond angles about  $120^\circ$ . All carbon-carbon bonds are 1.39 Å long and the two carbon-nitrogen bonds are 1.36 Å long. The measured heat of combustion is 23 kcal lower than that calculated by the method of Problem 14.2 on page 579. Pyridine undergoes such substitution reactions as nitration and sulfonation (Sec. 14.4). (a) Is pyridine adequately represented by formula 1? (b) Account for the properties of pyridine by both valence-bond and orbital structures. (Check your answer in Sec. 35.6.)



**Problem 14.5** The compound *borazole*,  $B_3N_3H_3$ , is shown by electron diffraction to have a flat cyclic structure with alternating boron and nitrogen atoms, and all boron-nitrogen bond lengths the same. (a) How would you represent borazole by valence-bond structures? (b) In terms of orbitals? (c) How many  $\pi$  electrons are there, and which atoms have they "come from"?

## 14.9 Representation of the benzene ring

For convenience we shall represent the benzene ring by a regular hexagon containing a circle (I); it is understood that a hydrogen atom is attached to each angle of the hexagon unless another atom or group is indicated.



I represents a resonance hybrid of the Kekulé structures II and III. The straight lines stand for the  $\sigma$  bonds joining carbon atoms. The circle stands for the cloud of six delocalized  $\pi$  electrons. (From another viewpoint, the straight lines stand for single bonds, and the circle stands for the extra *half-bonds*.)

I is a particularly useful representation of the benzene ring, since it emphasizes the equivalence of the various carbon-carbon bonds. The presence of the circle distinguishes the benzene ring from the cyclohexane ring, which is often represented today by a plain hexagon.

There is no complete agreement among chemists about how to represent the benzene ring. The student should expect to encounter it often as one of the Kekulé formulas. The representation adopted in this book has certain advantages, and its use is gaining ground. It is interesting that very much the same representation was advanced as long ago as 1899 by Johannes Thiele (of the University of Munich), who used a broken circle to stand for partial bonds ("partial valences").

## 14.10 Aromatic character. The Hückel $4n + 2$ rule

We have defined aromatic compounds as those that resemble benzene. But just which properties of benzene must a compound possess before we speak of it as being aromatic? Besides the compounds that contain benzene rings, there are many other substances that are called aromatic; yet some of these superficially bear little resemblance to benzene.

What properties do all aromatic compounds have in common?

From the experimental standpoint, aromatic compounds are compounds whose molecular formulas would lead us to expect a high degree of unsaturation, and yet which are resistant to the addition reactions generally characteristic of unsaturated compounds. Instead of addition reactions, we often find that these aromatic compounds undergo electrophilic substitution reactions like those of benzene. Along with this resistance toward addition—and presumably the cause of it—we find evidence of unusual stability: low heats of hydrogenation and low heats of combustion. Aromatic compounds are cyclic—generally containing five-, six-, or seven-membered rings—and when examined by physical methods, they are

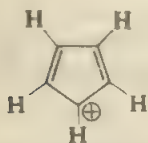


found to have flat (or nearly flat) molecules. Their protons show the same sort of *chemical shift* in NMR spectra (Sec. 17.11) as the protons of benzene and its derivatives.

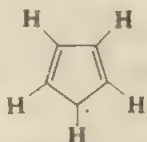
From a theoretical standpoint, to be aromatic a compound must have a molecule that contains *cyclic clouds of delocalized  $\pi$  electrons above and below the plane of the molecule*; furthermore, *the  $\pi$  clouds must contain a total of  $(4n + 2)$   $\pi$  electrons*. That is to say, for the particular degree of stability that characterizes an aromatic compound, delocalization alone is not enough. There must be a particular number of  $\pi$  electrons: 2, or 6, or 10, etc. This requirement, called the  *$4n + 2$  rule* or *Hückel rule* (after Erich Hückel, of the Institut für theoretische Physik, Stuttgart), is based on quantum mechanics, and has to do with the filling up of the various orbitals that make up the  $\pi$  cloud (Sec. 33.6). The Hückel rule is strongly supported by the facts.

Let us look at some of the evidence supporting the Hückel rule. Benzene has six  $\pi$  electrons, the *aromatic sextet*, six is, of course, a Hückel number, corresponding to  $n = 1$ . Besides benzene and its relatives (naphthalene, anthracene, phenanthrene, Chap. 34), we shall encounter a number of heterocyclic compounds (Chap. 35) that are clearly aromatic; these aromatic heterocycles, we shall see, are just the ones that can provide an aromatic sextet.

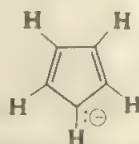
Or, as further examples, consider these six compounds, for each of which just one contributing structure is shown:



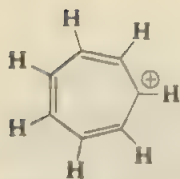
Cyclopentadienyl  
cation  
Four  $\pi$  electrons



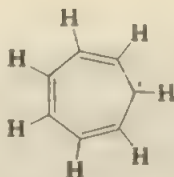
Cyclopentadienyl  
radical  
Five  $\pi$  electrons



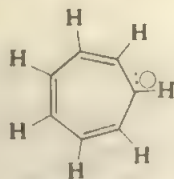
Cyclopentadienyl  
anion  
Six  $\pi$  electrons  
Aromatic



Cycloheptatrienyl  
cation  
(Tropylium ion)  
Six  $\pi$  electrons  
Aromatic



Cycloheptatrienyl  
radical  
Seven  $\pi$  electrons



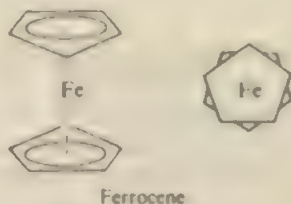
Cycloheptatrienyl  
anion  
Eight  $\pi$  electrons

Each molecule is a hybrid of either five or seven equivalent structures, with the charge or odd electron on each carbon. Yet, of the six compounds, only *two* give evidence of *unusually* high stability: the cyclopentadienyl anion and the cycloheptatrienyl cation (*tropylium ion*).

For a hydrocarbon, cyclopentadiene is an unusually strong acid ( $K_a = 10^{-15}$ ), indicating that loss of a hydrogen ion gives a particularly stable anion. (It is, for

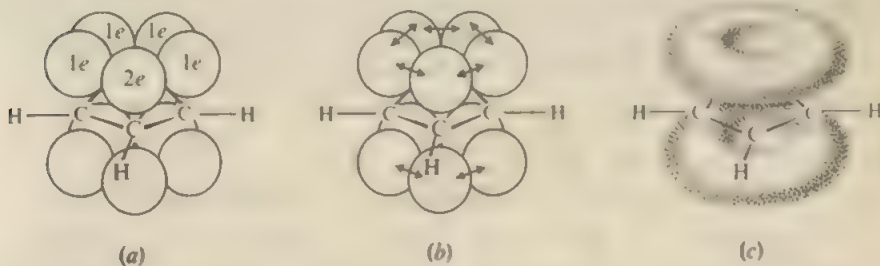


example, a much stronger acid than cycloheptatriene,  $A_{\text{H}} = 10^{-41}$ , despite the fact that the latter gives an anion that is stabilized by seven contributing structures.) Dicyclopentadienyliron (ferrocene),  $(\text{C}_5\text{H}_5)_2\text{Fe}$ , is a stable molecule that has been shown to be a "sandwich" of an iron atom between two flat five-membered rings. All carbon-carbon bonds are 1.4 Å long. The rings of ferrocene undergo two typically aromatic substitution reactions: sulfonation and the Friedel-Crafts reaction.



Of the cycloheptatrienyl derivatives, on the other hand, it is the cation that is unusual. Tropylium bromide,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_6\text{Br}$ , melts above  $200^\circ$ , is soluble in water but insoluble in non-polar solvents, and gives an immediate precipitate of  $\text{AgBr}$  when treated with silver nitrate. This is strange behavior for an organic bromide, and strongly suggests that, even in the solid, we are dealing with an ionic compound,  $\text{R}^+\text{Br}^-$ , the cation of which is actually a *stable* carbocation.

Consider the electronic configuration of the cyclopentadienyl anion (Fig. 14.5). Each carbon, trigonally hybridized, is held by a  $\sigma$  bond to two other carbons and

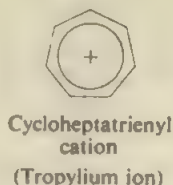


**Figure 14.5.** Cyclopentadienyl anion. (a) Two electrons in  $p$  orbital of one carbon, one electron in  $p$  orbital of each of the other carbons. (b) Overlap of  $p$  orbitals to form  $\pi$  bonds. (c)  $\pi$  clouds above and below plane of ring; total of six  $\pi$  electrons, the aromatic sextet.

one hydrogen. The ring is a regular pentagon, whose angles ( $108^\circ$ ) are not a bad fit for the  $120^\circ$  trigonal angle; any instability due to imperfect overlap (angle strain) is more than made up for by the delocalization that is to follow. Four carbons have one electron each in  $p$  orbitals; the fifth carbon (the "one" that lost the proton, but actually, of course, indistinguishable from the others) has two electrons. Overlap of the  $p$  orbitals gives rise to  $\pi$  clouds containing a total of six electrons, the aromatic sextet.

In a similar way, we arrive at the configuration of the tropylium ion. It is a regular heptagon (angles  $128.5^\circ$ ). Six carbons contribute one  $p$  electron each, and the seventh contributes only an empty  $p$  orbital. Result: the aromatic sextet.

The ions are conveniently represented as:



Six is the Hückel number most often encountered, and for good reason. To provide  $p$  orbitals, the atoms of the aromatic ring must be trigonally ( $sp^2$ ) hybridized, which means, ideally, bond angles of  $120^\circ$ . To permit the overlap of the  $p$  orbitals that gives rise to the  $\pi$  cloud, the aromatic compound must be flat, or nearly so. The number of trigonally hybridized atoms that will fit a flat ring without undue angle strain (i.e., with reasonably good overlap for  $\pi$  bond formation) is five, six, or seven. Six is the Hückel number of  $\pi$  electrons that can be provided—as we have just seen—by these numbers of atoms. (It is surely no coincidence that benzene, our model for aromatic character, is the “perfect” specimen: six carbons to provide six  $\pi$  electrons and to make a hexagon whose angles exactly match the trigonal angle.)

Now, what evidence is there that other Hückel numbers—2, 10, 14, etc.—are also “magic” numbers? We cannot expect aromatic character necessarily to appear here in the form of highly stable compounds comparable to benzene and its derivatives. The rings will be too small or too large to accommodate trigonally hybridized atoms very well, so that any stabilization due to aromaticity may be largely offset by angle strain or poor overlap of  $p$  orbitals, or both.

We must look for stability on a *comparative* basis—as was done above with the cyclopentadienyl and cycloheptatrienyl derivatives—and may find evidence of aromaticity only in the fact that one molecular species is *less unstable* than its relatives. The net effect of a great deal of elegant work is strongly to support the  $4n + 2$  rule. The question now seems rather to be: over how unfavorable a combination of angle strain and multiple charge can aromaticity manifest itself?

**Problem 14.6** Ronald Breslow (of Columbia University) found that treatment of 3-chlorocyclopropene with  $SbCl_5$  yields a stable crystalline solid, I, of formula



3-Chlorocyclopropene

$C_3H_3SbCl_6$ , insoluble in non-polar solvents but soluble in polar solvents like nitromethane, acetonitrile, or sulfur dioxide. The NMR spectrum of I shows three exactly equivalent protons. 3-Chlorocyclopropene reacts with  $AgBF_4$  to give  $AgCl$  and a solution with an NMR spectrum identical to that of I. Treatment of I with chloride ion regenerates 3-chlorocyclopropene.

Conversion of I into  $C_3H_3^+$  requires 153 kcal/mol, as compared with 173 kcal/mol for conversion of allyl chloride into  $C_3H_3^+$ .

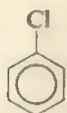
(a) Give in detail the most likely structure of I, and show how this structure accounts for the various observations. (b) Of what theoretical significance are these findings?

**Problem 14.7** 1,3,5,7-Cyclooctatetraene,  $C_8H_8$ , has a heat of combustion (compare Problem 14.2, p. 579) of 1095 kcal; it rapidly decolorizes cold aqueous  $KMnO_4$  and reacts with  $Br_2/CCl_4$  to yield  $C_8H_8Br_8$ . (a) How should its structure be represented? (b) Upon what theoretical grounds might one have predicted its structure and properties? (c) Treatment of cyclooctatetraene with potassium metal has been found to yield a stable compound  $2K^+C_8H_8^{2-}$ . Of what significance is the formation of this salt? (d) Using models, suggest a possible shape (or shapes) for cyclooctatetraene. What shape would you predict for the  $C_8H_8^{2-}$  anion?

## 14.11 Nomenclature of benzene derivatives

In later chapters we shall consider in detail the chemistry of many of the derivatives of benzene. Nevertheless, for our present discussion of the reactions of the benzene ring it will be helpful for us to learn to name some of the more important of these derivatives.

For many of these derivatives we simply prefix the name of the substituent group to the word *-benzene*, as, for example, in *chlorobenzene*, *bromobenzene*, *iodobenzene*, or *nitrobenzene*. Other derivatives have special names which may show



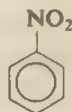
Chlorobenzene



Bromobenzene

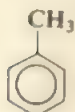


Iodobenzene

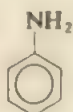


Nitrobenzene

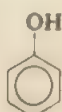
no resemblance to the name of the attached substituent group. For example, methylbenzene is always known as *toluene*, aminobenzene as *aniline*, hydroxybenzene as *phenol*, and so on. The most important of these special compounds are:



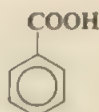
Toluene



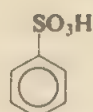
Aniline



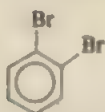
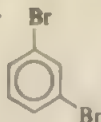
Phenol



Benzoic acid

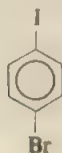
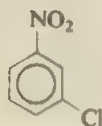
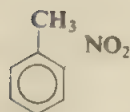
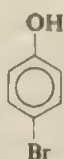
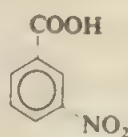
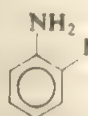
Benzenesulfonic  
acid

If several groups are attached to the benzene ring, we must not only tell what they are, but also indicate their relative positions. The three possible isomers of a disubstituted benzene are differentiated by the use of the names *ortho*, *meta*, and *para*. For example:

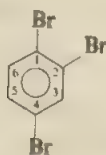
*o*-Dibromobenzene  
*ortho**m*-Dibromobenzene  
*meta**p*-Dibromobenzene  
*para*

If the two groups are different, and neither is a group that gives a special name to the molecule, we simply name the two groups successively and end the word with

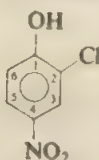
benzene, as, for example, *chloronitrobenzene*, *bromoiodobenzene*, etc. If one of the two groups is the kind that gives a special name to the molecule, then the compound is named as a derivative of that special compound, as, for example, *nitrotoluene*, *bromophenol*, etc.

*p*-Bromiodobenzene*m*-Chloronitrobenzene*p*-Chlorobenzenesulfonic acid*o*-Nitrotoluene*p*-Bromophenol*m*-Nitrobenzoic acid*o*-Iodoaniline

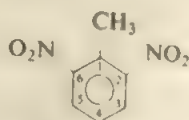
If more than two groups are attached to the benzene ring, numbers are used to indicate their relative positions. For example:



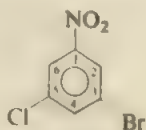
1,2,4-Tribromobenzene



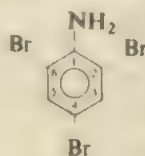
2-Chloro-4-nitrophenol



2,6-Dinitrotoluene



3-Bromo-5-chloronitrobenzene



2,4,6-Tribromoaniline

If all the groups are the same, each is given a number, the sequence being the one that gives the lowest combination of numbers, if the groups are different, then the last-named group is understood to be in position 1 and the other numbers conform to that, as, for example, in *3-bromo-5-chloronitrobenzene*. If one of the groups that gives a special name is present, then the compound is named as having the special group in position 1; thus in *2,6-dinitrotoluene* the methyl group is considered to be at the 1-position.

**Problem 14.8** You have three bottles containing the three isomeric dibromobenzenes, they have the melting points  $+87^\circ$ ,  $+6^\circ$ , and  $-7^\circ$ . By a great deal of work, you prepare six dibromonitrobenzenes ( $C_6H_3Br_2NO_2$ ) and find that, of the six, one is related to (derived from or convertible into) the dibromobenzene of m.p.  $+87^\circ$ , two to the isomer of m.p.  $+6^\circ$ , and three to the isomer of m.p.  $-7^\circ$ .

- Label each bottle with the correct name of *ortho*, *meta*, or *para*.

(This work was actually carried out by Wilhelm Körner, of the University of Milan, and was the first example of the **Körner method of absolute orientation**.)



## 14.12 Quantitative elemental analysis: nitrogen and sulfur

This chapter has dealt with the structure of benzene and with some of its reactions. It is well to remind ourselves again that all this discussion has meaning only because it is based upon solid facts. As we saw earlier (Sec. 2.25), we can discuss the structure and reactions of a compound only when we know its molecular formula and the molecular formulas of its products.

To know a molecular formula we must know what elements are present in the compound, and in what proportions. In Sec. 2.26 we saw how various elements can be detected in an organic compound, and in Sec. 2.27 how the percentage of carbon, hydrogen, and halogen can be measured.

Quantitative analysis for nitrogen is carried out either (a) by the *Dumas method* or (b) by the *Kjeldahl method*. The Kjeldahl method is somewhat more convenient, particularly if many analyses must be carried out; however, it cannot be used for all kinds of nitrogen compounds.

In the Dumas method, the organic compound is passed through a tube containing, first, hot copper oxide and, next, hot copper metal gauze. The copper oxide oxidizes the compound (as in the carbon hydrogen combustion, Sec. 2.27), converting combined nitrogen into molecular nitrogen. The copper gauze reduces any nitrogen oxides that may be formed, also to molecular nitrogen. The nitrogen gas is collected and its volume is measured. For example, an 8.32-mg sample of *aniline* yields 1.11 cm<sup>3</sup> of nitrogen at 21° and 743 mm pressure (corrected for the vapor pressure of water). We calculate the volume at standard temperature and pressure,

$$\text{vol. N}_2 \text{ at S.T.P.} = 1.11 \times \frac{273}{273 + 21} \times \frac{743}{760} = 1.01 \text{ cm}^3$$

and, from it, the weight of nitrogen,

$$\text{wt. N} = \frac{1.01}{22400} \times (2 \times 14.01) = 0.00126 \text{ g or } 1.26 \text{ mg}$$

and, finally, the percentage of nitrogen in the sample

$$\% \text{N} = \frac{1.26}{8.32} \times 100 = 15.2\%$$

**Problem 14.9** Why is the nitrogen in the Dumas analysis collected over 50% aqueous KOH rather than, say, pure water, aqueous NaCl, or mercury?

In the Kjeldahl method, the organic compound is digested with concentrated sulfuric acid, which converts combined nitrogen into ammonium sulfate. The solution is then made alkaline. The ammonia thus liberated is distilled, and its amount is determined by titration with standard acid. For example, the ammonia formed from a 3.51-mg sample of *aniline* neutralizes 3.69 ml. of 0.0103 N acid. For every milliequivalent of acid there is a milliequivalent of ammonia, and a

$$\begin{aligned} \text{milligram-atoms N} &= \text{milliequivalents NH}_3 = \text{milliequivalents acid} \\ &= 3.69 \times 0.0103 = 0.0380 \end{aligned}$$

milligram-atom of nitrogen. From this, the weight and, finally, the percentage of nitrogen in the compound can be calculated.

$$\text{wt N} = \text{milligram-atoms N} \times 14.01 = 0.0380 \times 14.01 = 0.53 \text{ mg}$$

$$\% \text{N} = \frac{0.53}{3.51} \times 100 = 15.1\%$$

Sulfur in an organic compound is converted into sulfate ion by the methods used in halogen analysis (Sec. 2.27): treatment with sodium peroxide or with nitric acid (*Carius method*). This is then converted into barium sulfate, which is weighed.

**Problem 14.10** A Dumas nitrogen analysis of a 5.72-mg sample of *p*-phenylenediamine gave 1.31 cm<sup>3</sup> of nitrogen at 20° and 746 mm. The gas was collected over saturated aqueous KOH solution (the vapor pressure of water, 6 mm). Calculate the percentage of nitrogen in the compound.

**Problem 14.11** A Kjeldahl nitrogen analysis of a 3.88-mg sample of *ethanolamine* required 5.73 mL of 0.0110 N hydrochloric acid for titration of the ammonia produced. Calculate the percentage of nitrogen in the compound.

**Problem 14.12** A Carius sulfur analysis of a 4.81-mg sample of *p*-toluenesulfonic acid gave 6.48 mg of BaSO<sub>4</sub>. Calculate the percentage of sulfur in the compound.

**Problem 14.13** How does each of the above answers compare with the theoretical value calculated from the formula of the compound? (Each compound is listed in the index.)

## PROBLEMS

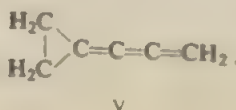
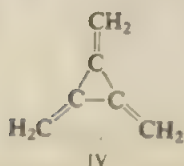
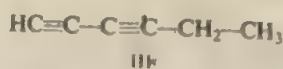
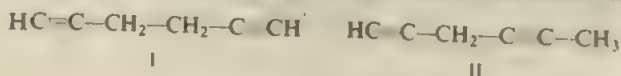
### 1. Draw structures of:

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| (a) <i>p</i> -dinitrobenzene     | (g) mesitylene (1,3,5-trimethylbenzene) |
| (b) <i>m</i> -bromonitrobenzene  | (h) 3,5-dinitrobenzenesulfonic acid     |
| (c) <i>o</i> -chlorobenzoic acid | (i) 4-chloro-2,3-dinitrotoluene         |
| (d) <i>m</i> -nitrotoluene       | (j) 2-amino-5-bromo-3-nitrobenzoic acid |
| (e) <i>p</i> -bromoaniline       | (k) <i>p</i> -hydroxybenzoic acid       |
| (f) <i>m</i> -iodophenol         | (l) 2,4,6-trinitrophenol (picric acid)  |

### 2. Give structures and names of all the possible isomeric:

- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| (a) xylenes (dimethylbenzenes)  | (d) dibromonitrobenzenes |
| (b) aminobenzoic acids (H <sub>2</sub> NC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH) | (e) bromochlorotoluenes  |
| (c) trimethylbenzenes   | (f) trinitrotoluenes     |

3. (a) How many isomeric monosubstitution products are theoretically possible from each of the following structures of formula C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>6</sub>? (b) How many disubstitution products? (c) Which structures, if any, would be acceptable for benzene on the basis of isomer number?



4. Give structures and names of all theoretically possible products of the ring mononitration of:

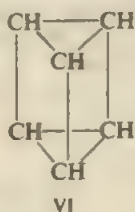
- |                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| (a) <i>o</i> -dichlorobenzene    | (g) <i>o</i> -chloronitrobenzene |
| (b) <i>m</i> -dichlorobenzene    | (h) <i>m</i> -chloronitrobenzene |
| (c) <i>p</i> -dichlorobenzene    | (i) <i>p</i> -chloronitrobenzene |
| (d) <i>o</i> -bromochlorobenzene | (j) 1,3,5-trimethylbenzene       |
| (e) <i>m</i> -bromochlorobenzene | (k) 4-bromo-1,2-dimethylbenzene  |
| (f) <i>p</i> -bromochlorobenzene | (l) <i>p</i> -ethyltoluene       |

5. Give structures and names of all benzene derivatives that *theoretically* can have the indicated number of isomeric ring-substituted derivatives.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) $C_8H_{10}$ : one monobromo derivative    | (e) $C_9H_{12}$ : two mononitro derivatives   |
| (b) $C_8H_{10}$ : two monobromo derivatives   | (f) $C_9H_{12}$ : three mononitro derivatives |
| (c) $C_8H_{10}$ : three monobromo derivatives | (g) $C_9H_{12}$ : four mononitro derivatives  |
| (d) $C_9H_{12}$ : one mononitro derivative    |   |

6. There are three known tribromobenzenes, of m.p.  $44^\circ$ ,  $87^\circ$ , and  $120^\circ$ . Could these isomers be assigned structures by use of the Körner method (Problem 14.8, p. 588)? Justify your answer.

7. For a time the prism formula VI, proposed in 1869 by Albert Ladenburg of Germany, was considered as a possible structure for benzene, on the grounds that it would yield one monosubstitution product and three isomeric disubstitution products.



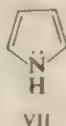
- (a) Draw Ladenburg structures of three possible isomeric dibromobenzenes.  
 (b) On the basis of the Körner method of absolute orientation, label each Ladenburg structure in (a) as *ortho*, *meta*, or *para*.  
 (c) In light of Chap. 4, can the Ladenburg formula actually pass the test of isomer number? (Derivatives of Ladenburg "benzene," called *prismanes*, have actually been made.)

8. In 1874 Griess (p. 1062) reported that he had decarboxylated the six known diaminobenzoic acids,  $C_6H_3(NH_2)_2COOH$ , to the diaminobenzenes. Three acids gave a diamine of m.p.  $63^\circ$ , two acids gave a diamine of m.p.  $104^\circ$ , and one acid gave a diamine of m.p.  $142^\circ$ . Draw the structural formulas for the three isomeric diaminobenzenes and label each with its melting point.

9. For which of the following might you expect aromaticity (geometry permitting)?

- (a) The annulenes containing up to 20 carbons. (Annulenes are monocyclic compounds of the general formula  $[-CH=CH-]_n$ .)  
 (b) The monocyclic polyenes  $C_9H_{10}$ ,  $C_9H_9^+$ ,  $C_9H_9^-$

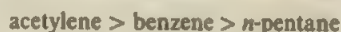
10. The properties of pyrrole, commonly represented by VII,



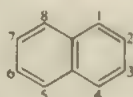
show that it is aromatic. Account for its aromaticity on the basis of orbital theory (Hint: See Sec. 14.10. Check your answer in Sec. 35.2).

11. When benzene is treated with chlorine under the influence of ultraviolet light, a solid material of m.wt. 291 is formed. Quantitative analysis gives an empirical formula of  $\text{CHCl}$ . (a) What is the molecular formula of the product? (b) What is a possible structural formula? (c) What kind of reaction has taken place? (d) Is the product aromatic? (e) Actually, the product can be separated into six isomeric compounds, one of which is used as an insecticide (Gammexane or Lindane). How do these isomers differ from each other? (f) Are more than six isomers possible?

12. Can you account for the following order of acidity. (*Hint*: See Sec. 13.11.)



13. *Naphthalene*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_8$ , is a polynuclear hydrocarbon (Chap. 34) whose properties clearly show that it is aromatic. One of the structures contributing to the hybrid molecule is VIII.



VIII

(a) Account for the aromaticity of the compound.

(b) In contrast to the six equivalent bonds in benzene, the carbon-carbon bonds in naphthalene come in two lengths:  $\text{C}_1\text{—C}_2$ , for example, is 1.365 Å long, while  $\text{C}_2\text{—C}_3$  is 1.404 Å long. How do you account for this?



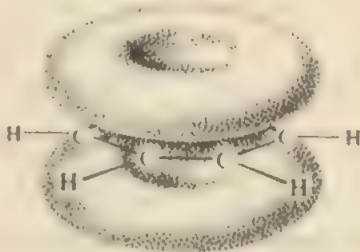
## Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution

### 15.1 Introduction

We have already seen that the characteristic reactions of benzene involve substitution, in which the resonance-stabilized ring system is preserved. What kind of reagents bring about this substitution? What is the mechanism by which these reactions take place?

Above and below the plane of the benzene ring there is a cloud of  $\pi$  electrons. Because of resonance, these  $\pi$  electrons are more involved in holding together carbon nuclei than are the  $\pi$  electrons of a carbon-carbon double bond. Still, in comparison with  $\sigma$  electrons, these  $\pi$  electrons are loosely held and are available to a reagent that is seeking electrons.

**Figure 15.1.** Benzene ring:  $\pi$  cloud is source of electrons.



It is not surprising that *in its typical reactions the benzene ring serves as a source of electrons*, that is, as a **base**. The compounds with which it reacts are deficient in electrons, that is, are electrophilic reagents or acids. Just as the typical reactions of the alkenes are electrophilic addition reactions, so *the typical reactions of the benzene ring are electrophilic substitution reactions*.

These reactions are characteristic not only of benzene itself, but of the benzene ring wherever it is found — and, indeed, of many aromatic rings, benzenoid and non-benzenoid.

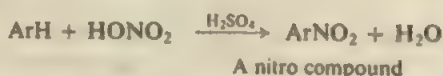
Electrophilic aromatic substitution includes a wide variety of reactions: nitration, halogenation, sulfonation, and Friedel-Crafts reactions, undergone by nearly all aromatic rings; reactions like nitrosation and diazo coupling, undergone only by rings of high reactivity; and reactions like desulfonation, isotopic exchange, and many ring closures which, although apparently unrelated, are found on closer examination to be properly and profitably viewed as reactions of this kind. In synthetic importance electrophilic aromatic substitution is probably unequaled by any other class of organic reactions. It is the initial route of access to nearly all aromatic compounds; it permits the direct introduction of certain substituent groups which can then be converted, by replacement or by transformation, into other substituents, including even additional aromatic rings.

---

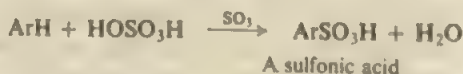
## ELECTROPHILIC AROMATIC SUBSTITUTION

Ar = *aryl*, any aromatic group with attachment directly to ring carbon

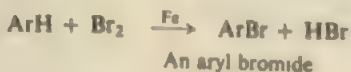
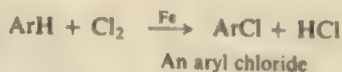
### 1. Nitration. Discussed in Sec. 15.8.



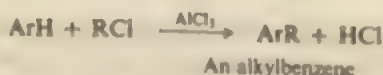
### 2. Sulfonation. Discussed in Sec. 15.9.



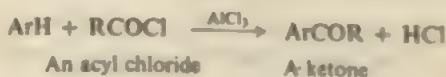
### 3. Halogenation. Discussed in Sec. 15.11.



### 4. Friedel-Crafts alkylation. Discussed in Sec. 15.10.

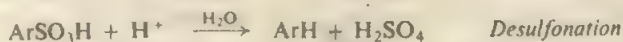


### 5. Friedel-Crafts acylation. Discussed in Sec. 18.5.

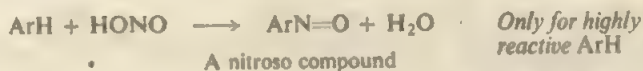


CONT.

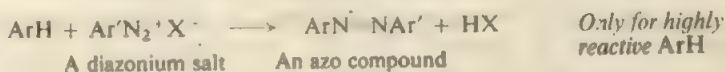
## 6. Protonation. Discussed in Sec. 15.12.



## 7. Nitrosation. Discussed in Secs. 23.12 and 24.12.

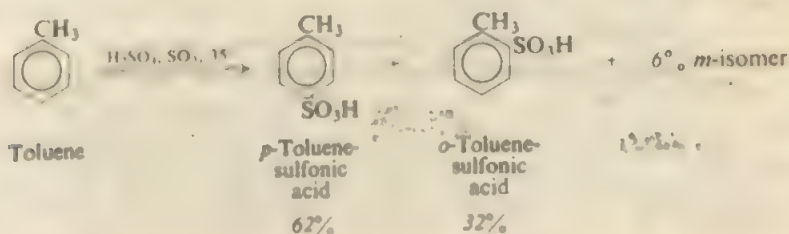


## 8. Diazo coupling. Discussed in Sec. 23.19.

9. Kolbe reaction. Discussed in Sec. 24.13. *Only for phenols.*10. Reimer-Tiemann reaction. Discussed in Sec. 24.14. *Only for phenols.* ■

## 15.2 Effect of substituent groups

Like benzene, toluene undergoes electrophilic aromatic substitution: sulfonation, for example. Although there are three possible monosulfonation products, this reaction actually yields appreciable amounts of only two of them: the *o*- and *p*-isomers.



Benzene and toluene are insoluble in sulfuric acid, whereas the sulfonic acids are readily soluble; completion of reaction is indicated simply by disappearance of the hydrocarbon layer. When shaken with fuming sulfuric acid at room temperature, benzene reacts completely within 20 to 30 minutes, whereas toluene is found to react within only a minute or two.

Studies of nitration, halogenation, and Friedel-Crafts alkylation of toluene give analogous results. In some way the methyl group makes the ring more reactive than unsubstituted benzene, and *directs* the attacking reagent to the *ortho* and *para* positions of the ring.

On the other hand, nitrobenzene, to take a different example, has been found to undergo substitution more slowly than benzene, and to yield chiefly the *meta* isomer.

Like methyl or nitro, any group attached to a benzene ring affects the **reactivity** of the ring and determines the **orientation** of substitution. When an electrophilic reagent attacks an aromatic ring, it is the group already attached to the ring that determines *how readily* the attack occurs and *where* it occurs.

A group that makes the ring more reactive than benzene is called an **activating group**. A group that makes the ring less reactive than benzene is called a **deactivating group**.

A group that causes attack to occur chiefly at positions **ortho** and **para** to it is called an **ortho,para director**. A group that causes attack to occur chiefly at positions **meta** to it is called a **meta director**.

In this chapter we shall examine the methods that are used to measure these effects on reactivity and orientation, the results of these measurements, and a theory that accounts for these results. The theory is, of course, based on the most likely mechanism for electrophilic aromatic substitution; we shall see what this mechanism is, and some of the evidence supporting it. First let us look at the facts.

### 15.3 Determination of orientation

To determine the effect of a group on orientation is, in principle, quite simple: the compound containing this group attached to benzene is allowed to undergo substitution and the product is analyzed for the proportions of the three isomers. Identification of each isomer as *ortho*, *meta*, or *para* generally involves comparison with an authentic sample of that isomer prepared by some other method from a compound whose structure is known. In the last analysis, of course, all these identifications go back to absolute determinations of the Körner type (Problem 14.8, p. 588).

In this way it has been found that every group can be put into one of two classes: *ortho,para* directors or *meta* directors. Table 15.1 summarizes the orientation of nitration in a number of substituted benzenes. Of the five positions open to

Table 15.1 ORIENTATION OF NITRATION OF  $C_6H_5Y$

Y	Ortho	Para	Ortho plus para	Meta
-OH	50-55	45-50	100	trace
-NHCOCH <sub>3</sub>	19	79	98	2
-CH <sub>3</sub>	58	38	96	4
-F	12	88	100	trace
-Cl	30	70	100	trace
-Br	37	62	99	1
-I	38	60	98	2
-NO <sub>2</sub>	6.4	0.3	6.7	93.3
-N(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> <sup>a</sup>	-0	11	11	89
-CN	-	-	19	81
-COOH	19	1	20	80
-SO <sub>3</sub> H	21	7	28	72
-CHO	-	-	28	72



attack, three (60%) are *ortho* and *para* to the substituent group, and two (40%) are *meta* to the group; if there were no selectivity in the substitution reaction, we would expect the *ortho* and *para* isomers to make up 60% of the product, and the *meta* isomer to make up 40%. We see that seven of the groups direct 96–100% of nitration to the *ortho* and *para* positions; the other six direct 72–94% to the *meta* positions.

A given group causes the same general kind of orientation—predominantly *ortho,para* or predominantly *meta*—whatever the electrophilic reagent involved. The actual distribution of isomers may vary, however, from reaction to reaction. In Table 15.2, for example, compare the distribution of isomers obtained from toluene by sulfonation or bromination with that obtained by nitration.

Table 15.2 ORIENTATION OF SUBSTITUTION IN TOLUENE

	<i>Ortho</i>	<i>Meta</i>	<i>Para</i>
Nitration	58	4	38
Sulfonation	32	6	62
Bromination	33	—	67

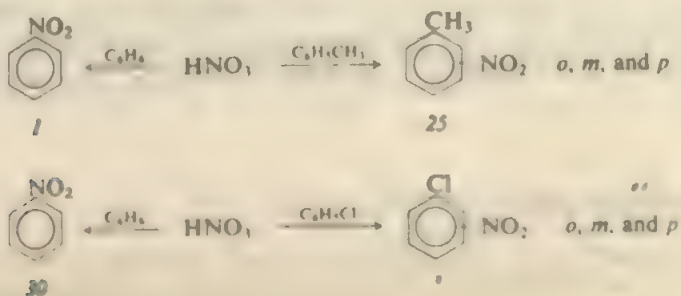
## 15.4 Determination of relative reactivity

A group is classified as *activating* if the ring it is attached to is more reactive than benzene, and is classified as *deactivating* if the ring it is attached to is less reactive than benzene. The reactivities of benzene and a substituted benzene are compared in one of the following ways.

The **time required** for reactions to occur under identical conditions can be measured. Thus, as we just saw, toluene is found to react with fuming sulfuric acid in about one-tenth to one-twentieth the time required by benzene. Toluene is more reactive than benzene, and  $-\text{CH}_3$  is therefore an activating group.

The **severity of conditions** required for comparable reaction to occur within the same period of time can be observed. For example, benzene is nitrated in less than an hour at 60° by a mixture of concentrated sulfuric acid and concentrated nitric acid; comparable nitration of nitrobenzene requires treatment at 90° with fuming nitric acid and concentrated sulfuric acid. Nitrobenzene is evidently less reactive than benzene, and the nitro group,  $-\text{NO}_2$ , is a deactivating group.

For an exact, quantitative comparison under identical reaction conditions, **competitive reactions** can be carried out, in which the compounds to be compared are allowed to compete for a limited amount of a reagent (Sec. 3.22). For example, if equimolar amounts of benzene and toluene are treated with a small amount of nitric acid (in a solvent like nitromethane or acetic acid, which will dissolve both



organic and inorganic reactants), about 25 times as much nitrotoluene as nitrobenzene is obtained, showing that toluene is 25 times as reactive as benzene. On the other hand, a mixture of benzene and chlorobenzene yields a product in which nitrobenzene exceeds the nitrochlorobenzenes by 30:1, showing that chlorobenzene is only one-thirtieth as reactive as benzene. The chloro group is therefore classified as deactivating, the methyl group as activating. The activation or deactivation caused by some groups is extremely powerful: aniline,  $C_6H_5NH_2$ , is roughly one million times as reactive as benzene, and nitrobenzene,  $C_6H_5NO_2$ , is roughly one-millionth as reactive as benzene.

## 15.5 Classification of substituent groups

The methods described in the last two sections have been used to determine the effects of a great number of groups on electrophilic substitution. As shown in Table 15.3, nearly all groups fall into one of two classes: activating and *ortho,para*-directing, or deactivating and *meta*-directing. The halogens are in a class by themselves, being deactivating but *ortho,para*-directing.

Table 15.3 EFFECT OF GROUPS ON ELECTROPHILIC AROMATIC SUBSTITUTION

Activating: <i>Ortho, para</i> Directors	Deactivating: <i>Meta</i> Directors
Strongly activating	—NO <sub>2</sub>
—NH <sub>2</sub> (—NHR, —NR <sub>2</sub> )	—N(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> <sup>+</sup>
—OH	—CN
Moderately activating	—COOH (—COOR)
—OCH <sub>3</sub> (—OC <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> , etc.)	—SO <sub>3</sub> H
—NHCOCH <sub>3</sub>	—CHO, —COR
Weakly activating	Deactivating: <i>Ortho, para</i> Directors
C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub>	—F, —Cl, —Br, —I
—CH <sub>3</sub> (—C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> , etc.)	

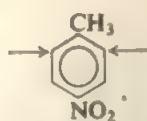
Just by knowing the effects summarized in these short lists, we can now predict fairly accurately the course of hundreds of aromatic substitution reactions. We now know, for example, that bromination of nitrobenzene will yield chiefly the *m*-isomer and that the reaction will go more slowly than the bromination of benzene itself; indeed, it will probably require severe conditions to go at all. We now know the nitration of  $C_6H_5NHCOCH_3$  (*acetanilide*) will yield chiefly the *o*- and *p*-isomers and will take place more rapidly than nitration of benzene.

Although, as we shall see, it is possible to account for these effects in a reasonable way, it is necessary for students to memorize the classifications in Table 15.3 so that they may deal rapidly with synthetic problems involving aromatic compounds.

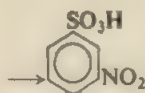
## 15.6 Orientation in disubstituted benzenes

The presence of two substituents on a ring makes the problem of orientation more complicated, but even here we can frequently make very definite predictions.

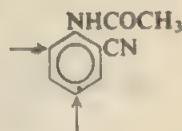
First of all, the two substituents may be located so that the directive influence of one *reinforces* that of the other; for example, in I, II, and III the orientation clearly must be that indicated by the arrows.



I



II



III

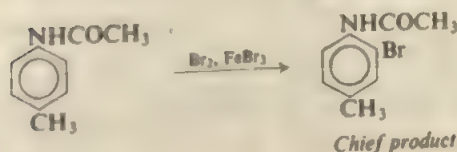
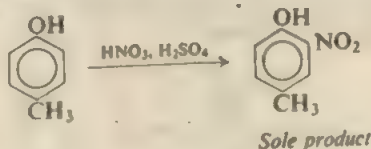
On the other hand, when the directive effect of one group *opposes* that of the other, it may be difficult to predict the major product; in such cases complicated mixtures of several products are often obtained.

Even where there are opposing effects, however, it is still possible in certain cases to make predictions in accordance with the following generalizations.

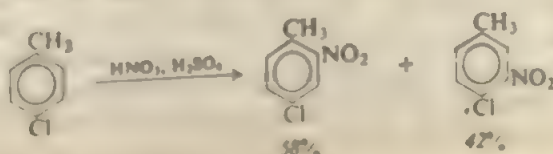
(a) *Strongly activating groups generally win out over deactivating or weakly activating groups.* The differences in directive power in the sequence



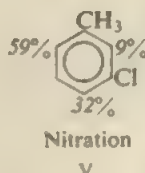
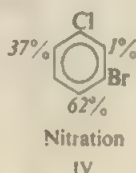
are great enough to be used in planning feasible syntheses. For example:



There must be, however, a fairly large difference in the effects of the two groups for clear-cut results, otherwise one gets results like these:



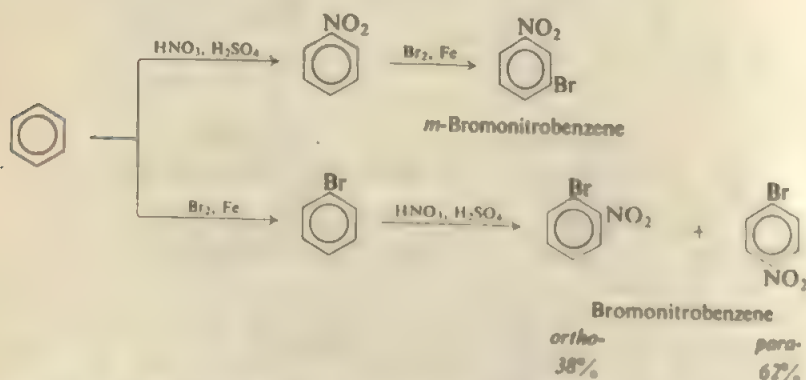
(b) *There is often little substitution between two groups that are meta to each other. In many cases it seems as though there just is not enough room between two groups located meta to each other for appreciable substitution to occur there, as illustrated by IV and V:*



## 15.7 Orientation and synthesis

As we discussed earlier (Sec. 3.14), a laboratory synthesis is generally aimed at obtaining a single, pure compound. Whenever possible we should avoid use of a reaction that produces a mixture, since this lowers the yield of the compound we want and causes difficult problems of purification. With this in mind, let us see some of the ways in which we can apply our knowledge of orientation to the synthesis of pure aromatic compounds.

First of all, we must consider the order in which we introduce these various substituents into the ring. In the preparation of the bromonitrobenzenes, for example, it is obvious that if we nitrate first and then brominate, we will obtain the *m*-isomer; whereas if we brominate first and then nitrate, we will obtain a mixture of the *o*- and *p*-isomers. The order in which we decide to carry out the two steps, then, depends upon which isomer we want.

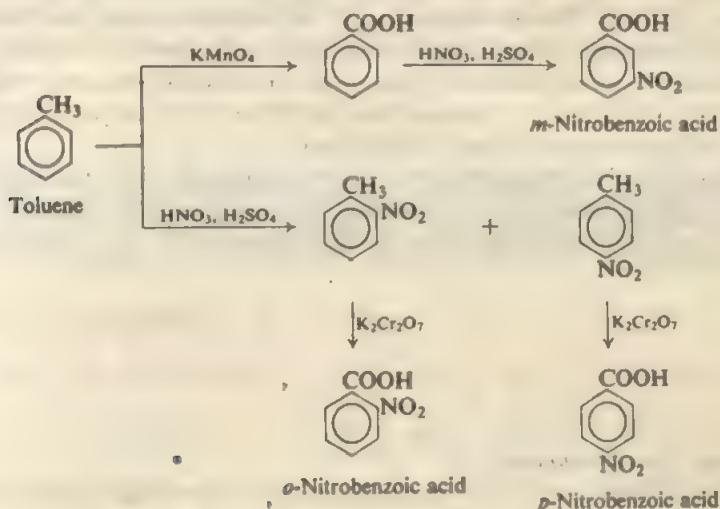


Next, if our synthesis involves conversion of one group into another, we must consider the proper time for this conversion. For example, oxidation of a methyl group yields a carboxyl group (Sec. 16.11). In the preparation of nitrobenzoic acids from toluene, the particular product obtained depends upon whether oxidation or nitration is carried out first.

Substitution controlled by an activating group yields a mixture of *ortho* and *para* isomers; nevertheless, we must often make use of such reactions, as in the examples just shown. It is usually possible to obtain the pure *para* isomer from the mixture by fractional crystallization. As the more symmetrical isomer, it is the less soluble (Sec. 16.4), and crystallizes while the solvent still retains the soluble *ortho* isomer. Some *para* isomer, of course, remains in solution to contaminate the *ortho*



isomer, which is therefore difficult to purify. As we shall see, special approaches are often used to prepare *ortho* isomers.

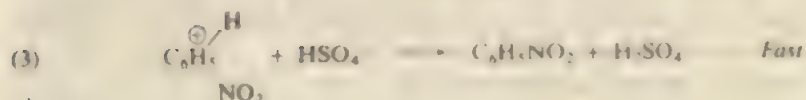
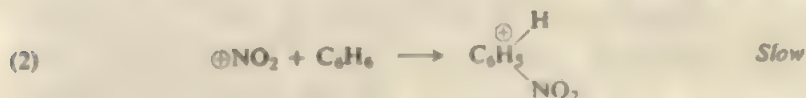
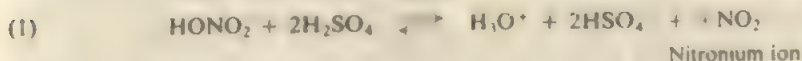


In the special case of nitro compounds, the difference in boiling points is often large enough that both *ortho* and *para* isomers can be obtained pure by fractional distillation. As a result, many aromatic compounds are best prepared not by direct substitution but by conversion of one group into another, in the last analysis starting from an original nitro compound; we shall take up these methods of conversion later.

## 15.8 Mechanism of nitration

Now that we have seen the effects that substituent groups exert on orientation and reactivity in electrophilic aromatic substitution, let us see how we can account for these effects. The first step in doing this is to examine the mechanism for the reaction. Let us begin with nitration, using benzene as the aromatic substrate.

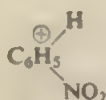
The commonly accepted mechanism for nitration with a mixture of nitric and sulfuric acids (the widely used "mixed acid" of the organic chemist) involves the following sequence of reactions:



Step (1) generates the nitronium ion  $\text{NO}_2^+$ , which is the electrophilic particle that actually attacks the benzene ring. This reaction is simply an acid-base

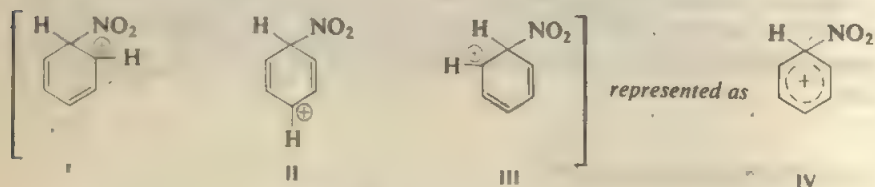
equilibrium in which sulfuric acid serves as the acid and the much weaker nitric acid serves as a base. We may consider that the very strong acid, sulfuric acid, causes nitric acid to ionize in the sense,  $\text{HO} \cdots \text{NO}_2^+$ , rather than in the usual way,  $\text{H}^+ \cdots \text{ONO}_2$ . The nitronium ion is well known, existing in salts such as nitronium perchlorate,  $\text{NO}_2^+ \text{ClO}_4^-$ , and nitronium fluoborate,  $\text{NO}_2^+ \text{BF}_4^-$ . Indeed, solutions of these stable nitronium salts in solvents like nitromethane or acetic acid have been found by George Olah (p. 226) to nitrate aromatic compounds smoothly and in high yield at room temperature.

Needing electrons, the nitronium ion finds them particularly available in the  $\pi$  cloud of the benzene ring, and so in step (2) attaches itself to one of the carbon atoms by a covalent bond. This forms the carbocation,



often called a *benzenonium ion*.

Just what is the structure of this carbocation? We find that we can represent it by three structures (I, II, and III) that differ from each other only in position of double bonds and positive charge. The actual ion must then be a resonance hybrid of these three structures.



This means, of course, that the positive charge is not localized on one carbon atom, but is distributed over the molecule, being particularly strong on the carbon atoms *ortho* and *para* to the carbon bearing the  $\text{—NO}_2$  group. (As we shall see later, this *ortho,para* distribution is significant.) The dispersal of the positive charge over the molecule by resonance makes this ion more stable than an ion with a localized positive charge. It is probably because of this stabilization that the carbocation forms at all, in view of the stability of the original benzene itself. Sometimes the hybrid carbocation is represented as IV, where the broken line stands for the fractional bonds due to the delocalized  $\pi$  electrons.

Thus far the reaction is like addition to alkenes: an electrophilic particle, attracted by the  $\pi$  electrons, attaches itself to the molecule to form a carbocation. But the fate of this carbocation is different from the fate of the ion formed from an alkene. Attachment of a basic group to the benzenonium ion to yield the addition product would destroy the aromatic character of the ring. Instead, the basic ion,  $\text{HSO}_4^-$ , abstracts a hydrogen ion (step 3) to yield the substitution product, which retains the resonance-stabilized ring. Loss of a hydrogen ion, as we have seen, is one of the reactions typical of a carbocation (Sec. 7.15); it is the *preferred* reaction in this case.

As with other carbocation reactions we have studied, it is the *formation* of the carbocation (step 2) that is the more difficult step; once formed, the carbocation

rapidly loses a hydrogen ion (step 3) to form the products. (We shall see proof of this in Sec. 15.14.)

Electrophilic substitution, then, like electrophilic addition, is a stepwise process involving an intermediate carbocation. The two reactions differ, however, in the fate of the carbocation. While the mechanism of nitration is, perhaps, better established than the mechanisms for other aromatic substitution reactions, it seems clear that all these reactions follow the same course.

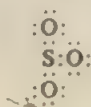
**Problem 15.1** Nitration by nitric acid alone is believed to proceed by essentially the same mechanism as nitration in the presence of sulfuric acid. Write an equation for the generation of  $\text{NO}_2^+$  from nitric acid alone.

## 15.9 Mechanism of sulfonation

Sulfonation of many aromatic compounds involves the following steps:



Again the first step, which generates the electrophilic sulfur trioxide, is simply an acid-base equilibrium, this time between molecules of sulfuric acid. For sulfonation we commonly use sulfuric acid containing an excess of  $\text{SO}_3$ ; even if this is not done, it appears that  $\text{SO}_3$  formed in step (1) can be the electrophile.



In step (2) the electrophilic reagent,  $\text{SO}_3$ , attaches itself to the benzene ring to form the intermediate carbocation. Although sulfur trioxide is not positively charged, it is electron-deficient, and hence an acid, nevertheless.

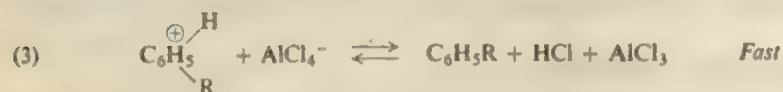
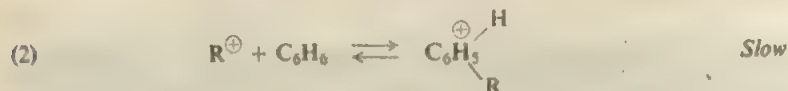
Step (3) is the loss of a hydrogen ion to form the resonance-stabilized substitution product, this time the anion of benzenesulfonic acid which, being a strong acid, is highly dissociated (step 4).

With some aromatic substrates and at certain acidities, the electrophile may be  $\text{HSO}_3^+$  or molecules that can readily transfer  $\text{SO}_3$  or  $\text{HSO}_3^+$  to the aromatic ring.

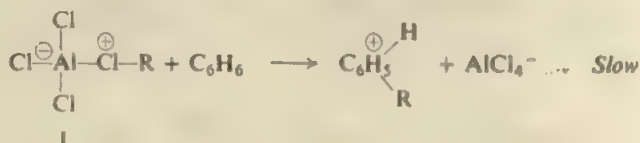
**Problem 15.2** Write an equation for the formation from  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  of each of the following sulfonating electrophile: (a)  $\text{H}_3\text{SO}_4^+$ ; (b)  $\text{HSO}_3^+$ ; (c)  $\text{H}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_7$ .

### 15.10 Mechanism of Friedel-Crafts alkylation

In Friedel-Crafts alkylation, the electrophile is typically a carbocation. It, too, is formed in an acid-base equilibrium, this time in the Lewis sense:



In certain cases, there is no free carbocation involved. Instead, the alkyl group is transferred—without a pair of electrons—directly to the aromatic ring from the polar complex, I, between  $\text{AlCl}_3$  and the alkyl halide:



The electrophile is thus either (a)  $\text{R}^+$  or (b) a molecule like I that can readily transfer  $\text{R}^+$  to the aromatic ring. This duality of mechanism is common in electrophilic aromatic substitution. In either case, the Lewis acid  $\text{R}^+$  is displaced from  $\text{RCl}$  by the other Lewis acid,  $\text{AlCl}_3$ .

We speak of the Friedel-Crafts reaction as electrophilic substitution and, from the viewpoint of the aromatic ring, it is. But, just as an acid reacts with a base, so an electrophile reacts with a nucleophile, a molecule that provides the electrons that the electrophile seeks. From the opposite point of view, then, this reaction involves nucleophilic attack by the aromatic ring on the alkyl group of complex I. The  $\text{AlCl}_4^-$  ion is a better leaving group than  $\text{Cl}^-$  would be; the Lewis acid,  $\text{AlCl}_3$ , serves the same purpose here that a Lowry-Bronsted acid does in protonation of an alcohol (Sec. 6.32).

As we shall find out when we take up the Friedel-Crafts reaction as a synthetic tool (Sec. 16.7), the Friedel-Crafts reaction in its widest sense involves reactants other than alkyl halides and Lewis acids other than aluminum chloride.  $\text{BF}_3$ ,  $\text{SnCl}_4$ ,  $\text{HF}$ , and even  $\text{H}^+$ .

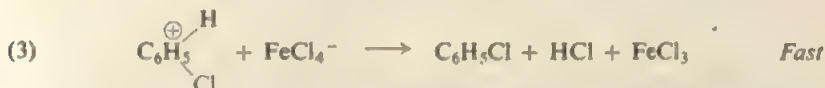
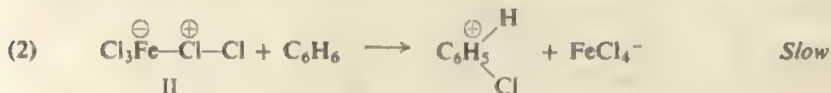
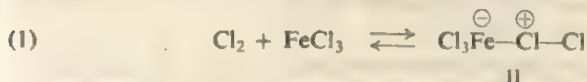
**Problem 15.3** How do you account for the fact that benzene in the presence of  $\text{AlCl}_3$  reacts (a) with *n*-propyl bromide to give isopropylbenzene, (b) with isobutyl bromide to yield *tert*-butylbenzene, (c) with neopentyl bromide to yield *tert*-pentylbenzene? (d) By which of the alternative mechanisms for the Friedel-Crafts reaction are these products probably formed?

**Problem 15.4** Write all steps in the most likely mechanism for the reaction of benzene (a) with *tert*-butyl alcohol in the presence of  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  to yield *tert*-butylbenzene, (b) with propylene in the presence of  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$  to form isopropylbenzene.



### 15.11 Mechanism of halogenation

Aromatic halogenation, illustrated for chlorination, involves the following steps.



The key step (2) is the attachment of positive chlorine to the aromatic ring. It seems unlikely, though, that an actually free  $\text{Cl}^+$  ion is involved. Instead, ferric chloride combines with  $\text{Cl}_2$  to form complex II, from which chlorine is transferred, without its electrons, directly to the ring.

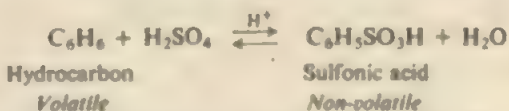
Addition of halogens to alkenes, we have seen (Sec. 8.17), similarly involves attack by positive halogen to form an intermediate cation. The loosely held  $\pi$  electrons of an alkene make it more reactive, however, and positive halogen is transferred from the halogen molecule itself,  $\text{X}_2$ , with loss of  $\text{Cl}^-$ . The less reactive benzene molecule needs the assistance of a Lewis acid; reaction occurs with the loss of the better leaving group,  $\text{FeCl}_4^-$ . Indeed, more highly reactive aromatic compounds, i.e., those whose  $\pi$  electrons are more available, do react with halogens in the absence of any added Lewis acid.

**Problem 15.5** Certain activated benzene rings can be chlorinated by hypochlorous acid,  $\text{HOCl}$ , and this reaction is catalyzed by  $\text{H}^+$ . In light of the above discussion, can you suggest a possible function of  $\text{H}^+$ ?

**Problem 15.6** Aromatic bromination catalyzed by the Lewis acid thallium acetate,  $\text{Ti}(\text{OOCCH}_3)_3$ , gives only the *para* isomer. Suggest an explanation for this regioselectivity. (Hint: See Sec. 15.7.)

### 15.12 Desulfonation. Mechanism of protonation

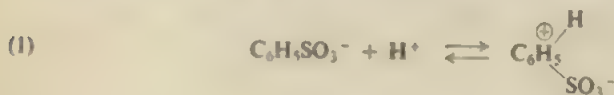
When an aromatic sulfonic acid is heated to  $100-175^\circ$  with aqueous acid, it is converted into sulfuric acid and an aromatic hydrocarbon. This *desulfonation* is the exact reverse of the sulfonation process by which the sulfonic acid was originally made.



By applying the usual equilibrium principles, we can select conditions that will drive the reaction in the direction we want it to go. To sulfonate we use a large excess of concentrated or fuming sulfuric acid, high concentration of sulfonating

agent and low concentration of water (or its removal by reaction with  $\text{SO}_3$ ) shift the equilibrium toward sulfonic acid. To desulfonate we use dilute acid and often pass superheated steam through the reaction mixture; high concentration of water and removal of the relatively volatile hydrocarbon by steam distillation shift the equilibrium toward hydrocarbon.

According to the principle of microscopic reversibility (Sec. 7.28), the mechanism of desulfonation must be the exact reverse of the mechanism of sulfonation.



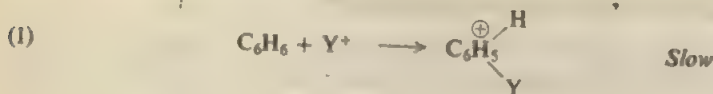
The reaction is simply another example of electrophilic aromatic substitution. The electrophile is the proton,  $\text{H}^+$ , and the reaction is *protonation* or, more specifically, *protodesulfonation*.

Sulfonation is unusual among electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions in its reversibility. It is also unusual in another way: in sulfonation, ordinary hydrogen (protium) is displaced from an aromatic ring about twice as fast as deuterium. These two facts are related to each other and, as we shall see in Sec. 15.14, give us a more detailed picture of sulfonation and of electrophilic aromatic substitution in general.

**Problem 15.7** Predict the product or products of: (a) monobromination of toluene; (b) monobromination of *p*-toluenesulfonic acid followed by treatment with acid and superheated steam. (c) Using the principle of (b), and following the guidelines of Sec. 15.7, outline a synthesis from benzene of *o*-dibromobenzene; of *o*-bromochlorobenzene.

### 15.13 Mechanism of electrophilic aromatic substitution: a summary

Electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions seem, then, to proceed by a single mechanism, whatever the particular reagent involved. This can be summarized for the reagent  $\text{YZ}$  as follows:



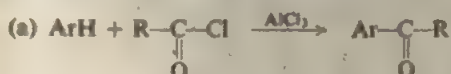
Two essential steps are involved: (1) attack by an electrophilic reagent upon the ring to form a carbocation,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5^+ \begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\ \diagup \\ \text{Y} \end{array}$ , and (2) abstraction of a hydrogen ion from

this carbocation by some base. In each case there is a preliminary acid-base reaction which generates the attacking particle; the actual substitution, however, is contained in these two steps.

Most of the support for this mechanism comes from evidence about the nature of the attacking particle in each of these reactions: evidence, that is, that substitution is *electrophilic*. This evidence, in turn, comes largely from kinetics, augmented by various other observations: the nitrating power of preformed nitronium salts (Sec. 15.8), for example, or carbocation-like rearrangements in some Friedel-Crafts alkylations (Problem 15.3, p. 604). The electrophilic nature of these reactions is supported in a very broad way by the fact that other reactions which show the same reactivity and orientation features also fit into the same mechanistic pattern.

Now let us turn to evidence of another kind: the evidence of isotope effects.

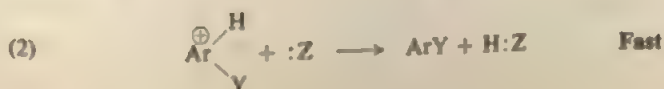
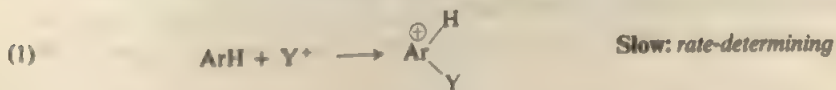
**Problem 15.8** In each of the following reactions, groups on the ring under attack exert the kinds of effects summarized in Sec. 15.5. Suggest a likely electrophile in each case, and write a likely mechanism.



**Problem 15.9** When phenol is treated with  $\text{D}_2\text{SO}_4$  in  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$  (deuterium sulfate in heavy water), there is formed phenol containing deuterium instead of hydrogen at positions *ortho* and *para* to the  $-\text{OH}$  group. Benzene undergoes similar exchange but at a much lower rate; under the same conditions benzenesulfonic acid does not undergo exchange at all. (a) Outline the most probable mechanism for hydrogen-deuterium exchange in aromatic compounds. (b) What is the attacking reagent in each case, and to what general class does this reaction belong?

## 15.14 Mechanism of electrophilic aromatic substitution: the two steps

So far we have spoken only of evidence indicating that these reactions are electrophilic, and revealing what the actual electrophiles are likely to be. But this is only part of the mechanism. Granting that substitution is electrophilic, how do we know that electrophilic aromatic substitution involves *two* steps,



instead of just one,



and how do we know that, of these two steps, the first is much slower than the second?

The answer is found in a series of studies begun by Lars Melander (University of Gothenberg) and extended by many other workers. A variety of aromatic compounds labeled with deuterium or tritium were subjected to nitration, bromination, and Friedel-Crafts alkylation. It was found that in these reactions deuterium or tritium is replaced at the *same* rate as protium; *there is no significant isotope effect*.

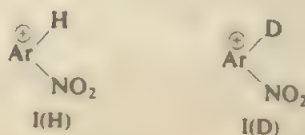
We have seen (Sec. 7.18) that a carbon-deuterium bond is broken more slowly than a carbon-protium bond, and a carbon-tritium bond more slowly yet. Such primary isotope effects are sizable:  $k^{\text{H}}/k^{\text{D}}$  may be 5 to 8, and  $k^{\text{H}}/k^{\text{T}}$  about twice that large. How, then, are we to interpret the fact that there is no isotope effect here? If the rates of replacement of the various hydrogen isotopes are the same, it can only mean that the reactions *whose rates we are comparing* do not involve the breaking of a carbon-hydrogen bond.

This interpretation is consistent with our mechanism. The rate of the overall substitution is determined by the slow attachment of the electrophilic reagent to the aromatic ring to form the carbocation. Once formed, the carbocation rapidly loses hydrogen ion to form the products. Step (1) is thus the *rate-determining step*. Since it does not involve the breaking of a carbon-hydrogen bond, its rate—and hence the rate of the overall reaction—is independent of the particular hydrogen isotope that is present.

If substitution involved a *single* step, as in (1a), this step would necessarily be the rate-determining step and, since it involves breaking of the carbon-hydrogen bond, an isotope effect would be observed. Or, if step (2) of the two-step sequence were slow enough relative to step (1) to affect the overall rate, again we would expect an isotope effect. (Indeed, sulfonation *does* show a small isotope effect and, as we shall see, for just this reason. Even in sulfonation, however, the overall rate is controlled chiefly by step (1).)

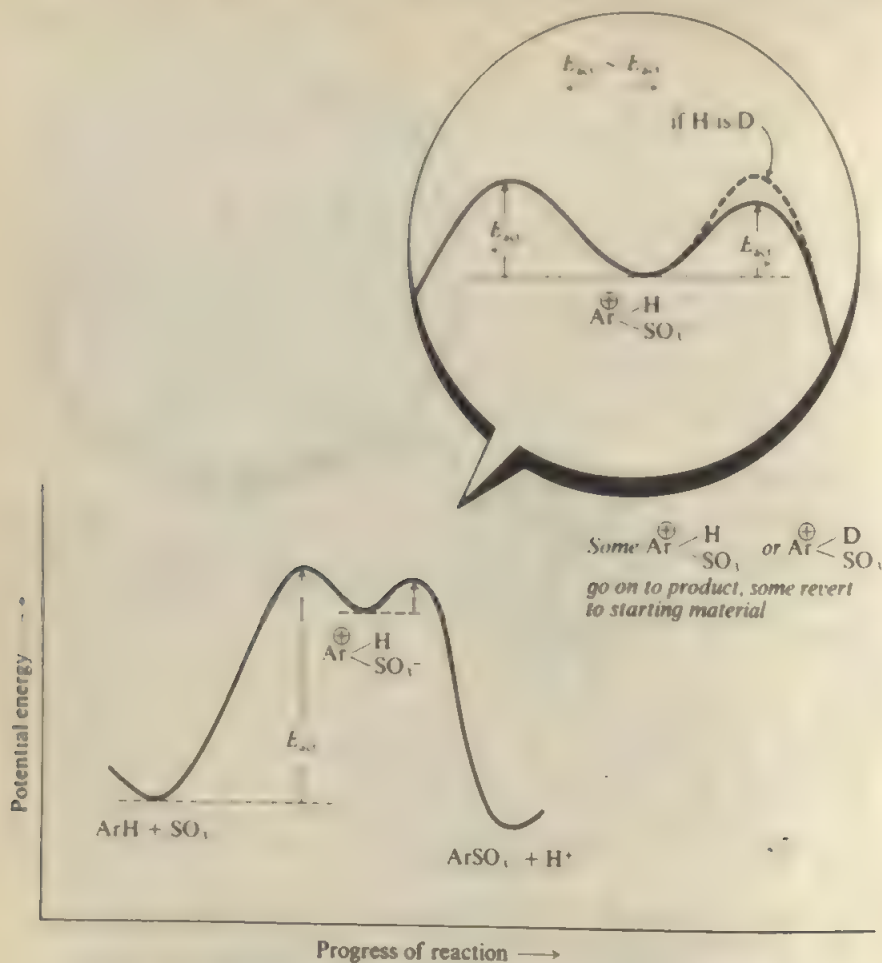
Thus the absence of isotope effects establishes not only the two-step nature of electrophilic aromatic substitution, but also the relative speeds of the steps. Attachment of the electrophile to a carbon atom of the ring is the difficult step (see Fig. 15.2); but it is equally difficult whether the carbon carries protium or deuterium. The next step, loss of hydrogen ion, is easy. Although it occurs more slowly for deuterium than for protium, this really makes no difference; slightly slower or slightly faster, its speed has no effect on the overall rate.

Let us look at this matter more closely (Fig. 15.2, insert). Every carbocation formed, whether I(H) or I(D), goes on to product, since the energy barrier to the



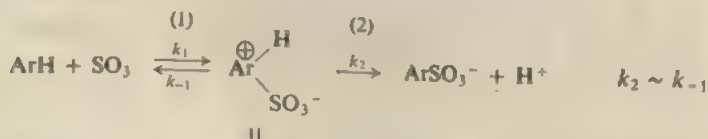






**Figure 15.3.** Sulfonation. Some carbocations go on to product, some revert to starting material. There is an isotope effect, and sulfonation is reversible.

Unlike most other electrophilic substitution reactions, sulfonation shows a moderate isotope effect: ordinary hydrogen (protium) is displaced from an aromatic ring about twice as fast as deuterium. Does this mean that sulfonation takes place by a different mechanism than nitration, one involving a single step? Almost certainly not.



Unlike most other electrophilic substitution reactions, sulfonation is reversible, and this fact gives us our clue. Reversibility means that carbocation II can lose SO<sub>3</sub> to form the hydrocarbon. Evidently here reaction (2) is *not* much faster

than the reverse of reaction (1). In sulfonation, the energy barriers on either side of the carbocation II must be roughly the same height, some ions go one way, some go the other (Fig. 15.3). Now, whether the carbocation is II(D) or II(H), the barrier to the left (behind it) is the same height. But to climb the barrier to the right (ahead), a carbon-hydrogen bond must be broken, so this barrier is higher for carbocation II(D) than for carbocation II(H). More deuterated ions than ordinary ions revert to starting material, and so overall sulfonation is slower for the deuterated benzene. Thus, the particular shape of potential energy curve that makes sulfonation reversible also permits an isotope effect to be observed.

By use of especially selected aromatic substrates—highly hindered ones— isotope effects can be detected in other kinds of electrophilic aromatic substitution, even in nitration. In certain reactions the size of the isotope can be deliberately varied by changes in experimental conditions—and in a way that shows dependence on the relative rates of (2) and the reverse of (1). There can be little doubt that all these reactions follow the same two-step mechanism, but with differences in the shape of potential energy curves. In isotope effects the chemist has an exceedingly delicate probe for the examination of organic reaction mechanisms.

**Problem 15.10** From the reaction of mesitylene (1,3,5-trimethylbenzene) with HF and  $\text{BF}_3$ , Olah (see p. 226) isolated at low temperatures a bright-yellow solid whose elemental composition corresponds to mesitylene HF  $\text{BF}_3$  in the ratio 1:1:1. The compound was poorly soluble in organic solvents and, when melted, conducted an electric current; chemical analysis showed the presence of the  $\text{BF}_4^-$  ion. When heated, the compound evolved  $\text{BF}_3$  and regenerated mesitylene.

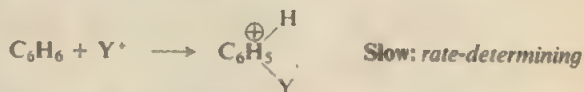
What is a likely structure for the yellow compound? The isolation of this and related compounds is considered to be strong support for the mechanism of electrophilic aromatic substitution. Why should this be so?

## 15.15 Reactivity and orientation

We have seen that certain groups activate the benzene ring and direct substitution to *ortho* and *para* positions, and that other groups deactivate the ring and (except halogens) direct substitution to *meta* positions. Let us see if we can account for these effects on the basis of principles we have already learned.

First of all, we must remember that reactivity and orientation are both matters of relative rates of reaction. Methyl is said to activate the ring because it makes the ring react *faster* than benzene; it causes *ortho,para* orientation because it makes the *ortho* and *para* positions react *faster* than the *meta* positions.

Now, we know that, whatever the specific reagent involved, the rate of electrophilic aromatic substitution is determined by the same slow step—attack of the electrophile on the ring to form a carbocation:

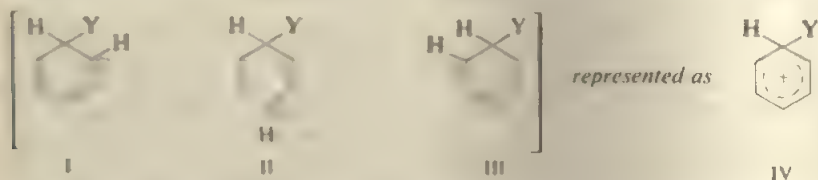


Any differences in rate of substitution must therefore be due to differences in the rate of this step.

For closely related reactions, a difference in rate of formation of carbocations is largely determined by a difference in  $E_{\text{act}}$ , that is, by a difference in stability of transition states. As with other carbocation reactions we have studied, factors that

stabilize the ion by dispersing the positive charge should for the same reason stabilize the incipient carbocation of the transition state. Here again we expect the more stable carbocation to be formed more rapidly. We shall therefore concentrate on the relative stabilities of the carbocations.

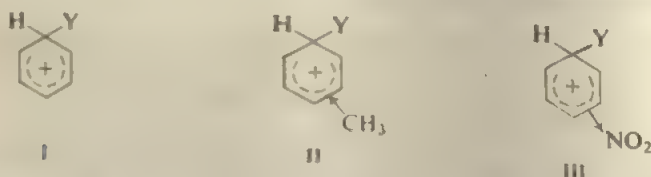
In electrophilic aromatic substitution the intermediate carbocation is a hybrid of structures I, II, and III, in which the positive charge is distributed about the ring, being strongest at the positions *ortho* and *para* to the carbon atom being attacked.



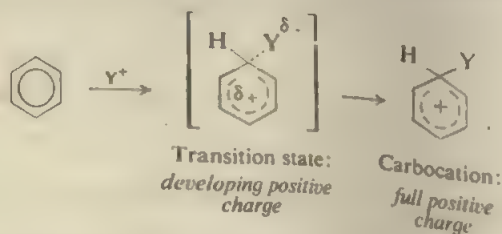
A group already attached to the benzene ring should affect the stability of the carbocation by dispersing or intensifying the positive charge, depending upon its electron-releasing or electron-withdrawing nature. It is evident from the structure of the ion (I-III) that this stabilizing or destabilizing effect should be especially important when the group is attached *ortho* or *para* to the carbon being attacked.

### 15.16 Theory of reactivity

To compare rates of substitution in benzene, toluene, and nitrobenzene, we compare the structures of the carbocations formed from the three compounds:



By releasing electrons, the methyl group (II) tends to neutralize the positive charge of the ring and so become more positive itself; this dispersal of the charge stabilizes the carbocation. In the same way the inductive effect stabilizes the developing positive charge in the transition state and thus leads to a faster reaction.

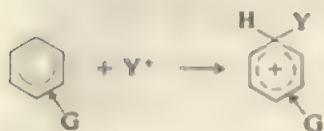


The  $-\text{NO}_2$  group, on the other hand, has an electron-withdrawing inductive effect (III); this tends to intensify the positive charge, destabilizes the carbocation, and thus causes a slower reaction.



Reactivity in electrophilic aromatic substitution depends, then, upon the tendency of a substituent group to release or withdraw electrons. A group that releases electrons activates the ring; a group that withdraws electrons deactivates the ring.

### Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution



*G releases electrons:  
stabilizes carbocation,  
activates*

$G = -\text{NH}_2$   
 $-\text{OH}$   
 $-\text{OCH}_3$   
 $-\text{NHCOCH}_3$   
 $-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$   
 $\text{CH}_3$



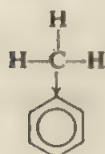
*G withdraws electrons:  
destabilizes carbocation,  
deactivates*

$G = -\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_3^+$   
 $-\text{NO}_2$   
 $\text{CN}$   
 $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$   
 $-\text{COOH}$   
 $-\text{CHO}$   
 $-\text{COR}$   
 $-\text{X}$

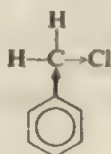
Like  $-\text{CH}_3$ , other alkyl groups release electrons, and like  $-\text{CH}_3$  they activate the ring. For example, *tert*-butylbenzene is 16 times as reactive as benzene toward nitration. Electron release by  $-\text{NH}_2$  and  $-\text{OH}$ , and by their derivatives  $-\text{OCH}_3$  and  $-\text{NHCOCH}_3$ , is due not to their inductive effect but to resonance, and is discussed later (Sec. 15.18).

We are already familiar with the electron-withdrawing effect of the halogens (Sec. 6.32). The full-fledged positive charge of the  $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_3^+$  group has, of course, a powerful attraction for electrons. In the other deactivating groups (e.g.,  $-\text{NO}_2$ ,  $-\text{CN}$ ,  $-\text{COOH}$ ), the atom next to the ring is attached by a multiple bond to oxygen or nitrogen. These electronegative atoms attract the mobile  $\pi$  electrons, making the atom next to the ring electron-deficient; to make up this deficiency, the atom next to the ring withdraws electrons from the ring.

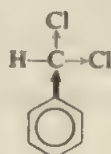
We might expect replacement of hydrogen in  $-\text{CH}_3$  by halogen to decrease the electron-releasing tendency of the group, and perhaps to convert it into an electron-withdrawing group. This is found to be the case. Toward nitration, toluene



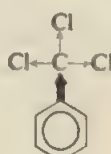
Activating



Weakly  
deactivating



Moderately  
deactivating



Strongly  
deactivating

is 25 times as reactive as benzene; benzyl chloride is only one-third as reactive as benzene. The  $-\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$  group is thus weakly deactivating. Further replacement of hydrogen by halogen to yield the  $-\text{CHCl}_2$  and the  $-\text{CCl}_3$  groups results in stronger deactivation.

### 15.17 Theory of orientation

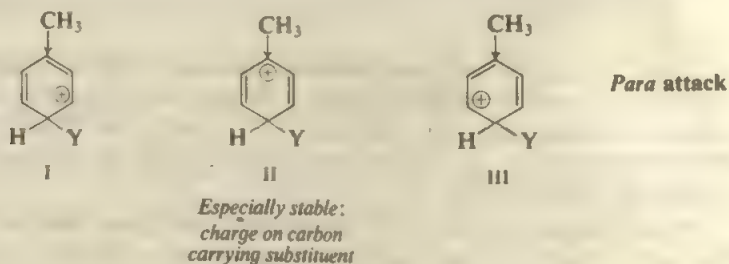
Before we try to account for orientation in electrophilic substitution, let us look more closely at the facts.

An activating group activates all positions of the benzene ring; even the positions *meta* to it are more reactive than any single position in benzene itself. It directs *ortho* and *para* simply because it activates the *ortho* and *para* positions much more than it does the *meta*.

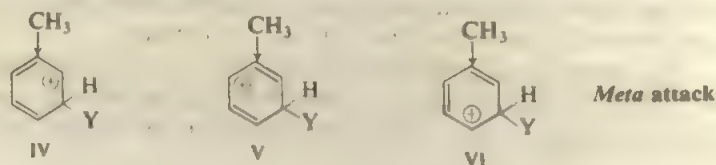
A deactivating group deactivates all positions in the ring, even the positions *meta* to it. It directs *meta* simply because it deactivates the *ortho* and *para* positions even more than it does the *meta*.

Thus both *ortho,para* orientation and *meta* orientation arise in the same way: **the effect of any group—whether activating or deactivating—is strongest at the *ortho* and *para* positions.**

To see if this is what we would expect, let us compare, for example, the carbocations formed by attack at the *para* and *meta* positions of toluene, a compound that contains an activating group. Each of these is a hybrid of three structures, I–III for *para*, IV–VI for *meta*. In one of these six structures, II, the positive charge is located on the carbon atom to which  $\text{—CH}_3$  is attached. Although  $\text{—CH}_3$  releases electrons to all positions of the ring, it does so most strongly to the

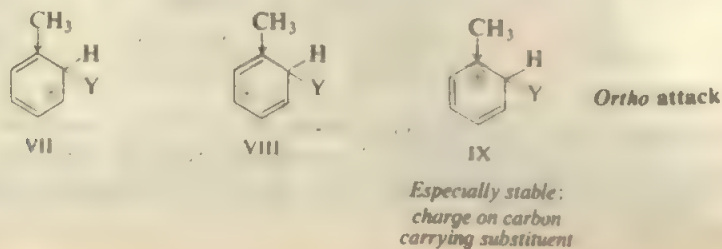


carbon atom nearest it; consequently, structure II is a particularly stable one. Because of contribution from structure II, the hybrid carbocation resulting from



attack at the *para* position is more stable than the carbocation resulting from attack at a *meta* position. *Para* substitution, therefore, occurs faster than *meta* substitution.

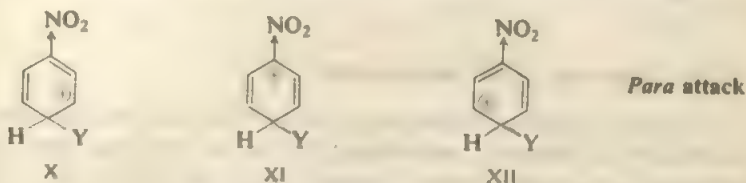
In the same way, it can be seen that attack at an *ortho* position (VII–IX) also



yields a more stable carbocation, through contribution from IX, than attack at a *meta* position.

In toluene, *ortho,para* substitution is thus faster than *meta* substitution because electron release by  $-\text{CH}_3$  is more effective during attack at the positions *ortho* and *para* to it.

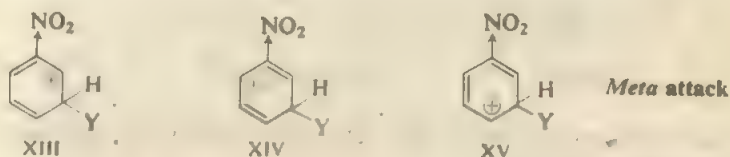
Next, let us compare the carbocations formed by attack at the *para* and *meta* positions of nitrobenzene, a compound that contains a deactivating group. Each of these is a hybrid of three structures, X-XII for *para* attack, XIII-XV for *meta* attack.



*Para attack*

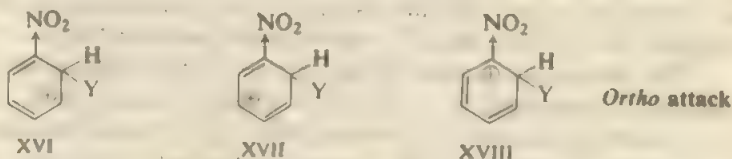
*Especially unstable:  
charge on carbon  
carrying substituent*

atom to which  $-\text{NO}_2$  is attached. Although  $-\text{NO}_2$  withdraws electrons from all positions, it does so most from the carbon atom nearest it, and hence this carbon atom, already positive, has little tendency to accommodate the positive charge of the carbocation. Structure XI is thus a particularly unstable one and does little to help stabilize the ion resulting from attack at the *para* position. The ion for *para* attack is virtually a hybrid of only two structures, X and XII; the positive charge is mainly restricted to only two carbon atoms. It is less stable than the ion resulting from attack at a *meta* position, which is a hybrid of three structures, and in which the positive charge is accommodated by three carbon atoms. *Para* substitution, therefore, occurs more slowly than *meta* substitution.



*Meta attack*

In the same way it can be seen that attack at an *ortho* position (XVI-XVIII) yields a less stable carbocation, because of the instability of XVIII, than attack at a *meta* position.



*Ortho attack*

*Especially unstable:  
charge on carbon  
carrying substituent*

In nitrobenzene, *ortho,para* substitution is thus slower than *meta* substitution

because electron withdrawal by  $-\text{NO}_2$  is more effective during attack at the positions *ortho* and *para* to it.

Thus we see that both *ortho,para* orientation by activating groups and *meta* orientation by deactivating groups follow logically from the structure of the intermediate carbocation. The charge of the carbocation is strongest at the positions *ortho* and *para* to the point of attack, and hence a group attached to one of these positions can exert the strongest effect, whether activating or deactivating.

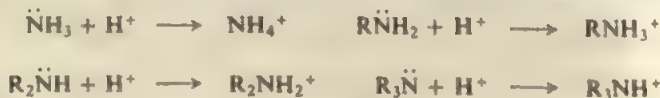
The unusual behavior of the halogens, which direct *ortho* and *para* although deactivating, results from a combination of two opposing factors, and will be taken up in Sec. 15.19.

### 15.18 Electron release via resonance

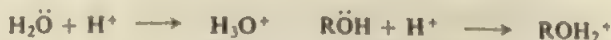
We have seen that a substituent group affects both reactivity and orientation in electrophilic aromatic substitution by its tendency to release or withdraw electrons. So far, we have considered electron release and electron withdrawal only as inductive effects, that is, as effects due to the electronegativity of the group concerned.

But certain groups ( $-\text{NH}_2$  and  $-\text{OH}$ , and their derivatives) act as powerful activators toward electrophilic aromatic substitution, even though they contain electronegative atoms and can be shown in other ways to have electron-withdrawing inductive effects. If our approach to the problem is correct, these groups must release electrons in some other way than through their inductive effects; they are believed to do this by a resonance effect. But before we discuss this, let us review a little of what we know about nitrogen and oxygen.

Although electronegative, the nitrogen of the  $-\text{NH}_2$  group is basic and tends to share its last pair of electrons and acquire a positive charge. Just as ammonia accepts a hydrogen ion to form the ammonium ( $\text{NH}_4^+$ ) ion, so organic compounds related to ammonia accept hydrogen ions to form substituted ammonium ions.



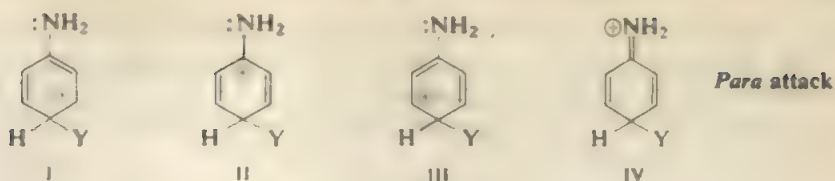
The  $-\text{OH}$  group shows similar but weaker basicity; we are already familiar with oxonium ions,  $\text{ROH}_2^+$ .



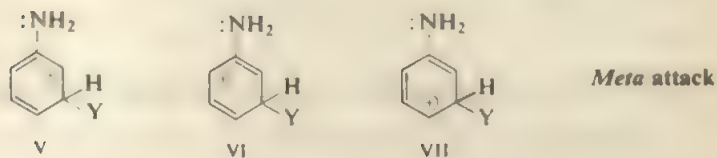
The effects of  $-\text{NH}_2$  and  $-\text{OH}$  on electrophilic aromatic substitution can be accounted for by assuming that nitrogen and oxygen can share more than a pair of electrons with the ring and can accommodate a positive charge.

The carbocation formed by attack *para* to the  $-\text{NH}_2$  group of aniline, for example, is considered to be a hybrid not only of structures I, II, and III, with positive charges located on carbons of the ring, but also of structure IV in which the positive charge is carried by nitrogen. Structure IV is especially stable, since in it every atom (except hydrogen, of course) has a complete octet of electrons. This carbocation is much more stable than the one obtained by attack on benzene itself, or the one obtained (V-VII) from attack *meta* to the  $-\text{NH}_2$  group of aniline; in neither of these cases is a structure like IV possible. (Compare, for example, the



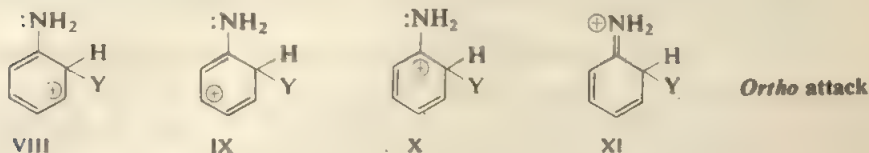


*Especially stable:  
every atom has octet*



stabilities of the ions  $\text{NH}_4^+$  and  $\text{CH}_3^+$ . Here it is not a matter of which atom, nitrogen or carbon, can better accommodate a positive charge; it is a matter of which atom has a complete octet of electrons.)

Examination of the corresponding structures (VIII–XI) shows that *ortho* attack is much like *para* attack:



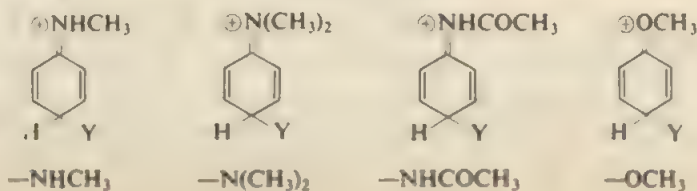
*Especially stable:  
every atom has octet*

Thus substitution in aniline occurs faster than substitution in benzene, and occurs predominantly at the positions *ortho* and *para* to  $-\text{NH}_2$ .

In the same way activation and *ortho,para* orientation by the  $-\text{OH}$  group is accounted for by contribution of structures like XII and XIII, in which every atom has a complete octet of electrons:



The similar effects of the derivatives of  $-\text{NH}_2$  and  $-\text{OH}$  are accounted for by similar structures (shown only for *para* attack):



The tendency of oxygen and nitrogen in groups like these to share more than a pair of electrons with an aromatic ring is shown in a number of other ways, which will be discussed later (Sec. 23.3 and Sec. 24.9).

Much of what has just been said should sound familiar. In Sec. 9.15 we saw how the filled  $p$  orbital of an oxygen atom can overlap the empty  $p$  orbital of an adjacent electron-deficient carbon, and thus provide it with the electrons it needs. Basically the same thing is involved here, except that through overlap with the conjugated  $\pi$  system of the benzenonium ring an element like oxygen can provide electrons to more remote electron-deficient carbons.

### 15.19 Effect of halogen on electrophilic aromatic substitution

Halogens are unusual in their effect on electrophilic aromatic substitution: they are deactivating yet *ortho,para*-directing. Deactivation is characteristic of electron withdrawal, whereas *ortho,para* orientation is characteristic of electron release. Can halogen both withdraw and release electrons?

The answer is yes. Halogen withdraws electrons through its inductive effect, and releases electrons through its resonance effect. So, presumably, can the  $-\text{NH}_2$  and  $-\text{OH}$  groups, but there the much stronger resonance effect greatly outweighs the other. For halogen, the two effects are more evenly balanced, and we observe the operation of both.

Let us first consider **reactivity**. Electrophilic attack on benzene yields carbo-

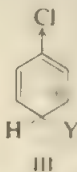


II

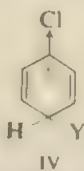
Cl withdraws electrons:  
destabilizes carbocation,  
deactivates ring

cation I, attack on chlorobenzene yields carbocation II. The electron-withdrawing inductive effect of chlorine intensifies the positive charge in carbocation II, makes the ion less stable, and causes a slower reaction.

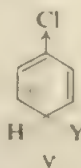
Next, to understand **orientation**, let us compare the structures of the carbocations formed by attack at the *para* and *meta* positions of chlorobenzene. Each of



III



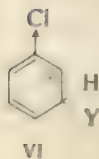
IV



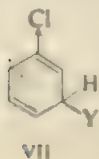
V

*Para* attack

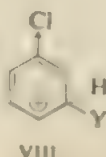
*Especially unstable:*  
charge on carbon  
bearing substituent



VI



VII

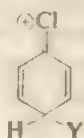


VIII

*Meta* attack

these is a hybrid of three structures, III-V for *para*, VI-VIII for *meta*. In one of these six structures, IV, the positive charge is located on the carbon atom to which chlorine is attached. Through its inductive effect chlorine withdraws electrons most from the carbon to which it is joined, and thus makes structure IV especially unstable. As before, we expect IV to make little contribution to the hybrid, which should therefore be less stable than the hybrid ion resulting from attack at the *meta* positions. If only the inductive effect were involved, then, we would expect not only deactivation but also *meta* orientation.

But the existence of halonium ions (Sec. 8.18) has shown us that halogen can share more than a pair of electrons and can accommodate a positive charge. If we apply that idea to the present problem, what do we find? The ion resulting from *para* attack is a hybrid not only of structures III-V, but also of structure IX, in which chlorine bears a positive charge and is joined to the ring by a double bond.



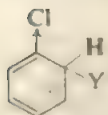
IX

*Para attack*

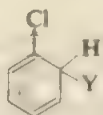
Comparatively stable:  
every atom has octet

This structure should be comparatively stable, since in it every atom (except hydrogen, of course) has a *complete octet of electrons*. (Structure IX is exactly analogous to those proposed to account for activation and *ortho,para* direction by  $-\text{NH}_2$  and  $-\text{OH}$ .) No such structure is possible for the ion resulting from *meta* attack. To the extent that structure IX contributes to the hybrid, it makes the ion resulting from *para* attack more stable than the ion resulting from *meta* attack. Although we could not have predicted the relative importance of the two factors—the instability of IV and the stabilization by IX—the result indicates that the contribution from IX is the more important.

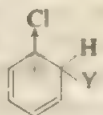
In the same way it can be seen that attack at an *ortho* position also yields an ion (X-XIII) that can be stabilized by accommodation of the positive charge by chlorine.



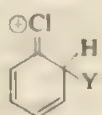
X



XI



XII



XIII

*Ortho attack*

Especially unstable:  
charge on carbon  
bearing substituent

Comparatively stable:  
every atom has octet

Through its inductive effect halogen tends to withdraw electrons and thus to destabilize the intermediate carbocation. This effect is felt for attack at all positions, but particularly for attack at the positions *ortho* and *para* to the halogen.

Through its resonance effect halogen tends to release electrons and thus to stabilize the intermediate carbocation. This electron release is effective only for attack at the positions *ortho* and *para* to the halogen.

The inductive effect is stronger than the resonance effect and causes net electron withdrawal—and hence deactivation—for attack at all positions. The resonance effect tends to oppose the inductive effect for attack at the *ortho* and *para* positions, and hence makes the deactivation less for *ortho,para* attack than for *meta*.

Reactivity is thus controlled by the stronger inductive effect, and orientation is controlled by the resonance effect, which, although weaker, seems to be more selective.

In electrophilic addition to vinyl halides (Sec. 9.15) we saw halogen playing the same dual role as a substituent, again in the formation of a carbocation. There, too, reactivity is controlled by the inductive effect, and orientation by the resonance effect.

Thus we find that a single structural concept—partial double-bond formation between halogen and carbon—helps to account for unusual chemical properties of such seemingly different compounds as aryl halides and vinyl halides. The structures involving doubly-bonded halogen, which probably make important contribution not only to benzenonium ions but to the parent aryl halides as well (Sec. 25.6), certainly do not seem to meet our usual standard of reasonableness (Sec. 9.10). The sheer weight of evidence forces us to accept the idea that certain carbon-halogen bonds possess double-bond character. If this idea at first appears strange to us, it simply shows how little, after all, we really know about molecular structure.

## 15.20 Relation to other carbocation reactions

In summary, we can say that both reactivity and orientation in electrophilic aromatic substitution are determined by the rates of formation of the intermediate carbocations concerned. These rates parallel the stabilities of the carbocations, which are determined by the electron-releasing or electron-withdrawing tendencies of the substituent groups.

A group may release or withdraw electrons by an inductive effect, a resonance effect, or both. These effects oppose each other only for the  $-\text{NH}_2$  and  $-\text{OH}$  groups (and their derivatives) and for the halogens,  $-\text{X}$ . For  $-\text{NH}_2$  and  $-\text{OH}$  the resonance effect is much the more important; for  $-\text{X}$  the effects are more evenly matched. It is because of this that the halogens occupy the unusual position of being deactivating groups but *ortho,para* directors.

We have accounted for the facts of electrophilic aromatic substitution in exactly the way that we accounted for reactivity in substitution by  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  and elimination by  $\text{E}1$ , for the relative ease of dehydration of alcohols, and for reactivity and orientation in electrophilic addition to alkenes: the more stable the carbocation, the faster it is formed; the faster the carbocation is formed, the faster the reaction goes.

In all this we have estimated the stability of carbocations on the same basis: the dispersal or concentration of the charge due to electron release or electron withdrawal by the substituent groups. As we shall see, this approach, which has worked so well for these reactions in which a positive charge develops, works equally well for nucleophilic aromatic substitution (Sec. 25.9), in which a negative charge develops. Finally, we shall find that this approach will help us to understand acidity or basicity of such compounds as carboxylic acids, sulfonic acids, amines, and phenols.



## PROBLEMS

1. Give structures and names of the principal products expected from the ring monobromination of each of the following compounds. In each case, tell whether bromination will occur faster or slower than with benzene itself

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) acetanilide ( $C_6H_5NHCOCH_3$ )           | (g) phenetole ( $C_6H_5OC_2H_5$ )          |
| (b) iodobenzene                                | (h) diphenylmethane ( $C_6H_5CH_2C_6H_5$ ) |
| (c) <i>sec</i> -butylbenzene                   | (i) benzonitrile ( $C_6H_5CN$ )            |
| (d) <i>N</i> -methylaniline ( $C_6H_5NHCH_3$ ) | (j) benzonitrile ( $C_6H_5CF_3$ )          |
| (e) ethyl benzoate ( $C_6H_5COOC_2H_5$ )       | (k) biphenyl ( $C_6H_5-C_6H_5$ )           |
| (f) acetophenone ( $C_6H_5COCH_3$ )            |  |

2. Give structures and names of the principal organic products expected from mononitration of:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) <i>o</i> -nitrotoluene                                   | (g) <i>p</i> -cresol  |
| (b) <i>m</i> -dibromobenzene                                 | (h) <i>m</i> -nitrotoluene                                  |
| (c) <i>p</i> -nitroacetanilide<br>( $p-O_2NC_6H_4NHCOCH_3$ ) | (i) <i>p</i> -xylene ( $p-C_6H_4(CH_3)_2$ )                 |
| (d) <i>m</i> -dinitrobenzene                                 | (j) terephthalic acid ( $p-C_6H_4(COOH)_2$ )                |
| (e) <i>m</i> -cresol ( $m-CH_3C_6H_4OH$ )                    | (k) anilinium hydrogen sulfate<br>( $C_6H_5NH_3^+HSO_4^-$ ) |
| (f) <i>o</i> -cresol   |   |

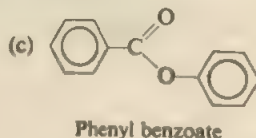
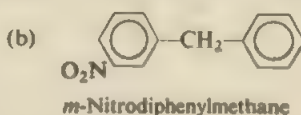
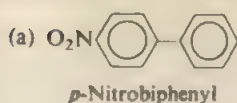
3. Give structures and names of the principal organic products expected from the monosulfonation of:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) cyclohexylbenzene                   | (g) <i>o</i> -fluoroanisole                                  |
| (b) nitrobenzene                        | (h) <i>o</i> -nitroacetanilide<br>( $o-O_2NC_6H_4NHCOCH_3$ ) |
| (c) anisole ( $C_6H_5OCH_3$ )           | (i) <i>o</i> -xylene   |
| (d) benzenesulfonic acid                | (j) <i>m</i> -xylene   |
| (e) salicylaldehyde ( $o-HOC_6H_4CHO$ ) | (k) <i>p</i> -xylene   |
| (f) <i>m</i> -nitrophenol               |  |

4. Arrange the following in order of reactivity toward ring nitration, listing by structure the most reactive at the top, the least reactive at the bottom.

- (a) benzene, mesitylene ( $1,3,5-C_6H_3(CH_3)_3$ ), toluene, *m*-xylene, *p*-xylene  
 (b) benzene, bromobenzene, nitrobenzene, toluene  
 (c) acetanilide ( $C_6H_5NHCOCH_3$ ), acetophenone ( $C_6H_5COCH_3$ ), aniline, benzene  
 (d) terephthalic acid, toluene, *p*-toluic acid ( $p-CH_3C_6H_4COOH$ ), *p*-xylene  
 (e) chlorobenzene, *p*-chloronitrobenzene, 2,4-dinitrochlorobenzene  
 (f) 2,4-dinitrochlorobenzene, 2,4-dinitrophenol  
 (g) *m*-dinitrobenzene, 2,4-dinitrotoluene

5. For each of the following compounds, indicate which ring you would expect to be attacked in nitration, and give structures of the principal products.



6. Arrange the compounds of each set in order of reactivity toward electrophilic substitution. Indicate in each set which would yield the highest percentage of *meta* isomer, and which would yield the lowest.

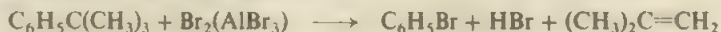
- (a)  $C_6H_5N(CH_3)_3^+$ ,  $C_6H_5CH_2N(CH_3)_3^+$ ,  $C_6H_5CH_2CH_2N(CH_3)_3^+$ ,  
 $C_6H_5CH_2CH_2CH_2N(CH_3)_3^+$   
 (b)  $C_6H_5NO_2$ ,  $C_6H_5CH_2NO_2$ ,  $C_6H_5CH_2CH_2NO_2$   
 (c)  $C_6H_5CH_3$ ,  $C_6H_5CH_2COOC_2H_5$ ,  $C_6H_5CH(COOC_2H_5)_2$ ,  $C_6H_5C(COOC_2H_5)_3$

7. There is evidence that the phenyl group,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5-$ , has an electron-withdrawing inductive effect. Yet each ring of biphenyl,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , is more reactive than benzene toward electrophilic substitution, and the chief products are *ortho* and *para* isomers. Show how reactivity and orientation can be accounted for on the basis of resonance.

8. There is evidence that the reaction between  $\text{HNO}_3$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  to generate  $^+\text{NO}_2$  (which we have summarized in one equation, Sec. 15.8) actually involves three steps, the second of which is the slowest one and the one that actually produces  $^+\text{NO}_2$ . Can you suggest a reasonable sequence of reactions? (*Hint*: See Sec. 6.32.)

9. Treatment of *sulfanilic acid* ( $p\text{-H}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ ) with three moles of bromine yields 2,4,6-tribromoaniline. Treatment of 4-hydroxy-1,3-benzenedisulfonic acid with nitric acid yields picric acid, 2,4,5-trinitrophenol. (a) Outline the most probable mechanism for the replacement of  $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$  by  $-\text{Br}$  and by  $-\text{NO}_2$ . (b) To what general class of organic reactions do those reactions belong?

10. Using only individual steps with which you are already familiar, outline a likely mechanism for the following reaction.



11. In light of what you have learned in this chapter, predict the major products of each of the following reactions.



(c) What is the function of  $\text{AlBr}_3$  in (b)? Why is it needed here?

12. You are trying to find out whether or not there is an isotope effect in a particular kind of substitution in which the electrophile  $\text{Y}$  replaces a hydrogen of an aromatic ring. In each of the following cases, tell what you would *do*, and what you would *expect to observe* if there were an isotope effect. (You can quantitatively analyze mixtures of isomers. Your mass spectrometer will tell you what percentage of the hydrogen in a compound is deuterium, but not the location of deuterium in a molecule.)

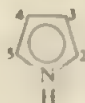
(a)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$  and  $\text{C}_6\text{D}_6$  are allowed to react separately but under identical conditions.

(b) A 50:50 mixture of  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$  and  $\text{C}_6\text{D}_6$  is allowed to react with a limited amount of the reagent.

(c) Anisole and anisole-4-*d* are allowed to react separately. (Both your watch and your mass spectrometer are under repair when this particular experiment is carried out.)

(d) Benzene-1,3,5-*d*<sub>3</sub> (1,3,5-trideuteriobenzene) is allowed to react.

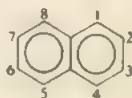
13. In Problem 10 (p. 591) you accounted for the aromaticity of the heterocyclic compound *pyrrole*.



Pyrrole

Among its aromatic properties is the tendency to undergo electrophilic aromatic substitution, which it does extremely readily (like the most reactive of benzene derivatives) and predominantly at the 2-position. Drawing all pertinent resonance structures account in detail for (a) its high reactivity and (b) the orientation of substitution (*Hint*: See Sec. 15.18.)

14. In Problem 13 (p. 592) you accounted for the aromaticity of the polynuclear hydrocarbon *naphthalene*. This compound readily undergoes electrophilic aromatic substitution and, in the case of bromination and nitration, predominantly at the 1-position. How do you account for the observed orientation? (*Hint*: Draw all pertinent resonance structures, and examine them closely.)



Naphthalene

tution and, in the case of bromination and nitration, predominantly at the 1-position. How do you account for the observed orientation? (*Hint*: Draw all pertinent resonance structures, and examine them closely.)

15. Outline all steps in the laboratory synthesis of the following compounds from benzene and/or toluene, using any needed aliphatic or inorganic reagents. (Review the general instructions on p. 265. Assume that a pure *para* isomer can be separated from an *ortho,para* mixture.)

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| (a) <i>p</i> -nitrotoluene              | (h) 1,3,5-trinitrobenzene       |
| (b) <i>p</i> -bromonitrobenzene         | (i) 2-bromo-4-nitrotoluene      |
| (c) <i>p</i> -dichlorobenzene           | (j) 2-bromo-4-nitrobenzoic acid |
| (d) <i>m</i> -bromobenzenesulfonic acid | (k) 4-bromo-3-nitrobenzoic acid |
| (e) <i>p</i> -bromobenzenesulfonic acid | (l) 3,5-dinitrobenzoic acid     |
| (f) <i>p</i> -bromobenzoic acid         | (m) 4-nitro-1,2-dibromobenzene  |
| (g) <i>m</i> -bromobenzoic acid         | (n) 2-nitro-1,4-dichlorobenzene |

16. Outline all steps in the following laboratory syntheses, using any needed aliphatic or inorganic reagents. (Follow the other instructions in Problem 15.)

- 4-nitro-2,6-dibromoanisole from anisole ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{OCH}_3$ )
- 4-bromo-2-nitrobenzoic acid from *o*-nitrotoluene
- 2,4,6-tribromoaniline from aniline
- 2,4-dinitroacetanilide from acetanilide ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHCOCH}_3$ )
- 5-nitroisophthalic acid from *m*-xylene
- 4-nitroisophthalic acid from *m*-xylene
- 2-nitroterephthalic acid from *p*-xylene (two ways)
- Which way in (g) is preferable? Why?

## Aromatic-Aliphatic Compounds

### *Arenes and Their Derivatives*

#### 16.1 The aromatic ring as a substituent

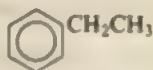
In the two preceding chapters we looked at the aromatic ring—in benzene, mostly, and its simple derivatives—as the site of reaction: typically, electrophilic substitution. We saw how this reaction takes place, and how reactivity and orientation are affected by substituents attached to the ring.

Now, as we did for the carbon-carbon double bond, let us change our point of view; let us look at the aromatic ring, not as a functional group, but as a *substituent*. Like the double bond, we shall find, the aromatic ring exerts powerful effects. These effects resemble in many ways those of the double bond, and for a very good reason: they, too, are the result of *conjugation*. To the aromatic ring there can be attached any one—or two, or three—of dozens of different substituents; these *modify* the effects of the ring, and make substituted phenyl groups the most widely used of probes into the electronic demands of organic reactions.

Let us return to each of the families of compounds and types of reactions that we have already discussed, and look at the effects exerted by the aromatic ring. Let us begin with hydrocarbons.

#### 16.2 Aromatic-aliphatic hydrocarbons: arenes

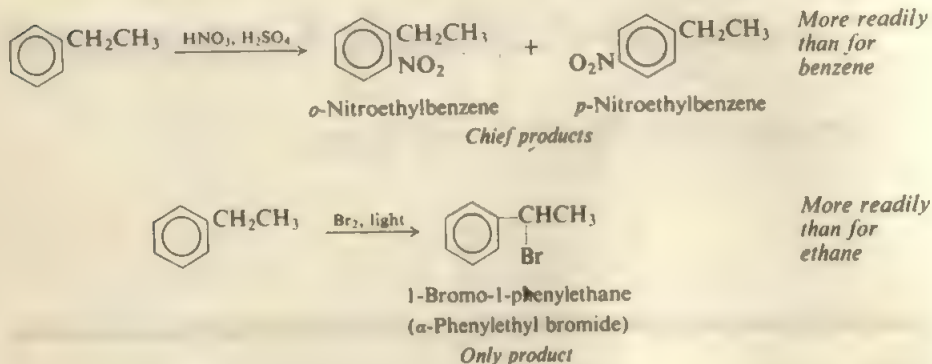
From our study so far, we know what kind of chemical properties to expect of an aliphatic hydrocarbon, that is, of an alkane, alkene, or alkyne. We know what kind of chemical behavior to expect of the parent aromatic hydrocarbon, benzene. Many important hydrocarbons are not just aliphatic or just aromatic, however, but contain both aliphatic and aromatic units; hydrocarbons of this kind are known collectively as **arenes**. *Ethylbenzene*, for example, contains a benzene ring and an aliphatic side chain.



Ethylbenzene



What kind of chemical properties might we expect of one of these mixed aromatic-aliphatic hydrocarbons? First, we might expect it to show *two* sets of chemical properties. The ring of ethylbenzene should undergo the electrophilic



substitution characteristics of benzene, and the side chain should undergo the free-radical substitution characteristic of ethane. Second, the properties of each portion of the molecule should be modified by the presence of the other portion. The ethyl group should modify the aromatic properties of the ring, and the ring should modify the aliphatic properties of the side chain.

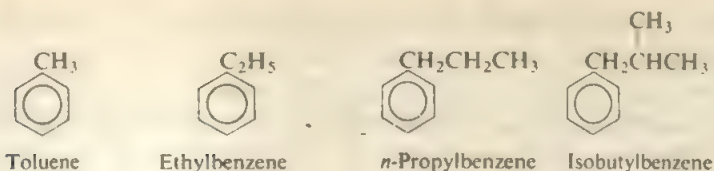
These predictions are correct. Treatment of ethylbenzene with nitric acid and sulfuric acid, for instance, introduces a nitro group into the ring; treatment with bromine in the presence of light introduces a bromine atom into the side chain. But because of the ethyl group, nitration takes place more readily than with benzene itself, and occurs chiefly at the positions *ortho* and *para* to the ethyl group; and because of the ring, bromination takes place more readily than with ethane, and occurs exclusively on the carbon nearer the ring. Thus *each portion of the molecule affects the reactivity of the other portion and determines the orientation of attack.*

Of the arenes, we shall examine first those which, like ethylbenzene, are made up of aromatic and alkane units, the *alkylbenzenes*. We have already (Chap. 15) discussed the effects of alkyl groups on reactions that, like nitration, take place in the aromatic ring. Now we shall concentrate on the other aspect of this structural interplay, and discuss the effects of the aromatic ring on reactions that take place in the side chain.

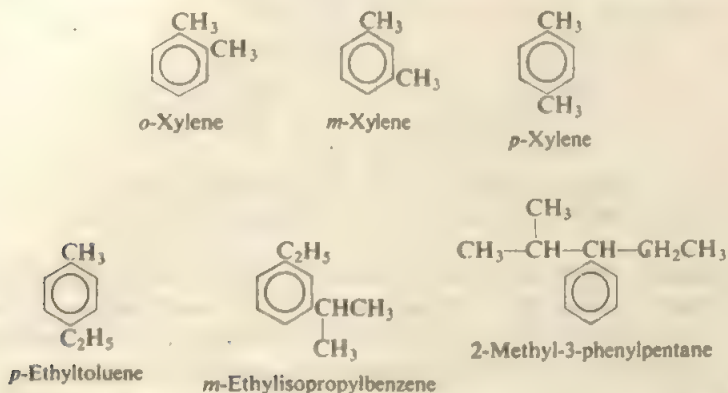
The reactions of alkylbenzenes will lead us to derivatives of alkylbenzenes—halides, alcohols, and related compounds—and we shall then discuss their chemistry. This, in turn, will lead us to aromatic-alkene compounds (*alkenylbenzenes*) and aromatic-alkyne compounds (*alkynylbenzenes*). In all this, we shall be dealing with what is basically familiar chemistry—free-radical substitution, nucleophilic substitution, elimination, electrophilic and free-radical addition—and our main concern will be to see how this is affected by the presence of the aromatic ring.

### 16.3 Structure and nomenclature of arenes and their derivatives

The simplest of the alkylbenzenes, methylbenzene, is given the special name of **toluene**. Compounds containing longer side chains are named by prefixing the name of the alkyl group to the word *-benzene*, as, for example, in *ethylbenzene*, *n-propylbenzene*, and *isobutylbenzene*.



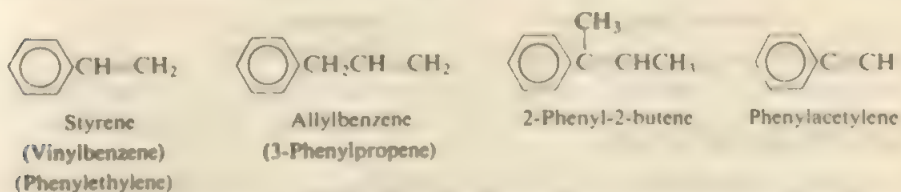
The simplest of the dialkylbenzenes, the dimethylbenzenes, are given the special names of **xylene**s; we have, then, *o*-xylene, *m*-xylene, and *p*-xylene. Dialkylbenzenes containing one methyl group are named as derivatives of toluene, while others are named by prefixing the names of both alkyl groups to the word *-benzene*. A compound containing a very complicated side chain might be named as a



*phenylalkane* ( $C_6H_5 =$  **phenyl**). Compounds containing more than one benzene ring are nearly always named as derivatives of alkanes.



The simplest alkenylbenzene has the special name **styrene**. Others are generally named as substituted alkenes, occasionally as substituted benzenes. Alkynylbenzenes are named as substituted alkynes.

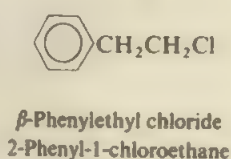
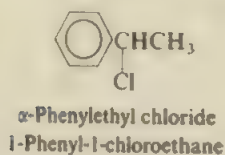
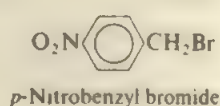
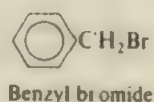
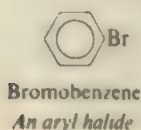


Organic halides derived from arenes are of two kinds. If the halogen is attached directly to the aromatic ring, the compound is an *aryl halide*, its general formula is  $ArX$ , where  $Ar$  = phenyl or substituted phenyl. Aryl halides differ so much from the alkyl halides in their preparation and properties that they will be taken up in a **separate chapter** (Chap. 25).

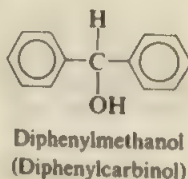
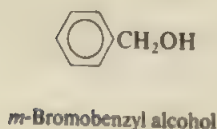
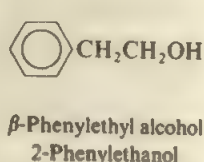
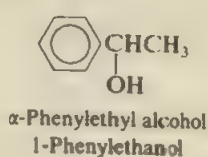
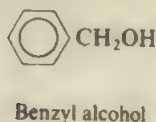
If the halogen is not attached directly to the ring, the compound is an *aralkyl halide*, an alkyl halide that happens to contain an aromatic group, its chemistry is

essentially the chemistry of other alkyl halides, but modified by the presence of the aryl substituent. It is this kind that we shall take up in this chapter.

An aryl or aralkyl halide is named according to the pattern we have seen before for halogen compounds (Secs. 3.10, 6.4, and 14.11): we name the parent compound, and then prefix this with *chloro-*, *bromo-*, etc. Certain aralkyl halides are commonly named as substituted alkyl halides. The  $C_6H_5CH_2-$  group is given the special name of **benzyl**.



In a similar way, hydroxy compounds derived from arenes are of two kinds. If  $-OH$  is attached directly to the aromatic ring, the compound is a *phenol*, with special properties all its own (Chap. 24). If  $-OH$  is not attached directly to the ring, the compound is an aryl-substituted *alcohol*, and has the properties we expect of an alcohol.



## 16.4 Physical properties

As compounds of low polarity, the alkylbenzenes possess physical properties that are essentially the same as those of the hydrocarbons we have already studied. They are insoluble in water, but quite soluble in non-polar solvents like ether, carbon tetrachloride, or ligroin. They are almost always less dense than water. As we can see from Table 16.1, boiling points rise with increasing molecular weight, the boiling point increment being the usual  $20-30^\circ$  for each carbon atom.

Since melting points depend not only on molecular weight but also on molecular shape, their relationship to structure is a very complicated one. One important general relationship does exist, however, between melting point and structure



Table 16.1 AROMATIC-ALIPHATIC HYDROCARBONS

Name	Formula	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Density (20°C)
Benzene	$C_6H_6$	5.5	80	0.879
Toluene	$C_6H_5CH_3$	- 95	111	.866
<i>o</i> -Xylene	$1,2-C_6H_4(CH_3)_2$	- 25	144	.880
<i>m</i> -Xylene	$1,3-C_6H_4(CH_3)_2$	- 48	139	.864
<i>p</i> -Xylene	$1,4-C_6H_4(CH_3)_2$	13	138	.861
Hemimellitene	$1,2,3-C_6H_3(CH_3)_3$	- 25	176	.895
Pseudocumene	$1,2,4-C_6H_3(CH_3)_3$	- 44	169	.876
Mesitylene	$1,3,5-C_6H_3(CH_3)_3$	- 45	165	.864
Prehnitene	$1,2,3,4-C_6H_2(CH_3)_4$	- 6.5	205	.902
Isodurene	$1,2,3,5-C_6H_2(CH_3)_4$	- 24	197	
Durene	$1,2,4,5-C_6H_2(CH_3)_4$	80	195	
Pentamethylbenzene	$C_6H(CH_3)_5$	53	231	
Hexamethylbenzene	$C_6(CH_3)_6$	165	264	
Ethylbenzene	$C_6H_5C_2H_5$	- 95	136	.867
<i>n</i> -Propylbenzene	$C_6H_5CH_2CH_2CH_3$	- 99	159	.862
Cumene	$C_6H_5CH(CH_3)_2$	- 96	152	.862
<i>n</i> -Butylbenzene	$C_6H_5(CH_2)_3CH_3$	- 81	183	.860
Isobutylbenzene	$C_6H_5CH_2CH(CH_3)_2$		171	.867
<i>sec</i> -Butylbenzene	$C_6H_5CH(CH_3)C_2H_5$	- 83	173.5	.864
<i>tert</i> -Butylbenzene	$C_6H_5C(CH_3)_3$	- 58	169	.867
<i>p</i> -Cymene	$1,4-CH_3C_6H_4CH(CH_3)_2$	- 70	177	.857
Biphenyl	$C_6H_5C_6H_5$	70	255	
Diphenylmethane	$C_6H_5CH_2C_6H_5$	26	263	
Triphenylmethane	$(C_6H_5)_3CH$	93	360	
1,2-Diphenylethane	$C_6H_5CH_2CH_2C_6H_5$	52	284	
Styrene	$C_6H_5CH=CH_2$	- 31	145	.907
<i>trans</i> -Stilbene	<i>trans</i> - $C_6H_5CH=CHC_6H_5$	124	307	
<i>cis</i> -Stilbene	<i>cis</i> - $C_6H_5CH=CHC_6H_5$	6		
<i>unsym</i> -Diphenylethylene	$(C_6H_5)_2C=CH_2$	9	277	1.02
Triphenylethylene	$(C_6H_5)_2C=CHC_6H_5$	73		
Tetraphenylethylene	$(C_6H_5)_2C=C(C_6H_5)_2$	227	425	
Phenylacetylene	$C_6H_5C\equiv CH$	- 45	142	0.930
Diphenylacetylene	$C_6H_5C\equiv CC_6H_5$	62.5	300	

of aromatic compounds: among isomeric disubstituted benzenes, the *para* isomer generally melts considerably higher than the other two. The xylenes, for example, boil within six degrees of one another; yet they differ widely in melting point, the *o*- and *m*-isomers melting at  $-25^\circ$  and  $-48^\circ$ , and the *p*-isomer melting at  $+13^\circ$ . Since dissolution, like melting, involves overcoming the intermolecular forces of the crystal, it is not surprising to find that generally the *para* isomer is also the least soluble in a given solvent.

The higher melting point and lower solubility of a *para* isomer is only a special example of the general effect of molecular symmetry on intracrystalline forces. The more symmetrical a compound, the better it fits into a crystal lattice and hence the higher the melting point and the lower the solubility. *Para* isomers are simply the most symmetrical of disubstituted benzenes. We can see (Table 16.1) that 1,2,4,5-tetramethylbenzene melts  $85^\circ$  to  $100^\circ$  higher than the less



symmetrical 1,2,3,5- and 1,2,3,4-isomers. A particularly striking example of the effect of symmetry on melting point is that of benzene and toluene. The introduction of a single methyl group into the extremely symmetrical benzene molecule lowers the melting point from  $5^{\circ}$  to  $-95^{\circ}$ .

The effects on physical properties of attaching a halogen or  $-\text{OH}$  to an arene molecule is just what we would expect from our discussion of alkyl halides (Sec. 6.6) and alcohols (Sec. 10.3).

## 16.5 Industrial source of alkylbenzenes

It would be hard to exaggerate the importance to the chemical industry and to our entire economy of the large-scale production of benzene and the alkylbenzenes. Just as the alkanes obtained from petroleum are ultimately the source of nearly all our aliphatic compounds, so benzene and the alkylbenzenes are ultimately the source of nearly all our aromatic compounds. When chemists wish to make a complicated aromatic compound, whether in the laboratory or in industry, they do not make a benzene ring; they take a simpler compound already containing a benzene ring and then add to it, piece by piece, until they have built the structure they want.

Just where do the enormous quantities of simple aromatic compounds come from? There are two large reservoirs of organic material, **coal** and **petroleum**, and aromatic compounds are obtained from both. Aromatic compounds are separated as such from coal tar, and are synthesized from the alkanes of petroleum.

By far the larger portion of coal that is mined today is converted into coke, which is needed for the smelting of iron ore to steel. When coal is heated in the absence of air, it is partly broken down into simpler, volatile compounds which are driven out; the residue is *coke*. The volatile materials consist of *coal gas* and a liquid known as **coal tar**.

From coal tar by distillation there are obtained a number of aromatic compounds. Upon coking, a ton of soft coal may yield about 120 pounds of coal tar. From this 120 pounds the following aromatic compounds can be separated: benzene, 2 pounds; toluene, 0.5 pound; xylenes, 0.1 pound; phenol, 0.5 pound; cresols, 2 pounds; naphthalene, 5 pounds. Two pounds of benzene from a ton of coal does not represent a very high percentage yield, yet so much coal is coked every year that the annual production of benzene from coal tar is very large.

But still larger quantities of aromatic hydrocarbons are needed, and these are synthesized from alkanes through the process of **catalytic reforming** (Sec. 5.3). This can bring about not only *dehydrogenation*, as in the formation of toluene from methylcyclohexane, but also *cyclization* and *isomerization*, as in the formation of toluene from *n*-heptane or 1,2-dimethylcyclopentane. In an analogous way, benzene is obtained from cyclohexane and methylcyclopentane, as well as from the *hydrodealkylation* of toluene.

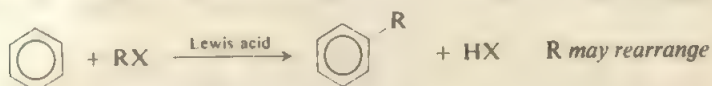
Today, petroleum is the *chief* source of the enormous quantities of benzene, toluene, and the xylenes required for chemicals and fuels. Half of the toluene and xylenes are utilized in high-test gasoline where, in a sense, they replace the aliphatic compounds inferior as fuels from which they were made (A considerable fraction even of naphthalene, the major component of coal tar distillate, is now being produced from petroleum hydrocarbons.)

## 16.6 Preparation of alkylbenzenes

Although a number of the simpler alkylbenzenes are available from industrial sources, the more complicated compounds must be synthesized in one of the ways outlined below.

### PREPARATION OF ALKYL BENZENES

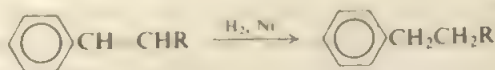
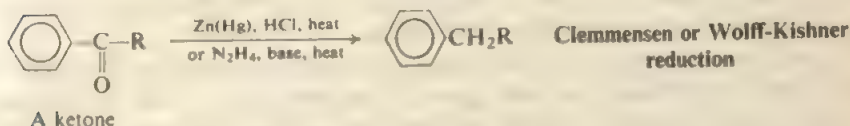
1. Attachment of alkyl groups: Friedel-Crafts alkylation. Discussed in Secs. 16.7 16.9.



Lewis acid:  $\text{AlCl}_3$ ,  $\text{BF}_3$ ,  $\text{HF}$ , etc.

$\text{Ar}-\text{X}$  cannot be used in place of  $\text{R}-\text{X}$

2. Conversion of side chain. Discussed in Sec. 18.10.



**Friedel-Crafts alkylation** is extremely useful since it permits the direct attachment of an alkyl group to the aromatic ring. There are, however, a number of limitations to its use (Sec. 16.9), including the fact that the alkyl group that becomes attached to the ring is not always the same as the alkyl group of the parent halide; this **rearrangement** of the alkyl group is discussed in Sec. 16.8.

There are frequently available aromatic compounds containing aliphatic side chains that are not simple alkyl groups. An alkylbenzene can be prepared from one of these compounds by converting the side chain into an alkyl group. Although there is an aromatic ring in the molecule, this conversion is essentially the preparation of an alkane from some other aliphatic compound. The methods used are those that we have already learned for the preparation of alkanes: hydrogenation of a carbon-carbon double bond in a side chain, for example. Many problems of the alkylbenzenes are solved by a consideration of simple alkane chemistry.

The most important side-chain conversion involves **reduction of ketones** either by amalgamated zinc and  $\text{HCl}$  (*Clemmensen reduction*) or by hydrazine and strong base (*Wolff-Kishner reduction*). This method is important because the necessary ketones are readily available through a modification of the Friedel-Crafts reaction that involves acid chlorides (see Sec. 18.5). Unlike alkylation by the Friedel-Crafts reaction, this method does not involve rearrangement.

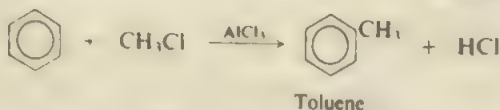
Much of the importance of alkylbenzenes lies in a fact that will become apparent to us as we go through this chapter: unlike alkanes, alkylbenzenes are

extremely useful precursors of the compounds that are formally their derivatives—halides, alcohols, and related compounds.

**Problem 16.1** How might you prepare ethylbenzene from: (a) benzene and ethyl alcohol; (b) acetophenone,  $C_6H_5COCH_3$ ; (c) styrene,  $C_6H_5CH=CH_2$ ; (d)  $\alpha$ -phenylethyl alcohol,  $C_6H_5CHOHCH_3$ ; and (e)  $\beta$ -phenylethyl chloride,  $C_6H_5CH_2CH_2Cl$ ?

## 16.7 Friedel-Crafts alkylation

If a small amount of anhydrous aluminum chloride is added to a mixture of benzene and methyl chloride, a vigorous reaction occurs, hydrogen chloride gas is



evolved, and toluene can be isolated from the reaction mixture. This is the simplest example of the reaction discovered in 1877 at the University of Paris by the French-American team of chemists, Charles Friedel and James Crafts. *Considered in its various modifications, the Friedel-Crafts reaction is by far the most important method for attaching alkyl side chains to aromatic rings.*

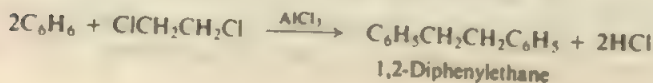
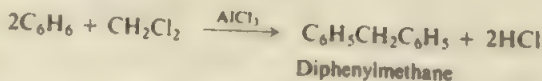
Each of the components of the simple example just given can be varied. The alkyl halide may contain an alkyl group more complicated than methyl, and a halogen atom other than chlorine; in some cases alcohols are used or—especially in industry—alkenes. Substituted alkyl halides, like benzyl chloride,  $C_6H_5CH_2Cl$ , also can be used. Because of the low reactivity of halogen attached to an aromatic ring (Sec. 25.5), aryl halides *cannot* be used in place of alkyl halides.

The aromatic ring to which the side chain becomes attached may be that of benzene itself, certain substituted benzenes (chiefly alkylbenzenes and halobenzenes), or more complicated aromatic ring systems like naphthalene and anthracene (Chap. 34).

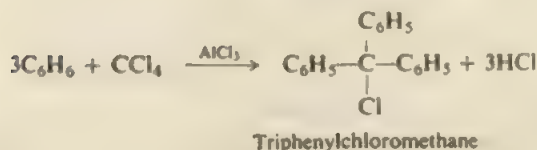
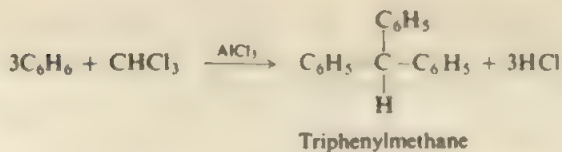
In place of aluminum chloride, other Lewis acids can be used, in particular  $BF_3$ ,  $HF$ , and phosphoric acid.

The reaction is carried out by simply mixing together the three components; usually the only problems are those of moderating the reaction by cooling and of trapping the hydrogen halide gas. Since the attachment of an alkyl side chain makes the ring more susceptible to further attack (Sec. 15.5), steps must be taken to limit substitution to *monoalkylation*. As in halogenation of alkanes (Sec. 2.8), this is accomplished by using an *excess* of the hydrocarbon. In this way an alkyl carbocation seeking an aromatic ring is more likely to encounter an unsubstituted ring than a substituted one. Frequently the aromatic compound does double duty, serving as solvent as well as reactant.

From polyhalogenated alkanes it is possible to prepare compounds containing more than one aromatic ring:



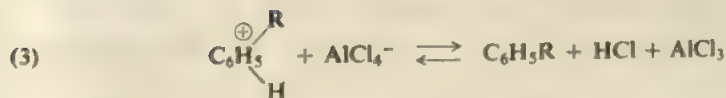
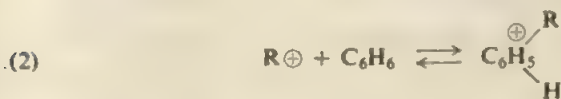
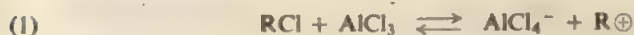




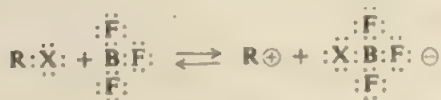
## 16.8 Mechanism of Friedel-Crafts alkylation

In Sec. 15.10 we said that two mechanisms are possible for Friedel-Crafts alkylation. Both involve electrophilic aromatic substitution, but they differ as to the nature of the electrophile.

One mechanism for Friedel-Crafts alkylation involves the following steps,



in which the electrophile is an alkyl cation. The function of the aluminum chloride is to generate this carbocation by abstracting the halogen from the alkyl halide. It is not surprising that other Lewis acids can function in the same way and thus take the place of aluminum chloride:

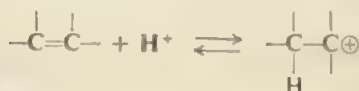


*Carbocations  
from alkyl  
halides*



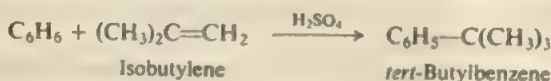
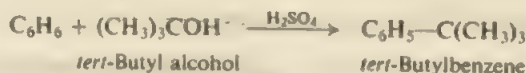


Judging from the mechanism just described, we might expect the benzene ring to be attacked by carbocations generated in other ways: by the action of acid on alcohols (Sec. 6.32) and on alkenes (Sec. 8.12).

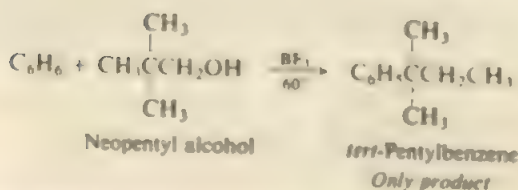
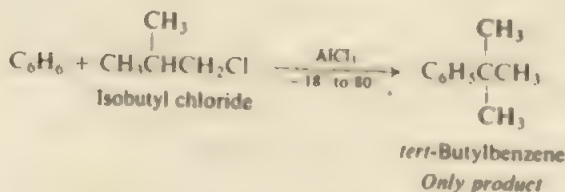
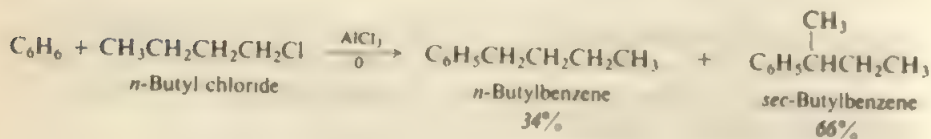
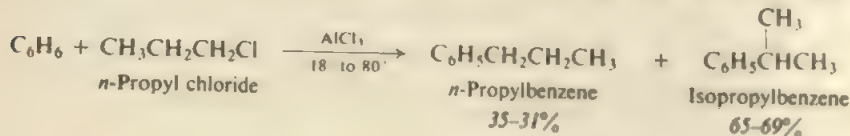


*Carbocations  
from alcohols  
and from  
alkenes*

This expectation is correct: alcohols and alkenes, in the presence of acids, alkylate aromatic rings in what we may consider to be a modification of the Friedel-Crafts reaction.



Also judging from the mechanism, we might expect Friedel-Crafts alkylation to be accompanied by the kind of rearrangement that is characteristic of carbocation reactions (Sec. 6.26). This expectation, too, is correct. As the following examples show, alkylbenzenes containing rearranged alkyl groups not only are formed but are sometimes the sole products. In each case, we see that the particular kind of



rearrangement corresponds to what we would expect if a less stable (1°) carbocation were to rearrange by a 1,2-shift to a more stable (2° or 3°) carbocation.

We can now make another addition to our list of carbocation reactions (Sec. 8.21). A carbocation may:

- combine with a negative ion or other basic molecule;
- rearrange to a more stable carbocation;
- eliminate a hydrogen ion to form an alkene;
- add to an alkene to form a larger carbocation;
- abstract a hydride ion from an alkane;
- alkylate an aromatic ring.

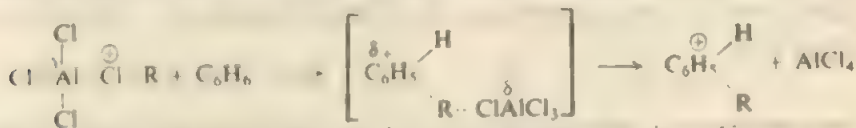
A carbocation formed by (b) or (d) can subsequently undergo any of the reactions.

In alkylation, as in its other reactions, the carbocation gains a pair of electrons to complete the octet of the electron-deficient carbon—this time from the  $\pi$  cloud of an aromatic ring.

**Problem 16.2** *tert*-Pentylbenzene is the major product of the reaction of benzene in the presence of  $\text{BF}_3$  with each of the following alcohols: (a) 2-methyl-1-butanol, (b) 3-methyl-2-butanol, (c) 3-methyl-1-butanol, and (d) neopentyl alcohol. Account for its formation in each case.

In some of the examples given above, we see that *part* of the product is made up of *unrearranged* alkylbenzenes. Must we conclude that part of the reaction does not go by way of carbocations? Not *necessarily*. Attack on an aromatic ring is probably one of the most difficult jobs a carbocation is called on to do; that is to say, toward carbocations an aromatic ring is a reagent of low reactivity and hence high selectivity. Although there may be present a higher concentration of the more stable, rearranged carbocations, the aromatic ring may tend to seek out the scarce unrearranged ions because of their higher reactivity. In some cases, it is quite possible that some of the carbocations react with the aromatic ring before they have time to rearrange; the same low stability that makes primary carbocations, for example, prone to rearrangement also makes them highly reactive.

On the other hand, there is additional evidence (of a kind we cannot go into here) that makes it very likely that there *is* a second mechanism for Friedel-Crafts alkylation. In this mechanism, the electrophile is not an alkyl cation but an acid-base complex of alkyl halide and Lewis acid, from which the alkyl group is transferred *in one step* from halogen to the aromatic ring.



This duality of mechanism does not reflect exceptional behavior, but is usual for electrophilic aromatic substitution. It also fits into a familiar pattern for nucleophilic aliphatic substitution (Secs. 6.14 and 6.30), which—*from the standpoint of the alkyl halide*—is the kind of reaction taking place. Furthermore, the particular halides (1° and methyl) which appear to react by this second, bimolecular mechanism are just the ones that would have been *expected* to do so.

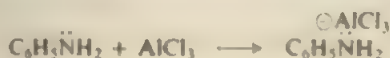
## 16.9 Limitations of Friedel-Crafts alkylation

We have encountered three limitations to the use of Friedel-Crafts alkylation (a) the danger of polysubstitution, (b) the possibility that the alkyl group will

rearrange, and (c) the fact that aryl halides cannot take the place of alkyl halides. Besides these, there are several other limitations.

(d) An aromatic ring less reactive than that of the halobenzenes does not undergo the Friedel-Crafts reaction, evidently the carbocation,  $R^+$ , is a less powerful electrophile than  $NO_2^+$  and the other electron-deficient reagents that bring about electrophilic aromatic substitution.

Next, (e) aromatic rings containing the  $NH_2$ ,  $NHR$ , or  $NR_2$  group do not undergo Friedel-Crafts alkylation, partly because the strongly basic nitrogen ties up the Lewis acid needed for ionization of the alkyl halide.



I

**Problem 16.3** Tying up of the acidic catalyst by the basic nitrogen is not the only factor that prevents alkylation, since even when excess catalyst is used, reaction does not occur. Looking at the structure of the complex (I) shown for aniline, can you suggest another factor? (*Hint.* See Sec. 15.16.)

Despite these numerous limitations, the Friedel-Crafts reaction, in its various modifications (for example, acylation, Sec. 18.5), is an extremely useful synthetic tool.

## 16.10 Reactions of alkylbenzenes

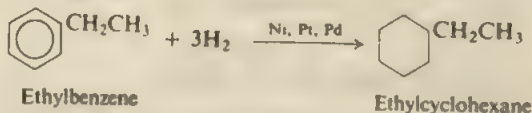
The most important reactions of the alkylbenzenes are outlined below, with toluene and ethylbenzene as specific examples; essentially the same behavior is shown by compounds bearing other side chains. Except for hydrogenation and oxidation, these reactions involve either **electrophilic substitution in the aromatic ring** or **free-radical substitution in the aliphatic side chain**.

In following sections we shall be mostly concerned with (a) how experimental conditions determine which portion of the molecule—aromatic or aliphatic—is attacked, and (b) how each portion of the molecule modifies the reactions of the other portion.

### REACTIONS OF ALKYL BENZENES

#### 1. Hydrogenation

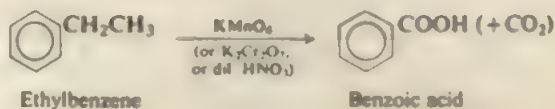
*Example:*



CONT

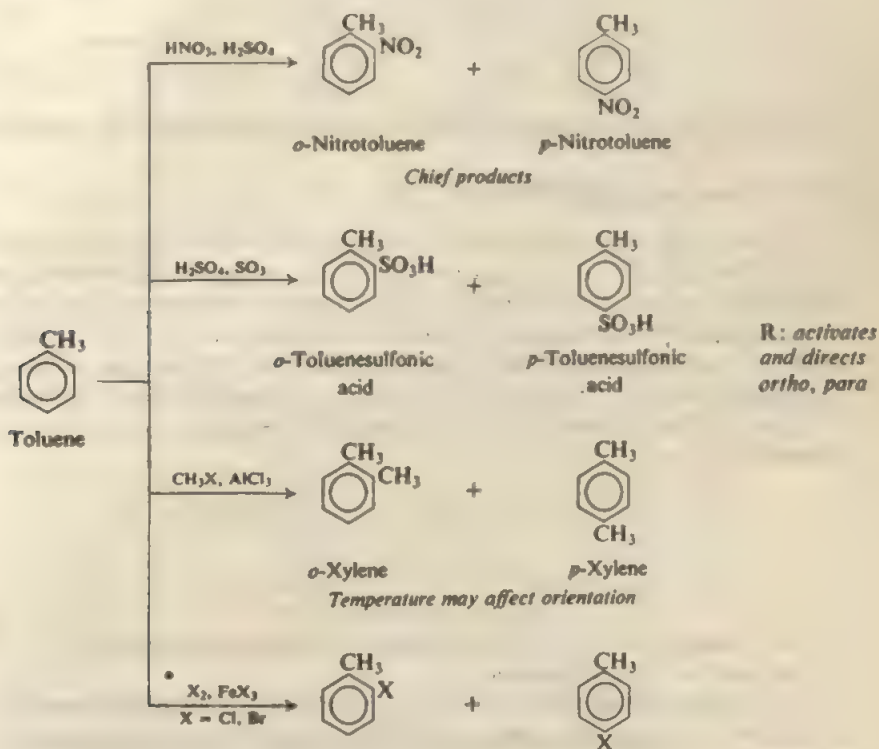
## 2. Oxidation. Discussed in Sec. 16.11.

Example:



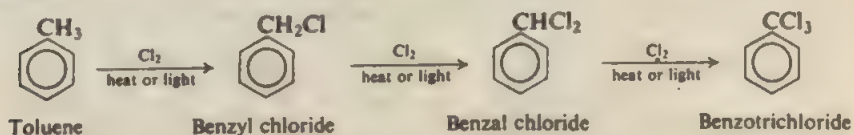
## 3. Substitution in the ring. Electrophilic aromatic substitution. Discussed in Sec. 16.12.

Examples:



## 4. Substitution in the side chain. Free-radical halogenation. Discussed in Secs. 16.13-16.15.

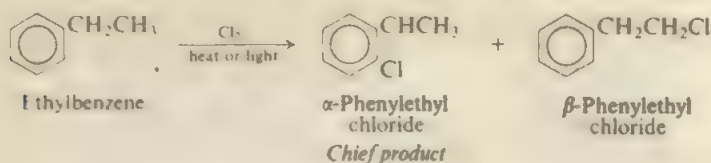
Examples:



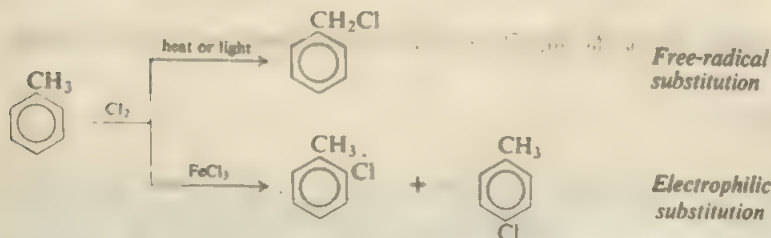
CONT.



CONT.

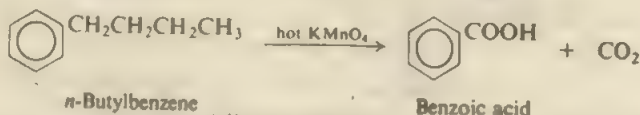


Note. Competition between ring and side chain. Discussed in Sec. 16.13.



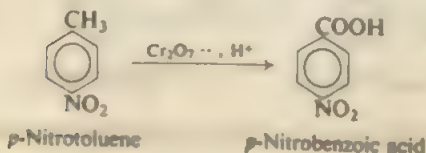
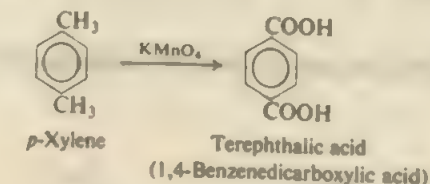
## 16.11 Oxidation of alkylbenzenes

Although benzene and alkanes are quite unreactive toward the usual oxidizing agents ( $\text{KMnO}_4$ ,  $\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$ , etc.), the benzene ring renders an aliphatic side chain quite susceptible to oxidation. The side chain is oxidized down to the ring, only a carboxyl group ( $-\text{COOH}$ ) remaining to indicate the position of the original side chain. Potassium permanganate is generally used for this purpose, although potassium dichromate or dilute nitric acid also can be used. (Oxidation of a side chain is more difficult, however, than oxidation of an alkene, and requires prolonged treatment with hot  $\text{KMnO}_4$ .)

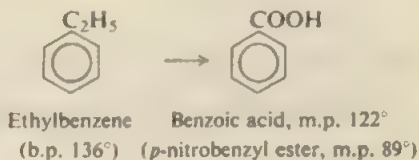
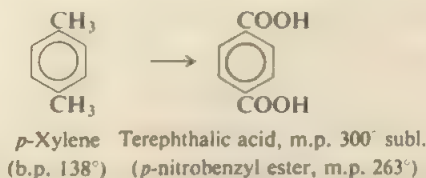
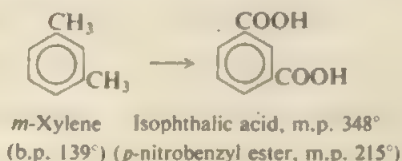
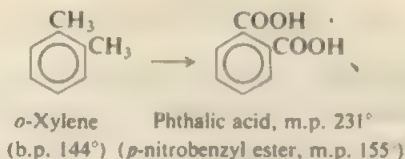


This reaction is used for two purposes: (a) synthesis of carboxylic acids, and (b) identification of alkylbenzenes.

(a) **Synthesis of carboxylic acids.** One of the most useful methods of preparing an aromatic carboxylic acid involves oxidation of the proper alkylbenzene. For example:



(b) **Identification of alkylbenzenes.** The number and relative positions of side chains can frequently be determined by oxidation to the corresponding acids. Suppose, for example, that we are trying to identify an unknown liquid of formula  $C_8H_{10}$  and boiling point 137–139° that we have shown in other ways to be an alkylbenzene (Sec. 16.27). Looking in Table 16.1 (p. 629), we find that it could be any one of four compounds: *o*-, *m*-, or *p*-xylene, or ethylbenzene. As shown below, oxidation of each of these possible hydrocarbons yields a different acid, and these acids can readily be distinguished from each other by their melting points or the melting points of derivatives.



## 16.12 Electrophilic aromatic substitution in alkylbenzenes

Because of its electron-releasing effect, an alkyl group activates a benzene ring to which it is attached, and directs *ortho* and *para* (Secs. 15.16 and 15.17).

**Problem 16.4** Treatment with methyl chloride and  $\text{AlCl}_3$  at 0° converts toluene chiefly into *o*- and *p*-xylenes; at 80°, however, the chief product is *m*-xylene. Furthermore, either *o*- or *p*-xylene is readily converted into *m*-xylene by treatment with  $\text{AlCl}_3$  and  $\text{HCl}$  at 80°.

How do you account for this effect of temperature on orientation? Suggest a role for the  $\text{HCl}$ .

**Problem 16.5** Why is polysubstitution a complicating factor in Friedel-Crafts alkylation but not in aromatic nitration, sulfonation, or halogenation?

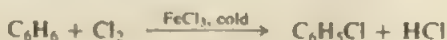
### 16.13 Halogenation of alkylbenzenes: ring vs. side chain

Alkylbenzenes clearly offer two sites where halogen can attack: the ring and the side chain. If we think about the reactions involved, we find that we should be able to direct the attack to either one of these sites by our choice of reaction conditions.

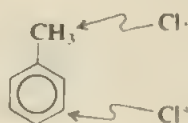
The side chain is alkane-like, and should undergo halogenation as alkanes do: via free-radical substitution. This reaction requires conditions under which halogen atoms are formed, that is, high temperatures or light.



The ring is benzene-like, and should undergo substitution as benzene does: via electrophilic substitution. This reaction involves transfer of positive halogen, which is promoted by acid catalysts like ferric chloride.



We must expect, then, that the position of attack in, say, toluene would be governed by which attacking particle is involved, and therefore by the conditions employed. This is so. If chlorine is bubbled into boiling toluene that is exposed to

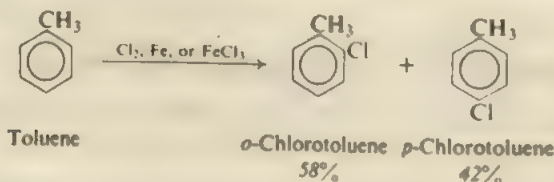


Atom: attacks side chain

Ion: attacks ring

ultraviolet light, substitution occurs almost exclusively in the side chain. In the absence of light and in the presence of ferric chloride, substitution occurs mostly in the ring. We saw a similar competition between homolytic and heterolytic reactions in the halogenation of alkenes. There, free radicals brought about substitution, as they do here; electrophilic attack led to addition, the characteristic reaction of alkenes, just as it leads here to ring substitution, the characteristic reaction of aromatic compounds.

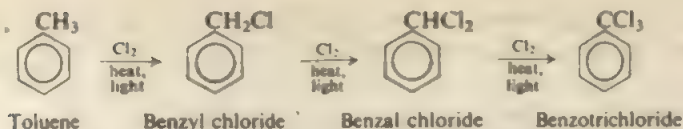
Like nitration and sulfonation, ring halogenation yields chiefly the *o*- and



*p*-isomers. Similar results are obtained with other alkylbenzenes, and with bromine as well as chlorine.

Side-chain halogenation, like halogenation of alkanes, may yield polyhalogenated products; even when reaction is limited to monohalogenation, it may yield a mixture of isomers.

Side-chain chlorination of toluene can yield successively the mono-, di-, and trichloro compounds. These are known as *benzyl chloride*, *benzal chloride*, and

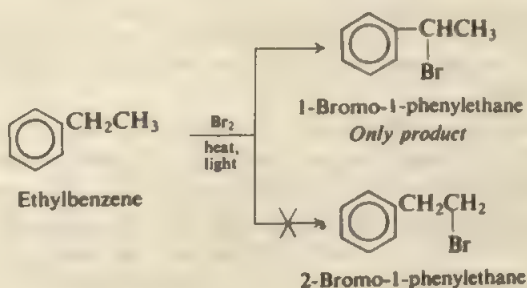


*benzotrichloride*; such compounds are important intermediates in the synthesis of alcohols, aldehydes, and acids.

## 16.14 Side-chain halogenation of alkylbenzenes

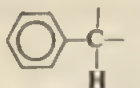
Chlorination and bromination of side chains differ from one another in orientation and reactivity in one very significant way. Let us look first at bromination, and then at chlorination.

An alkylbenzene with a side chain more complex than methyl may offer more than one position for attack, and so we must consider the likelihood of obtaining a mixture of isomers. Bromination of ethylbenzene, for example, could theoretically yield two products: 1-bromo-1-phenylethane and 2-bromo-1-phenylethane. Despite



a probability factor that favors 2-bromo-1-phenylethane by 3:2, the *only* product found is 1-bromo-1-phenylethane. Evidently abstraction of the hydrogens attached to the carbon next to the aromatic ring is greatly preferred.

*Hydrogen atoms attached to carbon joined directly to an aromatic ring are called benzylic hydrogens.*



**Benzylic hydrogen:**  
*easy to abstract*

The relative ease with which benzylic hydrogens are abstracted is shown not only by orientation of bromination but also—and in a more exact way—by comparison of reactivities of different compounds. Competition experiments (Sec. 3.22) show, for example, that at 40° a benzylic hydrogen of toluene is 3.3 times as reactive toward bromine atoms as the tertiary hydrogen of an alkane—and nearly 100 million times as reactive as a hydrogen of methane!

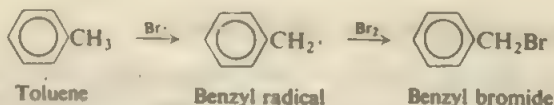
Examination of reactions that involve attack not only by halogen atoms but by other free radicals as well has shown that this is a general rule: benzylic



hydrogens are extremely easy to abstract and thus resemble allylic hydrogens. We can now expand the reactivity sequence of Sec. 9.3:

**Ease of abstraction of hydrogen atoms**      allylic  
benzyl       $> 3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ > \text{CH}_4 > \text{vinyl}$

Side-chain halogenation of alkylbenzenes proceeds by the same mechanism as halogenation of alkanes. Bromination of toluene, for example, includes the following steps:



The fact that benzylic hydrogens are unusually easy to abstract means that benzyl radicals are unusually easy to form.

**Ease of formation of free radicals**      allyl  
benzyl       $> 3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ > \text{CH}_3\cdot > \text{vinyl}$

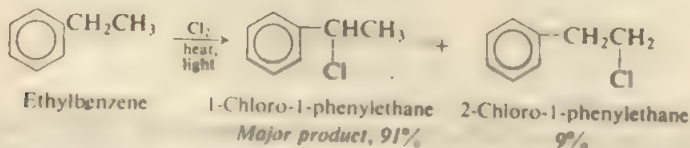
Again we ask the question: are these findings in accord with our rule that *the more stable the radical, the more rapidly it is formed*? Is the rapidly formed benzyl radical relatively stable?

The bond dissociation energies in Table 1.2 (p. 20) show that only 85 kcal is needed for formation of benzyl radicals from a mole of toluene, as compared with 92 kcal for formation of *tert*-butyl radicals and 88 kcal for formation of allyl radicals. Relative to the hydrocarbon from which each is formed, then, a benzyl radical contains less energy and is more stable than a *tert*-butyl radical.

We can now expand the sequence of radical stabilities (Sec. 9.3). Relative to the hydrocarbon from which each is formed, the relative stability of free radicals is:

**Stability of free radicals**      allyl  
benzyl       $> 3^\circ > 2^\circ > 1^\circ > \text{CH}_3\cdot > \text{vinyl}$

Orientation of chlorination shows that chlorine atoms, like bromine atoms, preferentially attack benzylic hydrogen; but, as we see, the preference is less marked:



Furthermore, competition experiments show that, under conditions where  $3^\circ$ ,  $2^\circ$ , and  $1^\circ$  hydrogens show relative reactivities of 5.0:3.8:1.0, the relative rate per benzylic hydrogen of toluene is only 1.3. As in its attack on alkanes (Sec. 3.28), the more reactive chlorine atom is less selective than the bromine atom: less selective between hydrogens in a single molecule, and less selective between hydrogens in different molecules.

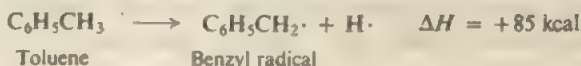
In the attack by the comparatively unreactive bromine atom, we have said (Sec. 2.24), the transition state is reached late in the reaction process: the carbon-hydrogen bond is largely broken, and the organic group has acquired a great deal of free-radical character. The factors that stabilize the benzyl free radical stabilize the incipient benzyl free radical in the transition state.

In contrast, in the attack by the highly reactive chlorine atom, the transition state is reached early in the reaction process: the carbon-hydrogen bond is only slightly broken, and the organic group has acquired little free-radical character. The factors that stabilize the benzyl radical have little effect on this transition state.

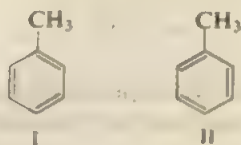
Just why benzylic hydrogens are *less* reactive toward chlorine atoms than even secondary hydrogens is not understood. It has been attributed to *polar factors* (Sec. 8.23), but this hypothesis has been questioned.

### 16.15 Resonance stabilization of the benzyl radical

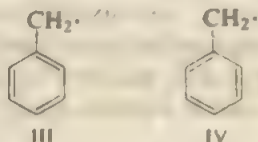
How are we to account for the stability of the benzyl radical? Bond dissociation energies indicate that 19 kcal/mol less energy ( $104 - 85$ ) is needed to form the benzyl radical from toluene than to form the methyl radical from methane.



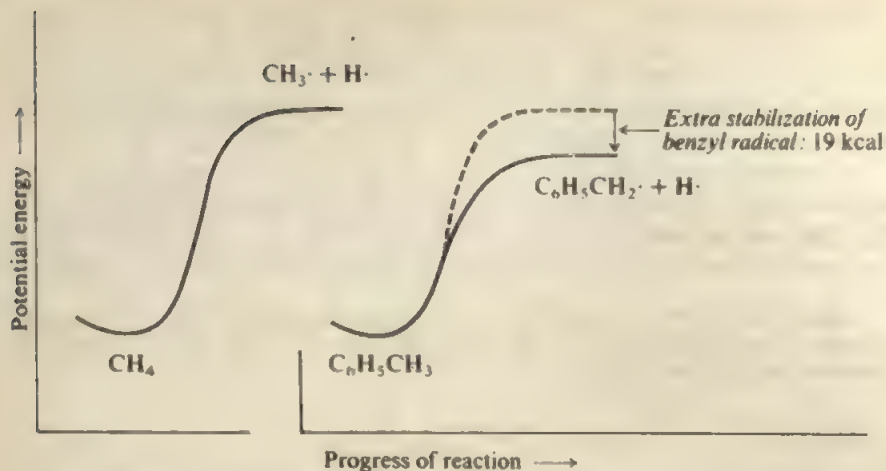
As we did for the allyl radical (Sec. 9.7), let us examine the structures involved. Toluene contains the benzene ring and is therefore a hybrid of the two Kekulé structures, I and II:



Similarly, the benzyl radical is a hybrid of the two Kekulé structures, III and IV:

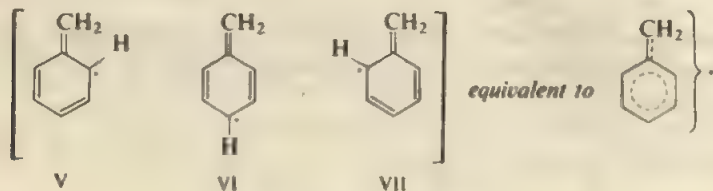


This resonance causes stabilization, that is, lowers the energy content. However, resonance involving Kekulé structures presumably stabilizes both molecule and radical to the same extent, and hence does not affect the *difference* in their energy contents. If there were no other factors involved, then we might reasonably expect the bond dissociation energy for a benzylic hydrogen to be about the same as that of a methane hydrogen (see Fig. 16.1).



**Figure 16.1.** Molecular structure and rate of reaction. Resonance-stabilized benzyl radical formed faster than methyl radical. (Plots aligned with each other for easy comparison.)

Considering further, however, we find that we can draw three additional structures for the radical: V, VI, and VII. In these structures there is a double bond between the side chain and the ring, and the odd electron is located on the carbon atoms *ortho* and *para* to the side chain. Drawing these pictures is, of course, our



way of indicating that the odd electron is not localized on the side chain but is *delocalized*, being distributed about the ring. We cannot draw comparable structures for the toluene molecule.

Contribution from the three structures, V–VII, stabilizes the radical in a way that is not possible for the molecule. Resonance thus lowers the energy content of the benzyl radical more than it lowers the energy content of toluene. This extra stabilization of the radical evidently amounts to 19 kcal/mol (Fig. 16.1).

We say, then, that the benzyl radical is *stabilized by resonance*. When we use this expression, we must always bear in mind that we actually mean that the benzyl radical is stabilized by resonance to a *greater extent than* the hydrocarbon from which it is formed.

In terms of orbitals, delocalization results from overlap of the *p* orbital occupied by the odd electron with the  $\pi$  cloud of the ring (Fig. 16.2).

Like the allyl radical, we see, the benzyl radical is a *conjugated* molecule (Sec. 9.9). Here the *p* orbital on the carbon bearing the odd electron is conjugated, not just with one double bond, but with the entire  $\pi$  system of the benzene ring. The conjugation of the aromatic ring has been *extended* to include the side-chain carbon; and with this extension comes greater stabilization.



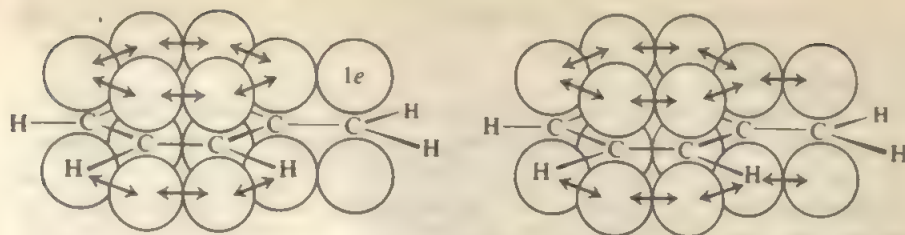


Figure 16.2. Benzyl radical. The  $p$  orbital occupied by the odd electron overlaps  $\pi$  cloud of ring.

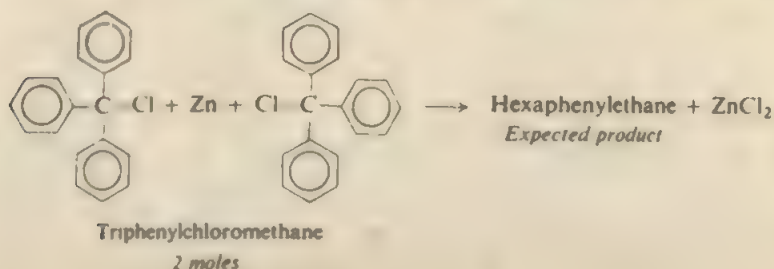
**Problem 16.6** It is believed that the side-chain hydrogens of the benzyl radical lie in the same plane as the ring. Why should they?

**Problem 16.7** The strength of the bond holding side-chain hydrogen in *m*-xylene is the same as in toluene; in *o*- and *p*-xylene it is 3–4 kcal lower. How do you account for these differences?

## 16.16 Triphenylmethyl: a stable free radical

We have said that benzyl and allyl free radicals are stabilized by resonance; but we must realize, of course, that they are stable only in comparison with simple alkyl radicals like methyl or ethyl. Benzyl and allyl free radicals are extremely reactive, unstable particles, whose fleeting existence (a few thousandths of a second) has been proposed simply because it is the best way to account for certain experimental observations. We do not find bottles on the laboratory shelf labeled "benzyl radicals" or "allyl radicals." Is there, then, any direct evidence for the existence of free radicals?

In 1900 a remarkable paper appeared in the *Journal of the American Chemical Society* and in the *Berichte der deutschen chemischen Gesellschaft*; its author was the young Russian-born chemist Moses Gomberg, who was at that time an instructor at the University of Michigan. Gomberg was interested in completely phenylated alkanes. He had prepared tetraphenylmethane (a synthesis a number of eminent chemists had previously attempted, but unsuccessfully), and he had now set himself the task of synthesizing hexaphenylethane. Having available triphenylchloromethane (Sec. 16.7), he went about the job in just the way we might today: he tried to couple together two triphenylmethyl groups by use of a metal (Sec. 5.4). Since sodium did not work very well, he used instead finely divided silver, mercury, or, best of all, zinc dust. He allowed a benzene solution of triphenylchloromethane to stand over one of these metals, and then filtered the solution free of the metal





halide. When the benzene was evaporated, there was left behind a white crystalline solid which after recrystallization melted at  $185^{\circ}$ ; this he thought was hexaphenylethane.

As a chemist always does with a new compound, Gomberg analyzed his product for its carbon and hydrogen content. To his surprise, the analysis showed 88% carbon and 6% hydrogen, a total of only 94%. Thinking that combustion had not been complete, he carried out the analysis again, this time more carefully and under more vigorous conditions; he obtained the same results as before. Repeated analysis of samples prepared from both triphenylchloromethane and triphenylbromomethane, and purified by recrystallization from a variety of solvents, finally convinced him that he had prepared not a hydrocarbon—not hexaphenylethane—but a compound containing 6% of some other element, probably oxygen.

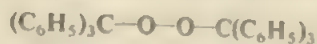
Oxygen could have come from impure metals; but extremely pure samples of metals, carefully freed of oxygen, gave the same results.

Oxygen could have come from the air, although he could not see how molecular oxygen could react at room temperature with a hydrocarbon. He carried out the reaction again, this time under an atmosphere of carbon dioxide. When he filtered the solution (also under carbon dioxide) and evaporated the solvent, there was left behind not his compound of m.p.  $185^{\circ}$  but an entirely different substance, much more soluble in benzene than his first product, and having a much lower melting point. This new substance was eventually purified, and on analysis it gave the correct composition for hexaphenylethane: 93.8% carbon, 6.2% hydrogen.

Dissolved in benzene, the new substance gave a yellow solution. When a small amount of air was admitted to the container, the yellow color disappeared, and then after a few minutes reappeared. When more oxygen was admitted, the same thing happened: disappearance of the color and slow reappearance. Finally the color disappeared for good; evaporation of the solvent yielded the original compound of m.p.  $185^{\circ}$ .

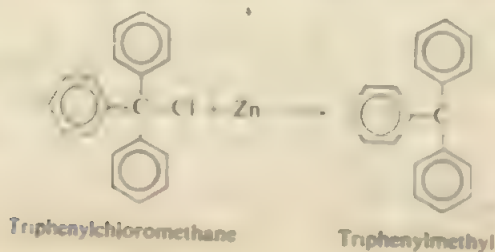
Not only oxygen but also halogens were rapidly absorbed by ice-cold solutions of this substance; even solutions of normally unreactive iodine were instantly decolorized.

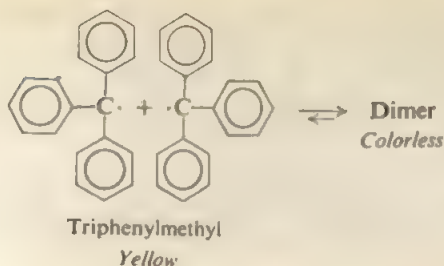
The compound of m.p.  $185^{\circ}$  was the peroxide,



as Gomberg showed by preparing it in an entirely different way. The products of the halogen reactions were the triphenylhalomethanes,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{C}-\text{X}$ .

If this new substance he had made was indeed hexaphenylethane, it was behaving very strangely. Cleavage of a carbon-carbon bond by such mild reagents as oxygen and iodine was unknown to organic chemists.

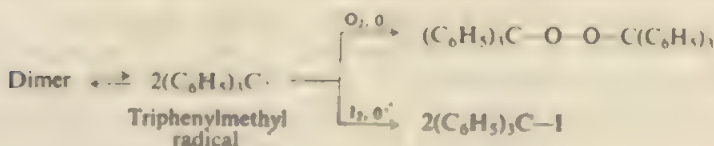




"The experimental evidence presented above forces me to the conclusion that we have to deal here with a free radical, triphenylmethyl,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{C}\cdot$ . On this assumption alone do the results described above become intelligible and receive an adequate explanation." Gomberg was proposing that he had prepared a *stable* free radical.

It was nearly ten years before Gomberg's proposal was generally accepted. It now seems clear that what happens is the following: the metal abstracts a chlorine atom from triphenylchloromethane to form the free radical triphenylmethyl; two of these radicals then combine to form a dimeric hydrocarbon. But the carbon-carbon bond in the dimer is a very weak one, and even at room temperature can break to regenerate the radicals. Thus an equilibrium exists between the free radicals and the hydrocarbon. Although this equilibrium tends to favor the hydrocarbon, any solution of the dimer contains an appreciable concentration of free triphenylmethyl radicals. The fraction of material existing as free radicals is about 2% in a 1 *M* solution, 10% in a 0.01 *M* solution, and nearly 100% in very dilute solutions. We could quite correctly label a bottle containing a dilute solution of this substance as "triphenylmethyl radicals."

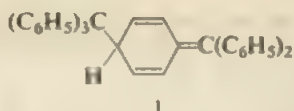
Triphenylmethyl is yellow; both the dimer and the peroxide are colorless. A solution of the dimer is yellow because of the triphenylmethyl present in the equilibrium mixture. When oxygen is admitted, the triphenylmethyl rapidly reacts to form the peroxide, and the yellow color disappears. More dimer dissociates to restore equilibrium and the yellow color reappears. Only when all the dimer-triphenylmethyl mixture is converted into the peroxide does the yellow color fail to appear. In a similar way it is triphenylmethyl that reacts with iodine.



Thus the dimer undergoes its surprising reactions by first dissociating into triphenylmethyl, which, although unusually stable for a free radical, is nevertheless an exceedingly reactive particle.

Now, what is this dimer? For nearly 70 years it was believed to be hexaphenylethane. It and dozens of analogs were studied exhaustively, and the equilibria between them and triarylmethyl radicals were interpreted on the basis

of the hexaarylethane structure. Then, in 1968, the dimer was shown to have



the structure I. Gomberg's original task is still unaccomplished: hexaphenylethane, it seems, has never been made.

The basic significance of Gomberg's work remains unchanged. Many dimers have been prepared, and the existence of free triarylmethyl radicals has been substantiated in a number of ways; indeed, certain of these compounds seem to exist entirely as the free radical even in the solid state. The most convincing evidence for the free-radical nature of these substances lies in properties that arise directly from the odd electron that characterizes a free radical. Two electrons that occupy the same orbital and thus make up a pair have opposite spins (Sec. 1.6); the magnetic moments corresponding to their spins exactly cancel each other. But, by definition (Sec. 2.12), the odd electron of a free radical is not paired, and hence the effect of its spin is not canceled. This spin gives to the free radical a net magnetic moment. This magnetic moment reveals itself in two ways: (a) the compound is *paramagnetic*; that is, unlike most matter, it is attracted by a magnetic field; and (b) the compound gives a characteristic *paramagnetic resonance absorption* spectrum (or *electron spin resonance* spectrum, Sec. 17.19) which depends upon the orientation of the spin of an unpaired electron in a changing external magnetic field. This latter property permits the detection not only of stable free radicals but of low concentrations of short-lived intermediates in chemical reactions, and can even give information about their structure. (See, for example, Sec. 8.22).

The remarkable dissociation to form free radicals is the result of two factors. First, triphenylmethyl radicals are unusually stable because of resonance of the sort we have proposed for the benzyl radical. Here, of course, there are an even larger number of structures (36 of them) that stabilize the radical but not the hydrocarbon; the odd electron is highly delocalized, being distributed over three aromatic rings.

Second, crowding among the large aromatic rings tends to stretch and weaken the carbon-carbon bond joining the triphenylmethyl groups in the dimer. Once the radicals are formed, the bulky groups make it difficult for the carbon atoms to approach each other closely enough for bond formation: so difficult, in fact, that hexaphenylethane is not formed at all, but instead dimer I—even with the sacrifice of aromaticity of one ring. Even so, there is crowding in the dimer, and the total effect is to lower the dissociation energy to only 11 kcal/mol, as compared with a dissociation energy of 80–90 kcal for most carbon-carbon single bonds.

It would be hard to overestimate the importance of Gomberg's contribution to the field of free radicals and to organic chemistry as a whole. Although triphenylmethyl was isolable only because it was *not a typical* free radical, its chemical properties showed what kind of behavior to expect of free radicals in *general*, most important of all, it proved that such things as free radicals could exist.



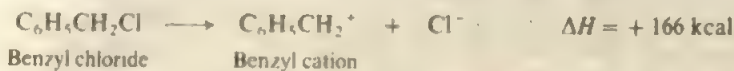
**Problem 16.8** The  $\Delta H$  for dissociation of the dimer I has been measured as 11 kcal/mol, the  $E_{\text{act}}$  as 19 kcal/mol. (a) Draw the potential energy curve for the reaction. (b) What is the energy of activation for the reverse reaction, combination of triphenylmethyl radicals? (c) How do you account for this unusual fact? (Compare Sec. 2.17.)

**Problem 16.9** When 1.5 g of "diphenyltetra(*o*-tolyl)ethane" is dissolved in 50 g of benzene, the freezing point of the solvent is lowered  $0.5^\circ$  (the cryoscopic constant for benzene is  $5^\circ$ ). Interpret these results.

## 16.17 Stability of the benzyl cation

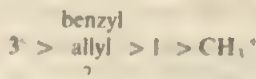
Now let us turn to heterolytic chemistry, and that key intermediate, the carbocation. The conjugation that stabilizes the allyl free radical, we saw (Sec. 9.12), also stabilizes the allyl cation. Does the same thing hold for the benzyl particles? Is the benzyl cation, like the free radical, unusually stable?

Table 1.3 (p. 21) shows that the heterolytic bond dissociation energy for benzyl chloride is 166 kcal/mol, somewhat less than for allyl chloride (173 kcal) or isopropyl

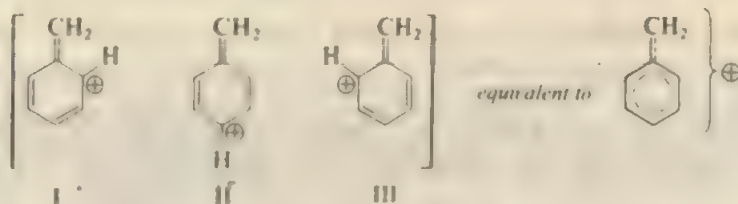


chloride (170 kcal), and 61 kcal less than for methyl chloride (227 kcal). Comparison of the alkyl bromides or iodides or the alcohols reveals exactly the same pattern. Relative to the substrate from which each cation is generated, the benzyl cation is about as stable as the allyl or isopropyl cation. We can now expand our sequence of Sec. 9.12 to include the benzyl cation.

Stability of  
carbocations



The presence of a phenyl group in place of a hydrogen of methyl chloride thus stabilizes the cation by 61 kcal/mol. As we did for the benzyl free radical, we attribute the stabilization to conjugation with the benzene ring, and account for it on the basis of resonance. Both the benzyl cation and the substrate from which it is made are hybrids of Kekulé structures. In addition, the carbocation can be represented by three other structures, I, II, and III, in which the positive charge is



located on the *ortho* and *para* carbon atoms. Whether considered as resonance stabilization or simply as dispersal of charge, contribution from these structures stabilizes the carbocation.

The orbital picture of the benzyl cation is similar to that of the benzyl free radical (Sec. 16.15) except that the *p* orbital that overlaps the  $\pi$  cloud is an empty



one. The  $p$  orbital contributes no electrons, but permits further delocalization of the  $\pi$  electrons to include the carbon nucleus of the side chain.

**Problem 16.10** How do you account for the following facts? (a) Triphenylchloromethane is completely ionized in certain solvents (e.g., liquid  $\text{SO}_2$ ); (b) triphenylcarbinol,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{COH}$ , dissolves in concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  to give a solution that has the same intense yellow color as triphenylchloromethane solutions. (Note: This yellow color is different from that of solutions of triphenylmethyl.)

**Problem 16.11** In light of Problem 16.10, can you suggest a possible reason, besides steric hindrance, why the reaction of  $\text{CCl}_4$  with benzene stops at triphenylchloromethane? (See Secs. 16.7–16.8.)

**Problem 16.12** Suggest an explanation for the following order of acidity: triphenylmethane > diphenylmethane > toluene >  $n$ -pentane.

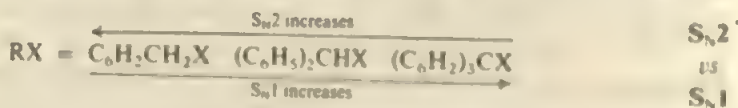
## 16.18 Nucleophilic substitution in benzylic substrates

How do benzylic substrates behave in nucleophilic aliphatic substitution?

Let us begin with substitution of the  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  type, in which the rate of reaction depends upon the rate of formation of a carbocation. Although formally primary, a benzyl cation is about as stable as a secondary cation. If our parallel between stability of carbocations and the rate of their formation holds here, we would expect benzyl cations to be formed at about the same rate as secondary cations. And they are. Benzyl substrates undergo  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  reactions about as fast as secondary substrates.

The rate of an  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  reaction, we have seen (Sec. 6.18), depends chiefly upon steric factors. Here benzyl substrates enjoy, to an extent, the advantage of an allyl substrate: they are primary, and offer relatively little steric hindrance to nucleophilic attack. And so they undergo  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  about as fast as primary substrates.

Substituents on the  $\alpha$ -carbon of benzylic substrates have the kind of effects that we would expect. Additional phenyl groups raise the stability of the cation still further, and speed up its formation by  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$ . At the same time, they increase steric hindrance to nucleophilic attack and slow down  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$ . The result is a familiar one



(Sec. 6.30): the tendency to undergo a shift in mechanism from bimolecular to unimolecular as branching increases.

**Problem 16.13** Predict the order of reactivity by  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  for the set of substrates,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHClCH}_3$ ,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CCl}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ . By  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$ .

In solvolysis, we saw (Sec. 6.31), the formation of secondary carbocations has need of considerable nucleophilic assistance by the solvent. In addition to the ionizing effect of a solvent cluster, one individual molecule plays a special role, and helps to push out the leaving group. There is formed a carbocation with the solvent molecule clinging to its back side, and it is this *nucleophilically solvated* carbocation that then undergoes further reaction to yield the product.

Now, if a benzyl cation is about as stable as a secondary cation, its formation should have a similar need for nucleophilic assistance by the solvent. But, as we have just seen, a benzyl substrate is less branched than a secondary, and hence should be more open to this nucleophilic attack by the solvent. In agreement with these expectations, the rate of solvolysis of benzylic substrates is found to be particularly sensitive not only to the ionizing power of a solvent, but to its nucleophilic power as well. As a result, it is the study of benzylic substrates that has revealed most about the role of the solvent in nucleophilic substitution.

This brings us to the most important aspect of the chemistry of benzylic compounds: by introducing various substituents into the aromatic ring, we can prepare scores of different benzylic substrates. Substituents at the *meta* or *para* position have no effect on steric hindrance at the benzylic carbon, but can change the polar effect of the aryl group in either direction and to varying degrees. From the *para* position, for example,  $\text{OCH}_3$  exerts powerful electron release, and  $\text{—NO}_2$  powerful electron withdrawal;  $\text{—CH}_3$  exerts weak electron release, and  $\text{—X}$  weak electron withdrawal. As we would expect, electron release increases the stability of a benzylic cation, and electron withdrawal decreases its stability. With these changes in cation stability there occur corresponding changes in the rate at which substrates undergo  $\text{S}_\text{N}1$ ; and there occur changes in the need for nucleophilic assistance by the solvent.



*G releases electrons:  
stabilizes carbocation,  
activates substrate*



*G withdraws electrons:  
destabilizes carbocation,  
deactivates substrate*

The effects of these substituents here parallel their effects on electrophilic aromatic substitution (Sec. 15.16), and for a very good reason: in both kinds of reaction, a positive charge is developing in the aromatic ring; a substituent can either disperse or intensify the charge, and thus either stabilize or destabilize the incipient carbocation.

**Problem 16.14** Benzyl bromide reacts with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in formic acid solution to yield benzyl alcohol; the rate is independent of  $[\text{H}_2\text{O}]$ . Under the same conditions *p*-methylbenzyl bromide reacts 58 times as fast.

Benzyl bromide reacts with  $\text{NaOEt}$  in  $\text{EtOH}$  to yield benzyl ethyl ether; the rate depends upon both  $[\text{RBr}]$  and  $[\text{OEt}]$ . Under the same conditions *p*-methylbenzyl bromide reacts 1.5 times as fast.

Account in detail for these observations.

**Problem 16.15** (a) Benzylic tosylates have been found to undergo solvolysis in aqueous acetone at the following relative rates: benzyl, 1.00; *m*-methylbenzyl, 1.8; *p*-methylbenzyl, 30. How do you account for the greater activation by  $\text{—CH}_3$  from the *para* position, farther from the center of reaction? (Hint: See Sec. 15.17.)

(b) Under the same conditions, the following relative rates were measured for bromobenzyl tosylates: benzyl, 1.00; *m*-bromobenzyl, 0.082; *p*-bromobenzyl, 0.41. How do you account for the fact that, unlike methyl, the —Br exerts a greater effect from the *meta* position? (*Hint*: See Sec. 15.19.)

(c) Under the same conditions, the following relative rates were measured for methoxybenzyl tosylates: benzyl, 1.00; *m*-methoxybenzyl, 0.61; *p*-methoxybenzyl, 25,000. How do you account for the fact that —OCH<sub>3</sub> activates powerfully from the *para* position, yet actually deactivates from the *meta* position? (*Hint*: See Sec. 15.18.)

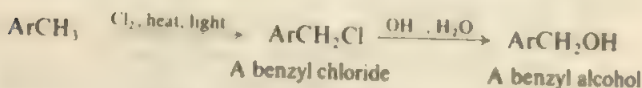
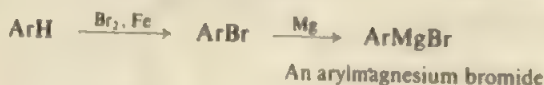
**Problem 16.16** Arrange the alcohols of each set in order of reactivity toward aqueous HBr.

- (a) 1-phenyl-1-propanol, 3-phenyl-1-propanol, 1-phenyl-2-propanol  
 (b) benzyl alcohol, *p*-cyanobenzyl alcohol, *p*-hydroxybenzyl alcohol  
 (c) benzyl alcohol, diphenylmethanol, triphenylmethanol

## 16.19 Synthesis of alkylbenzene derivatives

At this point we are ready to put together some of what we have learned about aromatic, aliphatic, and aromatic-aliphatic compounds, and make more complicated derivatives of alkylbenzenes.

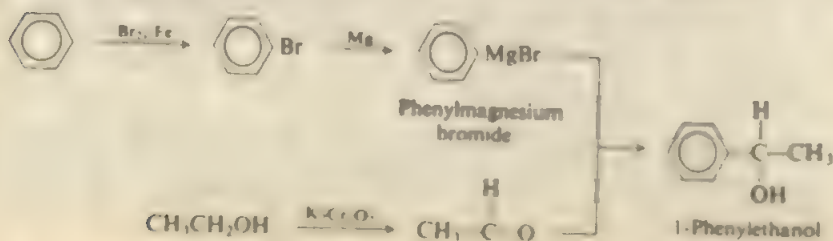
Let us see the kind of thing we can do, starting from just two readily available aromatic materials, benzene and toluene. From benzene we can make bromobenzene, and from this make phenylmagnesium bromide. From toluene we can make benzyl halides, and from these make benzyl alcohol. We can introduce other groups



into the ring of benzene or toluene, and then make substituted phenylmagnesium bromides or substituted benzyl halides and alcohols. With these reactive compounds to provide aryl and benzyl building blocks, we can synthesize a host of other compounds.

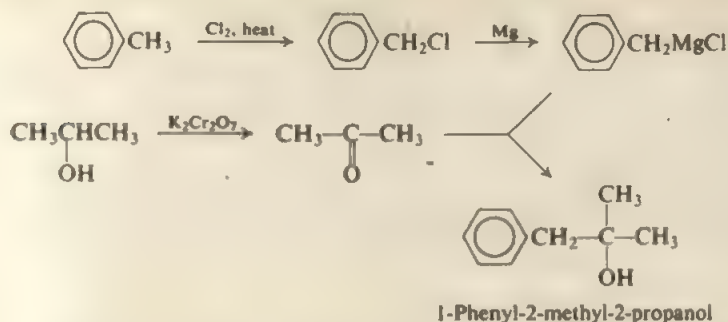
Let us take a few examples of compounds that we can prepare by use of the Grignard synthesis. By this method, we have seen (Secs. 10.12–10.16 and 11.12–11.13), we can not only make bigger molecules out of smaller ones, but in doing this obtain compounds containing the highly versatile —OH group. We shall make the reasonable assumption that we have available to us benzene and toluene, and all alcohols of four carbons or fewer.

Starting from benzene we can make, for example, 1-phenylethanol.

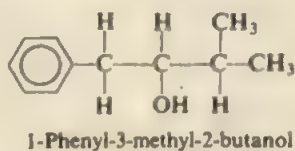




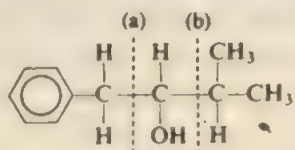
and from toluene, 1-phenyl-2-methyl-2-propanol.



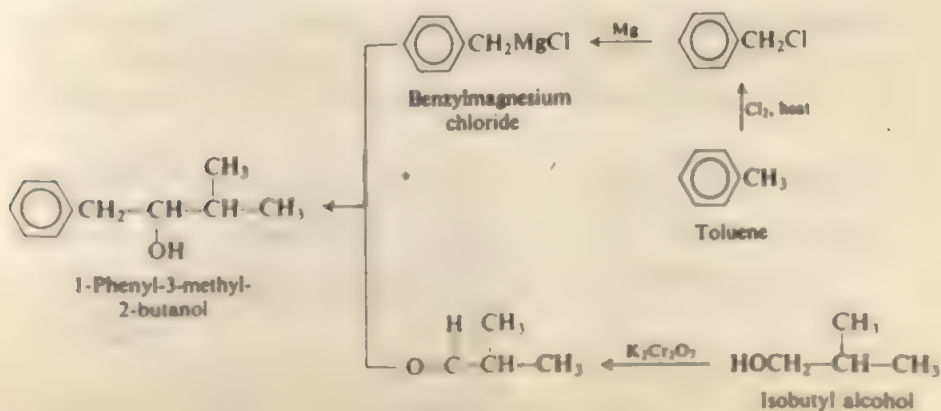
Let us consider next the synthesis of 1-phenyl-3-methyl-2-butanol. As we did before (Sec. 11.12), we set down the structure of the alcohol we want and work *backwards* to the starting materials. To make a secondary alcohol, we use a



Grignard reagent and an aldehyde, and, as usual, there are two choices: we may consider the molecule to be put together either (a) between C-1 and C-2 or (b) between C-2 and C-3. Of the two possibilities we select the first, since this requires



a compound with only one carbon attached to the benzene ring, which we have available in toluene. We need, then, a four-carbon aldehyde and benzylmagnesium chloride. The aldehyde can be made from isobutyl alcohol. The benzylmagnesium chloride is, of course, made from benzyl chloride, which in turn is made from toluene by free-radical chlorination. Our synthesis is complete:





*A reminder:* In planning such syntheses we must keep in mind the limitations of the method, and avoid the presence in either reactant of substituent groups that are incompatible with the Grignard reagent (Sec. 10.16).

**Problem 16.17** Outline all steps in a possible synthesis of each of the following compounds from benzene, toluene, and alcohols of four carbons or fewer

- (a) 1-phenyl-1-butanol
- (b) 1-phenyl-1-iodobutane
- (c) 1-phenyl-2-propanol
- (d) benzyl methyl ketone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{COCH}_3$

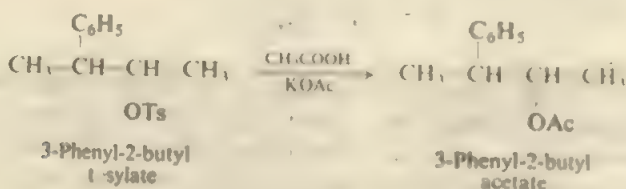
## 16.20 \* Neighboring group effects: neighboring aryl

In Secs. 16.17-16.18 we saw how an aryl group can supply electrons to an electron-deficient carbon through resonance. To do this the aryl group must be attached directly to the electron-deficient carbon, so that sideways overlap can occur between the  $\pi$  electron cloud of the ring and the empty  $p$  orbital.

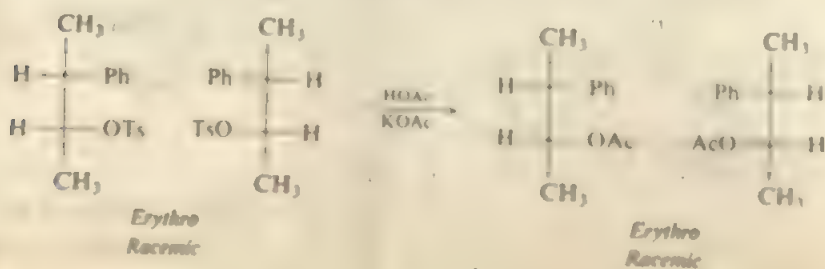
But there is another way in which an aryl group can provide electrons: by actually carrying them to the reaction site. To do this it must be attached, not to the electron-deficient carbon, but to the carbon *next to it*. What we are talking about, of course, is a neighboring group effect.

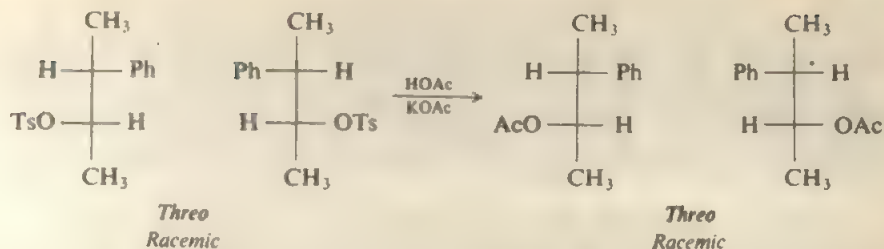
In 1949, at the University of California at Los Angeles, Donald J. Cram published the first of a series of papers on the effects of neighboring aryl groups, and set off a controversy that lasted twenty years before it was resolved. Let us look at just one example of the kind of thing he discovered.

Solvolysis of 3-phenyl-2-butyl tosylate in acetic acid yields the acetate. The tosylate contains two chiral centers, and exists as two racemic modifications; so,

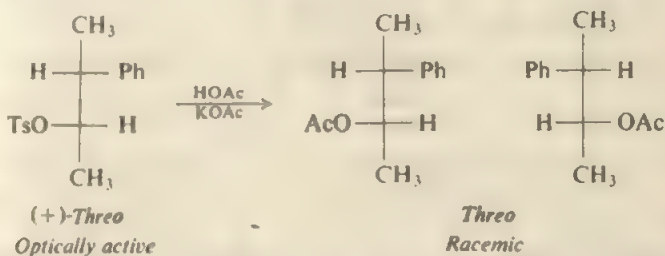


too, does the acetate. Solvolysis is completely stereospecific and proceeds, it at first appears, with *retention of configuration*: racemic *erythro* tosylate gives only racemic *erythro* acetate, and racemic *threo* tosylate gives only racemic *threo* acetate. When,

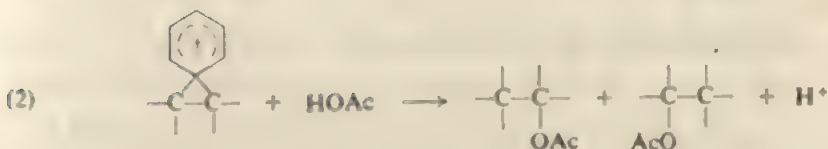
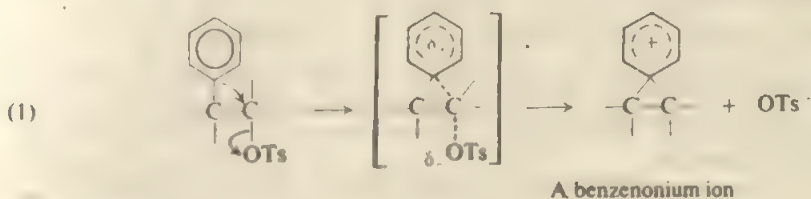




however, optically active *threo* tosylate is used, it is found to yield optically *inactive* product, racemic *threo* acetate. We see here the same pattern as in Sec. 11.4: retention at both carbons in half the molecules of the product, inversion at both carbons in the other half.



Cram interpreted these results in the following way. The neighboring phenyl group, with its  $\pi$  electrons, helps to push out (1) the tosylate anion. There is formed



an intermediate *bridged* ion. This ion is of the kind we have encountered (Sec. 15.8) as the intermediate in electrophilic aromatic substitution: a *benzenonium* ion. The ring is bonded to both carbons by full-fledged  $\sigma$  bonds, to give a symmetrical structure. The ion owes its stability to the fact that the positive charge is distributed about the ring, being strongest at the positions *ortho* and *para* to the point of attachment.

In step (2) the Benzenonium ion is attacked by the acetic acid at either of the two equivalent carbons to yield the product.

**Problem 16.18** (a) Drawing structures of the kind in Fig. 11-3 (p. 492), show how Cram's mechanism accounts for the conversion of optically active *threo*-3-phenyl-2-butyl tosylate into racemic acetate. (b) In contrast, optically active *erythro* tosylate yields optically active *erythro* acetate. Show that this, too, fits Cram's interpretation of the reaction.

In the controversy that developed, the point under attack was not so much the existence of the intermediate bridged ion—although this was questioned, too—as its mode of formation. The 3-phenyl-2-butyl tosylates undergo solvolysis at much the same rate as does unsubstituted *sec*-butyl tosylate: formolysis a little faster, acetolysis a little slower. Yet, as depicted by Cram, phenyl gives anchimeric assistance to the reaction. Why, then, is there no rate acceleration?

Several alternatives were proposed: one, that participation by phenyl in expulsion of tosylate occurs, but is weak; another, that bridging occurs, not in the rate-determining step, but rapidly, following formation of an open cation. H. C. Brown (p. 471) suggested that—for unsubstituted phenyl, at least—the intermediate is not a bridged ion at all, but a pair of rapidly equilibrating open carbocations; phenyl, now on one carbon and now on the other, blocks back-side attack by the solvent and thus gives rise to the observed stereochemistry.

By 1971, a generally accepted picture of these reactions had begun to emerge, based on work by a number of investigators, prominent among them Paul Schleyer (University of Erlangen-Nürnberg). The big stumbling-block had been the widely held idea that secondary cations are formed, like tertiary cations, with little assistance from the solvent (Sec. 6.31). Using as standards certain special secondary substrates whose structure *prevents* solvent assistance, Schleyer showed that ordinary secondary substrates do indeed react with much solvent assistance.

Cram's original proposal seems to be essentially correct: aryl *can* give anchimeric assistance through formation of bridged ions. Competition is *not* between aryl-assisted solvolysis and unassisted solvolysis; competition is between aryl-assisted solvolysis and solvent-assisted solvolysis. Anchimeric assistance need not cause anchimeric acceleration. Formation of a bridged cation and an open cation may proceed at much the same rate, one with aryl assistance, the other with equally strong solvent assistance.

On the assumption of these two competing processes, successful quantitative correlations have been made among data of various kinds: rate of reaction, stereochemistry, scrambling of isotopic labels, and Hammett constants (Sec. 19.11) to represent the relative electronic effects of various substituents in aromatic rings. If neighboring aryl contains strongly electron-withdrawing substituents, reaction products are normal—chiefly alkenes plus inverted ester—and the rate of solvolysis is what one would expect for formation of an open cation slowed down by electron-withdrawing inductive effects. As substituents become increasingly electron-releasing (*p*-Cl, *m*-CH<sub>3</sub>, *p*-CH<sub>3</sub>, *p*-CH<sub>3</sub>O) the rate increases *more* than expected if only inductive effects were operating; the amount of "extra" speed matches the amount of abnormal stereochemistry. Consider, for example, acetolysis of 3-aryl-2-butyl brosylates. One calculates from the rate data that *m*-tolyl assists in 73% of reaction; 68% of the product is found to have retained configuration. For *p*-methyl, calculated 87%, found 88%; for *p*-methoxyphenol, calculated 99%, found 100%.

How much anchimeric assistance there is, then, depends on how nucleophilic the neighboring group is. It also depends on how badly anchimeric assistance is

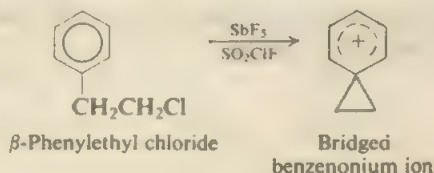


needed. The more nucleophilic the solvent, the more assistance it gives, and the less the neighboring group participates. Or, if the open cation is a relatively stable one—tertiary or benzylic—it may need little assistance of any kind, either from the solvent or from the neighboring group.

In summary, an incipient cation can get electrons in three different ways: (a) from a substituent, through an inductive effect or resonance; (b) from the solvent; (c) from a neighboring group.

In all this, H. C. Brown played a role familiar to him: that of gad-fly—the organic chemist's conscience—forcing careful examination of ideas that had been accepted perhaps too readily because of their neatness. The turning point in this part of the great debate was marked by the joint publication of a paper by Brown and Schleyer setting forth essentially the interpretation we have just given.

In 1970, Olah (p. 226) prepared a molecule whose carbon-13 NMR spectrum (Sec. 17.18) was consistent with a bridged benzenonium ion, and *not* with a pair of equilibrating open cations.

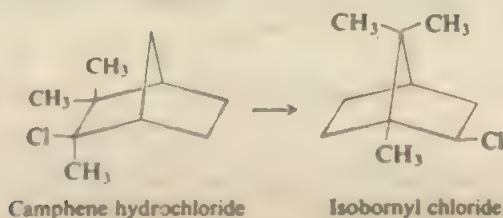


**Problem 16.19** Quenching of Olah's solution with water gave a 3:1 mixture of β-phenylethyl alcohol and α-phenylethyl alcohol. The spectrum showed the presence not only of the bridged cation but, in lesser amounts, of an open cation. What is a likely structure for the open cation, and how is it formed?

In Secs. 11.4–11.6 we saw neighboring group effects in which electrons are provided by atoms with unshared pairs of electrons, atoms like sulfur or oxygen or halogen. We have just seen that carbon, too, can be involved in neighboring group effects; here, the electrons are provided by the  $\pi$  cloud on the aromatic ring. Now we are ready to follow this particular thread into a gray area, an area of continuing controversy, and see how neighboring group effects may even involve  $\sigma$  electrons of carbon and of hydrogen.

## 16.21 Neighboring group effects: neighbouring saturated carbon. Nonclassical ions

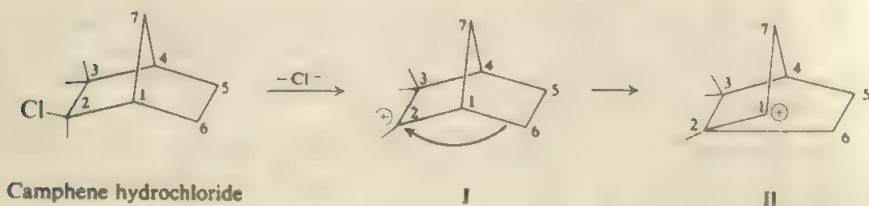
The rearrangement of carbocations was first postulated, by Meerwein (p. 226) in 1922, to account for the conversion of camphene hydrochloride into isobornyl chloride. Oddly enough, this chemical landmark is the most poorly understood of



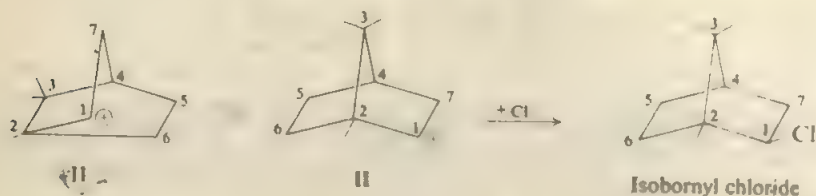


all such rearrangements. With various modifications in structure, this bicyclic system has been for over 30 years the object of closer scrutiny than any other in organic chemistry.

We can see, in a general way, how this particular rearrangement could take place. Camphene hydrochloride loses chloride ion to form cation I, which rearranges by a 1,2-alkyl shift to form cation II. Using models, and keeping careful

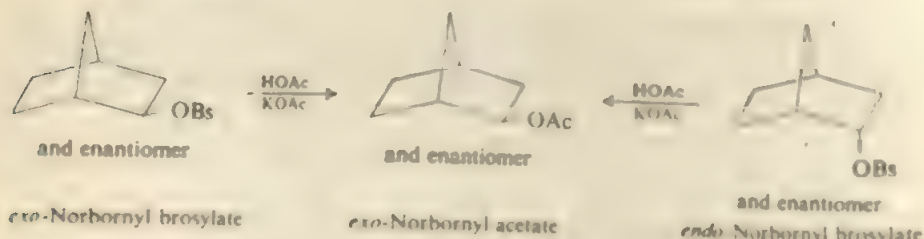


track of the various carbon atoms, we find that cation II need only combine with a chloride ion to yield isobornyl chloride.

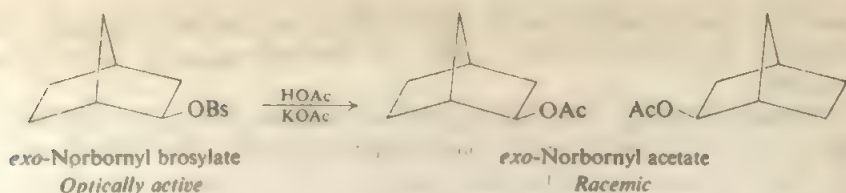


We have accounted for the observed change in carbon skeleton, but we have not answered two questions that have plagued the organic chemist for more than a generation. Why is only the *exo* chloride, isobornyl chloride, obtained, and none of its *endo* isomer, bornyl chloride? Why does camphene hydrochloride undergo solvolysis thousands of times as fast as, say, *tert*-butyl chloride? To see the kind of answers that have been given, let us turn to a simpler but basically similar system.

In 1949, working at the same university where Cram was just then proposing aryl assistance, Saul Winstein (p. 257) reported these findings. On acetolysis, the diastereomeric *exo*- and *endo*-norbornyl brosylates both yield *exo*-norbornyl acetate:

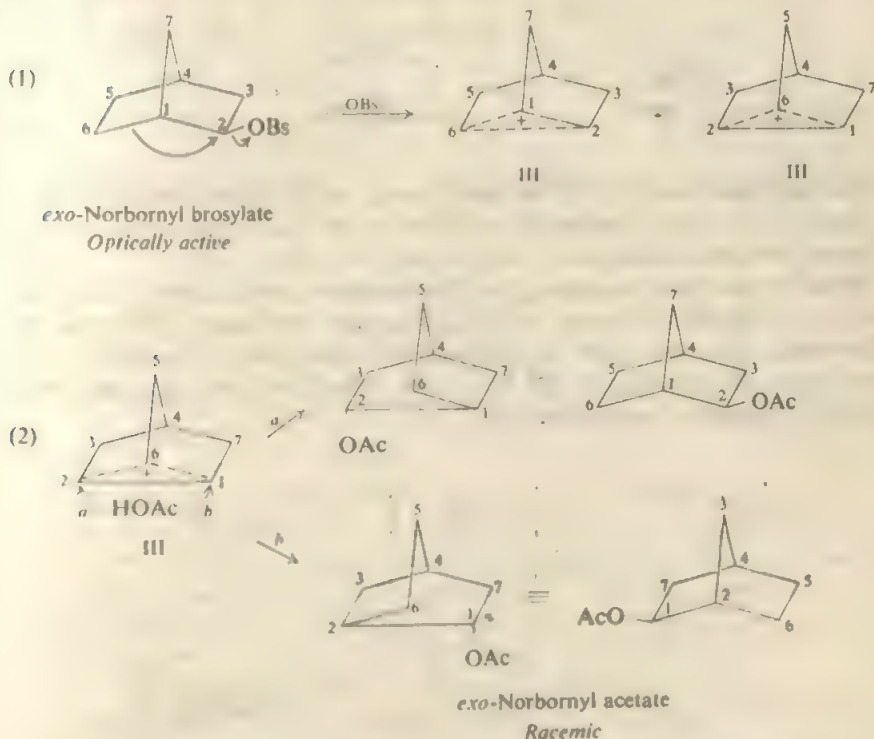


If the starting brosylate is optically active, the product is still the optically inactive racemic modification. For example,



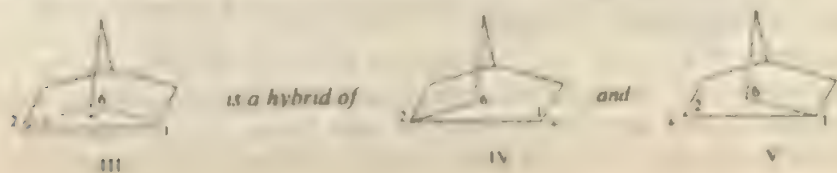
Finally, *exo*-norbornyl brosylate reacts 350 times as fast as the *endo* brosylate.

Winstein interpreted the behavior of these compounds in the following way (Fig. 16.3). Loss of brosylate anion yields (1) the bridged cation III, which undergoes nucleophilic attack by solvent (2) at either C-2 or C-1 to yield the product.



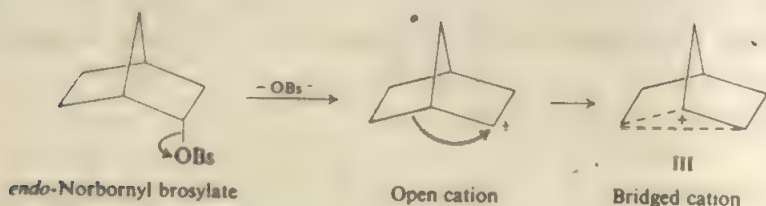
**Figure 16.3.** Conversion of optically active *exo*-norbornyl brosylate into racemic *exo*-norbornyl acetate via nonclassical ion. Brosylate anion is lost with anchimeric assistance from C-6, to give bridged cation III. Cation III undergoes back-side attack at either C-2 (path *a*) or C-1 (path *b*). Attacks *a* and *b* are equally likely, and give racemic product.

Cation III is stabilized by resonance between two equivalent structures, IV and V, each corresponding to an open cation. The charge is divided between two



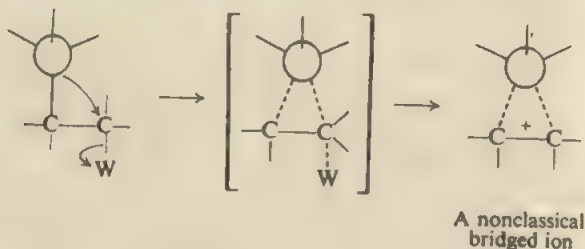
carbons (C-1 and C-2) each of which—held in the proper position by the particular ring system—is bonded to C-6 by a half-bond. The bridging carbon (C-6) is thus pentavalent.

Reaction of the *exo* brosylate is  $S_N2$ -like, as shown in Fig. 16.3: back-side attack by C-6 on C-1 helps to push out brosylate, and yields the bridged ion in a single step. The geometry of the *endo* brosylate does not permit such back-side attack, and consequently it undergoes an  $S_N1$ -like reaction: slow formation of the open cation followed by rapid conversion into the bridged ion.



The two diastereomers yield the same product, racemic *exo* acetate, because they react via the same intermediate. But only the *exo* brosylate reacts with anchimeric assistance, and hence it reacts at the faster rate.

What Winstein was proposing was that *saturated* carbon using  $\sigma$  electrons could act as a neighboring group, to give anchimeric assistance to the expulsion of a leaving group, and to form an intermediate bridged cation containing pentavalent carbon. Bridged ions of this kind, with delocalized bonding  $\sigma$  electrons, have become known as *nonclassical ions*.



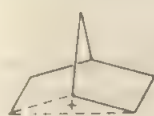
Interpretation of the behavior of the norbornyl and many related systems on the basis of nonclassical ions seemed to be generally accepted until 1962, when H. C. Brown declared, "But the Emperor is naked!" Brown's point was not that the idea of nonclassical ions was necessarily wrong, but that it was *not necessarily right*. It had been accepted too readily, he thought, on the basis of too little evidence, and needed closer examination.

Brown suggested alternative interpretations. The norbornyl cation, for example, might not be a bridged ion but a pair of equilibrating open carbocations. That is to say, IV and V are not contributing structures to a resonance hybrid, but two distinct compounds in equilibrium with each other. Each ion can combine with solvent: IV at C-1, V at C-2. Substitution is exclusively *exo* because the *endo* face of each cation lies in a fold of the molecule, and is screened from attack. Differences in rate, too, are attributed to steric factors. It is not that the *exo* substrate reacts unusually fast, but that the *endo* substrate reacts unusually *slowly*,

due to steric hindrance to the departure of the leaving group with its cluster of solvent molecules.

To test these alternative hypotheses, a tremendous amount of work has been done, by Brown and by others. For example, camphene hydrochloride is known to undergo ethanolysis 6000 times as fast as *tert*-butyl chloride, and this had been attributed to anchimeric assistance with formation of a bridged ion. Brown pointed out that the wrong standard for comparison had been chosen. He showed that a number of substituted (3) cyclopentyl chlorides (examine the structure of camphene hydrochloride closely) also react much faster than *tert*-butyl chloride. He attributed these fast reactions—including that of camphene hydrochloride—to relief of steric strain. On ionization, chloride ion is lost and the methyl group on the  $sp^2$ -hybridized carbon moves into the plane of the ring: four non-bonded interactions thus disappear, two for chlorine and two for methyl. For certain systems at least, it became clear that one need not invoke a nonclassical ion to account for the facts.

In 1970, Olah reported that he had prepared a stable norbornyl cation in  $SbF_5-SO_2$ . From its NMR (both  $^1H$  and  $^{13}C$ ), and Raman spectra, he concluded that it has, indeed, the nonclassical structure with delocalization of  $\sigma$  electrons. The 2-phenylnorbornyl cation, on the other hand, has the classical structure; this



Norbornyl cation  
*Bridged ion*



2-Methylnorbornyl cation  
*Some bridging*



2-Phenylnorbornyl cation  
*Open ion*

benzylic cation, stabilized by electrons from the benzene ring, has no need of bridging. The tertiary 2-methylnorbornyl cation is intermediate in character: there is *partial*  $\sigma$  delocalization and hence bridging, but weaker than in the unsubstituted cation. (Interestingly enough, delocalization in the 2-methyl cation seems to come, not from the  $C_6-C_1$  bond, but from the  $C_6-H$  bond; Olah pictures the back lobe of the carbon-hydrogen bond overlapping the  $p$  orbital of  $C_2$ .)

Thus, it seems, there are such things as nonclassical cations. What is still to be settled is just how much they are involved in the chemistry of ordinary solvolytic reactions.

**Problem 16.20** (a) Show how a nonclassical ion intermediate could account for both the stereospecificity and the unusually fast rate (if it is unusually fast) of rearrangement of camphene hydrochloride into isobornyl chloride. (b) How do you account for the fact that optically active product is formed here, in contrast to what is obtained from solvolysis of norbornyl compounds?

## 16.22 Neighboring group effects: neighboring alkyl and neighboring hydrogen

We come finally to the question of neighboring group effects involving neighboring hydrogen or small alkyl groups: the simplest of such effects but, because of this simplicity, perhaps the most difficult to study.



Early in our acquaintance with carbocations (Sec. 6.26), we discussed their most striking property: rearrangement. Since then, we have seen many examples of rearrangement, involving various kinds of compounds undergoing various kinds of reactions. And in all these cases we have interpreted the observations on the following basis: first, a carbocation is formed; and then, in a subsequent step, it rearranges to form a more stable carbocation. In nucleophilic substitution, rearrangement would thus involve steps (1) and (2):



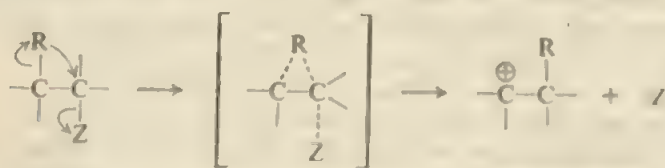
Substrate



More stable cation

R is alkyl or hydrogen

Over the years it has become increasingly clear that the differences in stability between the different classes of carbocations are very large, and that the less stable ones are very difficult to generate; even secondary carbocations, we have seen, need nucleophilic assistance from the solvent for their formation. Because of this, and because of the kind of evidence described for more complex systems in the two preceding sections, the following proposal has been made: the rearrangement of simple carbocations that we have represented above as being  $S_N1$ -like (Sec. 11.5) may be  $S_N2$ -like, with the neighboring hydrogen or alkyl group helping to push out

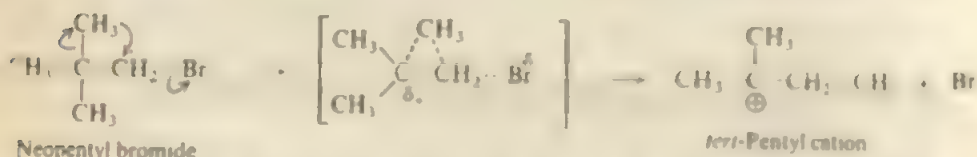


Substrate

R is alkyl or hydrogen

More stable cation

the leaving group in a single-step reaction. In the solvolysis of neopentyl bromide, for example, there would be a single transition state leading from the substrate to the *tert*-pentyl cation: a much more stable cation than neopentyl, and much more easily formed.



Neopentyl bromide

*tert*-Pentyl cation

Now, how does one determine whether or not this is happening? Anchimeric assistance, we said (Sec. 11.6), gives rise to an "unusually" fast rate of reaction

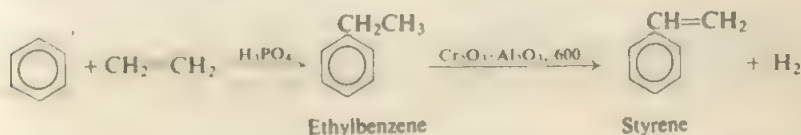
But the problem here is the same one that we encountered in our discussion of nonclassical ions: the difficulty of selecting a standard of comparison. Neopentyl bromide, say, undergoes solvolysis (with rearrangement) at such-and-such a rate. Is this unusually fast? To answer that question, we must know the "usual" rate of reaction of neopentyl bromide: that is the rate of reaction *without* anchimeric assistance—a reaction that may or may not ever occur.

On the basis of evidence we cannot go into here, it has been widely accepted that *in some cases*—particularly where the unrearranged cation would be primary and hence quite unstable—there can be anchimeric assistance in the rearrangement of simple carbocations. We shall generally represent rearrangement as involving two steps, but it should be understood that very often these steps may merge into a single one.

### 16.23 Preparation of alkenylbenzenes. Conjugation with the ring

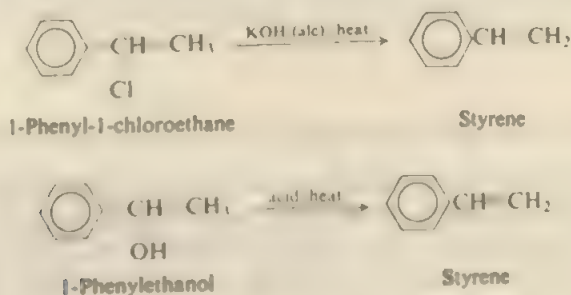
An aromatic hydrocarbon with a side chain containing a double bond can be prepared by essentially the same methods as simple alkenes, that is, by 1,2-elimination (Sec. 7.11). The presence of the aromatic ring in the molecule may affect the orientation of elimination and the ease with which it takes place.

On an industrial scale, the elimination generally involves *dehydrogenation*. For example, **styrene**, the most important of these compounds—and perhaps the most important synthetic aromatic compound—can be prepared by simply heating ethylbenzene to about 600° in the presence of a catalyst. The ethylbenzene, in turn,

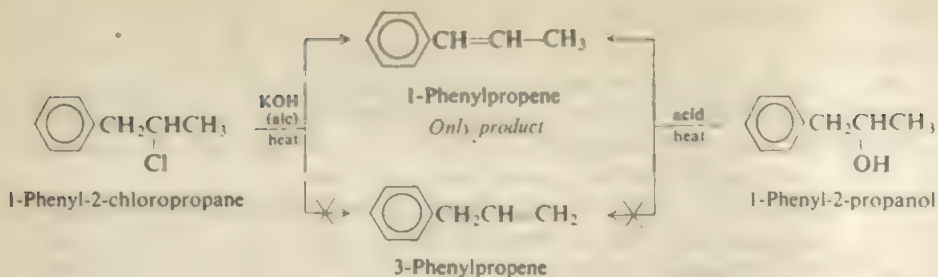


is prepared by a Friedel-Crafts reaction between two simple hydrocarbons, benzene and ethylene.

In the laboratory, however, we are most likely to use dehydrohalogenation or dehydration.



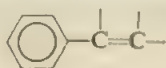
Dehydrohalogenation of 1-phenyl-2-chloropropane, or dehydration of 1-phenyl-2-propanol, could yield two products: 1-phenylpropene or 3-phenylpropene. Actually, only the first of these products is obtained. We saw earlier (Secs. 7.21, 7.28, and 9.25) that where isomeric alkenes can be formed by such



elimination, the preferred product is generally the more stable alkene. This is the case here, too. That 1-phenylpropene is much more stable than its isomer is shown by the fact that 3-phenylpropene is rapidly converted into 1-phenylpropene by treatment with hot alkali.



A double bond that is separated from a benzene ring by one single bond is said to be *conjugated with the ring*. Such conjugation confers unusual stability on a



**Double bond conjugated with ring:**  
*unusually stable system*

molecule. This stability is reflected in a faster rate of formation, which affects not only orientation of elimination, but also affects the ease with which elimination takes place.

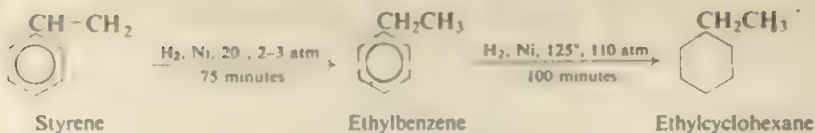
**Problem 16.21** Account for the stability of alkenes like styrene on the basis of: (a) delocalization of  $\pi$  electrons, showing both resonance structures and orbital overlap; and (b) change in hybridization.

**Problem 16.22** Considering the nature of the reagent, can you suggest a possible mechanism for the conversion of 3-phenylpropene into 1-phenylpropene described above?

## 16.24 Reactions of alkenylbenzenes

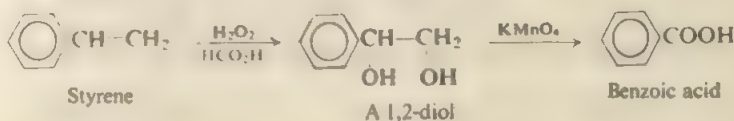
As we might expect, alkenylbenzenes undergo two sets of reactions: **substitution in the ring**, and **addition to the double bond in the side chain**. Since both ring and double bond are good sources of electrons, there may be competition between the two sites for certain electrophilic reagents; it is not surprising that, in general, the double bond shows higher reactivity than the resonance-stabilized benzene ring. Our main interest in these reactions will be the way in which the aromatic ring affects the reactions of the double bond.

Although both the benzene ring and the carbon-carbon double bond can be hydrogenated catalytically, the conditions required for the double bond are much

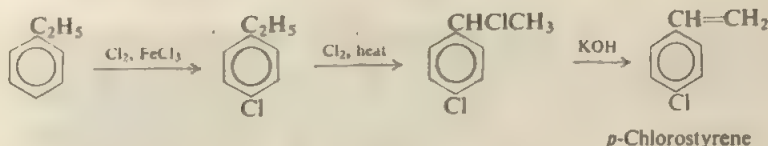


milder; by proper selection of conditions it is quite easy to hydrogenate the side chain without touching the aromatic ring.

Mild oxidation of the double bond yields a 1,2-diol; more vigorous oxidation cleaves the carbon-carbon double bond and generally gives a carboxylic acid in which the  $-\text{COOH}$  group is attached to the ring.



Both double bond and ring react with halogens by heterolytic mechanisms that have essentially the same first step: attack on the  $\pi$  cloud by positively charged halogen. Halogen is consumed by the double bond first, and only after the side chain is completely saturated does substitution on the ring occur. Ring-halogenated alkenylbenzenes must be prepared, therefore, by generation of the double bond after halogen is already present on the ring. For example:



In a similar way, alkenylbenzenes undergo the other addition reactions characteristic of the carbon-carbon double bond. Let us look further at the reactions of *conjugated* alkenylbenzenes, and the way in which the ring affects *orientation* and *reactivity*.

## 16.25 Addition to conjugated alkenylbenzenes

Addition of an unsymmetrical reagent to a carbon-carbon double bond may in general yield two different products, that is to say, may take place with either of two different orientations. In conjugated alkenylbenzenes, the aromatic ring is attached to one of the doubly-bonded carbons, and determines what this orientation will be.

This effect can be well illustrated by a single example, addition of  $\text{HBr}$  to 1-phenylpropene. In the absence of peroxides, bromine becomes attached to the carbon adjacent to the ring; in the presence of peroxides, bromine becomes attached to the carbon once removed from the ring. According to the mechanisms proposed for these two reactions, these products are formed as follows:



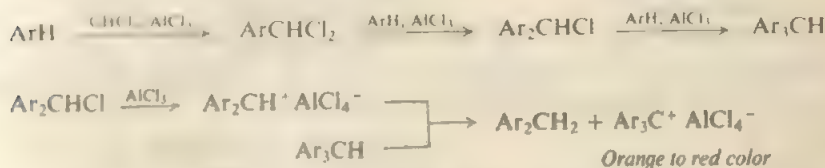


evolution of hydrogen bromide) and by their failure to decolorize cold, dilute, neutral permanganate solutions. (Oxidation of the side chains requires more vigorous conditions; see Sec. 16.11.)

They are distinguished from alkanes by the readiness with which they are sulfonated by and thus dissolve in cold fuming sulfuric acid (see Sec. 15.4).

They are distinguished from alcohols and other oxygen-containing compounds by their failure to dissolve immediately in cold concentrated sulfuric acid, and from primary and secondary alcohols by their failure to give a positive chromic anhydride test (Sec. 11.14).

Upon treatment with chloroform and aluminum chloride, alkylbenzenes give orange to red colors. These colors are due to triarylmethyl cations,  $\text{Ar}_3\text{C}^+$ , which are probably produced by a Friedel-Crafts reaction followed by a transfer of hydride ion (Sec. 6.26):



This test is given by any aromatic compound that can undergo the Friedel-Crafts reaction, with the particular color produced being characteristic of the aromatic system involved: orange to red from halobenzenes, blue from *naphthalene*, purple from *phenanthrene*, green from *anthracene* (Chap. 34).

**Problem 16.26** Describe simple chemical tests (if any) that would distinguish between. (a) *n*-propylbenzene and *o*-chlorotoluene; (b) benzene and toluene; (c) *m*-chlorotoluene and *m*-dichlorobenzene; (d) bromobenzene and bromocyclohexane; (e) bromobenzene and 3-bromo-1-hexene; (f) ethylbenzene and benzyl alcohol ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ). Tell exactly what you would do and see.

The number and orientation of side chains in an alkylbenzene is shown by the carboxylic acid produced upon vigorous oxidation (Sec. 16.11).

**Problem 16.27** On the basis of characterization tests and physical properties, an unknown compound of b.p. 182° is believed to be either *m*-diethylbenzene or *n*-butylbenzene. How could you distinguish between the two possibilities?

1.

Aromatic hydrocarbons with unsaturated side chains undergo the reactions characteristic of aromatic rings and of the carbon-carbon double or triple bond.

**Problem 16.28** Predict the response of allylbenzene to the following test reagents: (a) cold concentrated sulfuric acid; (b)  $\text{Br}_2$  in  $\text{CCl}_4$ ; (c) cold, dilute, neutral permanganate; (d)  $\text{CHCl}_3$  and  $\text{AlCl}_3$ ; (e)  $\text{CrO}_3$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ .

**Problem 16.29** Describe simple chemical tests (if any) that would distinguish between (a) styrene and ethylbenzene; (b) styrene and phenylacetylene; (c) allylbenzene and 1-nonen-3-ene; (d) allylbenzene and allyl alcohol ( $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ). Tell exactly what you would do and see.

**Problem 16.30** Expand the table you made in Problem 13.8 (p. 570) to include alkylbenzenes, alkenylbenzenes, and alkynylbenzenes.

(Analysis of arenes by spectroscopic methods will be discussed in Chap. 17, especially Sec. 17.5.)

## PROBLEMS

### 1. Draw the structure of:

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| (a) <i>m</i> -xylene                        | (g) isopropylbenzene (cumene)  |
| (b) mesitylene                              | (h) (Z)-1,2-diphenylethene     |
| (c) <i>o</i> -ethyltoluene                  | (i) 1,4-diphenyl-1,3-butadiene |
| (d) <i>p</i> -di- <i>tert</i> -butylbenzene | (j) <i>p</i> -dibenzylbenzene  |
| (e) cyclohexylbenzene                       | (k) <i>m</i> -bromostyrene     |
| (f) 3-phenylpentane                         | (l) diphenylacetylene          |

2. Outline all steps in the synthesis of ethylbenzene from each of the following compounds, using any needed aliphatic or inorganic reagents.

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| (a) benzene                       | (f) 1-chloro-1-phenylethane   |
| (b) styrene                       | (g) 2-chloro-1-phenylethane   |
| (c) phenylacetylene               | (h) <i>p</i> -bromoethylbenzene   |
| (d) $\alpha$ -phenylethyl alcohol | (i) acetophenone ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{O}$ ) |
| (e) $\beta$ -phenylethyl alcohol  |   |

3. Give structures and names of the principal organic products expected from reaction (if any) of *n*-propylbenzene with each of the following. Where more than one product is to be expected, indicate which will predominate.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) $\text{H}_2$ , Ni, room temperature, low pressure                  | (j) $\text{Cl}_2$ , Fe   |
| (b) $\text{H}_2$ , Ni, $200^\circ$ , 100 atm                           | (k) $\text{Br}_2$ , Fe   |
| (c) cold dilute $\text{KMnO}_4$  | (l) $\text{I}_2$ , Fe  |
| (d) hot $\text{KMnO}_4$  | (m) $\text{Br}_2$ , heat, light  |
| (e) $\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$ , $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , heat | (n) $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$ , $\text{AlCl}_3$ , $0^\circ$                     |
| (f) boiling $\text{NaOH}(\text{aq})$                                   | (o) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ , $\text{AlCl}_3$ , $0^\circ$ |
| (g) boiling $\text{HCl}(\text{aq})$                                    | (p) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$ , $\text{AlCl}_3$ , $80^\circ$           |
| (h) $\text{HNO}_3$ , $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$                           | (q) isobutylene, HF  |
| (i) $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , $\text{SO}_3$                            | (r) <i>tert</i> -butyl alcohol, $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$                      |
|  | (s) cyclohexene, HF  |

4. Give structures and names of the principal organic products expected from reaction (if any) of *trans*-1-phenyl-1-propene with:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) $\text{H}_2$ , Ni, room temperature, low pressure | (j) cold dilute $\text{KMnO}_4$   |
| (b) $\text{H}_2$ , Ni, $200^\circ$ , 100 atm          | (k) hot $\text{KMnO}_4$   |
| (c) $\text{Br}_2$ in $\text{CCl}_4$                   | (l) $\text{HCO}_2\text{H}$  |
| (d) excess $\text{Br}_2$ , Fe                         | (m) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}_2\text{OH}$ , ether                      |
| (e) $\text{HCl}$                                      | (n) $\text{O}_3$ , then $\text{H}_2\text{O}/\text{Zn}$                      |
| (f) $\text{HBr}$                                      | (o) $\text{Br}_2$ , $300^\circ$   |
| (g) $\text{HBr}$ (peroxides)                          | (p) $\text{CHBr}_3$ , <i>t</i> -BuOK  |
| (h) cold conc. $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$                | (q) product (c), $\text{KOH}(\text{alc})$                                   |
| (i) $\text{Br}_2$ , $\text{H}_2\text{O}$              | (r) $(\text{BH}_3)_2$ , then $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ , OH                    |
|   | (s) $\text{Hg}(\text{OAc})_2$ , $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , then $\text{NaBH}_4$ |

5. Give structures and names of the principal organic products expected from each of the following reactions:

- (a) benzene + cyclohexene + HF  
 (b) phenylacetylene + alcoholic  $\text{AgNO}_3$   
 (c) *m*-nitrobenzyl chloride +  $\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$  +  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  + heat

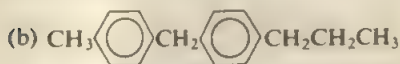


- (d) allylbenzene + HCl
- (e) *p*-chlorotoluene + hot  $\text{KMnO}_4$
- (f) *eugenol* ( $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_2$ , 2-methoxy-4-allylphenol) + hot KOH  $\rightarrow$  *isoeugenol* ( $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_2$ )
- (g) benzyl chloride + Mg + dry ether
- (h) product of (g) +  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$
- (i) *p*-xylene +  $\text{Br}_2$  + Fe
- (j) 1-phenyl-1,3-butadiene + 1 mol  $\text{H}_2$  + Ni, 2 atm.,  $30^\circ$
- (k) *cis*-1,2-diphenylethene +  $\text{O}_3$ , then  $\text{H}_2\text{O}/\text{Zn}$
- (l) 1,3-diphenylpropyne +  $\text{H}_2$ , Pd  $\rightarrow$   $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{14}$
- (m) 1,3-diphenylpropyne + Li,  $\text{NH}_3(\text{liq}) \rightarrow$   $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{14}$
- (n) *p*- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}=\text{CHC}_6\text{H}_5$  + HBr
- (o) *p*-bromobenzyl bromide +  $\text{CH}_3\text{ONa}$
- (p) *o*-methylanisole + hot  $\text{KMnO}_4$
- (q) benzyl phenyl ether +  $\text{Br}_2$ , Fe

6. Treatment of benzyl alcohol ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ) with cold concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  yields a high-boiling resinous material. What is a likely structure for this material, and how is it probably formed?

7. Label each set of hydrogens in each of the following compounds in order of expected ease of abstraction by bromine atoms. Use (1) for the most reactive, (2) for the next, etc.

- (a) 1-phenyl-2-hexene



- (c) 1,2,4-trimethylbenzene (*Hint*: See Problem 16.7, p. 645.)
- (d) What final monobromination product or products would abstraction of each kind of hydrogen in (a) lead to?

8. Give structures and names of the products expected from dehydrohalogenation of each of the following. Where more than one product can be formed, predict the major product.

- |                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) 1-chloro-1-phenylbutane | (d) 2-chloro-1-phenylbutane |
| (b) 1-chloro-2-phenylbutane | (e) 3-chloro-2-phenylbutane |
| (c) 2-chloro-2-phenylbutane |                             |

9. Answer Problem 8 for dehydration of the alcohol corresponding to each of the halides given. (*Hint*: Do not forget Sec. 6.26.)

10. Arrange in order of ease of dehydration:

- (a) the alcohols of Problem 9
- (b)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHOHCH}_3$ ,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_3$
- (c)  $\alpha$ -phenylethyl alcohol,  $\alpha$ -(*p*-bromophenyl)ethyl alcohol,  $\alpha$ -(*p*-tolyl)ethyl alcohol

11. Arrange the compounds of each set in order of reactivity toward the indicated reaction.

- (a) *addition of HCl*: styrene, *p*-chlorostyrene, *p*-methylstyrene
- (b) *dehydration*:  $\alpha$ -phenylethyl alcohol,  $\alpha$ -(*p*-nitrophenyl)ethyl alcohol,  $\alpha$ -(*p*-amino-phenyl)ethyl alcohol
- (c)  $S_N1$  *solvolysis*: benzyl chloride, *p*-chlorobenzyl chloride, *p*-methoxybenzyl chloride, *p*-methylbenzyl chloride, *p*-nitrobenzyl chloride
- (d)  $S_N1$  *solvolysis*: benzyl bromide,  $\alpha$ -phenylethyl bromide,  $\beta$ -phenylethyl bromide
- (e) *elimination by KOH (alc)*: 1-phenyl-2-bromopropane, 1-phenyl-3-bromopropane

12. A new process for the manufacture of styrene involves the air oxidation of ethylbenzene to  $\alpha$ -phenylethyl hydroperoxide ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{O}-\text{OH}$ ), which is then allowed to react with propylene to give  $\alpha$ -phenylethyl alcohol and propylene oxide.

- (a) Show all likely steps in this process, starting with cheap, abundant organic chemicals, and ending with styrene.
- (b) What special economic advantage does this process offer?
- (c) Suggest a likely mechanism for the air oxidation of ethylbenzene.



13. (a) Draw structures of all possible products of addition of one mole of  $\text{Br}_2$  to 1-phenyl-1,3-butadiene. (b) Which of these possible products are consistent with the intermediate formation of the most stable carbocation? (c) Actually, only 1-phenyl-3,4-dibromo-1-butene is obtained. What is the most likely explanation of this fact?

14. (a) The heats of hydrogenation of the stereoisomeric stilbenes (1,2-diphenylethenes) are: *cis*-, 26.3 kcal; *trans*-, 20.6 kcal. Which isomer is the more stable? (b) *cis*-Stilbene is converted into *trans*-stilbene (but not vice versa) either (i) by action of a very small amount of  $\text{Br}_2$  in the presence of light, or (ii) by action of a very small amount of  $\text{HBr}$  (but not  $\text{HCl}$ ) in the presence of peroxides. What is the agent that probably brings about the conversion? Can you suggest a way in which the conversion might take place? (c) Why is *trans*-stilbene not converted into *cis*-stilbene?

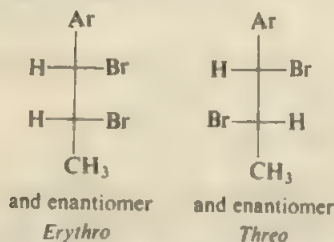
15. One mole of triphenylcarbinol lowers the freezing point of 1000 g of 100% sulfuric acid twice as much as one mole of methanol. How do you account for this?

16. When a mixture of toluene and  $\text{CBrCl}_3$  was irradiated with ultraviolet light, there were obtained, in almost exactly equimolar amounts, benzyl bromide and  $\text{CHCl}_3$ . (a) Show in detail all steps in the most likely mechanism for this reaction. (b) There were also obtained, in small amounts,  $\text{HBr}$  and  $\text{C}_2\text{Cl}_6$ ; the ratio of  $\text{CHCl}_3$  to  $\text{HBr}$  was 20:1. How do you account for the formation of  $\text{HBr}$ ? Of  $\text{C}_2\text{Cl}_6$ ? What, specifically, does the 20:1 ratio tell you about the reaction?

17. When the product of the  $\text{HF}$ -catalyzed reaction of benzene with 1-dodecene, previously reported to be pure 2-phenyldodecane, was analyzed by gas chromatography, five evenly-spaced peaks of about the same size were observed, indicating the presence of five components, probably closely related in structure. What five compounds most likely make up this mixture, and how could you have anticipated their formation?

18. Account in detail for the fact that the relative rates of formolysis of  $p\text{-GC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OTs}$  for various G's are:  $-\text{H}$ , 2.1;  $-\text{OCH}_3$ , 160;  $-\text{O}^-$ ,  $10^8$ .

19. Upon addition of bromine, *cis*-1-phenyl-1-propene gives a mixture of 17% *erythro* dibromide and 83% *threo*; *trans*-1-phenyl-1-propene gives 88% *erythro*, 12% *threo*; and *trans*-1-(*p*-methoxyphenyl)propene gives 63% *erythro*, 37% *threo*.



How do these results compare with those obtained with the 2-butenes (Sec. 8.18)? Suggest a possible explanation for the difference. What is the effect of the *p*-methoxy group, and how might you account for this?

20. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following compounds from benzene and/or toluene, using any necessary aliphatic or inorganic reagents. Follow instructions on p. 265. Assume a pure *para* isomer can be separated from an *ortho,para* mixture.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) ethylbenzene<br>(b) styrene<br>(c) phenylacetylene<br>(d) isopropylbenzene<br>(e) 2-phenylpropene<br>(f) 3-phenylpropene (allylbenzene)<br>(g) 1-phenylpropyne (two ways)<br>(h) ( <i>E</i> )-1-phenylpropene<br>(i) ( <i>Z</i> )-1-phenylpropene | (j) <i>p</i> - <i>tert</i> -butyltoluene<br>(k) <i>p</i> -nitrostyrene<br>(l) <i>p</i> -bromobenzyl bromide<br>(m) <i>p</i> -nitrobenzal bromide<br>(n) <i>p</i> -bromobenzoic acid<br>(o) <i>m</i> -bromobenzoic acid<br>(p) 1,2-diphenylethane<br>(q) <i>p</i> -nitrodiphenylmethane<br>( $p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ ) |
|---|--|

21. Outline all steps in a possible synthesis of each of the following compounds from benzene, toluene, and alcohols of four carbons or fewer.

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| (a) $\alpha$ -phenylethyl alcohol      | (g) 1-( <i>p</i> -tolyl)ethanol     |
| (b) $\beta$ -phenylethyl alcohol       | (h) 1-phenyl-2-methyl-1-propanol    |
| (c) benzyl <i>tert</i> -butyl ether    | (i) 2-bromo-1-phenylpropane         |
| (d) methyl $\alpha$ -phenylethyl ether | (j) 1,3-diphenylpropyne             |
| (e) 2-phenyl-2-propanol                | (k) 4-phenyl-2-methyl-3-butyne-2-ol |
| (f) 3-phenyl-1-propanol                |                                     |

22. Describe simple chemical tests that would distinguish between:

- benzene and cyclohexane
- benzene and 1-hexene
- toluene and *n*-heptane
- cyclohexylbenzene and 1-phenylcyclohexene
- benzyl alcohol ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ) and *n*-pentylbenzene
- cinnamyl alcohol ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ) and 3-phenyl-1-propanol ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ )
- chlorobenzene and ethylbenzene
- nitrobenzene and *m*-dibromobenzene
- benzyl ethyl ether and allyl phenyl ether

23. Describe chemical methods (not necessarily simple tests) that would enable you to distinguish between the compounds of each of the following sets. (For example, make use of Table 19.1, page 776).

- 1-phenylpropene, 2-phenylpropene, 3-phenylpropene (allylbenzene)
- all alkylbenzenes of formula  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{12}$
- m*-chlorotoluene and benzyl chloride
- p*-divinylbenzene ( $p\text{-C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2)_2$ ) and 1-phenyl-1,3-butadiene
- $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHClCH}_3$ ,  $p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ , and  $p\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$

24. An unknown compound is believed to be one of the following. Describe how you would go about finding out which of the possibilities the unknown actually is. Where possible, use simple chemical tests; where necessary, use more elaborate chemical methods like quantitative hydrogenation, cleavage, etc. Where necessary, make use of Table 19.1, page 776).

	b.p.		b.p.
bromobenzene	156°	<i>p</i> -chlorotoluene	162°
3-phenylpropene	157	<i>o</i> -ethyltoluene	162
<i>m</i> -ethyltoluene	158	<i>p</i> -ethyltoluene	163
<i>n</i> -propylbenzene	159	mesitylene	165
<i>o</i> -chlorotoluene	159	2-phenylpropene	165
<i>m</i> -chlorotoluene	162		

25. The compound *indene*,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8$ , found in coal tar, rapidly decolorizes  $\text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4$  and dilute  $\text{KMnO}_4$ . Only one mole of hydrogen is absorbed readily to form *indane*,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{10}$ . More vigorous hydrogenation yields a compound of formula  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{16}$ . Vigorous oxidation of indene yields phthalic acid. What is the structure of indene? Of indane? (Hint: See Problem 5.12, p. 189.)

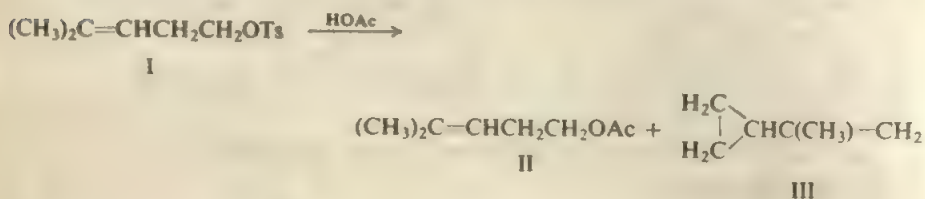
26. A solution of 0.01 mole *tert*-butyl peroxide (p. 121) in excess ethylbenzene was irradiated with ultraviolet light for several hours. Gas chromatographic analysis of the product showed the presence of nearly 0.02 mole of *tert*-butyl alcohol. Evaporation of the alcohol and unreacted ethylbenzene left a solid residue which was separated by chromatography into just two products: A (1 g) and B (1 g). A and B each had the empirical formula  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8$  and m.w. 210; each was inert toward cold dilute  $\text{KMnO}_4$  and toward  $\text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4$ .

When isopropylbenzene was substituted for ethylbenzene in the above reaction, exactly similar results were obtained, except that the single compound C (2.2 g) was obtained instead of A and B. C had the empirical formula  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{11}$ , m.w. 238, and was inert toward cold, dilute  $\text{KMnO}_4$  and toward  $\text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4$ .

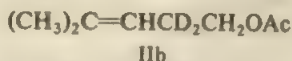
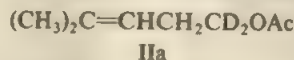
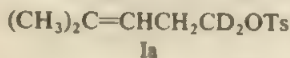
What are the most likely structures for A, B, and C, and what is the most likely mechanism by which they are formed?

27. Account in detail for each of the following sets of observations.

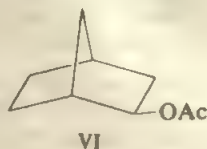
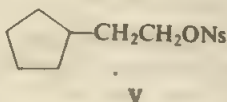
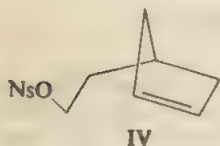
(a) Compound I reacts with acetic acid 1200 times as fast as does ethyl tosylate,



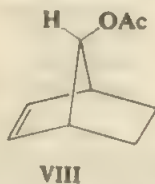
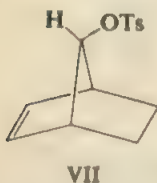
and yields not only II but also III. When the labeled compound Ia is used, product II consists of equal amounts of IIa and IIb.



(b) The cyclopentene derivative IV (ONs = *p*-nitrobenzenesulfonate) undergoes solvolysis in acetic acid 95 times as fast as the analogous saturated compound (V), and gives *exo*-norbornyl acetate (VI).

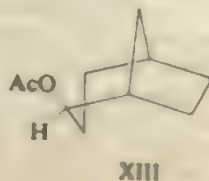
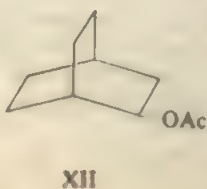
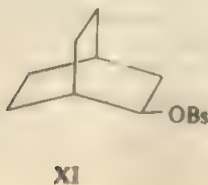


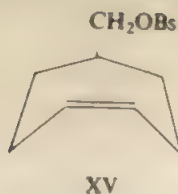
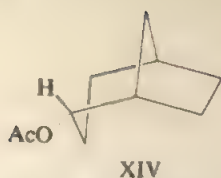
(c) *anti*-7-Norbornylene tosylate (VII) reacts with acetic acid  $10^{11}$  times as fast



as the saturated analog, and yields *anti*-7-norbornylene acetate (VIII) with *retention* of configuration. Solvolysis of VII in the presence of  $\text{NaBH}_4$  gives IX and X.

28. (a) We saw (Sec. 16.21) that optically active *exo*-norbornyl brosylate reacts with acetic acid to give optically inactive *exo*-norbornyl acetate. The related brosylate XI similarly reacts to give XII; yet in this case optically active brosylate yields optically active acetate.





Oddly enough, the complete racemization in the norbornyl reaction and the complete retention here are taken as evidence of the same fundamental behavior. On what common basis can you account for all of the above observations? (*Hint*: See also part (b).)

(b) Brosylate XI also yields XIII, but no XIV. When XI is optically active, so is the XIII that is obtained. How do these facts fit into your answer to (a)?

(c) Brosylate XV reacts with acetic acid 30 times as fast as the corresponding saturated compound does, and yields (optically inactive) XIV but no XIII. How do you account for these observations?

29. The bond dissociation energy for the central C—C bond of hexacyclopropylethane is only 45 kcal/mol. Besides steric interaction, what is a second factor that may contribute to the weakness of this bond? (*Hint*: See Sec. 5.9.)



## Spectroscopy and Structure

### 17.1 Determination of structure: spectroscopic methods

Near the beginning of our study (Sec. 3.32), we outlined the general steps an organic chemist takes when he is confronted with an unknown compound and sets out to find the answer to the question: *what is it?* We have seen, in more detail, some of the ways in which he carries out the various steps: determination of molecular weight and molecular formula; detection of the presence—or absence—of certain functional groups; degradation to simpler compounds, conversion into derivatives; synthesis by an unambiguous route.

At every stage of structure determination—from the isolation and purification of the unknown substance to its final comparison with an authentic sample—the use of instruments has, since World War II, revolutionized organic chemical practice. Instruments not only help an organic chemist to do what he does *faster* but, more important, let him do what could not be done *at all* before: to analyze complicated mixtures of closely related compounds; to describe the structure of molecules in detail never imagined before; to detect, identify, and measure the concentration of short-lived intermediates whose very existence was, not so long ago, only speculation.

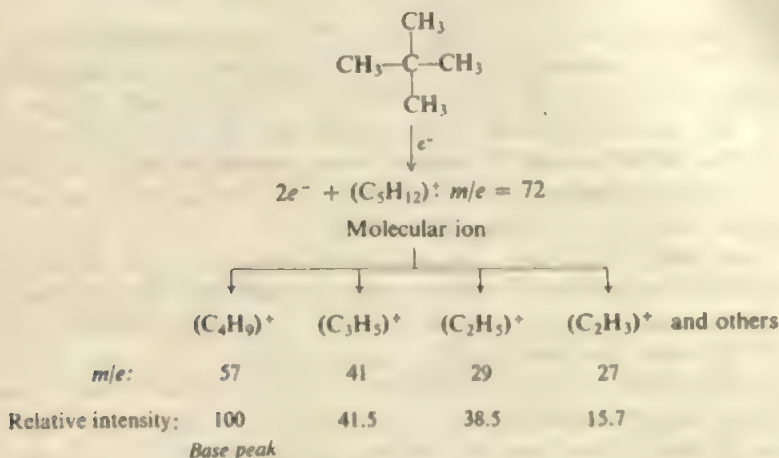
By now, we are familiar with some of the features of the organic chemical landscape; so long as we do not wander too far from home, we can find our way about without becoming lost. We are ready to learn a little about how to interpret the kind of information these modern instruments give, so that they can help us to see more clearly the new things we shall meet, and to recognize them more readily when we encounter them again. The instruments most directly concerned with our primary interest, molecular structure, are the *spectrometers*—measurers of spectra. Of the various spectra, we shall actually work with only two: *infrared (IR)* and *nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR)*, since they are the workhorses of the organic chemical laboratory today; of these, we shall spend most of our time with NMR. We shall look very briefly at three other kinds of spectra: *mass*, *ultraviolet (UV)*, and *electron spin resonance (ESR)*.

In all this, we must constantly keep in mind that what we learn at this stage must be greatly simplified. There are many exceptions to the generalizations we shall learn; there are many pitfalls into which we can stumble. Our ability to apply spectroscopic methods to the determination of organic structure is limited by our understanding of organic chemistry as a whole—and in this we are, of course, only beginners. But so long as we are aware of the dangers of a little learning, and are willing to make mistakes and profit from them, it is worthwhile for us to become beginners in this area of organic chemistry, too.

Let us look first at the mass spectrum, and then at the others, which, as we shall see, are all parts—different ranges of wavelengths—of a single spectrum: that of electromagnetic radiation.

## 17.2 The mass spectrum

In the mass spectrometer, molecules are bombarded with a beam of energetic electrons. The molecules are ionized and broken up into many fragments, some of which are positive ions. Each kind of ion has a particular ratio of mass to charge, or  $m/e$  value. For most ions, the charge is 1, so that  $m/e$  is simply the mass of the ion. Thus, for neopentane:



The set of ions is analyzed in such a way that a signal is obtained for each value of  $m/e$  that is represented; the intensity of each signal reflects the relative abundance of the ion producing the signal. The largest peak is called the *base peak*; its intensity is taken as 100, and the intensities of the other peaks are expressed relative to it. A plot—or even a list—showing the relative intensities of signals at the various  $m/e$  values is called a *mass spectrum*, and is highly characteristic of a particular compound. Compare, for example, the spectra of two isomers shown in Fig. 17.1.

Mass spectra can be used in two general ways (a) to prove the identity of two compounds, and (b) to help establish the structure of a new compound.

Two compounds are shown to be identical by the fact that they have identical physical properties: melting point, boiling point, density, refractive index, etc. The greater the number of physical properties measured, the stronger the evidence. Now, a single mass spectrum amounts to dozens of physical properties, since it shows the relative abundances of dozens of different fragments. If we measure the

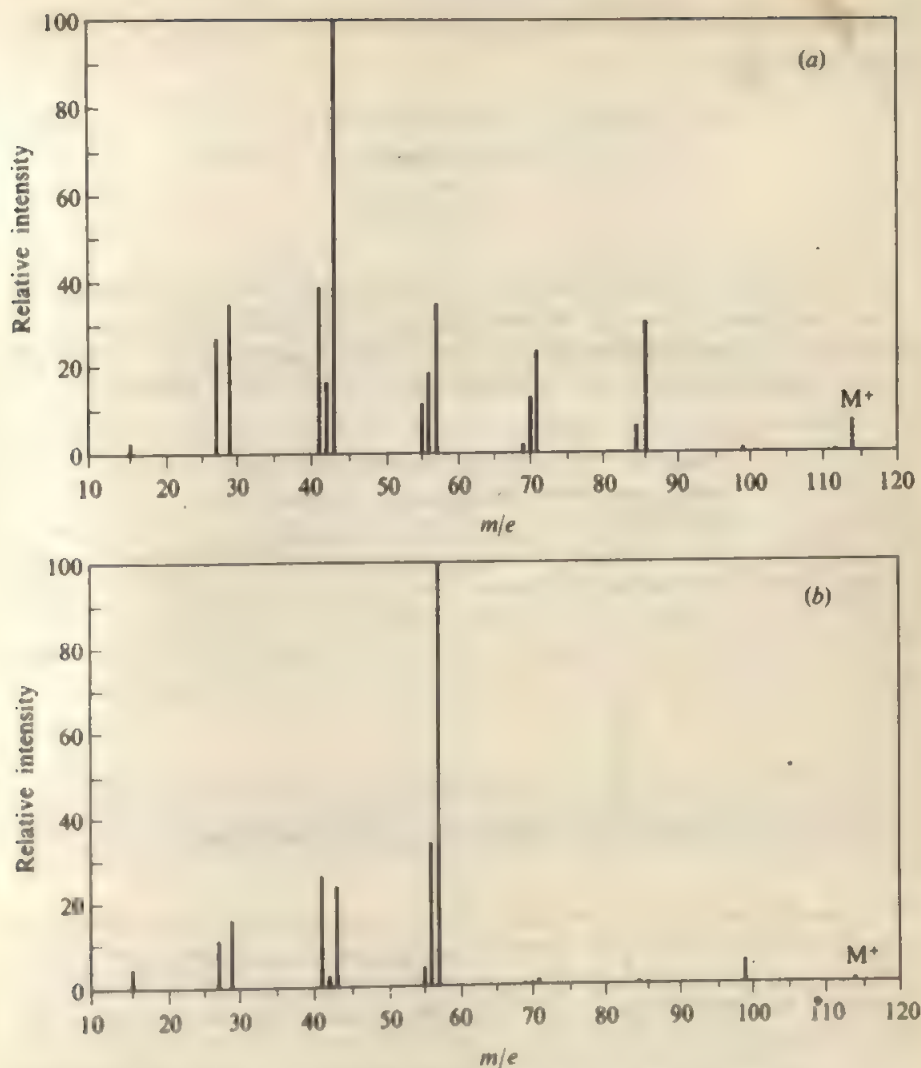


Figure 17.1. Mass spectra of two isomeric alkanes. (a) *n*-Octane; (b) 2,2,4-trimethylpentane.

mass spectrum of an unknown compound and find it to be identical with the spectrum of a previously reported compound of known structure, then we can conclude that—almost beyond the shadow of doubt—the two compounds are identical.

The mass spectrum helps to establish the structure of a *new* compound in several different ways. It can give an exact molecular weight; it can give a molecular formula—or at least narrow the possibilities to a very few, and it can indicate the presence in a molecule of certain structural units.

If one electron is removed from the parent molecule, there is produced  $M^+$ , the *molecular ion* (or *parent ion*), whose  $m/e$  value is, of course, the molecular weight of the compound. Sometimes the  $M^+$  peak is the base peak, and is easily recognized, often, though, it is not the base peak—it may even be very small—and considerable

work is required to locate it. Once identified, it gives the most accurate molecular weight obtainable.



Molecular ion  
(Parent ion)

$m/e$  = mol. wt.

We might at first think that the  $M^+$  peak would be the peak of highest  $m/e$  value. This is not so, however. Most elements occur naturally as several isotopes; generally the lightest one greatly predominates, and the heavier ones occur to lesser extent. Table 17.1 lists the relative abundances of several heavy isotopes.

**Table 17.1** ABUNDANCE OF SOME HEAVY ISOTOPES

Heavy isotope	Abundance relative to isotope of lowest atomic weight
$^2\text{H}$	0.015%
$^{13}\text{C}$	1.11
$^{15}\text{N}$	0.37
$^{18}\text{O}$	0.20
$^{33}\text{S}$	0.78
$^{34}\text{S}$	4.4
$^{37}\text{Cl}$	32.5
$^{81}\text{Br}$	98.0

The molecular weight that one usually measures and works with is the sum of the average atomic weights of the elements, and reflects the presence of these heavy isotopes. But this is not true of the molecular weight obtained from the mass spectrum; here, the  $M^+$  peak is due to molecules containing only the commonest isotope of each element.

Consider benzene, for example. The  $M^+$  peak,  $m/e$  78, is due only to ions of formula  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6^+$ . There is a peak at  $m/e$  79, the  $M + 1$  peak, which is due to  $\text{C}_5^{13}\text{CH}_6^+$  and  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{D}^+$ . There is an  $M + 2$  peak at  $m/e$  80, due to  $\text{C}_4^{13}\text{C}_2\text{H}_6^+$ ,  $\text{C}_5^{13}\text{CH}_5\text{D}^+$ , and  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{D}_2^+$ . Now, because of the low natural abundance of most heavy isotopes, these isotopic peaks are generally much less intense than the  $M^+$  peak; just how much less intense depends upon which elements they are due to. In the case of benzene, the  $M + 1$  and  $M + 2$  peaks are, respectively, 6.75% and 0.18% as intense as the  $M^+$  peak. (Table 17.1 shows us, however, that a monochloro compound would have an  $M + 2$  peak about one-third as intense as the  $M^+$  peak, and a monobromo compound would have  $M$  and  $M + 2$  peaks of about equal intensity.)

It is these isotopic peaks that make it possible for us to determine the molecular formula of the compound. Knowing the relative natural abundances of isotopes, one can calculate for any molecular formula the relative intensity to be expected for each isotopic peak:  $M + 1$ ,  $M + 2$ , etc. The results of such calculations are available in tables. Consider, for example, a compound for which  $M^+$  is 44. The compound might be (among other less likely possibilities)  $\text{N}_2\text{O}$ ,  $\text{CO}_2$ ,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{O}$ , or



$C_3H_8$ . By use of Table 17.2, we clearly could pick out the most likely formula from the mass spectral data.

**Table 17.2** CALCULATED INTENSITIES OF ISOTOPIC PEAKS

	M	M + 1	M + 2
$N_2O$	100	0.80	0.20
$CO_2$	100	1.16	0.40
$C_3H_4O$	100	1.91	0.01
$C_3H_8$	100	3.37	0.04

Finally, study of compounds of known structure is beginning to reveal the factors that determine which fragments a particular structure is likely to break into. In this we can find much that is familiar to us: the preferential formation of carbocations that we recognize as being relatively stable ones; elimination of small, stable molecules like water, ammonia, and carbon monoxide. Under the energetic conditions, extensive rearrangement can occur, complicating the interpretation; but here, too, patterns are emerging. The *direction* of rearrangement is, as we would expect, toward more stable ions. As this knowledge accumulates, the process is reversed: from the kind of fragmentation an unknown compound gives, its structure is deduced.

**Problem 17.1** (a) Referring to the neopentane fragmentation (p. 676), what is a likely structure for  $C_4H_9^+$ ;  $C_3H_5^+$ ;  $C_2H_5^+$ ;  $C_2H_3^+$ ? (b) Write a balanced equation for the formation of  $C_4H_9^+$  from the molecular ion  $C_5H_{12}^+$ .

### 17.3 The electromagnetic spectrum

We are already familiar with various kinds of electromagnetic radiation: light—visible, ultraviolet, infrared—x-rays, radio and radar waves. These are simply different parts of a broad spectrum that stretches from gamma rays, whose wavelengths are measured in fractions of an Angström unit, to radio waves, whose wavelengths are measured in meters or even kilometers. All these waves have the same velocity,  $3 \times 10^{10}$  centimeters per second. Their frequency is related to the wavelength by the expression

$$\nu = c/\lambda$$

where

$\nu$  = frequency, in Hz (*Hertz*, cycles/sec)

$\lambda$  = wavelength, in cm

$c$  = velocity,  $3 \times 10^{10}$  cm/sec

The shorter the wavelength, the higher the frequency.

When a beam of electromagnetic radiation is passed through a substance, the radiation can be either absorbed or transmitted, depending upon its frequency and the structure of the molecules it encounters. Electromagnetic radiation is energy, and hence when a molecule absorbs radiation, it gains energy. Just how much

energy it gains depends upon the frequency of the radiation: the higher the frequency (the shorter the wavelength), the greater the gain in energy.

$$\Delta E = h\nu$$

where

$\Delta E$  = gain in energy, in ergs

$h$  = Planck's constant,  $6.5 \times 10^{-27}$  erg-sec

$\nu$  = frequency, in Hz

The energy gained by the molecule in this way may bring about increased vibration or rotation of the atoms, or may raise electrons to higher energy levels. The particular frequency of radiation that a given molecule can absorb depends upon the changes in vibrations or rotations or electronic states that are permitted to a molecule of that structure. The spectrum of a compound is a plot that shows how much electromagnetic radiation is absorbed (or transmitted) at each frequency. It can be highly characteristic of the compound's structure.

## 17.4 The infrared spectrum

Of all the properties of an organic compound, the one that, by itself, gives the most information about the compound's structure is its infrared spectrum.

A molecule is constantly vibrating: its bonds *stretch* (and contract), and *bend* with respect to each other. Changes in vibrations of a molecule are caused by absorption of infrared light: light lying beyond (lower frequency, longer wavelength, less energy) the red of the visible spectrum.

A particular part of the infrared spectrum is referred to either by its wavelength or—~~or~~—and this is considered preferable—by its frequency. Wavelength is expressed in microns,  $\mu$  ( $1 \mu = 10^{-4}$  cm or  $10^4$  Å). Frequency is expressed, not in Hertz, but in *wavenumbers*,  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ , often called *reciprocal centimeters*; the wavenumber is simply the number of waves per centimeter, and is equal to the reciprocal of the wavelength in centimeters.

Like the mass spectrum, an infrared spectrum is a highly characteristic property of an organic compound—see, for example, the spectra in Fig. 17.2—and can be used both to establish the identity of two compounds and to reveal the structure of a new compound.

Two substances that have identical infrared spectra are, in effect, identical in thousands of different physical properties—the absorption of light at thousands of different frequencies—and must almost certainly be the same compound. (One region of the infrared spectrum is called, appropriately, the *fingerprint* region.)

The infrared spectrum helps to reveal the structure of a new compound by telling us what groups are present in—or absent from—the molecule. A particular group of atoms gives rise to *characteristic absorption bands*; that is to say, a particular group absorbs light of certain frequencies that are much the same from compound to compound. For example, the  $-\text{OH}$  group of alcohols absorbs strongly at  $3200\text{--}3600 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ ; the  $\text{C}=\text{O}$  group of ketones at  $1710 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ ; the  $-\text{C}=\text{N}$  group at  $2250 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ ; the  $-\text{CH}_3$  group at  $1450$  and  $1375 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ .

Interpretation of an infrared spectrum is not a simple matter. Bands may be obscured by the overlapping of other bands. Overtones (harmonics) may appear at just twice the frequency of the fundamental band. The absorption band of a particular group may be *shifted* by various structural features—conjugation, electron withdrawal by a neighboring substituent, angle strain or van der Waals strain,

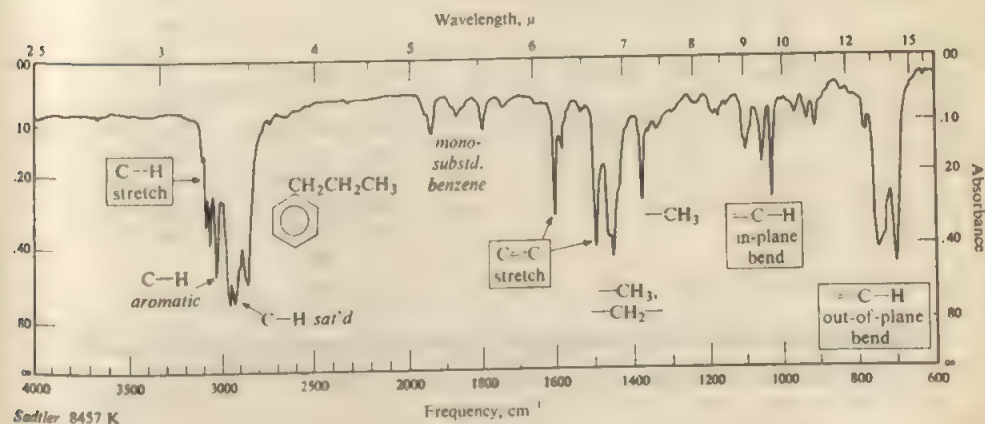
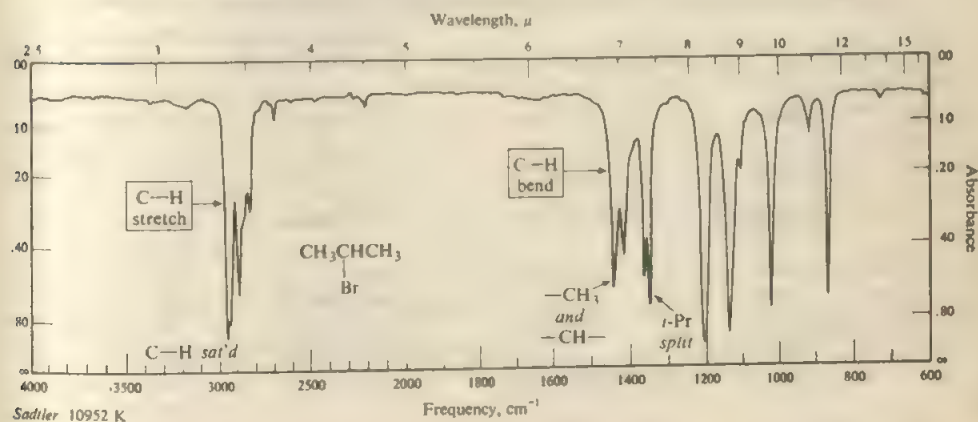
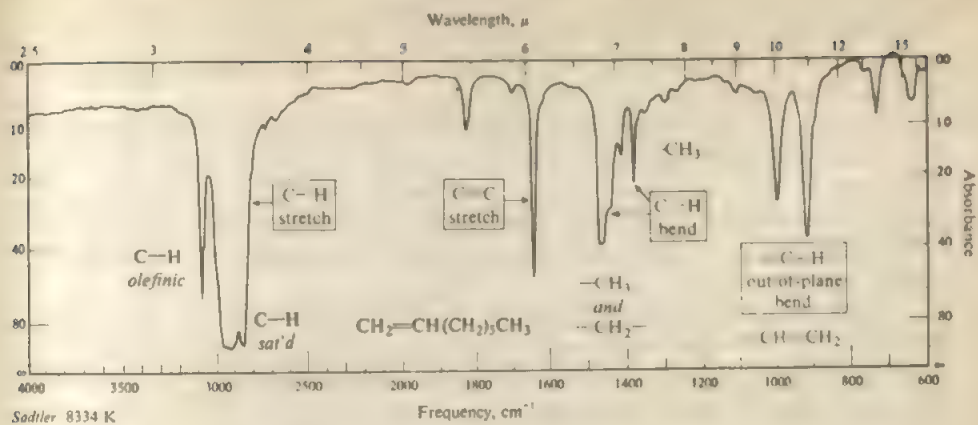


Figure 17.2. Infrared spectra. (a) 1-Octene; (b) isopropyl bromide; (c) *n*-butylbenzene.

hydrogen bonding—and be mistaken for a band of an entirely different group. (On the other hand, recognized for what they are, such shifts *reveal* the structural features that cause them.)

In our work we shall have modest aims: to learn to recognize a few of the more striking absorption bands, and to gain a little practice in correlating infrared data with other kinds of information. We must realize that we shall be taking from an infrared spectrum only a tiny fraction of the information that is there, and which can be gotten from it by an experienced person with a broad understanding of organic structure.

Table 17.3 lists infrared absorption frequencies characteristic of various groups. In the following sections we shall look more closely at the infrared spectra of hydrocarbons, alcohols, and ethers; and, in following chapters, at the infrared spectra of other families of compounds.

Table 17.3 CHARACTERISTIC INFRARED ABSORPTION FREQUENCIES<sup>a</sup>

Bond	Compound type	Frequency range, cm <sup>-1</sup>	Reference
C—H	Alkanes	2850–2960 1350–1470	Sec. 17.5
C—H	Alkenes	3020–3080 ( <i>m</i> ) 675–1000	Sec. 17.5
C—H	Aromatic rings	3000–3100 ( <i>m</i> ) 675–870	Sec. 17.5
C—H	Alkynes	3300	Sec. 17.5
C=C	Alkenes	1640–1680 ( <i>v</i> )	Sec. 17.5
C≡C	Alkynes	2100–2260 ( <i>v</i> )	Sec. 17.5
C=C	Aromatic rings	1500, 1600 ( <i>v</i> )	Sec. 17.5
C—O	Alcohols, ethers, carboxylic acids, esters	1080–1300	Sec. 17.6 Sec. 17.7 Sec. 19.22 Sec. 20.26
C=O	Aldehydes, ketones, carboxylic acids, esters	1690–1760	Sec. 18.17 Sec. 19.22 Sec. 20.26
O—H	Monomeric alcohols, phenols	3610–3640 ( <i>v</i> )	Sec. 17.6 Sec. 24.17
	Hydrogen-bonded alcohols, phenols	3200–3600 ( <i>broad</i> )	Sec. 17.6 Sec. 24.17
	Carboxylic acids	2500–3000 ( <i>broad</i> )	Sec. 19.22
N—H	Amines	3300–3500 ( <i>m</i> )	Sec. 23.22
C—N	Amines	1180–1360	Sec. 23.22
C≡N	Nitriles	2210–2260 ( <i>v</i> )	
—NO <sub>2</sub>	Nitro compounds	1515–1560 1345–1385	

<sup>a</sup> All bands strong unless marked *m*, moderate, *w*, weak, *v*, variable

## 17.5 Infrared spectra of hydrocarbons

In this first encounter with infrared spectra, we shall see absorption bands due to vibrations of carbon hydrogen and carbon carbon bonds—bands that will constantly reappear in all the spectra we meet, since along with their various functional groups, compounds of all kinds contain carbon and hydrogen. We must



expect to find these spectra complicated and, at first, confusing. Our aim is to learn to pick out of the confusion those bands that are most characteristic of certain structural features.

Let us look first at the various kinds of vibration, and see how the positions of the bands associated with them vary with structure.

Bands due to *carbon-carbon stretching* may appear at about 1500 and 1600  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  for aromatic bonds, at 1650  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  for double bonds (shifted to about 1600  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  by conjugation), and at 2100  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  for triple bonds. These bands, however, are often unreliable. (They may disappear entirely for fairly symmetrically substituted alkynes and alkenes, because the vibrations do not cause the change in dipole moment that is essential for infrared absorption.) More generally useful bands are due to the various carbon-hydrogen vibrations.

Absorption due to *carbon-hydrogen stretching*, which occurs at the high-frequency end of the spectrum, is characteristic of the hybridization of the carbon holding the hydrogen: at 2800–3000  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  for tetrahedral carbon; at 3000–3100  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  for trigonal carbon (alkenes and aromatic rings); and at 3300  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  for digonal carbon (alkynes).

Absorption due to various kinds of *carbon-hydrogen bending*, which occurs at lower frequencies, can also be characteristic of structure. Methyl and methylene groups absorb at about 1430–1470  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; for methyl, there is another band, quite characteristic, at 1375  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ . The isopropyl "split" is characteristic: a doublet, with equal intensity of the two peaks, at 1370 and 1385  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  (confirmed by a band at 1170  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ). *tert*-Butyl gives an unsymmetrical doublet: 1370  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  (*strong*) and 1395  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  (*moderate*).

Carbon-hydrogen bending in alkenes and aromatic rings is both in-plane and out-of-plane, and of these the latter kind is more useful. For **alkenes**, out-of-plane bending gives strong bands in the 800–1000  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  region, the exact location depending upon the nature and number of substituents, and the stereochemistry:

$\text{RCH}=\text{CH}_2$	910–920 $\text{cm}^{-1}$ 990–1000	<i>cis</i> - $\text{RCH}=\text{CHR}$	675–730 $\text{cm}^{-1}$ (variable)
$\text{R}_2\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$	880–900	<i>trans</i> - $\text{RCH}=\text{CHR}$	965–975

For **aromatic rings**, out-of-plane C–H bending gives strong absorption in the 675–870  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  region, the exact frequency depending upon the number and location of substituents; for many compounds absorption occurs at:

monosubstituted	690–710 $\text{cm}^{-1}$ 730–770	<i>m</i> -disubstituted	690–710 $\text{cm}^{-1}$ 750–810
<i>o</i> -disubstituted	735–770	<i>p</i> -disubstituted	810–840

Now, what do we look for in the infrared spectrum of a hydrocarbon? To begin with, we can rather readily tell whether the compound is aromatic or purely aliphatic. The spectra in Fig. 17.2 (p. 681) show the contrast that is typical: aliphatic absorption is strongest at higher frequency and is essentially missing below 900  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; aromatic absorption is strong at lower frequencies (C–H out-of-plane bending) between 650 and 900  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ . In addition, an aromatic ring will show C–H stretching at 3000–3100  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; often, there is carbon-carbon stretching at 1500 and 1600  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  and C–H in-plane bending in the 1000–1100  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  region.

An alkene shows C—H stretching at  $3000\text{--}3100\text{ cm}^{-1}$  and, most characteristically, strong out-of-plane C—H bending between  $800\text{--}1000\text{ cm}^{-1}$ , as discussed above.

A terminal alkyne,  $\text{RC}\equiv\text{CH}$ , is characterized by its C—H stretching band, a strong and sharp band at  $3300\text{ cm}^{-1}$ , and by carbon-carbon stretching at  $2100\text{ cm}^{-1}$ . A disubstituted alkyne, on the other hand, does not show the  $3300\text{ cm}^{-1}$  band and, if the two groups are fairly similar, the  $2100\text{ cm}^{-1}$  band may be missing, too.

Some of these characteristic bands are labeled in the spectra of Fig. 17.2 (p. 681).

**Problem 17.2** What is a likely structure for a hydrocarbon of formula  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}$  that shows strong absorption at  $2920$  and  $2840\text{ cm}^{-1}$ , and at  $1450\text{ cm}^{-1}$ ; none above  $2920\text{ cm}^{-1}$ ; and below  $1450\text{ cm}^{-1}$  none until about  $1250\text{ cm}^{-1}$ ?

**Problem 17.3** Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the infrared spectra in Fig. 17.6 (p. 687).

## 17.6 Infrared spectra of alcohols

In the infrared spectrum of a hydrogen-bonded alcohol—and this is the kind that we commonly see—the most conspicuous feature is a strong, broad band in the  $3200\text{--}3600\text{ cm}^{-1}$  region due to O—H stretching (see Fig. 17.3).

**O—H stretching, strong, broad**

Alcohols, ROH (or phenols, ArOH)  $3200\text{--}3600\text{ cm}^{-1}$

(A monomeric alcohol gives a sharp, variable band at  $3610\text{--}3640\text{ cm}^{-1}$ .)

Another strong, broad band, due to C—O stretching, appears in the  $1000\text{--}1200\text{ cm}^{-1}$  region, the exact frequency depending on the nature of the alcohol:

**C—O stretching, strong, broad**

1° ROH	about $1050\text{ cm}^{-1}$	3° ROH	about $1150\text{ cm}^{-1}$
2° ROH	about $1100\text{ cm}^{-1}$	ArOH	about $1230\text{ cm}^{-1}$

(Compare the locations of this band in the spectra of Fig. 17.3.)

Phenols (ArOH) also show both these bands, but the C—O stretching appears at somewhat higher frequencies. Ethers show C—O stretching, but the O—H band is absent. Carboxylic acids and esters show C—O stretching, but give absorption characteristic of the carbonyl group, C=O, as well. (For a comparison of certain oxygen compounds, see Table 20.3, p. 847.)

**Problem 17.4** Upon hydrogenation, compound A ( $\text{C}_8\text{H}_8\text{O}$ ) is converted into B ( $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{10}\text{O}$ ). On the basis of their infrared spectra (Fig. 17.7, p. 688) give the structural formulas of A and B.

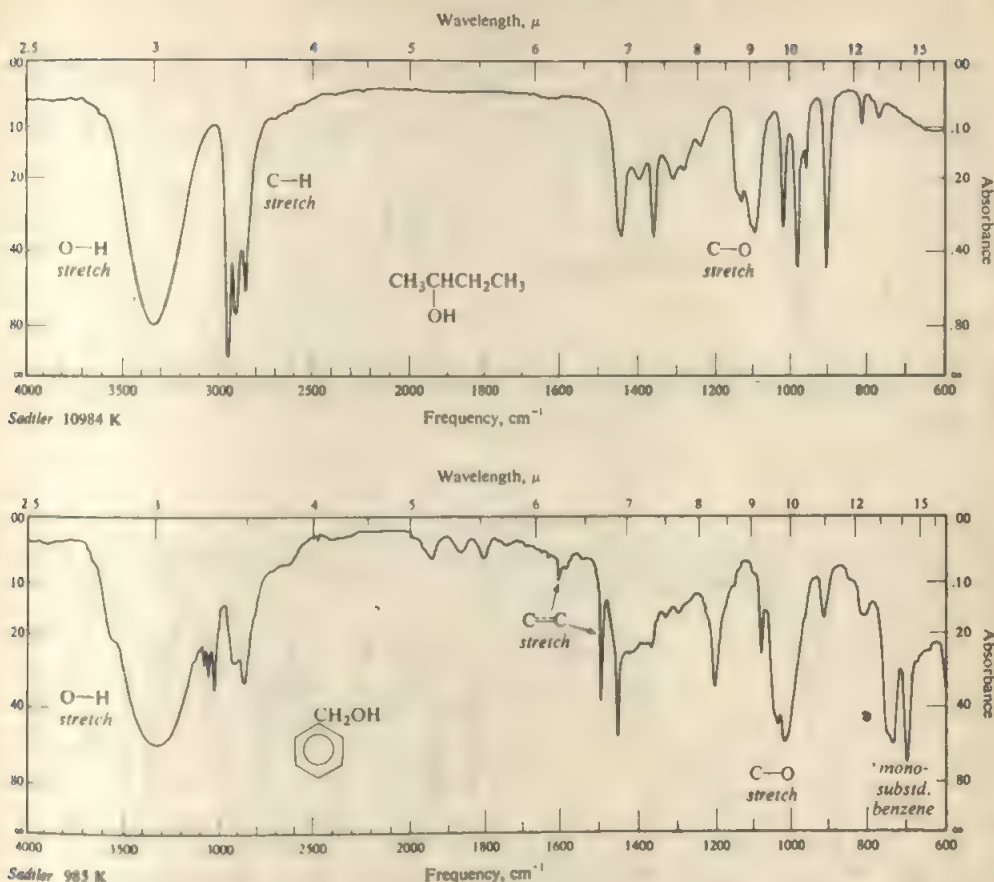


Figure 17.3. Infrared spectra of (a) *sec*-butyl alcohol and (b) benzyl alcohol.

## 17.7 Infrared spectra of ethers

The infrared spectrum of an ether does not, of course, show the O—H band characteristic of alcohols; but the strong band due to C—O stretching is still present, in the  $1060\text{--}1300\text{ cm}^{-1}$  range, and is the striking feature of the spectrum. (See Fig. 17.4, p. 686).

**C—O stretching, strong, broad**

**Alkyl ethers  $1060\text{--}1150\text{ cm}^{-1}$**

**Aryl and vinyl ethers  $1200\text{--}1275\text{ cm}^{-1}$  (and, weaker, at  $1020\text{--}1075\text{ cm}^{-1}$ )**

Carboxylic acids and esters show C—O stretching, but show carbonyl absorption as well. (For a comparison of certain oxygen compounds, see Table 20.3, p. 847.)

**Problem 17.5** Give a structure or structures for the compound whose infrared spectrum is shown in Fig. 17.5 (p. 686)

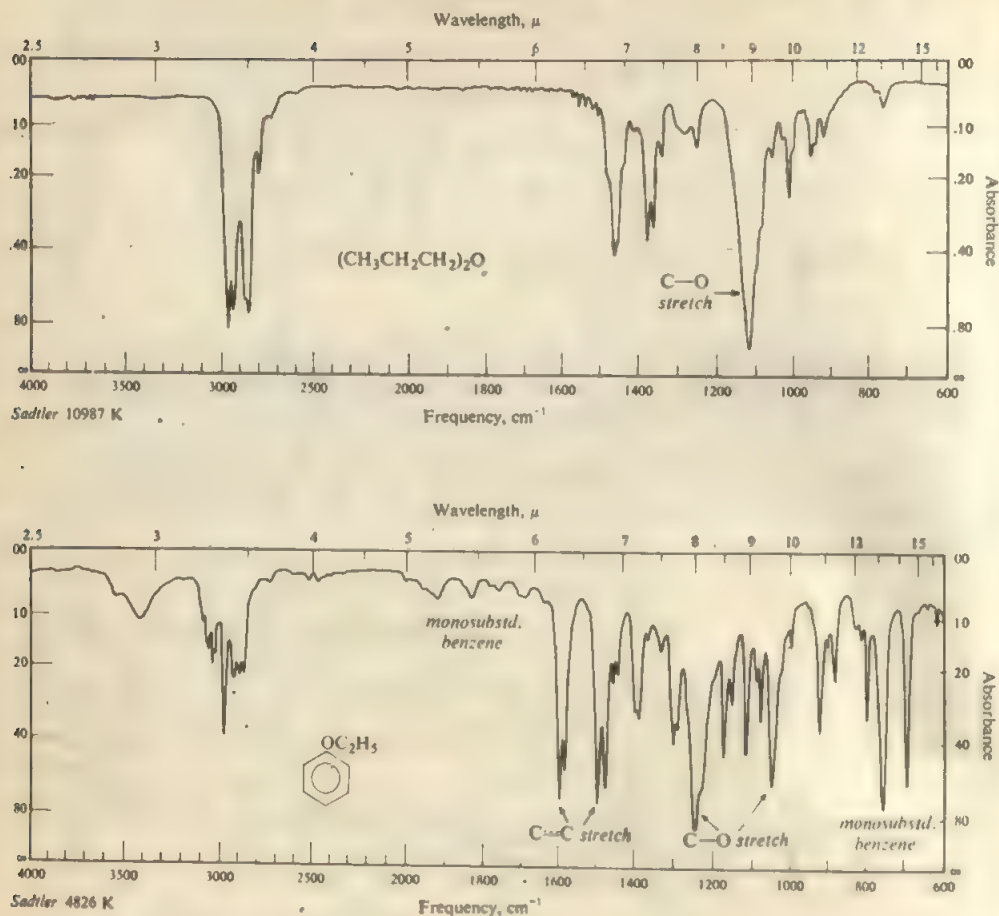


Figure 17.4. Infrared spectra of (a) di-*n*-propyl ether and (b) phenetole.

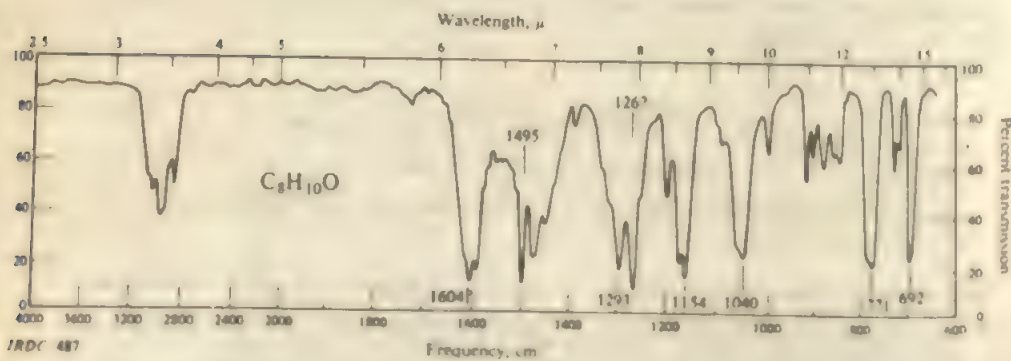


Figure 17.5. Infrared spectrum for Problem 17.5, p. 685



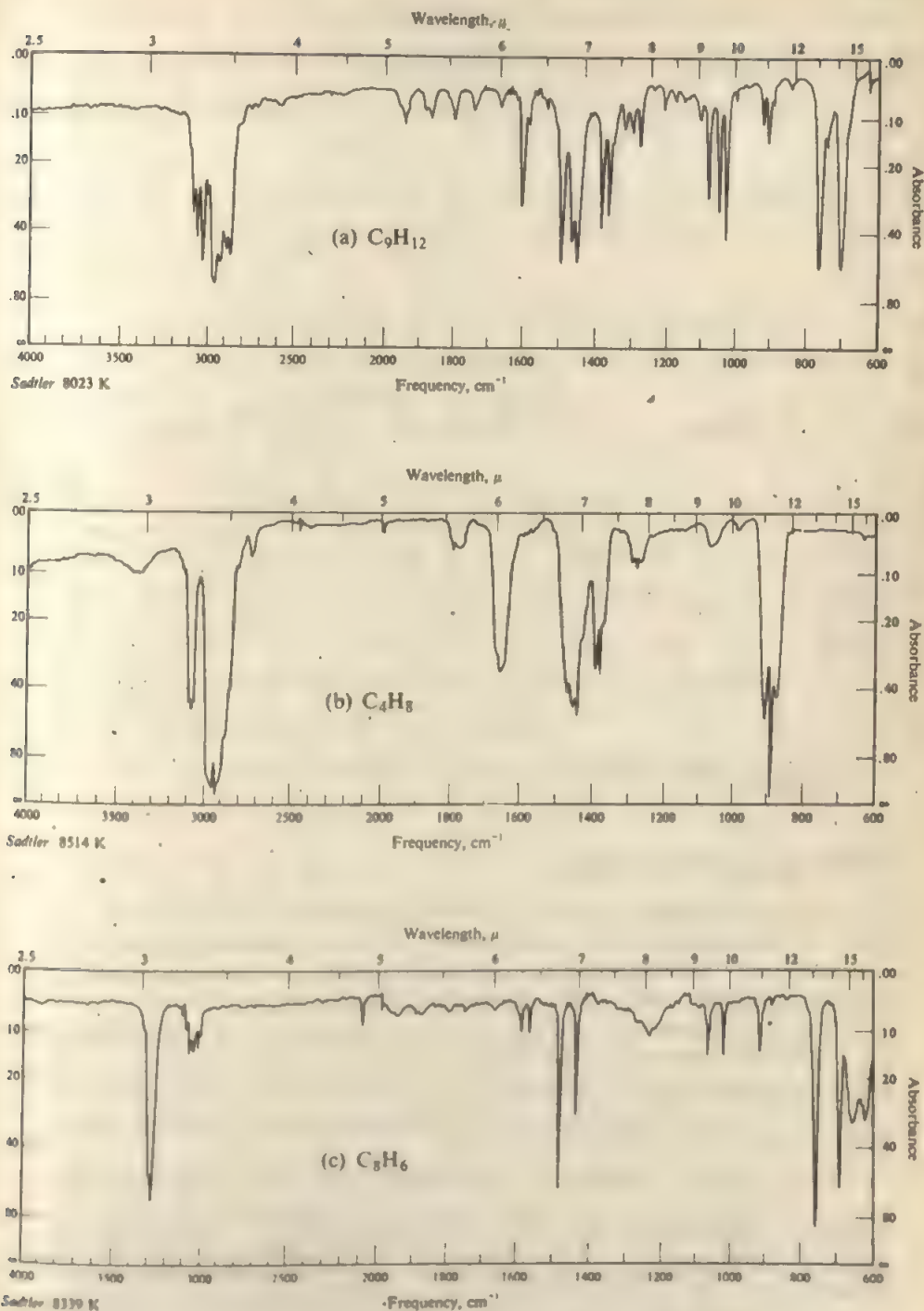


Figure 17.6. Infrared spectra for Problem 17.3, p 684

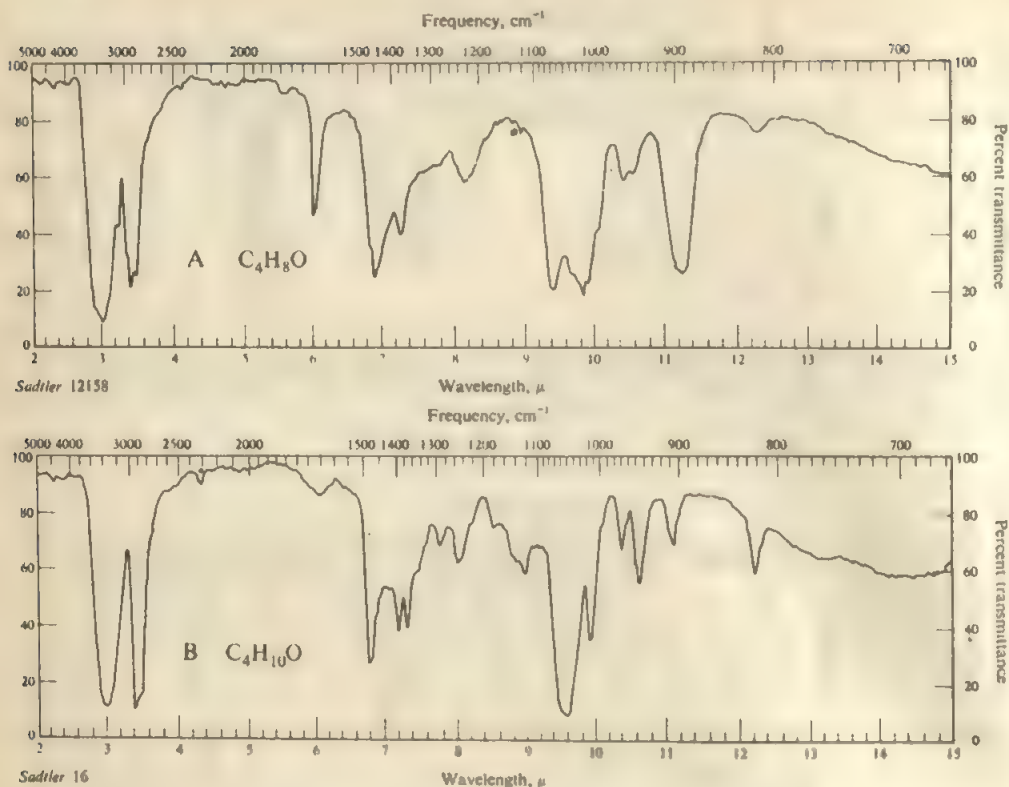


Figure 17.7. Infrared spectra for Problem 17.4, p. 684.

## 17.8 The ultraviolet spectrum

Light of wavelength between about 400 nm and 750 nm is visible. (A *nanometer*, nm, is  $10^{-7}$  cm, and equals one m $\mu$ .) Just beyond the red end of the visible spectrum ( $\lambda$  greater than 750 nm) lies the infrared region. Just beyond the violet end of the visible spectrum ( $\lambda$  less than 400 nm) lies the ultraviolet region.

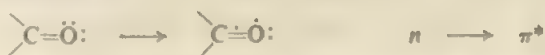
The ultraviolet spectrometers commonly used measure absorption of light in the visible and "near" ultraviolet region, that is, in the 200–750 nm range. This light is of higher frequency (and greater energy) than infrared light and, when it is absorbed by a molecule, the changes it produces are, naturally, ones that require greater energy: changes in electronic states.

In a transition to a higher electronic level, a molecule can go *from* any of a number of sub-levels—corresponding to various vibrational and rotational states—to any of a number of sub-levels, as a result, ultraviolet absorption bands are broad. Where an infrared spectrum shows many sharp peaks, a typical ultraviolet spectrum shows only a few broad humps. One can conveniently describe such a spectrum in terms of the *position* of the top of the hump ( $\lambda_{\text{max}}$ ) and the *intensity* of that absorption ( $\epsilon_{\text{max}}$ , the extinction coefficient).

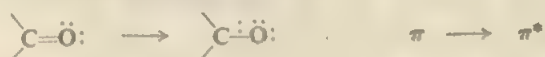
When we speak of a molecule as being raised to a higher electronic level, we mean that an electron has been changed from one orbital to another orbital of higher energy. This electron can be of any of the kinds we have encountered—a  $\sigma$  electron, a  $\pi$  electron, or an  $n$  electron (a non-bonding electron—that is, one of an

unshared pair). A  $\sigma$  electron is held tightly, and a good deal of energy is required to excite it: energy corresponding to ultraviolet light of short wavelength, in a region — “far” ultraviolet—outside the range of the usual spectrometer. It is chiefly excitations of the comparatively loosely held  $n$  and  $\pi$  electrons that appear in the (near) ultraviolet spectrum, and, of these, only jumps to the lower—more stable—excited states.

The electronic transitions of most concern to the organic chemist are: (a)  $n \rightarrow \pi^*$ , in which the electron of an unshared pair goes to an unstable (*anti-bonding*)  $\pi$  orbital, as, for example,



and (b)  $\pi \rightarrow \pi^*$ , in which an electron goes from a stable (*bonding*)  $\pi$  orbital to an unstable  $\pi$  orbital, as, for example,



A  $\pi \rightarrow \pi^*$  transition can occur for even a simple alkene, like ethylene, but absorption occurs in the far ultraviolet. Conjugation of double bonds, however, lowers the energy required for the transition, and absorption moves to longer wavelengths, where it can be more conveniently measured. If there are enough double bonds in conjugation, absorption will move into the visible region, and the compound will be colored.  $\beta$ -Carotene, for example, is a yellow pigment found in carrots and green leaves, and is a precursor of vitamin A; it contains eleven carbon-carbon double bonds in conjugation, and owes its color to absorption at the violet end of the visible spectrum ( $\lambda_{\max}$  451 nm).

How does conjugation bring about this effect? We have seen (Sec. 9.22) that 1,3-butadiene, for example, is stabilized by contribution from structures involving formal bonds. Stabilization is not very great, however, since such structures—and additional, ionic structures—are not very stable and make only small contribution to the hybrid. Similar structures contribute to an excited state of butadiene, too, but here, because of the instability of the molecule, they make much larger contribution. Resonance stabilizes the excited state *more* than it stabilizes the ground state, and thus reduces the difference between them.

In contrast to the infrared spectrum, the ultraviolet spectrum is not used primarily to show the presence of individual functional groups, but rather to show relationships between functional groups, chiefly conjugation: conjugation between two or more carbon-carbon double (or triple) bonds; between carbon-carbon and carbon-oxygen double bonds; between double bonds and an aromatic ring; and even the presence of an aromatic ring itself. It can, in addition, reveal the number and location of substituents attached to the carbons of the conjugated system.

**Problem 17.6** In problem 9.27, page 451, you calculated the number of rings in  $\beta$ -carotene. Taking into account also the molecular formula, the number of double bonds, conjugation, its natural occurrence, and its conversion into vitamin A (p. 441), what possible structure for  $\beta$ -carotene occurs to you?

**Problem 17.7** Compounds C, D, and E have the formula  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_8$ , and on hydrogenation all yield *n*-pentane. Their ultraviolet spectra show the following values of  $\lambda_{\max}$ : C, 176 nm; D, 211 nm; E, 215 nm (1-Pentene has  $\lambda_{\max}$  178 nm). (a) What is a likely structure for C? For D and E? (b) What kind of information might enable you to assign specific structures to D and E?

### 17.9 The nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectrum

Like electrons, the nuclei of certain atoms are considered to *spin*. The spinning of these charged particles—the circulation of charge—generates a *magnetic moment* along the axis of spin, so that these nuclei act like tiny bar magnets. One such nucleus—and the one we shall be mostly concerned with—is the *proton*, the nucleus of ordinary hydrogen,  $^1\text{H}$ .

Now, if a proton is placed in an external magnetic field, its magnetic moment, according to quantum mechanics, can be aligned in either of two ways: *with* or *against* the external field. Alignment with the field is the more stable, and energy must be absorbed to “flip” the tiny proton magnet over to the less stable alignment, *against* the field.

Just how much energy is needed to flip the proton over depends, as we might expect, on the strength of the external field: the stronger the field, the greater the tendency to remain lined up with it, and the higher the frequency. (Remember:  $\Delta E = h\nu$ ) of the radiation needed to do the job.

$$\nu = \frac{\gamma H_0}{2\pi}$$

where

$\nu$  = frequency, in Hz

$H_0$  = strength of the magnetic field, in gauss

$\gamma$  = a nuclear constant, the *gyromagnetic ratio*,  
26,750 for the proton

In a field of 14,092 gauss, for example, the energy required corresponds to electromagnetic radiation of frequency 60 MHz (60 megahertz or 60 million cycles per second): radiation in the radiofrequency range, and of much lower energy (lower frequency, longer wavelength) than even infrared light.

In principle, we could place a substance in a magnetic field of constant strength, and then obtain a spectrum in the same way we obtain an infrared or an ultraviolet spectrum: pass radiation of steadily changing frequency through the substance, and observe the frequency at which radiation is absorbed. In practice, however, it has been found more convenient to keep the radiation frequency constant, and to vary the strength of the magnetic field; at some value of the field strength the energy required to flip the proton matches the energy of the radiation, absorption occurs, and a signal is observed. Such a spectrum is called a *nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectrum* (Fig. 17.8).

Since the nucleus involved is the proton, the spectrum is sometimes called a *PMR* (proton magnetic resonance) spectrum, to differentiate it from spectra involving such nuclei as  $^{13}\text{C}$  (called *CMR* spectra) or  $^{19}\text{F}$ .

Now, if the situation were as simple as we have so far described it, all the protons in an organic molecule would absorb at exactly the same field strength, and the spectrum would consist of a single signal that would tell us little about the structure of the molecule. But the frequency at which a proton absorbs depends on the magnetic field which that proton *feels*, and this *effective* field strength is not exactly the same as the *applied* field strength. The effective field strength at each proton depends on the environment of that proton—on, among other things, the electron density at the proton, and the presence of other, nearby protons. Each proton—or, more precisely, each set of equivalent protons—will have a slightly



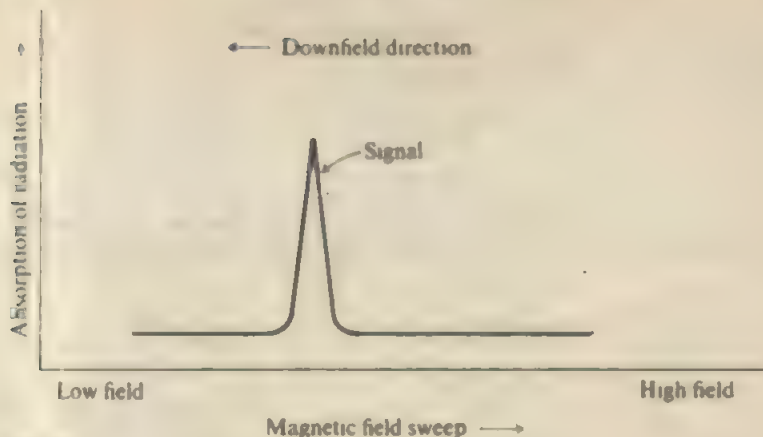


Figure 17.8. The NMR spectrum.

different environment from every other set of protons, and hence will require a slightly *different applied field strength* to produce the *same effective field strength*: the particular field strength at which absorption takes place.

At a given radiofrequency, then, *all protons absorb at the same effective field strength, but they absorb at different applied field strengths*. It is this applied field strength that is measured, and against which the absorption is plotted.

The result is a spectrum showing many absorption peaks, whose relative positions, reflecting as they do differences in environment of protons, can give almost unbelievably detailed information about molecular structure.

In the following sections, we shall look at various aspects of the NMR spectrum:

(a) the *number of signals*, which tells us how many different "kinds" of protons there are in a molecule;

(b) the *positions of the signals*, which tell us something about the electronic environment of each kind of proton;

(c) the *intensities of the signals*, which tell us how many protons of each kind there are; and

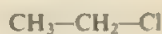
(d) the *splitting of a signal* into several peaks, which tells us about the environment of a proton with respect to other, nearby protons.

## 17.10 NMR. Number of signals. Equivalent and non-equivalent protons

In a given molecule, protons with the same environment absorb at the same (applied) field strength; protons with different environments absorb at different (applied) field strengths. A set of protons with the same environment are said to be *equivalent*; the number of signals in the NMR spectrum tells us, therefore, how many sets of equivalent protons—how many "kinds" of protons—a molecule contains.

For our purposes here, equivalent protons are simply chemically equivalent protons, and we have already had considerable practice in judging what these are. Looking at each of the following structural formulas, for example, we readily pick

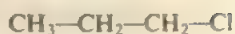
out as equivalent the protons designated with the same letter:



*a*   *b*  
2 NMR signals  
Ethyl chloride

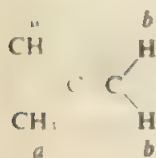


*a*   *b*   *a*  
2 NMR signals  
Isopropyl chloride

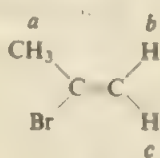


*a*   *b*   *c*  
3 NMR signals  
*n*-Propyl chloride

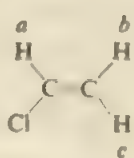
Realizing that, to be chemically equivalent, protons must also be *stereochemically* equivalent, we find we can readily analyze the following formulas, too:



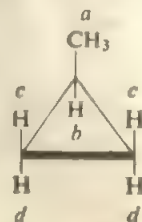
2 NMR signals  
Isobutylene



3 NMR signals  
2-Bromopropene



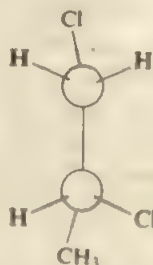
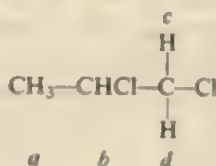
3 NMR signals  
Vinyl chloride



4 NMR signals  
Methylcyclopropane

1,2-Dichloropropane (optically active or optically inactive) gives four NMR signals, and it takes only a little work with models or stereochemical formulas to see that this should indeed be so.

4 NMR signals  
1,2-Dichloropropane



The environments of the two protons on C-1 are *not* the same (and no amount of rotation about single bonds will make them so); the protons are not equivalent, and will absorb at different field strengths.

We can tell from a formula which protons are in different environments and hence should give different signals. We cannot always tell—particularly with stereochemically different protons—just *how* different these environments are; they may not be different enough for the signals to be noticeably separated, and we may see *fewer* signals than we predict.

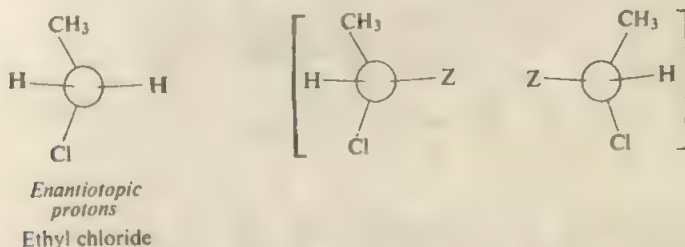
Now, just how did we arrive at the conclusions of the last few paragraphs? Most of us—perhaps without realizing it—judge the equivalence of protons by following the approach of isomer number (Sec. 4.2). This is certainly the easiest way to do it. We imagine each proton in turn to be replaced by some other atom Z. If replacement of either of two protons by Z would yield the same product—or enantiomeric products—then the two protons are chemically equivalent in an achiral medium. We ignore the existence of conformational isomers and, as we shall see in Sec. 17.16, this is just what we should do.

Take, for example, ethyl chloride. Replacement of a methyl proton would give  $\text{CH}_2\text{Z—CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ; replacement of a methylene proton would give  $\text{CH}_3\text{—CHZCl}$ . These are, of course, different products, and we easily recognize the methyl protons

as being non-equivalent to the methylene protons.

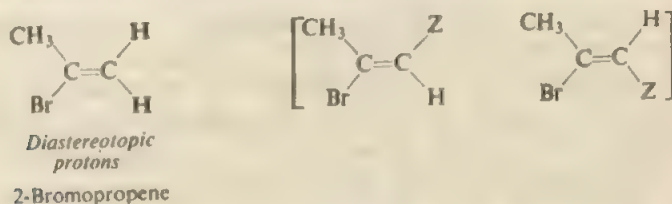
The product  $\text{CH}_2\text{Z}-\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$  is the same regardless of *which one* of the three methyl protons is replaced. The (average) environment of the three protons is identical, and hence we expect one NMR signal for all three.

Replacement of either of the two methylene protons would give one of a pair of enantiomers:



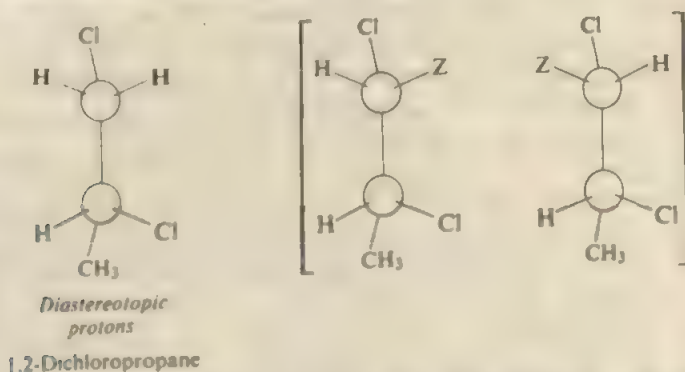
As we have seen, such pairs of protons are called *enantiotopic protons*. The environments of these two protons are mirror images of each other; in an achiral medium, these protons behave *as if* they were equivalent, and we see one NMR signal for the pair.

Turning to 2-bromopropene, we see that replacement of either of the vinylic protons gives one of a pair of diastereomers (geometric isomers, in this case):



As we have seen, such pairs of protons are called *diastereotopic protons*. The environments of these two protons are neither identical nor mirror images of each other; these protons are non-equivalent, and we expect an NMR signal from each one.

Similarly, in 1,2-dichloropropane the two protons on C-1 are diastereotopic, non-equivalent, and give separate NMR signals.



In Sec. 17.16, we shall take a closer look at equivalence. The guidelines we have laid down here, however—based on rapid rotation about single bonds—hold for most spectra taken under ordinary conditions, specifically, at room temperature.

**Problem 17.8** Draw the structural formula of each of the following compounds (disregarding enantiomerism), and label all sets of equivalent protons. How many NMR signals would you expect to see from each?

- (a) the two isomers of formula  $C_2H_4Cl_2$   
 (b) the four isomers of  $C_3H_6Br_2$   
 (c) ethylbenzene and *p*-xylene  
 (d) mesitylene, *p*-ethyltoluene, isopropylbenzene  
 (e)  $CH_3CH_2OH$  and  $CH_3OCH_3$   
 (f)  $CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$ ,  $CH_3OCH_2CH_2CH_3$ ,  $CH_3OCH(CH_3)_2$ ,  $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$   
 (g)  $CH_2-CH_2$ ,  $CH_3-CH-CH_2$  (Hint: Make models.)  
 $\begin{array}{c} CH_2-O \\ | \\ CH_2 \end{array}$        $\begin{array}{c} O \\ | \\ CH-CH_2 \end{array}$   
 (h)  $CH_3CH_2C(=O)H$ ,  $CH_3C(=O)CH_3$ , and  $CH_3CHCH_2OH$

**Problem 17.9** Three isomeric dimethylcyclopropanes give, respectively, 2, 3, and 4 NMR signals. Draw a stereoisomeric formula for the isomer giving rise to each number of signals.

**Problem 17.10** How many NMR signals would you expect from cyclohexane? Why?

## 17.11 NMR. Positions of signals. Chemical shift

Just as the number of signals in an NMR spectrum tells us how many kinds of protons a molecule contains, so the *positions of the signals* help to tell us *what kinds* of protons they are: aromatic, aliphatic, primary, secondary, tertiary; benzylic, vinylic, acetylenic; adjacent to halogen or to other atoms or groups. These different kinds of protons have different electronic environments, and it is the electronic environment that determines just where in the spectrum a proton absorbs.

When a molecule is placed in a magnetic field—as it is when one determines an NMR spectrum—its electrons are caused to circulate and, in circulating, they generate secondary magnetic fields: *induced* magnetic fields.

Circulation of electrons *about the proton itself* generates a field aligned in such a way that—at the proton—it opposes the applied field. The field felt by the proton is thus diminished, and the proton is said to be **shielded**.

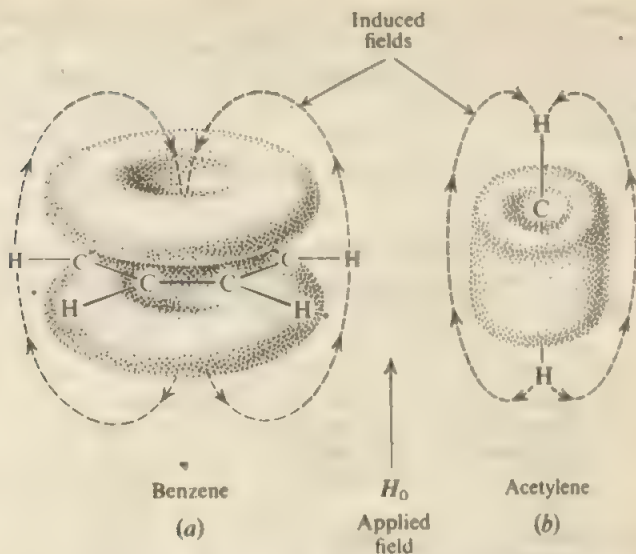
Circulation of electrons—specifically,  $\pi$  electrons—*about nearby nuclei* generates a field that can either oppose or reinforce the applied field at the proton, depending on the proton's location (Fig. 17.9). If the induced field opposes the applied field, the proton is shielded, as before. If the induced field reinforces the applied field, then the field felt by the proton is augmented, and the proton is said to be **deshielded**.

Compared with a naked proton, a shielded proton requires a higher applied field strength—and a deshielded proton requires a lower applied field strength—to provide the particular effective field strength at which absorption occurs. Shielding thus shifts the absorption upfield, and deshielding shifts the absorption downfield. Such shifts in the position of NMR absorptions, arising from shielding and deshielding by electrons, are called **chemical shifts**.

How are the direction and magnitude—the *value*—of a particular chemical shift to be measured and expressed?

The unit in which a chemical shift is most conveniently expressed is parts per





**Figure 17.9.** Induced field (a) reinforces applied field at the aromatic protons, and (b) opposes applied field at the acetylenic protons. Aromatic protons are deshielded; acetylenic protons are shielded.

million (ppm) of the total applied magnetic field. Since shielding and deshielding arise from *induced* secondary fields, the magnitude of a chemical shift is proportional to the strength of the applied field—or, what is equivalent, proportional to the radiofrequency the field must match. If, however, it is expressed as a *fraction* of the applied field—that is, if the observed shift is divided by the particular radiofrequency used—then a chemical shift has a constant value that is independent of the radiofrequency and the magnetic field that the NMR spectrometer employs.

The **reference point** from which chemical shifts are measured is, for practical reasons, not the signal from a naked proton, but the signal from an actual compound: usually tetramethylsilane,  $(\text{CH}_3)_4\text{Si}$ . Because of the low electronegativity of silicon, the shielding of the protons in the silane is greater than in most other organic molecules; as a result, most NMR signals appear in the same direction from the tetramethylsilane signal: *downfield*.

The most commonly used scale is the  $\delta$  (delta) scale. The position of the tetramethylsilane signal is taken as 0.0 ppm. Most chemical shifts have  $\delta$  values between 0 and 10 (minus 10, actually). A *small*  $\delta$  value represents a *small* downfield shift, and a *large*  $\delta$  value represents a *large* downfield shift.

One sometimes encounters another scale: the  $\tau$  (tau) scale, on which the tetramethylsilane signal is taken as 10.0 ppm. Most  $\tau$  values lie between 0 and 10. The two scales are related by the expression  $\tau = 10 - \delta$ .

An NMR signal from a particular proton appears at a different field strength than the signal from tetramethylsilane. This difference—the chemical shift—is measured not in gauss, as we might expect, but in the equivalent frequency units (*Remember*,  $\nu = \gamma H_0 / 2\pi$ ), and it is divided by the frequency of the spectrometer used. Thus, for a spectrometer operating at 60 MHz, that is, at  $60 \times 10^6$  Hz:

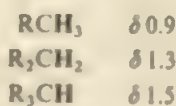
$$\delta = \frac{\text{observed shift (Hz)} \times 10^6}{60 \times 10^6 \text{ (Hz)}}$$

The chemical shift for a proton is determined, then, by the electronic environment of the proton. In a given molecule, protons with different environments—non-equivalent protons—have different chemical shifts. Protons with the same environment—equivalent protons—have the same chemical shift. (So, too, do protons with mirror-image environments—enantiotopic protons.) We have already seen what the equivalence of protons means in terms of molecular structure.

**Table 17.4** CHARACTERISTIC PROTON CHEMICAL SHIFTS

Type of proton		Chemical shift, ppm
		$\delta$
Cyclopropane		0.2
Primary	$\text{RCH}_3$	0.9
Secondary	$\text{R}_2\text{CH}_2$	1.3
Tertiary	$\text{R}_3\text{CH}$	1.5
Vinyl	$\text{C}=\text{C}-\text{H}$	4.6-5.9
Acetylenic	$\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{H}$	2-3
Aromatic	$\text{Ar}-\text{H}$	6-8.5
Benzylic	$\text{Ar}-\text{C}-\text{H}$	2.2-3
Allylic	$\text{C}=\text{C}-\text{CH}_3$	1.7
Fluorides	$\text{HC}-\text{F}$	4-4.5
Chlorides	$\text{HC}-\text{Cl}$	3-4
Bromides	$\text{HC}-\text{Br}$	2.5-4
Iodides	$\text{HC}-\text{I}$	2-4
Alcohols	$\text{HC}-\text{OH}$	3.4-4
Ethers	$\text{HC}-\text{OR}$	3.3-4
Esters	$\text{RCOO}-\text{CH}$	3.7-4.1
Esters	$\text{HC}-\text{COOR}$	2-2.2
Acids	$\text{HC}-\text{COOH}$	2-2.6
Carbonyl compounds	$\text{HC}-\text{C}=\text{O}$	2-2.7
Aldehydic	$\text{RCHO}$	9-10
Hydroxylic	$\text{ROH}$	1-5.5
Phenolic	$\text{ArOH}$	4-12
Enolic	$\text{C}=\text{C}-\text{OH}$	15-17
Carboxylic	$\text{RCOOH}$	10.5-12
Amino	$\text{RNH}_2$	1-5

Furthermore, it has been found that a proton with a particular environment shows much the same chemical shift, whatever the molecule it happens to be part of. Take, for example, our familiar classes of hydrogens: primary, secondary, and tertiary. In the absence of other nearby substituents, absorption occurs at about these values:



All these protons, in turn, differ widely from aromatic protons which, because of the powerful deshielding due to the circulation of the  $\pi$  electrons (see Fig. 17 9, p 695), absorb far downfield:



Attachment of chlorine to the carbon bearing the proton causes a downfield shift. If the chlorine is attached to the carbon once removed from the carbon bearing the proton, there is again a downward shift, but this time much weaker.

$\text{CH}_3\text{—Cl}$	$\delta$ 3.0	$\text{CH}_3\text{—C—Cl}$	$\delta$ 1.5
$\text{R—CH}_2\text{—Cl}$	$\delta$ 3.4	$\text{R—CH}_2\text{—C—Cl}$	$\delta$ 1.7
$\text{R}_2\text{CH—Cl}$	$\delta$ 4.0	$\text{R}_2\text{CH—C—Cl}$	$\delta$ 1.6

Two chlorines cause a greater downfield shift. Other halogens show similar effects.

The downfield shift caused by chlorine is what we might have expected from its inductive effect: electron withdrawal lowers the electron density in the vicinity of the proton and thus causes deshielding. The effect of a substituent on the chemical shift is unquestionably the net result of many factors; yet we shall often observe chemical shifts which strongly suggest that an inductive effect is at least one of the factors at work.

Table 17.4 lists chemical shifts for protons in a variety of environments.

The NMR spectra (Fig. 17.10, p. 698) of the alkylbenzenes *toluene*, *p*-*xylene*, and *mesitylene* illustrate the points we have just made. In each spectrum there are two signals: one for the side-chain protons, and one for the ring protons. (Here, as in some—though not most—aromatic compounds, the *ortho*, *meta*, and *para* protons have nearly the same chemical shifts.)

In each spectrum, the ring protons show the low-field absorption we have said is characteristic of aromatic protons. Absorption is not only at low field, but at nearly the *same* field strength for the three compounds: at  $\delta$  7.17, 7.05, and 6.78. (These values are not *exactly* the same, however, since the environments of the aromatic protons are not exactly the same in the three compounds.)

In each compound, side-chain protons—benzylic protons—are close enough to the ring to feel a little of the deshielding effect of the  $\pi$  electrons (Fig. 17.9, p. 695), and hence absorb somewhat downfield from ordinary alkyl protons: at  $\delta$  2.32, 2.30, and 2.25. In all three compounds, the environment of the side-chain protons is almost identical, and so are the chemical shifts.

The similarity in structure among these three alkylbenzenes is thus reflected in the similarity of their NMR spectra. There is, however, a major difference in their structures—a difference in *numbers* of aromatic and side-chain protons—and, as we shall see in the next section, this is reflected in a major difference in their NMR spectra.

The chemical shift is fundamental to the NMR spectrum since, by separating the absorption peaks due to the various protons of a molecule, it reveals all the other features of the spectrum. The *numerical values* of chemical shifts, although significant, do not have the overriding importance that absorption frequencies have in the infrared spectrum. In our work with NMR, we shall escape much of the uncertainty that accompanies the beginner's attempts to identify precisely infrared absorption bands; at the same time, we have a greater *variety* of concepts to learn about—but these, at our present level, we may find more satisfying and intellectually more stimulating.

**Problem 17.11** What is a possible explanation for the following differences in chemical shift for aromatic protons? Benzene  $\delta$  7.37, toluene  $\delta$  7.17, *p*-*xylene*  $\delta$  7.05, *mesitylene*  $\delta$  6.78.

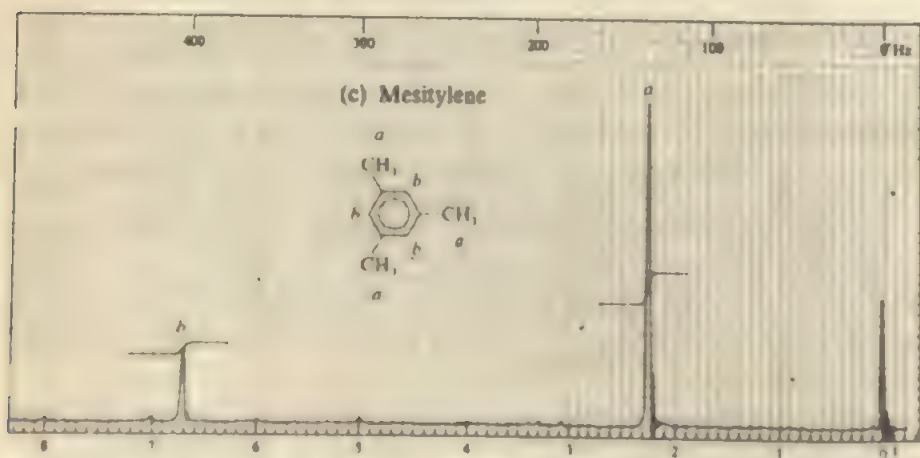
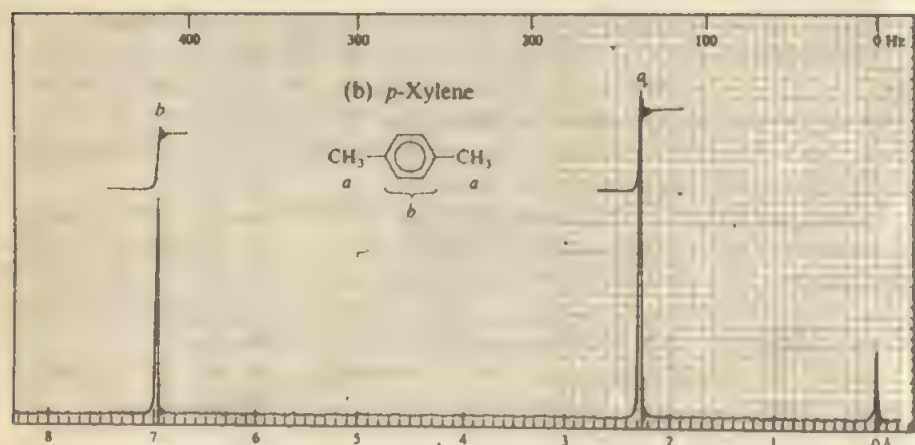
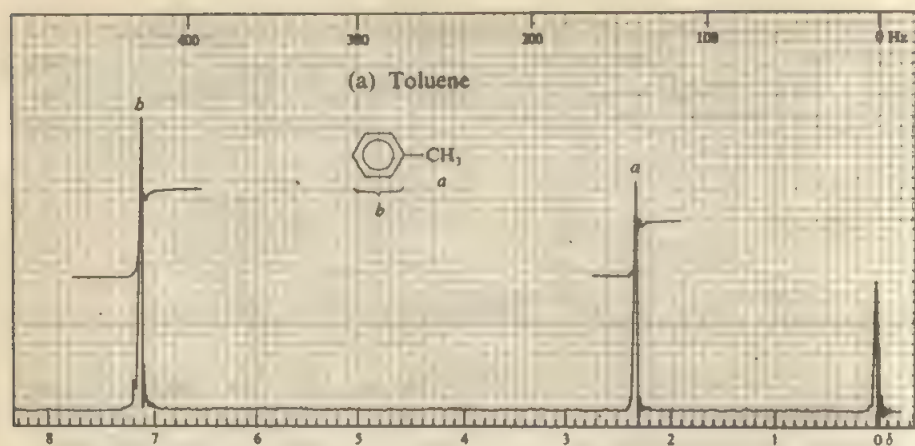


Figure 17.10. NMR spectra chemical shift (a) Toluene, (b) *p*-xylene, (c) mesitylene



## 17.12 NMR. Peak area and proton counting

Let us look again at the NMR spectra (Fig. 17.10, p. 698) of toluene, *p*-xylene, and mesitylene, and this time focus our attention, not on the positions of the signals, but on their relative *intensities*, as indicated by the sizes of the absorption peaks.

Judging roughly from the peak heights, we see that the (high-field) peak for side-chain protons is smaller than the (low-field) peak for aromatic protons in the case of toluene, somewhat larger in the case of *p*-xylene, and considerably larger in the case of mesitylene. More exact comparison, based on the *areas under the peaks*, shows that the peaks for side-chain and aromatic protons have sizes in the ratio 3:5 for toluene; 3:2 (or 6:4) for *p*-xylene; and 3:1 (or 9:3) for mesitylene.

This illustrates a general quality of all NMR spectra. *The area under an NMR signal is directly proportional to the number of protons giving rise to the signal.*

It is not surprising that this is so. The absorption of every quantum of energy is due to exactly the same thing: the flipping over of a proton in the same effective magnetic field. The more protons flipping, the more the energy absorbed, and the greater is the area under the absorption peak.

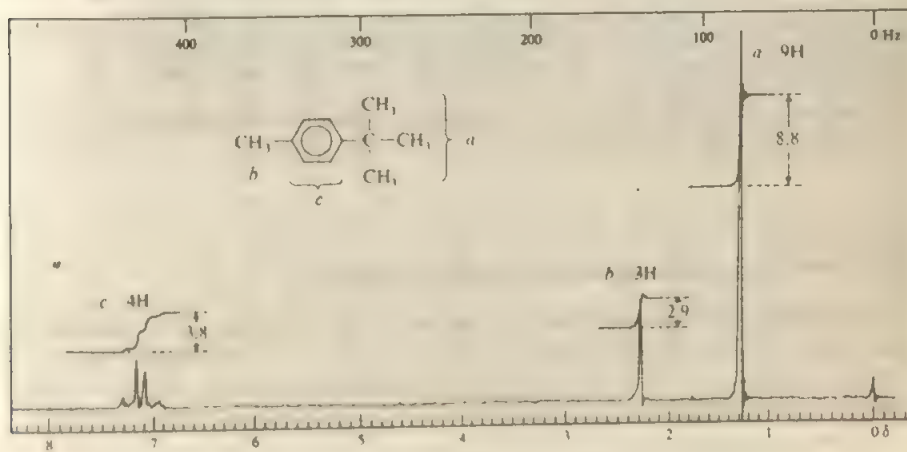


Figure 17.11. NMR spectrum of *p*-*tert*-butyltoluene. Proton counting. The ratio of step heights *a*:*b*:*c* is

$$8.8:2.9:3.8 = 3.0:1.0:1.3 = 9.0:3.0:3.9$$

Alternatively, since the molecular formula  $C_{11}H_{16}$  is known,

$$\frac{16 \text{ H}}{15.5 \text{ units}} = 1.03 \text{ H per unit}$$

$$a = 1.03 \times 8.8 = 9.1 \quad b = 1.03 \times 2.9 = 3.0 \quad c = 1.03 \times 3.8 = 3.9$$

Either way, we find: *a*, 9H; *b*, 3H; *c*, 4H.

The 4H of *c* ( $\delta$  7.1) are in the aromatic range, suggesting a disubstituted benzene  $-C_6H_4-$ . The 3H of *b* ( $\delta$  2.8) have a shift expected for benzylic protons, giving  $CH_2-C_6H_4-$ . There is left  $C_4H_9$ , which, in view of the 9H of *a* ( $\delta$  1.28) must be  $-C(CH_3)_3$ , since these are once removed from the ring, their shift is nearly normal for an alkyl group. The compound is *tert*-butyltoluene (actually, as shown by the absorption pattern of the aromatic protons, the *p*-isomer).

Areas under NMR signals are measured by an electronic integrator, and are usually given on the spectrum chart in the form of a stepped curve; heights of steps are proportional to peak areas. NMR chart paper is cross-hatched, and we can conveniently estimate step heights by simply counting squares. We arrive at a set of numbers that are in the same ratio as the numbers of different kinds of protons. We convert this set of numbers into a set of smallest whole numbers just as we did in calculating empirical formulas (Sec. 2.28). The number of protons giving rise to each signal is equal to the whole number for that signal—or to some multiple of it. See, for example, Fig. 17.11 (p. 699).

We take any shortcuts we can. If we know the molecular formula and hence the total number of protons, we can calculate from the combined step heights the number of squares per proton. If we suspect a particular structural feature that gives a characteristic signal—an aldehydic ( $-\text{CHO}$ ) or carboxylic ( $-\text{COOH}$ ) proton, say, which gives a far-downfield peak—we can use this step height as a starting point.

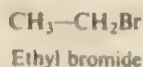
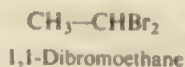
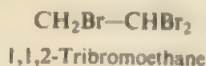
Working the following problems will give us some idea of the tremendous help “proton counting” by NMR can be in assigning a structure to a compound.

**Problem 17.12** Go back to Problem 17.8 (p. 694), where you predicted the number of NMR signals from several compounds. Tell, where you can, the relative positions of the signals (that is, their sequence as one moves downfield) and, roughly, the  $\delta$  value expected for each. For each signal tell the number of protons giving rise to it.

**Problem 17.13** Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the NMR spectra shown in Fig. 17.12 (p. 701).

### 17.13 NMR. Splitting of signals. Spin-spin coupling

An NMR spectrum, we have said, shows a signal for each kind of proton in a molecule; the few spectra we have examined so far bears this out. If we look much further, however, we soon find that most spectra are—or *appear* to be—much more complicated than this. Figure 17.13 (p. 702), for example, shows the NMR spectra for three compounds,



each of which contains only two kinds of protons; yet, instead of two peaks, these spectra show *five*, *six*, and *seven* peaks, respectively.

What does this multiplicity of peaks mean? How does it arise, and what can it tell us about molecular structure?

The answer is that we are observing the *splitting* of NMR signals caused by spin-spin coupling. The signal we expect from each set of equivalent protons is appearing, not as a single peak, but as a *group* of peaks. Splitting reflects the environment of the absorbing protons: not with respect to electrons, but with respect to other, nearby protons. It is as though we were permitted to sit on a proton and look about in all directions: we can *see* and *count* the protons attached to the carbon atoms next to our own carbon atom and, sometimes, even see protons still farther away.

Let us take the case of adjacent carbon atoms carrying, respectively, a pair of

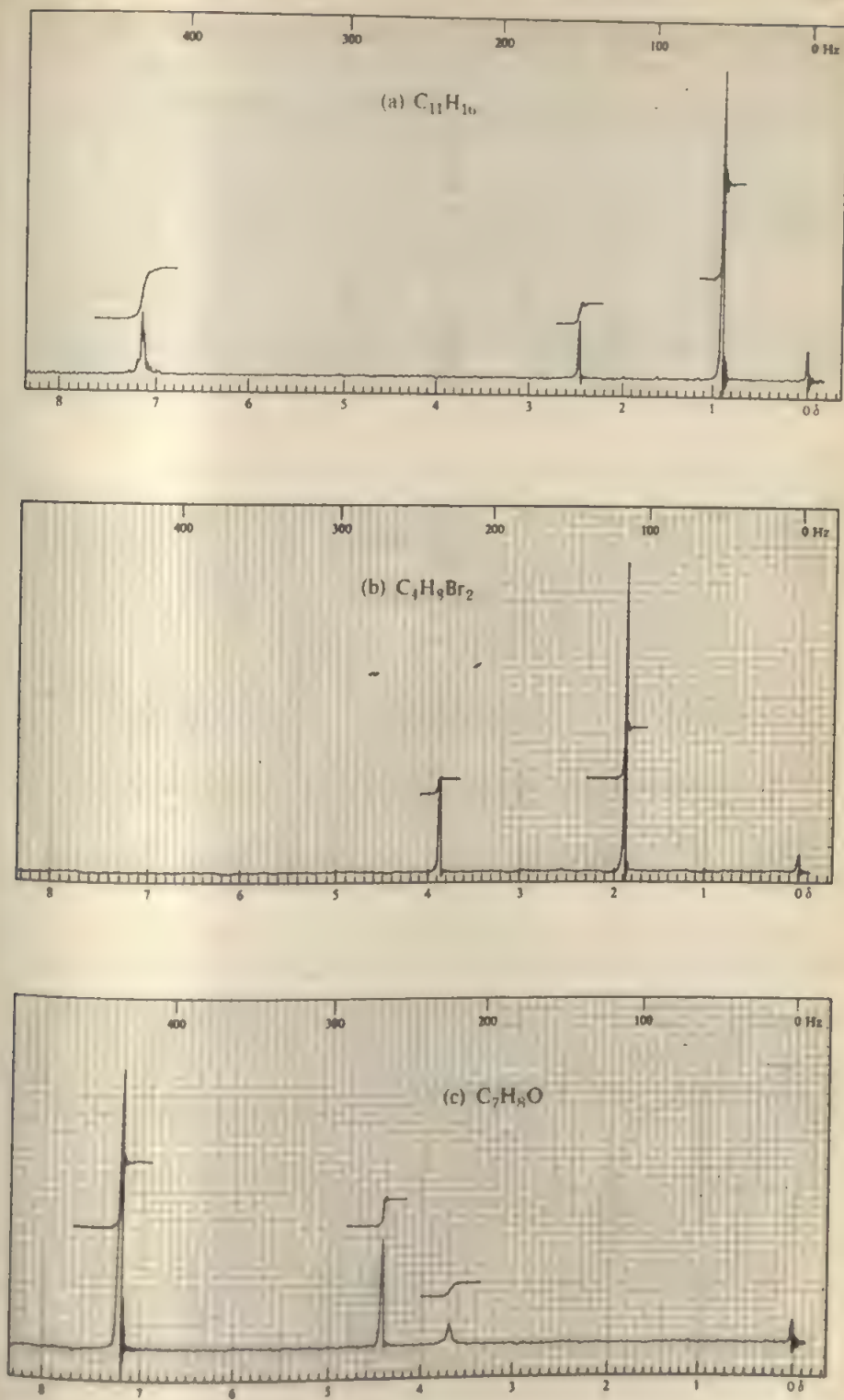


Figure 17.12. NMR spectra for Problem 17.13, p. 700.

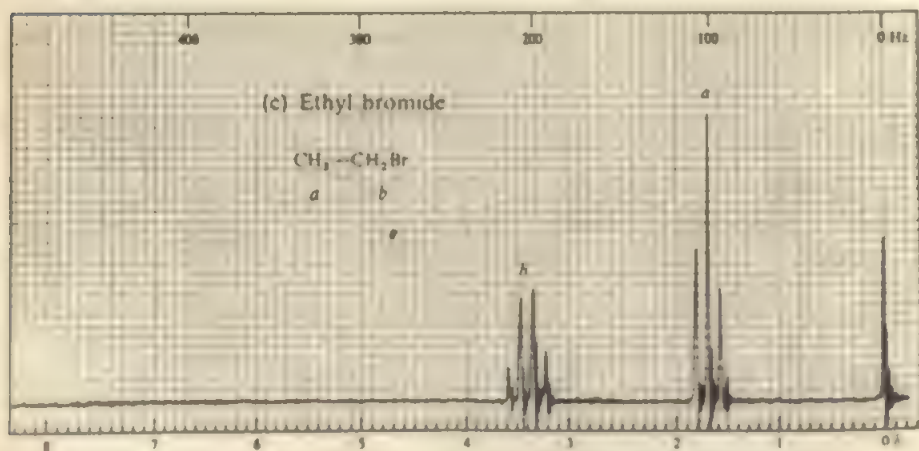
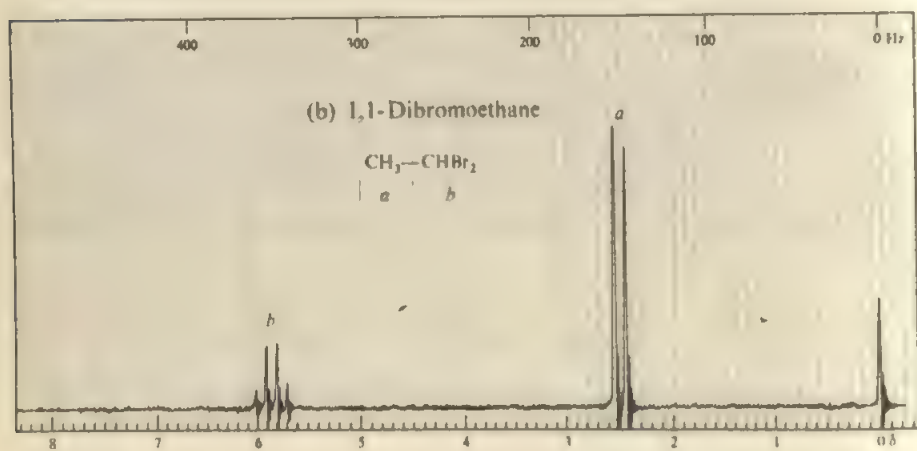
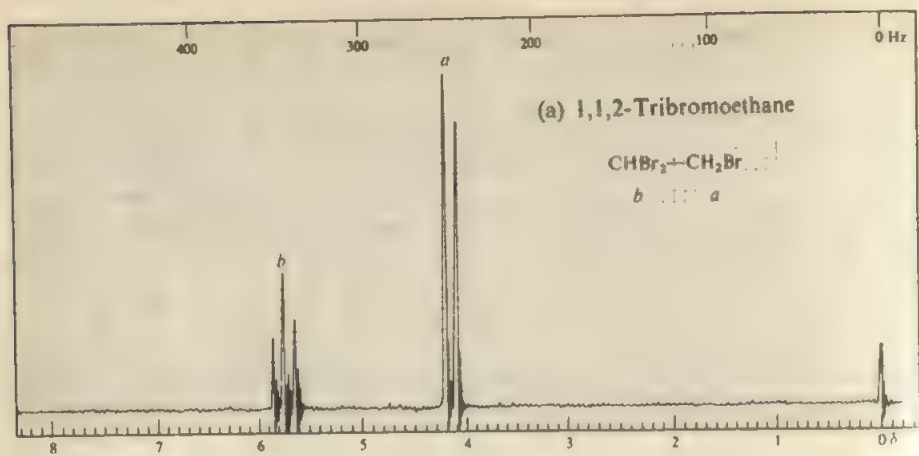
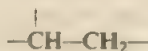


Figure 17.13. NMR spectra: splitting of signals. (a) 1,1,2-Tribromoethane; (b) 1,1-dibromoethane; (c) ethyl bromide.

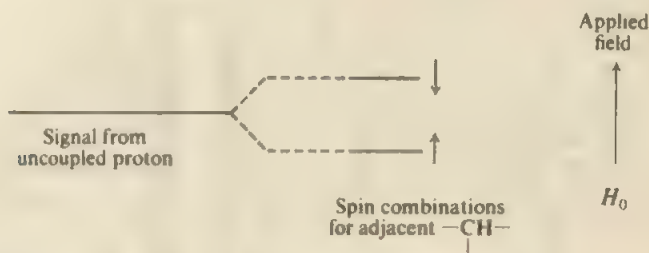


secondary protons and a tertiary proton, and consider first the absorption by one of the secondary protons:



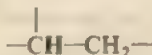
The magnetic field that a secondary proton feels at a particular instant is slightly increased or slightly decreased by the spin of the neighboring tertiary proton: *increased* if the tertiary proton happens at that instant to be aligned *with* the applied field; or *decreased* if the tertiary proton happens to be aligned *against* the applied field.

For half the molecules, then, absorption by a secondary proton is shifted slightly downfield, and for the other half of the molecules the absorption is shifted slightly upfield. The signal is split into *two* peaks: a *doublet*, with equal peak intensities (Fig. 17.14).

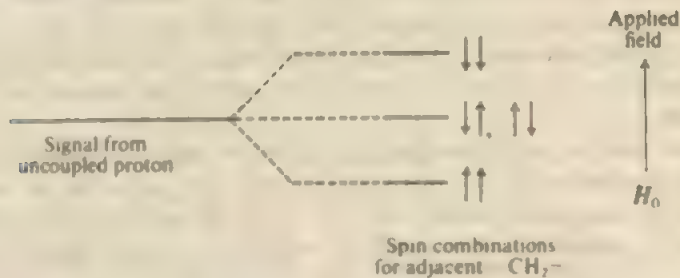


**Figure 17.14.** Spin-spin coupling. Coupling with one proton gives a 1:1 doublet.

Next, what can we say about the absorption by the tertiary proton?

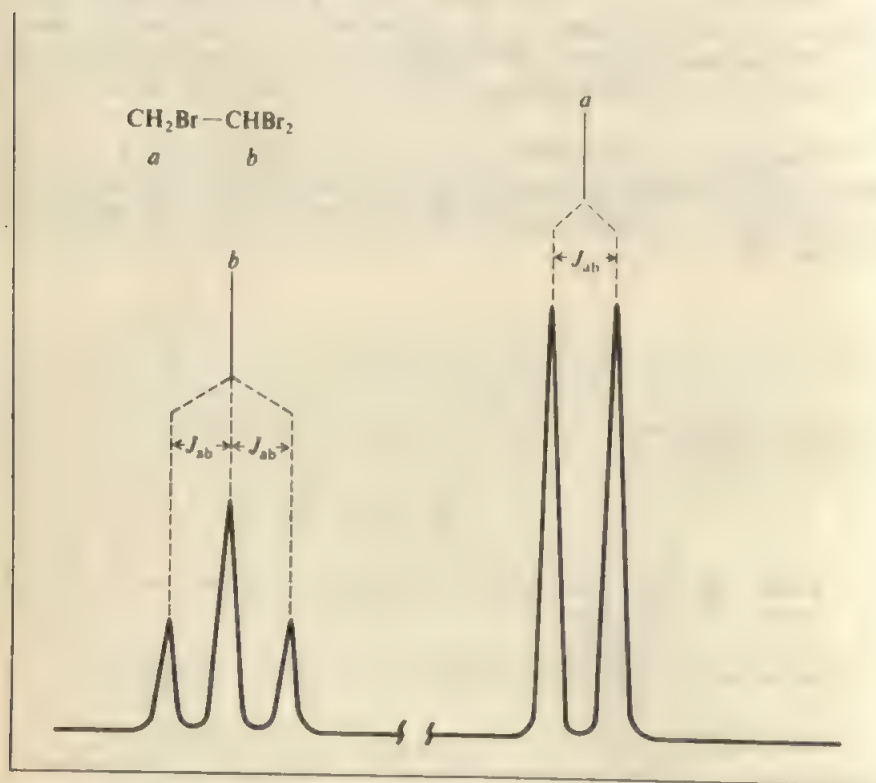


It is, in its turn, affected by the spin of the neighboring secondary protons. But now there are *two* protons whose alignments in the applied field we must consider. There are four equally probable combinations of spin alignments for these two protons, of which two are equivalent. At any instant, therefore, the tertiary proton feels any one of three fields, and its signal is split into three equally spaced peaks: a *triplet*, with relative peak intensities 1:2:1, reflecting the combined (double) probability of the two equivalent combinations (Fig. 17.15).



**Figure 17.15.** Spin-spin coupling. Coupling with two protons gives a 1:2:1 triplet

Figure 17.16 (below) shows an idealized NMR spectrum due to the grouping  $-\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2-$ . We see a 1:1 doublet (from the  $-\text{CH}_2-$ ) and a 1:2:1 triplet (from the  $-\text{CH}-$ ). The total area (both peaks) under the doublet is *twice* as big as the total area (all three peaks) of the triplet, since the doublet is due to absorption by twice as many protons as the triplet.

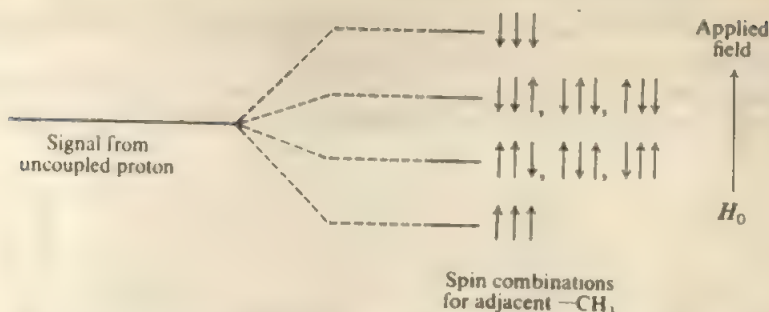


**Figure 17.16.** Spin-spin splitting. Signal *a* is split into a doublet by coupling with one proton; signal *b* is split into a triplet by two protons. Spacings in both sets the same ( $J_{ab}$ ).

A little measuring shows us that the separation of peaks (the *coupling constant*,  $J$ , Sec. 17.14) in the doublet is exactly the same as the separation of peaks in the triplet. (Spin-spin coupling is a *reciprocal* affair, and the effect of the secondary protons on the tertiary proton must be identical with the effect of the tertiary proton on the secondary protons.) Even if they were to appear in a complicated spectrum of many absorption peaks, the identical peak separations would tell us that this doublet and triplet were related: that the (two) protons giving the doublet and the (one) proton giving the triplet are coupled, and hence are attached to adjacent carbon atoms.

We have seen that an NMR signal is split into a doublet by one nearby proton, and into a triplet by two (equivalent) nearby protons. What splitting can we expect more than two protons to produce? In Fig 17.17, we see that three equivalent protons split a signal into four peaks—a quartet—with the intensity pattern 1:3:3:1.

It can be shown that, in general, a set of  $n$  equivalent protons will split an NMR signal into  $n + 1$  peaks.



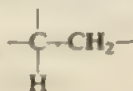
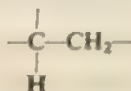
**Figure 17.17.** Spin-spin coupling. Coupling with three protons gives a 1:3:3:1 quartet.

If we turn once more to Fig. 17.13 (p. 702), we no longer find these spectra so confusing. We now see not just five or six or seven peaks, but instead a doublet and a triplet, or a doublet and a quartet, or a triplet and a quartet. We recognize each of these multiplets from the even spacings within it, and from its symmetrical intensity pattern (1:1, or 1:2:1, or 1:3:3:1). Each spectrum does show absorption by just two kinds of protons; but clearly it shows a great deal more than that.

If we keep in mind that the peak area reflects the number of *absorbing* protons, and the multiplicity of splittings reflects the number of *neighboring* protons, we find in each spectrum just what we would expect.

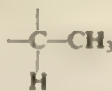
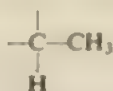
In the spectrum of  $\text{CHBr}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{Br}$  we see

*Downfield triplet* and *Upfield doublet*  
Area: 1 Area: 2



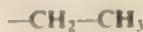
In the spectrum of  $\text{CH}_3\text{—CHBr}_2$  we see

*Downfield quartet* and *Upfield doublet*  
Area: 1 Area: 3



and in the spectrum of  $\text{CH}_3\text{—CH}_2\text{Br}$  we see

*Downfield quartet* and *Upfield triplet*  
Area: 2 Area: 3

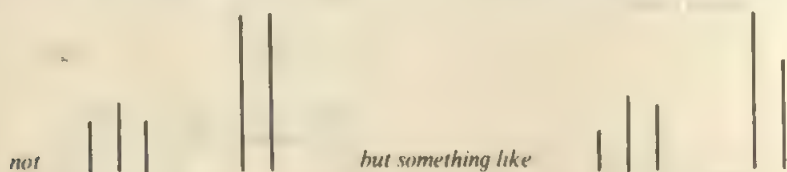


We see chemical shifts that are consistent with the deshielding effect of halogens: in each spectrum, the protons on the carbon carrying the greater number of halogens absorb farther downfield (larger  $\delta$ ).

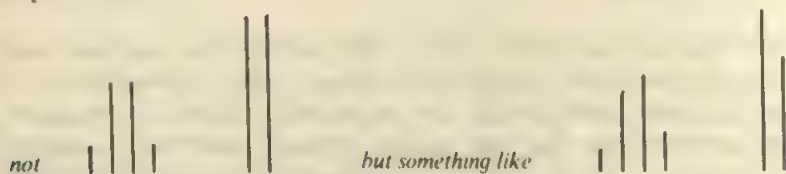
In each spectrum, we see that the spacing of the peaks within one multiplet is

the same as within the other, so that even in a spectrum with many other peaks, we could pick out these two multiplets as being coupled.

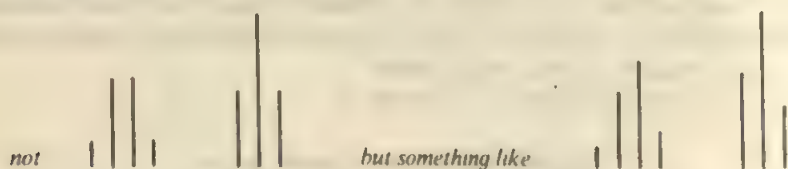
Finally, we see a feature that we have not yet discussed: the various multiplets do not show quite the symmetry we have attributed to them. In spectrum (a), we see



and in spectrum (b)



and in spectrum (c)

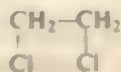


In each case, the inner peaks—the peaks nearer the other, coupled multiplets—are larger than the outer peaks.

Perfectly symmetrical multiplets are to be expected only when the separation between multiplets is very large relative to the separation within multiplets—that is, when the chemical shift is much larger than the coupling constant (Sec. 17.14). The patterns we see here are very commonly observed, and are helpful in matching up multiplets: we know in which direction—upfield or downfield—to look for the second multiplet.

We have not yet answered a very basic question: just which protons in a molecule can be coupled? We may expect to observe spin-spin splitting only between non-equivalent neighboring protons. By "non-equivalent" protons we mean protons with different chemical shifts, as we have already discussed (Sec. 17.11). By "neighboring" protons we mean most commonly protons on adjacent carbons, as in the examples we have just looked at (Fig. 17.13, p. 702), sometimes protons further removed from each other may also be coupled, particularly if  $\pi$  bonds intervene (If protons on the same carbon are non-equivalent—as they sometimes are—they may show coupling.)

We do not observe splitting due to coupling between the protons making up the same  $\text{CH}_3$  group, since they are equivalent. We do not observe splitting due to coupling between the protons on  $\text{C}^1$  and  $\text{C}^2$  of 1,2-dichloroethane



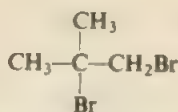
1,2-Dichloroethane

No splitting

since, although on different carbons, they, too, are equivalent



In the spectrum of 1,2-dibromo-2-methylpropane,

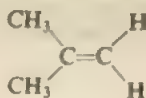


*No splitting*

1,2-Dibromo-2-methylpropane

we do *not* observe splitting between the six methyl protons, on the one hand, and the two  $-\text{CH}_2-$  protons on the other hand. They are non-equivalent, and give rise to different NMR signals, but they are not on adjacent carbons, and their spins do not (noticeably) affect each other. The NMR spectrum contains two singlets, with a peak area ratio of 3:1 (or 6:2). For the same reason, we do *not* observe splitting due to coupling between ring and side-chain protons in alkylbenzenes (Fig. 17.10, p. 698).

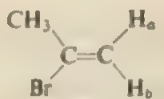
We do *not* observe splitting between the two vinyl protons of isobutylene since



*No splitting*

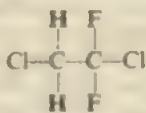
Isobutylene

they are equivalent. On the other hand, we may observe splitting between the two vinyl protons on the same carbon if, as in 2-bromopropene, they are non-equivalent.



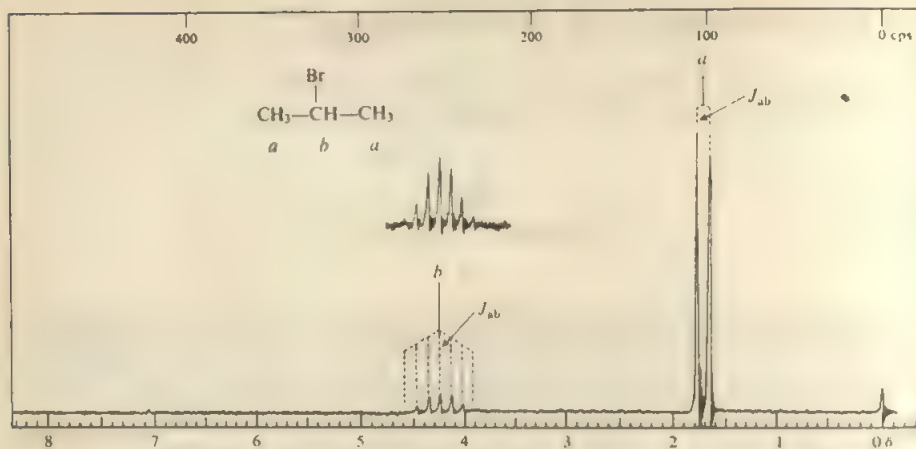
2-Bromopropene

The fluorine ( $^{19}\text{F}$ ) nucleus has magnetic properties of the same kind as the proton. It gives rise to NMR spectra, although at a quite different frequency-field strength combination than the proton. Fluorine nuclei can be coupled not only with each other, but also with protons. Absorption by fluorine does not appear in the proton NMR spectrum—it is far off the scale—but the *splitting* by fluorine of proton signals can be seen. The signal for the two protons of 1,2-dichloro-1,1-difluoroethane, for example,

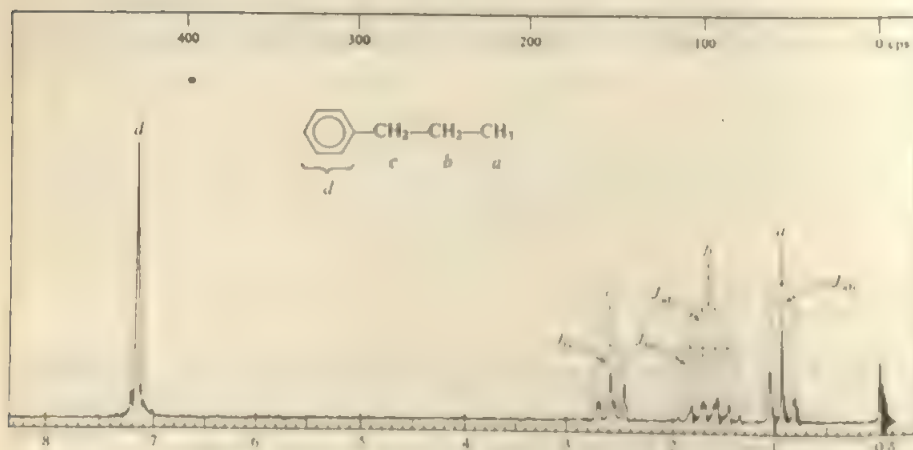


appears as a 1:2:1 triplet with peak spacings of 11 Hz. (What would you expect to see in the fluorine NMR spectrum?)

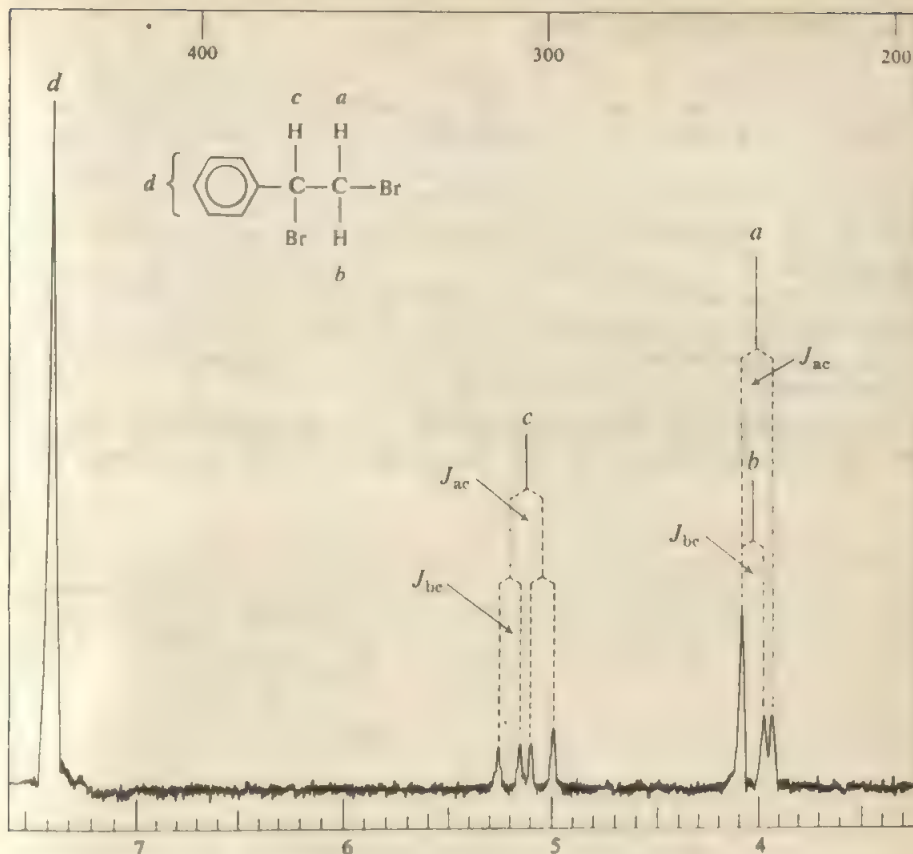
Figures 17.18 and 17.19 (p. 708) and Figure 17.20 (p. 709) illustrate some of the kinds of splitting we are likely to encounter in NMR spectra.



**Figure 17.18.** NMR spectrum of isopropyl bromide. Absorption by the six methyl protons  $H_a$  appears upfield, split into a doublet by the single adjacent proton  $H_b$ . Absorption by the lone proton  $H_b$  appears downfield (the inductive effect of bromine) split into a septet by the six adjacent protons with the small outside peaks typically hard to see.



**Figure 17.19.** NMR spectrum of *n*-propylbenzene. Moving downfield, we see the expected sequence of signals: *a*, primary (3H), *b*, secondary (2H), *c*, benzylic (2H), and *d*, aromatic (5H). Signals *a* and *c* are each split into a triplet by the two secondary protons  $H_b$ . The five protons adjacent to the secondary protons—three on one side and two on the other—are, of course, not equivalent, but the coupling constants,  $J_{ab}$  and  $J_{bc}$ , are nearly the same, and signal *b* appears as a sextet (5 + 1 peaks). The coupling constants are not exactly the same, however, as shown by the broadening of the six peaks



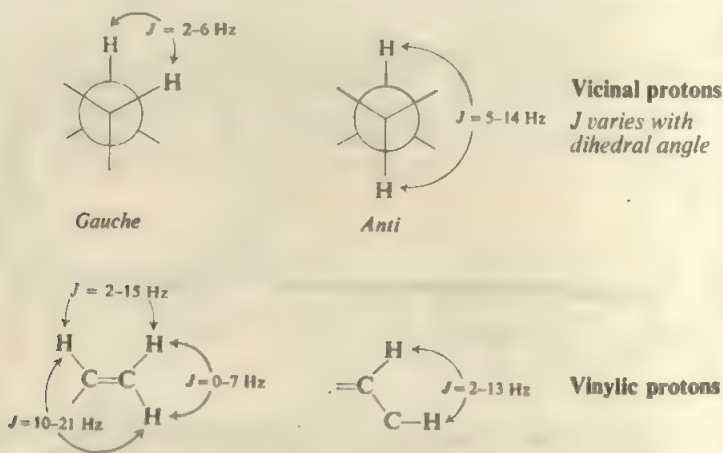
**Figure 17.20.** NMR spectrum of 1,2-dibromo-1-phenylethane. The diastereotopic protons  $H_a$  and  $H_b$  give different signals, each split into a doublet by  $H_c$ ; the downfield peaks of the doublets happen to coincide. (The above spectrum shows no splitting due to coupling between  $H_a$  and  $H_b$ . Run at higher gain, however, the spectrum shows this coupling: each doublet is split into a quartet.)

The four-line pattern of  $c$  is due to successive splittings by  $H_a$  and  $H_b$ . (If  $J_{ac}$  and  $J_{bc}$  were equal—as they would have to be if, for example,  $H_a$  and  $H_b$  were equivalent—the middle peaks of  $c$  would merge to give the familiar 1:2:1 triplet.)

### 17.14 NMR. Coupling constants

The distance between peaks in a multiplet is a measure of the effectiveness of spin-spin coupling, and is called the **coupling constant**,  $J$ . Coupling (unlike chemical shift) is not a matter of induced magnetic fields. The value of the coupling constant—as measured, in Hz—remains the same, whatever the applied magnetic field (that is, whatever the radiofrequency used). In this respect, of course, spin-spin splitting differs from chemical shift, and, when necessary, the two can be distinguished on this basis: the spectrum is run at a second, different radiofrequency; when measured in Hz, peak separations due to splitting remain constant, whereas peak separations due to chemical shifts change. (When divided by the radiofrequency and thus converted into ppm, the numerical value of the chemical shift would, of course, remain constant.)

As we can see from the following summary, the size of a coupling constant depends markedly on the structural relationship between the coupled protons. For



example, in any substituted ethylene—or in any pair of geometric isomers— $J$  is always larger between *trans* protons than between *cis* protons; furthermore, the size of  $J$  varies in a regular way with the electronegativity of substituents, so that one can often assign configuration without having both isomers in hand.

Although we shall not work very much with the *values* of coupling constants, we should realize that, to an experienced person, they can often be the most important feature of an NMR spectrum: the feature that gives exactly the kind of information about molecular structure that is being looked for.

**Problem 17.14** Go back to Problem 17.12 (p. 700), and tell, where you can, the kind of splitting expected for each signal.

**Problem 17.15** In Problem 17.13 (p. 700) you analyzed some NMR spectra. Does the absence of splitting in these spectra now lead you to change any of your answers?

**Problem 17.16** Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the NMR spectra shown in Fig. 17.21 (p. 711).

**Problem 17.17** Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the NMR spectra shown in Fig. 17.22 (p. 712).



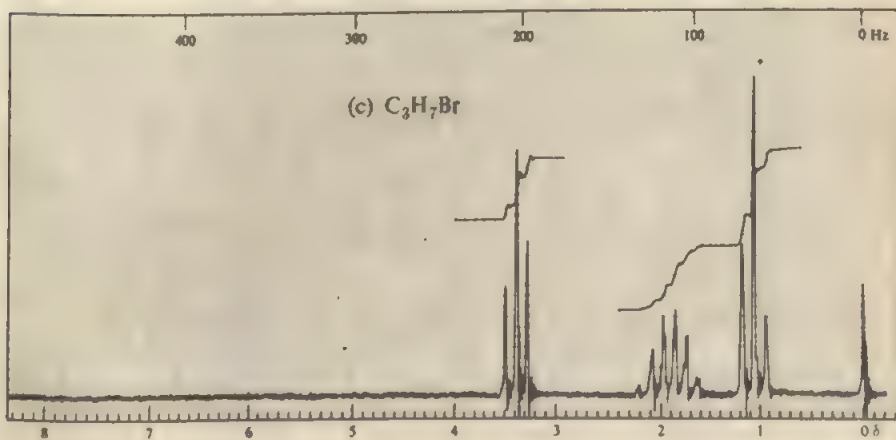
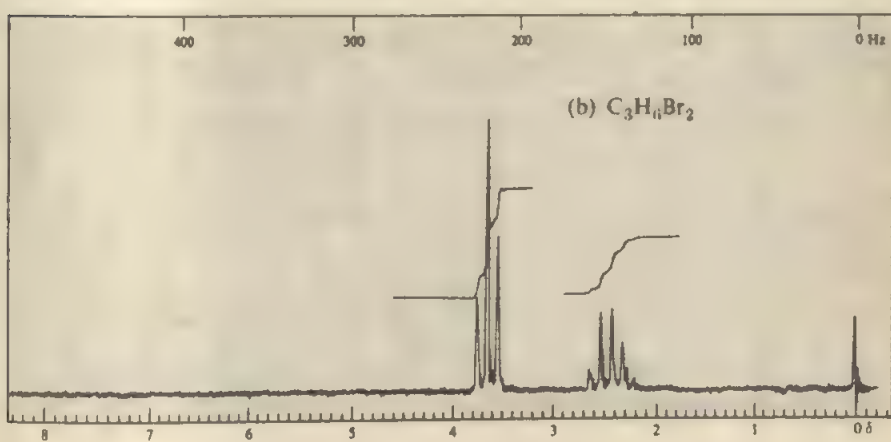
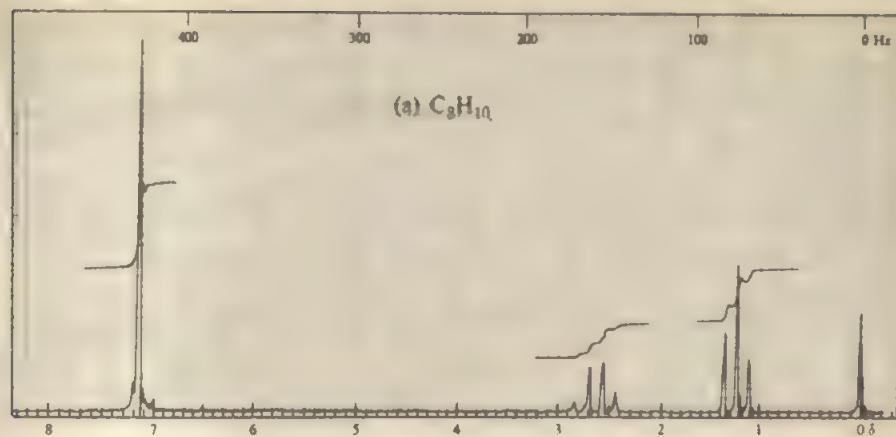


Figure 17.21. NMR spectra for Problem 17.16, p. 710.

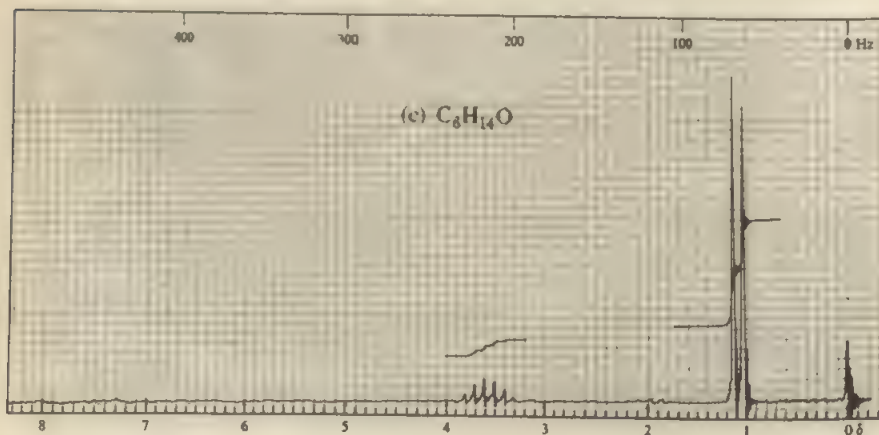
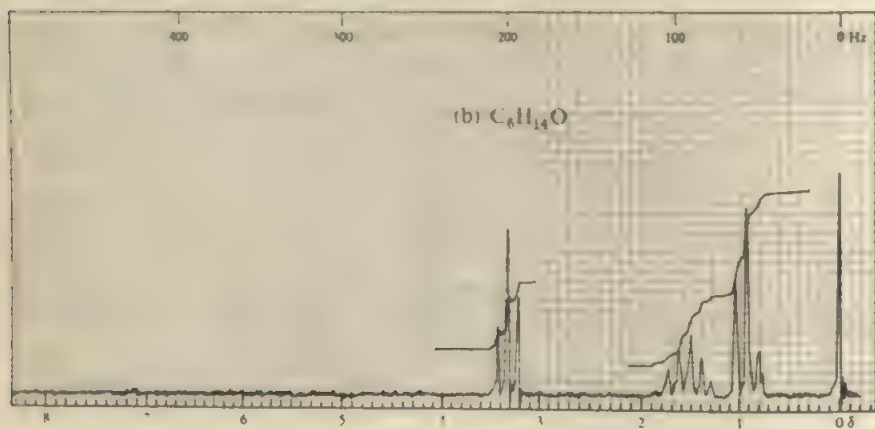
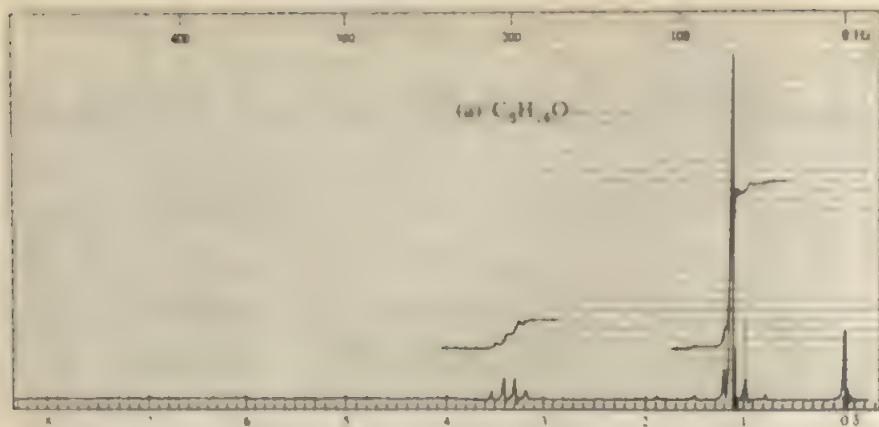


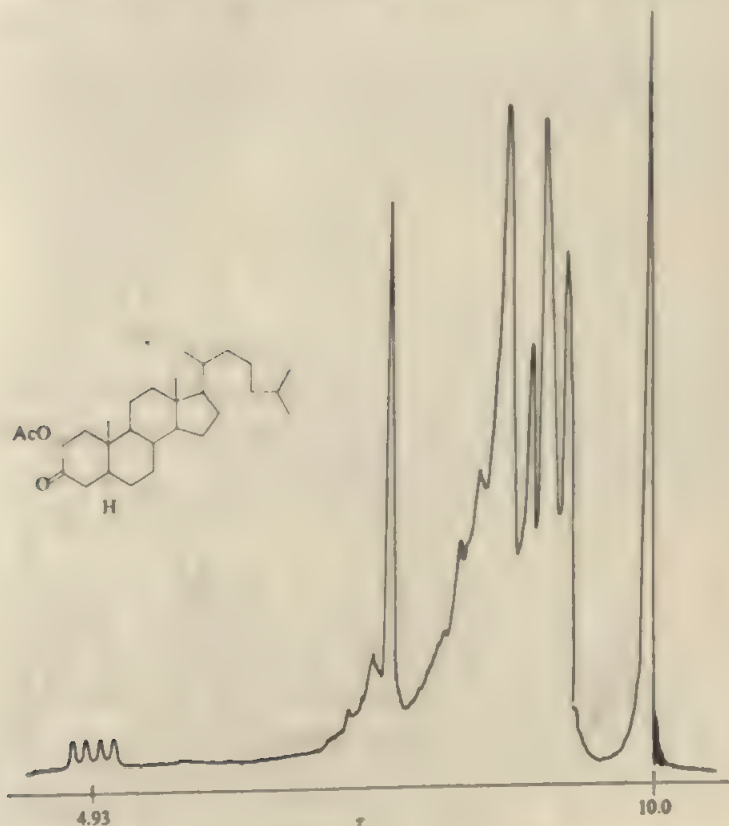
Figure 17.22. NMR spectra for Problem 17.17, p. 710.

### 17.15 NMR. Complicated spectra. Deuterium labeling

Most NMR spectra that the organic chemist is likely to encounter are considerably more complicated than the ones given in this book. How are these analyzed?

First of all, many spectra showing a large number of peaks can be completely analyzed by the same general methods we shall use here. It just takes practice.

Then again, in many cases complete analysis is not necessary for the job at hand. Evidence of other kinds may already have limited the number of possible structures, and all that is required of the NMR spectrum is that it let us choose among these. Sometimes all that we need to know is how many kinds of protons



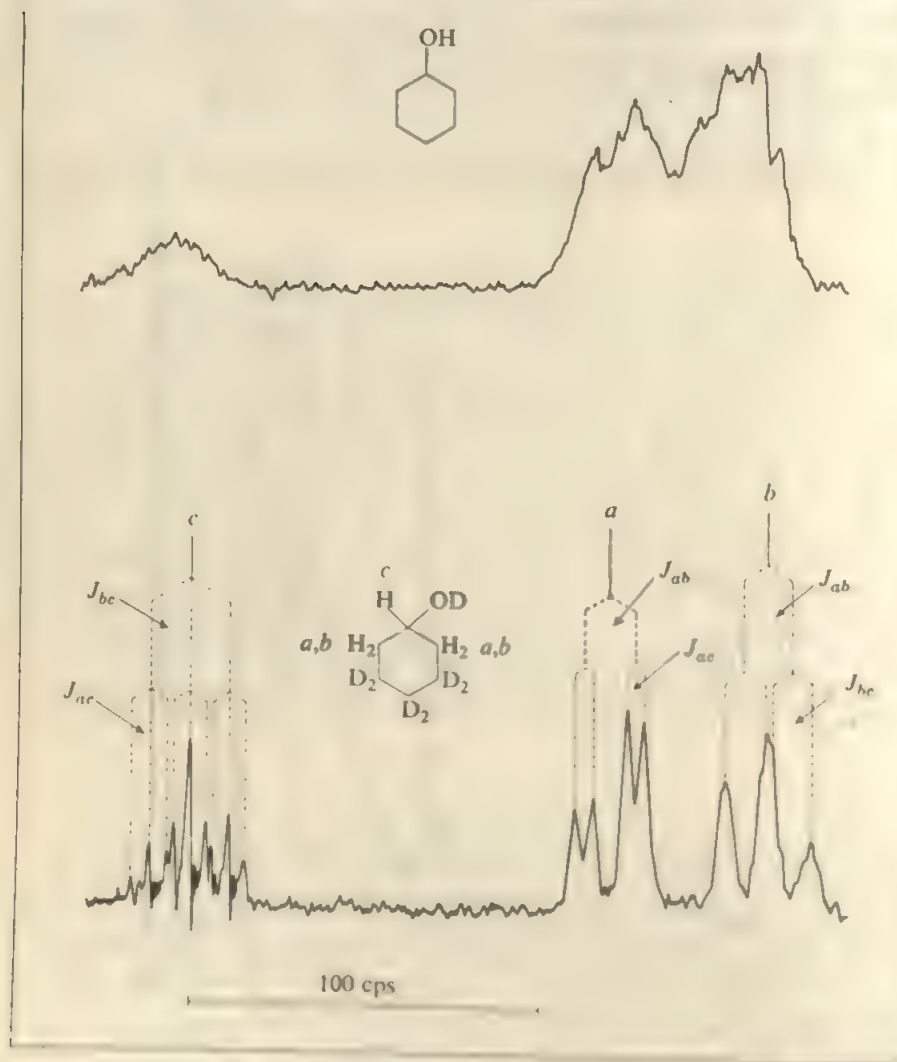
Courtesy of *The Journal of the American Chemical Society*

**Figure 17.23.** NMR spectrum of 2- $\alpha$ -acetoxycholestane-3-one, taken by K. L. Williamson and W. S. Johnson at the University of Wisconsin and Stanford University. The four downfield peaks are due to the proton on C-2, whose signal is split successively by the axial proton and the equatorial proton on C-1.

there are—or, perhaps, how many kinds and how many of each kind. Sometimes only one structural feature is still in doubt—for example, does the molecule contain two methyl groups or one ethyl group?—and the answer is given in a set of peaks standing clear from the general confusion. (See, for example, Fig. 17.23, above.)

Instrumental techniques are available, and others are being developed, to help in the analysis of complicated spectra, and to simplify the spectra actually measured. By the method of *double resonance* (or *double irradiation*), for example, the spins of two sets of protons can be *decoupled*, and a simpler spectrum obtained.

The molecule is irradiated with two radiofrequency beams: the usual one, whose absorption is being measured; and a second, much stronger beam, whose frequency differs from that of the first in such a way that the following happens.



Courtesy of The Journal of the American Chemical Society

**Figure 17.24.** NMR spectra of (top) cyclohexanol and (bottom) 3,3,4,4,5,5-hexadeuteriocyclohexanol, taken by F. A. L. Anet of the University of California, Los Angeles. With absorption and splitting by six protons eliminated, the pattern due to the five remaining protons can be analyzed.

The diastereotopic sets of protons  $H_a$  and  $H_b$  give different signals. Signal  $a$  is split successively into doublets by  $H_c$  (only *one*  $H_c$  splits each  $H_a$ ) and by  $H_b$ . Signal  $b$  is split similarly by  $H_c$  and  $H_a$ . Downfield signal  $c$  is split successively into triplets by  $H_a$  (both protons) and  $H_b$  (both protons).

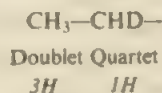
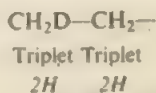
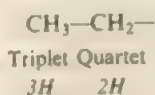


When the field strength is reached at which the proton we are interested in absorbs and gives a signal, the splitting protons are absorbing the other, very strong radiation. These splitting protons are "stirred up" and flip over very rapidly—so rapidly that the signalling proton sees them, not in the various combinations of spin alignments (Sec. 17.13), but in a single *average* alignment. The spins are decoupled, and the signal appears as a single, unsplit peak.

A particularly elegant way to simplify an NMR spectrum—and one that is easily understood by an organic chemist—is the use of *deuterium labeling*.

Because a deuteron has a much smaller magnetic moment than a proton, it absorbs at a much higher field and so gives no signal in the proton NMR spectrum. Furthermore, its coupling with a proton is weak and it ordinarily broadens, but does not split, a proton's signal; even this effect can be eliminated by double irradiation.

As a result, then, the replacement of a proton by a deuteron removes from an NMR spectrum both the signal from that proton and the splitting by it of signals of other protons; it is as though there were no hydrogen at all at that position in the molecule. For example:

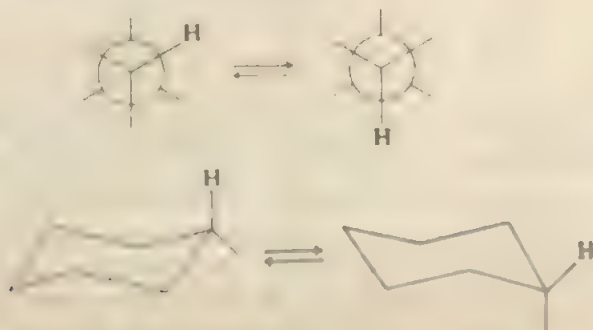


One can use deuterium labeling to find out which signal is produced by which proton or protons; one observes the disappearance of a particular signal when a proton in a known location is replaced by deuterium. One can use deuterium labeling to simplify a complicated spectrum so that a certain set of signals can be seen more clearly: see, for example, Fig. 17.24, p. 714. (This figure also illustrates a point made at the beginning of this section: the formidable looking nine-peak multiplet is analyzed without too much difficulty.)

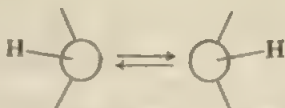
## 17.16 Equivalence of protons: a closer look

We have seen that equivalence—or non-equivalence—of protons is fundamental to the NMR spectrum, since it affects both the number of signals and their splitting. Let us look more closely at equivalence, and see how it is affected by the rate at which certain molecular changes occur:

(a) *rotations about single bonds*, as in the interconversion between conformations of substituted ethanes or cyclohexanes;



(b) *inversion of molecules*, that is, the turning inside out of pyramidal molecules like amines (Sec. 22.6);



(c) *proton exchange*, as, for example, of alcohols (Sec. 17.17).

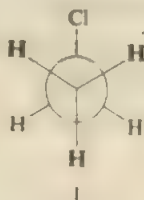


Each of these molecular changes can change the environment—both electronic and protonic—of a given proton, and hence can affect both its chemical shift and its coupling with other protons. The basic question that arises is whether or not the NMR spectrometer sees the proton in *each* environment or in an *average of all* of them. The answer is, in short, that it can often see the proton in either way, depending upon the temperature, and in this ability lies much of the usefulness of NMR spectroscopy.

In comparing it with other spectrometers, Professor John D. Roberts of the California Institute of Technology has likened the NMR spectrometer to a camera with a relatively long shutter time—that is, to a “slow” camera. Such a camera photographs the spokes of a wheel in different ways depending upon the speed with which the wheel spins: as sharp, individual spokes if spinning is slow; as blurred spokes if spinning is faster; and as a single circular smear if spinning is faster yet. In the same way, if the molecular change is relatively fast, the NMR spectrometer sees a proton in its average environment—a smeared-out picture; if the molecular process is slow, the spectrometer sees the proton in each of its environments.

We shall examine the effects on the NMR spectrum of rotations about single bonds in this section, the effects of proton exchange in the next, and the effects of inversion in Sec. 22.6.

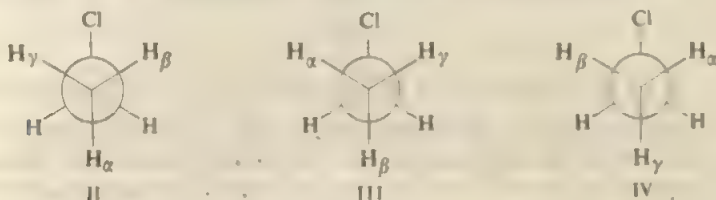
Let us return to ethyl chloride (Sec. 17.10), and focus our attention on the methyl protons. If, at any instant, we could look at an individual molecule, we would almost certainly see it in conformation I. One of the methyl protons is *anti*



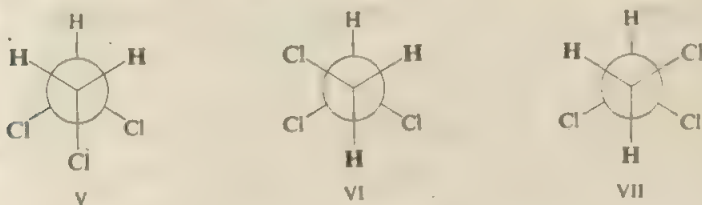
to the chlorine and two protons are *gauche*; quite clearly, the *anti* proton is in a different environment from the others, and—for the moment—is not equivalent to them. Yet, we have seen, the three methyl protons of ethyl chloride give a single NMR signal (a triplet, because of the adjacent methylene group), and hence must be magnetically equivalent. How can this be? The answer is, of course, that rotation about the single bond is—compared with the NMR “shutter speed”—a fast process. the NMR “camera” takes a smeared-out picture of the three protons.

Each proton is seen in an *average* environment, which is exactly the same as the average environment of each of the other two: one-third *anti*, and two-thirds *gauche*.

There are three conformations of ethyl chloride, II, III, and IV, identical except that a different individual proton occupies the *anti* position. Being of equal stability, the three conformations are exactly equally populated: one-third of the molecules in each. In one of these conformations a given proton is *anti* to chlorine, and in two it is *gauche*.

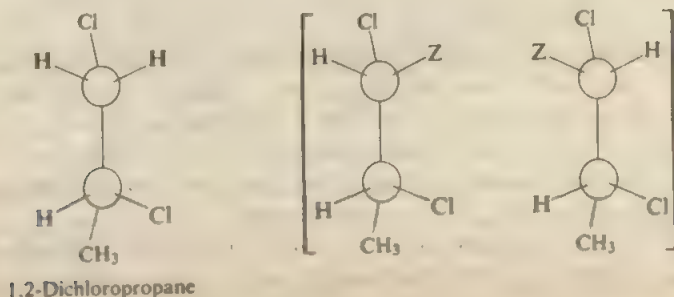


1,1,2-Trichloroethane, to take another example, presents a somewhat different conformational picture, but the net result is the same: identical average environments and hence equivalence for the two methylene protons.

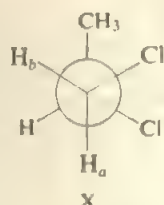
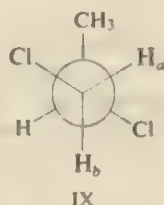
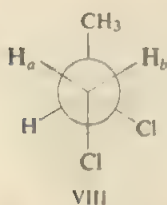


The environments of the two protons are the same in V. The environments are different for the two in VI and VII, but average out the same because of the equal populations of these enantiomeric conformations. (Here, however, we cannot say just *what* the average environment is, unless we know the ratio of V to the racemic modification (VI plus VII).)

With diastereotopic protons, on the other hand, the situation is different: diastereotopic protons are non-equivalent and no rotation will change this. We decided (Sec. 17.10) that the two C-1 protons of 1,2-dichloropropane,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHClCH}_2\text{Cl}$ , are diastereotopic, since replacement of either one by an atom Z would yield diastereomers:

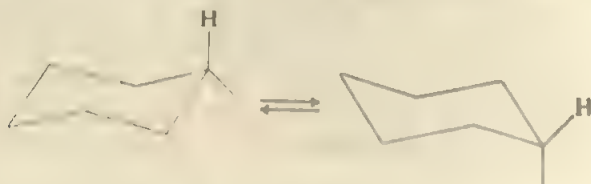


Rotation cannot interconvert the diastereomers, nor can it make the protons,  $H_a$  and  $H_b$ , equivalent. In none of the conformations (VIII, IX, or X)

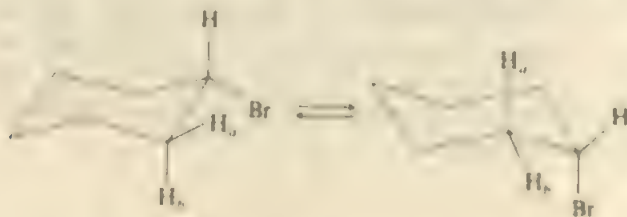


is the environment of the two protons the same; nor is there a pair of mirror-image conformations to balance out their environments. (This holds true whether the compound is optically active or inactive; the presence or absence of an enantiomeric molecule has no effect on the environment of a proton in any individual molecule.) These diastereotopic protons give different signals, couple with the proton on C-2 (with different coupling constants), and couple with each other.

Cyclohexane presents an exactly analogous situation, since the transformation of one chair form into another involves rotations about single bonds. In any chair conformation there are two kinds of protons: six equatorial protons and six axial protons. Yet there is a single NMR signal for all twelve, since their *average* environments are identical: half equatorial, half axial.



If, however, we replace a proton by, say, bromine, the picture changes. Now, the axial and equatorial protons on each carbon are diastereotopic protons: replacement of one would give a *cis*-diastereomer, replacement of the other a *trans*-diastereomer. Protons  $H_a$  and  $H_b$  or any other geminal pair on the ring have



different environments. When  $H_a$  is equatorial, so is  $\text{Br}$ , and when  $H_a$  is axial, so is  $\text{Br}$ .  $H_b$  always occupies a position opposite to that of  $\text{Br}$ . Furthermore, the stabilities and hence populations of the two conformations will, in general, be different, and  $H_a$  and  $H_b$  will spend different fractions of their time in axial and equatorial positions, however, even if by coincidence the conformations are of equal stability,  $H_a$  and  $H_b$  are still not equivalent.

So far, we have discussed situations in which the speed of rotation about single bonds is so fast that the NMR spectrometer sees protons in their average environ-



ment. This is the *usual* situation. It is this situation in which our earlier test for equivalence would work: if replacement of either of two protons by Z would give the same (or enantiomeric) products, the protons are equivalent. We ignore conformers in judging the identity of two products.

Now, if—by lowering the temperature—we could sufficiently slow down rotations about single bonds, we would expect an NMR spectrum that reflects the “instantaneous” environments of protons in each conformation. *This is exactly what happens.* As cyclohexane, for example, is cooled down, the single sharp peak observed at room temperature is seen to broaden and then, at about  $-70^\circ$ , to split into two peaks, which at  $-100^\circ$  are clearly separated: one peak is due to axial protons, and the other peak is due to equatorial protons.

This does *not* mean that the molecule is frozen into a single conformation; it still flips back and forth between two (equivalent) chair conformations; a given proton is axial one moment and equatorial the next. It is just that now the time between interconversions is long enough that we “photograph” the molecule, not as a blur but sharply as one conformation or the other.

By study of the broadening of the peak, or of the coalescence of the two peaks, it is possible to estimate the  $E_{\text{act}}$  for rotation. Indeed, it was by this method that the barrier of 11 kcal/mol (Sec. 5.11) was calculated.

**Problem 17.18** The fluorine NMR spectrum (Sec. 17.13) of 1,2-difluorotetrachloroethane,  $\text{CFCl}_2\text{CFCl}_2$ , shows a single peak at room temperature, but at  $-120^\circ$  shows two peaks (singlets) of unequal area. Interpret each spectrum, and account for the difference. What is the significance of the unequal areas of the peaks in the low-temperature spectrum? Why is there no splitting in either spectrum?

**Problem 17.19** At room temperature, the fluorine NMR spectrum of  $\text{CF}_2\text{BrCBr}_2\text{CN}$  (3,3-difluoro-2,2,3-tribromopropanenitrile) shows a single sharp peak. As the temperature is lowered this peak broadens and, at  $-98^\circ$ , is split into two doublets (equal spacing) and a singlet. The combined area of the doublets is considerably larger than—more than twice as large as—the area of the singlet. Interpret each spectrum, and account for the relative peak areas in the low-temperature spectrum.

## 17.17 NMR spectra of alcohols. Hydrogen bonding. Proton exchange

NMR absorption by a hydroxylic proton ( $\text{O—H}$ ) is shifted downfield by hydrogen bonding. The chemical shift that is observed depends, therefore, on the degree of hydrogen bonding, which in turn depends on temperature, concentration, and the nature of the solvent (Sec. 10.3). As a result, the signal can appear anywhere in the range  $\delta$  1–5. It may be hidden among the peaks due to alkyl protons, although its presence there is often revealed through proton counting.

A hydroxyl proton ordinarily gives rise to a singlet in the NMR spectrum: its signal is not split by nearby protons, nor does it split their signals. Proton exchange between two (identical) molecules of alcohol



is so fast that the proton—now in one molecule and in the next instant in another—cannot see nearby protons in their various combinations of spin alignments, but in a single *average* alignment.

Presumably through its inductive effect, the oxygen of an alcohol causes a

downfield shift for nearby protons: a shift of about the same size as other electronegative atoms (Table 17.4, p. 696).

**Problem 17.20** Can you suggest a procedure that might move a hidden O—H peak into the open? (*Hint*: See Sec. 10.3)

**Problem 17.21** (a) Very dry, pure samples of alcohols show spin-spin splitting of the O—H signals. What splitting would you expect for a primary alcohol? a secondary alcohol? a tertiary alcohol? (b) This splitting disappears on the addition of a trace of acid or base. Write equations to show just how proton exchange would be speeded up by an acid (H: B); by a base (: B).

**Problem 17.22** Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the NMR spectra shown in Fig. 17.25 (p. 721).

## 17.18 Carbon-13 NMR (CMR) spectroscopy

Among the atoms which, like the proton, give rise to NMR spectra is one of the isotopes of carbon,  $^{13}\text{C}$ . As a result of the development of new instrumental methods in the years since about 1970,  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR spectroscopy (CMR) has become an analytical method used routinely to complement proton NMR spectroscopy (PMR).

The isotope  $^{13}\text{C}$  makes up only 1.1% of naturally occurring carbon, but the sensitivity of modern spectrometers makes this level quite adequate for the measurement of  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR spectra. Indeed, the low natural abundance is actually an advantage. Only occasionally is a  $^{13}\text{C}$  near enough to another  $^{13}\text{C}$  for  $^{13}\text{C}$ – $^{13}\text{C}$  spin-spin coupling to occur; the spectra do not ordinarily show splitting from this cause, and are thus enormously simplified.

Present-day CMR spectrometers most commonly decouple (Sec. 17.15) the  $^{13}\text{C}$  spin from that of the proton and, through a minicomputer built into the instrument, produce a spectrum of amazing simplicity from even very complicated molecules: a set of single peaks, one for each kind of carbon in the molecule. These spectra can be used to show the identity of two compounds or, by comparison with the spectra of model compounds, to determine the structure of a new substance. In such applications, chemical shifts become of primary importance, and are used much as infrared frequencies are used.

Carbon-13 NMR has emerged as an analytical tool of enormous power. It has been used to detect and study the structure of intermediates in organic reactions—including carbocations, free radicals, and carbanions—even when the reactions are occurring in living cells. And all this, it seems clear, is only a beginning.

**Problem 17.23** How many signals would you expect to observe in the  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR spectrum of (a) *n*-octane, (b) 2-methylheptane, (c) 3-methylheptane, (d) 4-methylheptane?

## 17.19 The electron spin resonance (ESR) spectrum

Let us consider a free radical placed in a magnetic field and subjected to electromagnetic radiation, and let us focus our attention, not on the nuclei, but on the odd, unpaired electron. This electron spins and thus generates a magnetic moment, which can be lined up with or against the external magnetic field. Energy

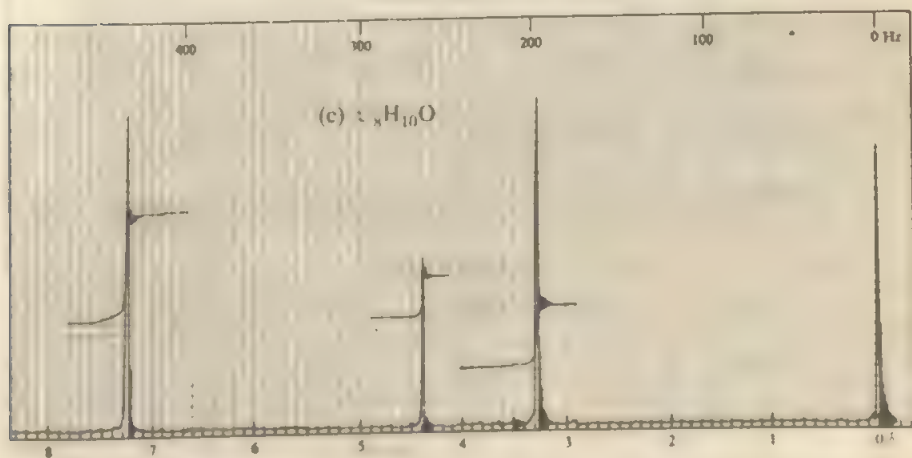
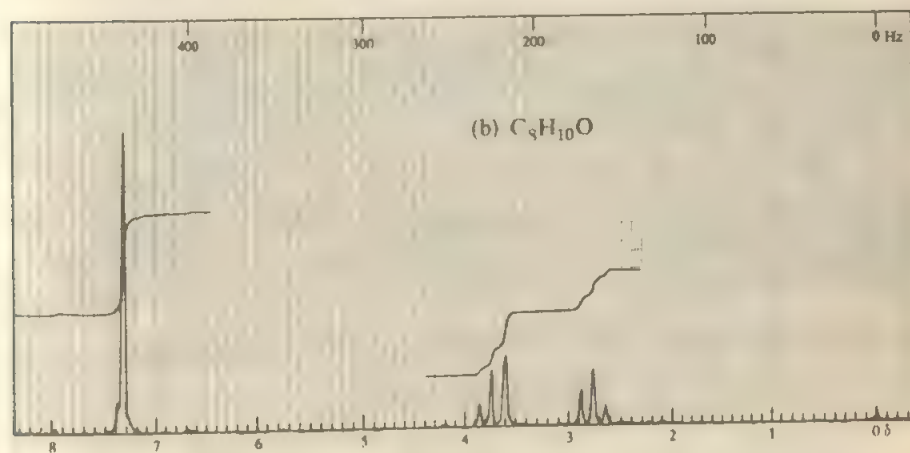
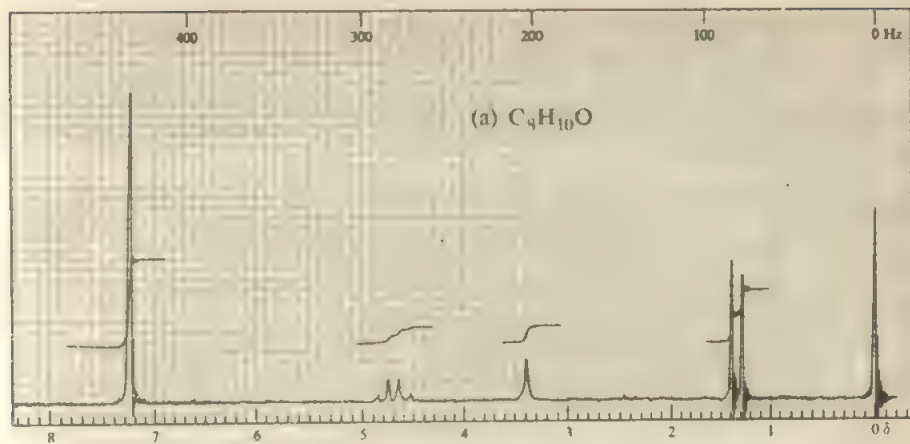


Figure 17.25. NMR spectra for Problem 17.22, p. 720



is required to change the spin state of the electron, from alignment with the field to the less stable alignment, against the field. This energy is provided by absorption of radiation of the proper frequency. An absorption spectrum is produced, which is called an *electron spin resonance (ESR) spectrum* or an *electron paramagnetic resonance (EPR) spectrum*.

The ESR spectrum is thus analogous to the NMR spectrum. An electron has, however, a much larger magnetic moment than the nucleus of a proton, and more energy is required to reverse the spin. In a field of 3200 gauss, for example, where NMR absorption would occur at about 14 MHz, ESR absorption occurs at a much higher frequency: 9000 MHz, in the *microwave* region.

Like NMR signals, ESR signals show splitting, and from exactly the same cause, coupling with the spins of certain nearby nuclei: for example, protons near carbon atoms that carry—or help to carry—the odd electron. For this reason, ESR spectroscopy can be used not only to detect the presence of free radicals and to measure their concentration, but also to give evidence about their structure: what free radicals they are, and how the odd electron is spread over the molecule.

**Problem 17.24** Although all electrons spin, only molecules containing unpaired electrons—only free radicals—give ESR spectra. Why is this? (*Hint*: Consider the possibility (a) that one electron of a pair has its spin reversed, or (b) that both electrons of a pair have their spins reversed.)

**Problem 17.25** In each of the following cases, tell what free radical is responsible for the ESR spectrum, and show how the observed splitting arises. (a) X-irradiation of methyl iodide at low temperatures: a four-line signal. (b)  $\gamma$ -irradiation at 77°K of propane and of *n*-butane: symmetrical signals of, respectively, 8 lines and 7 lines. (c) Triphenylmethyl chloride + zinc: a very complex signal.

### About Analyzing Spectra

In problems you will be given the molecular formula of a compound and asked to deduce its structure from its spectroscopic properties: sometimes from its infrared or NMR spectrum alone, sometimes from both. The compound will generally be a simple one, and you may need to look only at a few features of the spectra to find the answer. To confirm your answer, however, and to gain experience, see how much information you can get from the spectra: try to identify as many infrared bands as you can, to assign all NMR signals to specific protons, and to analyze the various spin-spin splittings. Above all, look at as many spectra as you can find: in the laboratory, in other books, in catalogs of spectra in the library.

### PROBLEMS

1. Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the following sets of NMR data.

- (a)  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_3\text{Cl}_3$   
*a* triplet,  $\delta$  4.52, 1H  
*b* doublet,  $\delta$  6.07, 2H

- (c)  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$   
*a* doublet,  $\delta$  1.04, 6H  
*b* multiplet,  $\delta$  1.95, 1H  
*c* doublet,  $\delta$  3.33, 2H

- (b)  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5\text{Cl}_3$   
*a* singlet,  $\delta$  2.20, 3H  
*b* singlet,  $\delta$  4.02, 2H

- (d)  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{14}$   
*a* singlet,  $\delta$  1.30, 9H  
*b* singlet,  $\delta$  7.28, 5H



- (e)  $C_{10}H_{14}$   
*a* doublet,  $\delta$  0.88, 6H  
*b* multiplet,  $\delta$  1.86, 1H  
*c* doublet,  $\delta$  2.45, 2H  
*d* singlet,  $\delta$  7.12, 5H
- (f)  $C_9H_{10}$   
*a* quintet,  $\delta$  2.04, 2H  
*b* triplet,  $\delta$  2.91, 4H  
*c* singlet,  $\delta$  7.17, 4H
- (g)  $C_{10}H_{13}Cl$   
*a* singlet,  $\delta$  1.57, 6H  
*b* singlet,  $\delta$  3.07, 2H  
*c* singlet,  $\delta$  7.27, 5H
- (h)  $C_{10}H_{12}$   
*a* multiplet,  $\delta$  0.65, 2H  
*b* multiplet,  $\delta$  0.81, 2H  
*c* singlet,  $\delta$  1.37, 3H  
*d* singlet,  $\delta$  7.17, 5H
- (i)  $C_9H_{11}Br$   
*a* quintet,  $\delta$  2.15, 2H  
*b* triplet,  $\delta$  2.75, 2H  
*c* triplet,  $\delta$  3.38, 2H  
*d* singlet,  $\delta$  7.22, 5H
- (j)  $C_3H_5ClF_2$   
*a* triplet,  $\delta$  1.75, 3H  
*b* triplet,  $\delta$  3.63, 2H

2. Identify the stereoisomeric 1,3-dibromo-1,3-dimethylcyclobutanes on the basis of their NMR spectra.

Isomer X: singlet,  $\delta$  2.13, 6H  
 singlet,  $\delta$  3.21, 4H

Isomer Y: singlet,  $\delta$  1.88, 6H  
 doublet,  $\delta$  2.84, 2H  
 doublet,  $\delta$  3.54, 2H  
 doublets have equal spacing

3. When mesitylene (NMR spectrum, Fig. 17 10, p. 698) is treated with HF and SbF<sub>5</sub> in liquid SO<sub>2</sub> solution, the following peaks, all singlets, are observed in the NMR spectrum:  $\delta$  2.8, 6H;  $\delta$  2.9, 3H;  $\delta$  4.6, 2H; and  $\delta$  7.7, 2H. To what compound is the spectrum due? Assign all peaks in the spectrum.

Of what general significance to chemical theory is such an observation?

4. (a) On catalytic hydrogenation, compound A, C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>8</sub>, gave *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropane. On this basis, three isomeric structures were considered possible for A. What were they? (b) Absence of infrared absorption at 890 cm<sup>-1</sup> made one of the structures unlikely. Which one was it? (c) The NMR spectrum of A showed signals at  $\delta$  2.22 and  $\delta$  1.04 with intensity ratio 3:1. Which of the three structures in (a) is consistent with this? (d) The base peak in the mass spectrum was found at *m/e* 67. What ion was this peak probably due to, and how do you account for its abundance? (e) Compound A was synthesized in one step from open-chain compounds. How do you think this was done?

5. X-ray analysis shows that the [18]annulene (Problem 9, p. 591, *n* = 9) is planar. The NMR spectrum shows two broad bands:  $\tau$  1.1 and  $\tau$  11.8, peak area ratio 2:1. (a) Are these properties consistent with aromaticity? Explain. (b) Would you have predicted aromaticity for this compound? Explain. (*Hint*: Carefully draw a structural formula for the compound, keeping in mind bond angles and showing all hydrogen atoms.)

6. Hydrocarbon B, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>8</sub>, gave an NMR spectrum with two signals:  $\delta$  6.55 and  $\delta$  3.84, peak area ratio 2:1. When warmed in pyridine for three hours, B was quantitatively converted into benzene.

Mild hydrogenation of B yielded C, whose spectra showed the following: mass spectrum, mol. wt. 82, infrared spectrum, no double bonds; NMR spectrum, one broad peak at  $\delta$  2.34.

(a) How many rings are there in C? (See Problem 5.12, p. 189.) (b) How many rings are there (probably) in B? How many double bonds in B? (c) Can you suggest a structure for B?

(d) In the NMR spectrum of B, the upfield signal was a quintet, and the downfield signal was a triplet. How must you account for these splittings?

7. The five known 1,2,3,4,5,6-hexachlorocyclohexanes can be described in terms of the equatorial (e) or axial (a) disposition of successive chlorines: eeeeee, eeeaea, eeeaaa, eaeaea, eeeaaa. Their NMR spectra have been measured.

Which of these would give (a) only one peak (two isomers), (b) two peaks, 5H:1H (one isomer); (c) two peaks, 4H:2H (two isomers)?

(d) Which one of the isomers in (a) would you expect to show no change in NMR spectrum at low temperature? Which one would show a split into two peaks? Predict the relative peak areas for the latter case.

8. (a) Although the NMR spectrum of *trans*-4-*tert*-butyl-1-bromocyclohexane is complicated, the signal from one proton stands clear ( $\delta$  3.83), downfield from the rest. Which proton is this, and why? (b) The *cis*-isomer shows a corresponding peak, but at  $\delta$  4.63. Assuming that the *tert*-butyl group exerts no direct magnetic effect, to what do you attribute the difference in chemical shifts between the two spectra? These data are typical, and are the basis of a generalization relating conformation and chemical shift. What is that generalization?

9. The NMR spectrum of bromocyclohexane shows a downfield peak (1H) at  $\delta$  4.16. This signal is a single peak at room temperature, but at  $-75^\circ$  separates into two peaks of unequal area (but totalling one proton):  $\delta$  3.97 and  $\delta$  4.64 in the ratio 4.6:1.0. How do you account for the separation of peaks? On the basis of your generalization of the previous problem, which conformation of the molecule predominates, and (at  $-75^\circ$ ) what percentage of molecules does it account for?

10. (a) In the liquid form, *tert*-butyl fluoride and isopropyl fluoride gave the following NMR spectra.

*tert*-butyl fluoride: doublet,  $\delta$  1.30,  $J = 20$  Hz

isopropyl fluoride: two doublets,  $\delta$  1.23, 6H,  $J = 23$  Hz and 4 Hz

two multiplets,  $\delta$  4.64, 1H,  $J = 48$  Hz and 4 Hz

How do you account for each of these spectra? (Hint: See Sec. 17.13.)

(b) When the alkyl fluorides were dissolved in liquid  $\text{SbF}_5$ , the following NMR spectra were obtained.

from *tert*-butyl fluoride: singlet,  $\delta$  4.35

from isopropyl fluoride: doublet,  $\delta$  5.06, 6H,  $J = 4$  Hz

multiplet,  $\delta$  13.5, 1H,  $J = 4$  Hz

To what molecule is each of these spectra due? (Hint: What does the disappearance of just half the peaks observed in part (a) suggest?) Is the very large downfield shift what you might have expected for molecules like these? Of what fundamental significance to organic theory are these observations?

11. Treatment of neopentyl chloride with the strong base sodamide ( $\text{NaNH}_2$ ) yields a hydrocarbon of formula  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_{10}$ , which readily dissolves in concentrated sulfuric acid, but is not oxidized by cold, dilute, neutral permanganate. Its NMR spectrum shows absorption at  $\delta$  0.20 and  $\delta$  1.05 with peak area ratio 2:3. When the same reaction is carried out using the labeled alkyl halide,  $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCD}_2\text{Cl}$ , the product obtained has its  $M^+$  peak at  $m/e$  71. What is a likely structure for the hydrocarbon, and how is it probably formed? Is the result of the labeling experiment consistent with your mechanism? (Hint: See Sec. 8.26.)

12. When methallyl chloride,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ , was treated with sodamide in tetrahydrofuran solution, there was obtained a hydrocarbon,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_8$ , which gave the following NMR spectrum:

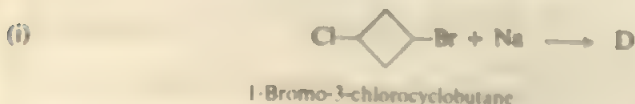
a doublet,  $\delta$  0.83, 2H,  $J = 2$  Hz

b doublet,  $\delta$  2.13, 3H,  $J = 1$  Hz

c multiplet,  $\delta$  6.40, 1H

(a) What is a likely structure for this hydrocarbon, and by what mechanism was it probably formed? (b) What product would you expect to obtain by the same reaction from allyl chloride?

13. Hydrocarbon D has been prepared in two different ways



Mass spectrometry shows a molecular weight of 54 for D. (What is its molecular formula?) On gas chromatography, D was found to have a different retention time from cyclobutene, butadiene, or methylenecyclopropane. D was stable at 180° (unlike cyclobutene), but was converted into butadiene at 225°. The NMR spectrum of D showed: *a*, singlet  $\delta$  0.45, 2H; *b*, multiplet,  $\delta$  1.34, 2H; *c*, multiplet,  $\delta$  1.44, 2H.

(a) What single structure for D is consistent with all these facts? (*Hint*: In analyzing the NMR spectrum, take stereochemistry into consideration.) (b) By what familiar reaction is D formed in (i)? in (ii)?

14. Tricycloppropylcarbinol ( $R_3COH$ ,  $R$  = cyclopropyl) gives a complex NMR spectrum in the region  $\delta$  0.2–1.1, and is transparent in the near ultraviolet. A solution of the alcohol in concentrated  $H_2SO_4$  has the following properties:

- (i) A freezing-point lowering corresponding to four particles for each molecule dissolved;
- (ii) intense ultraviolet absorption ( $\lambda_{max}$  270 nm,  $\epsilon_{max}$  22,000);
- (iii) an NMR spectrum with one peak, a singlet,  $\delta$  2.26.

When the solution is diluted and neutralized, the original alcohol is recovered.

(a) What substance is formed in sulfuric acid solution? Show how its formation accounts for each of the facts (i)–(iii). How do you account for the evident stability of this substance? (*Hint*: See Secs. 5.9 and 16.17.)

(b) A solution of 2-cyclopropyl-2-propanol in strong acid gives the following NMR spectrum:

- a* singlet,  $\delta$  2.60, 3H
- b* singlet,  $\delta$  3.14, 3H
- c* multiplet,  $\delta$  3.5–4, 5H

A similar solution of 2-cyclopropyl-1,1,1-trideuterio-2-propanol gives a similar spectrum except that *a* and *b* are each reduced to one-half their former area.

What general conclusion about the relative locations of the two methyl groups must you make? Can you suggest a specific geometry for the molecule that is consistent not only with this spectrum but also with your answer to part (a)? (*Hint*: Use models.)

15. Identify each of the following isomers of formula  $C_{20}H_{18}O$ :

Isomer E (m.p. 88°)     *a* singlet,  $\delta$  2.23, 1H  
                                  *b* doublet,  $\delta$  3.92, 1H,  $J = 7$  Hz  
                                  *c* doublet,  $\delta$  4.98, 1H,  $J = 7$  Hz  
                                  *d* singlet,  $\delta$  6.81, 10H  
                                  *e* singlet,  $\delta$  6.99, 5H

Isomer F (m.p. 88°)     *a* singlet,  $\delta$  2.14, 1H  
                                  *b* singlet,  $\delta$  3.55, 2H  
                                  *c* broad peak,  $\delta$  7.25, 15H

What single simple chemical test would distinguish between these two isomers?

16. Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the NMR spectra in Fig. 17.26, p. 726.

17. Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the NMR spectra in Fig. 17.27, p. 727.

18. Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the NMR spectra in Fig. 17.28, p. 728.

19. Give the structures of compounds G, H, and I, on the basis of their infrared spectra (Fig. 17.29, p. 729) and their NMR spectra (Fig. 17.30, p. 730).

20. Give the structures of compounds J, K, and L, on the basis of their infrared spectra (Fig. 17.31, p. 731) and their NMR spectra (Fig. 17.32, p. 732).

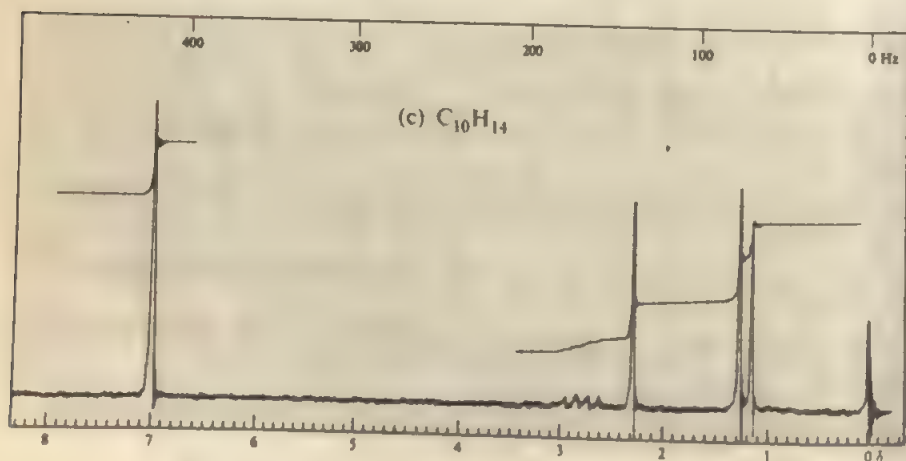
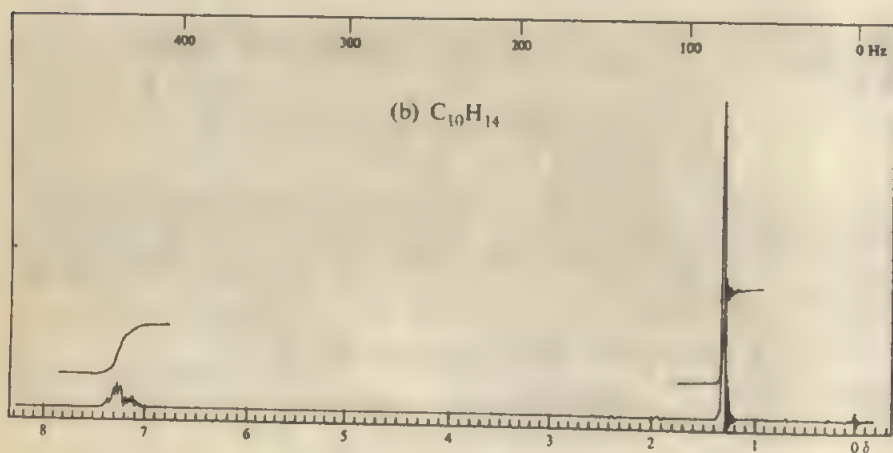
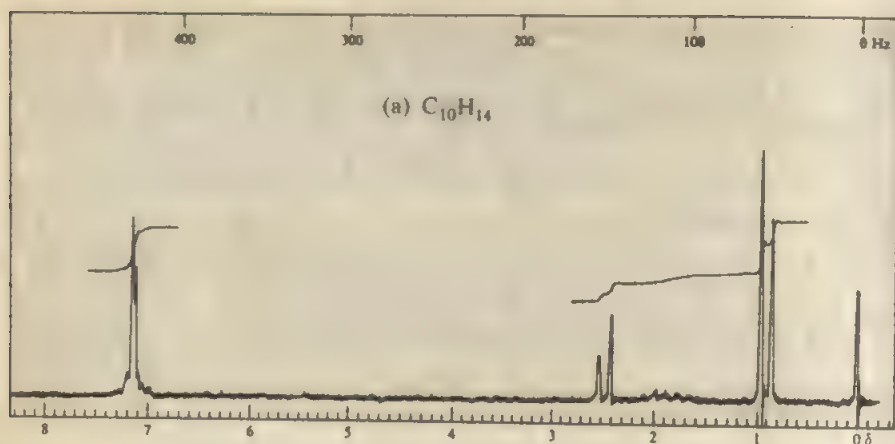


Figure 17.26. NMR spectra for Problem 16, p. 725.



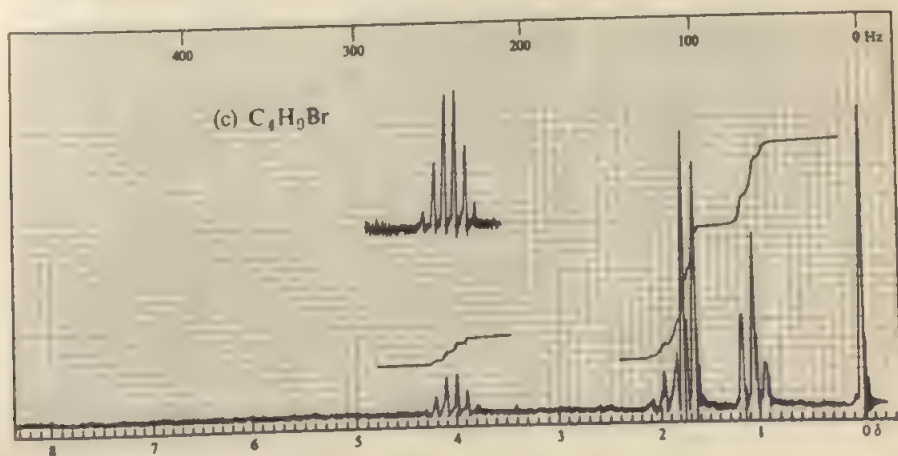
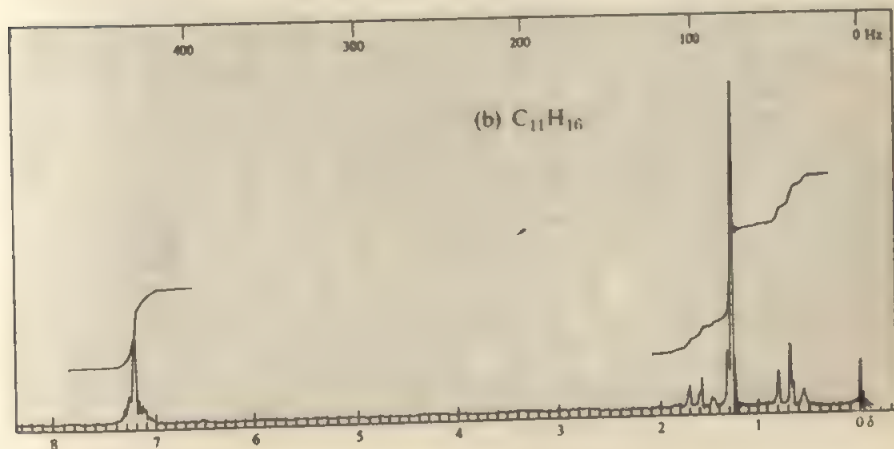
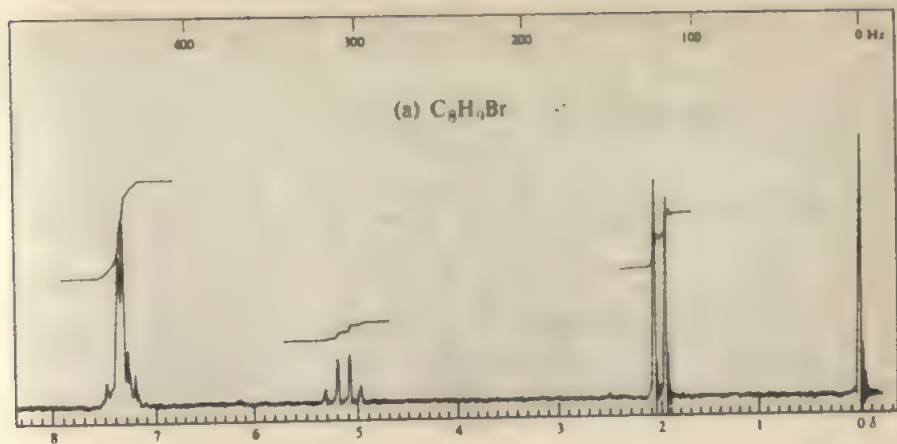


Figure 17.27. NMR spectra for Problem 17, p. 725.

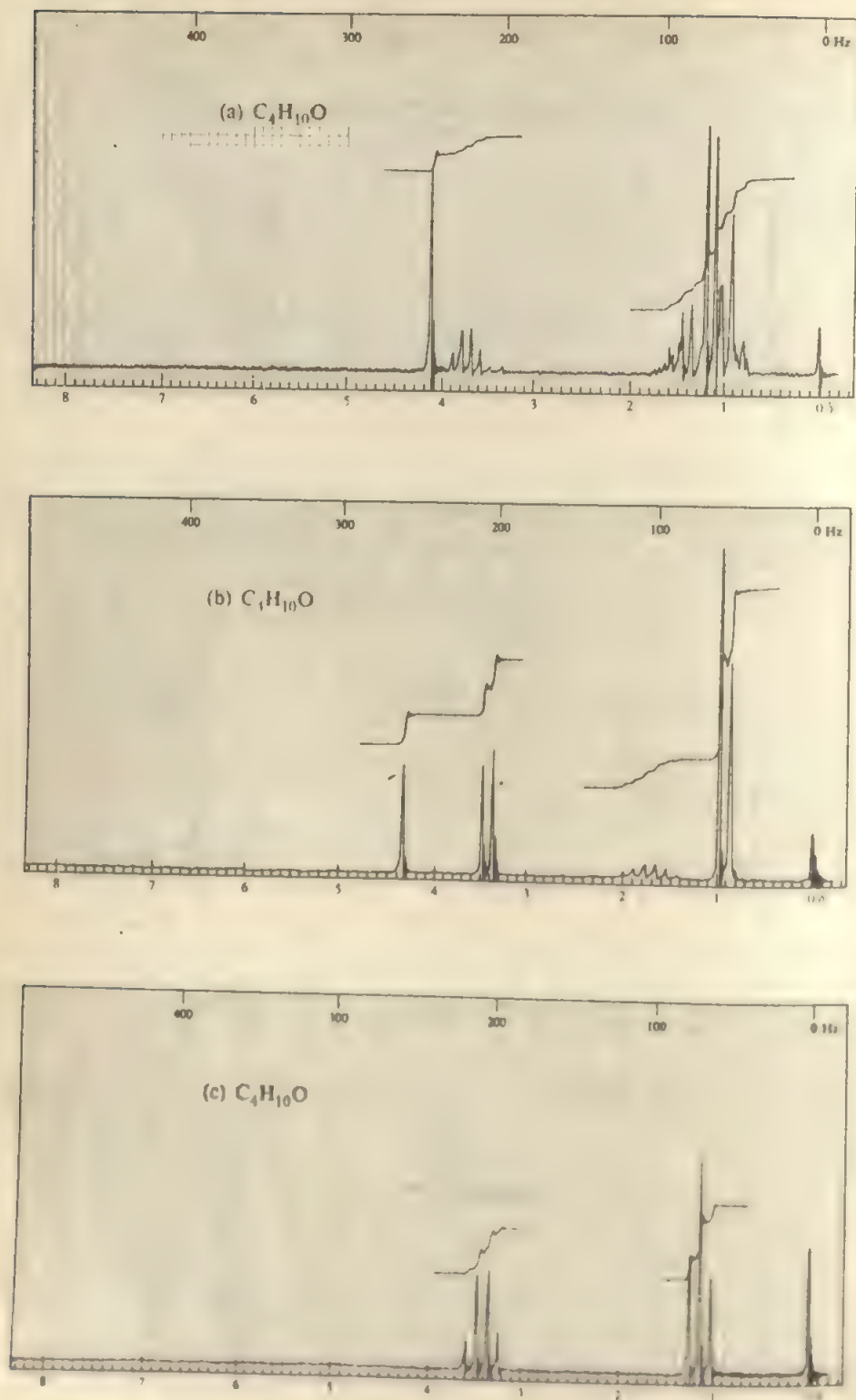


Figure 17.28. NMR spectra for Problem 18, p. 725.

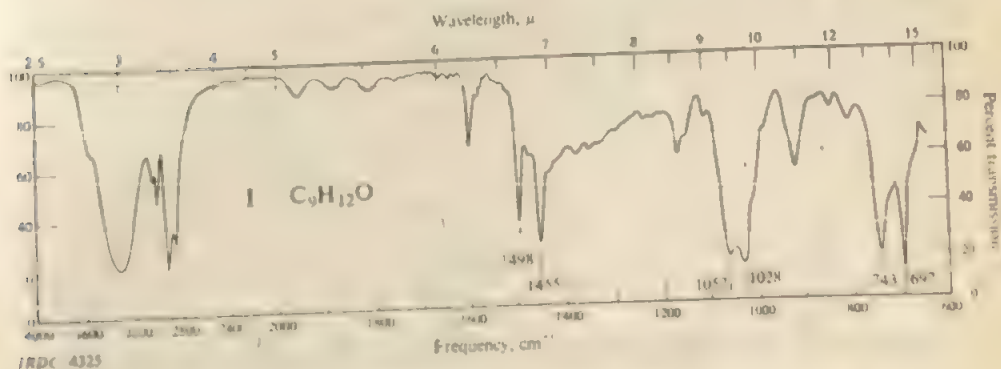
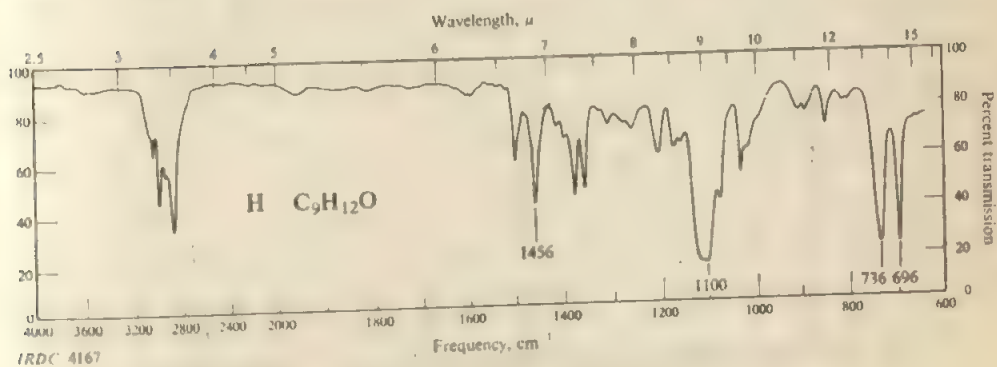
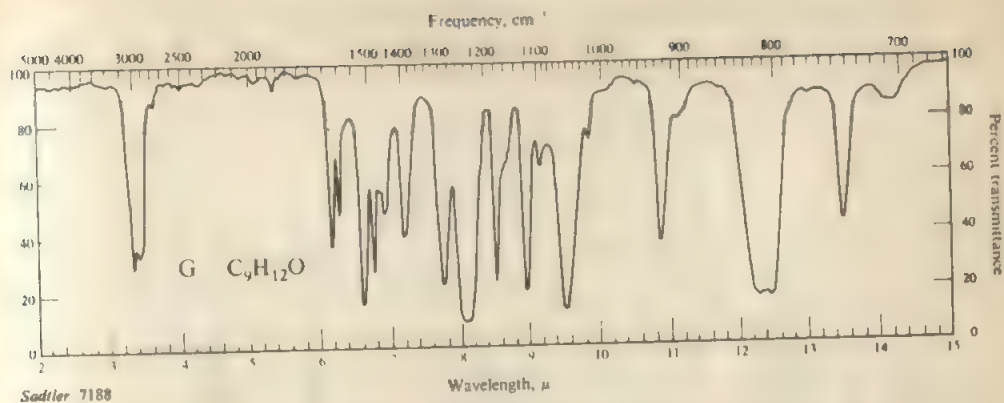


FIGURE 17.29. Infrared spectra for Problem 19, p. 725

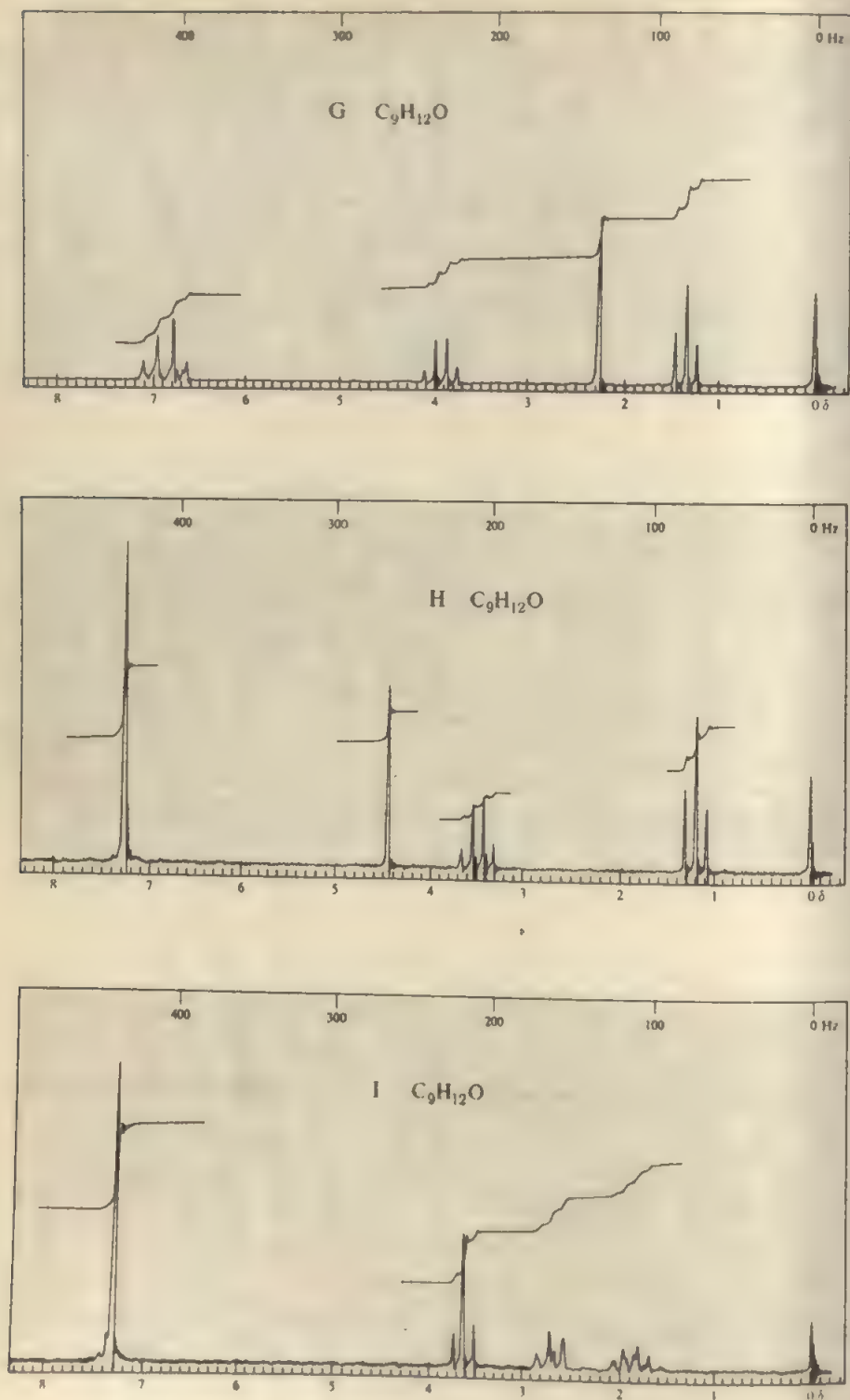


Figure 17.30. NMR spectra for Problem 19, p. 725.



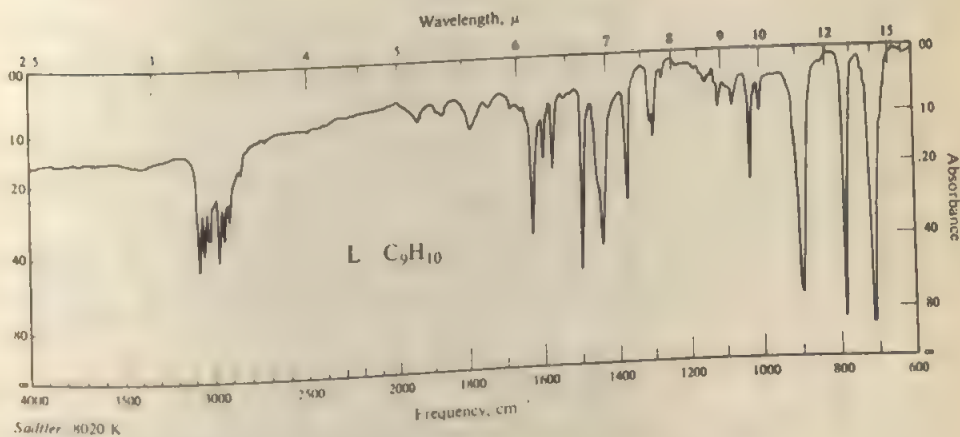
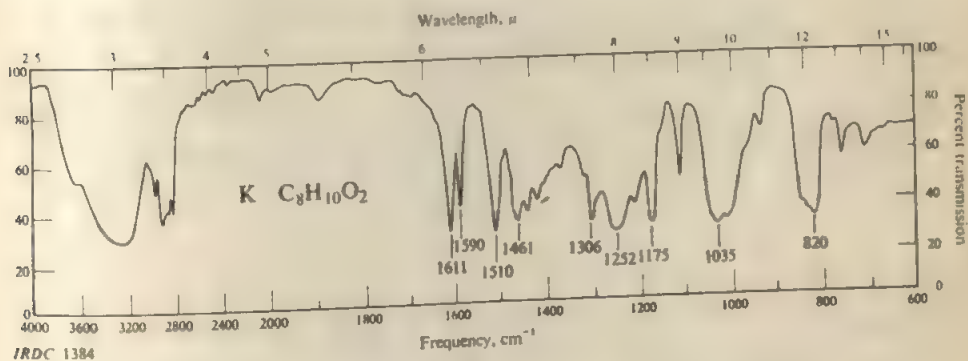
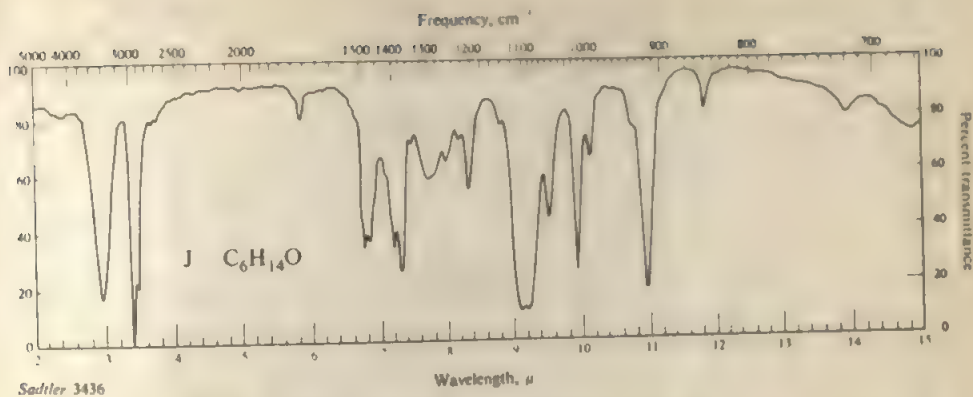


Figure 17.31. Infrared spectra for Problem 20, p. 725.

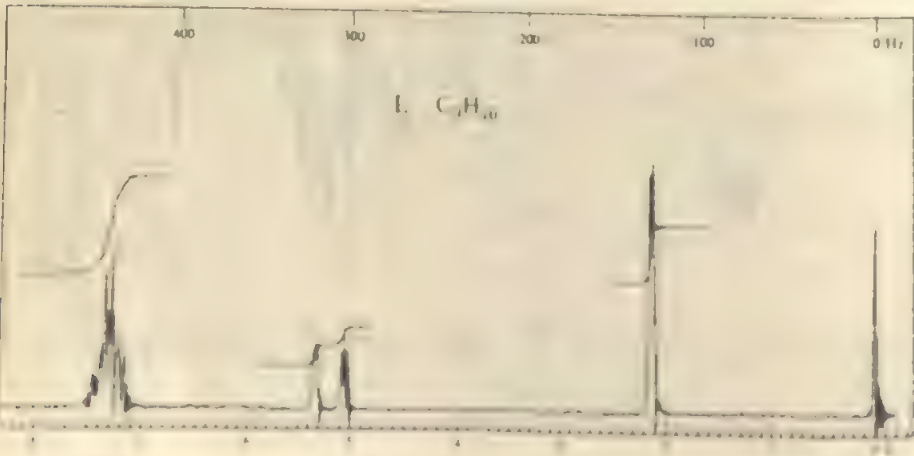
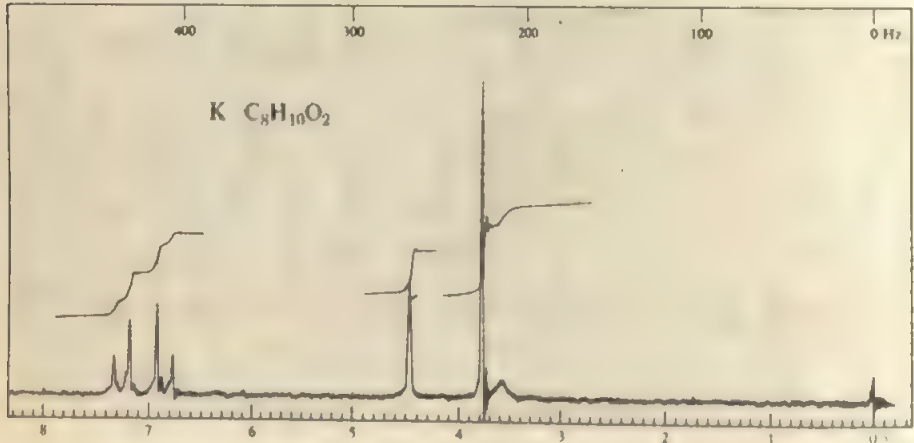
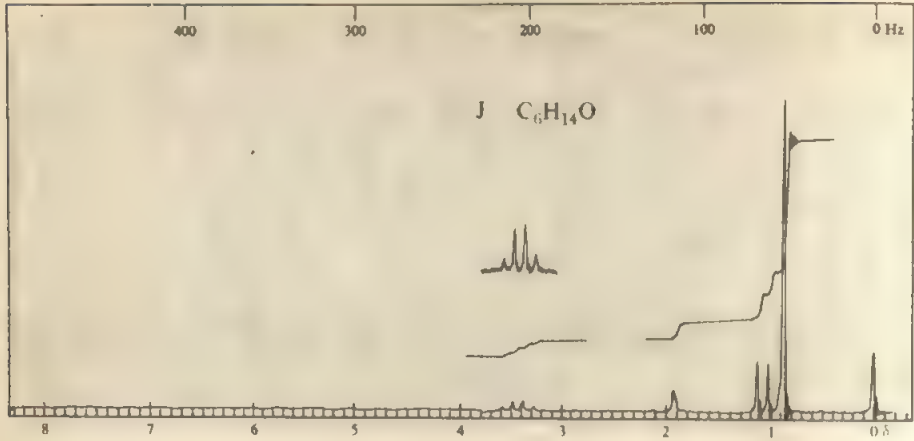


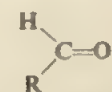
Figure 17-32 NMR spectra for Problem 20, p. 725

## Aldehydes and Ketones

### Nucleophilic Addition

#### 18.1 Structure

Aldehydes are compounds of the general formula  $RCHO$ ; ketones are compounds of the general formula  $RR'CO$ . The groups  $R$  and  $R'$  may be aliphatic or aromatic.



An aldehyde

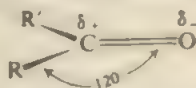


A ketone

Both aldehydes and ketones contain the carbonyl group,  $C=O$ , and are often referred to collectively as **carbonyl compounds**. *It is the carbonyl group that largely determines the chemistry of aldehydes and ketones.*

It is not surprising to find that aldehydes and ketones resemble each other closely in most of their properties. However, there is a hydrogen atom attached to the carbonyl group of aldehydes, and there are two organic groups attached to the carbonyl group of ketones. This difference in structure affects their properties in two ways: (a) aldehydes are quite easily oxidized, whereas ketones are oxidized only with difficulty; (b) aldehydes are usually more reactive than ketones toward nucleophilic addition, the characteristic reaction of carbonyl compounds.

Let us examine the structure of the carbonyl group. Carbonyl carbon is joined to three other atoms by  $\sigma$  bonds; since these bonds utilize  $sp^2$  orbitals (Sec. 1.10), they lie in a plane, and are  $120^\circ$  apart. The remaining  $p$  orbital of the carbon overlaps a  $p$  orbital of oxygen to form a  $\pi$  bond; carbon and oxygen are thus joined



by a double bond. The part of the molecule immediately surrounding carbonyl carbon is *flat*, oxygen, carbonyl carbon, and the two atoms directly attached to carbonyl carbon lie in a plane.

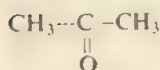




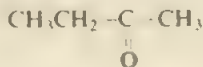
The simplest aliphatic ketone has the common name of *acetone*. For most other aliphatic ketones we name the two groups that are attached to carbonyl carbon, and follow these names by the word *ketone*. A ketone in which the carbonyl group is attached to a benzene ring is named as a *-phenone*, as illustrated below.

According to the IUPAC system, the longest chain carrying the carbonyl group is considered the parent structure, and is named by replacing the *-e* of the corresponding alkane with *-one*. The positions of various groups are indicated by numbers, the carbonyl carbon being given the lowest possible number.

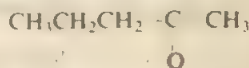
In certain polyfunctional compounds, the presence of a carbonyl group can be indicated by the prefix *oxo-*, with a number to show its position in the molecule.



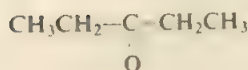
Acetone  
Propanone



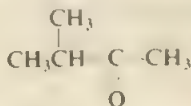
Methyl ethyl ketone  
Butanone



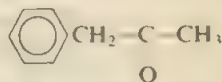
Methyl *n*-propyl ketone  
2-Pentanone



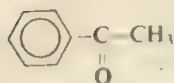
Ethyl ketone  
3-Pentanone



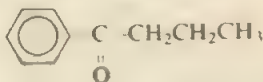
Methyl isopropyl ketone  
3-Methyl-2-butanone



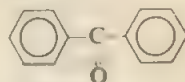
Benzyl methyl ketone  
1-Phenyl-2-propanone



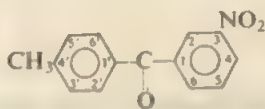
Acetophenone



*n*-Butyrophenone



Benzophenone



3-Nitro-4'-methylbenzophenone

### 18.3 Physical properties

The polar carbonyl group makes aldehydes and ketones polar compounds, and hence they have higher boiling points than non-polar compounds of comparable molecular weight. By themselves, they are not capable of intermolecular hydrogen bonding since they contain hydrogen bonded only to carbon; as a result they have lower boiling points than comparable alcohols or carboxylic acids. For example, compare *n*-butyraldehyde (b.p. 76°) and methyl ethyl ketone (b.p. 80°) with *n*-pentane (b.p. 36°) and diethyl ether (b.p. 35°) on the one hand, and with *n*-butyl alcohol (b.p. 118°) and propionic acid (b.p. 141°) on the other.

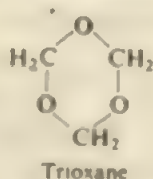
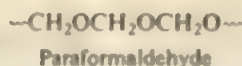
The lower aldehydes and ketones are appreciably soluble in water, presumably because of hydrogen bonding between solute and solvent molecules, borderline solubility is reached at about five carbons. Aldehydes and ketones are soluble in the usual organic solvents.

Formaldehyde is a gas (b.p. -21°), and is handled either as an aqueous solution (*Formalin*), or as one of its solid polymers: *paraformaldehyde*,  $(\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n$ , or

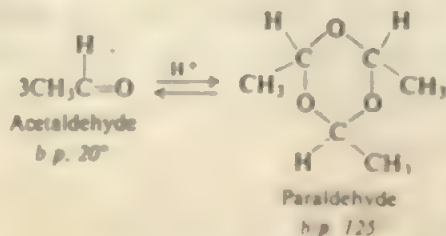
Table 18.1 ALDEHYDES AND KETONES

	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Solub., g/100 g H <sub>2</sub> O
Formaldehyde	- 92	- 21	v.sol.
Acetaldehyde	- 121	20	∞
Propionaldehyde	- 81	49	16
<i>n</i> -Butyraldehyde	- 99	76	7
<i>n</i> -Valeraldehyde	- 91	103	sl.s.
Caproaldehyde		131	sl.s.
Heptaldehyde	- 42	155	0.1
Phenylacetaldehyde		194	sl.s.
 Benzaldehyde	- 26	178	0.3
<i>o</i> -Tolualdehyde		196	
<i>m</i> -Tolualdehyde		199	
<i>p</i> -Tolualdehyde		205	
Salicylaldehyde ( <i>o</i> -Hydroxybenzaldehyde)	2	197	1.7
<i>p</i> -Hydroxybenzaldehyde	116		1.4
Anisaldehyde	3	248	0.2
Vanillin	82	285	1
Piperonal	37	263	0.2
 Acetone	- 94	56	∞
Methyl ethyl ketone	- 86	80	26
2-Pentanone	- 78	102	6.3
3-Pentanone	- 41	101	5
2-Hexanone	- 35	150	2.0
3-Hexanone		124	sl.s.
Methyl isobutyl ketone	- 85	119	1.9
Acetophenone	21	202	
Propiophenone	21	218	
<i>n</i> -Butyrophenone	11	232	
Benzophenone	48	306	

trioxane, (CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>3</sub>. When dry formaldehyde is desired, as, for example, for reaction with a Grignard reagent, it is obtained by heating paraformaldehyde or trioxane.



Acetaldehyde (b p 20°) is often generated from its higher-boiling trimer by heating the trimer with acid:



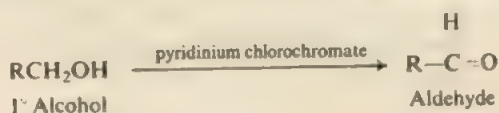
## 18.4 Preparation

A few of the many laboratory methods of preparing aldehydes and ketones are outlined below; most of these are already familiar to us. Some of the methods involve oxidation or reduction in which an alcohol, hydrocarbon, or acid chloride is converted into an aldehyde or ketone of the same carbon number. Other methods involve the formation of new carbon-carbon bonds, and yield aldehydes or ketones of higher carbon number than the starting materials.

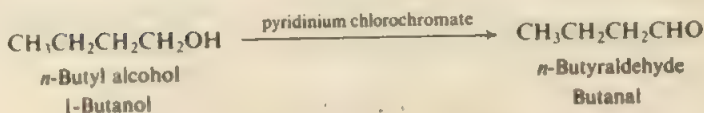
Industrial preparations often involve special methods, or the modification of laboratory methods by use of cheaper reagents: formaldehyde and acetone are made by oxidation of methanol and isopropyl alcohol, respectively, but by air in the presence of a catalyst. Some aldehydes are obtained by the oxo process, in which they are the initial products (Sec. 10.4).

### PREPARATION OF ALDEHYDES

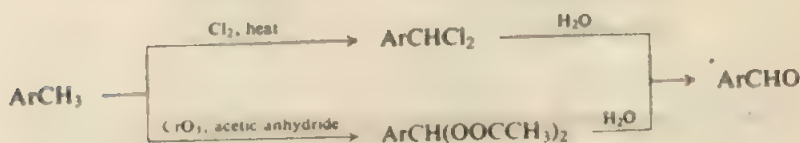
#### 1. Oxidation of primary alcohols. Discussed in Secs. 11.9 and 18.4.



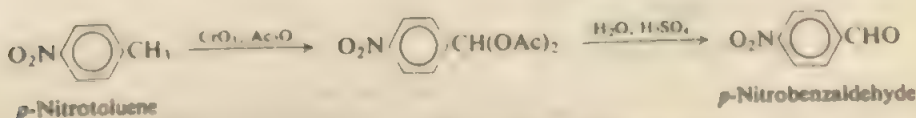
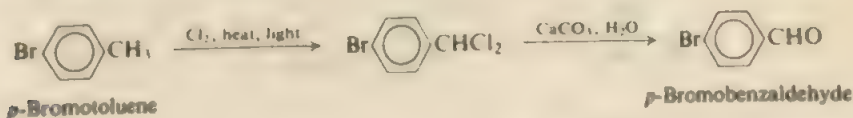
*Example:*



#### 2. Oxidation of methylbenzenes. Discussed in Sec. 18.4.

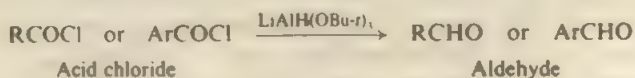


*Examples:*

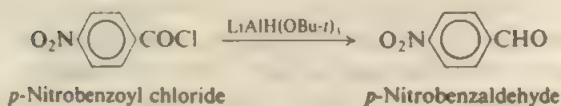


CONT.

## 3. Reduction of acid chlorides. Discussed in Sec. 18.4.



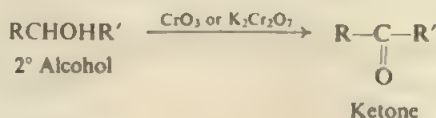
Example:



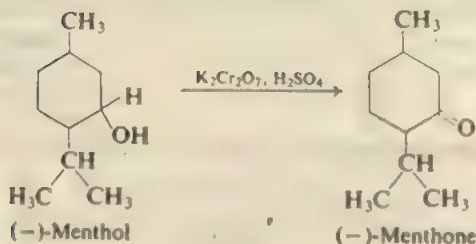
## 4. Reimer-Tiemann reaction. Phenolic aldehydes. Discussed in Sec. 24.14.

## PREPARATION OF KETONES

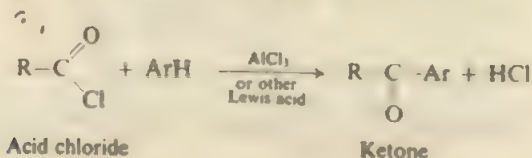
## 1. Oxidation of secondary alcohols. Discussed in Sec. 11.9.



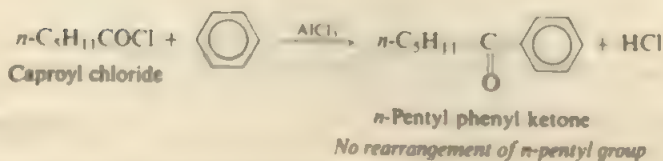
Example:



## 2. Friedel-Crafts acylation. Discussed in Sec. 18.5.



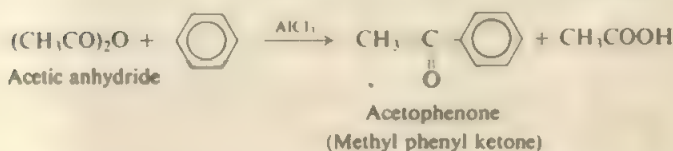
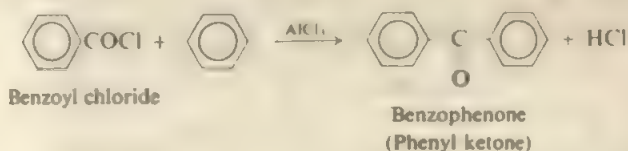
Examples:



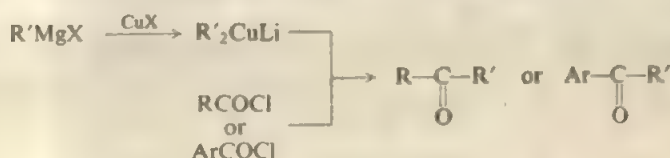
CONT.



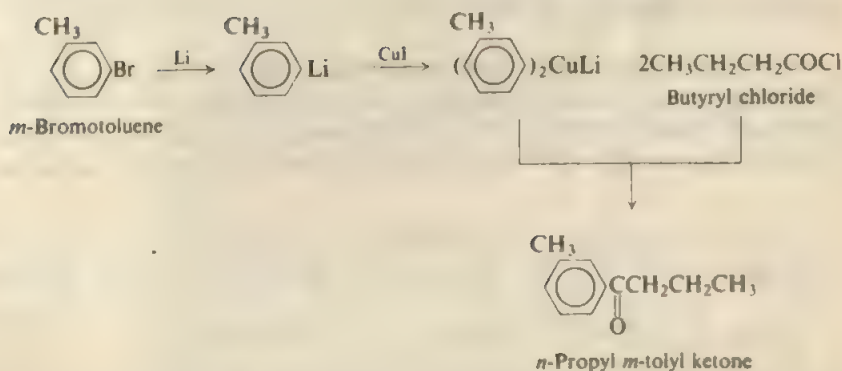
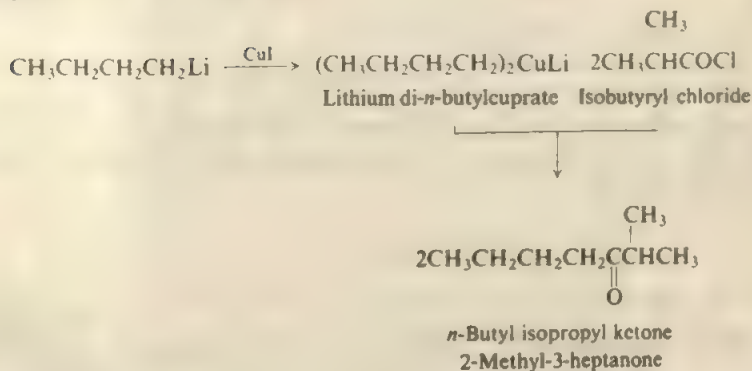
CONT.



### 3. Reaction of acid chlorides with organocopper compounds. Discussed in Sec. 18.6



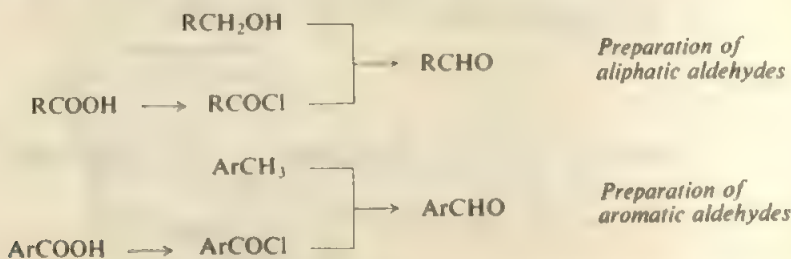
Examples:



### 4. Acetoacetic ester synthesis. Discussed in Sec. 26.3.

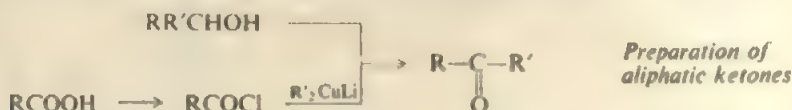


Depending upon the availability of starting materials, **aliphatic aldehydes** can be prepared from alcohols or acid chlorides of the same carbon skeleton, and **aromatic aldehydes** can be prepared from methylbenzenes or aromatic acid chlorides.

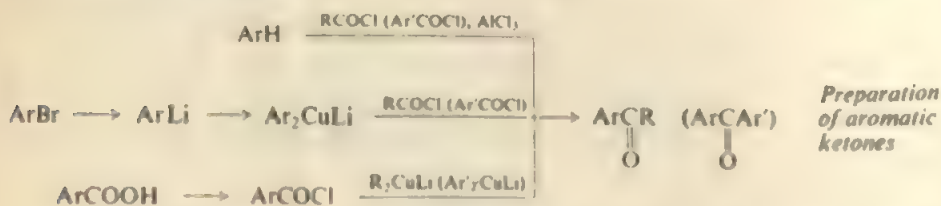


rides. There are, in addition, a number of methods by which the aldehyde group is introduced into an aromatic ring: for example, the Reimer-Tiemann synthesis of phenolic aldehydes (Sec. 24.14).

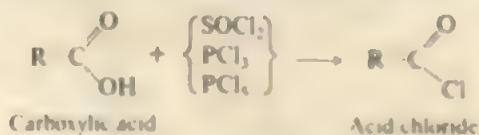
**Aliphatic ketones** are readily prepared from the corresponding secondary alcohols, if these are available. More complicated aliphatic ketones can be prepared by the reaction of acid chlorides with organocopper compounds. A particularly



useful method for making complicated aliphatic ketones, the acetoacetic ester synthesis, will be discussed later (Sec. 26.3). **Aromatic ketones** containing a carbonyl group attached directly to an aromatic ring are conveniently prepared by Friedel-Crafts acylation (Sec. 18.5).



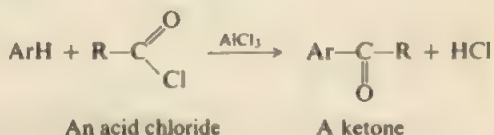
As we see, important precursors of both aldehydes and ketones are *acid chlorides*. These are conveniently made from the corresponding carboxylic acids by treatment with thionyl chloride ( $\text{SOCl}_2$ ), phosphorus trichloride ( $\text{PCl}_3$ ), or phosphorus pentachloride ( $\text{PCl}_5$ ). Since we already know several of the most important



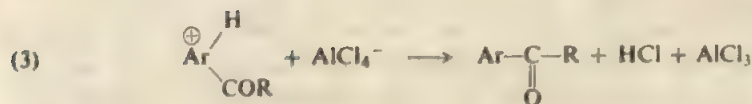
ways of making carboxylic acids—oxidation of primary alcohols (Sec. 11.9) and oxidation of toluenes (Sec. 16.11)—we can begin to fit these syntheses of carbonyl compounds into the overall framework of organic chemistry.

## 18.5 Preparation of ketones by Friedel-Crafts acylation

One of the most important modifications of the Friedel-Crafts reaction involves the use of acid chlorides rather than alkyl halides. An acyl group,  $\text{RCO}-$ , becomes attached to the aromatic ring, thus forming a ketone; the process is called **acylation**. As usual for the Friedel-Crafts reaction (Sec. 16.9), the aromatic ring undergoing substitution must be at least as reactive as that of a halobenzene; catalysis by aluminum chloride or another Lewis acid is required.

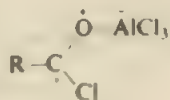


The most likely mechanism for Friedel-Crafts acylation is analogous to the carbocation mechanism for Friedel-Crafts alkylation (Sec. 15.10), and involves the following steps:



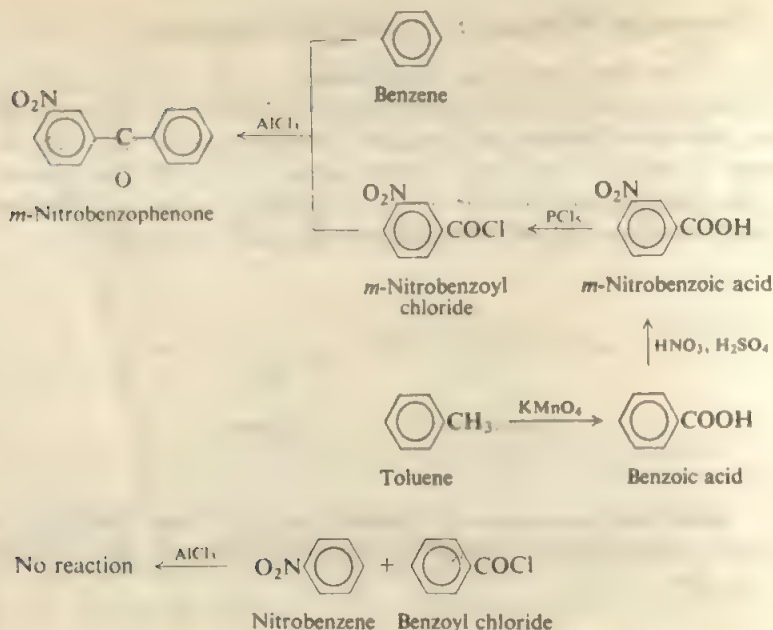
This fits the pattern of electrophilic aromatic substitution, the attacking reagent this time being the **acylium ion**,  $\text{R}-\text{C}\equiv\overset{\oplus}{\text{O}}$ . The acylium ion is considerably more stable than ordinary carbocations since in it every atom has an octet of electrons.

Alternatively, it may be that the electrophile is a complex between acid chloride and Lewis acid:



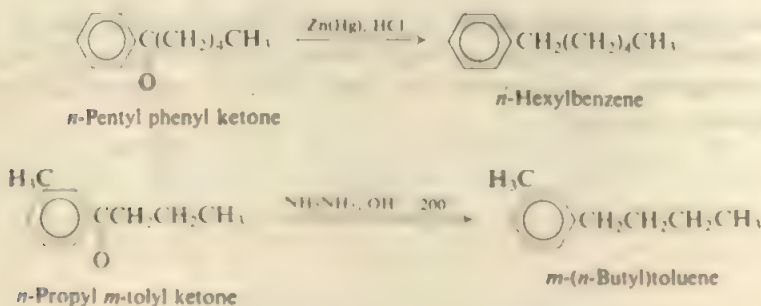
In this case, from the standpoint of the acid chloride, reaction is acid-catalyzed nucleophilic acyl substitution, of the kind discussed in Sec. 20.4, with the aromatic ring acting as the nucleophile.

In planning the synthesis of diaryl ketones,  $\text{ArCOAr}'$ , it is particularly important to select the right combination of  $\text{ArCOCl}$  and  $\text{Ar}'\text{H}$ . As shown below, in the preparation of *m*-nitrobenzophenone, for example, the nitro group can be present in the acid chloride but not in the ring undergoing substitution, since as a strongly deactivating group it prevents the Friedel-Crafts reaction (Sec. 16.9).



Friedel-Crafts acylation is one of the most important methods of preparing ketones in which the carbonyl group is attached to an aromatic ring. Once formed, these ketones may be converted into secondary alcohols by reduction, into tertiary alcohols by reaction with Grignard reagents, and into many other important classes of compounds, as we shall see.

Of particular importance is the conversion of the acyl group into an alkyl group. This can be accomplished by the **Clemmensen reduction** (amalgamated zinc and concentrated hydrochloric acid), or the **Wolff-Kishner reduction** (hydrazine and base). For example:

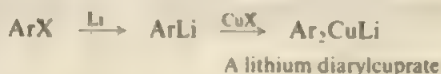
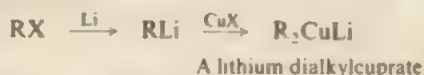


A straight-chain alkyl group longer than ethyl generally cannot be attached in good yield to an aromatic ring by Friedel-Crafts alkylation because of rearrangement (Sec. 16.8). Such a group is readily introduced, however, in two steps. (1) formation of a ketone by Friedel-Crafts acylation (or by the reaction of an organocopper compound with an acyl chloride, described in the following section). (2) Clemmensen or Wolff-Kishner reduction of the ketone.



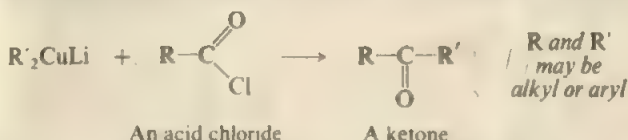
## 18.6 Preparation of ketones by use of organocopper compounds

Treatment of alkyl or aryl halides with lithium metal gives organolithium compounds (Sec. 10.12) which, on treatment with a cuprous halide, form lithium organocuprates,  $R_2CuLi$  or  $Ar_2CuLi$ . Since the late 1960's such organocopper



compounds have found rapidly increasing application to organic synthesis because of their remarkable ability to form carbon-carbon bonds. We have already (Sec. 3.17) encountered their reaction with alkyl halides to form alkanes.

Lithium organocuprates react readily with acid chlorides to yield ketones. Here, as in its other reactions (Sec. 20.4), the acid chloride is undergoing nucleo-

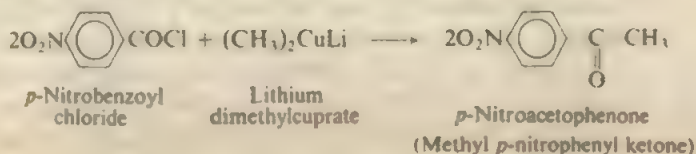


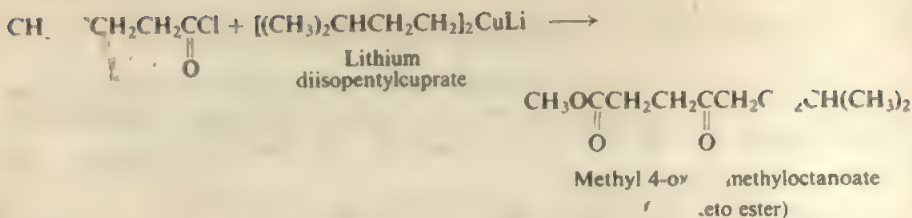
philic substitution, the nucleophile being the basic alkyl or aryl group of the organometallic compound.

Grignard reagents (or organolithiums) react readily with acid chlorides, too, but the products are usually tertiary alcohols, formed by reaction of initially formed ketones with additional Grignard reagents. (If tertiary alcohols are desired, they are better prepared from esters than from acid chlorides (Sec. 20.21).) Organocopper reagents are less reactive than Grignard reagents toward the carbonyl group of ketones, and reaction stops at the ketone stage.

It is interesting that organocopper compounds are *more* reactive than Grignard reagents toward many kinds of compounds—alkyl halides, for example, which in general are not attacked by Grignard reagents. Organocopper compounds are highly *selective* toward different functional groups, and this selectivity is a major factor in determining their usefulness.

This lower reactivity of organocopper compounds not only makes the synthesis of ketones possible, but in addition widens the applicability of the method. Organocopper reagents do not react with many of the functional groups with which Grignard reagents and organolithiums do react:  $-NO_2$ ,  $-CN$ ,  $-CO-$ ,  $-COOR$ , for example. Consequently, the presence of one of these groups in the acid chloride does not interfere with the synthesis of a ketone (compare with Sec. 10.16). For example:



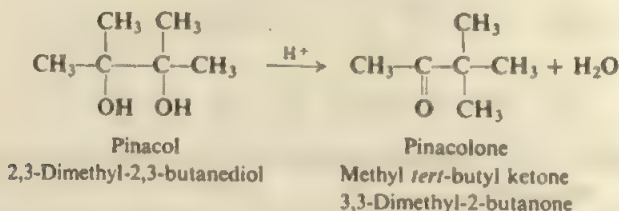


**Problem 1** Would it be feasible to make *p*-acetophenone via a reaction between lithium, *o*-nitrophenyl)cuprate, (*p*-O<sub>2</sub>N<sup>-</sup>, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CuLi, and acetyl chloride?

## 18.7 Pinacol rearrangement. Migration to electron-deficient carbon

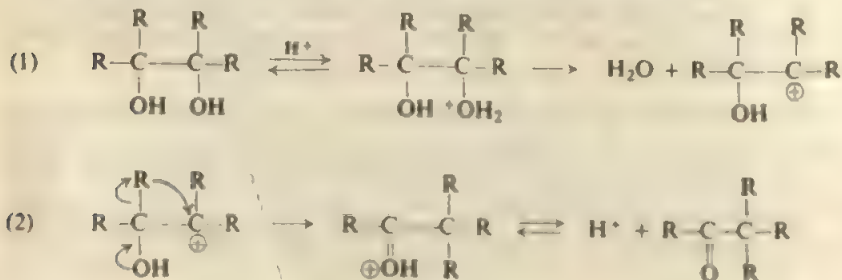
Now let us look at a reaction which, while it is only occasionally used to synthesize ketones, *does* produce carbonyl compounds as products.

Upon treatment with mineral acids, 2,3-dimethyl-2,3-butanediol (often called *pinacol*) is converted into methyl *tert*-butyl ketone (often called *pinacolone*). The



1,2-diol undergoes dehydration, and in such a way that rearrangement of the carbon skeleton occurs. Other 1,2-diols undergo analogous reactions, which are known collectively as **pinacol rearrangements**.

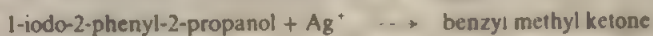
The pinacol rearrangement is believed to involve two important steps: (1) loss of water from the protonated diol to form a carbocation; and (2) rearrangement of the carbocation by a 1,2-shift to yield the protonated ketone.



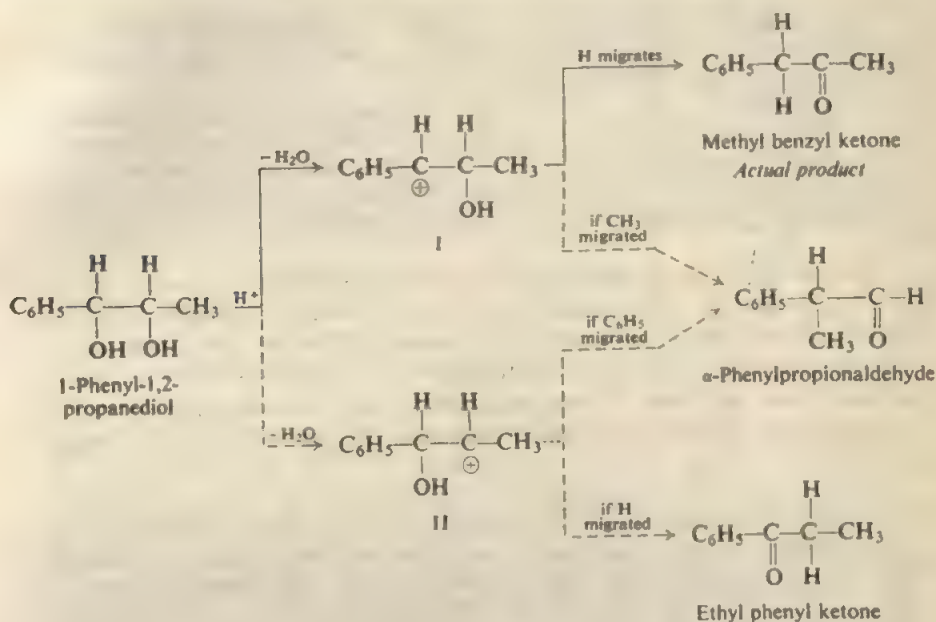
Both steps in this reaction are already familiar to us: formation of a carbocation from an alcohol under the influence of acid, followed by a 1,2-shift to the electron-deficient atom. The pattern is also familiar: rearrangement of a cation to a more stable cation, in this case to the protonated ketone. The driving force is the usual one behind carbocation reactions: the need to provide the electron-deficient carbon with electrons. The special feature of the pinacol rearrangement is the presence in

the molecule of the second oxygen atom; it is this oxygen atom, with its unshared pairs, that ultimately provides the needed electrons.

**Problem 18.2** Account for the products of the following reaction:



When the groups attached to the carbon atoms bearing  $\text{—OH}$  differ from one another, the pinacol rearrangement can conceivably give rise to more than one compound. The product actually obtained is determined (a) by which  $\text{—OH}$  group is lost in step (1), and then (b) by which group migrates in step (2) to the electron-deficient carbon thus formed. For example, let us consider the rearrangement of 1-phenyl-1,2-propanediol. The structure of the product actually obtained, methyl benzyl ketone, indicates that the benzyl cation (I) is formed in preference to the secondary cation (II), and that  $\text{—H}$  migrates in preference to  $\text{—CH}_3$ .



Study of a large number of pinacol rearrangements has shown that usually the product is the one expected if, first, ionization occurs to yield the more stable carbocation, and then, once the preferred ionization has taken place, migration takes place according to the sequence  $\text{—Ar} > \text{—R}$ . Hydrogen can migrate, too, but we cannot predict its relative migratory aptitude. Hydrogen may migrate in preference to  $\text{—R}$  or  $\text{—Ar}$ , but this is not always the case; indeed, it sometimes happens that with a given pinacol either  $\text{—H}$  or  $\text{—R}$  can migrate, depending upon experimental conditions.

As we shall see in other rearrangements (Sec. 24.6, for example), aryl groups generally have greater migratory aptitude than alkyl groups in 1,2-shifts. If we look more closely at the migration step, we can see why this should be so. Migration of



I

Alkyl migration:  
pentavalent carbon



II

Aryl migration:  
benzenonium ion

an alkyl group must involve a transition state containing pentavalent carbon (I). As we have already seen (Sec. 16.20), migration of aryl takes place via a benzenonium structure (II) that is probably an actual intermediate compound; intermediate or transition state, II is clearly more stable than I, and offers an easier path for migration.

Among aryl groups, relative migratory aptitude depends—other things being equal—on the ability of the ring to accommodate a positive charge (see Sec. 16.17). Although we cannot go into the matter here, we should be aware that strong stereochemical factors can operate in this reaction, and may outweigh these electronic factors.

**Problem 18.3** For the rearrangement of each of the following 1,2-diols show which carbocation you would expect to be the more stable, and then the rearrangement that the carbocation would most likely undergo:

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| (a) 1,2-propanediol             | (f) 1,1-diphenyl-2,2-dimethyl-1,2-ethanediol                      |
| (b) 2-methyl-1,2-propanediol    | (g) 1,1,2-triphenyl-2-methyl-1,2-ethanediol                       |
| (c) 1-phenyl-1,2-ethanediol     | (h) 2-methyl-3-ethyl-2,3-pentanediol                              |
| (d) 1,1-diphenyl-1,2-ethanediol | (i) 1,1-bis( <i>p</i> -methoxyphenyl)-2,2-diphenyl-1,2-ethanediol |
| (e) 1-phenyl-1,2-propanediol    |   |

We have depicted the pinacol rearrangement as a two-step process with an actual carbocation as intermediate. There is good evidence that this is so, at least when a tertiary or benzylic cation can be formed. Evidently the stability of the incipient cation in the transition state permits ( $S_N1$ -like) loss of water without anchimeric assistance from the migrating group. This is, we shall find, in contrast to what happens in migration to electron-deficient nitrogen (Sec. 22.18) or oxygen (Sec. 24.6).

**Problem 18.4** The following reactions have all been found to yield a mixture of pinacol and pinacolone, and in the same proportions: treatment of 3-amino-2,3-dimethyl-2-butanol with nitrous acid; treatment of 3-chloro-2,3-dimethyl-2-butanol with aqueous silver ion; and acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of the epoxide of 2,3-dimethyl-2-butene. What does this finding indicate about the mechanism of the pinacol rearrangement? (*Useful information:* Primary aliphatic amines,  $RNH_2$ , react with aqueous nitrous acid,  $HONO$ , to give mixtures of alcohols and alkenes, often with rearrangement.)

**Problem 18.5** When pinacol was treated with acid in  $H_2^{18}O$  solution, recovered unrearranged pinacol was found to contain oxygen-18. Studies showed that oxygen exchange took place two to three times as fast as rearrangement. What bearing does this fact have on the mechanism of rearrangement?

## 18.8 Reactions. Nucleophilic addition

The carbonyl group,  $C=O$ , governs the chemistry of aldehydes and ketones. It does this in two ways: (a) by providing a site for nucleophilic addition, and



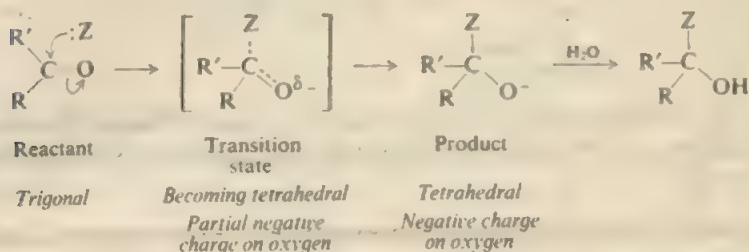
(b) by increasing the acidity of the hydrogen atoms attached to the *alpha* carbon. Both these effects are quite consistent with the structure of the carbonyl group and, in fact, are due to the same thing, the ability of oxygen to accommodate a negative charge.

In this section, we shall examine the carbonyl group as a site for nucleophilic addition; in Sec. 21.1, we shall see how the acid-strengthening effect arises.

The carbonyl group contains a carbon-oxygen double bond; since the mobile  $\pi$  electrons are pulled strongly toward oxygen, carbonyl carbon is electron-deficient and carbonyl oxygen is electron-rich. Because it is flat, this part of the molecule is open to relatively unhindered attack from above or below, in a direction perpendicular to the plane of the group. It is not surprising that this accessible, polarized group is highly reactive.

What kind of reagents will attack such a group? Since the important step in these reactions is the formation of a bond to the electron-deficient (acidic) carbonyl carbon, the carbonyl group is most susceptible to attack by electron-rich, nucleophilic reagents, that is, by bases. **The typical reaction of aldehydes and ketones is nucleophilic addition.**

#### Nucleophilic addition



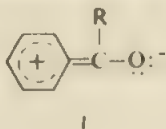
As might be expected, we can get a much truer picture of the reactivity of the carbonyl group by looking at the transition state for attack by a nucleophile. In the reactant, carbon is trigonal. In the transition state, carbon has begun to acquire the tetrahedral configuration it will have in the product; the attached groups are thus being brought closer together. We might expect moderate steric hindrance in this reaction; that is, larger groups (R and R') will tend to resist crowding more than smaller groups. But the transition state is a relatively roomy one compared, say, with the transition state for an  $S_N2$  reaction, with its pentavalent carbon; it is this comparative uncrowdedness that we are really referring to when we say that the carbonyl group is "accessible" to attack.

In the transition state, oxygen has started to acquire the electrons—and the negative charge—that it will have in the product. *It is the tendency of oxygen to acquire electrons—its ability to carry a negative charge—that is the real cause of the reactivity of the carbonyl group toward nucleophiles.* (The polarity of the carbonyl group is not the cause of the reactivity; it is simply another manifestation of the electronegativity of oxygen.)

Aldehydes generally undergo nucleophilic addition more readily than ketones. This difference in reactivity is consistent with the transition states involved, and seems to be due to a combination of electronic and steric factors. A ketone contains a second alkyl or aryl group where an aldehyde contains a hydrogen atom. A second alkyl or aryl group of a ketone is larger than the hydrogen of an aldehyde, and resists more strongly the crowding together in the transition state. An alkyl group

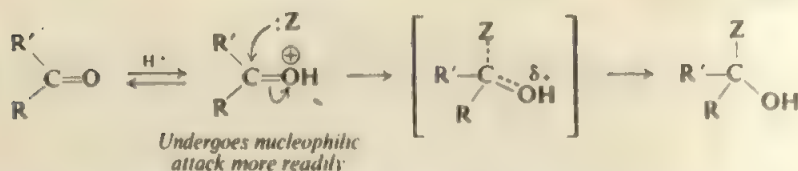
releases electrons, and thus destabilizes the transition state by intensifying the negative charge developing on oxygen.

An aryl group has an electron-withdrawing inductive effect (Sec. 19.14), and we might have expected it to stabilize the transition state and thus speed up reaction; however, it seems to stabilize the *reactant* even more, by resonance (contribution by I), and thus causes net deactivation.



If acid is present, hydrogen ion becomes attached to carbonyl oxygen. This prior protonation lowers the  $E_{\text{act}}$  for nucleophilic attack, since it permits oxygen to

#### Acid-catalyzed nucleophilic addition

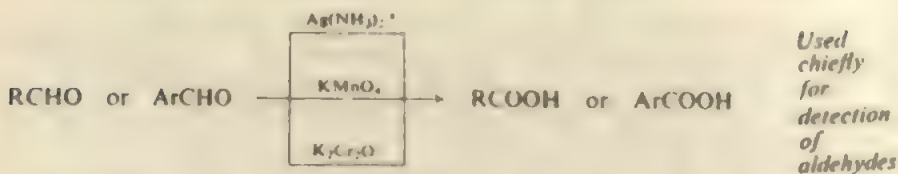


acquire the  $\pi$  electrons without having to accept a negative charge. Thus nucleophilic addition to aldehydes and ketones can be catalyzed by acids (sometimes, by *Lewis acids*).

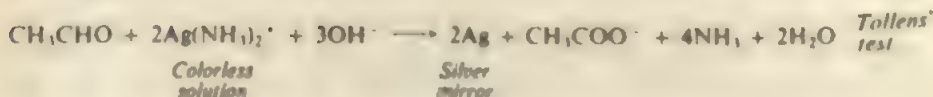
### REACTIONS OF ALDEHYDES AND KETONES

#### 1. Oxidation. Discussed in Sec. 18.9

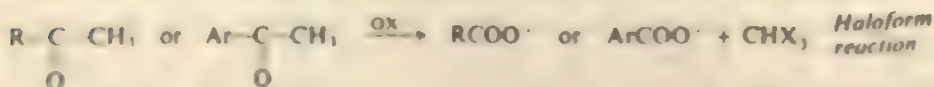
##### (a) Aldehydes



*Example:*

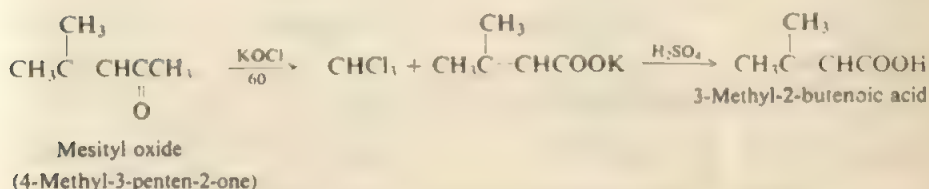
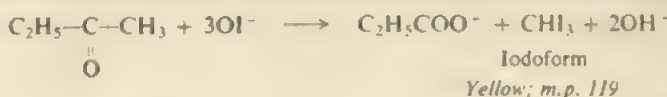


##### (b) Methyl ketones

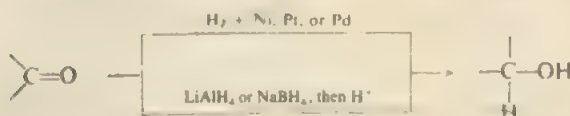


CONT.

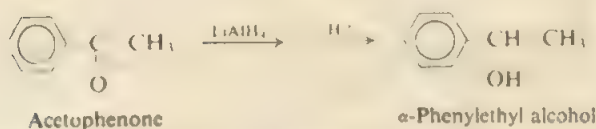
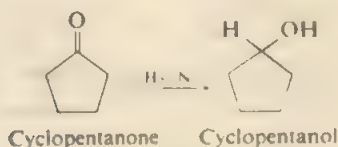
Examples:

**2. Reduction**

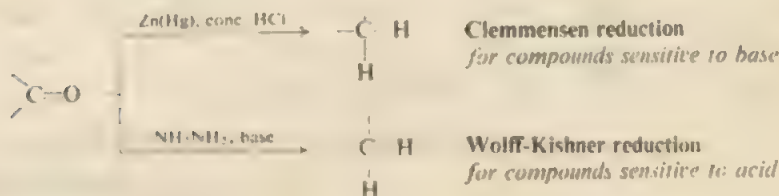
(a) Reduction to alcohols. Discussed in Sec. 18.10.



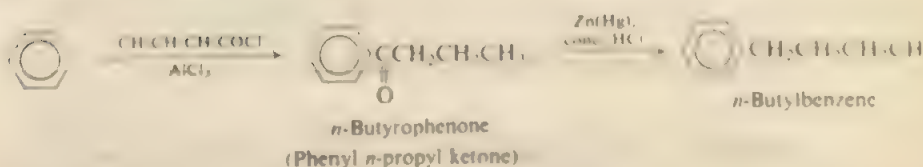
Examples:



(b) Reduction to hydrocarbons. Discussed in Sec. 18.10



Examples:

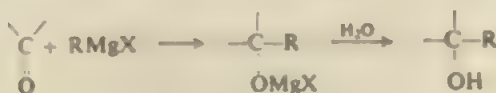


CONT.

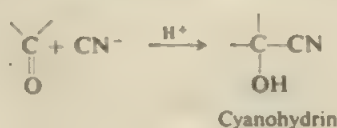


(c) Reductive amination. Discussed in Sec. 22.11

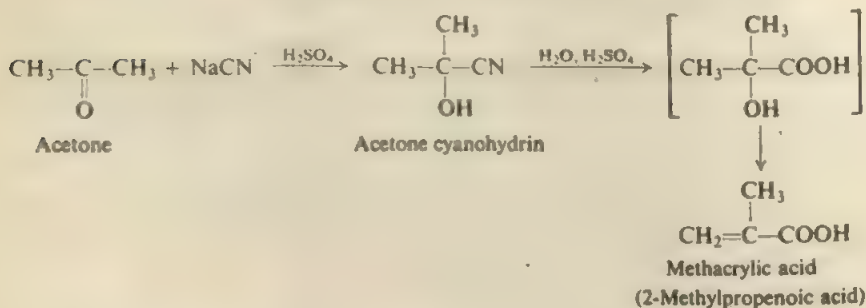
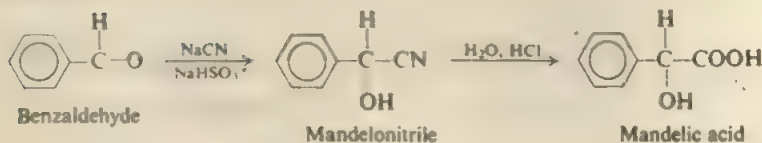
3. Addition of Grignard reagents. Discussed in Secs. 10.12, 10.16 and 18.11



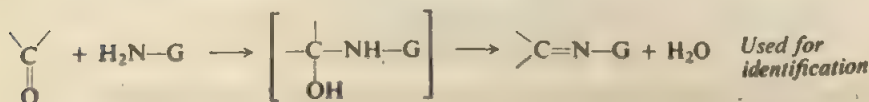
4. Addition of cyanide. Cyanohydrin formation. Discussed in Sec. 18.12.



Examples:



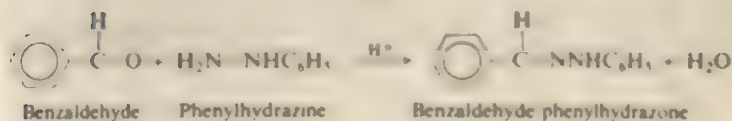
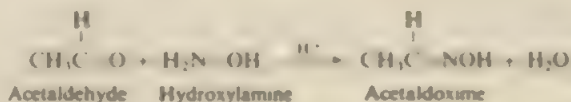
5. Addition of derivatives of ammonia. Discussed in Sec. 18.13.



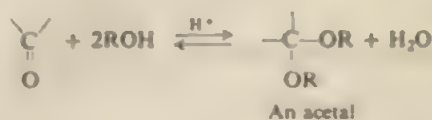
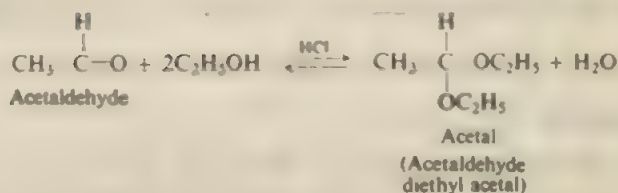


CONT.

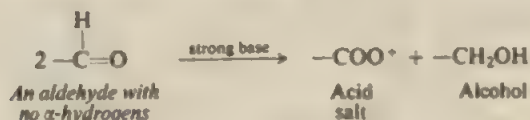
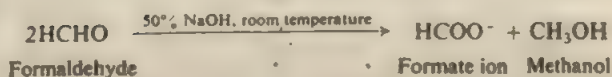
$H_2N-C$			Product
$H_2N-OH$	Hydroxylamine	$\begin{array}{c} \diagup \\ C \\ \diagdown \end{array} NOH$	Oxime
$H_2N-NH_2$	Hydrazine	$\begin{array}{c} \diagup \\ C \\ \diagdown \end{array} NNH_2$	Hydrazone
$H_2N-NHC_6H_5$	Phenylhydrazine	$\begin{array}{c} \diagup \\ C \\ \diagdown \end{array} NNHC_6H_5$	Phenylhydrazone
$H_2N-NHCONH_2$	Semicarbazide	$\begin{array}{c} \diagup \\ C \\ \diagdown \end{array} NNHCONH_2$	Semicarbazone

*Examples:*

## 6. Addition of alcohols. Acetal formation. Discussed in Sec. 18.14

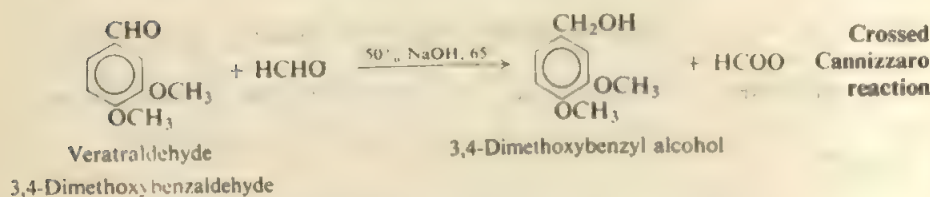
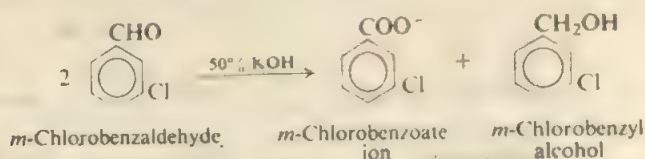
*Example:*

## 7. Cannizzaro reaction. Discussed in Sec. 18.15.

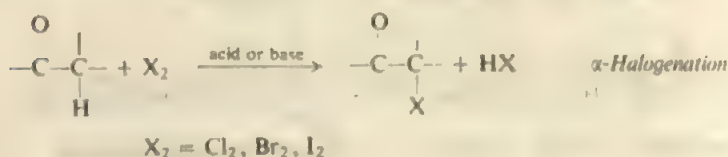
*Examples:*

CONT.

CONT.



### 8. Halogenation of ketones. Discussed in Secs. 21.3–21.4.



### 9. Addition of carbanions.

- (a) Aldol condensation. Discussed in Secs. 21.5–21.8.
- (b) Reactions related to aldol condensation. Discussed in Sec. 21.9.
- (c) Wittig reaction. Discussed in Sec. 21.10.
- (d) Reformatsky reaction. Discussed in Sec. 21.13.

## 18.9 Oxidation

Aldehydes are easily oxidized to carboxylic acids; ketones are not. Oxidation is the reaction in which aldehydes differ most from ketones, and this difference stems directly from their difference in structure: by definition, an aldehyde has a hydrogen atom attached to the carbonyl carbon, and a ketone has not. Regardless of exact mechanism, this hydrogen is abstracted in oxidation, either as a proton or an atom, and the analogous reaction for a ketone—abstraction of an alkyl or aryl group—does not take place.

Aldehydes are oxidized not only by the same reagents that oxidize primary and secondary alcohols—permanganate and dichromate—but also by the very mild oxidizing agent silver ion. Oxidation by silver ion requires an alkaline medium: to prevent precipitation of the insoluble silver oxide, a complexing agent is added: ammonia.

**Tollens' reagent** contains the silver ammonia ion,  $\text{Ag}(\text{NH}_3)_2^+$ . Oxidation of the aldehyde is accompanied by reduction of silver ion to free silver (in the form of a mirror under the proper conditions).

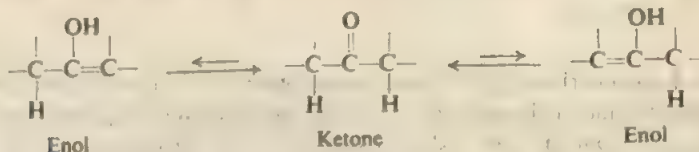


(Oxidation by complexed cupric ion is a characteristic of certain substituted carbonyl compounds, and will be taken up with *carbohydrates* in Sec. 28.6.)

Oxidation by Tollens' reagent is useful chiefly for detecting aldehydes, and in particular for differentiating them from ketones (see Sec. 18.16). The reaction is of value in synthesis in those cases where aldehydes are more readily available than the corresponding acids: in particular, for the synthesis of unsaturated acids from the unsaturated aldehydes obtained from the aldol condensation (Sec. 21.6), where advantage is taken of the fact that Tollens' reagent does not attack carbon-carbon double bonds.



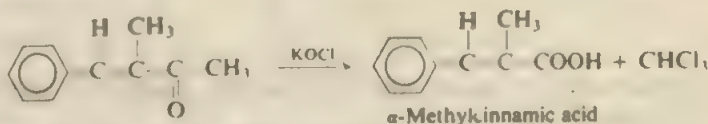
Oxidation of ketones requires breaking of carbon-carbon bonds, and (except for the haloform reaction) takes place only under vigorous conditions. Cleavage involves the double bond of the *enol* form (Sec. 13.10) and, where the structure



permits, occurs on either side of the carbonyl group; in general, then, mixtures of carboxylic acids are obtained (see Sec. 8.28).

**Problem 18.6** Predict the product(s) of vigorous oxidation of: (a) 3-hexanone; (b) cyclohexanone.

Methyl ketones are oxidized smoothly by means of hypohalite in the haloform reaction (Sec. 11.14). Besides being commonly used to detect these ketones (Sec. 18.16), this reaction is often useful in synthesis, hypohalite having the special advantage of not attacking carbon-carbon double bonds. For example:

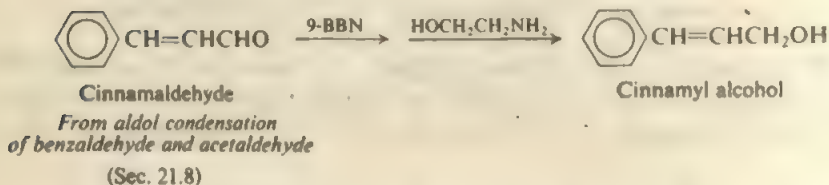
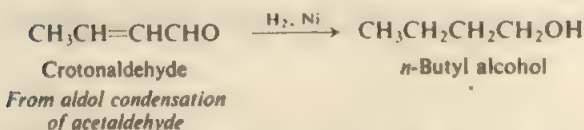
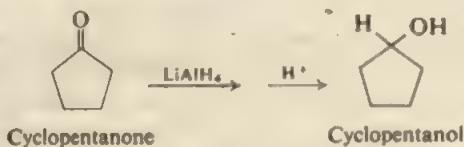


Available by aldol condensation  
(Sec. 21.8)

## 18.10 Reduction

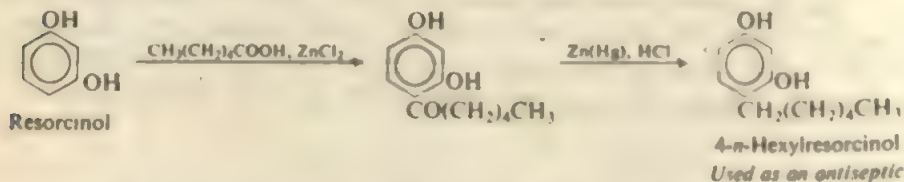
Aldehydes can be reduced to primary alcohols, and ketones to secondary alcohols, either by catalytic hydrogenation or by use of chemical reducing agents

like lithium aluminium hydride,  $\text{LiAlH}_4$ . Such reduction is useful for the preparation of certain alcohols that are less available than the corresponding carbonyl compounds, in particular carbonyl compounds that can be obtained by the aldol condensation (Sec. 21.7). For example:



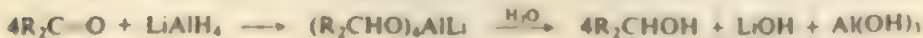
To reduce a carbonyl group that is conjugated with a carbon-carbon double bond without reducing the carbon-carbon double bond, too, requires a *regioselective* reducing agent. One of these is shown above, and will be discussed in Sec. 21.7.

Aldehydes and ketones can be reduced to hydrocarbons by the action (a) of amalgamated zinc and concentrated hydrochloric acid, the **Clemmensen reduction**; or (b) of hydrazine,  $\text{NH}_2\text{NH}_2$ , and a strong base like KOH or potassium *tert*-butoxide, the **Wolff-Kishner reduction**. These are particularly important when applied to the alkyl aryl ketones obtained from Friedel-Crafts acylation, since this reaction sequence permits, indirectly, the attachment of straight alkyl chains to the benzene ring. For example:



A special sort of oxidation and reduction, the *Cannizzaro reaction*, will be discussed in Sec. 18.15.

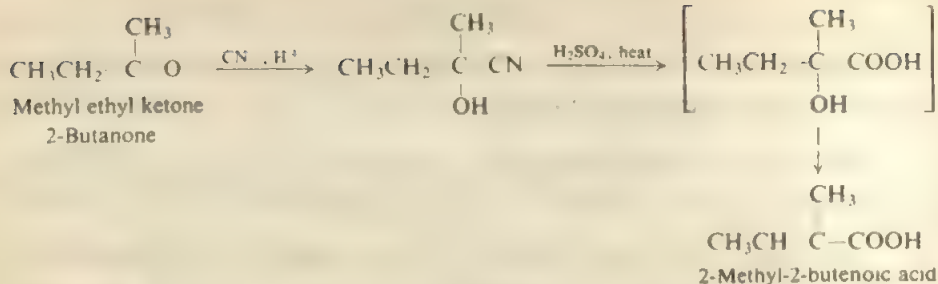
Let us look a little more closely at reduction by metal hydrides. Alcohols are formed from carbonyl compounds, smoothly and in high yield, by the action of such compounds as lithium aluminum hydride,  $\text{LiAlH}_4$ . Here again, we see



nucleophilic addition: this time the nucleophile is hydrogen transferred with a pair of electrons—as a hydride ion,  $\text{H}^-$ —from the metal to carbonyl carbon:





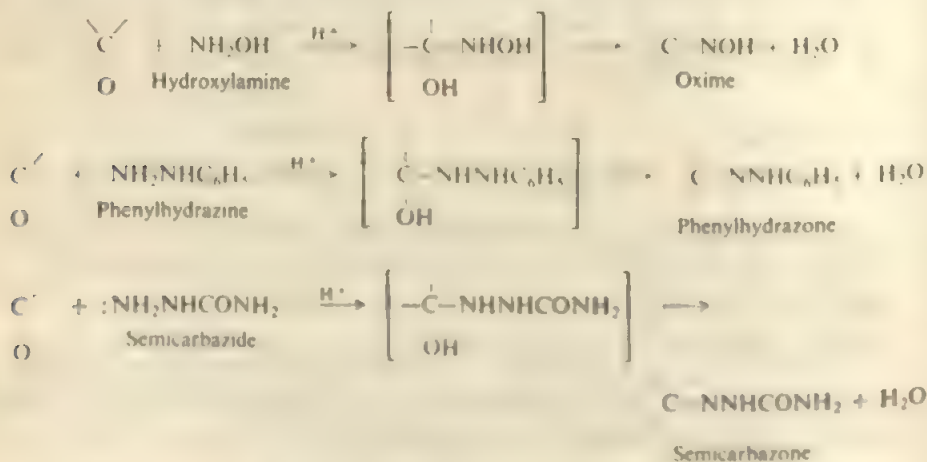


**Problem 18.7** Each of the following is converted into the cyanohydrin, and the products are separated by careful fractional distillation, crystallization, or chromatography. For each reaction tell how many fractions will be collected, and whether each fraction, as collected, will be optically active or inactive, resolvable or non-resolvable.

- (a) Acetaldehyde; (b) benzaldehyde; (c) acetone.  
 (d) *R*-(+)-glyceraldehyde,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OHCHOHCHO}$ ; (e) ( $\pm$ )-glyceraldehyde.  
 (f) How would your answer to each of the above be changed if each mixture were subjected to hydrolysis to hydroxy acids before fractionation?

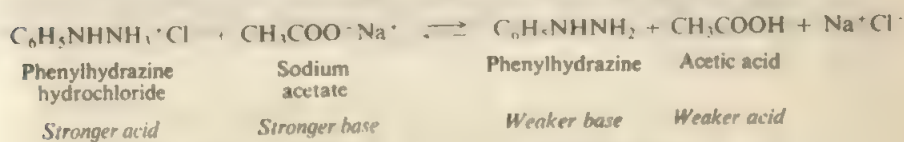
### 18.13 Addition of derivatives of ammonia

Certain compounds related to ammonia add to the carbonyl group to form derivatives that are important chiefly for the characterization and identification of aldehydes and ketones (Sec. 18.16). The products contain a carbon-nitrogen double bond resulting from elimination of a molecule of water from the initial addition products. Some of these reagents and their products are:

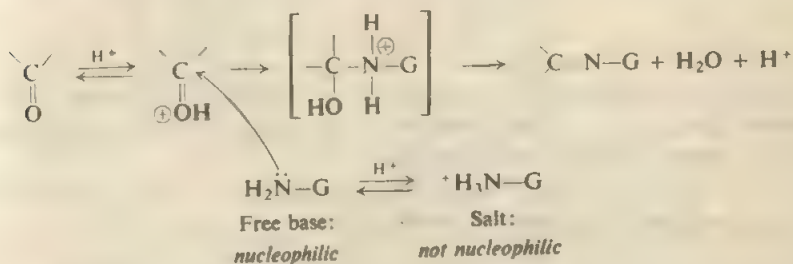


Like ammonia, these derivatives of ammonia are basic, and therefore react with acids to form salts: hydroxylamine hydrochloride,  $\text{HONH}_3^+\text{Cl}^-$ , phenylhydrazine hydrochloride,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHNH}_3^+\text{Cl}^-$ , and semicarbazide hydrochloride,  $\text{NH}_2\text{CONHNH}_3^+\text{Cl}^-$ . The salts are less easily oxidized by air than the free bases, and it is in this form that the reagents are best preserved and handled. When

needed, the basic reagents are liberated from their salts in the presence of the carbonyl compound by addition of a base, usually sodium acetate.



It is often necessary to adjust the reaction medium to just the right acidity. Addition involves nucleophilic attack by the basic nitrogen compound on the carbonyl carbon. Protonation of carbonyl oxygen makes carbonyl carbon more susceptible to nucleophilic attack; in so far as the carbonyl compound is concerned, then, addition will be favored by high acidity. But the ammonia derivative,  $\text{H}_3\text{N}^+-\text{G}$ , can also undergo protonation to form the ion,  $^+\text{H}_3\text{N}-\text{G}$ , which lacks unshared electrons and is no longer nucleophilic; in so far as the nitrogen compound is concerned, then, addition is favored by low acidity. The conditions under which

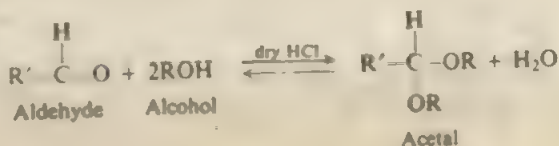


addition proceeds most rapidly are thus the result of a compromise: the solution must be acidic enough for an appreciable fraction of the carbonyl compound to be protonated, but not so acidic that the concentration of the free nitrogen compound is too low. The exact conditions used depend upon the basicity of the reagent, and upon the reactivity of the carbonyl compound.

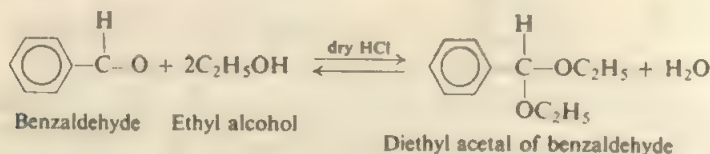
**Problem 18.8** Semicarbazide (1 mol) is added to a mixture of cyclohexanone (1 mol) and benzaldehyde (1 mol). If the product is isolated immediately, it consists almost entirely of the semicarbazone of cyclohexanone; if the product is isolated after several hours, it consists almost entirely of the semicarbazone of benzaldehyde. How do you account for these observations? (*Hint: See Sec. 9.27.*)

### 18.14 Addition of alcohols. Acetal formation

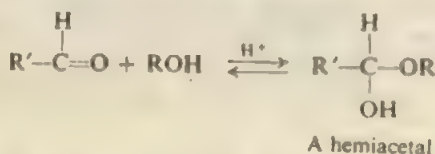
Alcohols add to the carbonyl group of aldehydes in the presence of anhydrous acids to yield **acetals**:



The reaction is carried out by allowing the aldehyde to stand with an excess of the anhydrous alcohol and a little anhydrous acid, usually hydrogen chloride. In the preparation of ethyl acetals the water is often removed as it is formed by means of the azeotrope of water, benzene, and ethyl alcohol (b.p. 64.9°, Sec. 10.5). (Simple *ketals* are usually difficult to prepare by reaction of ketones with alcohols, and are made in other ways.)

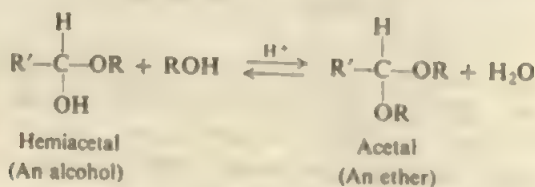


There is good evidence that in alcoholic solution an aldehyde exists in equilibrium with a compound called a **hemiacetal**:

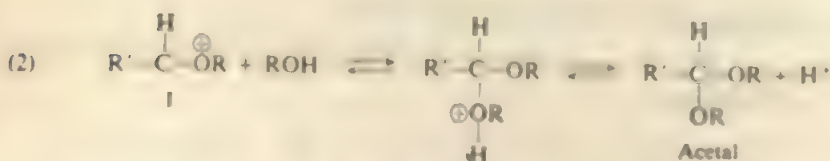
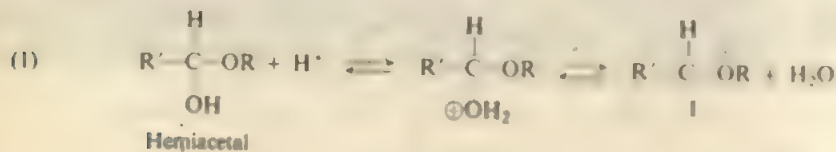


A hemiacetal is formed by the addition of the nucleophilic alcohol molecule to the carbonyl group; it is both an ether and an alcohol. With a few exceptions, hemiacetals are too unstable to be isolated.

In the presence of acid the hemiacetal, acting as an alcohol, reacts with more of the solvent alcohol to form the acetal, an ether:



The reaction involves the formation (step 1) of the ion I, which then combines (step 2) with a molecule of alcohol to yield the protonated acetal. As we can see,

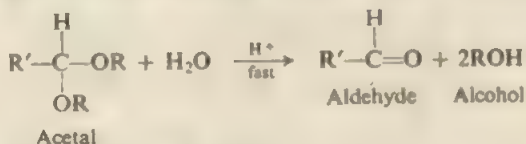


this mechanism is strictly analogous to the  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  route we have previously encountered (Sec. 12.3) for the formation of ethers



Acetal formation thus involves (a) nucleophilic addition to a carbonyl group, and (b) ether formation via a carbocation.

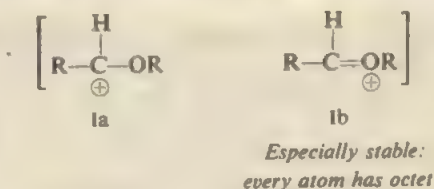
Acetals have the structure of ethers and, like ethers, are cleaved by acids and are stable toward bases. Acetals differ from ethers, however, in the extreme *ease* with which they undergo acidic cleavage; they are rapidly converted even at room



temperature into the aldehyde and alcohol by dilute mineral acids. The mechanism of hydrolysis is exactly the reverse of that by which acetals are formed.

**Problem 18.9** Account for the fact that anhydrous acids bring about formation of acetals whereas aqueous acids bring about hydrolysis of acetals.

The heart of the chemistry of acetals is the “carbocation,”



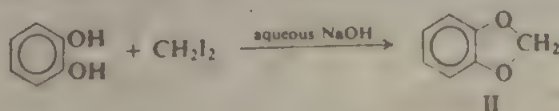
which is a hybrid of structures Ia and Ib. Contribution from Ib, in which every atom has an octet of electrons, makes this ion considerably more stable than ordinary carbocations. (Indeed, Ib *alone* may pretty well represent the ion, in which case it is not a carbocation at all but an *oxonium* ion.)

Now, generation of this cation is the rate-determining step both in formation of acetals (reading to the right in equation 1) and in their hydrolysis (reading to the left in equation 2). The same factor—the providing of electrons by oxygen—that stabilizes the ion also stabilizes the transition state leading to its formation. Generation of the ion is speeded up, and along with it the entire process: formation or hydrolysis of the acetal.

(Oddly enough, oxygen causes activation in *nucleophilic* substitution here in precisely the same way it activates aromatic ethers toward *electrophilic* substitution (Sec. 15.18); the common feature is, of course, development of a positive charge in the transition state of the rate-determining step.)

We shall find the chemistry of hemiacetals and acetals to be fundamental to the study of carbohydrates (Chaps. 28 and 29).

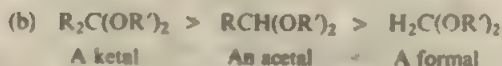
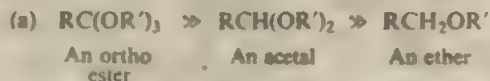
**Problem 18.10** (a) The following reaction is an example of what familiar synthesis?



(b) To what family of compounds does II belong? (c) What will II yield upon treatment with acid? With base?

**Problem 18.11** *Glyceraldehyde*,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OHCHOHCHO}$ , is commonly made from the acetal of acrolein,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-\text{CHO}$ . Show how this could be done. Why is acrolein itself not used?

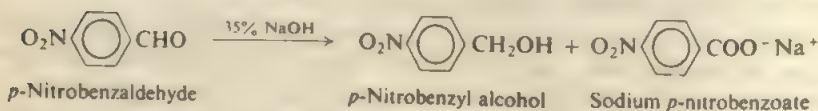
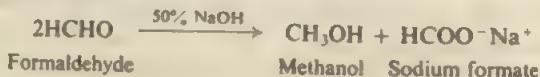
**Problem 18.12** How do you account for the following differences in ease of hydrolysis?



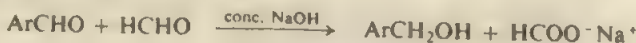
**Problem 18.13** The simplest way to prepare an aldehyde,  $\text{RCH}^{18}\text{O}$ , labeled at the carbonyl oxygen, is to allow an ordinary aldehyde to stand in  $\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$  in the presence of a little acid. Suggest a detailed mechanism for this oxygen exchange.

## 18.15 Cannizzaro reaction

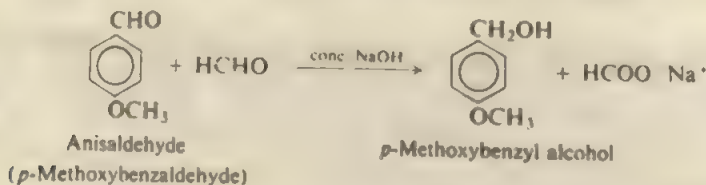
In the presence of concentrated alkali, aldehydes containing no  $\alpha$ -hydrogens undergo self-oxidation-and-reduction to yield a mixture of an alcohol and a salt of a carboxylic acid. This reaction, known as the **Cannizzaro reaction**, is generally brought about by allowing the aldehyde to stand at room temperature with concentrated aqueous or alcoholic hydroxide. (Under these conditions an aldehyde containing  $\alpha$ -hydrogens would undergo aldol condensation faster, Sec. 21.5.)



In general, a mixture of two aldehydes undergoes a Cannizzaro reaction to yield all possible products. If one of the aldehydes is formaldehyde, however, reaction yields almost exclusively sodium formate and the alcohol corresponding to the other aldehyde:

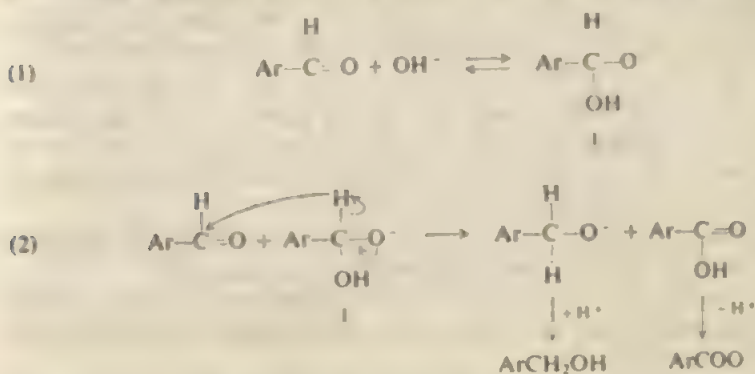


Such a reaction is called a **crossed Cannizzaro reaction**. For example:



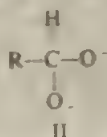
Evidence, chiefly from kinetics and experiments with isotopically labeled compounds, indicates that even this seemingly different reaction follows the

familiar pattern for carbonyl compounds: nucleophilic addition. Two successive additions are involved: addition of hydroxide ion (step 1) to give intermediate I.



and addition of a hydride ion from I (step 2) to a second molecule of aldehyde. The presence of the negative charge on I aids in the loss of hydride ion.

**Problem 18.14** In the case of some aldehydes there is evidence that intermediate II is the hydride donor in the Cannizzaro reactions. (a) How would II be formed from I?



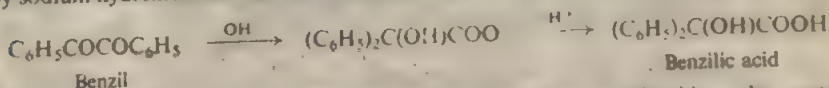
(b) Why would you expect II to be a better hydride donor than I? (*Hint*: What is one product of the hydride transfer from II?)

**Problem 18.15** Suggest an experiment to prove that a hydride transfer of the kind shown in step (2) is actually involved, that is, that hydrogen is transferred from I and not from the solvent.

**Problem 18.16** From examination of the mechanism, can you suggest one factor that would tend to make a crossed Cannizzaro reaction involving formaldehyde take place in the particular way it does?

**Problem 18.17** Phenylglyoxal,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCHO}$ , is converted by aqueous sodium hydroxide into sodium mandelate,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHOHCOONa}$ . Suggest a likely mechanism for this conversion.

**Problem 18.18** In the *benzilic acid rearrangement*, the diketone *benzil* is converted by sodium hydroxide into the salt of *benzilic acid*.



If sodium methoxide is used instead of sodium hydroxide, the ester  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{COOCH}_3$  is obtained. Suggest a possible mechanism for this rearrangement.

## 18.16 Analysis of aldehydes and ketones

Aldehydes and ketones are characterized through the addition to the carbonyl group of nucleophilic reagents, especially derivatives of ammonia (Sec. 18.13). An

aldehyde or ketone will, for example, react with 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine to form an insoluble yellow or red solid.

Aldehydes are characterized, and in particular are differentiated from ketones, through their ease of oxidation: aldehydes give a positive test with Tollens' reagent (Sec. 18.9); ketones do not. A positive Tollens' test is also given by a few other kinds of easily oxidized compounds, e.g., certain phenols and amines; these compounds do not, however, give positive tests with 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine.

Aldehydes are also, of course, oxidized by many other oxidizing agents: by cold, dilute, neutral  $\text{KMnO}_4$  and by  $\text{CrO}_3$  in  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  (Sec. 8.29).

A highly sensitive test for aldehydes is the *Schiff test*. An aldehyde reacts with the fuchsin-aldehyde reagent to form a characteristic magenta color.

Aliphatic aldehydes and ketones having  $\alpha$ -hydrogen react with  $\text{Br}_2$  in  $\text{CCl}_4$ . This reaction is generally too slow to be confused with a test for unsaturation, and moreover it liberates  $\text{HBr}$ .

Aldehydes and ketones are generally identified through the melting points of derivatives like 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazones, oximes, and semicarbazones (Sec. 18.13).

Methyl ketones are characterized through the iodoform test (see Sec. 11.14).

**Problem 18.19** Make a table to summarize the behavior of each class of compound we have studied toward each of the oxidizing agents we have studied.

**Problem 18.20** A convenient test for aldehydes and most ketones depends upon the fact that a carbonyl compound generally causes a change in color when it is added to a solution of hydroxylamine hydrochloride and an acid-base indicator. What is the basis of this test?

**Problem 18.21** Expand the table you made in Problem 16.30, p. 668, to include aldehydes and ketones, and, in particular, emphasize oxidizing agents.

## 18.17 Spectroscopic analysis of aldehydes and ketones

**Infrared.** Infrared spectroscopy is by far the best way to detect the presence of a carbonyl group in a molecule. The strong band due to  $\text{C}=\text{O}$  stretching appears at about  $1700\text{ cm}^{-1}$ , where it is seldom obscured by other strong absorptions; it is one of the most useful bands in the infrared spectrum, and is often the first one looked for (see Fig. 18.1).

The carbonyl band is given not only by aldehydes and ketones, but also by carboxylic acids and their derivatives. Once identified as arising from an aldehyde or ketone (see below), its exact frequency can give a great deal of information about the structure of the molecule.

### $\text{C}=\text{O}$ stretching, strong

$\text{RCHO}$   $1725\text{ cm}^{-1}$

$\text{R}_2\text{C}=\text{O}$   $1710\text{ cm}^{-1}$

Cyclobutanones  $1780\text{ cm}^{-1}$

$\text{ArCHO}$   $1700\text{ cm}^{-1}$

$\text{ArCOR}$   $1690\text{ cm}^{-1}$

Cyclopentanones  $1740\text{ cm}^{-1}$

$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CHO}$   $1685\text{ cm}^{-1}$

$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{CH}_3$   $1675\text{ cm}^{-1}$

$\text{CH}_3\text{C}(\text{O})\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$   $1540\text{--}1640\text{ cm}^{-1}$   
(enols)



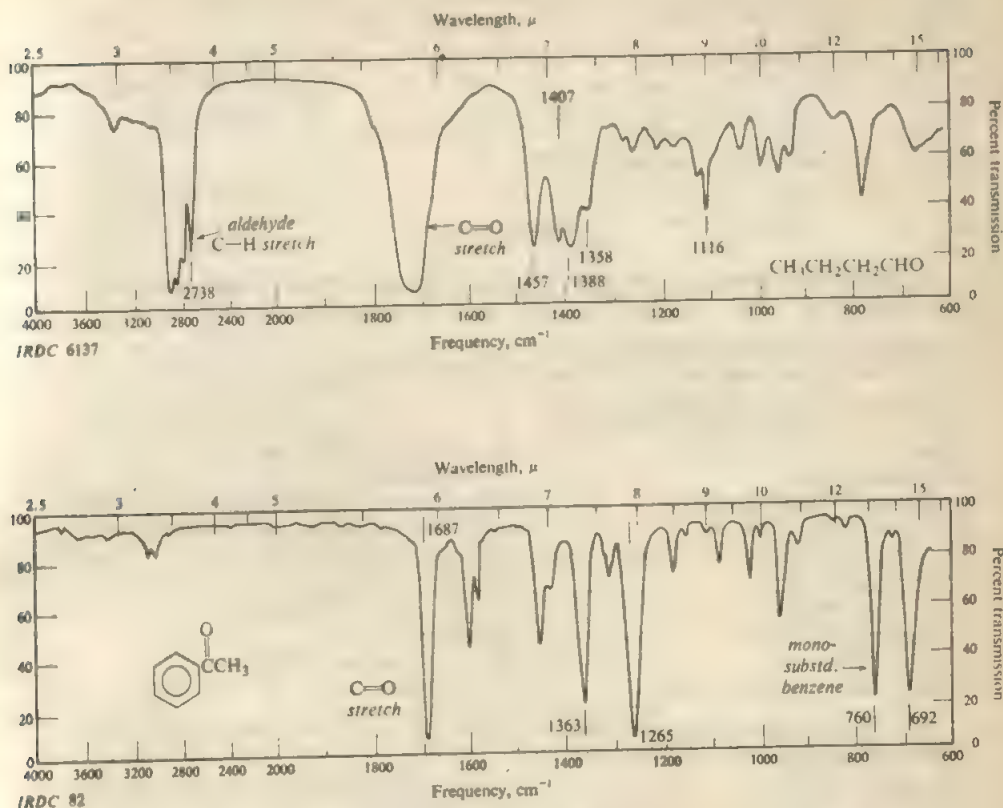


Figure 18.1. Infrared spectra of (a) *n*-butyraldehyde and (b) acetophenone.

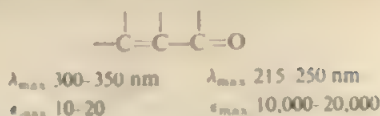
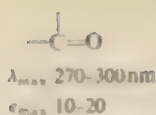
The  $\text{—CHO}$  group of an aldehyde has a characteristic  $\text{C—H}$  stretching band near  $2720\text{ cm}^{-1}$ ; this, in conjunction with the carbonyl band, is fairly certain evidence for an aldehyde (see Fig. 18.1).

Carboxylic acids (Sec. 19.22) and esters (Sec. 20.26) also show carbonyl absorption, and in the same general region as aldehydes and ketones. Acids, however, also show the broad  $\text{O—H}$  band. Esters usually show the carbonyl band at somewhat higher frequencies than ketones of the same general structure; furthermore, esters show characteristic  $\text{C—O}$  stretching bands. (For a comparison of certain oxygen compounds, see Table 20.3, p. 847.)

**NMR.** The proton of an aldehyde group,  $\text{—CHO}$ , absorbs far downfield, at  $\delta$  9–10. Coupling of this proton with adjacent protons has a small constant ( $J$  1–3 Hz), and the fine splitting is often seen superimposed on other splittings.

**Ultraviolet.** The ultraviolet spectrum can tell a good deal about the structure of carbonyl compounds: particularly, as we might expect from our earlier discussion (Sec. 17.8), about conjugation of the carbonyl group with a carbon–carbon double bond.

Saturated aldehydes and ketones absorb weakly in the near ultraviolet. Conjugation moves this weak band (the *R* band) to longer wavelengths (why?) and, more important, moves a very intense band (the *K* band) from the far ultraviolet to the near ultraviolet.



The exact position of this K band gives information about the number and location of substituents in the conjugated system.

## PROBLEMS

1. Neglecting enantiomerism, give structural formulas, common names, and IUPAC names for:

- (a) the seven carbonyl compounds of formula  $C_6H_{10}O$   
 (b) the five carbonyl compounds of formula  $C_8H_8O$  that contain a benzene ring

2. Give the structural formula of:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) acetone                                | (k) 3-methyl-2-pentanone                             |
| (b) benzaldehyde                           | (l) 2-butenal  |
| (c) methyl isobutyl ketone                 | (m) 4-methyl-3-penten-2-one (mesityl oxide)          |
| (d) trimethylacetaldehyde                  | (n) 1,3-diphenyl-2-propen-1-one (benzalacetophenone) |
| (e) acetophenone                           | (o) 3-hydroxypentanal                                |
| (f) cinnamaldehyde                         | (p) benzyl phenyl ketone                             |
| (g) 4-methylpentanal                       | (q) salicylaldehyde                                  |
| (h) phenylacetaldehyde                     | (r) <i>p,p'</i> -dihydroxybenzophenone               |
| (i) benzophenone                           | (s) <i>m</i> -tolualdehyde                           |
| (j) $\alpha,\gamma$ -dimethylcaproaldehyde |  |

3. Write balanced equations, naming all organic products, for the reaction (if any) of phenylacetaldehyde with:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) Tollens' reagent                        | (i) isopropylmagnesium chloride, then $H_2O$ |
| (b) $CrO_3/H_2SO_4$                         | (j) $HC\equiv CLi$ , then $H_2O$             |
| (c) cold dilute $KMnO_4$                    | (k) $CN^-$ , $H^+$                           |
| (d) $KMnO_4$ , $H^+$ , heat                 | (l) hydroxylamine                            |
| (e) $H_2$ , Ni, 20 lb/in <sup>2</sup> , 30° | (m) phenylhydrazine                          |
| (f) $LiAlH_4$                               | (n) 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine               |
| (g) $NaBH_4$                                | (o) semicarbazide                            |
| (h) $C_6H_5MgBr$ , then $H_2O$              | (p) ethyl alcohol, dry $HCl(g)$              |

4. Answer Problem 3 for cyclohexanone.

5. Write balanced equations, naming all organic products, for the reaction (if any) of benzaldehyde with:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) conc. NaOH                          | (e) $CH_3MgI$ , then $H_2O$             |
| (b) formaldehyde, conc. NaOH            | (f) product (e) + $H^+$ , heat          |
| (c) $CN^-$ , $H^+$                      | (g) $(CH_3)_2^{14}CHMgBr$ , then $H_2O$ |
| (d) product (c) + $H_2O$ , $H^+$ , heat | (h) $H_2^{18}O$ , $H^+$                 |

6. Write equations for all steps in the synthesis of the following from propionaldehyde, using any other needed reagents:

- |                                   |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| (a) <i>n</i> -propyl alcohol      | (e) 1-phenyl-1-propanol         |
| (b) propionic acid                | (f) methyl ethyl ketone         |
| (c) $\gamma$ -hydroxybutyric acid | (g) <i>n</i> -propyl propionate |
| (d) <i>sec</i> -butyl alcohol     | (h) 2-methyl-3-pentanol         |

7. Write equations for all steps in the synthesis of the following from acetophenone, using any other needed reagents:

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| (a) ethylbenzene                  | (d) 2-phenyl-2-butanol                                |
| (b) benzoic acid                  | (e) diphenylmethylcarbinol                            |
| (c) $\alpha$ -phenylethyl alcohol | (f) $\alpha$ -hydroxy- $\alpha$ -phenylpropionic acid |

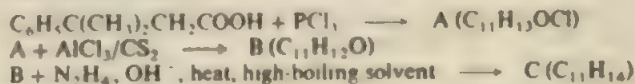
8. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following from benzene, toluene, and alcohols of four carbons or fewer, using any needed inorganic reagents

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| (a) isobutyraldehyde            | (i) <i>m</i> -nitrobenzophenone            |
| (b) phenylacetaldehyde          | (j) <i>n</i> propyl <i>p</i> -tolyl ketone |
| (c) <i>p</i> -bromobenzaldehyde | (k) $\gamma$ -methylbutyraldehyde          |
| (d) methyl ethyl ketone         | (l) <i>n</i> butyl isobutyl ketone         |
| (e) 2,4-dinitrobenzaldehyde     | (m) <i>p</i> -nitroacetophenone            |
| (f) <i>p</i> -nitrobenzophenone | (n) 3-nitro-4-methylbenzophenone           |
| (g) 2-methyl-3-pentanone        | (o) <i>p</i> -nitropropiophenone           |
| (h) benzyl methyl ketone        |  |

9. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following from benzene, toluene, and alcohols of four carbons or fewer, using any needed inorganic reagents.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) <i>n</i> -butylbenzene                    | (c) <i>p</i> -nitro- $\alpha$ -hydroxyphenylacetic acid |
| (b) $\alpha$ -hydroxy- <i>n</i> -valeric acid | (f) 1,2-diphenyl-2-propanol                             |
| (c) 2-methylheptane                           | (g) ethylphenyl- <i>p</i> -bromophenylcarbinol          |
| (d) 2,3,5-trimethyl-3-hexanol                 | (h) 3-methyl-2-butenic acid                             |

10. (a) What are A, B, and C?

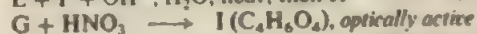
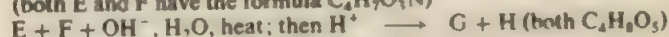
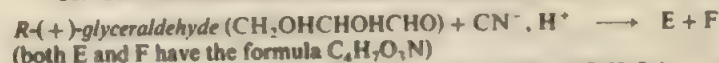


C gave the following NMR spectrum:

- a* singlet,  $\delta$  1.22, 6H  
*b* triplet,  $\delta$  1.85, 2H,  $J = 7$  Hz  
*c* triplet,  $\delta$  2.83, 2H,  $J = 7$  Hz  
*d* singlet,  $\delta$  7.02, 4H

(b) C was also formed by treatment of the alcohol D ( $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}$ ) with concentrated sulfuric acid. What is the structure of D?

11. Give stereochemical formulas for compounds E-J.

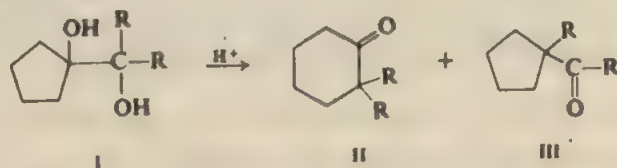


12. (a) *cis*-1,2-Cyclopentanediol reacts with acetone in the presence of dry HCl to yield compound K,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_2$ , which is resistant to boiling alkali, but which is readily converted into the starting materials by aqueous acids. What is the most likely structure of K? To what class of compounds does it belong?

(b) *trans*-1,2-Cyclopentanediol does not form an analogous compound. How do you account for this fact?

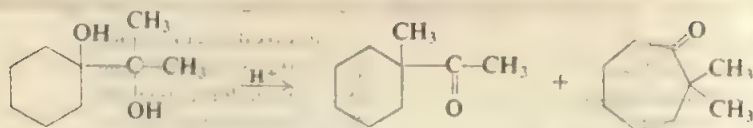
13. The oxygen exchange described in Problem 18.13 (p. 760) can be carried out by use of hydroxide ion instead of hydrogen ion as catalyst. Suggest a detailed mechanism for exchange under these conditions. (Hint: See Sec. 18.15.)

14. (a) Upon treatment with acid I ( $\text{R} = \text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ ) yields II and III. Show all steps in these transformations.



(b) Account for the fact that when  $\text{R} = \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , I yields only II.

(c) Show the most likely steps in the following transformation:

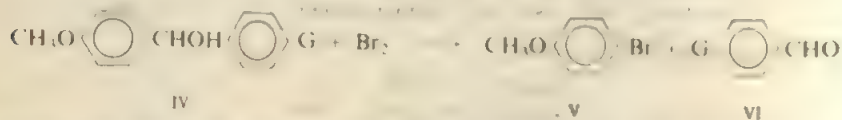


(d) Predict the products of the pinacol rearrangement of 2,3-diphenyl-2,3-butanediol; of 3-phenyl-1,2-propanediol. Describe a simple chemical test that would show whether your prediction was correct or incorrect.

15. Vinyl alkyl ethers,  $RCH=CHOR'$ , are very rapidly hydrolyzed by dilute aqueous acid to form the alcohol  $R'OH$  and the aldehyde  $RCH_2CHO$ . Hydrolysis in  $H_2^{18}O$  gives alcohol  $R'OH$  containing only ordinary oxygen. Outline all steps in the most likely mechanism for the hydrolysis. Show how this mechanism accounts not only for the results of the tracer experiment, but also for the extreme ease with which hydrolysis takes place.

16. When dissolved in  $HSO_3F-SbF_5-SO_2$ , the glycol 1,3-propanediol is rapidly converted into propionaldehyde. Write all steps in a likely mechanism for this reaction.

17. On treatment with bromine, certain diarylcarbinols (IV) are converted into a 50:50 mixture of aryl bromide (V) and aldehyde (VI).



IV

V

VI

Whether  $G$  is  $NO_2$ ,  $H$ ,  $Br$ , or  $CH_3$ , bromine appears *only* in the ring containing the  $OCH_3$  group. The rate of reaction is affected moderately by the nature of  $G$ , decreasing along the series  $G = CH_3 > H > Br > NO_2$ . The rate of reaction is slowed down by the presence of added bromide ion.

Outline all steps in the most likely mechanism for this reaction. Show how your mechanism accounts for each of the above facts.

18. A naive graduate student needed a quantity of benzhydrol,  $(C_6H_5)_2CHOH$ , and decided to prepare it by the reaction between phenylmagnesium bromide and benzaldehyde. He prepared a mole of the Grignard reagent. To insure a good yield, he then added, not one, but *two* moles of the aldehyde. On working up the reaction mixture, he was at first gratified to find he had obtained a good yield of a crystalline product, but his hopes were dashed when closer examination revealed that he had made, not benzhydrol, but the ketone benzophenone. Bewildered, the student made the first of many trips to his research director's office.

He returned shortly, red-faced, to the laboratory, carried out the reaction again using equimolar amounts of the reactants, and obtained a good yield of the compound he wanted.

What had gone wrong in his first attempt? How had his generosity with benzaldehyde betrayed him? (*Hint:* See Sec. 18.15. Examine the structure of the initial addition product.) (In Problem 20, p. 883, we shall follow his further adventures.)

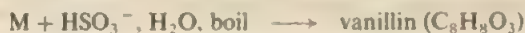
19. (a) How do you account for the extreme ease with which *tetrahydropyranyl ethers* (Sec. 12.8) undergo hydrolysis in dilute aqueous acid? (b) Predict the products of such hydrolysis of I (O. THP).

20. Spectroscopic and thin layer chromatographic analysis has shown that, even when not found in the final product, epoxides are present during the reaction of such pinacols as 1,1,2,2-tetraphenyl-1,2-ethanediol. It seems most likely that epoxides represent a blind alley down which many molecules stray before pinacolone is finally formed. (a) How are these epoxides probably formed? (b) What probably happens to them in the reaction medium?

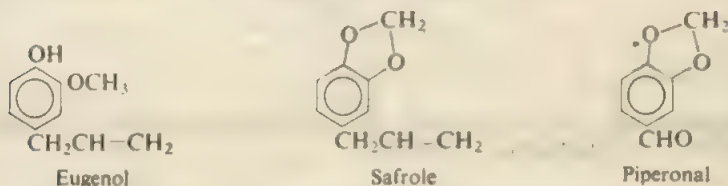
21. (a) Give structural formulas of compounds I and M, and of *isoeugenol* and *isomiln*





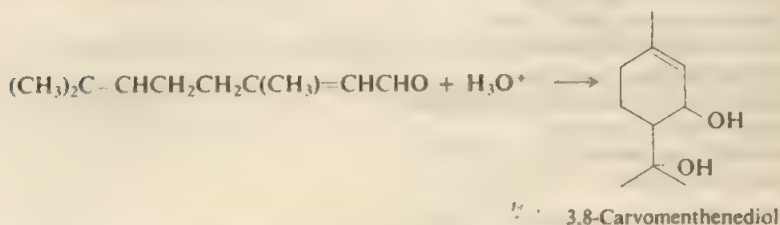


(b) Account for the conversion of eugenol into isoeugenol.



(c) Suggest a way to convert *safrole* into *piperonal* (above).

22. Suggest a mechanism for the following reaction.



The ring-closing step can be considered as either nucleophilic addition or electrophilic addition depending on one's point of view. Show how this is so, identifying both the electrophile and the nucleophile.

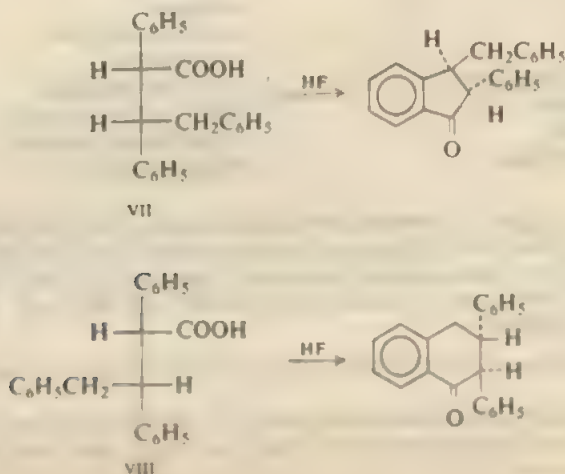
23. The trimer of trichloroacetaldehyde (compare *paraldehyde*, p. 736) exists in two forms, N and O, which give the following NMR data.

N: singlet,  $\delta$  4.28

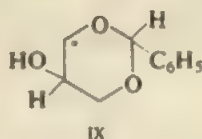
O: two singlets,  $\delta$  4.63 and  $\delta$  5.50, peak area ratio 2:1

Show in as much detail as you can the structure of each of these.

24. How do you account for the difference in behavior between diastereomers VII and VIII? (*Hint*: Draw Newman projections. What are the bulkiest groups?)



25. The acetal (IX) of glycerol and benzaldehyde has been found to exist in two configurations. (a) Draw them. (b) One of these exists preferentially in a conformation in



which the phenyl group occupies an axial position. Which configuration is this, and what counterbalances the unfavorable steric factor?

26. Describe a simple chemical test that would serve to distinguish between:

- n*-valeraldehyde and ethyl ketone
- phenylacetaldehyde and benzyl alcohol
- cyclohexanone and methyl cyclohexyl ether
- 2-pentanone and 3-pentanone
- propionaldehyde and diethyl ether
- diethyl acetal and *n*-valeraldehyde
- diethyl acetal and *n*-propyl ether
- methyl *m*-tolyl ketone and propiophenone
- 2-pentanone and 2-pentanol
- paraldehyde and isobutyl ether
- dioxane and trioxane

Tell exactly what you would *do* and *see*.

27. (a) Describe simple chemical tests that would serve to distinguish among the possible products of rearrangement of 1-phenyl-1,2-propanediol shown on page 745. Tell exactly what you would do and see. (b) Alternatively, you could use the NMR spectrum. Tell exactly what you would expect to see in the spectrum of each possible product.

28. An unknown compound is believed to be one of the following, all of which boil within a few degrees of each other. Describe how you would go about finding out which of the possibilities the unknown actually is. Where possible use simple chemical tests; where necessary use more elaborate chemical methods such as quantitative hydrogenation, cleavage, neutralization equivalent, saponification equivalent, etc. Make use of any needed tables of physical constants.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) phenylacetaldehyde                 | (c) isophorone (3,5,5-trimethyl-2-cyclohexen-1-one) |
| <i>m</i> -tolualdehyde                 | <i>n</i> -dodecane                                  |
| <i>o</i> -tolualdehyde                 | benzyl <i>n</i> -butyl ether                        |
| acetophenone                           | <i>n</i> -nonyl alcohol                             |
| <i>p</i> -tolualdehyde                 | (d) <i>p</i> -chloroacetophenone                    |
| (b) methyl $\beta$ -phenylethyl ketone | methyl <i>o</i> -chlorobenzoate                     |
| cyclohexylbenzene                      | <i>p</i> -chlorobenzyl chloride                     |
| benzyl <i>n</i> -butyrate              | <i>m</i> -chloronitrobenzene                        |
| $\gamma$ -phenylpropyl alcohol         |   |

29. Citral,  $C_{10}H_{16}O$ , is a terpene that is the major constituent of lemongrass oil. It reacts with hydroxylamine to yield a compound of formula  $C_{10}H_{15}ON$ , and with Tollens' reagent to give a silver mirror and a compound of formula  $C_{10}H_{16}O_2$ . Upon vigorous oxidation citral yields acetone, oxalic acid ( $HOOC-COOH$ ), and levulinic acid ( $CH_3COCH_2CH_2COOH$ ).

(a) Propose a structure for citral that is consistent with these facts and with the isoprene rule (Sec. 9.33).

(b) Actually citral seems to consist of two isomers, citral *a* (*geranial*) and citral *b* (*neral*), which yield the same oxidation products. What is the most likely structural difference between these two isomers?

(c) Citral *a* is obtained by mild oxidation of geraniol (Problem 23, p. 531); citral *b* is obtained in a similar way from nerol. On this basis, assign structures to citral *a* and citral *b*.

30. (+)-*Carvotanacetone*,  $C_{10}H_{16}O$ , is a terpene found in thuja oil. It reacts with hydroxylamine and semicarbazide to form crystalline derivatives. It gives negative tests with Tollens' reagent, but rapidly decolorizes cold dilute  $KMnO_4$ .

Carvotanacetone can be reduced successively to *carvomenthone*,  $C_{10}H_{18}O$ , and *carvomenthol*,  $C_{10}H_{20}O$ . Carvomenthone reacts with hydroxylamine but not with cold dilute  $KMnO_4$ . Carvomenthol does not react with hydroxylamine or cold dilute  $KMnO_4$ , but gives a positive test with  $CrO_3/H_2SO_4$ .

One set of investigators found that oxidation of carvotanacetone gave isopropylsuccinic acid and pyruvic acid,  $CH_3COCO_2H$ ; another set of investigators isolated acetic acid and  $\beta$ -isopropylglutaric acid.



Isopropylsuccinic acid



$\beta$ -Isopropylglutaric acid

What single structure for carvotanacetone is consistent with all these facts?

31. Which (if any) of the following compounds could give rise to each of the infrared spectra shown in Fig. 18.2 (p. 770)?

isobutyraldehyde

2-butanone

tetrahydrofuran

ethyl vinyl ether

cyclopropylcarbinol

3-buten-2-ol

32. Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the NMR spectra in Fig. 18.3 (p. 771).

33. Give the structures of compounds P, Q, and R on the basis of their infrared spectra (Fig. 18.4, p. 772) and their NMR spectra (Fig. 18.5, p. 773).

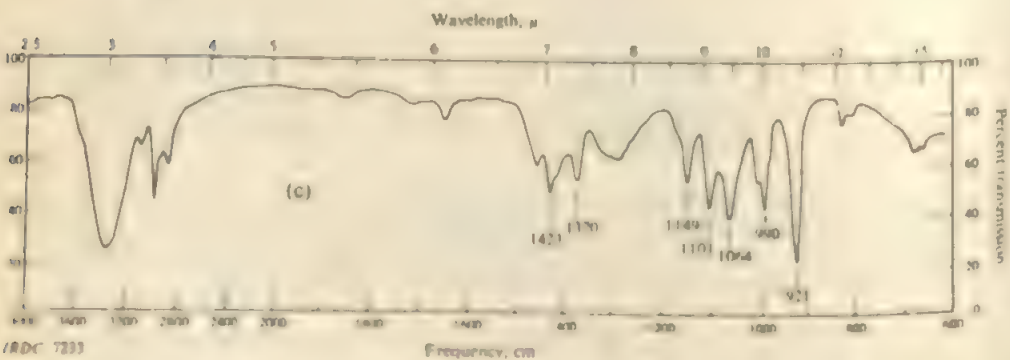
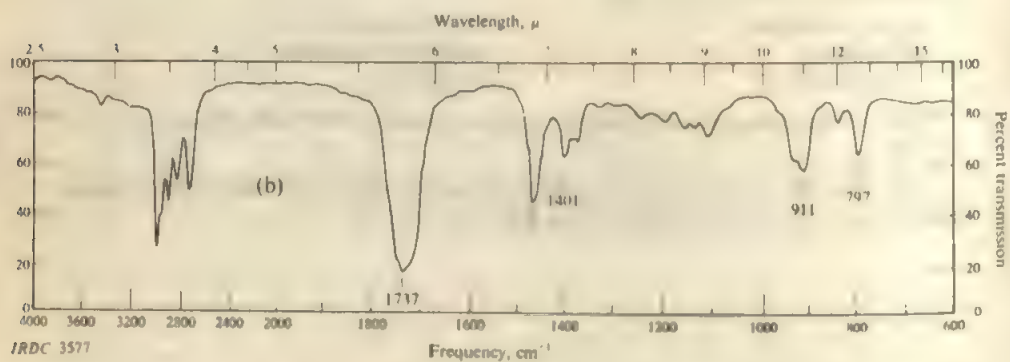
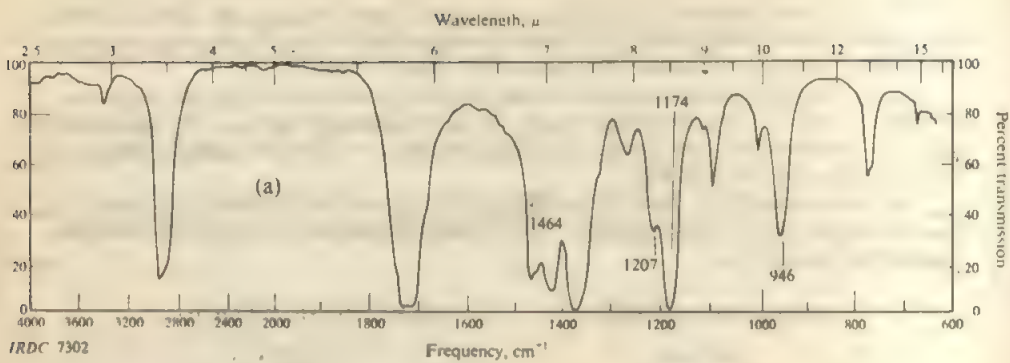


Figure 18.2. Infrared spectra for Problem 31 p 769



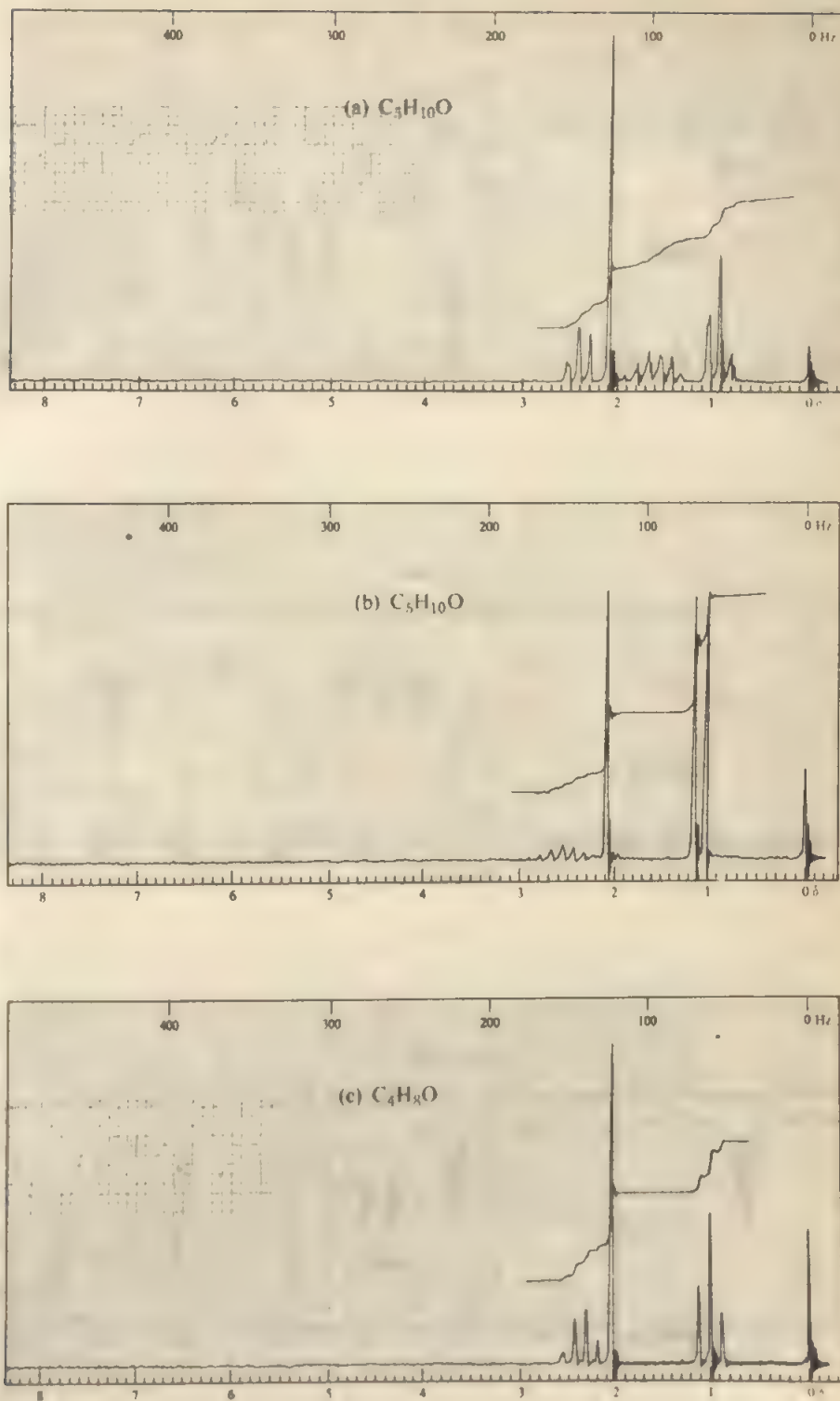


Figure 18.3. NMR spectra for Problem 32, p. 769.

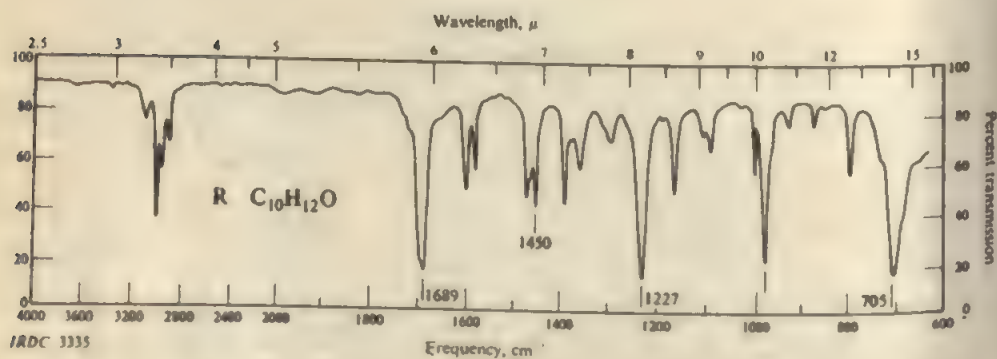
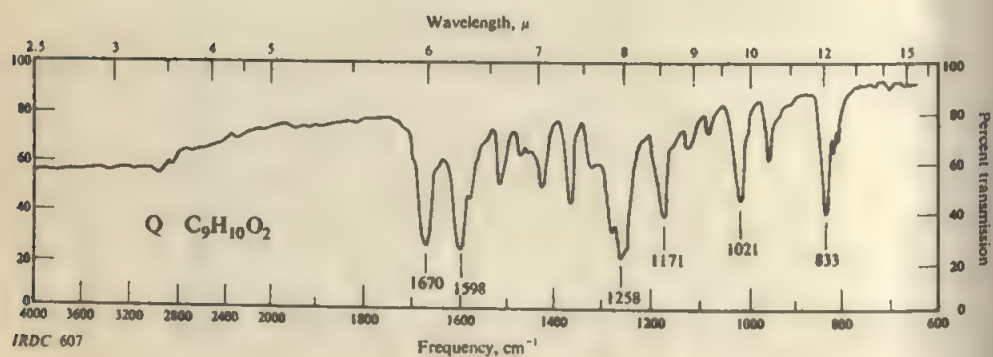
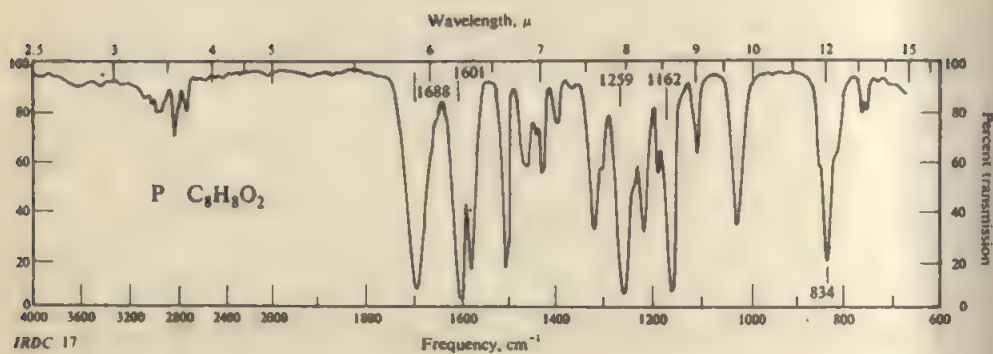


Figure 18.4. Infrared spectra for Problem 33, p. 769.

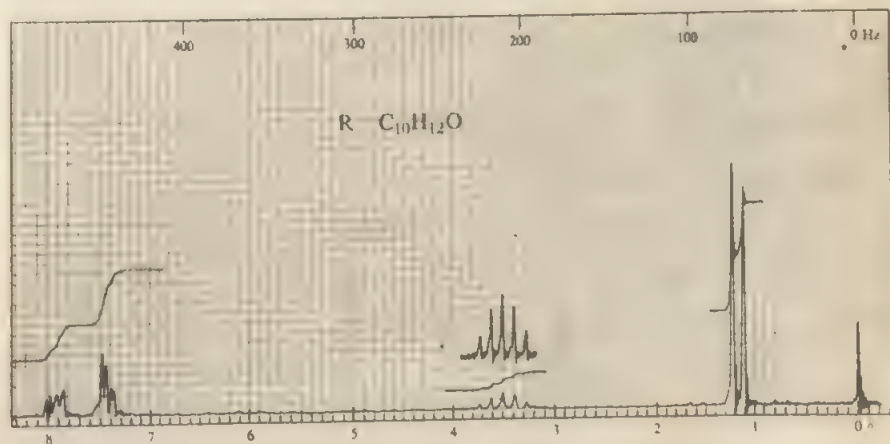
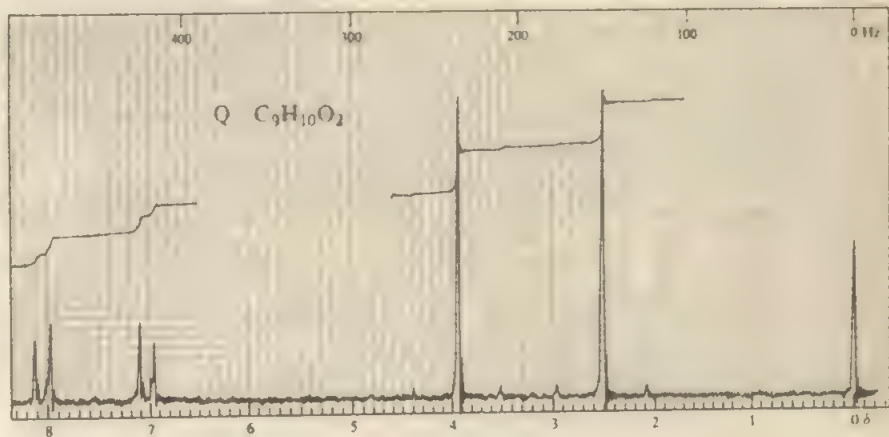
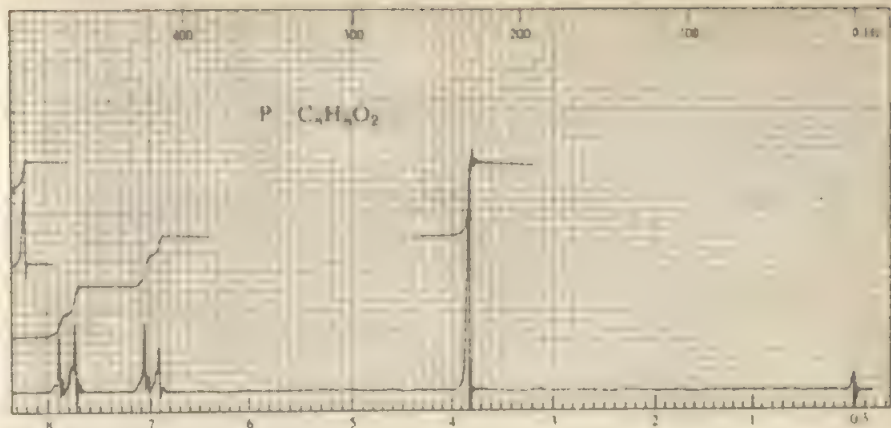
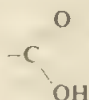


Figure 18.5. NMR spectra for Problem 33, p. 769.

## Carboxylic Acids

### 19.1 Structure

Of the organic compounds that show appreciable acidity, by far the most important are the carboxylic acids. These compounds contain the **carboxyl group**



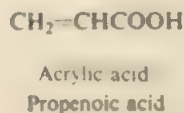
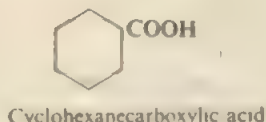
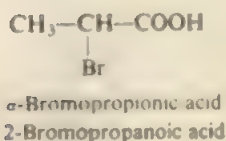
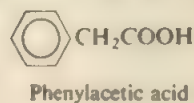
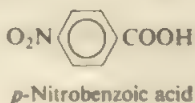
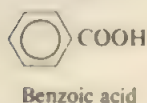
attached to either an alkyl group ( $\text{RCOOH}$ ) or an aryl group ( $\text{ArCOOH}$ ). For example:

$\text{HCOOH}$   
Formic acid  
Methanoic acid

$\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$   
Acetic acid  
Ethanoic acid

$\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_{10}\text{COOH}$   
Lauric acid  
Dodecanoic acid

$\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{CH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{COOH}$   
Oleic acid  
*cis*-9-Octadecenoic acid



Whether the group is aliphatic or aromatic, saturated or unsaturated, substituted or unsubstituted, the properties of the carboxyl group are essentially the same.



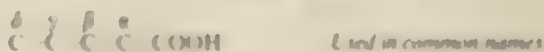
## 19.2 Nomenclature

The aliphatic carboxylic acids have been known for a long time, and as a result have common names that refer to their sources rather than to their chemical structures. The **common names** of the more important acids are shown in Table 19.1. *Formic acid*, for example, adds the sting to the bite of an ant (Latin: *formica*, ant), *butyric acid* gives rancid butter its typical smell (Latin: *butyrum*, butter), and *caproic*, *caprylic*, and *capric acids* are all found in goat fat (Latin: *caper*, goat).

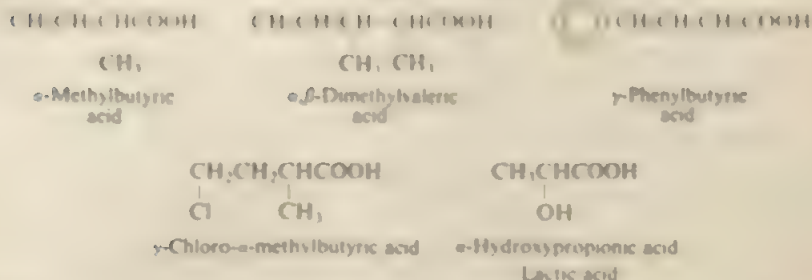
Table 19.1 CARBOXYLIC ACIDS

Name	Formula	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Solub., g/100 g H <sub>2</sub> O
Formic	HCOOH	8	100.5	α
Acetic	CH <sub>3</sub> COOH	16.6	118	α
Propionic	CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> COOH	-22	141	α
Butyric	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> COOH	-6	164	α
Valeric	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> COOH	-34	187	3.7
Caproic	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>4</sub> COOH	-3	205	1.0
Caprylic	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>6</sub> COOH	16	239	0.7
Capric	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>8</sub> COOH	31	269	0.2
Lauric	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>10</sub> COOH	44	225 <sup>100</sup>	i.
Myristic	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>12</sub> COOH	54	251 <sup>100</sup>	i.
Palmitic	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>14</sub> COOH	63	269 <sup>100</sup>	i.
Stearic	CH <sub>3</sub> (CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>16</sub> COOH	70	287 <sup>100</sup>	i.
Oleic	<i>cis</i> -9-Octadecenoic	16	223 <sup>10</sup>	i.
Linoleic	<i>cis,cis</i> -9,12-Octadecadienoic	-5	230 <sup>16</sup>	i.
Linolenic	<i>cis,cis,cis</i> -9,12,15-Octadecatrienoic	-11	232 <sup>17</sup>	i.
Cyclohexanecarboxylic	<i>cyclo</i> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>11</sub> COOH	31	233	0.20
Phenylacetic	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> COOH	77	266	1.66
Benzoic	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> COOH	122	250	0.34
<i>o</i> -Toluic	<i>o</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	106	259	0.12
<i>m</i> -Toluic	<i>m</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	112	263	0.10
<i>p</i> -Toluic	<i>p</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	180	275	0.03
<i>o</i> -Chlorobenzoic	<i>o</i> -ClC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	141		0.22
<i>m</i> -Chlorobenzoic	<i>m</i> -ClC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	154		0.04
<i>p</i> -Chlorobenzoic	<i>p</i> -ClC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	242		0.009
<i>o</i> -Bromobenzoic	<i>o</i> -BrC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	148		0.18
<i>m</i> -Bromobenzoic	<i>m</i> -BrC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	156		0.04
<i>p</i> -Bromobenzoic	<i>p</i> -BrC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	254		0.006
<i>o</i> -Nitrobenzoic	<i>o</i> -O <sub>2</sub> NC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	147		0.75
<i>m</i> -Nitrobenzoic	<i>m</i> -O <sub>2</sub> NC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	141		0.34
<i>p</i> -Nitrobenzoic	<i>p</i> -O <sub>2</sub> NC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	242		0.03
Phthalic	<i>o</i> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> (COOH) <sub>2</sub>	231		0.70
Isophthalic	<i>m</i> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> (COOH) <sub>2</sub>	348		0.01
Terephthalic	<i>p</i> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> (COOH) <sub>2</sub>	300 <i>subl.</i>		0.002
Salicylic	<i>o</i> -HOC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	159		0.22
<i>p</i> -Hydroxybenzoic	<i>p</i> -HOC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	213		0.65
Anthranilic	<i>o</i> -H <sub>2</sub> NC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	146		0.52
<i>m</i> -Aminobenzoic	<i>m</i> -H <sub>2</sub> NC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	179		0.77
<i>p</i> -Aminobenzoic	<i>p</i> -H <sub>2</sub> NC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	187		0.3
<i>o</i> -Methoxybenzoic	<i>o</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> OC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	101		0.5
<i>m</i> -Methoxybenzoic	<i>m</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> OC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	110		
<i>p</i> -Methoxybenzoic (Anisic)	<i>p</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> OC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> COOH	184		0.04

Branched chain acids and substituted acids are named as derivatives of the straight chain acids. To indicate the position of attachment, the Greek letters  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\gamma$ , etc. are used. The  $\alpha$  carbon is the one bearing the carboxyl group.

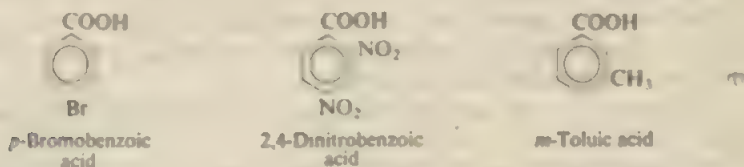


For example

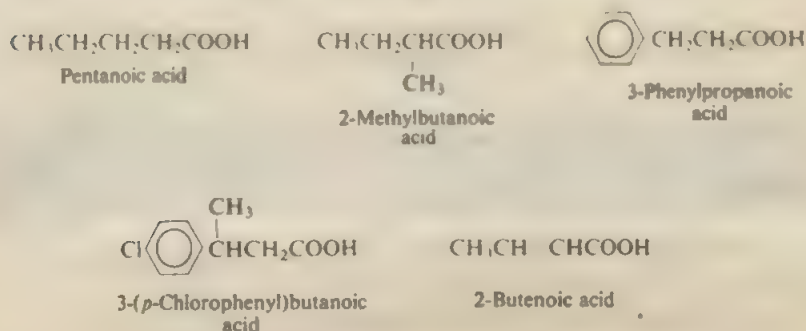


Generally the parent acid is taken as the one of longest carbon chain, although some compounds are named as derivatives of acetic acid.

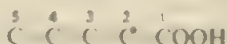
Aromatic acids,  $\text{ArCOOH}$ , are usually named as derivatives of the parent acid, **benzoic acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COOH}$ . The methylbenzoic acids are given the special name of **toluic acids**.



The **IUPAC names** follow the usual pattern. The longest chain carrying the carboxyl group is considered the parent structure, and is named by replacing the *e* of the corresponding alkane with **oic acid**. For example:



The position of a substituent is indicated as usual by a number. We should notice



Used in IUPAC names

that the carboxyl carbon is always considered as C 1, and hence C 2 corresponds to  $\alpha$  of the common names, C 3 to  $\beta$ , and so on (*Caution*: Do not mix Greek letters with IUPAC names, or Arabic numerals with common names.)

The name of a **salt** of a carboxylic acid consists of the name of the cation (*sodium, potassium, ammonium, etc.*) followed by the name of the acid with the ending *ic acid* changed to **ate**. For example:



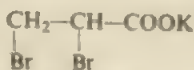
Sodium benzoate



Calcium acetate



Ammonium formate



Potassium  $\alpha,\beta$ -dibromopropionate

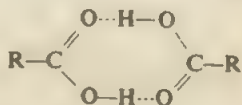
Potassium 2,3-dibromopropanoate

### 19.3 Physical properties

As we would expect from their structure, carboxylic acid molecules are polar, and like alcohol molecules can form hydrogen bonds with each other and with other kinds of molecules. The aliphatic acids therefore show very much the same solubility behavior as the alcohols: the first four are miscible with water, the five-carbon acid is partly soluble, and the higher acids are virtually insoluble. Water solubility undoubtedly arises from hydrogen bonding between the carboxylic acid and water. The simplest aromatic acid, benzoic acid, contains too many carbon atoms to show appreciable solubility in water.

Carboxylic acids are soluble in less polar solvents like ether, alcohol, benzene, etc.

We can see from Table 19.1 that as a class the carboxylic acids are even higher boiling than alcohols. For example, propionic acid (b.p.  $141^\circ$ ) boils more than twenty degrees higher than the alcohol of comparable molecular weight, *n*-butyl alcohol (b.p.  $118^\circ$ ). These very high boiling points are due to the fact that a pair of carboxylic acid molecules are held together not by one but by two hydrogen bonds:

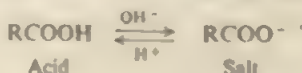


**Problem 19.1** At  $110^\circ$  and 454 mm pressure, 0.11 g acetic acid vapor occupies  $63.7 \text{ cm}^3$ ; at  $156^\circ$  and 458 mm, 0.081 g occupies  $66.4 \text{ cm}^3$ . Calculate the molecular weight of acetic acid in the vapor phase at each temperature. How do you interpret these results?

The odors of the lower aliphatic acids progress from the sharp, irritating odors of formic and acetic acids to the distinctly unpleasant odors of butyric, valeric, and caproic acids; the higher acids have little odor because of their low volatility.

## 19.4 Salts of carboxylic acids

Although much weaker than the strong mineral acids (sulfuric, hydrochloric, nitric), the carboxylic acids are tremendously more acidic than the very weak organic acids (alcohols, acetylene) we have so far studied; they are much stronger acids than water. Aqueous hydroxides therefore readily convert carboxylic acids into their salts; aqueous mineral acids readily convert the salts back into the carboxylic acids. Since we can do little with carboxylic acids without encountering



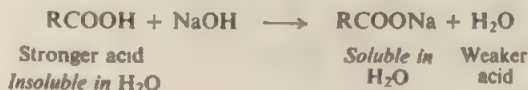
this conversion to and from their salts, it is worthwhile for us to examine the properties of these salts.

Salts of carboxylic acid—like all salts—are crystalline non-volatile solids made up of positive and negative ions; their properties are what we would expect of such structures. The strong electrostatic forces holding the ions in the crystal lattice can be overcome only by heating to a high temperature, or by a very polar solvent. The temperature required for melting is so high that before it can be reached carbon-carbon bonds break and the molecule decomposes, generally in the neighborhood of 300–400°. A decomposition point is seldom useful for the identification of a compound, since it usually reflects the rate of heating rather than the identity of the compound.

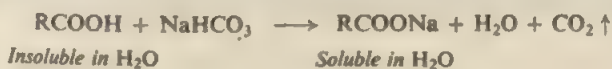
The alkali metal salts of carboxylic acids (sodium, potassium, ammonium) are soluble in water but insoluble in non-polar solvents; most of the heavy metal salts (iron, silver, copper, etc.) are insoluble in water.

Thus we see that, except for the acids of four carbons or fewer, which are soluble both in water and in organic solvents, *carboxylic acids and their alkali metal salts show exactly opposite solubility behavior*. Because of the ready interconversion of acids and their salts, this difference in solubility behavior may be used in two important ways; for *identification* and for *separation*.

A water-insoluble organic compound that dissolves in cold dilute aqueous sodium hydroxide must be either a carboxylic acid or one of the few other kinds of organic compounds more acidic than water; that it is indeed a carboxylic acid can then be shown in other ways.



Instead of sodium hydroxide, we can use aqueous sodium bicarbonate; even if the unknown is water-soluble, its acidity is shown by the evolution of bubbles of  $\text{CO}_2$ .



We can separate a carboxylic acid from non-acidic compounds by taking advantage of its solubility and their insolubility in aqueous base; once the separation has been accomplished, we can regenerate the acid by acidification of the



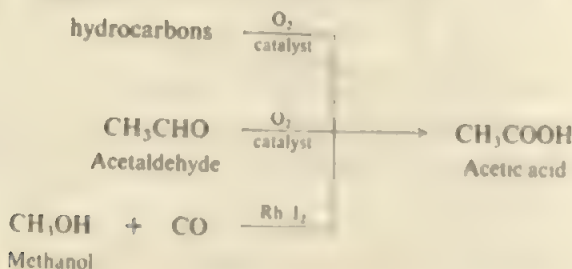
aqueous solution. If we are dealing with solids, we simply stir the mixture with aqueous base and then filter the solution from insoluble, non-acidic materials; addition of mineral acid to the filtrate precipitates the carboxylic acid, which can be collected on a filter. If we are dealing with liquids, we shake the mixture with aqueous base in a separatory funnel and separate the aqueous layer from the insoluble organic layer; addition of acid to the aqueous layer again liberates the carboxylic acid, which can then be separated from the water. For completeness of separation and ease of handling, we often add a water-insoluble solvent like ether to the acidified mixture. The carboxylic acid is extracted from the water by the ether, in which it is more soluble; the volatile ether is readily removed by distillation from the comparatively high-boiling acid.

For example, an aldehyde prepared by the oxidation of a primary alcohol (Sec. 11.9) may very well be contaminated with the carboxylic acid; this acid can be simply washed out with dilute aqueous base. The carboxylic acid prepared by oxidation of an alkylbenzene (Sec. 16.11) may very well be contaminated with unreacted starting material; the carboxylic acid can be taken into solution by aqueous base, separated from the insoluble hydrocarbon, and regenerated by addition of mineral acid.

Since separations of this kind are more clear-cut and less wasteful of material, they are preferred wherever possible over recrystallization or distillation.

## 19.5 Industrial source

**Acetic acid**, by far the most important of all carboxylic acids, has been prepared chiefly by catalytic air oxidation of various hydrocarbons or of acetaldehyde. A new method involves reaction between methanol and carbon monoxide in the



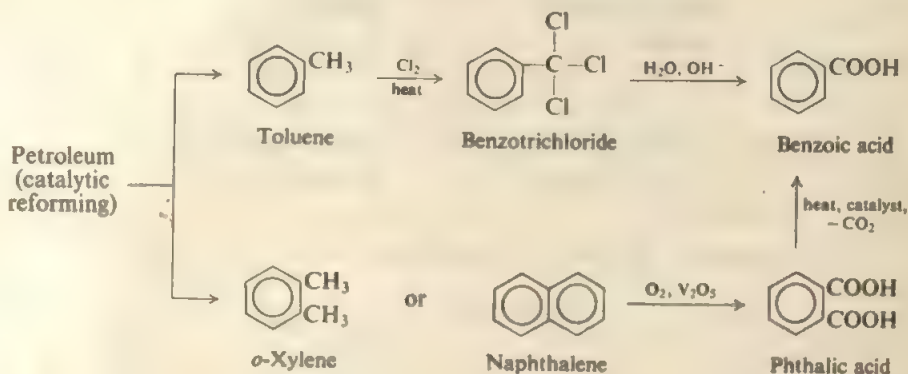
presence of an iodine-rhodium catalyst—still another example of catalysis by a transition metal complex (see Secs. 8.5, 9.36, and 10.4).

Large amounts of acetic acid are also produced as the dilute aqueous solution known as *vinegar*. Here, too, the acetic acid is prepared by air oxidation, the compound that is oxidized is ethyl alcohol, and the catalysts are bacterial (*Acetobacter*) enzymes.

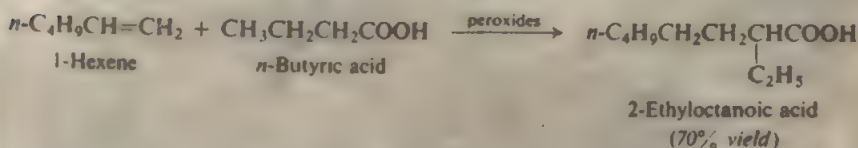
The most important sources of aliphatic carboxylic acids are the animal and vegetable **fats** (Secs. 27.2, 27.4). From fats there can be obtained, in purity of over 90%, straight-chain carboxylic acids of even carbon number ranging from six to eighteen carbon atoms. These acids can be converted into the corresponding alcohols (Sec. 19.18), which can then be used in the ways we have already studied

(Sec. 11.13), to make a great number of other compounds containing long, straight-chain units.

The most important of the aromatic carboxylic acids, **benzoic acid** and the **phthalic acids**, are prepared on an industrial scale by a reaction we have already encountered: oxidation of alkylbenzenes (Sec. 16.11). The toluene and xylenes required are readily obtained from petroleum by catalytic reforming of aliphatic hydrocarbons (Sec. 16.5); much smaller amounts of these arenes are isolated directly from coal tar. Another precursor of phthalic acid (the *ortho* isomer) is the aromatic hydrocarbon *naphthalene*, also found in coal tar. Cheap oxidizing agents like chlorine or even air (in the presence of catalysts) are used.



**Problem 19.2** In the presence of peroxides, carboxylic acids (or esters) react with 1-alkenes to yield more complicated acids. For example:



(a) Outline all steps in a likely mechanism for this reaction. (*Hint*: See Sec. 8.24.) Predict the products of similar reactions between: (b) 1-octene and propionic acid; (c) 1-decene and isobutyric acid, (d) 1-octene and ethyl malonate,  $\text{CH}_2(\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ .

**Problem 19.3** (a) Carbon monoxide converts a sulfuric acid solution of each of the following into 2,2-dimethylbutanoic acid: 2-methyl-2-butene, *tert*-pentyl alcohol, neopentyl alcohol. Suggest a likely mechanism for this method of synthesizing carboxylic acids. (b) *n*-Butyl alcohol and *sec*-butyl alcohol give the same product. What would you expect it to be?

## 19.6 Preparation

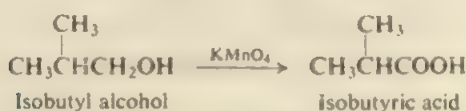
The straight-chain aliphatic acids up to  $\text{C}_{18}$ , and those of even carbon number up to  $\text{C}_{18}$ , are commercially available, as are the simple aromatic acids. Other carboxylic acids can be prepared by the methods outlined below.

## PREPARATION OF CARBOXYLIC ACIDS

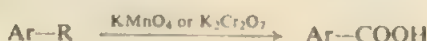
## 1. Oxidation of primary alcohols. Discussed in Sec. 11.9.



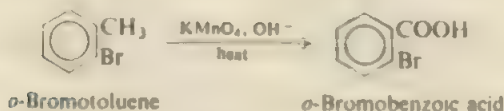
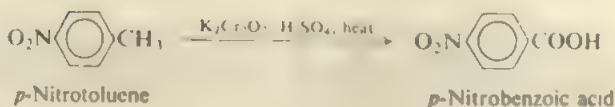
Examples:



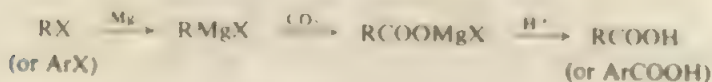
## 2. Oxidation of alkylbenzenes. Discussed in Sec. 16.11.



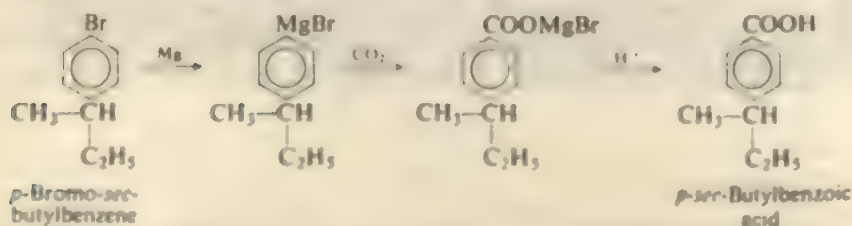
Examples:

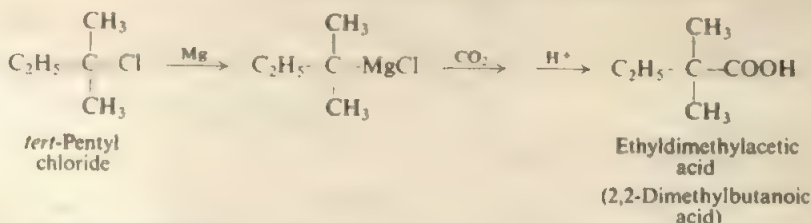


## 3. Carboxylation of Grignard reagents. Discussed in Sec. 19.7

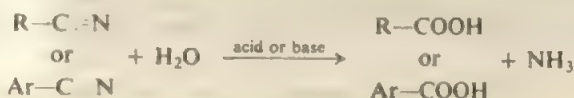


Examples:

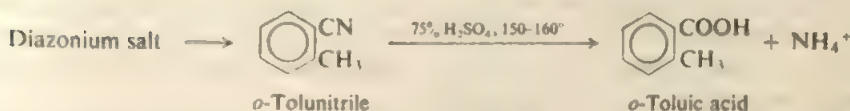
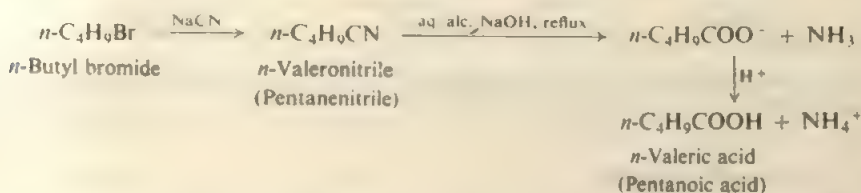
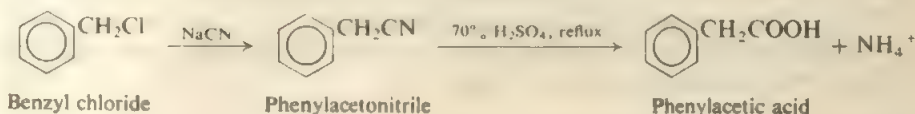




#### 4. Hydrolysis of nitriles. Discussed in Sec. 19.8.



Examples:



#### 5. Malonic ester synthesis. Discussed in Sec. 26.2.

#### 6. Special methods for phenolic acids. Discussed in Sec. 24.13.

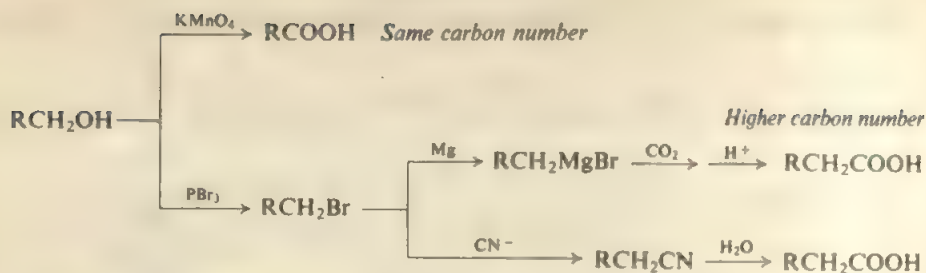


All the methods listed are important; our choice is governed by the availability of starting materials.

**Oxidation** is the most direct and is generally used when possible, some lower aliphatic acids being made from the available alcohols, and substituted aromatic acids from substituted toluenes.

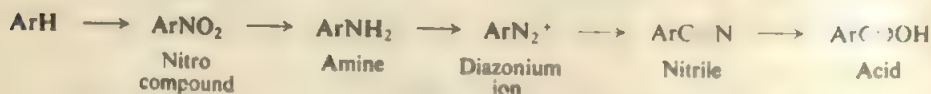
The **Grignard synthesis** and the **nitrile synthesis** have the special advantage of increasing the length of a carbon chain, and thus extending the range of available materials. In the aliphatic series both Grignard reagents and nitriles are prepared from halides, which in turn are usually prepared from alcohols. The syntheses thus amount to the preparation of acids from alcohols containing one less carbon atom.





**Problem 19.4** What carboxylic acid can be prepared from *p*-bromotoluene: (a) by direct oxidation? (b) by free-radical chlorination followed by the nitrile synthesis?

Aromatic nitriles generally cannot be prepared from the unreactive aryl halides (Sec. 25.5). Instead they are made from diazonium salts by a reaction we shall discuss later (Sec. 23.15). Diazonium salts are prepared from aromatic amines, which in turn are prepared from nitro compounds. Thus the carboxyl group eventually occupies the position on the ring where a nitro group was originally introduced by direct nitration (Sec. 15.8).

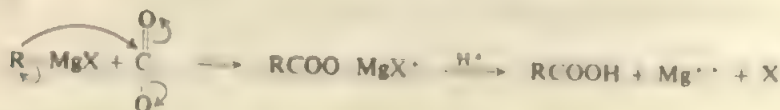


For the preparation of quite complicated acids, the most versatile method of all is used, the *malonic ester synthesis* (Sec. 26.2).

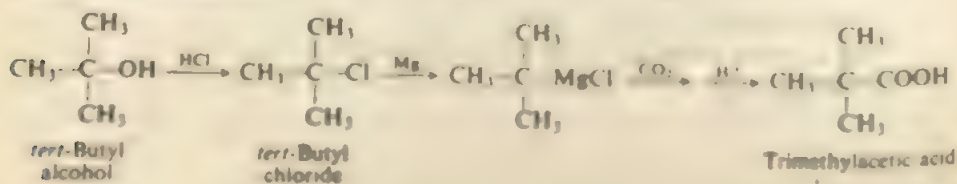
## 19.7 Grignard synthesis

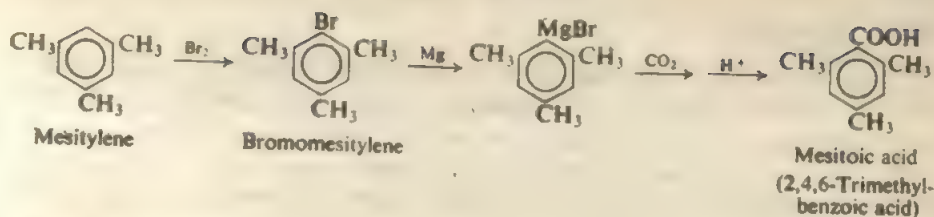
The Grignard synthesis of a carboxylic acid is carried out by bubbling gaseous  $\text{CO}_2$  into the ether solution of the Grignard reagent, or by pouring the Grignard reagent on crushed Dry Ice (solid  $\text{CO}_2$ ); in the latter method Dry Ice serves not only as reagent but also as cooling agent.

The Grignard reagent adds to the carbon-oxygen double bond just as in the reaction with aldehydes and ketones (Sec. 10.12). The product is the magnesium salt of the carboxylic acid, from which the free acid is liberated by treatment with mineral acid.



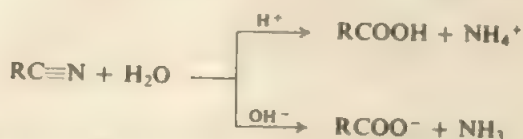
The Grignard reagent can be prepared from primary, secondary, tertiary, or aromatic halides; the method is limited only by the presence of other reactive groups in the molecule (Sec. 10.16). The following syntheses illustrate the application of this method:



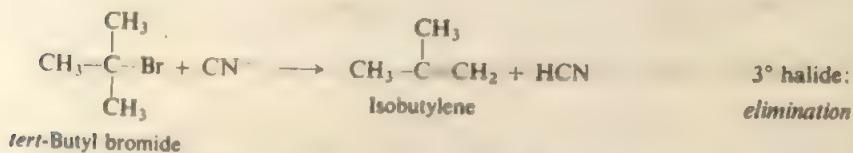
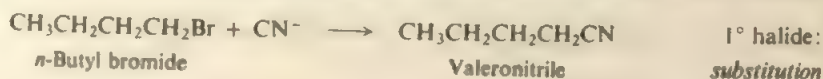


## 19.8 Nitrile synthesis

Aliphatic nitriles are prepared by treatment of alkyl halides with sodium cyanide in a solvent that will dissolve both reactants; in dimethyl sulfoxide, reaction occurs rapidly and exothermically at room temperature. The resulting nitrile is then hydrolyzed to the acid by boiling aqueous alkali or acid.



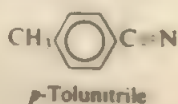
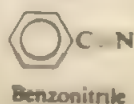
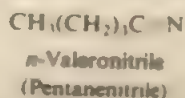
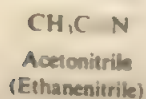
The reaction of an alkyl halide with cyanide ion involves nucleophilic substitution (Sec. 6.10). The fact that HCN is a very weak acid tells us that cyanide ion is a strong base; as we might expect, this strongly basic ion can abstract hydrogen ion and thus cause elimination as well as substitution. Indeed, with tertiary halides



elimination is the principal reaction; even with secondary halides the yield of substitution product is poor. Here again we find a nucleophilic substitution reaction that is of synthetic importance *only when primary halides are used*.

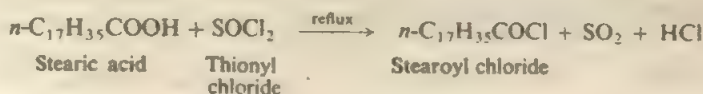
As already mentioned, aromatic nitriles are made, not from the unreactive aryl halides, but from diazonium salts (Sec. 23.15).

Although nitriles are sometimes named as *cyanides* or as *ciano* compounds, they generally take their names from the acids they yield upon hydrolysis. They are named by dropping *-ic acid* from the common name of the acid and adding *-nitrile*; usually for euphony an "o" is inserted between the root and the ending (e.g., *acetonitrile*). In the IUPAC system they are named by adding *-nitrile* to the name of the parent hydrocarbon (e.g., *ethanenitrile*). For example:

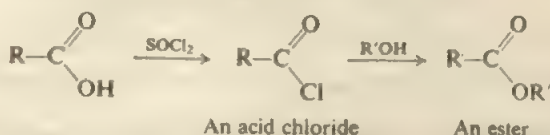
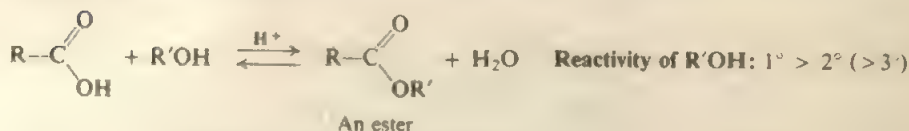




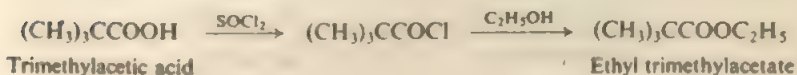
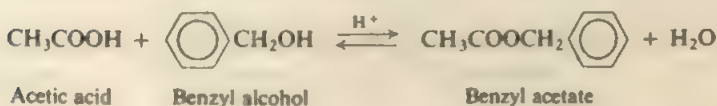
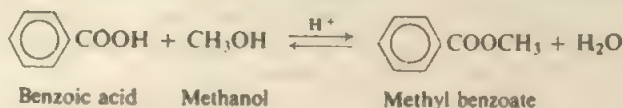
CONT.



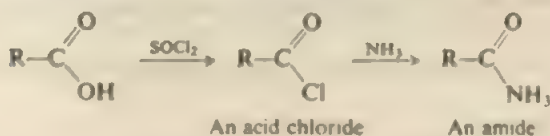
(b) Conversion into esters. Discussed in Secs. 19.16 and 20.15.



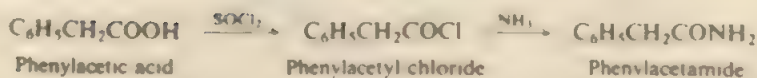
Examples:



(c) Conversion into amides. Discussed in Sec. 19.17.



Example:

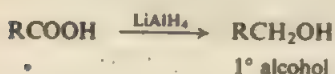


CONT.



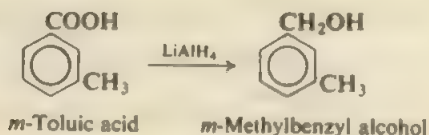
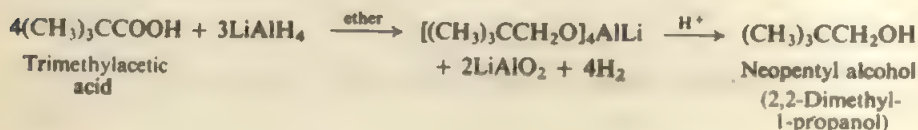
CONT.

## 3. Reduction. Discussed in Sec. 19.18.



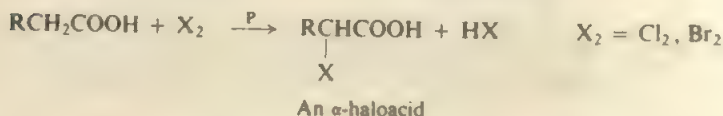
Also reduced via esters (Sec. 20.22)

## Examples:

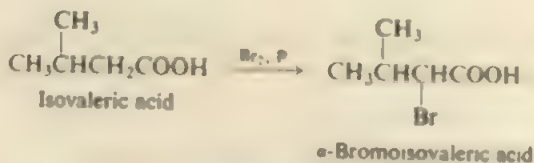
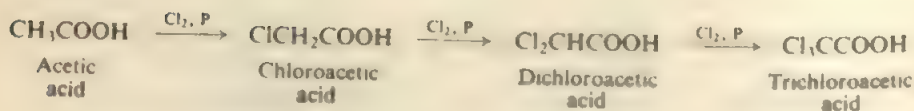


## 4. Substitution in alkyl or aryl group

(a) Alpha-halogenation of aliphatic acids. Hell-Volhard-Zelinsky reaction. Discussed in Sec. 19.19.



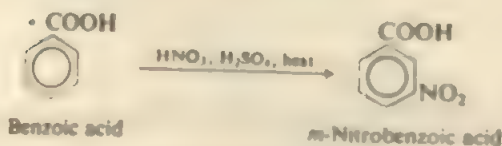
## Examples:



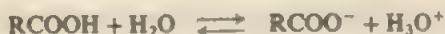
(b) Ring substitution in aromatic acids. Discussed in Secs. 15.5 and 15.15

-COOH: deactivates, and directs *meta* in electrophilic substitution.

## Example:



The most characteristic property of the carboxylic acids is the one that gives them their name: **acidity**. Their tendency to give up a hydrogen ion is such that in aqueous solution a measurable equilibrium exists between acid and ions; they are thus much more acidic than any other class of organic compounds we have studied so far.



The OH of an acid can be replaced by a number of groups—Cl, OR', NH<sub>2</sub>—to yield compounds known as *acid chlorides*, *esters*, and *amides*. These compounds are called **functional derivatives** of acids; they all contain the **acyl group**:

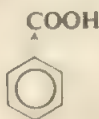


The functional derivatives are all readily reconverted into the acid by simple hydrolysis, and are often converted one into another.

One of the few reducing agents capable of reducing an acid directly to an alcohol is *lithium aluminum hydride*, LiAlH<sub>4</sub>.

The hydrocarbon portion of an aliphatic acid can undergo the free-radical halogenation characteristic of alkanes, but because of the random nature of the substitution it is seldom used. The presence of a small amount of phosphorus, however, causes halogenation (by an ionic mechanism) to take place *exclusively at the alpha position*. This reaction is known as the **Hell-Volhard-Zelinsky reaction**, and it is of great value in synthesis.

An aromatic ring bearing a carboxyl group undergoes the aromatic electrophilic substitution reactions expected of a ring carrying a deactivating, *meta*-directing group. Deactivation is so strong that the Friedel-Crafts reaction does not take place. We have already accounted for this effect of the —COOH group on the basis of its strong electron-withdrawing tendencies (Sec. 15.16).



—COOH *withdraws electrons:*  
*deactivates, directs meta in*  
*electrophilic substitution*

Decarboxylation—elimination of the —COOH group as CO<sub>2</sub>—is of limited importance for aromatic acids, and highly important for certain substituted aliphatic acids: malonic acids (Sec. 26.2) and  $\beta$ -keto acids (Sec. 26.3). It is worthless for most simple aliphatic acids, yielding a complicated mixture of hydrocarbons.

## 19.10 Ionization of carboxylic acids. Acidity constant

In aqueous solution a carboxylic acid exists in equilibrium with the carboxylate anion and the hydrogen ion (actually, of course, the hydronium ion, H<sub>3</sub>O<sup>+</sup>).



As for any equilibrium, the concentrations of the components are related by the expression

$$K_a = \frac{[\text{RCOO}^-][\text{H}_3\text{O}^+]}{[\text{RCOOH}]}$$

(Since the concentration of water, the solvent, remains essentially constant, this term is usually omitted.) The equilibrium constant is called here the **acidity constant**,  $K_a$  (*a* for acidity).

Every carboxylic acid has its characteristic  $K_a$ , which indicates how strong an acid it is. Since the acidity constant is the ratio of ionized to un-ionized material, the larger the  $K_a$  the greater the extent of the ionization (under a given set of conditions) and the stronger the acid. We use the  $K_a$ 's, then, to compare in an exact way the strengths of different acids.

We see in Table 19.2 (p. 796) that unsubstituted aliphatic and aromatic acids have  $K_a$ 's of about  $10^{-4}$  to  $10^{-5}$  (0.0001 to 0.00001). This means that they are weakly acidic, with only a slight tendency to release protons.

By the same token, carboxylate anions are moderately basic, with an appreciable tendency to combine with protons. They react with water to increase the concentration of hydroxide ions, a reaction often referred to as *hydrolysis*. As a



result aqueous solutions of carboxylate salts are slightly alkaline. (The basicity of an aqueous solution of a carboxylate salt is due chiefly, of course, to the carboxylate anions, not to the comparatively few hydroxide ions they happen to generate.)

We may now expand the series of relative acidities and basicities:

**Relative acidities:**  $\text{RCOOH} > \text{HOH} > \text{ROH} > \text{HC}\equiv\text{CH} > \text{NH}_3 > \text{RH}$

**Relative basicities:**  $\text{RCOO}^- < \text{HO}^- < \text{RO}^- < \text{HC}\equiv\text{C}^- < \text{NH}_2^- < \text{R}^-$

Certain substituted acids are much stronger or weaker than a typical acid like  $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$ . We shall see that the acid-strengthening or acid-weakening effect of a substituent can be accounted for in a reasonable way, however, we must first learn a little more about equilibrium in general.

## 19.11 Equilibrium

So far we have dealt very little with the problem of equilibrium. Under the conditions employed, most of our reactions have been essentially irreversible; that is, they have been one-way reactions. With a few exceptions—1,4-addition, for example (Sec. 9.27)—the products obtained, and their relative yields, have been determined by how fast reactions go and not by how nearly to completion they proceed before equilibrium is reached. Consequently, we have been concerned with the relationship between structure and rate, now we shall turn to the relationship between structure and equilibrium.

Let us consider the reversible reaction between A and B to form C and D. The



yield of C and D does not depend upon how fast A and B react, but rather upon how completely they have reacted when equilibrium is reached.

The concentrations of the various components are related by the familiar expression,

$$K_{eq} = \frac{[C][D]}{[A][B]}$$

in which  $K_{eq}$  is the equilibrium constant. The more nearly a reaction has proceeded to completion when it reaches equilibrium, the larger is  $[C][D]$  compared with  $[A][B]$ , and hence the larger the  $K_{eq}$ . The value of  $K_{eq}$  is therefore a measure of the tendency of the reaction to go to completion.

The value of  $K_{eq}$  is determined by the change in *free energy*,  $G$ , on proceeding from reactants to products (Fig. 19.1). The exact relationship is given by the expression,

$$\Delta G^\circ = -2.303RT \log K_{eq}$$

where  $\Delta G^\circ$  is the *standard free energy change*.

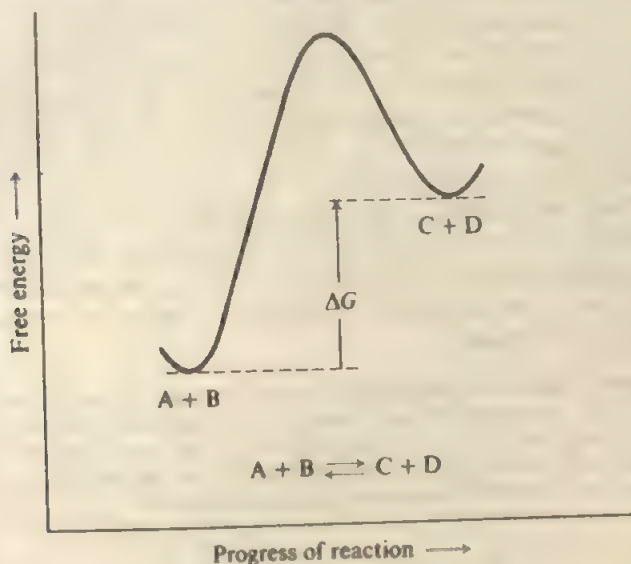


Figure 19.1. Free energy curve for a reversible reaction.

Free energy change is related to our familiar quantity  $\Delta H$  (precisely  $\Delta H^\circ$ , which is only slightly different) by the expression,

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H - T\Delta S^\circ$$

where  $\Delta S^\circ$  is the *standard entropy change*. Entropy corresponds, roughly, to the *randomness* of the system. To the extent that  $T\Delta S^\circ$  contributes to  $\Delta G^\circ$ , equilibrium tends to shift toward the side in which fewer restrictions are placed on the positions of atoms and molecules. ("Die Energie der Welt ist constant. Die Entropie der Welt strebt einem Maximum zu." *Clausius*, 1865.)

Under the same experimental conditions two reversible reactions have  $K_{eq}$ 's of different sizes because of a difference in  $\Delta G^\circ$ . In attempting to understand the effect of structure on position of equilibrium, we shall estimate differences in relative stabilities of reactants and products. Now, what we estimate in this way are not differences in free energy change but differences in potential energy change.



It turns out that very often these differences are *proportional* to differences in  $\Delta G^\circ$ . So long as we compare closely related compounds, the predictions we make by this approach are generally good ones.

These predictions are good ones despite the fact that the free energy changes on which they depend are made up to varying degrees of  $\Delta H$  and  $\Delta S^\circ$ . For example, *p*-nitrobenzoic acid is a stronger acid than benzoic acid. We attribute this (Sec. 19.14) to stabilization of the *p*-nitrobenzoate anion (relative to the benzoate anion) through dispersal of charge by the electron-withdrawing nitro group. Yet, in this case, the greater acidity is due about as much to a more favorable  $\Delta S^\circ$  as to a more favorable  $\Delta H$ . How can our simple "stabilization by dispersal of charge" account for an effect that involves the randomness of a system?

Stabilization is involved, but it appears partly in the  $\Delta S^\circ$  for this reason. Ionization of an acid is possible only because of solvation of the ions produced; the many ion-dipole bonds provide the energy needed for dissociation. But solvation requires that molecules of solvent leave their relatively unordered arrangement to cluster in some ordered fashion about the ions. This is good for the  $\Delta H$  but bad for the  $\Delta S^\circ$ . Now, because of its greater intrinsic stability, the *p*-nitrobenzoate anion does not need as many solvent molecules to help stabilize it as the benzoate anion does. The  $\Delta S^\circ$  is thus more favorable. We can visualize the *p*-nitrobenzoate ion accepting only as many solvent molecules as it has to, and stopping when the gain in stability (decrease in enthalpy) is no longer worth the cost in entropy.

(In the same way, it has been found that very often a more polar solvent speeds up a reaction—as, for example, an  $S_N1$  reaction of alkyl halides (Sec. 6.27)—not so much by lowering  $E_{act}$  as by bringing about a more favorable entropy of activation. A more polar solvent is already rather ordered, and its clustering about the ionizing molecule amounts to very little loss of randomness—indeed, it may even amount to an increase in randomness.)

By the organic chemist's approach we can make *very* good predictions indeed. We can not only account for, say, the relative acidities of a set of acids, but we can correlate these acidities *quantitatively* with the relative acidities of another set of acids, or even with the relative rates of a set of reactions. These relationships are summarized in the Hammett equation (named for Louis P. Hammett of Columbia University).

$$\log \frac{K}{K_0} = \rho\sigma \quad \text{or} \quad \log \frac{k}{k_0} = \rho\sigma$$

where  $K$  or  $k$  refers to the reaction of a *m*- or *p*-substituted phenyl compound (say, ionization of a substituted benzoic acid) and  $K_0$  or  $k_0$  refers to the same reaction of the unsubstituted compound (say, ionization of benzoic acid)

The *substituent constant* ( $\sigma$ , *sigma*) is a number (+ or -) indicating the relative electron-withdrawing or electron-releasing effect of a particular substituent. The *reaction constant* ( $\rho$ , *rho*) is a number (+ or -) indicating the relative need of a particular reaction for electron withdrawal or electron release.

A vast amount of research has shown that the Hammett relationship holds for *hundreds* of sets of reactions (ionization of 40 odd *p*-substituted benzoic acids, for example, is *one* set). By use of just two tables—one of  $\sigma$  constants and one of  $\rho$  constants—we can calculate the relative  $K_a$ 's or relative rates for thousands of individual reactions. For example, from the  $\rho$  value for *m*-NO<sub>2</sub> (+0.710) and the  $\rho$  value for ionization of benzoic acids in water at 25° (+1.000), we can calculate that  $K_a$  for *m*-nitrobenzoic acid is 5.13 times as big as the  $K_a$  for benzoic acid. Using the same  $\sigma$  value, and the  $\rho$  value for acid catalyzed hydrolysis of benzamides in 60% ethanol at 80° (-0.200), we can calculate that *m*-nitrobenzamide will be hydrolyzed only 0.615 times as fast as benzamide.

The Hammett relationship is called a *linear free energy relationship* since it is based on and reveals the fact that a linear relationship exists between free energy change and the

effect exerted by a substituent. Other linear free energy relationships are known, which take into account steric as well as electronic effects, and which apply to *ortho* substituted phenyl compounds as well as *meta* and *para*, and to aliphatic as well as aromatic compounds. Together they make up what is perhaps the greatest accomplishment of physical-organic chemistry.

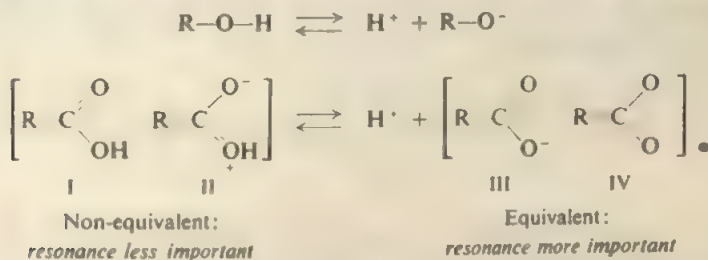
In dealing with rates, we compare the stability of the reactants with the stability of the transition state. In dealing with equilibria, we shall compare the stability of the reactants with the stability of the products. For closely related reactions, we are justified in assuming that the more stable the products relative to the reactants, the further reaction proceeds toward completion.

## 19.12 Acidity of carboxylic acids

Let us see how the acidity of carboxylic acids is related to structure. In doing this we shall assume that acidity is determined chiefly by the difference in stability between the acid and its anion.

First, and most important, there is the fact that carboxylic acids are acids at all. How can we account for the fact that the —OH of a carboxylic acid tends to release a hydrogen ion so much more readily than the —OH of, say, an alcohol? Let us examine the structures of the reactants and products in these two cases.

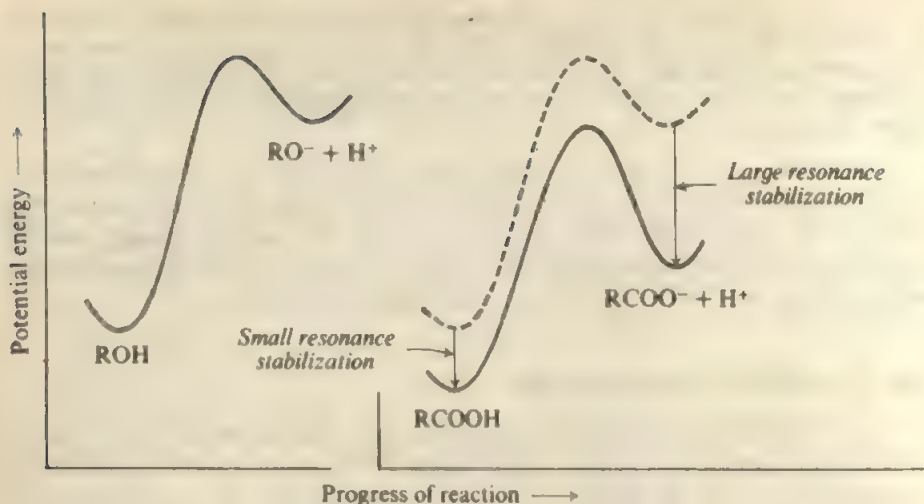
We see that the alcohol and alkoxide ion are each represented satisfactorily by a single structure. However, we can draw two reasonable structures (I and II) for the carboxylic acid and two reasonable structures (III and IV) for the carboxylate anion. Both acid and anion are resonance hybrids. But is resonance equally



important in the two cases? By the principles of Sec. 9.10 we know that resonance is much more important between the exactly equivalent structures III and IV than between the non-equivalent structures I and II. As a result, although both acid and anion are stabilized by resonance, stabilization is far greater for the anion than for the acid (see Fig. 19.2 on the following page). Equilibrium is shifted in the direction of increased ionization, and  $K_a$  is increased.

Strictly speaking, resonance is less important for the acid because the contributing structures are of *different stability*, whereas the equivalent structures for the ion must necessarily be of *equal stability*. In structure II two atoms of similar electronegativity carry opposite charges; since energy must be supplied to separate opposite charges, II should contain more energy and hence be less stable than I. Consideration of *separation of charge* is one of the rules of thumb (Sec. 9.10) that can be used to estimate relative stability and hence relative importance of a contributing structure.

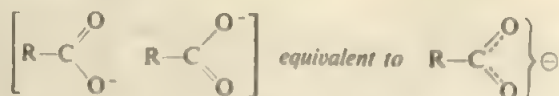
The acidity of a carboxylic acid is thus due to the powerful resonance stabilization of its anion. *This stabilization and the resulting acidity are possible only because of the presence of the carbonyl group.*



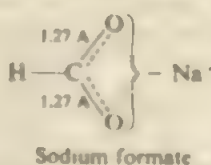
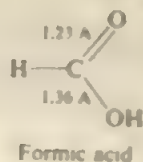
**Figure 19.2.** Molecular structure and position of equilibrium. Carboxylic acid yields resonance-stabilized anion, is stronger acid than alcohol. (Plots aligned with each other for easy comparison.)

### 19.13 Structure of carboxylate ions

According to the resonance theory, then, a carboxylate ion is a hybrid of two structures which, being of equal stability, contribute equally. Carbon is joined to each oxygen by a "one-and-one-half" bond. The negative charge is evenly distributed over both oxygen atoms.



That the anion is indeed a resonance hybrid is supported by the evidence of bond length. Formic acid, for example, contains a carbon-oxygen double bond and a carbon-oxygen single bond; we would expect these bonds to have different lengths. Sodium formate, on the other hand, if it is a resonance hybrid, ought to contain two equivalent carbon-oxygen bonds, we would expect these to have the same length, intermediate between double and single bonds. X-ray and electron diffraction show that these expectations are correct. Formic acid contains one carbon-oxygen bond of 1.36 Å (single bond) and another of 1.23 Å (double bond), sodium formate contains two equal carbon-oxygen bonds, each 1.27 Å long.

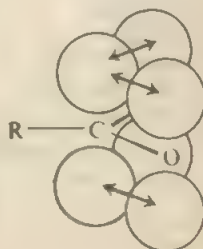


**Problem 19.5** How do you account for the fact that the three carbon-oxygen bonds in  $\text{CaCO}_3$  have the same length, and that this length (1.31 Å) is greater than that found in sodium formate?



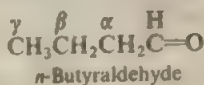
What does this resonance mean in terms of orbitals? Carboxyl carbon is joined to the three other atoms by  $\sigma$  bonds (Fig. 19.3); since these bonds utilize  $sp^2$  orbitals (Sec. 7.2), they lie in a plane and are  $120^\circ$  apart. The remaining  $p$  orbital of the carbon overlaps equally well  $p$  orbitals from *both* of the oxygens, to form hybrid bonds (compare benzene, Sec. 14.8). In this way the electrons are bound not just to

**Figure 19.3.** Carboxylate ion. Overlap of  $p$  orbitals in both directions: delocalization of  $\pi$  electrons, and dispersal of charge



one or two nuclei but to *three* nuclei (one carbon and two oxygens); they are therefore held more tightly, the bonds are stronger, and the anion is more stable. This participation of electrons in more than one bond, this smearing-out or delocalization of the electron cloud, is what is meant by representing the anion as a resonance hybrid of two structures.

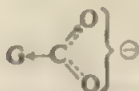
**Problem 19.6** How do you account for the fact that the  $\alpha$ -hydrogens of an aldehyde (say, *n*-butyraldehyde) are much more acidic than any other hydrogens in the molecule? (Check your answer in Sec. 21.1.)



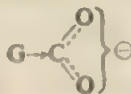
## 19.14 Effect of substituents on acidity

Next, let us see how changes in the structure of the group bearing the  $-\text{COOH}$  affect the acidity. Any factor that stabilizes the anion more than it stabilizes the acid should increase the acidity; any factor that makes the anion less stable should decrease acidity. From what we have learned about carbocations, we know what we might reasonably expect. Electron-withdrawing substituents should disperse the negative charge, stabilize the anion, and thus increase acidity. Electron-releasing substituents should intensify the negative charge, destabilize the anion, and thus decrease acidity.

### Acid Strength



G withdraws electrons: stabilizes anion,  
strengthens acid



G releases electrons: destabilizes anion,  
weakens acid

The  $K_a$ 's listed in Table 19.2 are in agreement with this prediction.



Table 19.2. ACIDITY CONSTANTS OF CARBOXYLIC ACIDS

$K_a$			$K_a$		
HCOOH	$17.7 \times 10^{-5}$		CH <sub>3</sub> CHClCH <sub>2</sub> COOH	$8.9 \times 10^{-5}$	
CH <sub>3</sub> COOH	1.75	"	ClCH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> COOH	2.96	"
ClCH <sub>2</sub> COOH	136	"	FCH <sub>2</sub> COOH	260	"
Cl <sub>2</sub> CHCOOH	5530	"	BrCH <sub>2</sub> COOH	125	"
Cl <sub>3</sub> CCOOH	23200	"	ICH <sub>2</sub> COOH	67	"
CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> COOH	1.52	"	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> COOH	4.9	"
CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> CHClCOOH	139	"	<i>p</i> -O <sub>2</sub> NC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> COOH	14.1	"

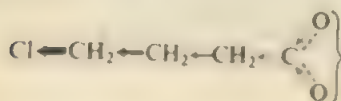
## ACIDITY CONSTANTS OF SUBSTITUTED BENZOIC ACIDS

$K_a$ of benzoic acid = $6.3 \times 10^{-5}$					
$K_a$		$K_a$		$K_a$	
<i>p</i> -NO <sub>2</sub>	$36 \times 10^{-5}$	<i>m</i> -NO <sub>2</sub>	$32 \times 10^{-5}$	<i>o</i> -NO <sub>2</sub>	$670 \times 10^{-5}$
<i>p</i> -Cl	10.3	<i>m</i> -Cl	15.1	<i>o</i> -Cl	120
<i>p</i> -CH <sub>3</sub>	4.2	<i>m</i> -CH <sub>3</sub>	5.4	<i>o</i> -CH <sub>3</sub>	12.4
<i>p</i> -OCH <sub>3</sub>	3.3	<i>m</i> -OCH <sub>3</sub>	8.2	<i>o</i> -OCH <sub>3</sub>	8.2
<i>p</i> -OH	2.6	<i>m</i> -OH	8.3	<i>o</i> -OH	105
<i>p</i> -NH <sub>2</sub>	1.4	<i>m</i> -NH <sub>2</sub>	1.9	<i>o</i> -NH <sub>2</sub>	1.6

Looking first at the aliphatic acids, we see that the electron-withdrawing halogens strengthen acids: chloroacetic acid is 100 times as strong as acetic acid, dichloroacetic acid is still stronger, and trichloroacetic acid is more than 10,000 times as strong as the unsubstituted acid. The other halogens exert similar effects.

**Problem 19.7** (a) What do the  $K_a$ 's of the monohaloacetic acids tell us about the relative strengths of the inductive effects of the different halogens? (b) On the basis of Table 19.2, what kind of inductive effect does the phenyl group,  $-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , appear to have?

$\alpha$ -Chlorobutyric acid is about as strong as chloroacetic acid. As the chlorine is moved away from the  $-\text{COOH}$ , however, its effect rapidly dwindles:  $\beta$ -chlorobutyric acid is only six times as strong as butyric acid, and  $\gamma$ -chlorobutyric acid is only twice as strong. It is typical of inductive effects that they decrease rapidly with distance, and are seldom important when acting through more than four atoms.



Inductive effect: decreases with distance

The aromatic acids are similarly affected by substituents  $-\text{CH}_3$ ,  $-\text{OH}$ , and  $\text{NH}_2$  make benzoic acid weaker, and  $\text{Cl}$  and  $\text{NO}_2$  make benzoic acid stronger. We recognize the acid-weakening groups as the ones that activate the ring toward electrophilic substitution (and deactivate toward nucleophilic substitution). The acid-strengthening groups are the ones that deactivate toward electrophilic substitution (and activate toward nucleophilic substitution). Furthermore, the groups that have the largest effects on reactivity—whether activating or deactivating—have the largest effects on acidity.

The  $\text{OH}$  and  $\text{OCH}_3$  groups display both kinds of effect we have attributed to them (Sec. 15.18) from the *meta* position, an electron-withdrawing acid-strengthening inductive effect; and from the *para* position, an electron-releasing acid-weakening resonance effect (which at this position outweighs the inductive effect). Compare the two effects exerted by halogen (Sec. 15.19).

*ortho*-Substituted acids do not fit into the pattern set by their *meta* and *para* isomers, and by aliphatic acids. Nearly all *ortho* substituents exert an effect of the same kind—acid-strengthening—whether they are electron-withdrawing or electron-releasing, and the effect is unusually large. (Compare, for example, the effects of *o*- $\text{NO}_2$  and *o*- $\text{CH}_3$ , of *o*- $\text{NO}_2$  and *m*- or *p*- $\text{NO}_2$ .) This *ortho* effect undoubtedly has to do with the *nearness* of the groups involved, but is more than just steric hindrance arising from their bulk.

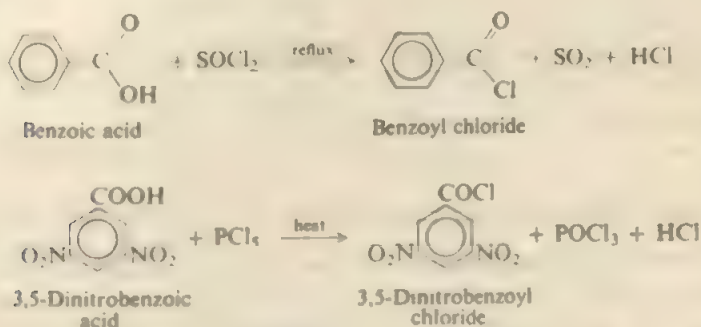
Thus we see that the same concepts—inductive effect and resonance—that we found so useful in dealing with rates of reaction are also useful in dealing with equilibria. By using these concepts to estimate the stabilities of anions, we are able to predict the relative strengths of acids; in this way we can account not only for the effect of substituents on the acid strength of carboxylic acids but also for the very fact that the compounds are acids.

**Problem 19.8** There is evidence that certain groups like *p*-methoxy weaken the acidity of benzoic acids not so much by destabilizing the anion as by stabilizing the acid. Draw structures to show the kind of resonance that might be involved. Why would you expect such resonance to be more important for the acid than for the anion?

## 19.15 Conversion into acid chlorides

A carboxylic acid is perhaps more often converted into the acid chloride than into any other of its functional derivatives. From the highly reactive acid chloride there can then be obtained many other kinds of compounds, including esters and amides (Sec. 20.8).

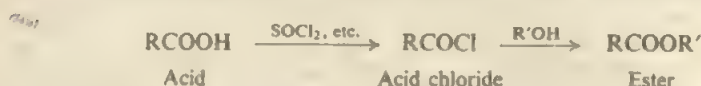
An acid chloride is prepared by substitution of  $\text{Cl}$  for the  $\text{OH}$  of a carboxylic acid. Three reagents are commonly used for this purpose: *thionyl chloride*,  $\text{SOCl}_2$ ; *phosphorus trichloride*,  $\text{PCl}_3$ , and *phosphorus pentachloride*,  $\text{PCl}_5$ . (Of what inorganic acids might we consider these reagents to be the acid chlorides?) For example:



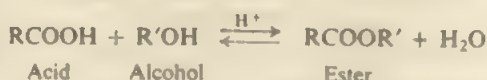
Thionyl chloride is particularly convenient, since the products formed besides the acid chloride are gases and thus easily separated from the acid chloride; any excess of the low-boiling thionyl chloride (79°) is easily removed by distillation.

## 19.16 Conversion into esters

Acids are frequently converted into their esters via the acid chlorides:



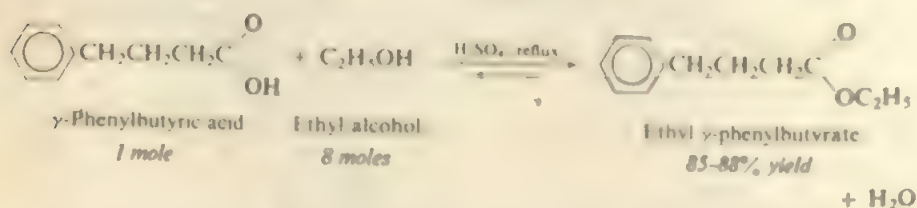
A carboxylic acid is converted directly into an ester when heated with an alcohol in the presence of a little mineral acid, usually concentrated sulfuric acid or dry hydrogen chloride. This reaction is reversible, and generally reaches equilibrium when there are appreciable quantities of both reactants and products present.



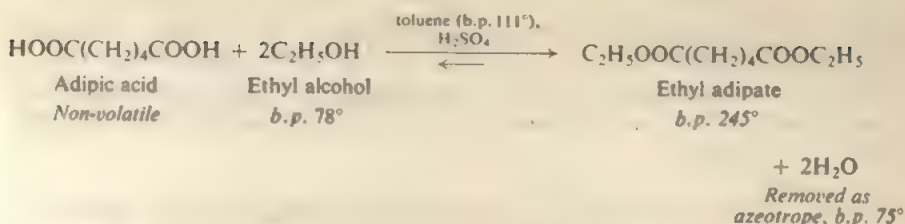
For example, when we allow one mole of acetic acid and one mole of ethyl alcohol to react in the presence of a little sulfuric acid until equilibrium is reached (after several hours), we obtain a mixture of about two-thirds mole each of ester and water, and one-third mole each of acid and alcohol. We obtain this same equilibrium mixture, of course, if we start with one mole of ester and one mole of water, again in the presence of sulfuric acid. *The same catalyst, hydrogen ion, that catalyzes the forward reaction, esterification, necessarily catalyzes the reverse reaction, hydrolysis.*

This reversibility is a disadvantage in the preparation of an ester directly from an acid; the preference for the acid chloride route is due to the fact that both steps—preparation of acid chloride from acid, and preparation of ester from acid chloride—are essentially irreversible and go to completion.

Direct esterification, however, has the advantage of being a single-step synthesis; it can often be made useful by application of our knowledge of equilibria. If either the acid or the alcohol is cheap and readily available, it can be used in large excess to shift the equilibrium toward the products and thus to increase the yield of ester. For example, it is worthwhile to use eight moles of cheap ethyl alcohol to convert one mole of valuable  $\gamma$ -phenylbutyric acid more completely into the ester:

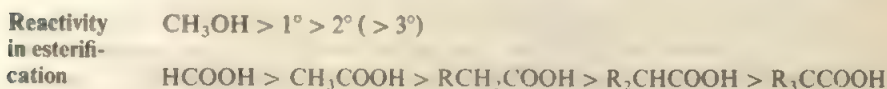


Sometimes the equilibrium is shifted by removing one of the products. An elegant way of doing this is illustrated by the preparation of ethyl adipate. The dicarboxylic acid adipic acid, an excess of ethyl alcohol, and toluene are heated with a little sulfuric acid under a distillation column. The lowest boiling component (b.p. 75°) of the reaction mixture is an azeotrope of water, ethyl alcohol, and toluene (compare Sec. 10.5); consequently, as fast as water is formed it is removed as the azeotrope by distillation. In this way a 95–97% yield of ester is obtained.



The equilibrium is particularly unfavorable when phenols ( $\text{ArOH}$ ) are used instead of alcohols; yet, if water is removed during the reaction, phenolic esters ( $\text{RCOOAr}$ ) are obtained in high yield.

The presence of bulky groups near the site of reaction, whether in the alcohol or in the acid, slows down esterification (as well as its reverse, hydrolysis). This



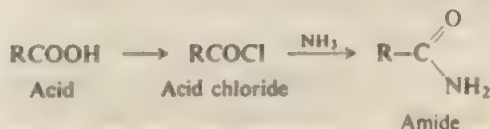
*steric hindrance* can be so marked that special methods are required to prepare esters of tertiary alcohols or esters of acids like 2,4,6-trimethylbenzoic acid (*mesitoic acid*).

The mechanism of esterification is necessarily the exact reverse of the mechanism of hydrolysis of esters. We shall discuss both mechanisms when we take up the chemistry of esters (Sec. 20.18) after we have learned a little more about the carbonyl group.

**Problem 19.9** (a) In the formation of an acid chloride, which bond of a carboxylic acid is broken,  $\text{C}-\text{OH}$  or  $\text{CO}-\text{H}$ ? (b) When labeled methanol,  $\text{CH}_3^{18}\text{OH}$ , was allowed to react with ordinary benzoic acid, the methyl benzoate produced was found to be enriched in  $^{18}\text{O}$ , whereas the water formed contained only ordinary oxygen. In this esterification, which bond of the carboxylic acid is broken,  $\text{C}-\text{OH}$  or  $\text{CO}-\text{H}$ ? Which bond of the alcohol?

## 19.17 Conversion into amides

Amides are compounds in which the  $-\text{OH}$  of the carboxylic acid has been



replaced by  $-\text{NH}_2$ . These are generally prepared by reaction of ammonia with acid chlorides.

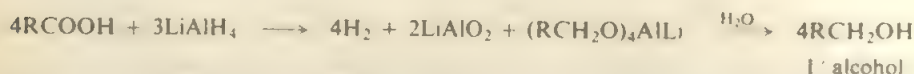
## 19.18 Reduction of acids to alcohols

Conversion of alcohols into acids (Sec. 19.6) is important because, in general, alcohols are more available than acids. This is not always true, however; long straight-chain acids from fats are more available than are the corresponding



alcohols, and here the reverse process becomes important: reduction of acids to alcohols.

Lithium aluminum hydride,  $\text{LiAlH}_4$ , is one of the few reagents that can reduce an acid to an alcohol; the initial product is an alkoxide from which the alcohol is liberated by hydrolysis:



Because of the excellent yields it gives,  $\text{LiAlH}_4$  is widely used in the laboratory for the reduction of not only acids but many other classes of compounds. Since it is somewhat expensive, it can be used in industry only for the reduction of small amounts of valuable raw materials, as in the synthesis of certain drugs and hormones.

As an alternative to direct reduction, acids are often converted into alcohols by a two-step process: esterification, and reduction of the ester. Esters can be reduced in a number of ways (Sec. 20.22) that are adaptable to both laboratory and industry.

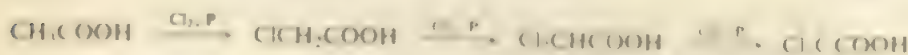
We have seen (Sec. 19.5) that in the carboxylic acids obtained from fats we have available long straight-chain units for use in organic synthesis. Reduction of these acids to alcohols (either directly or as esters) is a fundamental step in the utilization of these raw materials, since from the alcohols, as we know, a host of other compounds can be prepared (Sec. 11.13). Although only acids of even carbon number are available, it is possible, of course, to increase the chain length and thus prepare compounds of odd carbon number. (For an alternative source of long, straight-chain, primary alcohols, see Sec. 9.36.)

**Problem 19.10.** Outline the synthesis from lauric acid ( $n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{COOH}$ , dodecanoic acid) of the following compounds:

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| (a) 1-bromododecane                          | (g) methyl <i>n</i> -decyl ketone |
| (b) tridecanoic acid ( $\text{C}_{13}$ acid) | (h) 2-dodecanol                   |
| (c) 1-tetradecanol                           | (i) undecanoic acid               |
| (d) 1-dodecene                               | (j) 2-tetradecanol                |
| (e) dodecane                                 | (k) 2-methyl-2-tetradecanol       |
| (f) 1-dodecyne                               |                                   |

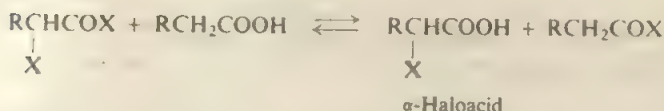
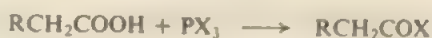
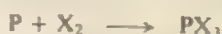
## 19.19 Halogenation of aliphatic acids. Substituted acids

In the presence of a small amount of phosphorus, aliphatic carboxylic acids react smoothly with chlorine or bromine to yield a compound in which  $\alpha$ -hydrogen has been replaced by halogen. This is the **Hell-Volhard-Zelinsky reaction**. Because of its specificity—*only alpha halogenation*—and the readiness with which it takes place, it is of considerable importance in synthesis.

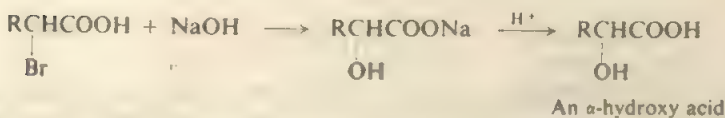
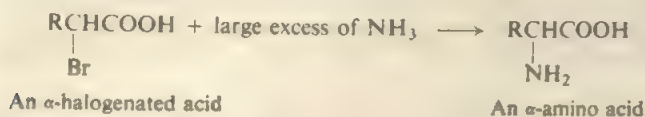


no further substitution

The function of the phosphorus is ultimately to convert a little of the acid into acid halide. In this form (for reasons we cannot go into here) each molecule of acid sooner or later undergoes  $\alpha$ -halogenation.



The halogen of these halogenated acids undergoes *nucleophilic displacement* and *elimination* much as it does in the simpler alkyl halides (Secs. 6.10 and 7.12). Halogenation is therefore the first step in the conversion of a carboxylic acid into many important substituted carboxylic acids:



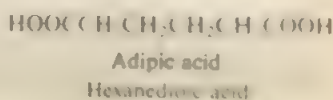
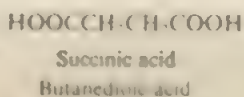
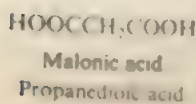
These new substituents can, in turn, undergo *their* characteristic reactions.

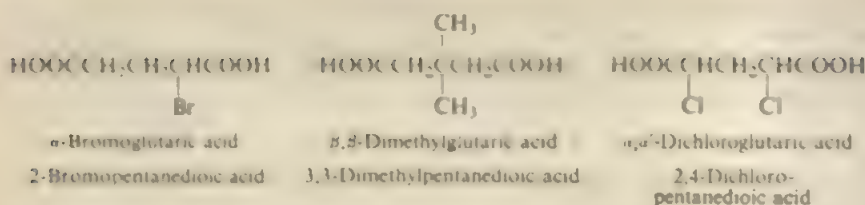
**Problem 19.11** Predict the product of each of the following reactions:

- $CH_3CH_2COOH + H_2, Ni$
- $trans\text{-}CH_3CH=CHCOOH + Br_2, CCl_4$
- $C_6H_5CH(OH)CH_2COOH + H^+, \text{heat} \longrightarrow C_6H_5O_2$
- $o\text{-}HOOCCH_2CH_2OH + H^+, \text{heat} \longrightarrow C_6H_6O_2$

## 19.20 Dicarboxylic acids

If the substituent is a second carboxyl group, we have a *dicarboxylic acid*. For example:



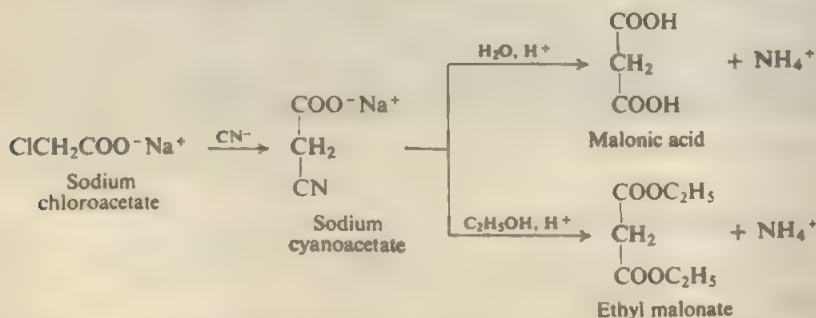


We have already encountered the benzenedicarboxylic acids, the *phthalic acids* (Sec. 16.11).

Table 19.3 DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS

Name	Formula	M.p., °C	Solub., g/100 g H <sub>2</sub> O at 20°	$K_1$	$K_2$
Oxalic	HOOC—COOH	189	9	$5400 \times 10^{-5}$	$5.2 \times 10^{-5}$
Malonic	HOOCCH <sub>2</sub> COOH	136	74	140	0.20
Succinic	HOOC(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> COOH	185	6	6.4	0.23
Glutaric	HOOC(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> COOH	98	64	4.5	0.38
Adipic	HOOC(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>4</sub> COOH	151	2	3.7	0.39
Maleic	<i>cis</i> -HOOCCH=CHCOOH	130.5	79	1000	0.055
Fumaric	<i>trans</i> -HOOCCH=CHCOOH	302	0.7	96	4.1
Phthalic	1,2-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> (COOH) <sub>2</sub>	231	0.7	110	0.4
Isophthalic	1,3-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> (COOH) <sub>2</sub>	348.5	0.01	24	2.5
Terephthalic	1,4-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> (COOH) <sub>2</sub>	300 <i>subl</i>	0.002	29	3.5

Most dicarboxylic acids are prepared by adaptation of methods used to prepare monocarboxylic acids. Where hydrolysis of a nitrile yields a monocarboxylic acid, hydrolysis of a dinitrile or a cyanocarboxylic acid yields a dicarboxylic acid; where oxidation of a methylbenzene yields a benzoic acid, oxidation of a dimethylbenzene yields a phthalic acid. For example:



**Problem 19.12** Why is chloroacetic acid converted into its salt before treatment with cyanide in the above preparation?

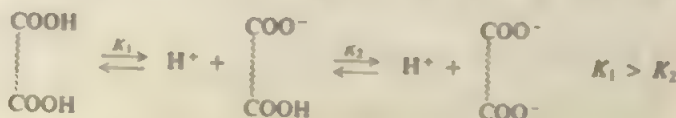
**Problem 19.13** Give a likely structure for the product of each of the following reactions: (a) oxalic acid + ethylene glycol, (b) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (c) terephthalic acid + ethylene glycol, (d) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (e) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (f) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (g) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (h) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (i) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (j) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (k) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (l) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (m) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (n) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (o) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (p) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (q) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (r) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (s) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (t) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (u) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (v) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (w) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (x) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (y) succinic acid + ethylene glycol, (z) succinic acid + ethylene glycol.

In general, dicarboxylic acids show the same chemical behavior as monocarboxylic acids. It is possible to prepare compounds in which only one of the carboxyl groups has been converted into a derivative; it is possible to prepare compounds in which the two carboxyl groups have been converted into different derivatives.

**Problem 19.14** Predict the products of the following reactions:

- acetic acid (146 g) + 95% ethanol (46 g) + benzene + conc.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , 100°
- acetic acid (146 g) + 95% ethanol (50 g) + benzene + conc.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , 100°
- succinic acid +  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$
- pentanedioic acid + 1 mol  $\text{Br}_2$ , P
- terephthalic acid + excess  $\text{SOX}$
- malic acid (or butenedioic acid) +  $\text{Br}_2$ ,  $\text{CCl}_4$

As with other acids containing more than one ionizable hydrogen ( $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$ ,  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ , etc.), ionization of the second carboxyl group occurs less readily than ionization of the first (compare  $K_1$ 's with  $K_2$ 's in Table 19.3). More energy is



required to separate a positive hydrogen ion from the doubly charged anion than from the singly charged anion.

**Problem 19.15** Compare the acidity (first ionization) of oxalic acid with that of formic acid, of malonic acid with that of acetic acid. How do you account for these differences?

**Problem 19.16** Arrange oxalic, malonic, succinic, and glutaric acids in order of acidity (first ionization). How do you account for this order?

Certain reactions of dicarboxylic acids, while those typical of any carboxylic acid, lead to unusual results simply because there *are* two carboxyl groups in each molecule (Secs. 20.24 and 23.8). In addition, some dicarboxylic acids undergo certain special reactions that are possible only because the two carboxyl groups are located in a particular way with respect to each other (Sec. 26.4).

**Problem 19.17** Give a likely structure for the product of each of the following reactions:

- oxalic acid + ethylene glycol  $\longrightarrow \text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_4$
- succinic acid + heat  $\longrightarrow \text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_3$
- terephthalic acid + ethylene glycol  $\longrightarrow (\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_8\text{O}_4)_n$ , the polymer Dacron



## 19.21 Analysis of carboxylic acids. Neutralization equivalent

Carboxylic acids are recognized through their acidity. They dissolve in aqueous sodium hydroxide and in aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The reaction with bicarbonate releases bubbles of carbon dioxide (see Sec. 19.4).

(Phenols, Sec. 24.9, are more acidic than water, but — with certain exceptions — are considerably weaker than carboxylic acids; they dissolve in aqueous sodium hydroxide, but *not* in aqueous sodium bicarbonate. Sulfonic acids are even more acidic than carboxylic acids, but they contain sulfur, which can be detected by elemental analysis.)

Once characterized as a carboxylic acid, an unknown is identified as a particular acid on the usual basis of its physical properties and the physical properties of derivatives. The derivatives commonly used are *amides* (Secs. 20.11 and 23.7) and *esters* (Sec. 20.15).

**Problem 19.18** Expand the table you made in Problem 18.21, p. 762, to include carboxylic acids.

Particularly useful both in identification of previously studied acids and in proof of structure of new ones is the **neutralization equivalent**: *the equivalent weight of the acid as determined by titration with standard base*. A weighed sample of the acid is dissolved in water or aqueous alcohol, and the volume of standard base needed to neutralize the solution is measured. For example, a 0.224-g sample of an unknown acid (m.p. 139–140°) required 13.6 mL of 0.104 N sodium hydroxide solution for neutralization (to a phenolphthalein end point). Since each 1000 mL of the base contains 0.104 equivalents, and since the number of equivalents of base required equals the number of equivalents of acid present,

$$\frac{13.6}{1000} \times 0.104 \text{ equivalents of acid} = 0.224 \text{ g}$$

and

$$1 \text{ equivalent of acid} = 0.224 \times \frac{1000}{13.6} \times \frac{1}{0.104} = 158 \text{ g}$$

**Problem 19.19** Which of the following compounds might the above acid be (a) *o*-chlorobenzoic acid (m.p. 141°) or (b) 2,6-dichlorobenzoic acid (m.p. 139°)?

**Problem 19.20** A 0.187-g sample of an acid (b.p. 203–205°) required 18.7 mL of 0.0972 N NaOH for neutralization. (a) What is the neutralization equivalent? (b) Which of the following acids might it be: *n*-caproic acid (b.p. 205°), methoxyacetic acid (b.p. 203°), or ethoxyacetic acid (b.p. 206°)?

**Problem 19.21** (a) How many equivalents of base would be neutralized by one mole of phthalic acid? What is the neutralization equivalent of phthalic acid? (b) What is the relation between neutralization equivalent and the number of acidic hydrogens per molecule of acid? (c) What is the neutralization equivalent of 1,3,5-benzenetricarboxylic acid? Of mellitic acid,  $C_6(COOH)_6$ ?

A metal salt of a carboxylic acid is recognized through these facts: (a) it leaves a residue when strongly heated (*ignition test*), (b) it decomposes at a fairly high temperature, instead of melting, and (c) it is converted into a carboxylic acid upon treatment with dilute mineral acid.

**Problem 19.22** The residue left upon ignition of a sodium salt of a carboxylic acid was white, soluble in water, turned moist litmus blue, and reacted with dilute hydrochloric acid with the formation of bubbles. What was its probable chemical composition?

## 19.22 Spectroscopic analysis of carboxylic acids

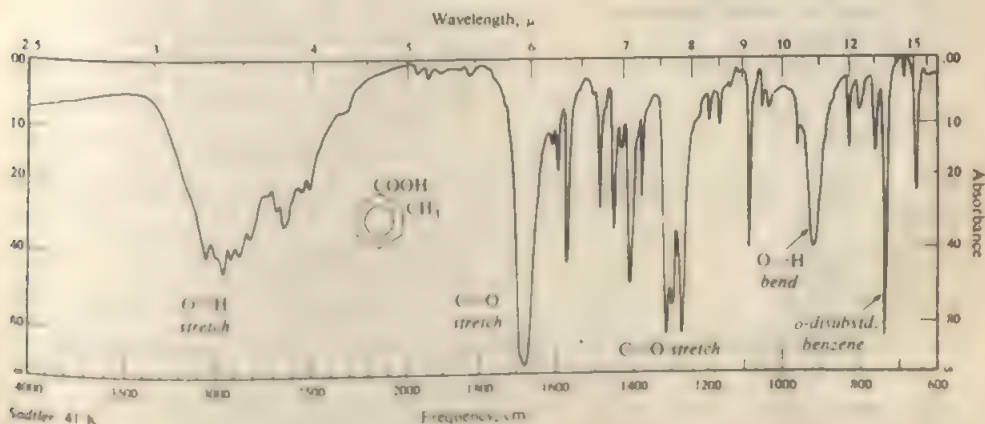
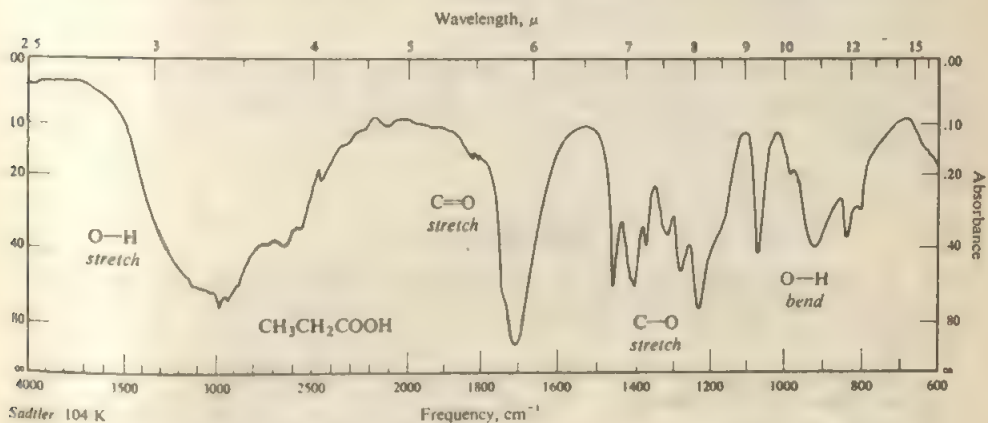
**Infrared.** The carboxyl-group is made up of a carbonyl group ( $\text{C}=\text{O}$ ) and a hydroxyl group ( $\text{OH}$ ), and the infrared spectrum of carboxylic acids reflects both these structural units. For hydrogen-bonded (dimeric) acids,  $\text{O}-\text{H}$  stretching gives a strong, broad band in the  $2500\text{--}3000\text{ cm}^{-1}$  range (see Fig. 19.4, below).

**$\text{O}-\text{H}$  stretching, strong, broad**

$-\text{COOH}$  and enols  $2500\text{--}3000\text{ cm}^{-1}$

$\text{ROH}$  and  $\text{ArOH}$   $3200\text{--}3600\text{ cm}^{-1}$

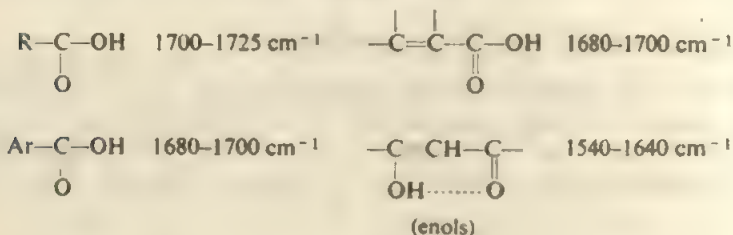
With acids we encounter, for the first time, absorption due to stretching of the carbonyl group. This strong band appears in a region that is usually free of other



**Figure 19.4.** Infrared spectra of (a) propionic acid and (b) *o*-toluic acid.

strong absorption, and by its exact frequency gives much information about structure. For (hydrogen-bonded) acids, the  $\text{C}=\text{O}$  band is at about  $1700\text{ cm}^{-1}$ .

**$\text{C}=\text{O}$  stretching, strong**



Acids also show a  $\text{C}-\text{O}$  stretching band at about  $1250\text{ cm}^{-1}$  (compare alcohols, Sec. 17.6, and ethers, Sec. 17.7), and bands for  $\text{O}-\text{H}$  bending near  $1400\text{ cm}^{-1}$  and  $920\text{ cm}^{-1}$  (*broad*).

Enols, too, show both  $\text{O}-\text{H}$  and  $\text{C}=\text{O}$  absorption; these can be distinguished by the particular frequency of the  $\text{C}=\text{O}$  band. Aldehydes, ketones, and esters show carbonyl absorption, but the  $\text{O}-\text{H}$  band is missing. (For a comparison of certain oxygen compounds, see Table 20.3, p. 847.)

**NMR.** The outstanding feature of the NMR spectrum of a carboxylic acid is the absorption far downfield ( $\delta$  10.5–12) by the proton of  $-\text{COOH}$ . (Compare the absorption by the acid proton of phenols,  $\text{ArOH}$ , in Sec. 24.17.)

## PROBLEMS

1. Give the common names and IUPAC names for the straight-chain saturated carboxylic acids containing the following numbers of carbon atoms: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12, 16, 18.

2. Give the structural formula and, where possible, a second name (by a different system) for each of the following:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(a) isovaleric acid<br/>(b) trimethylacetic acid<br/>(c) <math>\alpha,\beta</math>-dimethylcaproic acid<br/>(d) 2-methyl-4-ethyloctanoic acid<br/>(e) phenylacetic acid<br/>(f) <math>\gamma</math>-phenylbutyric acid<br/>(g) adipic acid<br/>(h) <i>p</i>-toluic acid<br/>(i) phthalic acid</p> | <p>(j) isophthalic acid<br/>(k) terephthalic acid<br/>(l) <i>p</i>-hydroxybenzoic acid<br/>(m) potassium <math>\alpha</math>-methylbutyrate<br/>(n) magnesium 2-chloropropanoate<br/>(o) maleic acid<br/>(p) <math>\alpha,\alpha</math>-dibromosuccinic acid<br/>(q) isobutyronitrile<br/>(r) 2,4-dinitrobenzonitrile</p> |
|--|---|

3. Write equations to show how each of the following compounds could be converted into benzoic acid:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(a) toluene<br/>(b) bromobenzene<br/>(c) benzonitrile</p> | <p>(d) benzyl alcohol<br/>(e) benzotrichloride<br/>(f) acetophenone (<i>Hint</i>: See Sec. 11.14)</p> |
|--|---|

4. Write equations to show how each of the following compounds could be converted into *n*-butyric acid:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) <i>n</i>-butyl alcohol<br/>(b) <i>n</i>-propyl alcohol</p> | <p>(c) <i>n</i>-propyl alcohol (a second way)<br/>(d) methyl <i>n</i>-propyl ketone</p> |
|---|---|

Which of the above methods could be used to prepare trimethylacetic acid?

5. Write equations to show how tetrahydrofuran could be converted into:

- (a) succinic acid                      (b) glutaric acid                      (c) adipic acid

6. Write equations to show the reaction (if any) of benzoic acid with:

- |   |                             |  |
|---|-----------------------------|--|
| (a) KOH   | (g) $\text{LiAlH}_4$        | (m) $\text{Br}_2 + \text{P}$               |
| (b) Al  | (h) hot $\text{KMnO}_4$     | (n) $\text{HNO}_3/\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$   |
| (c) CaO   | (i) $\text{PCl}_5$          | (o) fuming sulfuric acid                   |
| (d) $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$                          | (j) $\text{PCl}_3$          | (p) $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}, \text{AlCl}_3$  |
| (e) $\text{NH}_3(\text{aq})$                          | (k) $\text{SOCl}_2$         | (q) <i>n</i> -propyl alcohol, $\text{H}^+$ |
| (f) $\text{H}_2, \text{Ni}, 20^\circ, 1 \text{ atm.}$ | (l) $\text{Br}_2/\text{Fe}$ |  |

7. Answer Problem 6 for *n*-valeric acid.

8. Write equations to show how isobutyric acid could be converted into each of the following, using any needed reagents:

- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| (a) ethyl isobutyrate   | (d) magnesium isobutyrate |
| (b) isobutyryl chloride | (e) isobutyl alcohol      |
| (c) isobutyramide       |                           |

9. Write equations to show all steps in the conversion of benzoic acid into:

- |                      |                                    |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| (a) sodium benzoate  | (e) <i>n</i> -propyl benzoate      |
| (b) benzoyl chloride | (f) <i>p</i> -tolyl benzoate       |
| (c) benzamide        | (g) <i>m</i> -bromophenyl benzoate |
| (d) benzene          | (h) benzyl alcohol                 |

10. Write equations to show how phenylacetic acid could be converted into each of the following, using any needed reagents.

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| (a) sodium phenylacetate             | (g) $\beta$ -phenylethyl alcohol               |
| (b) ethyl phenylacetate              | (h) $\alpha$ -bromophenylacetic acid           |
| (c) phenylacetyl chloride            | (i) $\alpha$ -aminophenylacetic acid           |
| (d) phenylacetamide                  | (j) $\alpha$ -hydroxyphenylacetic acid         |
| (e) <i>p</i> -bromophenylacetic acid | (k) phenylmalonic acid,                        |
| (f) <i>p</i> -nitrophenylacetic acid | $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}(\text{COOH})_2$ |

11. Complete the following, giving the structures and names of the principal organic products.

- $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOH} + \text{KMnO}_4 + \text{OH}^- + \text{heat}$
- $p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{COOH} + \text{HNO}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$
- succinic acid +  $\text{LiAlH}_4$ , followed by  $\text{H}^+$
- $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COOH} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{OH} + \text{H}^+$
- product (d) +  $\text{HNO}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$
- n*-butyric acid +  $\text{Br}_2, \text{P}$
- cyclo- $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{MgBr} + \text{CO}_2$ , followed by  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$
- product (g) +  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} + \text{H}^+$
- product (g) +  $\text{SOCl}_2 + \text{heat}$
- $m\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{OCH}_3 + \text{KMnO}_4 + \text{OH}^-$
- mesitylene +  $\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7 + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$
- isobutyric acid + isobutyl alcohol +  $\text{H}^+$
- salicylic acid (*o*- $\text{HOC}_6\text{H}_4\text{COOH}$ ) +  $\text{Br}_2, \text{Fe}$
- sodium acetate + *p*-nitrobenzyl bromide
- linolenic acid + excess  $\text{H}_2, \text{Ni}$
- oleic acid +  $\text{KMnO}_4$ , heat
- linoleic acid +  $\text{O}_3$ , then  $\text{H}_2\text{O}, \text{Zn}$
- benzoic acid ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ ) +  $\text{H}_2, \text{Ni}$ , heat, pressure  $\longrightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_2$
- benzoic acid + ethylene glycol +  $\text{H}^+ \longrightarrow \text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_4$
- phthalic acid + ethyl alcohol +  $\text{H}^+ \longrightarrow \text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_4$
- oleic acid +  $\text{Br}_2, \text{CCl}_4$
- product (u) + KOH (alcoholic)
- oleic acid +  $\text{HCO}_2\text{OH}$



12. Outline a possible laboratory synthesis of the following labeled compounds, using  $\text{Ba}^{14}\text{CO}_3$  or  $^{14}\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$  as the source of  $^{14}\text{C}$ .

- (a)  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2^{14}\text{COOH}$  (c)  $\text{CH}_3^{14}\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$   
 (b)  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2^{14}\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$  (d)  $^{14}\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$

13. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following compounds from toluene and any needed aliphatic and inorganic reagents.

- (a) benzoic acid (e) *p*-chlorobenzoic acid  
 (b) phenylacetic acid (f) *p*-bromophenylacetic acid  
 (c) *p*-toluic acid (g)  $\alpha$ -chlorophenylacetic acid  
 (d) *m*-chlorobenzoic acid

14. Outline a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following compounds from benzene, toluene, and alcohols of four carbons or fewer, using any needed inorganic reagents.

- (a) ethyl  $\alpha$ -methylbutyrate (g) *p*-toluamide  
 (b) 3,5-dinitrobenzoyl chloride (h) *n*-hexyl benzoate  
 (c)  $\alpha$ -amino-*p*-bromophenylacetic acid (i) 3-bromo-4-methylbenzoic acid  
 (d)  $\alpha$ -hydroxypropionic acid (j)  $\alpha$ -methylphenylacetic acid  
 (e)  $p\text{-HO}_3\text{SC}_6\text{H}_4\text{COOH}$  (k) 2-bromo-4-nitrobenzoic acid  
 (f) 2-pentenoic acid (l) 1,2,4-benzenetricarboxylic acid

15. Without referring to tables, arrange the compounds of each set in order of acidity:

- (a) butanoic acid, 2-bromobutanoic acid, 3-bromobutanoic acid, 4-bromobutanoic acid  
 (b) benzoic acid, *p*-chlorobenzoic acid, 2,4-dichlorobenzoic acid, 2,4,6-trichlorobenzoic acid  
 (c) benzoic acid, *p*-nitrobenzoic acid, *p*-toluic acid  
 (d)  $\alpha$ -chlorophenylacetic acid, *p*-chlorophenylacetic acid, phenylacetic acid,  $\alpha$ -phenylpropionic acid  
 (e) *p*-nitrobenzoic acid, *p*-nitrophenylacetic acid,  $\beta$ -(*p*-nitrophenyl)propionic acid  
 (f) acetic acid, acetylene, ammonia, ethane, ethanol, sulfuric acid, water  
 (g) acetic acid, malonic acid, succinic acid

16. Arrange the monosodium salts of the acids in Problem 15(f) in order of basicity.

17. The two water-insoluble solids, benzoic acid and *o*-chlorobenzoic acid, can be separated by treatment with an aqueous solution of sodium formate. What reaction takes place? (Hint: Look at the  $K_a$ 's in Table 19.2.)

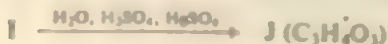
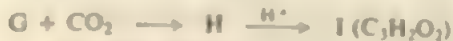
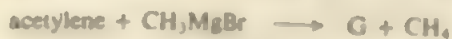
18. Arrange the compounds of each set in order of reactivity in the indicated reaction:

- (a) esterification by benzoic acid: *sec*-butyl alcohol, methanol, *tert*-pentyl alcohol, *n*-propyl alcohol  
 (b) esterification by ethyl alcohol: benzoic acid, 2,6-dimethylbenzoic acid, *o*-toluic acid  
 (c) esterification by methanol: acetic acid, formic acid, isobutyric acid, propionic acid, trimethylacetic acid

19. Give stereochemical formulas of compounds A–F:

- (a) racemic  $\beta$ -bromobutyric acid + one mole  $\text{Br}_2$ ,  $\text{P} \longrightarrow \text{A} + \text{B}$   
 (b) fumaric acid +  $\text{HCO}_2\text{OH} \longrightarrow \text{C} (\text{C}_4\text{H}_6\text{O}_6)$   
 (c) 1,4-cyclohexadiene +  $\text{CHBr}_3$ , *t*-BuOK  $\longrightarrow \text{D} (\text{C}_7\text{H}_8\text{Br}_2)$   
 $\text{D} + \text{KMnO}_4 \longrightarrow \text{E} (\text{C}_7\text{H}_8\text{Br}_2\text{O}_4)$   
 $\text{E} + \text{H}_2$ , Ni(base)  $\longrightarrow \text{F} (\text{C}_7\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_4)$

20. Give structures of compounds G–J:



21. Describe simple chemical tests (other than color change of an indicator) that would serve to distinguish between:

- (a) propionic acid and *n*-pentyl alcohol
- (b) isovaleric acid and *n*-octane
- (c) ethyl *n*-butyrate and isobutyric acid
- (d) propionyl chloride and propionic acid
- (e) *p*-aminobenzoic acid and benzamide
- (f)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOH}$  and  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_3$

Tell exactly what you would *do* and *see*.

22. Compare benzoic acid and sodium benzoate with respect to:

- (a) volatility
- (b) melting point
- (c) solubility in water and (d) in ether
- (e) degree of ionization of solid
- (f) degree of ionization in water
- (g) acidity and basicity

Does this comparison hold generally for acids and their salts?

23. Tell how you would separate by chemical means the following mixtures, recovering each component in reasonably pure form:

- (a) caproic acid and ethyl caproate
- (b) *n*-butyl ether and *n*-butyric acid
- (c) isobutyric acid and 1-hexanol
- (d) sodium benzoate and triphenylcarbinol

Tell exactly what you would *do* and *see*.

24. An unknown compound is believed to be one of the following. Describe how you would go about finding out which of the possibilities the unknown actually is. Where possible, use simple chemical tests; where necessary, use more elaborate chemical methods like quantitative hydrogenation, cleavage, neutralization equivalent, etc. Make use of any needed tables of physical constants.

- (a) acrylic acid ( $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCOOH}$ , b.p.  $142^\circ$ ) and propionic acid (b.p.  $141^\circ$ )
- (b) mandelic acid ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHOHCOOH}$ , m.p.  $120^\circ$ ) and benzoic acid (m.p.  $122^\circ$ )
- (c) *o*-chlorobenzoic acid (m.p.  $141^\circ$ ), mesotartaric acid (m.p.  $140^\circ$ ), *m*-nitrobenzoic acid (m.p.  $141^\circ$ ), and suberic acid ( $\text{HOOC}(\text{CH}_2)_6\text{COOH}$ , m.p.  $144^\circ$ )
- (d) chloroacetic acid (b.p.  $189^\circ$ ),  $\alpha$ -chloropropionic acid (b.p.  $186^\circ$ ), dichloroacetic acid (b.p.  $194^\circ$ ), and *n*-valeric acid (b.p.  $187^\circ$ )
- (e) 3-nitrophthalic acid (m.p.  $220^\circ$ ) and 2,4,6-trinitrobenzoic acid (m.p.  $220^\circ$ )
- (f) *p*-chlorobenzoic acid (m.p.  $242^\circ$ ), *p*-nitrobenzoic acid (m.p.  $242^\circ$ ), *o*-nitrocinnamic acid ( $\text{o-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOH}$ , m.p.  $240^\circ$ )
- (g) The following compounds, all of which boil within a few degrees of each other:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>o</i> -chloroanisole                     | isodurene  |
| $\beta$ -chlorostyrene                      | linalool (see Problem 24, p. 531)                                      |
| <i>p</i> -cresyl ethyl ether                | 4-methylpentanoic acid   |
| <i>cis</i> -decalin (see Problem 7, p. 191) | $\alpha$ -phenylethyl chloride   |
| 2,4-dichlorotoluene                         | <i>o</i> -toluidine ( $\text{o-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$ ) |

25. By use of Table 19.4 (below) tell which acid or acids each of the following is likely to be. Tell what further steps you would take to identify it or to confirm your identification.

- K: m.p.  $155-7^\circ$ ; positive halogen test; *p*-nitrobenzyl ester, m.p.  $104-6^\circ$ ; neutralization equivalent,  $158 \pm 2$
- L: m.p.  $152-4^\circ$ ; negative tests for halogen and nitrogen
- M: m.p.  $153-5^\circ$ ; positive chlorine test, neutralization equivalent,  $188 \pm 4$
- N: m.p.  $72-3^\circ$ ; anilide, m.p.  $117-8^\circ$ ; amide, m.p.  $155-7^\circ$
- O: m.p.  $79-80^\circ$ ; amide, m.p.  $97-9^\circ$
- P: m.p.  $78-80^\circ$ ; negative tests for halogen and nitrogen; positive test with  $\text{CrO}_3/\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$

Table 19.4 DERIVATIVES OF SOME CARBOXYLIC ACIDS

	Acid M.p., °C	Amide M.p., °C	Anilide M.p., °C	<i>p</i> -Nitrobenzyl ester M.p., °C
<i>trans</i> -Crotonic ( $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOH}$ )	72	161	118	67
Phenylacetic	77	156	118	65
Arachidic ( $n\text{-C}_{19}\text{H}_{39}\text{COOH}$ )	77	108	92	—
$\alpha$ -Hydroxyisobutyric	79	98	136	80
Glycolic ( $\text{HOCH}_2\text{COOH}$ )	80	120	97	107
$\beta$ -Iodopropionic	82	101	—	—
Iodoacetic	83	95	143	—
Adipic ( $\text{HOOC}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{COOH}$ )	151	220	241	106
<i>p</i> -Nitrophenylacetic	153	198	198	—
2,5-Dichlorobenzoic	153	155	—	—
<i>m</i> -Chlorobenzoic	154	134	122	107
2,4,6-Trimethylbenzoic	155	—	—	188
<i>m</i> -Bromobenzoic	156	155	136	105
<i>p</i> -Chlorophenoxyacetic	158	133	125	—
Salicylic ( $o\text{-HOC}_6\text{H}_4\text{COOH}$ )	159	142	136	98

26. An unknown acid was believed to be either *o*-nitrobenzoic acid (m.p.  $147^\circ$ ) or anthranilic acid (m.p.  $146^\circ$ ). A 0.201-g sample neutralized 12.4 mL of 0.098 N NaOH. Which acid was it?

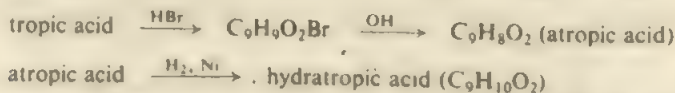
27. Carboxylic acid Q contained only carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, and had a neutralization equivalent of  $149 \pm 3$ . Vigorous oxidation by  $\text{KMnO}_4$  converted Q into R, m.p.  $345\text{--}50^\circ$ , neutralization equivalent  $84 \pm 2$ .

When Q was heated strongly with soda lime a liquid S of b.p.  $135\text{--}7^\circ$  distilled. Vigorous oxidation by  $\text{KMnO}_4$  converted S into T, m.p.  $121\text{--}2^\circ$ , neutralization equivalent  $123 \pm 2$ .

U, an isomer of Q, gave upon oxidation V, m.p.  $375\text{--}80^\circ$ , neutralization equivalent  $70 \pm 2$ .

What were compounds Q through V? (Make use of any needed tables of physical constants.)

28. *Tropic acid* (obtained from the alkaloid atropine, found in deadly nightshade, *Atropa belladonna*),  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_3$ , gives a positive  $\text{CrO}_3/\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  test and is oxidized by hot  $\text{KMnO}_4$  to benzoic acid. Tropic acid is converted by the following sequence of reactions into *hydratropic acid*:



(a) What structure or structures are possible at this point for hydratropic acid? For tropic acid?

(b) When  $\alpha$ -phenylethyl chloride is treated with magnesium in ether, the resulting solution poured over dry ice, and the mixture then acidified, there is obtained an acid whose amide has the same melting point as the amide of hydratropic acid. A mixed melting point determination shows no depression. Now what is the structure of hydratropic acid? Of tropic acid?

29. Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the following sets of NMR data:

- (a)  $C_3H_5ClO_2$   
*a* doublet,  $\delta$  1.73, 3H  
*b* quartet,  $\delta$  4.47, 1H  
*c* singlet,  $\delta$  11.22, 1H

- (b)  $C_3H_5ClO_2$   
*a* singlet,  $\delta$  3.81, 3H  
*b* singlet,  $\delta$  4.08, 2H

- (c)  $C_4H_7BrO_2$   
*a* triplet,  $\delta$  1.30, 3H  
*b* singlet,  $\delta$  3.77, 2H  
*c* quartet,  $\delta$  4.23, 2H

- (d)  $C_4H_7BrO_2$   
*a* triplet,  $\delta$  1.08, 3H  
*b* quintet,  $\delta$  2.07, 2H  
*c* triplet,  $\delta$  4.23, 1H  
*d* singlet,  $\delta$  10.97, 1H

- (e)  $C_3H_8O_3$   
*a* triplet,  $\delta$  1.27, 3H  
*b* quartet,  $\delta$  3.66, 2H  
*c* singlet,  $\delta$  4.13, 2H  
*d* singlet,  $\delta$  10.95, 1H

30. Which (if any) of the following compounds could give rise to each of the infrared spectra shown in Fig. 19.5 (p. 812)?

*n*-butyric acid  
 crotonic acid ( $CH_3CH=CHCOOH$ )  
 malic acid ( $HOOCCHOHCH_2COOH$ )  
 benzoic acid

*p*-nitrobenzoic acid  
 mandelic acid ( $C_6H_5CHOHCOOH$ )  
*p*-nitrobenzyl alcohol



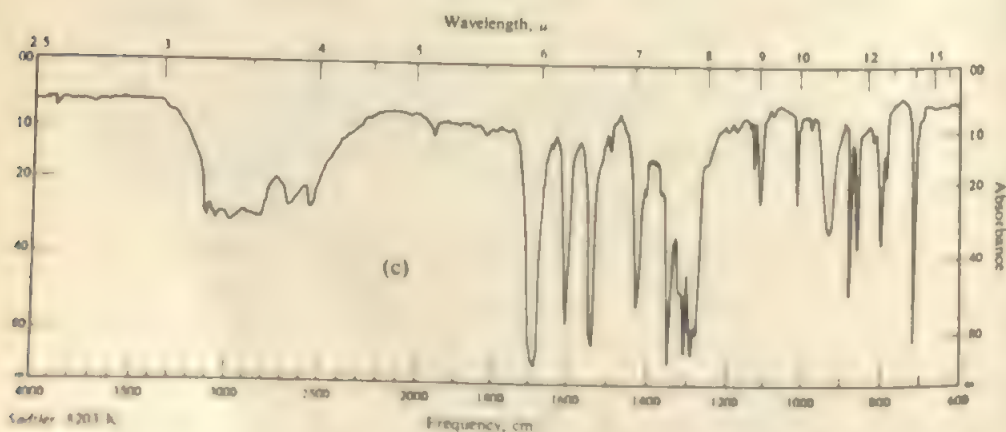
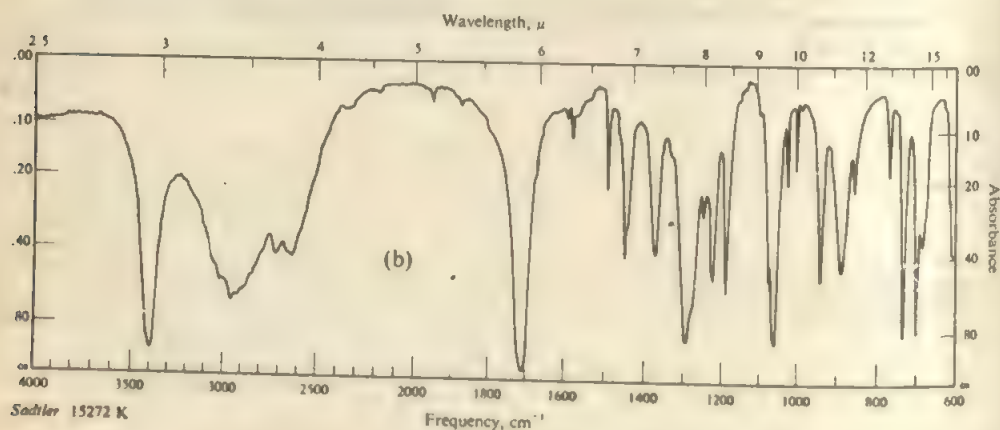
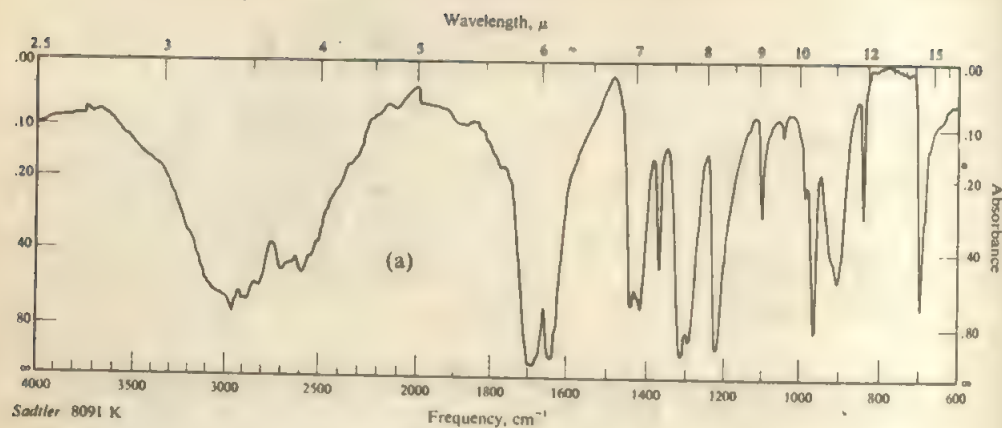


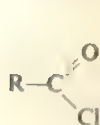
Figure 19.5. Infrared spectra for Problem 30, p 811

## Functional Derivatives of Carboxylic Acids

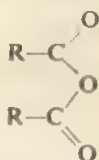
### *Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution*

#### 20.1 Structure

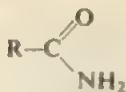
Closely related to the carboxylic acids and to each other are a number of chemical families known as **functional derivatives of carboxylic acids**: *acid chlorides*, *anhydrides*, *amides*, and *esters*. These derivatives are compounds in which the  $\text{—OH}$  of a carboxyl group has been replaced by  $\text{—Cl}$ ,  $\text{—OOCR}$ ,  $\text{—NH}_2$ , or  $\text{—OR'}$ .



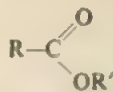
Acid chloride



Anhydride



Amide



Ester

*R may be  
alkyl or  
aryl*

They all contain the **acyl group**:

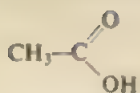


Acyl group

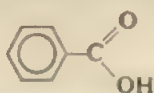
Like the acid to which it is related, an acid derivative may be aliphatic or aromatic, substituted or unsubstituted; whatever the structure of the rest of the molecule, the properties of the functional group remain essentially the same.

#### 20.2 Nomenclature

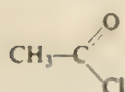
The names of acid derivatives are taken in simple ways from either the common name or the IUPAC name of the corresponding carboxylic acid. For example:



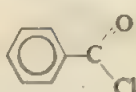
Acetic acid  
Ethanoic acid



Benzoic acid



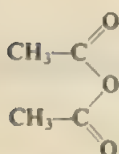
Acetyl chloride  
Ethanoyl chloride



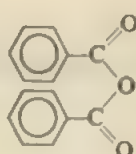
Benzoyl chloride

Change:

*-ic acid to -yl chloride*

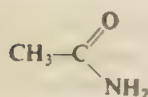


Acetic anhydride  
Ethanoic anhydride

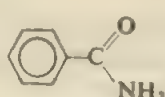


Benzoic anhydride

*acid to anhydride*

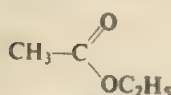


Acetamide  
Ethanamide

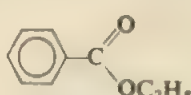


Benzamide

*-ic acid of common name  
(or -oic acid of IUPAC name)  
to -amide*



Ethyl acetate  
Ethyl ethanoate

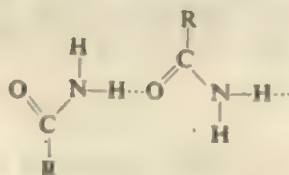


Ethyl benzoate

*-ic acid to -ate,  
preceded by name of  
alcohol or phenol group*

### 20.3 Physical properties

The presence of the  $\text{C}=\text{O}$  group makes the acid derivatives polar compounds. Acid chlorides and anhydrides (Table 20.1) and esters (Table 20.2, p. 829) have boiling points that are about the same as those of aldehydes or ketones of comparable molecular weight (see Sec. 10.3). Amides (Table 20.1) have quite high boiling points because they are capable of strong intermolecular hydrogen bonding.



The border line for solubility in water ranges from three to five carbons for the esters to five or six carbons for the amides. The acid derivatives are soluble in the usual organic solvents.

Volatile esters have pleasant, rather characteristic odors; they are often used in the preparation of perfumes and artificial flavorings. Acid chlorides have sharp, irritating odors, at least partly due to their ready hydrolysis to HCl and carboxylic acids.

Table 20.1 ACID CHLORIDES, ANHYDRIDES, AND AMIDES

Name	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Name	M.p., °C	B.p., °C
Acetyl chloride	-112	51	Succinic anhydride	120	
Propionyl chloride	-94	80	Maleic anhydride	60	
<i>n</i> -Butyryl chloride	-89	102			
<i>n</i> -Valeryl chloride	-110	128	Formamide	3	200 <sup>d</sup>
Stearoyl chloride	23	215 <sup>15</sup>	Acetamide	82	221
Benzoyl chloride	-1	197	Propionamide	79	213
<i>p</i> -Nitrobenzoyl chloride	72	154 <sup>15</sup>	<i>n</i> -Butyramide	116	216
3,5-Dinitrobenzoyl chloride	74	196 <sup>12</sup>	<i>n</i> -Valeramide	106	232
			Stearamide	109	251 <sup>12</sup>
			Benzamide	130	290
Acetic anhydride	-73	140	Succinimide	126	
Phthalic anhydride	131	284	Phthalimide	238	

## 20.4 Nucleophilic acyl substitution. Role of the carbonyl group

Before we take up each kind of acid derivative separately, it will be helpful to outline certain general patterns into which we can then fit the rather numerous individual facts.

Each derivative is nearly always prepared—directly or indirectly—from the corresponding carboxylic acid, and can be readily converted into the carboxylic acid by simple hydrolysis. Much of the chemistry of acid derivatives involves their conversion one into another, and into the parent acid. In addition, each derivative has certain characteristic reactions of its own.

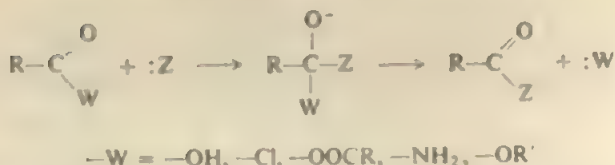
The derivatives of carboxylic acids, like the acids themselves, contain the carbonyl group, C=O. This group is retained in the products of most reactions undergone by these compounds, and does not suffer any permanent changes itself. But by its presence in the molecule it determines the characteristic reactivity of these compounds, and is the key to the understanding of their chemistry.

Here, too, as in aldehydes and ketones, the carbonyl group performs two functions: (a) it provides a site for nucleophilic attack, and (b) it increases the acidity of hydrogens attached to the *alpha* carbon.

(We shall discuss reactions resulting from the acidity of  $\alpha$ -hydrogens in Secs. 21.11–21.12 and 26.1–26.3.)

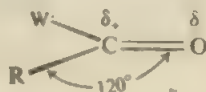
Acyl compounds—carboxylic acids and their derivatives—typically undergo **nucleophilic substitution** in which -OH, -Cl, -OOCR, -NH<sub>2</sub>, or -OR' is replaced by some other basic group. Substitution takes place much more readily than at a saturated carbon atom; indeed, many of these substitutions do not usually take place at all in the absence of the carbonyl group, as, for example, replacement of -NH<sub>2</sub> by -OH.





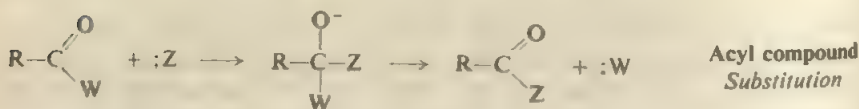
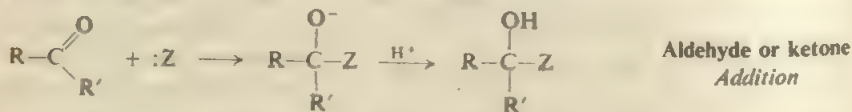
To account for the properties of acyl compounds, let us turn to the carbonyl group. We have encountered this group in our study of aldehydes and ketones (Secs. 18.1 and 18.8), and we know what it is like and what in general to expect of it.

Carbonyl carbon is joined to three other atoms by  $\sigma$  bonds, since these bonds utilize  $sp^2$  orbitals (Sec. 1.10), they lie in a plane and are  $120^\circ$  apart. The remaining  $p$  orbital of the carbon overlaps a  $p$  orbital of oxygen to form a  $\pi$  bond; carbon and oxygen are thus joined by a double bond. The part of the molecule immediately surrounding carbonyl carbon is *flat*; oxygen, carbonyl carbon, and the two atoms directly attached to carbonyl carbon lie in a plane:



We saw before that both electronic and steric factors make the carbonyl group particularly susceptible to nucleophilic attack at the carbonyl carbon: (a) the tendency of oxygen to acquire electrons even at the expense of gaining a negative charge; and (b) the relatively unhindered transition state leading from the trigonal reactant to the tetrahedral intermediate. These factors make acyl compounds, too, susceptible to nucleophilic attack.

It is in the second step of the reaction that acyl compounds differ from aldehydes and ketones. The tetrahedral intermediate from an aldehyde or ketone gains a proton, and the result is *addition*. The tetrahedral intermediate from an acyl

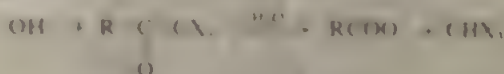


compound ejects the  $:\text{W}$  group, returning to a trigonal compound, and thus the result is *substitution*.

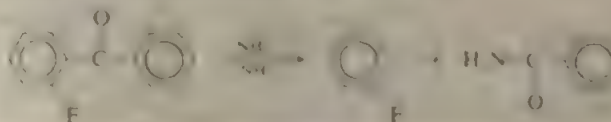
We can see why the two classes of compounds differ as they do. The ease with which  $:\text{W}$  is lost depends upon its basicity: the weaker the base, the better the leaving group. For acid chlorides, acid anhydrides, esters, and amides,  $:\text{W}$  is, respectively: the very weak base  $\text{Cl}^-$ ; the moderately weak base  $\text{RCOO}^-$ ; and the strong bases  $\text{R'O}^-$  and  $\text{NH}_2^-$ . But for an aldehyde or ketone to undergo substitution, the leaving group would have to be hydride ion ( $:\text{H}^-$ ) or alkide ion ( $:\text{R}^-$ ) which, as we know, are the strongest bases of all. (Witness the low acidity of  $\text{H}_2$  and  $\text{RH}$ .) And so with aldehydes and ketones addition almost always takes place instead.

**Problem 20.1** Suggest a likely mechanism for each of the following reactions, and account for the behavior shown.

(a) The last step in the haloform reaction (Sec. 11.14):

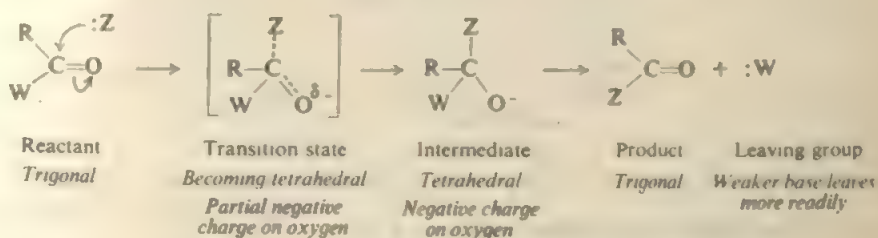


(b) The reaction of *o*-fluorobenzophenone with amide ion:



Thus, nucleophilic acyl substitution proceeds by two steps, with the intermediate formation of a tetrahedral compound. Generally, the overall rate is affected by the rate of both steps, but the *first* step is the more important. The first step, formation of the tetrahedral intermediate, is affected by the same factors as in

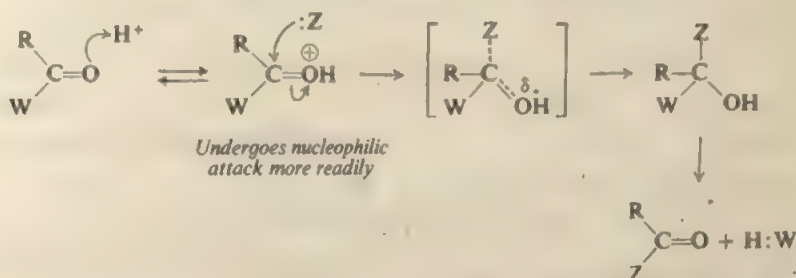
### Nucleophilic acyl substitution



addition to aldehydes and ketones (Sec. 18.8): it is favored by electron withdrawal, which stabilizes the developing negative charge; and it is hindered by the presence of bulky groups, which become crowded together in the transition state. The second step depends, as we have seen, on the basicity of the leaving group, :W.

If acid is present,  $\text{H}^+$  becomes attached to carbonyl oxygen, thus making the

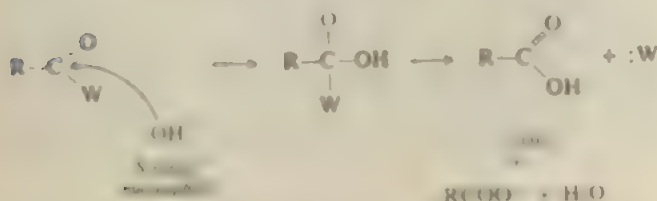
### Acid-catalyzed nucleophilic acyl substitution



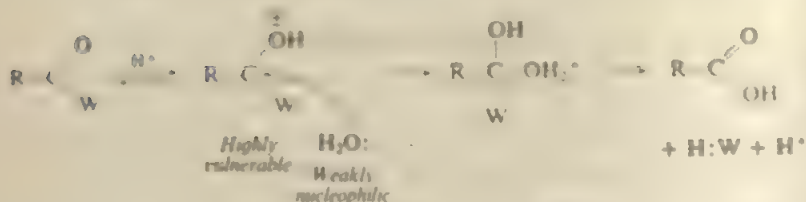
carbonyl group even more susceptible to the nucleophilic attack; oxygen can now acquire the  $\pi$  electrons without having to accept a negative charge.

It is understandable that  $\text{R-X}$  derivatives are hydrolyzed more readily in either alkaline or acidic solution than in neutral solution. Alkaline solutions provide hydroxide ion, which is a strongly nucleophilic reagent; acid solutions provide hydrogen ion, which attaches itself to carbonyl oxygen and thus renders the molecule vulnerable to attack by the weaker nucleophilic reagent water.

### Alkaline hydrolysis

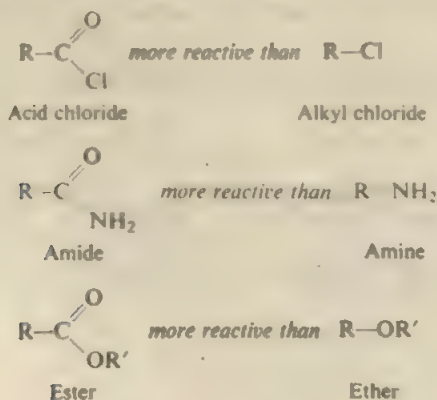


### Acidic hydrolysis



## 20.5 Nucleophilic substitution: alkyl vs. acyl

As we have said, nucleophilic substitution takes place much more readily at an acyl carbon than at saturated carbon. Thus, toward nucleophilic attack acid chlorides are more reactive than alkyl chlorides, amides are more reactive than amines ( $\text{RNH}_2$ ), and esters are more reactive than ethers.

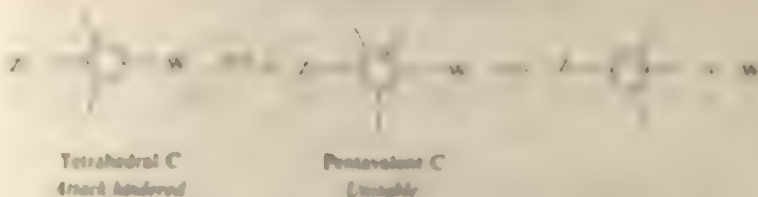


**Reactivity in  
nucleophilic  
displacement**

It is, of course, the carbonyl group that makes acyl compounds more reactive than alkyl compounds. Nucleophilic attack ( $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$ ) on a tetrahedral alkyl carbon

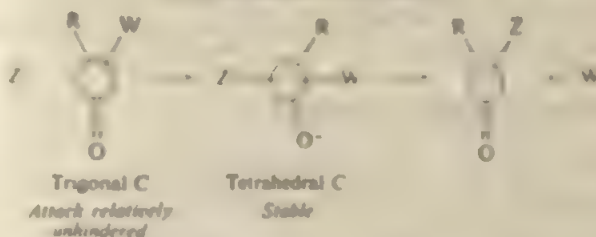
involves a highly hindered transition state containing pentavalent carbon; a bond must be partly broken to permit the attachment of the nucleophile.

#### Alkyl nucleophilic substitution



Nucleophilic attack on a flat acyl compound involves a relatively unhindered transition state leading to a tetrahedral intermediate that is actually a compound, since the carbonyl group is unsaturated; attachment of the nucleophile requires

#### Acyl nucleophilic substitution



breaking only of the weak  $\pi$  bond, and places a negative charge on an atom quite willing to accept it, oxygen.

## ACID CHLORIDES

### 20.6 Preparation of acid chlorides

Acid chlorides are prepared from the corresponding acids by reaction with thionyl chloride, phosphorus trichloride, or phosphorus pentachloride, as discussed in Sec. 19.15.

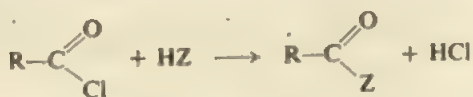
### 20.7 Reactions of acid chlorides

Like other acid derivatives, acid chlorides typically undergo nucleophilic substitution. Chlorine is expelled as chloride ion or hydrogen chloride, and its place is taken by some other basic group. Because of the carbonyl group these reactions take place much more rapidly than the corresponding nucleophilic substitution reactions of the alkyl halides. Acid chlorides are the most reactive of the derivatives of carboxylic acids.

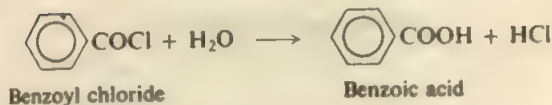


## REACTIONS OF ACID CHLORIDES

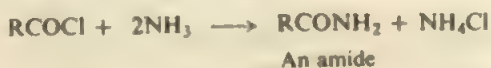
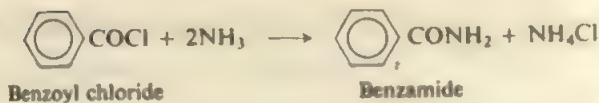
## 1. Conversion into acids and derivatives. Discussed in Sec. 20.8.



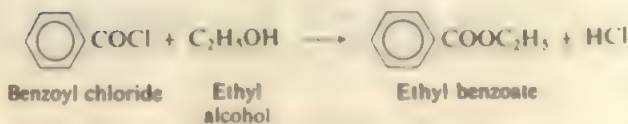
## (a) Conversion into acids. Hydrolysis

*Example:*

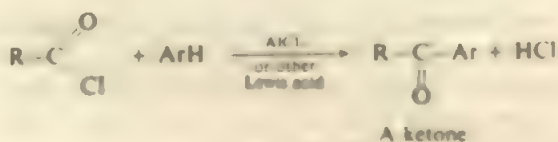
## (b) Conversion into amides. Ammonolysis

*Example:*

## (c) Conversion into esters. Alcoholysis

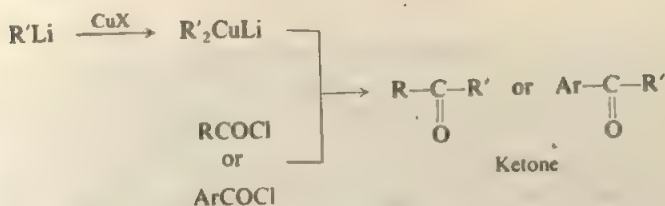
*Example:*

## 2. Formation of ketones. Friedel-Crafts acylation. Discussed in Sec. 18.5

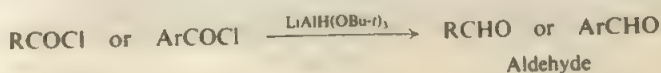


CONT.

3. **Formation of ketones.** Reaction with organocopper compounds. Discussed in Sec. 18.6.

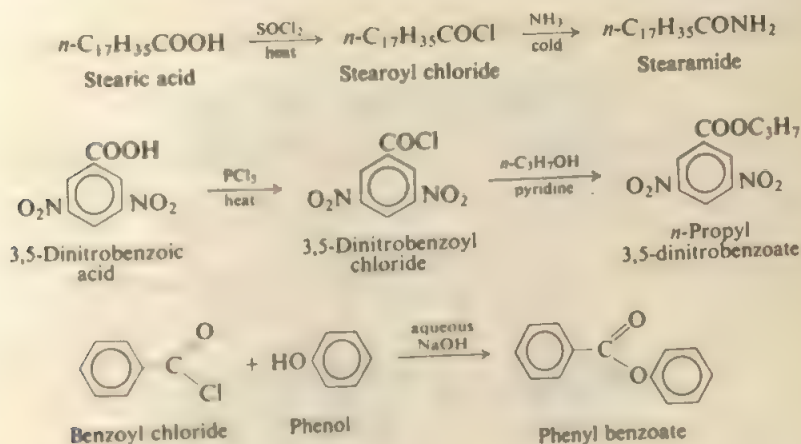


4. **Formation of aldehydes by reduction.** Discussed in Sec. 18.4.



## 20.8 Conversion of acid chlorides into acid derivatives

In the laboratory, amides and esters are usually prepared from the acid chloride rather than from the acid itself. Both the preparation of the acid chloride and its reactions with ammonia or an alcohol are rapid, essentially irreversible reactions. It is more convenient to carry out these two steps than the single slow, reversible reaction with the acid. For example:



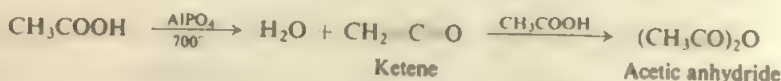
Aromatic acid chlorides ( $\text{ArCOCl}$ ) are considerably less reactive than the aliphatic acid chlorides. With cold water, for example, acetyl chloride reacts almost explosively, whereas benzoyl chloride reacts only very slowly. The reaction of aromatic acid chlorides with an alcohol or a phenol is often carried out using the **Schotten-Baumann** technique: the acid chloride is added in portions (followed by vigorous shaking) to a mixture of the hydroxy compound and a base, usually

aqueous sodium hydroxide or pyridine (an organic base, Sec. 35.11). Base serves not only to neutralize the hydrogen chloride that would otherwise be liberated, but also to catalyze the reaction. Pyridine, in particular, seems to convert the acid chloride into an even more powerful acylating agent.

## ACID ANHYDRIDES

### 20.9 Preparation of acid anhydrides

Only one monocarboxylic acid anhydride is encountered very often; however, this one, **acetic anhydride**, is immensely important. It is prepared by the reaction of acetic acid with **ketene**,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{C}=\text{O}$ , which itself is prepared by high-temperature dehydration of acetic acid.

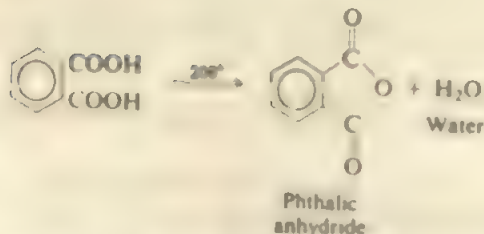
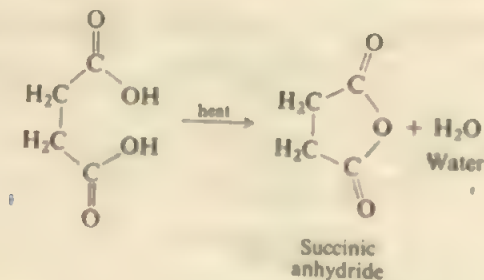


Ketene is an extremely reactive, interesting compound, which we have already encountered as a source of *methylene* (Sec. 8.25). It is made in the laboratory by

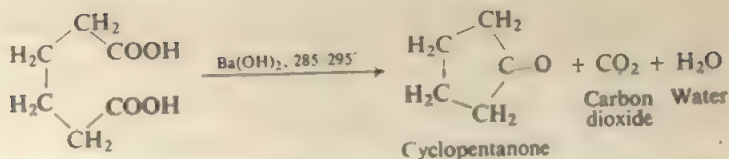


pyrolysis of acetone, and ordinarily used as soon as it is made.

In contrast to monocarboxylic acids, certain *dicarboxylic acids* yield anhydrides on simple heating: in those cases where a five- or six-membered ring is produced. For example:



Ring size is crucial: with adipic acid, for example, anhydride formation would produce a seven-membered ring, and does not take place. Instead, carbon dioxide is lost and cyclopentanone, a ketone with a five-membered ring, is formed.



**Problem 20.2** Cyclic anhydrides can be formed from only the *cis*-1,2-cyclopentanedicarboxylic acid, but from both the *cis*- and *trans*-1,2-cyclohexanedicarboxylic acids. How do you account for this?

**Problem 20.3** Maleic acid ( $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_4$ , m.p.  $130^\circ$ , highly soluble in water, heat of combustion 327 kcal) and fumaric acid ( $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_4$ , m.p.  $302^\circ$ , insoluble in water, heat of combustion 320 kcal) are both dicarboxylic acids; they both decolorize  $\text{Br}_2$  in  $\text{CCl}_4$  and aqueous  $\text{KMnO}_4$ ; on hydrogenation both yield succinic acid. When heated (maleic acid at  $100^\circ$ , fumaric acid at  $250-300^\circ$ ), both acids yield the same anhydride, which is converted by cold water into maleic acid. Interpret these facts.

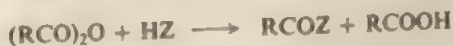
## 20.10 Reactions of acid anhydrides

Acid anhydrides undergo the same reactions as acid chlorides, but a little more slowly; where acid chlorides yield a molecule of  $\text{HCl}$ , anhydrides yield a molecule of carboxylic acid.

Compounds containing the acetyl group are often prepared from acetic anhydride; it is cheap, readily available, less volatile and more easily handled than acetyl chloride, and it does not form corrosive hydrogen chloride. It is widely used industrially for the esterification of the polyhydroxy compounds known as *carbohydrates*, especially cellulose (Chap. 29).

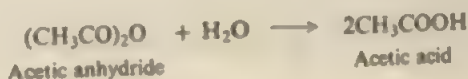
### REACTIONS OF ACID ANHYDRIDES

#### 1. Conversion into acids and acid derivatives. Discussed in Sec. 20.10.



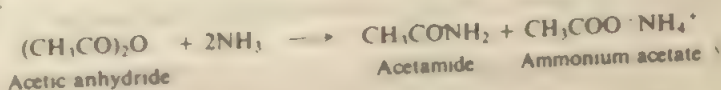
##### (a) Conversion into acids. Hydrolysis

Example:



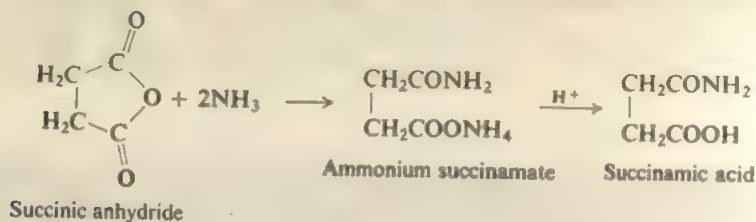
##### (b) Conversion into amides. Ammonolysis

Examples:



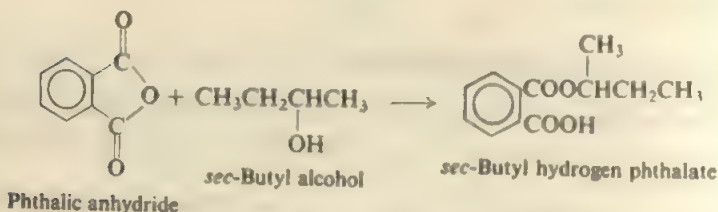
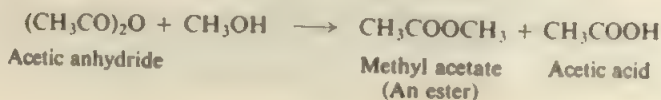


CONT.

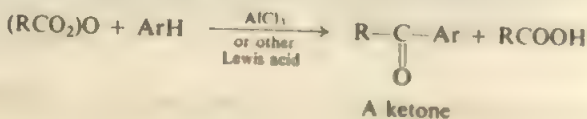


## (c) Conversion into esters. Alcoholysis

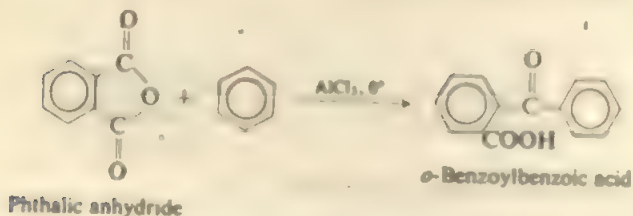
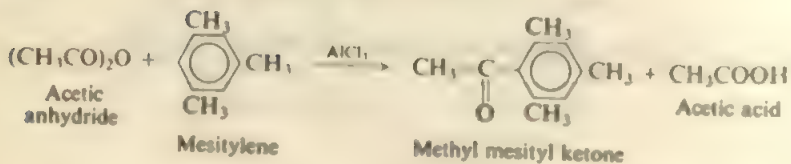
Examples:



## 2. Formation of ketones. Friedel-Crafts acylation. Discussed in Sec. 18.5.



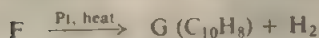
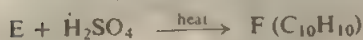
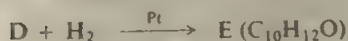
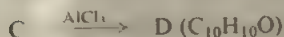
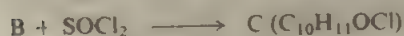
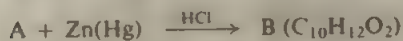
Examples:



Only "half" of the anhydride appears in the acyl product, the other "half" forms a carboxylic acid. A cyclic anhydride, we see, undergoes exactly the same reactions as any other anhydride. However, since both "halves" of the anhydride

are attached to each other by carbon-carbon bonds, the acyl compound and the carboxylic acid formed will have to be part of the same molecule. Cyclic anhydrides can thus be used to make compounds containing both the acyl group and the carboxyl group: compounds that are, for example, both acids and amides, both acids and esters, etc. These difunctional compounds are of great value in further synthesis.

**Problem 20.4** Give structural formulas for compounds A through G.



**Problem 20.5** (a) What product will be obtained if D of the preceding problem is treated with  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{MgBr}$  and then water? (b) What will you finally get if the product from (a) replaces E in the preceding problem?

**Problem 20.6** When heated with acid (e.g., concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), *o*-benzoylbenzoic acid yields a product of formula  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_8\text{O}_2$ . What is the structure of this product? What general type of reaction has taken place?

**Problem 20.7** Predict the products of the following reactions:

(a) toluene + phthalic anhydride +  $\text{AlCl}_3$

(b) the product from (a) + conc.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  + heat

**Problem 20.8** (a) The two 1,3-cyclobutanedicarboxylic acids (p. 183) have been assigned configurations on the basis of the fact that one can be converted into an anhydride and the other cannot. Which configuration would you assign to the one that can form the anhydride, and why? (b) The method of (a) cannot be used to assign configurations to the 1,2-cyclohexanedicarboxylic acids, since *both* give anhydrides. Why is this? (c) Could the method of (a) be used to assign configurations to the 1,3-cyclohexanedicarboxylic acids?

**Problem 20.9** Alcohols are the class of compounds most commonly resolved (Sec. 4.28), despite the fact that they are not acidic enough or basic enough to form (stable) salts. Outline all steps in a procedure for the resolution of *sec*-butyl alcohol, using as resolving agent the base  $(-)\text{-B}$ .

## AMIDES

### 20.11 Preparation of amides

In the laboratory amides are prepared by the reaction of ammonia with acid chlorides or, when available, acid anhydrides (Secs. 20.8 and 20.10). In industry they are often made by heating the ammonium salts of carboxylic acids.

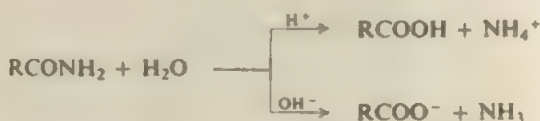
## 20.12 Reactions of amides

An amide is hydrolyzed when heated with aqueous acids or aqueous bases. The products are ammonia and the carboxylic acid, although one product or the other is obtained in the form of a salt, depending upon the acidity or basicity of the medium.

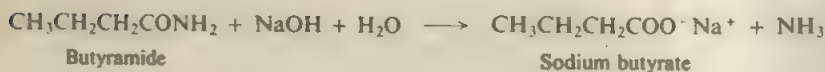
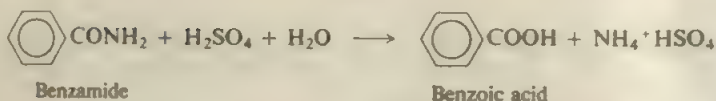
Another reaction of importance, the Hoffmann degradation of amides, will be discussed later (Secs. 22.12 and 22.15–22.18).

### REACTIONS OF AMIDES

#### 1. Hydrolysis. Discussed in Sec. 20.13.



Examples:



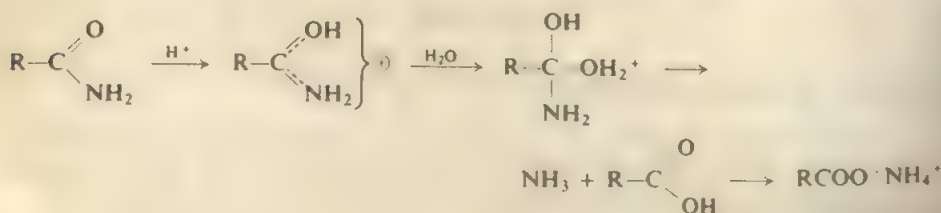
#### 2. Conversion into imides. Discussed in Sec. 20.14.

#### 3. Hofmann degradation of amides. Discussed in Secs. 22.12 and 22.15–22.18.

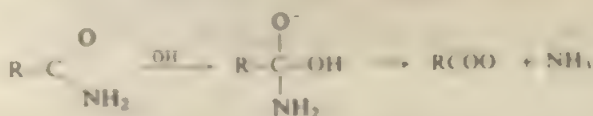


## 20.13 Hydrolysis of amides

Hydrolysis of amides is typical of the reactions of carboxylic acid derivatives. It involves nucleophilic substitution, in which the  $-\text{NH}_2$  group is replaced by  $-\text{OH}$ . Under acidic conditions hydrolysis involves attack by water on the protonated amide:

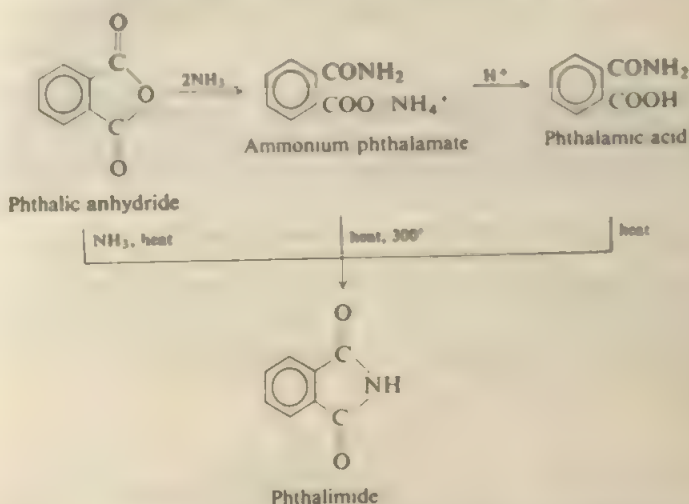


Under alkaline conditions hydrolysis involves attack by the strongly nucleophilic hydroxide ion on the amide itself:



## 20.14 Imides

Like other anhydrides, cyclic anhydrides react with ammonia to yield amides, in this case the product contains both  $-\text{CONH}_2$  and  $-\text{COOH}$  groups. If this acid amide is heated, a molecule of water is lost, a ring forms, and a product is obtained in which two acyl groups have become attached to nitrogen, compounds of this sort are called **imides**. Phthalic anhydride gives *phthalamic acid* and *phthalimide*.



**Problem 20.10** Outline all steps in the synthesis of *succinimide* from succinic acid.

**Problem 20.11** Account for the following sequence of acidities. (Hint: See Sec. 19.12.)

	$K_a$
Ammonia	$10^{-33}$
Benzamide	$10^{-14}$ to $10^{-15}$
Phthalimide	$5 \times 10^{-9}$

## ESTERS

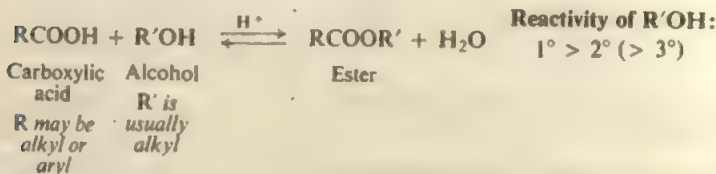
### 20.15 Preparation of esters

Esters are usually prepared by the reaction of alcohols or phenols with acids or acid derivatives. The most common methods are outlined below.

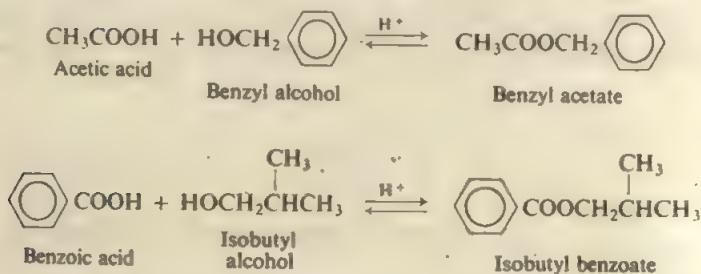


## PREPARATION OF ESTERS

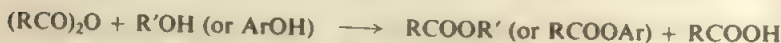
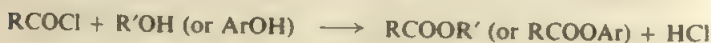
## 1. From acids. Discussed in Secs. 19.16 and 20.18.



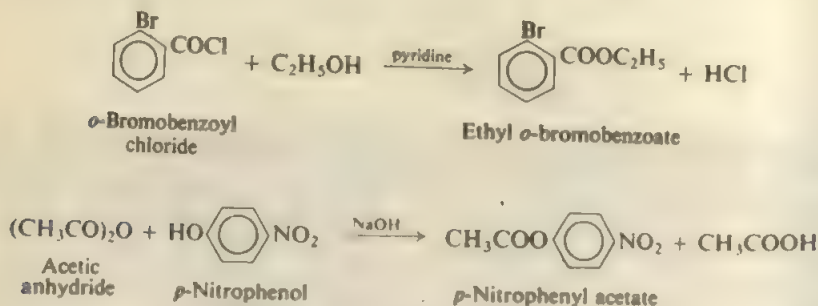
## Examples:



## 2. From acid chlorides or anhydrides. Discussed in Secs. 20.8 and 20.10.



## Examples:



## 3. From esters. Transesterification. Discussed in Sec. 20.20.



The direct reaction of alcohols or phenols with acids involves an equilibrium and—especially in the case of phenols—requires effort to drive to completion (see Sec. 19.16). In the laboratory, reaction with an acid chloride or anhydride is more commonly used.

The effect of the structure of the alcohol and of the acid on ease of esterification has already been discussed (Sec. 19.16).

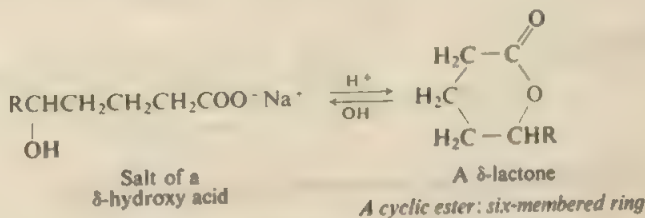
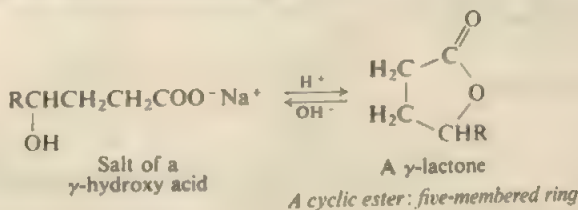
Table 20.2 ESTERS OF CARBOXYLIC ACIDS

Name	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Name	M.p., °C	B.p., °C
Methyl acetate	-98	57.5	Ethyl formate	-80	54
Ethyl acetate	-84	77	Ethyl acetate	-84	77
<i>n</i> -Propyl acetate	-92	102	Ethyl propionate	-74	99
<i>n</i> -Butyl acetate	-77	126	Ethyl <i>n</i> -butyrate	-93	121
<i>n</i> -Pentyl acetate		148	Ethyl <i>n</i> -valerate	-91	146
Isopentyl acetate	-78	142	Ethyl stearate	34	215 <sup>15</sup>
Benzyl acetate	-51	214	Ethyl phenylacetate		226
Phenyl acetate		196	Ethyl benzoate	-35	213

As was mentioned earlier, esterification using aromatic acid chlorides,  $\text{ArCOCl}$ , is often carried out in the presence of base (the Schotten-Baumann technique, Sec. 20.8).

**Problem 20.12** When benzoic acid is esterified by methanol in the presence of a little sulfuric acid, the final reaction mixture contains five substances: benzoic acid, methanol, water, methyl benzoate, sulfuric acid. Outline a procedure for the separation of the pure ester.

A hydroxy acid is both alcohol and acid. In those cases where a five- or six-membered ring can be formed, *intramolecular* esterification occurs. Thus, a  $\gamma$ - or  $\delta$ -hydroxy acid loses water spontaneously to yield a cyclic ester known as a **lactone**. Treatment with base (actually hydrolysis of an ester) rapidly opens the lactone ring

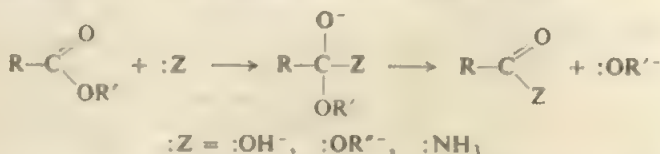


to give the open-chain salt. We shall encounter lactones again in our study of carbohydrates (Sec. 28.8).

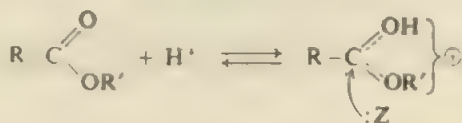
**Problem 20.13** Suggest a likely structure for the product formed by heating each of these acids (a) *Lactic acid*,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHOHCOOH}$ , gives *lactide*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}_4$ . (b) 10-Hydroxy-decanoic acid gives a material of high molecular weight (1000-9000).

## 20.16 Reactions of esters

Esters undergo the nucleophilic substitution that is typical of carboxylic acid derivatives. Attack occurs at the electron-deficient carbonyl carbon, and results in the replacement of the  $-OR'$  group by  $-OH$ ,  $-OR''$ , or  $-NH_2$ :



These reactions are sometimes carried out in the presence of acid. In these acid-catalyzed reactions,  $H^+$  attaches itself to the oxygen of the carbonyl group, and thus renders carbonyl carbon even more susceptible to nucleophilic attack.



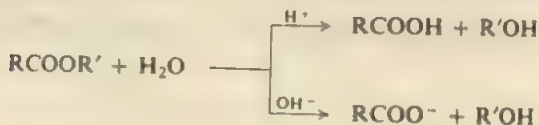
**Acid catalysis:**

*makes carbon more  
susceptible to  
nucleophilic attack*

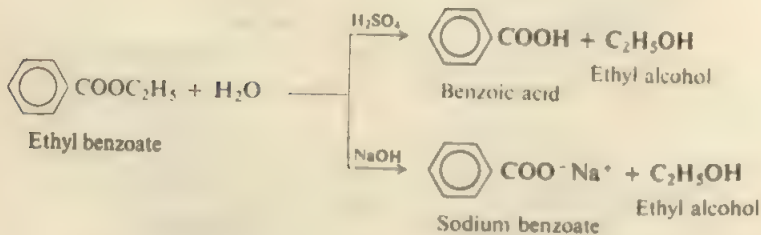
## REACTIONS OF ESTERS

### 1. Conversion into acids and acid derivatives.

(a) Conversion into acids. Hydrolysis. Discussed in Secs. 20.17 and 20.18.



*Example:*



(b) Conversion into amides. Ammonolysis. Discussed in Sec. 20.19.

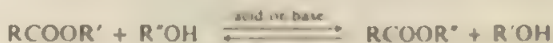
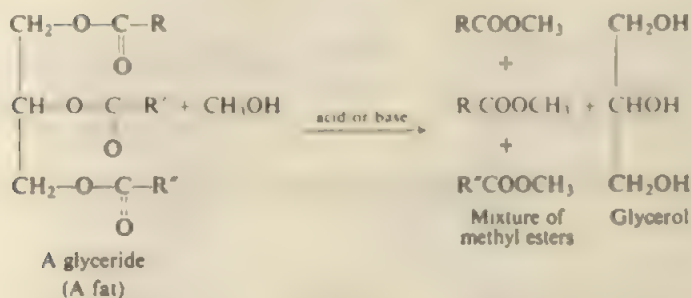


*Example:*

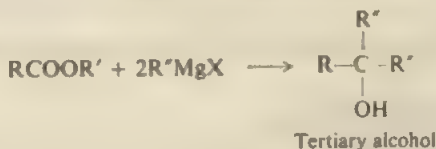
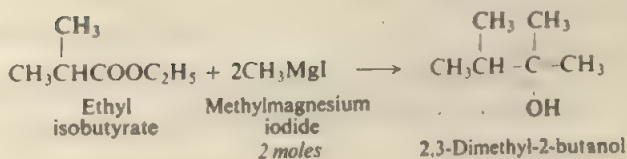


CONT.

(c) Conversion into esters. Transesterification. Alcoholysis. Discussed in Sec. 20.20

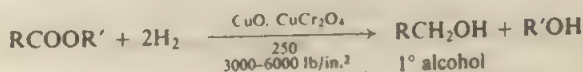
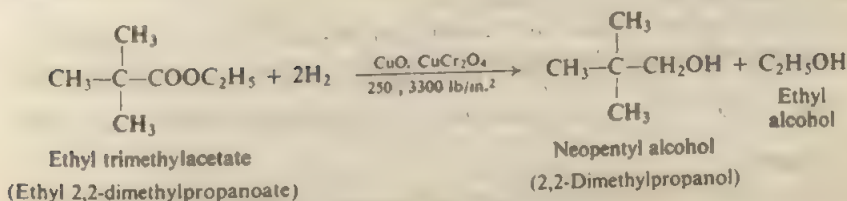
*Example:*

2. Reaction with Grignard reagents. Discussed in Sec. 20.21.

*Example:*

3. Reduction to alcohols. Discussed in Sec. 20.22.

(a) Catalytic hydrogenation. Hydrogenolysis

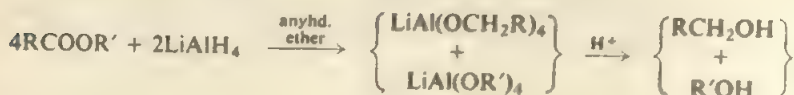
*Example:*

CONT.

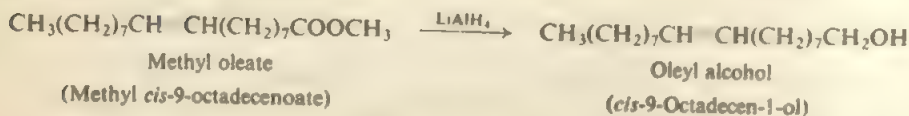


CONT.

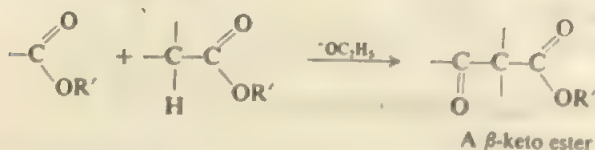
## (b) Chemical reduction



Example:



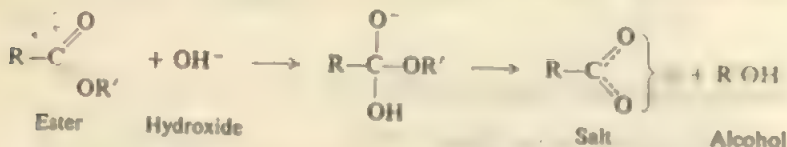
## 4. Reaction with carbanions. Claisen condensation. Discussed in Secs. 21.11 and 21.12.



## 20.17 Alkaline hydrolysis of esters

A carboxylic ester is hydrolyzed to a carboxylic acid and an alcohol or phenol when heated with aqueous acid or aqueous base. Under alkaline conditions, of course, the carboxylic acid is obtained as its salt, from which it can be liberated by addition of mineral acid.

Base promotes hydrolysis of esters by providing the strongly nucleophilic reagent  $\text{OH}^-$ . This reaction is essentially irreversible, since a resonance-stabilized



carboxylate anion (Sec. 19.13) shows little tendency to react with an alcohol.

Let us look at the various aspects of the mechanism we have written, and see what evidence there is for each of them.

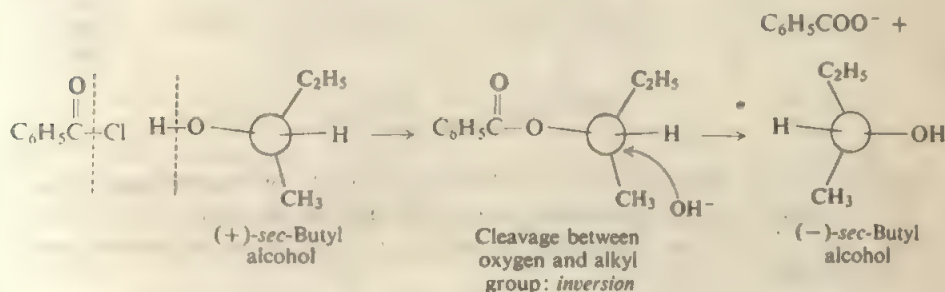
First, reaction involves attack on the ester by hydroxide ion. This is consistent with the **kinetics**, which is second-order, with the rate depending on both ester concentration and hydroxide concentration.

Next hydroxide attacks at the carbonyl carbon and displaces alkoxide ion. That is to say, reaction involves cleavage of the bond between oxygen and the acyl group,  $\text{RCO---OR}'$ . For this there are two lines of evidence, the first being the

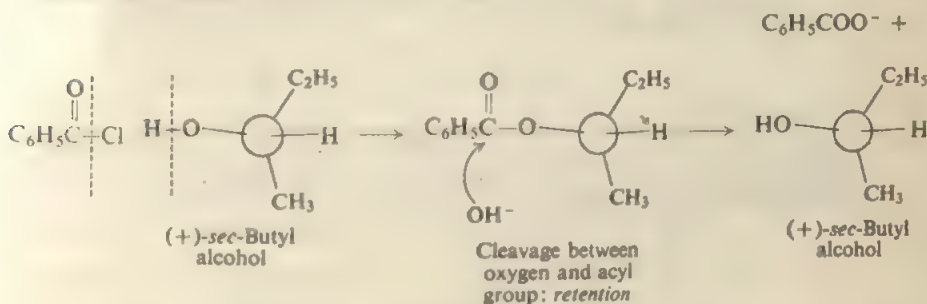
**stereochemistry**.

Let us consider, for example, the formation and subsequent hydrolysis of an ester of optically active *sec*-butyl alcohol. Reaction of (+)-*sec*-butyl alcohol with

benzoyl chloride must involve cleavage of the hydrogen-oxygen bond and hence cannot change the configuration about the chiral center (see Sec. 4.23). If hydrolysis of this ester involves cleavage of the bond between oxygen and the *sec*-butyl group, we would expect almost certainly inversion (or inversion plus racemization if the reaction goes by an  $S_N1$  type of mechanism):

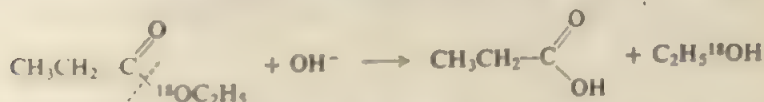


If, on the other hand, the bond between oxygen and the *sec*-butyl group remains intact during hydrolysis, then we would expect to obtain *sec*-butyl alcohol of the same configuration as the starting material:



When *sec*-butyl alcohol of rotation  $+13.8^\circ$  was actually converted into the benzoate and the benzoate was hydrolyzed in alkali, there was obtained *sec*-butyl alcohol of rotation  $+13.8^\circ$ . This complete retention of configuration strongly indicates that bond cleavage occurs between oxygen and the acyl group.

**Tracer studies** have confirmed the kind of bond cleavage indicated by the stereochemical evidence. When ethyl propionate labeled with  $^{18}\text{O}$  was hydrolyzed by base in ordinary water, the ethanol produced was found to be enriched in  $^{18}\text{O}$ ; the propionic acid contained only the ordinary amount of  $^{18}\text{O}$ :

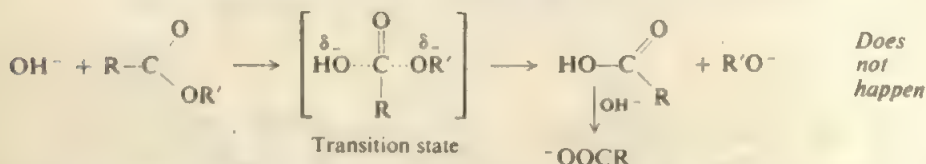


The alcohol group retained the oxygen that it held in the ester; cleavage occurred between oxygen and the acyl group.

The study of a number of other hydrolyses by both tracer and stereochemical methods has shown that cleavage between oxygen and the acyl group is the usual one in ester hydrolysis. This behavior indicates that the preferred point of nucleophilic attack is the carbonyl carbon rather than the alkyl carbon; this is, of

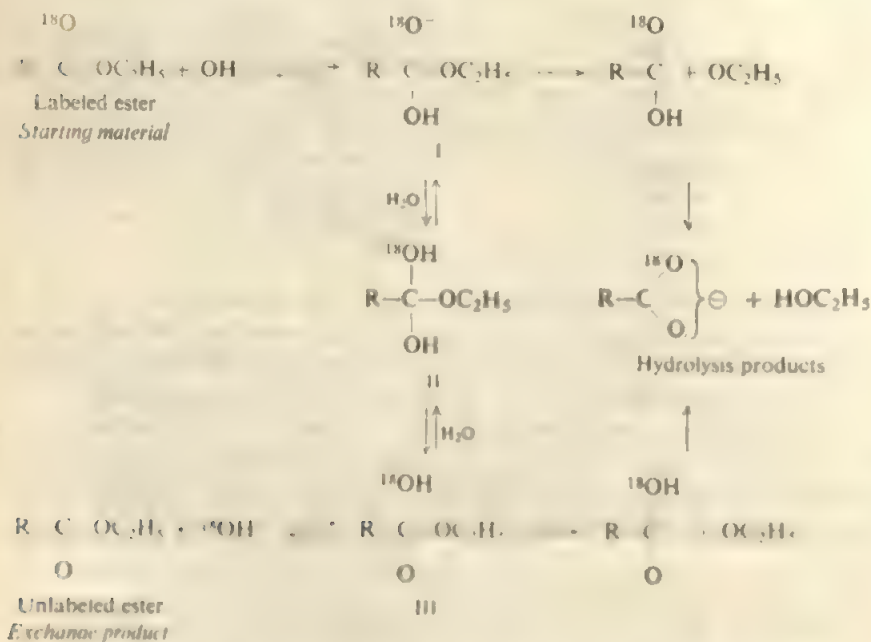
course, what we might have expected in view of the generally greater reactivity of carbonyl carbon (Sec. 20.5).

Finally, according to the mechanism, attack by hydroxide ion on carbonyl carbon does not displace alkoxide ion in one step,



but rather in *two steps* with the intermediate formation of a tetrahedral compound. These alternative mechanisms were considered more or less equally likely until 1950 when elegant work on **isotopic exchange** was reported by Myron Bender (now at Northwestern University).

Bender carried out the alkaline hydrolysis of carbonyl-labeled ethyl benzoate,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}^{18}\text{OOC}_2\text{H}_5$ , in ordinary water, and focused his attention, not on the product, but on the *reactant*. He interrupted the reaction after various periods of time, and isolated the unconsumed ester and analyzed it for  $^{18}\text{O}$  content. He found that in the alkaline solution the ester was undergoing not only hydrolysis but also *exchange of its  $^{18}\text{O}$  for ordinary oxygen from the solvent*.



Oxygen exchange is not consistent with the one-step mechanism, which provides no way for it to happen. Oxygen exchange is consistent with a two-step mechanism in which intermediate I is not only formed, but partly reverts into starting material and partly is converted (probably via the neutral species II) into III—an intermediate that is equivalent to I except for the position of the label. If this is so, the conversion of intermediate III into starting material yields ester that has lost its  $^{18}\text{O}$ .

Bender's work does not *prove* the mechanism we have outlined. Conceivably, oxygen exchange and hence the tetrahedral intermediate simply represent a blind-alley down which ester molecules venture but which does not lead to hydrolysis. Such coincidence is unlikely, however, particularly in light of certain kinetic relationships between oxygen exchange and hydrolysis.

Similar experiments have indicated the reversible formation of tetrahedral intermediates in hydrolysis of other esters, amides, anhydrides, and acid chlorides, and are the basis of the general mechanism we have shown for nucleophilic acyl substitution.

Exchange experiments are also the basis of our estimate of the relative importance of the two steps: differences in rate of hydrolysis of acyl derivatives depend chiefly on how fast intermediates are formed, and also on what fraction of the intermediate goes on to product. As we have said, the rate of formation of the intermediate is affected by both electronic and steric factors: in the transition state, a negative charge is developing and carbon is changing from trigonal toward tetrahedral.

Even in those cases where oxygen exchange cannot be detected, we cannot rule out the possibility of an intermediate; it may simply be that it goes on to hydrolysis products much faster than it does anything else.

**Problem 20.14** The relative rates of alkaline hydrolysis of ethyl *p*-substituted benzoates,  $p\text{-GC}_6\text{H}_4\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ , are:

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} \text{G} = & \text{NO}_2 & > & \text{Cl} & > & \text{H} & > & \text{CH}_3 & > & \text{OCH}_3 \\ & 110 & & 4 & & 1 & & 0.5 & & 0.2 \end{array}$$

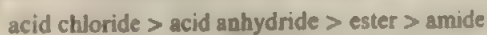
(a) How do you account for this order of reactivity? (b) What kind of effect, activating or deactivating, would you expect from *p*-Br? from *p*-NH<sub>2</sub>? from *p*-C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>? (c) Predict the order of reactivity toward alkaline hydrolysis of: *p*-aminophenyl acetate, *p*-methylphenyl acetate, *p*-nitrophenyl acetate, phenyl acetate.

**Problem 20.15** The relative rates of alkaline hydrolysis of alkyl acetates,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COOR}$ , are:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \text{R} = & \text{CH}_3 & > & \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 & > & (\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH} & > & (\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C} \\ & 1 & & 0.6 & & 0.15 & & 0.008 \end{array}$$

(a) What two factors might be at work here? (b) Predict the order of reactivity toward alkaline hydrolysis of: methyl acetate, methyl formate, methyl isobutyrate, methyl propionate, and methyl trimethylacetate.

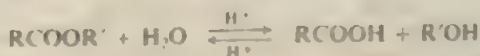
**Problem 20.16** Exchange experiments show that the fraction of the tetrahedral intermediate that goes on to products follows the sequence:



What is one factor that is probably at work here?

## 20.18 Acidic hydrolysis of esters

Hydrolysis of esters is promoted not only by base but also by acid. Acidic hydrolysis, as we have seen (Sec. 19.16), is reversible.

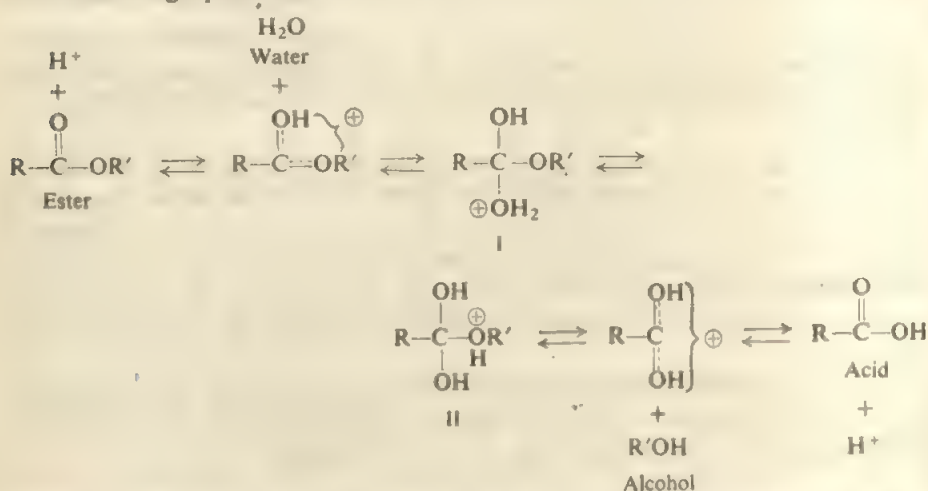


and hence the mechanism for hydrolysis is also taken in the opposite direction



the mechanism for esterification. Any evidence about one reaction must apply to both.

The mechanism for acid-catalyzed hydrolysis and esterification is contained in the following equilibria:



Mineral acid speeds up both processes by protonating carbonyl oxygen and thus rendering carbonyl carbon more susceptible to nucleophilic attack (Sec. 20.4). In hydrolysis, the nucleophile is a water molecule and the leaving group is an alcohol; in esterification, the roles are exactly reversed.

As in alkaline hydrolysis, there is almost certainly a tetrahedral intermediate—or, rather, several of them. The existence of more than one intermediate is required by, among other things, the reversible nature of the reaction. Looking only at hydrolysis, intermediate II is *likely*, since it permits separation of the weakly basic alcohol molecule instead of the strongly basic alkoxide ion; but consideration of esterification shows that II almost certainly *must* be involved, since it is the product of attack by alcohol on the protonated acid.

The evidence for the mechanism is much the same as in alkaline hydrolysis.

The position of cleavage,  $\text{RCO}-\text{OR}'$  and  $\text{RCO}-\text{OH}$ , has been shown by  $^{18}\text{O}$  studies of both hydrolysis and esterification. The existence of the tetrahedral intermediates was demonstrated, as in the alkaline reaction, by  $^{18}\text{O}$  exchange between the carbonyl oxygen of the ester and the solvent.

**Problem 20.17** Write the steps to account for exchange between  $\text{RC}^{18}\text{OOR}'$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in acidic solution. There is reason to believe that a key intermediate here is identical with one in alkaline hydrolysis. What might this intermediate be?

**Problem 20.18** Account for the fact (Sec. 19.16) that the presence of bulky substituents in either the alcohol group or the acid group slows down both esterification and hydrolysis.

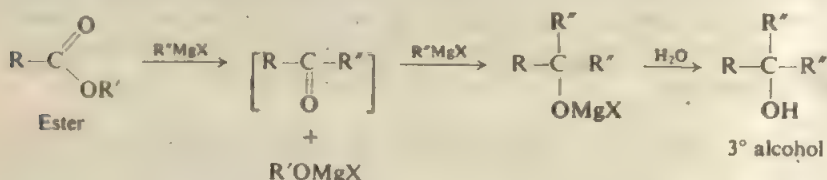
**Problem 20.19** Acidic hydrolysis of *tert*-butyl acetate in water enriched in  $^{18}\text{O}$  has been found to yield *tert*-butyl alcohol enriched in  $^{18}\text{O}$  and acetic acid containing ordinary oxygen. Acidic hydrolysis of the acetate of optically active 3,7-dimethyl-3-octanol has been found to yield alcohol of much lower optical purity than the starting alcohol, and having the opposite sign of rotation. (a) How do you interpret these two sets of results? (b) Is it surprising that these particular esters should show this kind of behavior?



make, or else to remove one of the products from the reaction mixture. The second approach is the better one when feasible, since in this way the reaction can be driven to completion.

## 20.21 Reaction of esters with Grignard reagents

The reaction of carboxylic esters with Grignard reagents is an excellent method for preparing tertiary alcohols. As in the reaction with aldehydes and ketones (Sec. 18.11), the nucleophilic (basic) alkyl or aryl group of the Grignard reagent attaches itself to the electron-deficient carbonyl carbon. Expulsion of the alkoxide group would yield a ketone, and in certain special cases ketones are indeed isolated from this reaction. However, as we know, ketones themselves readily react with Grignard reagents to yield tertiary alcohols (Sec. 10.13); in the present case the products obtained correspond to the addition of the Grignard reagent to such a ketone:



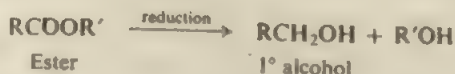
Two of the three groups attached to the carbon bearing the hydroxyl group in the alcohol come from the Grignard reagent and hence must be identical; this, of course, places limits upon the alcohols that can be prepared by this method. But, where applicable, reaction of a Grignard reagent with an ester is preferred to reaction with a ketone because esters are generally more accessible.

**Problem 20.20** Starting from valeric acid, and using any needed reagents, outline the synthesis of 3-ethyl-3-heptanol via the reaction of a Grignard reagent with: (a) a ketone; (b) an ester.

**Problem 20.21** (a) Esters of which acid would yield *secondary* alcohols on reaction with Grignard reagents? (b) Starting from alcohols of four carbons or fewer, outline all steps in the synthesis of 4-heptanol.

## 20.22 Reduction of esters

Like many organic compounds, esters can be reduced in two ways: (a) by catalytic hydrogenation using molecular hydrogen, or (b) by chemical reduction. In either case, the ester is cleaved to yield (in addition to the alcohol or phenol from which it was derived) a primary alcohol corresponding to the acid portion of the ester.



**Hydrogenolysis** (cleavage by hydrogen) of an ester requires more severe conditions than simple hydrogenation of (addition of hydrogen to) a carbon-carbon double bond. High pressures and elevated temperatures are required: the catalyst



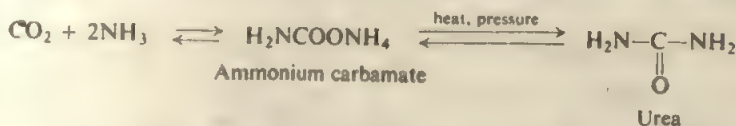




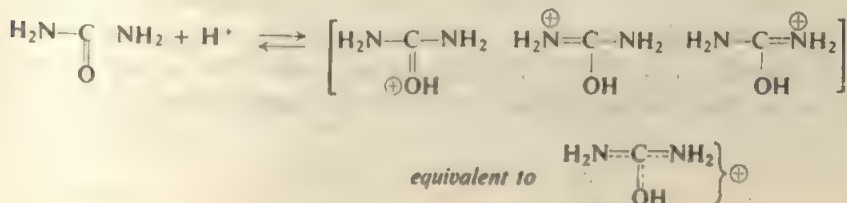
**Problem 20.23** Suggest a possible synthesis of

- (a) 2-pentylurethane,  $\text{H}_2\text{NCOOCH}(\text{CH}_3)(n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)$ , used as a hypnotic;  
 (b) benzyl chlorocarbonate (carbobenzoxy chloride),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{OCOCI}$ , used in the synthesis of peptides (Sec. 30.10).

**Urea**,  $\text{H}_2\text{NCONH}_2$ , is excreted in the urine as the chief nitrogen-containing end product of protein metabolism. It is synthesized on a large scale for use as a fertilizer and as a raw material in the manufacture of urea-formaldehyde plastics and of drugs.

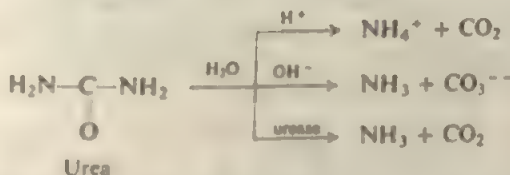


Urea is weakly basic, forming salts with strong acids. The fact that it is a stronger base than ordinary amides is attributed to resonance stabilization of the cation:



**Problem 20.24** Account for the fact that guanidine,  $(\text{H}_2\text{N})_2\text{C}=\text{NH}$ , is strongly basic.

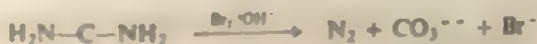
Urea undergoes hydrolysis in the presence of acids, bases, or the enzyme *urease* (isolable from jack beans, generated by many bacteria, such as *Micrococcus ureae*).



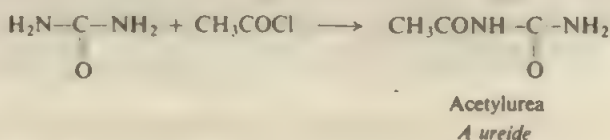
Urea reacts with nitrous acid to yield carbon dioxide and nitrogen; this is a useful way to destroy excess nitrous acid in diazotizations (Sec. 23.13).



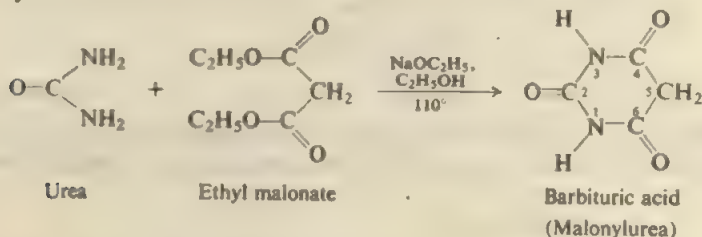
Urea is converted by hypohalites into nitrogen and carbonate.



Treatment of urea with acid chlorides or anhydrides yields **ureides**. Of special



importance are the cyclic ureides formed by reaction with malonic esters; these are known as **barbiturates** and are important hypnotics (sleep-producers). For example:



**Cyanamide**,  $\text{H}_2\text{N}-\text{C}\equiv\text{N}$ , is obtained in the form of its calcium salt by the high-temperature reaction between calcium carbide and nitrogen. This reaction is



important as a method of nitrogen fixation; calcium cyanamide has been used as a fertilizer, releasing ammonia by the action of water.

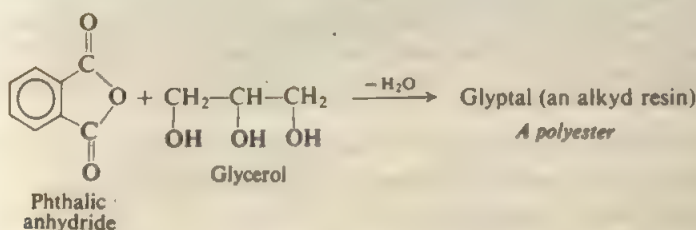
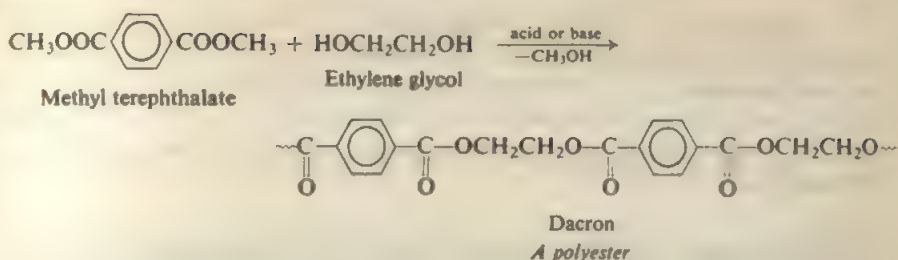
**Problem 20.25** Give the electronic structure of the cyanamide anion,  $(\text{NCN})^-$ . Discuss its molecular shape, bond lengths, and location of charge.

**Problem 20.26** Give equations for the individual steps probably involved in the conversion of calcium cyanamide into ammonia in the presence of water. What other product or products will be formed in this process? Label each step with the name of the fundamental reaction type to which it belongs.

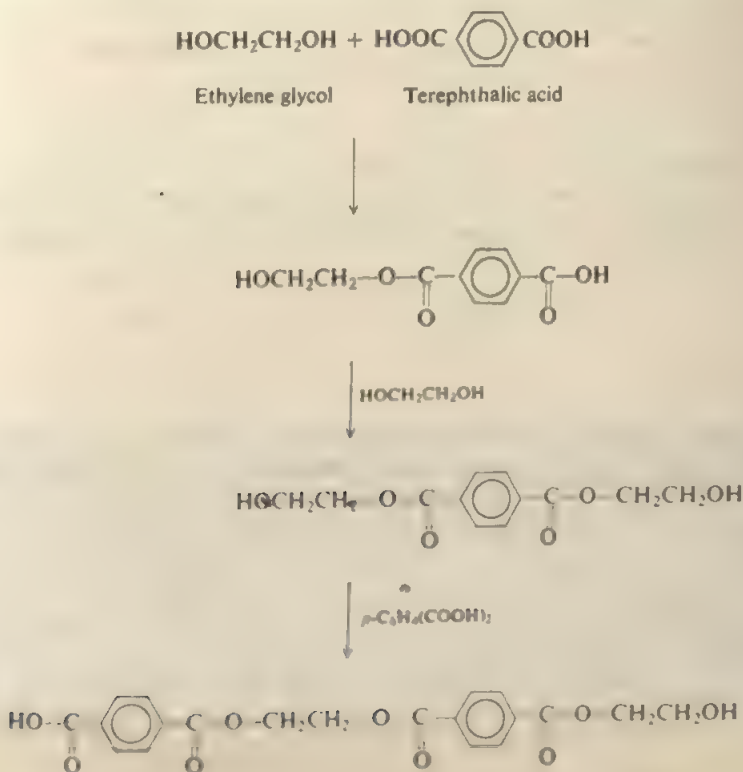
**Problem 20.27** Cyanamide reacts with water in the presence of acid or base to yield urea; with methanol in the presence of acid to yield methylisourea,  $\text{H}_2\text{NC}(=\text{NH})\text{OCH}_3$ ; with hydrogen sulfide to yield *thiourea*,  $\text{H}_2\text{NC}(=\text{S})\text{NH}_2$ ; and with ammonia to yield *guanidine*,  $\text{H}_2\text{NC}(=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2$ . (a) What functional group of cyanamide is involved in each of these reactions? (b) To what general class of reaction do these belong? (c) Show the most probable mechanisms for these reactions, pointing out the function of acid or base wherever involved.

## 20.24 Step-reaction polymerization. Polyesters. Urea-formaldehyde resins. Polyurethanes

Carboxylic acids react with alcohols to form esters. When an acid that contains more than one  $-\text{COOH}$  group reacts with an alcohol that contains more than one  $-\text{OH}$  group, then the products are *polyesters*. For example:



These are examples of *step-reaction polymerization*. In contrast to the chain-reaction polymerization we studied earlier (Sec. 9.31), reaction here does not depend on chain-carrying free radicals or ions. Instead, the steps are essentially independent of each other; they just happen to involve more than one functional group in a monomer molecule. Ethylene glycol, for example, reacts with a dicarboxylic acid to form an ester; but each moiety of the simple ester still contains a group that can react to generate another ester linkage and hence a larger molecule, which itself can react further, and so on.

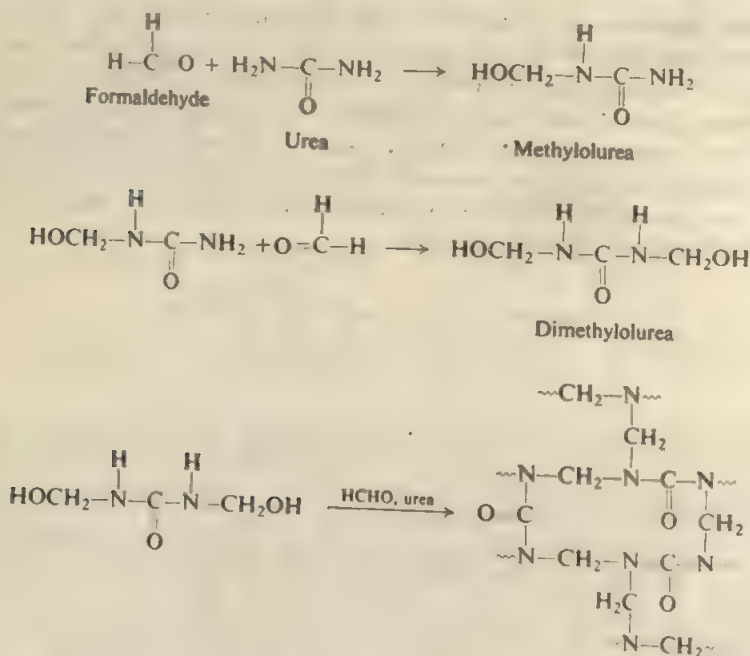




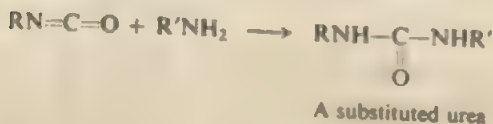
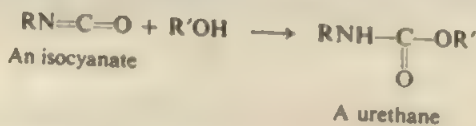
If each monomer molecule contains just two functional groups, growth can occur in only two directions, and a *linear* polymer is obtained, as in Dacron. But if reaction can occur at more than two positions in a monomer, there is formed a highly cross-linked *space network* polymer, as in Glyptal, an *alkyd resin*. Dacron and Glyptal are both polyesters, but their structures are quite different and so are their uses (see Sec. 9.37).

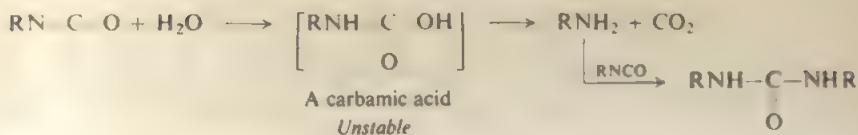
**Problem 20.28** Work out a possible structure for an alkyd resin formed from phthalic anhydride and glycerol, considering the following points: (a) In the first stage a linear polyester is formed. (Which hydroxyl groups are esterified more rapidly, primary or secondary?) (b) In the second stage these linear molecules are cross-linked to give a rather rigid network.

As a *diamide*, urea is capable of forming polymers; it reacts with formaldehyde to form the *urea-formaldehyde resins*, highly important in molded plastics. Here, too, a *space-network* polymer is formed.



Organic *isocyanates*,  $\text{RN}=\text{C}=\text{O}$ , undergo reactions of the following kinds, all of which are used, in one way or another, in the synthesis of polymers. Reaction of





dihydroxy alcohols with diisocyanates gives the important polyurethanes.

**Problem 20.29** Give the structure of the polymer expected from the reaction of ethylene glycol and 2,4-tolylene diisocyanate, 2,4-(OCN)<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>.

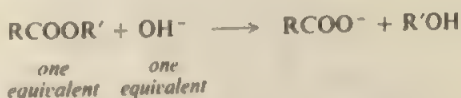
## 20.25 Analysis of carboxylic acid derivatives. Saponification equivalent

Functional derivatives of carboxylic acids are recognized by their hydrolysis—under more or less vigorous conditions—to carboxylic acids. Just *which kind* of derivative it is is indicated by the other products of the hydrolysis.

**Problem 20.30** Which kind (or kinds) of acid derivative: (a) rapidly forms a white precipitate (insoluble in HNO<sub>3</sub>) upon treatment with alcoholic silver nitrate? (b) reacts with boiling aqueous NaOH to liberate a gas that turns moist litmus paper blue? (c) reacts immediately with cold NaOH to liberate a gas that turns moist litmus blue? (d) yields *only* a carboxylic acid upon hydrolysis? (e) yields an alcohol when heated with acid or base?

Identification or proof of structure of an acid derivative involves the identification or proof of structure of the carboxylic acid formed upon hydrolysis (Sec. 19.21). In the case of an ester, the alcohol that is obtained is also identified (Sec. 11.14). (In the case of a substituted amide, Sec. 23.7, the amine obtained is identified, Sec. 23.21.)

If an ester is hydrolyzed in a known amount of base (taken in excess), the amount of base used up can be measured and used to give the **saponification equivalent**: the equivalent weight of the ester, which is similar to the neutralization equivalent of an acid (see Sec. 19.21).



**Problem 20.31** (a) What is the saponification equivalent of *n*-propyl acetate? (b) There are eight other simple aliphatic esters that have the same saponification equivalent. What are they? (c) In contrast, how many simple aliphatic acids have this equivalent weight? (d) Is saponification equivalent as helpful in identification as neutralization equivalent?

**Problem 20.32** (a) How many equivalents of base would be used up by one mole of methyl phthalate, *o*-C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>(COOCH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>? What is the saponification equivalent of methyl phthalate? (b) What is the relation between saponification equivalent and the number of ester groups per molecule? (c) What is the saponification equivalent of glyceryl stearate (tristearoylglycerol)?

## 20.26 Spectroscopic analysis of carboxylic acid derivatives

**Infrared.** The infrared spectrum of an acyl compound shows the strong band in the neighborhood of  $1700\text{ cm}^{-1}$  that we have come to expect of  $\text{C}=\text{O}$  stretching (see Fig. 20.1).

The exact frequency depends on the family the compound belongs to (see Table 20.3) and, for a member of a particular family, on its exact structure. For esters, for example:

**$\text{C}=\text{O}$  stretching, strong**

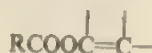
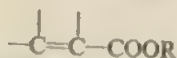
$\text{RCOOR}$   $1740\text{ cm}^{-1}$

$\text{ArCOOR}$   $1715\text{--}1730\text{ cm}^{-1}$

$\text{RCOOAr}$   $1770\text{ cm}^{-1}$

or

or



Esters are distinguished from acids by the absence of the  $\text{O}-\text{H}$  band. They are distinguished from ketones by two strong  $\text{C}-\text{O}$  stretching bands in the  $1050\text{--}1300\text{ cm}^{-1}$  region; the exact position of these bands, too, depends on the ester's structure.

Besides the carbonyl band, amides ( $\text{RCONH}_2$ ) show absorption due to  $\text{N}-\text{H}$  stretching in the  $3050\text{--}3550\text{ cm}^{-1}$  region (the number of bands and their location depending on the degree of hydrogen bonding), and absorption due to  $\text{N}-\text{H}$  bending in the  $1600\text{--}1640\text{ cm}^{-1}$  region.

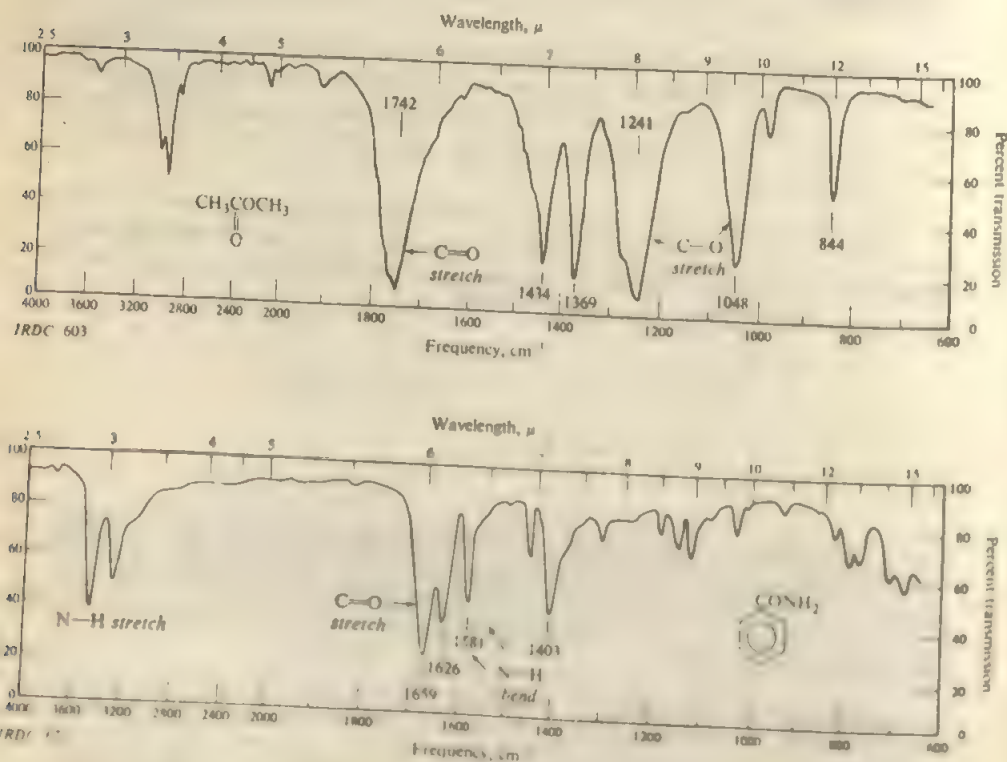


Figure 20.1. Infrared spectra of (a) methyl acetate and (b) benzamide

Table 20.3 INFRARED ABSORPTION BY SOME OXYGEN COMPOUNDS

Compound	O—H	C—O	C=O
Alcohols	3200–3600 $\text{cm}^{-1}$	1000–1200 $\text{cm}^{-1}$	—
Phenols	3200–3600	1140–1230	—
Ethers, aliphatic	—	1060–1150	—
Ethers, aromatic	—	1200–1275	—
		1020–1075	
Aldehydes, ketones	—	—	1675–1725 $\text{cm}^{-1}$
Carboxylic acids	2500–3000	1250	1680–1725
Esters	—	1050–1300 (two bands)	1715–1740
Acid chlorides	—	—	1750–1810
Amides ( $\text{RCONH}_2$ )	(N—H 3050–3550)	—	1650–1690

NMR. As we can see in Table 17.4 (p. 696), the protons in the alkyl portion of an ester ( $\text{RCOOCH}_2\text{R}'$ ) absorb farther downfield than the protons in the acyl portion ( $\text{RCH}_2\text{COOR}'$ ).

Absorption by the  $-\text{CO}-\text{NH}$  protons of an amide appears in the range  $\delta$  5–8, typically as a broad, low hump.

## PROBLEMS

### 1. Draw structures and give names of:

- nine isomeric esters of formula  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_2$
- six isomeric esters of formula  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_8\text{O}_2$
- three isomeric methyl esters of formula  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_4$

2. Write balanced equations, naming all organic products, for the reaction (if any) of *n*-butyryl chloride with:

- |                              |                                   |   |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| (a) $\text{H}_2\text{O}$     | (f) nitrobenzene, $\text{AlCl}_3$ | (k) $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{N}$             |
| (b) isopropyl alcohol        | (g) $\text{NaHCO}_3$ (aq)         | (l) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2$     |
| (c) <i>p</i> -nitrophenol    | (h) alcoholic $\text{AgNO}_3$     | (m) $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CuLi}$ |
| (d) ammonia                  | (i) $\text{CH}_3\text{NH}_2$      | (n) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{MgBr}$     |
| (e) toluene, $\text{AlCl}_3$ | (j) $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NH}$    |   |

(Check your answers to (i) through (l) in Sec. 23.7.)

3. Answer Problem 2, parts (a) through (l), for acetic anhydride.

4. Write equations to show the reaction (if any) of succinic anhydride with:

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| (a) hot aqueous $\text{NaOH}$                      | (d) aqueous ammonia, then strong heat |
| (b) aqueous ammonia                                | (e) benzyl alcohol                    |
| (c) aqueous ammonia, then cold dilute $\text{HCl}$ | (f) toluene, $\text{AlCl}_3$ , heat   |

5. Write balanced equations, naming all organic products, for the reaction (if any) of phenylacetamide with: (a) hot  $\text{HCl}$  (aq), (b) hot  $\text{NaOH}$  (aq).

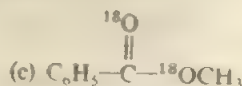
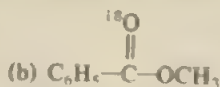
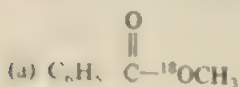
6. Answer Problem 5 for phenylacetonitrile

7. Write balanced equations, naming all organic products, for the reaction (if any) of methyl *n*-butyrate with:

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| (a) hot $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ (aq)                             | (e) ammonia                      |
| (b) hot $\text{KOH}$ (aq)  | (f) phenylmagnesium bromide      |
| (c) isopropyl alcohol + $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$                  | (g) isobutylmagnesium bromide    |
| (d) benzyl alcohol + $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{ONa}$ | (h) $\text{LiAlH}_4$ , then acid |

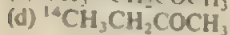
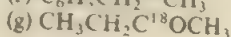
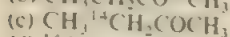
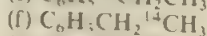
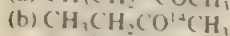
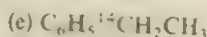
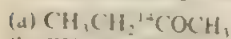


8. Outline the synthesis of each of the following labeled compounds, using  $\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$  as the source of  $^{18}\text{O}$ .



Predict the product obtained from each upon alkaline hydrolysis in ordinary  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

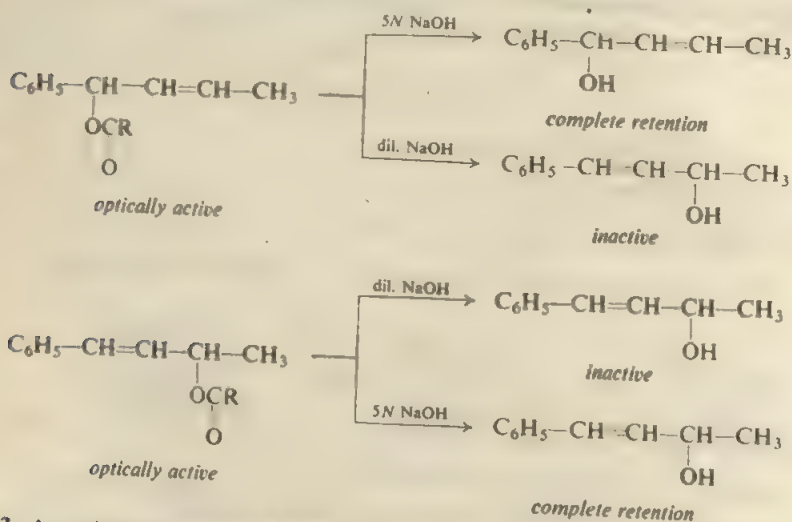
9. Outline the synthesis of each of the following labeled compounds, using  $^{14}\text{CO}_2$  or  $^{14}\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$  and  $\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$  as the source of the "tagged" atoms.



10. Predict the product of the reaction of  $\gamma$ -butyrolactone with (a) ammonia, (b)  $\text{LiAlH}_4$ , (c)  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ .

11. When *sec*-butyl alcohol of rotation  $+13.8^\circ$  was treated with tosyl chloride, and the resulting tosylate was allowed to react with sodium benzoate, there was obtained *sec*-butyl benzoate. Alkaline hydrolysis of this ester gave *sec*-butyl alcohol of rotation  $-13.4^\circ$ . In which step must inversion have taken place? How do you account for this?

12. Account for the following observations.



13. An unknown compound is believed to be one of the following, all of which boil within a few degrees of each other. Describe how you would go about finding out which of the possibilities the unknown actually is. Where possible use simple chemical tests; where necessary use more elaborate chemical methods like quantitative hydrogenation, cleavage, neutralization equivalent, saponification equivalent, etc. Make use of any needed tables of physical constants.

benzyl acetate    isopropyl benzoate    methyl *o*-toluate    methyl *p*-toluate  
ethyl benzoate    methyl phenylacetate    methyl *m*-toluate

14. Describe simple chemical tests that would serve to distinguish between:

- propionic acid and methyl acetate
- n*-butyryl chloride and *n*-butyl chloride
- p*-nitrobenzamide and ethyl *p*-nitrobenzoate
- glyceryl tristearate and glyceryl trioleate
- benzonitrile and nitrobenzene

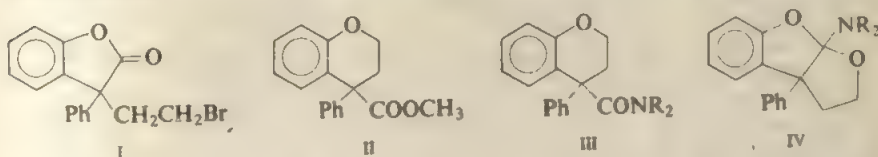
- (f) acetic anhydride and *n*-butyl alcohol  
 (g) glyceryl monopalmitate and glyceryl tripalmitate  
 (h) ammonium benzoate and benzamide  
 (i) *p*-bromobenzoic acid and benzoyl bromide

Tell exactly what you would *do* and *see*.

15. Tell how you would separate by chemical means the following mixtures, recovering each component in reasonably pure form: (a) benzoic acid and ethyl benzoate, (b) *n*-valeronitrile and *n*-valeric acid; (c) ammonium benzoate and benzamide. Tell exactly what you would do and see.

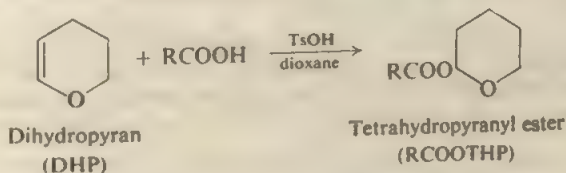
16. For many years esters have sometimes been synthesized by the reaction of sodium carboxylates with alkyl halides, but the method has not been a particularly good one. Recently, however, a simple modification in the experimental procedure has been found to increase yields dramatically. Can you suggest what this change is likely to have been?

17. Treatment of I with  $\text{NaOCH}_3$  gives product II; treatment of I with  $\text{R}_2\text{NH}$  gives the corresponding product III. (a) Show all steps in the most likely mechanism for these rearrangements.



(b) From the reaction of I with  $\text{R}_2\text{NH}$ , there is also obtained IV. How is IV probably formed? Of what general significance is its isolation?

18. Carboxyl groups are often masked by reaction with dihydropyran (Sec. 12.8), which yields esters that are stable toward base but easily hydrolyzed by dilute aqueous acids. Account in detail both for the formation of these esters and for their ease of hydrolysis.

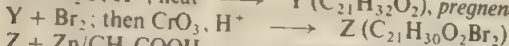
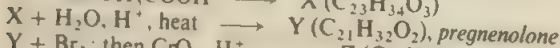
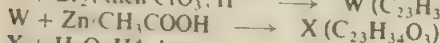
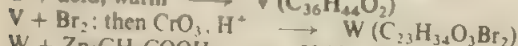
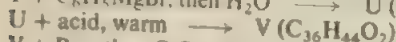
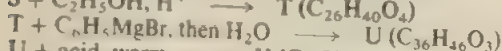
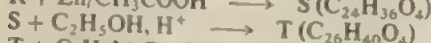
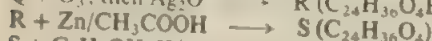
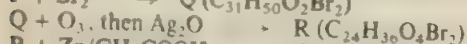
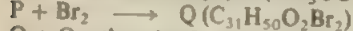
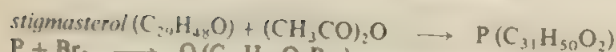
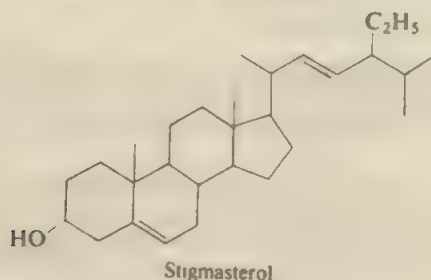


19. Treatment of 2,4-pentanedione with  $\text{KCN}$  and acetic acid, followed by hydrolysis, gives two products, A and B. Both A and B are dicarboxylic acids of formula  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$ . A melts at  $98^\circ$ . When heated, B gives first a lactonic acid ( $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_5$ , m.p.  $90^\circ$ ) and finally a dilactone ( $\text{C}_7\text{H}_8\text{O}_4$ , m.p.  $105^\circ$ ). (a) What structure must B have that permits ready formation of both a monolactone and a dilactone? (b) What is the structure of A? (*Hint*: Use models.)

20. Give the structures (including configurations where pertinent) of components C through O.

- (a) urea ( $\text{H}_2\text{NCONH}_2$ ) + hot dilute  $\text{NaOH} \longrightarrow \text{C} + \text{NH}_3$   
 (b) phosgene ( $\text{COCl}_2$ ) + 1 mol  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$ , then +  $\text{NH}_3 \longrightarrow \text{D} (\text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{O}_2\text{N})$   
 (c) bromobenzene +  $\text{Mg}$ , ether  $\longrightarrow \text{E} (\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{MgBr})$   
 $\text{E} + \text{ethylene oxide, followed by } \text{H}^+ \longrightarrow \text{F} (\text{C}_8\text{H}_{10}\text{O})$   
 $\text{F} + \text{PBr}_3 \longrightarrow \text{G} (\text{C}_8\text{H}_9\text{Br})$   
 $\text{G} + \text{NaCN} \longrightarrow \text{H} (\text{C}_9\text{H}_9\text{N})$   
 $\text{H} + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4, \text{H}_2\text{O, heat} \longrightarrow \text{I} (\text{C}_9\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_2)$   
 $\text{I} + \text{SOCl}_2 \longrightarrow \text{J} (\text{C}_9\text{H}_9\text{OCl})$   
 $\text{J} + \text{anhydrous HF} \longrightarrow \text{K} (\text{C}_9\text{H}_9\text{O})$   
 $\text{K} + \text{H}_2, \text{catalyst} \longrightarrow \text{L} (\text{C}_9\text{H}_{10}\text{O})$   
 $\text{L} + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4, \text{warm} \longrightarrow \text{M} (\text{C}_9\text{H}_8)$   
 (d) *trans*-2-methylcyclohexanol + acetyl chloride  $\longrightarrow \text{N}$   
 $\text{N} + \text{NaOH (aq)} + \text{heat} \longrightarrow \text{O} + \text{sodium acetate}$

21. *Progesterone* is a hormone, secreted by the corpus luteum, that is involved in the control of pregnancy. Its structure was established, in part, by the following synthesis from the steroid *stigmasterol*, obtained from soybean oil.



(a) Give structures for progesterone and the intermediates P-Z.

(b) Progesterone shows strong absorption in the near ultraviolet:  $\lambda_{\text{max}}$  240 nm,  $\epsilon_{\text{max}}$  17,600. On this basis, what is the structure for progesterone?

22. On the basis of the following evidence assign structures to: (a) Compounds AA to DD, isomers of formula  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_4$ ; (b) compounds EE to MM, isomers of formula  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_8\text{O}_3$ . (Note:  $\alpha$ -Hydroxy ketones,  $-\text{CHOH}-\text{CO}-$ , give positive tests with Tollens' reagent and with Fehling's and Benedict's solutions (p. 1060), but negative Schiff's tests.)

	$\text{NaHCO}_3$	Acetic anhydride	Tollens'	Schiff's	$\text{HIO}_4$
(a) AA	—	$\text{C}_7\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_4$	—	—	—
BB	—	$\text{C}_7\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_4$	—	—	—
CC	—	$\text{C}_5\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_3$	—	—	+
DD	—	—	— <sup>1</sup>	— <sup>1</sup>	—
(b) EE	—	$\text{C}_5\text{H}_8\text{O}_3$	+	+	+
FF	—	$\text{C}_5\text{H}_8\text{O}_3$	+	—	+
GG	—	$\text{C}_5\text{H}_8\text{O}_3$	+	+	—
HH	$\text{CO}_2$	—	—	—	—
II	— <sup>2</sup>	—	—	—	—
JJ	—	—	+	—	—
KK	—	—	—	—	—
LL	—	$\text{C}_7\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_4$	—	—	+
MM	—	—	— <sup>1</sup>	— <sup>1</sup>	— <sup>1</sup>
	—	$\text{C}_5\text{H}_8\text{O}_3$	—	—	— <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> After treatment with dilute acid, solution gives positive test

<sup>2</sup> After treatment with NaOH, solution gives positive iodoform test.

23. 2,5-Dimethyl-1,1-cyclopentanedicarboxylic acid can be prepared as a mixture of two optically inactive substances of different physical properties, NN and OO. When each

is heated and the reaction mixture worked up by fractional crystallization. NN yields a single product, PP, of formula  $C_8H_{14}O_2$ , and OO yields two products, QQ and RR, both of formula  $C_8H_{14}O_2$ .

(a) Give stereochemical formulas for NN, OO, PP, QQ, and RR. (b) Describe another method by which you could assign configurations to NN and OO.

24. (a) (–)-Erythrose,  $C_4H_8O_4$ , gives tests with Tollens' reagent and Benedict's solution (p. 1060), and is oxidized by bromine water to an optically active acid,  $C_4H_6O_6$ . Treatment with acetic anhydride yields  $C_{10}H_{14}O_7$ . Erythrose consumes three moles of  $HIO_4$  and yields three moles of formic acid and one mole of formaldehyde. Oxidation of erythrose by nitric acid yields an *optically inactive* compound of formula  $C_4H_6O_6$ .

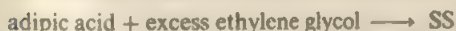
(–)-Threose, an isomer of erythrose, shows similar chemical behavior except that nitric acid oxidation yields an *optically active* compound of formula  $C_4H_6O_6$ .

On the basis of this evidence what structure or structures are possible for (–)-erythrose? For (–)-threose?

(b) When *R*-glyceraldehyde,  $CH_2OHCHOHCHO$ , is treated with cyanide and the resulting product is hydrolyzed, two monocarboxylic acids are formed (see Problem 11, p. 765). These acids are identical with the acids obtained by oxidation with bromine water of (–)-threose and (–)-erythrose.

Assign a single structure to (–)-erythrose and to (–)-threose.

25. Material similar to foam rubber can be made by the following sequence:



Write equations for all steps, and show structures for SS, TT, UU, and VV. Be sure to account for the cross-linking in the final polymer, and its *foamy* character. (Remember: A foam is a dispersion of a gas in a solid.)

26. Which (if any) of the following compounds could give rise to each of the infrared spectra shown in Fig. 20.2 (p. 852)?

ethyl acetate

ethyl acrylate ( $CH_2=CHCOOC_2H_5$ )

isobutyric acid

methacrylic acid [ $CH_2=C(CH_3)COOH$ ]

methacrylamide [ $CH_2=C(CH_3)CONH_2$ ]

phenylacetamide

27. Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the NMR spectra shown in Fig. 20.3 (p. 853).

28. Give the structures of compounds WW, XX, and YY on the basis of their infrared spectra (Fig. 20.4, p. 854) and their NMR spectra (Fig. 20.5, p. 855)

29. Give a structure or structures consistent with the NMR spectrum shown in Fig. 20.6 (p. 856).

30. Give the structure of compound ZZ on the basis of its infrared and NMR spectra shown in Fig. 20.7 (p. 856).

31. Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the NMR spectra shown in Fig. 20.8 (p. 857).



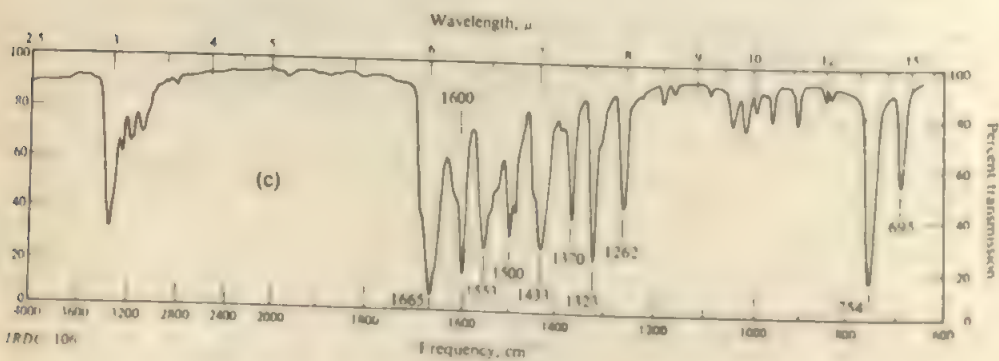
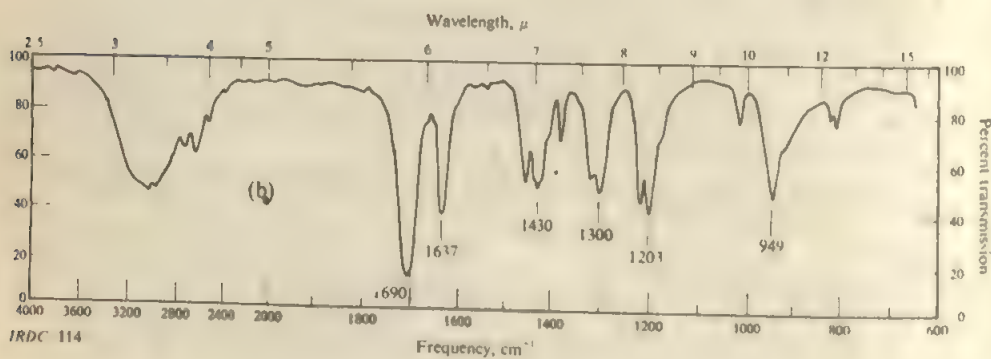
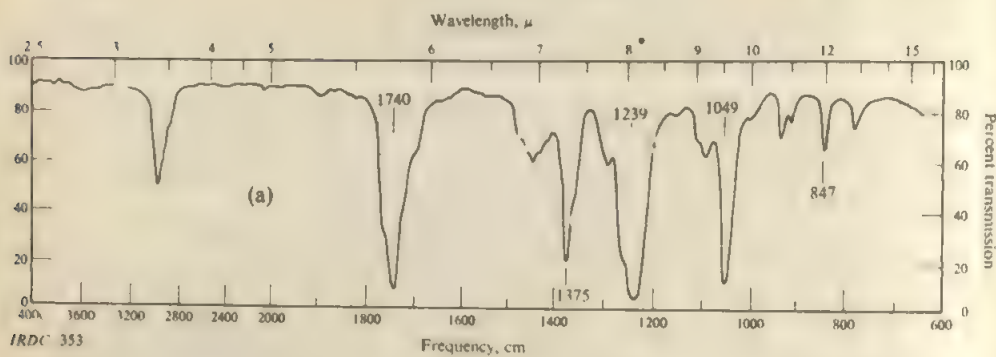


Figure 20.2. Infrared spectra for Problem 26, p 851

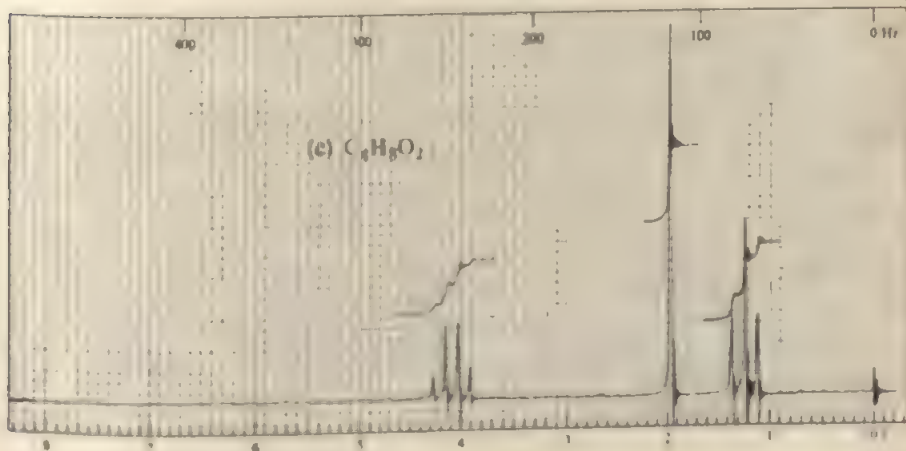
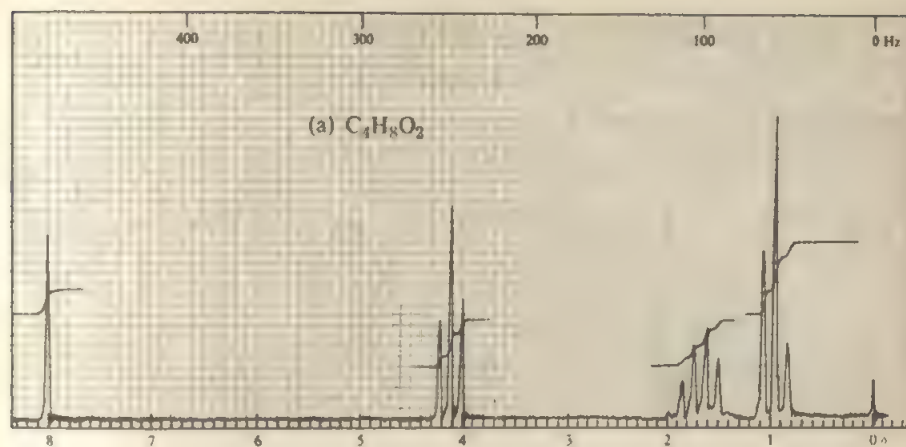


Figure 20.3. NMR spectra for Problem 27, p. 851

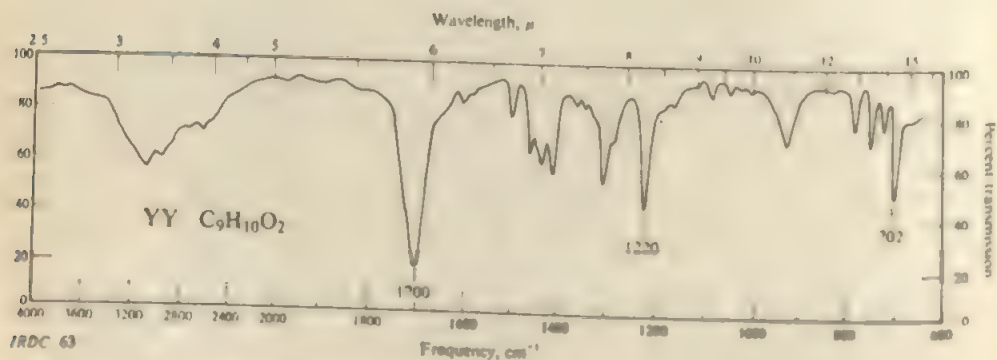
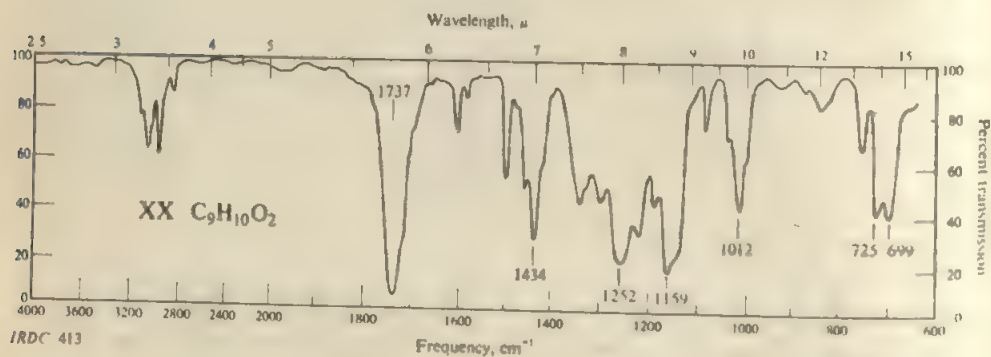
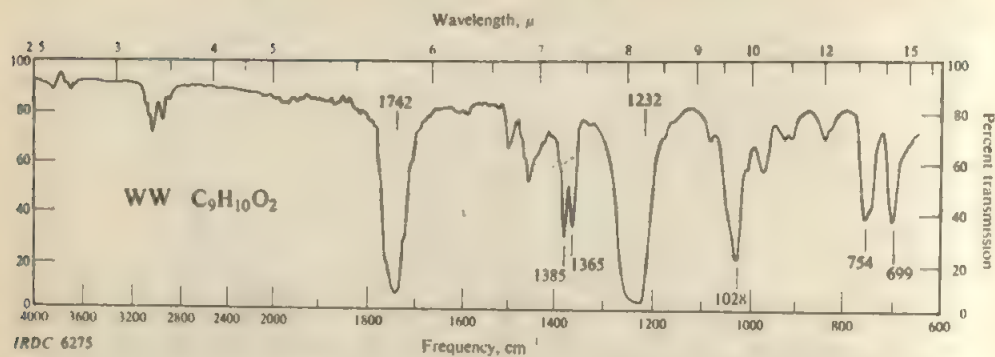


Figure 20.4. Infrared spectra for Problem 28, p. 851

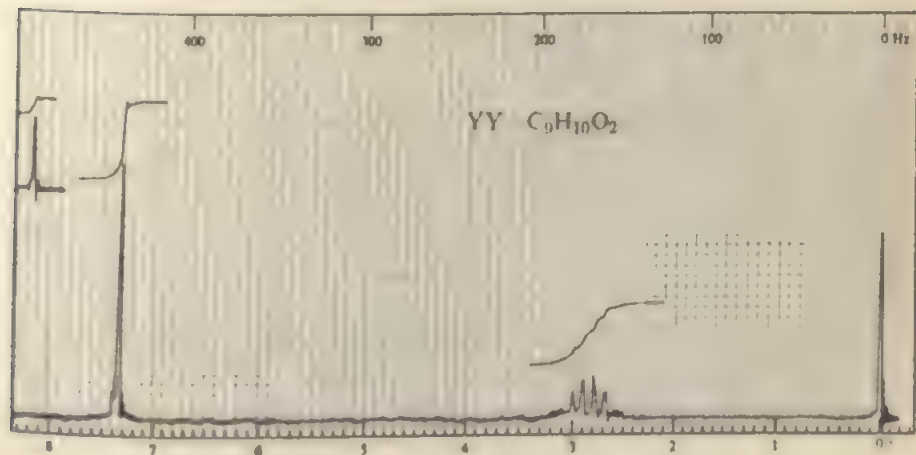
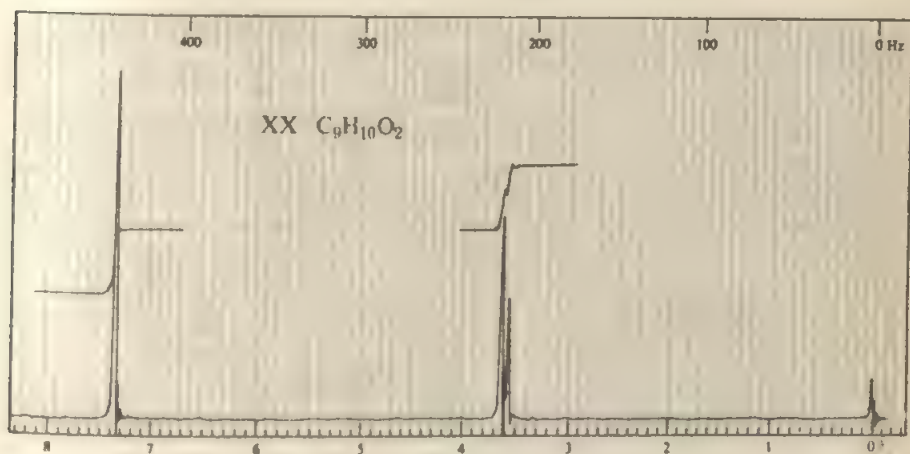
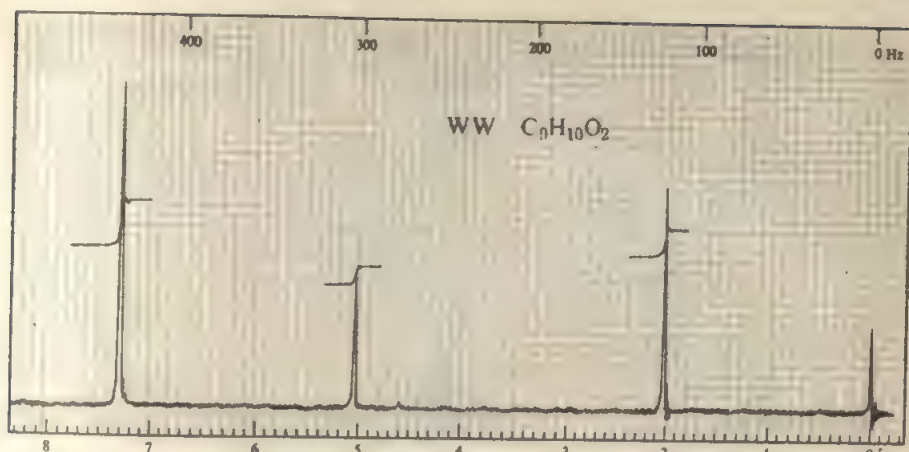


Figure 20.5. NMR spectra for Problem 28, p. 851



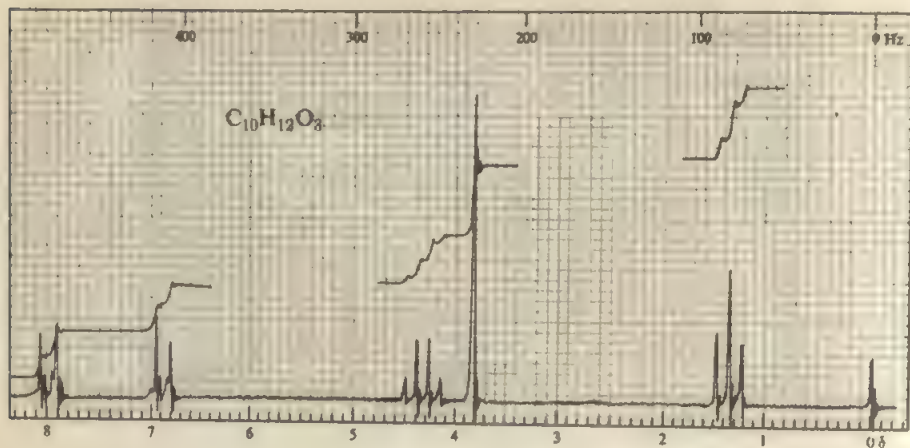


Figure 20.6. NMR spectrum for Problem 29, p. 851.

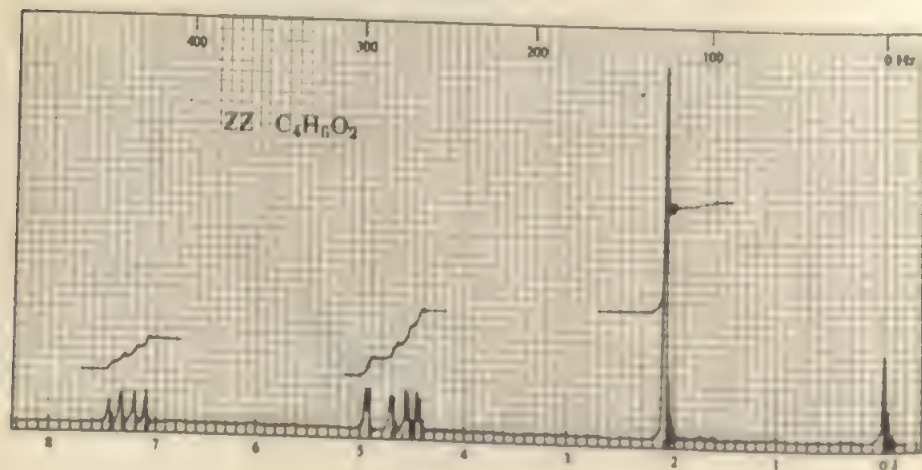
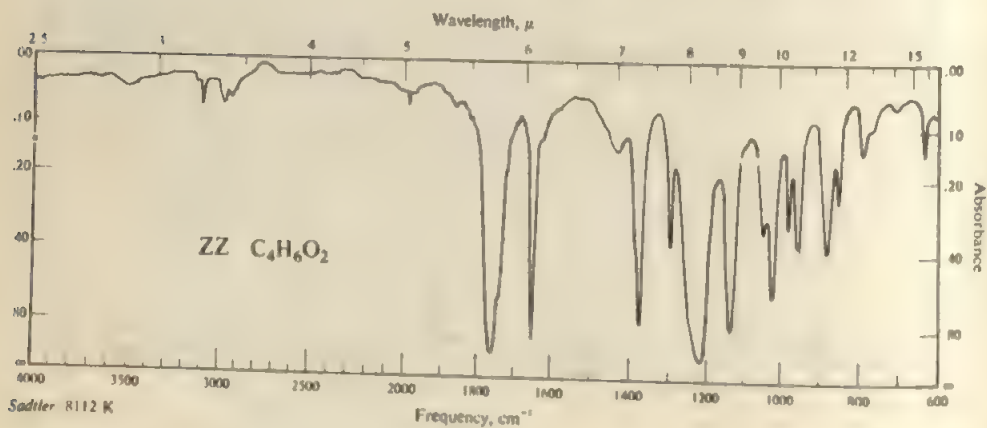


Figure 20.7. Infrared and NMR spectra for Problem 30, p. 851

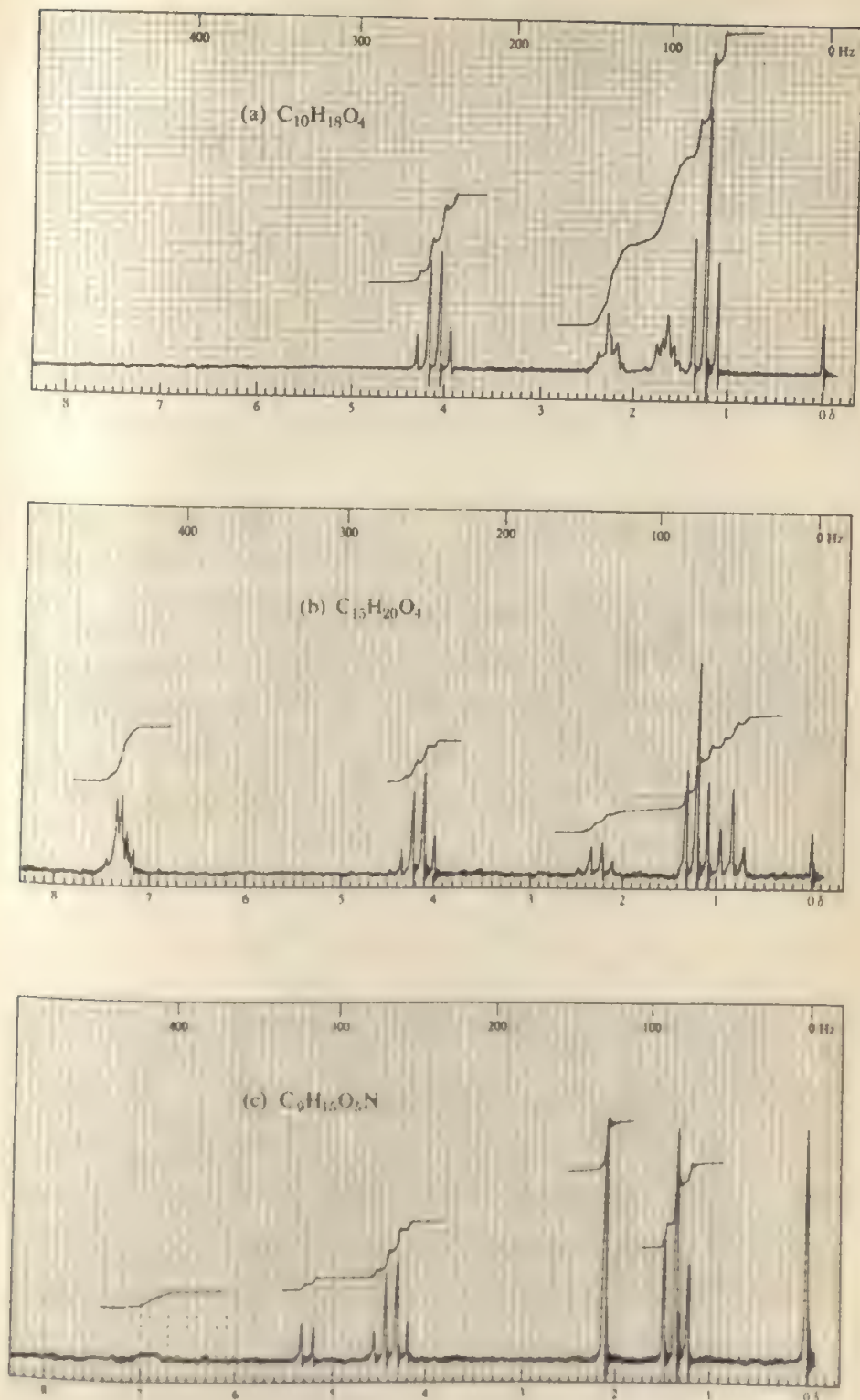


Figure 20.8. NMR spectra for Problem 31, p. 851.



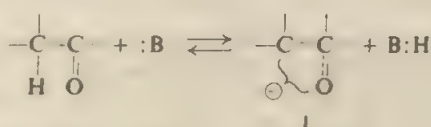
## Carbanions I

### *Aldol and Claisen Condensations*

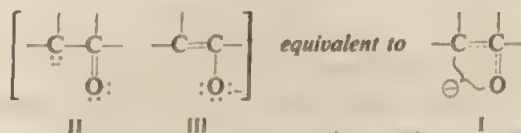
#### 21.1 Acidity of $\alpha$ -hydrogens

In our introduction to aldehydes and ketones, we learned that it is the carbonyl group that largely determines the chemistry of aldehydes and ketones. At that time, we saw in part how the carbonyl group does this: by providing a site at which nucleophilic addition can take place. Now we are ready to learn another part of the story: how the carbonyl group strengthens the acidity of the hydrogen atoms attached to the  $\alpha$ -carbon and, by doing this, gives rise to a whole set of chemical reactions.

Ionization of an  $\alpha$ -hydrogen,



yields a carbanion I that is a resonance hybrid of two structures, II and III,



resonance that is possible only through participation by the carbonyl group. Resonance of this kind is *not* possible for carbanions formed by ionization of  $\beta$ -hydrogens,  $\gamma$ -hydrogens, etc., from saturated carbonyl compounds.

**Problem 21.1** Which structure, II or III, would you expect to make the larger contribution to the carbanion I? Why?

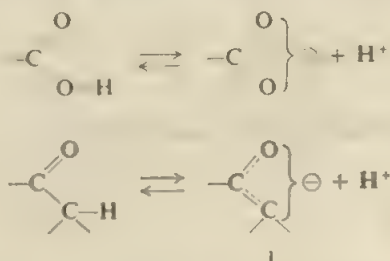


**Problem 21.2** Account for the fact that the diketone acetylacetone (2,4-pentanedione) is about as acidic as phenol, and much more acidic than, say, acetone. Which hydrogens are the most acidic?

**Problem 21.3** How do you account for the following order of acidity?



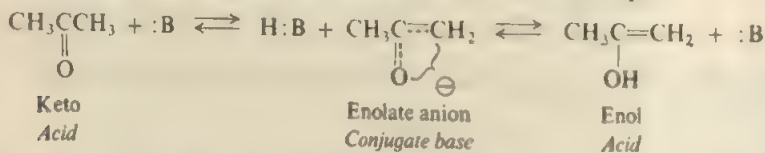
The carbonyl group thus affects the acidity of  $\alpha$ -hydrogens in just the way it affects the acidity of carboxylic acids: by helping to accommodate the negative charge of the anion.



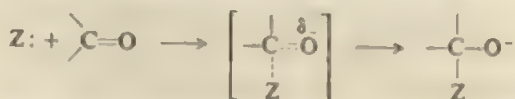
Resonance in I involves structures (II and III) of quite different stabilities, and hence is much less important than the resonance involving equivalent structures in a carboxylate ion. Compared with the hydrogen of a  $\text{—COOH}$  group, the  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms of an aldehyde or ketone are very weakly acidic; the important thing is that they are considerably more acidic than hydrogen atoms anywhere else in the molecule, and that they are acidic enough for *significant*—even though very low—concentrations of carbanions to be generated.

We call I a *carbanion* since it is the conjugate base of a *carbon acid*, that is, an acid which loses its proton from carbon (Sec. 7.16). The stability that gives these ions their importance is due, however, to the very fact that most of the charge is carried *not* by carbon but by oxygen.

A carbanion like this, stabilized by an adjacent carbonyl group, is often called an *enolate anion*, since the anion is, formally, the conjugate base not only of the *keto* form of the carbonyl compound but of the *enol* form as well (Sec. 13.10). For example:

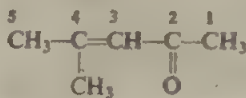


We saw before (Sec. 18.8) that the susceptibility of the carbonyl group to nucleophilic attack is due to the ability of oxygen to accommodate the negative charge that develops as a result of the attack,



precisely the same property of oxygen that underlies the acidity of  $\alpha$ -hydrogens. We have started with two apparently unrelated chemical properties of carbonyl compounds and have traced them to a common origin—an indication of the simplicity underlying the seeming confusion of organic chemistry.

**Problem 21.4** In the reaction of aqueous NaCN with an  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated ketone like



$\text{CN}^-$  adds, not to C-2, but to C-4. (a) How do you account for this behavior? (b) What product would you expect to isolate from the reaction mixture? (*Hint*: See Secs. 18.12 and 9.26.) (Check your answers in Sec. 32.5.)

## 21.2 Reactions involving carbanions

The carbonyl group occurs in compounds other than aldehydes and ketones—in esters, for example—and, wherever it is, it makes any  $\alpha$ -hydrogens acidic and thus aids in formation of carbanions. Since these  $\alpha$ -hydrogens are only weakly acidic, however, the carbanions are highly basic, exceedingly reactive particles. In their reactions they behave as we would expect: as *nucleophiles*. As nucleophiles, carbanions can attack carbon and, in doing so, form carbon-carbon bonds. *From the standpoint of synthesis, acid-strengthening by carbonyl groups is probably the most important structural effect in organic chemistry.*

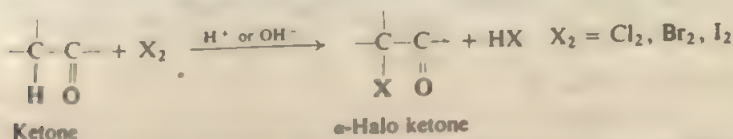
We shall take up first the behavior of ketones toward the halogens, and see evidence that carbanions do indeed exist; at the same time, we shall see an elegant example of the application of kinetics, stereochemistry, and isotopic tracers to the understanding of reaction mechanisms. And while we are at it, we shall see something of the role that keto-enol tautomerism plays in the chemistry of carbonyl compounds.

Next, we shall turn to reactions in which the carbonyl group plays *both* its roles: the *aldol condensation*, in which a carbanion generated from one molecule of aldehyde or ketone adds, as a nucleophile, to the carbonyl group of a second molecule; and the *Claisen condensation*, in which a carbanion generated from one molecule of ester attacks the carbonyl group of a second molecule, with acyl substitution as the final result.

But, as we know, nucleophiles can attack not only carbonyl carbon but also the carbon of alkyl halides and related compounds, to bring about nucleophilic aliphatic substitution (Chap. 6). Carbanions can do this, too, as we shall see in the *malonic ester* and *acetoacetic ester syntheses* (Chap. 26). Then, in the *Michael addition* (Sec. 32.7), we shall find carbanions undergoing—as other nucleophiles do—nucleophilic conjugate addition to  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds (Chap. 32).

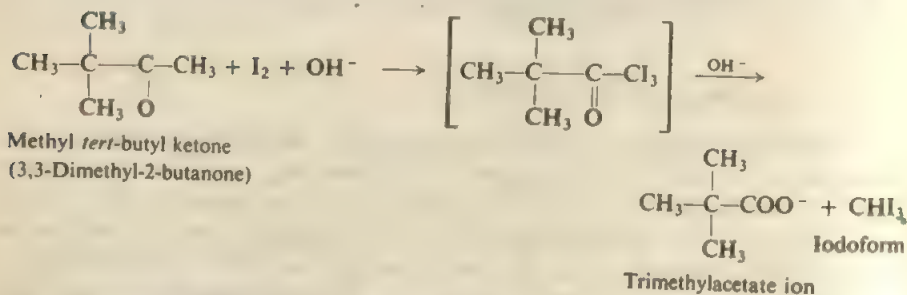
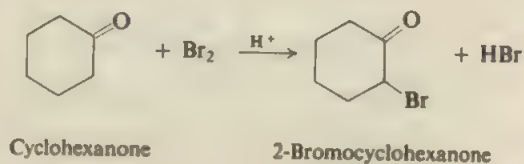
## REACTIONS INVOLVING CARBANIONS

### 1. Halogenation of ketones. Discussed in Secs. 21.3–21.4.



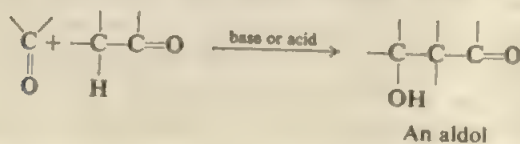
CONT.

Examples:

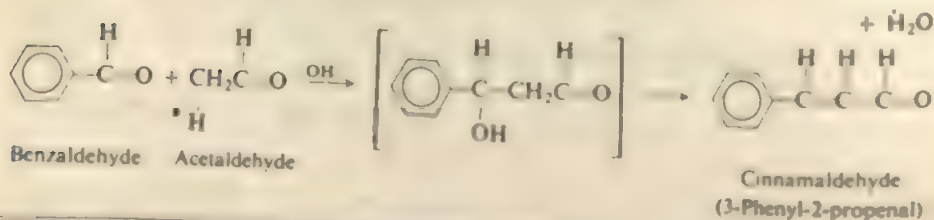
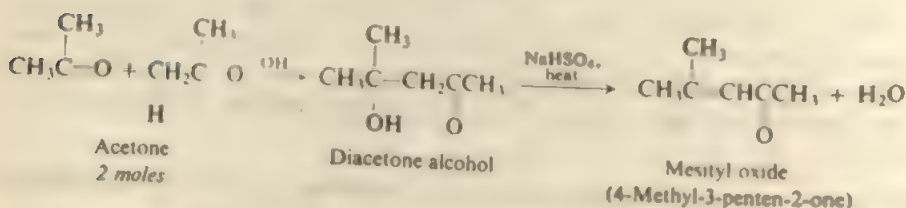
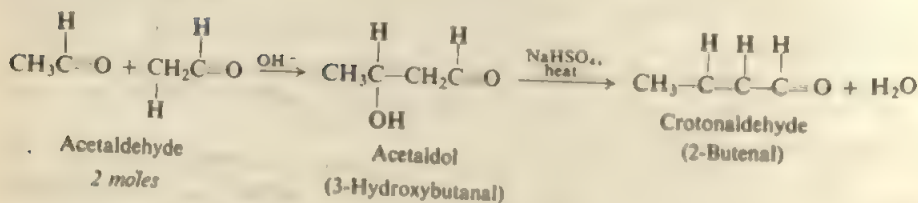


## 2. Nucleophilic addition to carbonyl compounds.

(a) Aldol condensation. Discussed in Secs. 21.5–21.8.

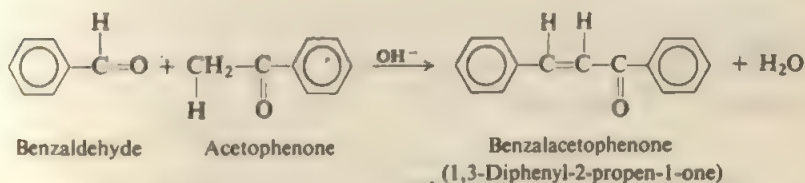
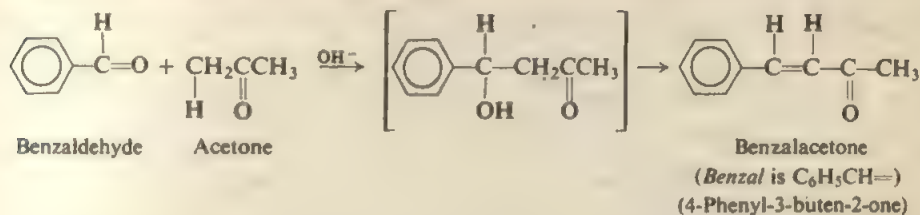
(A  $\beta$ -hydroxy carbonyl compound)

Examples:



CONT.

CONT.

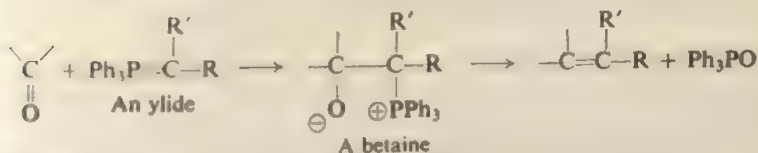


(b) Reactions related to aldol condensation. Discussed in Sec. 21.9.

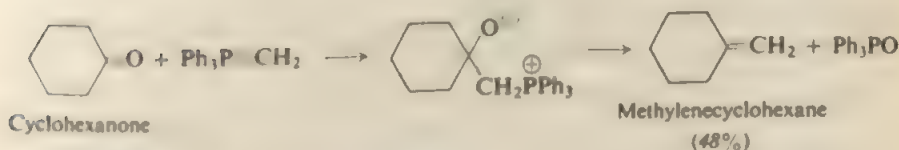
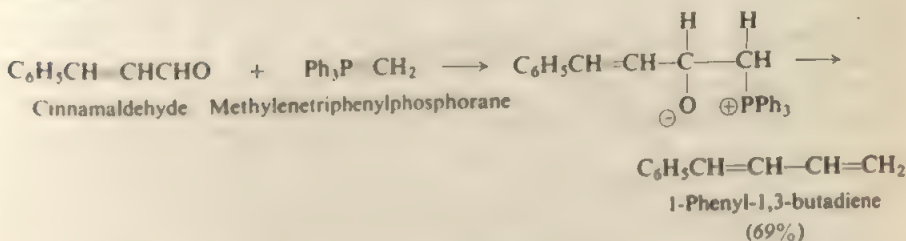
(c) Addition of Grignard reagents. Discussed in Sec. 18.11.

(d) Addition of organozinc compounds. Reformatsky reaction. Discussed in Sec. 21.13.

(e) Wittig reaction. Discussed in Sec. 21.10.

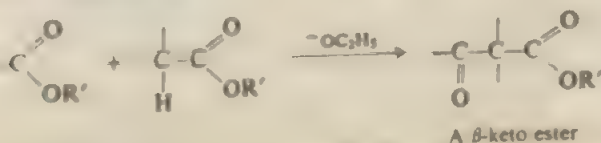


Examples:



## 3. Nucleophilic acyl substitution.

(a) Claisen condensation. Discussed in Sec. 21.11-21.12.

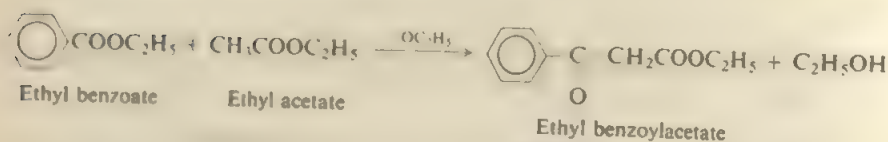
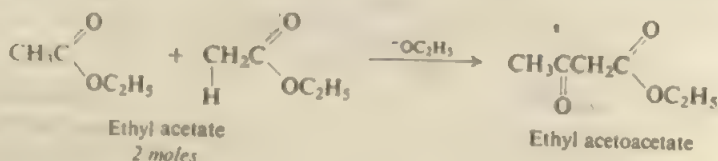


CONT.



CONT

## Examples



(b) Acylation of organocopper compounds. Discussed in Sec. 18.6.

#### 4. Nucleophilic aliphatic substitution.

(a) Coupling of alkyl halides with organometallic compounds. Discussed in Sec. 3.17.

(b) Synthesis of acetylides. Discussed in Sec. 13.12.

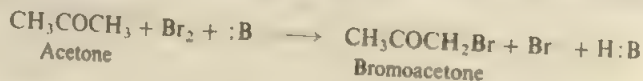
(c) Alkylation of malonic ester and acetoacetic ester. Discussed in Secs. 26.2-26.3.

#### 5. Addition to $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds. Michael addition. Discussed in Sec. 32.7.



### 21.3 Base-promoted halogenation of ketones

Acetone reacts with bromine to form bromoacetone; the reaction is accelerated by bases (e.g., hydroxide ion, acetate ion, etc.). Study of the kinetics shows that the

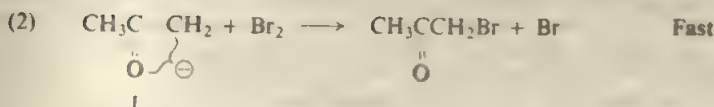
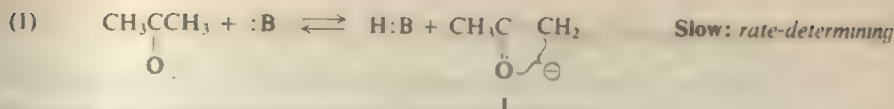


rate of reaction depends upon the concentration of acetone,  $[\text{acetone}]$ , and of base,  $[:\text{B}]$ , but is *independent of bromine concentration*:

$$\text{rate} = k [\text{acetone}] [: \text{B}]$$

We have encountered this kind of situation before (Sec. 6.19) and know, in a general way, what it must mean: if the rate of reaction does not depend upon  $[\text{Br}_2]$ , it can only mean that the reaction *whose rate we are measuring* does not involve  $\text{Br}_2$ .

The kinetics is quite consistent with the following mechanism. The base slowly abstracts a proton (step 1) from acetone to form carbanion I, which then reacts rapidly with bromine (step 2) to yield bromoacetone. Step (1), generation of the carbanion, is the rate-determining step, since its rate determines the overall rate of the reaction sequence. As fast as carbanions are generated, they are snapped up by bromine molecules.



Strong support for this interpretation comes from the kinetics of iodination. Here, too, the rate of reaction depends upon [acetone] and [:B] but is independent of  $[\text{I}_2]$ . Furthermore, and most significant, at a given [acetone] and [:B], bromination and iodination *proceed at identical rates*. That is to say, in the rate expression the

$$\text{rate} = k [\text{acetone}][:\text{B}]$$

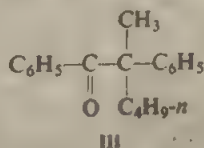
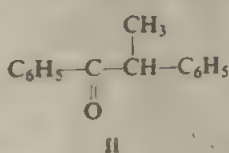
value of  $k$  is the same regardless of which halogen is involved. It *should* be, of course, according to the proposed mechanism, since in both cases it is the rate constant for the same reaction, abstraction of a proton from the ketone.

Study of the bromination of acetone, done by A. Lapworth (of the University of Manchester) in 1904, showed for the first time how kinetics could be used to reveal the mechanism of an organic reaction. The carbanion mechanism has since been confirmed not only by the iodination work, but also by studies of stereochemistry and isotopic exchange.

**Problem 21.5** Show in detail exactly how each of the following facts provides evidence for the carbanion mechanism of base-promoted halogenation of ketones.

(a) In basic solution, (+)-phenyl *sec*-butyl ketone undergoes racemization; the rate constant for loss of optical activity is identical with the rate constant for bromination of this ketone.

(b) Ketone II undergoes racemization in basic solution, but ketone III does not.



(c) When (+)-phenyl *sec*-butyl ketone is allowed to stand in  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$  containing  $\text{OD}^-$ , it not only undergoes racemization, but also becomes labeled with deuterium at the  $\alpha$ -position; the rate constants for racemization and hydrogen exchange are identical.

**Problem 21.6** (a) Suggest a mechanism for the base-catalyzed racemization of the optically active ester, ethyl mandelate,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHOHCOOC}_2\text{H}_5$ .

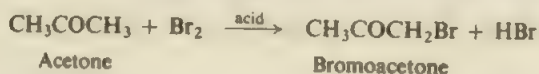
(b) How do you account for the fact that optically active mandelic acid undergoes racemization in base *much more slowly* than the ester? (*Hint*: See Sec. 19.20.)

(c) What would you predict about the rate of base-catalyzed racemization of  $\alpha$ -methylmandelic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{OH})\text{COOH}$ ?

**Problem 21.7** Suppose, as an alternative to the carbanion mechanism, that hydrogen exchange and racemization were both to arise by some kind of direct displacement of one hydrogen (H) by another (D) with inversion of configuration. What relationship would you then expect between the rates of racemization and exchange? (*Hint*: Take one molecule at a time, and see what happens when H is replaced by D with inversion.)

## 21.4 Acid-catalyzed halogenation of ketones. Enolization

Acids, like bases, speed up the halogenation of ketones. Acids are not, however, consumed, and hence we may properly speak of *acid-catalyzed* halogenation (as contrasted to *base-promoted* halogenation). Although the reaction is not, strictly

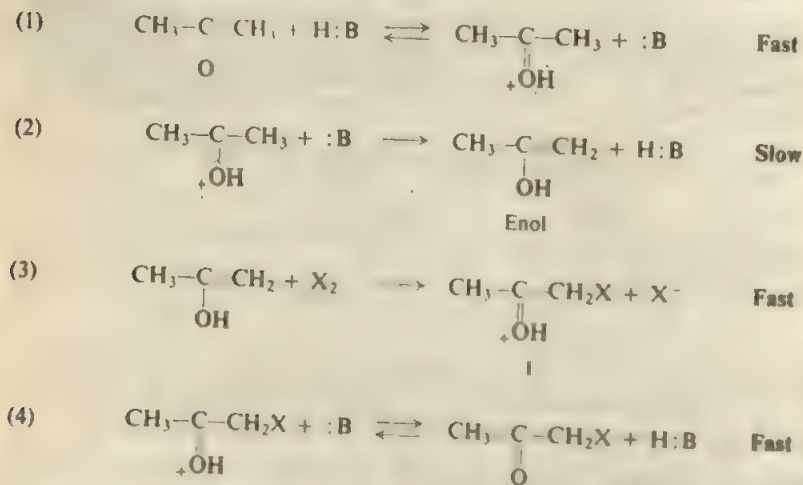


speaking, a part of carbanion chemistry, this is perhaps the best place to take it up, since it shows a striking parallel in every aspect to the base-promoted reaction we have just left.

Here, too, the kinetics shows the rate of halogenation to be independent of halogen concentration, but dependent upon ketone concentration and, this time, acid concentration. Here, too, we find the remarkable identity of rate constants for apparently different reactions: for bromination and iodination of acetone, and exchange of its hydrogens for deuterium; for iodination and racemization of phenyl *sec*-butyl ketone.

The interpretation, too, is essentially the same as the one we saw before: *preceding* the step that involves halogen, there is a rate-determining reaction that can lead not only to halogenation but also to racemization and to hydrogen exchange.

The rate-determining reaction here is the formation of the *enol*, which involves two steps: rapid, reversible protonation (step 1) of the carbonyl oxygen, followed by the slow loss of an  $\alpha$ -hydrogen (step 2).



Once formed, the enol reacts rapidly with halogen (step 3). We might have expected the unsaturated enol to undergo addition and, indeed, the reaction starts out exactly as though this were going to happen: positive halogen attaches itself to form a cation. As usual (Sec. 8.15), attachment occurs in the way that yields the more stable cation.

The ion formed in this case, I, is an exceedingly stable one, owing its stability to the fact that it is hardly a "carbocation" at all, since oxygen can carry the charge and still have an octet of electrons. The ion is, actually, a protonated ketone; loss of the proton yields the product, bromoacetone.

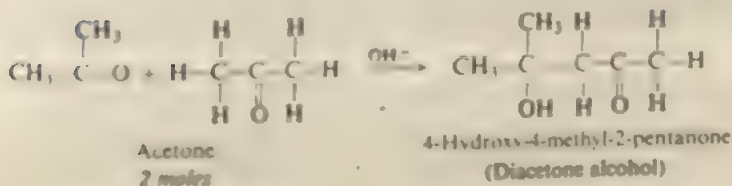
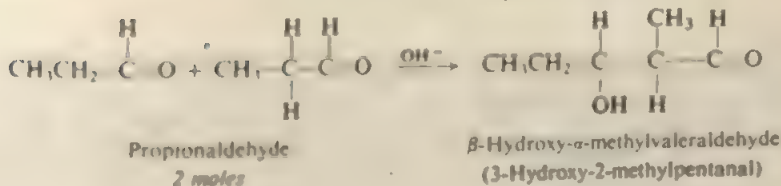
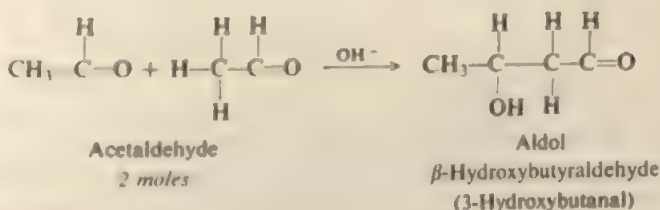
We may find it odd, considering that we call this reaction "acid-catalyzed," that the rate-determining step (2) is really the same as in the base-promoted reaction: abstraction of an  $\alpha$ -hydrogen by a base—here, by the conjugate base of the catalyzing acid. Actually, what we see here must always hold true: a reaction that is truly *catalyzed* by acid or base is catalyzed by *both acid and base*. In our case, transfer of the proton from the acid  $\text{H}:\text{B}$  to carbonyl oxygen (step 1) makes the ketone more reactive and hence speeds up enolization. But, if this is truly catalysis, the acid must not be *consumed*. Regeneration of the acid  $\text{H}:\text{B}$  requires that the conjugate base  $:\text{B}$  get a proton from somewhere; it takes it from the  $\alpha$ -carbon (step 2), and thus completes the enolization. Both acid and base speed up the rate-determining step (2): base directly, as one of the reactants, and acid indirectly, by increasing the concentration of the other reactant, the protonated ketone. Using a strong mineral acid in aqueous solution, we would not be aware of the role played by the base; the acid is  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$  and the conjugate base,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , is the solvent.

**Problem 21.8** Show in detail how the enolization mechanism accounts for the following facts: (a) the rate constants for acid-catalyzed hydrogen–deuterium exchange and bromination of acetone are identical; (b) the rate constants for acid-catalyzed racemization and iodination of phenyl *sec*-butyl ketone are identical.

**Problem 21.9** (a) In the acid-catalyzed dehydration of alcohols (Sec. 7.28), what is the base involved? (b) In the base-catalyzed racemization and hydrogen exchange of phenyl *sec*-butyl ketone (Problem 21.5, p. 865), what is the acid involved?

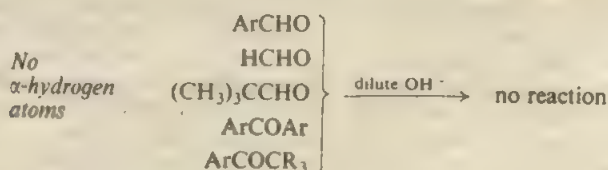
## 21.5 Aldol condensation

Under the influence of dilute base or dilute acid, two molecules of an aldehyde or a ketone may combine to form a  $\beta$ -hydroxyaldehyde or  $\beta$ -hydroxyketone. This reaction is called the **aldol condensation**. In every case the product results from addition of one molecule of aldehyde (or ketone) to a second molecule in such a way that the  $\alpha$ -carbon of the first becomes attached to the carbonyl carbon of the second. For example:



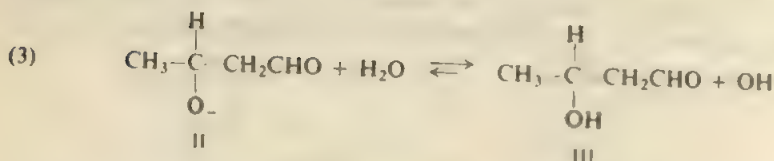
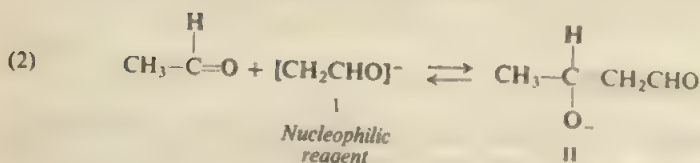
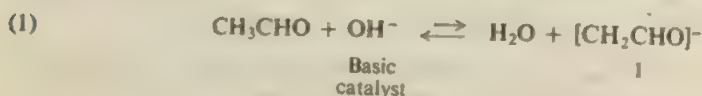


If the aldehyde or ketone does not contain an  $\alpha$ -hydrogen, a simple aldol condensation cannot take place. For example:



(In concentrated base, however, these may undergo the Cannizzaro reaction, Sec. 18.15.)

The generally accepted mechanism for the base-catalyzed condensation involves the following steps, acetaldehyde being used as an example. Hydroxide ion



abstracts (step 1) a hydrogen ion from the  $\alpha$ -carbon of the aldehyde to form carbanion I, which attacks (step 2) carbonyl carbon to form ion II. II (an alkoxide) abstracts (step 3) a hydrogen ion from water to form the  $\beta$ -hydroxyaldehyde III, regenerating hydroxide ion. The purpose of hydroxide ion is thus to produce the carbanion I, which is the actual nucleophilic reagent.

**Problem 21.10** Illustrate these steps for:

- |                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| (a) propionaldehyde | (d) cyclohexanone      |
| (b) acetone         | (e) phenylacetaldehyde |
| (c) acetophenone    |                        |

**Problem 21.11** The aldol condensation of unsymmetrical ketones (methyl ethyl ketone, for example) is usually of little value in synthesis. Why do you think this is so?

The carbonyl group plays two roles in the aldol condensation. It not only provides the unsaturated linkage at which addition (step 2) occurs, but also makes the  $\alpha$ -hydrogens acidic enough for carbanion formation (step 1) to take place

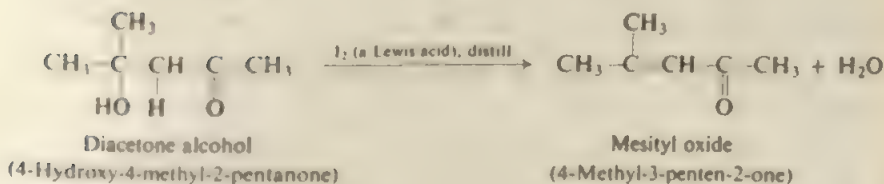
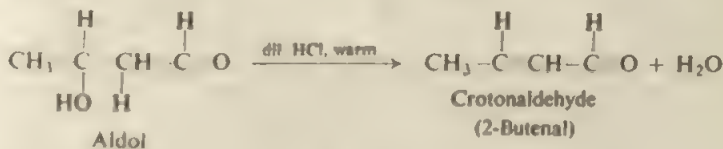
**Problem 21.12** In acid-catalyzed aldol condensations, acid is believed to perform two functions: to catalyze conversion of carbonyl compound into the enol form, and to provide protonated carbonyl compound with which the enol can react. The reaction that then takes place can, depending upon one's point of view, be regarded either as acid-catalyzed nucleophilic addition to a carbonyl group, or as electrophilic addition to an alkene. On this basis, write all steps in the mechanism of acid-catalyzed aldol condensation of acetaldehyde. In the actual condensation step, identify the nucleophile and the electrophile.

**Problem 21.13** (a) When acetaldehyde at fairly high concentration was allowed to undergo base-catalyzed aldol condensation in heavy water ( $D_2O$ ), the product was found to contain almost no deuterium bound to carbon. This finding has been taken as one piece of evidence that the slow step in this aldol condensation is formation of the carbanion. How would you justify this conclusion? (b) The kinetics also supports this conclusion. What kinetics would you expect if this were the case? (*Remember*: Two molecules of acetaldehyde are involved in aldol condensation.) (c) When the experiment in part (a) was carried out at low acetaldehyde concentration, the product was found to contain considerable deuterium bound to carbon. How do you account for this? (*Hint*: See Sec. 7.19.) (d) In contrast to acetaldehyde, acetone was found to undergo base-catalyzed hydrogen-deuterium exchange much faster than aldol condensation. What is one important factor contributing to this difference in behavior?

**Problem 21.14** In alkaline solution, 4-methyl-4-hydroxy-2-pentanone is partly converted into acetone. What does this reaction amount to? Show all steps in the most likely mechanism. (*Hint*: See Sec. 7.28.)

## 21.6 Dehydration of aldol products

The  $\beta$ -hydroxyaldehydes and  $\beta$ -hydroxyketones obtained from aldol condensations are very easily dehydrated; the major products have the carbon-carbon double bond between the  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -carbon atoms. For example:



Both the ease and the orientation of elimination are related to the fact that the alkene obtained is a particularly stable one, since the carbon-carbon double bond is conjugated with the carbon-oxygen double bond of the carbonyl group (compare Sec. 9.21).

**Problem 21.15** Draw resonance structures to account for the unusual stability of an  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated aldehyde or ketone. What is the significance of these structures in terms of orbitals? (See Sec. 9.22.)

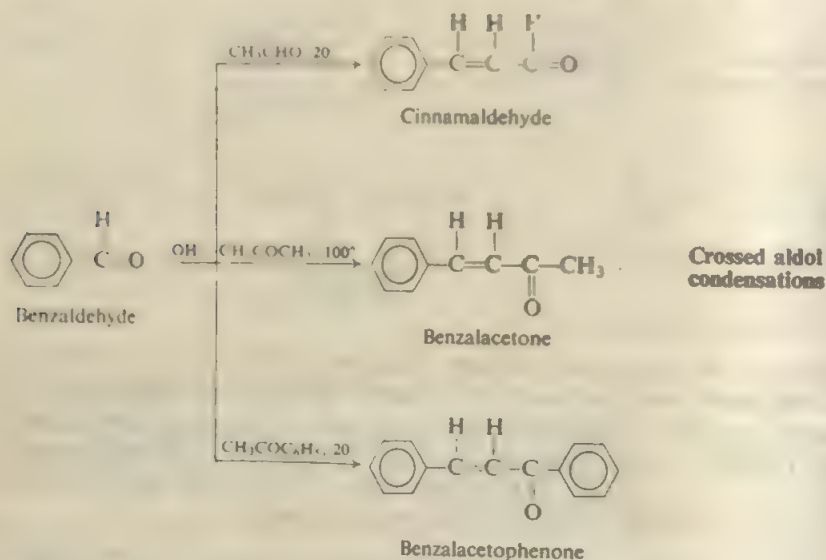






however, such a synthesis may be worthwhile if the mixture can be separated and the components marketed.

Under certain conditions, a good yield of a single product can be obtained from a crossed aldol condensation: (a) one reactant contains no  $\alpha$ -hydrogens and therefore is incapable of condensing with itself (e.g., aromatic aldehydes or formaldehyde), (b) this reactant is mixed with the catalyst, and then (c) a carbonyl

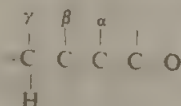


compound that contains  $\alpha$ -hydrogens is added slowly to this mixture. There is thus present at any time only a very low concentration of the ionizable carbonyl compound, and the carbanion it forms reacts almost exclusively with the other carbonyl compound, which is present in large excess.

**Problem 21.19** Outline the synthesis of each of the following from benzene or toluene and any readily available alcohols:

- |                             |                                      |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (a) 4-phenyl-2-butanol      | (d) 2,3-diphenyl-1-propanol          |
| (b) 1,3-diphenyl-1-propanol | (e) 1,5-diphenyl-1,4-pentadien-3-one |
| (c) 1,3-diphenylpropane     | (dibenzalacetone)                    |

**Problem 21.20** (a) What prediction can you make about the acidity of the  $\gamma$ -hydrogens of  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds,

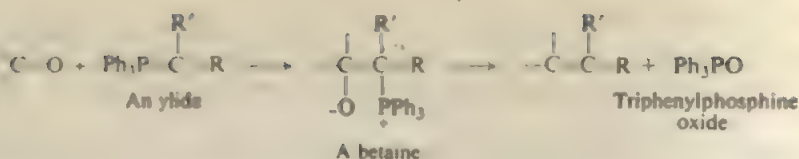


as, for example, in crotonaldehyde? (b) In view of your answer to (a), suggest a way to synthesize 5-phenyl-2,4-pentadienal,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CHO}$ .

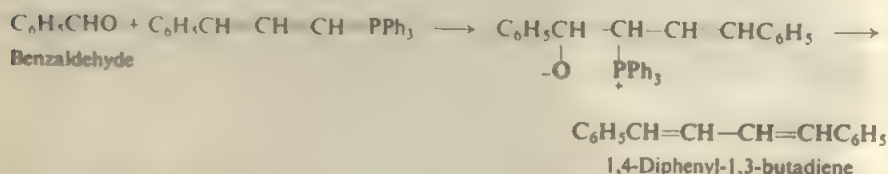
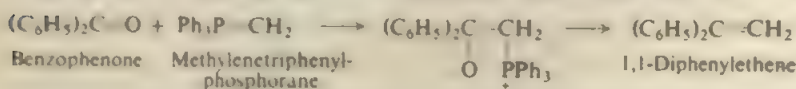
## 21.9 Reactions related to the aldol condensation

There are a large number of condensations that are closely related to the aldol condensation. Each of these reactions has its own name—*Perkin*, *Knoevenagel*,



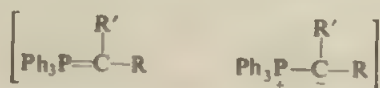


the nucleophilic attack on carbonyl carbon by an *ylide* to form a *betaine* which—often spontaneously—undergoes elimination to yield the product. For example:



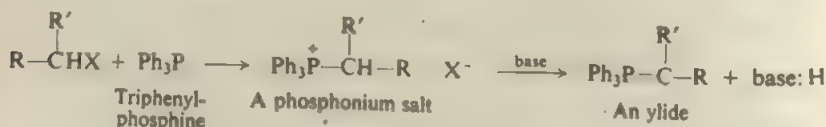
The reaction is carried out under mild conditions, and the position of the carbon-carbon double bond is not in doubt. Carbonyl compounds may contain a wide variety of substituents, and so may the ylide. (Indeed, in its broadest form, the Wittig reaction involves reactants other than carbonyl compounds, and may lead to products other than substituted alkenes.)

The phosphorus ylides have hybrid structures, and it is the negative charge on

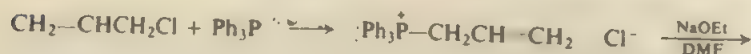
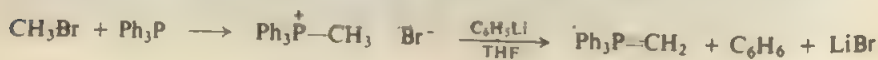


carbon—the carbanion character of ylides—that is responsible for their characteristic reactions: in this case, nucleophilic attack on carbonyl carbon.

The preparation of ylides is a two-stage process, each stage of which belongs to a familiar reaction type: nucleophilic attack on an alkyl halide, and abstraction of a proton by a base.



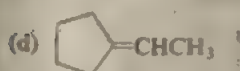
Many different bases have been used—chiefly alkoxides and organometallics—and in a variety of solvents. For example:



**Problem 21.23** What side reactions would you expect to encounter in the preparation of an ylide like  $\text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ ?

**Problem 21.24** Give the structure of an ylide and a carbonyl compound from which each of the following could be made.

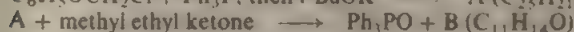
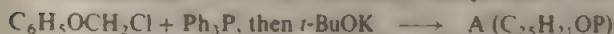
- (a)  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$   
 (b)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$   
 (c)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHC}_6\text{H}_5$



- (e) 1,4-diphenyl-1,3-butadiene (an alternative to the set of reagents used on p. 874)  
 (f)  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{COOCH}_3$

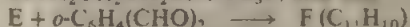
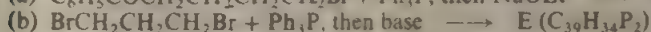
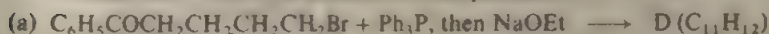
**Problem 21.25** Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each ylide and each carbonyl compound in the preceding problem, starting from benzene, toluene, alcohols of four carbons or fewer, acetic anhydride, triphenylphosphine, and cyclopentanol, and using any needed inorganic reagents.

**Problem 21.26** Give the structures of compounds A–C.

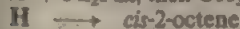
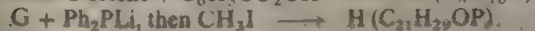
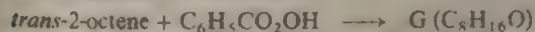


The above sequence offers a general route to what class of compounds?

**Problem 21.27** Give the structures of compounds D–F.



**Problem 21.28** Give the structures of compounds G and H, and account for the stereochemistry of each step.



## 21.11 Claisen condensation. Formation of $\beta$ -keto esters

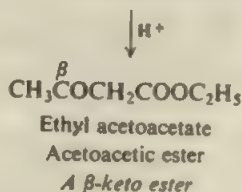
An  $\alpha$ -hydrogen in an ester, like an  $\alpha$ -hydrogen in an aldehyde or ketone, is weakly acidic, and for the same reason: through resonance, the carbonyl group helps accommodate the negative charge of the carbanion. Let us look at an exceedingly important reaction of esters that depends upon the acidity of  $\alpha$ -hydrogens. It is—for esters—the exact counterpart of the aldol condensation; reaction takes a different turn at the end, but a turn that is typical of the chemistry of acyl compounds.

When ethyl acetate is treated with sodium ethoxide, and the resulting mixture

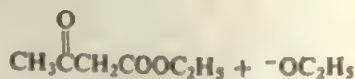
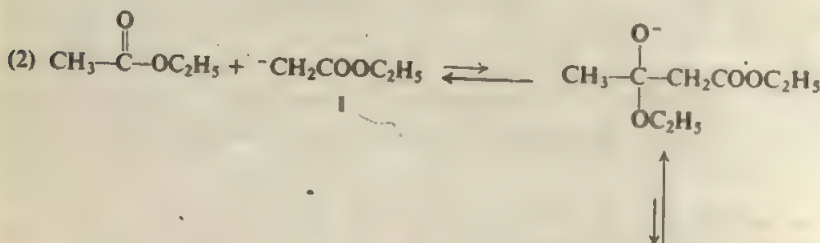
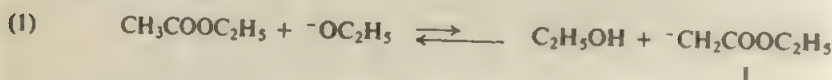


$$2\text{CH}_3\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{Na}^+ \cdot \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}} \text{CH}_3\text{COCHCOOC}_2\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{Na}^+ + 2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$$

Ethyl acetate                      Sodium                      Sodioacetoacetic ester

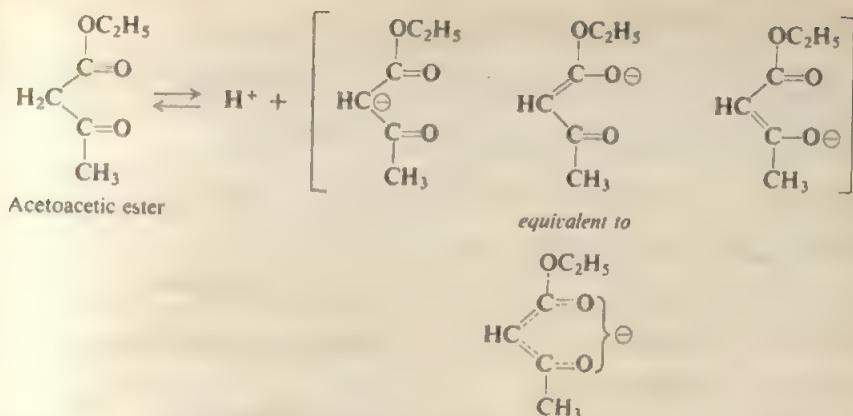


The generally accepted mechanism for the Claisen condensation (shown here for ethyl acetate) is:



Like the aldol condensation and related reactions, the Claisen condensation involves nucleophilic attack by a carbanion on an electron-deficient carbonyl carbon. *In the aldol condensation, nucleophilic attack leads to addition, the typical reaction of aldehydes and ketones; in the Claisen condensation, nucleophilic attack leads to substitution, the typical reaction of acyl compounds (Sec. 20 4).*

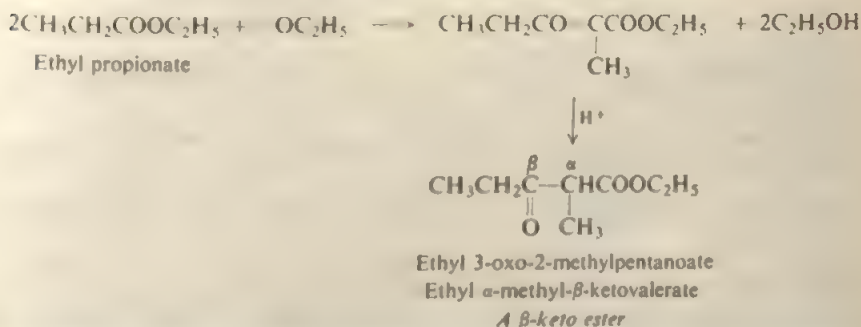
When reaction is complete there is present, not acetoacetic ester, but its sodium salt, *sodioacetoacetic ester*. The  $\alpha$ -hydrogens of acetoacetic ester are located *alpha* to two carbonyl groups, and hence ionization yields a particularly stable carbanion in which two carbonyl groups help accommodate the charge. As a result acetoacetic ester is a much stronger acid than ordinary esters or other compounds containing a single carbonyl group. It is considerably stronger than ethyl alcohol, and hence it reacts (step 3) with ethoxide ion to form ethyl alcohol and the anion



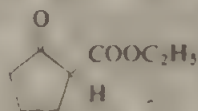
of sodioacetoacetic ester. Formation of the salt of acetoacetic ester is essential to the success of the reaction; of the various equilibria involved in the reaction, only (3) is favorable to the product we want.

**Problem 21.29** Better yields are obtained if the Claisen condensation is carried out in ether with alcohol-free sodium ethoxide as catalyst instead of in ethyl alcohol solution. How do you account for this?

As we might expect, the Claisen condensation of more complicated esters yields the products resulting from ionization of an  $\alpha$ -hydrogen of the ester; as a result, it is always the  $\alpha$ -carbon of one molecule that becomes attached to the carbonyl carbon of another. For example:



**Problem 21.30** Sodium ethoxide converts ethyl adipate into 2-carbethoxycyclopentanone (II). This is an example of the **Dieckmann condensation**.

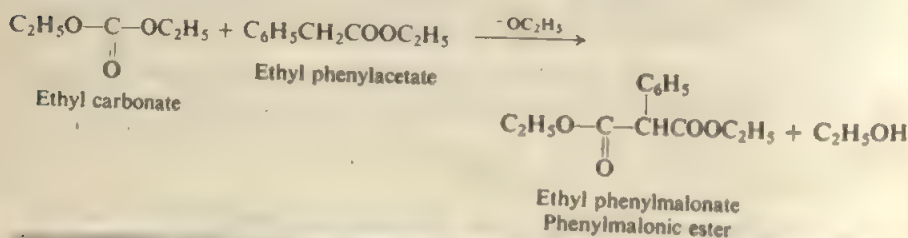
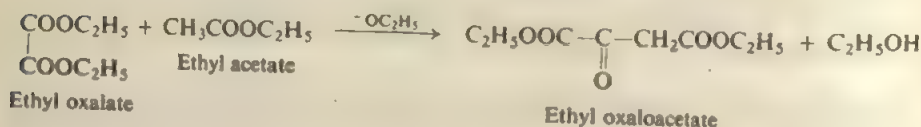
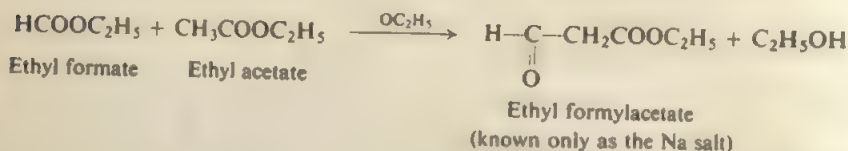
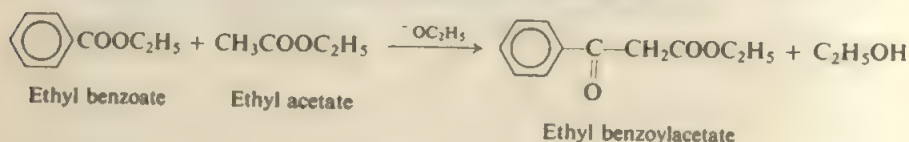


II

(a) How do you account for formation of II? (b) What product would you expect from the action of sodium ethoxide on ethyl pimelate (ethyl heptanedioate)? (c) Would you expect similar behavior from ethyl glutarate or ethyl succinate? Actually, ethyl succinate reacts with sodium ethoxide to yield a compound of formula  $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_6$  containing a six-membered ring. What is the likely structure for this last product?

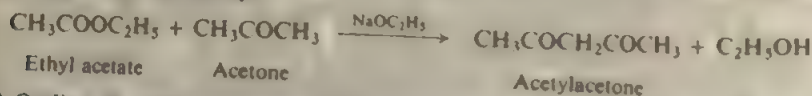
## 21.12 Crossed Claisen condensation

Like a crossed aldol condensation (Sec. 21.8), a **crossed Claisen condensation** is generally feasible only when one of the reactants has no  $\alpha$ -hydrogens and thus is incapable of undergoing self-condensation. For example:



**Problem 21.31** In what order should the reactants be mixed in each of the above crossed Claisen condensations? (*Hint*: See Sec. 21.8.)

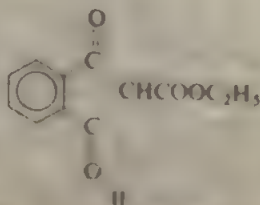
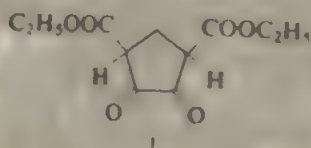
**Problem 21.32** Ketones (but not aldehydes) undergo a crossed Claisen condensation with esters. For example:



(a) Outline all steps in the most likely mechanism for this reaction. (b) Predict the principal products expected from the reaction in the presence of sodium ethoxide of ethyl propionate and acetone, (c) of ethyl benzoate and acetophenone, (d) of ethyl oxalate and cyclohexanone.

**Problem 21.33** Outline the synthesis from simple esters of:

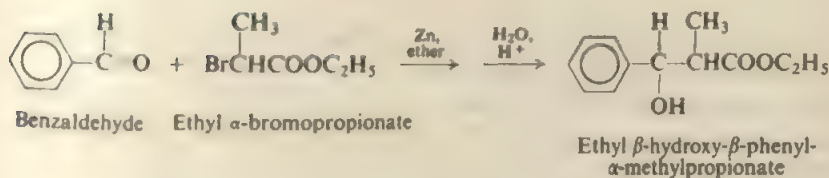
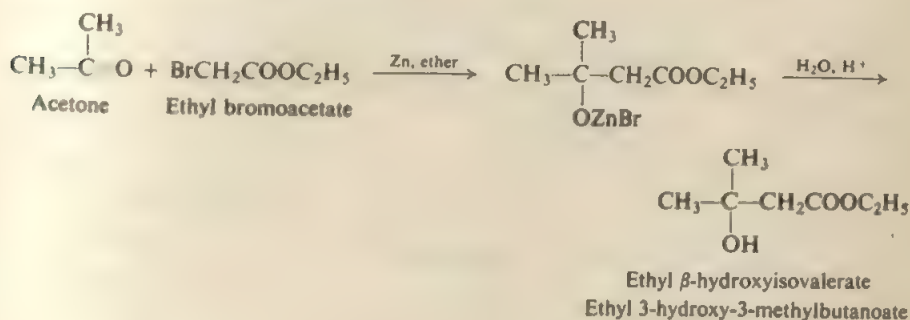
- ethyl  $\alpha$ -phenylbenzoylacetate,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5$
- ethyl 2,3-dioxo-1,4-cyclopentanedicarboxylate (I). (*Hint*: Use ethyl oxalate as one ester)
- ethyl 1,3-dioxo-2-indanecarboxylate (II)



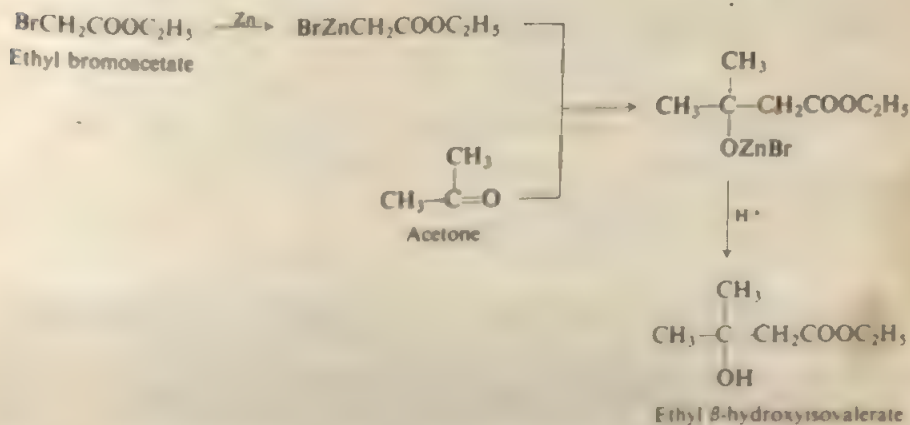
### 21.13 Reformatsky reaction. Preparation of $\beta$ -hydroxy esters

In the Claisen condensation, we have just seen, carbanions are generated from esters through abstraction of an  $\alpha$ -hydrogen by base. But we are familiar with another way of generating carbanions—or rather, groups with considerable carbanion character: through formation of organometallic compounds. This approach, too, plays a part in the chemistry of esters.

If an  $\alpha$ -bromo ester is treated with metallic zinc in the presence of an aldehyde or ketone, there is obtained a  $\beta$ -hydroxy ester. This reaction, known as the **Reformatsky reaction**, is the most important method of preparing  $\beta$ -hydroxy acids and their derivatives. For example:

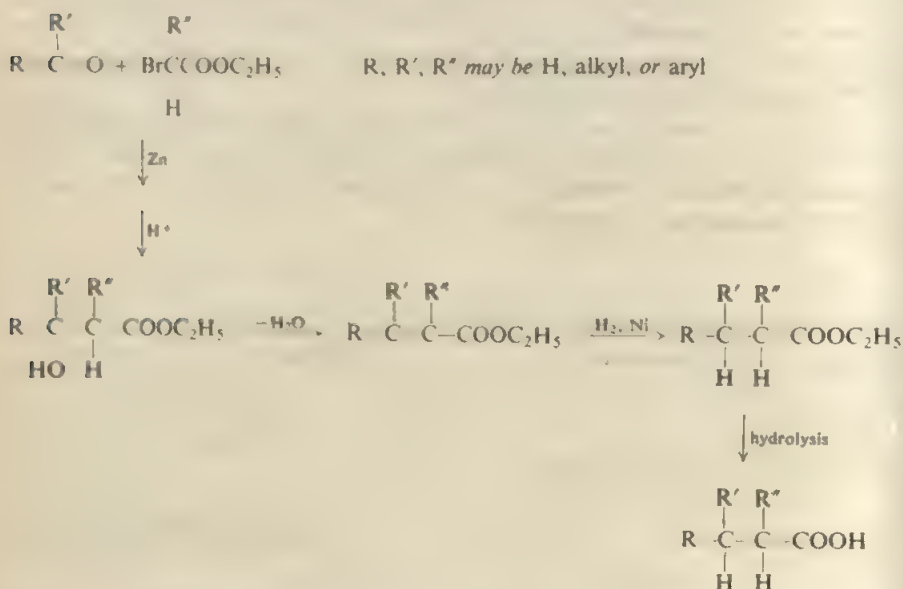


The  $\alpha$ -bromo ester and zinc react in absolute ether to yield an intermediate organozinc compound, which then adds to the carbonyl group of the aldehyde or ketone. The formation and subsequent reaction of the organozinc compound is similar to the formation and reaction of a Grignard reagent. Zinc is used in place of magnesium simply because the organozinc compounds are less reactive than Grignard reagents; they do not react with the ester function but only with the aldehyde or ketone.





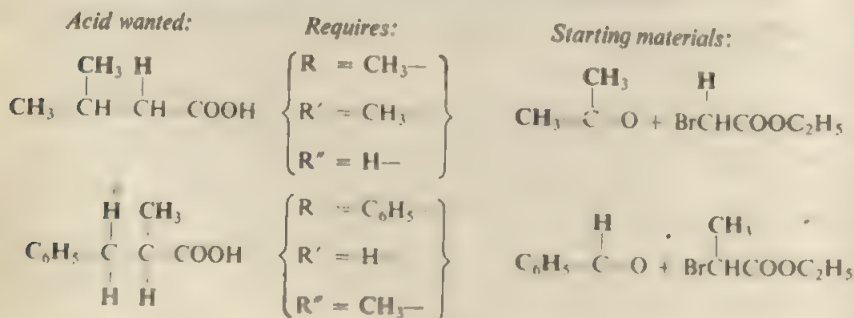
The Reformatsky reaction takes place only with esters containing bromine in the *alpha* position, and hence necessarily yields *beta*-hydroxy esters. By the proper



selection of ester and carbonyl compound, a wide variety of rather complicated  $\beta$ -hydroxy carboxylic acids can be prepared.

Like  $\beta$ -hydroxyaldehydes and -ketones,  $\beta$ -hydroxyesters and -acids are readily dehydrated. The unsaturated compounds thus obtained (chiefly  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated) can be hydrogenated to saturated carboxylic acids. Extended in this way, the Reformatsky reaction is a useful general method for preparing carboxylic acids, paralleling the aldol route to alcohols.

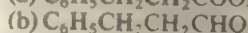
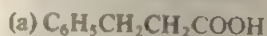
In planning the synthesis of a carboxylic acid by the Reformatsky reaction, our problem is to select the proper starting materials; to do this, we have only to look at the structure of the product we want. For example:



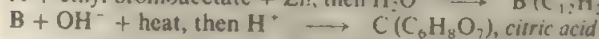
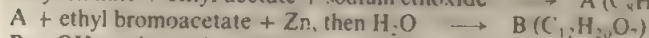
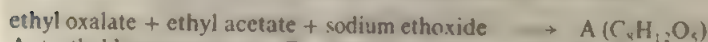
**Problem 21.34** Outline the synthesis of the following acids via the Reformatsky reaction:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) <i>n</i> -valeric acid                | (c) cinnamic acid                                   |
| (b) $\alpha,\gamma$ -dimethylvaleric acid | (d) $\alpha$ -methyl- $\beta$ -phenylpropionic acid |

**Problem 21.35** Outline the synthesis of the following, starting from benzaldehyde and ethyl bromoacetate:

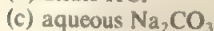
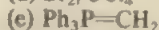
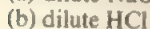
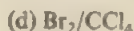


**Problem 21.36** Give structures of compounds A, B, and C:



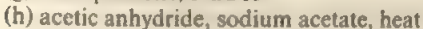
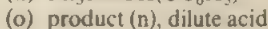
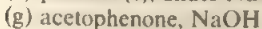
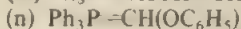
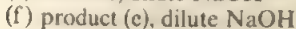
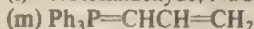
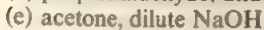
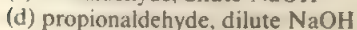
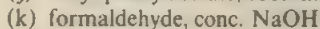
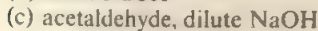
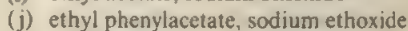
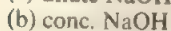
## PROBLEMS

1. Write balanced equations, naming all organic products, for the reaction (if any) of phenylacetaldehyde with:

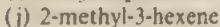
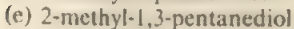
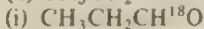
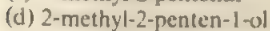
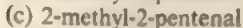
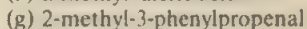
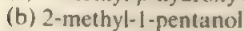
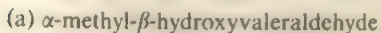


2. Answer Problem 1 for cyclohexanone.

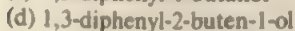
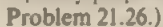
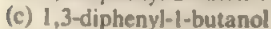
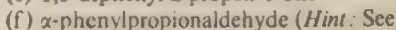
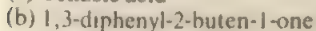
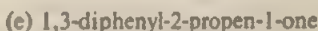
3. Write balanced equations, naming all organic products, for the reaction (if any) of benzaldehyde with:



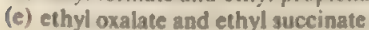
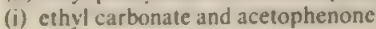
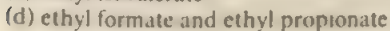
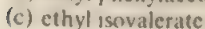
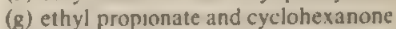
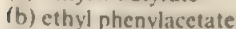
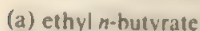
4. Write equations for all steps in the synthesis of the following from propionaldehyde, using any other needed reagents:



5. Write equations for all steps in the synthesis of the following from acetophenone, using any other needed reagents:



6. Give the structures of the principal products expected from the reaction in the presence of sodium ethoxide of:



7. Sodium ethoxide is added to a mixture of ethyl acetate and ethyl propionate.  
(a) Give the structures of the products expected. (b) Would this reaction be a good method of synthesizing any one of these?

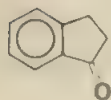
8. Outline all steps in a possible synthesis of each of the following via the Claisen condensation, using any needed reagents:

- (a)  $C_6H_5COCH(CH_3)COOC_2H_5$  (e)  $(CH_3)_2CHCOCH_2COCH_3$   
 (b)  $C_6H_5CH_2COCH(C_6H_5)COOC_2H_5$  (f)  $C_6H_5COCH_2COCH_3$   
 (c)  $C_2H_5OOCCHOCH(CH_3)COOC_2H_5$  (g) 2-benzoylcyclohexanone  
 (d)  $C_6H_5CH(CHO)COOC_2H_5$  (h)  $C_2H_5OOCCH(CHO)CH_2COOC_2H_5$

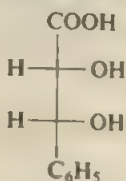
9. The cinnamic acid obtained by the Perkin condensation is the more stable *trans*-isomer. Suggest a method of preparing *cis*-cinnamic acid.

10. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following from benzene, toluene, acetic anhydride, triphenylphosphine, and alcohols of four carbons or fewer, using any needed inorganic reagents:

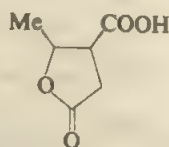
- (a) 4-methyl-4-hydroxy-2-pentanone  
 (b) 4-methyl-2-pentanol  
 (c) crotonaldehyde,  $CH_3CH=CHCHO$   
 (d) cinnamyl alcohol,  $C_6H_5CH=CHCH_2OH$   
 (e) *p*-nitrocinnamaldehyde  
 (f) 1,3-butanediol  
 (g) 3-methyl-2-butenic acid (via aldol condensation)  
 (h) 3-methyl-2-butenic acid (a second way)  
 (i) 3-methyl-1-pentyn-3-ol (*Oblivon*, a hypnotic)  
 (j) 1-phenyl-1,3,5-hexatriene  
 (k) 1,6-diphenyl-1,3,5-hexatriene  
 (l) 2,3-dimethyl-2-pentenoic acid  
 (m) 3-hydroxy-4-phenylbutanoic acid  
 (n)  $\alpha,\alpha$ -dimethylcaproic acid  
 (o) indanone (I)  
 (p) racemic *erythro*-2,3-dihydroxy-3-phenylpropanoic acid (II and its enantiomer)



I



II

 $\gamma$ -Methylparaconic acid

11. How do you account for the formation of  $\gamma$ -methylparaconic acid from the reaction of acetaldehyde with succinic acid?

12. Considerable quantities of acetone are consumed in the manufacture of methyl isobutyl ketone (MIBK). How do you think the synthesis of MIBK is accomplished?

13. Methyl ethyl ketone can be made to undergo the Claisen condensation with a given ester to yield either of two products, depending upon experimental conditions. (a) What are these two products? (b) How could you tell quickly and simply which product you had obtained? (Note: Use ethyl benzoate as the ester.)

14. The acetylenic ester  $CH_3-C\equiv C-COOC_2H_5$  can be converted into ethyl acetoacetate. (a) How? (b) Outline a synthesis of the acetylenic ester from acetylene and any needed reagents.

15. The compound *pentaerythritol*,  $C(CH_2OH)_4$ , used in making explosives, is obtained from the reaction of acetaldehyde and formaldehyde in the presence of calcium hydroxide. Outline the probable steps in this synthesis.

16. The labeled alkene, 1,3,3-trideuteriocyclohexene, needed for a particular stereochemical study, was prepared from cyclohexanone. Outline all steps in such a synthesis.

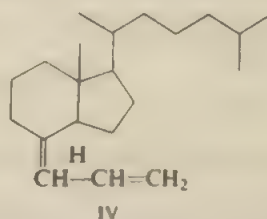
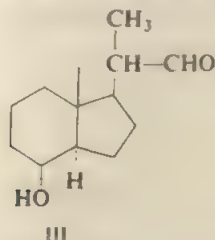
17. (a) The haloform test (Sec. 11.14) depends upon the fact that three hydrogens on the same carbon atom are successively replaced by halogen. Using acetone as an example, show

why the carbon that suffers the initial substitution should be the preferred site of further substitution. (*Hint*: See Sec. 19.14.)

(b) The haloform test also depends upon the ease with which the trihalomethyl ketone produced in (a) is cleaved by base. What is the most likely mechanism for this cleavage? What factor makes such a reaction possible in this particular case?

18. Upon treatment with dilute NaOH,  $\beta$ -methylcrotonaldehyde,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{CHCHO}$ , yields a product of formula  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{14}\text{O}$ , called *dehydrocitral*. What is a likely structure for this product, and how is it formed? (*Hint*: See *citral*, Problem 29, p. 768.)

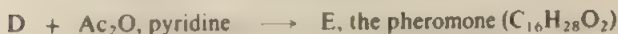
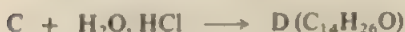
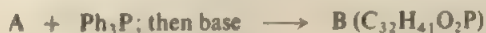
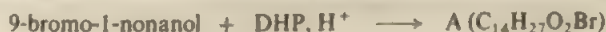
19. As part of the total synthesis of vitamin D<sub>3</sub>, compound III was converted into IV by a number of stages, two of which involved use of the Wittig reaction. Show how this conversion might have been carried out.



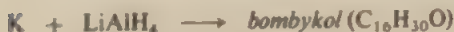
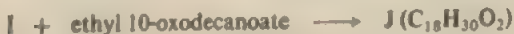
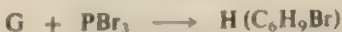
20. Meanwhile, back at the laboratory, our naïve graduate student (Problem 18, p. 766) had need of the hydroxy ester  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_2\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ . Turning once again to the Grignard reaction, he prepared methylmagnesium iodide and to it he added acetoacetic ester. Everything went well; indeed, even without the application of heat, the reaction mixture bubbled merrily. Working carefully and with great skill, he isolated an excellent yield of the starting material, acetoacetic ester. He poured this down the sink and fled, sobbing, to his research director's office, where he begged for a new research problem.

What reaction had taken place? What was the bubbling due to? (In Problem 12, p. 1187, we shall see how he made out with his new research problem.)

21. (a) The sex attractant of the Egyptian cotton leafworm has been prepared in the following way. On the basis of this synthesis what structure or structures can you assign to this pheromone (and to all intermediates)? (b) At one point in the synthesis, it is necessary to separate a pair of isomers. At which point is this, and what are the isomers?



22. *Bombykol*, the sex pheromone of the silkworm moth has been prepared in the following way. What is the structure of bombykol? What uncertainties, if any, are there in your answer?





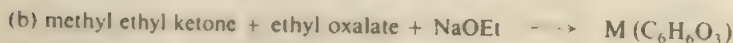
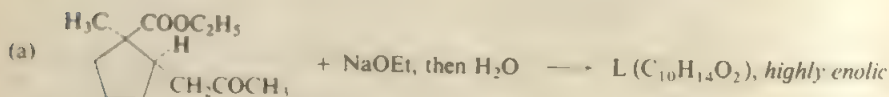
23. In contrast to simple carbonyl compounds, 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds like acetoacetic ester or 2,4-pentanedione (acetylacetone) exist to an appreciable extent in the enol form.

(a) Pure samples of keto and enol forms of acetoacetic ester have been isolated. Each retained its identity for weeks if acids and bases were carefully excluded. Write equations to show exactly how keto-enol interconversion is speeded up by a base. By an acid.

(b) Draw the structure of the enol form of, say, 2,4-pentanedione. Can you suggest one factor that would tend to stabilize the enol form of such a compound?

(c) Although the enol form of acetoacetic ester is an alcohol, it does *not* have a higher boiling point than the keto form (Actually, it boils somewhat *lower*.) Can you suggest a second factor that would tend to stabilize the enol form of a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound?

24. Draw the structures (stereochemical where pertinent) of products L and M.



25. (a) Fig. 21.1(a) shows the NMR spectrum of a solution of acetylacetone, CH<sub>3</sub>COCH<sub>2</sub>COCH<sub>3</sub>, in chloroform. Besides the peaks shown, there is a small hump, *e*, near  $\delta$  15 of about the same area as the peak *d* at  $\delta$  5.5. How do you interpret this spectrum? What *quantitative* conclusion can you draw?

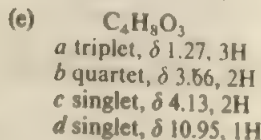
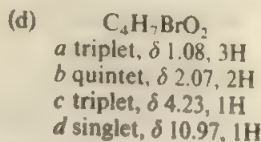
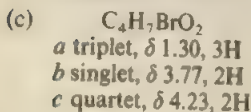
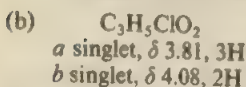
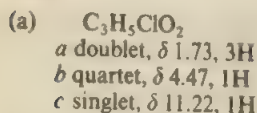
(b) Fig. 21.1(b) shows the NMR spectrum of benzoylacetone, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>COCH<sub>2</sub>COCH<sub>3</sub>. There is an additional peak, *d*, near  $\delta$  16 of about the same area as the peak *b* at  $\delta$  6.1. How do you interpret this spectrum? How do you account for the difference between it and the spectrum in (a)?

## CHAP. 19

## PROBLEMS

811

29. Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the following sets of NMR data:



30. Which (if any) of the following compounds could give rise to each of the infrared spectra shown in Fig. 19.5 (p. 812)?

*n*-butyric acid  
 crotonic acid (CH<sub>3</sub>CH=CHCOOH)  
 malic acid (HOOCCHOHCH<sub>2</sub>COOH)  
 benzoic acid

*p*-nitrobenzoic acid  
 mandelic acid (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>CHOHCOOH)  
*p*-nitrobenzyl alcohol

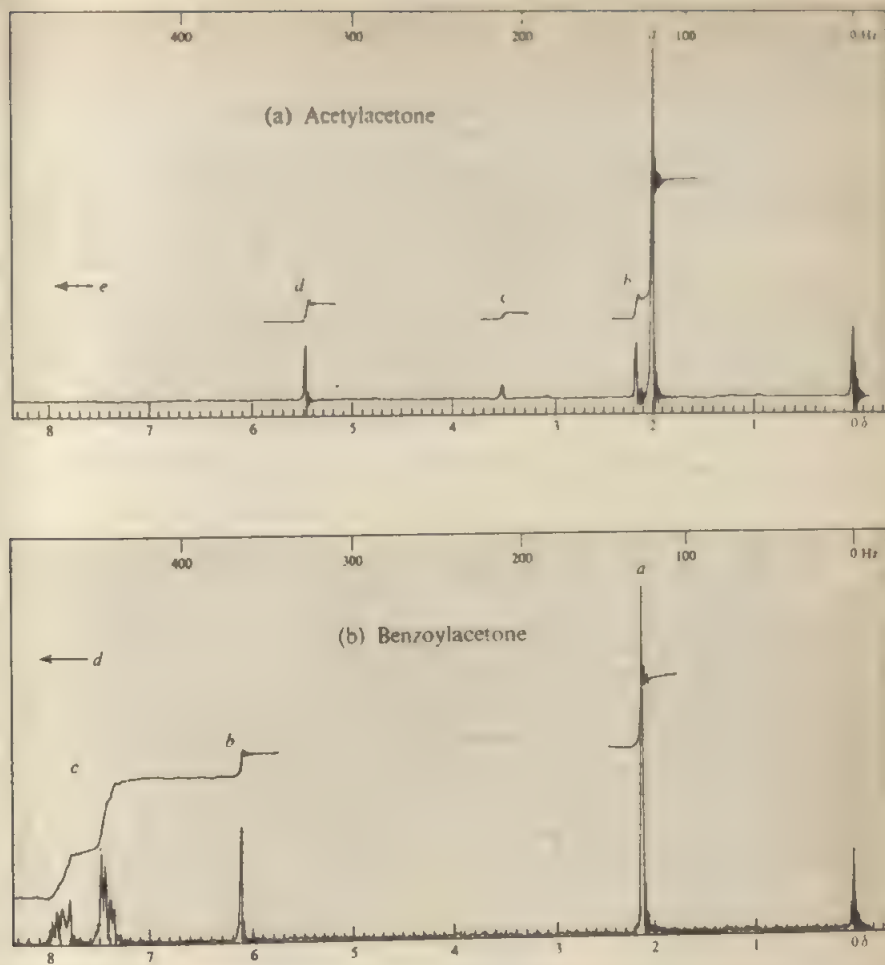


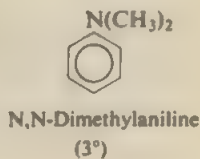
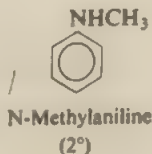
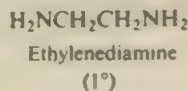
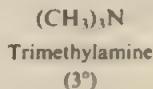
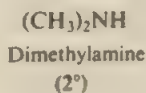
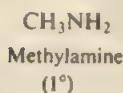
Figure 21.1. NMR spectra of (a) acetylacetone and (b) benzoylacetone.

## Amines I. Preparation and Physical Properties

### 22.1 Structure

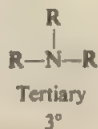
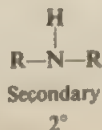
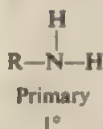
Nearly all the organic compounds that we have studied so far are bases, although very weak ones. Much of the chemistry of alcohols, ethers, esters, and even of alkenes and aromatic hydrocarbons is understandable in terms of the basicity of these compounds.

Of the organic compounds that show appreciable basicity (for example, those strong enough to turn litmus blue), by far the most important are the **amines**. An amine has the general formula  $RNH_2$ ,  $R_2NH$ , or  $R_3N$ , where R is any alkyl or aryl group. For example:



### 22.2 Classification

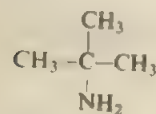
Amines are classified as **primary**, **secondary**, or **tertiary**, according to the number of groups attached to the nitrogen atom.



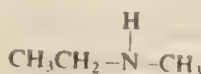
In their fundamental properties—*basicity* and the accompanying *nucleophilicity*—amines of different classes are very much the same. In many of their reactions, however, the final products depend upon the number of hydrogen atoms attached to the nitrogen atom, and hence are different for amines of different classes.

## 22.3 Nomenclature

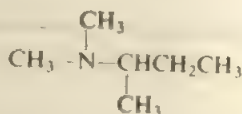
Aliphatic amines are named by naming the alkyl group or groups attached to nitrogen, and following these by the word *-amine*. More complicated ones are often named by prefixing *amino-* (or *N-methylamino-*, *N,N-diethylamino-*, etc.) to the name of the parent chain. For example:



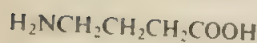
*tert*-Butylamine  
(1°)



Methylethylamine  
(2°)



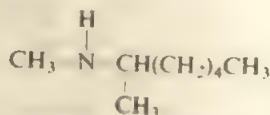
Dimethyl-*sec*-butylamine  
(3°)



$\gamma$ -Aminobutyric acid  
(1°)

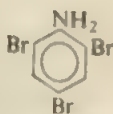


2-Aminoethanol  
(Ethanolamine)  
(1°)

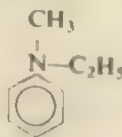


2-(*N*-Methylamino)heptane  
(2°)

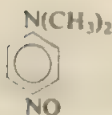
Aromatic amines—those in which nitrogen is attached directly to an aromatic ring—are generally named as derivatives of the simplest aromatic amine, **aniline**. An aminotoluene is given the special name of *toluidine*. For example:



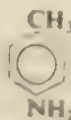
2,4,6-Tribromoaniline  
(1°)



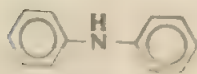
*N*-Methyl-*N*-ethylaniline  
(3°)



*p*-Nitroso-*N,N*-dimethylaniline  
(3°)



*p*-Toluidine  
(1°)



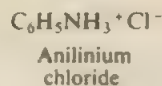
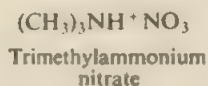
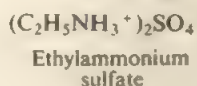
Diphenylamine  
(2°)



4,4'-Dinitrodiphenylamine  
(2°)

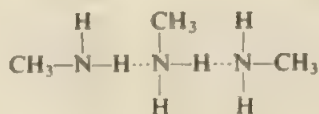


Salts of amines are generally named by replacing *-amine* by *-ammonium* (or *-aniline* by *-anilinium*), and adding the name of the anion (*chloride*, *nitrate*, *sulfate*, etc.). For example:



## 22.4 Physical properties of amines

Like ammonia, amines are polar compounds and, except for tertiary amines, can form intermolecular hydrogen bonds. Amines have higher boiling points than



non-polar compounds of the same molecular weight, but lower boiling points than alcohols or carboxylic acids.

Amines of all three classes are capable of forming hydrogen bonds with water. As a result, smaller amines are quite soluble in water, with borderline solubility

Table 22.1 AMINES

Name	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Solub., g/100 g H <sub>2</sub> O	<i>K<sub>b</sub></i>
Methylamine	-92	7.5	v.sol.	$4.5 \times 10^{-4}$
Dimethylamine	-96	7.5	v.sol.	5.4
Trimethylamine	-117	3	91	0.6
Ethylamine	-80	17	∞	5.1
Diethylamine	-39	55	v.sol.	10.0
Triethylamine	-115	89	14	5.6
<i>n</i> -Propylamine	-83	49	∞	4.1
Di- <i>n</i> -propylamine	-63	110	s.sol.	10
Tri- <i>n</i> -propylamine	-93	157	s.sol.	4.5
Isopropylamine	-101	34	∞	4
<i>n</i> -Butylamine	-50	78	v.sol.	4.8
Isobutylamine	-85	68	∞	3
sec-Butylamine	-104	63	∞	4
tert-Butylamine	-67	46	∞	5
Cyclohexylamine		134	s.sol.	5
Benzylamine		185	∞	0.2
α-Phenylethylamine		187	4.2	
β-Phenylethylamine		195	s.	
Ethylenediamine	8	117	s.	
Tetramethylenediamine	27	158	v.sol.	0.85
[H <sub>2</sub> N(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>4</sub> NH <sub>2</sub> ]				
Hexamethylenediamine	39	196	v.sol.	5
Tetramethylammonium hydroxide	63	134/	220	strong base

CONT

Table 22.1 AMINES (continued)

CONT.				
Name	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Solub., g/100 g H <sub>2</sub> O	K <sub>b</sub>
Aniline	— 6	184	3.7	$4.2 \times 10^{-10}$
Methylaniline	— 57	196	v.sl.sol.	7.1
Dimethylaniline	3	194	1.4	11.7
Diphenylamine	53	302	i.	0.0006
Triphenylamine	127	365	i.	
<i>o</i> -Toluidine	— 28	200	1.7	2.6
<i>m</i> -Toluidine	— 30	203	s.sol.	5
<i>p</i> -Toluidine	44	200	0.7	12
<i>o</i> -Anisidine ( <i>o</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> OC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> NH <sub>2</sub> )	5	225	s.sol.	3
<i>m</i> -Anisidine		251	s.sol.	2
<i>p</i> -Anisidine	57	244	v.sl.sol.	20
<i>o</i> -Chloroaniline	— 2	209	i.	0.05
<i>m</i> -Chloroaniline	— 10	236		0.3
<i>p</i> -Chloroaniline	70	232		1
<i>o</i> -Bromoaniline	32	229	s.sol.	0.03
<i>m</i> -Bromoaniline	19	251	v.sl.sol.	0.4
<i>p</i> -Bromoaniline	66	<i>d</i>	i.	0.7
<i>o</i> -Nitroaniline	71	284	0.1	0.00006
<i>m</i> -Nitroaniline	114	307 <sub>d</sub>	0.1	0.029
<i>p</i> -Nitroaniline	148	332	0.05	0.001
2,4-Dinitroaniline	187		s.sol.	
2,4,6-Trinitroaniline (picramide)	188		0.1	
<i>o</i> -Phenylenediamine [ <i>o</i> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> (NH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> ]	104	252	3	3
<i>m</i> -Phenylenediamine	63	287	25	10
<i>p</i> -Phenylenediamine	142	267	3.8	140
Benzidine	127	401	0.05	9
<i>p</i> -Aminobenzoic acid	187		0.3	0.023
Sulfanilic acid	288 <sub>d</sub>		1	0.17
Sulfanilamide	163		0.4	

Name	Formula	M.p., °C
Acetanilide	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> NHCOCH <sub>3</sub>	
Benzanilide	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> NHCOC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub>	114
Aceto- <i>o</i> -toluidide	<i>o</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> NHCOCH <sub>3</sub>	163
Aceto- <i>m</i> -toluidide	<i>m</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> NHCOCH <sub>3</sub>	110
Aceto- <i>p</i> -toluidide	<i>p</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> NHCOCH <sub>3</sub>	66
<i>o</i> -Nitroacetanilide	<i>o</i> -O <sub>2</sub> NC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> NHCOCH <sub>3</sub>	147
<i>m</i> -Nitroacetanilide	<i>m</i> -O <sub>2</sub> NC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> NHCOCH <sub>3</sub>	93
<i>p</i> -Nitroacetanilide	<i>p</i> -O <sub>2</sub> NC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> NHCOCH <sub>3</sub>	154
		216

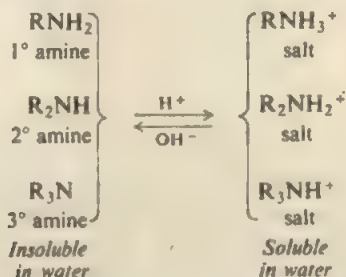
being reached at about six carbon atoms. Amines are soluble in less polar solvents like ether, alcohol, benzene, etc. The methylamines and ethylamines smell very much like ammonia, the higher alkylamines have decidedly "fishy" odors.

Aromatic amines are generally very toxic, they are readily absorbed through the skin, often with fatal results.

Aromatic amines are very easily oxidized by air, and although most are colorless when pure, they are often encountered discolored by oxidation products.

## 22.5 Salts of amines

Aliphatic amines are about as basic as ammonia; aromatic amines are considerably less basic. Although amines are much weaker bases than hydroxide ion or ethoxide ion, they are much stronger bases than alcohols, ethers, esters, etc.; they are much stronger bases than water. Aqueous mineral acids or carboxylic acids readily convert amines into their salts; aqueous hydroxide ion readily converts the salts back into the free amines. As with the carboxylic acids, we can do little



with amines without encountering this conversion into and from their salts; it is therefore worthwhile to look at the properties of these salts.

In Sec. 19.4 we contrasted physical properties of carboxylic acids with those of their salts; amines and their salts show the same contrast. Amine salts are typical ionic compounds. They are non-volatile solids, and when heated generally decompose before the high temperature required for melting is reached. The halides, nitrates, and sulfates are soluble in water but are insoluble in non-polar solvents.

The difference in solubility behavior between amines and their salts can be used both to detect amines and to separate them from non-basic compounds. A water-insoluble organic compound that dissolves in cold, dilute aqueous hydrochloric acid must be appreciably basic, which means almost certainly that it is an amine. An amine can be separated from non-basic compounds by its solubility in acid; once separated, the amine can be regenerated by making the aqueous solution alkaline. (See Sec. 19.4 for a comparable situation for carboxylic acids.)

**Problem 22.1** Describe exactly how you would go about separating a mixture of the three water-insoluble liquids, aniline (b.p. 184°), *n*-butylbenzene (b.p. 183°), and *n*-valeric acid (b.p. 187°), recovering each compound pure and in essentially quantitative yield. Do the same for a mixture of the three water-insoluble solids, *p*-toluidine, *o*-bromobenzoic acid, and *p*-nitroanisole.

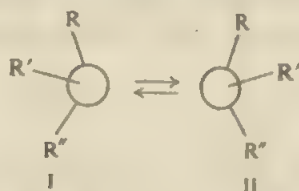
## 22.6 Stereochemistry of nitrogen

So far in our study of organic chemistry, we have devoted considerable time to the spatial arrangement of atoms and groups attached to carbon atoms, that is, to the stereochemistry of carbon. Now let us look briefly at the stereochemistry of nitrogen.

Amines are simply ammonia in which one or more hydrogen atoms have been replaced by organic groups. Nitrogen uses  $sp^3$  orbitals, which are directed to the corners of a tetrahedron. Three of these orbitals overlap  $s$  orbitals of hydrogen or carbon, the fourth contains an unshared pair of electrons (see Fig. 1.11, p. 17).

Amines, then, are like ammonia, pyramidal, and with very nearly the same bond angles ( $108^\circ$  in trimethylamine, for example).

From an examination of models, we can see that a molecule in which nitrogen carries three different groups is not superimposable on its mirror image; it is chiral and should exist in two enantiomeric forms (I and II) each of which—separated

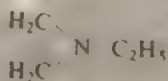


from the other—might be expected to show optical activity.

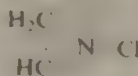
But such enantiomers have not yet been isolated—for simple amines—and spectroscopic studies have shown why: the energy barrier between the two pyramidal arrangements about nitrogen is ordinarily so low that they are rapidly interconverted. Just as rapid rotation about carbon-carbon single bonds prevents isolation of conformational enantiomers (Sec. 4.20), so rapid *inversion* about nitrogen prevents isolation of enantiomers like I and II. Evidently, an unshared pair of electrons of nitrogen cannot ordinarily serve as a fourth group to maintain configuration.

Next, let us consider the quaternary ammonium salts, compounds in which four alkyl groups are attached to nitrogen. Here all four  $sp^3$  orbitals are used to form bonds, and quaternary nitrogen is tetrahedral. Quaternary ammonium salts in which nitrogen holds four different groups have been found to exist as *configurational* enantiomers, capable of showing optical activity: methylallylphenylbenzylammonium iodide, for example.

**Problem 22.2** At room temperature, the NMR spectrum of 1-ethylaziridine (III) shows the triplet-quartet of an ethyl group, and two other signals of equal peak area. When the temperature is raised to  $120^\circ$ , the latter two signals merge into a single signal. How do you interpret these observations?



III


 $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$   
IV

**Problem 22.3** Account for the following, drawing all pertinent stereochemical formulas. (a) 1-Chloro-2-methylaziridine (IV, above) was prepared in two isomeric forms separable at  $25^\circ$  by ordinary gas chromatography. (b) The reaction of  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{C}-\text{NCH}_3$  with  $(R)(+)$ -2-phenylperoxypropionic acid gave a product,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{11}(\text{ON})$ , with  $[\alpha]_D^{25} + 12.5^\circ$ , which showed no loss of optical activity up to (at least)  $90^\circ$ .

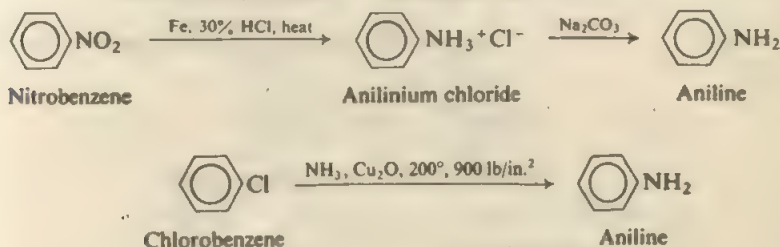
**Problem 22.4** Racemization in certain free-radical and carbocation reactions has been attributed (Secs. 4.29 and 6.22) to loss of configuration in a flat intermediate. Account for the fact that the formation of alkyl carbanions,  $\text{R}^-$ , which are believed to be *pyramidal*, can also lead to racemization.



## 22.7 Industrial source

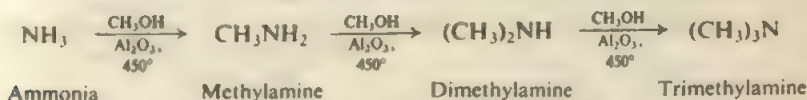
Some of the simplest and most important amines are prepared on an industrial scale by processes that are not practicable as laboratory methods.

The most important of all amines, **aniline**, is prepared in several ways: (a) reduction of nitrobenzene by the cheap reagents, iron and dilute hydrochloric acid (or by catalytic hydrogenation, Sec. 22.9); (b) treatment of chlorobenzene with

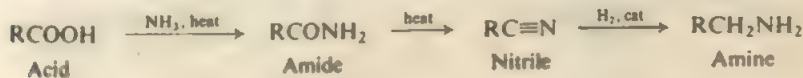


ammonia at high temperatures and high pressures in the presence of a catalyst. Process (b), we shall see (Chap. 25), involves nucleophilic aromatic substitution.

Methylamine, dimethylamine, and trimethylamine are synthesized on an industrial scale from methanol and ammonia:



Alkyl halides are used to make some higher alkylamines, just as in the laboratory (Sec. 22.10). The acids obtained from fats (Sec. 27.4) can be converted into long-chain 1-aminoalkanes of even carbon number via reduction of nitriles (Sec. 22.8).

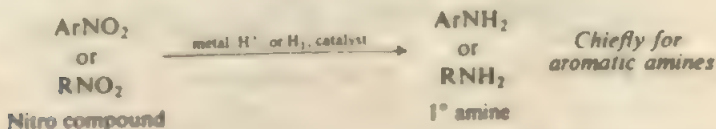


## 22.8 Preparation

Some of the many methods that are used to prepare amines in the laboratory are outlined on the following pages.

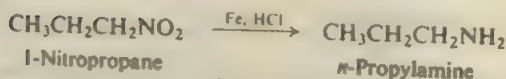
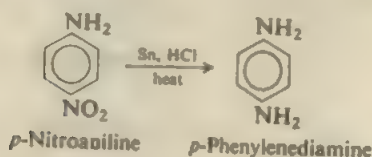
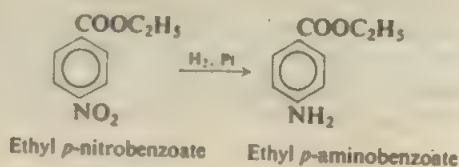
### PREPARATION OF AMINES

#### 1. Reduction of nitro compounds. Discussed in Sec. 22.9.

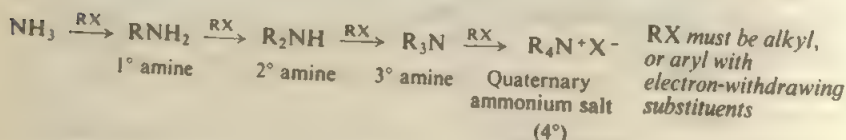


CONT.

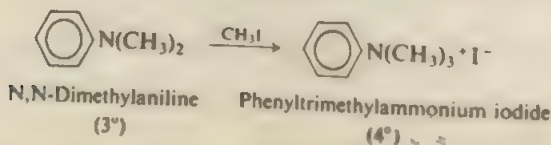
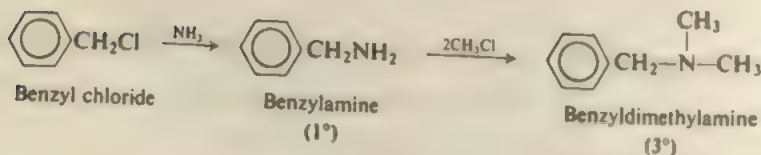
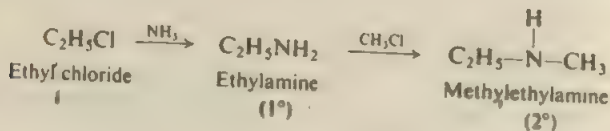
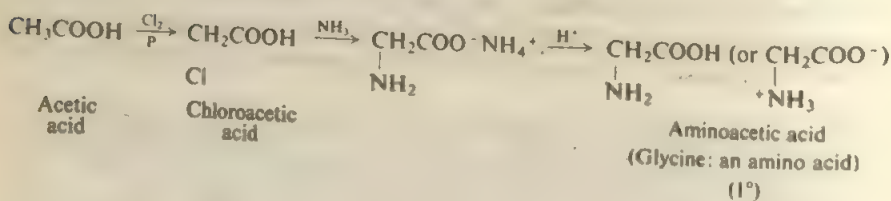
Examples:



2. Reaction of halides with ammonia or amines. Discussed in Secs. 22.10 and 22.13.

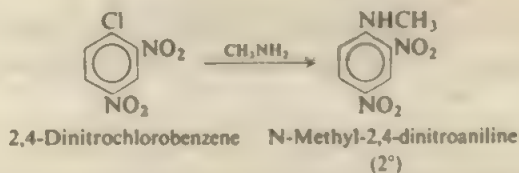


Examples:

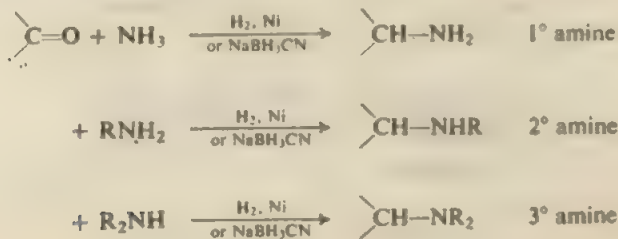


CONT.

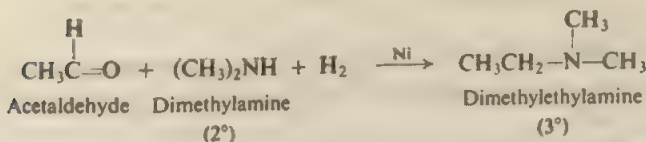
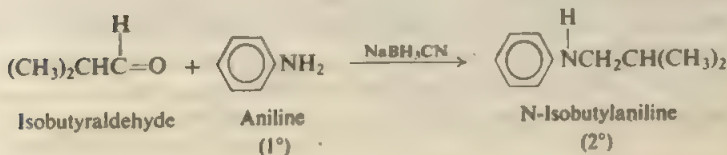
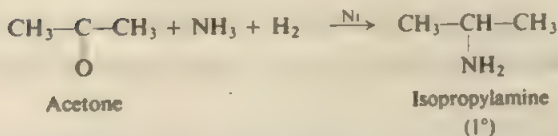
CONT.



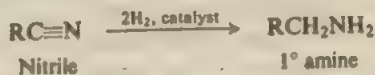
### 3. Reductive amination. Discussed in Sec. 22.11.



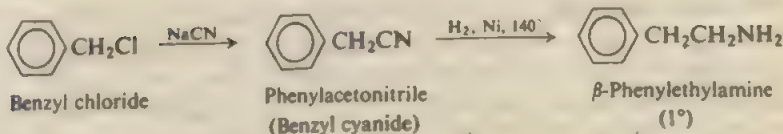
#### Examples:



### 4. Reduction of nitriles. Discussed in Sec. 22.8.

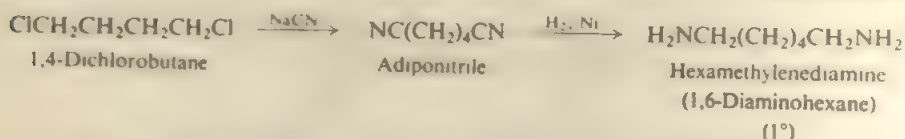


#### Examples:

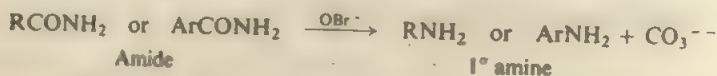


CONT.

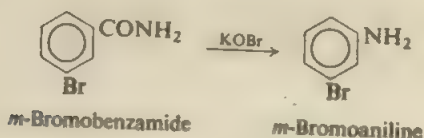
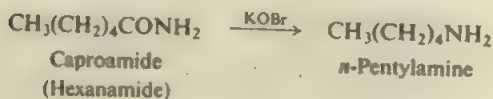
CONT



5. **Hofmann degradation of amides.** Discussed in Secs. 22.12 and 22.15–22.18.



Examples:



**Reduction of aromatic nitro compounds** is by far the most useful method of preparing amines, since it uses readily available starting materials, and yields the most important kind of amines, *primary aromatic amines*. These amines can be converted into aromatic diazonium salts, which are among the most versatile class of organic compounds known (see Secs. 23.13–23.19). The sequence



provides the best possible route to dozens of kinds of aromatic compounds.

Reduction of aliphatic nitro compounds is limited by the availability of the starting materials.

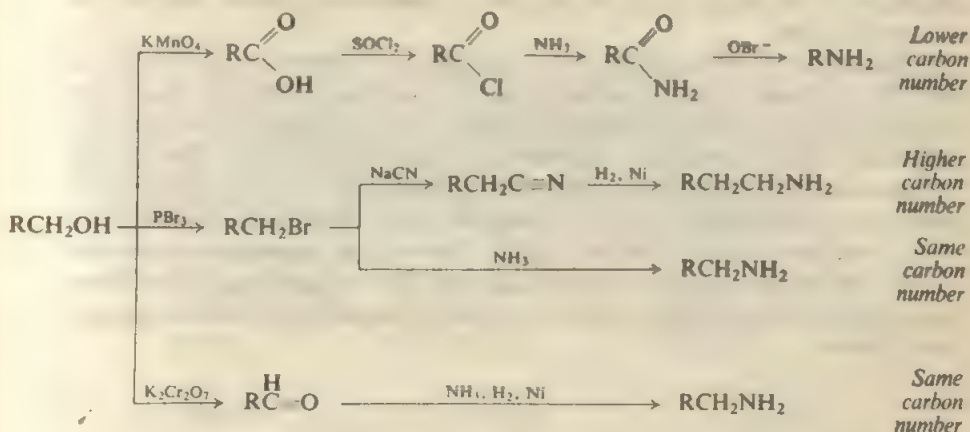
**Ammonolysis of halides** is usually limited to the aliphatic series, because of the generally low reactivity of aryl halides toward nucleophilic substitution. (However, see Chap. 25.) Ammonolysis has the disadvantage of yielding a mixture of different classes of amines. It is important to us as one of the most general methods of introducing the amino ( $-\text{NH}_2$ ) group into molecules of all kinds; it can be used, for example, to convert bromoacids into amino acids. The exactly analogous reaction of halides with amines permits the preparation of every class of amine (as well as quaternary ammonium salts,  $\text{R}_4\text{N}^+\text{X}^-$ ).

**Reductive amination**, the catalytic chemical reduction of aldehydes ( $\text{RCHO}$ ) and ketones ( $\text{R}_2\text{CO}$ ) in the presence of ammonia or an amine, accomplishes much the same purpose as the reaction of halides. It too can be used to prepare any class of amine, and has certain advantages over the halide reaction. The formation of mixtures is more readily controlled in reductive amination than in ammonolysis of halides. Reductive amination of ketones yields amines containing a *sec*-alkyl



group; these amines are difficult to prepare by ammonolysis because of the tendency of *sec*-alkyl halides to undergo elimination rather than substitution.

Synthesis via **reduction of nitriles** has the special feature of *increasing the length of a carbon chain*, producing a primary amine that has one more carbon atom than the alkyl halide from which the nitrile was made. The **Hofmann degradation of amides** has the feature of *decreasing the length of a carbon chain* by one carbon atom; it is also of interest as an example of an important class of reactions involving rearrangement.

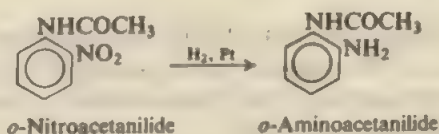


**Problem 22.5** Show how *n*-pentylamine can be synthesized from available materials by the four routes just outlined.

## 22.9 Reduction of nitro compounds

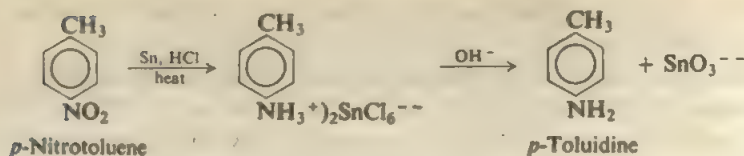
Like many organic compounds, nitro compounds can be reduced in two general ways: (a) by catalytic hydrogenation using molecular hydrogen, or (b) by chemical reduction, usually by a metal and acid.

Hydrogenation of a nitro compound to an amine takes place smoothly when a solution of the nitro compound in alcohol is shaken with finely divided nickel or platinum under hydrogen gas. For example:



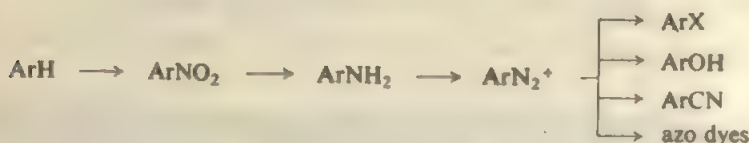
This method cannot be used when the molecule also contains some other easily hydrogenated group, such as a carbon-carbon double bond.

Chemical reduction in the laboratory is most often carried out by adding hydrochloric acid to a mixture of the nitro compound and a metal, usually granulated tin. In the acidic solution, the amine is obtained as its salt; the free amine is liberated by the addition of base, and is steam-distilled from the reaction



mixture. The crude amine is generally contaminated with some unreduced nitro compound, from which it can be separated by taking advantage of the basic properties of the amine; the amine is soluble in aqueous mineral acid, and the nitro compound is not.

Reduction of nitro compounds to amines is an essential step in what is probably the most important synthetic route in aromatic chemistry. Nitro compounds are readily prepared by direct nitration; when a mixture of *o*- and *p*-isomers is obtained, it can generally be separated to yield the pure isomers. The primary aromatic amines obtained by the reduction of these nitro compounds are readily converted into diazonium salts; the diazonium group, in turn, can be replaced by a large number of other groups (Sec. 23.13). In most cases this sequence is the best method of introducing these other groups into the aromatic ring. In addition, diazonium salts can be used to prepare the extremely important class of compounds, the *azo dyes*.

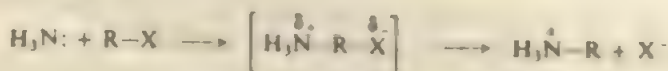


## 22.10 Ammonolysis of halides

Many organic halogen compounds are converted into amines by treatment with aqueous or alcoholic solutions of ammonia. The reaction is generally carried out either by allowing the reactants to stand together at room temperature or by heating them under pressure. Displacement of halogen by  $\text{NH}_3$  yields the amine salt, from which the free amine can be liberated by treatment with hydroxide ion.

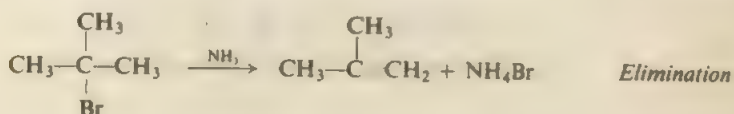


Ammonolysis of halides belongs to the class of reactions that we have called nucleophilic substitution. The organic halide is attacked by the nucleophilic ammonia molecule in the same way that it is attacked by hydroxide ion, alkoxide ion, cyanide ion, acetylide ion, and water:



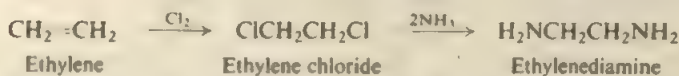
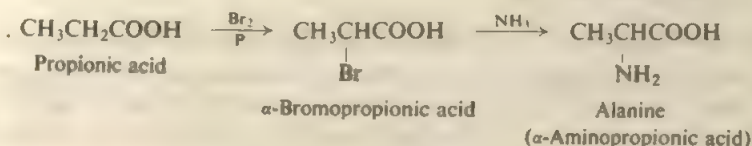
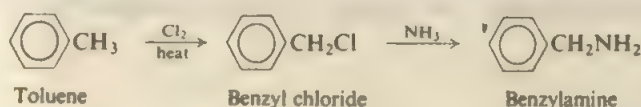
Like these other nucleophilic substitution reactions, ammonolysis is limited chiefly to alkyl halides or substituted alkyl halides. As with other reactions of this kind, elimination tends to compete (Sec. 7.27) with substitution: ammonia can attack

hydrogen to form alkene as well as attack carbon to form amine. Ammonolysis thus gives the highest yields with primary halides (where substitution predominates) and is virtually worthless with tertiary halides (where elimination predominates).



Because of their generally low reactivity, aryl halides are converted into amines only (a) if the ring carries  $-\text{NO}_2$  groups, or other strongly electron-withdrawing groups, at positions *ortho* and *para* to the halogen, or (b) if a high temperature or a strongly basic reagent is used (Chap. 25).

Some examples of the application of ammonolysis to synthesis are:



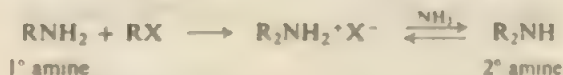
A serious disadvantage to the synthesis of amines by ammonolysis is the formation of more than one class of amine. The primary amine salt, formed by the



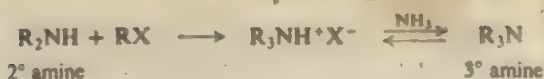
initial substitution, reacts with the reagent ammonia to yield the ammonium salt and the free primary amine; the following equilibrium thus exists:



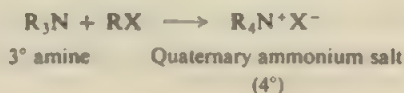
The free primary amine, like the ammonia from which it was made, is a nucleophilic reagent, it too can attack the alkyl halide, to yield the salt of a secondary amine:



The secondary amine, which is in equilibrium with its salt, can in turn attack the alkyl halide to form the salt of a tertiary amine:



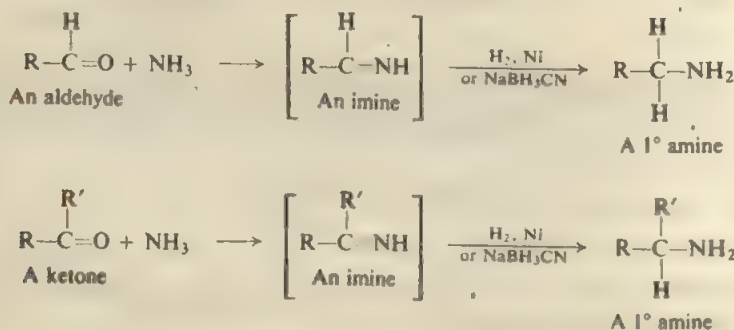
Finally, the tertiary amine can attack the alkyl halide to form a compound of the formula  $\text{R}_4\text{N}^+\text{X}^-$ , called a *quaternary ammonium salt* (discussed in Sec. 23.5):



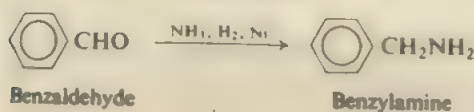
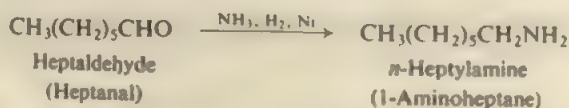
The presence of a large excess of ammonia lessens the importance of these last reactions and increases the yield of primary amine; under these conditions, a molecule of alkyl halide is more likely to encounter, and be attacked by, one of the numerous ammonia molecules rather than one of the relatively few amine molecules. At best, the yield of primary amine is always cut down by the formation of the higher classes of amines. Except in the special case of methylamine, the primary amine can be separated from these by-products by distillation.

## 22.11 Reductive amination

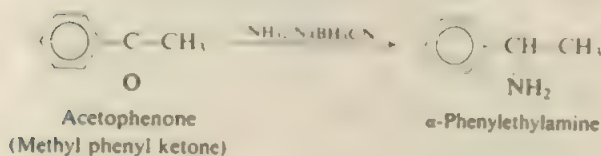
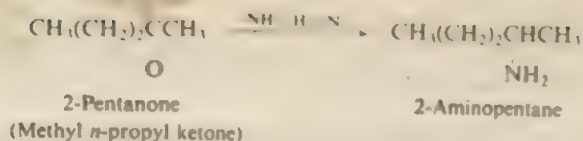
Many aldehydes ( $\text{RCHO}$ ) and ketones ( $\text{R}_2\text{CO}$ ) are converted into amines by **reductive amination**: reduction in the presence of ammonia. Reduction can be accomplished catalytically or by use of sodium cyanohydridoborate,  $\text{NaBH}_3\text{CN}$ . Reaction involves reduction of an intermediate compound (an *imine*,  $\text{RCH=NH}$  or  $\text{R}_2\text{C=NH}$ ) that contains a carbon-nitrogen double bond.



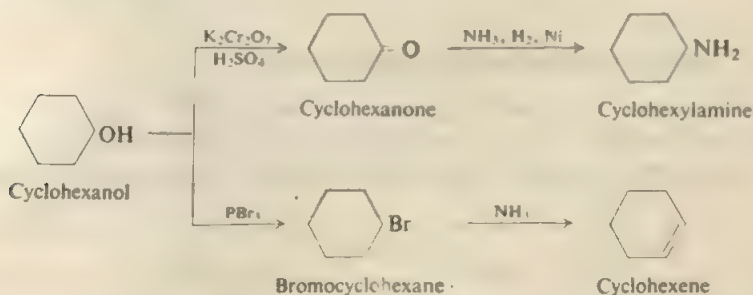
Reductive amination has been used successfully with a wide variety of aldehydes and ketones, both aliphatic and aromatic. For example:



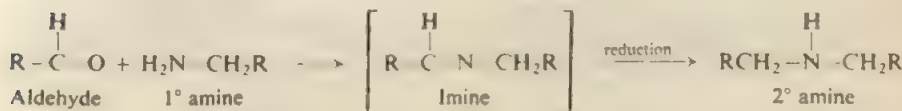




Reductive amination of ketones yields amines containing a *sec*-alkyl group; such amines are difficult to obtain by ammonolysis because of the tendency for *sec*-alkyl halides to undergo elimination. For example, cyclohexanone is converted into cyclohexylamine in good yield, whereas ammonolysis of bromocyclohexane yields only cyclohexene.



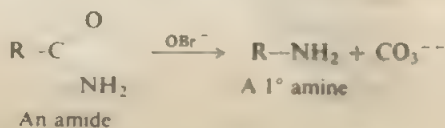
During reductive amination the aldehyde or ketone can react not only with ammonia but also with the primary amine that has already been formed, and thus yield a certain amount of secondary amine. The tendency for the reaction to go



beyond the desired stage can be fairly well limited by the proportions of reactants employed and is seldom a serious handicap.

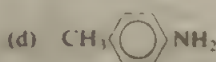
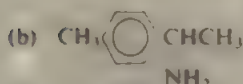
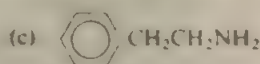
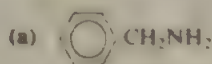
## 22.12 Hofmann degradation of amides

As a method of synthesis of amines, the Hofmann degradation of amides has the special feature of yielding a product containing one less carbon than the starting material. As we can see, reaction involves migration of a group from carbonyl



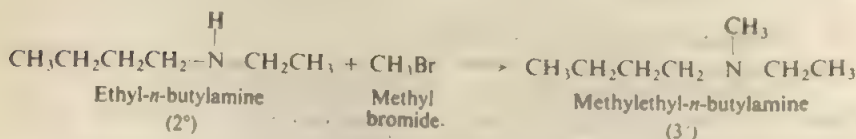
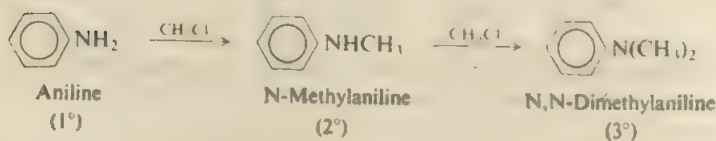
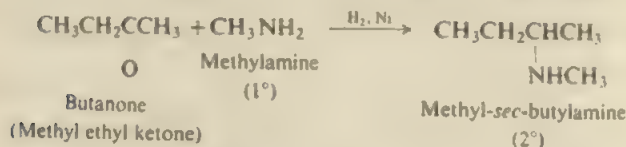
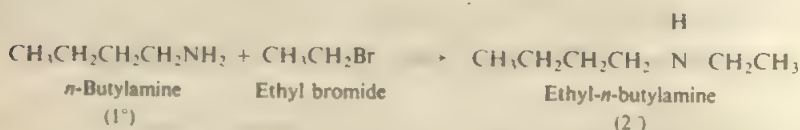
carbon to the adjacent nitrogen atom, and thus is an example of a *molecular rearrangement*. We shall return shortly to the Hofmann degradation (Sees. 22.15-22.18) and discuss its mechanism in detail.

**Problem 22.6** Using a different method in each case, show how the following amines could be prepared from *toluene* and any aliphatic reagents:



### 22.13 Synthesis of secondary and tertiary amines

So far we have been chiefly concerned with the synthesis of primary amines. Secondary and tertiary amines are prepared by adaptations of one of the processes already described: ammonolysis of halides or reductive amination. For example:

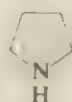


Where ammonia has been used to produce a primary amine, a primary amine can be used to produce a secondary amine, or a secondary amine can be used to produce a tertiary amine. In each of these syntheses there is a tendency for reaction to proceed beyond the first stage and to yield an amine of a higher class than the one that is wanted.

## 22.14 Heterocyclic amines

A particularly important kind of amino compound is one in which the nitrogen makes up part of a ring. Since such a ring contains more than one kind of atom—nitrogen plus the usual carbon—the compound of which it is a part is said to be *heterocyclic*. (Compare, for example, the heterocyclic oxygen compounds in Secs. 12.8–12.15.) We shall discuss heterocyclic compounds in detail in Chapter 35. But it is hard to go very far in organic chemistry without encountering heterocyclic nitrogen compounds—indeed, we have already encountered them as reagents—and so we shall look briefly at some of them here.

These heterocyclic amines can be saturated or unsaturated, aliphatic or aromatic, a nitrogen may share the ring with another nitrogen or with a hetero atom of a different kind—oxygen, say, or sulfur. For example:



Pyrrole



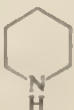
Pyridine



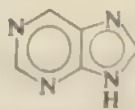
Pyrimidine



Pyrrolidine



Piperidine



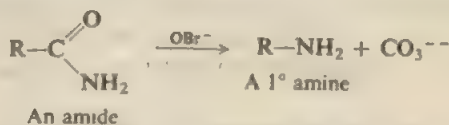
Purine

The important thing for us to realize at this point is that, part of a ring or not, nitrogen is still nitrogen. It retains its most important property, *basicity*; and this basicity, as we shall see in the next chapter, is the property that determines the chemical behavior of amines.

We have all heard of the *bases* whose sequence along the DNA molecule constitutes the genetic code. These bases are heterocyclic bases, and their basicity comes from nitrogen.

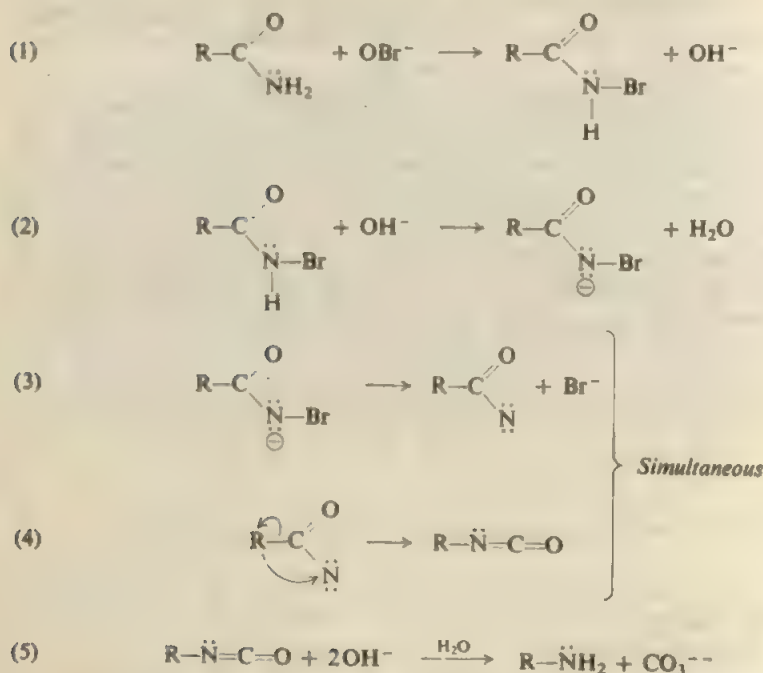
## 22.15 Hofmann rearrangement. Migration to electron-deficient nitrogen

Let us return to a reaction that we encountered earlier as a method of synthesis of amines: the Hofmann degradation of amides. Whatever the mechanism of the



reaction, it is clear that rearrangement occurs, since the group joined to carbonyl carbon in the amide is found joined to nitrogen in the product.

The reaction is believed to proceed by the following steps:

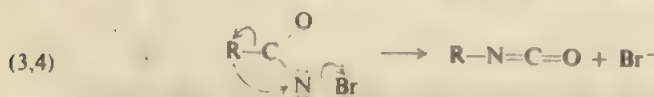


Step (1) is the halogenation of an amide. This is a known reaction, an N-haloamide being isolated if no base is present. Furthermore, if the N-haloamide isolated in this way is then treated with base, it is converted into the amine.

Step (2) is the abstraction of a hydrogen ion by hydroxide ion. This is reasonable behavior for hydroxide ion, especially since the presence of the electron-withdrawing bromine increases the acidity of the amide. Unstable salts have actually been isolated in certain of these reactions.

Step (3) involves the separation of a halide ion, which leaves behind an electron-deficient nitrogen atom.

In Step (4) the actual rearrangement occurs. Steps (3) and (4) are generally



believed to occur simultaneously, the attachment of R to nitrogen helping to push out halide ion. That is, migration is S<sub>N</sub>2-like, and provides anchimeric assistance.

Step (5) is the hydrolysis of an isocyanate (R-N-C=O) to form an amine and carbonate ion. This is a known reaction of isocyanates. If the Hofmann degradation is carried out in the absence of water, an isocyanate can actually be isolated.

Like the rearrangement of carbocations that we have already encountered (Sec. 6.26), the Hofmann rearrangement involves a 1,2-shift. In the rearrangement of carbocations a group migrates with its electrons to an electron-deficient carbon. In the present reaction the group migrates with its electrons to an electron-deficient

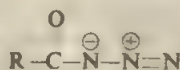


nitrogen. We consider nitrogen to be electron-deficient even though it probably loses electrons—to bromide ion—while migration takes place, rather than before.

The strongest support for the mechanism just outlined is the fact that many of the proposed intermediates have been isolated, and that these intermediates have been shown to yield the products of the Hofmann degradation. The mechanism is also supported by the fact that analogous mechanisms account satisfactorily for observations made on a large number of related rearrangements. Furthermore, the actual rearrangement step fits the broad pattern of 1,2-shifts to electron-deficient atoms.

In addition to evidence indicating what the various steps in the Hofmann degradation are, there is also evidence that gives us a rather intimate view of just how the rearrangement step takes place. In following sections we shall see what some of that evidence is. We shall be interested in this not just for what it tells us about the Hofmann degradation, but because it will give us an idea of the kind of thing that can be done in studying rearrangements of many kinds.

**Problem 22.7** Reaction of acid chlorides with sodium azide,  $\text{NaN}_3$ , yields *acyl azides*,  $\text{RCON}_3$ . When heated, these undergo the *Curtius rearrangement* to amines,  $\text{RNH}_2$ , or, in a non-hydroxylic solvent, to isocyanates,  $\text{RNCO}$ . Using the structure

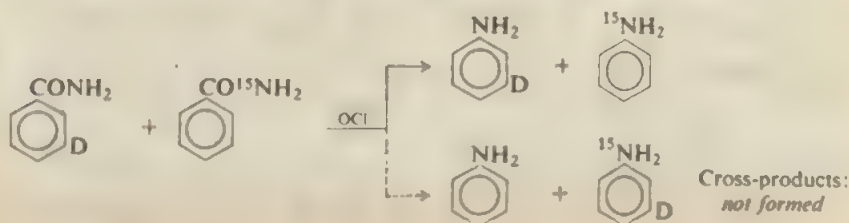


for the azide, suggest a mechanism for the rearrangement. (*Hint: Write balanced equations.*)

## 22.16 Hofmann rearrangement. Intramolecular or intermolecular?

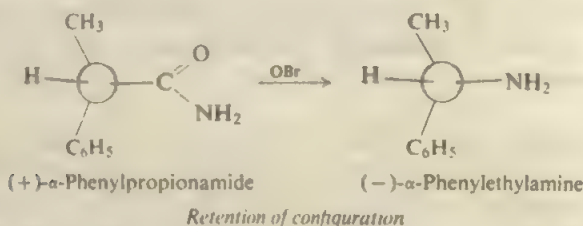
One of the first questions asked in the study of a rearrangement is this: Is the rearrangement *intramolecular* or *intermolecular*? That is, does the migrating group move from one atom to another atom within the same molecule, or does it move from one molecule to another?

In the mechanism outlined above, the Hofmann rearrangement is shown as intramolecular. How do we know that this is so? To answer this question, T. J. Prosser and E. L. Eliel (University of Notre Dame) carried out degradation of a mixture of *m*-deuteriobenzamide and benzamide- $^{15}\text{N}$ . When they analyzed the product with the mass spectrometer, they found only *m*-deuterioaniline and aniline- $^{15}\text{N}$ . There was *none* of the mixture of cross-products that would have been formed if a phenyl group from one molecule had become attached to the nitrogen of another. The results of this elegant double labeling experiment thus show beyond doubt that the Hofmann rearrangement is intramolecular.



## 22.17 Hofmann rearrangement. Stereochemistry at the migrating group

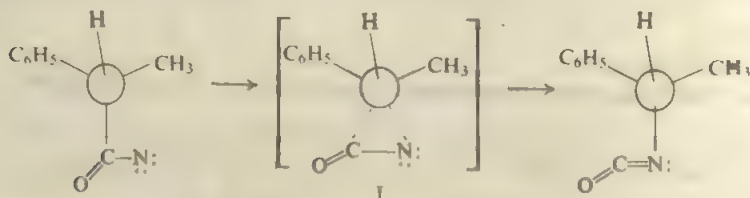
When optically active  $\alpha$ -phenylpropionamide undergoes the Hofmann degradation,  $\alpha$ -phenylethylamine of the same configuration and of essentially the same optical purity is obtained:



Rearrangement proceeds with *complete retention of configuration* about the chiral center of the migrating group.

These results tell us two things. First, nitrogen takes the same relative position on the chiral carbon that was originally occupied by the carbonyl carbon. Second, the chiral carbon does not break away from the carbonyl carbon until it has started to attach itself to nitrogen. If the group were actually to become free during its migration, we would expect considerable loss of configuration and hence a partially racemic product. (If the group were to become free—*really* free—we would expect reaction to be, in part, intermolecular, also contrary to fact.)

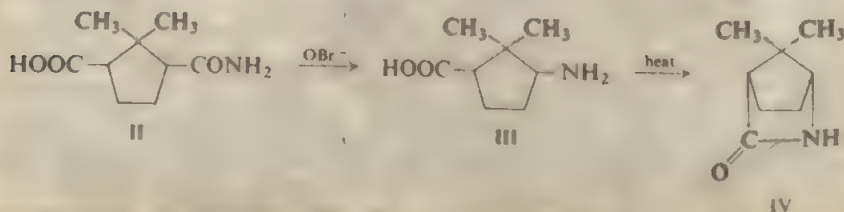
We may picture the migrating group as moving from carbon to nitrogen via a transition state, I, in which carbon is pentavalent:



The migrating group *steps* from atom to atom; it does *not* jump.

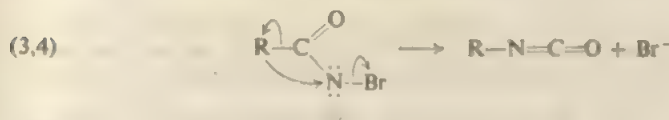
There is much evidence to suggest that the stereochemistry of all 1,2-shifts has this common feature: *complete retention of configuration in the migrating group*.

**Problem 22.8** Many years before the Hofmann degradation of optically active  $\alpha$ -phenylpropionamide was studied, the following observations were made: when the cyclopentane derivative II, in which the  $-\text{COOH}$  and  $-\text{CONH}_2$  groups are *cis* to each other, was treated with hypobromite, compound III was obtained; compound III could be converted by heat into the amide IV (called a *lactam*). What do these results show about the mechanism of the rearrangement? (Use models.)



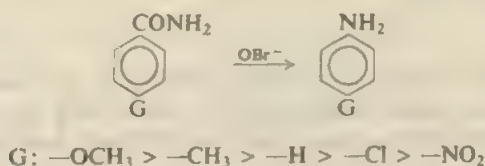
## 22.18 Hofmann rearrangement. Timing of the steps

We said that steps (3) and (4) of the mechanism are believed to be simultaneous, that is, that loss of bromide ion and migration occur in the same step

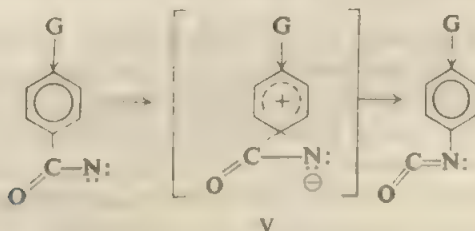


One reason for believing this is simply the anticipated difficulty of forming a highly unstable intermediate in which an electronegative element like nitrogen has only a sextet of electrons. Such a particle should be even less stable than primary carbocations, and those, we know, are seldom formed; reaction takes the easier,  $S_N2$ -like path. Another reason is the effect of structure on rate of reaction. Let us examine this second reason.

When the migrating group is aryl, the rate of the Hofmann degradation is increased by the presence of electron-releasing substituents in the aromatic ring; thus substituted benzamides show the following order of reactivity:



Now, how could electron release speed up Hofmann degradation? One way could be through its effect on the rate of migration. Migration of an alkyl group must involve a transition state containing pentavalent carbon, like I in the preceding section. Migration of an aryl group, on the other hand, takes place via a structure like V. This structure is a familiar one; from the standpoint of the migrating aryl group, rearrangement is simply electrophilic aromatic substitution, with the electron-deficient atom—nitrogen, in this case—acting as the attacking reagent. In at least some rearrangements, as we shall see, there is evidence that

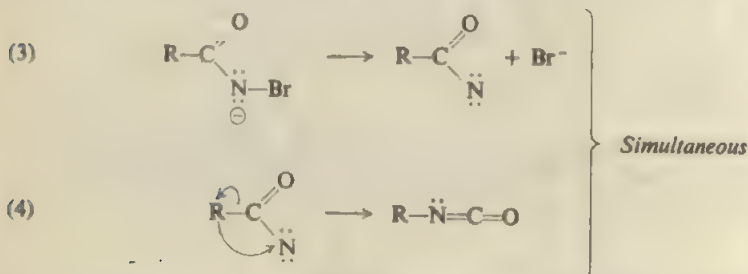


structures like V are actual intermediate compounds, as in the ordinary kind of electrophilic aromatic substitution (Sec. 15.14). Electron-releasing groups disperse the developing charge on the aromatic ring and thus speed up formation of V. Viewed in this way, substituents affect the rate of rearrangement—the *migratory aptitude*—of an aryl group in exactly the same way as they affect the rate of aromatic nitration, halogenation, or sulfonation. (In some cases, however, conformational effects can completely outweigh these electronic effects.)

There is another way in which electron release might be speeding up reaction: by speeding up formation of the electron-deficient species in equation (3). But the observed effect is a strong one, and more consistent with the development of the positive charge *in the ring itself*, as during rearrangement.

We should be clear about what the question is here. It is *not* whether some groups migrate faster than others—there is little doubt about that—but whether the rate of rearrangement affects the overall rate—the *measured* rate—of the Hofmann degradation.

It is likely, then, that electron-releasing substituents speed up Hofmann degradation by speeding up rearrangement. Now, under what conditions can this happen? Consider the sequence (3) and (4). Loss of bromide ion (3) could be fast



and reversible, followed by slow rearrangement (4). Rearrangement would be rate-determining, as required, but in that case something else would not fit. The reverse of (3) is combination of the particle  $\text{ArCON}$  with bromide ion; if this were taking place, so should combination of  $\text{ArCON}$  with the solvent, water—more abundant and more nucleophilic—to form the *hydroxamic acid*  $\text{ArCONHOH}$ . But hydroxamic acids are *not* formed in the Hofmann degradation.

If  $\text{ArCON}$  were indeed an intermediate, then, it would have to be undergoing rearrangement as fast as it is formed; that is, (4) would have to be fast compared with (3). But in that case, the overall rate would be independent of the rate of rearrangement, contrary to fact.

We are left with the concerted mechanism (3,4). Attachment of the migrating group helps to push out bromide ion, and overall rate *does* depend on the rate of rearrangement. As the amount of anchimeric assistance varies, so does the observed rate of reaction.

At the migrating group, we said, rearrangement amounts to electrophilic substitution. But at the electron-deficient nitrogen, rearrangement amounts to *nucleophilic* substitution: the migrating group (with its electrons) is a nucleophile, and bromide ion is the leaving group. The sequence (3) and (4) corresponds to an  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$  mechanism; the concerted reaction (3,4) corresponds to a  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  mechanism. Dependence of overall rate on the nature of the nucleophile is consistent with the  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$ -like mechanism, but not with the  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$ -like mechanism.

## PROBLEMS

1. Draw structures, give names, and classify as primary, secondary, or tertiary:

(a) the eight isomeric amines of formula  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_{11}\text{N}$

(b) the five isomeric amines of formula  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_9\text{N}$  that contain a benzene ring



2. Give the structural formulas of the following compounds

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| (a) <i>sec</i> -butylamine      | (i) <i>N,N</i> -dimethylaniline           |
| (b) <i>o</i> -toluidine         | (j) ethanolamine (2-aminoethanol)         |
| (c) anilinium chloride          | (k) $\beta$ -phenylethylamine             |
| (d) diethylamine                | (l) <i>N,N</i> -dimethylaminocyclohexane  |
| (e) <i>p</i> -aminobenzoic acid | (m) diphenylamine                         |
| (f) benzylamine                 | (n) 2,4-dimethylaniline                   |
| (g) isopropylammonium benzoate  | (o) tetra- <i>n</i> -butylammonium iodide |
| (h) <i>o</i> -phenylenediamine  | (p) <i>p</i> -anisidine                   |

3. Show how *n*-propylamine could be prepared from each of the following

- |                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) <i>n</i> -propyl bromide | (e) propionitrile           |
| (b) <i>n</i> -propyl alcohol | (f) <i>n</i> -butylamine    |
| (c) propionaldehyde          | (g) <i>n</i> -butyl alcohol |
| (d) 1-nitropropane           | (h) ethyl alcohol           |

Which of these methods can be applied to the preparation of aniline? Of benzylamine?

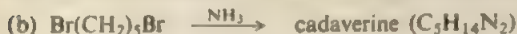
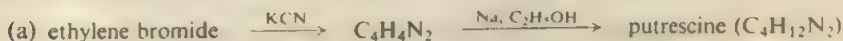
4. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following compounds from benzene, toluene, and alcohols of four carbons or fewer using any needed inorganic reagents.

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| (a) isopropylamine             | (h) <i>p</i> -aminobenzoic acid                          |
| (b) <i>n</i> -pentylamine      | (i) 3-aminoheptane                                       |
| (c) <i>p</i> -toluidine        | (j) <i>N</i> -ethylaniline                               |
| (d) ethylisopropylamine        | (k) 2,4-dinitroaniline                                   |
| (e) $\alpha$ -phenylethylamine | (l) the drug <i>bencedrine</i> (2-amino-1-phenylpropane) |
| (f) $\beta$ -phenylethylamine  | (m) <i>p</i> -nitrobenzylamine                           |
| (g) <i>m</i> -chloroaniline    | (n) 2-amino-1-phenylethanol                              |

5. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis from palmitic acid,  $n\text{-C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}\text{COOH}$ , of:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) $n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{NH}_2$ | (c) $n\text{-C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}\text{NH}_2$  |
| (b) $n\text{-C}_{17}\text{H}_{35}\text{NH}_2$ | (d) $n\text{-C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\text{-}n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}$ |

6. On the basis of the following synthesis give the structures of *putrescine* and *cadaverine*, found in rotting flesh:

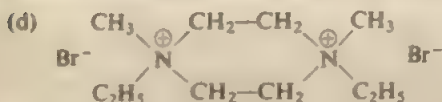


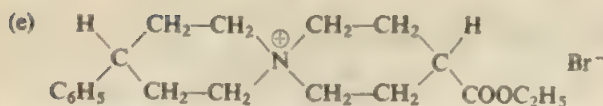
7. One of the raw materials for the manufacture of Nylon 66 is *hexamethylenediamine*,  $\text{NH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_6\text{NH}_2$ . Much of this amine is made by a process that begins with the 1,4-addition of chlorine to 1,3-butadiene. What do you think might be the subsequent steps in this process?

8. Outline all steps in a possible synthesis of  $\beta$ -alanine ( $\beta$ -aminopropionic acid) from succinic anhydride.

9. Using models and then drawing formulas, show the stereoisomeric forms in which each of the following compounds can exist. Tell which stereoisomers when separated from all others would be optically active and which would be optically inactive.

- (a)  $\alpha$ -phenylethylamine  
 (b) *N*-methyl-*N*-ethylaniline  
 (c) methylethyl-*n*-propylphenylammonium bromide

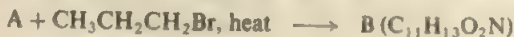
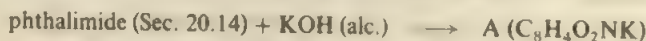




(f) methylethylphenylamine oxide,  $(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{N}-\text{O}$

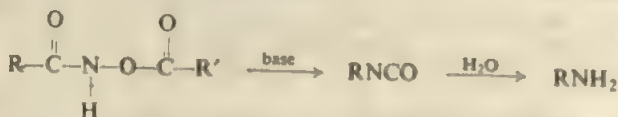
10. Two geometric isomers of benzaldoxime,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{NOH}$ , are known. (a) Draw their structures, showing the geometry of the molecules. (b) Show how this geometry results from their electronic configurations. (c) Would you predict geometric isomerism for benzophenoneoxime,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}=\text{NOH}$ ? For acetophenoneoxime,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{NOH}$ ? For azobenzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}=\text{NC}_6\text{H}_5$ ?

11. (a) Give structural formulas of compounds A through D.



(b) This sequence illustrates the **Gabriel synthesis**. What class of compounds does it produce? What particular advantage does it have over alternative methods for the production of these compounds? On what special property of phthalimide does the synthesis depend?

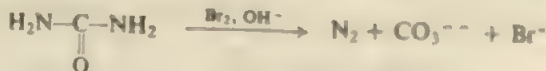
12. In the presence of base, acyl derivatives of hydroxamic acids undergo the **Lossen rearrangement** to yield isocyanates or amines.



(a) Write a detailed mechanism for the rearrangement.

(b) Study of a series of compounds in which R and R' were *m*- and *p*-substituted phenyl groups showed that reaction is speeded up by electron-releasing substituents in R and by electron-withdrawing substituents in R'. How do you account for these effects?

13. Urea is converted by hypohalites into nitrogen and carbonate. Given the fact that



hydrazine,  $\text{H}_2\text{N}-\text{NH}_2$ , is oxidized to nitrogen by hypohalite, show that this reaction of urea is simply an example of the **Hofmann degradation** of amides.

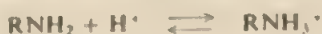
## Amines II. Reactions

### 23.1 Reactions

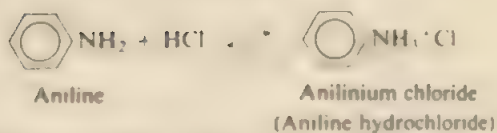
Like ammonia, the three classes of amines contain nitrogen that bears an unshared pair of electrons; as a result, amines closely resemble ammonia in chemical properties. The tendency of nitrogen to share this pair of electrons underlies the entire chemical behavior of amines: their basicity, their action as nucleophiles, and the unusually high reactivity of aromatic rings bearing amino or substituted amino groups.

#### REACTIONS OF AMINES

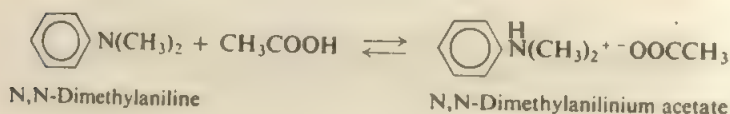
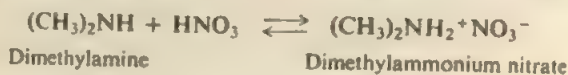
1. **Basicity. Salt formation.** Discussed in Secs. 22.5 and 23.2 23.4.



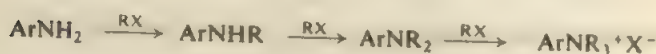
*Examples:*



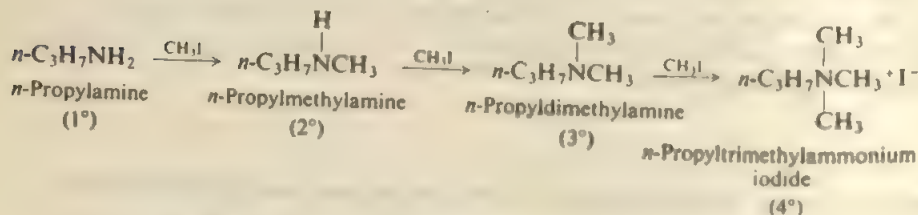
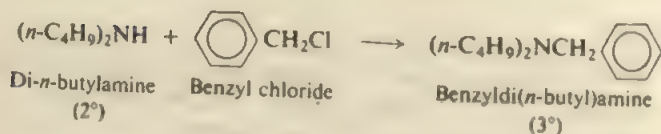
CONT.



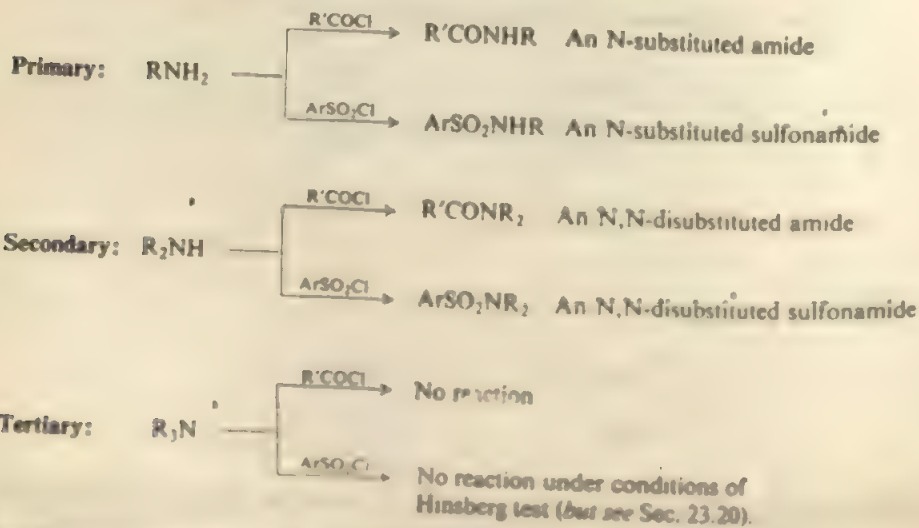
## 2. Alkylation. Discussed in Secs. 22.13 and 23.5.



Examples:



## 3. Conversion into amides. Discussed in Sec. 23.7.

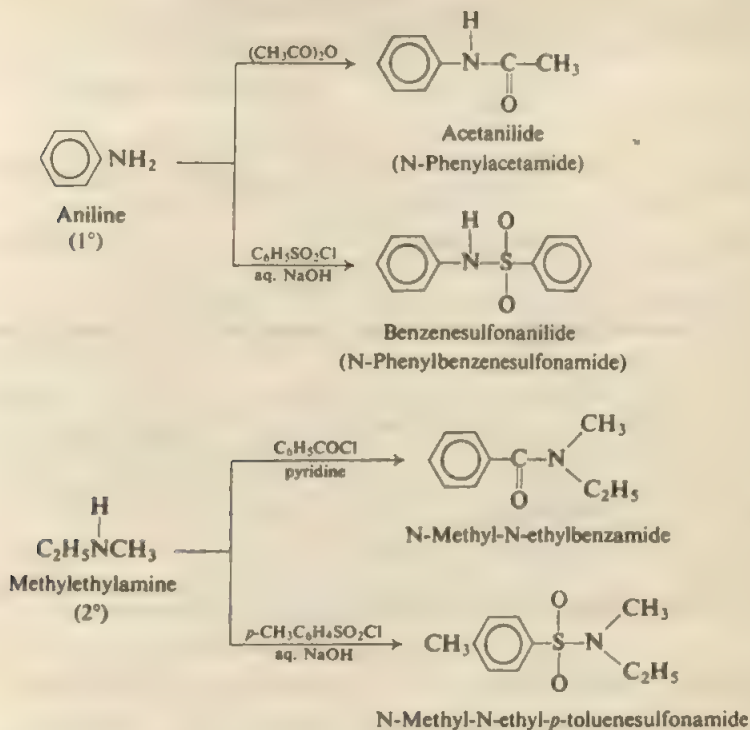


CONT.

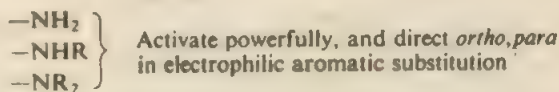


CONT.

## Examples:

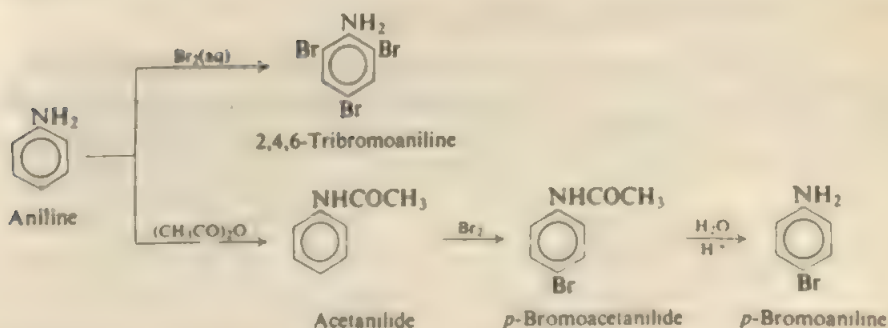


## 4. Ring substitution in aromatic amines. Discussed in Secs. 23.9, 23.12, and 23.19.



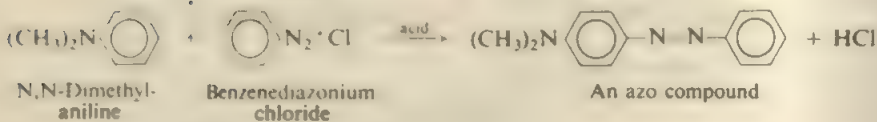
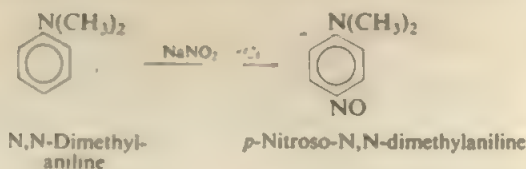
$-\text{NHCOR}$ : Less powerful activator than  $-\text{NH}_2$

## Examples:

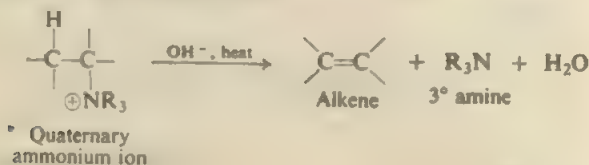


CONT.

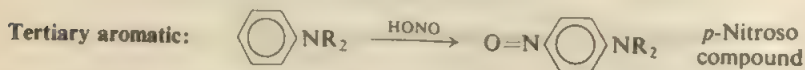
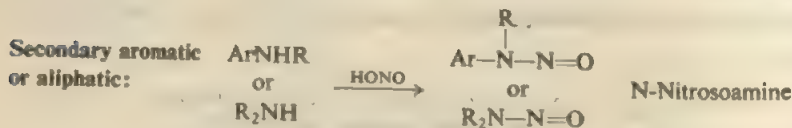
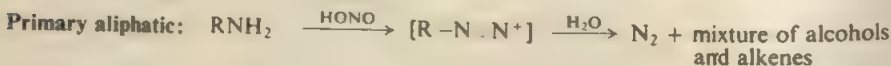
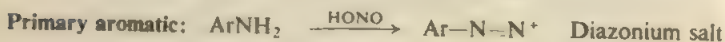
CONT



5. Hofmann elimination from quaternary ammonium salts. Discussed in Secs. 23.5-23.6.

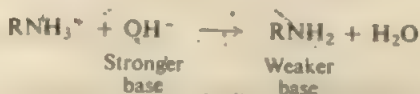


6. Reactions with nitrous acid. Discussed in Secs. 23.12-23.13.



## 23.2 Basicity of amines. Basicity constant

Like ammonia, amines are converted into their salts by aqueous mineral acids and are liberated from their salts by aqueous hydroxides. Like ammonia, therefore, amines are more basic than water and less basic than hydroxide ion:



We found it convenient to compare acidities of carboxylic acids by measuring the extent to which they give up hydrogen ion to water, the equilibrium constant for this reaction was called the acidity constant,  $K_a$ . In the same way, it is convenient to compare basicities of amines by measuring the extent to which they accept hydrogen ion from water, the equilibrium constant for this reaction is called a **basicity constant**,  $K_b$ .



$$K_b = \frac{[\text{RNH}_3^+][\text{OH}^-]}{[\text{RNH}_2]}$$

(As in the analogous expression for an acidity constant, the concentration of the solvent, water, is omitted.) Each amine has its characteristic  $K_b$ ; the larger the  $K_b$ , the stronger the base.

We must not lose sight of the fact that the principal base in an aqueous solution of an amine (or of ammonia, for that matter) is the *amine* itself, not hydroxide ion. Measurement of  $[\text{OH}^-]$  is simply a convenient way to compare basicities.

We see in Table 22.1 (p. 889) that aliphatic amines of all three classes have  $K_b$ 's of about  $10^{-3}$  to  $10^{-4}$  (0.001 to 0.0001), they are thus somewhat stronger bases than ammonia ( $K_b = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$ ). Aromatic amines, on the other hand, are considerably weaker bases than ammonia, having  $K_b$ 's of  $10^{-9}$  or less. Substituents on the ring have a marked effect on the basicity of aromatic amines, *p*-nitroaniline, for example, being only 1/4000 as basic as aniline (Table 23.1).

Table 23.1 BASICITY CONSTANTS OF SUBSTITUTED ANILINES

$K_b$ of aniline = $4.2 \times 10^{-10}$					
	$K_b$		$K_b$		$K_b$
<i>p</i> -NH <sub>2</sub>	$140 \times 10^{-10}$	<i>m</i> -NH <sub>2</sub>	$10 \times 10^{-10}$	<i>o</i> -NH <sub>2</sub>	$3 \times 10^{-10}$
<i>p</i> -OCH <sub>3</sub>	20	<i>m</i> -OCH <sub>3</sub>	2	<i>o</i> -OCH <sub>3</sub>	3
<i>p</i> -CH <sub>3</sub>	12	<i>m</i> -CH <sub>3</sub>	5	<i>o</i> -CH <sub>3</sub>	2.6
<i>p</i> -Cl	1	<i>m</i> -Cl	0.3	<i>o</i> -Cl	0.05
<i>p</i> -NO <sub>2</sub>	0.001	<i>m</i> -NO <sub>2</sub>	0.029	<i>o</i> -NO <sub>2</sub>	0.00006

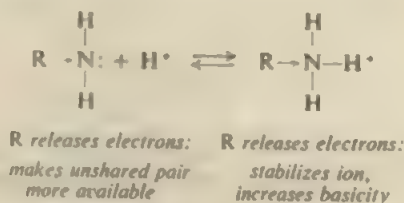
### 23.3 Structure and basicity

Let us see how basicity of amines is related to structure. We shall handle basicity just as we handled acidity: we shall compare the stabilities of amines with the stabilities of their ions; the more stable the ion relative to the amine from which it is formed, the more basic the amine.

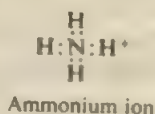
First of all, amines are more basic than alcohols, ethers, esters, etc., for the same reason that ammonia is more basic than water: nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen, and can better accommodate the positive charge of the ion.

An aliphatic amine is more basic than ammonia because the electron-releasing alkyl groups tend to disperse the positive charge of the substituted ammonium ion,

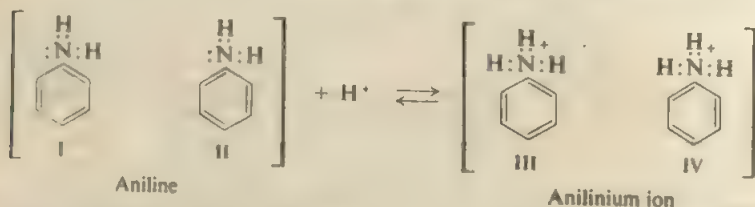
and therefore stabilize it in a way that is not possible for the unsubstituted ammonium ion. Thus an ammonium ion is stabilized by electron release in the same way as a carbocation (Sec. 6.24). From another point of view, we can consider that an alkyl group pushes electrons toward nitrogen, and thus makes the fourth pair more available for sharing with an acid. (The differences in basicity among primary, secondary, and tertiary aliphatic amines are due to a combination of solvation and polar factors.)



How can we account for the fact that aromatic amines are weaker bases than ammonia? Let us compare the structures of aniline and the anilinium ion with the structures of ammonia and the ammonium ion. We see that ammonia and the ammonium ion are each represented satisfactorily by a single structure:



Aniline and anilinium ion contain the benzene ring and therefore are hybrids of the Kekulé structures I and II, and III and IV. This resonance presumably stabilizes

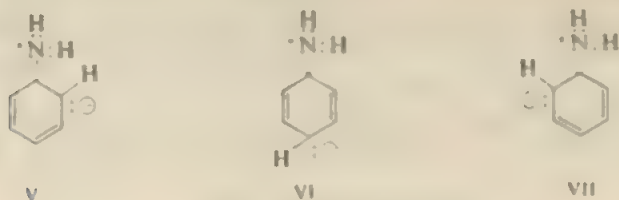


both amine and ion to the same extent. It lowers the energy content of each by the same number of kcal/mol, and hence does not affect the *difference* in their energy contents, that is, does not affect  $\Delta G$  of ionization. If there were no other factors involved, then, we might expect the basicity of aniline to be about the same as the basicity of ammonia.

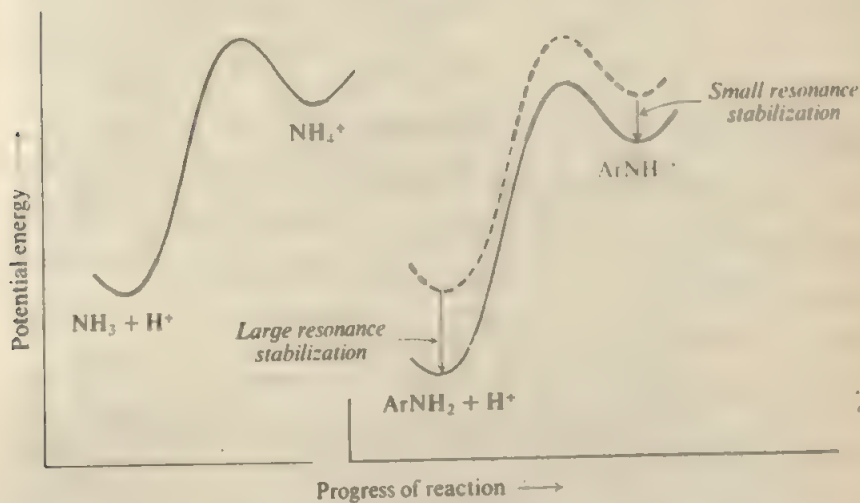
However, there are additional structures to be considered. To account for the powerful activating effect of the  $-\text{NH}_2$  group on electrophilic aromatic substitution (Sec. 15.18), we considered that the intermediate carbocation is stabilized by structures in which there is a double bond between nitrogen and the ring; contribution from these structures is simply a way of indicating the tendency for nitrogen to share its fourth pair of electrons and to accept a positive charge. It is generally believed that the  $-\text{NH}_2$  group tends to share electrons with the ring, not only in the carbocation which is the intermediate in electrophilic aromatic substitution, but also in the aniline molecule itself.



Thus aniline is a hybrid not only of structures I and II but also of structures V, VI, and VII. We cannot draw comparable structures of the anilinium ion. Contri-



bution from the three structures V, VI, and VII stabilizes the amine in a way that is not possible for the ammonium ion; resonance thus lowers the energy content of aniline more than it lowers the energy content of the anilinium ion. The net effect is to shift the equilibrium in the direction of less ionization, that is, to make  $K_b$  smaller (Fig. 23.1). (See, however, the discussion in Sec. 19.11.)



**Figure 23.1.** Molecular structure and position of equilibrium. Resonance-stabilized aromatic amine is weaker base than ammonia. (Plots aligned with each other for easy comparison.)

The low basicity of aromatic amines is thus due to the fact that the amine is stabilized by resonance to a greater extent than is the ion.

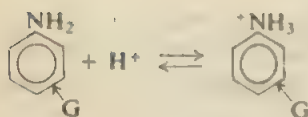
From another point of view, we can say that aniline is a weaker base than ammonia because the fourth pair of electrons is partly shared with the ring and is thus less available for sharing with a hydrogen ion. The tendency (through resonance) for the  $\text{—NH}_2$  group to release electrons to the aromatic ring makes the ring more reactive toward electrophilic attack; at the same time this tendency necessarily makes the amine less basic. Similar considerations apply to other aromatic amines.

## 23.4 Effect of substituents on basicity of aromatic amines

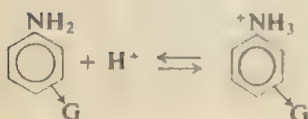
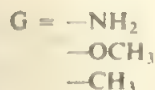
How is the basicity of an aromatic amine affected by substituents on the ring?

In Table 23.1 (p. 915) we see that an electron-releasing substituent like  $-\text{CH}_3$  increases the basicity of aniline, and an electron-withdrawing substituent like  $-\text{X}$  or  $-\text{NO}_2$  decreases the basicity. These effects are understandable. Electron release tends to disperse the positive charge of the anilinium ion, and thus stabilizes the ion relative to the amine. Electron withdrawal tends to intensify the positive charge of the anilinium ion, and thus destabilizes the ion relative to the amine.

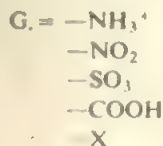
### Basicity of Aromatic Amines



*G releases electrons:  
stabilizes cation,  
increases basicity*



*G withdraws electrons:  
destabilizes cation,  
decreases basicity*



We notice that the base-strengthening substituents are the ones that activate an aromatic ring toward electrophilic substitution; the base-weakening substituents are the ones that deactivate an aromatic ring toward electrophilic substitution (see Sec. 15.5). Basicity depends upon position of equilibrium, and hence on relative stabilities of reactants and products. Reactivity in electrophilic aromatic substitution depends upon rate, and hence on relative stabilities of reactants and transition state. The effect of a particular substituent is the same in both cases, however, since the controlling factor is accommodation of a positive charge.

A given substituent affects the basicity of an amine and the acidity of a carboxylic acid in opposite ways (compare Sec. 19.14). This is to be expected, since basicity depends upon ability to accommodate a positive charge, and acidity depends upon ability to accommodate a negative charge.

Once again we see the operation of the *ortho* effect (Sec. 19.14). Even electron-releasing substituents weaken basicity when they are *ortho* to the amino group, and electron-withdrawing substituents do so to a much greater extent from the *ortho* position than from the *meta* or *para* position.

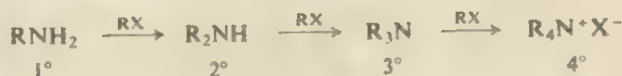
From another point of view, we can consider that an electron-releasing group pushes electrons toward nitrogen and makes the fourth pair more available for sharing with an acid, whereas an electron-withdrawing group helps pull electrons away from nitrogen and thus makes the fourth pair less available for sharing.

**Problem 23.1** (a) Besides destabilizing the anilinium ion, how else might a nitro group affect basicity? (*Hint*: See structures V-VII on p. 917.) (b) Why does the nitro group exert a larger base-weakening effect from the *para* position than from the nearer *meta* position?

**Problem 23.2** Draw the structural formula of the product expected (if any) from the reaction of trimethylamine and  $\text{BF}_3$ .

### 23.5 Quaternary ammonium salts. Exhaustive methylation. Hofmann elimination

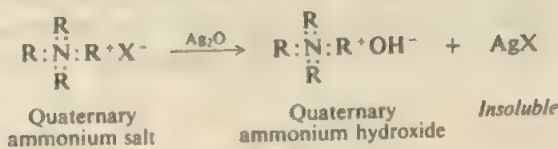
Like ammonia, an amine can react with an alkyl halide; the product is an amine of the next higher class. The alkyl halide undergoes nucleophilic substitution, with the basic amine serving as the nucleophilic reagent. We see that one of the



hydrogens attached to nitrogen has been replaced by an alkyl group; the reaction is therefore often referred to as *alkylation of amines*. The amine can be aliphatic or aromatic, primary, secondary, or tertiary; the halide is generally an alkyl halide.

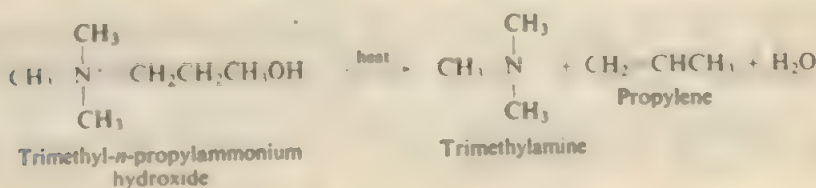
We have already encountered alkylation of amines as a side reaction in the preparation of primary amines by the ammonolysis of halides (Sec. 22.10), and as a method of synthesis of secondary and tertiary amines (Sec. 22.13). Let us look at one further aspect of this reaction, the formation of quaternary ammonium salts.

Quaternary ammonium salts are the products of the final stage of alkylation of nitrogen. They have the formula  $\text{R}_4\text{N}^+\text{X}^-$ . Four organic groups are covalently bonded to nitrogen, and the positive charge of this ion is balanced by some negative ion. When the salt of a primary, secondary, or tertiary amine is treated with hydroxide ion, nitrogen gives up a hydrogen ion and the free amine is liberated. The quaternary ammonium ion, having no proton to give up, is not affected by hydroxide ion.



When a solution of a quaternary ammonium halide is treated with silver oxide, silver halide precipitates. When the mixture is filtered and the filtrate is evaporated to dryness, there is obtained a solid which is free of halogen. An aqueous solution of this substance is strongly alkaline, and is comparable to a solution of sodium hydroxide or potassium hydroxide. A compound of this sort is called a **quaternary ammonium hydroxide**. It has the structure  $\text{R}_4\text{N}^+\text{OH}^-$ . Its aqueous solution is basic for the same reason that solutions of sodium or potassium hydroxide are basic: the solution contains hydroxide ions.

When a quaternary ammonium hydroxide is heated strongly (to 125° or higher), it decomposes to yield water, a tertiary amine, and an alkene. Trimethyl-*n*-propylammonium hydroxide, for example, yields trimethylamine and propylene:



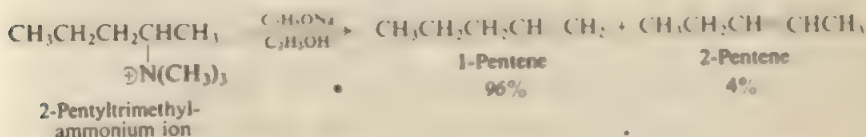




### 23.6 E2 elimination: Hofmann orientation. The variable E2 transition state

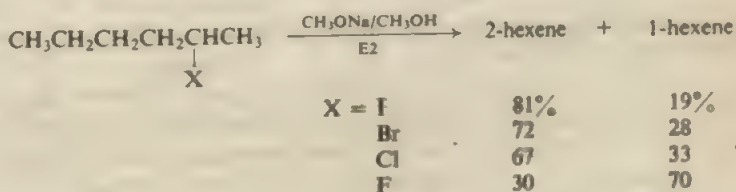
Where the structure permits, E2 elimination can produce a mixture of isomers, which one predominates is determined by the orientation of the elimination. In dehydrohalogenation, we saw (Sec. 7.21), the orientation is *Saytzeff*—the preferred product is the more highly branched alkene which, as we saw, is the more stable one. Orientation, we said, is controlled by the alkene character of the transition state.

What is the orientation of the Hofmann elimination? A single example will show us the kind of thing that is observed.



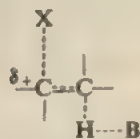
We see that the preferred product here is the *least* branched alkene, 1-pentene. Such orientation is called **Hofmann orientation**, since it was first observed by Hofmann in studying this particular kind of reaction.

Now, how can we account for Hofmann orientation? To see the factors at work here, let us return to dehydrohalogenation and take, as an example, elimination from the 2-hexyl halides brought about by the strong base sodium methoxide. The iodide, bromide, and chloride react with Saytzeff orientation, but the fluoride gives predominantly the less substituted alkene, 1-hexene, that is, reacts with Hofmann orientation. Furthermore, we can see that there is a steady increase in the fraction of 1-hexene along the series I, Br, Cl, F.

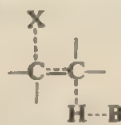


Such observations are best understood in terms of what Bunnett (p. 299) has called the *variable transition state* theory of E2 elimination. We are speaking, remember, of a one-step elimination; both the C—H and C—X bonds are being broken in the same transition state. But there is a whole spectrum of E2 transition states which differ in the relative *extent* to which the two bonds are broken

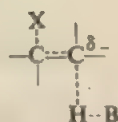
#### Variable E2 Transition State



Carbocation-like



Central



Carbanion-like

Much alkene character

At the center of the spectrum is the transition state we have described before for elimination from alkyl halides: both C—H and C—X bonds are broken to a considerable extent, the transition state has considerable alkene character, and orientation is Saytzeff.

But, if breaking of the C—H bond greatly exceeds breaking of the C—X bond, there is little alkene character to the transition state, but instead the development of negative charge on the carbon losing the proton. In this case, the transition state has *carbanion character*, and its stability is controlled as we might expect, by dispersal or intensification of the negative charge: electron-withdrawing groups stabilize, and electron-releasing groups destabilize. At one end of the spectrum, then, we have the carbanion-like transition state.

At the other end of the spectrum is the transition state in which C—X bond-breaking greatly exceeds C—H bond-breaking. Positive charge develops on the carbon losing the leaving group, giving carbocation character to the transition state. Alkene character is diminished, and we might expect orientation to be less strongly Saytzeff.

Consider elimination from the 2-hexyl halides. With the iodide, there is considerable breaking of both bonds in the transition state, much alkene character, and preferred formation of the more stable alkene: Saytzeff orientation. As we go along the series I, Br, Cl, F, the C—X bond becomes stronger, and the extent to which it is broken in the transition state decreases. At the same time, the electron-withdrawing effect of X increases, favoring the development of negative charge. With the fluoride, we have predominant C—H bond-breaking, with little alkene character but considerable carbanion character to the transition state. A primary hydrogen is preferentially abstracted by base, since that permits the negative charge to develop on a primary carbon, to which there is attached only one electron-releasing alkyl group. Orientation is Hofmann.

Bunnett believes that C—F bond-breaking lags behind C—H bond-breaking chiefly because of the strength of the C—F bond. Ingold (p. 214), who was the first to suggest carbanion character as the underlying cause of Hofmann orientation, believed that electron withdrawal by fluorine is the major factor.

On this basis, how do we account for Hofmann orientation in the E2 elimination from quaternary ammonium salts? Here, the transition state has considerable carbanion character, at least partly because powerful electron withdrawal by the positively charged nitrogen favors development of negative charge. There is preferential abstraction of a proton from the carbon that can best accommodate the partial negative charge, in the example given, from the primary carbon rather than the secondary.

Sulfonium ions,  $R_2S^+$ , react similarly to quaternary ammonium ions.

The stereochemistry of Hofmann elimination is commonly *anti*, but less so than was formerly believed. *syn*-Elimination is important for certain cyclic compounds, and can be made important even for open-chain compounds by the proper choice of base and solvent. Quaternary ammonium ions are more prone to *syn*-elimination than alkyl halides and sulfonates. Electronically, *anti* formation of the double bond is favored in eliminations, but when the alkene character of the transition state is slight—as here—other factors come into play: conformational factors, it has been postulated.

**Problem 23.5** Predict the major products of E2 elimination from: (a) 2-methyl-3-pentyltrimethylammonium ion, (b) diethyl-*n*-propylammonium ion, (c) dimethyl-ethyl-*n*-chloroethylammonium ion, (d) dimethylethyl-*n*-propylammonium ion.

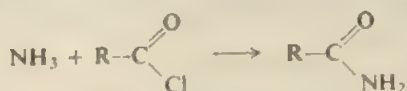
**Problem 23.6** When dimethyl-*tert*-pentylsulfonium ethoxide is heated in ethanol, the alkene obtained is chiefly (86%) 2-methyl-1-butene; when the corresponding sulfonium iodide is heated in ethanol, the alkene obtained is chiefly (86%) 2-methyl-2-butene.

(a) How do you account for the difference in products? (b) From the sulfonium iodide reaction there is also obtained considerable material identified as an ether. What ether would you expect it to be, and how is it formed? (c) What ether would you expect to obtain from the sulfonium ethoxide reaction?

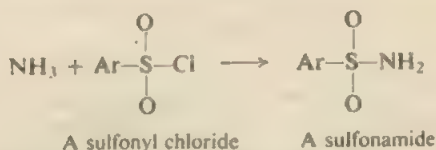
**Problem 23.7** 2-Phenylethyl bromide undergoes E2 elimination about 10 times as fast as 1-phenylethyl bromide even though they both yield the same alkene. Suggest a possible explanation for this.

## 23.7 Conversion of amines into substituted amides

We have learned (Sec. 20.11) that ammonia reacts with acid chlorides of carboxylic acids to yield amides, compounds in which  $\text{Cl}$  has been replaced by

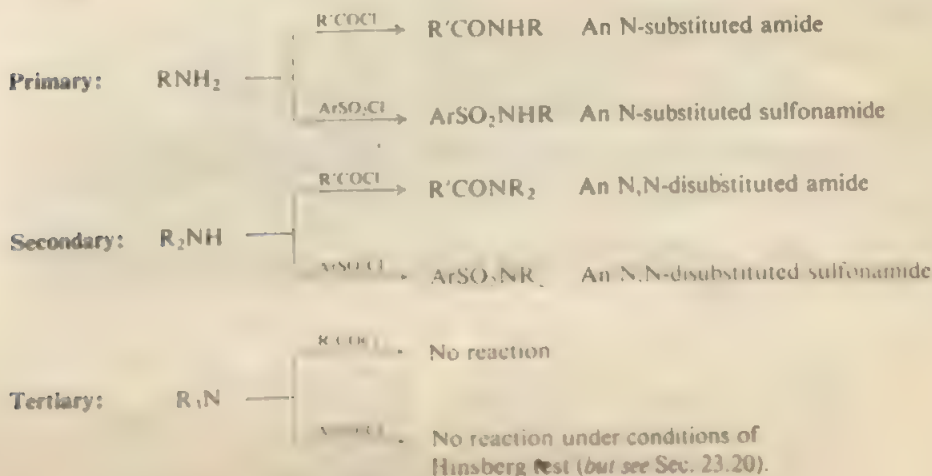


the  $\text{NH}_2$  group. Not surprisingly, acid chlorides of sulfonic acids react similarly.



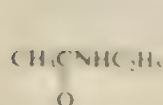
In these reactions ammonia serves as a nucleophilic reagent, attacking the carbonyl carbon or sulfur and displacing chloride ion. In the process nitrogen loses a proton to a second molecule of ammonia or another base.

In a similar way primary and secondary amines can react with acid chlorides to form **substituted amides**, compounds in which  $\text{Cl}$  has been replaced by the  $\text{NHR}$  or  $\text{NR}_2$  group:

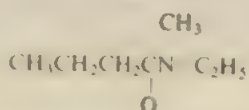


Tertiary amines, although basic, fail to yield amides, presumably because they cannot lose a proton (to stabilize the product) after attaching themselves to carbon or to sulfur. Here is a reaction which requires not only that amines be basic, but also that they possess a hydrogen atom attached to nitrogen. (However, see Sec. 23.21.)

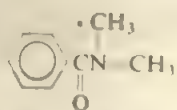
Substituted amides are generally named as derivatives of the unsubstituted amides. For example:



N-Ethylacetamide

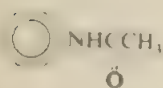


N-Methyl-N-ethylbutyramide

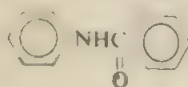


N,N-Dimethylbenzamide

In many cases, and particularly where aromatic amines are involved, we are more interested in the amine from which the amide is derived than in the acyl group. In these cases the substituted amide is named as an acyl derivative of the amine. For example:



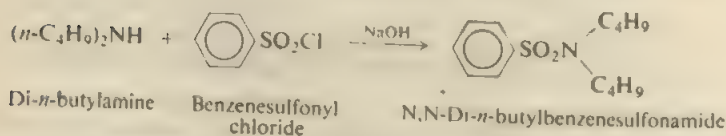
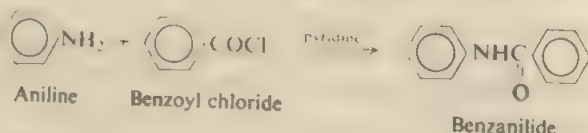
Acetanilide



Benzanilide

Aceto-*p*-toluidide

Substituted amides of aromatic carboxylic acids or of sulfonic acids are prepared by the Schotten-Baumann technique: the acid chloride is added to the amine in the presence of a base, either aqueous sodium hydroxide or pyridine. For example:

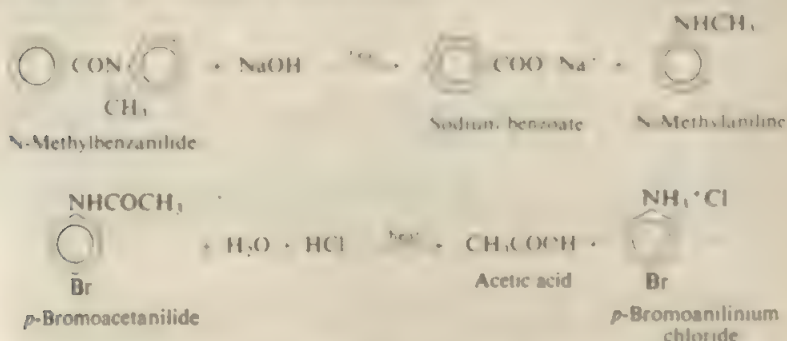


Acetylation is generally carried out using acetic anhydride rather than acetyl chloride. For example:

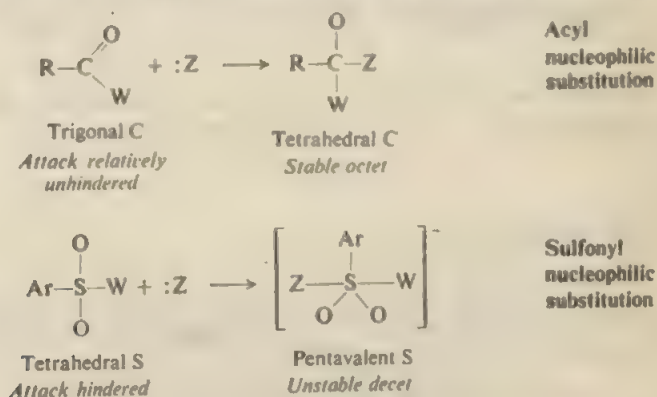




Like simple amides, substituted amides undergo hydrolysis; the products are the acid and the amine, although one or the other is obtained as its salt, depending upon the acidity or alkalinity of the medium

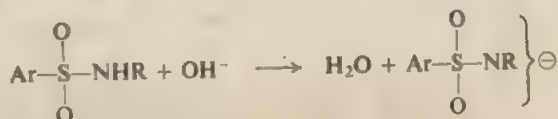


Sulfonamides are hydrolyzed more slowly than amides of carboxylic acids; examination of the structures involved shows us what probably underlies this difference. Nucleophilic attack on a trigonal acyl carbon (Sec. 20.4) is relatively unhindered; it involves the temporary attachment of a fourth group, the nucleophilic reagent. Nucleophilic attack on tetrahedral sulfonyl sulfur is relatively hindered; it involves the temporary attachment of a fifth group. The tetrahedral



carbon of the acyl intermediate makes use of the permitted octet of electrons; although sulfur may be able to use more than eight electrons in covalent bonding, this is a less stable system than the octet. Thus both steric and electronic factors tend to make sulfonyl compounds less reactive than acyl compounds.

There is a further contrast between the amides of the two kinds of acids. The substituted amide from a primary amine still has a hydrogen attached to nitrogen, and as a result is *acidic*; in the case of a sulfonamide, this acidity is appreciable, and much greater than for the amide of a carboxylic acid. A monosubstituted sulfonamide is less acidic than a carboxylic acid, but about the same as a phenol (Sec. 24.9); it reacts with aqueous hydroxides to form salts.



This difference in acidity, too, is understandable. A sulfonic acid is more acidic than a carboxylic acid because the negative charge of the anion is dispersed over three oxygens instead of just two. In the same way, a sulfonamide is more acidic than the amide of a carboxylic acid because the negative charge is dispersed over two oxygens plus nitrogen instead of over just one oxygen plus nitrogen.

**Problem 23.8** (a) Although amides of carboxylic acids are very weakly acidic ( $K_a = 10^{-14}$  to  $10^{-15}$ ), they are still enormously more acidic than ammonia ( $K_a = 10^{-33}$ ) or amines,  $RNH_2$ . Account in detail for this.

(b) Diacetamide,  $(CH_3CO)_2NH$ , is much more acidic ( $K_a = 10^{-11}$ ) than acetamide ( $K_a = 8.3 \times 10^{-6}$ ), and roughly comparable to benzenesulfonamide ( $K_a = 10^{-10}$ ). How can you account for this?

**Problem 23.9** In contrast to carboxylic esters, we know, alkyl sulfonates undergo nucleophilic attack at alkyl carbon. What *two* factors are responsible for this difference

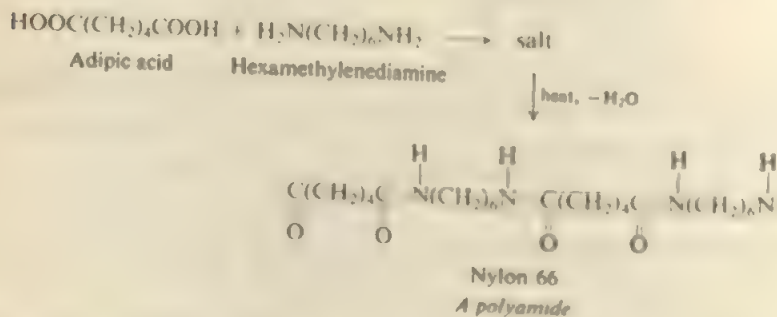


in behavior? (Hint: See Sec. 6.11.)

The conversion of an amine into a sulfonamide is used in determining the class of the amine; this is discussed in the section on analysis (Sec. 23.20).

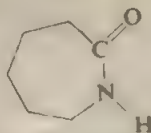
### 23.8 Polyamides. Nylon

Just as carboxylic acids and their derivatives react with amines to yield amides, so dicarboxylic acids react with diamines to form *polyamides*. For example:



The most important of the synthetic polyamides are the **nylons**. Like the polyester Dacron, the nylons have long thin molecules which can be stretched out to lie alongside each other and thus form the long, thin units of fibers. We have already seen (Sec. 9.37) how hydrogen bonding between nylon molecules keeps them stretched out, and gives the fiber its strength (see Fig. 9.11, p. 448).

**Problem 23.10** (a) What is the structure of nylon 6, made by alkaline polymerization of caprolactam?

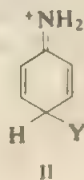
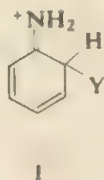


Caprolactam

(b) Suggest a mechanism for the process. Is polymerization of the chain-reaction or step-reaction type?

## 23.9 Ring substitution in aromatic amines

We have already seen that the  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,  $-\text{NHR}$ , and  $-\text{NR}_2$  groups act as powerful activators and *ortho,para* directors in electrophilic aromatic substitution. These effects were accounted for by assuming that the intermediate carbocation is stabilized by structures like I and II in which nitrogen bears a positive charge and



is joined to the ring by a double bond. Such structures are especially stable since in them every atom (except hydrogen) has a complete octet of electrons; indeed, structure I or II *by itself* must pretty well represent the intermediate.

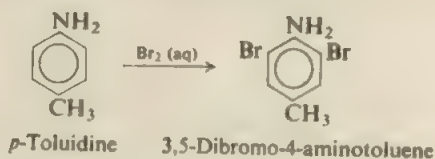
In such structures nitrogen shares more than one pair of electrons with the ring, and hence carries the charge of the "carbocation." Thus the basicity of nitrogen accounts for one more characteristic of aromatic amines.

The acetamido group,  $\text{NHCOCH}_3$ , is also activating and *ortho,para*-directing, but less powerfully so than a free amino group. Electron withdrawal by oxygen of the carbonyl group makes the nitrogen of an amide a much poorer source of electrons than the nitrogen of an amine. Electrons are less available for sharing with a hydrogen ion, and therefore amides are much weaker bases than amines; amides of carboxylic acids do not dissolve in dilute aqueous acids. Electrons are less available for sharing with an aromatic ring, and therefore an acetamido group activates an aromatic ring less strongly than an amino group.

More precisely, electron withdrawal by carbonyl oxygen destabilizes a positive charge on nitrogen, whether this charge is acquired by *protonation* or by *electrophilic attack on the ring*.

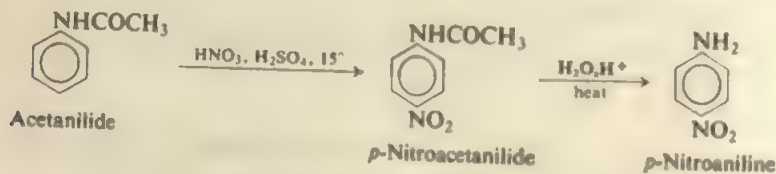
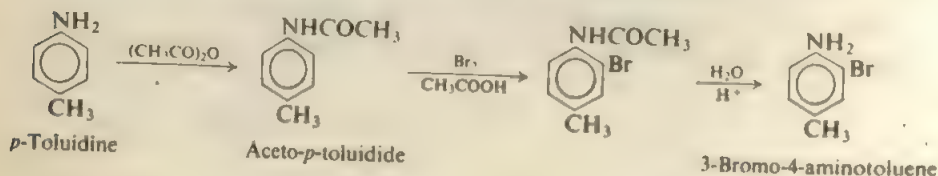
(We have seen (Sec. 15.5) that the  $-\text{NR}_3^+$  group is a powerful deactivator and *meta* director. In a quaternary ammonium salt, nitrogen no longer has electrons to share with the ring; on the contrary, the full-fledged positive charge on nitrogen makes the group strongly electron-attracting.)

In electrophilic substitution, the chief problem encountered with aromatic amines is that they are *too* reactive. In halogenation, substitution tends to occur at every available *ortho* or *para* position. For example:



Nitric acid not only nitrates, but oxidizes the highly reactive ring as well, with loss of much material as tar. Furthermore, in the strongly acidic nitration medium, the amine is converted into the anilinium ion; substitution is thus controlled not by the  $\text{—NH}_2$  group but by the  $\text{—NH}_3^+$  group which, because of its positive charge, directs much of the substitution to the *meta* position.

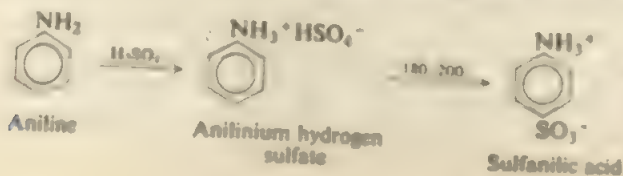
There is, fortunately, a simple way out of these difficulties. We *protect* the amino group: we acetylate the amine, then carry out the substitution, and finally hydrolyze the amide to the desired substituted amine. For example:



**Problem 23.11** Nitration of un-acetylated aniline yields a mixture of about two-thirds *meta* and one-third *para* product. Since almost all the aniline is in the form of the anilinium ion, how do you account for the fact that even more *meta* product is not obtained?

### 23.10 Sulfonation of aromatic amines. Dipolar ions

Aniline is usually sulfonated by "baking" the salt, anilinium hydrogen sulfate, at  $180\text{--}200^\circ$ ; the chief product is the *p*-isomer. In this case we cannot discuss orientation on our usual basis of which isomer is formed *faster*. Sulfonation is



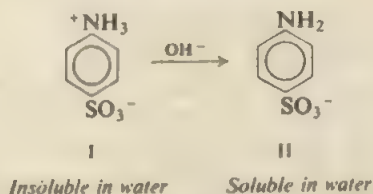


known to be reversible, and the *p*-isomer is known to be the most stable isomer; it may well be that the product obtained, the *p*-isomer, is determined by the position of an equilibrium and not by relative rates of formation (see Sec. 9.27 and Sec. 16.12). It also seems likely that, in some cases at least, sulfonation of amines proceeds by a mechanism that is entirely different from ordinary aromatic substitution.

Whatever the mechanism by which it is formed, the chief product of this reaction is *p*-aminobenzenesulfonic acid, known as **sulfanilic acid**; it is an important and interesting compound.

First of all, its properties are not those we would expect of a compound containing an amino group and a sulfonic acid group. Both aromatic amines and aromatic sulfonic acids have low melting points; benzenesulfonic acid, for example, melts at 66°, and aniline at -6°. Yet sulfanilic acid has such a high melting point that on being heated it decomposes (at 280–300°) before its melting point can be reached. Sulfonic acids are generally very soluble in water; indeed, we have seen that the sulfonic acid group is often introduced into a molecule to make it water-soluble. Yet sulfanilic acid is not only insoluble in organic solvents, but also nearly insoluble in water. Amines dissolve in aqueous mineral acids because of their conversion into water-soluble salts. Sulfanilic acid is soluble in aqueous bases but insoluble in aqueous acids.

These properties of sulfanilic acid are understandable when we realize that sulfanilic acid actually has the structure I which contains the  $\text{—NH}_3^+$  and  $\text{—SO}_3^-$  groups. Sulfanilic acid is a salt, but of a rather special kind, called a **dipolar**



**ion** (sometimes called a *zwitterion*, from the German, *Zwitter*, hermaphrodite). It is the product of reaction between an acidic group and a basic group that are part of the same molecule. The hydrogen ion is attached to nitrogen rather than oxygen simply because the  $\text{—NH}_2$  group is a stronger base than the  $\text{—SO}_3^-$  group. A high melting point and insolubility in organic solvents are properties we would expect of a salt. Insolubility in water is not surprising, since many salts are insoluble in water. In alkaline solution, the strongly basic hydroxide ion pulls hydrogen ion away from the weakly basic  $\text{—NH}_2$  group to yield the *p*-aminobenzenesulfonate ion (II), which, like most sodium salts, is soluble in water. In aqueous acid, however, the sulfanilic acid structure is not changed, and therefore the compound remains insoluble; sulfonic acids are strong acids and their anions (very weak bases) show little tendency to accept hydrogen ion from  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ .

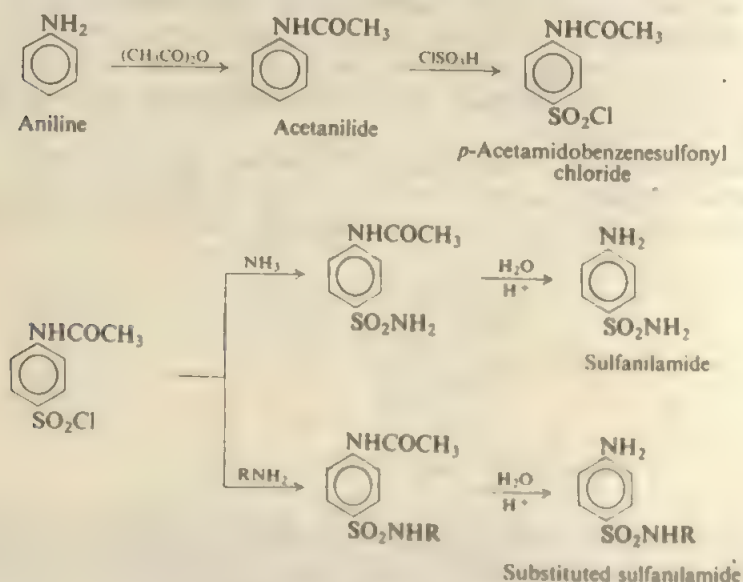
We can expect to encounter dipolar ions whenever we have a molecule containing both an amino group and an acid group, providing the amine is more basic than the anion of the acid.

**Problem 23.12** *p*-Aminobenzoic acid is not a dipolar ion, whereas glycine (aminoacetic acid) is a dipolar ion. How can you account for this?

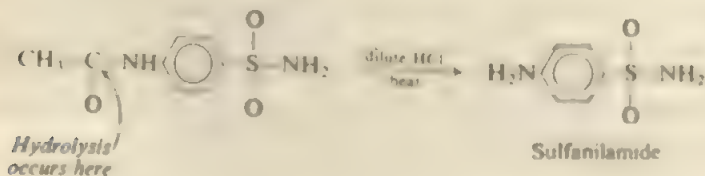
### 23.11 Sulfanilamide. The sulfa drugs

The amide of sulfanilic acid (*sulfanilamide*) and certain related substituted amides are of considerable medical importance as the *sulfa drugs*. Although they have been supplanted to a wide extent by the antibiotics (such as penicillin, terramycin, chloromycetin, and aureomycin), the sulfa drugs still have their medical uses, and make up a considerable portion of the output of the pharmaceutical industry.

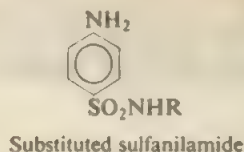
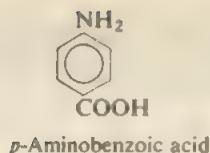
Sulfonamides are prepared by the reaction of a sulfonyl chloride with ammonia or an amine. The presence in a sulfonic acid molecule of an amino group, however, poses a special problem: if sulfanilic acid were converted to the acid chloride, the sulfonyl group of one molecule could attack the amino group of another to form an amide linkage. This problem is solved by protecting the amino group through acetylation prior to the preparation of the sulfonyl chloride. Sulfanilamide and related compounds are generally prepared in the following way:



The selective removal of the acetyl group in the final step is consistent with the general observation that amides of carboxylic acids are more easily hydrolyzed than amides of sulfonic acids.

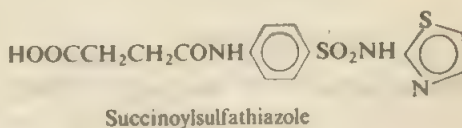
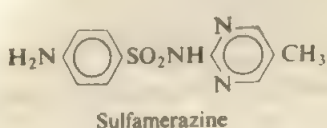


The antibacterial activity—and toxicity—of a sulfanilamide stems from a rather simple fact: enzymes in the bacteria (and in the patients) confuse it for *p*-aminobenzoic acid, which is an essential metabolite. In what is known as *metabolite antagonism*, the sulfanilamide competes with *p*-aminobenzoic acid for reactive sites



on the enzymes; deprived of the essential metabolite, the organism fails to reproduce, and dies.

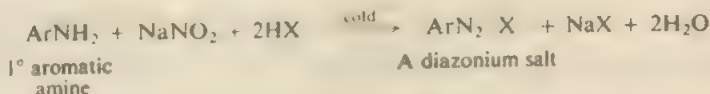
Just how good a drug the sulfanilamide is depends upon the nature of the group R attached to amido nitrogen. This group must confer just the right degree of acidity to the amido hydrogen (Sec. 23.7), but acidity is clearly only one of the factors involved. Of the hundreds of such compounds that have been synthesized, only a half dozen or so have had the proper combination of high antibacterial activity and low toxicity to human beings that is necessary for an effective drug; in nearly all these effective compounds the group R contains a heterocyclic ring (Chap. 35).



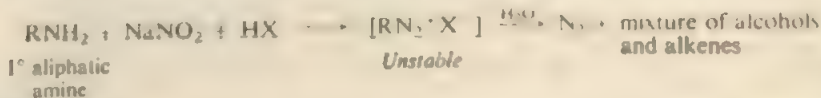
## 23.12 Reactions of amines with nitrous acid

Each class of amine yields a different kind of product in its reaction with nitrous acid, HONO. This unstable reagent is generated in the presence of the amine by the action of mineral acid on sodium nitrite.

Primary aromatic amines react with nitrous acid to yield *diazonium salts*; this is one of the most important reactions in organic chemistry. Following sections are devoted to the preparation and properties of aromatic diazonium salts.



Primary aliphatic amines also react with nitrous acid to yield diazonium salts; but since aliphatic diazonium salts are quite unstable and break down to yield a complicated mixture of organic products (see Problem 23.13, below), this reaction is of little synthetic value. The fact that nitrogen is evolved quantitatively is of

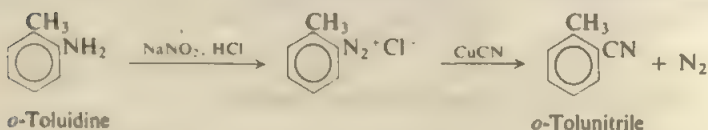
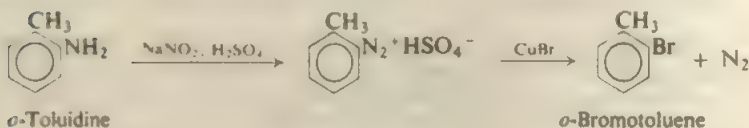
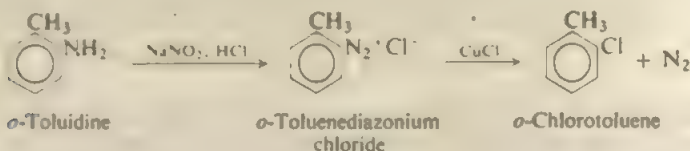
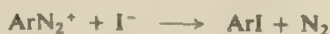


some importance in analysis, however, particularly of amino acids and proteins.

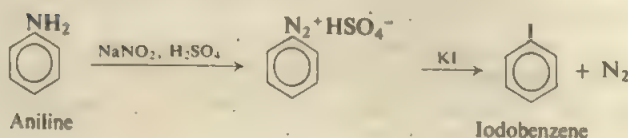
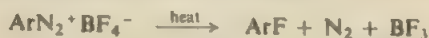
**Problem 23.13** The reaction of *n*-butylamine with sodium nitrite and hydrochloric acid yields nitrogen and the following mixture: *n*-butyl alcohol, 25%; *sec*-butyl alcohol, 13%; 1-butene and 2-butene, 37%; *n*-butyl chloride, 5%; *sec*-butyl chloride, 3%. (a) What is the most likely intermediate common to all of these products, and how is it formed? (b) Outline reactions that account for the various products.

CONT.

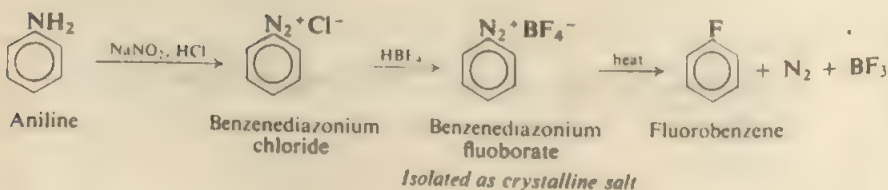
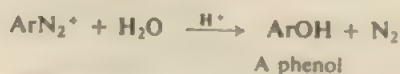
Examples:

(b) Replacement by  $-I$ . Discussed in Sec. 23.14.

Example:

(c) Replacement by  $-F$ . Discussed in Sec. 23.14.

Example:

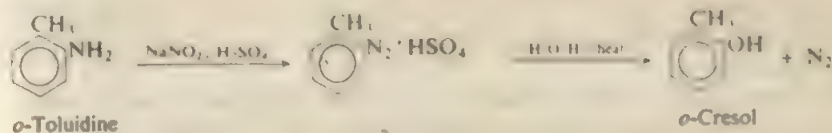
(d) Replacement by  $-OH$ . Discussed in Sec. 23.16.

CONT.

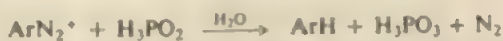


CONT.

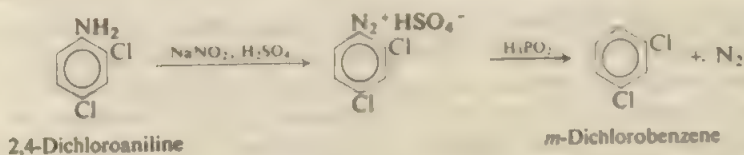
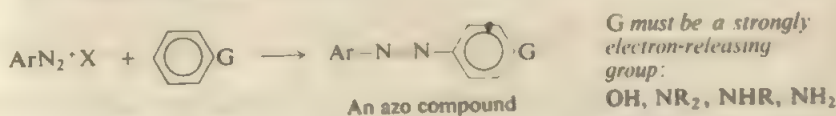
Example:



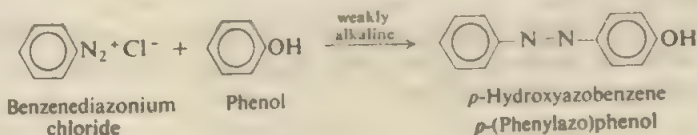
(e) Replacement by —H. Discussed in Sec. 23.17.



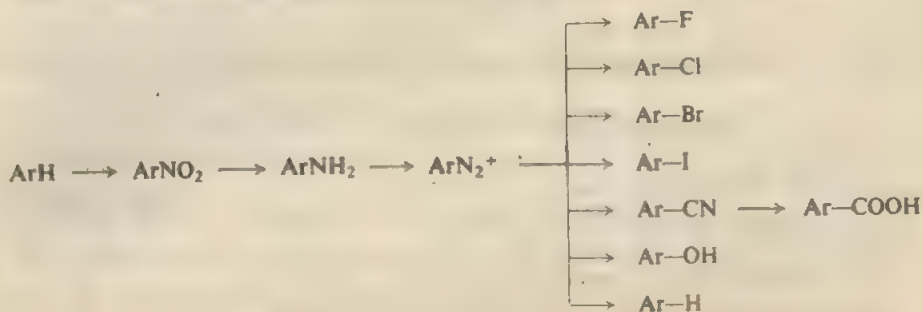
Example:

**2. Coupling.** Discussed in Sec. 23.19.

Example:



Replacement of the diazonium group is the best general way of introducing F, Cl, Br, I, CN, OH, and H into an aromatic ring. Diazonium salts are valuable in synthesis not only because they react to form so many classes of compounds, but also because they can be prepared from nearly all primary aromatic amines. There are few groups whose presence in the molecule interferes with diazotization; in this respect, diazonium salts are quite different from Grignard reagents (Sec. 10.16). The amines from which diazonium compounds are prepared are readily obtained from the corresponding nitro compounds, which are prepared by direct nitration. Diazonium salts are thus the most important link in the sequence:



In addition to the atoms and groups just listed, there are dozens of other groups that can be attached to an aromatic ring by replacement of the diazonium nitrogen, as for example  $-\text{Ar}$ ,  $-\text{NO}_2$ ,  $-\text{OR}$ ,  $-\text{SH}$ ,  $-\text{SR}$ ,  $-\text{NCS}$ ,  $-\text{NCO}$ ,  $-\text{PO}_3\text{H}_2$ ,  $-\text{AsO}_2\text{H}$ ,  $-\text{SbO}_2\text{H}$ ; the best way to introduce most of these groups is via diazotization.

The coupling of diazonium salts with aromatic phenols and amines yields *azo compounds*, which are of tremendous importance to the dye industry.

### 23.14 Diazonium salts. Replacement by halogen. Sandmeyer reaction

Replacement of the diazonium group by  $-\text{Cl}$  or  $-\text{Br}$  is carried out by mixing the solution of freshly prepared diazonium salt with cuprous chloride or cuprous bromide. At room temperature, or occasionally at elevated temperatures, nitrogen is steadily evolved, and after several hours the aryl chloride or aryl bromide can be isolated from the reaction mixture. This procedure, using cuprous halides, is generally referred to as the **Sandmeyer reaction**.



Sometimes the synthesis is carried out by a modification known as the *Gattermann reaction*, in which copper powder and hydrogen halide are used in place of the cuprous halide.

Replacement of the diazonium group by  $-\text{I}$  does not require the use of a cuprous halide or copper; the diazonium salt and potassium iodide are simply mixed together and allowed to react.



Replacement of the diazonium group by  $-\text{F}$  is carried out in a somewhat different way. Addition of fluoboric acid,  $\text{HBF}_4$ , to the solution of diazonium salt causes the precipitation of the diazonium fluoborate,  $\text{ArN}_2^+\text{BF}_4^-$ , which can be collected on a filter, washed, and dried. The diazonium fluoborates are unusual among diazonium salts in being fairly stable compounds. On being heated, the dry diazonium fluoborate decomposes to yield the aryl fluoride, boron trifluoride, and

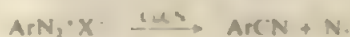


nitrogen. An analogous procedure involves the diazonium hexafluorophosphate,  $\text{ArN}_2^+\text{PF}_6^-$ .

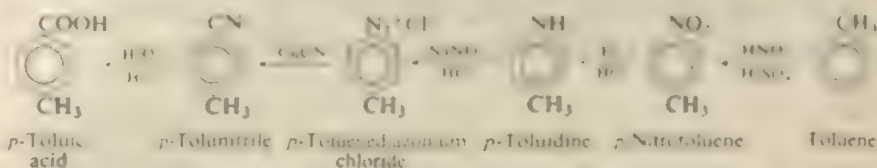
The advantages of the synthesis of aryl halides from diazonium salts will be discussed in detail in Sec. 25.3. Aryl fluorides and iodides cannot generally be prepared by direct halogenation. Aryl chlorides and bromides can be prepared by direct halogenation, but, when a mixture of *o*- and *p*-isomers is obtained, it is difficult to isolate the pure compounds because of their similarity in boiling point. Diazonium salts ultimately go back to nitro compounds, which are usually obtainable in pure form.

### 23.15 Diazonium salts. Replacement by $-CN$ . Synthesis of carboxylic acids

Replacement of the diazonium group by  $-CN$  is carried out by allowing the diazonium salt to react with cuprous cyanide. To prevent loss of cyanide as  $HCN$ , the diazonium solution is neutralized with sodium carbonate before being mixed with the cuprous cyanide.



Hydrolysis of nitriles yields carboxylic acids. The synthesis of nitriles from diazonium salts thus provides us with an excellent route from nitro compounds to carboxylic acids. For example:



This way of making aromatic carboxylic acids is more generally useful than either carbonylation of a Grignard reagent or oxidation of side chains. We have just seen that pure bromo compounds, which are needed to prepare the Grignard reagent, are themselves most often prepared via diazonium salts; furthermore, there are many groups that interfere with the preparation and use of the Grignard reagent (Sec. 10.16). The nitro group can generally be introduced into a molecule more readily than an alkyl side chain; furthermore, conversion of a side chain into a carboxyl group cannot be carried out on molecules that contain other groups sensitive to oxidation.

### 23.16 Diazonium salts. Replacement by $-OH$ . Synthesis of phenols

Diazonium salts react with water to yield phenols. This reaction takes place



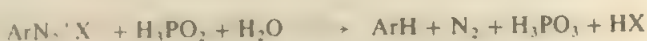
slowly in the ice-cold solutions of diazonium salts, and is the reason diazonium salts are used immediately upon preparation; at elevated temperatures it can be made the chief reaction of diazonium salts.

As we shall see, phenols can couple with diazonium salts to form azo compounds (Sec. 23.19); the more acidic the solution, however, the more slowly this coupling occurs. To minimize coupling during the synthesis of a phenol, therefore—coupling, that is, between phenol that has been formed and diazonium ion that has not yet reacted—the diazonium solution is added slowly to a large volume of boiling dilute sulfuric acid.

This is the best general way to make the important class of compounds, the phenols.

### 23.17 Diazonium salts. Replacement by —H

Replacement of the diazonium group —H can be brought about by a number of reducing agents, perhaps the most useful of these is *hypophosphorous acid*,  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_2$ . The diazonium salt is simply allowed to stand in the presence of the hypophosphorous acid; nitrogen is lost, and hypophosphorous acid is oxidized to phosphorous acid:



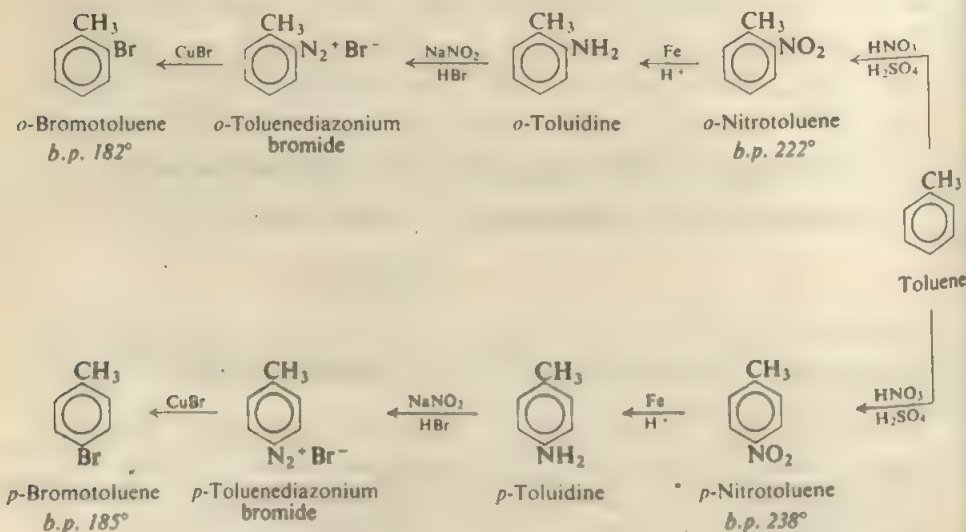
An especially elegant way of carrying out this replacement is to use hypophosphorous acid as the diazotizing acid. The amine is dissolved in hypophosphorous acid, and sodium nitrite is added; the diazonium salt is reduced as fast as it is formed.

This reaction of diazonium salts provides a method of removing an  $-\text{NH}_2$  or  $\text{NO}_2$  group from an aromatic ring. This process can be extremely useful in synthesis, as is shown in some of the examples in the following section.

### 23.18 Syntheses using diazonium salts

Let us look at a few examples of how diazonium salts can be used in organic synthesis.

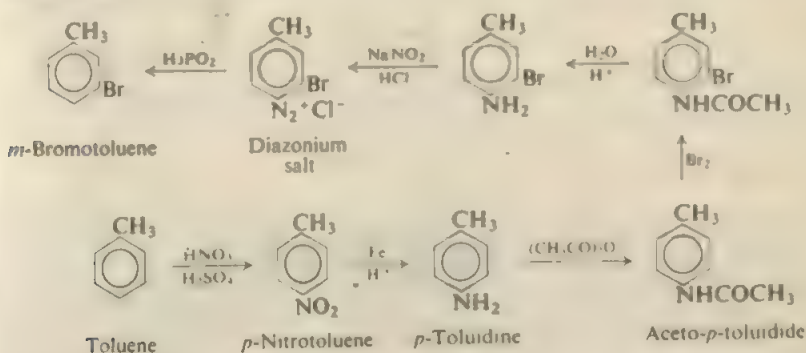
To begin with, we might consider some rather simple compounds, the three isomeric bromotoluenes. The best synthesis of each employs diazotization, but not for the same purpose in the three cases. The *o*- and *p*-bromotoluenes are prepared from the corresponding *o*- and *p*-nitrotoluenes:



The advantage of these many-step syntheses over direct bromination is, as we have seen, that a pure product is obtained. Separation of the *o*- and *p*-bromotoluenes obtained by direct bromination is not feasible.



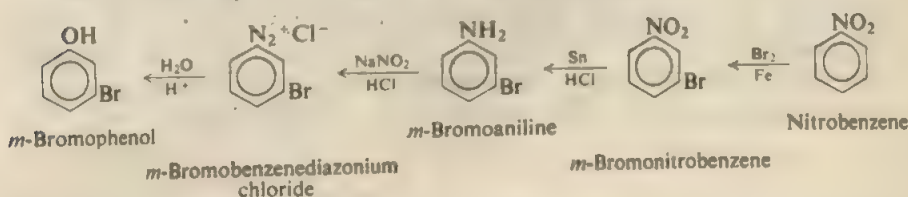
Synthesis of *m*-bromotoluene is a more complicated matter. The problem here is one of preparing a compound in which two *ortho,para*-directing groups are situated *meta* to each other. Bromination of toluene or methylation of bromobenzene would not yield the correct isomer. *m*-Bromotoluene is obtained by the following sequence of reactions:



The key to the synthesis is the introduction of a group that is a much stronger *ortho,para* director than  $-\text{CH}_3$ , and that can be easily removed after it has done its job of directing bromine to the correct position. Such a group is the  $-\text{NHCOCH}_3$  group: it is introduced into the *para* position of toluene via nitration, reduction, and acetylation; it is readily removed by hydrolysis, diazotization, and reduction.

**Problem 23.17** Outline the synthesis from benzene or toluene of the following compounds: *m*-nitrotoluene, *m*-iodotoluene, 3,5-dibromotoluene, 1,3,5-tribromobenzene, the three toluic acids ( $\text{CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{COOH}$ ), the three methylphenols (cresols).

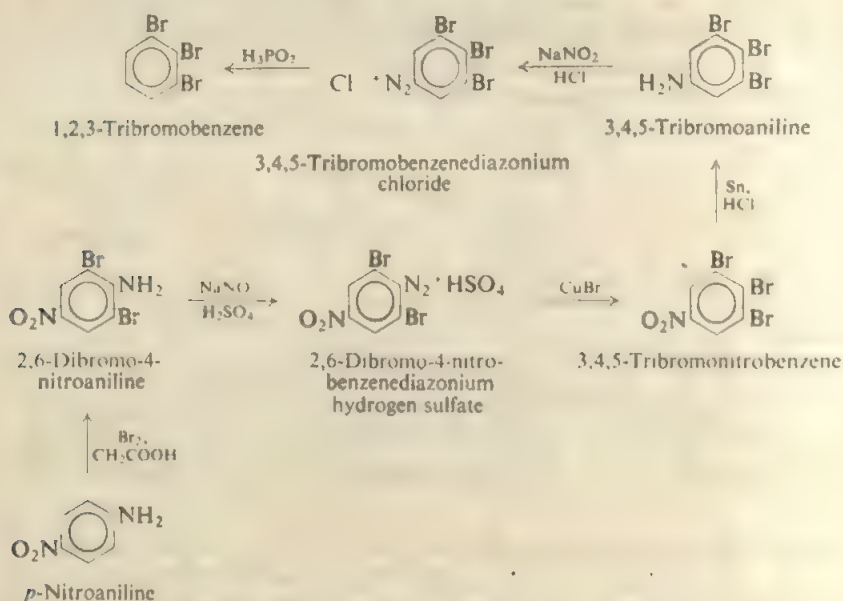
In the synthesis of *m*-bromotoluene, advantage was taken of the fact that the diazonium group is prepared from a group that is strongly *ortho,para*-directing. Ultimately, however, the diazonium group is prepared from the  $-\text{NO}_2$  group, which is a strongly *meta*-directing group. Advantage can be taken of this fact, too, as in the preparation of *m*-bromophenol:



Here again there is the problem of preparing a compound with two *ortho,para* directors situated *meta* to each other. Bromination at the nitro stage gives the necessary *meta* orientation.

**Problem 23.18** Outline the synthesis from benzene or toluene of the following compounds: *m*-dibromobenzene, *m*-bromiodobenzene.

As a final example, let us consider the preparation of 1,2,3-tribromobenzene:

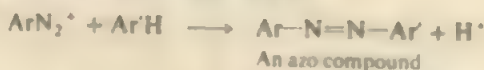


In this synthesis advantage is taken of the fact that the  $\text{NO}_2$  group is a *meta* director, that the  $\text{NH}_2$  group is an *ortho,para* director, and that each of them can be converted into a diazonium group. One diazonium group is replaced by  $-\text{Br}$ , the other by  $-\text{H}$ .

**Problem 23.19** Outline the synthesis from benzene or toluene of the following compounds: 2,6-dibromotoluene, 3,5-dibromonitrobenzene.

### 23.19 Coupling of diazonium salts. Synthesis of azo compounds

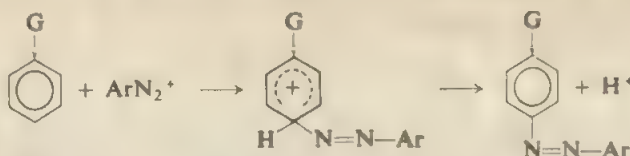
Under the proper conditions, diazonium salts react with certain aromatic compounds to yield products of the general formula  $\text{Ar}-\text{N}=\text{N}-\text{Ar}'$ , called **azo compounds**. In this reaction, known as **coupling**, the nitrogen of the diazonium group is retained in the product, in contrast to the replacement reactions we have studied up to this point, in which nitrogen is lost



The aromatic ring ( $\text{Ar}'\text{H}$ ) undergoing attack by the diazonium ion must, in general, contain a powerfully electron-releasing group, generally  $-\text{OH}$ ,  $-\text{NR}_2$ ,  $-\text{NHR}$ , or  $-\text{NH}_2$ . Substitution usually occurs *para* to the activating group. Typically, coupling with phenols is carried out in mildly alkaline solution, and with amines in mildly acidic solution.

Activation by electron-releasing groups, as well as the evidence of kinetics studies, indicates that coupling is electrophilic aromatic substitution in which the

diazonium ion is the attacking reagent:



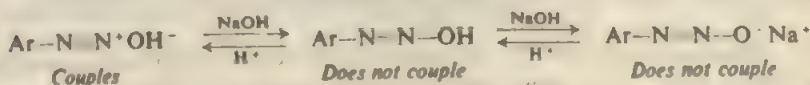
It is significant that the aromatic compounds which undergo coupling are also the ones which undergo nitrosation. Like the nitrosonium ion,  $^+\text{NO}$ , the diazonium ion,  $\text{ArN}_2^+$ , is evidently very weakly electrophilic, and is capable of attacking only very reactive rings.

**Problem 23.20** Benzenediazonium chloride couples with phenol, but not with the less reactive anisole. 2,4-Dinitrobenzenediazonium chloride, however, couples with anisole; 2,4,6-trinitrobenzenediazonium chloride even couples with the hydrocarbon mesitylene (1,3,5-trimethylbenzene). (a) How can you account for these differences in behavior? (b) Would you expect *p*-toluenediazonium chloride to be more or less reactive as a coupling reagent than benzenediazonium chloride?

In the laboratory we find that coupling involves more than merely mixing together a diazonium salt and a phenol or amine. Competing with any other reaction of diazonium salts is the reaction with water to yield a phenol. If coupling proceeds slowly because of unfavorable conditions, phenol formation may very well become the major reaction. Furthermore, the phenol formed from the diazonium salt can itself undergo coupling; even a relatively small amount of this undesired coupling product could contaminate the desired material—usually a dye whose color should be as pure as possible—to such an extent that the product would be worthless. Conditions under which coupling proceeds as rapidly as possible must therefore be selected.

It is most important that the coupling medium be adjusted to the right degree of acidity or alkalinity. This is accomplished by addition of the proper amount of hydroxide or salts like sodium acetate or sodium carbonate. It will be well to examine this matter in some detail, since it illustrates a problem that is frequently encountered in organic chemical practice.

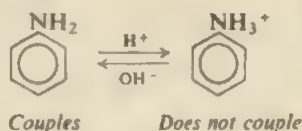
The electrophilic reagent is the diazonium ion,  $\text{ArN}_2^+$ . In the presence of hydroxide ion, the diazonium ion exists in equilibrium with an un-ionized compound,  $\text{Ar-N=N-OH}$ , and salts ( $\text{Ar-N=N-O}^- \text{Na}^+$ ) derived from it:



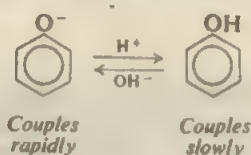
For our purpose we need only know that hydroxide tends to convert diazonium ion, which couples, into compounds which do not couple. In so far as the electrophilic reagent is concerned, then, coupling will be favored by a low concentration of hydroxide ion, that is, by high acidity.

But what is the effect of high acidity on the amine or phenol with which the diazonium salt is reacting? Acid converts an amine into its ion, which, because of the positive charge, is relatively unreactive toward electrophilic aromatic substi-

tution: much too unreactive to be attacked by the weakly electrophilic diazonium ion. The higher the acidity, the higher the proportion of amine that exists as its ion, and the lower the rate of coupling.



An analogous situation exists for a phenol. A phenol is appreciably acidic; in aqueous solutions it exists in equilibrium with phenoxide ion:



The fully developed negative charge makes  $\text{O}^-$  much more powerfully electron-releasing than  $\text{OH}$ ; the phenoxide ion is therefore much more reactive than the un-ionized phenol toward electrophilic aromatic substitution. The higher the acidity of the medium, the higher the proportion of phenol that is un-ionized, and the lower the rate of coupling. In so far as the amine or phenol is concerned, then, coupling is favored by low acidity.

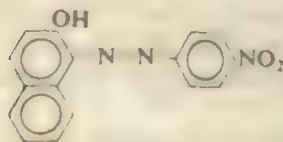
The conditions under which coupling proceeds most rapidly are the result of a compromise. The solution must not be so alkaline that the concentration of diazonium ion is too low; it must not be so acidic that the concentration of free amine or phenoxide or phenoxide ion is too low. It turns out that amines couple fastest in mildly acidic solutions, and phenols couple fastest in mildly alkaline solutions.

**Problem 23.21** Suggest a reason for the use of excess mineral acid in the diazotization process.

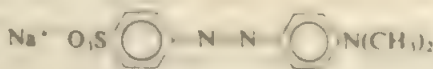
**Problem 23.22** (a) Coupling of diazonium salts with primary or secondary aromatic amines (but not with tertiary aromatic amines) is complicated by a side reaction that yields an isomer of the azo compound. Judging from the reaction of secondary aromatic amines with nitrous acid (Sec. 23.12), suggest a possible structure for this by-product.

(b) Upon treatment with mineral acid, this by-product regenerates the original reactants which recombine to form the azo compound. What do you think is the function of the acid in this regeneration? (*Hint.* See Sec. 7.28.)

Azo compounds are the first compounds we have encountered that as a class are strongly colored. They can be intensely yellow, orange, red, blue, or even green.



Para red  
A red dye



Methyl orange  
An acid-base indicator:  
red in acid, yellow in base



depending upon the exact structure of the molecule. Because of their color, the azo compounds are of tremendous importance as dyes; about half of the dyes in industrial use today are azo dyes. Some of the acid-base indicators with which the student is already familiar are azo compounds.

**Problem 23.23** An azo compound is cleaved at the azo linkage by stannous chloride,  $\text{SnCl}_2$ , to form two amines. (a) What is the structure of the azo compound that is cleaved to 3-bromo-4-aminotoluene and 2-methyl-4-aminophenol? (b) Outline a synthesis of this azo compound, starting with benzene and toluene.

**Problem 23.24** Show how *p*-amino-*N,N*-dimethylaniline can be made via an azo compound.

## 23.20 Analysis of amines. Hinsberg test

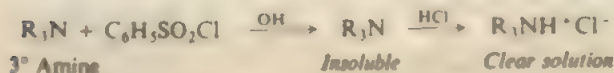
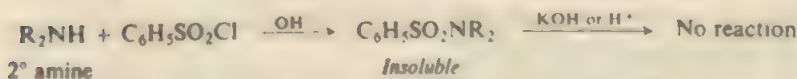
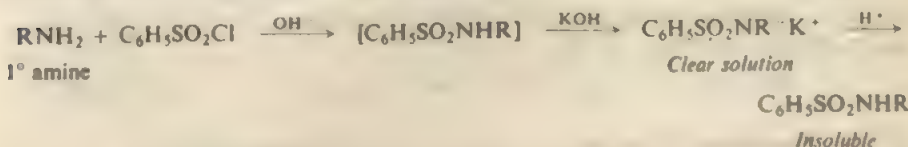
Amines are characterized chiefly through their basicity. A water-insoluble compound that dissolves in cold dilute hydrochloric acid—or a water-soluble compound (not a salt, Sec. 19.21) whose aqueous solution turns litmus blue—must almost certainly be an amine (Secs. 22.5 and 23.2). Elemental analysis shows the presence of nitrogen.

Whether an amine is primary, secondary, or tertiary is best shown by the **Hinsberg test**. The amine is shaken with benzenesulfonyl chloride in the presence of aqueous *potassium* hydroxide (Sec. 23.7). Primary and secondary amines form substituted sulfonamides; tertiary amines do not—if the test is carried out properly.

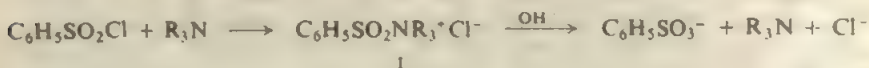
The monosubstituted sulfonamide from a primary amine has an acidic hydrogen attached to nitrogen. Reaction with potassium hydroxide converts this amide into a soluble salt which, *if the amine contained fewer than eight carbons*, is at least partly soluble. Acidification of this solution regenerates the insoluble amide.

The disubstituted sulfonamide from a secondary amine has no acidic hydrogen and remains insoluble in the alkaline reaction mixture.

What do we observe when we treat an amine with benzenesulfonyl chloride and excess potassium hydroxide? A *primary amine* yields a clear solution, from which, upon acidification, an insoluble material separates. A *secondary amine* yields an insoluble compound, which is unaffected by acid. A *tertiary amine* yields an insoluble compound (the unreacted amine itself) which dissolves upon acidification of the mixture.



• Like all experiments, the Hinsberg test must be done *carefully* and interpreted *thoughtfully*. Among other things, misleading side-reactions can occur if the proportions of reagents are incorrect, or if the temperature is too high or the time of reaction too long. Tertiary amines evidently *react*—after all, they are just as nucleophilic as other amines; but the initial product (I) has no acidic proton to



lose, and ordinarily is hydrolyzed to regenerate the amine.

**Problem 23.25** In non-aqueous medium, the product  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_3^+\text{Cl}^-$  can actually be isolated from the reaction of benzenesulfonyl chloride with one equivalent of trimethylamine. When two equivalents of the amine are used, there is formed, slowly,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$  and  $(\text{CH}_3)_4\text{N}^+\text{Cl}^-$ . (a) Give all steps in a likely mechanism for this latter reaction. What fundamental type of reaction is probably involved?

(b) If, in carrying out the Hinsberg test, the reaction mixture is heated or allowed to stand, many tertiary amines give precipitates. What are these precipitates likely to be? What incorrect conclusion about the unknown amine are you likely to draw?

**Problem 23.26** The sulfonamides of big primary amines are only partially soluble in aqueous KOH. (a) In the Hinsberg test, what incorrect conclusion might you draw about such an amine? (b) How might you modify the procedure to avoid this mistake?

Behavior toward nitrous acid (Sec. 23.12) is of some use in determining the class of an amine. In particular, the behavior of primary aromatic amines is quite characteristic: treatment with nitrous acid converts them into diazonium salts, which yield highly colored azo compounds upon treatment with  $\beta$ -naphthol (a phenol, see Sec. 23.19).

Among the numerous derivatives useful in identifying amines are: amides (e.g., acetamides, benzamides, or sulfonamides) for primary and secondary amines; quaternary ammonium salts (e.g., those from benzyl chloride or methyl iodide) for tertiary amines.

We have already discussed proof of structure by use of exhaustive methylation and elimination (Sec. 23.5).

## 23.21 Analysis of substituted amides

A substituted amide of a carboxylic acid is characterized by the presence of nitrogen, insolubility in dilute acid and dilute base, and hydrolysis to a carboxylic acid and an amine. It is generally identified through identification of its hydrolysis products (Secs. 19.21 and 23.20).

## 23.22 Spectroscopic analysis of amines and substituted amides

**Infrared.** The number and positions of absorption bands depend on the class to which the amine belongs (see Fig. 23.2).

An amide, substituted or unsubstituted, shows the C=O band in the 1640–1690  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  region. In addition, if it contains a free N–H group, it will show N–H stretching at 3050–3550  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ , and –NH bending at 1600–1640  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  ( $\text{RCONH}_2$ ) or 1530–1570  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  ( $\text{RCONHR}$ ).

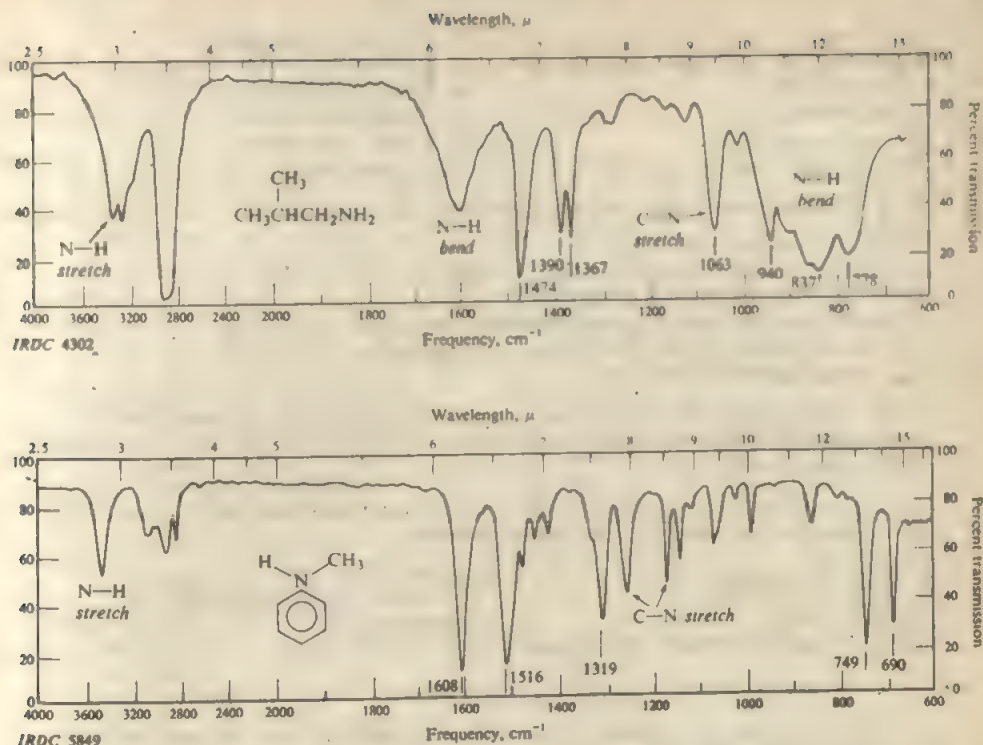


Figure 23.2. Infrared spectra of (a) isobutylamine and (b) N-methylaniline.

### N-H stretching 3200–3500 $\text{cm}^{-1}$

1° Amines	2° Amines	3° Amines
Often two bands	One band	No band

### N-H bending

1° Amines Strong bands 650–900  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  (broad) and 1560–1650  $\text{cm}^{-1}$

### C-N stretching

Aliphatic	1030–1230 $\text{cm}^{-1}$ (weak)	Aromatic	1180–1360 $\text{cm}^{-1}$ (strong)
(3°: usually a doublet)			Two bands

**NMR.** Absorption by N-H protons of amines falls in the range  $\delta$  1–5, where it is often detected only by proton counting. Absorption by  $-\text{CO}-\text{NH}-$  protons of amides (Sec. 20.26) appears as a broad, low hump farther downfield ( $\delta$  5–8).

## PROBLEMS

1. Write complete equations, naming all organic products, for the reaction (if any) of *n*-butylamine with:

- dilute HCl
- dilute  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$
- acetic acid
- dilute NaOH
- acetic anhydride
- isobutyryl chloride



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (g) <i>p</i> -nitrobenzoyl chloride + pyridine       | (m) product (l) + strong heat                           |
| (h) benzenesulfonyl chloride + KOH (aq)              | (n) $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_3 + \text{H}_2 + \text{Ni}$ |
| (i) ethyl bromide                                    | (o) $\text{HONO} (\text{NaNO}_2 + \text{HCl})$          |
| (j) benzyl bromide                                   | (p) phthalic anhydride                                  |
| (k) bromobenzene                                     | (q) sodium chloroacetate                                |
| (l) excess methyl iodide, then $\text{Ag}_2\text{O}$ | (r) 2,4,6-trinitrochlorobenzene                         |

2. Without referring to tables, arrange the compounds of each set in order of basicity:

- (a) ammonia, aniline, cyclohexylamine  
 (b) ethylamine, 2-aminoethanol, 3-amino-1-propanol  
 (c) aniline, *p*-methoxyaniline, *p*-nitroaniline  
 (d) benzylamine, *m*-chlorobenzylamine, *m*-ethylbenzylamine  
 (e) *p*-chloro-*N*-methylaniline, 2,4-dichloro-*N*-methylaniline, 2,4,6-trichloro-*N*-methylaniline

3. Which is the more strongly basic, an aqueous solution of trimethylamine or an aqueous solution of tetramethylammonium hydroxide? Why? (*Hint*: What is the principal base in each solution?)

4. Compare the behavior of the three amines, aniline, *N*-methylaniline, and *N,N*-dimethylaniline, toward each of the following reagents:

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| (a) dilute HCl                          | (e) acetic anhydride            |
| (b) $\text{NaNO}_2 + \text{HCl}$ (aq)   | (f) benzoyl chloride + pyridine |
| (c) methyl iodide                       | (g) bromine water               |
| (d) benzenesulfonyl chloride + KOH (aq) |                                 |

5. Answer Problem 4 for ethylamine, diethylamine, and triethylamine.

6. Give structures and names of the principal organic products expected from the action (if any) of sodium nitrite and hydrochloric acid on:

- |                                |                                      |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (a) <i>p</i> -toluidine        | (e) <i>N</i> -methylaniline          |
| (b) <i>N,N</i> -diethylaniline | (f) 2-amino-3-methylbutane           |
| (c) <i>n</i> -propylamine      | (g) benzidine (4,4'-diaminobiphenyl) |
| (d) sulfanilic acid            | (h) benzylamine                      |

7. Write equations for the reaction of *p*-nitrobenzenediazonium sulfate with:

- |  |                      |                                |
|--|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| (a) <i>m</i> -phenylenediamine         | (d) <i>p</i> -cresol | (g) $\text{CuCN}$              |
| (b) hot dilute $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ | (e) KI               | (h) $\text{HBF}_4$ , then heat |
| (c) $\text{HBr} + \text{Cu}$           | (f) $\text{CuCl}$    | (i) $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_2$    |

8. Give the reagents and any special conditions necessary to convert *p*-toluenediazonium chloride into:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) toluene  | (f) <i>p</i> -fluorotoluene   |
| (b) <i>p</i> -cresol, $p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{OH}$ | (g) <i>p</i> -tolunitrile, $p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CN}$ |
| (c) <i>p</i> -chlorotoluene  | (h) 4-methyl-4'-( <i>N,N</i> -dimethylamino)azobenzene                  |
| (d) <i>p</i> -bromotoluene   | (i) 2,4-dihydroxy-4'-methylazobenzene                                   |
| (e) <i>p</i> -iodotoluene  |   |

9. Write balanced equations, naming all organic products, for the following reactions:

- (a) *n*-butyryl chloride + methylamine  
 (b) acetic anhydride + *N*-methylaniline  
 (c) tetra-*n*-propylammonium hydroxide + heat  
 (d) isovaleryl chloride + diethylamine  
 (e) tetramethylammonium hydroxide + heat  
 (f) trimethylamine + acetic acid  
 (g) *N,N*-dimethylacetamide + boiling dilute HCl  
 (h) benzanilide + boiling aqueous NaOH  
 (i) methyl formate + aniline  
 (j) excess methylamine + phosgene ( $\text{COCl}_2$ )  
 (k)  $m\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{NHCH}_3 + \text{NaNO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$   
 (l) aniline +  $\text{Br}_2$  (aq) in excess



- (m) *m*-toluidine + Br<sub>2</sub> (aq) in excess  
 (n) *p*-toluidine + Br<sub>2</sub> (aq) in excess  
 (o) *p*-toluidine + NaNO<sub>2</sub> + HCl  
 (p) C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>NHCOCH<sub>3</sub> + HNO<sub>3</sub> + H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>  
 (q) *p*-CH<sub>3</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>NHCOCH<sub>3</sub> + HNO<sub>3</sub> + H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>  
 (r) *p*-C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>NH<sub>2</sub> + large excess of CH<sub>3</sub>I  
 (s) benzanilide + Br<sub>2</sub> + Fe

10. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following compounds from benzene, toluene, and alcohols of four carbons or fewer, using any needed inorganic reagents.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) 4-amino-2-bromotoluene   | (h) <i>p</i> -aminobenzylamine  |
| (b) 4-amino-3-bromotoluene   | (i) <i>N</i> -nitroso- <i>N</i> -isopropylaniline                             |
| (c) <i>p</i> -aminobenzenesulfonamide<br>( <i>p</i> -H <sub>2</sub> NC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> SO <sub>2</sub> NHC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> ) | (j) <i>N</i> -ethyl- <i>N</i> -methyl- <i>n</i> -valeramide                   |
| (d) monoacetyl <i>p</i> -phenylenediamine<br>( <i>p</i> -aminoacetanilide)   | (k) <i>n</i> -hexylamine  |
| (e) <i>p</i> -nitroso- <i>N,N</i> -diethylaniline  | (l) 1-amino-1-phenylbutane  |
| (f) 4-amino-3-nitrobenzoic acid  | (m) aminoacetamide  |
| (g) 2,6-dibromo-4-isopropylaniline   | (n) hippuric acid<br>(C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CONHCH <sub>2</sub> COOH) |

11. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis from benzene, toluene, and any needed inorganic reagents of:

- (a) the six isomeric dibromotoluenes, CH<sub>3</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>Br<sub>2</sub>. (Note: One may be more difficult to make than any of the others.)  
 (b) the three isomeric chlorobenzoic acids, each one free of the others  
 (c) the three isomeric bromofluorobenzenes

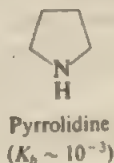
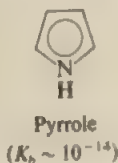
Review the instructions on page 265. Assume that an *ortho*/*para* mixture of isomeric nitro compounds can be separated by distillation (see Sec. 15.7).

12. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following compounds from benzene and toluene and any needed aliphatic and inorganic reagents.

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| (a) <i>p</i> -fluorotoluene      | (h) 3,5-dibromoaniline                 |
| (b) <i>m</i> -fluorotoluene      | (i) 3-bromo-4-iodotoluene              |
| (c) <i>p</i> -iodobenzoic acid   | (j) 2-amino-4-methylphenol             |
| (d) <i>m</i> -bromoaniline       | (k) 2,6-dibromoiodobenzene             |
| (e) 3-bromo-4-methylbenzoic acid | (l) 4-iodo-3-nitrotoluene              |
| (f) 2-bromo-4-methylbenzoic acid | (m) <i>p</i> -hydroxyphenylacetic acid |
| (g) <i>m</i> -ethylphenol        | (n) 2-bromo-4-chlorotoluene            |

13. Write an equation for the chemistry involved when a drop of hydrochloric acid makes a hole in a Nylon 66 stocking.

14. (a) In Problem 10 (p. 591) you accounted for the aromaticity of the heterocyclic compound *pyrrole*. In light of your answer, can you suggest a reason why pyrrole is an

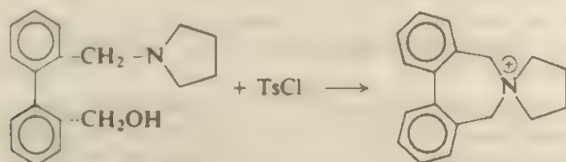


extremely weak base ( $K_b \sim 2.5 \times 10^{-14}$ ) compared with aliphatic amines ( $K_b$ 's about  $10^{-3}$  to  $10^{-4}$ ) or even aniline ( $K_b \sim 10^{-10}$ )?

(b) Catalytic hydrogenation converts pyrrole into the corresponding saturated compound, *pyrrolidine*, which has  $K_b \sim 10^{-3}$ . How do you account for this enormous increase in basicity brought about by hydrogenation?

15. Labeled  $\text{ArCH}_2^{14}\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$  was treated with  $\text{HONO}$ , and the  $\text{ArCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  obtained was oxidized to  $\text{ArCOOH}$ . The fraction of the original radioactivity found in the  $\text{ArCOOH}$  depended on the nature of Ar:  $p\text{-NO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$  8%,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  27%,  $p\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4$  45%. How do you account for these findings?

16. Account for the following reactions, making clear the role played by tosyl chloride.



17. If halide ion is present during hydrolysis of benzenediazonium ion or  $p$ -nitrobenzenediazonium ion, there is obtained not only the phenol, but also the aryl halide: the higher the halide ion concentration, the greater the proportion of aryl halide obtained. The presence of halide ion has no effect on the rate of decomposition of benzenediazonium ion, but speeds up decomposition of the  $p$ -nitrobenzenediazonium ion.

(a) Suggest a mechanism or mechanisms to account for these facts. (b) What factor is responsible for the unusually high reactivity of diazonium ions in this reaction—and, indeed, in most of their reactions? (*Hint*: See Sec. 6.11.)

18. Describe simple chemical tests (other than color reactions with indicators) that would serve to distinguish between:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) $N$ -methylaniline and $o$ -toluidine   | (h) aniline and acetanilide  |
| (b) aniline and cyclohexylamine   | (i) $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_3)_2\text{SO}_4$ and $p\text{-H}_3\text{N}^+\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{SO}_3^-$ |
| (c) $n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{NH}_2$ and $(n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{NH}$                       | (j) $\text{ClCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$ and $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_3\text{Cl}$                         |
| (d) $(n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{NH}$ and $(n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_3\text{N}$                      | (k) 2,4,6-trinitroaniline and aniline  |
| (e) $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{NHCl}$ and $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{NCl}$  | (l) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2$ and $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_3^+\text{HSO}_4^-$                        |
| (f) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_3\text{Cl}$ and $o\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$                |  |
| (g) $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ and $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_4\text{NOH}$ |  |

Tell exactly what you would *do* and *see*.

19. Describe simple chemical methods for the separation of the following mixtures, recovering each component in essentially pure form:

- triethylamine and  $n$ -heptane
- aniline and anisole
- stearamide and octadecylamine
- $o\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$  and  $p\text{-H}_3\text{N}^+\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{SO}_3^-$
- $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHCH}_3$  and  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$
- $n$ -caproic acid, tri- $n$ -propylamine, and cyclohexane
- $o$ -nitrotoluene and  $o$ -toluidine
- $p$ -ethylaniline and propionanilide

Tell exactly what you would *do* and *see*.

20. The compounds in each of the following sets boil (or melt) within a few degrees of each other. Describe simple chemical tests that would serve to distinguish among the members of each set.

- aniline, benzylamine, and  $N,N$ -dimethylbenzylamine
- $o$ -chloroacetanilide and 2,4-diaminobenzene
- $N$ -ethylbenzylamine,  $N$ -ethyl- $N$ -methylaniline,  $\beta$ -phenylethylamine, and  $o$ -toluidine
- acetanilide and ethyl oxamate ( $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OOCCONH}_2$ )
- benzonitrile,  $N,N$ -dimethylaniline, and formamide
- $N,N$ -dimethyl- $m$ -toluidine, nitrobenzene, and  $m$ -tolunitrile

(g) *N*-(*sec*-butyl)benzenesulfonamide

<i>p</i> -chloroaniline	<i>o</i> -nitroaniline
<i>N,N</i> -dibenzylaniline	<i>p</i> -nitrobenzyl chloride
2,4-dinitroaniline	<i>p</i> -toluenesulfonyl chloride
<i>N</i> -ethyl- <i>N</i> -( <i>p</i> -tolyl)- <i>p</i> -toluenesulfonamide	

Tell exactly what you would *do* and *see*.

21. An unknown amine is believed to be one of those in Table 23.2. Describe how you would go about finding out which of the possibilities the unknown actually is. Where possible use simple chemical tests.

Table 23.2 DERIVATIVES OF SOME AMINES

Amine	B p. °C	Benzene- sulfonamide M.p., °C	Acetamide M.p., °C	Benzamide M.p., °C	<i>p</i> -Toluene- sulfonamide M.p., °C
<i>m</i> -Toluidine	203	95	66	125	114
<i>N</i> -Ethylaniline	205		54	60	87
<i>N</i> -Methyl- <i>m</i> -toluidine	206		66		
<i>N,N</i> -Diethyl- <i>o</i> -toluidine	206				
<i>N</i> -Methyl- <i>o</i> -toluidine	207		55	66	120
<i>N</i> -Methyl- <i>p</i> -toluidine	207	64	83	53	60
<i>N,N</i> -Dimethyl- <i>o</i> -chloroaniline	207				
<i>o</i> -Chloroaniline	209	129	87	99	105

22. *Choline*, a constituent of *phospholipids* (fat-like phosphate esters of great physiological importance, Sec. 27.8), has the formula  $C_5H_{15}O_2N$ . It dissolves readily in water to form a strongly basic solution. It can be prepared by the reaction of ethylene oxide with trimethylamine in the presence of water.

(a) What is a likely structure for choline? (b) What is a likely structure for its acetyl derivative, *acetylcholine*,  $C_7H_{17}O_2N$ , important in nerve action?

23. *Novocaine*, a local anesthetic, is a compound of formula  $C_{13}H_{20}O_2N_2$ . It is insoluble in water and dilute NaOH, but soluble in dilute HCl. Upon treatment with  $NaNO_2$  and HCl and then with  $\beta$ -naphthol, a highly colored solid is formed.

When *Novocaine* is boiled with aqueous NaOH, it slowly dissolves. The alkaline solution is shaken with ether and the layers are separated.

Acidification of the aqueous layer causes the precipitation of a white solid A; continued addition of acid causes A to redissolve. Upon isolation A is found to have a melting point of  $185-6^\circ$  and the formula  $C_7H_7O_2N$ .

Evaporation of the ether layer leaves a liquid B of formula  $C_6H_{15}ON$ . B dissolves in water to give a solution that turns litmus blue. Treatment of B with acetic anhydride gives C,  $C_8H_{17}O_2N$ , which is insoluble in water and dilute base, but soluble in dilute HCl.

B is found to be identical with the compound formed by the action of diethylamine on ethylene oxide.

(a) What is the structure of *Novocaine*? (b) Outline all steps in a complete synthesis of *Novocaine* from toluene and readily available aliphatic and inorganic reagents.

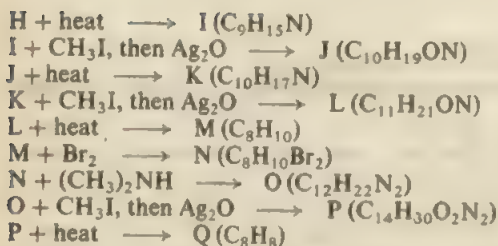
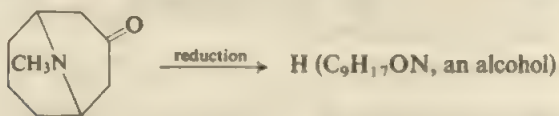
24. A solid compound D, of formula  $C_{15}H_{15}ON$ , was insoluble in water, dilute HCl, or dilute NaOH. After prolonged heating of D with aqueous NaOH, a liquid, E, was observed floating on the surface of the alkaline mixture. E did not solidify upon cooling to room temperature; it was steam-distilled and separated. Acidification of the alkaline mixture with hydrochloric acid caused precipitation of a white solid, F.

Compound E was soluble in dilute HCl, and reacted with benzenesulfonyl chloride and excess KOH to give a base-insoluble solid, G.

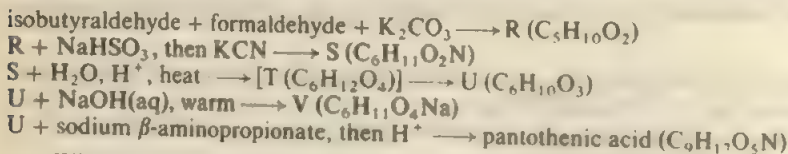
Compound F, m.p.  $180^\circ$ , was soluble in aqueous  $NaHCO_3$ , and contained no nitrogen. What were compounds D, E, F, and G?



25. Give the structures of compound's H through Q:



26. *Pantothenic acid*,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{17}\text{O}_5\text{N}$ , occurs in Coenzyme A (p. 1157), essential to metabolism of carbohydrates and fats. It reacts with dilute NaOH to give  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_5\text{NNa}$ , with ethyl alcohol to give  $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{21}\text{O}_5\text{N}$ , and with hot NaOH to give compound V (see below) and  $\beta$ -aminopropionic acid. Its nitrogen is non-basic. Pantothenic acid has been synthesized as follows:



What is the structure of pantothenic acid?

27. Benzophenone oxime,  $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{11}\text{ON}$ , m.p.  $141^\circ$ , like other oximes, is soluble in aqueous NaOH and gives a color with ferric chloride. When heated with acids it is transformed into a solid W,  $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{11}\text{ON}$ , m.p.  $163^\circ$ , which is insoluble in aqueous NaOH and in aqueous HCl.

After prolonged heating of W with aqueous NaOH, a liquid X separates and is collected by steam distillation. Acidification of the aqueous residue causes precipitation of a white solid Y, m.p.  $120\text{--}1^\circ$ .

Compound X, b.p.  $184^\circ$ , is soluble in dilute HCl. When this acidic solution is chilled and then treated successively with  $\text{NaNO}_2$  and  $\beta$ -naphthol, a red solid is formed. X reacts with acetic anhydride to give a compound that melts at  $112.5\text{--}114^\circ$ .

(a) What is the structure of W? (b) The transformation of benzophenone oxime into W illustrates a reaction to which the name **Beckmann** is attached. To what general class of reactions must this transformation belong? (c) Suggest a likely series of steps, each one basically familiar, for this transformation? (Hint: See Secs. 6.32 and 13.10.)

(d) Besides acids like sulfuric, other compounds "catalyze" this reaction. How might  $\text{PCl}_5$  do the job? Tosyl chloride?

(e) What product or products corresponding to W would you expect from a similar transformation of acetone oxime, of acetophenone oxime, of *p*-nitrobenzophenone oxime, of methyl *n*-propyl ketoxime? (f) How would you go about identifying each of the products in (e)?

(g) Caprolactam (Prob. 23.10, p. 927) is made by the above reaction. With what ketone must the process start?

28. An unknown compound Z contained chlorine and nitrogen. It dissolved readily in water to give a solution that turned litmus red. Titration of Z with standard base gave a neutralization equivalent of  $131 \pm 2$ .



When a sample of Z was treated with aqueous NaOH a liquid separated; it contained nitrogen but not chlorine. Treatment of the liquid with nitrous acid followed by  $\beta$ -naphthol gave a red precipitate.

What was Z? Write equations for all reactions.

29. Which (if any) of the following compounds could give rise to each of the infrared spectra shown in Fig. 23.3 (p. 952)?

<i>n</i> -butylamine	<i>o</i> -anisidine
diethylamine	<i>m</i> -anisidine
N-methylformamide	aniline
N,N-dimethylformamide	N,N-dimethyl- <i>o</i> -toluidine
2-(dimethylamino)ethanol	acetanilide

30. Give a structure or structures consistent with each of the NMR spectra shown in Fig. 23.4 (p. 953).

31. Give the structures of compounds AA, BB, and CC on the basis of their infrared spectra (Fig. 23.5, p. 954) and their NMR spectra (Fig. 23.6, p. 955).

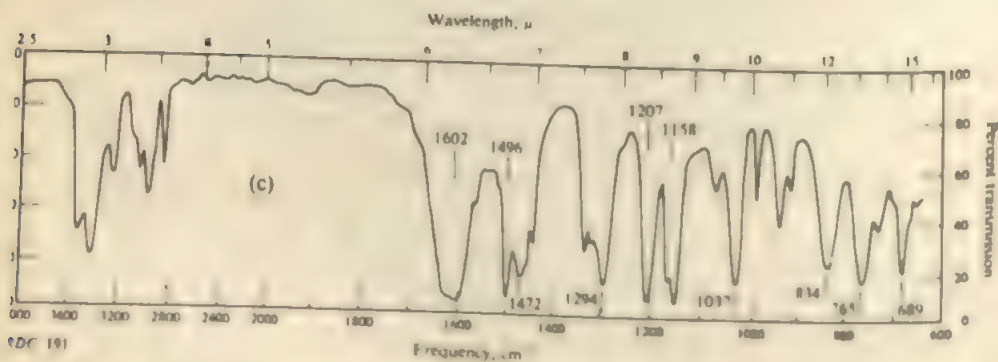
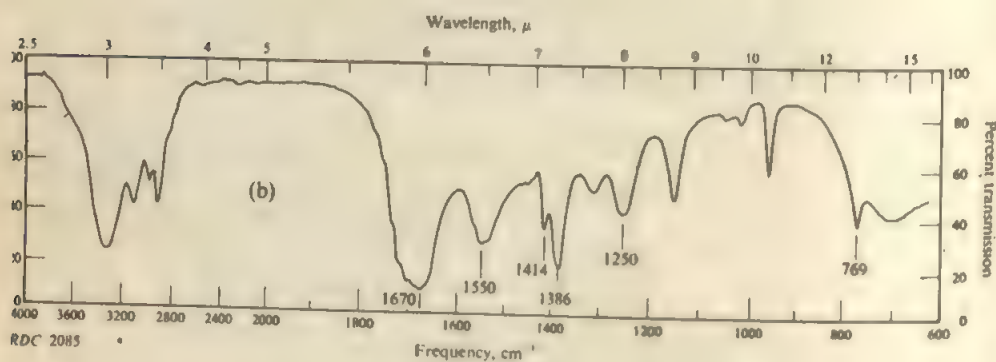
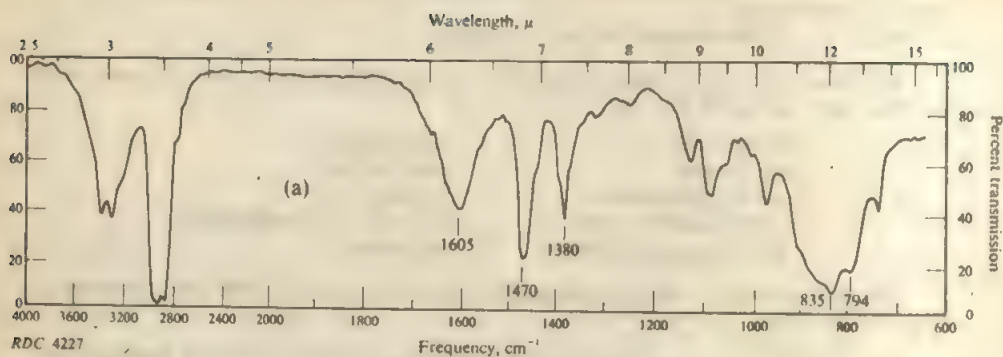


Figure 23.3. Infrared spectra for Problem 29, p 951

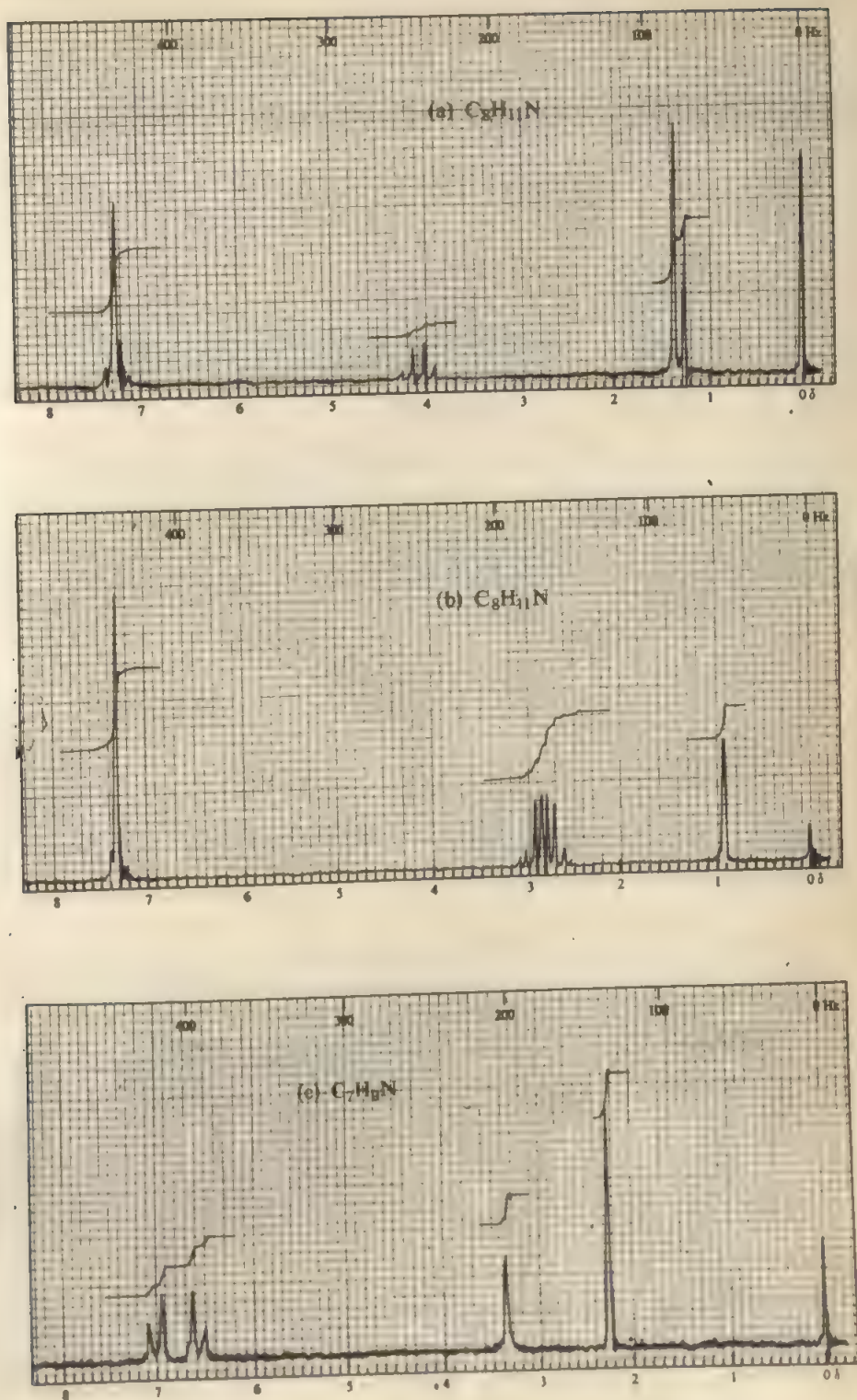


Figure 23.4. NMR spectra for Problem 30, p. 951.

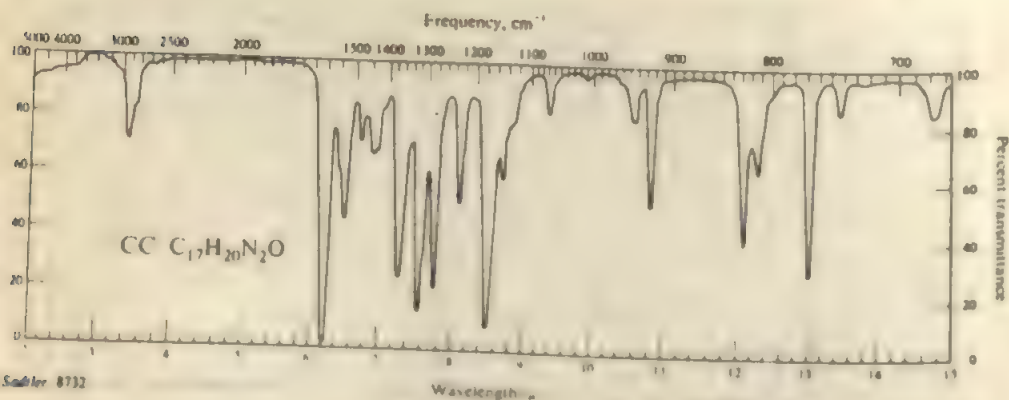
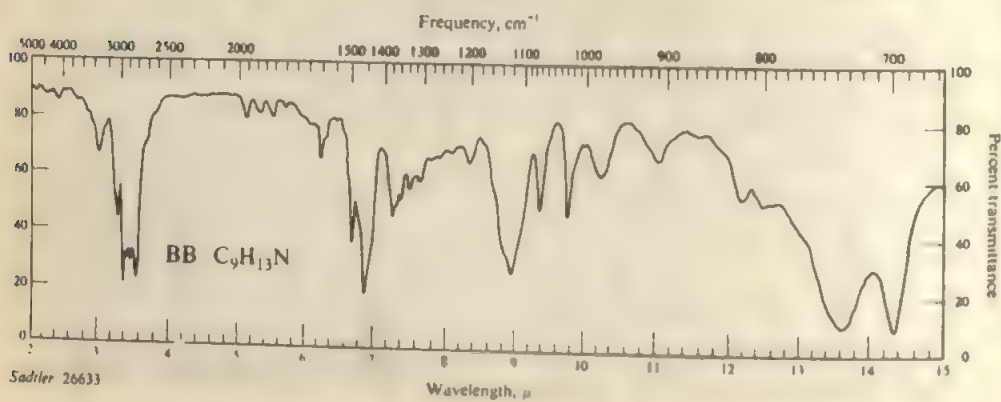
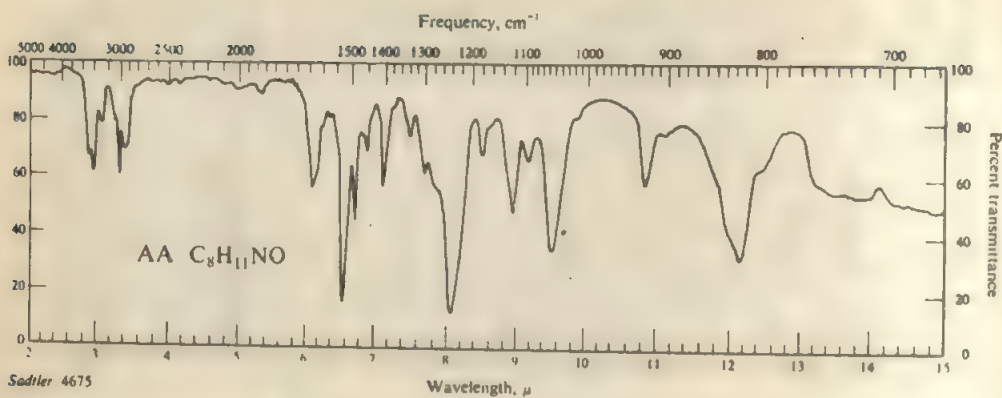


Figure 23.5. Infrared spectra for Problem 31, p 951



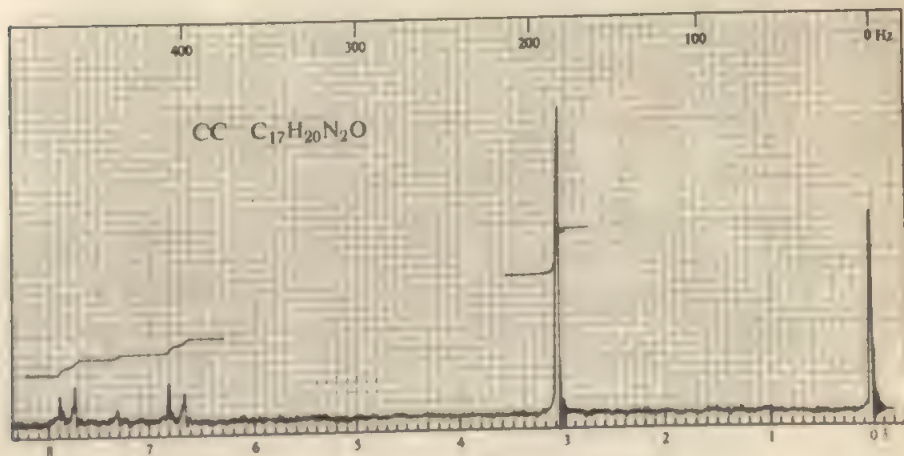
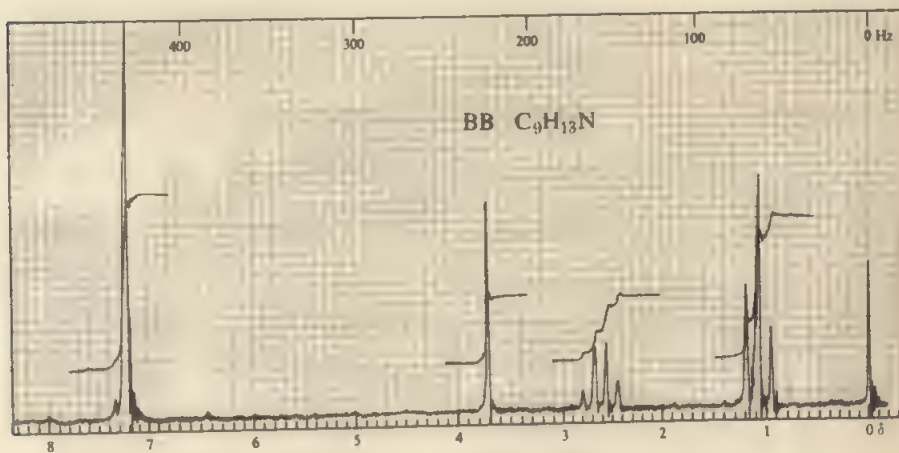
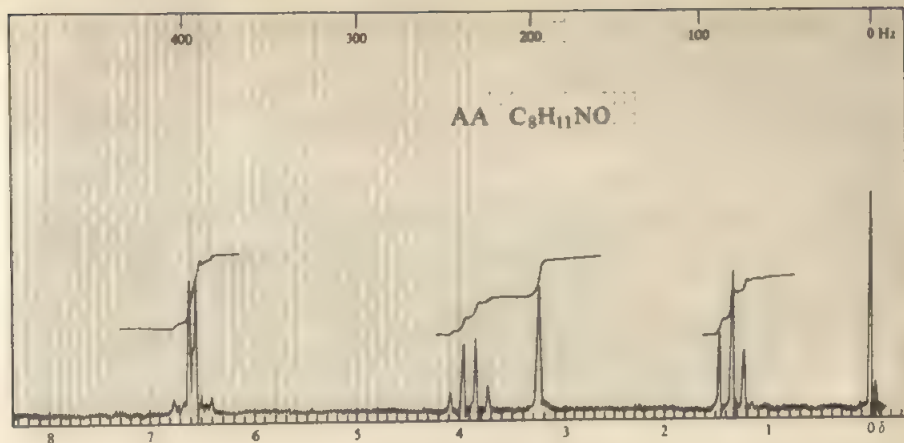


Figure 23.6. NMR spectra for Problem 31, p. 951.



## Phenols

### 24.1 Structure and nomenclature

Phenols are compounds of the general formula  $\text{ArOH}$ , where Ar is phenyl, substituted phenyl, or one of the other aryl groups we shall study later (e.g., naphthyl, Chap. 34). *Phenols differ from alcohols in having the  $\text{—OH}$  group attached directly to an aromatic ring.*

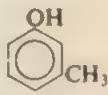
Phenols are generally named as derivatives of the simplest member of the family, **phenol**. The methylphenols are given the special name of *cresols*. Occasionally phenols are named as *hydroxy-* compounds.



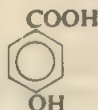
Phenol



*o*-Chlorophenol



*m*-Cresol



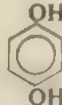
*p*-Hydroxybenzoic acid



Catechol



Resorcinol



Hydroquinone



Salicylic acid

Both phenols and alcohols contain the  $\text{—OH}$  group, and as a result the two families resemble each other to a limited extent. We have already seen, for example, that both alcohols and phenols can be converted into ethers and esters. In most of their properties, however, and in their preparations, the two kinds of compound differ so greatly that they well deserve to be classified as different families.

### 24.2 Physical properties

The simplest phenols are liquids or low-melting solids; because of hydrogen bonding, they have quite high boiling points. Phenol itself is somewhat soluble in

water (9 g per 100 g of water), presumably because of hydrogen bonding with the water; most other phenols are essentially insoluble in water. Unless some group capable of producing color is present, phenols themselves are colorless. However, like aromatic amines, they are easily oxidized; unless carefully purified, many phenols are coloured by oxidation products.

Table 24.1 PHENOLS

Name	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Solub., g/100 g H <sub>2</sub> O at 25°	K <sub>a</sub>
Phenol	41	182	9.3	$1.1 \times 10^{-10}$
<i>o</i> -Cresol	31	191	2.5	0.63
<i>m</i> -Cresol	11	201	2.6	0.98
<i>p</i> -Cresol	35	202	2.3	0.67
<i>o</i> -Fluorophenol	16	152		15
<i>m</i> -Fluorophenol	14	178		5.2
<i>p</i> -Fluorophenol	48	185		1.1
<i>o</i> -Chlorophenol	9	173	2.8	77
<i>m</i> -Chlorophenol	33	214	2.6	16
<i>p</i> -Chlorophenol	43	220	2.7	6.3
<i>o</i> -Bromophenol	5	194		41
<i>m</i> -Bromophenol	33	236		14
<i>p</i> -Bromophenol	64	236	1.4	5.6
<i>o</i> -Iodophenol	43			34
<i>m</i> -Iodophenol	40			13
<i>p</i> -Iodophenol	94			6.3
<i>o</i> -Aminophenol	174		1.7 <sup>0</sup>	2.0
<i>m</i> -Aminophenol	123		2.6	69
<i>p</i> -Aminophenol	186		1.1 <sup>0</sup>	
<i>o</i> -Nitrophenol	45	217	0.2	600
<i>m</i> -Nitrophenol	96		1.4	50
<i>p</i> -Nitrophenol	114		1.7	690
2,4-Dinitrophenol	113		0.6	1,000,000
2,4,6-Trinitrophenol (picric acid)	122		1.4	very large
Catechol	104	246	45	1
Resorcinol	110	281	123	3
Hydroquinone	173	286	8	2

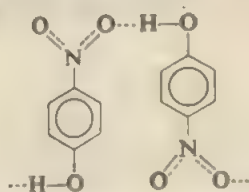
An important point emerges from a comparison of the physical properties of the isomeric nitrophenols (Table 24.2). We notice that *o*-nitrophenol has a much lower boiling point and much lower solubility in water than its isomers; it is the only one of the three that is readily steam-distillable. How can these differences be accounted for?

Table 24.2 PROPERTIES OF THE NITROPHENOLS

	B.p., °C at 70 mm	Solub., g/100 g H <sub>2</sub> O	
<i>o</i> -Nitrophenol	100	0.2	Volatile in steam
<i>m</i> -Nitrophenol	194	1.35	Non-volatile in steam
<i>p</i> -Nitrophenol	dec	1.69	Non-volatile in steam

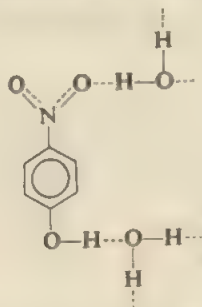


Let us consider first the *m*- and *p*-isomers. They have very high boiling points because of intermolecular hydrogen bonding:



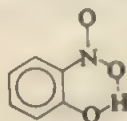
Intermolecular  
hydrogen bonding

Their solubility in water is due to hydrogen bonding with water molecules:



Steam distillation depends upon a substance having an appreciable vapor pressure at the boiling point of water; by lowering the vapor pressure, intermolecular hydrogen bonding inhibits steam distillation of the *m*- and *p*-isomers.

What is the situation for the *o*-isomer? Examination of models shows that the  $-\text{NO}_2$  and  $-\text{OH}$  groups are located exactly right for the formation of a hydrogen



*o*-Nitrophenol

Intramolecular  
hydrogen bonding:  
chelation

bond *within a single molecule*. This **intramolecular hydrogen bonding** takes the place of *intermolecular* hydrogen bonding with other phenol molecules and with water molecules; therefore *o*-nitrophenol does not have the low volatility of an associated liquid, nor does it have the solubility characteristic of a compound that forms hydrogen bonds with water.

We recognize this as an example of *chelation* (Sec. 8.5).

Intramolecular hydrogen bonding seems to occur whenever the structure of a compound permits; we shall encounter other examples of its effect on physical properties.

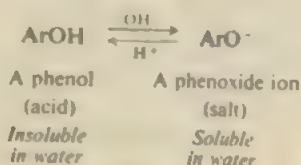
**Problem 24.1** Interpret the following observations. The infrared O—H bands (Secs. 10.3 and 17.6) for the isomeric nitrophenols in solid form (KBr pellets) and in  $\text{CHCl}_3$  solution are:

	KBr	$\text{CHCl}_3$
<i>o</i> -	3200 $\text{cm}^{-1}$	3200 $\text{cm}^{-1}$
<i>m</i> -	3340	3520
<i>p</i> -	3325	3530

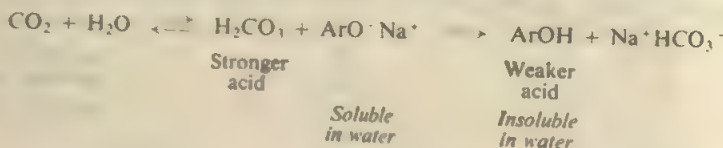
**Problem 24.2** In which of the following compounds would you expect intramolecular hydrogen bonding to occur: *o*-nitroaniline, *o*-cresol, *o*-hydroxybenzoic acid (salicylic acid), *o*-hydroxybenzaldehyde (salicylaldehyde), *o*-fluorophenol, *o*-hydroxybenzonitrile?

### 24.3 Salts of phenols

Phenols are fairly acidic compounds, and in this respect differ markedly from alcohols, which are even more weakly acidic than water. Aqueous hydroxides convert phenols into their salts, aqueous mineral acids convert the salts back into the free phenols. As we might expect, phenols and their salts have opposite solubility properties, the salts being soluble in water and insoluble in organic solvents.



Most phenols have  $K_a$ 's in the neighborhood of  $10^{-10}$ , and are thus considerably weaker acids than the carboxylic acids ( $K_a$ 's about  $10^{-5}$ ). Most phenols are weaker than carbonic acid, and hence, unlike carboxylic acids, do not dissolve in aqueous bicarbonate solutions. Indeed, phenols are conveniently liberated from their salts by the action of carbonic acid.



The acid strength of phenols and the solubility of their salts in water are useful both in analysis and in separations. A water-insoluble substance that dissolves in aqueous hydroxide but not in aqueous bicarbonate must be more acidic than water, but less acidic than a carboxylic acid; most compounds in this range of acidity are phenols. A phenol can be separated from non-acidic compounds by means of its solubility in base; it can be separated from carboxylic acids by means of its insolubility in bicarbonate.

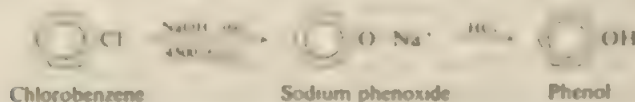
**Problem 24.3** Outline the separation by chemical methods of a mixture of *p*-cresol, *p*-toluic acid, *p*-toluidine, and *p*-nitrotoluene. Describe exactly what you would do and see.

### 24.4 Industrial source

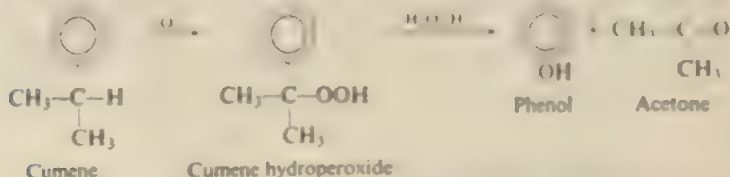
Most phenols are made industrially by the same methods that are used in the laboratory; these are described in Sec. 24.7. There are, however, special ways of obtaining certain of these compounds on a commercial scale, including the most important one, phenol. In quantity produced, phenol ranks near the top of the list

of synthetic aromatic compounds. Its principal use is in the manufacture of the phenol-formaldehyde polymers (Sec. 24.15).

A certain amount of phenol, as well as the cresols, is obtained from coal tar (Sec. 16.8), but nearly all of it is synthesized. One of the synthetic processes used is the fusion of sodium benzenesulfonate with alkali (Sec. 34.12); another is the Dow process, in which chlorobenzene is allowed to react with aqueous sodium hydroxide at a temperature of about 360°. Like the synthesis of aniline from chlorobenzene (Sec. 22.7), this second reaction involves nucleophilic substitution under conditions that are not generally employed in the laboratory (Sec. 25.4).



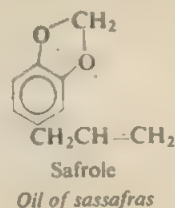
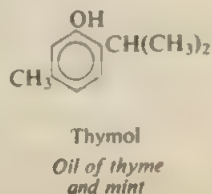
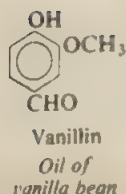
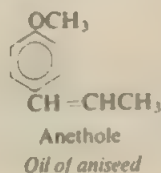
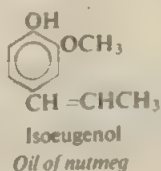
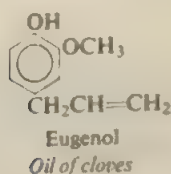
Nearly all phenol is made today, however, by a newer process that starts with *cumene*, isopropylbenzene. Cumene is converted by air oxidation into cumene hydroperoxide, which is converted by aqueous acid into phenol and acetone.



Along with the large amount of phenol produced each year, a great deal of acetone is obtained, and this process is one of the principal sources of that compound, too. (The mechanism involved here is of considerable theoretical interest to us, and is discussed in detail in the two following sections.)

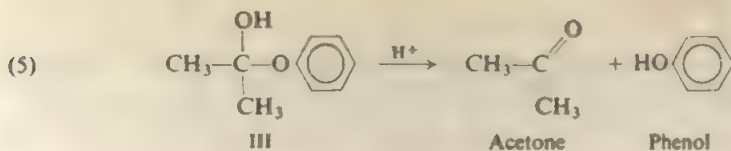
**Problem 24.4** Outline a synthesis of cumene from cheap, readily available hydrocarbons.

Certain phenols and their ethers are isolated from the *essential oils* of various plants (so called because they contain the *essence*—odor or flavor—of the plants). A few of these are:





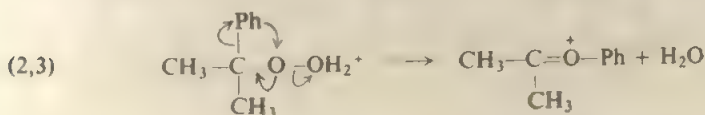




Acid converts (step 1) the peroxide I into the protonated peroxide, which loses (step 2) a molecule of water to form an intermediate in which oxygen bears only six electrons. A 1,2-shift of the phenyl group from carbon to electron-deficient oxygen yields (step 3) the "carbocation" II, which reacts with water to yield (step 4) the hydroxy compound III. Compound III is a hemiacetal (Sec. 18.14) which breaks down (step 5) to give phenol and acetone.

Every step of the reaction involves chemistry with which we are already quite familiar: protonation of a hydroxy compound with subsequent ionization to leave an electron-deficient particle; a 1,2-shift to an electron-deficient atom; reaction of a carbocation with water to yield a hydroxy compound; decomposition of a hemiacetal. In studying organic chemistry we encounter many new things; but much of what seems new is found to fit into old familiar patterns of behavior.

It is very probable that steps (2) and (3) are simultaneous, the migrating phenyl group helping to push out (2,3) the molecule of water; that is to say, water is lost with anchimeric assistance. This concerted mechanism is supported by the same



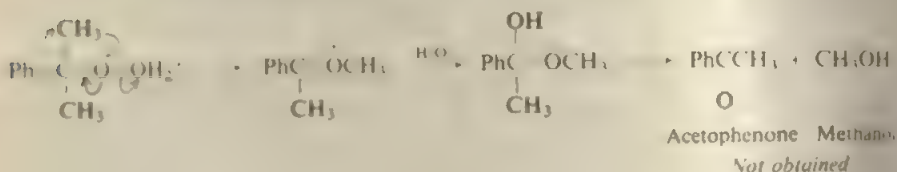
line of reasoning that we applied to the Hofmann rearrangement. (a) A highly unstable intermediate containing oxygen with only a sextet of electrons should be very difficult to form. (b) There is evidence that, if there is such an intermediate, it must undergo rearrangement as fast as it is formed; that is, if (2) and (3) are separate steps, (3) must be fast compared with (2). (c) The rate of overall reaction is speeded up by electron-releasing substituents in migrating aryl groups, and in a way that resembles, *quantitatively*, the effect of these groups on ordinary electrophilic aromatic substitution. Almost certainly, then, substituents affect the overall rate of reaction by affecting the rate of migration, and hence migration must take place in the rate-determining step. This rules out the possibility of a fast (3), and leaves us with the concerted reaction (2,3).

**Problem 24.5** When  $\alpha$ -phenylethyl hydroperoxide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{O}-\text{OH}$ , undergoes acid-catalyzed rearrangement in  $\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$ , recovered unrearranged hydroperoxide is found to contain *no* oxygen-18. Taken with the other evidence, what does this finding tell us about the mechanism of reaction?

## 24.6 Rearrangement of hydroperoxides. Migratory aptitude

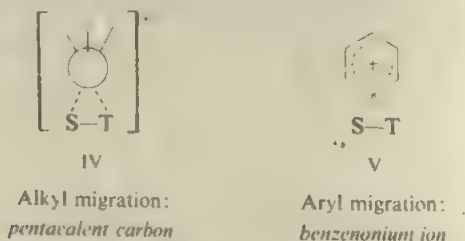
The rearrangement of hydroperoxides lets us see something that the Hofmann rearrangement could not: the preferential migration of one group rather than another. That is, we can observe the relative speeds of migration—the relative migratory aptitudes—of two groups, not as a difference in rate of reaction, but as

a difference in the product obtained. In cumene hydroperoxide, for example, any one of three groups could migrate—phenyl and two methyls. If, instead of phenyl,



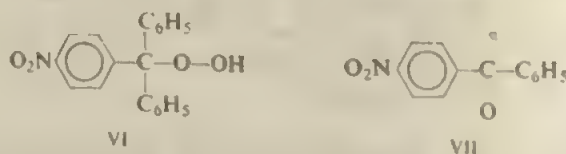
methyl were to migrate, reaction would be expected to yield methanol and acetophenone. Actually, phenol and acetone are formed quantitatively, showing that a phenyl group migrates much faster than a methyl.

It is generally true in 1,2-shifts that aryl groups have greater migratory aptitudes than alkyl groups. This is also the case, for example, in the pinacol rearrangement (Sec. 18.7) and, as we saw there, for a very good reason. Migration of an alkyl group must involve a transition state containing pentavalent carbon (IV). Migration of an aryl group, on the other hand, takes place via a structure of



the benzenonium ion type (V); transition state or actual intermediate, V clearly offers an easier path for migration than does IV.

The hydroperoxide may contain several aryl groups and, if they are different, we can observe competition in migration between them, too. As was observed in



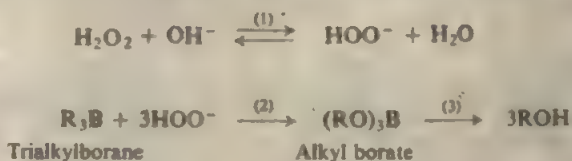
the Hofmann rearrangement (Sec. 22.18), the relative migratory aptitude of an aryl group is raised by electron-releasing substituents, and lowered by electron-withdrawing substituents. For example, when *p*-nitrotriphenylmethyl hydroperoxide (VI) is treated with acid, it yields exclusively phenol and *p*-nitrobenzophenone (VII); as we would have expected, phenyl migrates in preference to *p*-nitrophenyl.

We pointed out before (Secs. 16.20 and 22.18) that, from the standpoint of a migrating aryl group, rearrangement is simply electrophilic aromatic substitution, with the electron-deficient atom—oxygen, here—acting as the electrophile. Benzene undergoes electrophilic substitution faster than nitrobenzene and, for the same basic reason, phenyl migrates faster than *p*-nitrophenyl.

**Problem 24.6** When *p*-methylbenzyl hydroperoxide,  $p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{O-OH}$ , is treated with acid, there are obtained *p*-methylbenzaldehyde (61%) and *p*-cresol (39%) (a) How do you account for the formation of each of these? What other products must have been formed? (b) What do the relative yields of the aromatic products show?

**Problem 24.7** Treatment of aliphatic hydroperoxides,  $\text{RCH}_2\text{O-OH}$  and  $\text{R}_2\text{C(OH)-OH}$ , with aqueous acid yields aldehydes and ketones as the only organic products. What conclusion do you draw about migratory aptitudes?

**Problem 24.8** In the oxidation stage of hydroboration-oxidation, alkylboranes are converted into alkyl borates, which are hydrolyzed to alcohols. It has been suggested that the formation of the borates involves the reagent  $\text{HOO}^-$ .



- (a) Show all steps in a possible mechanism for step (2), the formation of the borate.  
 (b) What did you conclude (Problem 10.10, p. 472) was the likely stereochemistry of the oxidation stage of hydroboration-oxidation? Is your mechanism in (a) consistent with this stereochemistry?

## 24.7 Preparation

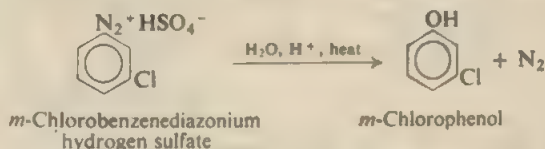
In the laboratory, phenols are generally prepared by one of the methods outlined below.

### PREPARATION OF PHENOLS

1. Hydrolysis of diazonium salts. Discussed in Sec. 23.16.



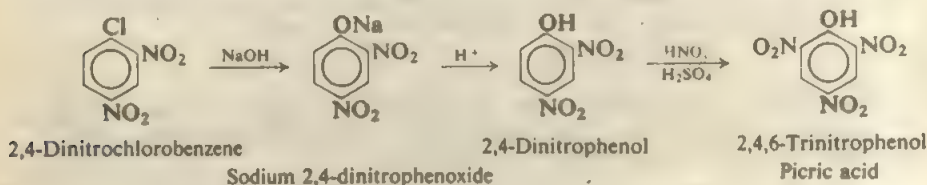
Example:



2. Alkali fusion of sulfonates. Discussed in Sec. 34.12. ■

Hydrolysis of diazonium salts is a highly versatile method of making phenols. It is the last step in a synthetic route that generally begins with nitration (Secs. 23.13 and 23.16).

Of limited use is the hydrolysis of aryl halides containing strongly electron-withdrawing groups *ortho* and *para* to the halogen (Sec. 25.9); 2,4-dinitrophenol and 2,4,6-trinitrophenol (*picric acid*) are produced in this way on a large scale:



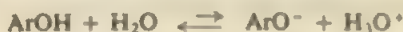
## 24.8 Reactions

Aside from acidity, the most striking chemical property of a phenol is the extremely high reactivity of its ring toward electrophilic substitution. Even in ring substitution, acidity plays an important part; ionization of a phenol yields the  $\text{—O}^-$  group, which, because of its full-fledged negative charge, is even more strongly electron-releasing than the  $\text{—OH}$  group.

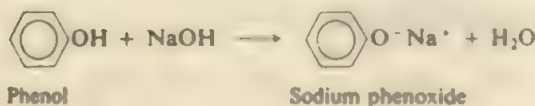
Phenols undergo not only those electrophilic substitution reactions that are typical of most aromatic compounds, but also many others that are possible only because of the unusual reactivity of the ring. We shall have time to take up only a few of these reactions.

### REACTIONS OF PHENOLS

1. **Acidity. Salt formation.** Discussed in Secs. 24.3 and 24.9.



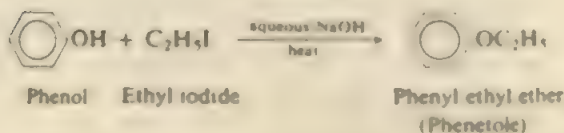
*Example:*



2. **Ether formation. Williamson synthesis.** Discussed in Secs. 12.5 and 24.10

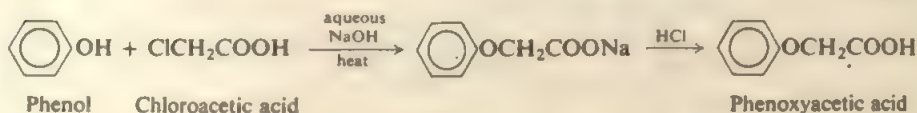
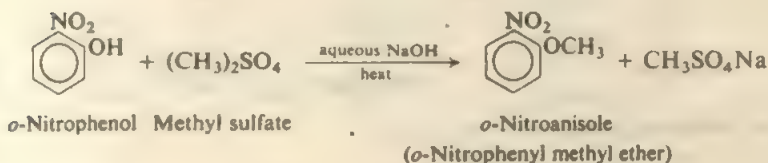
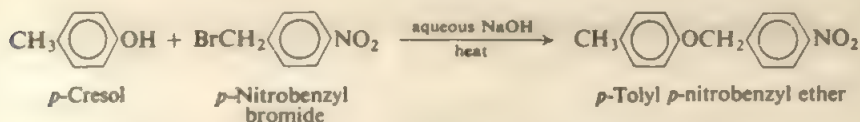


*Examples:*

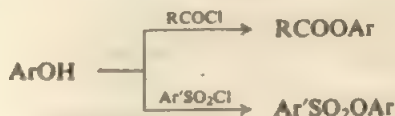




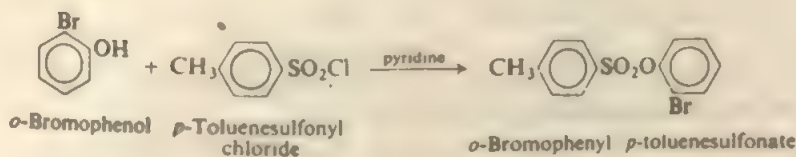
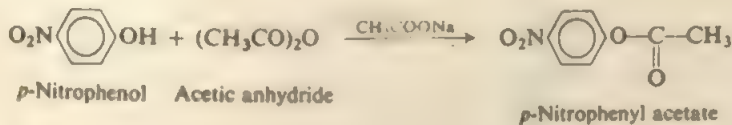
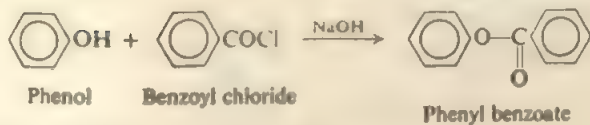
CONT.



3. Ester formation. Discussed in Secs. 20.8, 20.15, and 24.11.



Examples:



4. Ring substitution. Discussed in Sec. 24.12.

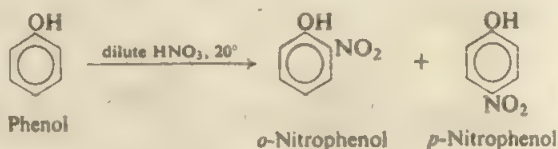
$\left. \begin{array}{l} -\text{OH} \\ -\text{O} \end{array} \right\}$     Activate powerfully, and direct *ortho,para*  
    in electrophilic aromatic substitution.  
 $-\text{OR:}$     Less powerful activator than  $-\text{OH}$ .

CONT.

CONT.

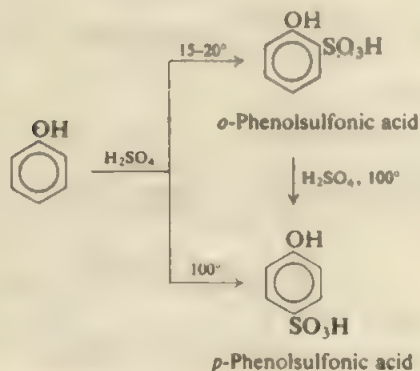
## (a) Nitration. Discussed in Sec. 24.12.

Example:



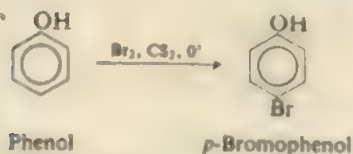
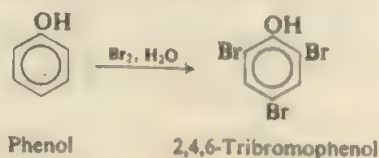
## (b) Sulfonation. Discussed in Sec. 24.12.

Example:



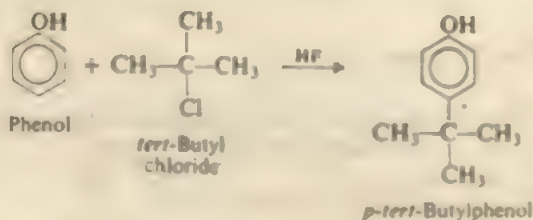
## (c) Halogenation. Discussed in Sec. 24.12.

Examples:



## (d) Friedel-Crafts alkylation. Discussed in Sec. 24.12

Example:

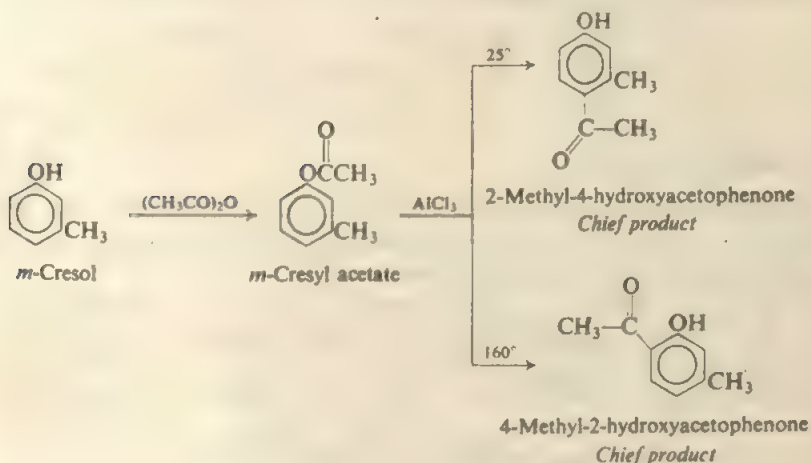
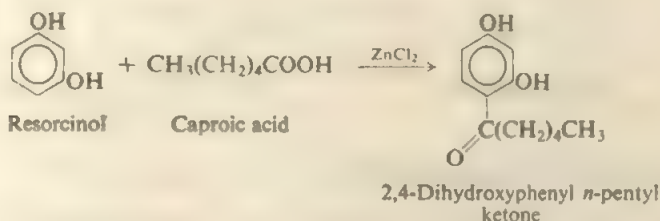


CONT.

CONT.

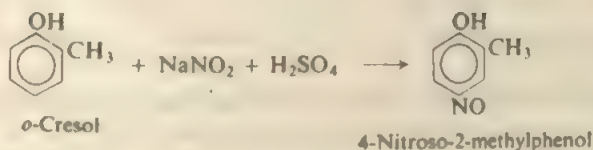
(e) **Friedel-Crafts acylation. Fries rearrangement.** Discussed in Secs. 24.11 and 24.12.

*Examples:*



(f) **Nitrosation.** Discussed in Sec. 24.12.

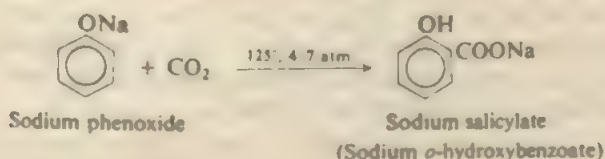
*Example:*



(g) **Coupling with diazonium salts.** Discussed in Secs. 23.19 and 24.12.

(h) **Carbonation. Kolbe reaction.** Discussed in Sec. 24.13.

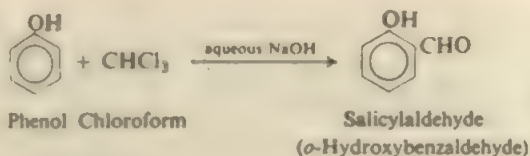
*Example:*



CONT.

(i) Aldehyde formation. Reimer-Tiemann reaction. Discussed in Sec. 24.14.

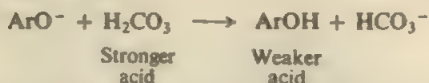
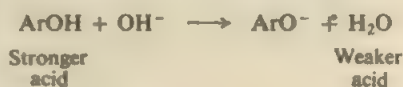
Example:



(j) Reaction with formaldehyde. Discussed in Sec. 24.15. ■

## 24.9 Acidity of phenols

Phenols are converted into their salts by aqueous hydroxides, but not by aqueous bicarbonates. The salts are converted into the free phenols by aqueous mineral acids, carboxylic acids, or carbonic acid.

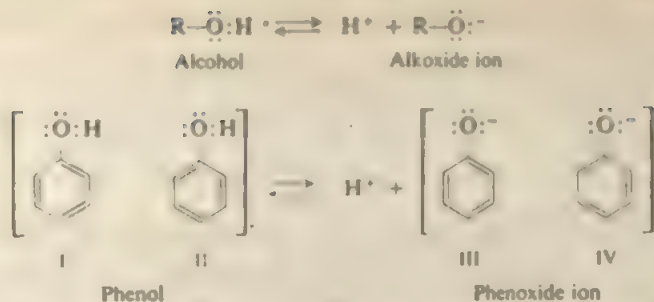


Phenols must therefore be considerably stronger acids than water, but considerably weaker acids than the carboxylic acids. Table 24.1 (p. 958) shows that this is indeed so: most phenols have  $K_a$ 's of about  $10^{-10}$ , whereas carboxylic acids have  $K_a$ 's of about  $10^{-5}$ .

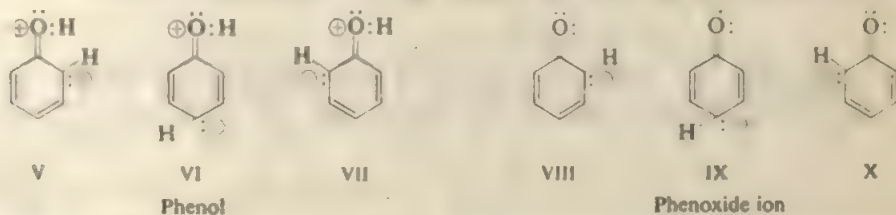
Although weaker than carboxylic acids, phenols are tremendously more acidic than alcohols, which have  $K_a$ 's in the neighborhood of  $10^{-16}$  to  $10^{-18}$ . How does it happen that an —OH attached to an aromatic ring is so much more acidic than an —OH attached to an alkyl group? The answer is to be found in an examination of the structures involved. As usual we shall assume that differences in acidity are due to differences in stabilities of reactants and products (Sec. 19.12).

Let us examine the structures of reactants and products in the ionization of an alcohol and of phenol. We see that the alcohol and the alkoxide ion are each represented satisfactorily by a single structure. Phenol and the phenoxide ion contain a benzene ring and therefore must be hybrids of the Kekulé structures I and II, and III and IV. This resonance presumably stabilizes both molecule and ion to the same extent. It lowers the energy content of each by the same number of kcal/mol, and hence does not affect the *difference* in their energy contents. If there were no other factors involved, then, we might expect the acidity of a phenol to be about the same as the acidity of an alcohol.





However, there are additional structures to be considered. Being basic, oxygen can share more than a pair of electrons with the ring; this is indicated by contribution from structures V–VII for phenol, and VIII–X for the phenoxide ion.



Now, are these two sets of structures equally important? Structures V–VII for phenol carry both positive and negative charges; structures VIII–X for phenoxide ion carry only a negative charge. Since energy must be supplied to separate opposite charges, the structures for the phenol should contain more energy and hence be less stable than the structures for phenoxide ion. (We have already encountered the effect of *separation of charge* on stability in Sec. 19.12.) The net effect of resonance is therefore to stabilize the phenoxide ion to a greater extent than the phenol, and thus to shift the equilibrium toward ionization and make  $K_a$  larger than for an alcohol (Fig. 24.1).

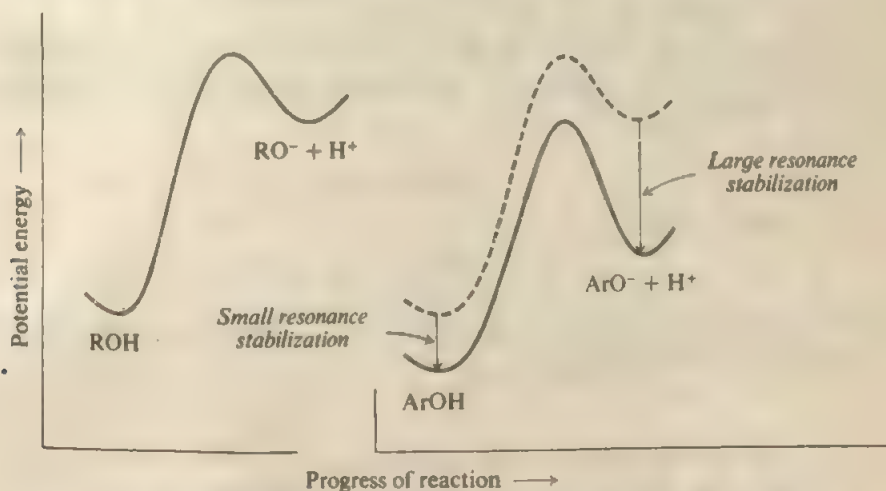


Figure 24.1. Molecular structure and position of equilibrium. Phenol yields resonance-stabilized anion, is stronger acid than alcohol. (Plots aligned with each other for easy comparison.)

We have seen (Sec. 23.3) that aromatic amines are weaker bases than aliphatic amines, since resonance stabilizes the free amine to a greater extent than it does the ion. Here we have exactly the opposite situation, phenols being stronger acids than their aliphatic counterparts, the alcohols, because resonance stabilizes the ion to a greater extent than it does the free phenol. (Actually, of course, resonance with the ring exerts the *same* effect in both cases; it stabilizes—and thus weakens—the base: amine or phenoxide ion.)

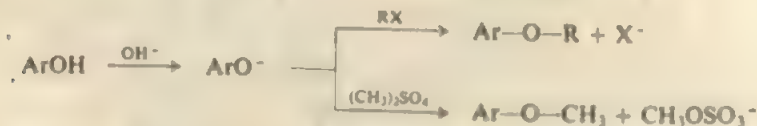
In Table 24.1 (p. 958) we see that electron-attracting substituents like  $-X$  or  $-\text{NO}_2$  increase the acidity of phenols, and electron-releasing substituents like  $-\text{CH}_3$  decrease acidity. Thus substituents affect acidity of phenols in the same way that they affect acidity of carboxylic acids (Sec. 19.14); it is, of course, opposite to the way these groups affect basicity of amines (Sec. 23.4). Electron-attracting substituents tend to disperse the negative charge of the phenoxide ion, whereas electron-releasing substituents tend to intensify the charge.

**Problem 24.9** How do you account for the fact that, unlike most phenols, 2,4-dinitrophenol and 2,4,6-trinitrophenol are soluble in aqueous sodium bicarbonate?

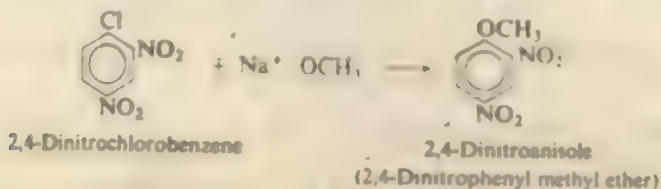
We can see that a group attached to an aromatic ring affects *position of equilibrium* in reversible reactions in the same way that it affects *rate* in irreversible reactions. An electron-releasing group favors reactions in which the ring becomes more positive, as in electrophilic substitution or in the conversion of an amine into its salt. An electron-withdrawing group favors reactions in which the ring becomes more negative, as in nucleophilic substitution (Chap. 25) or in the conversion of a phenol or an acid into its salt.

## 24.10 Formation of ethers. Williamson synthesis

As already mentioned (Sec. 12.5), phenols are converted into ethers by reaction in alkaline solution with alkyl halides; methyl ethers can also be prepared by reaction with methyl sulfate. In alkaline solutions a phenol exists as the phenoxide ion which, acting as a nucleophilic reagent, attacks the halide (or the sulfate) and displaces halide ion (or sulfate ion).



Certain ethers can be prepared by the reaction of unusually active aryl halides with sodium alkoxides. For example:



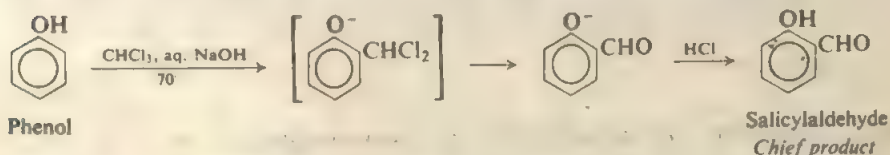
carried out readily by steam distillation, the *o*-isomer being the more volatile. (Why?)

It seems likely that  $\text{CO}_2$  attaches itself initially to phenoxide oxygen rather than to the ring. In any case, the final product almost certainly results from electrophilic attack by electron-deficient carbon on the highly reactive ring.

**Problem 24.18** *Aspirin* is acetylsalicylic acid (*o*-acetoxybenzoic acid,  $\text{o-CH}_3\text{COOC}_6\text{H}_4\text{COOH}$ ); *oil of wintergreen* is the ester, methyl salicylate. Outline the synthesis of these two compounds from phenol.

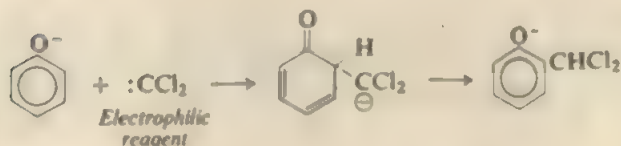
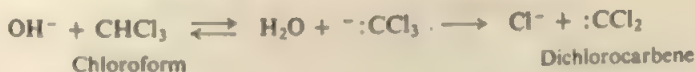
## 24.14 Reimer-Tiemann reaction. Synthesis of phenolic aldehydes. Dichlorocarbene

Treatment of a phenol with chloroform and aqueous hydroxide introduces an aldehyde group,  $-\text{CHO}$ , into the aromatic ring, generally *ortho* to the  $-\text{OH}$ . This reaction is known as the **Reimer-Tiemann reaction**. For example:



A substituted benzal chloride is initially formed, but is hydrolyzed by the alkaline reaction medium.

The Reimer-Tiemann reaction involves electrophilic substitution on the highly reactive phenoxide ring. The electrophilic reagent is dichlorocarbene,  $:\text{CCl}_2$ , generated from chloroform by the action of base. Although electrically neutral, dichlorocarbene contains a carbon atom with only a sextet of electrons and hence is strongly electrophilic.



We encountered dichlorocarbene earlier (Sec. 8.26) as a species adding to carbon-carbon double bonds. There, as here, it is considered to be formed from chloroform by the action of a strong base.

[illegible]

The Ohio State University

Question 24 19. What is the following fact have on the market

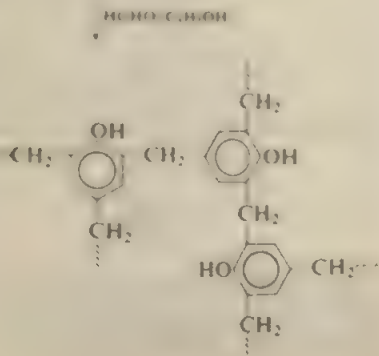
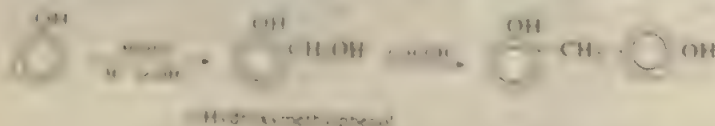
[illegible]

the same way, the  $\mathbb{Z}_2$ -homomorphism  $\phi$  is not a  $\mathbb{Z}_2$ -homomorphism of  $(H, \cdot)$  into  $(H, \cdot)$ . The same is true for the homomorphism  $\psi$ . In other words, there is no  $\mathbb{Z}_2$ -homomorphism of  $(H, \cdot)$  into  $(H, \cdot)$  which is not the identity map.

1,4-dichloro-2-methyl-2-butene reacts with acetone to give 1,1,1-trichloro-2-methyl-2-butene.

## 24.15 Reaction with formaldehyde. Phenol-formaldehyde resins

Among the class of the synthetic polymers, and still extremely important are those resulting from reaction between phenols and formaldehyde (the phenol-formaldehyde resins, Bakelite and related polymers). When phenol is treated with formaldehyde in the presence of base or acid, there is obtained a high molecular weight substance in which many phenol rings are held together by  $-CH_2-$  groups.







## 24.17 Spectroscopic analysis of phenols

**Infrared.** As can be seen in Fig. 24.2, phenols show a strong, broad band due to O—H stretching in the same region,  $3200\text{--}3600\text{ cm}^{-1}$ , as alcohols.

**O—H stretching, strong, broad**

Phenols (or alcohols),  $3200\text{--}3600\text{ cm}^{-1}$

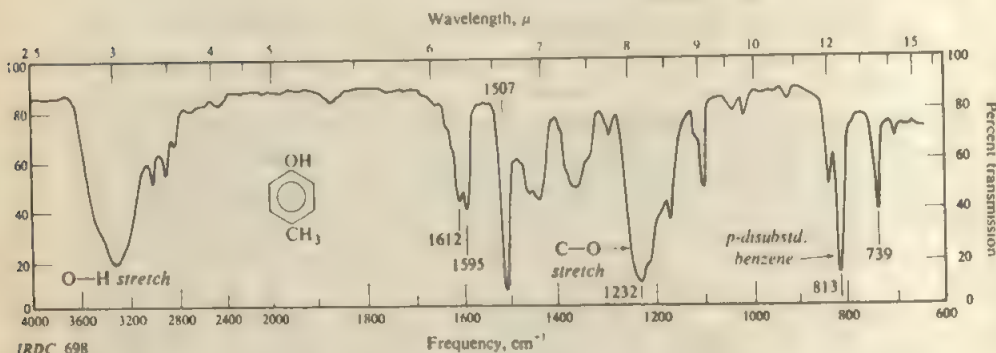


Figure 24.2. Infrared spectrum of *p*-cresol.

Phenols differ from alcohols, however, in the position of the C—O stretching band (compare Sec. 17.6).

**C—O stretching, strong, broad**

Phenols, about  $1230\text{ cm}^{-1}$       Alcohols,  $1050\text{--}1200\text{ cm}^{-1}$

Phenolic ethers do not, of course, show the O—H band, but do show C—O stretching.

**C—O stretching, strong, broad**

Aryl and vinyl ethers,  $1200\text{--}1275\text{ cm}^{-1}$ , and weaker,  $1020\text{--}1075\text{ cm}^{-1}$

Alkyl ethers,  $1060\text{--}1150\text{ cm}^{-1}$

(For a comparison of certain oxygen compounds, see Table 20.3, p. 847.)

**NMR.** Absorption by the O—H proton of a phenol, like that of an alcohol (Sec. 17.6), is affected by the degree of hydrogen bonding, and hence by the temperature, concentration, and nature of the solvent. The signal may appear anywhere in the range  $\delta\ 4\text{--}7$ , or, if there is intramolecular hydrogen bonding, still lower:  $\delta\ 6\text{--}12$ .

## PROBLEMS

1. Write structural formulas for:

(a) 2,4-dinitrophenol

(b) *m*-cresol

(c) hydroquinone

(d) resorcinol

(e) 4-*n*-hexylresorcinol

(f) catechol

(g) picric acid

(h) phenyl acetate

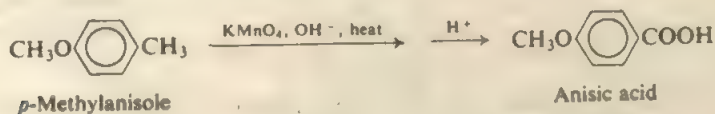
(i) anisole

(j) salicylic acid

(k) ethyl salicylate

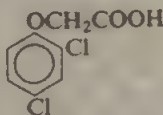
While alkoxy groups are activating and *ortho,para*-directing in electrophilic aromatic substitution, they are considerably less so than the  $\text{—OH}$  group. As a result, ethers do not generally undergo those reactions (Secs. 24.12–24.14) which require the especially high reactivity of phenols: coupling, Kolbe reaction, Reimer-Tiemann reaction, etc. This difference in reactivity is probably due to the fact that, unlike a phenol, an ether cannot ionize to form the extremely reactive phenoxide ion.

As a consequence of the lower reactivity of the ring, an aromatic ether is less sensitive to oxidation than a phenol. For example:



We have already discussed the cleavage of ethers by acids (Sec. 12.7). Cleavage of methyl aryl ethers by concentrated hydriodic acid is the basis of an important analytical procedure (MeI is formed and measured).

**Problem 24.10** 2,4-Dichlorophenoxyacetic acid is the important weed-killer known as 2,4-D. Outline the synthesis of this compound starting from benzene or toluene and acetic acid.



2,4-Dichlorophenoxyacetic acid  
(2,4-D)

**Problem 24.11** The *n*-propyl ether of 2-amino-4-nitrophenol is one of the sweetest compounds ever prepared, being about 5000 times as sweet as the common sugar sucrose. It can be made from the dinitro compound by reduction with ammonium bisulfide. Outline the synthesis of this material starting from benzene or toluene and any aliphatic reagents.

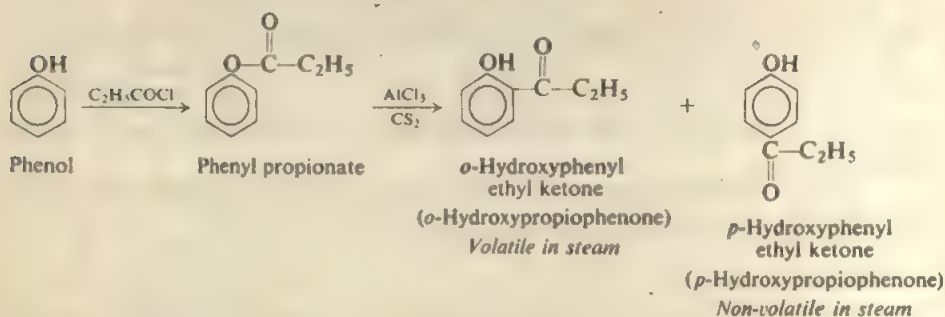
## 24.11 Ester formation. Fries rearrangement

Phenols are usually converted into their esters by the action of acids, acid chlorides, or anhydrides as discussed in Secs. 19.16, 20.8, and 20.15.

**Problem 24.12** Predict the products of the reaction between phenyl benzoate and one mole of bromine in the presence of iron.

When esters of phenols are heated with aluminum chloride, the acyl group migrates from the phenolic oxygen to an *ortho* or *para* position of the ring, thus yielding a ketone. This reaction, called the *Fries rearrangement*, is often used instead

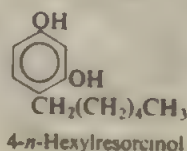
of direct acylation for the synthesis of phenolic ketones. For example:



In at least some cases, rearrangement appears to involve generation of an acylium ion,  $\text{RCO}^+$ , which then attacks the ring as in ordinary Friedel-Crafts acylation.

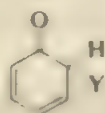
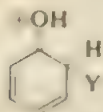
**Problem 24.13** A mixture of *o*- and *p*-isomers obtained by the Fries rearrangement can often be separated by steam distillation, only the *o*-isomer distilling. How do you account for this?

**Problem 24.14** 4-*n*-Hexylresorcinol is used in certain antiseptics. Outline its preparation starting with resorcinol and any aliphatic reagents.



## 24.12 Ring substitution

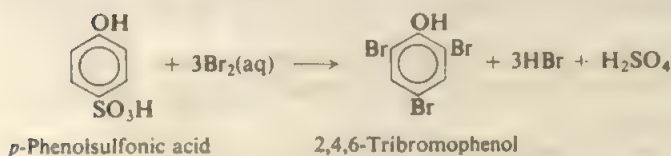
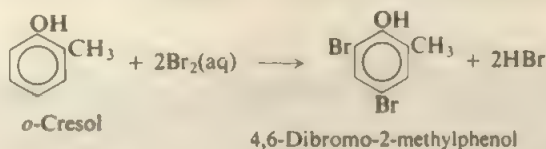
Like the amino group, the phenolic group powerfully activates aromatic rings toward electrophilic substitution, and in essentially the same way. The intermediates are hardly carbocations at all, but rather oxonium ions (like I and II), in which every atom (except hydrogen) has a complete octet of electrons; they are formed tremendously faster than the carbocations derived from benzene itself. Attack on a phenoxide ion yields an even more stable—and even more rapidly formed—intermediate, an unsaturated ketone (like III and IV).



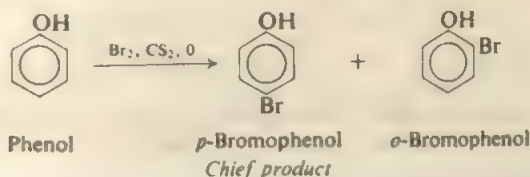
With phenols, as with amines, special precautions must often be taken to prevent polysubstitution and oxidation.



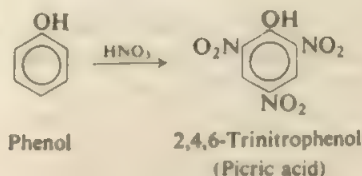
Treatment of phenols with aqueous solutions of bromine results in replacement of every hydrogen *ortho* or *para* to the OH group, and may even cause displacement of certain other groups. For example:



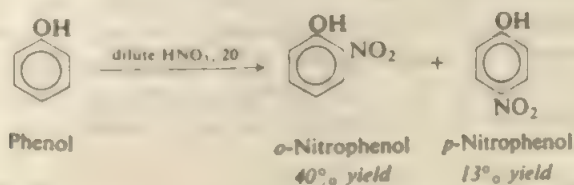
If halogenation is carried out in a solvent of low polarity, such as chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, or carbon disulfide, reaction can be limited to monohalogenation. For example:



Phenol is converted by concentrated nitric acid into 2,4,6-trinitrophenol (*picric acid*), but the nitration is accompanied by considerable oxidation. To obtain



mononitrophenols, it is necessary to use dilute nitric acid at a low temperature; even then the yield is poor. (The isomeric products are readily separated by steam distillation. *Why?*)



**Problem 24.15** Picric acid can be prepared by treatment of 2,4-phenoldisulfonic acid with nitric acid. (a) Show in detail the mechanism by which this happens. (b) What advantage does this method of synthesis have over the direct nitration of phenol?

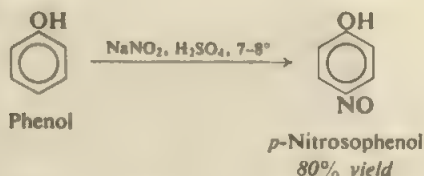
Alkylphenols can be prepared by Friedel-Crafts alkylation of phenols, but the yields are often poor.

Although phenolic ketones can be made by direct acylation of phenols, they are more often prepared in two steps by means of the Fries rearrangement (Sec. 24.11).

**Problem 24.16** The product of sulfonation of phenol depends upon the temperature of reaction: chiefly *ortho* at 15–20°, chiefly *para* at 100°. Once formed, *o*-phenolsulfonic acid is converted into the *p*-isomer by sulfuric acid at 100°. How do you account for these facts? (*Hint*: See Sec. 9.27.)

In addition, phenols undergo a number of other reactions that also involve electrophilic substitution, and that are possible only because of the especially high reactivity of the ring.

Nitrous acid converts phenols into nitrosophenols:



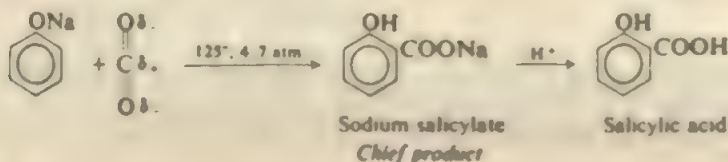
Phenols are one of the few classes of compounds reactive enough to undergo attack by the weakly electrophilic nitrosonium ion,  $^+\text{NO}$ .

**Problem 24.17** The  $-\text{NO}$  group is readily oxidized to the  $-\text{NO}_2$  group by nitric acid. Suggest a better way to synthesize *p*-nitrophenol than the one given earlier in this section.

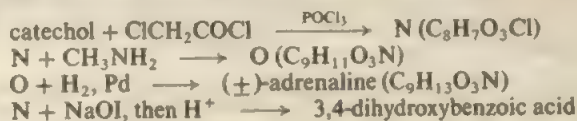
As we have seen, the ring of a phenol is reactive enough to undergo attack by diazonium salts, with the formation of azo compounds. This reaction is discussed in detail in Sec. 23.19.

### 24.13 Kolbe reaction. Synthesis of phenolic acids

Treatment of the salt of a phenol with carbon dioxide brings about substitution of the carboxyl group,  $-\text{COOH}$ , for hydrogen of the ring. This reaction is known as the **Kolbe reaction**, its most important application is in the conversion of phenol itself into *o*-hydroxybenzoic acid, known as *salicylic acid*. Although some *p*-hydroxybenzoic acid is formed as well, the separation of the two isomers can be

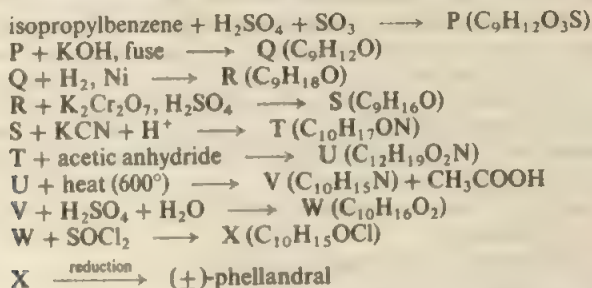


22. The adrenal hormone (–)-*adrenaline* was the first hormone isolated and the first synthesized. Its structure was proved by the following synthesis:



What is the structure of adrenaline?

23. (–)-*Phellandral*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}$ , is a terpene found in eucalyptus oils. It is oxidized by Tollens' reagent to (–)-*phellandric acid*,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_2$ , which readily absorbs only one mole of hydrogen, yielding dihydropHELLandric acid,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}_2$ . (±)-*Phellandral* has been synthesized as follows:

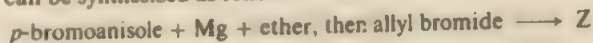


(a) What is the most likely structure of phellandral? (b) Why is synthetic phellandral optically inactive? At what stage in the synthesis does inactivity of this sort first appear? (c) DihydropHELLandric acid is actually a mixture of two optically inactive isomers. Give the structures of these isomers and account for their optical inactivity.

24. Compound Y,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_8\text{O}$ , is insoluble in water, dilute HCl, and aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ ; it dissolves in dilute NaOH. When Y is treated with bromine water it is converted rapidly into a compound of formula  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_5\text{OBr}_3$ . What is the structure of Y?

25. Two isomeric compounds, Z and AA, are isolated from oil of bay leaf; both are found to have the formula  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{12}\text{O}$ . Both are insoluble in water, dilute acid, and dilute base. Both give positive tests with dilute  $\text{KMnO}_4$  and  $\text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4$ . Upon vigorous oxidation, both yield anisic acid,  $p\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4\text{COOH}$ .

- (a) At this point what structures are possible for Z and AA?  
 (b) Catalytic hydrogenation converts Z and AA into the same compound,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{14}\text{O}$ . Now what structures are possible for Z and AA?  
 (c) Describe chemical procedures (other than synthesis) by which you could assign structures to Z and AA.  
 (d) Compound Z can be synthesized as follows:



What is the structure of Z?

- (e) Z is converted into AA when heated strongly with concentrated base. What is the most likely structure for AA?  
 (f) Suggest a synthetic sequence starting with *p*-bromoanisole that would independently confirm the structure assigned to AA.

26. Compound BB ( $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_1$ ) was insoluble in water, dilute HCl, and dilute aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ ; it was soluble in dilute NaOH. A solution of BB in dilute NaOH was boiled, and the distillate was collected in a solution of NaOI, where a yellow precipitate formed.

The alkaline residue in the distillation flask was acidified with dilute  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ; a solid, CC, precipitated. When this mixture was boiled, CC steam-distilled and was collected. CC was found to have the formula  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_6\text{O}_3$ ; it dissolved in aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  with evolution of a gas.

(a) Give structures and names for BB and CC. (b) Write complete equations for all the above reactions.



27. *Chavibetol*,  $C_{10}H_{12}O_2$ , is found in betel-nut leaves. It is soluble in aqueous NaOH but not in aqueous  $NaHCO_3$ .

Treatment of chavibetol (a) with methyl sulfate and aqueous NaOH gives compound DD,  $C_{11}H_{14}O_2$ ; (b) with hot hydriodic acid gives methyl iodide; (c) with hot concentrated base gives compound EE,  $C_{10}H_{12}O_2$ .

Compound DD is insoluble in aqueous NaOH, and readily decolorizes dilute  $KMnO_4$  and  $Br_2/CCl_4$ . Treatment of DD with hot concentrated base gives FF,  $C_{11}H_{14}O_2$ .

Ozonolysis of EE gives a compound that is isomeric with vanillin (p. 961).

Ozonolysis of FF gives a compound that is identical with the one obtained from the treatment of vanillin with methyl sulfate.

What is the structure of chavibetol?

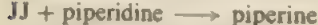
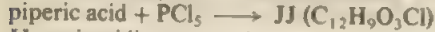
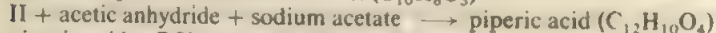
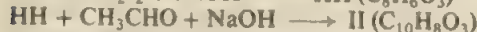
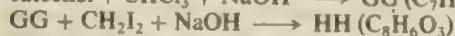
28. *Piperine*,  $C_{17}H_{19}O_3N$ , is an alkaloid found in black pepper. It is insoluble in water, dilute acid, and dilute base. When heated with aqueous alkali, it yields *piperic acid*,  $C_{12}H_{10}O_4$ , and the cyclic secondary amine *piperidine* (see Sec. 35.12),  $C_5H_{11}N$ .

Piperic acid is insoluble in water, but soluble in aqueous NaOH and aqueous  $NaHCO_3$ . Titration gives an equivalent weight of  $215 \pm 6$ . It reacts readily with  $Br_2/CCl_4$ , without evolution of HBr, to yield a compound of formula  $C_{12}H_{10}O_4Br_4$ . Careful oxidation of piperic acid yields *piperonylic acid*,  $C_8H_6O_4$ , and *tartaric acid*,  $HOOCCHOHCHOHCOOH$ .

When piperonylic acid is heated with aqueous HCl at  $200^\circ$  it yields formaldehyde and *protocatechuic acid*, 3,4-dihydroxybenzoic acid.

(a) What kind of compound is piperine? (b) What is the structure of piperonylic acid? Of piperic acid? Of piperine?

(c) Does the following synthesis confirm your structure?

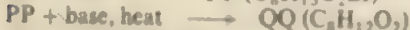
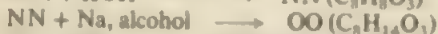
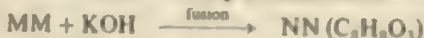
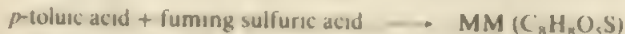


29. *Hordinene*,  $C_{10}H_{15}ON$ , is an alkaloid found in germinating barley. It is soluble in dilute HCl and in dilute NaOH, it reprecipitates from the alkaline solution when  $CO_2$  is bubbled in. It reacts with benzenesulfonyl chloride to yield a product KK that is soluble in dilute acids.

When hordinene is treated with methyl sulfate and base, a product, LL, is formed. When LL is oxidized by alkaline  $KMnO_4$ , there is obtained anisic acid,  $p\text{-CH}_3OC_6H_4COOH$ . When LL is heated strongly there is obtained *p*-methoxystyrene.

(a) What structure or structures are consistent with this evidence? (b) Outline a synthesis or syntheses that would prove the structure of hordinene.

30. The structure of the terpene  $\alpha$ -terpineol (found in oils of cardamom and marjoram) was proved in part by the following synthesis:



What is the most likely structure for  $\alpha$ -terpineol?

31. *Coniferyl alcohol*,  $C_{10}H_{12}O_2$ , is obtained from the sap of conifers. It is soluble in aqueous NaOH but not in aqueous  $NaHCO_3$ .

Treatment of coniferyl alcohol (a) with benzoyl chloride and pyridine gives compound SS  $C_{20}H_{20}O_3$ ; (b) with cold HBr gives  $C_{10}H_{14}O_2Br$ ; (c) with hot hydriodic acid gives a volatile compound identified as methyl iodide; (d) with methyl iodide and aqueous base gives compound TT,  $C_{11}H_{14}O_3$ .



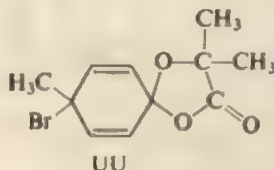
Both SS and TT are insoluble in dilute NaOH, and rapidly decolorize dilute  $\text{KMnO}_4$  and  $\text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4$ .

Ozonolysis of coniferyl alcohol gives vanillin.

What is the structure of coniferyl alcohol?

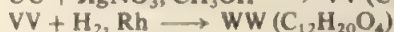
Write equations for all the above reactions.

32. When  $\alpha$ -(*p*-tolylloxy)isobutyric acid (prepared from *p*-cresol) is treated with  $\text{Br}_2$ , there is obtained UU.



(a) To what class of compounds does UU belong? Suggest a mechanism for its formation.

(b) Give structural formulas for compounds VV, WW, and XX.



(c) The reactions outlined in (b) can be varied. Of what general synthetic utility do you think this general process might be?

33. Compounds AAA FFF are phenols or related compounds whose structures are given in Problem 21, p. 766, or Sec. 24.4. Assign a structure to each one on the basis of infrared and/or NMR spectra shown as follows.

AAA, BBB, and CCC: infrared spectra in Fig. 24.3 (p. 988)

NMR spectra in Fig. 24.4 (p. 989)

DDD: NMR spectrum in Fig. 24.5 (p. 990)

EEE and FFF: infrared spectra in Fig. 24.6 (p. 990)

(Hint: After you have worked out some of the structures, compare infrared spectra.)

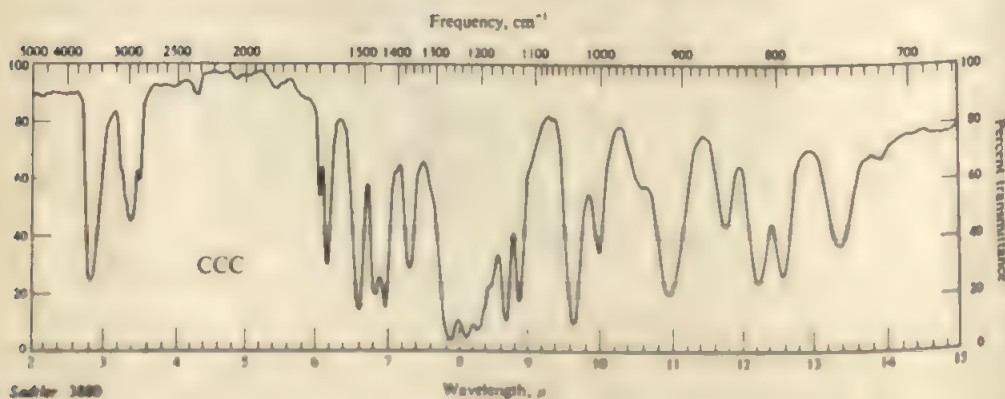
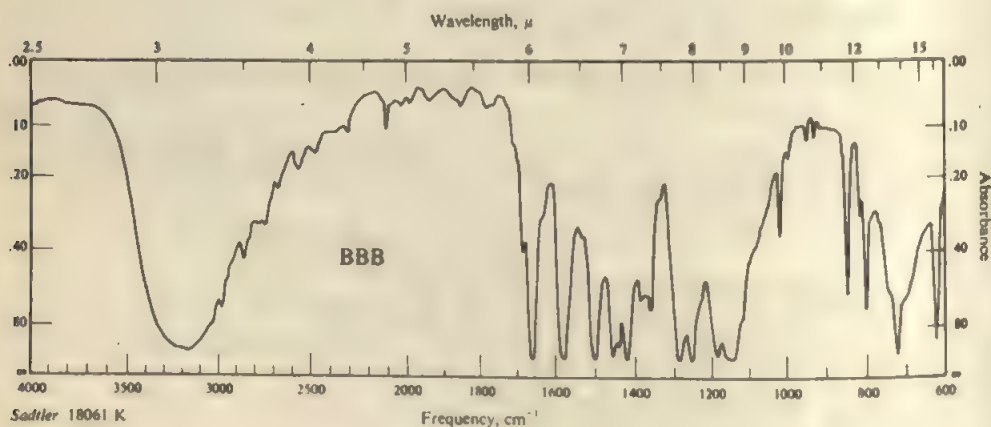
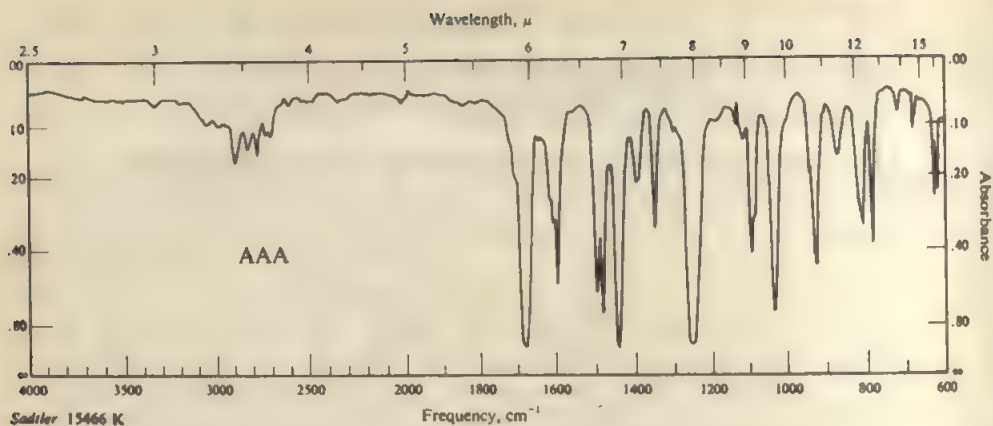


Figure 24.3. Infrared spectra for Problem 33, p. 987.

2. Give the reagents and any critical conditions necessary to prepare phenol from:

- |             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| (a) aniline | (c) chlorobenzene             |
| (b) benzene | (d) cumene (isopropylbenzene) |

3. Outline the steps in a possible industrial synthesis of:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) catechol from <i>guaiacol</i> , $o$ -CH <sub>3</sub> OC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> OH, found in beech-wood tar | (d) picric acid from chlorobenzene   |
| (b) catechol from phenol  | (e) <i>veratrole</i> , $o$ -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> (OCH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> , from catechol |
| (c) resorcinol from benzene   |  |

4. Outline a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following compounds from benzene and/or toluene, using any needed aliphatic and inorganic reagents.

- |                            |                                     |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (a)–(c) the three cresols  | (j) 5-bromo-2-methylphenol          |
| (d) <i>p</i> -iodophenol   | (k) 2,4-dinitrophenol               |
| (e) <i>m</i> -bromophenol  | (l) <i>p</i> -isopropylphenol       |
| (f) <i>o</i> -bromophenol  | (m) 2,6-dibromo-4-isopropylphenol   |
| (g) 3-bromo-4-methylphenol | (n) 2-hydroxy-5-methylbenzaldehyde  |
| (h) 2-bromo-4-methylphenol | (o) <i>o</i> -methoxybenzyl alcohol |
| (i) 2-bromo-5-methylphenol |                                     |

5. Give structures and names of the principal organic products of the reaction (if any) of *o*-cresol with:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) aqueous NaOH                                | (m) product (i) + AlCl <sub>3</sub>                           |
| (b) aqueous NaHCO <sub>3</sub>                  | (n) thionyl chloride  |
| (c) hot conc. HBr                               | (o) ferric chloride solution                                  |
| (d) methyl sulfate, aqueous NaOH                | (p) H <sub>2</sub> , Ni, 200°, 20 atm.                        |
| (e) benzyl bromide, aqueous NaOH                | (q) cold dilute HNO <sub>3</sub>                              |
| (f) bromobenzene, aqueous NaOH                  | (r) H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> , 15°                      |
| (g) 2,4-dinitrochlorobenzene, aqueous NaOH      | (s) H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> , 100°                     |
| (h) acetic acid, H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> | (t) bromine water   |
| (i) acetic anhydride                            | (u) Br <sub>2</sub> , CS <sub>2</sub>                         |
| (j) phthalic anhydride                          | (v) NaNO <sub>2</sub> , dilute H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> |
| (k) <i>p</i> -nitrobenzoyl chloride, pyridine   | (w) product (v) + HNO <sub>3</sub>                            |
| (l) benzenesulfonyl chloride, aqueous NaOH      | (x) <i>p</i> -nitrobenzenediazonium chloride                  |
|   | (y) CO <sub>2</sub> , NaOH, 125°, 5 atm.                      |
|   | (z) CHCl <sub>3</sub> , aqueous NaOH, 70°                     |

6. Answer Problem 5 for anisole.

7. Answer Problem 5, parts (a) through (o), for benzyl alcohol.

8. Without referring to tables, arrange the compounds of each set in order of acidity:

- (a) benzenesulfonic acid, benzoic acid, benzyl alcohol, phenol  
 (b) carbonic acid, phenol, sulfuric acid, water  
 (c) *m*-bromophenol, *m*-cresol, *m*-nitrophenol, phenol  
 (d) *p*-chlorophenol, 2,4-dichlorophenol, 2,4,6-trichlorophenol

9. Describe simple chemical tests that would serve to distinguish between:

- (a) phenol and *o*-xylene  
 (b) *p*-ethylphenol, *p*-methylanisole, and *p*-methylbenzyl alcohol  
 (c) 2,5-dimethylphenol, phenyl benzoate, *m*-toluic acid  
 (d) anisole and *o*-toluidine  
 (e) acetylsalicylic acid, ethyl acetylsalicylate, ethyl salicylate, and salicylic acid  
 (f) *m*-dinitrobenzene, *m*-nitroaniline, *m*-nitrobenzoic acid, and *m*-nitrophenol

Tell exactly what you would do and see.

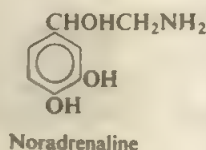
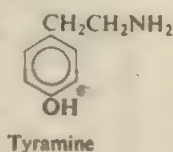
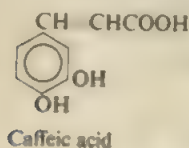
10. Describe simple chemical methods for the separation of the compounds of Problem 9, parts (a), (c), (d), and (f), recovering each component in essentially pure form.

11. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following compounds starting from the aromatic source given, and using any needed aliphatic and inorganic reagents:

- 2,4-diaminophenol (Amidol, used as a photographic developer) from chlorobenzene
- 4-amino-1,2-dimethoxybenzene from catechol
- 2-nitro-1,3-dihydroxybenzene from resorcinol (*Hint*: See Problem 15.7, p. 606.)
- 2,4,6-trimethylphenol from mesitylene
- p*-*tert*-butylphenol from phenol
- 4-(*p*-hydroxyphenyl)-2,2,4-trimethylpentane from phenol
- 2-phenoxy-1-bromoethane from phenol (*Hint*: Together with  $C_6H_5OCH_2CH_2OC_6H_5$ )
- phenyl vinyl ether from phenol
- What will phenyl vinyl ether give when heated with acid?
- 2,6-dinitro-4-*tert*-butyl-3-methylanisole (synthetic musk) from *m*-cresol
- 5-methyl-1,3-dihydroxybenzene (*oreinol*, the parent compound of the litmus dyes) from toluene

12. Outline a possible synthesis of each of the following from benzene, toluene, or any of the natural products shown in Sec. 24.4, using any other needed reagents.

- caffeic acid, from coffee beans
- tyramine, found in ergot (*Hint*: See Problem 21.22a, p. 873.)
- noradrenaline, an adrenal hormone



13. The reaction between benzyl chloride and sodium phenoxide follows second-order kinetics in a variety of solvents; the nature of the products, however, varies considerably.

- In dimethylformamide, dioxane, or tetrahydrofuran, reaction yields only benzyl phenyl ether. Show in detail the mechanism of this reaction. To what general class does it belong?
- In aqueous solution, the yield of ether is cut in half, and there is obtained, in addition, *o*- and *p*-benzylphenol. Show in detail the mechanism by which the latter products are formed. To what general class (or classes) does the reaction belong? (c) What is a possible explanation for the difference between (a) and (b)? (d) In methanol or ethanol, reaction occurs as in (a); in liquid phenol or 2,2,2-trifluoroethanol, reaction is as in (b). How can you account for these differences?

14. When *phloroglucinol*, 1,3,5-trihydroxybenzene, is dissolved in concentrated  $HClO_4$ , its NMR spectrum shows two peaks of equal area at  $\delta$  6.12 and  $\delta$  4.15. Similar solutions of 1,3,5-trimethoxybenzene and 1,3,5-triethoxybenzene show similar NMR peaks. On dilution, the original compounds are recovered unchanged. Solutions of these compounds in  $D_2SO_4$  also show these peaks, but on standing the peaks gradually disappear.

How do you account for these observations? What is formed in the acidic solutions? What would you expect to recover from the solution of 1,3,5-trimethoxybenzene in  $D_2SO_4$ ?

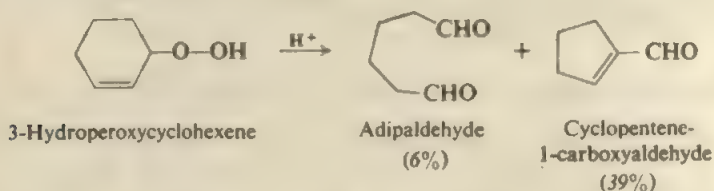
15. Treatment of triarylcarbinols,  $Ar_3COH$ , with acidic hydrogen peroxide yields a 50:50 mixture of ketone,  $ArCOAr$ , and phenol,  $ArOH$ . (a) Show all steps in a likely mechanism for this reaction. (b) Predict the major products obtained from *p*-methoxytriphenylcarbinol,  $p-CH_3OC_6H_4(C_6H_5)_2COH$ . From *p*-chlorotriphenylcarbinol.

16. (a) Predict the product of the reaction of phenol with ethylene oxide. (b) Account in detail for the fact that reaction is catalyzed by either acid or base.



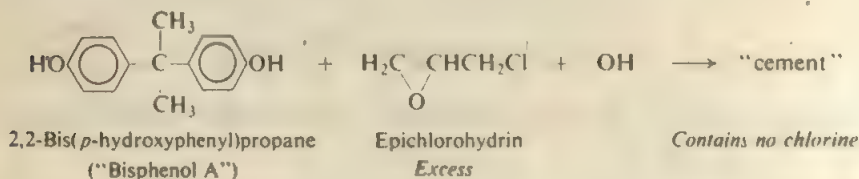


19. (a) Show all steps in the mechanisms probably involved in the following transformation. (Hint: Don't forget Sec. 21.5.)



(b) An important difference in migratory aptitude is illustrated here. What is it?

20. To use an epoxy cement, one mixes the fluid "cement" with the "hardener," applies the mixture to the surfaces being glued together, brings them into contact, and waits for hardening to occur. The fluid cement is a low-molecular-weight polymer prepared by the following reaction:



The hardener can be any of a number of things:  $NH_2CH_2CH_2NHCH_2CH_2NH_2$ , diethylenetriamine, for example.

(a) What is the structure of the fluid cement, and how is it formed? What is the purpose of using excess epichlorohydrin? (b) What happens during hardening? What is the structure of the final epoxy resin? (c) Suggest a method of making bisphenol A, starting from phenol.

21. Give structures of all compounds below:

- (a) *p*-nitrophenol +  $C_2H_5Br$  + NaOH (aq)  $\longrightarrow$  A ( $C_8H_9O_3N$ )  
 A + Sn + HCl  $\longrightarrow$  B ( $C_8H_{11}ON$ )  
 B +  $NaNO_2$  + HCl, then phenol  $\longrightarrow$  C ( $C_{14}H_{14}O_2N_2$ )  
 C + ethyl sulfate + NaOH (aq)  $\longrightarrow$  D ( $C_{16}H_{18}O_2N_2$ )  
 D +  $SnCl_2$   $\longrightarrow$  E ( $C_8H_{11}ON$ )  
 E + acetyl chloride  $\longrightarrow$  phenacetin ( $C_{10}H_{11}O_2N$ ), an analgesic ("pain-killer") and antipyretic ("fever-killer")
- (b)  $\beta$ -(*o*-hydroxyphenyl)ethyl alcohol + HBr  $\longrightarrow$  F ( $C_8H_9OBr$ )  
 F + KOH  $\longrightarrow$  coumarone ( $C_8H_6O$ ), insoluble in NaOH
- (c) phenol +  $ClCH_2COOH$  + NaOH (aq), then HCl  $\longrightarrow$  G ( $C_8H_8O_3$ )  
 G +  $SOCl_2$   $\longrightarrow$  H ( $C_8H_7O_2Cl$ )  
 H +  $AlCl_3$   $\longrightarrow$  3-cumaranone ( $C_8H_6O_2$ )
- (d) *p*-cymene (*p*-isopropyltoluene) + conc.  $H_2SO_4$   $\longrightarrow$  I + J (both  $C_{11}H_{14}O_3S$ )  
 I + KOH + heat, then  $H^+$   $\longrightarrow$  cariacrol ( $C_{11}H_{14}O$ ), found in some essential oils  
 J + KOH + heat, then  $H^+$   $\longrightarrow$  thymol ( $C_{11}H_{14}O$ ), from oil of thyme  
 I +  $HNO_3$   $\longrightarrow$  K ( $C_8H_8O_5S$ )  
*p*-toluic acid + fuming sulfuric acid  $\longrightarrow$  K
- (e) anethole (p. 961) + HBr  $\longrightarrow$  L ( $C_{10}H_{13}OBr$ )  
 L +  $Mg$   $\longrightarrow$  M ( $C_{20}H_{26}O_2$ )  
 M + HBr, heat  $\longrightarrow$  hexoestrol ( $C_{18}H_{22}O_2$ ), a synthetic estrogen (female sex hormone)

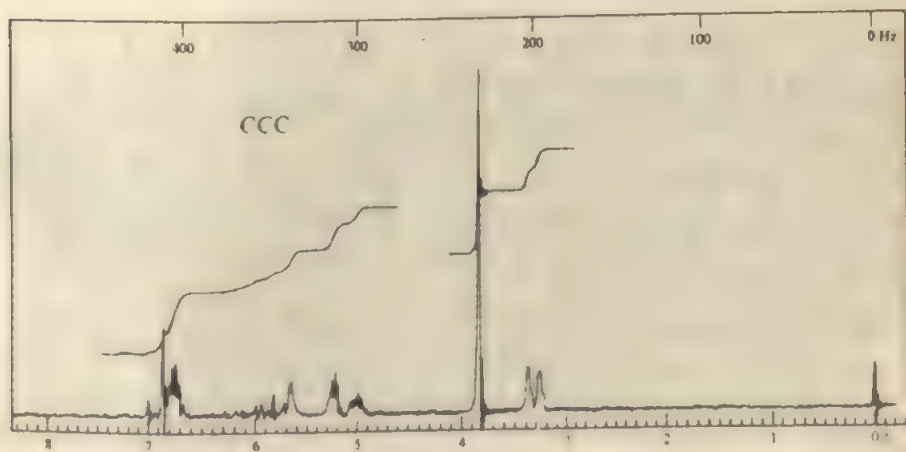
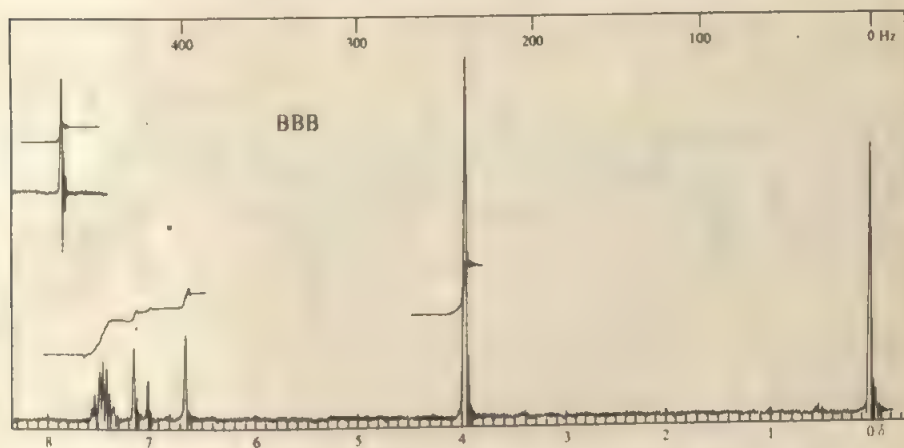
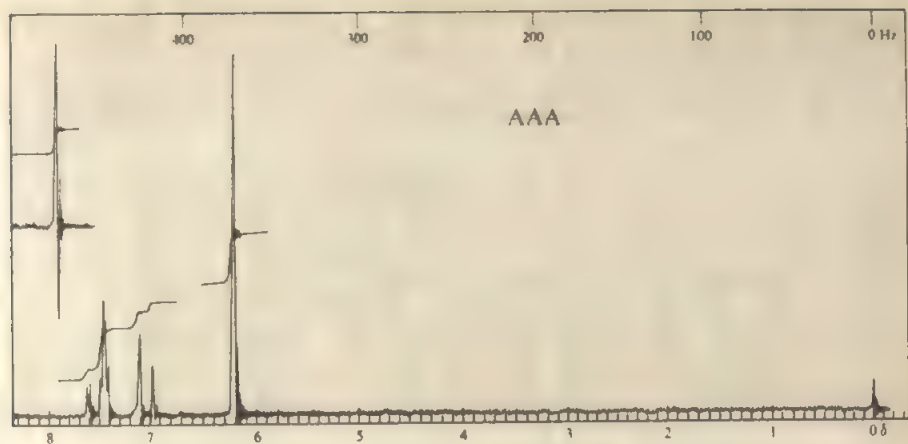


Figure 24.4. NMR spectra for Problem 33, p 987

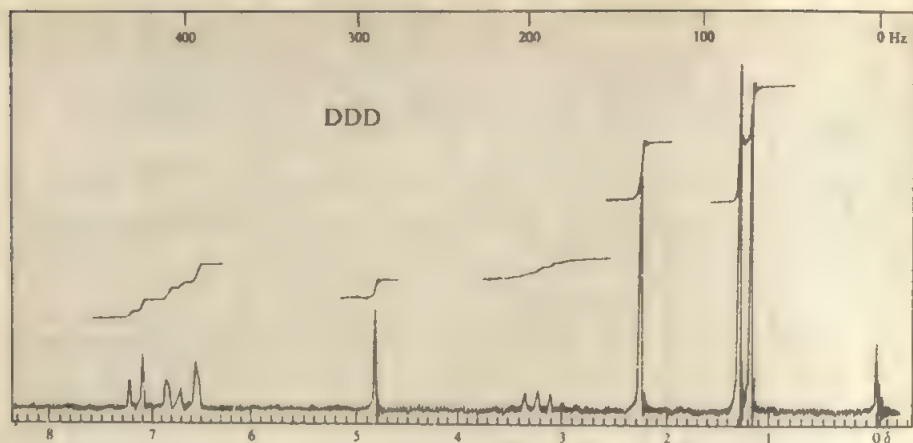


Figure 24.5. NMR spectrum for Problem 33, p. 987.

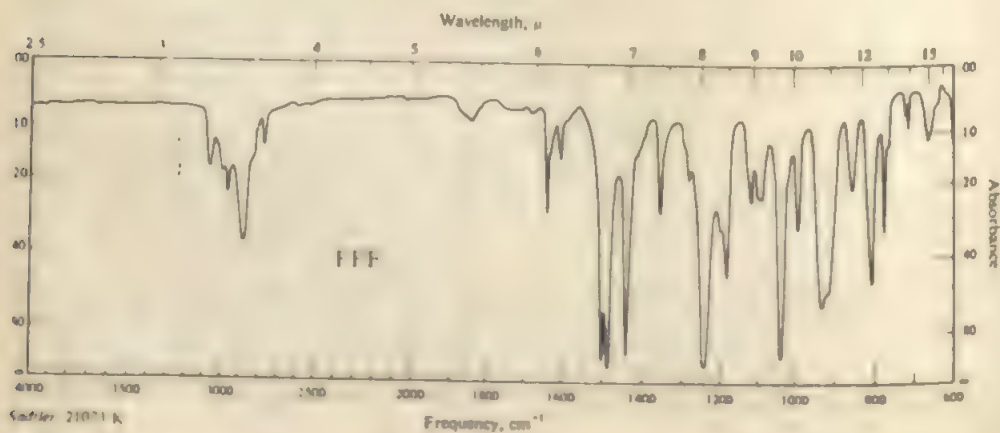
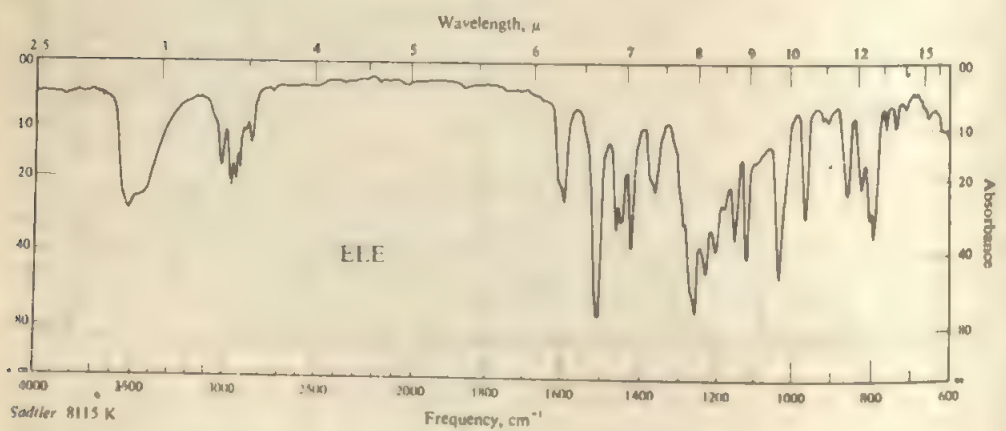


Figure 24.6. Infrared spectra for Problem 33, p. 987



## Aryl Halides

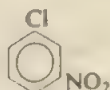
### *Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution*

#### 25.1 Structure

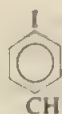
Aryl halides are compounds containing halogen attached directly to an aromatic ring. They have the general formula  $\text{ArX}$ , where Ar is phenyl, substituted phenyl, or one of the other aryl groups that we shall study (e.g., naphthyl, Chap. 34):



Bromobenzene



*m*-Chloronitrobenzene



*p*-Iodotoluene

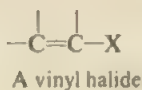


*o*-Chlorobenzoic acid

An aryl halide is not just any halogen compound containing an aromatic ring. Benzyl chloride, for example, is not an aryl halide, for halogen is not attached to the aromatic ring; in structure and properties it is simply a substituted alkyl halide and was studied as such (Chap. 16).

We take up the aryl halides in a separate chapter because they differ so much from the alkyl halides in their preparation and properties. Aryl halides as a class are comparatively unreactive toward the nucleophilic substitution reactions so characteristic of the alkyl halides. The presence of certain other groups on the aromatic ring, however, greatly increases the reactivity of aryl halides; in the absence of such groups, reaction can still be brought about by very basic reagents or high temperatures. We shall find that **nucleophilic aromatic substitution** can follow two very different paths: the *bimolecular displacement mechanism*, for activated aryl halides, and the *elimination addition mechanism*, which involves the remarkable intermediate called *benzyne*.

It will be useful to compare aryl halides with certain other halides that are not aromatic at all: *vinyl halides*, compounds in which halogen is attached directly to



a doubly-bonded carbon.

Vinyl halides, we have already seen, show an interesting parallel to aryl halides. Each kind of compound contains another functional group besides halogen: vinyl halides contain a carbon-carbon double bond, which undergoes electrophilic addition; aryl halides contain a ring, which undergoes electrophilic substitution. In each of these reactions, halogen exerts an anomalous influence on reactivity and orientation. In electrophilic addition, halogen deactivates, yet causes Markovnikov orientation (Sec. 9.15); in electrophilic substitution, halogen deactivates, yet directs *ortho,para* (Sec. 15.19). In both cases we attributed the influence of halogen to the working of opposing factors. Through its inductive effect, halogen withdraws electrons and deactivates the entire molecule toward electrophilic attack. Through its resonance effect, halogen releases electrons and tends to activate—but only toward attack *at certain positions*.

**Problem 25.1** Drawing all pertinent structures, account in detail for the fact that: (a) addition of hydrogen iodide to vinyl chloride is slower than to ethylene, yet yields predominantly 1-chloro-1-iodoethane; (b) nitration of chlorobenzene is slower than that of benzene, yet occurs predominantly *ortho,para*.

The parallel between aryl and vinyl halides goes further: both are relatively unreactive toward nucleophilic substitution and, as we shall see, for basically the same reason. Moreover, this low reactivity is caused—partly, at least—by the same structural feature that is responsible for their anomalous influence on electrophilic attack: partial double-bond character of the carbon-halogen bond.

We must keep in mind that aryl halides are of “low reactivity” only with respect to certain sets of familiar reactions typical of the more widely studied alkyl halides. Before 1953, aryl halides appeared to undergo essentially only one reaction—and that one, rather poorly. It is becoming increasingly evident that aryl halides are actually capable of doing many different things, as with the “unreactive” alkanes (Sec. 3.18), it is only necessary to provide the proper conditions—and to have the ingenuity to *observe* what is going on. Of these reactions, we shall have time to take up only two. But we should be aware that there are others—free-radical reactions, for example, and what Joseph Bunnett (p. 299) has named the *base-catalyzed halogen dance* (Problem 23, p. 1018).

## 25.2 Physical properties

Unless modified by the presence of some other functional group, the physical properties of the aryl halides are much like those of the corresponding alkyl halides. Chlorobenzene and bromobenzene, for example, have boiling points very nearly the same as those of *n*-hexyl chloride and *n*-hexyl bromide, like the alkyl halides, the aryl halides are insoluble in water and soluble in organic solvents.

Table 25.1 ARYL HALIDES

			<i>Ortho</i>		<i>Meta</i>		<i>Para</i>	
	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	M.p., °C	B.p., °C
Fluorobenzene	- 45	85						
Chlorobenzene	- 45	132						
Bromobenzene	- 31	156						
Iodobenzene	- 31	189						
Fluorotoluene				115		115		116
Chlorotoluene			- 34	159	- 48	162	8	162
Bromotoluene			- 26	182	- 40	184	28	185
Iodotoluene				206		211	35	211
Diffuorobenzene			- 34	92	- 59	83	- 13	89
Dichlorobenzene			- 17	180	- 24	173	52	175
Dibromobenzene			6	221	- 7	217	87	219
Diiodobenzene			27	287	35	285	129	285
Nitrochlorobenzene			32	245	48	236	83	239
2,4-Dinitro- chlorobenzene	53	315						
2,4,6-Trinitro- chlorobenzene (picryl chloride)	83							
Vinyl chloride	-160	- 14						
Vinyl bromide	-138	16						

The physical constants listed in Table 25.1 illustrate very well a point previously made (Sec. 16.4) about the boiling points and melting points of *ortho*, *meta*, and *para* isomers. The isomeric dihalobenzenes, for example, have very nearly the same boiling points: between 173° and 180° for the dichlorobenzenes, 217° to 221° for the dibromobenzenes, and 285° to 287° for the diiodobenzenes. Yet the melting points of these same compounds show a considerable spread; in each case, the *para* isomer has a melting point that is some 70–100 degrees higher than the *ortho* or *meta* isomer. The physical constants of the halotoluenes show a similar relationship.

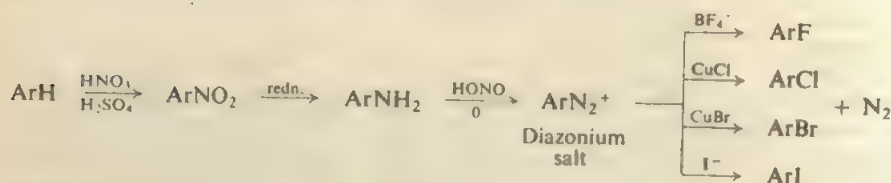
Here again we see that, having the most symmetrical structure, the *para* isomer fits better into a crystalline lattice and has the highest melting point. We can see how it is that a reaction product containing both *ortho* and *para* isomers frequently deposits crystals of only the *para* isomer upon cooling. Because of the strong intracrystalline forces, the higher-melting *para* isomer also is less soluble in a given solvent than the *ortho* isomer, so that purification of the *para* isomer is often possible by recrystallization. The *ortho* isomer that remains in solution is generally heavily contaminated with the *para* isomer, and is difficult to purify.

## 25.3 Preparation

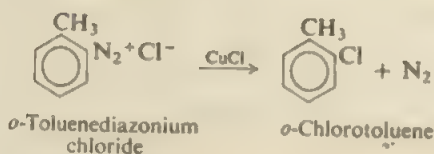
Aryl halides are most often prepared in the laboratory by the methods outlined below, and on an industrial scale by adaptations of these methods.

## PREPARATION OF ARYL HALIDES

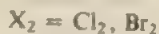
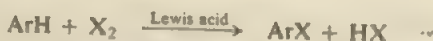
## 1. From diazonium salts. Discussed in Secs. 23.14 and 25.3.



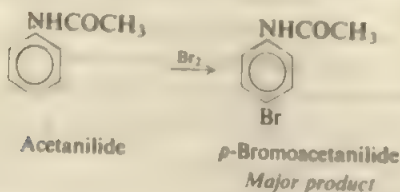
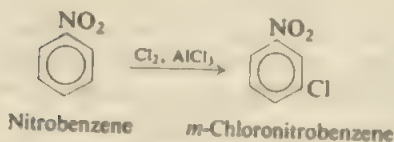
Example:



## 2. Halogenation. Discussed in Secs. 15.11 and 16.13.



Examples:



These methods, we notice, differ considerably from the methods of preparing alkyl halides. (a) Direct halogenation of the aromatic ring is more useful than direct halogenation of alkanes, although mixtures may be obtained (e.g., *ortho* + *para*), attack is not nearly so random as in the free-radical halogenation of aliphatic hydrocarbons. (b) Alkyl halides are most often prepared from the corresponding alcohols; aryl halides are not prepared from the phenols. Instead, aryl halides are most commonly prepared by replacement of the nitrogen of a **diazonium salt**, as the sequence above shows, this ultimately comes from a nitro group which was itself



introduced directly into the ring. *From the standpoint of synthesis, then, the nitro compounds bear much the same relationship to aryl halides that alcohols do to alkyl halides.* (These reactions of diazonium salts have been discussed in detail in Secs. 23.13–23.14.)

The preparation of aryl halides from diazonium salts is more important than direct halogenation for several reasons. First of all, fluorides and iodides, which can seldom be prepared by direct halogenation, can be obtained from the diazonium salts. Second, where direct halogenation yields a mixture of *ortho* and *para* isomers, the *ortho* isomer, at least, is difficult to obtain pure. On the other hand, the *ortho* and *para* isomers of the corresponding nitro compounds, from which the diazonium salts ultimately come, can often be separated by fractional distillation (Sec. 15.7). For example, the *o*- and *p*-bromotoluenes boil only three degrees apart: 182° and 185°. The corresponding *o*- and *p*-nitrotoluenes, however, boil sixteen degrees apart: 222° and 238°.

## 25.4 Reactions

The typical reaction of alkyl halides, we have seen (Sec. 6.10), is nucleophilic substitution. Halogen is displaced as halide ion by such bases as  $\text{OH}^-$ ,  $\text{OR}^-$ ,  $\text{NH}_3$ ,  $\text{CN}^-$ , etc., to yield alcohols, ethers, amines, nitriles, etc. Even Friedel-Crafts alkylation is, from the standpoint of the alkyl halide, nucleophilic substitution by the basic aromatic ring.



*It is typical of aryl halides that they undergo nucleophilic substitution only with extreme difficulty.* Except for certain industrial processes where very severe conditions are feasible, one does not ordinarily prepare phenols ( $\text{ArOH}$ ), ethers ( $\text{ArOR}$ ), amines ( $\text{ArNH}_2$ ), or nitriles ( $\text{ArCN}$ ) by nucleophilic attack on aryl halides. We cannot use aryl halides as we use alkyl halides in the Friedel-Crafts reaction.

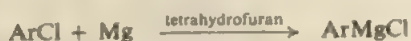
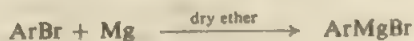
However, aryl halides do undergo nucleophilic substitution readily if the aromatic ring contains, in addition to halogen, certain other properly placed groups: electron-withdrawing groups like  $\text{NO}_2$ ,  $\text{NO}$ , or  $\text{CN}$ , located *ortho* or *para* to halogen. For aryl halides having this special kind of structure, nucleophilic substitution proceeds readily and can be used for synthetic purposes.

The reactions of unactivated aryl halides with strong bases or at high temperatures, which proceed via benzyne, are finding increasing synthetic importance. The Dow process, which has been used for many years in the manufacture of phenol (Sec. 24.4), turns out to be what Bunnett (p. 299) calls "benzyne chemistry on the tonnage scale!"

The aromatic ring to which halogen is attached can, of course, undergo the typical electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions: nitration, sulfonation, halogenation, Friedel-Crafts alkylation. Like any substituent, halogen affects the reactivity and orientation in these reactions. As we have seen (Sec. 15.5), halogen is unusual in being deactivating, yet *ortho,para*-directing.

## REACTIONS OF ARYL HALIDES

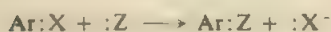
1. Formation of Grignard reagent. Limitations are discussed in Sec. 10.16.



2. Substitution in the ring. Electrophilic aromatic substitution. Discussed in Sec. 15.19.

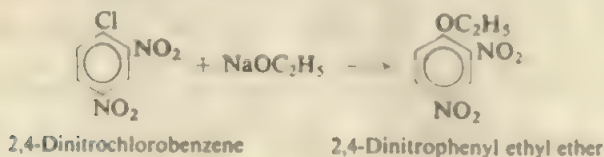
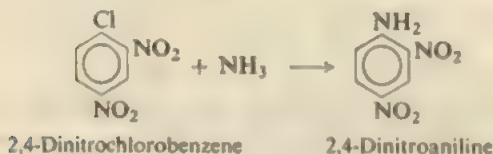
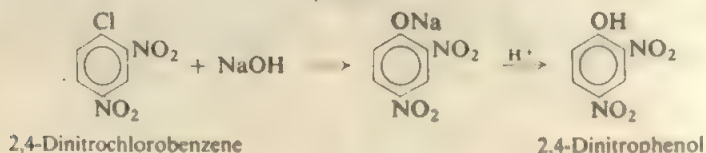
X: Deactivates and directs *ortho, para* in electrophilic aromatic substitution.

3. Nucleophilic aromatic substitution. Bimolecular displacement. Discussed in Secs. 25.7-25.13.



Ar must contain strongly electron-withdrawing groups *ortho* and/or *para* to X.

Examples:



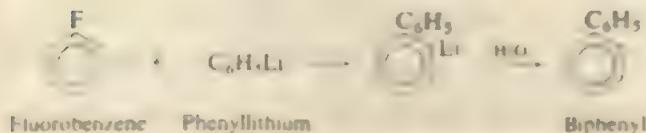
4. Nucleophilic aromatic substitution. Elimination-addition. Discussed in Sec. 25.14



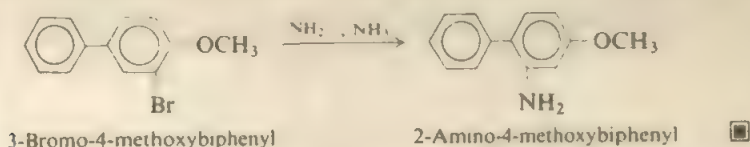
Strong base

Ring not activated toward bimolecular displacement

Examples:

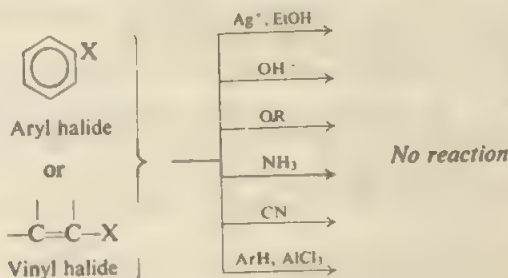


CONT.



## 25.5 Low reactivity of aryl and vinyl halides

We have already discussed (Sec. 9.18) the extremely low reactivity toward nucleophilic substitution of vinylic halides. Similarly low reactivity is shown by aryl halides. Attempts to convert aryl or vinyl halides into phenols (or alcohols), ethers, amines, or nitriles by treatment with the usual nucleophilic reagents are also unsuccessful; aryl or vinyl halides cannot be used in place of alkyl halides in the Friedel-Crafts reaction.



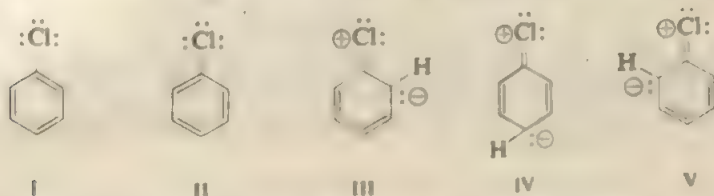
How can the low reactivity of these halides be accounted for? To find possible answers, let us look at their structures.

## 25.6 Structure of aryl and vinyl halides

The low reactivity of aryl and vinyl halides toward displacement has, like the stabilities of alkenes and dienes (Secs. 9.22-9.24), been attributed to two different factors: (a) delocalization of electrons by resonance; and (b) differences in ( $\sigma$ ) bond energies due to differences in hybridization of carbon.

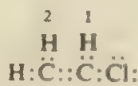
Let us look first at the resonance interpretation.

Chlorobenzene is considered to be a hybrid of not only the two Kekulé structures, I and II, but also of three structures, III, IV, and V, in which chlorine

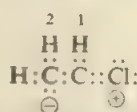


is joined to carbon by a double bond, in III, IV, and V chlorine bears a positive charge and the *ortho* and *para* positions of the ring bear a negative charge

In a similar way, vinyl chloride is considered to be a hybrid of structure VI (the one we usually draw for it) and structure VII, in which chlorine is joined to carbon by a double bond; in VII chlorine bears a positive charge and C-2 bears a



VI



VII

negative charge. Other aryl and vinyl halides are considered to have structures exactly analogous to these.

Contribution from III, IV, and V, and from VII stabilizes the chlorobenzene and vinyl chloride molecules, and gives double-bond character to the carbon-chlorine bond. Carbon and chlorine are thus held together by something more than a single pair of electrons, and the carbon-chlorine bond is stronger than if it were a pure single bond. The low reactivity of these halides toward nucleophilic substitution is due (partly, at least) to resonance stabilization of the halides (by a factor that in this case does not stabilize the transition state to the same extent); this stabilization increases the  $E_{\text{act}}$  for displacement, and thus slows down reaction. For aryl halides, another factor—which may well be the most important one—is stabilization of the molecule by resonance involving the Kekulé structures.

The alternative interpretation is simple. In alkyl halides the carbon holding halogen is  $sp^3$ -hybridized. In aryl and vinyl halides, carbon is  $sp^2$ -hybridized; the bond to halogen is shorter and stronger, and the molecule is more stable (see Sec. 7.4).

What evidence is there to support either interpretation, other than the fact that it would account for *the low reactivity of aryl and vinyl halides*?

*The carbon-halogen bonds of aryl and vinyl halides are unusually short.* In chlorobenzene and vinyl chloride the C—Cl bond length is only 1.69 Å, as compared with a length of 1.77–1.80 Å in a large number of alkyl chlorides (Table 25.2). In bromobenzene and vinyl bromide the C—Br bond length is only 1.86 Å, as compared with a length of 1.91–1.92 Å in alkyl bromides.

Now, as we have seen (Sec. 7.2), a double bond is shorter than a single bond joining the same pair of atoms; if the carbon-halogen bond in aryl and vinyl halides has double-bond character, it should be shorter than the carbon-halogen bond in alkyl halides. Alternatively, a bond formed by overlap of an  $sp^2$  orbital should be shorter than the corresponding bond involving an  $sp^3$  orbital.

*Dipole moments of aryl and vinyl halides are unusually small.* Organic halogen compounds are polar molecules; displacement of electrons toward the more electronegative element makes halogen relatively negative and carbon relatively positive. Table 25.2 shows that the dipole moments of a number of alkyl chlorides and bromides range from 2.02 D to 2.15 D. The mobile  $\pi$  electrons of the benzene ring and of the carbon-carbon double bond should be particularly easy to displace; hence we might have expected aryl and vinyl halides to have even larger dipole moments than alkyl halides.

However, we see that this is not the case. Chlorobenzene and bromobenzene have dipole moments of only 1.7 D, and vinyl chloride and vinyl bromide have dipole moments of only 1.4 D. This is consistent with the resonance picture of these molecules. In the structures that contain doubly-bonded halogen (III, IV, V, and



Table 25.2 BOND LENGTHS AND DIPOLE MOMENTS OF HALIDES

	Bond Lengths, Å		Dipole Moments, D	
	C—Cl	C—Br	R—Cl	R—Br
CH <sub>3</sub> —X	1.77	1.91		
C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> —X	1.77	1.91	2.05	2.02
<i>n</i> -C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> —X	—	—	2.10	2.15
<i>n</i> -C <sub>8</sub> H <sub>17</sub> —X	—	—	2.09	2.15
(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> C—X	1.80	1.92	2.13	—
CH <sub>2</sub> =CH—X	1.69	1.86	1.44	1.41
C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> —X	1.69	1.86	1.73	1.71

VII) there is a positive charge on halogen and a negative charge on carbon; to the extent that these structures contribute to the hybrids, they tend to oppose the usual displacement of electrons toward halogen. Although there is still a net displacement of electrons toward halogen in aryl halides and vinyl halides, it is less than in other organic halides.

Alternatively,  $sp^2$ -hybridized carbon is, in effect, a more electronegative atom than an  $sp^3$ -hybridized carbon (see Sec. 13.11), and is less willing to release electrons to chlorine.

As was discussed in Secs. 9.15, 15.19, and 25.1, contribution from structures in which halogen is doubly-bonded and bears a positive charge accounts for the way halogen affects the reactions of the carbon-carbon double bond or of the benzene ring to which it is joined.

The counterargument is that this simply indicates that resonance of this kind can occur—but not how important it is in the halide molecules.

Finally, the existence of cyclic halonium ions (Sec. 8.17) certainly shows that halogen can share more than a pair of electrons.

It is hard to believe that the stability of these molecules is not affected by the particular kind of hybridization; on the other hand, it seems clear that there is resonance involving halogen and the  $\pi$  electrons. The question, once more, is one of their relative importance. As in the case of alkenes and dienes, it is probable that both are important.

As we shall see, in the rate-determining step of nucleophilic aromatic substitution a nucleophile attaches itself to the carbon bearing halogen; this carbon becomes tetrahedral, and the ring acquires a negative charge. Such a reaction is made more difficult by the fact that it destroys the aromaticity of the ring and disrupts the resonance between ring and halogen; and, if Dewar is correct (Sec. 9.24), because energy is required to change the hybridization of carbon from  $sp^2$  to  $sp^3$ .

**Problem 25.2** In Sec. 25.3 we learned that, unlike alkyl halides, aryl halides are not readily prepared from the corresponding hydroxy compounds. How might you account for this contrast between alcohols and phenols? (*Hint*. See Sec. 24.9.)

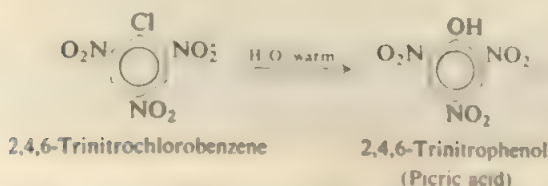
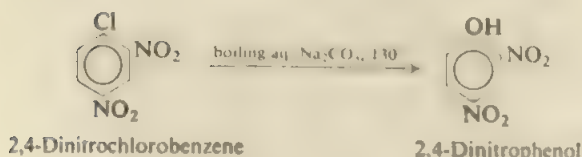
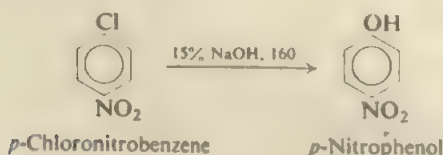
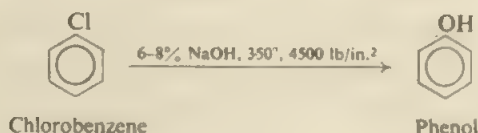
## 25.7 Nucleophilic aromatic substitution: bimolecular displacement

We have seen that the aryl halides are characterized by very low reactivity toward the nucleophilic reagents like OH<sup>-</sup>, OR<sup>-</sup>, NH<sub>3</sub>, and CN<sup>-</sup> that play such

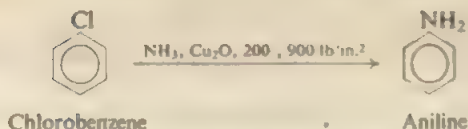
an important part in the chemistry of the alkyl halides. Consequently, nucleophilic aromatic substitution is much less important in synthesis than either nucleophilic aliphatic substitution or electrophilic aromatic substitution.

However, the presence of certain groups at certain positions of the ring markedly activates the halogen of aryl halides toward displacement. We shall have a look at some of these activation effects, and then try to account for them on the basis of the chemical principles we have learned. We shall find a remarkable parallel between the two kinds of aromatic substitution, electrophilic and nucleophilic, with respect both to mechanism and to the ways in which substituent groups affect reactivity and orientation.

Chlorobenzene is converted into phenol by aqueous sodium hydroxide only at temperatures over 300°. The presence of a nitro group *ortho* or *para* to the chlorine greatly increases its reactivity: *o*- or *p*-chloronitrobenzene is converted into the nitrophenol by treatment with aqueous sodium hydroxide at 160°. A nitro group *meta* to the chlorine, on the other hand, has practically no effect on reactivity. As the number of *ortho* and *para* nitro groups on the ring is increased, the reactivity increases: the phenol is obtained from 2,4-dinitrochlorobenzene by treatment with hot aqueous sodium carbonate, and from 2,4,6-trinitrochlorobenzene by simple treatment with water.



Similar effects are observed when other nucleophilic reagents are used. Ammonia or sodium methoxide, for example, reacts with chloro- or bromobenzene only under very vigorous conditions. For example,



Yet if the ring contains a nitro group—or preferably two or three of them—*ortho* or *para* to the halogen, reaction proceeds quite readily. For example:



Like  $-\text{NO}_2$ , certain other groups have been found to activate halogen located *ortho* or *para* to them:  $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_3^+$ ,  $-\text{CN}$ ,  $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ ,  $-\text{COOH}$ ,  $-\text{CHO}$ ,  $-\text{COR}$ . This is a familiar list. All these are electron-withdrawing groups, which are deactivating and *meta*-directing toward *electrophilic* substitution (see Table 15.3, p. 598).

Although our concern here is primarily with displacement of halogen, it is important to know that these electron-withdrawing substituents activate many groups other than halogen toward nucleophilic substitution. (Hydrogen is generally not displaced from the aromatic ring, since this would require the separation of the very strongly basic hydride ion,  $\text{:H}^-$ .)

**Problem 25.3** When *p*-nitroso-N,N-dimethylaniline is heated with aqueous KOH, dimethylamine is evolved; this reaction is sometimes used to prepare pure dimethylamine, free from methylamine and trimethylamine. (a) What are the other products of the reaction? (b) To what class of organic reactions does this belong? (c) Upon what property of the nitroso group does this reaction depend? (d) Outline all steps in the preparation of pure diethylamine starting from nitrobenzene and ethyl alcohol.

**Problem 25.4** How do you account for the following observations?

(a) Although most ethers are inert toward bases, 2,4-dinitroanisole is readily cleaved to methanol and 2,4-dinitrophenol when refluxed with dilute aqueous NaOH.

(b) Although amides can be hydrolyzed by either aqueous acid or aqueous alkali, hydrolysis of *p*-nitroacetanilide is best carried out in acidic solution.

(c) Treatment of *o*-chloronitrobenzene by aqueous sodium sulfite yields sodium *o*-nitrobenzenesulfonate. Draw the structure of the reagent involved. How does this reagent compare with the one in ordinary sulfonations?

(d) Would you expect the method of (c) to be a general one for preparation of sulfonic acids? Could it be used, for example, to prepare benzenesulfonic acid?

(e) Washing crude *m*-dinitrobenzene with aqueous sodium sulfite removes contaminating *o*- and *p*-dinitrobenzene.

If electron-withdrawing groups activate toward nucleophilic substitution, we might expect electron-releasing groups to *deactivate*. This is found to be so.

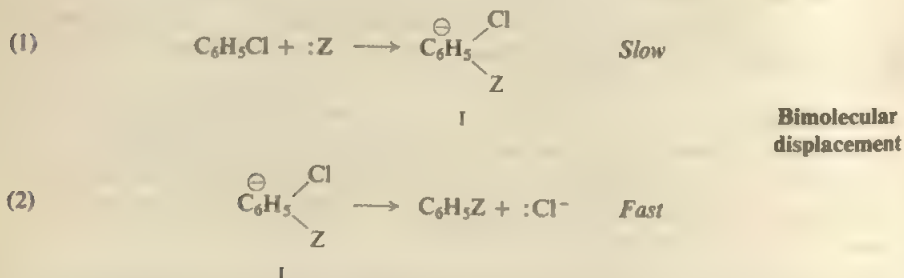
Furthermore, the degree of deactivation depends upon how strongly they release electrons:  $\text{NH}_2$  and  $\text{OH}$  deactivate strongly;  $\text{OR}$ , moderately; and  $\text{R}$ , weakly.

In nucleophilic as in electrophilic aromatic substitution, then, a substituent group affects reactivity by its ability to attract or release electrons; in nucleophilic as in electrophilic aromatic substitution, a substituent group exerts its effect chiefly at the position *ortho* and *para* to it. The kind of effect that each group exerts, however, is exactly opposite to the kind of effect it exerts in electrophilic aromatic substitution. In **nucleophilic aromatic substitution** electron withdrawal causes activation, and electron release causes deactivation.

To account for these effects, we must look at the mechanism for the kind of nucleophilic aromatic substitution we have been talking about.

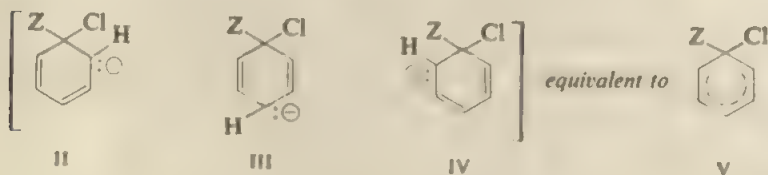
## 25.8 Bimolecular displacement mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution

The bimolecular displacement mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution (shown here for chlorobenzene) is:



There are two essential steps: attack of a nucleophilic reagent upon the ring to form a carbanion (I), and the expulsion of halide ion from this carbanion to yield the product.

The intermediate carbanion (I) is a hybrid of II, III, and IV; this hybrid is sometimes represented by the single structure V:



In nucleophilic aliphatic substitution ( $\text{S}_\text{N}2$ ), the intermediate in which carbon is bonded to both the attacking group and the displaced group is considered to be a transition state; a structure (VI) containing carbon bonded to five atoms must be





VI  
Aliphatic  $S_N2$   
Pentavalent carbon,  
transition state



V  
Aromatic  
Tetrahedral carbon,  
compound

Intermediates in  
nucleophilic substitution

unstable and so corresponds to the top of an energy hill (Fig. 25.1). In nucleophilic aromatic substitution, on the other hand, the intermediate is an actual compound; a structure (V) containing tetrahedral carbon and having the negative charge distributed about the ring is comparatively stable, and corresponds to an energy valley (Fig. 25.2).

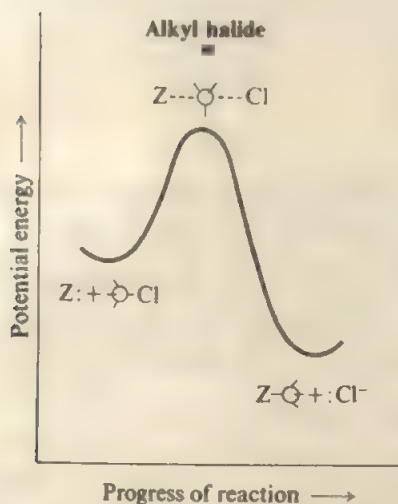


Figure 25.1. Energy curve for nucleophilic aliphatic ( $S_N2$ ) substitution. One-step reaction: intermediate is a transition state.

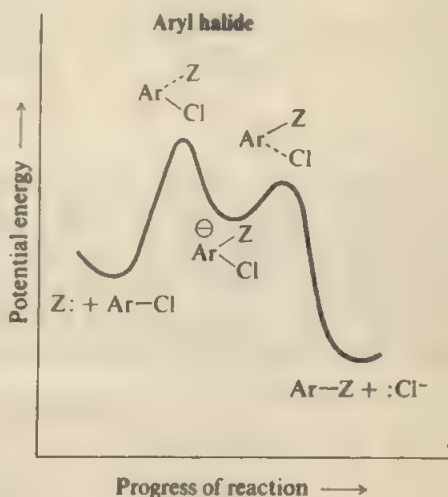


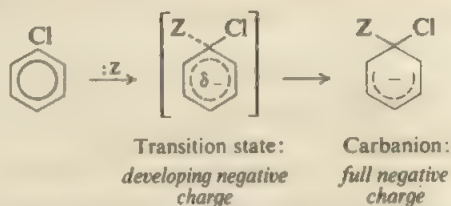
Figure 25.2. Energy curve for nucleophilic aromatic substitution. Two-step reaction: intermediate is a compound.

## 25.9 Reactivity in nucleophilic aromatic substitution

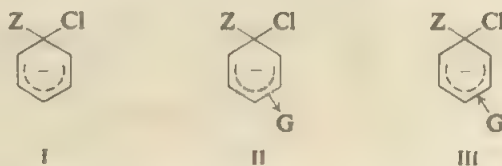
For reactions involving an intermediate carbocation, we have seen that the overall rate depends only on the rate of formation of the carbocation. In nucleophilic aromatic substitution an analogous situation seems to exist: the first step, formation of the carbanion, largely determines the overall rate of reaction; once formed, the carbanion rapidly reacts to yield the final product.

For closely related reactions, we might expect a difference in rate of formation of carbanions to be largely determined by a difference in  $E_{act}$ , that is by a difference in stability of the transition states. Factors that stabilize the carbanion by dispersing the charge should for the same reason stabilize the incipient carbanion of the transition state. Just as the more stable carbocation is formed more rapidly, so, we expect, the more stable carbanion should be formed more rapidly. We shall

therefore concentrate our attention on the relative stabilities of the intermediate carbanions.

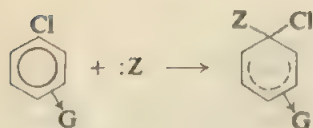


To compare the rates of substitution in chlorobenzene itself, a chlorobenzene containing an electron-withdrawing group, and a chlorobenzene containing an electron-releasing group, we compare the structures of carbanions I, II, and III.



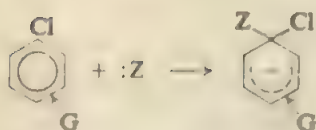
A group that withdraws electrons (II) tends to neutralize the negative charge of the ring and so to become more negative itself; this dispersal of the charge stabilizes the carbanion. In the same way, electron withdrawal stabilizes the transition state with its developing negative charge, and thus speeds up reaction. A group that releases electrons (III) tends to intensify the negative charge, destabilizes the carbanion (and the transition state), and thus slows down reaction.

### Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution



*G withdraws electrons:  
stabilizes carbanion,  
activates*

**G =**  $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_3^+$   
 $-\text{NO}_2$   
 $-\text{CN}$   
 $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$   
 $-\text{COOH}$   
 $-\text{CHO}$   
 $-\text{COR}$   
 $-\text{X}$



*G releases electrons:  
destabilizes carbanion,  
deactivates*

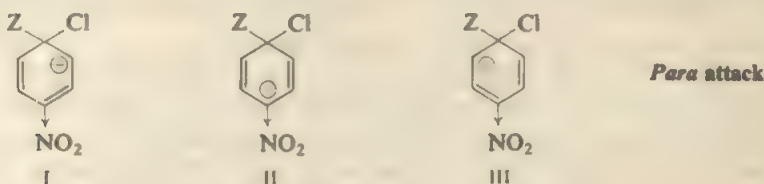
**G =**  $-\text{NH}_2$   
 $-\text{OH}$   
 $-\text{OR}$   
 $-\text{R}$

It is clear, then, why a given substituent group affects nucleophilic and electrophilic aromatic substitution in opposite ways: it affects the stability of negatively and positively charged ions in opposite ways.

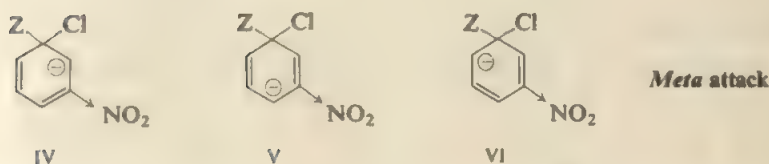
## 25.10 Orientation in nucleophilic aromatic substitution

To see why it is that a group activates the positions *ortho* and *para* to it most strongly, let us compare, for example, the carbanions formed from *p*-chloronitro-

benzene and *m*-chloronitrobenzene. Each of these is a hybrid of three structures, I–III for *para* attack, IV–VI for *meta* attack. In one of these six structures, II, the

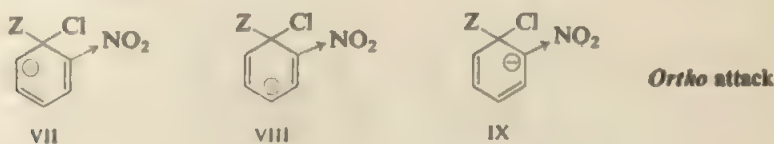


*Especially stable:  
charge on carbon  
bearing substituent*



negative charge is located on the carbon atom to which  $\text{—NO}_2$  is attached. Although  $\text{—NO}_2$  attracts electrons from all positions of the ring, it does so most from the carbon atom nearest it; consequently, structure II is a particularly stable one. Because of contribution from structure II, the hybrid carbanion resulting from attack on *p*-chloronitrobenzene is more stable than the carbanion resulting from attack on *m*-chloronitrobenzene. The *para* isomer therefore reacts faster than the *meta* isomer.

In the same way, it can be seen that attack on *o*-chloronitrobenzene (VII–IX) also yields a more stable carbanion, because of contribution from IX, than attack on *m*-chloronitrobenzene.



*Especially stable:  
charge on carbon  
bearing substituent*

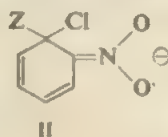
By considerations similar to those of Sec. 15.17, we can see that deactivation by an electron-releasing group should also be strongest when it is *ortho* or *para* to the halogen.

Nucleophilic and electrophilic aromatic substitution are similar, then, in that a group exerts its strongest influence—whether activating or deactivating—at the positions *ortho* and *para* to it. This similarity is due to a similarity in the intermediate ions: in both cases the charge of the intermediate ion—whether negative or positive—is strongest at the positions *ortho* and *para* to the point of attack, and hence a group attached to one of these positions can exert the strongest influence.

## 25.11 Electron withdrawal by resonance

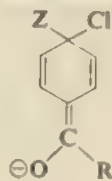
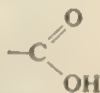
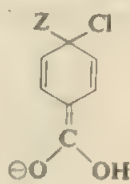
The activation by  $\text{NO}_2$  and other electron-attracting groups can be accounted for, as we have seen, simply on the basis of inductive effects. However, it is generally believed that certain of these groups withdraw electrons by resonance as well. Let us see what kind of structures are involved.

The intermediate carbanions formed by nucleophilic attack on *o*- and *p*-chloronitrobenzene are considered to be hybrids not only of structures with negative charges carried by carbons of the ring (as shown in the last section), but also of structures I and II in which the negative charge is carried by oxygen of the  $\text{NO}_2$  group. Being highly electronegative, oxygen readily accommodates a negative charge, and hence I and II should be especially stable structures. The carbanions to which these structures contribute are therefore much more stable



than the ones formed by attack on chlorobenzene itself or on *m*-chloronitrobenzene, for which structures like I and II are not possible. Thus resonance involving the  $\text{NO}_2$  group strengthens the activation toward nucleophilic substitution caused by the inductive effect.

The activating effect of a number of other electron-attracting groups is considered to arise, in part, from the contribution of similar structures (shown only for *para* isomers) to the intermediate carbanions.



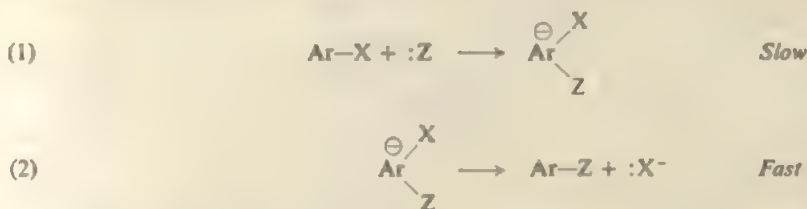
**Problem 25.5** There is evidence to suggest that the nitroso group,  $\text{—}\ddot{\text{N}}=\ddot{\text{O}}:$ , activates *ortho* and *para* positions toward both nucleophilic and electrophilic aromatic substitution; the group apparently can either withdraw or release electrons upon demand by the attacking reagent. Show how this might be accounted for. (Hint: Sec Sec. 15.18.)

## 25.12 Evidence for the two steps in bimolecular displacement

Our interpretation of reactivity and orientation in nucleophilic aromatic substitution has been based on one all-important assumption that we have not yet



justified: displacement involves two steps, of which the first one is much slower than the second.

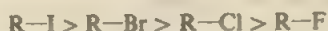


The problem here reminds us of the analogous problem in electrophilic aromatic substitution (Sec. 15.14). There the answer was found in the absence of an isotope effect: although carbon-deuterium bonds are broken more slowly than carbon-hydrogen bonds, deuterium and hydrogen were found to be displaced at the same rate. Reactivity is determined by the rate of a reaction that does not involve the breaking of a carbon-hydrogen bond.

But in nucleophilic aromatic substitution, we are dealing with displacement, not of hydrogen, but of elements like the halogens; as was discussed in connection with dehydrohalogenation, any isotope effects would be small, and hard to measure.

The answer came from Joseph Bunnett (p. 299), who is responsible for much of what we understand about nucleophilic aromatic substitution. It was while studying this reaction that he first conceived the idea of *element effect* (Sec. 7.20), and showed how it gave evidence for the two-step mechanism.

In  $S_N1$  and  $S_N2$  displacement, we recall, the reactivity of alkyl halides follows the sequence



The ease of breaking the carbon-halogen bond depends upon its strength, and the resulting differences in rate are quite large.

Yet, in nucleophilic *aromatic* substitution, there is often very little difference in reactivity among the various halides and, more often than not, the fluoride—containing the carbon-halogen bond hardest to break—is the *most* reactive. If reactivity is independent of the strength of the carbon-halogen bond, we can only conclude that the reaction *whose rate we are observing* does not involve breaking of the carbon-halogen bond. In nucleophilic aromatic substitution, as in electrophilic aromatic substitution, the rate of reaction is determined by the rate of attachment of the attacking particle to the ring (Fig. 25.3, on the following page).

The *faster* reaction of aryl fluorides is attributed to the very strong inductive effect of fluorine; by withdrawing electrons it stabilizes the transition state of the first step of a reaction that will ultimately lead to its displacement.

**Problem 25.6** When 2,4,6-trinitroanisole is treated with sodium ethoxide, a product of formula  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_9\text{O}_8\text{N}_3 \cdot \text{Na}^+$  is formed. A product of the same formula is formed by the treatment of trinitrophenetole by sodium methoxide. When treated with acid, both products give the same mixture of trinitroanisole and trinitrophenetole. What structure (or structures) would you assign to these products?

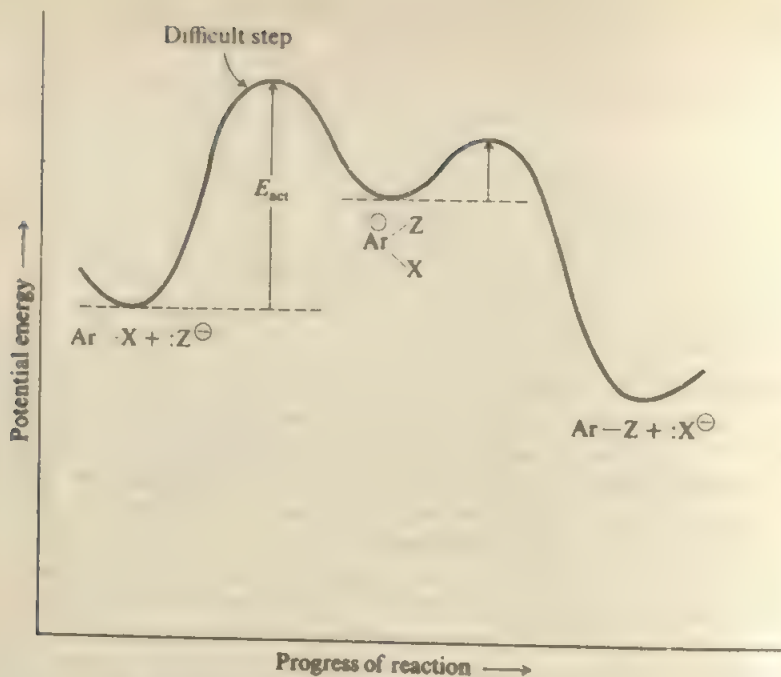
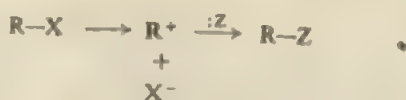


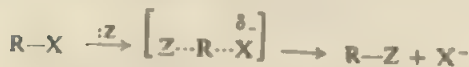
Figure 25.3. Potential energy changes during course of reaction: nucleophilic aromatic substitution. Formation of carbanion is rate-controlling step; strength of C—X bond does not affect overall rate.

### 25.13 Nucleophilic substitution: aliphatic and aromatic

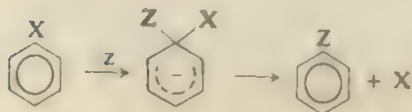
We can see a regular progression in the three kinds of nucleophilic substitution that we have studied so far. The departing group leaves the molecule *before* the entering group becomes attached in an  $S_N1$  reaction, *at the same time* in an  $S_N2$  reaction, and *after* in nucleophilic aromatic substitution. A *positive charge* thus develops on carbon during an  $S_N1$  reaction, *no particular charge* during an  $S_N2$  reaction, and a *negative charge* during nucleophilic aromatic substitution. As a result, an  $S_N1$  reaction is favored by *electron release*, an  $S_N2$  reaction is relatively *insensitive to electronic factors*, and nucleophilic aromatic substitution is favored by *electron withdrawal*.



$S_N1$   
Positive charge  
develops on carbon



$S_N2$   
Little charge  
develops on carbon

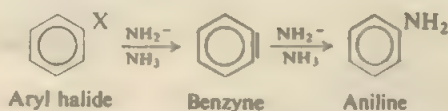


Nucleophilic aromatic  
Negative charge  
develops on carbon

## 25.14 Elimination-addition mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution. Benzyne

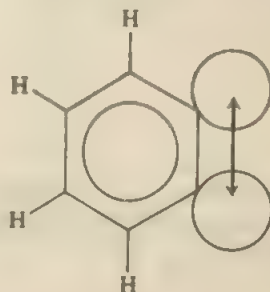
We have seen that electron-withdrawing groups activate aryl halides toward nucleophilic substitution. In the absence of such activation, substitution can be *made* to take place, by use of very strong bases, for example. But when this is done, substitution does not take place by the mechanism we have just discussed (the so-called *bimolecular mechanism*), but by an entirely different mechanism: the *benzyne* (or *elimination-addition*) mechanism. Let us first see what this mechanism is, and then examine some of the evidence for it.

When an aryl halide like chlorobenzene is treated with the very strong basic amide ion,  $\text{NH}_2^-$ , in liquid ammonia, it is converted into aniline. This is not the simple displacement that, on the surface, it appears to be. Instead, the reaction involves two stages: *elimination* and then *addition*. The intermediate is the molecule called *benzyne* (or *dehydrobenzene*).



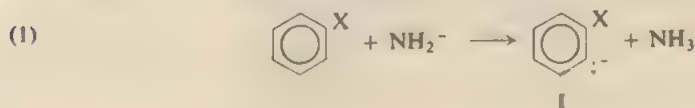
Benzyne has the structure shown in Fig. 25.4, in which an additional bond is formed between two carbons (the one originally holding the halogen and the one

Figure 25.4. Benzyne molecule. Sideways overlap of  $sp^2$  orbitals forms  $\pi$  bond out of plane of aromatic  $\pi$  cloud.

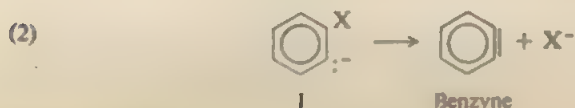


originally holding the hydrogen) by sideways overlap of  $sp^2$  orbitals. This new bond orbital lies along the side of the ring, and has little interaction with the  $\pi$  cloud lying above and below the ring. The sideways overlap is not very good, the new bond is a weak one, and benzyne is a highly reactive molecule.

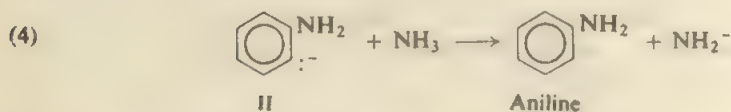
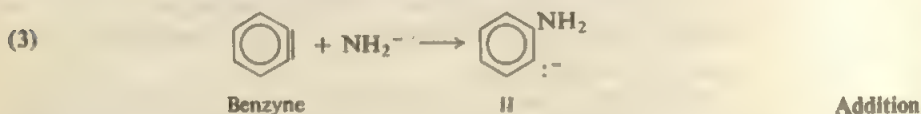
The elimination stage, in which benzyne is formed, involves two steps: abstraction of a hydrogen ion (step 1) by the amide ion to form ammonia and carbanion I, which then loses halide ion (step 2) to form benzyne.



Elimination



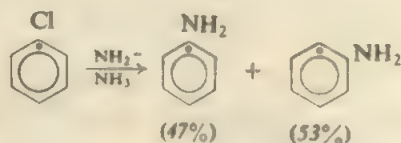
The addition stage, in which benzyne is consumed, may also involve two steps: attachment of the amide ion (step 3) to form carbanion II, which then reacts with an acid, ammonia, to abstract a hydrogen ion (step 4). It may be that step (3) and step (4) are concerted, and addition involves a single step; if this is so, the transition state is probably one in which attachment of nitrogen has proceeded to a greater extent than attachment of hydrogen, so that it has considerable carbanion character.



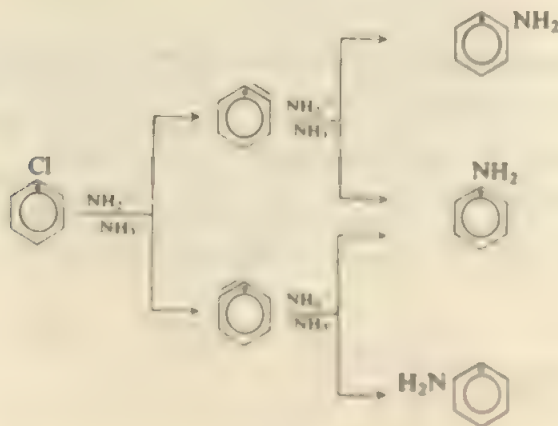
(This is analogous to hydroboration (Sec. 10.10), in which the transition state has considerable carbocation character.)

Let us look at the facts on which the above mechanism is based.

(a) *Fact.* Labeled chlorobenzene in which  $^{14}\text{C}$  held the chlorine atom was allowed to react with amide ion. In *half* the aniline obtained the amino group was held by  $^{14}\text{C}$  and in *half* it was held by an adjacent carbon.



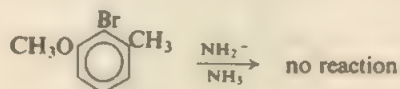
*Interpretation.* In benzyne the labeled carbon and the ones next to it become equivalent, and  $\text{NH}_2^-$  adds randomly (except for a small isotope effect) to one or the other.



Although foreshadowed by certain earlier observations, this experiment, reported in 1953 by John D. Roberts of the California Institute of Technology, marks the real beginning of benzyne chemistry.

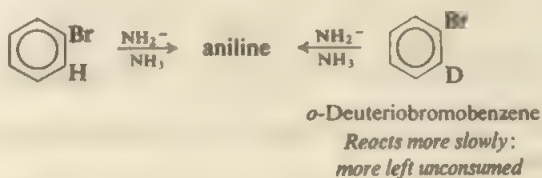


(b) *Fact.* Compounds containing two groups *ortho* to halogen, like 2-bromo-3-methylanisole, do not react at all.

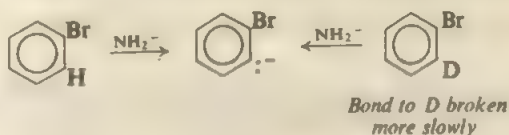


*Interpretation.* With no *ortho* hydrogen to be lost, benzyne cannot form.

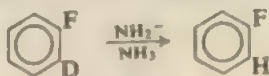
(c) *Fact.* When a 50:50 mixture of bromobenzene and *o*-deuteriobromobenzene is allowed to react with a limited amount of amide ion, recovered unreacted material contains more of the deuteriobromobenzene than bromobenzene; the deuterated compound is less reactive and is consumed more slowly.



*Interpretation.* This isotope effect (Sec. 7.18) shows not only that the *ortho* hydrogen is involved, but that it is involved in a rate-determining step. Deuterium is abstracted more slowly in the first step (equation 1, p. 1009), and the whole reaction sequence is slowed down.

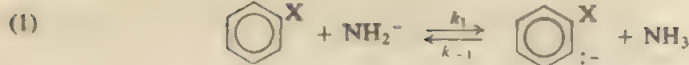


(d) *Fact.* *o*-Deuteriofluorobenzene is converted into aniline only very slowly, but loses its deuterium rapidly to yield ordinary fluorobenzene.



*Interpretation.* Abstraction of hydrogen (step 1) takes place, but before the very strong carbon-fluorine bond can break, the carbanion reacts with the acid—which is almost all  $\text{NH}_3$  with only a trace of  $\text{NH}_2\text{D}$ —to regenerate fluorobenzene, but without its deuterium.

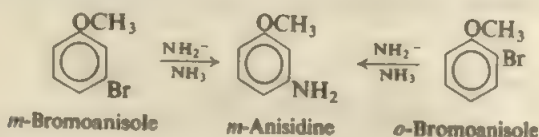
In the case of *o*-deuteriobromobenzene, on the other hand, breaking of the weaker carbon-bromine bond (step 2) is much faster than the protonation by ammonia (reverse of step 1): as fast as a carbanion is formed, it loses bromide ion. In this case, isotopic exchange is not important. (It may even be that here steps (1) and (2) are concerted.)



for  $\text{X} = \text{F}$ ,  $k_{-1} \gg k_2$

$\text{X} = \text{Br}$ ,  $k_2 \gg k_{-1}$

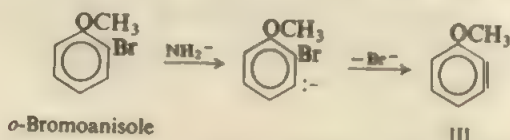
(e) *Fact.* Both *m*-bromoanisole and *o*-bromoanisole yield the same product: *m*-anisidine (*m*-aminoanisole).



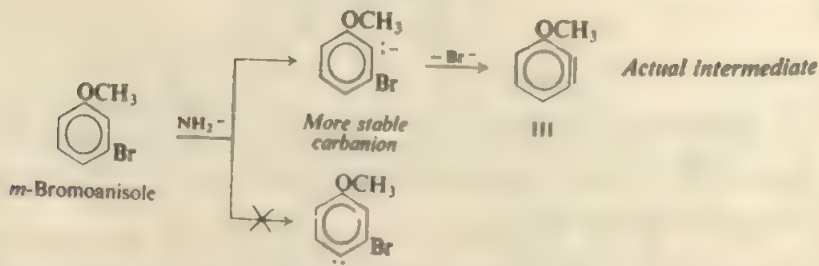
*Interpretation.* They yield the same product because they form the same intermediate benzyne.

Which benzyne is this, and how is it that it yields *m*-anisidine? To deal with orientation—both in the elimination stage and the addition stage—we must remember that a methoxyl group has an electron-withdrawing inductive effect. Since the electrons in carbanions like I and II (pp. 1009–1010) are out of the plane of the  $\pi$  cloud, there is no question of resonance interaction; only the inductive effect, working along the  $\sigma$  bonds (or perhaps through space), is operative.

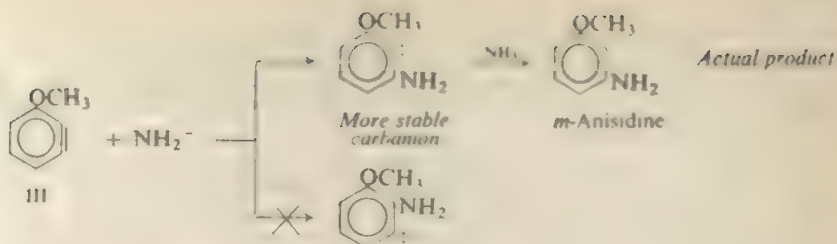
*o*-Bromoanisole yields the benzyne shown (III, 2,3-dehydroanisole) because it has to. *m*-Bromoanisole yields III because, in the first step, the negative charge



appears preferentially on the carbon that can best accommodate it: the carbon next to the electron-withdrawing group. Whatever its source, III yields *m*-anisidine



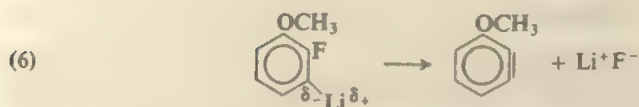
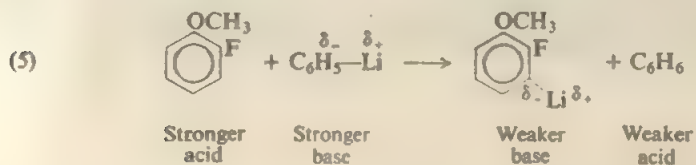
for the same reason: addition of  $\text{NH}_2^-$  occurs in such a way that the negative charge appears on the carbon next to methoxyl.



Another common way to generate benzyne involves use of organolithium compounds. For example:

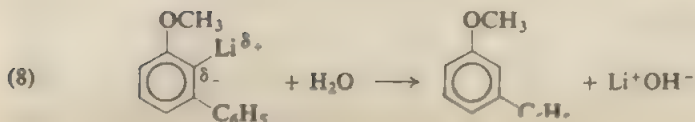
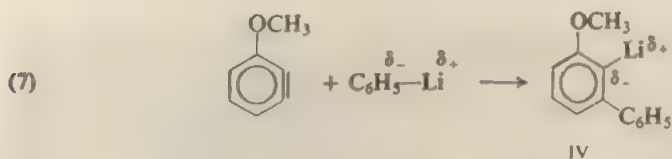


Here benzyne formation involves abstraction of a proton (reaction 5) by the base  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5^-$  to form a carbanion which loses fluoride ion (reaction 6) to give benzyne.



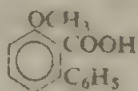
**Problem 25.7** Account for the relative strengths of these acids and bases.

Addition of phenyllithium (reaction 7) to the benzyne gives the organolithium compound IV. From one point of view, this is the same reaction sequence observed for the amide ion–ammonia reaction (above), but it stops at the carbanion stage for want of strong acid. (Alternatively, the Lewis acid  $\text{Li}^+$  has completed the sequence.) Addition of water—in this company, a very strong acid—yields (reaction 8) the final product. (The strong acid  $\text{H}^+$  has displaced the weaker acid  $\text{Li}^+$ .)

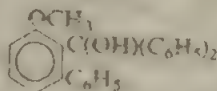


Organolithium compounds,  $\text{RLi}$ , resemble Grignard reagents,  $\text{RMgX}$ , in their reactions. As in Grignard reagents (Sec. 3.16), the carbon-metal bond can probably best be described as a highly polar covalent bond or, in another manner of speaking, as a bond with much ionic character (a resonance hybrid of  $\text{R}-\text{M}$  and  $\text{R}^-\text{M}^+$ ). Because of the greater electropositivity of lithium, the carbon-lithium bond is even more ionic than the carbon-magnesium bond and, partly as a result of this, organolithium compounds are more reactive than Grignard reagents. As we have done with Grignard reagents, we shall for convenience focus our attention on the carbanion character of the organic group in discussing these reactions as acid-base chemistry. In the reactions involving  $\text{K}^+\text{NH}_2^-$  we indicated free carbanions as intermediates, although even here the attractive forces—whatever they are—between carbon and potassium may be of great importance.

**Problem 25.8** Account for the following facts: (a) treatment of the reaction mixture in reaction (8) with carbon dioxide instead of water gives V, (b) treatment of the reaction



V



VI

mixture in reaction (8) with benzophenone gives VI; (c) benzyne can be generated by treatment of *o*-bromofluorobenzene with magnesium metal.

## 25.15 Analysis of aryl halides

Aryl halides show much the same response to characterization tests as the hydrocarbons from which they are derived: insolubility in cold concentrated sulfuric acid; inertness toward bromine in carbon tetrachloride and toward permanganate solutions; formation of orange to red colors when treated with chloroform and aluminum chloride; dissolution in cold fuming sulfuric acid, but at a slower rate than that of benzene.

Aryl halides are distinguished from aromatic hydrocarbons by the presence of halogen, as shown by elemental analysis. Aryl halides are distinguished from most alkyl halides by their inertness toward silver nitrate; in this respect they resemble vinyl halides (Sec. 25.5).

Any other functional groups that may be present in the molecule undergo their characteristic reactions.

**Problem 25.9** Describe simple chemical tests (if any) that will distinguish between (a) bromobenzene and *n*-hexyl bromide, (b) *p*-bromotoluene and benzyl bromide, (c) chlorobenzene and 1-chloro-1-hexene, (d)  $\alpha$ -(*p*-bromophenyl)ethyl alcohol ( $p\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH(OH)CH}_3$ ) and *p*-bromo-*n*-hexylbenzene, (e)  $\alpha$ -(*p*-chlorophenyl)ethyl alcohol and  $\beta$ -(*p*-chlorophenyl)ethyl alcohol ( $p\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ). Tell exactly what you would do and see.

**Problem 25.10** Outline a procedure for distinguishing by chemical means (not necessarily simple tests) between (a) *o*-bromotoluene and 4-bromo-1,4-dimethylbenzene, (b) *o*-chloropropylbenzene ( $o\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ ) and *o*-chloroethylbenzene ( $o\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ ).



## PROBLEMS

1. Give structures and names of the principal organic products of the reaction (if any) of each of the following reagents with bromobenzene:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) Mg, ether                                | (i) fuming sulfuric acid                                |
| (b) boiling 10% aqueous NaOH                 | (j) $\text{Cl}_2$ , Fe                                  |
| (c) boiling alcoholic KOH                    | (k) $\text{I}_2$ , Fe                                   |
| (d) sodium acetylide                         | (l) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$ , $\text{AlCl}_3$            |
| (e) sodium ethoxide                          | (m) $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ , $\text{AlCl}_3$ |
| (f) $\text{NH}_3$ , $100^\circ$              | (n) cold dilute $\text{KMnO}_4$                         |
| (g) boiling aqueous NaCN                     | (o) hot $\text{KMnO}_4$                                 |
| (h) $\text{HNO}_3$ , $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ |   |

2. Answer Problem 1 for *n*-butyl bromide.

3. Answer Problem 1, parts (b), (e), (f), and (g) for 2,4-dinitrobromobenzene.

4. Outline a laboratory method for the conversion of bromobenzene into each of the following, using any needed aliphatic and inorganic reagents.

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| (a) benzene                             | (h) $\alpha$ -phenylethyl alcohol |
| (b) <i>p</i> -bromonitrobenzene         | (i) 2-phenyl-2-propanol           |
| (c) <i>p</i> -bromochlorobenzene        | (j) 2,4-dinitrophenol             |
| (d) <i>p</i> -bromobenzenesulfonic acid | (k) allylbenzene                  |
| (e) 1,2,4-tribromobenzene               | (l) benzoic acid                  |
| (f) <i>p</i> -bromotoluene              | (m) aniline                       |
| (g) benzyl alcohol                      |                                   |

5. Give the structure and name of the product expected when phenylmagnesium bromide is treated with each of the following compounds and then with water:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) $\text{H}_2\text{O}$                                   | (i) $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_3$   |
| (b) HBr (dry)  | (j) cyclohexanone  |
| (c) $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$                        | (k) 3,3-dimethylcyclohexanone  |
| (d) allyl bromide  | (l) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCH}_3$                                    |
| (e) HCHO   | (m) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COC}_6\text{H}_5$                           |
| (f) $\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}$                                | (n) $(-)\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ |
| (g) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHO}$                       | (o) acetylene  |
| (h) <i>p</i> - $\text{CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CHO}$ |  |

Which products (if any) would be single compounds? Which (if any) would be racemic modifications? Which (if any) would be optically active as isolated?

6. Arrange the compounds in each set in order of reactivity toward the indicated reagent. Give the structure and name of the product expected from the compound you select as the most reactive in each set.

- NaOH: chlorobenzene, *m*-chloronitrobenzene, *o*-chloronitrobenzene, 2,4-dinitrochlorobenzene, 2,4,6-trinitrochlorobenzene
- $\text{HNO}_3$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ : benzene, chlorobenzene, nitrobenzene, toluene
- alcoholic  $\text{AgNO}_3$ : 1-bromo-1-butene, 3-bromo-1-butene, 4-bromo-1-butene
- fuming sulfuric acid: bromobenzene, *p*-bromotoluene, *p*-dibromobenzene, toluene
- KCN: benzyl chloride, chlorobenzene, ethyl chloride
- alcoholic  $\text{AgNO}_3$ : 2-bromo-1-phenylethene,  $\alpha$ -phenylethyl bromide,  $\beta$ -phenylethyl bromide

7. In the preparation of 2,4-dinitrochlorobenzene from chlorobenzene, the excess nitric acid and sulfuric acid must be washed from the product. Which would you select for this purpose: aqueous sodium hydroxide or aqueous sodium bicarbonate? Why?

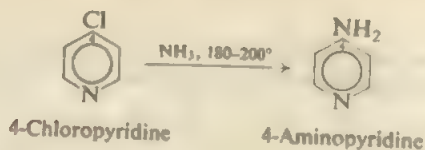
8. Give structures and names of the principal organic products expected from each of the following reactions:

- 2,3-dibromopropene + NaOH(aq)
- p*-bromobenzyl bromide + NH<sub>3</sub>(aq)
- p*-chlorotoluene + hot KMnO<sub>4</sub>
- m*-bromostyrene + Br<sub>2</sub>/CCl<sub>4</sub>
- 3,4-dichloronitrobenzene + 1 mol NaOCH<sub>3</sub>
- p*-bromochlorobenzene + Mg, diethyl ether
- p*-bromobenzyl alcohol + cold dilute KMnO<sub>4</sub>
- p*-bromobenzyl alcohol + conc. HBr
- $\alpha$ -(*o*-chlorophenyl)ethyl bromide + KOH(alc)
- p*-bromotoluene + 1 mol Cl<sub>2</sub>, heat, light
- o*-bromobenzotrifluoride + NaNH<sub>2</sub>/NH<sub>3</sub>
- o*-bromoanisole + K<sup>+</sup> NEt<sub>2</sub>/Et<sub>2</sub>NH

9. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the following compounds from benzene and/or toluene, using any needed aliphatic or inorganic reagents:

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| (a) <i>m</i> -chloronitrobenzene     | (h) 2,4-dinitroaniline                  |
| (b) <i>p</i> -chloronitrobenzene     | (i) <i>p</i> -bromostyrene              |
| (c) <i>m</i> -bromobenzoic acid      | (j) 2,4-dibromobenzoic acid             |
| (d) <i>p</i> -bromobenzoic acid      | (k) <i>m</i> -bromotoluene              |
| (e) <i>m</i> -chlorobenzotrifluoride | (l) <i>p</i> -bromobenzenesulfonic acid |
| (f) 3,4-dibromonitrobenzene          | (m) <i>p</i> -chlorobenzyl alcohol      |
| (g) <i>p</i> -bromobenzal chloride   | (n) 2-( <i>p</i> -tolyl)propane         |

10. Halogen located at the 2- or 4-position of the aromatic heterocyclic compound pyridine (Sec. 35.6) is fairly reactive toward nucleophilic displacement. For example:

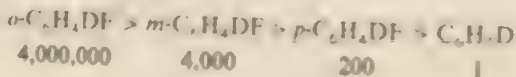


How do you account for the reactivity of these compounds? (Check your answer in Sec. 35.10.)

11. The insecticide called DDT, 1,1,1-trichloro-2,2-bis-(*p*-chlorophenyl)ethane, (*p*-ClC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CHCCl<sub>3</sub>, is manufactured by the reaction between chlorobenzene and trichloroacetaldehyde in the presence of sulfuric acid. Outline the series of steps by which this synthesis most probably takes place, make sure you show the function of the H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. Label each step according to its fundamental reaction type.

12. In the Dow process for the manufacture of phenol, two by-products are diphenyl ether and *p*-phenylphenol. It has been suggested that these two compounds are formed via the same intermediate. How might this happen?

13. In KNH<sub>2</sub>/NH<sub>3</sub>, protium-deuterium exchange takes place at the following relative rates:



How do you account for this sequence of reactivity?

14. Reduction of 2,6-dibromobenzediazonium chloride which would be expected to give *m*-dibromobenzene, actually yields, chiefly *m*-bromochlorobenzene. How do you account for this?

15. The reaction of 2,4-dinitrofluorobenzene with *N*-methylaniline to give *N*-methyl-2,4-dinitrodiphenylamine is catalyzed by weak bases like acetate ion. The reaction of the corresponding bromo compound is faster, and is not catalyzed by bases. How do you account for these observations? (*Hint*: Examine in detail every step of the mechanism.)

16. (a) The labeled ether  $2,4(\text{NO}_2)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3^{18}\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5$  reacts more slowly than the unlabeled ether with the secondary amine piperidine (Sec. 35.12). How do you account for this?

(b) The isotope effect in part (a) becomes weaker as the piperidine concentration is raised. Account in detail for this observation. (*Hint*: See the preceding problem.)

17. The rate of reaction between *p*-fluoronitrobenzene and azide ion ( $\text{N}_3^-$ ) is affected markedly by the nature of the solvent. How do you account for the following relative rates: in methanol, 1; in formamide, 5.6; in *N*-methylformamide, 15.7; in dimethylformamide,  $2.4 \times 10^4$ .

18. The dry diazonium salt I was subjected to a flash discharge, and an especially



I

adapted mass spectrometer scanned the spectrum of the products at rapid intervals after the flash. After about 50 microseconds there appeared simultaneously masses 28, 44, and 76. As time passed (about 250 microseconds) mass 76 gradually disappeared and a peak at mass 152 approached maximum intensity.

(a) What are the peaks at 28, 44, and 76 due to? What happens as time passes, and what is the substance of mass 152? (b) From what compound was the diazonium salt I prepared?

19. When a trace of  $\text{KNH}_2$  is added to a solution of chlorobenzene and potassium triphenylmethide,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{C}^-\text{K}^+$ , in liquid ammonia, a rapid reaction takes place to yield a product of formula  $\text{C}_{25}\text{H}_{20}$ . What is the product? What is the role of  $\text{KNH}_2$ , and why is it needed?

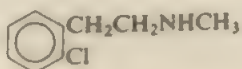
20. How do you account for each of the following observations?

(a) When *p*-iodotoluene is treated with aqueous  $\text{NaOH}$  at  $340^\circ$ , there is obtained a mixture of *p*-cresol (51%) and *m*-cresol (49%). At  $250^\circ$ , reaction is, of course, slower, and yields only *p*-cresol.

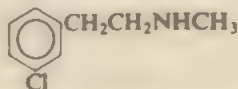
(b) When diazotized 4-nitro-2-aminobenzoic acid is heated in *tert*-butyl alcohol, there is obtained carbon dioxide, nitrogen, and a mixture of *m*- and *p*-nitrophenyl *tert*-butyl ethers.

(c) When *o*-chlorobenzoic acid is treated with  $\text{NaNH}_2/\text{NH}_3$  in the presence of acetonitrile ( $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$ ) there is obtained a 70% yield of  $m\text{-HOOC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$  and 10–20% of a 1:2 mixture of *o*- and *m*-aminobenzoic acids.

21. When either II or III is treated with  $\text{KN}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2/\text{HN}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ , there is obtained in



II

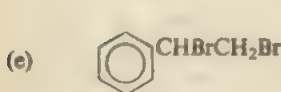


III

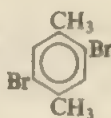
good yield the same product, of formula  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{11}\text{N}$ . What is the product, and how is it formed?

22. An unknown compound is believed to be one of the following. Describe how you would go about finding out which of the possibilities the unknown actually is. Where possible use simple chemical tests; where necessary use more elaborate chemical methods like quantitative hydrogenation, cleavage, etc. Where necessary, make use of Table 19.1, p. 776.

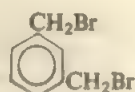
- (a)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHBr}$  (b.p.  $221^\circ$ ),  $o\text{-C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Br}_2$  (b.p.  $221^\circ$ ),  $\text{BrCH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$  (b.p.  $224^\circ$ )  
 (b)  $o\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Br}$  (b.p.  $182^\circ$ ),  $m\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Br}$  (b.p.  $184^\circ$ ),  $p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Br}$  (b.p.  $185^\circ$ )  
 (c)  $o\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$  (b.p.  $178^\circ$ ),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$  (b.p.  $179^\circ$ ),  $o\text{-C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Cl}_2$  (b.p.  $180^\circ$ )  
 (d)  $\text{ClCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  (b.p.  $129^\circ$ ), 4-octyne (b.p.  $131^\circ$ ), isopentyl alcohol (b.p.  $132^\circ$ ),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$  (b.p.  $132^\circ$ ), ethylcyclohexane (b.p.  $132^\circ$ ), 1-chlorohexane (b.p.  $134^\circ$ )



(m.p.  $73^\circ$ )

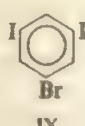
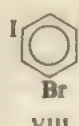
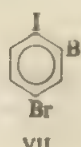
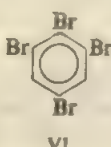
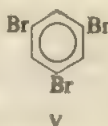
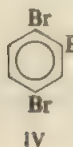


(m.p.  $74^\circ$ )



(m.p.  $76^\circ$ )

23. In studying the *base-catalyzed halogen dance*, Bunnett has made the following observations. When IV is treated with  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHK}/\text{NH}_3$ , it is isomerized to V. There is



found, in addition, VI, *m*- and *p*-dibromobenzenes, and unconsumed IV. Similar treatment of VII gives chiefly VII, along with IX, IV, and V. When IV labeled at the 1-position with radioactive bromine is allowed to react, the recovered IV had the label statistically distributed among all three positions.

(a) Bunnett first considered a mechanism involving intermediate benzyne. Show how you could account for the above observations on this basis.

(b) When IV is allowed to isomerize in the presence of much KI, no iodobromobenzenes are found. On this and other grounds, Bunnett rejected the benzyne mechanism. Explain.

(c) From the isomerization of IV, some unconsumed IV is *always* obtained. Yet the reaction of V gives IV *only* if there is present a small amount of VI to start with. (This is a *real* effect; highly purified materials give the same results.) In the presence of a little VI, the same mixture (about 50, 50) of IV and V is formed whether one starts with IV or with V.

Suggest a complete mechanism for the base-catalyzed halogen dance, and show how it accounts for all the facts. It may help to go at the problem in this way. First, start with V and the base, in the presence of VI, and show how IV can be formed. Show how, under the same conditions, V can be formed from IV.

Next, start with *only* IV and base, and show how all the products are formed (V, VI, *m*- and *p*-dibromobenzenes), and account for the scrambling of the bromine label.

Finally, the hardest part: why must VI be added to bring about isomerization of V but not the isomerization of IV? (*Hint* Simply write for V equations analogous to those you have written for IV, and keep in mind Problem 13, p. 1016.)



## Carbanions II

### *Malonic Ester and Acetoacetic Ester Syntheses*

---

#### 26.1 Carbanions in organic synthesis

We have already seen something of the importance to organic synthesis of the formation of carbon-carbon bonds: it enables us to make big molecules out of little ones. In this process a key role is played by negatively charged carbon. Such *nucleophilic carbon* attacks carbon holding a good leaving group—in alkyl halides or sulfonates, usually—or carbonyl or acyl carbon. Through nucleophilic substitution or nucleophilic addition, a new carbon-carbon bond is formed.

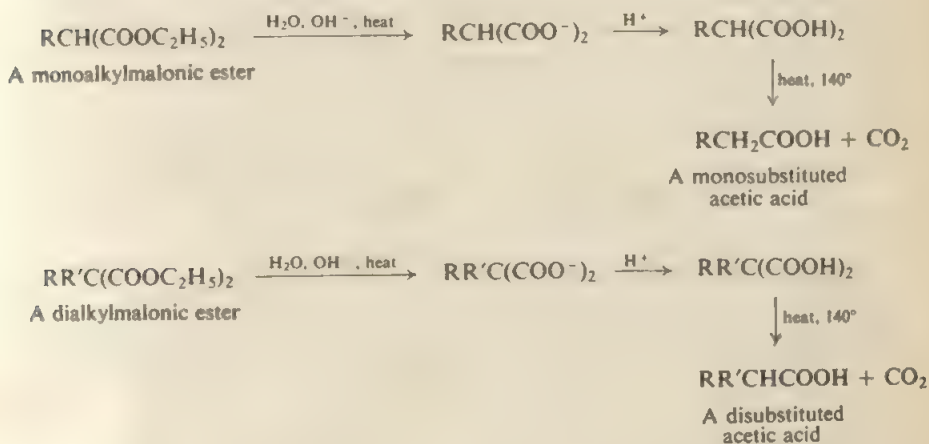
Nucleophilic carbon is of two general kinds. (a) There are the carbanion-like groups in organometallic compounds, usually generated through reaction of an organic halide with a metal: Grignard and organocopper reagents, for example; the organozinc compounds that are intermediates in the Reformatsky reaction. (b) There are the more nearly full-fledged carbanions generated through abstraction of  $\alpha$ -hydrogens by base, as in the aldol and Claisen condensations and their relatives.

The difference between these two kinds of carbon is one of degree, not kind. There is interaction just how much depending on the metal and the solvent— even between electropositive ions like sodium or potassium or lithium and the anion from carbonyl compounds. These intermediates, too, could be called organometallic compounds; the bonding is simply more ionic than that in, say, a Grignard reagent.

In this chapter we shall continue with our study of carbanion chemistry, with emphasis on the attachment of alkyl groups to the  $\alpha$ -carbons of carbonyl and acyl compounds. Such *alkylation* reactions owe their great importance to the special nature of the carbonyl group, and in two ways. First, the carbonyl group makes  $\alpha$ -hydrogens acidic, so that alkylation can take place. Next, the products obtained still contain the carbonyl group and hence are highly reactive; they are ideal intermediates for *further* molecule-building.

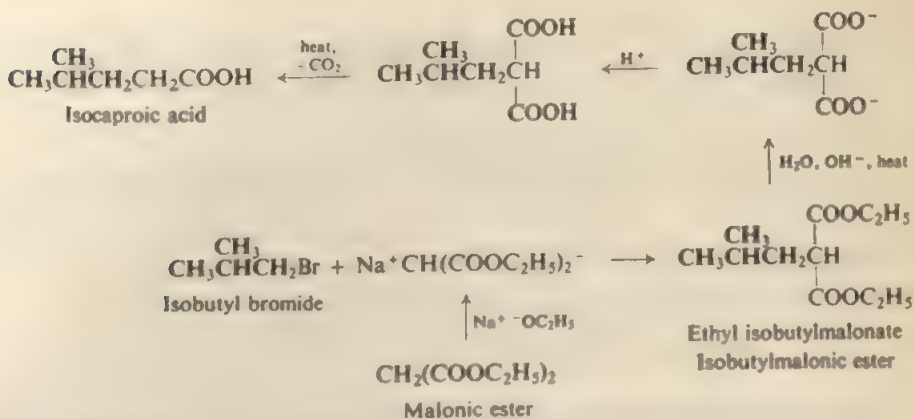


point, malonic acid readily loses carbon dioxide to form acetic acid; in a similar way substituted malonic acids readily lose carbon dioxide to form substituted acetic acids. The monoalkyl- and dialkylmalonic esters we have prepared are readily converted into monocarboxylic acids by hydrolysis, acidification, and heat:

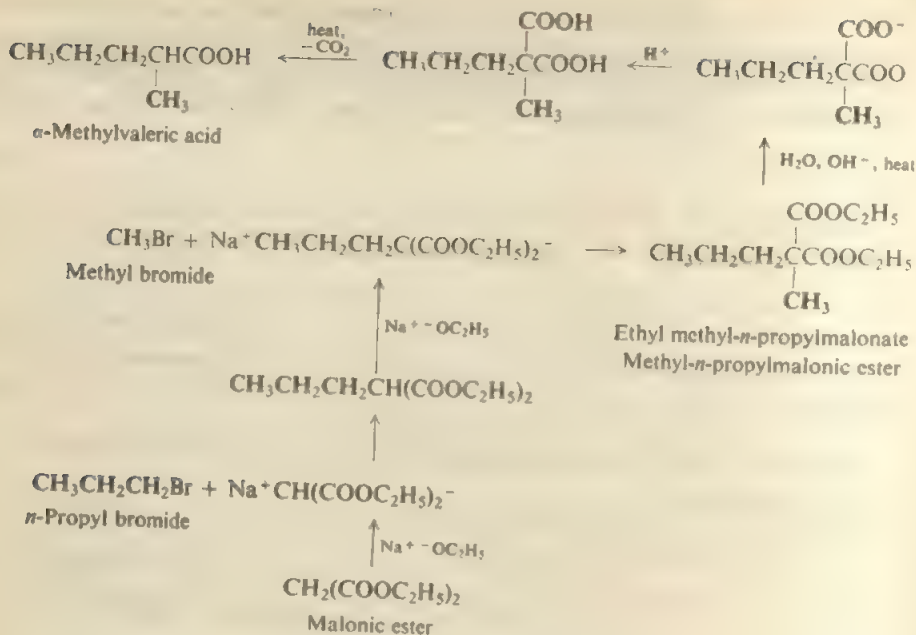


*A malonic ester synthesis yields an acetic acid in which one or two hydrogens have been replaced by alkyl groups.*

In planning a malonic ester synthesis, our problem is to select the proper alkyl halide or halides; to do this, we have only to look at the structure of the acid we want. Isocaproic acid, for example,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ , can be considered as acetic acid in which one hydrogen has been replaced by an isobutyl group. To prepare this acid by the malonic ester synthesis, we would have to use isobutyl bromide as the alkylating agent:

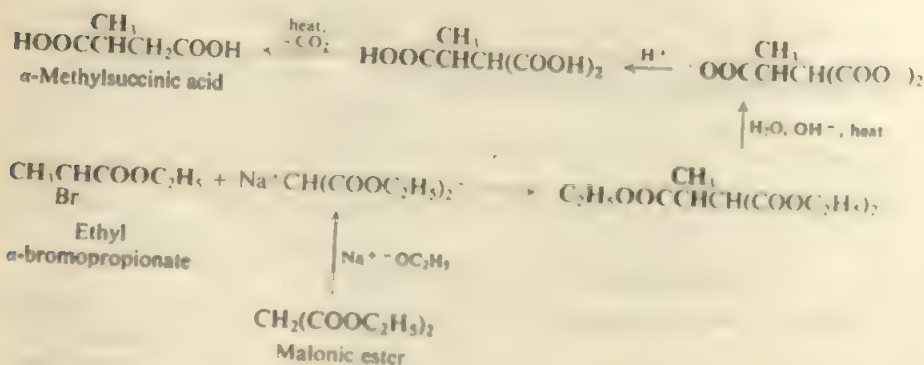


An isomer of isocaproic acid,  $\alpha$ -methylvaleric acid,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{COOH}$ , can be considered as acetic acid in which one hydrogen has been replaced by a *n*-propyl group and a second hydrogen has been replaced by a methyl group; we must therefore use two alkyl halides, *n*-propyl bromide and methyl bromide.



The basic malonic ester synthesis we have outlined can be modified. Often one can advantageously use: different bases as, for example, potassium *tert*-butoxide; alkyl sulfonates instead of halides; polar aprotic solvents like DMSO or DMF (Sec. 1.22).

In place of simple alkyl halides, certain other halogen-containing compounds may be used, in particular the readily available  $\alpha$ -bromo esters (why can  $\alpha$ -bromo acids not be used?), which yield substituted succinic acids by the malonic ester synthesis. For example:



**Problem 26.1** Outline the synthesis of each of the following compounds from malonic ester and alcohols of four carbons or fewer

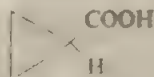
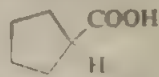
- the isomeric acids, *n*-valeric, isovaleric, and  $\gamma$ -methylbutyric (Why can the malonic ester synthesis not be used for the preparation of trimethylacetic acid?)
- leucine ( $\alpha$ -amino isocaproic acid)
- isoleucine ( $\alpha$ -amino  $\beta$ -methylvaleric acid)



**Problem 26.2** *Adipic acid* is obtained from a malonic ester synthesis in which the first step is addition of one mole of ethylene bromide to a large excess of sodiummalonic ester in alcohol. *Cyclopropanecarboxylic acid* is the final product of a malonic ester synthesis in which the first step is addition of one mole of sodiummalonic ester to two moles of ethylene bromide followed by addition of one mole of sodium ethoxide.



Adipic acid

Cyclopropane-  
carboxylic acidCyclopentane-  
carboxylic acid

(a) Account for the difference in the products obtained in the two syntheses. (b) Tell exactly how you would go about synthesizing *cyclopentanecarboxylic acid*.

**Problem 26.3** (a) Malonic ester reacts with benzaldehyde in the presence of piperidine (a secondary amine, Sec. 35.12) to yield a product of formula  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_4$ . What is this compound, and how is it formed? (This is an example of the **Knoevenagel reaction**. Check your answer in Problem 21.22 (f), p. 873.) (b) What compound would be obtained if the product of (a) were subjected to the sequence of hydrolysis, acidification, and heating? (c) What is another way to synthesize the product of (b)?

**Problem 26.4** (a) Cyclohexanone reacts with cyanoacetic ester (ethyl cyanoacetate,  $\text{N}\equiv\text{CCH}_2\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ ) in the presence of ammonium acetate to yield a product of formula  $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{15}\text{O}_2\text{N}$ . What is this compound, and how is it formed? (This is an example of the **Cope reaction**. Check your answer in Problem 21.22 (g), p. 873.) (b) What compound would be formed from the product of (a) by the sequence of hydrolysis, acidification, and heating?

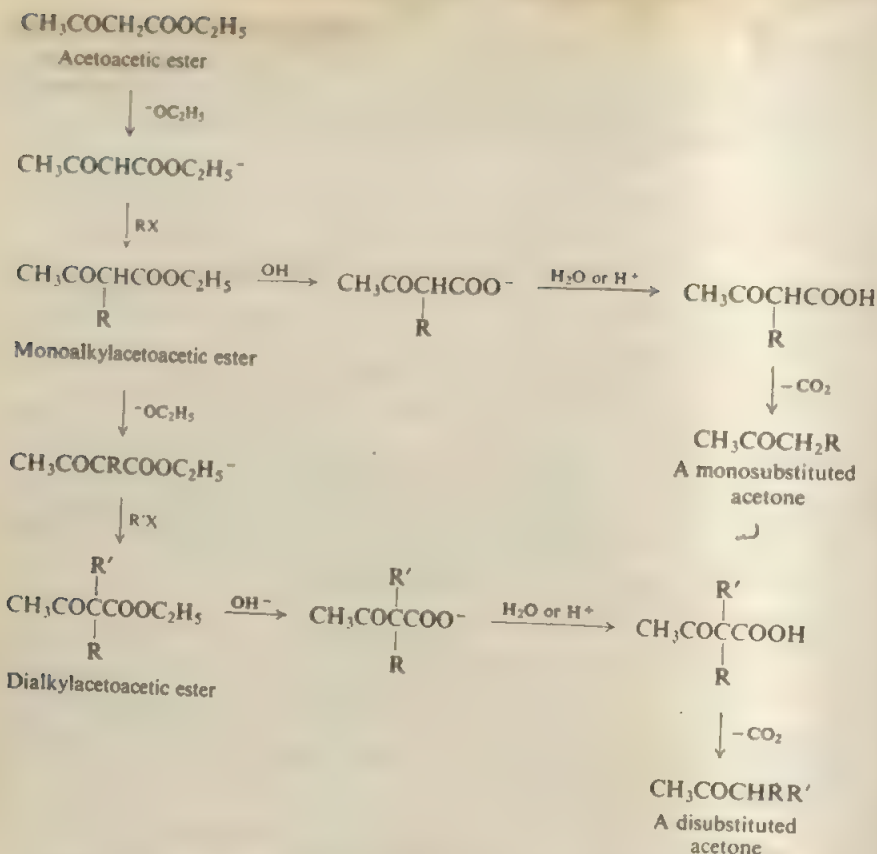
**Problem 26.5** In an example of the **Michael condensation**, malonic ester reacts with ethyl 2-butenate in the presence of sodium ethoxide to yield A, of formula  $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}_6$ . The sequence of hydrolysis, acidification, and heating converts A into 3-methylpentanedioic acid. What is A, and how is it formed? (Hint: See Sec. 9.26. Check your answer in Sec. 32.7.)

## 26.3 Acetoacetic ester synthesis of ketones.

One of the most valuable methods of preparing ketones makes use of ethyl acetoacetate (*acetoacetic ester*),  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ , and is called the **acetoacetic ester synthesis of ketones**. This synthesis closely parallels the malonic ester synthesis of carboxylic acids.

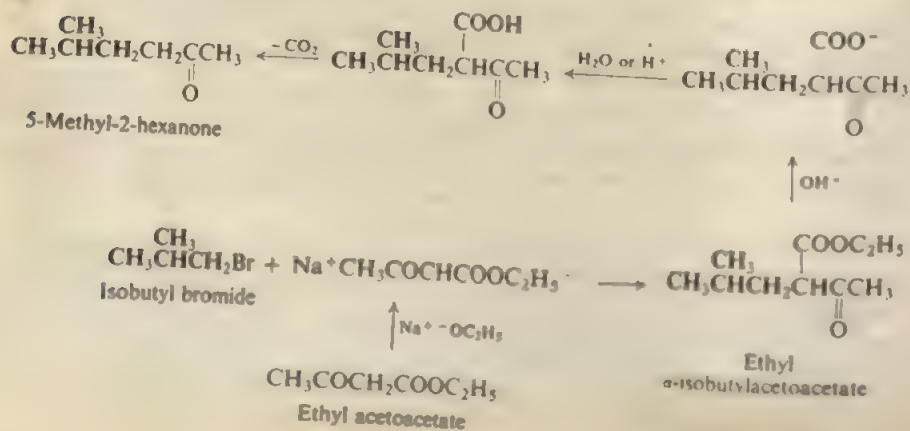
Acetoacetic ester is converted by sodium ethoxide into the sodioacetoacetic ester, which is then allowed to react with an alkyl halide to form an alkylacetoacetic ester (an ethyl alkylacetoacetate),  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCHR}'\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ ; if desired, the alkylation can be repeated to yield a dialkylacetoacetic ester,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCRR}'\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ . All alkylations are conducted in absolute alcohol.

When hydrolyzed by dilute aqueous alkali (or by acid), these monoalkyl- or dialkylacetoacetic esters yield the corresponding acids,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCHR}'\text{COOH}$  or  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCRR}'\text{COOH}$ , which undergo decarboxylation to form ketones,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{R}$  or  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCHRR}'$ . This loss of carbon dioxide occurs even more readily than from malonic acid, and may even take place before acidification of the hydrolysis mixture.

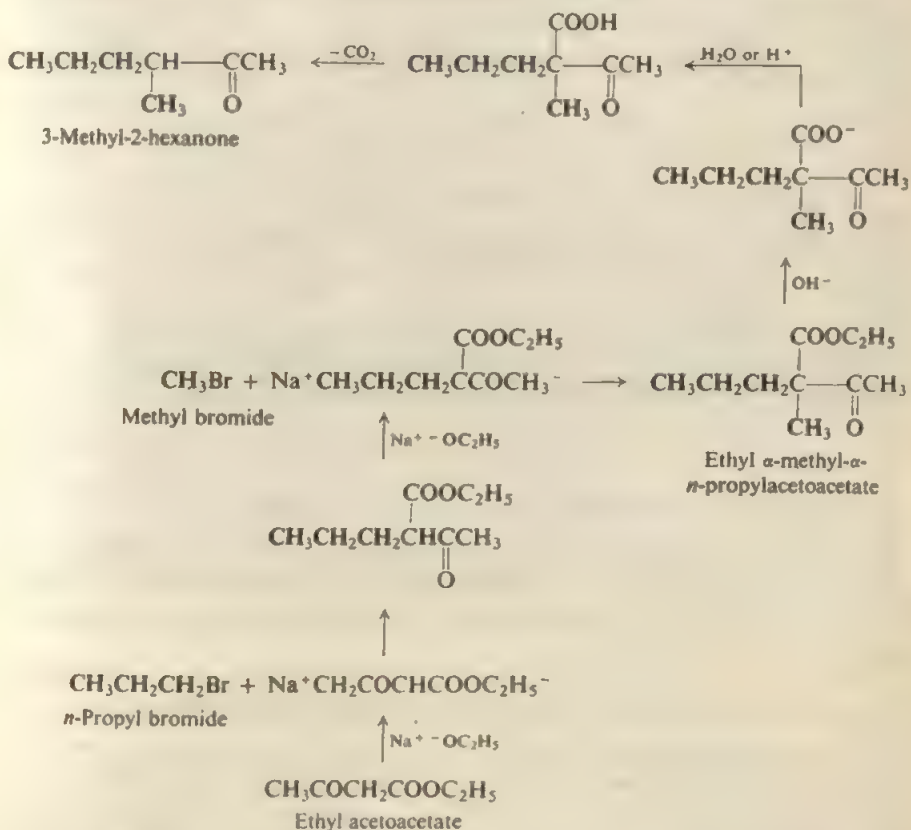


The acetoacetic ester synthesis of ketones yields an acetone molecule in which one or two hydrogens have been replaced by alkyl groups.

In planning an acetoacetic ester synthesis, as in planning a malonic ester synthesis, our problem is to select the proper alkyl halide or halides. To do this, we have only to look at the structure of the ketone we want. For example, 5-methyl-2-hexanone can be considered as acetone in which one hydrogen has been replaced by an isobutyl group. In order to prepare this ketone by the acetoacetic ester synthesis, we would have to use isobutyl bromide as the alkylating agent:



The isomeric ketone 3-methyl-2-hexanone can be considered as acetone in which one hydrogen has been replaced by a *n*-propyl group and a second hydrogen (on the same carbon) has been replaced by a methyl group; we must therefore use two alkyl halides, *n*-propyl bromide and methyl bromide:



Like the malonic ester synthesis, this synthesis, too, can be modified by changes in the base, solvent, and alkylating agent.

**Problem 26.6** To what general class does the reaction between sodioacetoacetic ester and an alkyl halide belong? Predict the relative yields using primary, secondary, and tertiary halides. Can aryl halides be used?

**Problem 26.7** (a) Predict the product of the acetoacetic ester synthesis in which ethyl bromoacetate (why not bromoacetic acid?) is used as the halide. To what general class of compounds does this product belong? (b) Predict the product of the acetoacetic ester synthesis in which benzoyl chloride is used as the halide. In which chloroacetone is used as the halide. To what general classes of compounds do these products belong?

**Problem 26.8** Outline the synthesis of each of the following compounds from acetoacetic ester, benzene, and alcohols of four carbons or fewer.

(a)–(c) the isomeric ketones:

methyl *n*-butyl ketone (2-hexanone)

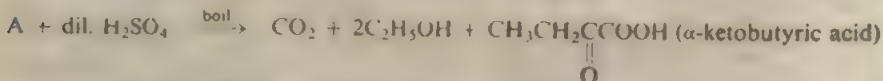
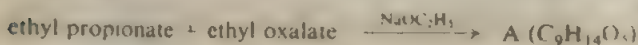
**methyl isobutyl ketone (4-methyl-2-pentanone)**

methyl sec-butyl ketone (3-methyl 2-pentanone)

(d) Why can the acetoacetic ester synthesis not be used for the preparation of methyl *tert*-butyl ketone?

- (e) 2,4-pentanedione (*acetylacetone*)
- (f) 2,5-hexanedione (*acetonylacetone*)
- (g) 1-phenyl-1,4-pentanedione

**Problem 26.9** The best general preparation of  $\alpha$ -keto acids is illustrated by the sequence:



What familiar reactions are involved? What is the structure of A?

**Problem 26.10** Outline the synthesis from simple esters of:

- (a)  $\alpha$ -ketoisocaproic acid
- (b)  $\alpha$ -keto- $\beta$ -phenylpropionic acid
- (c)  $\alpha$ -ketoglutaric acid
- (d) *leucine* ( $\alpha$ -aminoisocaproic acid). (*Hint*: See Sec. 22.11.)
- (e) *glutamic acid* ( $\alpha$ -aminoglutaric acid)

## 26.4 Decarboxylation of $\beta$ -keto acids and malonic acids

The acetoacetic ester synthesis thus depends on (a) the high acidity of the  $\alpha$ -hydrogens of  $\beta$ -keto esters, and (b) the extreme ease with which  $\beta$ -keto acids undergo decarboxylation. These properties are exactly parallel to those on which the malonic ester synthesis depends.

We have seen that the higher acidity of the  $\alpha$ -hydrogens is due to the ability of the keto group to help accommodate the negative charge of the acetoacetic ester anion. The ease of decarboxylation is, in part, due to *exactly the same factor* (So, too, is the occurrence of the Claisen condensation, by which the acetoacetic ester is made in the first place.)

Decarboxylation of  $\beta$ -keto acids involves both the free acid and the carboxylate ion. Loss of carbon dioxide from the anion



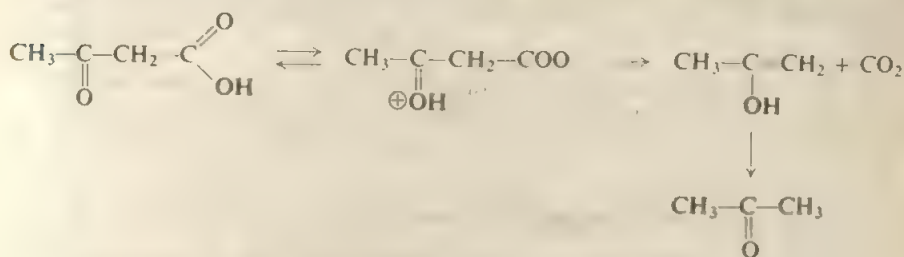
yields the carbanion I. This carbanion is formed faster than the simple carbanion ( $\text{R}^-$ ) that would be formed from a simple carboxylate ion ( $\text{RCOO}^-$ ) because it is more stable. It is more stable, of course, due to the accommodation of the negative charge by the keto group

**Problem 26.11** Decarboxylation of malonic acid involves both the free acid and the monoanion but not the doubly-charged anion. (a) Account for the ease of decarboxylation of the monoanion. Which end loses carbon dioxide? (b) How do you account for the lack of reactivity of the doubly-charged anion? (*Hint*: See Sec. 19.20.)

**Problem 26.12** In contrast to most carboxylic acids (benzoic acid, say) 2,4,6-trimethylbenzoic acid is decarboxylated extremely easily by simply boiling it in aqueous acid. How do you account for this?



Decarboxylation of free acetoacetic acid involves transfer of the acidic hydrogen to the keto group, either *prior to* (as shown here) or *simultaneously with*



loss of carbon dioxide. We are quite familiar with the function of protonation to reduce the basicity of a leaving group.

**Problem 26.13** When dimethylacetoacetic acid is decarboxylated in the presence of iodine or bromine, there is obtained an iododimethylacetone or a bromodimethylacetone (3-halo-3-methyl-2-butanone), although under these conditions neither iodine nor bromine reacts significantly with the dimethylacetone. What bearing does this experiment have on the mechanism of decarboxylation?

**Problem 26.14** Suggest a mechanism for the decarboxylation of free malonic acid.

**Problem 26.15** Account for the comparative ease with which phenylpropionic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ , undergoes decarboxylation in alkaline solution.

## 26.5 Direct and indirect alkylation of esters and ketones

By the malonic ester and acetoacetic ester we make  $\alpha$ -substituted acids and  $\alpha$ -substituted ketones. But why not do the job *directly*? Why not convert simple acids (or esters) and ketones into their carbanions, and allow these to react with alkyl halides? There are a number of obstacles: (a) self-condensation—aldol condensation, for example, of ketones; (b) polyalkylation; and (c) for unsymmetrical ketones, alkylation at *both*  $\alpha$ -carbons, or at the wrong one. Consider self-condensation. A carbanion can be generated from, say, a simple ketone; but competing with attack on an alkyl halide is attack at the carbonyl carbon of another ketone molecule. What is needed is a base-solvent combination that can convert the ketone *rapidly* and essentially *completely* into the carbanion before appreciable self-condensation can occur. Steps toward solving this problem have been taken, and there are available methods—so far, of limited applicability—for the direct alkylation of acids and ketones.

A tremendous amount of work has gone into the development of alternatives to direct alkylation. Another group is introduced temporarily to do one or more of these things: increase the acidity of the  $\alpha$ -hydrogens, prevent self-condensation, and direct alkylation to a specific position. The malonic ester and acetoacetic ester syntheses are, of course, typical of this approach. In the acetoacetic ester synthesis, for example, the carbethoxy group,  $-\text{COOEt}$ , enhances the acidity of  $\alpha$ -hydrogens, but only those on one particular  $\alpha$ -carbon, so that alkylation will take place there. Then, when alkylation is over, the carbethoxy group is easily removed by hydrolysis and decarboxylation.



**Problem 26.17** (a) Give structural formulas of compounds A and B.

Oxazoline I ( $R = H$ ) +  $n\text{-BuLi}$ , then  $\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{CHO} \longrightarrow \text{A}$

$$A + \text{EtOH}, \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 \longrightarrow \text{B} (\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}_3)$$

(b) Outline all steps in the synthesis of ethyl 3-(*n*-propyl)-3-hydroxyhexanoate. (c) Of ethyl 2-ethyl-3-phenyl-3-hydroxypropanoate.

**Problem 26.18** (a) Give structural formulas of compounds C-E.

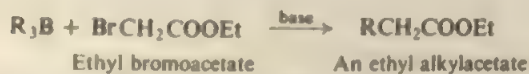
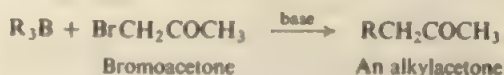
$$\text{4-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylic acid} + (\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{NH}_2)\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \longrightarrow \text{C}(\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{19}\text{O}_2\text{N})$$
$$C + \text{CrO}_3/\text{pyridine} \longrightarrow D (\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{17}\text{O}_2\text{N})$$
$$\text{D} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{MgBr, then C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH, H}_2\text{SO}_4 \longrightarrow \text{E (C}_{15}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}_2)$$

(b) Using benzene, toluene, and any needed aliphatic and inorganic reagents, how would you make  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ ? (Hint: See Sec. 20.10.) (c) Now, how would you make  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)=\text{CHCH}_2\text{COOH}$ ? (d) Outline a possible synthesis of  $p\text{-CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CHOHC}_6\text{H}_4\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ . (e) Of  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHOHC}_6\text{H}_4\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ - $p$ .

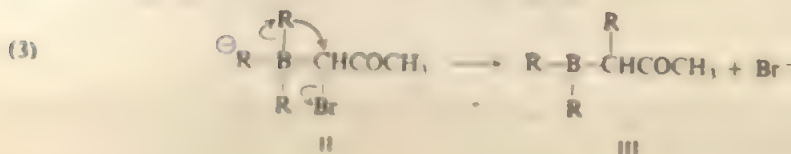
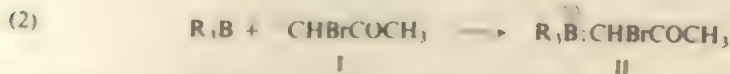
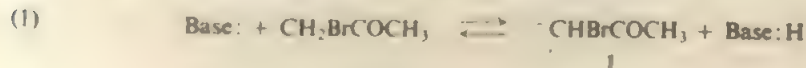
## 26.7 Organoborane synthesis of acids and ketones

Hydroboration of alkenes yields alkylboranes, and these, we have seen (Sec. 10.8), can be converted through oxidation into alcohols. But oxidation is only one of many reactions undergone by alkylboranes. Since the discovery of hydroboration in 1957, H. C. Brown and his co-workers (p. 471) have shown that alkylboranes are perhaps the most versatile class of organic reagents known.

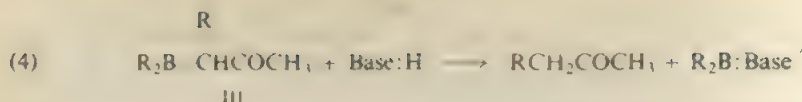
In the presence of base, alkylboranes react with bromoacetone to yield alkylacetones, and with ethyl bromoacetate to yield ethyl alkylacetates.



The following mechanism has been postulated, illustrated\* for reaction with bromoacetone. Base abstracts (1) a proton—one that is *alpha* both to the carbonyl group and to bromine—to give the carbanion I. Being a strong base, carbanion I







combines (2) with the (Lewis) acidic alkylborane to give II. Intermediate II now rearranges (3) with loss of halide ion to form III. Finally, III undergoes (4) protonolysis (a Lowry-Brønsted acid-base reaction this time) to yield the alkylated ketone.

The key step is (3), in which a new carbon-carbon bond is formed. In II, boron carries a negative charge. Made mobile by this negative charge, and attracted by the adjacent carbon holding a good leaving group, an alkyl group migrates to this carbon—taking its electrons along—and displaces the weakly basic halide ion.

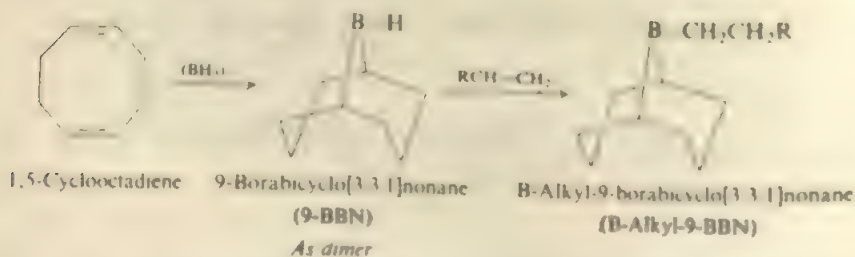
We have, then, three acid-base reactions and a 1,2-alkyl shift: all familiar reaction types. Step (1) involves formation of a carbanion; step (3) involves intramolecular nucleophilic ( $S_N2$ ) attack by a carbanion-like alkyl group; and step (4) involves attachment of a proton to a carbanion or a carbanion-like moiety.

Protonolysis of alkylboranes is much more difficult than protonolysis of, say, Grignard reagents. The course of reaction (4) is evidently not equilibrium-controlled, but rate-controlled: it is not the stronger base,  $\text{R}^-$ , that gets the proton, but instead the resonance-stabilized carbanion  $[\text{RCHCOCH}_3]^-$ .

**Problem 26.19** Trialkylboranes are inert to water, but are particularly prone to protonolysis by carboxylic acids. Can you suggest a specific mechanism for protonolysis of  $\text{R}_3\text{B}$  by a carboxylic acid?

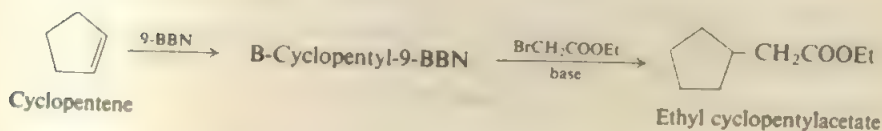
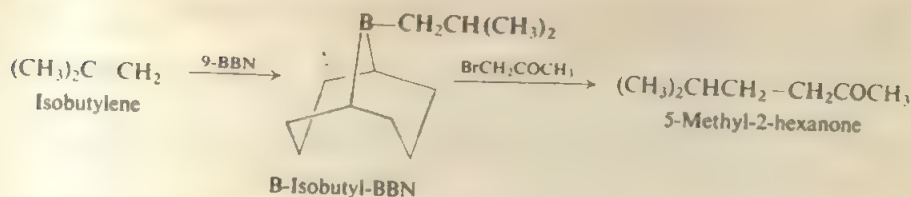
As a synthetic route, this organoborane synthesis parallels the acetoacetic ester and malonic ester syntheses. An acetone unit is furnished by acetoacetic ester or, here, by bromoacetone; an acetic acid unit is furnished by malonic ester or, here, by bromoacetic ester. In these syntheses, bromine plays the same part that the  $-\text{COOEt}$  group did: by increasing the acidity of certain  $\alpha$ -hydrogens, it determines *where* in the molecule reaction will take place; it is easily lost from the molecule when its job is done. Unlike the loss of  $-\text{COOEt}$ , the departure of  $-\text{Br}$  is an integral part of the alkylation process.

Consistently high yields depend on the proper selection of reagents. In general, the best base is the bulky potassium 2,6-di-*tert*-butylphenoxide. The best alkylating agent is B-alkyl-9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane, or "B-alkyl-9-BBN," available via successive hydroborations of alkenes:



The overall sequence thus amounts to the conversion of alkenes into ketones and esters. For example:





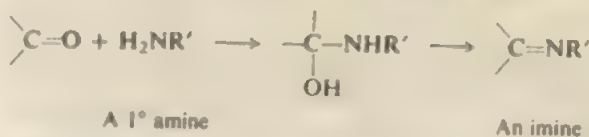
Besides bromoacetone, other bromomethyl ketones ( $\text{BrCH}_2\text{COR}$ ) can be used if they are available. Bromination is best carried out with cupric bromide as the reagent, and on ketones in which R contains no  $\alpha$ -hydrogens to compete with those on methyl: acetophenone, for example, or methyl *tert*-butyl ketone.

**Problem 26.20** Using 9-BBN plus any alkenes and unhalogenated acids or ketones, outline all steps in the synthesis of:

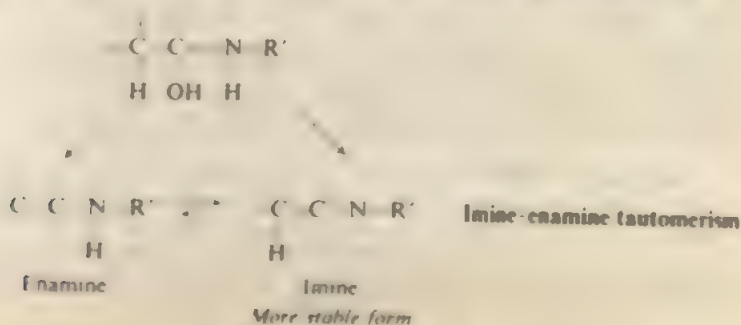
- 2-heptanone
- 4-methylpentanoic acid
- 4-methyl-2-hexanone
- 1-cyclohexyl-2-propanone
- ethyl (*trans*-2-methylcyclopentyl) acetate
- 1-phenyl-4-methyl-1-pentanone
- 1-cyclopentyl-3,3-dimethyl-2-butanone

## 26.8 Alkylation of carbonyl compounds via enamines

As we might expect, amines react with carbonyl compounds by nucleophilic addition. If the amine is *primary*, the initial addition product undergoes dehydration (compare Sec. 18.13) to form a compound containing a carbon-nitrogen double bond, an *imine*. Elimination occurs with this orientation even if the carbonyl compound contains an  $\alpha$ -hydrogen: that is, the preferred product is the imine rather than the *enamine* (*ene* for the carbon-carbon double bond, *amine* for the



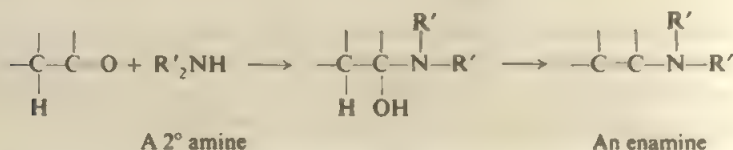
bond, an *imine*. Elimination occurs with this orientation even if the carbonyl compound contains an  $\alpha$ -hydrogen: that is, the preferred product is the imine rather than the *enamine* (*ene* for the carbon-carbon double bond, *amine* for the



amino group). If some enamine should be formed initially, it rapidly tautomerizes into the more stable imino form.

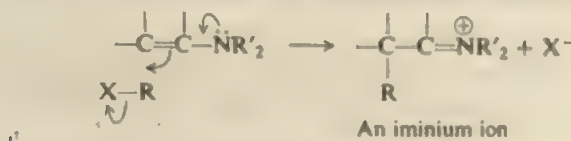
The system is strictly analogous to the keto-enol one (Secs. 13.10 and 21.4). The proton is acidic, and therefore separates fairly readily from the hybrid anion; it can return to either carbon or nitrogen, but when it returns to carbon, it tends to stay there. Equilibrium favors formation of the weaker acid.

Now, a secondary amine, too, can react with a carbonyl compound, and to yield the same kind of initial product. But here there is no hydrogen left on nitrogen; if dehydration is to occur, it must be in the other direction, to form a carbon-carbon double bond. A stable enamine is the product.

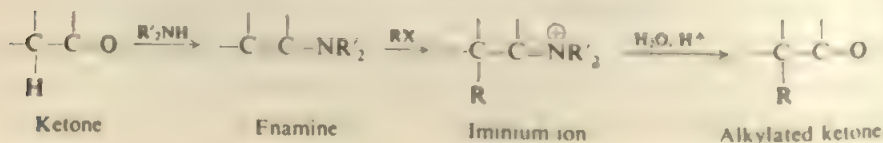


In 1954 Gilbert Stork (of Columbia University) showed how enamines could be used in the alkylation and acylation of aldehydes and ketones, and in the years since then enamines have been intensively studied and used in organic synthesis in a wide variety of ways. All we can do here is to try to understand a little of the basic chemistry underlying the use of enamines.

The usefulness of enamines stems from the fact that they contain *nucleophilic carbon*. The electrons responsible for this nucleophilicity are, in the final analysis, the (formally) unshared pair on nitrogen; but they are available for nucleophilic attack by carbon of the enamine. Thus, in alkylation:



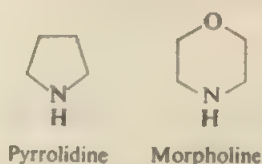
The product of alkylation is an iminium ion, which is readily hydrolyzed to regenerate the carbonyl group. The overall process, then, is:



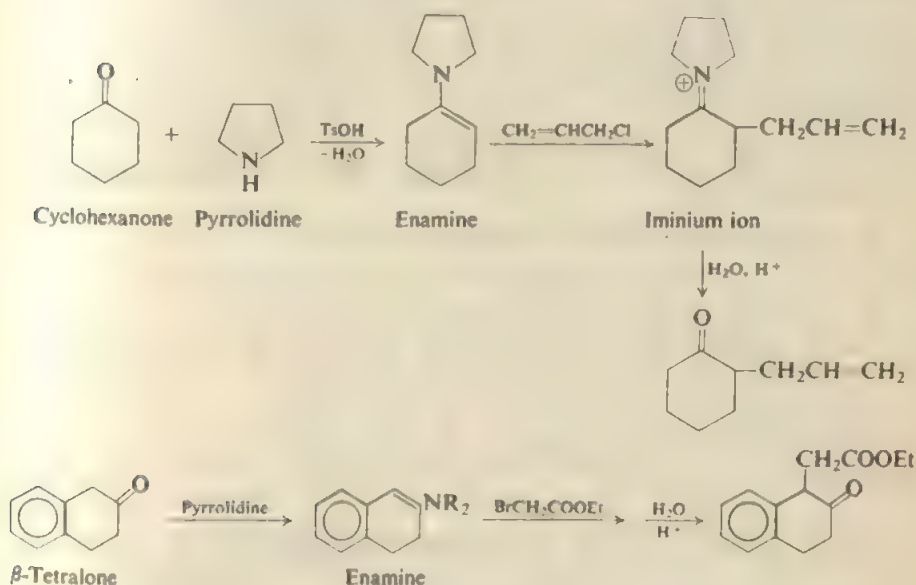
(In enamines the nitrogen, too, is nucleophilic, but attack there, which yields quaternary ammonium ions, is generally an unwanted side-reaction. Heating often converts N-alkylated compounds into the desired C-alkylated products.)

Nitrogen in enamines plays the same role it does in the chemistry of aromatic amines—not surprisingly, when we realize that enamines are, after all, *vinyl amines*. (Remember the similarities between vinyl and aryl halides.) For example, bromination of aniline involves, we say, electrophilic attack by bromine on the aromatic ring, but from the opposite, and equally valid, point of view, it involves nucleophilic attack on bromine by carbons of the ring—with nitrogen furnishing the electrons.

Commonly used secondary amines are the heterocyclic compounds *pyrrolidine* and *morpholine*:

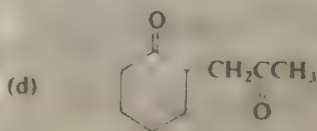
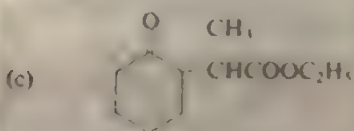


Best yields are obtained with reactive halides like benzyl and allyl halides,  $\alpha$ -halo esters, and  $\alpha$ -halo ketones. For example:



**Problem 26.21** Outline all steps in the preparation of each of the following by the enamine synthesis:

- (a) 2-benzylcyclohexanone  
(b) 2,2-dimethyl-4-pentenal



- (e) 2-(2,4-dinitrophenyl)cyclohexanone  
(f) 2,2-dimethyl-3-oxobutanal,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COC}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHO}$

**Problem 26.22** Give structural formulas of compounds A-F.

- (a) cyclopentanone + morpholine, then  $\text{TsOH} \rightarrow \text{A} (\text{C}_9\text{H}_{13}\text{ON})$   
 $\text{A} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHO}$ , then  $\text{H}_2\text{O, H}^+ \rightarrow \text{B} (\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{17}\text{O})$   
 (b) isobutyraldehyde + *tert*-butylamine  $\rightarrow \text{C} (\text{C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{N})$   
 $\text{C} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{MgBr} \rightarrow \text{D} (\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{19}\text{NMgBr}) + \text{E}$   
 $\text{D} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ , then  $\text{H}_2\text{O, H}^+ \rightarrow \text{F} (\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{14}\text{O})$

## PROBLEMS

1. Outline the synthesis of each of the following from malonic ester and any other reagents:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) <i>n</i> -caproic acid               | (f) dibenzylacetic acid                   |
| (b) isobutyric acid                      | (g) $\alpha,\beta$ -dimethylsuccinic acid |
| (c) $\beta$ -methylbutyric acid          | (h) glutaric acid                         |
| (d) $\alpha,\beta$ -dimethylbutyric acid | (i) cyclobutanecarboxylic acid            |
| (e) 2-ethylbutanoic acid                 |   |

2. Outline the synthesis of each of the following from acetoacetic ester and any other needed reagents. Do (j)–(m) after Problem 11, below.

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| (a) methyl ethyl ketone                       | (h) 3-methyl-2-hexanol          |
| (b) 3-ethyl-2-pentanone                       | (i) 2,5-dimethylheptane         |
| (c) 3-ethyl-2-hexanone                        | (j) $\beta$ -methylcaproic acid |
| (d) 5-methyl-2-heptanone                      | (k) $\beta$ -methylbutyric acid |
| (e) 3,6-dimethyl-2-heptanone                  | (l) methylsuccinic acid         |
| (f) 4-oxo-2-methylpentanoic acid              | (m) 2,5-hexanediol              |
| (g) $\gamma$ -hydroxy- <i>n</i> -valeric acid |                                 |

3. What product would you expect from the hydrolysis by dilute alkali of 2-carboethoxycyclopentanone (see Problem 21.30, p. 877)? Suggest a method of synthesis of 2-methylcyclopentanone.

4. Give structures of compounds A through J:

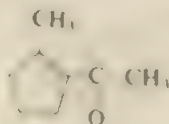
- (a) 1,3-dibromopropane + 2 mol sodiomalonic ester  $\longrightarrow$  A ( $C_{17}H_{28}O_8$ )  
 A + 2 mol sodium ethoxide, then  $CH_2I_2 \longrightarrow$  B ( $C_{18}H_{28}O_8$ )  
 B + OH<sup>-</sup>, heat; then H<sup>+</sup>; then heat  $\longrightarrow$  C ( $C_8H_{12}O_4$ )
- (b) ethylene bromide + 2 mol sodiomalonic ester  $\longrightarrow$  D ( $C_{16}H_{26}O_8$ )  
 D + 2 mol sodium ethoxide, then 1 mol ethylene bromide  $\longrightarrow$  E ( $C_{18}H_{28}O_8$ )  
 E + OH<sup>-</sup>, heat; then H<sup>+</sup>; then heat  $\longrightarrow$  F ( $C_8H_{12}O_4$ )
- (c) 2 mol sodiomalonic ester +  $I_2 \longrightarrow$  G ( $C_{14}H_{22}O_8$ ) + 2NaI  
 G + OH<sup>-</sup>, heat; then H<sup>+</sup>; then heat  $\longrightarrow$  H ( $C_4H_6O_4$ )
- (d) D + 2 mol sodium ethoxide, then  $I_2 \longrightarrow$  I ( $C_{16}H_{24}O_8$ )  
 I + OH<sup>-</sup>, heat; then H<sup>+</sup>; then heat  $\longrightarrow$  J ( $C_6H_8O_4$ )
- (e) Suggest a possible synthesis for 1,3-cyclopentanedicarboxylic acid, for 1,2-cyclopentanedicarboxylic acid; for 1,1-cyclopentanedicarboxylic acid.

5. Give structures of compounds K through O:

- allyl bromide + Mg  $\longrightarrow$  K ( $C_6H_{10}$ )  
 K + HBr  $\longrightarrow$  L ( $C_6H_{12}Br_2$ )  
 sodiomalonic ester + excess L  $\longrightarrow$  M ( $C_{13}H_{23}O_4Br$ )  
 M + sodium ethoxide  $\longrightarrow$  N ( $C_{13}H_{22}O_4$ )  
 N + OH<sup>-</sup>, heat; then H<sup>+</sup>; then heat  $\longrightarrow$  O ( $C_8H_{14}O_2$ )

6. When sodium trichloroacetate is heated in diglyme solution with alkenes, there are formed 1,1-dichlorocyclopropanes. How do you account for this?

7. (a) How could you synthesize 2,7-octanedione? (Hint: See Problem 26.2, p. 1023).  
 (b) Actually, the expected ketone reacts further to give



How does this last reaction occur? To what general types does it belong? (c) How could you synthesize 2,6-heptanedione? (d) What would happen to this ketone under the conditions of (b)?



8. Outline all steps in a possible synthesis of each of the following from simple esters:

- (a) 1,2-cyclopentanedione (*Hint*: See Problem 21.33, p. 878.)  
 (b)  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COCOOC}_2\text{H}_5$  (*Hint*: See Problem 26.9, p. 1026.)

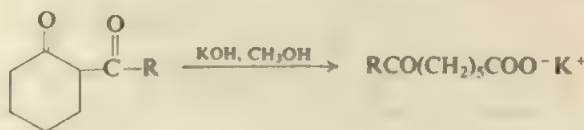
9. Outline the synthesis from readily available compounds of the following hypnotics (see Sec. 20.23):

- (a) 5,5-diethylbarbituric acid (Barbital, Veronal; long-acting)  
 (b) 5-allyl-5-(2-pentyl)barbituric acid (Seconal; short-acting)  
 (c) 5-ethyl-5-isopentylbarbituric acid (Amytal; intermediate length of action)

10. (a) Contrast the structures of barbituric acid and Veronal (5,5-diethylbarbituric acid). (b) Account for the appreciable acidity ( $K_a = 10^{-8}$ ) of Veronal.

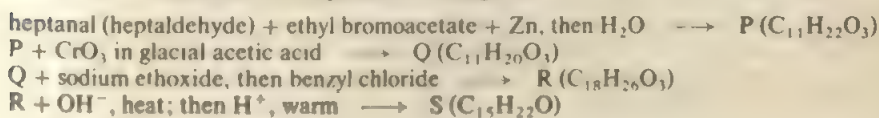
11. When treated with *concentrated* alkali, acetoacetic ester is converted into two moles of sodium acetate. (a) Outline all steps in a likely mechanism for this reaction. (*Hint*: See Sec. 21.11 and Sec. 7.28). (b) Substituted acetoacetic esters also undergo this reaction. Outline the steps in a general synthetic route from acetoacetic ester to carboxylic acids. (c) Outline the steps in the synthesis of 2-hexanone via acetoacetic ester. What acids will be formed as by-products? Outline a procedure for purification of the desired ketone. (Remember that the alkylation is carried out in alcohol; that NaBr is formed; that aqueous base is used for hydrolysis; and that ethyl alcohol is a product of the hydrolysis.)

12. (a) Suggest a mechanism for the alkaline cleavage of  $\beta$ -diketones, as, for example:



(b) Starting from cyclohexanone, and using any other needed reagents, outline all steps in a possible synthesis of 7-phenylheptanoic acid. (c) Of pentadecanedioic acid,  $\text{HOOC(CH}_2)_3\text{COOH}$ .

13. Give structures of compounds P through S:

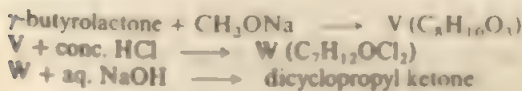


14. Treatment of 1,5-cyclooctadiene with diborane gives a material, T, which is oxidized by alkaline  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  to a mixture of 72% *cis*-1,5-cyclooctanediol and 28% *cis*-1,4-cyclooctanediol. If T is refluxed for an hour in THF solution (or simply distilled), there is obtained a white crystalline solid, U, which is oxidized to 99% pure *cis*-1,5-cyclooctanediol.

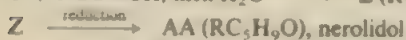
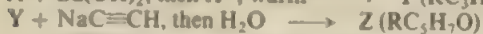
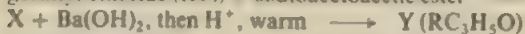
(a) What is T? What is U? (b) Account for the conversion of T into U

15. On treatment with concentrated KOH, 2,6-dichlorobenzaldehyde is converted into 1,3-dichlorobenzene and potassium formate. The kinetics shows that the aldehyde and two moles of hydroxide ion are in equilibrium with a reactive intermediate that (ultimately) yields product. (a) Outline a likely mechanism that is consistent with these facts (*Hint*: See Sec. 18.15). How do you account for the difference in behavior between this aldehyde and most aromatic aldehydes under these conditions?

16. Give structural formulas of compounds V and W, and tell *exactly* how each is formed:



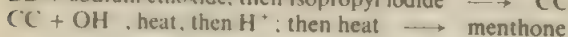
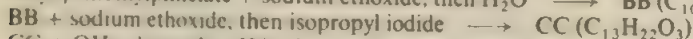
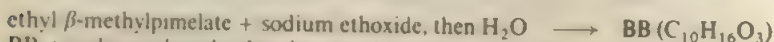
17. The structure of *nerolidol*,  $C_{15}H_{26}O$ , a terpene found in oil of neroli, was established by the following synthesis:



(a) Give the structure of nerolidol, using R for the geranyl group.

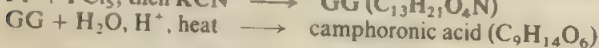
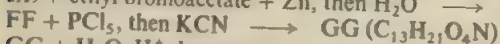
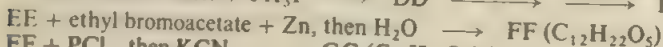
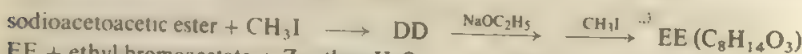
(b) Referring to Problem 23, p. 531, what is the complete structure of nerolidol?

18. The structure of *menthone*,  $C_{10}H_{18}O$ , a terpene found in peppermint oil, was first established by synthesis in the following way:



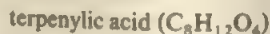
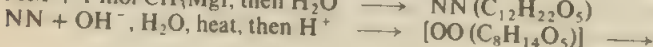
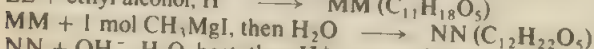
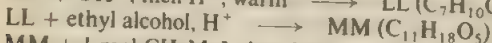
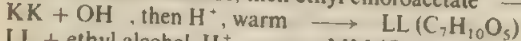
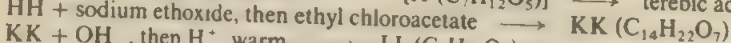
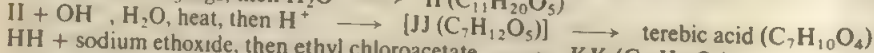
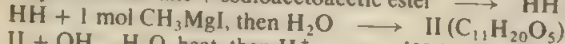
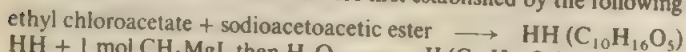
(a) What structures for menthone are consistent with this synthesis? (b) On the basis of the isoprene rule (Sec. 9.33) which structure is the more likely? (c) On vigorous reduction menthone yields *p*-menthane, 4-isopropyl-1-methylcyclohexane. Now what structure or structures are most likely for menthone?

19. The structure of *camphoronic acid* (a degradation product of the terpene camphor) was established by the following synthesis:



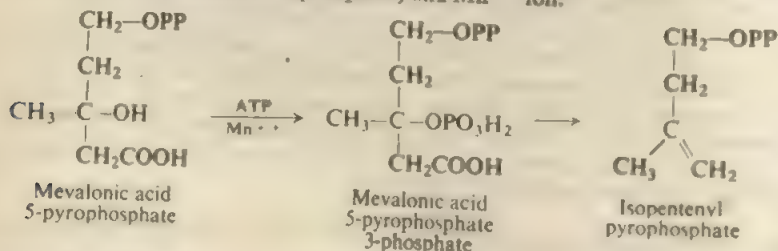
What is the structure of camphoronic acid?

20. Two of the oxidation products of the terpene  $\alpha$ -terpineol are *terebic acid* and *terpenylic acid*. Their structures were first established by the following synthesis:



What is the structure of terebic acid? Of terpenylic acid?

21. Isopentenyl pyrophosphate, the precursor of isoprene units in nature (Sec. 9.33 and Problem 26, p. 453-454), is formed enzymatically from the pyrophosphate of *mevalonic acid* by the action of ATP (adenosine triphosphate) and  $Mn^{2+}$  ion.



It is believed that the function of ATP is to phosphorylate mevalonic acid pyrophosphate at the 3-position.

Just what happens in the last step of this conversion? Why should the 3-phosphate undergo this reaction more easily than the 3-hydroxy compound?

—PART II—

---

# Biomolecules

---

## Fats

### 27.1 The organic chemistry of biomolecules

The study of biology at the molecular level is called biochemistry. It is a branch of biology, but it is equally a branch of organic chemistry. In general the molecules involved, the *biomolecules*, are bigger and more complicated than most of the ones we have studied so far, and their environment—a living organism—is a far cry from the stark simplicity of the reaction mixture of the organic chemist. But the physical and chemical properties of these compounds depend on molecular structure in exactly the same way as do the properties of other organic compounds.

The detailed chemistry of biological processes is vast and complicated, and is beyond the scope of this book; indeed, the study of biochemistry must be *built upon* a study of the fundamentals of organic chemistry. We can, however, attempt to close the gap between the subject “organic chemistry” and the subject “biochemistry.”

In the next five chapters, we shall take up the principal classes of biomolecules: fats, carbohydrates, proteins, and nucleic acids. Our chief concern will be with their structures—since structure is fundamental to everything else—and with the methods used to determine these structures. Because most biomolecules are big ones—*macromolecules* (Sec. 9.30)—we shall encounter structure on several levels: first, of course, the *sequence of functional groups* and the *configuration* at any chiral centers or double bonds; then, *conformation*, with loops, coils, and zig-zags on a grander scale than anything we have seen yet; finally, the arrangement of *collections of molecules*, and even of collections of these collections. We shall see remarkable effects due to our familiar intermolecular forces: operating between biomolecules; between biomolecules—or *parts* of them—and the solvent; between different parts of the same biomolecule. In all this we shall see, as we did for the man-made macromolecules (Sec. 9.37), how the functions of these giant molecules depend upon their structure at all levels.

We shall study the chemical properties of these compounds observed in the test tube, since these properties must lie behind the reactions they undergo in living



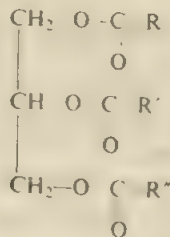
organisms. In doing this, we shall reinforce our knowledge of basic organic chemistry by applying it to these more complex substances. Finally, we shall look very briefly at a few biochemical processes, just to catch a glimpse of the ways in which molecular structure determines biological behavior.

## 27.2 Occurrence and composition of fats

Biochemists have found it convenient to define one set of biomolecules, the *lipids*, as substances, insoluble in water, that can be extracted from cells by organic solvents of low polarity like ether or chloroform. This is a catch-all sort of definition, and lipids include compounds of many different kinds: steroids (Sec. 10.17), for example, and terpenes (Sec. 9.33). Of the lipids, we shall take up only the *fats* and certain closely related compounds. These are not the only important lipids—indeed, every compound in an organism seems to play an important role, if only as an unavoidable waste product of metabolism—but they are the most abundant.

Fats are the main constituents of the storage fat cells in animals and plants, and are one of the important food reserves of the organism. We can extract these animal and vegetable fats—liquid fats are often referred to as *oils*—and obtain such substances as corn oil, coconut oil, cottonseed oil, palm oil, tallow, bacon grease, and butter.

Chemically, fats are carboxylic esters derived from the single alcohol, glycerol,  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CHOHCH}_2\text{OH}$ , and are known as *glycerides*. More specifically, they are *triacylglycerols*. As Table 27.1 shows, each fat is made up of glycerides derived



A triacylglycerol  
(A glyceride)

from many different carboxylic acids. The proportions of the various acids vary from fat to fat; each fat has its characteristic composition, which does not differ very much from sample to sample.

With only a few exceptions, the fatty acids are all straight-chain compounds, ranging from three to eighteen carbons; except for the  $\text{C}_3$  and  $\text{C}_5$  compounds, only acids containing an even number of carbons are present in substantial amounts. As we shall see in Sec. 31.7, these even numbers are a natural result of the biosynthesis of fats: the molecules are built up two carbons at a time from acetate units, in steps that closely resemble the malonic ester synthesis of the organic chemist (Sec. 26.2).

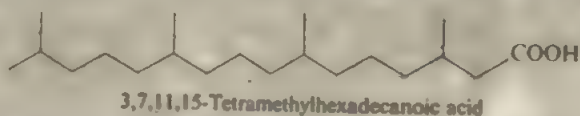
**Problem 27.1** *n*-Heptadecane is the principal *n*-alkane found both in a 50 million-year-old shale and in the blue-green algae, primitive organisms still existing. When blue-green algae were grown on a medium containing stearic- $18\text{-}^{14}\text{C}$  acid, essentially all the radioactivity that was not left in unconsumed stearic acid was found in *n*-heptadecane. By what kind of chemical reaction is the hydrocarbon evidently produced? Of what geological significance is this finding?

Table 27.1 FATTY ACID COMPOSITION OF FATS AND OILS

Fat or Oil	Saturated Acids, %										Unsaturated Acids, %				
	C <sub>8</sub>	C <sub>10</sub>	C <sub>12</sub>	C <sub>14</sub>	C <sub>16</sub>	C <sub>18</sub>	> C <sub>18</sub>	< C <sub>16</sub>	C <sub>16</sub>	C <sub>18</sub>	noic	> C <sub>18</sub>	C <sub>18</sub>	Dienoic	Trienoic
Beef tallow			0.2	2.3	25.30	21.26	0.41	0.5	2.3	39.42		0.3	2		
Butter	1.2 <sup>a</sup>	2.3	1.4	8.13	25.32	8.13	0.42	1.7	2.5	22.29		0.215	3		
Coconut	5.9	4.10	44.51	13.18	7.10	1.4				5.8		0.1	1.3		
Corn				0.2	8.10	1.4			1.2	30.50		0.2	34.56		
Cottonseed				0.3	17.23	1.3				23.44		0.1	34.55		
Lard				1	25.30	12.16		0.2	2.5	41.51		2.3	3.8		
Olive									1.3	53.86		0.3	4.22		
Palm			0.1	0.2	7.20	1.3	0.1		1.3	40.52			2.11		
Palm kernel				1.6	32.47	1.6									
Peanut	2.4	3-7	45.52	14.19	6.9	1.3	1.2		0.1	10.18			1.2		
Soybean				0.5	6.11	3.6	5.10		1.7	39.66			17.38		
				0.3	7.11	2.5	1-3		0.1	22.34			50.60		2.10
Cod liver				2.6	7.14	0.1									
Linseed				0.2	5.9	4.7	0.5-1	0.2	10.20	25.31		25.32	10.20	5.29	45.67
Tung										4.13				8.15	78.87

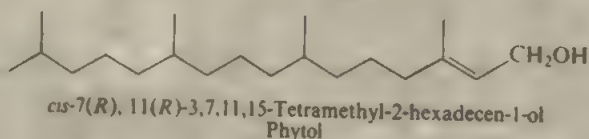
<sup>a</sup> 3, 4, 5, C<sub>14</sub>, 1, 2, 3, C<sub>18</sub>.<sup>b</sup> Linoleic acid, *cis*, *cis*-9,12-octadecadienoic acid.<sup>c</sup> Linolenic acid, *cis*, *ch*, *cis*-9,12,15-octadecatrienoic acid.<sup>d</sup> Eleostearic acid, *cis*, *trans*, *trans*-9,11,13-octadecatrienoic acid, and 3-6% saturated acids.

**Problem 27.2** (a) Acetate is not the only building block for the long chains of lipids. From a 50 million-year-old shale (see Problem 27.1)—as well as from modern organisms—there has been isolated 3,7,11,15-tetramethylhexadecanoic acid,



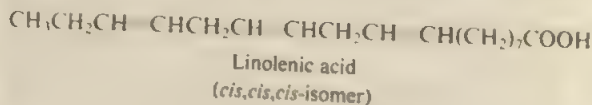
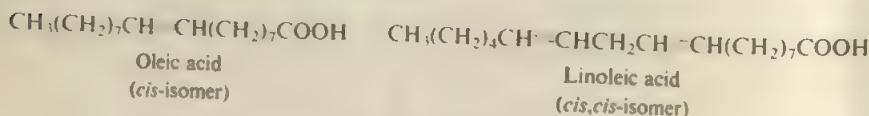
What familiar structural unit occurs here?

(b) The long side chain of chlorophyll (p. 1269) is derived from the alcohol *phytol*, which is *cis*-7(*R*), 11(*R*)-3,7,11,15-tetramethyl-2-hexadecen-1-ol. The acid in (a) was found



to be a mixture of two diastereomers: the 3(*S*),7(*R*),11(*R*) and 3(*R*),7(*R*),11(*R*). Of what biogenetic significance is this finding?

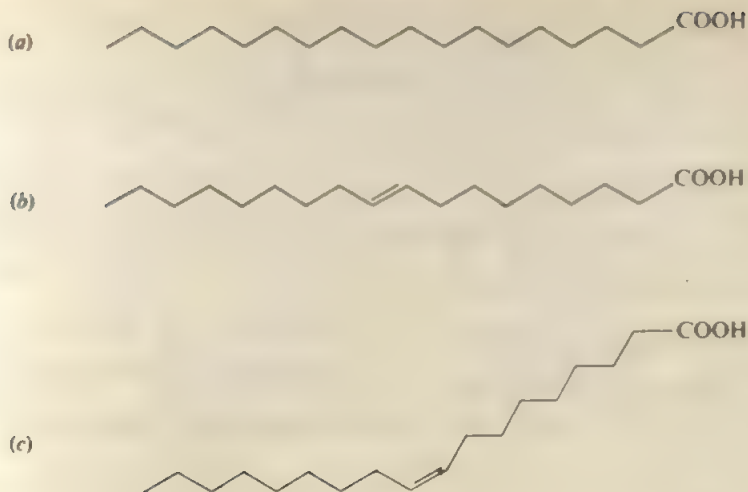
Besides saturated acids, there are unsaturated acids containing one or more double bonds per molecule. The most common of these acids are:



The configuration about these double bonds is almost invariably *cis*, rather than the more stable *trans*.

Unsaturation with this particular stereochemistry has an effect that is seemingly trivial but is actually (Sec. 27.8) of vital biological significance: it lowers the melting point. In the solid phase, the molecules of a fat fit together as best they can; the closer they fit, the stronger the intermolecular forces, and the higher the melting point. Saturated acid chains are extended in a linear fashion—with, of course, the zig-zag due to the tetrahedral bond angles—and fit together rather well. *trans*-Unsaturated acid chains can be similarly extended to linear conformations that match saturated chains rather well (Fig. 27.1). But *cis*-unsaturated acid chains have a *hump* at the double bond, and fit each other—and saturated chains—badly. The net result is that *cis* unsaturation lowers the melting point of fat.

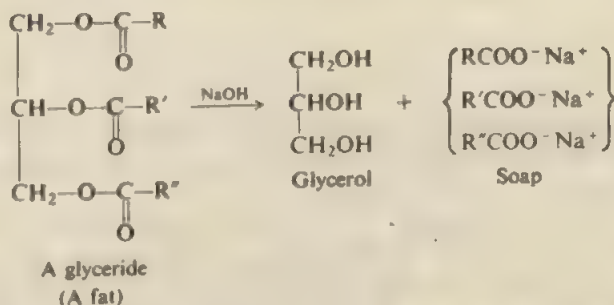
While we synthesize fats in our own bodies, we also eat fats synthesized in plants and other animals; they are one of the three main classes of foods, the others being carbohydrates (Chap. 29) and proteins (Chap. 30). Fats are used in enormous amounts as raw materials for many industrial processes; let us look at some of these before we turn our attention to some close relatives of the fats.



**Figure 27.1.** Extended chains of fatty acids: (a) saturated, (b) *trans*-unsaturated, (c) *cis*-unsaturated. Note bend in (c).

### 27.3 Hydrolysis of fats. Soap. Micelles

The making of soap is one of the oldest of chemical syntheses. (It is not nearly so old, of course, as the production of ethyl alcohol; man's desire for cleanliness is much newer than his desire for intoxication.) When the German tribesmen of Caesar's time boiled goat tallow with potash leached from the ashes of wood fires, they were carrying out the same chemical reaction as the one carried out on a tremendous scale by modern soap manufacturers: *hydrolysis of glycerides*. Hydrolysis yields salts of the carboxylic acids, and glycerol,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OHCHOHCH}_2\text{OH}$ .



Ordinary soap today is simply a mixture of sodium salts of long-chain fatty acids. It is a mixture because the fat from which it is made is a mixture, and for washing our hands or our clothes a mixture is just as good as a single pure salt. Soap may vary in composition and method of processing: if made from olive oil, it is *Castile soap*; alcohol can be added to make it transparent; air can be beaten in to make it float; perfumes, dyes, and germicides can be added; if a potassium salt (instead of sodium salt), it is *soft soap*. Chemically, however, soap remains pretty much the same, and does its job in the same way.



We might at first expect these salts to be water-soluble—and, indeed, one can prepare what are called “soap solutions.” But these are not true solutions, in which solute molecules swim about, separately and on their own. Instead, soap is dispersed in spherical clusters called **micelles**, each of which may contain hundreds of soap molecules. A soap molecule has a polar end,  $\text{—COO}^- \text{Na}^+$ , and a non-polar end, the long carbon chain of 12 to 18 carbons. The polar end is water-soluble, and is thus *hydrophilic*. The non-polar end is water-insoluble, and is thus *hydrophobic* (or *lipophilic*, Sec. 1.21); it is, of course, soluble in non-polar solvents. Molecules like these are called *amphipathic*: they have both polar and non-polar ends and, in addition, are big enough for each end to display its own solubility behavior. In line with the rule of “like dissolves like,” each non-polar end seeks a non-polar environment; in this situation, the only such environment about is the non-polar ends of other soap molecules, which therefore huddle together in the center of the micelle (Fig. 27.2). The polar ends project outward into the polar solvent, water.

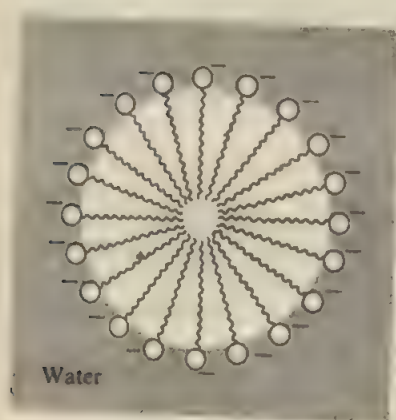


Figure 27.2. Soap micelle. Non-polar hydrocarbon chains “dissolve” in each other. Polar  $\text{—COO}^-$  groups dissolve in water. Similarly charged micelles repel each other.

Negatively charged carboxylate groups stud the surface of the micelle, and it is surrounded by an ionic atmosphere. Repulsion between similar charges keeps the micelles dispersed.

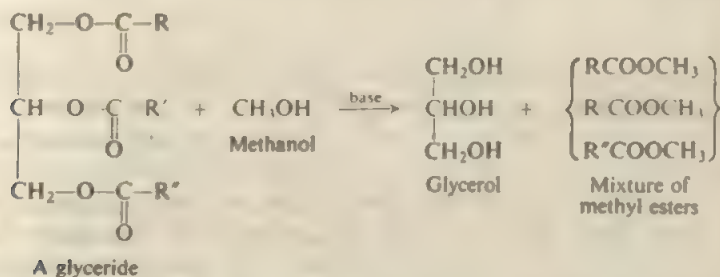
Now, how does a soap clean? The problem in cleansing is the fat and grease that make up and contain the dirt. Water alone cannot dissolve these hydrophobic substances; oil droplets in contact with water tend to coalesce so that there is a water layer and an oil layer. But the presence of soap changes this. The non-polar ends of soap molecules dissolve in the oil droplet, leaving the carboxylate ends projecting into the surrounding water layer. Repulsion between similar charges keeps the oil droplets from coalescing; a stable emulsion of oil and water forms, and can be removed from the surface being cleaned. As we shall see, this emulsifying, and hence cleansing, property is not limited to carboxylate salts, but is possessed by other amphipathic molecules (Sec. 27.5).

Hard water contains calcium and magnesium salts, which react with soap to form insoluble calcium and magnesium carboxylates (the “ring” in the bathtub).

## 27.4 Fats as sources of pure acids and alcohols

Treatment of the sodium soaps with mineral acid (or hydrolysis of fats under acidic conditions) liberates a mixture of the free carboxylic acids. In recent years, fractional distillation of these mixtures has been developed on a commercial scale to furnish individual carboxylic acids of over 90% purity.

Fats are sometimes converted by transesterification into the methyl esters of carboxylic acids; the glycerides are allowed to react with methanol in the presence of a basic or acidic catalyst. The mixture of methyl esters can be separated by



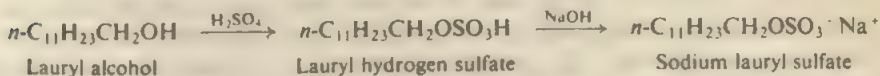
fractional distillation into individual esters, which can then be hydrolyzed to individual carboxylic acids of high purity. Fats are thus the source of straight-chain acids of even carbon number ranging from six to eighteen carbons.

Alternatively, these methyl esters, either pure or as mixtures, can be catalytically reduced to straight-chain primary alcohols of even carbon number, and from these can be derived a host of compounds (as in Problem 19.10, p. 800). Fats thus provide us with long straight-chain units to use in organic synthesis.

## 27.5 Detergents

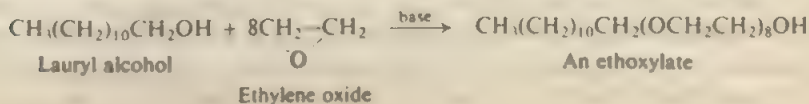
Of the straight-chain primary alcohols obtained from fats—or in other ways (Sec. 9.36)—the  $C_8$  and  $C_{10}$  members are used in the production of high-boiling esters used as *plasticizers* (e.g., octyl phthalate). The  $C_{12}$  to  $C_{18}$  alcohols are used in enormous quantities in the manufacture of *detergents* (cleansing agents).

Although the synthetic detergents vary considerably in their chemical structure, the molecules of all of them have one common feature, a feature they share with ordinary soap: they are amphipathic, and have a large non-polar hydrocarbon end that is oil-soluble, and a polar end that is water-soluble. The  $C_{12}$  to  $C_{18}$  alcohols are converted into the salts of alkyl hydrogen sulfates. For example:



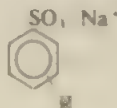
For these, the non-polar end is the long chain, and the polar end is the  $\text{—OSO}_3^-\text{Na}^+$ .

Treatment of alcohols with ethylene oxide (Sec. 12.13) yields a *non-ionic* detergent:



Hydrogen bonding to the numerous oxygen atoms makes the polyether end of the molecule water soluble. Alternatively, the ethoxylates can be converted into sulfates and used in the form of the sodium salts

Perhaps the most widely used detergents are sodium salts of alkylbenzene-sulfonic acids. A long-chain alkyl group is attached to a benzene ring by the action



of a Friedel-Crafts catalyst and an alkyl halide, an alkene, or an alcohol. Sulfonation and neutralization yields the detergent.

Formerly, polypropylene was commonly used in the synthesis of these alkylbenzenesulfonates, but the highly-branched side chain it yields blocks the rapid biological degradation of the detergent residues in sewage discharge and septic tanks. Since about 1965 in this country, such "hard" detergents have been replaced by "soft" (biodegradable) detergents: alkyl sulfates, ethoxylates and their sulfates; and alkylbenzenesulfonates in which the phenyl group is randomly attached to the various secondary positions of a long straight chain ( $\text{C}_{12}$ – $\text{C}_{18}$  range). (See Problem 17, p. 670.) The side chains of these "linear" alkylbenzenesulfonates are derived from straight-chain 1-alkenes (Sec. 9.36), or chlorinated straight-chain alkanes separated (by use of molecular sieves) from kerosene.

These detergents act in essentially the same way as soap does. They are used because they have certain advantages. For example, the sulfates and sulfonates retain their efficiency in hard water, since the corresponding calcium and magnesium salts are soluble. Being salts of strong acids, they yield neutral solutions, in contrast to the soaps, which, being salts of weak acids, yield slightly alkaline solutions (Sec. 19.10).

## 27.6 Unsaturated fats. Hardening of oils. Drying oils

We have seen that fats contain, in varying proportions, glycerides of unsaturated carboxylic acids. We have also seen that, other things being equal, unsaturation in a fat tends to lower its melting point and thus tends to make it a liquid at room temperature. In the United States the long-established use of lard and butter for cooking purposes has led to a prejudice against the use of the cheaper, equally nutritious oils. Hydrogenation of some of the double bonds in such cheap fats as cottonseed oil, corn oil, and soybean oil converts these liquids into solids having a consistency comparable to that of lard or butter. This *hardening* of oils is the basis of an important industry that produces cooking fats (for example, Crisco, Spry) and oleomargarine. Hydrogenation of the carbon-carbon double bonds takes place under such mild conditions ( $\text{Ni}$  catalyst,  $175$ – $190^\circ$ ,  $20$ – $40$  lb/in.<sup>2</sup>) that hydrogenolysis of the ester linkage does not occur.

Hydrogenation not only changes the physical properties of a fat, but also—and this is even more important—changes the chemical properties: a hydrogenated fat becomes *rancid* much less readily than does a non-hydrogenated fat. Rancidity is due to the presence of volatile, bad-smelling acids and aldehydes. These compounds result (in part, at least) from attack by oxygen at reactive allylic positions in the fat molecules; hydrogenation slows down the development of



rancidity presumably by decreasing the number of double bonds and hence the number of allylic positions.

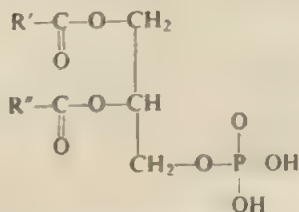
(In the presence of hydrogenation catalysts, unsaturated compounds undergo not only hydrogenation but also isomerization—shift of double bonds, or stereochemical transformations—which also affects physical and chemical properties.)

Linseed oil and tung oil have special importance because of their high content of glycerides derived from acids that contain two or three double bonds. They are known as **drying oils** and are important constituents of paints and varnishes. The “drying” of paint does not involve merely evaporation of a solvent (turpentine, etc.), but rather a chemical reaction in which a tough organic film is formed. Aside from the color due to the pigments present, protection of a surface by this film is the chief purpose of paint. The film is formed by a polymerization of the unsaturated oils that is brought about by oxygen. The polymerization process and the structure of the polymer are extremely complicated and are not well understood. The process seems to involve, in part, free-radical attack at reactive allylic hydrogens, free-radical chain-reaction polymerization similar to that previously described (Sec. 9.31), and cross-linking by oxygen analogous to that by sulfur in vulcanized rubber (Sec. 9.32).

**Problem 27.3** In paints, tung oil “dries” faster than linseed oil. Suggest a reason why. (See Table 27.1.)

## 27.7 Phosphoglycerides. Phosphate esters

So far, we have talked only about glycerides in which all three ester linkages are to acyl groups, that is, triacylglycerols. There also occur lipids of another kind, phosphoglycerides, which contain only two acyl groups and, in place of the third, a *phosphate* group. The parent structure is *diacylglycerol phosphate*, or *phosphatidic acid*.

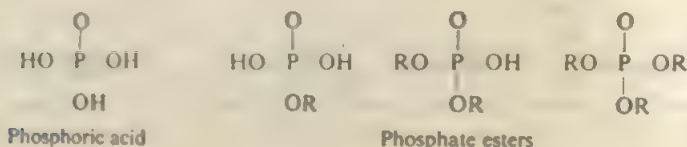


Phosphatidic acid  
(A phosphoglyceride)

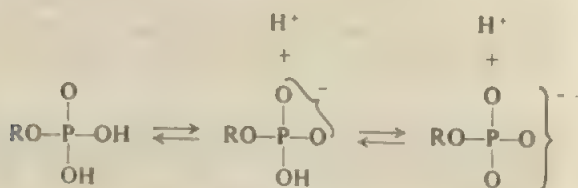
Phosphoglycerides are, then, not only carboxylate esters but phosphate esters as well. Just what are phosphate esters like? It will be well for us to learn something about them since we shall be encountering them again and again: phospholipids make up the membranes of cells (Sec. 27.8); adenosine triphosphate lies at the heart of the energy system of organisms, and it does its job by converting hosts of other compounds into phosphate esters (Sec. 31.3); nucleic acids, which control heredity, are polyesters of phosphoric acid.



To begin with, phosphates come in various kinds. Phosphoric acid contains three hydroxy groups and can form esters in which one, two, or three of these have been replaced by alkoxy groups. Phosphoric acid is highly acidic, and so are the

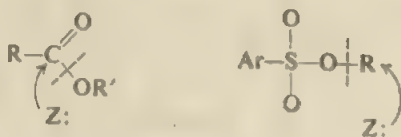


monoalkyl and dialkyl esters; in aqueous solution they tend to exist as anions, the exact extent of ionization depending, of course, upon the acidity of the medium. For example:

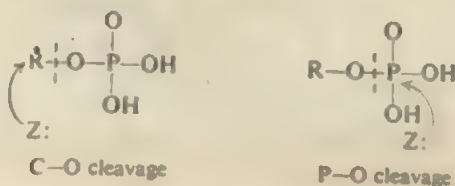


Like other esters, phosphates undergo hydrolysis to the parent acid and alcohol. Here, the acidity of  $-\text{OH}$  attached to phosphorus has several effects. In the first place, since acidic phosphate esters can undergo ionization, there may be many species present in the hydrolysis solution. A monoalkyl ester, for example, could exist as dianion, monoanion, neutral ester, and protonated ester; any or all of these could conceivably be undergoing hydrolysis. Actually, the situation is not quite that complicated. From the dissociation constants of these acidic esters, one can calculate the fraction of ester in each form in a given solution. The dependence of rate on acidity of the solution often shows which species is the principal reactant.

In carboxylates, we remember, attack generally occurs at acyl carbon, and in sulfonates, at alkyl carbon, with a resulting difference in point of cleavage. In



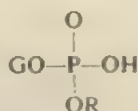
hydrolytic behavior, phosphates are intermediate between carboxylates and sulfonates. Cleavage can occur at either position, depending on the nature of the alcohol group.



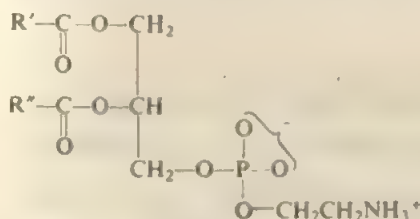
Here again the acidity of phosphoric acids comes in. Cleavage of the alkyl oxygen bond in carboxylates is difficult because the carboxylate anion is strongly basic and a poor leaving group; in sulfonates such cleavage is favored because the weakly basic sulfonate anion is a very good leaving group. Phosphoric acid is intermediate in acidity between carboxylic and sulfonic acid; as a result, the phosphate anion is a better leaving group than carboxylate but a poorer one than sulfonate. In these esters, phosphorus is bonded to four groups; but it can accept more—witness stable pentavalent compounds like  $\text{PCl}_5$ —and nucleophilic attack at phosphorus competes with attack at alkyl carbon.

In acidic solution, phosphate esters are readily cleaved to phosphoric acid. In alkaline solution, however, only trialkyl phosphates,  $(\text{RO})_3\text{PO}$ , are hydrolyzed, and only one alkoxy group is removed. Monoalkyl and dialkyl esters,  $\text{ROPO}(\text{OH})_2$  and  $(\text{RO})_2\text{PO}(\text{OH})$ , are inert to alkali, even on long treatment. This may seem unusual behavior, but it has a perfectly rational explanation. The monoalkyl and dialkyl esters contain acidic  $-\text{OH}$  groups on phosphorus, and in alkaline solution exist as anions; repulsion between like charges prevents attack on these anions by hydroxide ion.

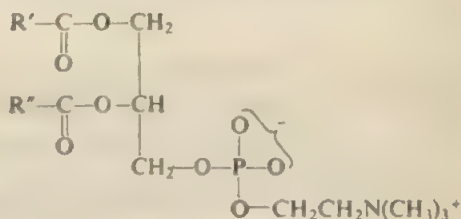
In most phospholipids, phosphate is of the kind



in which G is the glyceryl group—with its two carboxylates—and R is derived from some other alcohol, ROH, most often *ethanolamine*,  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$ , or *choline*,  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_3^+$ . Since the remaining  $-\text{OH}$  on phosphorus is highly



Phosphatidyl ethanolamine  
(Ethanolamine phosphoglyceride)



Phosphatidyl choline  
(Choline phosphoglyceride)

acidic, the ester exists mostly in the ionic form. Furthermore, since the alcohol ROH usually contains an amino group, the phosphate unit carries both positive and negative charges, and the phospholipid is at this end—a *dipolar ion*. On hydrolysis, these phosphates generally undergo cleavage between phosphorus and oxygen,  $\text{P}-\text{O}-\text{R}$ .

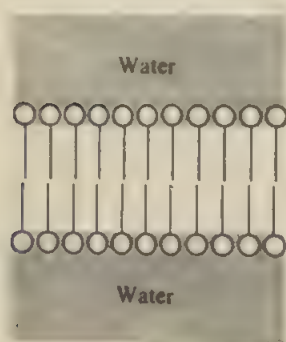
**Problem 27.4** Consider hydrolysis of  $(\text{RO})_2\text{PO}(\text{OH})$  by aqueous hydroxide, and grant that for electrostatic reasons, attack of  $\text{OH}^-$  cannot occur. Even so, why does not attack by the nucleophile water lead to hydrolysis? After all, water is the successful nucleophile in acidic hydrolysis. (Hint: See Sec. 20.18.)

## 27.8 Phospholipids and cell membranes

The fats are found, we said, in storage fat cells of plants and animals. Their function rests on their chemical properties: through oxidation, they are consumed to help provide energy for the life processes.

The phospholipids, on the other hand, are found in the membranes of cells—all cells—and are a basic structural element of living organisms. This vital function depends, in a fascinating way, on their physical properties.

Phosphoglyceride molecules are amphipathic, and in this respect differ from fats—but resemble soaps and detergents. The lipophilic part is, again, the long fatty acid chains. The hydrophilic part is the dipolar ionic end: the substituted phosphate group with its positive and negative charges. In aqueous solution, as we would expect, phosphoglycerides form micelles. In certain situations, however—at an aperture between two aqueous solutions, for example—they tend to form bilayers: two rows of molecules are lined up, back to back, with their polar ends projecting into water on the two surfaces of the bilayer (Fig. 27.3). Although the



**Figure 27.3.** A phospholipid bilayer. Lipophilic fatty chains held together by van der Waals forces. Hydrophilic ends dissolve in water.

polar groups are needed to hold molecules in position, the bulk of the bilayer is made up of the fatty acid chains. Non-polar molecules can therefore dissolve in this mostly hydrocarbon wall and pass through it, but it is an effective barrier to polar molecules and ions.

It is in the form of bilayers that phosphoglycerides are believed to exist in cell membranes. They constitute walls that not only enclose the cell but also very selectively control the passage, in and out, of the various substances—nutrients, waste products, hormones, etc.—even from a solution of low concentration to a solution of high concentration. Now, many of these substances that enter and leave the cells are highly polar molecules like carbohydrates and amino acids, or ions like sodium and potassium. How can these molecules pass through cell membranes when they cannot pass through simple bilayers? And how can permeability be so highly selective?

The answer to both these questions seems to involve the proteins that are also found in cell membrane: embedded in the bilayer, and even extending clear through it. Proteins, as we shall see in Chap. 30, are very long chain amides, polymers of twenty-odd different amino acids. Protein chains can be looped and coiled in a variety of ways: the conformation that is favored for a particular protein molecule depends on the exact sequence of amino acids along its chain.



It has been suggested that transport through membranes happens in the following way. A protein molecule, coiled up to turn its lipophilic parts outward, is dissolved in the bilayer, forming a part of the cell wall. A molecule approaches: a potassium ion, say. If the particular protein is the one designed to handle potassium ion, it receives the ion into its polar interior. Hidden in this lipophilic wrapping, the ion is smuggled through the bilayer and released on the other side.

This mechanism for ionic transport is exactly the one we gave earlier to account for the action of antibiotic like Nonactin (Sec. 12.9). Here, it is necessary for normal cell function; there, it upset the ionic balance and disrupted the cell function. In both cases we are seeing a *host-guest* relationship of basically the same kind as that between a crown ether and a cation: there is the same kind of bonding between host and guest, and the function is the same one—to carry a cation into a non-polar medium.

Now, if the transport protein is to do its job, it must be free to move within the membrane. The molecules of the bilayer, while necessarily aligned, must not be locked into a rigid crystalline lattice—as they would be if all the fatty acid chains were saturated. Actually, some of the chains in the membrane phospholipids are unsaturated and these, with their *cis* stereochemistry and the accompanying bend (Fig. 27.1), disrupt the alignment enough to make the membrane semiliquid at physiological temperatures.

Here, we have had a glimpse of just one complex biological process. Yet we can begin to see how the understanding of biology rests on basic chemical concepts: van der Waals forces and ion-dipole bonds; polarity and solubility; melting point and molecular shape; configuration and conformation; and, ultimately, the sequence of atoms in molecular chains.

**Problem 27.5** The degree of unsaturation of the membrane lipids in the legs of reindeer is higher in cells near the hooves than in cells near the body. What survival value does this unsaturation gradient have?

## PROBLEMS

1. From saponification of cerebrosides, lipids found in the membranes of brain and nerve cells, there is obtained *nervonic acid*. This acid rapidly decolorizes dilute  $\text{KMnO}_4$  and  $\text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4$  solutions. Hydrogenation in the presence of nickel yields tetracosanoic acid,  $n\text{-C}_{23}\text{H}_{47}\text{COOH}$ . Vigorous oxidation of nervonic acid yields one acid of neutralization equivalent  $156 \pm 3$  and another acid of neutralization equivalent  $137 \pm 2$ . What structure or structures are possible for nervonic acid?

2. When peanut oil is heated very briefly with a little sodium methoxide, its properties are changed dramatically—it becomes so viscous it can hardly be poured yet saponification yields the same mixture of fatty acids as did the untreated oil. What has probably happened?

3. On oxidation with  $\text{O}_2$ , methyl oleate (methyl 9-*cis*-octadecenoate) was found to yield a mixture of hydroperoxides of formula  $\text{C}_{19}\text{H}_{36}\text{O}_4$ . In these, the  $-\text{OOH}$  group was found attached not only to C-8 and C-11 but also to C-9 and C-10. What is the probable structure of these last two hydroperoxides? How did they arise? Show all steps in a likely mechanism for the reaction.

4. Although alkaline hydrolysis of monoalkyl or monoaryl phosphates is ordinarily very difficult, 2,4-dinitrophenyl phosphate,  $2,4\text{-(NO}_2)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{OPO}_3\text{H}_2$ , does react with aqueous base, and with cleavage at the phosphorus-oxygen bond. Suggest an explanation for this.



5. *Spermaceti* (a wax from the head of the sperm whale) resembles high-molecular-weight hydrocarbons in physical properties and inertness toward  $\text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4$  and  $\text{KMnO}_4$ ; on qualitative analysis it gives positive tests only for carbon and hydrogen. However, its infrared spectrum shows the presence of an ester group, and quantitative analysis gives the empirical formula  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{32}\text{O}$ .

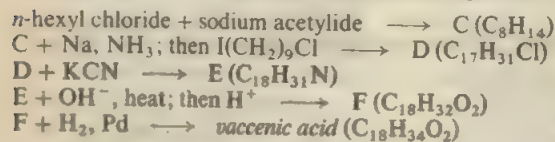
A solution of the wax and  $\text{KOH}$  in ethanol is refluxed for a long time. Titration of an aliquot shows that one equivalent of base has been consumed for every  $475 \pm 10$  grams of wax. Water and ether are added to the cooled reaction mixture, and the aqueous and ethereal layers are separated. Acidification of the aqueous layer yields a solid A, m.p.  $62-3^\circ$ , neutralization equivalent  $260 \pm 5$ . Evaporation of the ether layer yields a solid B, m.p.  $48-9^\circ$ . (a) What is a likely structure of spermaceti? (b) Reduction by  $\text{LiAlH}_4$  of either spermaceti or A gives B as the only product. Does this confirm the structure you gave in (a)?

6. As the acidity of the solution is increased, the rate of hydrolysis of monoalkyl phosphates,  $\text{ROPO}(\text{OH})_2$ , rises from essentially zero in alkaline solution, and passes through a maximum at the point (moderate acidity, pH about 4) where the concentration of monoanion,  $\text{ROPO}(\text{OH})(\text{O}^-)$ , is greatest. Cleavage is at the phosphorus-oxygen bond.

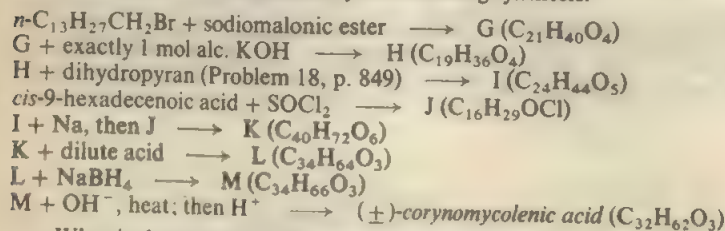
(a) Can you suggest a mechanism or mechanisms that might account for the fact that this species is more reactive than either the dianion,  $\text{ROPO}(\text{O}^-)_2$ , or the neutral ester?

(b) At still higher acidity, the rate rises again and continues to rise. To what is the high reactivity now due?

7. On the basis of the following synthesis, give the structure of *vaccenic acid*.

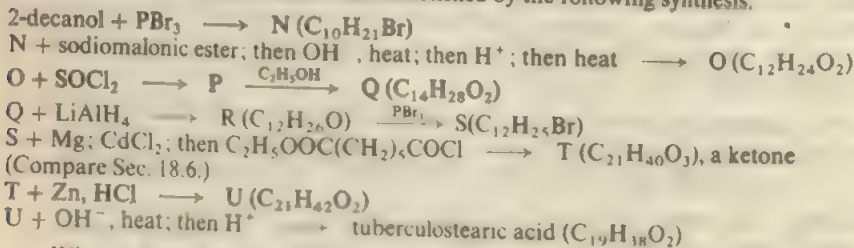


8. From the lipids of *Corynebacterium diphtherium* there is obtained *corynomycolenic acid*. Its structure was confirmed by the following synthesis.



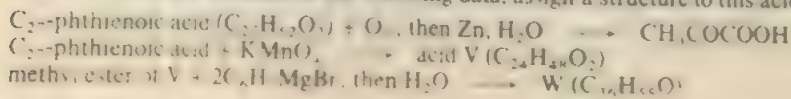
What is the structure of corynomycolenic acid?

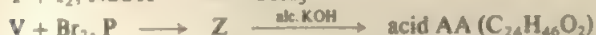
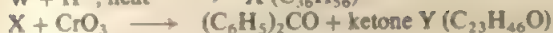
9. From saponification of the fatty capsule of the tubercle bacillus, there is obtained *tuberculostearic acid*. Its structure was established by the following synthesis.



What is the structure of tuberculostearic acid?

10. Besides tuberculostearic acid (preceding problem), the capsule of the tubercle bacillus yields *C<sub>22</sub>-phthienoic acid*, which on injection into animals causes the lesions typical of tuberculosis. On the basis of the following data, assign a structure to this acid.





Compound BB was shown to be identical with a sample of  $CH_3(CH_2)_9COCH_3$ .

**Caution:**  $KMnO_4$  is a vigorous reagent, and not all the cleavage occurs at the double bond. Compare the number of carbons in AA and BB.

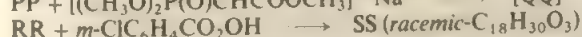
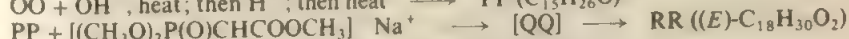
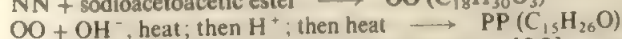
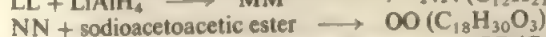
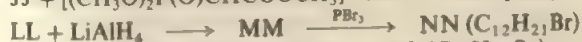
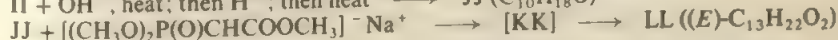
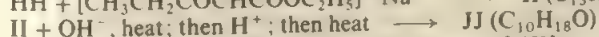
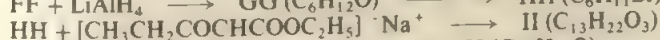
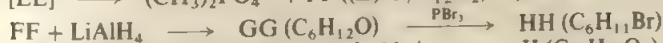
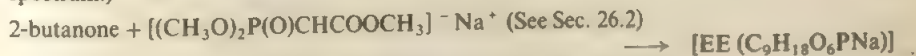
11. On the basis of the following NMR spectra, assign likely structures to the isomeric fatty acids, CC and DD, of formula  $C_{17}H_{34}COOH$ .

Isomer CC    *a* triplet,  $\delta$  0.8, 3H  
               *b* broad band,  $\delta$  1.35, 30H  
               *c* triplet,  $\delta$  2.3, 2H  
               *d* singlet,  $\delta$  12.0, 1H

Isomer DD    *a* triplet,  $\delta$  0.8, 3H  
               *b* doublet,  $\delta$  1.15, 3H  
               *c* broad band,  $\delta$  1.35, 28H  
               *d* multiplet,  $\delta$  2.2, 1H  
               *e* singlet,  $\delta$  12.05, 1H

12. Juvenile hormones take part in the delicate balance of hormonal activity that controls development of insects. Applied artificially, they prevent maturing, and thus offer a highly specific way to control insect population.

The structure of the juvenile hormone of the moth *Hyalophora cecropia* was confirmed by the following synthesis. (At each stage where geometric isomers were obtained, these were separated and the desired one—(Z) or (E)—was selected on the basis of its NMR spectrum.)



SS was a mixture of positional isomers, corresponding to attack by perbenzoic acid at various double bonds in RR. Of these, one isomer (a *racemic* modification) was found to be identical, in physical and biological properties, to the natural juvenile hormone. This isomer was the one resulting from reaction at the double bond first introduced into the molecule.

What is the structure of the juvenile hormone of *Hyalophora cecropia*? Account for the fact that the synthesis yields a racemic modification.

## Carbohydrates I. Monosaccharides

---

### 28.1 Introduction

In the leaf of a plant, the simple compounds carbon dioxide and water are combined to form the sugar (+)-**glucose**. This process, known as *photosynthesis*, requires catalysis by the green coloring matter *chlorophyll*, and requires energy in the form of light. Thousands of (+)-glucose molecules can then be combined to form the much larger molecules of **cellulose**, which constitutes the supporting framework of the plant. (+)-Glucose molecules can also be combined, in a somewhat different way, to form the large molecules of **starch**, which is then stored in the seeds to serve as food for a new, growing plant.

When eaten by an animal, the starch—and in the case of certain animals also the cellulose—is broken down into the original (+)-glucose units. These can be carried by the bloodstream to the liver to be recombined into **glycogen**, or animal starch; when the need arises, the glycogen can be broken down once more into (+)-glucose. (+)-Glucose is carried by the bloodstream to the tissues, where it is oxidized, ultimately to carbon dioxide and water, with the release of the energy originally supplied as sunlight. Some of the (+)-glucose is converted into fats; some reacts with nitrogen-containing compounds to form amino acids, which in turn are combined to form the proteins that make up a large part of the animal body.

(+)-Glucose, cellulose, starch, and glycogen all belong to the class of organic compounds known as **carbohydrates**. Carbohydrates are the ultimate source of most of our food: we eat starch-containing grain, or feed it to animals to be converted into meat and fat which we then eat. We clothe ourselves with cellulose in the form of cotton and linen, rayon and cellulose acetate. We build houses and furniture from cellulose in the form of wood. Thus carbohydrates quite literally provide us with the necessities of life: food, clothing, and shelter.

Basic necessities aside, our present civilization depends to a surprising degree upon cellulose, particularly as *paper*: the books and newspapers we read, the letters we write, the bills we pay and the money and checks with which we pay them;



marriage licenses, drivers' licenses, birth certificates, mortgages; paper in the form of bags and boxes, sheets and rolls.

The study of carbohydrates is one of the most exciting fields of organic chemistry. It extends from the tremendously complicated problem of understanding the process of photosynthesis to the equally difficult problem of unraveling the tangled steps in the enzyme-catalyzed reconversion of (+)-glucose into carbon dioxide and water. Between these two biochemical problems there lie the more traditional problems of the organic chemist: determination of the structure and properties of the carbohydrates, and the study of their conversion into other organic compounds.

In this book we shall learn something of the fundamental chemical properties of the carbohydrates, knowledge that is basic to any further study of these compounds.

## 28.2 Definition and classification

**Carbohydrates** are polyhydroxy aldehydes, polyhydroxy ketones, or compounds that can be hydrolyzed to them. A carbohydrate that cannot be hydrolyzed to simpler compounds is called a **monosaccharide**. A carbohydrate that can be hydrolyzed to two monosaccharide molecules is called a **disaccharide**. A carbohydrate that can be hydrolyzed to many monosaccharide molecules is called a **polysaccharide**.

A monosaccharide may be further classified. If it contains an aldehyde group, it is known as an **aldose**; if it contains a keto group, it is known as a **ketose**. Depending upon the number of carbon atoms it contains, a monosaccharide is known as a **triose**, **tetrose**, **pentose**, **hexose**, and so on. An **aldohexose**, for example, is a six-carbon monosaccharide containing an aldehyde group; a **ketopentose** is a five-carbon monosaccharide containing a keto group. Most naturally occurring monosaccharides are pentoses or hexoses.

Carbohydrates that reduce Fehling's (or Benedict's) or Tollens' reagent (p. 1060) are known as **reducing sugars**. All monosaccharides, whether aldose or ketose, are reducing sugars. Most disaccharides are reducing sugars; sucrose (common table sugar) is a notable exception, for it is a non-reducing sugar.

## 28.3 (+)-Glucose: an aldohexose

Because it is the unit of which starch, cellulose, and glycogen are made up, and because of its special role in biological processes, (+)-glucose is by far the most abundant monosaccharide—there are probably more (+)-glucose units in nature than any other organic group—and by far the most important monosaccharide.

Most of what we need to know about monosaccharides we can learn from the study of just this one compound, and indeed from the study of just one aspect: its structure, and how that structure was arrived at. In learning about the structure of (+)-glucose, we shall at the same time learn about its properties, since it is from these properties that the structure has been deduced. (+)-Glucose is a typical monosaccharide, so that in learning about its structure and properties, we shall be learning about the structure and properties of the other members of this family.

(+)-Glucose has the molecular formula  $C_6H_{12}O_6$ , as shown by elemental analysis and molecular weight determination. In Fig. 28.1 is summarized other evidence about its structure: evidence consistent with the idea that (+)-glucose is



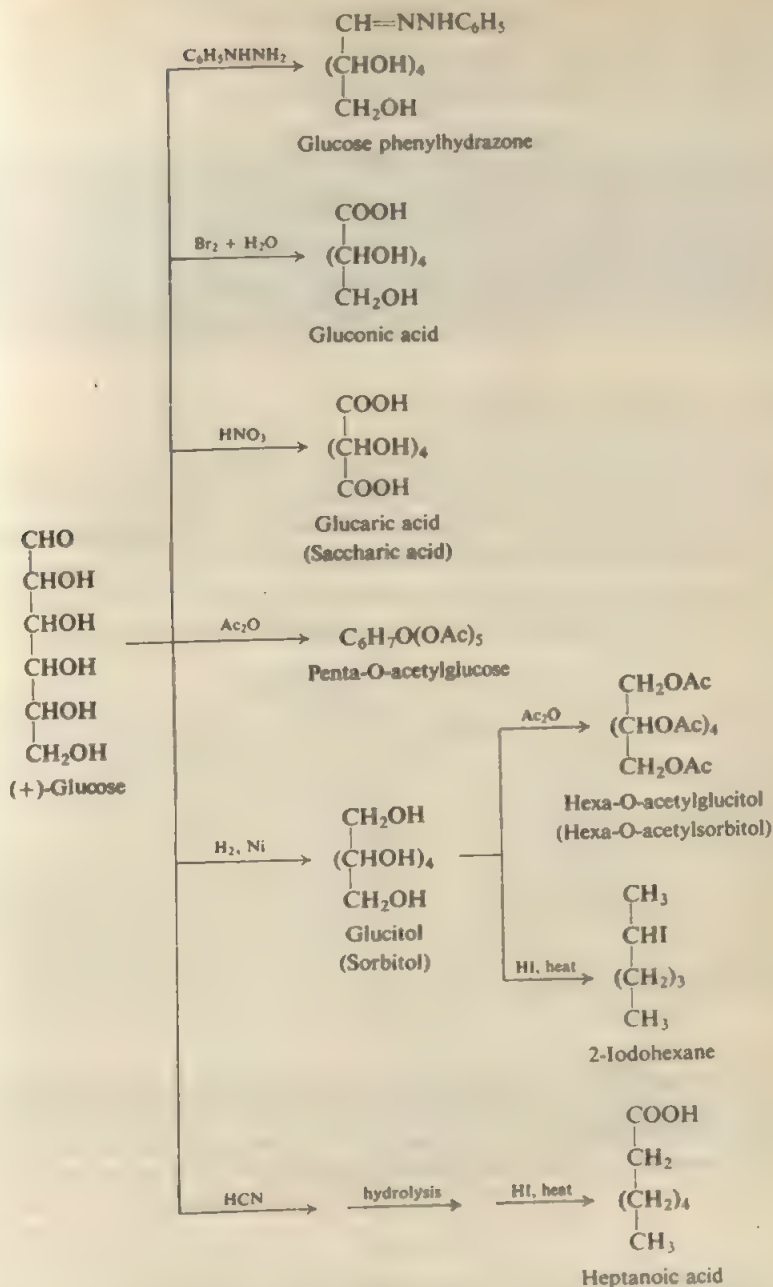


Figure 28.1. (+)-Glucose as an aldohexose.

a six-carbon, straight-chain, pentahydroxy aldehyde, that is, that (+)-glucose is an aldohexose. But this is only the beginning. There are, as we shall see, 16 possible aldohexoses, all stereoisomers of each other, and we want to know which one (+)-glucose is. Beyond this, there is the fact that (+)-glucose exists in *alpha* and *beta* forms, indicating still further stereochemical possibilities that are not accommodated by the simple picture of a pentahydroxy aldehyde. Finally, we must

pinpoint the predominant conformation in which the compound exists. All this is the structure of (+)-glucose and, when we have arrived at it, we shall see the features that make it the very special molecule that it is.

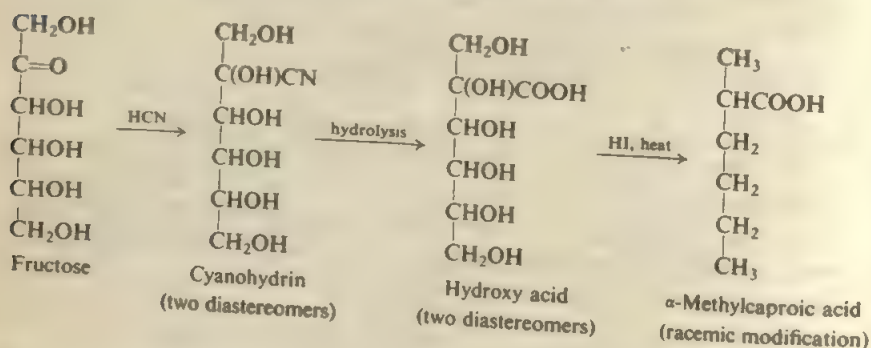
**Problem 28.1** Assume that you start knowing only the molecular formula of (+)-glucose. You carry out each of the reactions of Fig. 28.1, and study each of the products obtained: characterize the product as to family; determine its molecular weight and, if any, its neutralization equivalent. You identify 2-iodohexane and heptanoic acid by comparison with authentic samples.

(a) For each product, tell what you would actually observe. (b) Take each piece of evidence in turn, and tell what it shows about the structure of (+)-glucose.

## 28.4 (–)-Fructose: a 2-ketohexose

The most important ketose is (–)-fructose, which occurs widely in fruits and, combined with glucose, in the disaccharide *sucrose* (common table sugar).

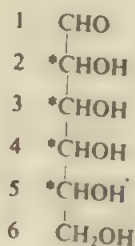
The following sequence shows that (–)-fructose is a ketone rather than an aldehyde, and gives the position of the keto group in the chain:



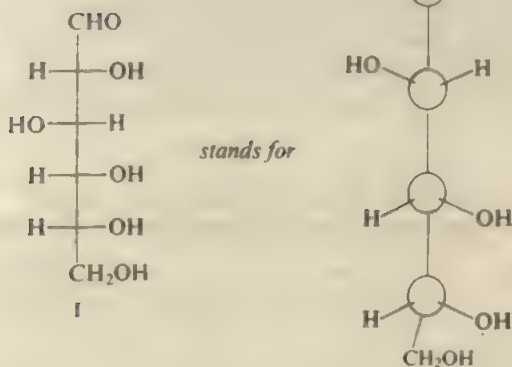
Fructose is thus a 2-ketohexose.

## 28.5 Stereoisomers of (+)-glucose. Nomenclature of aldose derivatives

If we examine the structural formula we have drawn for glucose, we see that it contains four chiral centers (marked by asterisks):



Each of the possible stereoisomers is commonly represented by a cross formula, as, for example, in I. As always in formulas of this kind, it is understood that



*horizontal* lines represent bonds coming *toward us* out of the plane of the paper, and *vertical* lines represent bonds going *away from us* behind the plane of the paper.

Only molecular models can show what is really meant by formulas like I. A correct model of one of these stereoisomers is difficult to build unless we follow certain rules first clearly stated by the great carbohydrate chemist Emil Fischer:

(1) Construct a chain of carbon atoms with a  $\text{—CHO}$  group at one end and a  $\text{—CH}_2\text{OH}$  group at the other. (2) Hold the  $\text{—CHO}$  group in one hand and let the rest of the chain hang down. (3) Take the  $\text{—CH}_2\text{OH}$  group at the bottom end in the other hand and bring it up *behind* the chain until it touches the  $\text{—CHO}$  group. (4) Now one hand can hold both groups firmly and the rest of the chain will form a rather rigid ring projecting *toward you*. (This is the object of the whole operation up to this point: to impart rigidity to an otherwise flexible chain.) By this procedure you have  $\text{—CHO}$  above  $\text{—CH}_2\text{OH}$  as in formula I, and both these groups directed *away from you*. (5) Finally, still holding the ring as described above, look in turn at each carbon atom, and attach the  $\text{—OH}$  or  $\text{—H}$  to the right or to the left just as it appears in the cross formula. In each case, these groups will be directed *toward you*.

The dissimilarity of the two ends of an aldohexose molecule prevents the existence of *meso* compounds (Sec. 4.18), and hence we expect that there should be  $2^4$  or 16 stereoisomers—eight pairs of enantiomers. All 16 of these possible stereoisomers are now known, through either synthesis in the laboratory or isolation from natural sources; only three—(+)-glucose, (+)-mannose, (+)-galactose—are found in abundance.

**Problem 28.2** Draw a cross formula of one enantiomer of each of these eight pairs, placing  $\text{—CHO}$  at the top,  $\text{—CH}_2\text{OH}$  at the bottom, and  $\text{—OH}$  on the right on the lowest chiral center (C-5).

Of these 16 isomers, only one is the (+)-glucose that we have described as the most abundant monosaccharide. A second isomer is (–)-glucose, the enantiomer of the naturally occurring compound. The other 14 isomers are all diastereomers of (+)-glucose, and are given names of their own, for example, *mannose*, *galactose*, *gulose*, etc. As we might expect, these other aldohexoses undergo the same set of

reactions that we have described for glucose. Although as diastereomers they undergo these reactions at different rates and yield different individual compounds, the chemistry is essentially the same.

The products obtained from these other aldohexoses are generally given names that correspond to the names of the products obtained from glucose. This principle is illustrated in Table 28.1 for the aldohexose (+)-mannose, which occurs naturally in many plants (the name is derived from the Biblical word *manna*).

Table 28.1 NAMES OF ALDOSE DERIVATIVES

Type of Compound	Type Name	Examples of Specific Names	
Monosaccharide $\text{HOCH}_2(\text{CHOH})_4\text{CHO}$	Aldose	<i>Glucose</i>	<i>Mannose</i>
Monocarboxylic acid $\text{HOCH}_2(\text{CHOH})_4\text{COOH}$	Aldonic acid	<i>Gluconic acid</i>	<i>Mannonic acid</i>
Dicarboxylic acid $\text{HOOC}(\text{CHOH})_4\text{COOH}$	Aldaric acid	<i>Glucaric acid</i> ( <i>Saccharic acid</i> )	<i>Mannaric acid</i> ( <i>Mannosaccharic acid</i> )
Polyhydroxy alcohol $\text{HOCH}_2(\text{CHOH})_4\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	Alditol	<i>Glucitol</i> ( <i>Sorbitol</i> )	<i>Mannitol</i>
Aldehyde acid $\text{HOOC}(\text{CHOH})_4\text{CHO}$	Uronic acid	<i>Glucuronic acid</i>	<i>Mannuronic acid</i>

The structural formula we have drawn to represent (+)-glucose so far could actually represent any of the 16 aldohexoses. Only when we have specified the configuration about each of the chiral centers will we have the structural formula that applies only to (+)-glucose itself. Before we can discuss the brilliant way in which the configuration of (+)-glucose was worked out, we must first learn a little more about the chemistry of monosaccharides.

**Problem 28.3** (a) How many chiral centers are there in (–)-fructose? (b) How many stereoisomeric 2-ketohexoses should there be? (c) Draw a cross formula of one enantiomer of each pair, placing C=O near the top, and –OH on the right on the lowest chiral center (C-5).

## 28.6 Oxidation. Effect of alkali

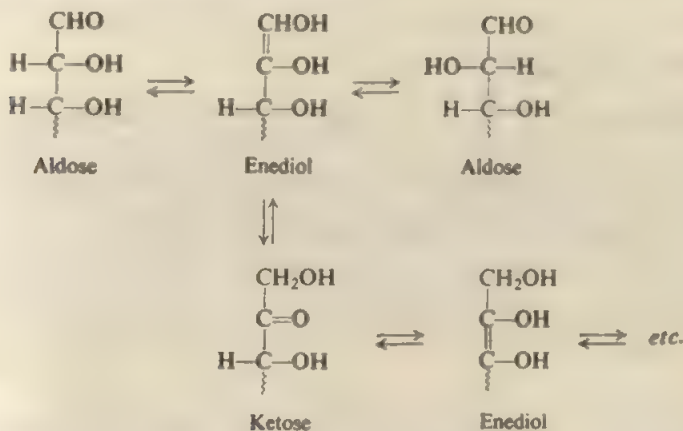
Aldoses can be oxidized in four important ways: (a) by Fehling's or Tollens' reagent; (b) by bromine water; (c) by nitric acid; and (d) by periodic acid,  $\text{HIO}_4$ .

Aldoses reduce **Tollens' reagent**, as we would expect aldehydes to do. They also reduce **Fehling's solution**, an alkaline solution of cupric ion complexed with tartrate ion (or **Benedict's solution**, in which complexing is with citrate ion); the deep-blue color of the solution is discharged, and red cuprous oxide precipitates. These reactions are less useful, however, than we might at first have expected.

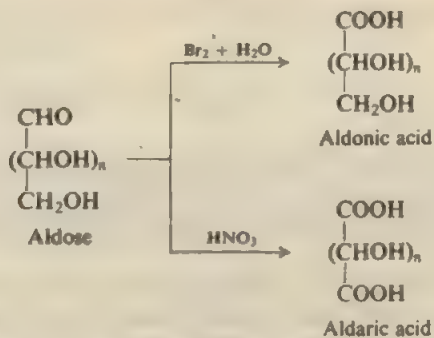
In the first place, they cannot be used to differentiate aldoses from ketoses. Ketoses, too, reduce Fehling's and Tollens' reagents; this behavior is characteristic of  $\alpha$ -hydroxy ketones.



In the second place, oxidation by Fehling's or Tollens' reagent cannot be used for the preparation of aldonic acids (monocarboxylic acids) from aldoses. Both Fehling's and Tollens' reagents are alkaline reagents, and the treatment of sugars with alkali can cause extensive isomerization and even decomposition of the chain. Alkali exerts this effect, in part at least, by establishing an equilibrium between the monosaccharide and an enediol structure.



**Bromine water** oxidizes aldoses, but not ketoses; as an acidic reagent it does not cause isomerization of the molecule. It can therefore be used to differentiate an aldose from a ketose, and is the reagent chosen to synthesize the *aldonic acid* (monocarboxylic acid) from an aldose.

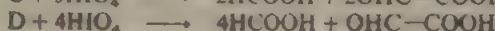
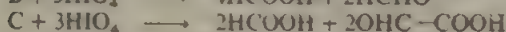
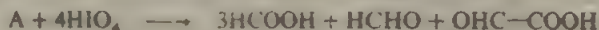


Treatment of an aldose with the more vigorous oxidizing agent **nitric acid** brings about oxidation not only of the  $-\text{CHO}$  group but also of the  $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  group, and leads to the formation of the *aldaric acid* (dicarboxylic acid).

Like other compounds that contain two or more  $-\text{OH}$  or  $=\text{O}$  groups on adjacent carbon atoms, carbohydrates undergo oxidative cleavage by **periodic acid**,  $\text{HIO}_4$  (Sec. 11.15). This reaction, introduced in 1928 by L. Malaprade (at the University of Nancy, France), is one of the most useful tools in modern research on carbohydrate structure.

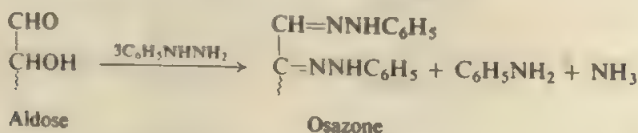
**Problem 28.4** Treatment of (+)-glucose with  $\text{HIO}_4$  gives results that confirm its aldohexose structure. What products should be formed, and how much  $\text{HIO}_4$  should be consumed?

**Problem 28.5** Identify each of the following glucose derivatives:



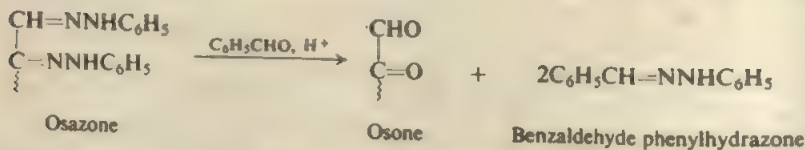
## 28.7 Osazone formation. Epimers

As aldehydes, aldoses react with phenylhydrazine to form phenylhydrazones. If an excess of phenylhydrazine is used, the reaction proceeds further to yield products known as **osazones**, which contain two phenylhydrazine residues per molecule; a third molecule of the reagent is turned into aniline and ammonia. (Just how the  $-\text{OH}$  group is oxidized is not quite clear.)



Osazone formation is not limited to carbohydrates, but is typical of  $\alpha$ -hydroxy aldehydes and  $\alpha$ -hydroxy ketones in general (e.g., *benzoin*,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHOHCOC}_6\text{H}_5$ ).

Removal of the phenylhydrazine groups yields dicarbonyl compounds known as **osones**. For example:



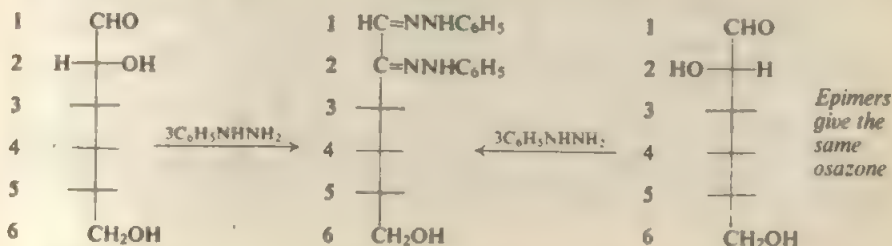
**Problem 28.6** Aldehydes are more easily reduced than ketones. On this basis what product would you expect from the reduction of glucosone by zinc and acetic acid? Outline a sequence of reactions by which an aldose can be turned into a 2-ketose.

In 1858 Peter Griess (in time taken from his duties in an English brewery) discovered diazonium salts. In 1875 Emil Fischer (at the University of Munich) found that reduction of benzenediazonium chloride by sulfur dioxide yields phenylhydrazine. Nine years later, in 1884, Fischer reported that the phenylhydrazine he had discovered could be used as a powerful tool in the study of carbohydrates.

One of the difficulties of working with carbohydrates is their tendency to form sirups; these are fine for pouring on pancakes at breakfast, but hard to work with in the laboratory. Treatment with phenylhydrazine converts carbohydrates into solid osazones, which are readily isolated and purified, and can be identified by their characteristic crystalline forms.

Fischer found osazone formation to be useful not only in identifying carbohydrates, but also—and this was much more important—in determining their configurations. For example, the two diastereomeric aldohexoses (+)-glucose and (+)-mannose yield the same osazone. Osazone formation destroys the configuration

about C-2 of an aldose, but does not affect the configuration of the rest of the molecule.



It therefore follows that (+)-glucose and (+)-mannose differ only in configuration about C-2, and have the same configuration about C-3, C-4, and C-5. We can see that whenever the configuration of either of these compounds is established, the configuration of the other is immediately known through this osazone relationship. A pair of diastereomeric aldoses that differ only in configuration about C-2 are called **epimers**. One way in which a pair of aldoses can be identified as epimers is through the formation of the same osazone.

**Problem 28.7** When the ketohexose (–)-fructose is treated with phenylhydrazine, it yields an osazone that is identical with the one prepared from either (+)-glucose or (+)-mannose. How is the configuration of (–)-fructose related to those of (+)-glucose and (+)-mannose?

## 28.8 Lengthening the carbon chain of aldoses. The Kiliani-Fischer synthesis

In the next few sections we shall examine some of the ways in which an aldose can be converted into a different aldose. These conversions can be used not only to synthesize new carbohydrates, but also, as we shall see, to help determine their configurations.

First, let us look at a method for converting an aldose into another aldose containing one more carbon atom, that is, at a method for lengthening the carbon chain. In 1886, Heinrich Kiliani (at the Technische Hochschule in Munich) showed that an aldose can be converted into two aldonic acids of the next higher carbon number by addition of HCN and hydrolysis of the resulting cyanohydrins. In 1890, Fischer reported that reduction of an aldonic acid (in the form of its lactone, Sec. 20.15) can be controlled to yield the corresponding aldose. In Fig. 28.2, on the following page, the entire **Kiliani-Fischer synthesis** is illustrated for the conversion of an aldopentose into two aldohexoses.

Addition of cyanide to the aldopentose generates a new chiral center, about which there are two possible configurations. As a result, two diastereomeric cyanohydrins are obtained, which yield diastereomeric carboxylic acids (aldonic acids) and finally diastereomeric aldoses.

The situation is strictly analogous to that in Sec. 4.26. Using models, we can see that the particular configuration obtained here depends upon which face of the carbonyl group is attacked by cyanide ion. Since the aldehyde is already chiral, attack at the two faces is not equally likely. Both possible diastereomeric products are formed, and in unequal amounts.



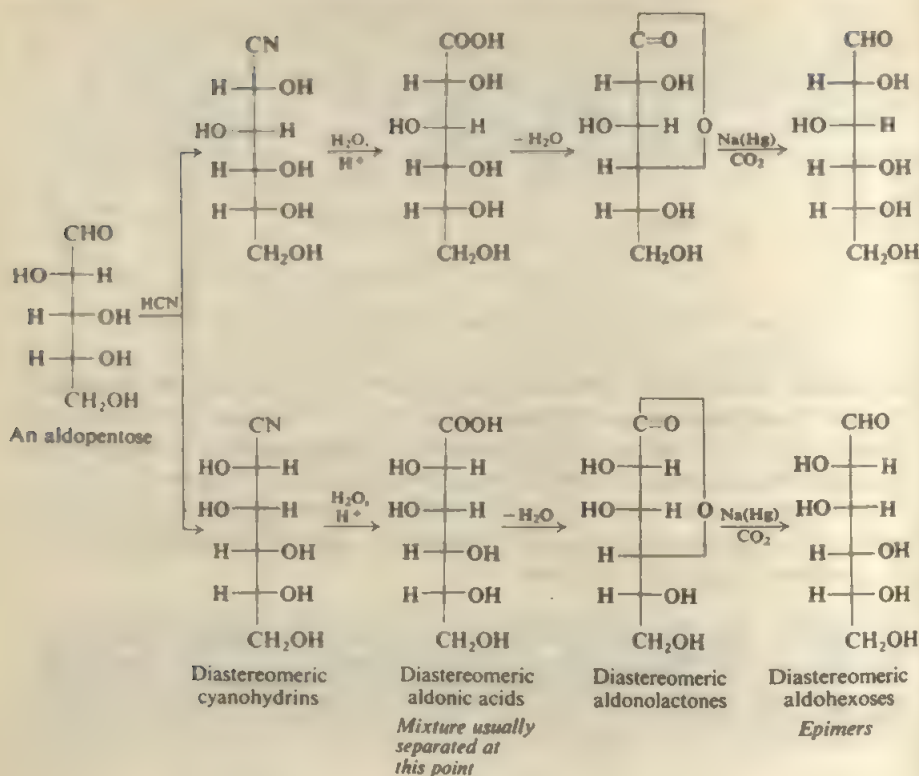


Figure 28.2. An example of the Kiliani-Fischer synthesis.

Since a six-carbon aldonic acid contains —OH groups in the  $\gamma$ - and  $\delta$ -positions, we would expect it to form a lactone under acidic conditions (Sec. 20.15). This occurs, the  $\gamma$ -lactone generally being the more stable product. It is the lactone that is actually reduced to an aldose in the last step of a Kiliani-Fischer synthesis.

The pair of aldoses obtained from the sequence differ only in configuration about C-2, and hence are epimers. A pair of aldoses can be recognized as epimers not only by their conversion into the same osazone (Sec. 28.7), but also by their formation in the same Kiliani-Fischer synthesis.

Like other diastereomers, these epimers differ in physical properties and therefore are separable. However, since carbohydrates are difficult to purify, it is usually more convenient to separate the diastereomeric products at the acid stage, where crystalline salts are easily formed, so that a single pure lactone can be reduced to a single pure aldose.

**Problem 28.8** As reducing agent, Fischer used sodium amalgam and acid. Today, lactones are reduced to aldoses by the addition of NaBH<sub>4</sub> to an aqueous solution of lactone. If, however, lactone is added to the NaBH<sub>4</sub>, another product, not the aldose, is obtained. What do you think this other product is? Why is the order of mixing of reagents crucial?

**Problem 28.9** (a) Using cross formulas to show configuration, outline all steps in a Kiliani-Fischer synthesis, starting with the aldotriose R-(+)-glyceraldehyde, CH<sub>2</sub>OHCHOHCHO. How many aldotetroses would be expected? (b) Give configura-



tions of the aldopentoses expected from each of these aldotetroses by a Kiliani-Fischer synthesis, of the aldohexoses expected from each of these aldopentoses.

(c) Make a "family tree" showing configurations of these aldoses hypothetically descended from *R*-(+)-glyceraldehyde. If the CHO is placed at the top in each case, what configurational feature is the same in all these formulas? Why?

**Problem 28.10** (a) Give the configuration of the dicarboxylic acid (aldaric acid) that would be obtained from each of the tetroses in Problem 28.9 by nitric acid oxidation. (b) Assume that you have actually carried out the chemistry in part (a). In what simple way could you assign configuration to each of your tetroses?

## 28.9 Shortening the carbon chain of aldoses. The Ruff degradation

There are a number of ways in which an aldose can be converted into another aldose of one less carbon atom. One of these methods for shortening the carbon chain is the **Ruff degradation**. An aldose is oxidized by bromine water to the aldonic acid; oxidation of the calcium salt of this acid by hydrogen peroxide in the presence of ferric salts yields carbonate ion and an aldose of one less carbon atom (see Fig. 28.3).

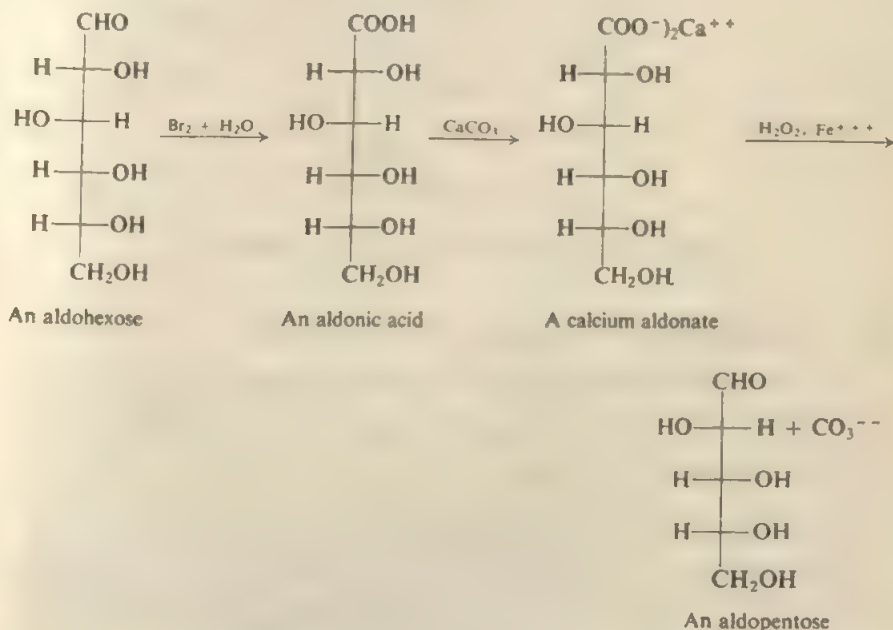


Figure 28.3. An example of the Ruff degradation.

## 28.10 Conversion of an aldose into its epimer

In the presence of a tertiary amine, in particular pyridine (Sec. 35.6), an equilibrium is established between an aldonic acid and its epimer. This reaction is the basis of the best method for converting an aldose into its epimer, since the only configuration affected is that at C-2. The aldose is oxidized by bromine water to the aldonic acid, which is then treated with pyridine. From the equilibrium mixture

thus formed, the epimeric aldonic acid is separated, and reduced (in the form of its lactone) to the epimeric aldose. See, for example, Fig. 28.4.

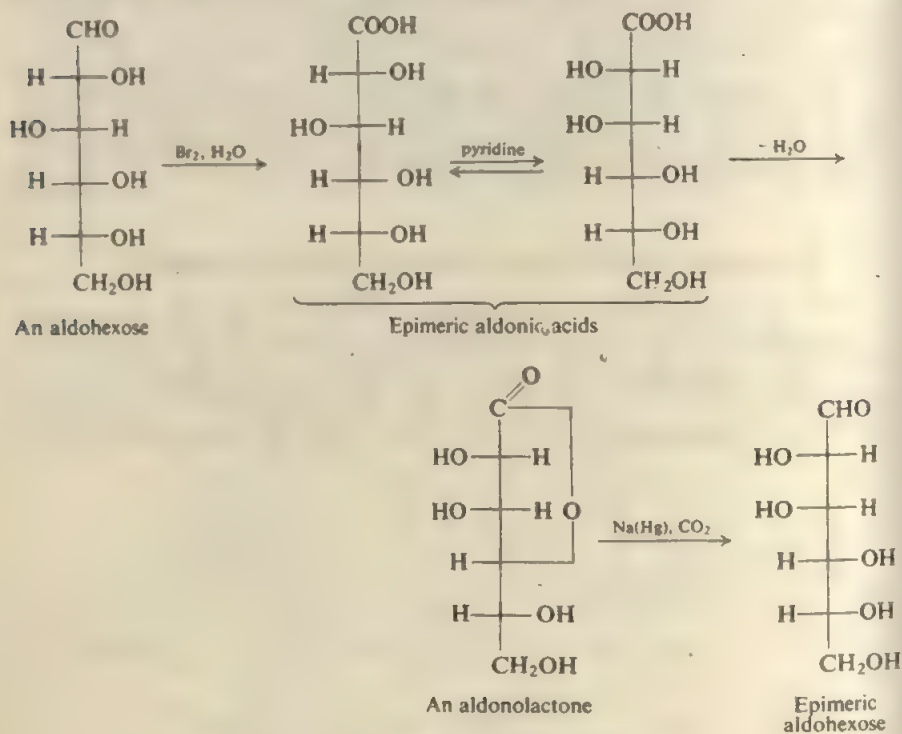


Figure 28.4. Conversion of an aldose into its epimer.

### 28.11 Configuration of (+)-glucose. The Fischer proof

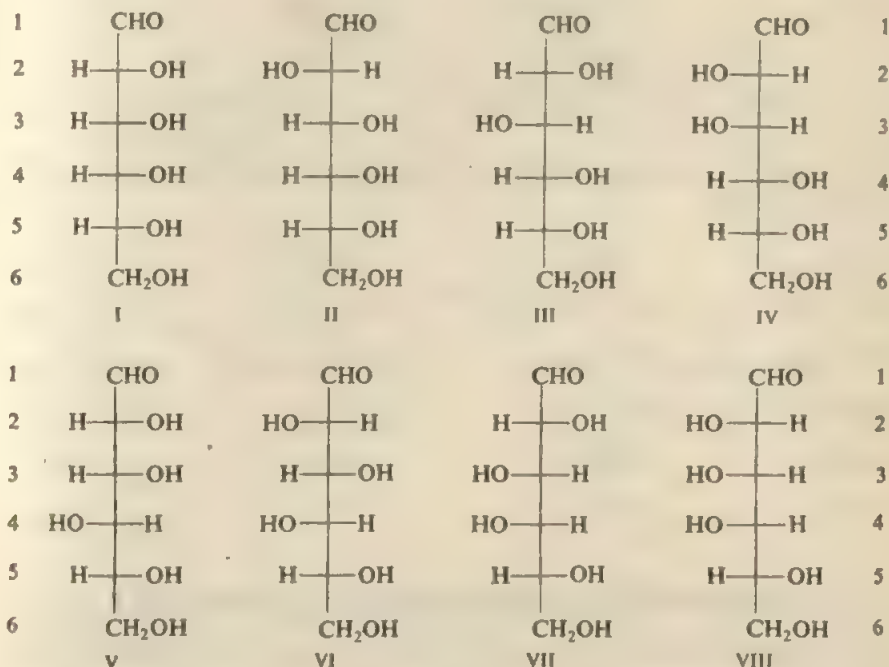
Let us turn back to the year 1888. Only a few monosaccharides were known, among them (+)-glucose, (−)-fructose, (+)-arabinose. (+)-Mannose had just been synthesized. It was known that (+)-glucose was an aldohexose and that (+)-arabinose was an aldopentose. Emil Fischer had discovered (1884) that phenylhydrazine could convert carbohydrates into osazones. The Kiliani cyanohydrin method for lengthening the chain was just two years old.

It was known that aldoses could be reduced to alditols, and could be oxidized to the monocarboxylic aldonic acids and to the dicarboxylic aldaric acids. A theory of stereoisomerism and optical activity had been proposed (1874) by van't Hoff and Le Bel. Methods for separating stereoisomers were known and optical activity could be measured. The concepts of racemic modifications, *meso* compounds, and epimers were well established.

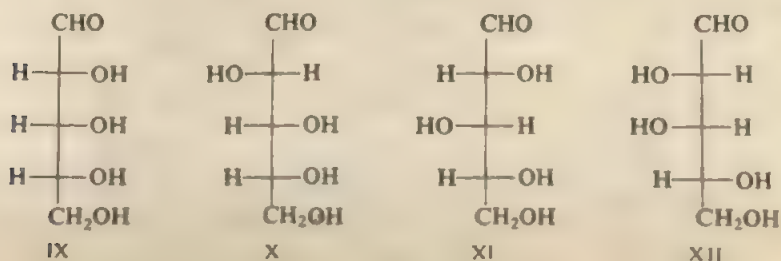
(+)-Glucose was known to be an aldohexose; but as an aldohexose it could have any one of 16 possible configurations. The question was: *which* configuration did it have? In 1888, Emil Fischer (at the University of Würzburg) set out to find the answer to that question, and in 1891 announced the completion of a most remarkable piece of chemical research, for which he received the Nobel Prize in 1902. Let us follow Fischer's steps to the configuration of (+)-glucose. Although somewhat modified, the following arguments are essentially those of Fischer.

The 16 possible configurations consist of eight pairs of enantiomers. Since methods of determining absolute configuration were not then available, Fischer realized that he could at best limit the configuration of (+)-glucose to a pair of enantiomeric configurations; he would not be able to tell which one of the pair was the correct absolute configuration.

To simplify the problem, Fischer therefore rejected eight of the possible configurations, arbitrarily retaining only those (I-VIII) in which C-5 carried the —OH on the right (with the understanding that —H and —OH project toward the observer). He realized that any argument that led to the selection of one of these formulas applied with equal force to the mirror image of that formula. (As it turned out, his arbitrary choice of an —OH on the right of C-5 in (+)-glucose was the correct one.)

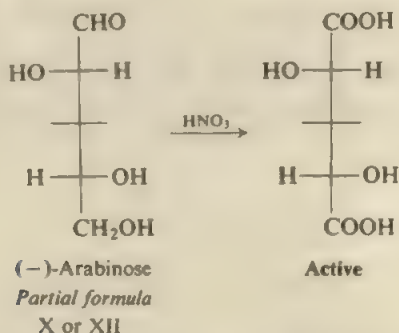


Since his proof depended in part on the relationship between (+)-glucose and the aldopentose (–)-arabinose, Fischer also had to consider the configurations of the five-carbon aldoses. Of the eight possible configurations, he retained only four, IX–XII, again those on which the bottom chiral center carried the —OH on the right.

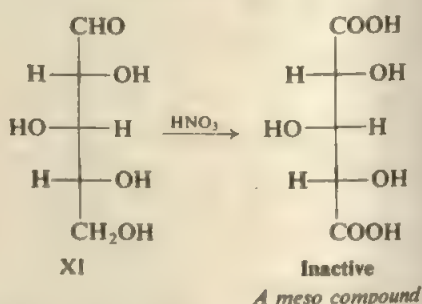
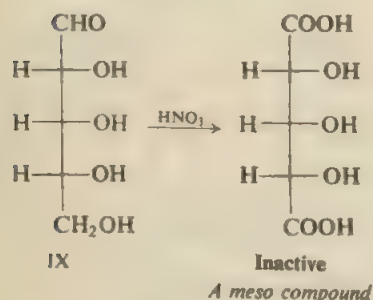


The line of argument is as follows:

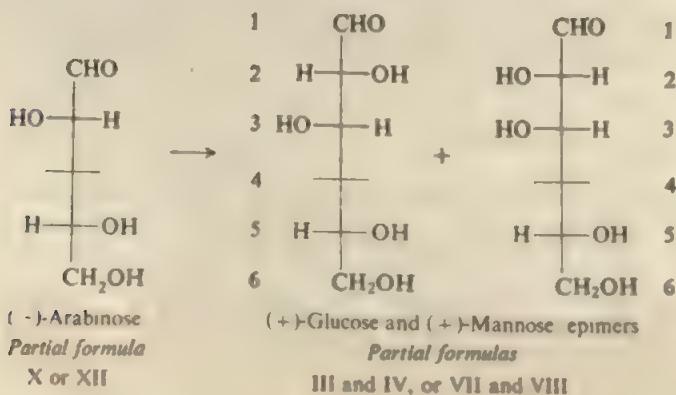
(1) Upon oxidation by nitric acid, (–)-arabinose yields an optically active dicarboxylic acid. Since the –OH on the lowest chiral center is arbitrarily placed on the right, this fact means that the –OH on the uppermost chiral center is on the left (as in X or XII),



for if it were on the right (as in IX or XI), the diacid would necessarily be an inactive *meso* acid.

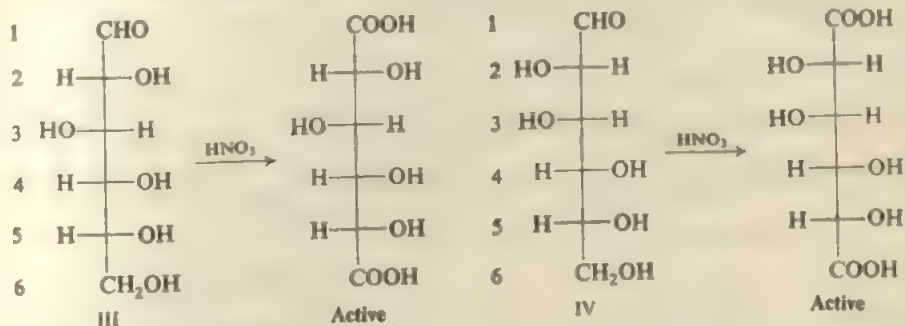


(2) (–)-Arabinose is converted by the Kiliani-Fischer synthesis into (+)-glucose and (+)-mannose. (+)-Glucose and (+)-mannose therefore are epimers, differing only in configuration about C-2, and have the same configuration about C-3, C-4, and C-5 as does (–)-arabinose. (+)-Glucose and (+)-mannose must be III and IV, or VII and VIII.

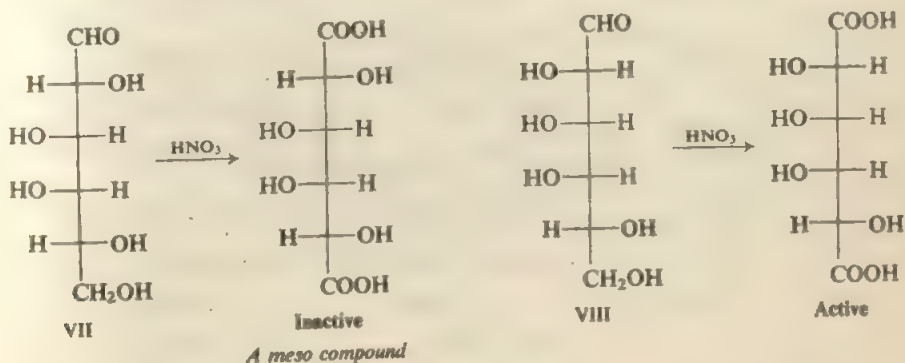




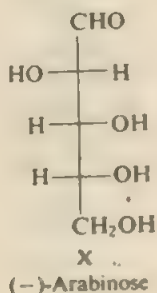
(3) Upon oxidation by nitric acid, both (+)-glucose and (+)-mannose yield dicarboxylic acids that are optically active. This means that the  $\text{—OH}$  on C-4 is on the right, as in III and IV,



for if it were on the left, as in VII and VIII, one of the aldaric acids would necessarily be an inactive *meso* acid.

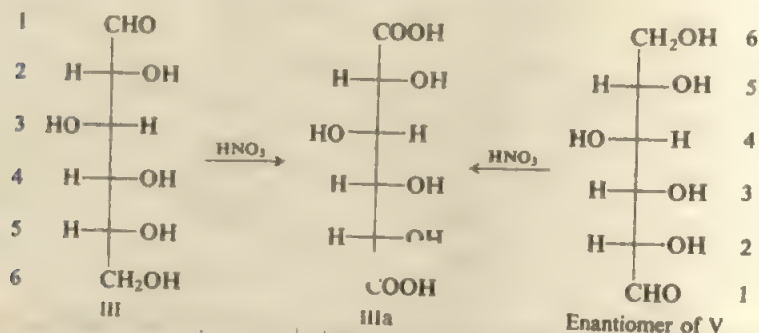


(-)-Arabinose must also have that same  $\text{—OH}$  on the right, and hence has configuration X.

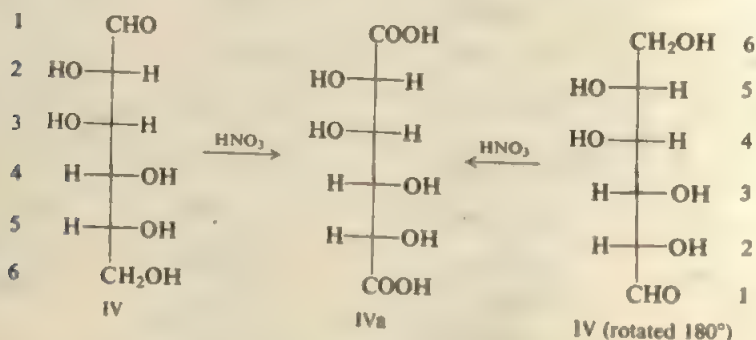


(+)-Glucose and (+)-mannose have configurations III and IV, but one question remains: which compound has which configuration? One more step is needed.

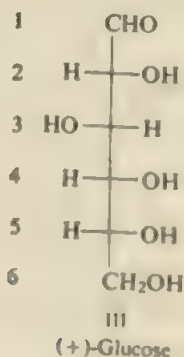
(4) Oxidation of another hexose, (+)-gulose, yields the same dicarboxylic acid, (+)-glucaric acid, as does oxidation of (+)-glucose. (The gulose was synthesized for this purpose by Fischer.) If we examine the two possible configurations for (+)-glucaric acid, IIIa and IVa, we see that only IIIa can be derived from two different hexoses: from III and the enantiomer of V.



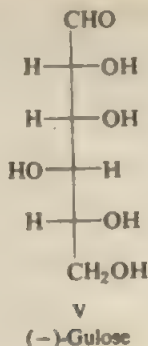
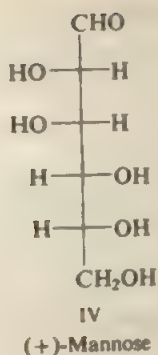
The acid IVa can be derived from just one hexose: from IV.



It follows that (+)-glucaric acid has configuration IIIa, and therefore that (+)-glucose has configuration III.



(+)-Mannose, of course, has configuration IV, and (−)-gulose (the enantiomer of the one used by Fischer) has configuration V.

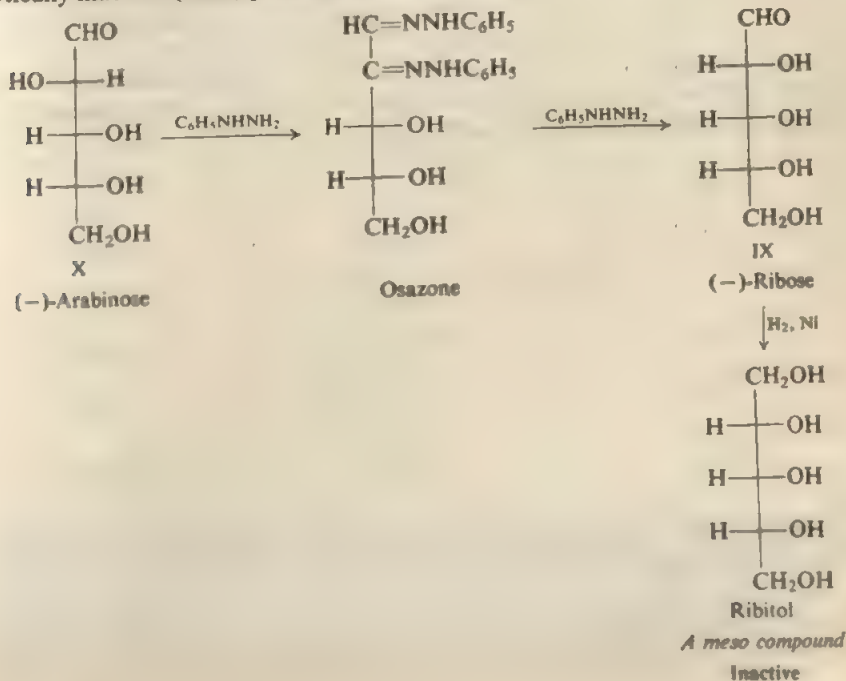


## 28.12 Configurations of aldoses

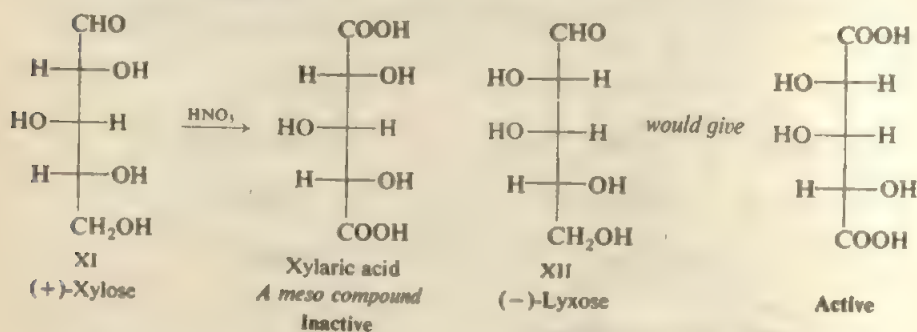
Today all possible aldoses (and ketoses) of six carbons or fewer, and many of more than six carbons, are known; most of these do not occur naturally and have been synthesized. The configurations of all these have been determined by application of the same principles that Fischer used to establish the configuration of (+)-glucose; indeed, 12 of the 16 aldohexoses were worked out by Fischer and his students.

So far in our discussion, we have seen how configurations III, IV, V, and X of the previous section were assigned to (+)-glucose, (+)-mannose, (-)-gulose, and (-)-arabinose, respectively. Let us see how configurations have been assigned to some other monosaccharides.

The aldopentose (-)-ribose forms the same osazone as (-)-arabinose. Since (-)-arabinose was shown to have configuration X, (-)-ribose must have configuration IX. This configuration is confirmed by the reduction of (-)-ribose to the optically inactive (*meso*) pentahydroxy compound *ribitol*.

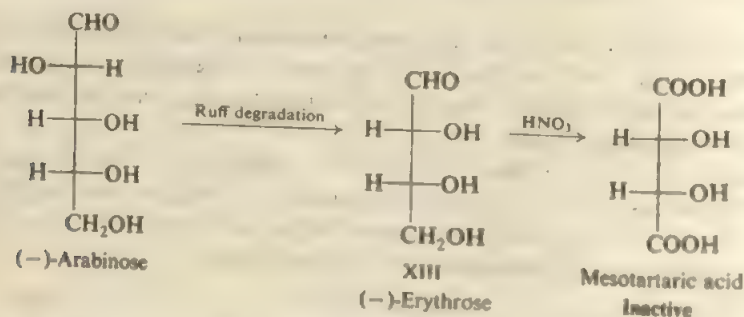


The two remaining aldopentoses, (+)-xylose and (-)-lyxose, must have the configurations XI and XII. Oxidation by nitric acid converts (+)-xylose into an

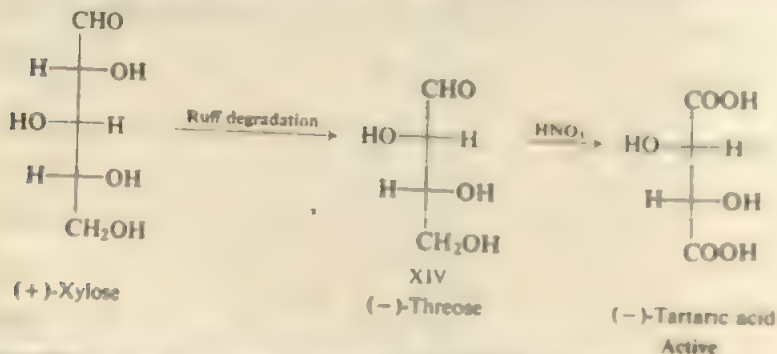


optically inactive (*meso*) aldaric acid. (+)-Xylose must therefore be XI, and (-)-lyxose must be XII.

Degradation of (-)-arabinose yields the tetrose (-)-erythrose, which therefore has configuration XIII. In agreement with this configuration, (-)-erythrose is found to yield *mesotartaric* acid upon oxidation by nitric acid.



Degradation of (+)-xylose by the Ruff method yields the tetrose (-)-threose, which must therefore have configuration XIV. This is confirmed by oxidation of (-)-threose to optically active (-)-tartaric acid.



**Problem 28.11** Assign a name to I, II, VI, VII, and VIII (p. 1067) on the basis of the following evidence and the configurations already assigned.

(a) The aldohexoses (+)-galactose and (+)-talose yield the same osazone. Degradation of (+)-galactose yields (-)-xylose. Oxidation of (+)-galactose by nitric acid yields an inactive *meso* acid, *galactaric acid* (also called *muic acid*).



(b) (–)-Ribose is converted by the Kiliani-Fischer synthesis into the two aldohexoses (+)-allose and (+)-altrose. Oxidation of (+)-altrose yields optically active (+)-altraric acid. Reduction of (+)-allose to a hexahydroxy alcohol yields optically inactive allitol.

(c) The aldohexose (–)-idose yields the same osazone as (–)-gulose.

**Problem 28.12** Go back to the “family tree” you constructed in Problem 28.9, p. 1064, and assign names to all structures.

**Problem 28.13** What is the configuration of the 2-ketohexose (–)-fructose? (See Problem 28.7, p. 1063.)

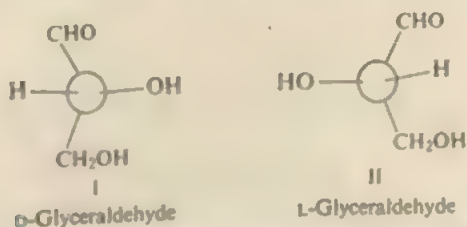
**Problem 28.14** Give the configurations of (–)-glucose, (–)-mannose, and (+)-fructose.

## 28.13 Optical families. D and L

Before we can explore further the structure of (+)-glucose and its relatives, we must examine a topic of stereochemistry we have not yet touched on: use of the prefixes D and L.

Most applications of stereochemistry, as we have already seen, are based upon the *relative* configurations of different compounds, not upon their absolute configurations. We are chiefly interested in whether the configurations of a reactant and its product are the same or different, not in what either configuration actually is. In the days before any absolute configurations had been determined, there was the problem not only of determining the relative configurations of various optically active compounds, but also of indicating these relationships once they had been established. This was a particularly pressing problem with the carbohydrates.

The compound **glyceraldehyde**,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OHCHOHCHO}$ , was selected as a standard of reference, because it is the simplest carbohydrate—an aldotriose—capable of optical isomerism. Its configuration could be related to those of the carbohydrates, and because of its highly reactive functional groups, it could be converted into, and thus related to, many other kinds of organic compounds. (+)-Glyceraldehyde was arbitrarily assigned configuration I, and was designated D-glyceraldehyde; (–)-glyceraldehyde was assigned configuration II and was designated L-glyceraldehyde. Configurations were assigned to the glyceraldehydes purely for



convenience, the particular assignment had a 50:50 chance of being correct, and, as it has turned out, the configuration chosen actually is the correct absolute configuration.

Other compounds could be related configurationally to one or the other of the glyceraldehydes by means of reactions that did not involve breaking bonds to a chiral center (Sec. 4.24). On the basis of the *assumed* configuration of the glyceraldehyde, these related compounds could be assigned configurations, too. As it has

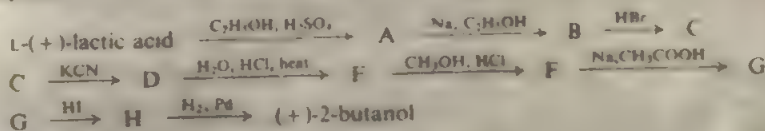


But, by the same token, the letters *R* and *S* do not immediately reveal configurational relationships between two compounds; we have to work out and compare the configurations in each case.

The designations *D* and *L*, on the other hand, tell us nothing of the configuration of the compound unless we know the route by which the configurational relationship has been established. However, in the case of the carbohydrates (and the amino acids, Chap. 30), there are certain conventions about this which make these designations extremely useful.

**Problem 28.15** Which specification, *R* or *S*, would you give to the following? (a) *D*-(+)-glyceraldehyde, (b) *D*-(+)-glyceric acid, (c) *D*-(+)-3-bromo-2-hydroxypropionic acid, (d) *D*-(+)-lactic acid.

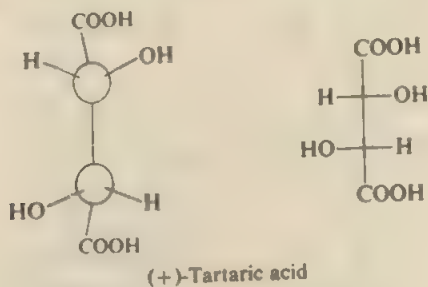
**Problem 28.16** The transformation of *L*-(+)-lactic acid into (+)-2-butanol was accomplished by the following sequence of reactions:



What is the absolute configuration of (+)-2-butanol?

## 28.14 Tartaric acid

Tartaric acid,  $\text{HOOCCHOHCHOHCOOH}$ , has played a key role in the development of stereochemistry, and particularly the stereochemistry of the carbohydrates. In 1848 Louis Pasteur, using a hand lens and a pair of tweezers, laboriously separated a quantity of the sodium ammonium salt of racemic tartaric acid into two piles of mirror-image crystals and, in thus carrying out the first resolution of a racemic modification, was led to the discovery of enantiomerism. Almost exactly 100 years later, in 1951, Bijvoet, using x-ray diffraction—and also laboriously—determined the actual arrangement in space of the atoms of the sodium rubidium salt of (+)-tartaric acid, and thus made the first determination of the absolute configuration of an optically active substance.



As we shall see in the next section, tartaric acid is the stereochemical link between the carbohydrates and our standard of reference, glyceraldehyde. In 1917, the configurational relationship between glyceraldehyde and tartaric acid was worked out. When the reaction sequence outlined in Fig. 28.6 (on the following page) was carried out starting with *D*-glyceraldehyde, two products were obtained, one inactive and one which rotated the plane of polarized light to the left. The inactive product was, of course, mesotartaric acid, III. The active (–)-tartaric acid

thus obtained was assigned configuration IV; since it is related to D-glyceraldehyde, we designate it D-(+)-tartaric acid.

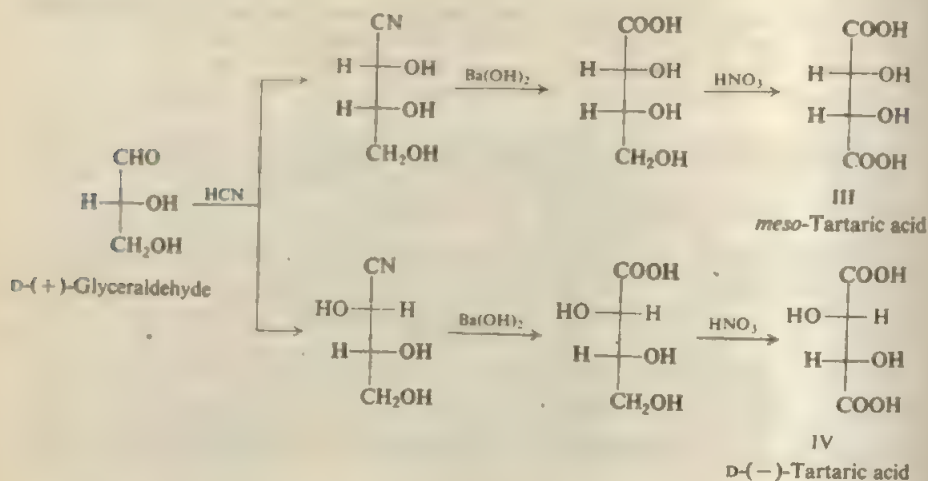
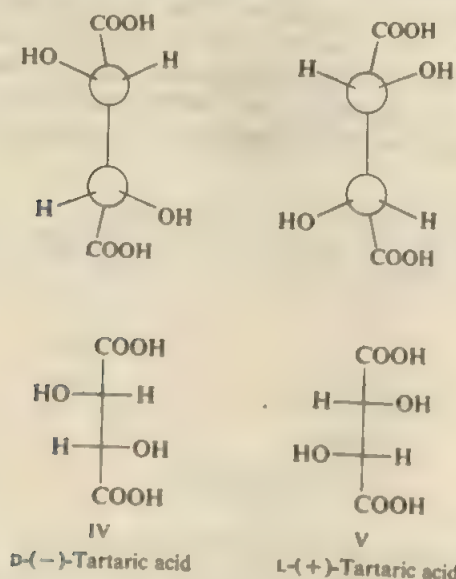


Figure 28.6. Configurational relationship between glyceraldehyde and tartaric acid.

On the basis of the assumed configuration of D-(+)-glyceraldehyde, then, L-(+)-tartaric acid, the enantiomer of D-(+)-tartaric acid, would have configuration V, the mirror image of IV. When Bijvoet determined the absolute configura-



tion of (+)-tartaric acid, he found that it actually has the configuration that had been previously assumed. The assumed configurations of the glyceraldehydes, and hence the assumed configurations of all compounds related to them, were indeed the correct ones.



The designation of even the tartaric acids is subject to ambiguity. In this book, we have treated the tartaric acids as one does carbohydrates—by considering  $\text{CHO}$  of glyceraldehyde as the position from which the chain is lengthened, via the cyanohydrin reaction. Some chemists, on the other hand, view the tartaric acids as one does the amino acids (Sec. 30.5) and, considering  $\text{COOH}$  to be derived from  $\text{CHO}$  of glyceraldehyde, designate  $(-)$ -tartaric acid as L, and  $(+)$ -tartaric acid as D.

Regardless of which convention one follows, this fact remains.  $(-)$ - and  $(+)$ -tartaric acid—and  $(+)$ - and  $(-)$ -glyceraldehyde—have the absolute configurations shown above and on p. 1073.

**Problem 28.17** Give the specification by the *R/S* system of: (a)  $(-)$ -tartaric acid, (b)  $(+)$ -tartaric acid; (c) mesotartaric acid.

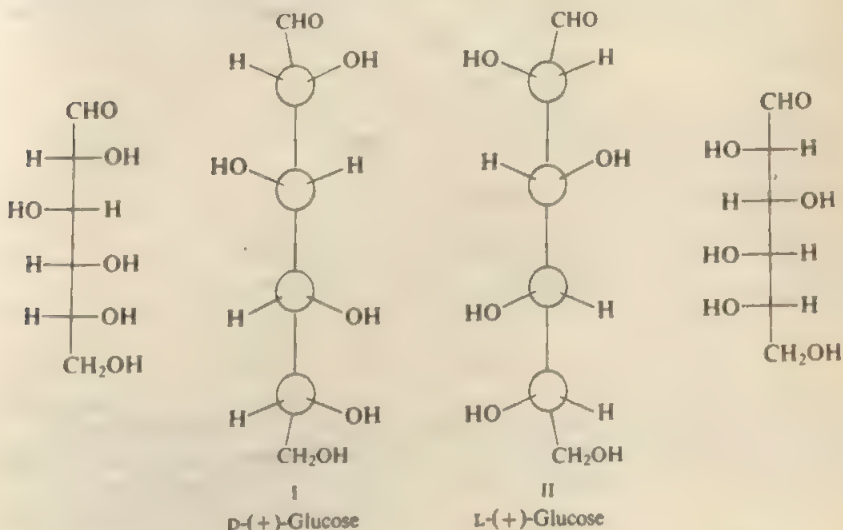
**Problem 28.18** (a) From the sequence of Fig. 28.6 the ratio of products III:IV is about 1:3. Why would you have expected to obtain III and IV in unequal amounts?

(b) Outline the same sequence starting from L- $(-)$ -glyceraldehyde. Label each product with its name, showing its rotation and D/L designation. In what ratio will these products be obtained?

(c) Outline the same sequence starting from racemic  $(\pm)$ -glyceraldehyde. How do you account for the fact that only inactive material is obtained in spite of the unequal amounts of diastereomeric products formed from each of the enantiomeric glyceraldehydes?

## 28.15 Families of aldoses. Absolute configuration

The evidence on which Fischer assigned a configuration to  $(+)$ -glucose leads to either of the enantiomeric structures I and II. Fischer, we have seen, arbitrarily selected I, in which the lowest chiral center carries  $\text{—OH}$  on the right.



We recognize I as the enantiomer that would hypothetically be derived from D- $(+)$ -glyceraldehyde by a series of Kiliani-Fischer syntheses, the chiral center of  $(+)$ -glyceraldehyde being retained as the *lowest* chiral center of the aldoses derived from it. (See Problem 28.9, p. 1064.) That  $(+)$ -glucose is related to D- $(+)$ -glyceraldehyde has been established by a number of reaction sequences, one of which

is shown in Fig. 28.7. On this basis, then, structure I becomes D-(+)-glucose, and structure II becomes L-(-)-glucose.

In 1906 the American chemist M. A. Rosanoff (then an instructor at New York University) proposed glyceraldehyde as the standard to which the configurations of carbohydrates should be related. Eleven years later experiment showed that it is the *dextrorotatory* (+)-glyceraldehyde that is related to (+)-glucose. On that basis, (+)-glyceraldehyde was then given the designation D and was assigned a configuration to conform with the one arbitrarily assigned to (+)-glucose by Fischer. Although rejected by Fischer, the Rosanoff convention became universally accepted.

Regardless of the direction in which they rotate polarized light, all monosaccharides are designated as D or L on the basis of the configuration about the lowest chiral center, the carbonyl group being at the top: D if the —OH is on the right, L if the —OH is on the left. (As always, it is understood that —H and —OH project toward us from the plane of the paper.) (+)-Mannose and (–)-arabinose, for example, are both assigned to the D-family on the basis of their relationship to D-(+)-glucose, and, through it, to D-(+)-glyceraldehyde.

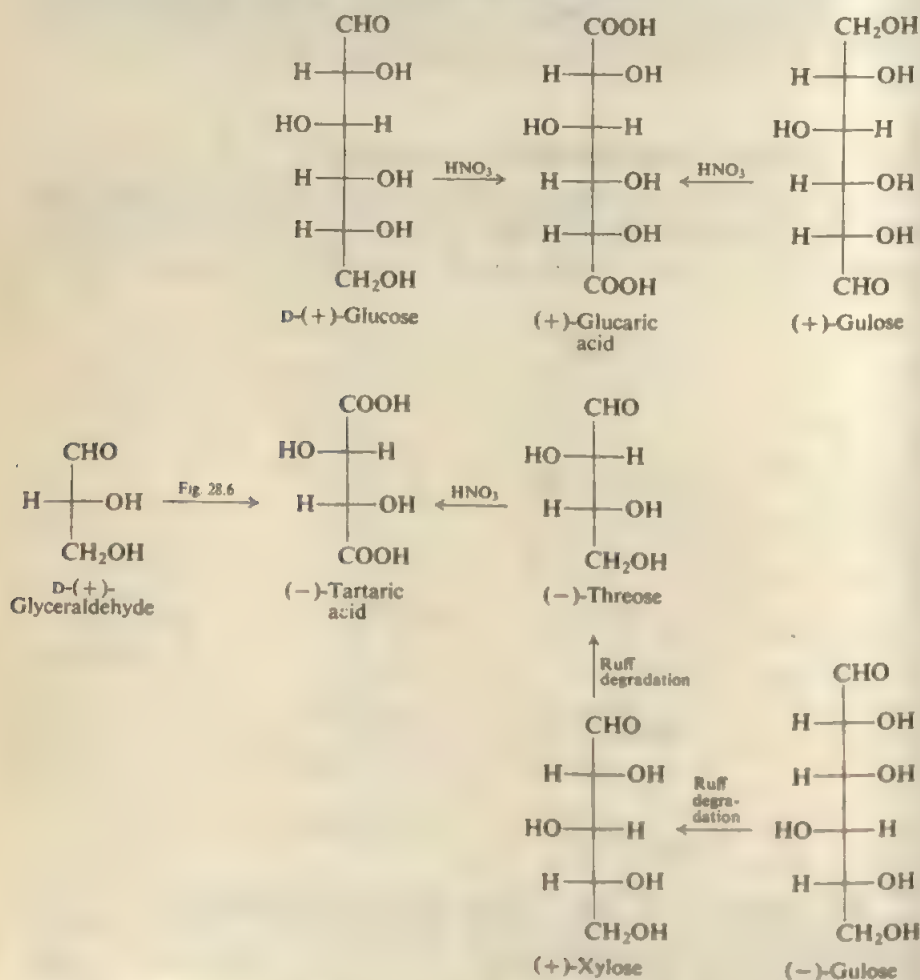
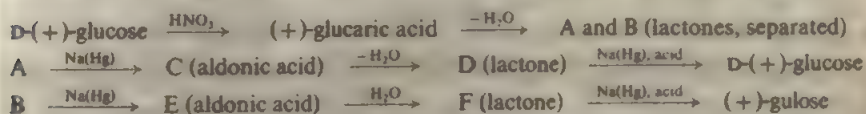


Figure 28.7. Relating (+)-glucose to D-(+)-glyceraldehyde.

Until 1951, these configurations were accepted on a purely empirical basis, they were a convenient way to show configurational relationships among the various carbohydrates, and between them and other organic compounds. But so far as anyone knew, the configurations of these compounds might actually have been the mirror images of those assigned; the lowest chiral center in the D-series of monosaccharides might have carried  $\text{—OH}$  on the left. As we have seen, however, when Bijvoet determined the absolute configuration of (+)-tartaric acid by x-ray analysis in 1951, he found that it actually has the configuration that had been up to then merely assumed. The arbitrary choice that Emil Fischer made in 1891 was the correct one; the configuration he assigned to (+)-glucose and, through it, to every carbohydrate—is the correct absolute configuration.

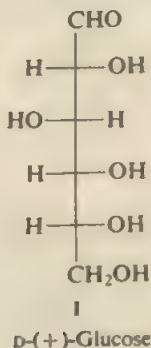
**Problem 28.19** The (+)-gulose that played such an important part in the proof of configuration of D-(+)-glucose was synthesized by Fischer via the following sequence:



Give the structures of A through F. What is the configuration of (+)-gulose? Is it a member of the D-family or of the L-family? Why?

## 28.16 Cyclic structure of D-(+)-glucose. Formation of glucosides

We have seen evidence indicating that D-(+)-glucose is a pentahydroxy aldehyde. We have seen how its configuration has been established. It might seem, therefore, that D-(+)-glucose had been definitely proved to have structure I.



But during the time that much of the work we have just described was going on, certain facts were accumulating that were inconsistent with this structure of D-(+)-glucose. By 1895 it had become clear that the picture of D-(+)-glucose as a pentahydroxy aldehyde had to be modified.

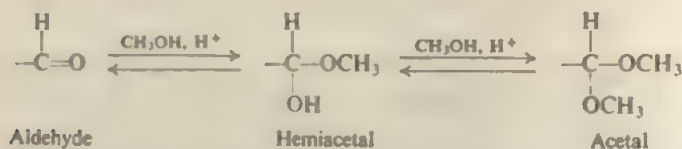
Among the facts that had still to be accounted for were the following:

(a) **D-(+)-Glucose fails to undergo certain reactions typical of aldehydes.** Although it is readily oxidized, it gives a negative Schiff test and does not form a bisulfite addition product.

(b) **D-(+)-Glucose exists in two isomeric forms which undergo mutarotation.** When crystals of ordinary D-(+)-glucose of m.p.  $146^\circ$  are dissolved in water, the

specific rotation gradually drops from an initial  $+112^\circ$  to  $+52.7^\circ$ . On the other hand, when crystals of D-(+)-glucose of m.p.  $150^\circ$  (obtained by crystallization at temperatures above  $98^\circ$ ) are dissolved in water, the specific rotation gradually rises from an initial  $+19^\circ$  to  $+52.7^\circ$ . The form with the higher positive rotation is called  $\alpha$ -D-(+)-glucose and that with lower rotation  $\beta$ -D-(+)-glucose. The change in rotation of each of these to the equilibrium value is called **mutarotation**.

(c) D-(+)-Glucose forms two isomeric methyl D-glucosides. Aldehydes, we remember, react with alcohols in the presence of anhydrous HCl to form acetals (Sec. 18.14). If the alcohol is, say, methanol, the acetal contains two methyl groups:



When D-(+)-glucose is treated with methanol and HCl, the product, **methyl D-glucoside**, contains only one  $\text{---CH}_3$  group; yet it has properties resembling those of a full acetal. It does not spontaneously revert to aldehyde and alcohol on contact with water, but requires hydrolysis by aqueous acids.

#### Glucose anomers: Hemiacetals

*Reducing sugars*

*Mutarotate*

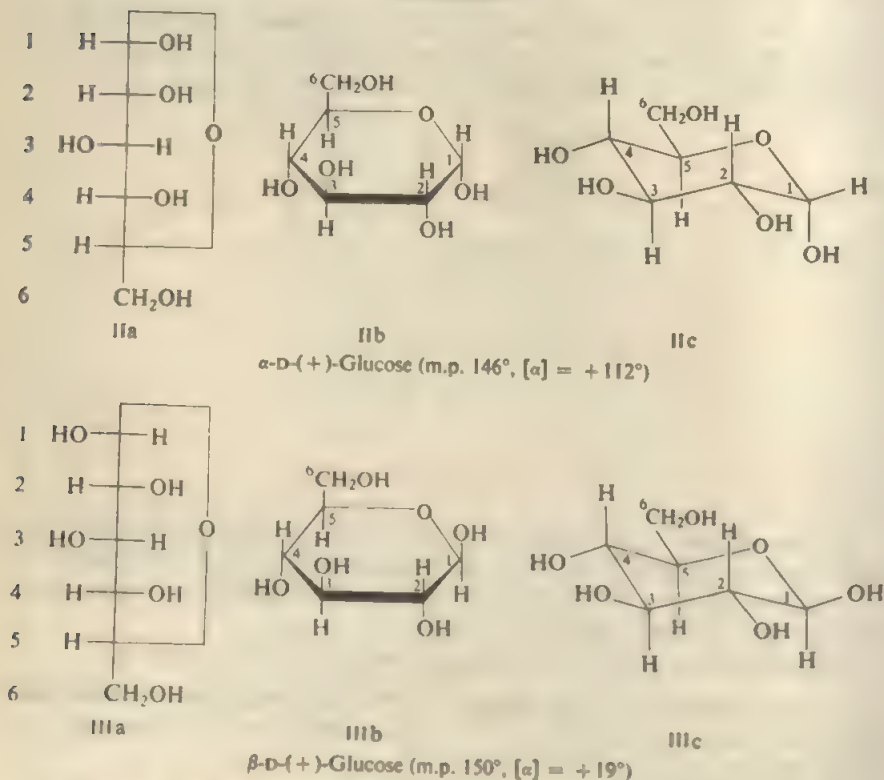


Figure 28.8. Cyclic structures of D-(+)-glucose.



Furthermore, not just one but two of these monomethyl derivatives of D-(+)-glucose are known, one with m.p.  $165^\circ$  and specific rotation  $+158^\circ$ , and the other with m.p.  $107^\circ$  and specific rotation  $-33^\circ$ . The isomer of higher positive rotation is called **methyl  $\alpha$ -D-glucoside**, and the other is called **methyl  $\beta$ -D-glucoside**. These glucosides do not undergo mutarotation, and do not reduce Tollens' or Fehling's reagent.

To fit facts like these, ideas about the structure of D-(+)-glucose had to be changed. In 1895, as a result of work by many chemists, including Tollens, Fischer, and Tanret, there emerged a picture of D-(+)-glucose as a *cyclic* structure. In 1926 the ring size was corrected, and in recent years the preferred conformation has been elucidated.

D-(+)-Glucose has the cyclic structure represented crudely by IIa and IIIa, more accurately by IIb and IIIb, and best of all by IIc and IIId (Fig. 28.8).

D-(+)-Glucose is the hemiacetal corresponding to reaction between the aldehyde group and the C-5 hydroxyl group of the open-chain structure (I). It has a cyclic structure simply because aldehyde and alcohol are part of the same molecule.

There are two isomeric forms of D-(+)-glucose because this cyclic structure has one more chiral center than Fischer's original open-chain structure (I).  $\alpha$ -D-(+)-Glucose and  $\beta$ -D-(+)-glucose are diastereomers, differing in configuration about C-1. Such a pair of diastereomers are called **anomers**.

As hemiacetals,  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -D-(+)-glucose are readily hydrolyzed by water. In aqueous solution either anomer is converted—via the open-chain form—into an equilibrium mixture containing both cyclic isomers. This mutarotation results from the ready opening and closing of the hemiacetal ring (Fig. 28.9).

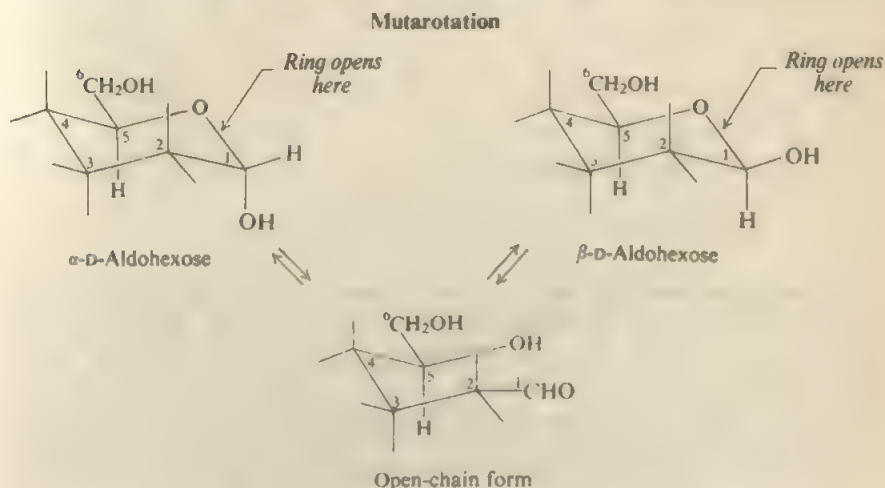


Figure 28.9. Mutarotation.

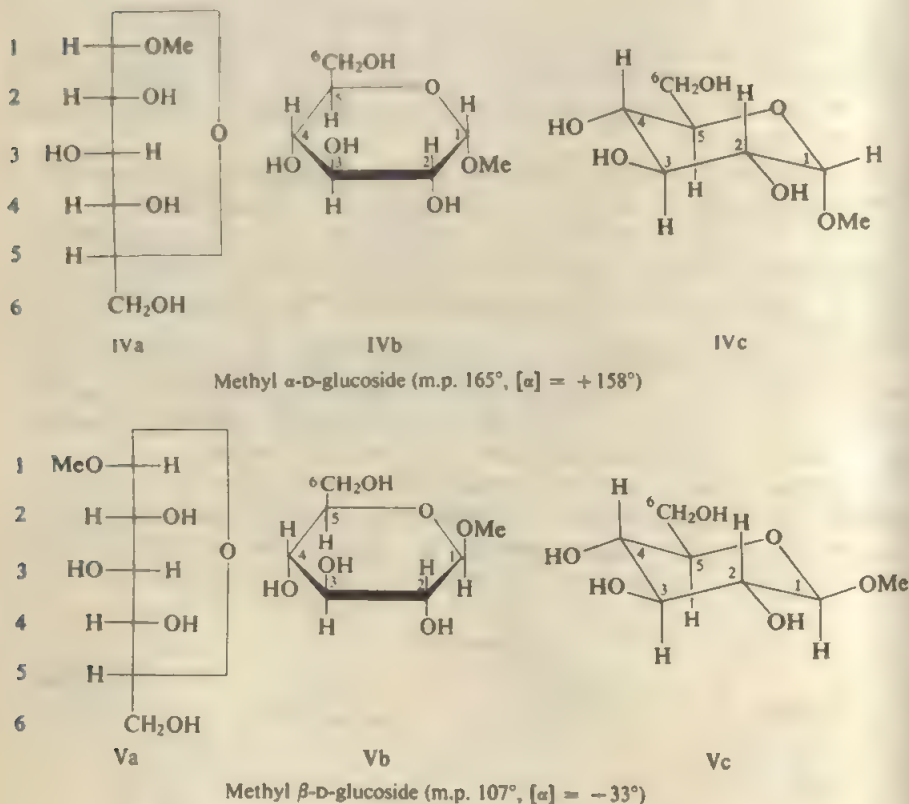
The typical aldehyde reactions of D-(+)-glucose—osazone formation, and perhaps reduction of Tollens' and Fehling's reagents—are presumably due to a small amount of open-chain compound, which is replenished as fast as it is consumed. The concentration of this open-chain structure is, however, too low (less than 0.5%) for certain easily reversible aldehyde reactions like bisulfite addition and the Schiff test.

The isomeric forms of methyl D-glucoside are anomers and have the cyclic structures IV and V (Fig. 28.10).

**Glucoside anomers: Acetals**

*Non-reducing sugars*

*Do not mutarotate*



**Figure 28.10.** Cyclic structures of methyl D-glucosides.

Although formed from only one mole of methanol, they are nevertheless full acetals, the other mole of alcohol being D-(+)-glucose itself through the C-5 hydroxyl group. The glucosides do not undergo mutarotation since, being acetals, they are fairly stable in aqueous solution. On being heated with aqueous acids, they undergo hydrolysis to yield the original hemiacetals (II and III). Toward bases glycosides, like acetals generally, are stable. Since they are not readily hydrolyzed to the open-chain aldehyde by the alkali in Tollens' or Fehling's reagent, glucosides are non-reducing sugars.

Like D-(+)-glucose, other monosaccharides exist in anomeric forms capable of mutarotation, and react with alcohols to yield anomeric **glycosides**.

We have represented the cyclic structures of D-glucose and methyl D-glucoside in several different ways:  $\beta$ -D-glucose, for example, by IIIa, IIIb, and IIIc. At this point we should convince ourselves that all three representations correspond to the same structure, and that the configurations about C' 2, C' 3, C' 4, and C' 5 are the same as in the open-chain structure worked out by Fischer. These relationships are best seen by use of models.

We can convert the open-chain model of D-glucose into a cyclic model by joining oxygen of the C 5 -OH to the aldehyde carbon C 1. Whether we end up with the  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ -structure depends upon which face of the flat carbonyl group we join the C 5 oxygen to. IIb and IIb represent this ring lying on its side, so that groups that were on the right in the vertical model are directed downward, and groups that were on the left in the vertical model are directed upward. (Note particularly that the -CH<sub>2</sub>OH group points *upward*.) In the more accurate representations IIc and IIc, the disposition of these groups is modified by puckering of the six-membered ring, which will be discussed further in Sec. 28.20.

**Problem 28.20** (a) From the values for the specific rotations of aqueous solutions of pure  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -D-(+)-glucose, and for the solution after mutarotation, calculate the relative amounts of  $\alpha$ - and of  $\beta$ -forms at equilibrium (assuming a negligible amount of open-chain form).

(b) From examination of structures IIc and IIc, suggest a reason for the greater proportion of one isomer. (*Hint*: See Sec. 5.14.)

**Problem 28.21** From what you learned in Secs. 18.8 and 18.14, suggest a mechanism for the acid-catalyzed mutarotation of D-(+)-glucose.

**Problem 28.22** (+)-Glucose reacts with acetic anhydride to give two isomeric pentaacetyl derivatives neither of which reduces Fehling's or Tollens' reagent. Account for these facts.

## 28.17 Configuration about C-1

Knowledge that aldoses and their glycosides have cyclic structures immediately raises the question: what is the configuration about C-1 in each of these anomeric structures?

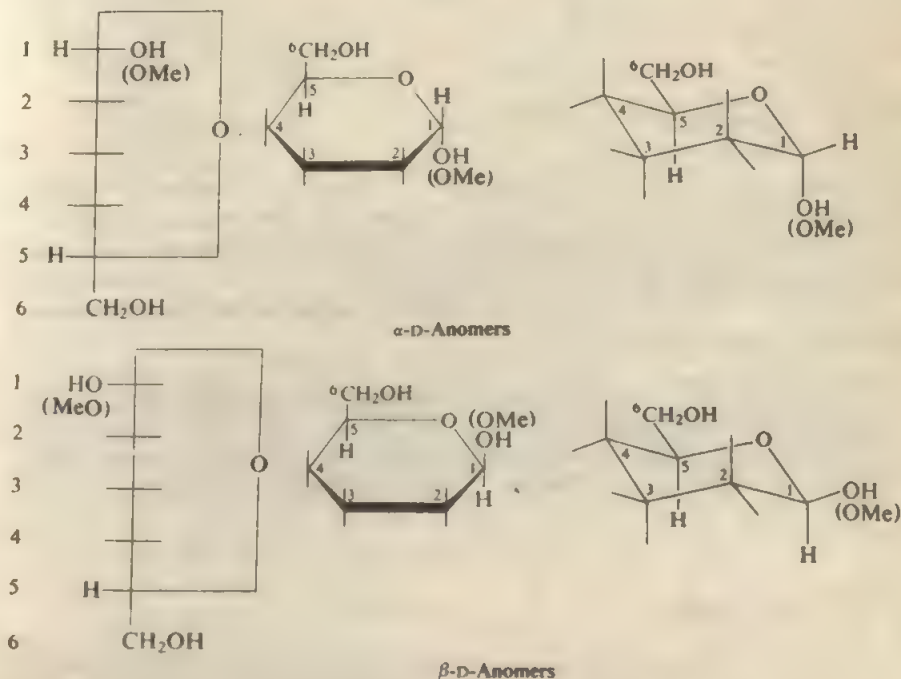


Figure 28.11. Configuration of anomers of aldohexoses.

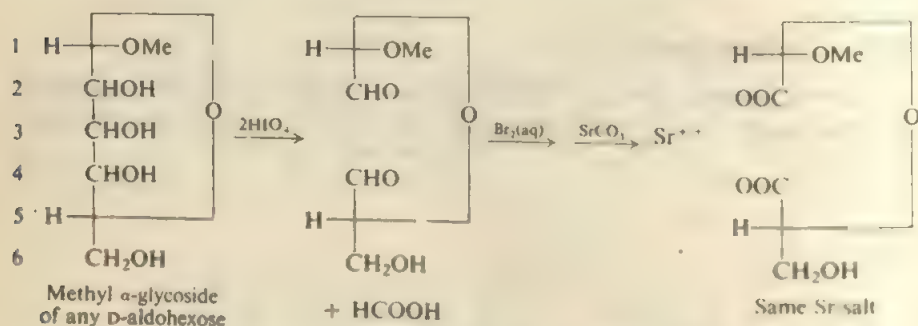
In 1909 C. S. Hudson (of the U.S. Public Health Service) made the following proposal. In the D-series the more dextrorotatory member of an  $\alpha,\beta$ -pair of anomers is to be named  $\alpha$ -D, the other being named  $\beta$ -D. In the L series the more levorotatory member of such a pair is given the name  $\alpha$ -L and the other  $\beta$ -L. Thus the enantiomer of  $\alpha$ -D-(+)-glucose is  $\alpha$ -L-(-)-glucose.

Furthermore, the  $-\text{OH}$  or  $-\text{OCH}_3$  group on C-1 is on the right in an  $\alpha$ -D-anomer and on the left in a  $\beta$ -D-anomer, as shown in Fig. 28.11 (preceding page) for aldohexoses. (Notice that "on the right" means "down" in the cyclic structure.)

Hudson's proposals have been adopted generally. Although they were originally based upon certain apparent but unproved relationships between configuration and optical rotation, all the evidence indicates that the assigned configurations are the correct ones. For example:

$\alpha$ -D-Glucose and methyl  $\alpha$ -D-glucoside have the same configuration, as do  $\beta$ -D-glucose and methyl  $\beta$ -D-glucoside. Evidence: enzymatic hydrolysis of methyl  $\alpha$ -D-glucoside liberates initially the more highly rotating  $\alpha$ -D-glucose, and hydrolysis of methyl  $\beta$ -D-glucoside liberates initially  $\beta$ -D-glucose.

The configuration about C-1 is the same in the methyl  $\alpha$ -glycosides of all the D-aldohexoses. Evidence: they all yield the same compound upon oxidation by  $\text{HIO}_4$ .



Oxidation destroys the chiral centers at C-2, C-3, and C-4, but configuration is preserved about C-1 and C-5. Configuration about C-5 is the same for all members of the D-family. The same products can be obtained from all these glycosides *only* if they also have the same configuration about C-1.

The C-1  $-\text{OH}$  is on the right in the  $\alpha$ -D-series and on the left in the  $\beta$ -D-series. Evidence: results of x-ray analysis.

**Problem 28.23** (a) What products would be formed from the strontium salts shown above by treatment with dilute  $\text{HCl}$ ?

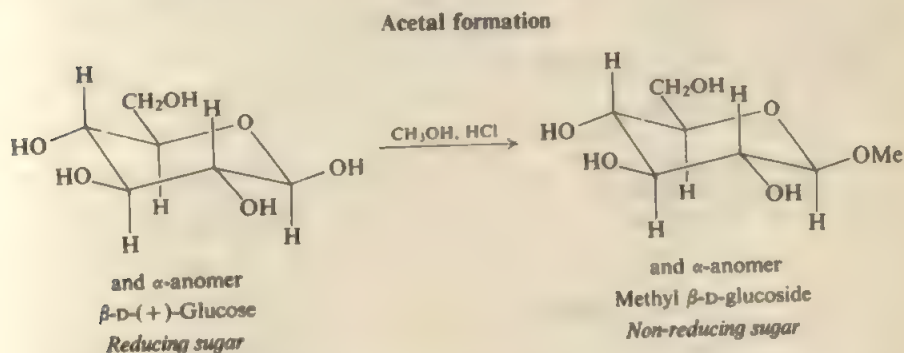
(b) An oxidation of this sort was used to confirm the configurational relationship between (+)-glucose and (+)-glyceraldehyde. How was this done?

## 28.18 Methylation

Before we can go on to the next aspect of the structure of D-(+)-glucose, determination of ring size, we must first learn a little more about the methylation of carbohydrates.

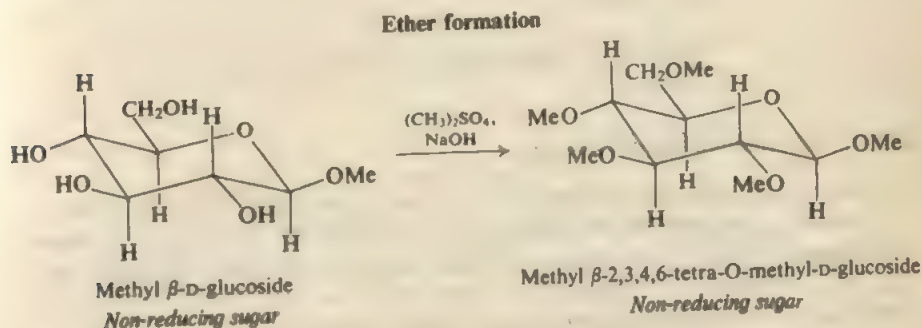


As we know, treatment of D-(+)-glucose with methanol and dry hydrogen chloride yields the methyl D-glucosides:



In this reaction, an aldehyde (or more exactly, its hemiacetal) is converted into an acetal in the usual manner.

Treatment of a methyl D-glucoside with methyl sulfate and sodium hydroxide brings about methylation of the four remaining —OH groups, and yields a methyl tetra-O-methyl-D-glucoside:



In this reaction, ether linkages are formed by a modification of the Williamson synthesis that is possible here because of the comparatively high acidity of these —OH groups. (Why are these —OH groups more acidic than those of an ordinary alcohol?)

There is now an —OCH<sub>3</sub> group attached to every carbon in the carbohydrate except the one joined to C-1 through the acetal linkage; if the six-membered ring structure is correct, there is an —OCH<sub>3</sub> group on every carbon except C-5.

Treatment of the methyl tetra-O-methyl-D-glucoside with dilute hydrochloric acid removes only one of these —OCH<sub>3</sub> groups, and yields a tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose (Fig. 28.12, on the following page). Only the reactive acetal linkage is hydrolyzed under these mild conditions; the other four —OCH<sub>3</sub> groups, held by ordinary ether linkages, remain intact.

What we have just described for D-(+)-glucose is typical of the methylation of any monosaccharide. A fully methylated carbohydrate contains both acetal linkages and ordinary ether linkages; these are formed in different ways and are hydrolyzed under different conditions.

## Hydrolysis of an acetal

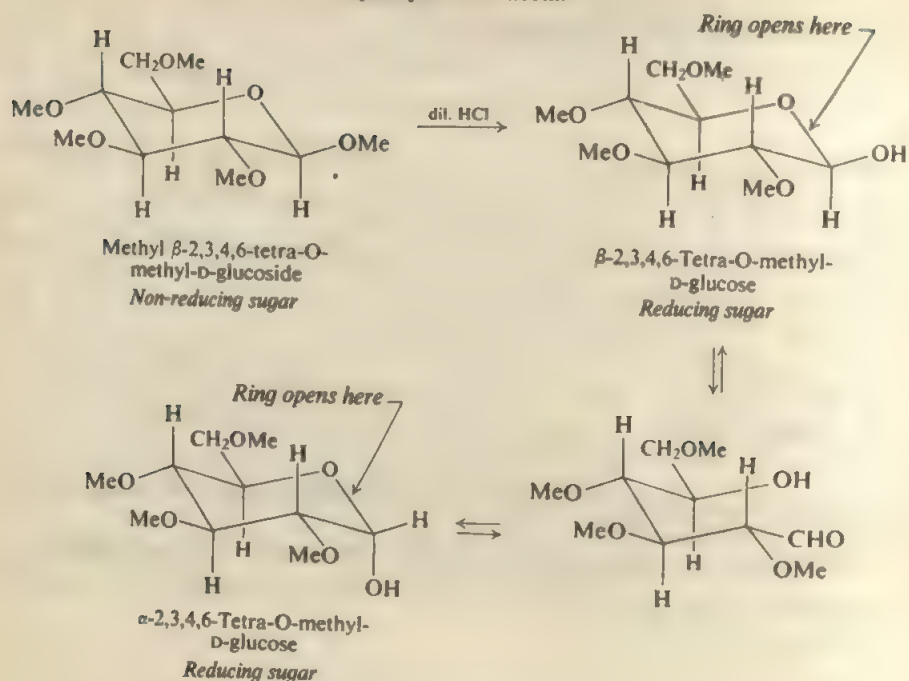


Figure 28.12. Hydrolysis of a methyl glucoside.

## 28.19 Determination of ring size

In the cyclic structures that we have used so far for  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -D-(+)-glucose and the glucosides, oxygen has been shown as joining together C-1 and C-5; that is, these compounds are represented as containing a six-membered ring. But other ring sizes are possible, in particular, a five-membered ring, one in which C-1 is joined to C-4. What is the evidence that these compounds actually contain a six-membered ring?

When methyl  $\beta$ -D-glucoside is treated with methyl sulfate and sodium hydroxide, and the product is hydrolyzed by dilute hydrochloric acid, there is obtained a tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose. This compound is a cyclic hemiacetal which, in solution, exists in equilibrium with a little of the open-chain form (Fig. 28.13).

This open-chain tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose contains an aldehyde group and four  $\text{—OCH}_3$  groups. It also contains a free, unmethylated  $\text{—OH}$  group at whichever carbon was originally involved in the acetal ring—on C-5, if the six-membered ring is correct. *Determination of ring size becomes a matter of finding out which carbon carries the free  $\text{—OH}$  group.*

What would we expect to happen if the tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose were vigorously oxidized by nitric acid? The  $\text{—CHO}$  and the free  $\text{—OH}$  group should be oxidized to yield a keto acid. But, from what we know about ketones (Sec. 18.9), we would not expect oxidation to stop here: the keto acid should be cleaved on one side or the other of the carbonyl group.

Oxidation actually yields a trimethoxyglutaric acid and a dimethoxysuccinic acid (Fig. 28.14). A mixture of five-carbon and four-carbon acids could be formed

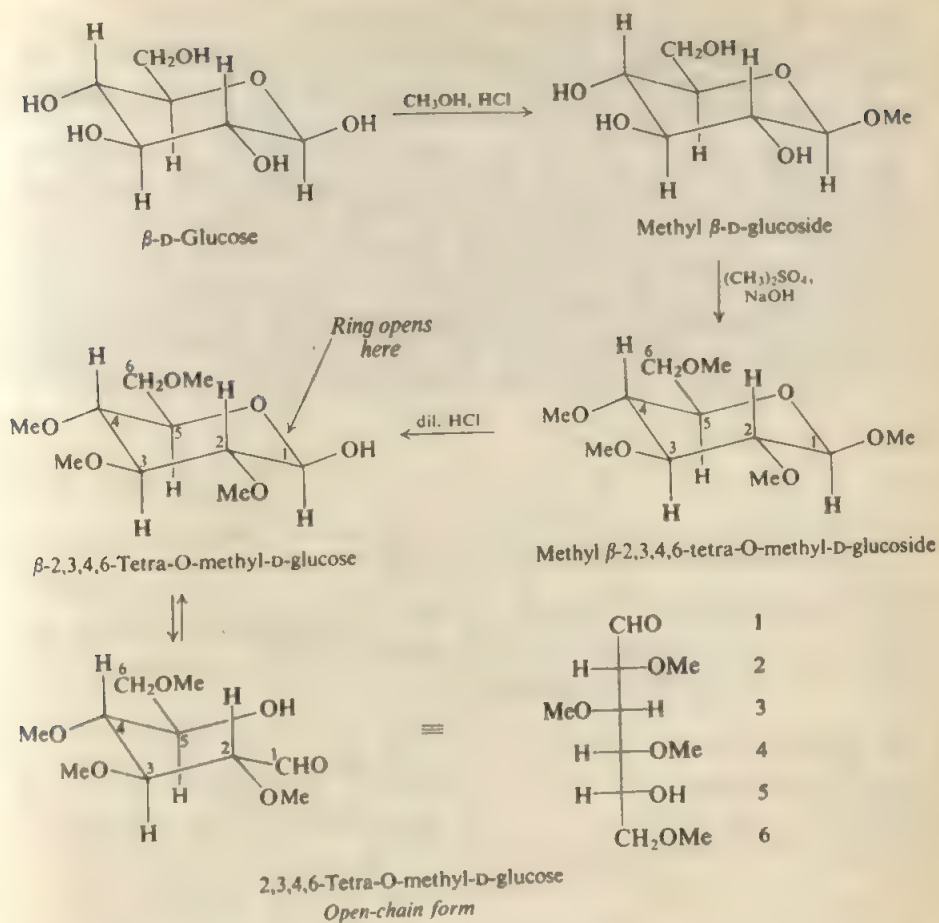


Figure 28.13. Determination of ring size. Methylation of D-glucose, followed by hydrolysis.

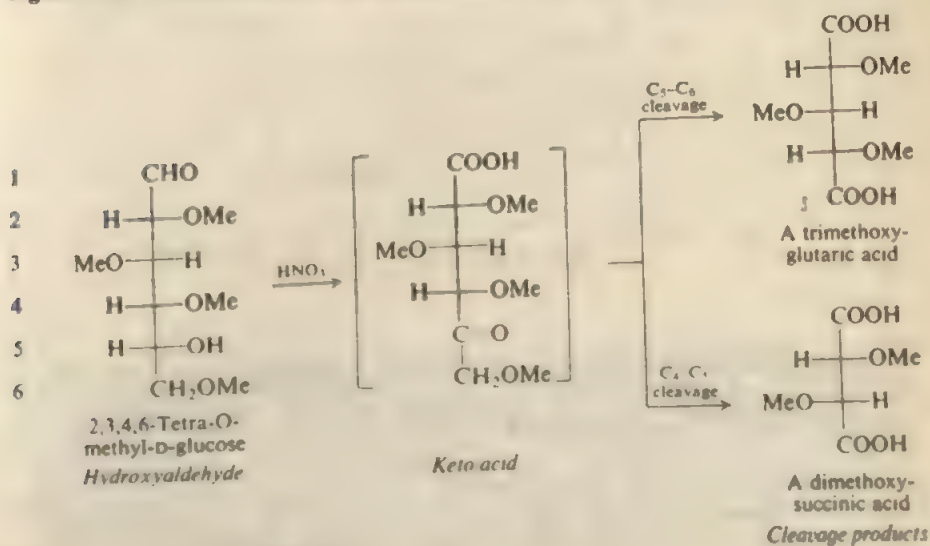


Figure 28.14. Oxidation of 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose.

only by cleavage on either side of C-5. It must be C-5, therefore, that carries the carbonyl oxygen of the intermediate keto acid, C-5 that carries the free  $\text{—OH}$  group in the tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose, C-5 that is involved in the acetal ring of the original glucoside. Methyl  $\beta$ -D-glucoside must contain a six-membered ring.

By the method just described, and largely through the work of Nobel Prize winner Sir W. N. Haworth (of the University of Birmingham, England), it has been established that the six-membered ring is the common one in the glycosides of aldohexoses. Evidence of other kinds (enzymatic hydrolysis, x-ray analysis) indicates that the *free* aldohexoses, too, contain six-membered rings.

If the name of a carbohydrate is exactly to define a particular structure, it must indicate ring size. Following a suggestion made by Haworth, carbohydrates are named to show their relationship to one of the heterocycles *pyran* or *furan*.

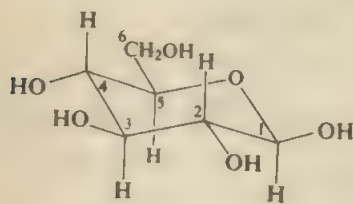
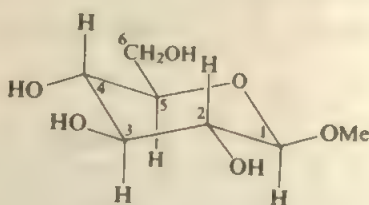
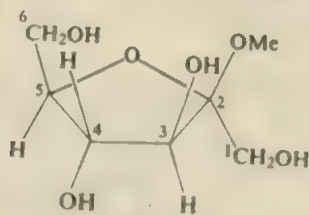


Pyran



Furan

A glycoside containing a six-membered ring is thus a **pyranose** and its glycosides are **pyranosides**. A glycoside containing a five-membered ring is a **furanose** and its glycosides are **furanosides**. For example:

 $\beta$ -D-GlucopyranoseMethyl  $\beta$ -D-glucopyranosideMethyl  $\beta$ -D-fructofuranoside

**Problem 28.24** The products of  $\text{HIO}_4$  oxidation of the methyl  $\alpha$ -glycosides of the D-aldohexoses are shown in Sec. 28.17. What products would have been obtained if these glycosides had contained five-membered rings?

**Problem 28.25** When either methyl  $\alpha$ -L-arabinoside or methyl  $\beta$ -D-xyloside is methylated, hydrolyzed, and then oxidized by nitric acid, there is obtained a trimethoxyglutaric acid. (a) What ring size is indicated for these aldopentosides? (b) Predict the products of  $\text{HIO}_4$  oxidation of each of these aldopentosides.



**Problem 28.26** When crystalline methyl  $\alpha$ -D-fructoside is methylated, hydrolyzed, oxidized by  $\text{KMnO}_4$  and then nitric acid, there is obtained a trimethoxyglutaric acid (a) What ring size is indicated for this 2-ketohexoside? (b) How does this acid compare with the one obtained from methyl  $\alpha$ -L-arabinoside?

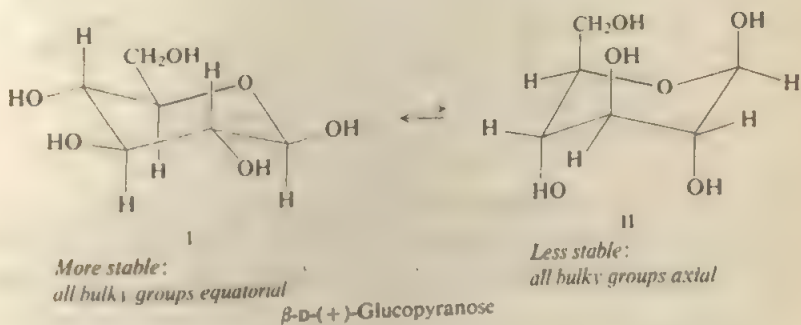
**Problem 28.27** The crystalline methyl  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -D-glycosides we have discussed are usually prepared using methanolic  $\text{HCl}$  at  $120^\circ$ . When D-(+)-glucose is methylated at room temperature, there is obtained a liquid methyl D-glucoside. When this so-called "y"-glucoside is methylated, hydrolyzed, and oxidized by nitric acid, there is obtained a dimethoxysuccinic acid. (a) What ring size is indicated for this "y"-glucoside? (b) Should the dimethoxysuccinic acid be optically active or inactive? What is its absolute configuration? (c) When the liquid "y"-glycoside obtained from D-(-)-fructose is methylated, hydrolyzed, and oxidized by nitric acid, there is also obtained a dimethoxysuccinic acid. How does this acid compare with the one in (b)?

## 28.20 Conformation

We have followed the unraveling of the structure of D-(+)-glucose, and with it structures of the other monosaccharides, to the final working out of the ring size in 1926. Left to be discussed is one aspect whose importance has been realized only since about 1950: **conformation**.

D-(+)-Glucose contains the six-membered, pyranose ring. Since the  $\text{C}-\text{O}-\text{C}$  bond angle ( $111^\circ$ ) is very nearly equal to the tetrahedral angle ( $109.5^\circ$ ), the pyranose ring should be quite similar to the cyclohexane ring (Sec. 5.14). It should be puckered and, to minimize torsional and van der Waals strain, should exist in chair conformations in preference to twist-boat conformations. X-ray analysis shows this reasoning to be correct.

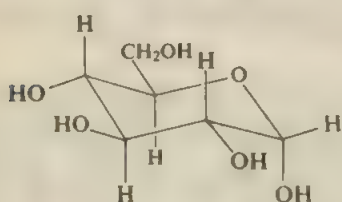
But there are *two* chair conformations possible for a D-(+)-glucopyranose anomer: I and II for  $\beta$ -D-(+)-glucopyranose, for example.



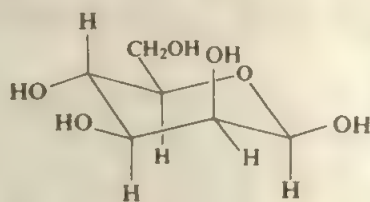
Which of these is the more stable one, the one in which the molecules spend most of the time? For  $\beta$ -D-(+)-glucopyranose, the answer seems clear: I, in which all bulky substituents ( $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  and  $-\text{OH}$ ) occupy roomy equatorial positions, should certainly be much more stable than II, in which all bulky groups are crowded into axial positions. Again, x-ray analysis shows this reasoning to be correct.

What can we say about  $\alpha$ -D-(+)-glucose and the other aldohexoses? This problem has been largely worked out by R. E. Reeves (then at the U.S. Southern Regional Research Laboratory) through study of copper complexes.

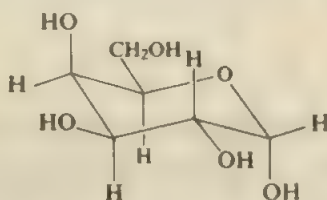
In general, the more stable conformation is the one in which the bulkiest group,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , occupies an equatorial position. For example:



III  
 $\alpha$ -D-Glucopyranose  
Stable conformation

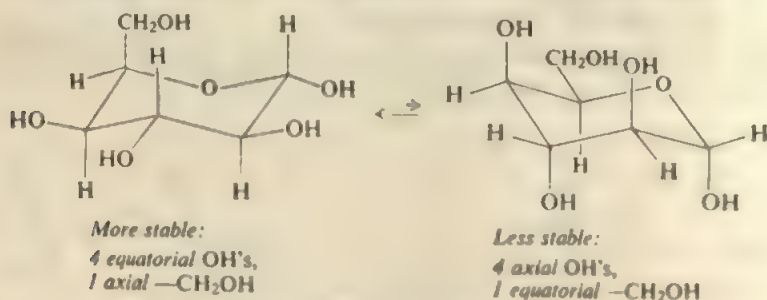


IV  
 $\beta$ -D-Mannopyranose  
Stable conformation



V  
 $\alpha$ -D-Galactopyranose  
Stable conformation

In an extreme case, to permit many  $-\text{OH}$  groups to take up equatorial positions, the  $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  group may be forced into an axial position. For example:



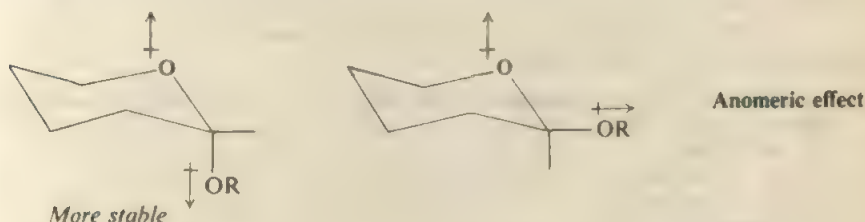
$\alpha$ -D-Idopyranose

We notice that of all D-aldohexoses it is  $\beta$ -D-(+)-glucose that can assume a conformation in which every bulky group occupies an equatorial position. It is hardly accidental that  $\beta$ -D-(+)-glucose is the most widely occurring organic group in nature.

In drawing structural formulas or making models for the aldohexoses, a convenient point of reference is  $\beta$ -D-(+)-glucose. We draw the ring as shown in I with C 1 down, C 4 up, and oxygen at the right-hand back corner and place all  $-\text{OH}$  groups and the  $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  group in equatorial positions. We draw the structures of other D-family aldohexoses merely by taking into account their differences from I. Thus  $\alpha$ -D-(+)-glucose (III) differs in configuration at C 1,  $\beta$ -D-mannose (IV) differs in configuration at C 2,  $\alpha$ -D-galactose (V) differs at C-1 and C 4. L-Family compounds are, of course, mirror images of these.

In methylated and acetylated pyranoses, too, bulky groups tend to occupy equatorial positions, with one general exception: a methoxy or acetoxy group on

C-1 tends to be axial. This *anomeric effect* is attributed to repulsion between the dipoles associated with the C-1 oxygen and the oxygen of the ring.



As we would expect for dipole-dipole interactions, the anomeric effect weakens as the polarity of the solvent increases (Sec. 5.10). For free sugars dissolved in water, the anomeric effect is usually outweighed by other factors; D-glucose, for example, exists predominantly as the  $\beta$ -anomer, with the  $\text{—OH}$  on C-1 equatorial.

**Problem 28.28** Draw the conformation you predict to be the most stable for:

- |                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| (a) $\beta$ -D-allopyranose | (d) $\alpha$ -D-arabinopyranose             |
| (b) $\beta$ -D-gulopyranose | (e) $\beta$ -L-( $\text{—}$ )glucopyranose  |
| (c) $\beta$ -D-xylopyranose | (f) $\beta$ -D-( $\text{—}$ )fructopyranose |

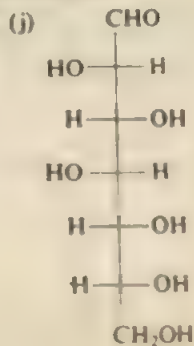
## PROBLEMS

1. Give structures and, where possible, names of the principal products of the reaction (if any) of D-(+)-galactose with:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) hydroxylamine   | (h) $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ , HCl  |
| (b) phenylhydrazine   | (i) $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ , HCl; then $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{SO}_4$ , NaOH        |
| (c) bromine water   | (j) reagents of (i), then dilute HCl  |
| (d) $\text{HNO}_3$  | (k) reagents of (i) and (j), then vigorous oxidation                              |
| (e) $\text{HIO}_4$  | (l) $\text{H}_2$ , Ni   |
| (f) acetic anhydride  | (m) $\text{NaBH}_4$   |
| (g) benzoyl chloride, pyridine  | (n) $\text{CN}^-$ , $\text{H}^+$ ; then hydrolysis; then one mole $\text{NaBH}_4$ |
| (o) $\text{H}_2$ , Ni; then oxidation to monocarboxylic acid  |   |
| (p) $\text{Br}_2(\text{aq})$ ; then pyridine; then $\text{H}^+$ ; then $\text{Na}(\text{Hg})$ , $\text{CO}_2$ |   |
| (q) phenylhydrazine; then benzaldehyde, $\text{H}^+$  |   |
| (r) reagents of (q), then reduction to monocarbonyl compound  |   |
| (s) $\text{Br}_2(\text{aq})$ ; then $\text{CaCO}_3$ ; then $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ , $\text{Fe}^{+++}$         |   |
| (t) reagents of (i), then NaOH  |   |
| (u) $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ , HCl; then $\text{HIO}_4$   |   |
| (v) reagents of (u); then $\text{Br}_2(\text{aq})$ ; then dilute HCl  |   |

2. Write equations to show how D-(+)-glucose could be converted into:

- methyl  $\beta$ -D-glucoside
- methyl  $\beta$ -2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucoside
- 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose
- D-mannose
- L-gulose
- D-arabinose
- mesotartaric acid
- hexa-O-acetyl-D-glucitol
- D-fructose



3. Besides D-fructose, there are three D-2-ketohexoses: D-psicose, D-sorbose, and D-tagatose. (a) Draw the possible configurations for these three ketoses. (b) Given the configurations of all aldohexoses, tell how you could assign definite configurations to the ketoses.

4. Draw stereochemical formulas for products A through O, and tell what aldoses E, E', F, H, I, I', N, and O are related to.

- (a)  $\text{ClCH}_2\text{CHO} + \text{BrMgC}\equiv\text{CMgBr} + \text{OHCCH}_2\text{Cl} \longrightarrow \text{A (C}_6\text{H}_8\text{O}_2\text{Cl}_2\text{)}$ , mainly *meso*  
 $\text{meso-A} + \text{KOH} \longrightarrow \text{B (C}_6\text{H}_6\text{O}_2\text{)}$ , a diepoxide  
 $\text{B} + \text{H}_2\text{O, OH}^- \longrightarrow \text{C (C}_6\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_4\text{)}$   
 $\text{C} + \text{H}_2, \text{Pd/CaCO}_3 \longrightarrow \text{D (C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_4\text{)}$   
 $\text{D} + \text{cold dilute KMnO}_4 \longrightarrow \text{E and E' (both C}_6\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_6\text{)}$   
 $\text{D} + \text{peroxyformic acid} \longrightarrow \text{F (C}_6\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_6\text{)}$   
 $\text{C} + \text{Na, NH}_3 \longrightarrow \text{G (C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_4\text{)}$   
 $\text{G} + \text{cold dilute KMnO}_4 \longrightarrow \text{H (C}_6\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_6\text{)}$   
 $\text{G} + \text{peroxyformic acid} \longrightarrow \text{I and I' (both C}_6\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_6\text{)}$
- (b) *trans*-2-penten-4-yn-1-ol +  $\text{HCO}_2\text{OH} \longrightarrow \text{J (C}_5\text{H}_8\text{O}_3\text{)}$ , 4-pentyn-1,2,3-triol  
 $\text{J} + \text{acetic anhydride, then Pd/CaCO}_3 + \text{H}_2 \longrightarrow \text{K (C}_{11}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_6\text{)}$   
 $\text{K} + \text{HOBr} \longrightarrow \text{L and M (both C}_{11}\text{H}_{17}\text{O}_7\text{Br)}$   
 $\text{L} + \text{hydrolysis} \longrightarrow \text{N (C}_5\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_5\text{)}$   
 $\text{M} + \text{hydrolysis} \longrightarrow \text{O (C}_5\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_5\text{)}$ , a racemic modification

(c) Starting with 2-butyne-1,4-diol, outline a synthesis of erythritol; of DL-threitol.

(d) 2-Butyne-1,4-diol (above) is made by reaction under pressure of acetylene with formaldehyde. What kind of reaction is this?

5. When borneol (ROH) is fed to a dog, this toxic substance is excreted as compound P,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_9\text{O}_6\text{-OR}$ , where R stands for the bornyl group. Compound P does not reduce Benedict's solution. It reacts with aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  with the liberation of a gas. Treatment of P with aqueous acid yields borneol (ROH) and D-glucuronic acid (Table 28.1), which is oxidized by bromine water to D-glucaric acid.

(a) What is the structure of P?

(b) Hydrolysis of the polysaccharide *pectin* (from fruits and berries) gives chiefly D-galacturonic acid; hydrolysis of the polysaccharide *alginate* (from seaweed) yields D-mannuronic acid. Give the structures of these uronic acids.

(c) There are two uronic acids related to D-fructose. Draw their structures. Give the name and family of the aldonic acids formed from each "fructuronic acid" by reduction of the carbonyl group.

(d) What compound would you expect from the treatment of D-glucosone with bromine water?

6. The rate of oxidation of reducing sugars by cupric ion is found to be proportional to sugar and  $[\text{OH}^-]$ , and to be independent of  $[\text{Cu}^{2+}]$ . What does the kinetics suggest about the mechanism of oxidation?

7. Upon oxidation by  $\text{HIO}_4$  the methyl glycoside Q yields the same product (shown on p. 1084) as that obtained from methyl  $\alpha$ -glycosides of the D-aldohexoses, however, it consumes only one mole of  $\text{HIO}_4$  and yields no formic acid.

(a) How many carbon atoms are there in Q, and what is the ring size? (b) For which carbon atoms do you know the configuration? (c) When Q is methylated, hydrolyzed, and then vigorously oxidized, the dicarboxylic acid obtained is the di-O-methyl ether of (–)-tartaric acid. What is the complete structure and configuration of Q?

8. *Salicin*,  $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}_7$ , found in willow (*Salix*, whence the name *salicylic*), is hydrolyzed by emulsin to D-glucose and saligenin,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_8\text{O}_3$ . *Salicin* does not reduce Tollens' reagent. Oxidation of *salicin* by nitric acid yields a compound that can be hydrolyzed to D-glucose and salicylaldehyde.

Methylation of *salicin* gives pentamethylsalicin, which on hydrolysis gives 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl D-glucose.

What is the structure of *salicin*?



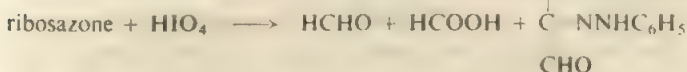
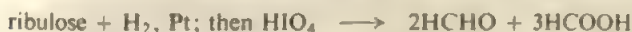
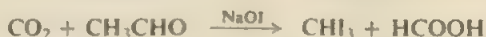
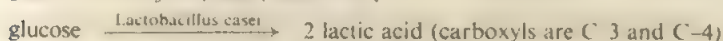
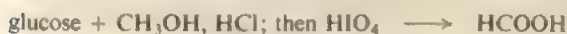
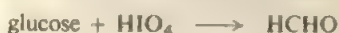
9. The optically inactive carbohydrate *bio-inonose*,  $C_6H_{10}O_6$ , reduces Benedict's solution, but does not react with bromine water. It is reduced to R and S, of formula  $C_6H_{12}O_6$ . Compounds R and S are oxidized by  $HIO_4$  to six moles of  $HCOOH$ , and react with acetic anhydride to yield products of formula  $C_{18}H_{24}O_{12}$ . Vigorous oxidation of bio-inonose yields DL-idaric acid (the dicarboxylic acid from idose) as the only six-carbon fragment.

What is the structure of bio-inonose? Of R and S?

10. Much of what is known about photosynthesis has been learned by determining the fate of radioactive carbon dioxide,  $^{14}CO_2$ . The  $^{14}C$  was found in many products, including glucose, fructose, and sucrose. To measure the radioactivity of each carbon atom in a particular molecule, degradations to one-carbon fragments were carried out.

Tell which position or positions in the molecule each of the following one-carbon products came from.

Show how the activity of the carbon atom in every position could be figured out.



11. *Nucleic acids*, the compounds that control heredity on the molecular level, are polymers composed of nucleotide units. The structures of nucleotides have been determined in the following way, as illustrated for *adenylic acid*, a nucleotide isolated from yeast cells.

Hydrolysis of adenylic acid yields one molecule each of a heterocyclic base, a sugar T, and phosphoric acid. The base is called *adenine*, and will be represented as  $R_2NH$ . Adenylic acid has the formula  $R_2N-C_5H_8O_3-OPO_3H_2$ .

The sugar T is levorotatory and has the formula  $C_5H_{10}O_4$ ; it reduces Tollens' reagent and Benedict's solution. T is oxidized by bromine water to optically active  $C_5H_{10}O_6$ , and by nitric acid to optically inactive  $C_5H_8O_7$ . T forms an osazone that is identical with the osazone obtained from another pentose, (-)-U. Degradation of (-)-U, followed by oxidation by nitric acid, yields optically inactive  $C_4H_6O_6$ .

(a) What is T?

Careful acidic hydrolysis of adenylic acid yields adenine and a phosphate of T,  $C_5H_9O_4-OPO_3H_2$ . Reduction of the phosphate with  $H_2, Pt$  yields optically inactive V,  $C_5H_{11}O_4-OPO_3H_2$ . Hydrolysis of V yields optically inactive W,  $C_5H_{12}O_5$ , which reacts with acetic anhydride to yield optically inactive X,  $C_{15}H_{22}O_{10}$ .

(b) What is the structure of the phosphate of T?

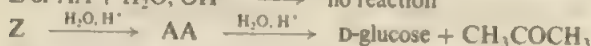
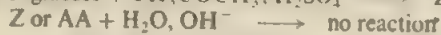
Adenylic acid does not reduce Tollens' reagent or Benedict's solution. When hydrolyzed by aqueous ammonia, adenylic acid yields phosphoric acid and the nucleoside *adenosine*. Treatment of adenosine with methyl sulfate and  $NaOH$ , followed by acidic hydrolysis, yields Y, a methylation product of T. Compound Y has the formula  $C_8H_{14}O_6$ . Vigorous oxidation of Y yields 2,3-di-O-methylmesotartaric acid and no larger fragments.

Synthesis of adenosine shows that a nitrogen atom of adenine is joined to a carbon atom in T. Synthesis also shows that T has the  $\beta$ -configuration.

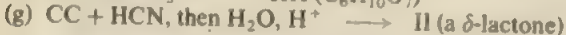
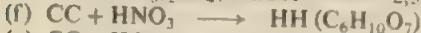
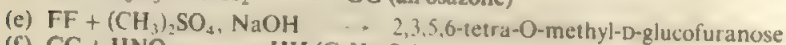
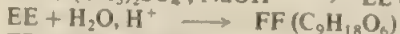
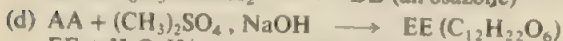
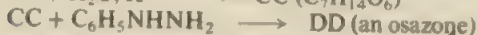
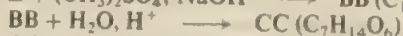
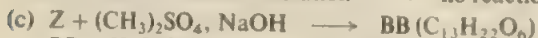
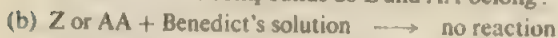
(c) Give the structure of adenylic acid, using  $R_2NH$  for the adenine unit.

(Check your answers in Fig. 31.5, p. 1162.)

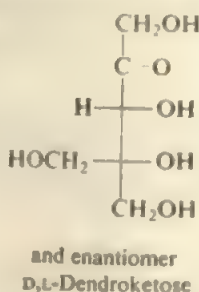
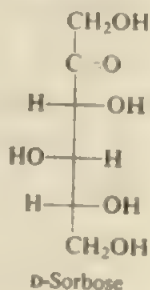
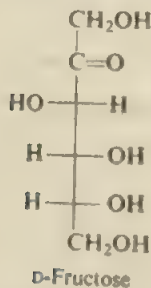
12. Give structural formulas for compounds Z through II. Tell what each piece of information (a), (b), (c), etc. shows about the structures of Z and AA.



To what class of compounds do Z and AA belong?



13. When either D-glyceraldehyde or dihydroxyacetone,  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{COCH}_2\text{OH}$ , is treated with base, there is obtained a mixture of the following compounds:



Suggest a possible mechanism for this reaction. (Hints: See Sec. 28.6. Count the carbons in reactants and products, and consider the reagent used.)

14. In dilute acid, hydrolysis of D-glucose-1-phosphate differs from ordinary alkyl esters of its type ( $\text{ROPO}_3\text{H}_2$ ) in two ways: it is abnormally fast, and it takes place with cleavage of the carbon-oxygen bond. Can you suggest an explanation for its unusual behavior?

15. In Chap. 17, we learned about certain relationships between NMR spectra and the conformations of six-membered rings. In Problems 8 and 9 (p. 724), that a given proton absorbs farther downfield when in an equatorial position than when in an axial position, in Sec. 17.14, that the coupling constant,  $J$ , between *anti* protons (axial,axial) is bigger than between *gauche* protons (axial,equatorial or equatorial,equatorial). It was in the study of carbohydrates that those relationships were first recognized, chiefly by R. U. Lemieux (p. 1103).

(a) In the NMR spectra of aldopyranoses and their derivatives, the signal from one proton is found at lower fields than any of the others. Which proton is this, and why?

(b) In the NMR spectra of the two anomers of D-tetra-O-acetylxylopyranose the downfield peak appears as follows:

Anomer JJ: doublet,  $\delta$  5.39,  $J = 6$  Hz

Anomer KK: doublet,  $\delta$  6.03,  $J = 3$  Hz

Identify JJ and KK, that is, tell which is the  $\alpha$ -anomer, and which is the  $\beta$ -anomer. Explain your answer.

(c) Answer (b) for the anomers of D-tetra-O-acetylribofuranose

Anomer LL: doublet,  $\delta$  5.72,  $J = 5$  Hz

Anomer MM: doublet,  $\delta$  5.82,  $J = 2$  Hz

(d) Consider two pairs of anomers: NN and OO, and PP and QQ. One pair are the D-penta-O-acetylglucopyranoses, and the other pair are the D-penta-O-acetylmannopyranoses.

Anomer NN: doublet,  $\delta$  5.97,  $J = 3$  Hz

Anomer OO: doublet,  $\delta$  5.68,  $J = 3$  Hz

Anomer PP: doublet,  $\delta$  5.54,  $J = 8$  Hz

Anomer QQ: doublet,  $\delta$  5.99,  $J = 3$  Hz

Identify NN, OO, PP, and QQ. Explain your answer.

16. The rare sugar (–)-mycarose occurs as part of the molecules of several antibiotics. Using the following evidence, work out the structure and configuration of mycarose.

(i) lactone of  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{COOH} \xrightarrow{\text{11 } \pi\text{-hydroxylation}} \text{RR} (\text{C}_7\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_4)$   
 $\text{RR} + \text{KBH}_4 \longrightarrow (\pm)\text{-mycarose}$

(ii) In the NMR spectrum of (–)-mycarose and several derivatives, the coupling constant between  $\text{C}_4\text{-H}$  and  $\text{C}_5\text{-H}$  is 9.5–9.7 Hz.

(iii) methyl mycaroside +  $\text{HIO}_4 \longrightarrow \text{SS} (\text{C}_8\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_4)$   
 $\text{SS} + \text{cold KMnO}_4 \longrightarrow \text{TT} (\text{C}_8\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_5)$

$\text{TT} \xrightarrow{\text{hydrolysis}} \text{L-lactic acid}$

(a) Disregarding stereochemistry, what is the structure of mycarose?

(b) What are the relative configurations about C-3 and C-4? About C-4 and C-5?

(c) What is the absolute configuration at C-5?

(d) What is the absolute configuration of (–)-mycarose? To which family, D or L, does it belong? In what conformation does it preferentially exist?

(e) (–)-Mycarose can be converted into two methyl mycarosides. In the NMR spectrum of one of these, the downfield peak appears as a triplet with  $J = 2.4$  Hz. Which anomer,  $\alpha$  or  $\beta$ , is this one likely to be? What would you expect to see in the NMR spectrum of the other anomer?

(f) In the NMR spectrum of free (–)-mycarose, the downfield peak (1H) appears as two doublets with  $J = 9.5$  and  $2.5$  Hz. Which anomer of mycarose,  $\alpha$  or  $\beta$ , does this appear to be

17. How do you account for the following facts? (a) In an equilibrium mixture of methyl  $\alpha$ -D-glucoside and methyl  $\beta$ -D-glucoside, the  $\alpha$ -anomer predominates. (b) In the more stable conformation of *trans*-2,5-dichloro-1,4-dioxane, both chlorines occupy axial positions.

18. From study of the NMR spectra of many compounds, Lemieux (p. 1103) found that the protons of axial acetoxy groups ( $-\text{OOCCH}_3$ ) generally absorb at lower field than those of equatorial acetoxy groups.

(a) Draw the two chair conformations of tetra-O-acetyl- $\beta$ -L-arabinopyranose. On steric grounds, which would you expect to be the more stable? Taking into account the anomeric effect, which would you expect to be the more stable?

(b) In the NMR spectrum of this compound, absorption by the acetoxy protons appears upfield as two equal peaks, at  $\delta$  1.92 and  $\delta$  2.04. How do you account for the equal sizes of these peaks? What, if anything, does this tell about the relative abundances of the two anomers?

(c) When the acetoxy group on C-1 is replaced by the deuteriated group  $-\text{OOCDD}_3$ , the total area of the upfield peaks is decreased, of course, from 12H to 9H. The ratio of peak areas  $\delta$  1.92 :  $\delta$  2.04 is now 1.46 : 1.00. Which conformation predominates, and by how much? Is the predominant conformation the one you predicted to be the more stable?





## Carbohydrates II. Disaccharides and Polysaccharides

### 29.1 Disaccharides

Disaccharides are carbohydrates that are made up of two monosaccharide units. On hydrolysis a molecule of disaccharide yields two molecules of monosaccharide.

We shall study four disaccharides: (+)-**maltose** (malt sugar), (+)-**cellobiose**, (+)-**lactose** (milk sugar), and (+)-**sucrose** (cane or beet sugar). As with the monosaccharides, we shall focus our attention on the structure of these molecules: on which monosaccharides make up the disaccharide, and how they are attached to each other. In doing this, we shall also learn something about the properties of these disaccharides.

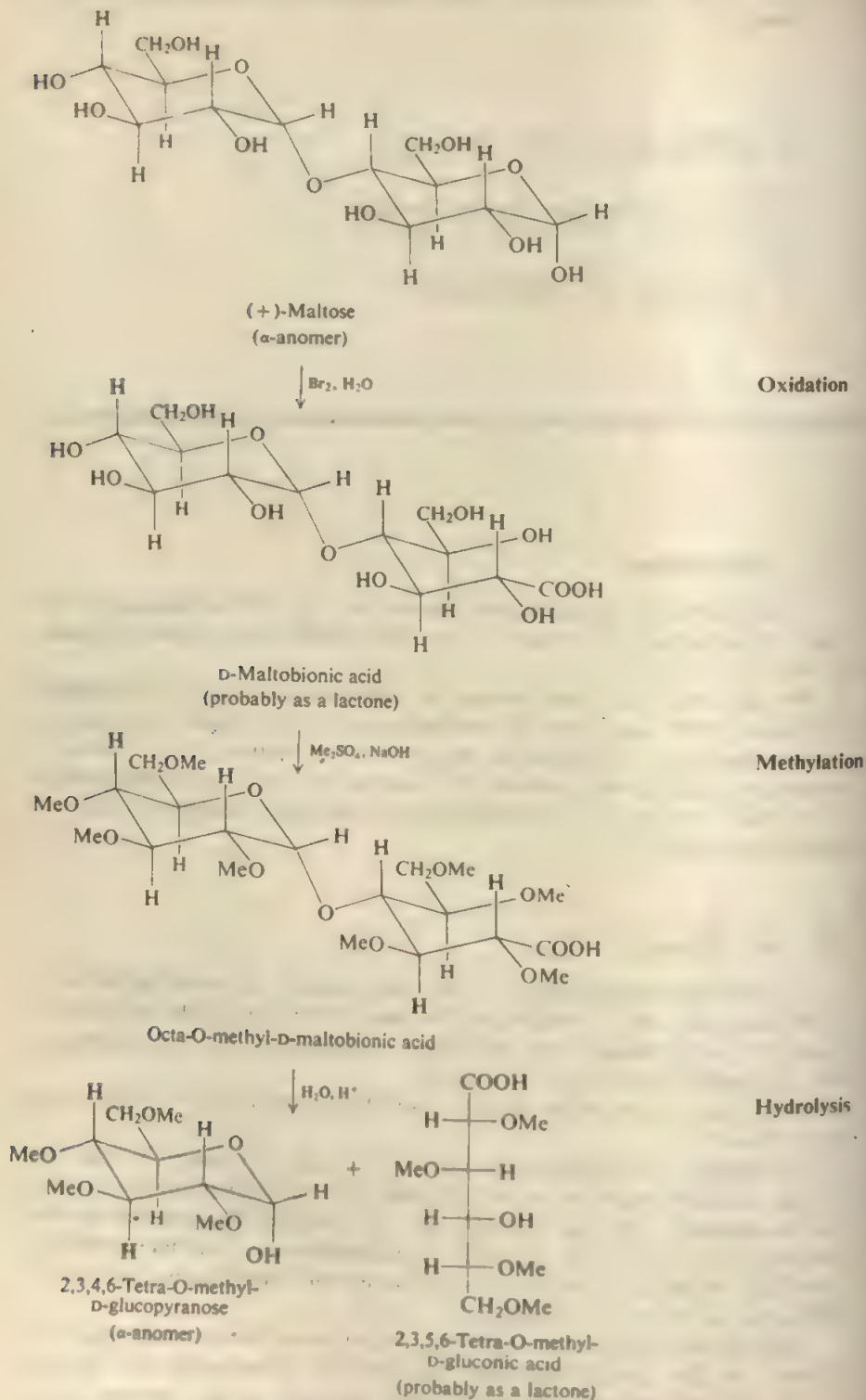
### 29.2 (+)-Maltose

(+)-Maltose can be obtained, among other products, by partial hydrolysis of starch in aqueous acid. (+)-Maltose is also formed in one stage of the fermentation of starch to ethyl alcohol; here hydrolysis is catalyzed by the enzyme *diastase*, which is present in malt (sprouted barley).

Let us look at some of the facts from which the structure of (+)-maltose has been deduced.

(+)-Maltose has the molecular formula  $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ . It reduces Tollens' and Fehling's reagents and hence is a reducing sugar. It reacts with phenylhydrazine to yield an osazone,  $C_{12}H_{20}O_9(=NNHC_6H_5)_2$ . It is oxidized by bromine water to a monocarboxylic acid,  $(C_{11}H_{21}O_{10})COOH$ , *maltobionic acid*. (+)-Maltose exists in *alpha* ( $[\alpha] = +168^\circ$ ) and *beta* ( $[\alpha] = +112^\circ$ ) forms which undergo mutarotation in solution (equilibrium  $[\alpha] = +136^\circ$ ).

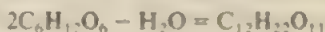
All these facts indicate the same thing: (+)-maltose contains a carbonyl group that exists in the reactive hemiacetal form as in the monosaccharides we have studied. It contains only one such "free" carbonyl group, however, since



**Figure 29.1.** Sequence of oxidation, methylation, and hydrolysis shows that (+)-maltose is 4-O-( $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranosyl)-D-glucopyranose

(a) the osazone contains only two phenylhydrazine residues, and (b) oxidation by bromine water yields only a *monocarboxylic acid*.

When hydrolyzed in aqueous acid, or when treated with the enzyme *maltase* (from yeast), (+)-maltose is completely converted into D-(+)-glucose. This indicates that (+)-maltose ( $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ ) is made up of two D-(+)-glucose units joined together in some manner with the loss of one molecule of water:

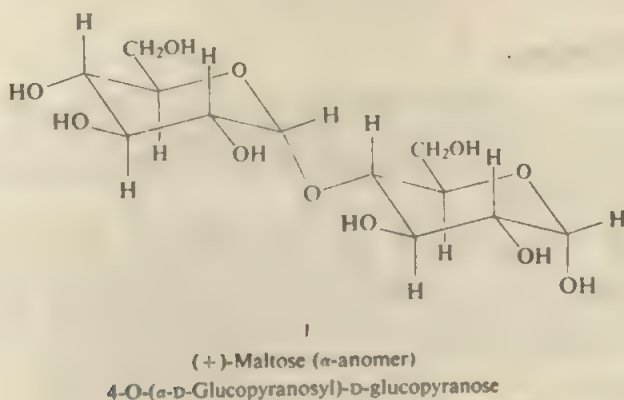


Hydrolysis by acid to give a new reducing group (two reducing D-(+)-glucose molecules in place of one (+)-maltose molecule) is characteristic of glycosides; hydrolysis by the enzyme maltase is characteristic of *alpha* glucosides. A glycoside is an acetal formed by interaction of an alcohol with a carbonyl group of a carbohydrate (Sec. 28.16); in this case the alcohol concerned can only be a second molecule of D-(+)-glucose. We conclude that (+)-maltose contains two D-(+)-glucose units, joined by an *alpha*-glucoside linkage between the carbonyl group of one D-(+)-glucose unit and an -OH group of the other.

Two questions remain: which -OH group is involved, and what are the sizes of the rings in the two D-(+)-glucose units? Answers to both these questions are given by the sequence of oxidation, methylation, and hydrolysis shown in Fig. 29.1.

Oxidation by bromine water converts (+)-maltose into the monocarboxylic acid D-maltobionic acid. Treatment of this acid with methyl sulfate and sodium hydroxide yields octa-O-methyl-D-maltobionic acid. Upon hydrolysis in acidic solution, the methylated acid yields two products, 2,3,5,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-gluconic acid and 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose.

These facts indicate that (+)-maltose has structure I, which is given the name 4-O-( $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranosyl)-D-glucopyranose. It is the -OH group on C-4 that serves as the alcohol in the glucoside formation; both halves of the molecule contain the six-membered, pyranose ring.



Let us see how we arrive at structure I from the experimental facts.

First of all, the initial oxidation labels (with a -COOH group) the D-glucose unit that contains the "free" aldehyde group. Next, methylation labels (as -OCH<sub>3</sub>) every free -OH group. Finally, upon hydrolysis, the absence of a methoxyl group shows which -OH groups were *not* free.

The oxidized product, 2,3,5,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-gluconic acid, must have arisen from the reducing (oxidizable) D-glucose unit. The presence of a free OH group at C-4 shows that this position was not available for methylation at the maltobionic acid stage; hence it is the —OH on C-4 that is tied up in the glucoside linkage of maltobionic acid and of (+)-maltose itself. This leaves only the —OH group on C-5 to be involved in the ring of the reducing (oxidizable) unit in the original disaccharide. On the basis of these facts, therefore, we designate one D-(+)-glucose unit as a 4-O-substituted-D-glucopyranose.

The unoxidized product, 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose, must have arisen from the non-reducing (non-oxidizable) D-glucose unit. The presence of the free OH group at C 5 indicates that this position escaped methylation at the maltobionic acid stage; hence it is the —OH on C-5 that is tied up as a ring in maltobionic acid and in (+)-maltose itself. On the basis of these facts, therefore, we designate the second D-(+)-glucose unit as an  $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranosyl group.

**Problem 29.1** Formula I shows the structure of only the  $\alpha$ -form of (+)-maltose. What is the structure of the  $\beta$ -(+)-maltose that in solution is in equilibrium with I?

**Problem 29.2** The position of the free —OH group in 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose was shown by the products of oxidative cleavage, as described in Sec. 28.19. What products would be expected from oxidative cleavage of 2,3,5,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-gluconic acid?

**Problem 29.3** What products would be obtained if (+)-maltose itself were subjected to methylation and hydrolysis? What would this tell us about the structure of (+)-maltose? What uncertainty would remain in the (+)-maltose structure? Why was it necessary to oxidize (+)-maltose first before methylation?

**Problem 29.4** When (+)-maltose is subjected to two successive one-carbon degradations, there is obtained a disaccharide that reduces Tollens' and Fehling's reagents but does not form an osazone. What products would be expected from the acidic hydrolysis of this disaccharide? What would these facts indicate about the structure of (+)-maltose?

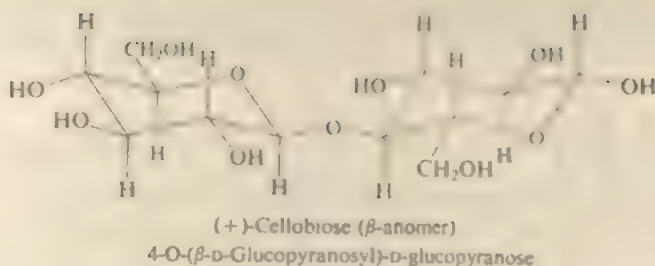
### 29.3 (+)-Cellobiose

When cellulose (cotton fibers) is treated for several days with sulfuric acid and acetic anhydride, a combination of acetylation and hydrolysis takes place; there is obtained the octaacetate of (+)-cellobiose. Alkaline hydrolysis of the octaacetate yields (+)-cellobiose itself.

Like (+)-maltose, (+)-cellobiose has the molecular formula  $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ , is a reducing sugar, forms an osazone, exists in *alpha* and *beta* forms that undergo mutarotation, and can be hydrolyzed to two molecules of D-(+)-glucose. The sequence of oxidation, methylation, and hydrolysis (as described for (+)-maltose) shows that (+)-cellobiose contains two pyranose rings and a glucoside linkage to an —OH group on C-4.

(+)-Cellobiose differs from (+)-maltose in one respect: it is hydrolyzed by the enzyme *emulsin* (from bitter almonds), not by maltase. Since emulsin is known to hydrolyze only  $\beta$ -glucoside linkages, we can conclude that the structure of (+)-cellobiose differs from that of (+)-maltose in only one respect: the D-glucose units are joined by a *beta* linkage rather than by an *alpha* linkage. (+)-Cellobiose is therefore 4-O-( $\beta$ -D-glucopyranosyl)-D-glucopyranose.





Although the D-glucose unit on the right in the formula of (+)-cellobiose may look different from the D-glucose unit on the left, this is only because it has been turned over to permit a reasonable bond angle at the glycosidic oxygen atom.

**Problem 29.5** Why is *alkaline* hydrolysis of cellobiose octaacetate (better named octa-O-acetylcellobiose) to (+)-cellobiose preferred over acidic hydrolysis?

**Problem 29.6** Write equations for the sequence of oxidation, methylation, and hydrolysis as applied to (+)-cellobiose.

## 29.4 (+)-Lactose

(+)-Lactose makes up about 5% of human milk and of cow's milk. It is obtained commercially as a by-product of cheese manufacture, being found in the *whey*, the aqueous solution that remains after the milk proteins have been coagulated. Milk *sours* when lactose is converted into lactic acid (sour, like all acids) by bacterial action (e.g., by *Lactobacillus bulgaricus*).

(+)-Lactose has the molecular formula  $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ , is a reducing sugar, forms an osazone, and exists in *alpha* and *beta* forms which undergo mutarotation. Acidic hydrolysis or treatment with emulsin (which splits  $\beta$ -linkages only) converts (+)-lactose into equal amounts of D-(+)-glucose and D-(+)-galactose. (+)-Lactose is evidently a  $\beta$ -glycoside formed by the union of a molecule of D-(+)-glucose and a molecule of D-(+)-galactose.

The question next arises: which is the reducing monosaccharide unit and which the non-reducing unit? Is (+)-lactose a glucoside or a galactoside? Hydrolysis of lactosazone yields D-(+)-galactose and D-glucosazone; hydrolysis of *lactobionic acid* (monocarboxylic acid) yields D-gluconic acid and D-(+)-galactose (see Fig. 29.2, on the following page). Clearly, it is the D-(+)-glucose unit that contains the "free" aldehyde group and undergoes osazone formation or oxidation to the acid. (+)-Lactose is thus a substituted D-glucose in which a D-galactosyl unit is attached to one of the oxygens; it is a galactoside, not a glucoside.

The sequence of oxidation, methylation, and hydrolysis gives results analogous to those obtained with (+)-maltose and (+)-cellobiose: the glycoside linkage involves an —OH group on C 4, and both units exist in the six-membered, pyranose form. (+)-Lactose is therefore 4-O-( $\beta$ -D-galactopyranosyl)-D-glucopyranose.

**Problem 29.7** (a) Write equations for the sequence of oxidation, methylation, and hydrolysis as applied to (+)-lactose.

(b) What compounds would be expected from oxidative cleavage of the final products of (a)?



**Problem 29.8** What products would be expected if (+)-sucrose were subjected to two successive one-carbon degradations followed by acidic hydrolysis?

## 29.5 (+)-Sucrose

(+)-Sucrose is our common table sugar, obtained from sugar cane and sugar beets. Of organic chemicals, it is the one produced in the largest amount in pure form.

(+)-Sucrose has the molecular formula  $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ . It does not reduce Tollens' or Fehling's reagent. It is a non-reducing sugar, and in this respect it differs from the other disaccharides we have studied. Moreover, (+)-sucrose does not form an osazone, does not exist in anomeric forms, and does not show mutarotation in solution. All these facts indicate that (+)-sucrose does not contain a "free" aldehyde or ketone group.

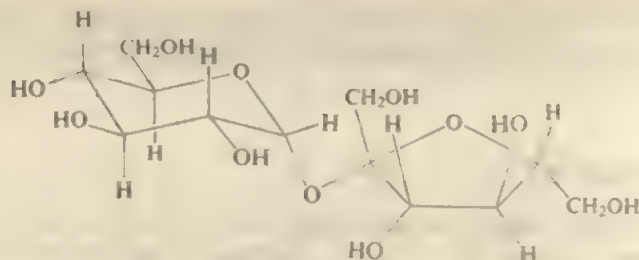
When (+)-sucrose is hydrolyzed by dilute aqueous acid, or by the action of the enzyme *invertase* (from yeast), it yields equal amounts of D-(+)-glucose and D-(-)-fructose. This hydrolysis is accompanied by a change in the sign of rotation from positive to negative; it is therefore often called the *inversion* of (+)-sucrose, and the levorotatory mixture of D-(+)-glucose and D-(-)-fructose obtained has been called *invert sugar*. (Honey is mostly invert sugar; the bees supply the invertase.) While (+)-sucrose has a specific rotation of  $+66.5^\circ$  and D-(+)-glucose has a specific rotation of  $+52.7^\circ$ , D-(-)-fructose has a large negative specific rotation of  $-92.4^\circ$ , giving a net negative value for the specific rotation of the mixture. (Because of their opposite rotations and their importance as components of (+)-sucrose, D-(+)-glucose and D-(-)-fructose are commonly called **dextrose** and **levulose**.)

**Problem 29.9** How do you account for the experimentally observed  $[\alpha] = -19.9^\circ$  for invert sugar?

(+)-Sucrose is made up of a D-glucose unit and a D-fructose unit; since there is no "free" carbonyl group, it must be both a D-glucoside and a D-fructoside. The two hexose units are evidently joined by a glycoside linkage between C-1 of glucose and C-2 of fructose, for only in this way can the single link between the two units effectively block *both* carbonyl functions.

**Problem 29.10** What would be the molecular formula of (+)-sucrose if C-1 of glucose were attached to, say, C-4 of fructose, and C-2 of fructose were joined to C-4 of glucose? Would this be a reducing or non-reducing sugar?

Determination of the stereochemistry of the D-glucoside and D-fructoside linkages is complicated by the fact that both linkages are hydrolyzed at the same time. The weight of evidence, including the results of x-ray studies and finally the synthesis of (+)-sucrose (1953), leads to the conclusion that (+)-sucrose is a *beta* D-fructoside and an *alpha* D-glucoside. (The synthesis of sucrose, by R. U. Lemieux of the University of Alberta, has been described as "the Mount Everest of organic chemistry.")



(+) -Sucrose

 $\alpha$ -D-Glucopyranosyl  $\beta$ -D-fructofuranoside $\beta$ -D-Fructofuranosyl  $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranoside(no anomers: *non-mutarotating*)

**Problem 29.11** When (+)-sucrose is hydrolyzed enzymatically, the D-glucose initially obtained mutarotates *downward* to + 52.7°. What does this fact indicate about the structure of (+)-sucrose?

Methylation and hydrolysis show that (+)-sucrose contains a D-glucopyranose unit and a D-fructofuranose unit. (The unexpected occurrence of the relatively rare five-membered, furanose ring caused no end of difficulties in both structure proof and synthesis of (+)-sucrose.) (+)-Sucrose is named equally well as either  $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranosyl  $\beta$ -D-fructofuranoside or  $\beta$ -D-fructofuranosyl  $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranoside.

**Problem 29.12** (a) Write equations for the sequence of methylation and hydrolysis as applied to (+)-sucrose.

(b) What compounds would be expected from oxidative cleavage of the final products of (a)?

## 29.6 Polysaccharides

Polysaccharides are compounds made up of many—hundreds or even thousands—monosaccharide units per molecule. As in disaccharides, these units are held together by glycoside linkages, which can be broken by hydrolysis.

Polysaccharides are naturally occurring polymers, which can be considered as derived from aldoses or ketoses by polymerization with loss of water. A polysaccharide derived from hexoses, for example, has the general formula  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n$ . This formula, of course, tells us very little about the structure of the polysaccharide. We need to know what the monosaccharide units are and how many there are in each molecule; how they are joined to each other; and whether the huge molecules thus formed are straight-chained or branched, looped or coiled.

By far the most important polysaccharides are **cellulose** and **starch**. Both are produced in plants from carbon dioxide and water by the process of photosynthesis, and both, as it happens, are made up of D-(+)-glucose units. Cellulose is the chief structural material of plants, giving the plants rigidity and form. It is probably the most widespread organic material known. Starch makes up the reserve food supply of plants and occurs chiefly in seeds. It is more water-soluble than cellulose, more easily hydrolyzed, and hence more readily digested.

Both cellulose and starch are, of course, enormously important to us. Generally speaking, we use them in very much the same way as the plant does. We use



cellulose for its structural properties: as wood for houses, as cotton or rayon for clothing, as paper for communication and packaging. We use starch as a food: potatoes, corn, wheat, rice, cassava, etc.

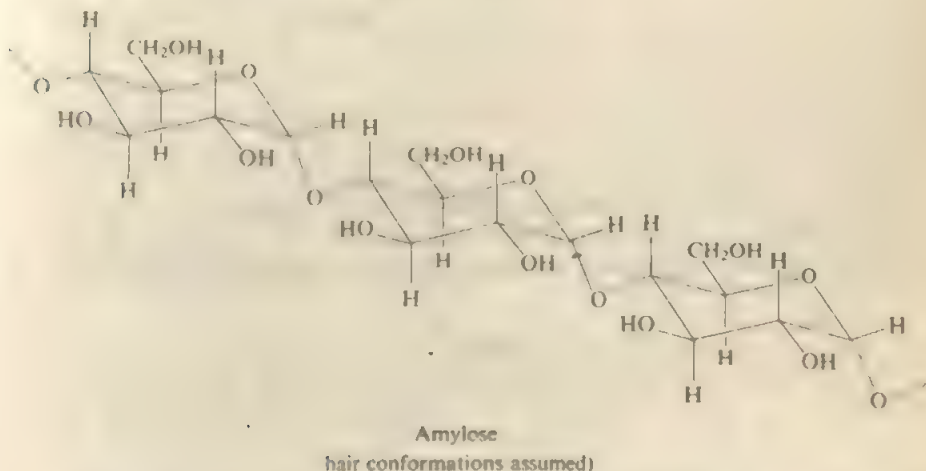
## 29.7 Starch

Starch occurs as granules whose size and shape are characteristic of the plant from which the starch is obtained. When intact, starch granules are insoluble in cold water; if the outer membrane has been broken by grinding, the granules swell in cold water and form a gel. When the intact granule is treated with warm water, a soluble portion of the starch diffuses through the granule wall; in hot water the granules swell to such an extent that they burst.

In general, starch contains about 20% of a water-soluble fraction called **amylose**, and 80% of a water-insoluble fraction called **amylopectin**. These two fractions appear to correspond to different carbohydrates of high molecular weight and formula  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n$ . Upon treatment with acid or under the influence of enzymes, the components of starch are hydrolyzed progressively to dextrin (a mixture of low-molecular-weight polysaccharides), (+)-maltose, and finally D-(+)-glucose. (A mixture of all these is found in corn sirup, for example.) Both amylose and amylopectin are made up of D-(+)-glucose units, but differ in molecular size and shape.

## 29.8 Structure of amylose. End group analysis

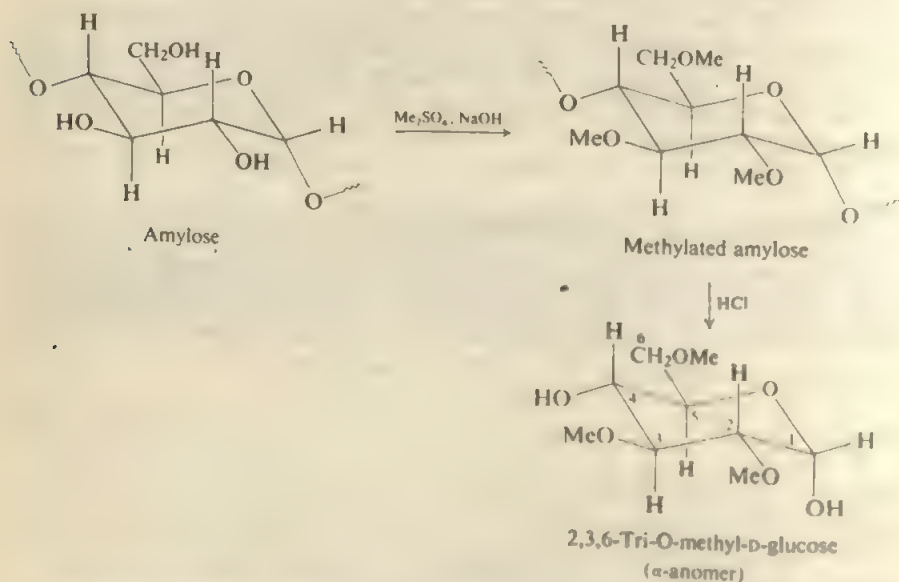
(+)-Maltose is the only disaccharide that is obtained by hydrolysis of amylose, and D-(+)-glucose is the only monosaccharide. To account for this, it has been proposed that amylose is made up of chains of many D-(+)-glucose units, each unit joined by an *alpha*-glycoside linkage to C 4 of the next one.



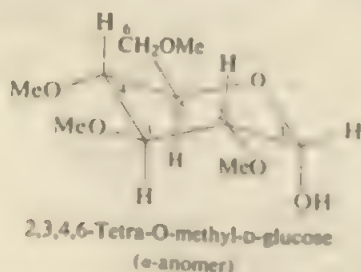
We could conceive of a structure for amylose in which  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -linkages regularly alternate. However, a compound of such a structure would be expected to yield (+)-cellobiose as well as (+)-maltose unless hydrolysis of the  $\beta$ -linkages occurred much faster than hydrolysis of the  $\alpha$ -linkages. Since hydrolysis of the  $\beta$ -linkage in (+)-cellobiose is actually slower than hydrolysis of the  $\alpha$ -linkage in (+)-maltose, such a structure seems unlikely.

How many of these  $\alpha$ -D-(+)-glucose units are there per molecule of amylose, and what are the shapes of these large molecules? These are difficult questions, and attempts to find the answers have made use of chemical and enzymatic methods, and of physical methods like x-ray analysis, electron microscopy, osmotic pressure and viscosity measurements, and behavior in an ultracentrifuge.

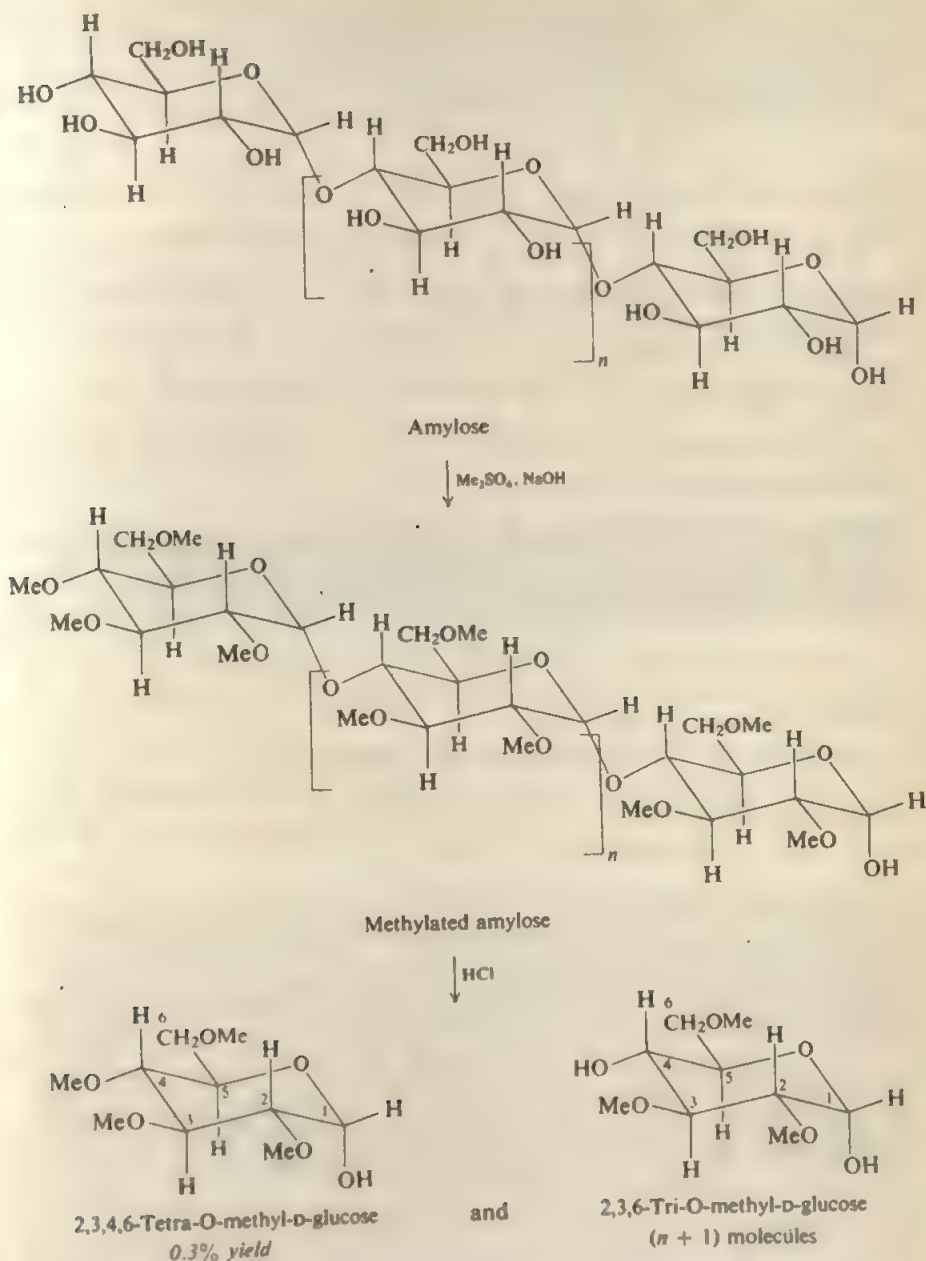
Valuable information about molecular size and shape has been obtained by the combination of methylation and hydrolysis that was so effective in studying the structures of disaccharides. D-(+)-Glucose, a monosaccharide, contains five free —OH groups and forms a pentamethyl derivative, methyl tetra-O-methyl-D-glucopyranoside. When two D-(+)-glucose units are joined together, as in (+)-maltose, each unit contains four free —OH groups; an octamethyl derivative is formed. If each D-(+)-glucose unit in amylose is joined to two others, it contains only three free —OH groups; methylation of amylose should therefore yield a compound containing only three —OCH<sub>3</sub> groups per glucose unit. What are the facts?



When amylose is methylated and hydrolyzed there is obtained, as expected, 2,3,6-tri-O-methyl-D-glucose. But there is also obtained a little bit of 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose, amounting to about 0.2–0.4% of the total product. Con-



sideration of the structure of amylose shows that this, too, is to be expected, and an important principle emerges: that of **end group analysis** (Fig. 29.3)



**Figure 29.3.** End group analysis. Hydrolysis of methylated amylose. End unit of long molecule gives 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose; other units give 2,3,6-tri-O-methyl-D-glucose.

Each D-glucose unit in amylose is attached to two other D-glucose units, one through C-1 and the other through C-4, with C-5 in every unit tied up in the pyranose ring. As a result, free —OH groups at C-2, C-3, and C-6 are available for methylation. But this is not the case for *every* D-glucose unit. Unless the amylose chain is cyclic, it must have two ends. At one end there should be a D-glucose unit

that contains a "free" aldehyde group. At the other end there should be a D-glucose unit that has a free  $\text{—OH}$  on C-4. This last D-glucose unit should undergo methylation at *four*  $\text{—OH}$  groups, and on hydrolysis should give a molecule of 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose.

Thus each molecule of completely methylated amylose that is hydrolyzed should yield one molecule of 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose; from the number of molecules of tri-O-methyl-D-glucose formed *along with* each molecule of the tetra-methyl compound, we can calculate the length of the amylose chain.

Here we see an example of the use of end group analysis to determine chain length. A methylation that yields 0.25% of tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose shows that for every end group (with a free  $\text{—OH}$  on C-4) there are about 400 chain units.

But physical methods suggest that the chains are even longer than this. Molecular weights range from 150,000 to 600,000, indicating 1000 to 4000 glucose units per molecule. Evidently some degradation of the chain occurs during the methylation step; hydrolysis of only a few glycoside linkages in the alkaline medium would break the chain into much shorter fragments.

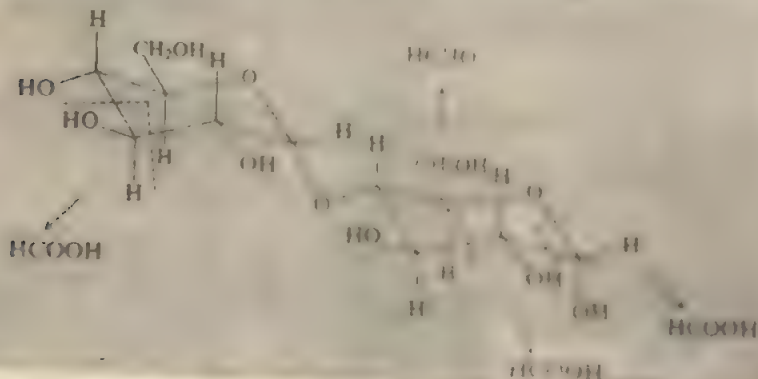
**Problem 29.13** Consider an amylose chain of 4000 glucose units. At how many places must cleavage occur to lower the average length to 2000 units? To 1000? To 400? What percentage of the total number of glycoside links are hydrolyzed in each case?

Amylose, then, is believed to be made up of long chains, each containing 1000 or more D-glucose units joined together by  $\alpha$ -linkages as in (+)-maltose; there is little or no branching of the chain.

Amylose is the fraction of starch that gives the intense blue color with iodine. X-ray analysis shows that the chains are coiled in the form of a helix (like a spiral staircase), inside which is just enough space to accommodate an iodine molecule; the blue color is due to entrapped iodine molecules.

**Problem 29.14** On the basis of certain evidence, it has been suggested that the rings of amylose have a twist-boat conformation, rather than the usual chair conformation. (a) What feature would tend to make any chair conformation unstable? (b) Suggest a twist-boat conformation that would avoid this difficulty (*Hint*: What are the largest groups attached to a ring in amylose?)

**Problem 29.15** When one mole of a disaccharide like (+)-maltose is treated with periodic acid (under conditions that minimize hydrolysis of the glycoside link), three moles of formic acid (and one of formaldehyde) are obtained.





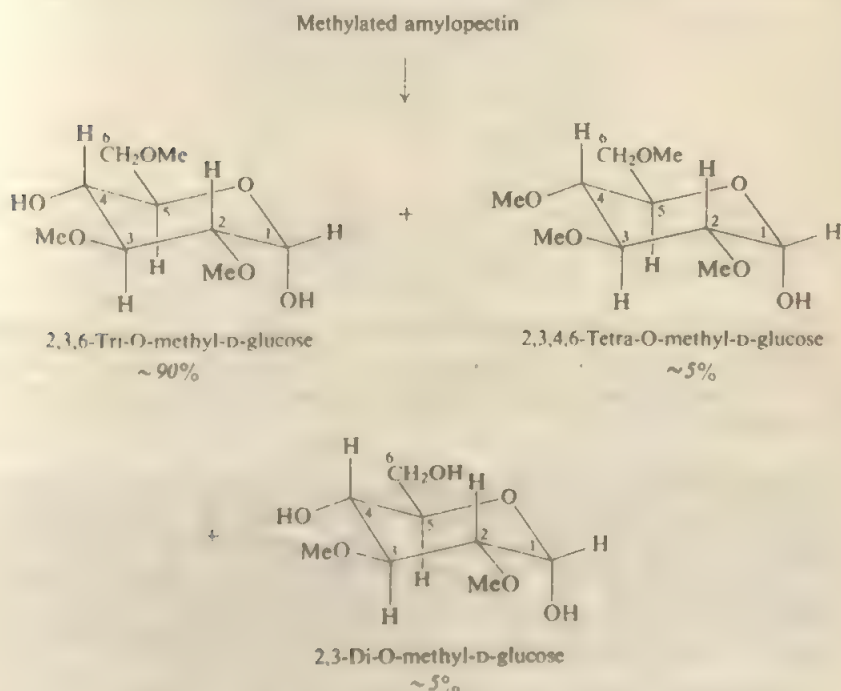
(a) Show what would happen to amylose (see formula on p. 1107) when treated with  $\text{HIO}_4$ . (b) How could this reaction be used to determine chain length? (c) Oxidation by  $\text{HIO}_4$  of 540 mg of amylose (from the sago plant) yielded 0.0102 millimoles of  $\text{HCOOH}$ . What is the chain length of this amylose?

## 29.9 Structure of amylopectin

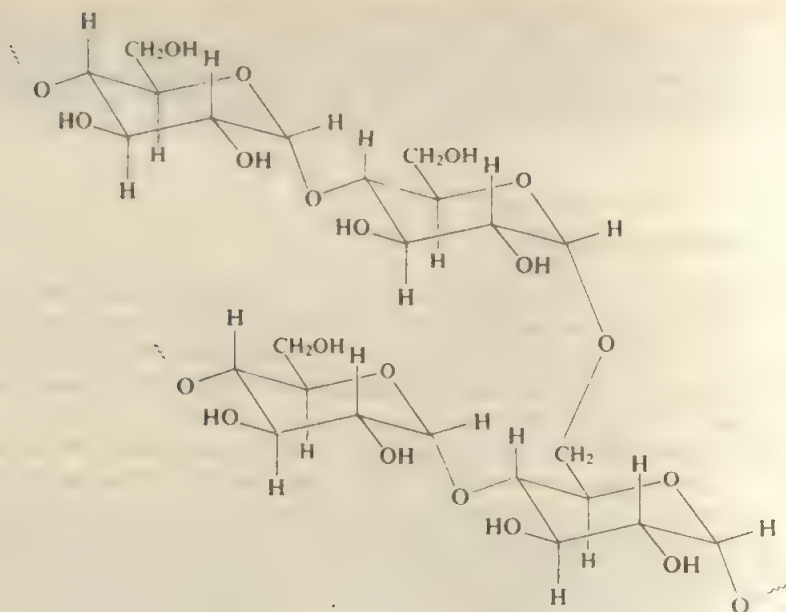
Amylopectin is hydrolyzed to the single disaccharide (+)-maltose; the sequence of methylation and hydrolysis yields chiefly 2,3,6-tri-O-methyl-D-glucose. Like amylose, amylopectin is made up of chains of D-glucose units, each unit joined by an  $\alpha$ -glycoside linkage to C-4 of the next one. However, its structure is more complex than that of amylose.

Molecular weights determined by physical methods show that there are up to a million D-glucose units per molecule. Yet hydrolysis of methylated amylopectin gives as high as 5% of 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose, indicating only 20 units per chain. How can these facts be reconciled by the same structure?

The answer is found in the following fact: along with the trimethyl and tetramethyl compounds, hydrolysis yields 2,3-di-O-methyl-D-glucose and in an amount nearly equal to that of the tetramethyl derivative.

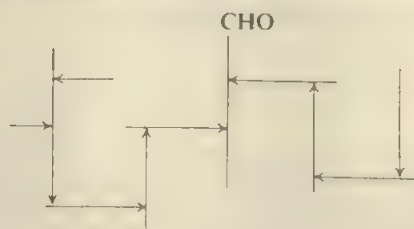


Amylopectin has a highly branched structure consisting of several hundred short chains of about 20–25 D-glucose units each. One end of each of these chains is joined through C-1 to a C-6 on the next chain.



Amylopectin  
(chair conformations assumed)

Schematically the amylopectin molecule is believed to be something like this:



Amylopectin

**Glycogen**, the form in which carbohydrate is stored in animals to be released upon metabolic demand, has a structure very similar to that of amylopectin, except that the molecules appear to be more highly branched, and to have shorter chains (12–18 D-glucose units each).

**Problem 29.16** Polysaccharides known as *dextrans* have been used as substitutes for blood plasma in transfusions; they are made by the action of certain bacteria on (+)-sucrose. Interpret the following properties of a dextran: Complete hydrolysis by acid yields only D-(+)-glucose. Partial hydrolysis yields only one disaccharide and only one trisaccharide, which contain only  $\alpha$ -glycoside linkages. Upon methylation and hydrolysis, there is obtained chiefly 2,3,4-tri-O-methyl-D-glucose, together with smaller amounts of 2,4-di-O-methyl-D-glucose and 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose.

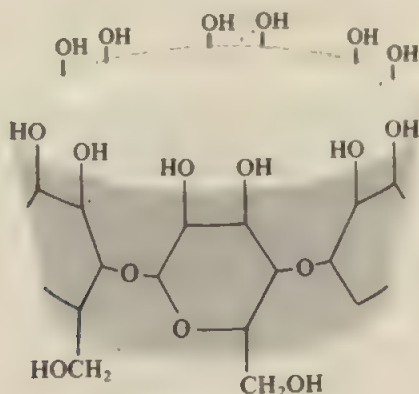
**Problem 29.17** Polysaccharides called *xylans* are found along with cellulose in wood and straw. Interpret the following properties of a sample of xylan: Its large negative rotation suggests  $\beta$ -linkages. Complete hydrolysis by acids yields only D-(+)-xylose. Upon methylation and hydrolysis, there is obtained chiefly 2,3-di-O-methyl-D-xylose, together with smaller amounts of 2,3,4-tri-O-methyl-D-xylose and 2-O-methyl-D-xylose.

## 29.10 Cyclodextrins

When starch is treated with a particular enzyme (the amylase of *Bacillus macerans*), there is formed a mixture of *cyclodextrins*: polysaccharides of low molecular weight belonging to the general class called *oligosaccharides* (*oligo* = few).

A cyclodextrin consists of six, seven, eight, or more D-glucose units joined through 1,4-*alpha* linkages in such a way as to form a ring—a chain bracelet each link of which is a pyranose hexagon. These rings are doughnut-shaped, much as crown ethers are (Sec. 12.9), but with a number of important differences. The smallest of them,  $\alpha$ -cyclodextrin, has a diameter about twice that of 18-crown-6, and its hole (4.5 Å across) is about twice as broad.

This hole is tapered slightly, so that the molecule is shaped like a tiny pail with the bottom knocked out (see Fig. 29.4). Making up the sides is a loop of six or more



**Figure 29.4.** A schematic representation of  $\alpha$ -cyclodextrin. The secondary  $\text{—OH}$ 's face outward about the "upper" rim; the  $\text{—CH}_2\text{OH}$ 's face outward about the "lower" rim. The cavity is lined with C—H's and glycosidic O's in three bands lying one above another.

hexagons, each one lying roughly in the plane of the sides; the depth of the pail is thus the width of the pyranose ring. Outside the pail, around the "upper," larger rim lie the secondary  $\text{—OH}$ 's of C-2 and C-3; around the "lower," smaller rim lie the primary  $\text{—OH}$ 's of C-6, that is, the  $\text{—CH}_2\text{OH}$  groups. The inside of the pail consists of three bands, one on top of another: two bands of C—H's and, in between, a band of glycosidic O's.

Like a crown ether, a cyclodextrin can act as a host to guest molecules. Indeed, it was in connection with this property of cyclodextrins that the phenomenon now known as the host-guest relationship was first recognized. But, in contrast to a crown ether, a cyclodextrin has a polar, hydrophilic outside and a relatively non-polar lipophilic inside. This leads naturally to two important results: (a) into its lipophilic interior a cyclodextrin typically takes as a guest, not an ion, but a non-polar organic molecule or the non-polar end of an organic molecule; and (b) its hydrophilic exterior confers water solubility on the resulting complex. How well a guest molecule is accommodated depends upon its size and polarity, and the size of the particular cyclodextrin.

Cyclodextrins can be used: to catalyze organic reactions, often with regioselectivity and a degree of stereoselectivity; and, most important, as comparatively simple models by which to study the action of enzymes.

The effects of cyclodextrins on chemical reactions can arise in a number of ways.

(a) They can simply hide certain parts of a guest molecule and expose other parts.

(b) They can change the conformation of the guest.

(c) Their lipophilic lining provides a non-polar medium for the guest but within a polar solvent.

(d) Their -OH groups can participate in the reaction: either directly—as bases and nucleophiles or as hydrogen-bonding sites—or via transient intermediates (esters, for example) formed by reaction with the host or with the attacking reagent.

The particular usefulness of cyclodextrins as enzyme models comes from the fact that, like enzymes (see, for example, Sec. 31.2), they first *bind* the substrate and then, through substituent groups, *act upon it*.

**Problem 29.18** The structure of cyclodextrins is shown, not only by x-ray analysis, but also by evidence of the kind we have already dealt with. Predict in detail the response expected from cyclodextrins to each of the following reagents or analyses: (a) Fehling's solution, (b) acidic hydrolysis; (c) methylation followed by acidic hydrolysis, (d) periodic acid, (e) molecular weight determination.

**Problem 29.19** When sodium benzenesulfonate is held by  $\alpha$ -cyclodextrin, one end of the molecule is believed to protrude. Which end would you expect this to be, and why?

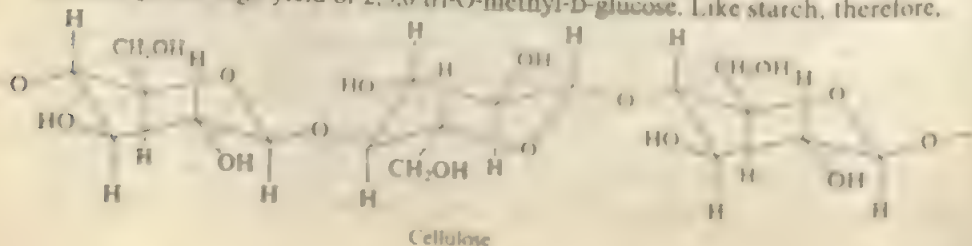
**Problem 29.20** A mixture of  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -, and  $\gamma$ -cyclodextrins (which contain, respectively, 6, 7, and 8 glucose units) can be separated by the selective precipitation of each component upon the successive addition of three compounds: cyclohexane, fluorobenzene, and anthracene (Sec. 34.15). Which compound precipitates which cyclodextrin, and why?

**Problem 29.21** Cyclodextrins can be used to separate a mixture of *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-cymenes (isopropyltoluenes). Can you suggest how this might be done?

## 29.11 Structure of cellulose

Cellulose is the chief component of wood and plant fibers, cotton, for instance, is nearly pure cellulose. It is insoluble in water and tasteless, it is a non-reducing carbohydrate. These properties, in part at least, are due to its extremely high molecular weight.

Cellulose has the formula  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n$ . Complete hydrolysis by acid yields D-(+)-glucose as the only monosaccharide. Hydrolysis of completely methylated cellulose gives a high yield of 2,3,6-tri-O-methyl-D-glucose. Like starch, therefore,





cellulose is made up of chains of D-glucose units, each unit joined by a glycoside linkage to C-4 of the next.

Cellulose differs from starch, however, in the configuration of the glycoside linkage. Upon treatment with acetic anhydride and sulfuric acid, cellulose yields octa-O-acetylcellulobiose; there is evidence that all glycoside linkages in cellulose, like the one in (+)-cellobiose, are *beta* linkages.

Physical methods give molecular weights for cellulose ranging from 250,000 to 1,000,000 or more; it seems likely that there are at least 1500 glucose units per molecule. End group analysis by both methylation and periodic acid oxidation gives a chain length of 1000 glucose units or more. X-ray analysis and electron microscopy indicate that these long chains lie side by side in bundles, undoubtedly held together by hydrogen bonds between the numerous neighboring  $\text{-OH}$  groups. These bundles are twisted together to form rope-like structures, which themselves are grouped to form the fibers we can see. In wood these cellulose "ropes" are embedded in lignin to give a structure that has been likened to reinforced concrete.

### 29.12 Reactions of cellulose

We have seen that the glycoside linkages of cellulose are broken by the action of acid, each cellulose molecule yielding many molecules of D-(+)-glucose. Now let us look briefly at reactions of cellulose in which the chain remains essentially intact. Each glucose unit in cellulose contains three free  $\text{-OH}$  groups; these are the positions at which reaction occurs.

These reactions of cellulose, carried out to modify the properties of a cheap, available, ready-made polymer, are of tremendous industrial importance.

### 29.13 Cellulose nitrate

Like any alcohol, cellulose forms esters. Treatment with a mixture of nitric and sulfuric acid converts cellulose into *cellulose nitrate*. The properties and uses of the product depend upon the extent of nitration.

*Guncotton*, which is used in making smokeless powder, is very nearly completely nitrated cellulose, and is often called *cellulose trinitrate* (three nitrate groups per glucose unit).

*Pyraxylm* is less highly nitrated material containing between two and three nitrate groups per glucose unit. It is used in the manufacture of plastics like celluloid and collodion, in photographic film, and in lacquers. It has the disadvantage of being flammable, and forms highly toxic nitrogen oxides upon burning.

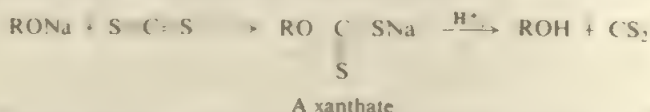
### 29.14 Cellulose acetate

In the presence of acetic anhydride, acetic acid, and a little sulfuric acid, cellulose is converted into the triacetate. Partial hydrolysis removes some of the acetate groups, degrades the chains to smaller fragments (of 200–300 units each), and yields the vastly important commercial *cellulose acetate* (roughly a diacetate).

Cellulose acetate is less flammable than cellulose nitrate and has replaced the nitrate in many of its applications, in safety-type photographic film, for example. When a solution of cellulose acetate in acetone is forced through the fine holes of a spinnerette, the solvent evaporates and leaves solid filaments. Threads from these filaments make up the material known as *acetate rayon*.

### 29.15 Rayon. Cellophane

When an alcohol is treated with carbon disulfide and aqueous sodium hydroxide, there is obtained a compound called a *xanthate*.



Cellulose undergoes an analogous reaction to form *cellulose xanthate*, which dissolves in the alkali to form a viscous colloidal dispersion called *viscose*.

When viscose is forced through a spinnerette into an acid bath, cellulose is regenerated in the form of fine filaments which yield threads of the material known as *rayon*. There are other processes for making rayon, but the viscose process is still the principal one used in the United States.

If viscose is forced through a narrow slit, cellulose is regenerated as thin sheets which, when softened by glycerol, are used for protective films (Cellophane).

Although rayon and Cellophane are often spoken of as "regenerated cellulose," they are made up of much shorter chains than the original cellulose because of degradation by the alkali treatment.

### 29.16 Cellulose ethers

Industrially, cellulose is alkylated by the action of alkyl chlorides (cheaper than sulfates) in the presence of alkali. Considerable degradation of the long chains is unavoidable in these reactions.

Methyl, ethyl, and benzyl ethers of cellulose are important in the production of textiles, films, and various plastic objects.

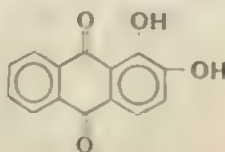
## PROBLEMS

1. (+)-*Gentiobiose*,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}_{11}$ , is found in the roots of gentians. It is a reducing sugar, forms an osazone, undergoes mutarotation, and is hydrolyzed by aqueous acid or by emulsin to D-glucose. Methylation of (+)-gentiobiose, followed by hydrolysis, gives 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose and 2,3,4-tri-O-methyl-D-glucose. What is the structure and systematic name of (+)-gentiobiose?

2. (a) (+)-*Trehalose*,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}_{11}$ , a non-reducing sugar found in young mushrooms, gives only D-glucose when hydrolyzed by aqueous acid or by maltase. Methylation gives an octa-O-methyl derivative that, upon hydrolysis, yields only 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose. What is the structure and systematic name for (+)-trehalose?

(b) (-)-*Isotrehalose* and (+)-*neotrehalose* resemble trehalose in most respects. However, isotrehalose is hydrolyzed by either emulsin or maltase, and neotrehalose is hydrolyzed only by emulsin. What are the structures and systematic names for these two carbohydrates?

3. *Ruberythric acid*,  $\text{C}_{25}\text{H}_{26}\text{O}_{13}$ , a non-reducing glycoside, is obtained from madder root. Complete hydrolysis gives *alizarin* ( $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_8\text{O}_4$ ), D-glucose, and D-xylose; graded



Alizarin

hydrolysis gives alizarin and *primeverose*,  $C_{11}H_{17}O_{11}$ . Oxidation of primeverose with bromine water, followed by hydrolysis, gives D-gluconic acid and D-xylose. Methylation of primeverose, followed by hydrolysis, gives 2,3,4-tri-O-methyl-D-xylose and 2,3,4-tri-O-methyl-D-glucose.

What structure or structures are possible for ruberythric acid? How can any uncertainties be cleared up?

4. (+)-*Raffinose*, a non-reducing sugar found in beet molasses, has the formula  $C_{18}H_{32}O_{16}$ . Hydrolysis by acid gives D-fructose, D-galactose, and D-glucose; hydrolysis by the enzyme  $\alpha$ -galactosidase gives D-galactose and sucrose; hydrolysis by invertase (a sucrose-splitting enzyme) gives D-fructose and the disaccharide *melibiose*.

Methylation of raffinose, followed by hydrolysis, gives 1,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-fructose, 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-galactose, and 2,3,4-tri-O-methyl-D-glucose.

What is the structure of raffinose? Of melibiose?

5. (+)-*Melezitose*, a non-reducing sugar found in honey, has the formula  $C_{18}H_{32}O_{16}$ . Hydrolysis by acid gives D-fructose and two moles of D-glucose; partial hydrolysis gives D-glucose and the disaccharide *turanose*. Hydrolysis by maltase gives D-glucose and D-fructose; hydrolysis by another enzyme gives sucrose.

Methylation of melezitose, followed by hydrolysis, gives 1,4,6-tri-O-methyl-D-fructose and two moles of 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose.

(a) What structure of melezitose is consistent with these facts? What is the structure of turanose?

Melezitose reacts with four moles of  $HIO_4$  to give two moles of formic acid but no formaldehyde.

(b) Show that the absence of formaldehyde means either a furanose or pyranose structure for the fructose unit, and either a pyranose or septanose (7-membered ring) structure for the glucose units.

(c) How many moles of  $HIO_4$  would be consumed and how many moles of formic acid would be produced if the two glucose units had septanose rings? (d) Answer (c) for one septanose ring and one pyranose ring. (e) Answer (c) for two pyranose rings. (f) What can you say about the size of the rings in the glucose units?

(g) Answer (c) for a pyranose ring in the fructose unit; for a furanose ring.

(h) What can you say about the size of the ring in the fructose unit?

(i) Are the oxidation data consistent with the structure of melezitose you gave in (a)?

6. The sugar, (+)-*panose*, was first isolated by S. C. Pan and co-workers (at Joseph E. Seagram and Sons, Inc.) from a culture of *Aspergillus niger* on maltose. Panose has a mol. wt. of approximately 475-500. Hydrolysis gives glucose, maltose, and an isomer of maltose called isomaltose. Methylation and hydrolysis of panose gives 2,3,4-tri-, 2,3,6-tri-, and 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose in essentially equimolar amounts. The high positive rotation of panose is considered to exclude the possibility of any  $\beta$ -linkages.

(a) How many monosaccharide units make up a molecule of panose? In how many ways might these be arranged?

(b) Oxidation of panose to the aldonic acid, followed by hydrolysis, gives *no* maltose; reduction of panose to panitol, followed by hydrolysis, gives glucitol and maltitol (the reduction product of maltose). Can you now draw a single structure for panose? What must be the structure of isomaltose?

(c) Panose and isomaltose can be isolated from the partial hydrolysis products of amylopectin. What bearing does this have on the structure of amylopectin?

7. Cellulose can be oxidized by  $N_2O_4$  to  $[(C_6H_7O_4)COOH]_n$ . (a) What is the structure of this product? (b) What will it give on hydrolysis of the chain? What is the name of this hydrolysis product?

(c) The oxidation product in (a) is readily decarboxylated to  $(C_6H_8O_4)_n$ . What will this give on hydrolysis of the chain? What is the name of this hydrolysis product? Is it a D or L compound?

8. Suggest structural formulas for the following polysaccharides, neglecting the stereochemistry of the glycoside linkages:

(a) An *araban* from peanut hulls yields only L-arabinose on hydrolysis. Methylation, followed by hydrolysis, yields equimolar amounts of 2,3,5-tri-O-methyl-L-arabinose, 2,3-di-O-methyl-L-arabinose, and 3-O-methyl-L-arabinose.



(b) A *mannan* from yeast yields only D-mannose on hydrolysis. Methylation, followed by hydrolysis, yields 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-mannose, 2,4,6-tri-O-methyl-D-mannose, 3,4,6-tri-O-methyl-D-mannose, and 3,4-di-O-methyl-D-mannose in a molecular ratio of 2:1:1:2, together with small amounts of 2,3,4-tri-O-methyl-D-mannose.

9. When a *vital* (see Problem 29-17, p. 1110) is boiled with dilute hydrochloric acid, a pleasant-smelling liquid, *furfural*,  $C_5H_4O_2$ , steam-distills. Furfural gives positive tests with Tollens' and Schiff's reagents; it forms an oxime and a phenylhydrazone but not an osazone. Furfural can be oxidized by  $KMnO_4$  to A,  $C_5H_4O_3$ , which is soluble in aqueous  $NaHCO_3$ .

Compound A can be readily decarboxylated to B,  $C_4H_4O$ , which can be hydrogenated to C,  $C_4H_8O$ . C gives no tests for functional groups except solubility in cold concentrated  $H_2SO_4$ ; it gives negative tests for unsaturation with dilute  $KMnO_4$  or  $Br_2/CCl_4$ .

Prolonged treatment of C with  $HCl$  gives D,  $C_4H_8Cl_2$ , which on treatment with  $KCN$  gives E,  $C_4H_8N_2$ . E can be hydrolyzed to F,  $C_6H_{10}O_4$ , identifiable as adipic acid.

What is the structure of furfural? Of compounds A through F?

10. Give a likely structure for each of the following polysaccharides:

(a) *Alginate*, from sea weed, is used as a thickening agent in ice cream and other foods. Hydrolysis yields only D-mannuronic acid. Methylation, followed by hydrolysis, yields 2,3-di-O-methyl-D-mannuronic acid (Mannuronic acid is  $HOOC(CHOH)_4CHO$ ). The glycoside linkages in alginate are thought to be *beta*.

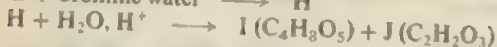
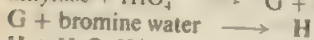
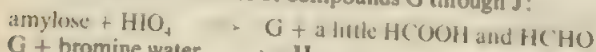
(b) *Pectic acid* is the main constituent of the *pectin* responsible for the formation of jellies from fruits and berries. Methylation of pectic acid, followed by hydrolysis, gives only 2,3-di-O-methyl-D-galacturonic acid. The glycoside linkages in pectic acid are thought to be *alpha*.

(c) *Agar*, from sea weed, is used in the growing of microorganisms. Hydrolysis yields a 9:1:1 molar ratio of D-galactose, L-galactose, and sulfuric acid. Methylation, followed by hydrolysis, yields 2,4,6-tri-O-methyl-D-galactose, 2,3-di-O-methyl-L-galactose, and sulfuric acid in the same 9:1:1 ratio. What uncertainties are there in your proposed structure?

11. The main constituent of the capsule surrounding the Type III pneumococcus, and the substance responsible for the specificity of its antigen-antibody reactions, is a polysaccharide (mol. wt. about 150,000). Hydrolysis yields equimolar amounts of D-glucose and D-glucuronic acid,  $HOOC(CHOH)_4CHO$ ; careful hydrolysis gives cellobiuronic acid (the uronic acid related to cellobiose). Methylation, followed by hydrolysis, gives equimolar amounts of 2,3,6-tri-O-methyl-D-glucose and 2,4-di-O-methyl-D-glucuronic acid.

What is a likely structure for the polysaccharide?

12. Draw structures of compounds G through J:



13. (a) Show what would happen to cellulose when treated with  $HIO_4$ . (b) How could this reaction be used to determine chain length? (c) If oxidation by  $HIO_4$  of 203 mg of a sample of cellulose yields 0.0027 millimoles of  $HCOOH$ , what is the chain length of the cellulose?

14. Aromatic chlorination can be brought about not only by hypochlorous acid,  $HOCl$  (Problem 15-5, p. 605) but also by alkyl hypochlorites,  $ROCl$ , formed by the reaction between alcohols and  $HOCl$ .

(a) Outline all steps in a likely mechanism for the acid-catalyzed chlorination of anisole by *tert*-butyl hypochlorite, *t*-BuOCl.

(b) Chlorination of anisole by  $HOCl$  or *t*-BuOCl gives a mixture of *o*- and *p*-chloroanisoles. In the presence of  $\alpha$ -cyclodextrin, however, chlorination by  $HOCl$  gives almost exclusively the *para* product, and takes place faster than in the absence of the cyclodextrin. How might you account for both the regioselectivity and the enhancement of rate?

(c) An  $\alpha$ -cyclodextrin methylated at all C-2 and C-6 positions exerts an effect comparable to that of the unmethylated cyclodextrin. Can you now be more specific in your answer to part (b)?



## Amino Acids and Proteins

---

### 30.1 Introduction

The name **protein** is taken from the Greek *proteios*, which means *first*. This name is well chosen. Of all chemical compounds, proteins must almost certainly be ranked first, for they are the substance of life.

Proteins make up a large part of the animal body, they hold it together, and they run it. They are found in all living cells. They are the principal material of skin, muscle, tendons, nerves, and blood; of enzymes, antibodies, and many hormones.

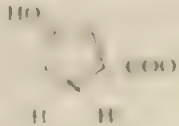
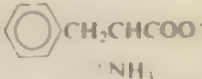
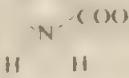
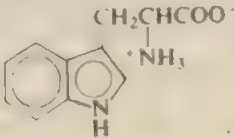
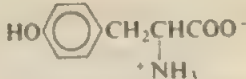
(Only the nucleic acids, which control heredity, can challenge the position of proteins; and the nucleic acids are important because they direct the synthesis of proteins.)

Chemically, proteins are high polymers. They are polyamides, and the monomers from which they are derived are the  $\alpha$ -amino carboxylic acids. A single protein molecule contains hundreds or even thousands of amino acid units; these units can be of twenty-odd different kinds. The number of different combinations, that is, the number of different protein molecules that are possible, is almost infinite. It is likely that tens of thousands of different proteins are required to make up and run an animal body; and this set of proteins is not identical with the set required by an animal of a different kind.

In this chapter we shall look first at the chemistry of the amino acids, and then briefly at the proteins that they make up. Our chief purpose will be to see the ways in which the structures of these enormously complicated molecules are being worked out, and how, in the last analysis, all this work rests on the basic principles of organic structural theory: on the concepts of bond angle and bond length, group size and shape, hydrogen bonding, resonance, acidity and basicity, optical activity, configuration and conformation.



Table 30.1 NATURAL AMINO ACIDS (continued)

Name	Abbreviation	Formula
(-)-Hydroxylysine	Hyl	$\text{H}_2\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{COO}^-)\text{NH}_2$
(-)-Hydroxyproline	Hyp	
(+)-Isoleucine*	Ile I	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{COO}^-)\text{NH}_2$
(-)-Leucine*	Leu L	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{COO}^-)\text{NH}_2$
(+)-Lysine*	Lys K	$\text{H}_2\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{COO}^-)\text{NH}_2$
(-)-Methionine*	Met M	$\text{CH}_3\text{SCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{COO}^-)\text{NH}_2$
(-)-Phenylalanine*	Phe F	
(-)-Proline	Pro P	
(-)-Serine	Ser S	$\text{HOCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{COO}^-)\text{NH}_2$
(-)-Threonine*	Thr T	$\text{CH}_3\text{CHOHCH}(\text{COO}^-)\text{NH}_2$
(-)-Tryptophan*	Trp W	
(-)-Tyrosine	Tyr Y	
(+)-Valine*	Val V	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}(\text{COO}^-)\text{NH}_2$

\* Essential amino acid

In other respects, the structures of these compounds vary rather widely. In addition to the carboxyl group and the amino group *alpha* to it, some amino acids contain a second carboxyl group (e.g., aspartic acid or glutamic acid), or a potential carboxyl group in the form of a carboxamide (e.g., asparagine); these are called *acidic amino acids*. Some contain a second basic group, which may be an amino group (e.g., lysine), a guanidino group (arginine), or the imidazole ring (histidine); these are called *basic amino acids*. Some of the amino acids contain benzene or heterocyclic ring systems, phenolic or alcoholic hydroxyl groups, halogen or sulfur atoms. Each of these ring systems or functional groups undergoes its own typical set of reactions.

### 30.3 Amino acids as dipolar ions

Although the amino acids are commonly shown as containing an amino group and a carboxyl group,  $\text{H}_2\text{NCHRCOOH}$ , certain properties, both physical and chemical, are not consistent with this structure:

(a) In contrast to amines and carboxylic acids, the amino acids are non-volatile crystalline solids which melt with decomposition at fairly high temperatures.

(b) They are insoluble in non-polar solvents like petroleum ether, benzene, or ether, and are appreciably soluble in water.

(c) Their aqueous solutions behave like solutions of substances of high dipole moment.

(d) Acidity and basicity constants are ridiculously low for  $-\text{COOH}$  and  $-\text{NH}_2$  groups. Glycine, for example, has  $K_a = 1.6 \times 10^{-10}$  and  $K_b = 2.5 \times 10^{-12}$ , whereas most carboxylic acids have  $K_a$ 's of about  $10^{-5}$  and most aliphatic amines have  $K_b$ 's of about  $10^{-4}$ .

All these properties are quite consistent with a dipolar ion structure for the amino acids (I).



I

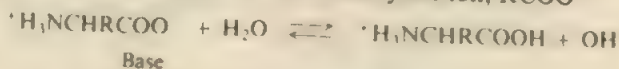
Amino acids: *dipolar ions*

The physical properties—melting point, solubility, high dipole moment—are just what would be expected of such a salt. The acid base properties also become understandable when it is realized that the measured  $K_a$  actually refers to the acidity of an ammonium ion,  $\text{RNH}_3^+$ ,



$$K_a = \frac{[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+][\text{H}_2\text{NCHRCOO}^-]}{[^+\text{H}_3\text{NCHRCOO}^-]}$$

and  $K_b$  actually refers to the basicity of a carboxylate ion,  $\text{RCOO}^-$



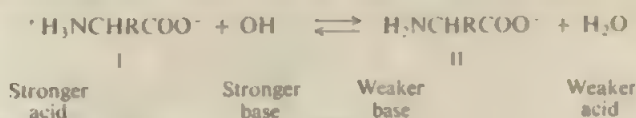
$$K_b = \frac{[^+\text{H}_3\text{NCHRCOOH}][\text{OH}^-]}{[^+\text{H}_3\text{NCH}_2\text{COO}^-]}$$

In aqueous solution, the acidity and basicity of an acid and its conjugate base ( $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$  and  $\text{CH}_3\text{COO}^-$ , or  $\text{CH}_3\text{NH}_3^+$  and  $\text{CH}_3\text{NH}_2$ , for example) are

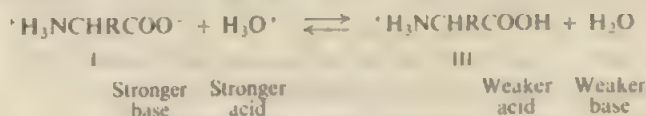


related by the expression  $K_a \times K_b = 10^{-14}$ . From this it can be calculated that a  $K_a$  of  $1.6 \times 10^{-10}$  for the  $\text{—NH}_3^+$  of glycine means  $K_b = 6.3 \times 10^{-5}$  for  $\text{—NH}_2$ , a quite reasonable value for an aliphatic amine. In the same way, a  $K_b$  of  $2.5 \times 10^{-12}$  for the  $\text{—COO}^-$  of glycine means  $K_a = 4 \times 10^{-3}$  for  $\text{—COOH}$ , a quite reasonable value for a carboxylic acid containing the strongly electron-withdrawing (acid-strengthening)  $\text{—NH}_3^+$  group.

When the solution of an amino acid is made alkaline, the dipolar ion I is converted into the anion II, the stronger base, hydroxide ion, removes a proton from the ammonium ion and displaces the weaker base, the amine.



When the solution of an amino acid is made acidic, the dipolar ion I is converted into the cation III; the stronger acid,  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ , gives up a proton to the carboxylate ion, and displaces the weaker carboxylic acid.



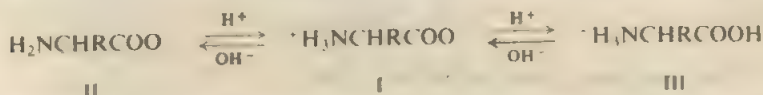
In summary, the acidic group of a simple amino acid like glycine is  $\text{—NH}_3^+$  not  $\text{—COOH}$ , and the basic group is  $\text{—COO}^-$  not  $\text{—NH}_2$ .

**Problem 30.1** In quite alkaline solution, an amino acid contains two basic groups,  $\text{—NH}_2$  and  $\text{—COO}^-$ . Which is the more basic? To which group will a proton preferentially go as acid is added to the solution? What will the product be?

**Problem 30.2** In quite acidic solution, an amino acid contains two acidic groups,  $\text{—NH}_3^+$  and  $\text{—COOH}$ . Which is the more acidic? Which group will more readily give up a proton as base is added to the solution? What will the product be?

**Problem 30.3** Account for the fact that *p*-aminobenzoic acid or *o*-aminobenzoic acid does not exist appreciably as the dipolar ion, but *p*-aminobenzenesulfonic acid (*sulfanilic acid*) does. (Hint: What is  $K_b$  for most aromatic amines?)

We must keep in mind that ions II and III, which contain a free  $\text{—NH}_2$  or  $\text{—COOH}$  group, are in equilibrium with dipolar ion I; consequently, amino acids undergo reactions characteristic of amines and carboxylic acids. As ion II is removed, by reaction with benzoyl chloride, for example, the equilibrium shifts to supply more of ion II so that eventually the amino acid is completely benzoylated.

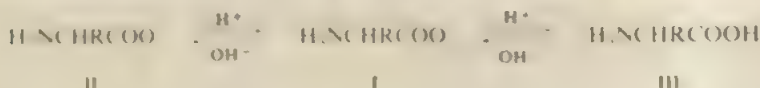


Where feasible we can speed up a desired reaction by adjusting the acidity or basicity of the solution in such a way as to increase the concentration of the reactive species.

**Problem 30.4** Suggest a way to speed up (a) esterification of an amino acid; (b) acylation of an amino acid.

### 30.4 Isoelectric point of amino acids

What happens when a solution of an amino acid is placed in an electric field depends upon the acidity or basicity of the solution. In quite alkaline solution,



anions II exceed cations III, and there is a net migration of amino acid toward the anode. In quite acidic solution, cations III are in excess, and there is a net migration of amino acid toward the cathode. If II and III are exactly balanced, there is no net migration; under such conditions any one molecule exists as a positive ion and as a negative ion for exactly the same amount of time, and any small movement in the direction of one electrode is subsequently canceled by an equal movement back toward the other electrode. The hydrogen ion concentration of the solution in which a particular amino acid does not migrate under the influence of an electric field is called the **isoelectric point** of that amino acid.

A monoamino monocarboxylic acid,  ${}^+\text{H}_3\text{NCHRCOO}^-$ , is somewhat more acidic than basic (for example, glycine:  $K_a = 1.6 \times 10^{-10}$  and  $K_b = 2.5 \times 10^{-12}$ ). If crystals of such an amino acid are added to water, the resulting solution contains more of the anion II,  $\text{H}_2\text{NCHRCOO}^-$ , than of the cation III,  ${}^+\text{H}_3\text{NCHRCOOH}$ . This "excess" ionization of ammonium ion to amine ( $\text{I} \rightleftharpoons \text{II} + \text{H}^+$ ) must be repressed, by addition of acid, to reach the isoelectric point, which therefore lies somewhat on the acid side of neutrality (pH 7). For glycine, for example, the isoelectric point is at pH 6.1.

**Problem 30.5** (a) Will the isoelectric point be on the acid or alkaline side of pH 7 (neutrality) for a monoamino dicarboxylic acid? (b) For a diamino monocarboxylic acid? (c) Compare each of these isoelectric points with that for glycine.

An amino acid usually shows its lowest solubility in a solution at the isoelectric point, since here there is the highest concentration of the dipolar ion. As the solution is made more alkaline or more acidic, the concentration of one of the more soluble ions, II or III, increases.

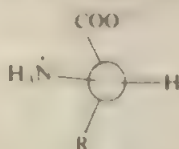
**Problem 30.6** Account for the fact that sulfanilic acid dissolves in alkalis but not in acids.

**Problem 30.7** Suggest a way to separate a mixture of amino acids into three fractions: monoamino monocarboxylic acids, monoamino dicarboxylic acids (the acidic amino acids), and diamino monocarboxylic acids (the basic amino acids).

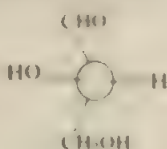
### 30.5 Configuration of natural amino acids

From the structures in Table 30.1, we can see that every amino acid except glycine contains at least one chiral center. As obtained by acidic or enzymatic hydrolysis of proteins, every amino acid except glycine has been found optically active. Stereochemical studies of these naturally occurring amino acids have shown that all have the same configuration about the carbon atom carrying the *alpha*-amino group, and that this configuration is the same as that in L-(+)-glyceraldehyde.

Since the group R happens always to have a lower Cahn-Ingold-Prelog priority than COOH, these all have the *S* configuration (Sec. 4.16)



L-Amino acid



D-Glyceraldehyde

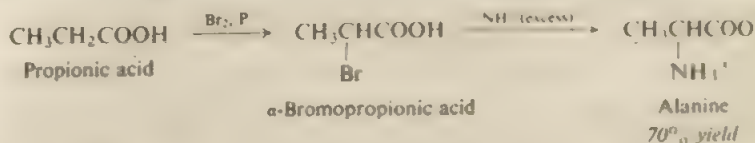
**Problem 30.8** Draw all possible stereoisomeric formulas for the amino acid threonine. Naturally occurring threonine gets its name from its relationship to the tetrose *threose*; on this basis which is the correct configuration for natural threonine?

**Problem 30.9** Besides threonine, there are four amino acids in Table 30.1 that can exist in more than two stereoisomeric forms. (a) What are they? (b) How many isomers are possible in each case? Indicate enantiomers, diastereomers, any *meso* compounds.

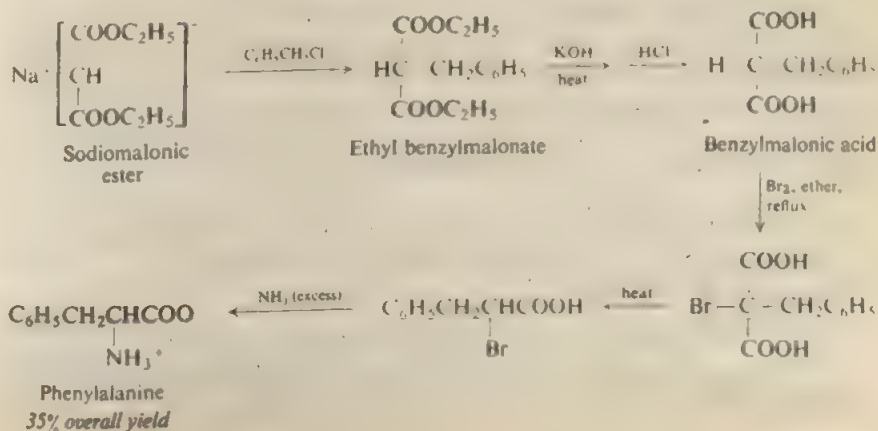
### 30.6 Preparation of amino acids

Of the many methods that have been developed for synthesizing amino acids, we shall take up only one: **amination of  $\alpha$ -halo acids**. Considered in its various modifications, this method is probably the most generally useful, although, like any of the methods, it cannot be applied to the synthesis of all the amino acids.

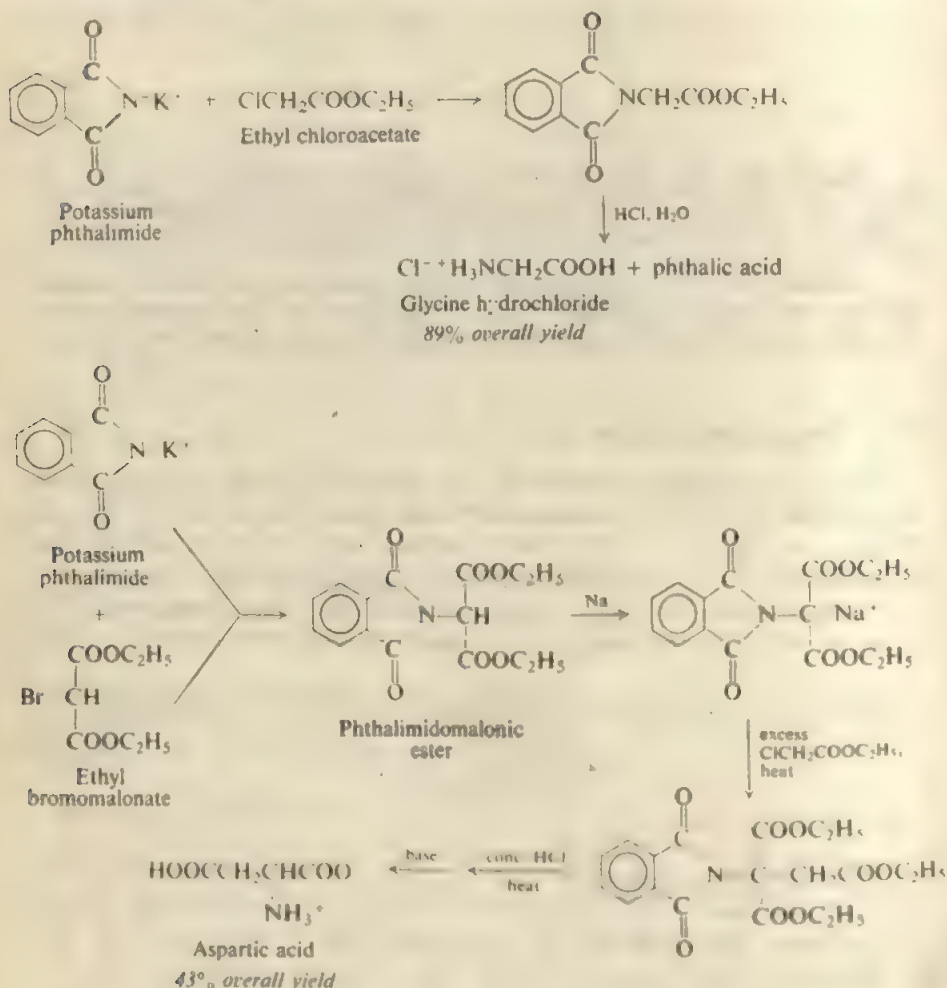
Sometimes an  $\alpha$ -chloro or  $\alpha$ -bromo acid is subjected to **direct ammonolysis** with a large excess (Why?) of concentrated aqueous ammonia. For example:



The necessary  $\alpha$ -halo acids or esters can be prepared by the Hell-Volhard-Zelinsky halogenation of the unsubstituted acids (Sec. 19.19), or by a modification of the **malonic ester synthesis**, the usual route to the unsubstituted acids. For example:



Better yields are generally obtained by the **Gabriel phthalimide synthesis** (Problem 11, p. 910); the  $\alpha$ -halo esters are used instead of  $\alpha$ -halo acids (Why?). A further modification, the **phthalimidomalonate ester method**, is a combined malonic ester–Gabriel synthesis.



These synthetic amino acids are, of course, optically inactive, and must be resolved if the active materials are desired for comparison with the naturally occurring acids or for synthesis of peptides (Sec. 30.10). There is growing interest in enantiotopic syntheses, which yield directly optically active amino acids; such preparation must, of course, be carried out in a chiral medium. We have already seen a promising example of such syntheses in Sec. 8.7.

**Problem 30.10** Various amino acids have been made in the following ways.

*Direct ammonolysis:* glycine, alanine, valine, leucine, aspartic acid

*Gabriel synthesis:* glycine, leucine

*Malonic ester synthesis:* valine, isoleucine

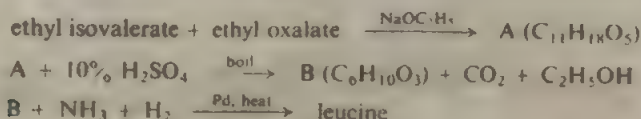
*Phthalimidomalonate ester method:* serine, glutamic acid, aspartic acid

List the necessary starting materials in each case, and outline the entire sequence for one example from each group.



**Problem 30.11** Acetaldehyde reacts with a mixture of KCN and  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  (Strecker synthesis) to give a product,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_6\text{N}_2$  (What is its structure?), which upon hydrolysis yields alanine. Show how the Strecker synthesis can be applied to the synthesis of glycine, leucine, isoleucine, valine, and serine (start with  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ). Make all required carbonyl compounds from readily available materials.

**Problem 30.12** (a) Synthesis of amino acids by **reductive amination** (Sec. 22.11) is illustrated by the following synthesis of leucine:



(b) Outline the synthesis by this method of alanine. Of glutamic acid.

### 30.7 Reactions of amino acids

The reactions of amino acids are in general the ones we would expect of compounds containing amino and carboxyl groups. In addition, any other groups that may be present undergo their own characteristic reactions.

**Problem 30.13** Predict the products of the treatment of glycine with:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) aqueous NaOH  | (d) acetic anhydride  |
| (b) aqueous HCl   | (e) $\text{NaNO}_2 + \text{HCl}$                            |
| (c) benzoyl chloride + aqueous NaOH   | (f) $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ |
| (g) benzyl chlorocarbonate (carbobenzoxy chloride), $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{OCOCl}$ |   |

**Problem 30.14** Predict the products of the following reactions:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) N-benzoylglycine ( <i>hippuric acid</i> ) + $\text{SOCl}_2$ | (g) proline + methyl iodide   |
| (b) product of (a) + $\text{NH}_3$                              | (h) tyrosine + methyl sulfate + NaOH                                      |
| (c) product of (a) + alanine                                    | (i) glutamic acid + one mole $\text{NaHCO}_3$                             |
| (d) product of (a) + $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$            | (j) glutamic acid + excess ethyl alcohol + $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ + heat |
| (e) tyrosine + $\text{Br}_2(\text{aq})$                         |   |
| (f) asparagine + hot aqueous NaOH                               |   |

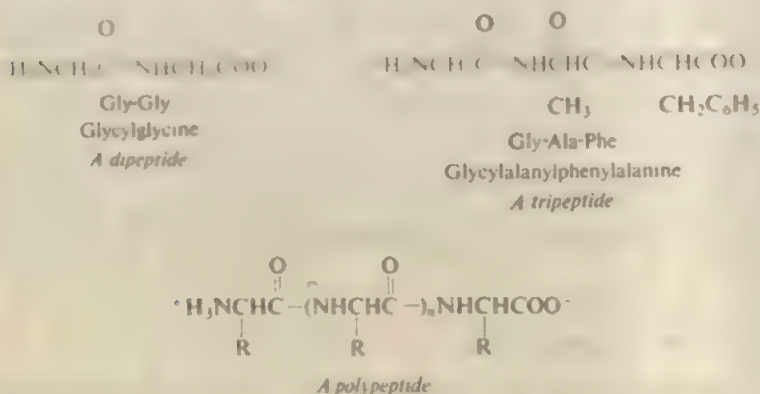
**Problem 30.15** The reaction of primary aliphatic amines with nitrous acid gives a quantitative yield of nitrogen gas, and is the basis of the **Van Slyke determination of amino nitrogen**. What volume of nitrogen gas at S.T.P. would be liberated from 0.001 mole of: (a) leucine, (b) lysine, (c) proline?

**Problem 30.16** When a solution of 9.36 mg of an unknown amino acid was treated with excess nitrous acid, there was obtained  $2.01 \text{ cm}^3$  of nitrogen at 748 mm and  $20^\circ$ . What is the minimum molecular weight for this compound? Can it be one of the amino acids found in proteins? If so, which one?

### 30.8 Peptides. Geometry of the peptide linkage

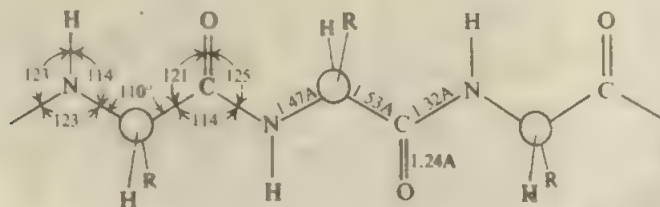
**Peptides** are amides formed by interaction between amino groups and carboxyl groups of amino acids. The amino group,  $\text{NHCO}-$ , in such compounds is often referred to as the *peptide linkage*.

Depending upon the number of amino acid residues per molecule, they are known as *di-peptides*, *tri-peptides*, and so on, and finally *polypeptides*. (By convention, peptides of molecular weight up to 10,000 are known as polypeptides and above that as proteins.) For example:



A convenient way of representing peptide structures by use of standard abbreviations (see Table 30.1) is illustrated here. According to convention, the **N-terminal amino acid residue** (having the free amino group) is written at the left end, and the **C-terminal amino acid residue** (having the free carboxyl group) at the right end.

X-ray studies of amino acids and dipeptides indicate that the entire amide group is flat: carbonyl carbon, nitrogen, and the four atoms attached to them all lie in a plane. The short carbon-nitrogen distance (1.32 Å as compared with 1.47 Å for the usual carbon-nitrogen single bond) indicates that the carbon-nitrogen bond has considerable double-bond character (about 50%); as a result the angles of the bonds to nitrogen are similar to the angles about the trigonal carbon atom (Fig. 30.1).



**Figure 30.1.** Geometry of the peptide link. Carbon-nitrogen bond has much double-bond character. Carbonyl carbon, nitrogen, and atoms attached to them lie in a plane.

**Problem 30.17** (a) What contributing structure(s) would account for the double-bond character of the carbon-nitrogen bond? (b) What does this resonance mean in terms of orbitals?

**Problem 30.18** At room temperature, N,N-dimethylformamide gives the following NMR spectrum:

a singlet,  $\delta$  2.88, 3H      b singlet,  $\delta$  2.97, 3H      c singlet,  $\delta$  8.02, 1H

As the temperature is raised, signals a and b broaden and coalesce; finally, at 170°,



### 30.9 Determination of structure of peptides. Terminal residue analysis. Partial hydrolysis

To assign a structure to a particular peptide, one must know (a) what amino acid residues make up the molecule and how many of each there are, and (b) the sequence in which they follow one another along the chain.

To determine the composition of a peptide, one hydrolyzes the peptide (in acidic solution, since alkali causes racemization) and determines the amount of each amino acid thus formed. One of the best ways of analyzing a mixture of amino acids is to separate the mixture into its components by chromatography—most commonly by ion-exchange chromatography, but sometimes, after conversion into the methyl esters (Why?), by gas chromatography.

From the weight of each amino acid obtained, one can calculate the number of moles of each amino acid, and in this way know the relative numbers of the various amino acid residues in the peptide. At this stage one knows what might be called the “empirical formula” of the peptide: the relative abundance of each amino acid residue in the peptide.

**Problem 30.19** An analysis of the hydrolysis products of *salmine*, a polypeptide from salmon sperm, gave the following results:

	g/100 g salmine
Isoleucine	1.28
Alanine	0.89
Valine	3.68
Glycine	3.01
Serine	7.29
Proline	6.90
Arginine	86.40

What are the relative numbers of the various amino acid residues in salmine; that is, what is its empirical formula? (Why do the weights add up to more than 100 g?)

To calculate the “molecular formula” of the peptide—the actual number of each kind of residue in each peptide molecule—one needs to know the molecular weight. Molecular weights can be determined by chemical methods and by various physical methods: behavior in an ultracentrifuge, electrophoresis (Sec. 30.14), chromatography with molecular sieves.

**Problem 30.20** The molecular weight of salmine (see the preceding problem) is about 10,000. What are the actual numbers of the various amino acid residues in salmine; that is, what is its molecular formula?

**Problem 30.21** A protein was found to contain 0.29% tryptophan (mol. wt. 204). What is the minimum molecular weight of the protein?

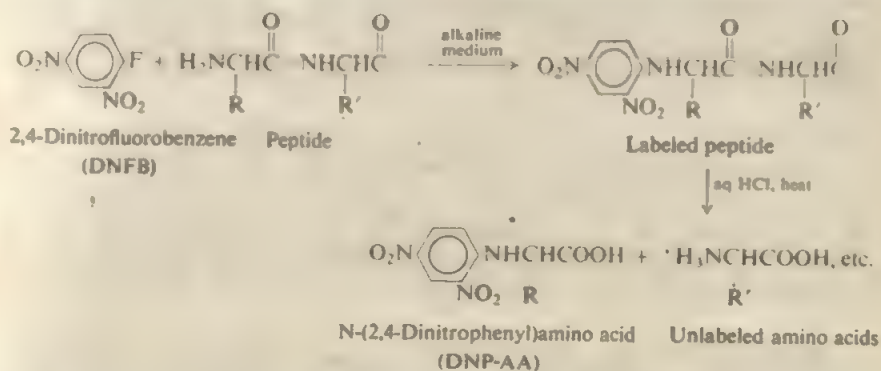
**Problem 30.22** (a) Horse hemoglobin contains 0.335% Fe. What is the minimum molecular weight of the protein? (b) Osmotic pressure measurements give a molecular weight of about 67,000. How many iron atoms are there per molecule?

There remains the most difficult job of all: to determine the sequence in which these amino acid residues are arranged along the peptide chain, that is, the structural formula of the peptide. This is accomplished by a combination of terminal residue analysis and partial hydrolysis.



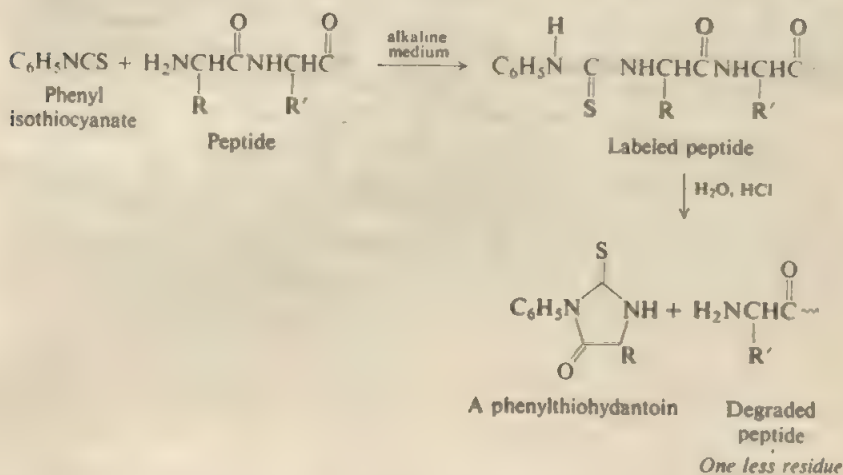
**Terminal residue analysis** is the identifying of the amino acid residues at the ends of the peptide chain. The procedures used depend upon the fact that the residues at the two ends are different from all the other residues and from each other: one, the *N-terminal residue*, contains a free  $\alpha$  amino group and the other, the *C-terminal residue*, contains a free carboxyl group  $\alpha$  to a peptide linkage.

A very successful method of identifying the N-terminal residue (introduced in 1945 by Frederick Sanger of Cambridge University) makes use of 2,4-dinitrofluorobenzene (DNFB), which undergoes nucleophilic substitution by the free amino group to give an N-dinitrophenyl (DNP) derivative. The substituted peptide



is hydrolyzed to the component amino acids, and the N-terminal residue, labeled by the 2,4-dinitrophenyl group, is separated and identified.

In its various modifications, however, the most widely used method of N-terminal residue analysis is one introduced in 1950 by Pehr Edman (Max Planck Institute of Biochemistry, Munich). This is based upon the reaction between an amino group and phenyl isothiocyanate to form a substituted thiourea (compare Sec. 20.24). Mild hydrolysis with hydrochloric acid selectively removes the N-terminal residue as the phenylthiohydantoin, which is then identified. The great



advantage of this method is that it leaves the rest of the peptide chain intact, so that the analysis can be repeated and the *new* terminal group of the shortened

peptide identified. In 1967, Edman reported that this analysis could be carried out *automatically* in his "protein sequenator," which is now available in commercial form; with all operations controlled by a computer and the results displayed continuously on a recorder, residue after residue is identified. In practice it is not feasible to extend this analysis beyond about 20 residues, since by that point there is interference from the accumulation of amino acids formed by (slow) hydrolysis during the acid treatment.

**Problem 30.23** Edman has also devised the highly sensitive "dansyl" method in which a peptide is treated with 5-dimethylaminonaphthalenesulfonyl chloride, followed by acidic hydrolysis. A derivative of the N-terminal residue is obtained which can be followed during its analysis by virtue of its characteristic fluorescence. What is the derivative? Why does it survive the acid treatment that cleaves the peptide bonds?

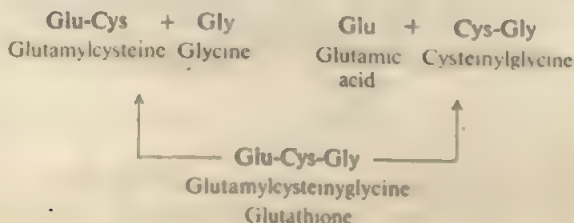
One successful method of determining the C-terminal residue has been enzymatic rather than chemical. The C-terminal residue is removed selectively by the enzyme *carboxypeptidase* (obtained from the pancreas), which cleaves only peptide linkages adjacent to *free alpha-carboxyl* groups in polypeptide chains. The analysis can be repeated on the shortened peptide and the *new* C-terminal residue identified, and so on.

**Problem 30.24** The use of carboxypeptidase has an inevitable disadvantage. What would you expect this to be, and how could you allow for it in interpreting the analytical results?

**Problem 30.25** There are a number of chemical methods for determining the C-terminal residue. For each of the following write equations to show what is happening and how it gives the identity of this residue: (a) treatment of the peptide with  $\text{LiBH}_4$ , followed by acidic hydrolysis and analysis; (b) treatment with hydrazine,  $\text{NH}_2\text{NH}_2$ , and analysis of the products. (*Hint*: What basic properties would you expect hydrazine to have?)

In practice it is not feasible to determine the sequence of all the residues in a long peptide chain by the stepwise removal of terminal residues. Instead, the chain is subjected to partial hydrolysis (acidic or enzymatic), and the fragments formed—dipeptides, tripeptides, and so on—are identified, with the aid of terminal residue analysis. When enough of these small fragments have been identified, it is possible to work out the sequence of residues in the entire chain.

To take an extremely simple example, there are six possible ways in which the three amino acids making up glutathione could be arranged; partial hydrolysis to the dipeptides glutamylcysteine (Glu-Cys) and cysteinylglycine (Cys-Gly) makes it clear that the cysteine is in the middle and that the sequence Glu-Cys-Gly is the correct one.



It was by the use of the approach just outlined that structures of such peptides as oxytocin and  $\alpha$ -corticotropin (see p. 1127) were worked out. A milestone in protein chemistry was the determination of the entire amino acid sequence in the insulin molecule by a Cambridge University group headed by Frederick Sanger, who received the Nobel Prize in 1958 for this work. (See Problem 11, p. 1145.) Since then the number and complexity of completely mapped proteins has grown rapidly: the four chains of hemoglobin, for example, each containing 140-odd amino acid residues, chymotrypsinogen, with a single chain 245 units long, an immunoglobulin (*gamma*-globulin) with two chains of 446 units each and two chains of 214 units each—a total of 1320 amino acid residues.

As usual, final confirmation of the structure assigned to a peptide lies in its synthesis by a method that must unambiguously give a compound of the assigned structure. This problem is discussed in the following section.

**Problem 30.26** Work out the sequence of amino acid residues in the following peptides:

- (a) Asp, Glu, His, Phe, Val (commas indicate unknown sequence) *gives*  
Val-Asp + Glu-His + Phe-Val + Asp-Glu.
- (b) Cys, Gly, His<sub>2</sub>, Leu<sub>2</sub>, Ser *gives* Cys-Gly-Ser + His-Leu-Cys + Ser-His-Leu.
- (c) Arg, Cys, Glu, Gly<sub>2</sub>, Leu, Phe<sub>2</sub>, Tyr, Val *gives*  
Val-Cys-Gly + Gly-Phe-Phe + Glu-Arg-Gly + Tyr-Leu-Val + Gly-Glu-Arg.

### 30.10 Synthesis of peptides

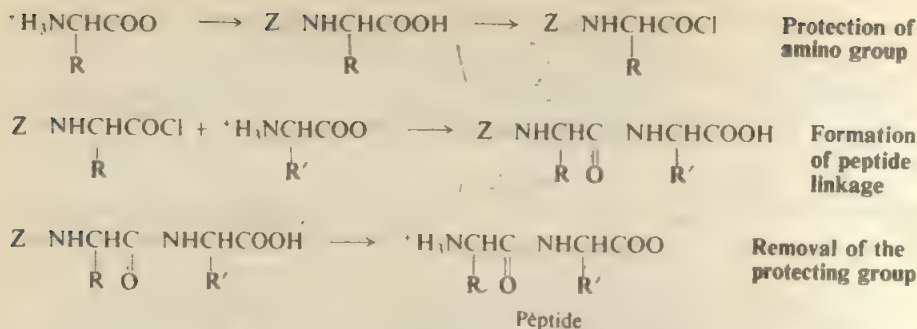
Methods have been developed by which a single amino acid (or sometimes a di- or tripeptide) can be polymerized to yield polypeptides of high molecular weight. These products have been extremely useful as model compounds: to show, for example, what kind of x-ray pattern or infrared spectrum is given by a peptide of known, comparatively simple structure.

Most work on peptide synthesis, however, has had as its aim the preparation of compounds identical with naturally occurring ones. For this purpose a method must permit the joining together of optically active amino acids to form chains of predetermined length and with a predetermined sequence of residues. Syntheses of this sort not only have confirmed some of the particular structures assigned to natural peptides, but also—and this is more fundamental—have proved that peptides and proteins are indeed polyamides.

It was Emil Fischer who first prepared peptides (ultimately one containing 18 amino acid residues) and thus offered support for his proposal that proteins contain the amide link. It is evidence of his extraordinary genius that Fischer played the same role in laying the foundations of peptide and protein chemistry as he did in carbohydrate chemistry.

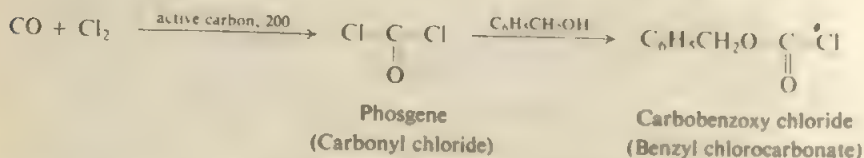
The basic problem of peptide synthesis is one of *protecting the amino group*. In bringing about interaction between the carboxyl group of one amino acid and the amino group of a different amino acid, one must prevent interaction between the carboxyl group and the amino group of the same amino acid. In preparing glycylalanine, for example, one must prevent the simultaneous formation of glycylglycine. Reaction can be forced to take place in the desired way by attaching to one amino acid a group that renders the  $-\text{NH}_2$  unreactive. There are many such protecting groups; the problem is to find one that can be removed later without destruction of any peptide linkages that may have been built up.



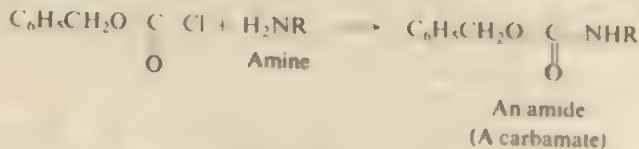


We could, for example, benzoylate glycine ( $\text{Z} = \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}$ ), convert this into the acid chloride, allow the acid chloride to react with alanine, and thus obtain benzoylglycylalanine. But if we attempted to remove the benzoyl group by hydrolysis, we would simultaneously hydrolyze the other amide linkage (the peptide linkage) and thus destroy the peptide we were trying to make.

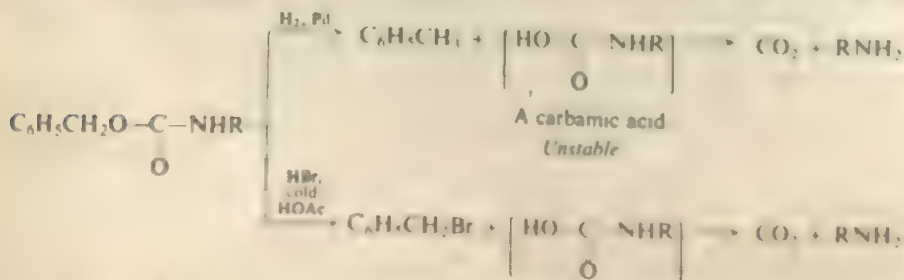
Of the numerous methods developed to protect an amino group, we shall look at just one: **acylation by benzyl chlorocarbonate**, also called **carbobenzoxy chloride**. (This method was introduced in 1932 by Max Bergmann and Leonidas Zervas of the University of Berlin, later of the Rockefeller Institute.) The reagent,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{OCOCl}$ , is both an ester and an acid chloride of carbonic acid,  $\text{HOCOOH}$ ; it is readily made by reaction between benzyl alcohol and phosgene (carbonyl chloride),  $\text{COCl}_2$ . (In what order should the alcohol and phosgene be mixed?)



Like any acid chloride, the reagent can convert an amine into an amide, in this case, a carbamate (Sec. 20.23):



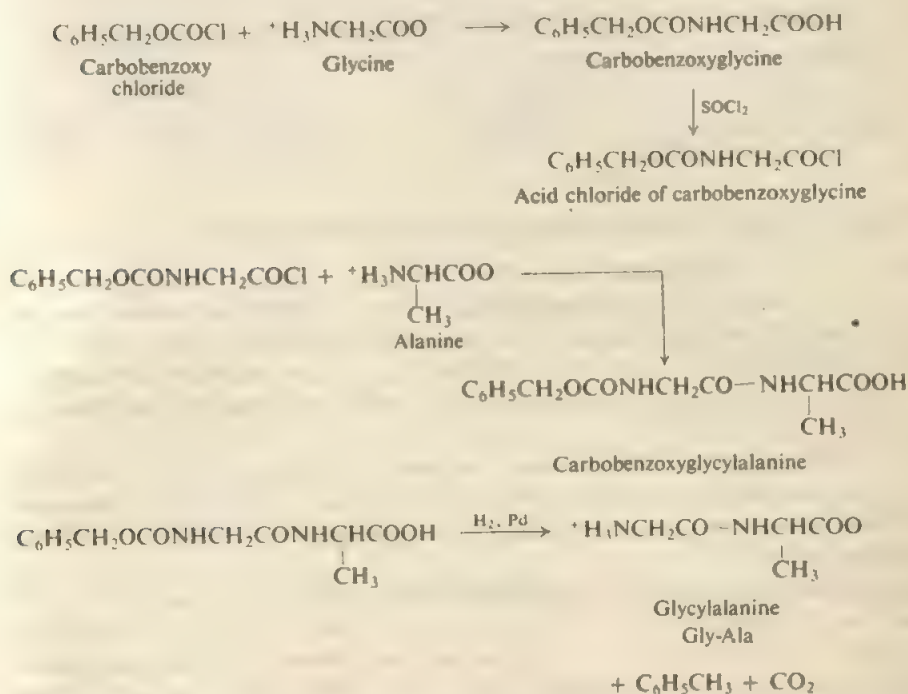
Such amides,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{OCONHR}$ , differ from most amides, however, in one feature that is significant for peptide synthesis. The carbobenzoxy group can be





cleaved by reagents that do not disturb peptide linkages: catalytic hydrogenation or hydrolysis with hydrogen bromide in cold acetic acid.

The carbobenzoxy method is illustrated by the synthesis of glycylalanine (Gly-Ala):



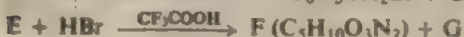
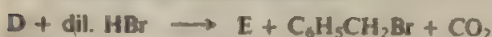
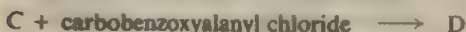
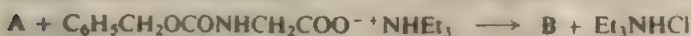
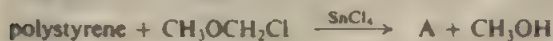
**Problem 30.27** (a) How could the preceding synthesis be extended to the tripeptide glycylalanylphenylalanine (Gly-Ala-Phe)?

(b) How could the carbobenzoxy method be used to prepare alanylglycine (Ala-Gly)?

Methods like this can be repeated over and over with the addition of a new unit each time. In this way the hormone oxytocin (p. 1127) was synthesized by Vincent du Vigneaud of Cornell Medical College, who received the Nobel Prize in 1955 for this and other work. In 1963, the total synthesis of the insulin molecule—with the 51 amino acid residues in the sequence mapped out by Sanger—was reported.

But the bottle-neck in such syntheses is the need to isolate and purify the new peptide made in each cycle; the time required is enormous, and the yield of product steadily dwindles. A major breakthrough came with the development of *solid-phase* peptide synthesis by R. Bruce Merrifield at Rockefeller University. Synthesis is carried out with the growing peptide *attached* chemically to polystyrene beads, as each new unit is added, the reagents and by-products are simply washed away, leaving the growing peptide behind, ready for another cycle. The method was automated, and in 1969 Merrifield announced that, using his "protein-making machine," he had synthesized—in six weeks—the enzyme ribonuclease, made up of 124 amino acid residues.

**Problem 30.28** Give formulas for compounds A–G, and tell what is happening in each reaction.



### 30.11 Proteins. Classification and function. Denaturation

Proteins are divided into two broad classes: **fibrous proteins**, which are insoluble in water, and **globular proteins**, which are soluble in water or aqueous solutions of acids, bases, or salts. (Because of the large size of protein molecules, these solutions are colloidal.) The difference in solubility between the two classes is related to a difference in molecular shape, which is indicated in a rough way by their names.

Molecules of fibrous proteins are long and thread-like, and tend to lie side by side to form fibers; in some cases they are held together at many points by hydrogen bonds. As a result, the intermolecular forces that must be overcome by a solvent are very strong.

Molecules of globular proteins are folded into compact units that often approach spheroidal shapes. The folding takes place in such a way that the lipophilic parts are turned inward, toward each other, and away from water; hydrophilic parts—charged groups, for example—tend to stud the surface where they are near water. Hydrogen bonding is chiefly intramolecular. Areas of contact between molecules are small, and intermolecular forces are comparatively weak.

Molecular and intermolecular structure determines not only the solubility of a protein but also the general kind of function it performs.

Fibrous proteins serve as the chief structural materials of animal tissues, a function to which their insolubility and fiber-forming tendency suit them. They make up: *keratin*, in skin, hair, nails, wool, horn, and feathers; *collagen*, in tendons; *myosin*, in muscle; *fibroin*, in silk.

Globular proteins serve a variety of functions related to the maintenance and regulation of the life process, functions that require mobility and hence solubility. They make up: all enzymes; many hormones, as, for example, *insulin* (from the pancreas), *thyroglobulin* (from the thyroid gland), *ACTH* (from the pituitary gland); antibodies, responsible for allergies and for defense against foreign organisms; *albumin* in eggs; *hemoglobin*, which transports oxygen from the lungs to the tissues; *fibrinogen*, which is converted into the insoluble, fibrous protein *fibrin*, and thus causes the clotting of blood.

Within the two broad classes, proteins are subdivided on the basis of physical properties, especially solubility. For example, albumins (soluble in water, coagulated by heat), globulins (insoluble in water, soluble in dilute salt solutions), etc.

Irreversible precipitation of proteins, called **denaturation**, is caused by heat, strong acids or bases, or various other agents. Coagulation of egg white by heat, for example, is denaturation of the protein egg albumin. The extreme ease with which many proteins are denatured makes their study difficult. Denaturation causes a

fundamental change in a protein, in particular destroying any physiological activity. (Denaturation appears to involve changes in the secondary structure of proteins, Sec. 30.16.)

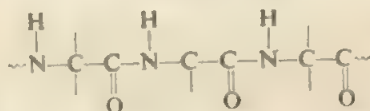
Only one other class of compounds, the *nucleic acids* (Sec. 31.8), shows the phenomenon of denaturation. Although closely related to the proteins, polypeptides do not undergo denaturation, presumably because their molecules are smaller and less complex.

### 30.12 Structure of proteins

We can look at the structure of proteins on a number of levels. At the lowest level, there is the *primary* structure: the way in which the atoms of protein molecules are joined to one another by covalent bonds to form chains. Next, there is the *secondary* structure: the way in which these chains are arranged in space to form coils, sheets, or compact spheroids, with hydrogen bonds holding together different chains or different parts of the same chain. Even higher levels of structure are gradually becoming understood: the weaving together of coiled chains to form ropes, for example, or the clumping together of individual molecules to form larger aggregates. Let us look first at the primary structure of proteins.

### 30.13 Peptide chain

Proteins are made up of peptide chains, that is, of amino acid residues joined by amide linkages. They differ from polypeptides in having higher molecular

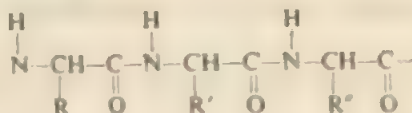


weights (by convention over 10,000) and more complex structures.

The peptide structure of proteins is indicated by many lines of evidence: hydrolysis of proteins by acids, bases, or enzymes yields peptides and finally amino acids; there are bands in their infrared spectra characteristic of the amide group; secondary structures based on the peptide linkage can be devised that exactly fit x-ray data.

### 30.14 Side chains. Isoelectric point. Electrophoresis

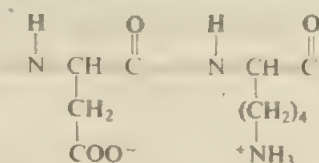
To every third atom of the peptide chain is attached a side chain. Its structure depends upon the particular amino acid residue involved:  $\text{H}$  for glycine,  $-\text{CH}_3$  for alanine,  $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$  for valine,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  for phenylalanine, etc.



Some of these side chains contain basic groups —  $\text{NH}_2$  in lysine, or the imidazole ring in histidine. Some side chains contain acidic groups.  $-\text{COOH}$  in



aspartic acid or glutamic acid. Because of these acidic and basic side chains, there are positively and negatively charged groups along the peptide chain. The behavior



of a protein in an electric field is determined by the relative numbers of these positive and negative charges, which in turn are affected by the acidity of the solution. At the isoelectric point, the positive and negative charges are exactly balanced and the protein shows no net migration; as with amino acids, solubility is usually at a minimum here. On the acid side of the isoelectric point, positive charges exceed negative charges and the protein moves to the cathode; on the basic side of the isoelectric point, negative charges exceed positive charges and the protein moves to the anode.

While all proteins contain the peptide backbone, each protein has its own characteristic sequence of side chains, which gives it its characteristic properties. Different proteins have different proportions of acidic and basic side chains, and hence have different isoelectric points. In a solution of a particular hydrogen ion concentration, some proteins move toward a cathode and others toward an anode; depending upon the size of the charge as well as upon molecular size and shape, different proteins move at different speeds. This difference in behavior in an electric field is the basis of one method of separation and analysis of protein mixtures: **electrophoresis**.

Side chains affect the properties of proteins not only by their acidity or basicity, but also by their other chemical properties and even by their sizes and shapes. Hydroxyl and sulfhydryl (—SH) groups can form esters; amino nitrogen is not only basic but nucleophilic. It seems likely that the "permanent" waving of hair depends upon changes in disulfide (—S—S—) cross-linkages provided by cysteine side chains; that much of the difference between silk and wool is related to the small side chains, —H and —CH<sub>3</sub>, that predominate in silk fibroin, that the toughness of tendon is due to the flatness of the pyrrolidine ring and the ability of the —OH group of hydroxyproline to form hydrogen bonds. Replacement of *one* glutamic acid side chain in the hemoglobin molecule (300 side chains in all) by a valine unit is the cause of the fatal sickle-cell anemia.

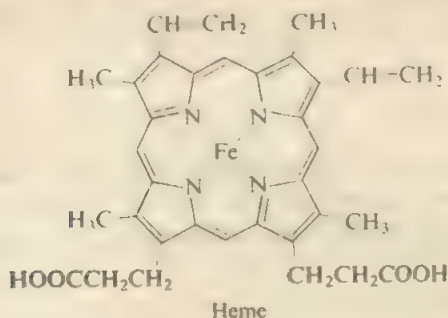
The sequence of amino acids in hemoglobin has been used to study evolution, in the science called *chemical paleogenetics*. In the *beta*-chain of hemoglobin, for example, the horse differs from man at 26 of the 146 sites, a pig, at 10 sites, and the gorilla at just *one* site. It has been estimated that, on the average, it takes roughly ten million years for one successful amino acid substitution to occur—that is, a substitution that improves the chances of survival (Such a change is due to a change in the base sequence in a molecule of nucleic acid, Sec. 31.9.)

### 30.15 Conjugated proteins. Prosthetic groups. Coenzymes

Some protein molecules contain a non-peptide portion called a **prosthetic group**; such proteins are called *conjugated proteins*. The prosthetic group is intimately concerned with the specific biological action of the protein.



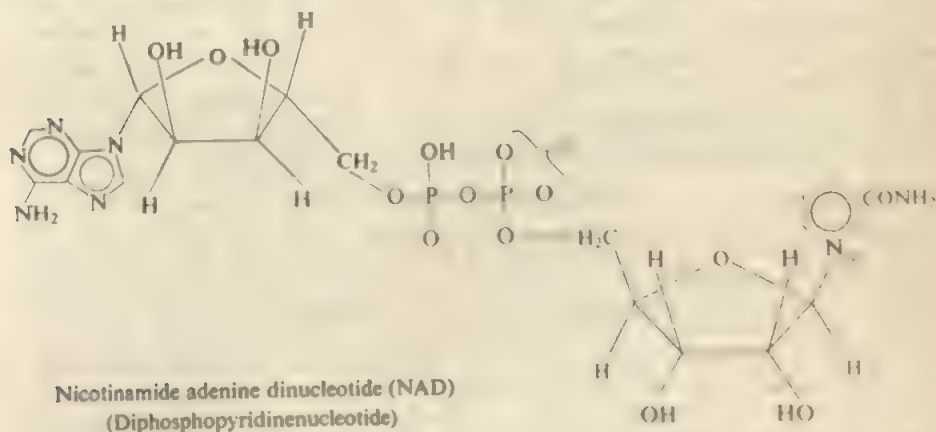
The prosthetic group of hemoglobin, for example, is *heme*. As we see, heme



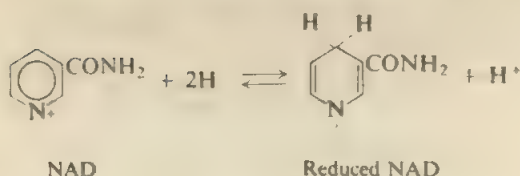
contains iron bound to the pyrrole system known as *porphin* (compare with the structure of chlorophyll, p. 1269). It is the formation of a reversible oxygen-heme complex that enables hemoglobin to carry oxygen from the lungs to the tissues. Carbon monoxide forms a similar, but more stable, complex; it thus ties up hemoglobin, prevents oxygen transport, and causes death. Heme is held to the peptide portion (*globin*) of the protein by a combination of forces: coordination of iron by histidine nitrogen of the protein, hydrogen bonding, and van der Waals forces between hydrophobic parts of the two molecules.

Many enzymes require *cofactors* if they are to exert their catalytic effects: metal ions, for example. The peptide portion of such an enzyme—the protein without the coenzyme—is called an **apoenzyme**. An organic cofactor is called a **coenzyme** and, if it is covalently bonded to the apoenzyme, it too is a prosthetic group.

The coenzyme *nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide* (NAD), for example, is associated with a number of dehydrogenation enzymes. (We have already seen it at work in the enzymatic oxidation of ethanol, Sec. 11.10.) This coenzyme we see, is



made up of two molecules of D-ribose linked as phosphate esters, the fused heterocyclic system known as *adenine*, and nicotinamide in the form of a quaternary ammonium salt. In some systems one encounters *nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate* (NADP), in which the —OH on C 2 of the left-hand ribose unit of NAD has been phosphorylated. The characteristic biological function of these dehydrogenation enzymes (see, for example, Sec. 31.6) involves conversion of the nicotinamide portion of NAD or NADP into the dihydro structure.



Like nicotinamide, many molecules making up coenzymes are **vitamins**, that is, substances that must be supplied in the diet to permit proper growth or maintenance of structure. Undoubtedly it is for their coenzyme activity that these substances are needed.

### 30.16 Secondary structure of proteins

It seems clear that proteins are made up of polypeptide chains. How are these chains arranged in space and in relationship to each other? Are they stretched out side by side, looped and coiled about one another, or folded into independent spheroids?

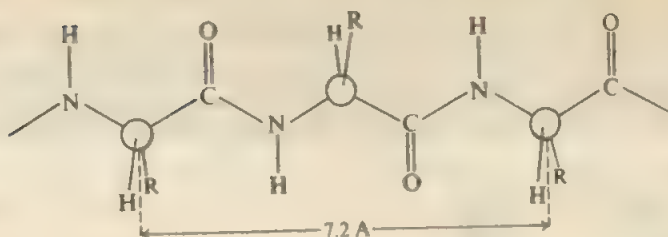
Much of our understanding of the secondary structure of proteins is the result of x-ray analysis. For many proteins the x-ray diffraction pattern indicates a regular repetition of certain structural units. For example, there are *repeat distances* of 7.0 Å in silk fibroin, and of 1.5 Å and 5.1 Å in  $\alpha$ -keratin of unstretched wool.

The problem is to devise structures that account for the characteristic x-ray diffraction patterns, and are at the same time consistent with what is known about the primary structure: bond lengths and bond angles, planarity of the amide group, similarity of configuration about chiral centers (all L-family), size and sequence of side chains. Of key importance in this problem has been recognition of the stabilizing effect of hydrogen bonds (5–10 kcal per mole per hydrogen bond), and the principle that the most stable structure is one that permits formation of the maximum number of hydrogen bonds. On the basis of the study of simpler compounds, it has been further assumed that the N—H ··· O bond is very nearly linear, hydrogen lying on, or within 20° of, the line between nitrogen and oxygen. In all this work the simultaneous study of simpler, synthetic polypeptides containing only a single kind of amino acid residue has been of great help.

The progress made on a problem of this size and difficulty has necessarily been the work of many people. Among them is Linus Pauling, of the California Institute of Technology, who received the Nobel Prize in 1954. In 1951 Pauling wrote "Fourteen years ago Professor Robert B. Corey and I, after we had made a vigorous but unsuccessful attack on the problem of formulating satisfactory configurations of polypeptide chains in proteins, decided to attempt to solve the problem by an indirect method—the method of investigating with great thoroughness crystals of amino acids, simple peptides, and related substances, in order to obtain completely reliable and detailed information about the structural characteristics of substances of this sort, and ultimately to permit the confident prediction of precisely described configurations of polypeptide chains in proteins" (Record Chem. Prog., 12, 156–7 (1951)). This work on simple substances, carried on for more than 14 years, gave information about the geometry of the amide group that eventually led Pauling and his co-workers to propose what may well be the most important secondary structure in protein chemistry: the  $\alpha$ -helix.

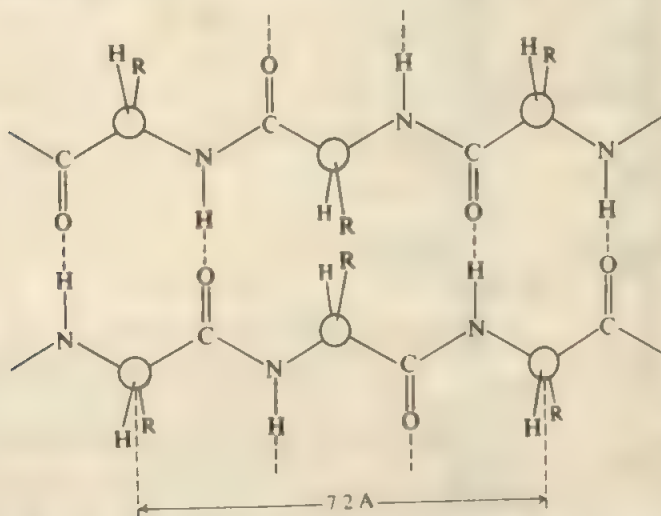
Let us look at some of the secondary structures that have been proposed.

As a point of departure, it is convenient to consider a structure (perhaps hypothetical) in which peptide chains are fully extended to form flat zig-zags.



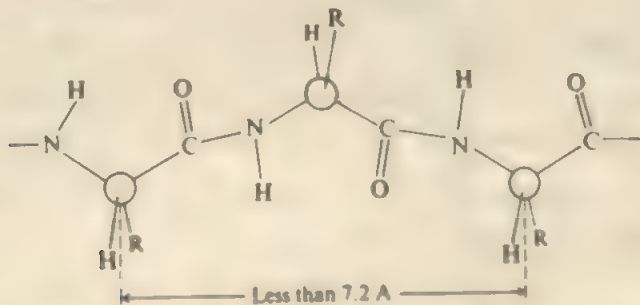
Extended peptide chain

These chains lie side by side to form a *flat sheet*. Each chain is held by hydrogen bonds to the two neighboring chains (Fig. 30.2). This structure has a repeat distance of 7.2 Å, the distance between *alternate* amino acid residues. (Notice that alternate side chains lie on the same side of the sheet.) However, crowding between side chains makes this idealized flat structure impossible, except perhaps for synthetic polyglycine.



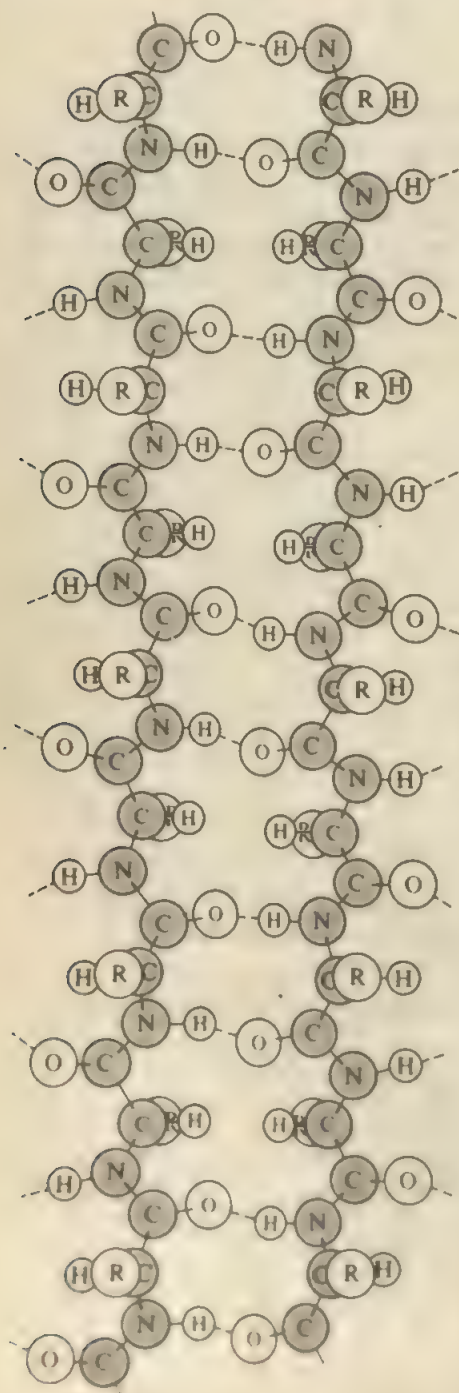
**Figure 30.2.** Hypothetical flat sheet structure for a protein. Chains fully extended; adjacent chains head in opposite directions; hydrogen bonding between adjacent chains. Side chains (R) are crowded.

Room can be made for small or medium-sized side chains by a slight contraction of the peptide chains:



Contracted peptide chain

The chains still lie side by side, held to each other by hydrogen bonds. The contraction results in a *pleated sheet*, with a somewhat shorter distance between alternate amino acid residues (see Fig. 30.3). Such a structure, called the **beta** arrangement, has been proposed for silk fibroin, which has a repeat distance of



**Figure 30.3.** Pleated sheet structure (*beta* arrangement) proposed by Pauling for silk fibroin. Chains contracted to make room for small side chains. Adjacent chains head in opposite directions; hydrogen bonding between adjacent chains.



7.0 Å and most closely approaches the fully extended, flat-sheet structure. It is significant that, although 15 kinds of amino acid residue are found in silk fibroin, 46% of the residues are glycine, which has no side chain, and another 38% are alanine and serine with the small side chains  $-\text{CH}_3$  and  $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ .

When the side chains are quite large, they are best accommodated by a quite different kind of structure. Each chain is coiled to form a *helix* (like a spiral



A helix  
(right-handed)

staircase). Hydrogen bonding occurs between different parts of the *same* chain, and holds the helix together. For  $\alpha$ -keratin (unstretched wool, hair, horn, nails) Pauling has proposed a helix in which there are 3.6 amino acid residues per turn (Fig. 30.4). Models show that this 3.6-helix provides room for the side chains and allows all possible hydrogen bonds to form. It accounts for the repeat distance of 1.5 Å, which is the distance between amino acid residues measured along the axis of the helix. To fit into this helix, all the amino acid residues must be of the same configuration, as, of course, they are; furthermore, their L-configuration requires the helix to be *right-handed*, as shown. It is becoming increasingly clear that the **alpha helix**, as it is called, is of fundamental importance in the chemistry of proteins.

(To account for the second repeat distance of 5.1 Å for  $\alpha$ -keratin, we must go to what is properly the *tertiary structure*. Pauling has suggested that each helix can itself be coiled into a superhelix which has one turn for every 35 turns of the *alpha* helix. Six of these superhelixes are woven about a seventh, straight helix to form a seven-strand cable.)

When wool is stretched,  $\alpha$ -keratin is converted into  $\beta$ -keratin, with a change in the x-ray diffraction pattern. It is believed that the helixes are uncoiled and the chains stretched side by side to give a sheet structure of the *beta* type. The hydrogen bonds within the helical chain are broken, and are replaced by hydrogen bonds between adjacent chains. (Compare the effect (Sec. 9.37) of drawing a synthetic fiber—nylon, for example, also a polyamide.) Because of the larger side chains, the

peptide chains are less extended (repeat distance 6.4 Å) than in silk fibroin (repeat distance 7.0 Å).

Besides the x-ray diffraction patterns characteristic of the *alpha*- and *beta*-type proteins, there is a third kind: that of *collagen*, the protein of tendon and skin. On

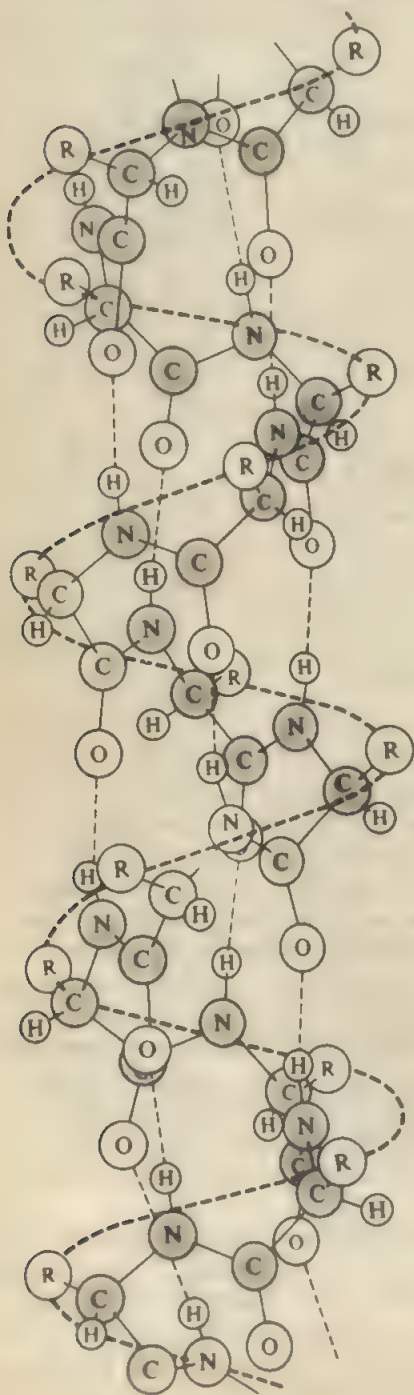
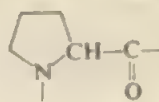
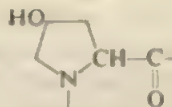


Figure 30.4. Alpha helix structure proposed by Pauling for  $\alpha$ -keratin. Makes room for large side chains. Right-handed helix with 3.6 residues per turn; hydrogen bonding within a chain.

the primary level, collagen is characterized by a high proportion of proline and hydroxyproline residues, and by frequent repetitions of the sequence Gly-Pro-Hyp. The pyrrolidine ring of proline and hydroxyproline can affect the secondary



Proline residue



Hydroxyproline residue

structure in several ways. The amido nitrogen carries no hydrogen for hydrogen bonding. The flatness of the five-membered ring, in conjunction with the flatness of the amide group, prevents extension of the peptide chain as in the *beta* arrangement, and interferes with the compact coiling of the *alpha* helix.

The structure of collagen combines the helical nature of the *alpha*-type proteins with the inter-chain hydrogen bonding of the *beta*-type proteins. Three peptide chains—each in the form of a left-handed helix—are twisted about one another to form a three-strand right-handed superhelix. A small glycine residue at every third position of each chain makes room for the bulky pyrrolidine rings on the other two chains. The three chains are held strongly to each other by hydrogen bonding between glycine residues and between the —OH groups of hydroxyproline.

When collagen is boiled with water, it is converted into the familiar water-soluble protein *gelatin*; when cooled, the solution does not revert to collagen but sets to a gel. Gelatin has a molecular weight one-third that of collagen. Evidently the treatment separates the strands of the helix, breaking inter-chain hydrogen bonds and replacing them with hydrogen bonds to water molecules.

Turning from the insoluble, fibrous proteins to the soluble, globular proteins (e.g., hemoglobin, insulin, *gamma*-globulin, egg albumin), we find that the matter of secondary structure can be even more complex. Evidence is accumulating that here, too, the *alpha* helix often plays a key role. These long peptide chains are not uniform: certain segments may be coiled into helices or folded into sheets; other segments are looped and coiled into complicated, irregular arrangements. Look, for example, at  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsin in Fig. 31.1 (p. 1148).

This looping and coiling may appear to be random, but it definitely is *not*. The sequence of amino acids is determined genetically (Sec. 31.8) but, once formed, the chain *naturally* falls into the arrangement that is *most stable* for that particular sequence.

We find all our kinds of “intermolecular” forces at work here—but acting between different parts of the same molecule: van der Waals forces, hydrogen bonds, interionic attraction (or repulsion) between charged groups. There is chemical cross-linking by disulfide bonds. The characteristic feature of these globular proteins is that lipophilic parts are turned inward, toward each other and away from water—like the lipophilic tails in a soap micelle.

In their physiological functions, proteins are highly specific. We have encountered, for example, an enzyme that will cleave  $\alpha$ -glucosides but not  $\beta$ -glucosides, and an enzyme that will cleave only C-terminal amino acid residues in polypeptides. In Secs. 11.10–11.11 we saw how the enzyme alcohol dehydrogenase discriminates between enantiotopic hydrogens of ethanol and between enantiotopic faces of acetaldehyde, and (Problem 17, p. 528) how a different oxidation–reduction enzyme also discriminates, but *in the opposite manner*.



It seems clear that the biological activity of a protein depends not only upon its prosthetic group (if any) and its particular amino acid sequence, but also upon its molecular shape. As Emil Fischer said in 1894: "... enzyme and glucoside must fit together like a lock and key. . . ." In Sec. 31.2 we shall see how one enzyme is believed to exert its effect, and how that effect depends, in a very definite and specific way, on the shape of the enzyme molecule.

Denaturation uncoils the protein, destroys the characteristic shape, and with it the characteristic biological activity.

In 1962, M. F. Perutz and J. C. Kendrew of Cambridge University were awarded the Nobel Prize in chemistry for the elucidation of the structure of hemoglobin and the closely related oxygen-storing molecule, myoglobin. Using x-ray analysis, and knowing the amino acid sequence (p. 1130), they determined the shape—in three dimensions—of these enormously complicated molecules: precisely for myoglobin, and very nearly so for hemoglobin. They can say, for example, that the molecule is coiled in an *alpha* helix for sixteen residues from the N-terminal unit, and then turns through a right angle. They can even say *why*: at the corner there is an aspartic acid residue; its carboxyl group interferes with the hydrogen bonding required to continue the helix, and the chain changes its course. The four folded chains of hemoglobin fit together to make a spheroidal molecule,  $64 \text{ \AA} \times 55 \text{ \AA} \times 50 \text{ \AA}$ . Four flat heme groups, each of which contains an iron atom that can bind an oxygen molecule, fit into separate pockets in this sphere. When oxygen is being carried, the chains move to make the pockets slightly smaller; Perutz has described hemoglobin as "a breathing molecule." These pockets are lined with the hydrocarbon portions of the amino acids; such a non-polar environment prevents electron transfer between oxygen and ferrous iron, and permits the complexing necessary for oxygen transport.

## PROBLEMS

1. Outline all steps in the synthesis of phenylalanine from toluene and any needed aliphatic and inorganic reagents by each of the following methods.

- |                             |                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (a) direct ammonolysis      | (d) phthalimidomalonic ester method |
| (b) Gabriel synthesis       | (e) Strecker synthesis              |
| (c) malonic ester synthesis | (f) reductive amination             |

2. (a) Give structures of all intermediates in the following synthesis of proline:

potassium phthalimide + bromomalonic ester  $\longrightarrow$  A

A +  $\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$   $\xrightarrow{\text{NaOC}_2\text{H}_5}$  B ( $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{20}\text{O}_6\text{NBr}$ )

B + potassium acetate  $\longrightarrow$  C ( $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{23}\text{O}_8\text{N}$ )

C + NaOH, heat, then  $\text{H}^+$ , heat  $\longrightarrow$  D ( $\text{C}_5\text{H}_9\text{O}_2\text{N}$ )

D + HCl  $\longrightarrow$  [E ( $\text{C}_5\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_2\text{NCl}$ )]  $\longrightarrow$  proline

(b) Outline a possible synthesis of lysine by the phthalimidomalonic ester method

3. Using the behavior of hydroxy acids (Sec. 20.15) as a pattern, predict structures for the products obtained when the following amino acids are heated

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) the $\alpha$ -amino acid, glycine  | $\longrightarrow$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{O}_2\text{N}_2$ (diketopiperazine) |
| (b) the $\beta$ -amino acid, $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$             | $\longrightarrow$ $\text{C}_4\text{H}_8\text{O}_2$                              |
| (c) the $\gamma$ -amino acid, $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ | $\longrightarrow$ $\text{C}_5\text{H}_9\text{ON}$ (a lactam)                    |
| (d) the $\delta$ -amino acid, $\text{H}_2\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ | $\longrightarrow$ $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{ON}$ (a lactam)                 |

4. (a) Draw the two possible dipolar structures for lysine. Justify the choice of structure given in Table 30.1. (b) Answer (a) for aspartic acid. (c) Answer (a) for arginine. (Hint: See Problem 20.24, p. 841.) (d) Answer (a) for tyrosine.



5. *Betaine*,  $C_5H_{11}O_2N$ , occurs in beet sugar molasses. It is a water-soluble solid that melts with decomposition at  $300^\circ$ . It is unaffected by base but reacts with hydrochloric acid to form a crystalline product,  $C_5H_{12}O_2NCl$ . It can be made in either of two ways: treatment of glycine with methyl iodide, or treatment of chloroacetic acid with trimethylamine.

Draw a structure for betaine that accounts for its properties.

6. Addition of ethanol or other organic solvents to an aqueous "solution" of a globular protein brings about denaturation. Such treatment also tends to break up micelles of, say soap (Sec. 27.3). What basic process is at work in both cases?

7. An amino group can be protected by acylation with phthalic anhydride to form an N-substituted phthalimide. The protecting group can be removed by treatment with hydrazine,  $H_2N-NH_2$  without disturbing any peptide linkages. Write equations to show how this procedure (exploited by John C. Sheehan of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology) could be applied to the synthesis of glycylalanine (Gly-Ala) and alanylglycine (Ala-Gly).

8. An elemental analysis of *Cytochrome c*, an enzyme involved in oxidation-reduction processes, gave 0.43% Fe and 1.48% S. What is the minimum molecular weight of the enzyme? What is the minimum number of iron atoms per molecule? Of sulfur atoms?

9. A protein,  $\beta$ -lactoglobulin, from cheese whey, has a molecular weight of  $42020 \pm 105$ . When a 100-mg sample was hydrolyzed by acid and the mixture was made alkaline, 1.31 mg of ammonia was evolved. (a) Where did the ammonia come from, and approximately how many such groups are there in the protein?

Complete hydrolysis of a 100-mg sample of the protein used up approximately 17 mg of water. (b) How many amide linkages per molecule were cleaved?

(c) Combining the results of (a) and (b), and adding the fact that there are four N-terminal groups (four peptide chains in the molecule), how many amino acid residues are there in the protein?

10. The complete structure of *Gramicidin S*, a polypeptide with antibiotic properties, has been worked out as follows:

(a) Analysis of the hydrolysis products gave an empirical formula of Leu, Orn, Phe, Pro, Val. (*Ornithine*, Orn, is a rare amino acid of formula  $^+H_3NCH_2CH_2CH_2CH(NH_2)COO^-$ ) It is interesting that the phenylalanine has the unusual D-configuration.

Measurement of the molecular weight gave an approximate value of 1300. On this basis, what is the molecular formula of *Gramicidin S*?

(b) Analysis for the C-terminal residue was negative: analysis for the N-terminal residue using DNFB yielded only DNP  $NHCH_2CH_2CH_2CH(NH_3^+)COO^-$ . What structural feature must the peptide chain possess?

(c) Partial hydrolysis of *Gramicidin S* gave the following di- and tripeptides:

Leu-Phe	Phe-Pro	Phe-Pro-Val	Val-Orn-Leu
Orn-Leu	Val-Orn	Pro-Val-Orn	

What is the structure of *Gramicidin S*?

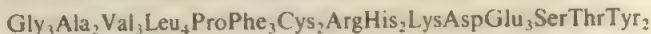
11. The structure of beef insulin was determined by Sanger (see Sec. 30.9) on the basis of the following information. Work out for yourself the sequence of amino acid residues in the protein.

Beef insulin appears to have a molecular weight of about 6000 and to consist of two polypeptide chains linked by disulfide bridges of cystine residues. The chains can be separated by oxidation, which changes any Cys-Cys or Cys residues to sulfonic acids ( $CySO_3H$ ).

One chain, A, of 21 amino acid residues, is acidic and has the empirical formula



The other chain, B, of 30 amino acid residues, is basic and has the empirical formula



(Chain A has four simple side-chain amide groups, and chain B has two, but these will be ignored for the time being.)

Treatment of chain B with 2,4-dinitrofluorobenzene (DNFB) followed by hydrolysis gave DNP-Phe and DNP-Phe-Val; chain B lost alanine (Ala) when treated with carboxypeptidase.

Acidic hydrolysis of chain B gave the following tripeptides:

Glu-His-Leu	Leu-Val-Cys	Tyr-Leu-Val
Gly-Glu-Arg	Leu-Val-Glu	Val-Asp-Glu
His-Leu-Cys	Phe-Val-Asp	Val-Cys-Gly
Leu-Cys-Gly	Pro-Lys-Ala	Val-Glu-Ala
	Ser-His-Leu	

Many dipeptides were isolated and identified; two important ones were Arg-Gly and Thr-Pro.

(a) At this point construct as much of the B chain as the data will allow.

Among the numerous tetrapeptides and pentapeptides from chain B were found:

His-Leu-Val-Glu	Tyr-Leu-Val-Cys
Ser-His-Leu-Val	Phe-Val-Asp-Glu-His

(b) How much more of the chain can you reconstruct now? What amino acid residues are still missing?

Enzymatic hydrolysis of chain B gave the necessary final pieces:

Val-Glu-Ala-Leu	His-Leu-Cys-Gly-Ser-His-Leu
Tyr-Thr-Pro-Lys-Ala	Tyr-Leu-Val-Cys-Gly-Glu-Arg-Gly-Phe-Phe

(c) What is the complete sequence in the B chain of beef insulin?

Treatment of chain A with DNFB followed by hydrolysis gave DNP-Gly, the C-terminal group was shown to be aspartic acid (Asp).

Acidic hydrolysis of chain A gave the following tripeptides:

Cys-Cys-Ala	Glu-Leu-Glu
Glu-Asp-Tyr	Leu-Tyr-Glu
Glu-Cys-Cys	Ser-Leu-Tyr
Glu-Glu-Cys	Ser-Val-Cys

Among other peptides isolated from acidic hydrolysis of chain A were:

Cys-Asp	Tyr-Cys	Gly-Ile-Val-Glu-Glu
---------	---------	---------------------

(d) Construct as much of chain A as the data will allow. Are there any amino acid residues missing?

Up to this point it is possible to arrive at the sequences of four parts of chain A, but it is still uncertain which of the two center fragments, Ser-Val-Cys or Ser-Leu-Tyr, etc., comes first. This was settled by digestion of chain A with pepsin, which gave a peptide that contained no aspartic acid (Asp) or tyrosine (Tyr). Hydrolysis of this peptide gave Ser-Val-Cys and Ser-Leu.

(e) Now what is the complete structure of chain A of beef insulin?

In insulin the cysteine units (Cys) are involved in cystine disulfide links (Cys-Cys). Residue 7 of chain A (numbering from the N-terminal residue) is linked to residue 7 of chain B, residue 20 of chain A to residue 19 of chain B, and there is a link between residues 6 and 11 of chain A.

There are amide groups on residues 5, 15, 18, and 21 of chain A, and on residues 3 and 4 of chain B.

(f) Draw a structure of the complete insulin molecule. (Note: The disulfide loop in chain A is a 20-atom, pentapeptide ring, of the same size as the one in oxytocin.)

In the analysis for the N-terminal group in chain B of insulin, equal amounts of two different DNP derivatives of single amino acids actually were found. One was DNP-Phe; what could the other have been?

(g) What would have been obtained if that second amino acid had been N-terminal?

# Biochemical Processes

## *Molecular Biology*

---

### 31.1 Biochemistry, molecular biology, and organic chemistry

In the past four chapters, we have learned something about fats, carbohydrates, and proteins: their structures and how these are determined, and the kind of reactions they undergo in the test tube. These, we said, are biomolecules: they are participants in the chemical process we call life. But just what do they *do*? What reactions do they undergo, not in the test tube, but in a living organism?

Even a vastly simplified answer to that question would fill—and does—a book as big as this one. Having come this far, though, we cannot help being curious. And so, in this chapter, we shall take a brief glance at the answer—or, rather, at the kind of thing the answer entails.

We shall look at just a few examples of biochemical processes: how one enzyme—of the thousands in our bodies—may work; the simple chemical transformation that is the basis of vision, what happens in one of the dozens of reactions by which carbohydrates are oxidized to furnish energy; how one kind of chemical compound—fatty acids—is synthesized. Finally, we shall learn a little about another class of biomolecules, the nucleic acids, and how they are involved in the most fascinating biochemical process of all—heredity.

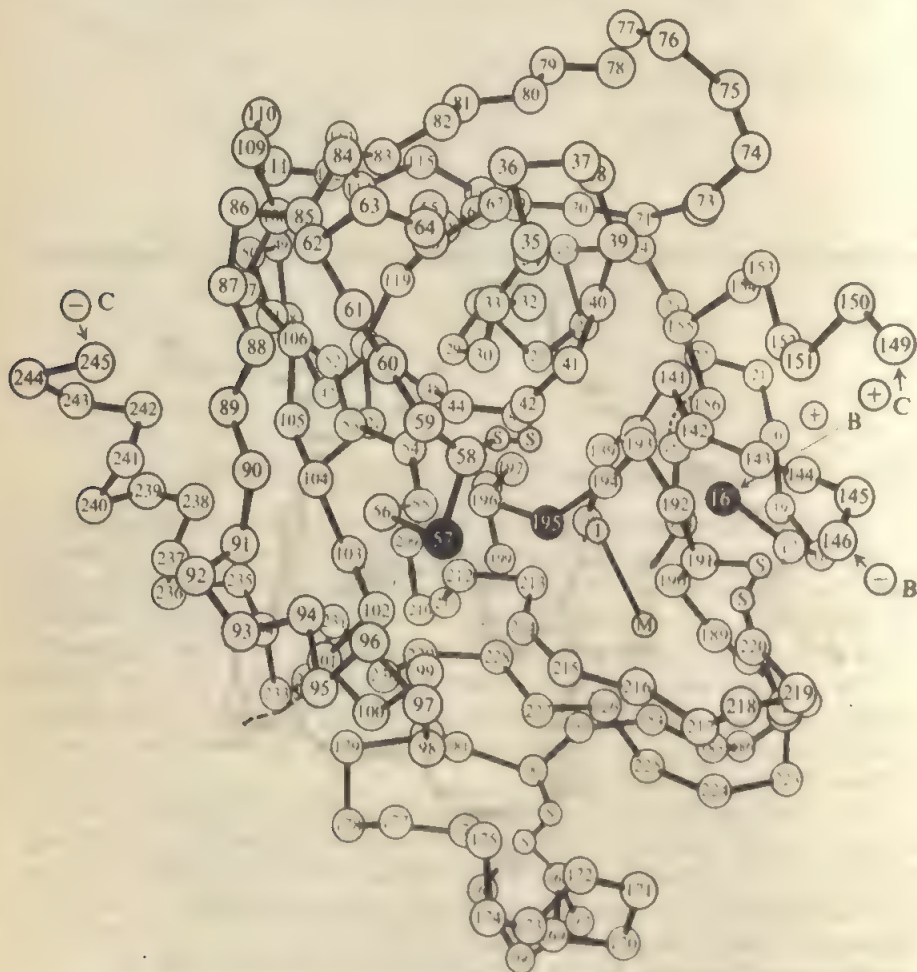
The study of nucleic acids has become known as “molecular biology.” Actually, of course, all of these processes are a part of molecular biology—biology on the molecular level—and they are, in the final analysis, organic chemistry. And it is as organic chemistry that we shall treat them. We shall see how all these vital processes—even the mysterious powers of enzymes—come down to a matter of molecular structure as we know it: to molecular size and shape; to intermolecular and intramolecular forces; to the chemistry of functional groups; to acidity and basicity, oxidation and reduction; to energy changes and rate of reaction.

Since catalysis by enzymes is fundamental to everything else, let us begin there.



### 31.2 Mechanism of enzyme action. Chymotrypsin

Enzymes, we have said, are proteins that act as enormously effective catalysts for biological reactions. To get some idea of how they work, let us examine the action of just one: *chymotrypsin*, a digestive enzyme whose job is to promote hydrolysis of certain peptide links in proteins. The sequence of the 241 amino acid



Reprinted by permission from R. E. Dickerson and I. Geis: *The Structure and Action of Proteins* Benjamin Cummings Publishing Company, Menlo Park, California. Copyright © 1969 by Richard E. Dickerson and Irving Geis.

**Figure 31.1.** Three-dimensional structure of  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsin. Residues are numbered from 1 to 245 as in its precursor, chymotrypsinogen (p. 1131), but residues 14, 15 and 147–148 have been lost.

Histidine-57, serine-195, and isoleucine-16 are shaded. The lipophilic pocket lies to the right of histidine-57 and serine-195, where M is marked; it is bounded by residues 184–191 and 214–227.

The  $\oplus$  and  $\ominus$  signs show the N-terminal and C-terminal ends of chains A, B, and C. The M and I stand for the methyl and sulfonyl parts of the inhibitor, a tosyl group held as an ester of serine-195.

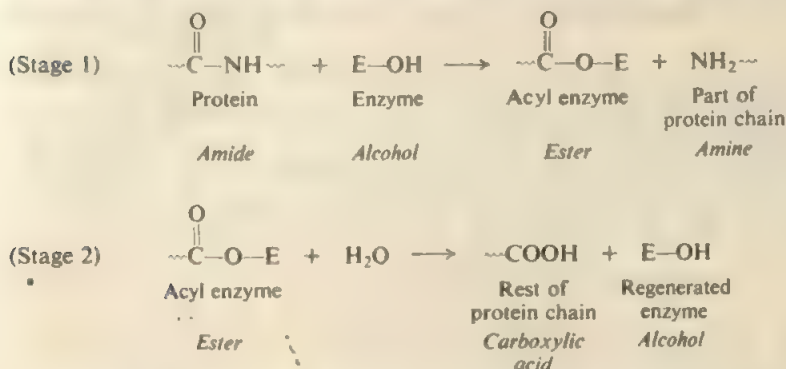
We can see one short segment of  $\alpha$ -helix at residues 234–245; another (mostly hidden) lies at 164–170. There is a hint of a twisted sheet beginning with residues 91–86 and 103–108, and extending to their right.



residues in chymotrypsin has been determined and, through x-ray analysis, the conformation of the molecule is known (Fig. 31.1). It is, like all enzymes, a soluble globular protein coiled in the way that turns its lipophilic parts inward, toward each other and away from water, and that permits maximum intramolecular hydrogen bonding.

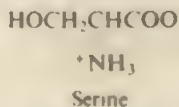
The action of chymotrypsin has been more widely explored than that of any other enzyme. In crystalline form, it is available for studies in the test tube under a variety of conditions. It catalyzes hydrolysis not only of proteins but of ordinary amides and esters, and much has been learned by use of these simpler substrates. Compounds modeled after portions of the chymotrypsin molecule have been made, and their catalytic effects measured.

To begin with, it seems very likely that chymotrypsin acts in two stages. In the first stage, acting as an alcohol, it breaks the peptide chain. We recognize this as alcoholysis of a substituted amide: nucleophilic acyl substitution. The products are an amine—the liberated portion of the substrate molecule—and, as we shall see



shortly, an ester of the enzyme. In the second stage, the enzyme ester is hydrolyzed. This yields a carboxylic acid—the other portion of the substrate molecule—and the regenerated enzyme, ready to go to work again.

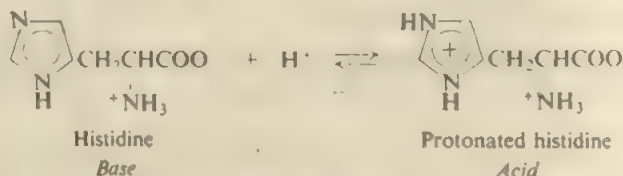
What is the structure of this intermediate ester formed from the enzyme? The answer has been found by use of simple esters as substrates, *p*-nitrophenyl acetate, for example. An appreciable steady-state concentration of the intermediate ester builds up and, by quenching of the reaction mixture in acid, it can be isolated. Sequence analysis of the enzyme ester showed that the acetyl group from the substrate was linked to *serine-195*. It is, then, at the —OH group of this particular amino acid residue that the enzyme reacts.



But evidence shows that certain other amino acid residues are also vital to enzyme activity. The rate of enzyme-catalyzed hydrolysis changes as the acidity of the reaction medium is changed. If one plots the rate of hydrolysis against the pH of the solution, one gets a bell-shaped curve: as the pH is increased, the rate rises to a maximum and then falls off. The rate is fastest at about pH 7.4 (fittingly, the physiological pH) and slower in either more acidic or more basic solution. Analysis of the data shows the following. Hydrolysis requires the presence of a free base, of

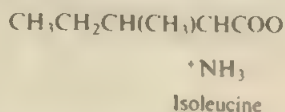
$K_b$  about  $10^{-7}$ , and a protonated base, of  $K_b$  about  $3 \times 10^{-5}$ . At low pH (acid solution), both bases are protonated; at high pH (alkaline solution), both bases are free. Hydrolysis is fastest at the intermediate pH where the weaker base is mostly free and the stronger base is mostly protonated.

The  $K_b$  of the weaker base fits that of the imidazole ring of histidine, and there is additional evidence indicating that this is indeed the base: studies involving



catalysis by imidazole itself, for example. Now, examination of the conformation of chymotrypsin (Fig. 31.1) shows that very close to serine-195 there is a histidine residue. This is *histidine-57*, and it is believed to be the one involved in enzyme activity.

What about the stronger base which, according to the kinetics, is involved in its protonated form? Its  $K_b$  fits the  $\alpha$ -amino group of most amino acids—an  $\alpha$ -amino group, that is, which is not tied up in a peptide link. But all the (free) amino groups in chymotrypsin—*except one*—may be acetylated without complete loss of activity. The exception is *isoleucine-16*, the N-terminal unit of chain B.

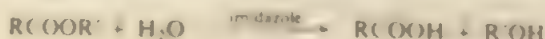


Presumably, then, this amino group cannot be acetylated, but must be free to be protonated and do its part of the job.

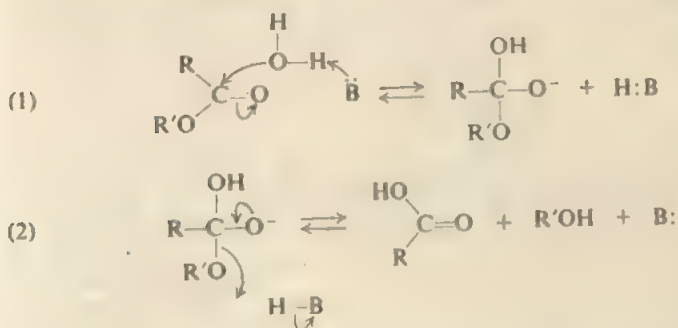
Now, what is the job of each of these key units in the enzyme molecule? It is clear what serine-195 does: it provides the  $\text{OH}^-$  for ester formation. What does isoleucine-16 do? The descending leg of the bell-shaped rate curve was attributed to protonation of this unit. But something else happens as the pH is raised above 7.4: the optical activity of the solution decreases—evidently due to a change in conformation of the enzyme molecule—and in a way that parallels the decrease in rate of hydrolysis. It is believed that the  $\text{NH}_3^+$  of isoleucine-16 is attracted by the  $\text{COO}^-$  of aspartic acid-194; this ion pairing helps hold the enzyme chain in the proper shape for it to act as a catalyst: to keep histidine-57 near serine-195, among other things. At higher pH the  $\text{NH}_3^+$  is converted into  $\text{NH}_2$ , and the chain changes its shape; with the change in shape goes loss of catalytic power and a change in optical rotation.

Next, we come to the question: what is the role of histidine-57? We are observing an example of *general acid-base catalysis*: catalysis not just by hydroxide ions and oxonium ions, but by all the bases and conjugate acids that are present, each contributing according to its concentration and its acid or base strength.

Let us look at this concept first with a simple example: hydrolysis of an ester catalyzed by the simple heterocyclic base, imidazole. Catalysis by hydroxide ions



we understand: these highly nucleophilic ions are more effective than water at attacking acyl carbon. Imidazole generates some hydroxide ions by reaction with water, but these are already taken into account. We are talking now about hydrolysis that is directly proportional to the concentration of the base itself: imidazole. What seems to be involved in such reactions is something like the following. In step (1), water adds to acyl carbon with *simultaneous loss of a proton to the base*; reaction is



fast because, in effect, the attacking nucleophile is not just water, but an incipient hydroxide ion. In step (2), transfer of the proton from the protonated base is simultaneous with loss of the ethoxy group; again reaction is fast, this time because the leaving group is not the strongly basic ethoxide ion, but an incipient alcohol molecule.

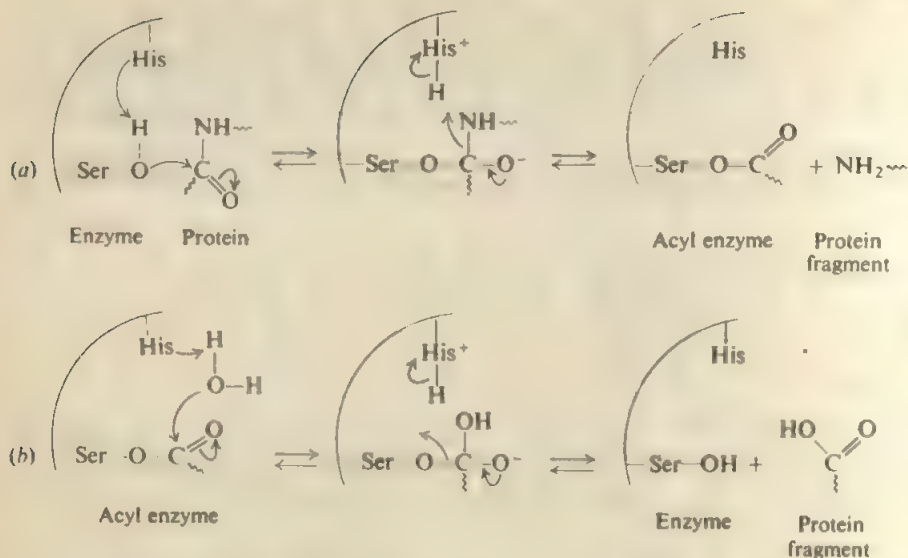
Reactions like (1) and (2) need not involve unlikely three-body collisions among the reactive molecules. Instead, there is prior hydrogen bonding between the base and water or between the protonated base and ester; it is these double molecules that collide with the third reagent and undergo reaction, with the dipole-dipole attraction of the hydrogen bonding being replaced by a covalent bond.

Figure 31.2 depicts the action of chymotrypsin, with the imidazole group of histidine-57 playing the same role of general base as that just described—and with protonated imidazole necessarily acting as general acid. There is general acid-base catalysis of both reactions involved: first, in the formation of the acyl enzyme, and then in its hydrolysis.

Chymotrypsin is not, as enzymes go, very specific in its action; it hydrolyzes proteins, peptides, simple amides, and esters alike. There is one structural requirement, nevertheless; a relatively non-polar group in the acyl moiety of the substrate, typically an aromatic ring. Now, turning once more to Fig. 31.1, we find that at the reactive site in the enzyme there is a pocket; this pocket is lined with lipophilic substituents to receive the non-polar group of the substrate and thus hold the molecule in position for hydrolysis. It is the size of this pocket and the nature of its lining that gives the enzyme its specificity; here we find, in a very real sense, Emil Fischer's lock into which the substrate key must fit.

We see, then, some of the factors that give enzymes their catalytic powers. The substrate is bound to a particular site in the enzyme, where the necessary functional groups are gathered: here, hydroxyl of serine and imidazole of histidine. In most cases, there are other functional groups as well, in molecules of cofactors—reagents, really—bound by the enzyme near the reactive site. In the enzyme-substrate complex, these functional groups are *neighboring groups*, and in their reactions enjoy all the advantages we listed (Sec. 11.5) for such groups. *They are*





**Figure 31.2.** Catalysis by the enzyme chymotrypsin of the cleavage of one peptide bond in a protein: a proposed mechanism. Histidine and protonated histidine act as general base and acid in two successive nucleophilic substitution reactions: (a) cleavage of protein with formation of acyl enzyme and liberation of one protein fragment; (b) hydrolysis of acyl enzyme with regeneration of the enzyme and liberation of the other protein fragment.

there, poised in just the right position for attack on the substrate. They need not wait for the lucky accident of a molecular collision; in effect, concentration of reagents is very high. Orientation of reacting groups is exactly right. There are no clinging solvent molecules to be stripped away as reaction occurs.

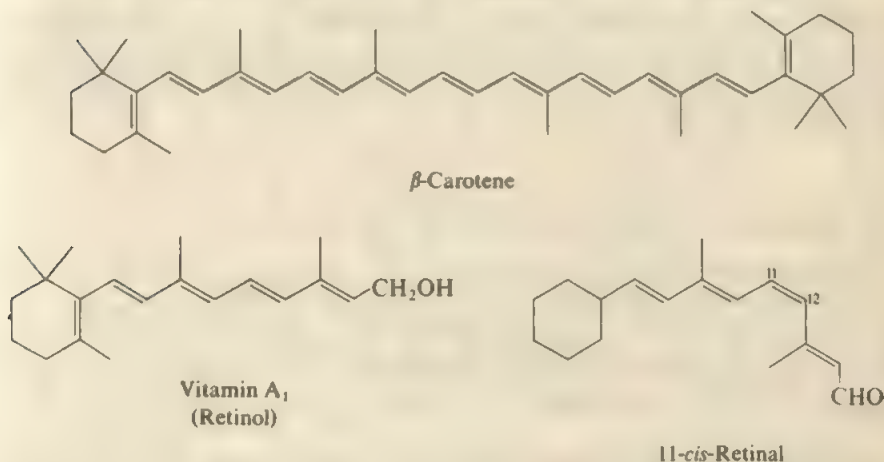
And there may be other factors at work here: it has been suggested, for example, that the pocket in which reaction occurs fits the transition state better than it fits the reactants, so that relief of strain or an increase in van der Waals attractions provides a driving force.

### 31.3 The organic chemistry of vision

To see, in perhaps the most graphic way possible, the part that molecular shape plays in determining biological action, let us look very briefly at the chemistry of vision—or, rather, at just one aspect of that chemistry. Vision, in the final analysis, comes down to the *detection of light*: light strikes the eye, and the brain receives a signal that something is there. The recognition of just *what* is there—the size, shape, brightness, and distance of the object seen—is a matter of the physics of the eye and the biology of the brain. But all this depends upon one initial event: light does something in the eye—something which starts off the entire process and without which there would be no vision. That “something,” it turns out, is a simple, purely chemical transformation, it is that rare occurrence in biology, an organic reaction that does not require catalysis by an enzyme. It is so direct and uncomplicated—so *elegant*—that it has been adopted as the basis of vision in every form of animal life.

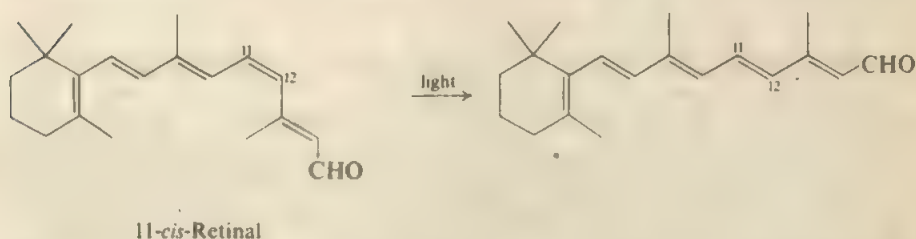


In the rod cells of the retina of a mammal there is a conjugated protein called *rhodopsin*. The prosthetic group of this protein is *11-cis-retinal*: an unsaturated aldehyde derived from vitamin A, which in turn is derived from  $\beta$ -carotene, the



pigment that makes carrots yellow. Retinal is not only bonded covalently to the protein—the carbonyl group reacts with an amino group to form an imine (Sec. 22.11)—but is held in a lipophilic pocket.

When light strikes rhodopsin it does just one thing, and then plays no further part: it transforms the 11-cis-retinal into 11-trans-retinal. *It is this transformation,*



*this change of one geometric isomer into another, that is the beginning of the visual process*; it is the link between the impingement of light and the series of chemical reactions that generates the nerve impulses that let us see.

Light brings energy to the rhodopsin, energy that causes a  $\pi \rightarrow \pi^*$  transformation in the retinal moiety (Sec. 17.8): in effect, it opens carbon-carbon double bonds and permits the rotation that is necessary for *cis-trans* isomerization. This isomerization changes the *shape* of the retinal, the bend is removed and the molecule straightens out. (This difference in shape between *cis* and *trans* isomers is the same as what we saw for rubber and gutta percha (Sec. 9.37), and for the unsaturated carboxylic acids of fats (Sec. 27.2).) With the change in shape of the retinal moiety there is a change in shape of the entire rhodopsin molecule, the protein portion must adjust its conformation to accommodate this altered guest. This, it is believed, affects the permeability of certain membranes, and permits the passage of  $\text{Ca}^{++}$  ions that trigger off nerve impulses to the brain. The entire process is amazingly efficient—the human eye can detect the absorption of as few as five photons of light by five rod cells!

A great deal more then happens: a series of enzyme-catalyzed reactions that supply the energy needed to convert the *trans*-retinal back into the less stable *cis* isomer, so that the process can start all over again.

What we have described is the absorption of light by the rod cells of a mammal. Animals of very different kinds—arthropods, mollusks—have very different optical systems. But, regardless of differences in anatomy, the process of seeing always begins with the same simple organic reaction: the transformation of 11-*cis*-retinal into its geometric isomer.

### 31.4 The source of biological energy. The role of ATP

In petroleum we have a fuel reserve on which we can draw for energy: as long as it lasts. We burn it, and either use the heat produced directly to warm ourselves or convert it into other kinds of energy: mechanical energy to move things about; electrical energy, which is itself transformed at a more convenient place than where the original burning happened into light, or mechanical energy, or back into heat.

In the same way, the energy our bodies need to keep warm, move about, and build new tissue comes from a food reserve: carbohydrates, chiefly in the form of starch. (We eat other animals, too, but ultimately the chain goes back to a carbohydrate-eater.) In the final analysis, we get energy from food just as we do from petroleum: we oxidize it to carbon dioxide and water.

This food reserve is not, however, a limited one that we steadily deplete. Our store of carbohydrates—and the oxygen to go with it—is constantly replenished by the recombining, in plants, of carbon dioxide and water. The energy for recombination comes, of course, from the sun.

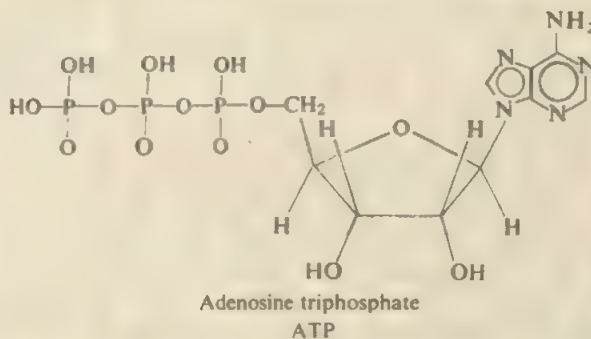
We speak of both petroleum and carbohydrates as sources of energy; we could speak of them as “energy-rich molecules.” But the oxygen that is also consumed in oxidation is equally a source of energy. What we really mean is that the energy content of carbohydrates (or petroleum) plus oxygen is greater than that of carbon dioxide plus water. (In total, the bonds that are to be broken are weaker—contain more energy—than the bonds that are to be formed.) These reactants are, of course, energy-rich only in relation to the particular products we want to convert them into. But this is quite sufficient; in our particular kind of world, these *are* our sources of energy.

The body takes in carbohydrates and oxygen, then, and eventually gives off carbon dioxide and water. In the process considerable energy is generated. But in what form? And how is it used to move muscles, transport solutes, and build new molecules? Certainly each of our cells does not contain a tiny fire in which carbohydrates burn merrily, running a tiny steam engine, and over which a tiny organic chemist stews up reaction mixtures. Nor do we contain a central power plant where, again, carbohydrates are burned, and the energy sent about in little steam pipes or electric cables to run muscle-machines and protein-and-fat factories.

In a living organism, virtually the whole energy system is a chemical one. Energy is generated, transported, and consumed by way of chemical reactions and chemical compounds. Instead of a single reaction with a long plunge from the energy level of carbohydrates and oxygen to that of carbon dioxide and water—as in the burning of a log, say—there are long series of chemical reactions in which

the energy level descends in gentle cascades. Energy resides, ultimately, in the molecules involved; as they move through the organism, they carry energy with them.

Constantly appearing in these reactions is one compound, *adenosine triphosphate* (ATP). It is called by biochemists an "energy-rich" molecule, but there is



nothing magical about this. ATP does not carry about a little bag of energy which it sprinkles on molecules to make them react. Nor does it undergo hydrolysis alongside other molecules and in some mystical way make this energy available to them. ATP simply undergoes reactions—only one reaction, really. It *phosphorylates*, that is, transfers a phosphoryl group,  $\text{—PO}_3\text{H}_2$ , to some other molecule. For example:



ATP is called a "high-energy phosphate" compound, but this simply means that it is a fairly reactive phosphorylating agent. It is exactly as though we were to call acetic anhydride "high-energy acetate" because it is a better acetylating agent than acetic acid. And, indeed, there is a true parallel here: ATP is an anhydride, too, an anhydride of a substituted phosphoric acid, and it is a good phosphorylating agent for much the same reasons that acetic anhydride is a good acetylating agent.

When ATP loses a phosphoryl group to another molecule, it is converted into ADP, *adenosine diphosphate*. If ATP is to be regenerated, ADP must itself be phosphorylated, and it is: by certain other compounds that are good enough phosphorylating agents to do this. The important thing in all this is not really the energy level of these various phosphorylating agents—so long as they are reactive enough to do the job they must—but the fact that the energy level of the carbohydrates and their oxidation products is gradually sinking to the level of carbon dioxide and water. These compounds—and oxygen—are where the energy is, and ATP is simply a chemical reagent that helps to make it available.

We have seen that very often factors that stabilize products also stabilize the transition state leading to those products, that is, that often there is a parallel between  $\Delta H$  and  $E_{\text{act}}$ . To that extent, the energy level of the various phosphorylating agents may enter in, too: less stable phosphorylating agents—less stable, let us say, relative to phosphate anion—may in general tend to transfer phosphate to more stable phosphorylating agents. In addition, of course, if any of the phosphate transfers should be too highly endothermic, this would require a prohibitively high  $E_{\text{act}}$  for reaction (see Sec. 2.17).



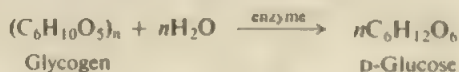
In following sections, we shall see some of the specific reactions in which ATP is involved.

### 31.5 Biological oxidation of carbohydrates

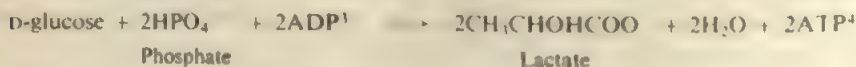
Next, let us take a look at the overall picture of the biological oxidation of carbohydrates. We start with glycogen ("sugar-former"), the form in which carbohydrates are stored in the animal body. This, we have seen (Sec. 29.9), is a starch-like polymer of D-glucose.

The trip from glycogen to carbon dioxide and water is a long one. It is made up of dozens of reactions, each of which is catalyzed by its own enzyme system. Each of these reactions must, in turn, take place in several steps, most of them unknown. (Consider what is involved in the "reaction" catalyzed by chymotrypsin.) We can divide the trip into three stages. (a) First, glycogen is broken down into its component D-glucose molecules. (b) Then, in *glycolysis* ("sugar-splitting"), D-glucose is itself broken down, into three-carbon compounds. (c) These, in *respiration*, are converted into carbon dioxide and water. Oxygen appears in only the third stage; the first two are anaerobic ("without-air") processes.

The first stage, **cleavage of glycogen**, is simply the hydrolytic cleavage of acetal linkages (Sec. 28.16), this time enzyme-catalyzed.



The second stage, **glycolysis**, takes eleven reactions and eleven enzymes. The sum of these reactions is:



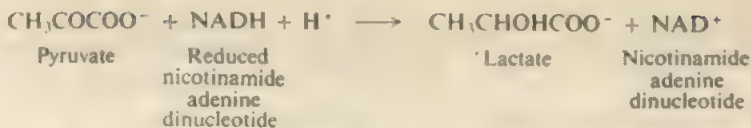
No oxygen is consumed, and we move only a little way down the energy hill toward carbon dioxide and water. What is important is that a start has been made in breaking the five carbon-carbon bonds of glucose, and that two molecules of ADP are converted into ATP. (ATP is required for some of the steps of glycolysis, but there is a *net* production of two molecules of ATP for each molecule of glucose consumed.)

The third stage, **respiration**, is a complex system of reactions in which molecules provided by glycolysis are oxidized. Oxygen is consumed, carbon dioxide and water are formed, and energy is produced.

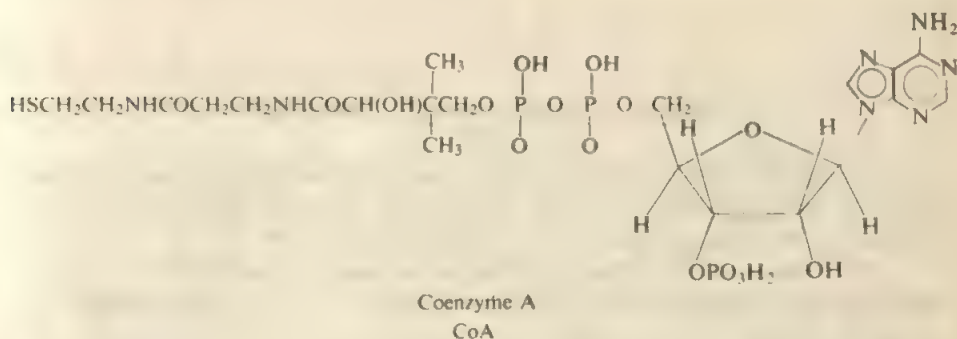
Let us look at the linking-up between glycolysis and respiration. Ordinarily, the energy needs of working muscles are met by respiration. But, during short periods of vigorous exercise, the blood cannot supply oxygen enough for respiration to carry the entire load, when this happens, glycolysis is called upon to supply the energy difference. The end-product of glycolysis, lactic acid, collects in the muscle, and the muscle feels tired. The lactic acid is removed by the blood and rebuilt into glycogen, which is ready for glycolysis again.

The last step of glycolysis is reduction of pyruvic acid to lactic acid. (The reducing agent is, incidentally, an old acquaintance, reduced nicotinamide adenine





dinucleotide, Secs. 11.9–11.10 and 30.15.) Most of the time, however, glycolysis does not proceed to the very end. Instead, pyruvic acid is diverted, and oxidized to acetic acid in the form of a thiol ester,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO-S-CoA}$ , derived from *coenzyme A* and called “acetyl CoA.”



It is as acetyl CoA that the products of glycolysis are fed into the respiration cycle.

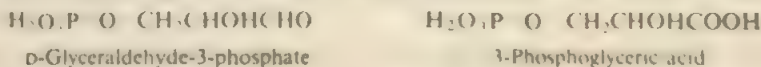
The acetyl CoA that is fuel for respiration comes not only from carbohydrates but also from the breakdown of amino acids and fats. It is thus the common link between all three kinds of food and the energy-producing process. (Acetyl CoA is even more than that: as we shall see, it is the building block from which the long chains of fatty acids are synthesized.)

*Thiols* are sulfur analogs of alcohols. They contain the sulfhydryl group,  $-SH$ , which plays many parts in the chemistry of biomolecules. Easily oxidized, two  $-SH$  groups are converted into disulfide links,  $-S-S-$ , which hold together different peptide chains or different parts of the same chain. (See, for example, oxytocin on p. 1127.) Thiols form the same kinds of derivatives as alcohols: *thioethers*, *thioacetals*, *thiol esters*. Thiol ester groups show the chemical behavior we would expect—they undergo nucleophilic acyl substitution and they make  $\alpha$ -hydrogens acidic—this last more effectively than their oxygen counterparts.

### 31.6 Mechanism of a biological oxidation

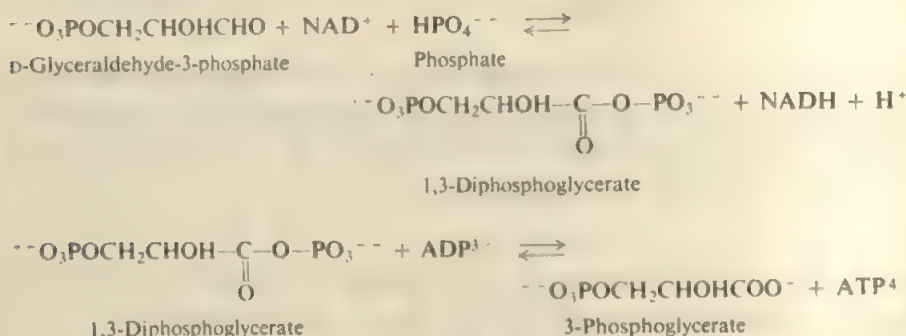
Now let us take just one of the many steps in carbohydrate oxidation and look at it in some detail.

Although there is no *net* oxidation in glycolysis, certain individual reactions do involve oxidation and reduction. About mid-way in the eleven steps we arrive



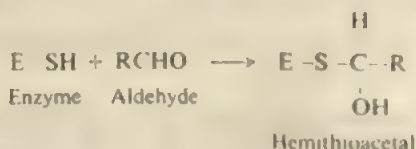
at D-glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate and its oxidation to 3-phosphoglyceric acid. In the course of this conversion, a phosphate ion becomes attached to ADP to generate a molecule of ATP.

Two reactions are actually involved. First, D-glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate is oxidized, but not directly to the corresponding acid, 3-phosphoglyceric acid. In-



stead, a phosphate ion is picked up to give the mixed anhydride, 1,3-diphosphoglycerate. This is a highly reactive phosphorylating agent and, in the second reaction, transfers a phosphoryl group to ADP to form ATP.

Now, how does all this happen? The enzyme required for the first reaction is *glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase* ("enzyme-that-dehydrogenates-glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate"). Its action is by no means as well understood as that of chymotrypsin, but let us look at the kind of thing that is believed to happen. A sulfhydryl group (—SH) of the enzyme adds to the carbonyl group of glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate. Thiols are sulfur analogs of alcohols, and the product is a hemiacetal:



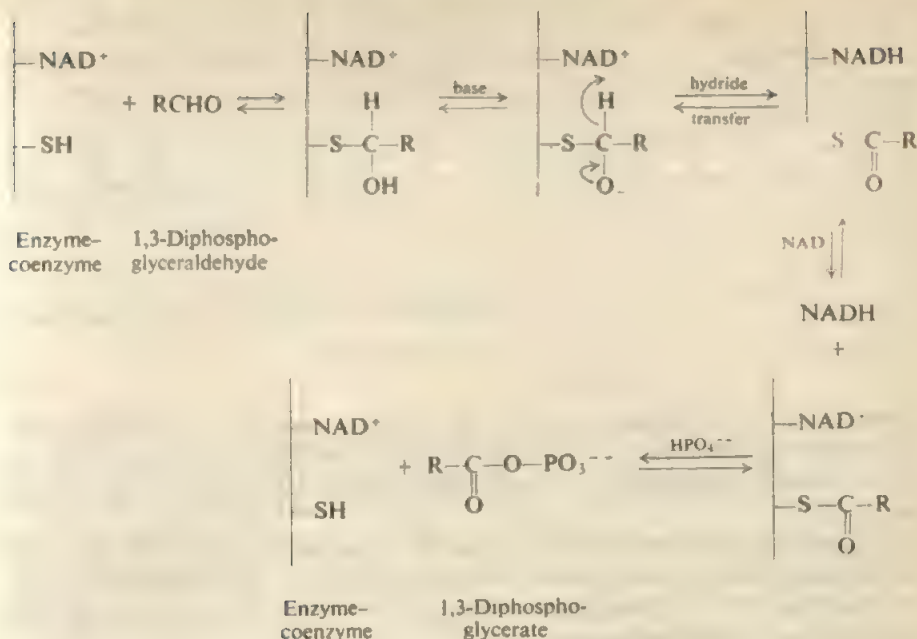
more precisely, a hemithioacetal. Like other acetals, this is both an ether (a *thio* ether) and an alcohol. Such an alcohol group is especially easily oxidized to a carbonyl group.

The oxidizing agent is a compound that, like ATP, constantly appears in these reactions: our old acquaintance nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD). The functional group here, we remember (Sec. 30.15), is the pyridine ring, which can accept a hydride ion to form NADH. Like the hemiacetal moiety, NAD is bound to the enzyme, and in a position for easy reaction (Fig. 31.3).

Oxidation converts the hemithioacetal into a thiol ester—an acyl enzyme. Like other esters, this one is prone to nucleophilic acyl substitution. It is cleaved, with phosphate ion as nucleophile, to regenerate the sulfhydryl group in the enzyme. The other product is 1,3-diphosphoglycerate. The molecule is (still) a phosphate ester at the 3-position, and has become a mixed anhydride at the 1-position.

The anhydride phosphoryl group is easily transferred, in another enzyme-catalyzed reaction, 1,3-diphosphoglycerate reacts with ADP to yield 3-phosphoglycerate and ATP. The 3-phosphoglycerate goes on in the glycolysis process.

The ATP is available to act as a phosphorylating agent—to convert a molecule of D-glucose into D-glucose-6-phosphate, for example, and help start another



**Figure 31.3.** Enzymatic conversion of glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate into 1,3-diphosphoglycerate.

molecule through glycolysis; to assist in the synthesis of fatty acids; to change the cross-linking between molecules of *actin* and *myosin*, and thus cause muscular contraction.

The NADH produced is also available to do *its* job, that of reducing agent. It may, for example, reduce pyruvate to lactate in the last step of glycolysis. The extra electrons that make it a reducing agent are passed along, and ultimately are accepted by molecular oxygen.

We are in a strange, complex chemical environment here, but in it we recognize familiar kinds of compounds—hemiacetals, esters, anhydrides, carboxylic acids—and familiar kinds of reactions—nucleophilic carbonyl addition, hydride transfer, nucleophilic acyl substitution.

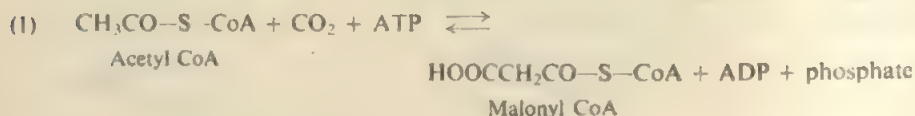
### 31.7 Biosynthesis of fatty acids

When an animal eats more carbohydrate than it uses up, it stores the excess some as the polysaccharide glycogen (Sec. 29.9), but most of it as fats. Fats, we know (Sec. 27.2), are triacylglycerols, esters derived (in most cases) from long straight-chain carboxylic acids containing an *even number* of carbon atoms. These even numbers, we said, are a natural consequence of the way fats are synthesized in biological systems.

There are even numbers of carbons in fatty acids because the acids are built up, two carbons at a time, from acetic acid units. These units come from acetyl CoA: the thiol ester derived from acetic acid and coenzyme A (Sec. 31.5). The acetyl CoA itself is formed either in glycolysis, as we have seen, or by oxidation of fatty acids.

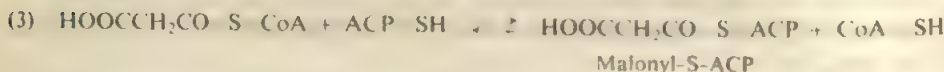
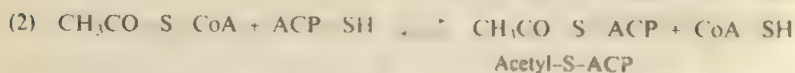
Let us see how fatty acids are formed from acetyl CoA units. As before, we must realize that every reaction is catalyzed by a specific enzyme and proceeds by several steps—steps that in some direct, honest-to-goodness chemical way, involved the enzyme.

First, acetyl CoA takes up carbon dioxide (1) to form malonyl CoA. (To illustrate the point made above: this does not happen directly; carbon dioxide

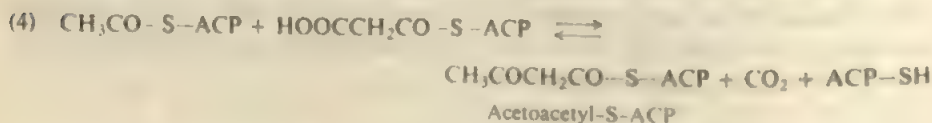


combines with the prosthetic group of the enzyme—*acetyl CoA carboxylase*—and is then transferred to acetyl CoA.) Just as in the carbonation of a Grignard reagent, the *carbanionoid* character of the  $\alpha$ -carbon of acetyl CoA must in some way be involved.

In the remaining steps, acetic and malonic acids react, not as CoA esters, but as thiol esters of *acyl carrier protein* (ACP), a small protein with a prosthetic group quite similar to CoA. These esters are formed by (2) and (3), which we recognize as examples of transesterification.



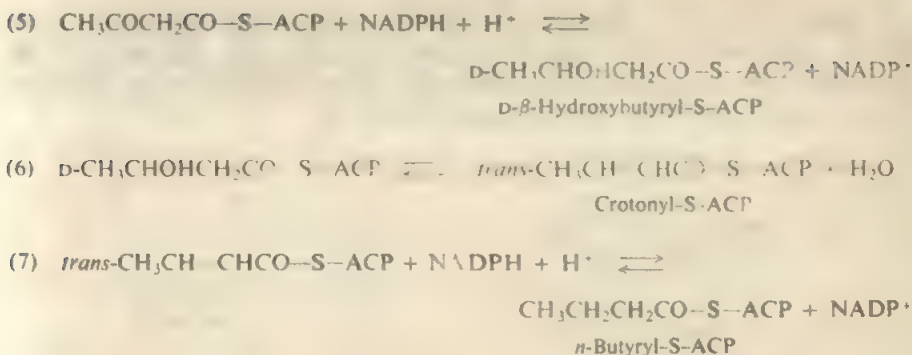
Now starts the first of many similar cycles. Acetyl-S-ACP condenses (4) with malonyl-S-ACP to give a four-carbon chain.



At this point we see a strong parallel to the malonic ester synthesis (Sec. 26.2). The carbon dioxide taken up in reaction (1) is lost here; its function was to generate malonate, with its highly acidic  $\alpha$ -hydrogens, its carbanionoid  $\alpha$ -carbon. Here, as in test tube syntheses, the formation of carbon-carbon bonds is all-important; here, as in test tube syntheses (Sec. 26.1), carbanionoid carbon plays a key role. In the malonic ester synthesis, decarboxylation follows the condensation step; here, it seems, the steps are concerted, with loss of carbon dioxide providing driving force for the reaction.

The next steps are exact counterparts of what we would do in the laboratory: reduction to an alcohol (5), dehydration (6), and hydrogenation (7). The reducing agent for both (5) and (7) is reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate, NADPH (Sec. 30.15).





We now have a straight-chain saturated fatty acid, and with this the cycle begins again: reaction of it with malonyl-S-ACP, decarboxylation, reduction, dehydration, hydrogenation. After seven such cycles we arrive at the 16-carbon acid, palmitic acid—and here, for some reason, the process stops. Additional carbons can be added, but by a different process. Double bonds can be introduced, to produce unsaturated acids. Finally, glycerol esters are formed: triacylglycerols, to be stored and, when needed, oxidized to provide energy; and phosphoglycerides (Sec. 27.8) to help make up cell walls.

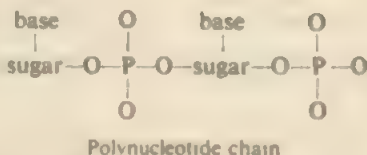
Enzymes are marvelous catalysts. Yet, even with their powerful help, these biological reactions seek the easiest path. In doing this, they take advantage of the same structural effects that the organic chemist does: the acidity of  $\alpha$ -hydrogens, the leaving ability of a particular group, the ease of decarboxylation of  $\beta$ -keto acids.

### 31.8 Nucleoproteins and nucleic acids

In every living cell there are found **nucleoproteins**: substances made up of proteins combined with natural polymers of another kind, the **nucleic acids**. Of all fields of chemistry, the study of the nucleic acids is perhaps the most exciting, for these compounds are the substance of heredity. Let us look very briefly at the structure of nucleic acids and, then, in the next section, see how this structure may be related to their literally vital role in heredity.

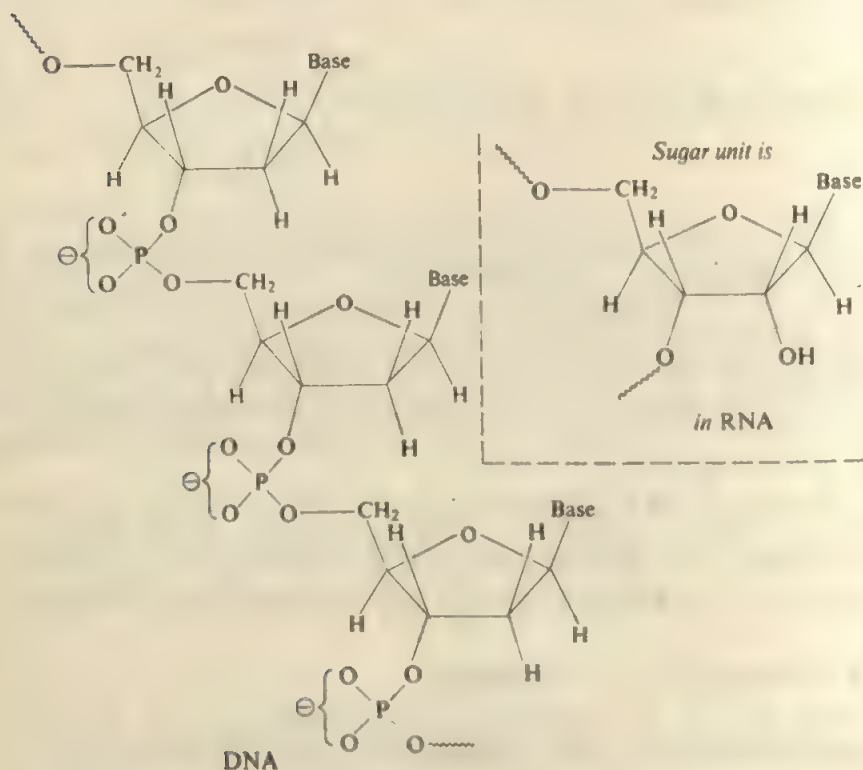
Although chemically quite different, nucleic acids resemble proteins in a fundamental way: there is a long chain—a backbone—that is the same (except for length) in all nucleic acid molecules; and attached to this backbone are various groups, which by their nature and sequence characterize each individual nucleic acid.

Where the backbone of the protein molecule is a polyamide chain (a polypeptide chain), the backbone of the nucleic acid molecule is a polyester chain (called a *polynucleotide chain*). The ester is derived from phosphoric acid (the acid portion) and a sugar (the alcohol portion).



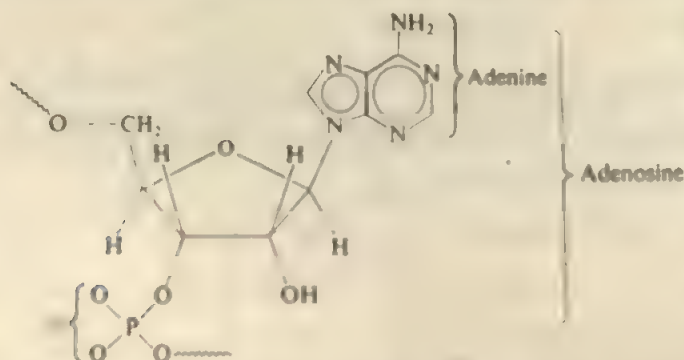
The sugar is D-ribose (p. 1071) in the group of nucleic acids known as ribonucleic

acids (RNA), and D-2-deoxyribose in the group known as deoxyribonucleic acids (DNA). (The prefix *2-deoxy* simply indicates the lack of an —OH group at the 2-position.) The sugar units are in the furanose form, and are joined to phosphate through the C-3 and C-5 hydroxyl groups (Fig. 31.4).



**Figure 31.4.** Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and ribonucleic acid (RNA).

Attached to C-1 of each sugar, through a  $\beta$ -linkage, is one of a number of heterocyclic bases. A base-sugar unit is called a *nucleoside*; a base-sugar-phosphoric acid unit is called a *nucleotide*. An example of a nucleotide is shown in Fig. 31.5.



**Figure 31.5.** A nucleotide—an adenylic acid unit of RNA. Here, the nucleoside is adenosine, and the heterocyclic base is adenine.

Four principal bases are found in DNA: *adenine* (A) and *guanine* (G), which contain the purine ring system, and *cytosine* (C) and *thymine* (T), which contain the pyrimidine ring system. RNA contains adenine, guanine, cytosine, and *uracil* (U). (See Fig. 31.6.)

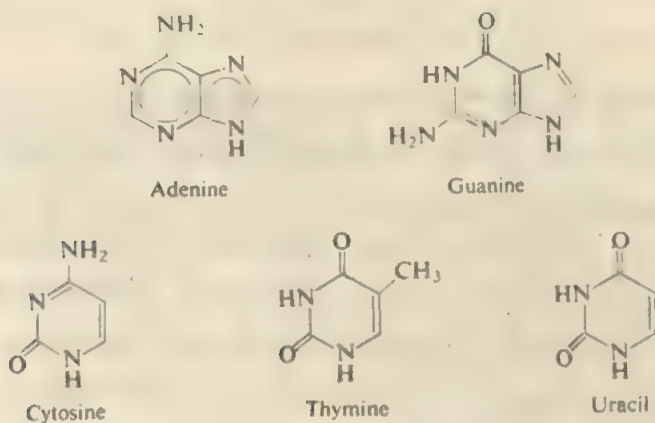


Figure 31.6. The heterocyclic bases of DNA and RNA.

The proportions of these bases and the sequence in which they follow each other along the polynucleotide chain differ from one kind of nucleic acid to another. Study of this primary structure is approached in the same general way as in the case of proteins: by degradation and identification of fragments. The enormous length of a DNA molecule makes this job a formidable one; in 1968 it was predicted that the sequence of bases in even the shortest DNA could hardly be determined before the 21st century. But only nine years later, in 1977, Sanger (p. 1129) reported the complete sequence of the DNA of the bacteriophage  $\phi\text{X174}$ , a virus that infects *E. coli*. This DNA molecule is looped to form a giant ring made up of 5,386 nucleotide residues!

Now, what is the secondary structure of nucleic acids? In the autumn of 1951, J. D. Watson (now of Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory) and F. H. C. Crick (now of Cambridge University) began work together on the structure of DNA. They approached the problem along the path that Pauling had laid out in his study of proteins (Sec. 30.16). They had to devise a structure which would account for the chemical and x-ray evidence, and at the same time be consistent with all the structural features of the units involved: molecular size and shape, bond angles and bond lengths, configurations and conformations. Of the chemical evidence the most puzzling piece—and, of course, the most valuable clue—was this: although the proportions of bases vary from one DNA to another, it is always found that  $\text{A} = \text{T}$  and  $\text{G} = \text{C}$ .

Working with molecular models, Watson and Crick assembled a structure in which all the building blocks fitted together without crowding and, of prime importance, which permitted the greatest stabilization by hydrogen bonds: not only many hydrogen bonds, but hydrogen bonds of the kind that Pauling had shown to be the strongest, those with a linear disposition of  $\text{N} \cdots \text{H} \cdots \text{N}$  or  $\text{N} \cdots \text{H} \cdots \text{O}$ . In April 1953 Watson and Crick reported the structure they had arrived at, the now-famous *double helix*, and in 1962 they received the Nobel Prize.

DNA is made up of two polynucleotide chains wound about each other to form a double helix 20 Å in diameter (shown schematically in Fig. 31.7). Each



**Figure 31.7.** Schematic representation of the double helix structure proposed for DNA. Both helices are right-handed and head in opposite directions; ten residues per turn. Hydrogen bonding between the helices.

helix is right-handed and has ten nucleotide units for each complete turn, which occurs every 34 Å along the axis. The two chains head in opposite directions; that is, the deoxyribose units are oriented in opposite ways, so that the sequence is C-3, C-5 in one chain and C-5, C-3 in the other.

The chains are held together at intervals by hydrogen bonds. These are linear hydrogen bonds between adenine and thymine and between guanine and cytosine. Quite simply,  $A = T$  and  $G = C$  because A is always *bonded to* T and G is always *bonded to* C. Hydrogen bonding between other pairs of bases would not allow them to fit into the double helical structure. The two strands are thus not identical but complementary: opposite every A of one chain is a T in the other, and opposite every G is a C.

In the secondary structure of RNA helices are again involved, but this time nearly always single-strand helices. These molecules vary a good deal in size: some are very large, like DNA molecules; others much smaller and containing fewer than a hundred residues.

So far we have discussed only the secondary structure of nucleic acids. At the tertiary—and higher—level one deals with the way in which they are bound to proteins, and how these nucleoproteins are coiled and folded to make up the chromosome—how, for example, *four meters* of DNA can be fitted into a single cell only two ten-thousandths of a meter across!

But at the heart of all this lies the double helix, which not only meets all the standards that Watson and Crick had set but also, with a simplicity and beauty that could not have been anticipated, accounts for the ability of DNA to play its dual role: as the repository of hereditary information and the director of protein synthesis.

### 31.9 Chemistry and heredity. The genetic code

Just how is the structure of nucleic acids related to their function in heredity? Nucleic acids control heredity *on the molecular level*. The double helix of DNA is the repository of the hereditary information of the organism. The information is stored as the sequence of bases along the polynucleotide chain, it is a message “written” in a language that has only four letters, A, G, T, C (adenine, guanine, thymine, cytosine).

DNA must both *preserve* this information and *use* it. It does these things through two properties. (a) DNA molecules can duplicate themselves, that is, can bring about the synthesis of other DNA molecules identical with the originals, this process is called *replication*. (b) DNA molecules can control the synthesis, in an



exact and specific way, of the proteins that are characteristic of each kind of organism.

(All this is a reciprocal affair, a tightly interwoven system of give-and-take. Every activity of DNA requires catalysis by an enzyme: replication, for example, needs DNA polymerase. Yet all these enzymes are proteins, and exist only because they were originally made—with enzyme catalysis—at the direction of DNA.)

First, there is the matter of replication. The sequences of bases in one chain of the double helix controls the sequence in the other chain. The two chains fit together, as Crick puts it, like a hand and a glove. They separate, and about the hand is formed a new glove, and inside the glove is formed a new hand. Thus, the pattern is preserved, to be handed down to the next generation.

Next, there is the matter of guiding the synthesis of proteins. A particular sequence of bases along a polynucleotide chain leads to a particular sequence of amino acid residues along a polypeptide chain. A protein has been likened to a long sentence written in a language of 20 letters: the 20 different amino acid residues. But the hereditary message is written in a language of only four letters; it is written in a *code*, with each word standing for a particular amino acid.

The genetic code has been broken, but this is only a beginning; research is now aimed at, among other things, tracking down the lines of communication. DNA serves as a template on which molecules of RNA are formed in the process called *transcription*. The double helix of DNA partially uncoils, and about one of the separated strands is formed a chain of RNA; the process thus resembles replication of DNA, except that this newly formed chain contains ribose instead of deoxyribose and corresponds to only a segment of the DNA chain. The base sequence along the RNA chain is different from that along the DNA template, but is determined *by it*: opposite each adenine of DNA, there appears on RNA a uracil; opposite guanine, cytosine; opposite thymine, adenine; opposite cytosine, guanine. Thus, AATCAGTT on DNA becomes UUAGUCAA on RNA.

One kind of RNA—called, fittingly, *messenger RNA*—carries a message to the ribosome, where protein synthesis actually takes place. At the ribosome, messenger RNA calls up a series of *transport RNA* molecules, each of which is loaded with a particular amino acid. The order in which the transport RNA molecules are called up—the sequence in which the amino acids are built into the protein chain—depends upon the sequence of bases along the messenger RNA chain. Thus, GAU is the code for aspartic acid; UUU, phenylalanine; GUG, valine. There are 64 three-letter code words (*codons*) and only 20-odd amino acids, so that more than one codon can call up the same amino acids: CUU and CUC, leucine; GAA and GAG, glutamic acid.

A difference of a single base in the DNA molecule, or a single error in the “reading” of the code can cause a change in the amino acid sequence. The tiny defect in the hemoglobin molecule that results in sickle-cell anemia (p. 1137) has been traced to a single gene—a segment of the DNA chain—where, perhaps, the codon GUG appears instead of GAG. There is evidence that some antibiotics, by altering the ribosome, cause misreading of the code and, with this, the production of defective proteins and death to the organism.

When the nature of the base is changed by a chemical reaction—oxidation, for example, or alkylation—its size and hydrogen-bonding ability are altered, and base-pairing between strands is impaired. This damage can lead to *mutations*—changes in the sequence of bases—and, with mutations, an increased likelihood of

the development of cancerous cells. Carcinogenic compounds exert their effects in this way—many of them, by a familiar reaction—nucleophilic substitution, with attack by a basic nitrogen—on one of these purine or pyrimidine rings on an electrophilic substrate—an epoxide, for example (Sec. 34.20).

Thus, the structure of nucleic acid molecules determines the structure of protein molecules. The structure of protein molecules, we have seen, determines the way in which their controlling processes. Biology is becoming more and more a matter of shapes and sizes of molecules.

For these molecules to do the kinds of things they must—the kinds of things we have seen in this chapter—they must be *big* ones. Only big molecules can offer the infinite variety of shapes that are needed to carry on the myriad different activities that constitute life. Of all the elements only carbon can form the framework of such big molecules. Thus, it would seem, biomolecules are inevitably organic molecules, and the chemistry of life is organic chemistry.

## PROBLEMS

1. Carbon dioxide is required for the conversion of acetyl CoA into fatty acids. Yet when carbon dioxide labeled with  $^{14}\text{C}$  is used, none of the labeled carbon appears in the fatty acids that are formed. How do you account for these facts?

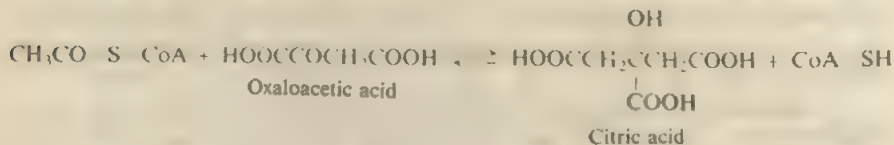
2. Taken together, what do these two facts show about chymotrypsin action? (a) The two esters, *p*-nitrophenyl acetate and *p*-nitrophenyl thioacetate,  $p\text{-NO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{SC}(\text{OCH}_3)_2$ , undergo chymotrypsin-catalyzed hydrolysis at the same rate and with the same pH-dependence of rate, despite the fact that  $-\text{SR}$  is a much better leaving group than  $-\text{OR}$ . (b) There is no oxygen exchange (Sec. 20.17) in chymotrypsin-catalyzed hydrolysis of an ester  $\text{RCOOR}'$ .

3. In DNA, the bases are bonded to deoxyribose at the following positions (that is, a hydrogen in Fig. 31.6, p. 1163, is replaced by C 1 of the sugar): adenine and guanine,  $\text{NH}$  in the five-membered ring, cytosine and thymine, the lower  $\text{NH}$ .

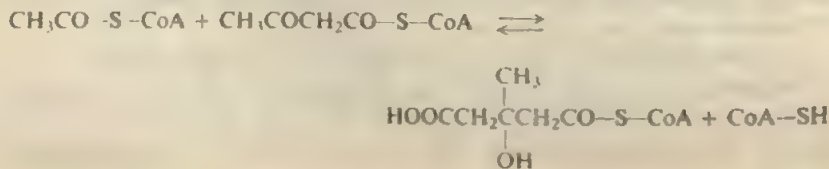
(a) Draw structures to show likely hydrogen bonding between adenine and thymine; between guanine and cytosine. (b) Can you account for the fact that guanine and cytosine pairs hold the chains together more strongly than do adenine and thymine pairs?

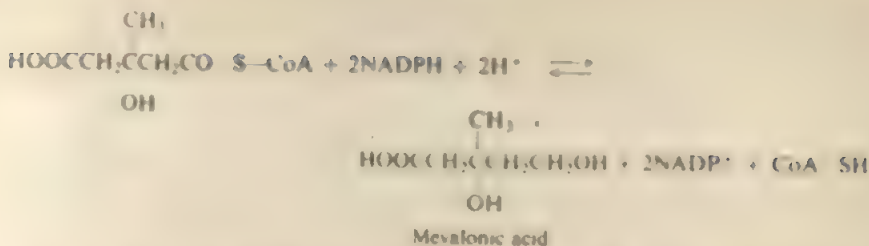
4. For each enzyme-catalyzed reaction shown in the following equations, tell what fundamental organic chemistry is involved.

(a) So that acetyl CoA can get through the membrane from the mitochondria where it is formed to the cytoplasm where fatty acids are made, it is converted into citric acid.



(b) Cholesterol is made up of isoprene units derived from isopentenyl pyrophosphate (Sec. 9.33), which is, in turn, formed from mevalonic acid.





5. In 1904, Franz Knoop outlined a scheme for the biological oxidation of fatty acids that was shown 50 years later to be correct. In his key experiments, he fed rabbits fatty acids of formula  $\text{C}_n\text{H}_{2n}(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{COOH}$ . When the side chain ( $n + 1$ ) contained an even number of carbons, a derivative of phenylacetic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ , was excreted in the urine, an odd number, and a derivative of benzoic acid was excreted. What general hypothesis can you formulate from these results?

6. In the actual cleavage reaction of glycolysis, D-fructose-1,6-diphosphate is converted into D-glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate and dihydroxyacetone,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OHCOCH}_2\text{OH}$ . What kind of reaction is this, basically? Sketch out a possible mechanism, neglecting of course, the all-important role of the enzyme. (*Hints*. The enzyme required is called *aldolase*. See Problem 21.14, p. 869.)

7. The particular wavelengths of electromagnetic radiation that are absorbed by rhodopsin are, by definition, "visible light" (Sec. 17.3). Imagine a creature whose vision depended upon the *cis-trans* isomerization, not of a compound like retinal, but of a simple, unconjugated alkene. What wavelengths of radiation would constitute "visible light" to such a creature?

8. When RNA is hydrolyzed there is *no* relationship among the quantities of the four bases obtained similar to that observed for the bases obtained from DNA. What does this fact suggest about the structure of RNA?

9. When DNA partially uncoils in the process of transcription, only one of the separated strands serves as a template for RNA synthesis. What disadvantage would there be if *both* separated strands were to act as templates?

—PART III—

---

# Special Topics

---



## $\alpha, \beta$ -Unsaturated Carbonyl Compounds

### Conjugate Addition

#### 32.1 Structure and properties

In general, a compound that contains both a carbon-carbon double bond and a carbon-oxygen double bond has properties that are characteristic of both functional groups. At the carbon-carbon double bond an unsaturated ester or unsaturated ketone undergoes electrophilic addition of acids and halogens, hydrogenation, hydroxylation, and cleavage; at the carbonyl group it undergoes the nucleophilic substitution typical of an ester or the nucleophilic addition typical of a ketone.

**Problem 32.1** What will be the products of the following reactions?

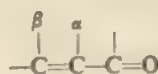
- $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOH} + \text{H}_2 + \text{Pt}$
- $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOC}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{OH}^- + \text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{heat}$
- $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCOCH}_3 + \text{I}_2 + \text{OH}^-$
- $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCHO} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHNH}_2 + \text{acid catalyst}$
- $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCHO} + \text{Ag}(\text{NH}_3)_2^+$
- $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOC}_6\text{H}_5 + \text{O}_3$ , followed by  $\text{Zn} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$
- $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCHO} + \text{excess H}_2 + \text{Ni}$ , heat, pressure
- trans*- $\text{HOOCCH}=\text{CHCOOH} + \text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4$
- trans*- $\text{HOOCCH}=\text{CHCOOH} + \text{cold alkaline KMnO}_4$

**Problem 32.2** What are A, B, and C, given the following facts?

- Cinnamaldehyde ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCHO}$ ) +  $\text{H}_2 + \text{Ni}$ , at low temperatures and pressures  $\longrightarrow$  A.
- Cinnamaldehyde +  $\text{H}_2 + \text{Ni}$ , at high temperatures and pressures  $\longrightarrow$  B.
- Cinnamaldehyde + 9-BBN followed by  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2 \longrightarrow$  C.

	A	B	C
$\text{KMnO}_4$ test	positive	negative	positive
$\text{Br}_2/\text{CCl}_4$ test	negative	negative	positive
Tollens' test	positive	negative	negative
$2,4\text{-(NO}_2)_2\text{PhNHNH}_2$	positive	negative	negative

In the  $\alpha, \beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds, the carbon-carbon double bond and the carbon-oxygen double bond are separated by just one carbon-carbon single bond; that is, the double bonds are *conjugated*. Because of this conjugation,



$\alpha, \beta$ -Unsaturated  
carbonyl compound  
Conjugated system

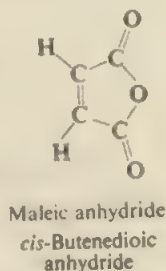
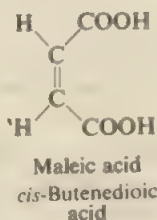
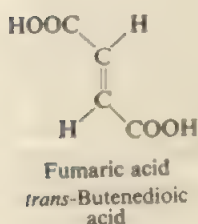
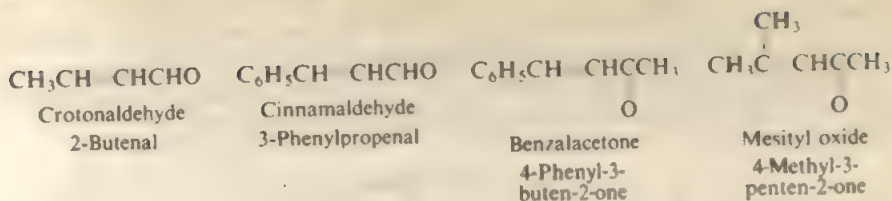
such compounds possess not only the properties of the individual functional groups, but certain other properties besides. In this chapter we shall concentrate on the  $\alpha, \beta$ -unsaturated compounds, and on the special reactions characteristic of the conjugated system.

Table 32.1  $\alpha, \beta$ -UNSATURATED CARBONYL COMPOUNDS

Name	Formula	M.p., °C	B.p., °C
Acrolein	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCHO}$	- 88	52
Crotonaldehyde	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCHO}$	- 69	104
Cinnamaldehyde	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCHO}$	- 7	254
Mesityl oxide	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{CHCOCH}_3$	42	131
Benzalacetone	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCOCH}_3$	42	261
Dibenzalacetone	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCOCH}=\text{CHC}_6\text{H}_5$	113	
Benzalacetophenone (Chalcone)	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCOC}_6\text{H}_5$	62	348
Dypnone	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{CHCOC}_6\text{H}_5$		150-5 <sup>1</sup>
Acrylic acid	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCOOH}$	12	142
Crotonic acid	<i>trans</i> - $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOH}$	72	189
Isocrotonic acid	<i>cis</i> - $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOH}$	16	172 <sup>d</sup>
Methacrylic acid	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{COOH}$	16	162
Sorbic acid	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}=\text{CHCOOH}$	134	
Cinnamic acid	<i>trans</i> - $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOH}$	137	300
Maleic acid	<i>cis</i> - $\text{HOOCCH}=\text{CHCOOH}$	130.5	
Fumaric acid	<i>trans</i> - $\text{HOOCCH}=\text{CHCOOH}$	302	
Maleic anhydride		60	202
Methyl acrylate	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCOOCH}_3$		80
Methyl methacrylate	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{COOCH}_3$		101
Ethyl cinnamate	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOC}_2\text{H}_5$	12	271
Acrylonitrile	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-\text{C}\equiv\text{N}$	- 82	79

Table 32.1 lists some of the more important of these compounds. Many have common names which the student must expect to encounter. For example,

$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-\text{CHO}$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-\text{COOH}$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-\text{C}\equiv\text{N}$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{COOH}$
Acrolein	Acrylic acid	Acrylonitrile	Methacrylic acid
Propenal	Propenoic acid	Propenenitrile	2-Methylpropenoic acid



## 32.2 Preparation

There are several general ways to make compounds of this kind: the **aldol condensation**, to make unsaturated aldehydes and ketones; **dehydrohalogenation of  $\alpha$ -halo acids** and the **Perkin condensation**, to make unsaturated acids. Besides these, there are certain methods useful only for making single compounds.

All these methods make use of chemistry with which we are already familiar: the fundamental chemistry of alkenes and carbonyl compounds.

**Problem 32.3** Outline a possible synthesis of:

- crotonaldehyde from acetylene
- cinnamaldehyde from compounds of lower carbon number
- cinnamic acid from compounds of lower carbon number
- 4-methyl-2-pentenoic acid via a malonic ester synthesis

**Problem 32.4** The following compounds are of great industrial importance for the manufacture of polymers: acrylonitrile (for Orlon), methyl acrylate (for Acryloid), methyl methacrylate (for Lucite and Plexiglas). Outline a possible industrial synthesis of: (a) acrylonitrile from ethylene; (b) methyl acrylate from ethylene; (c) methyl methacrylate from acetone and methanol.

(d) Polymerization of these compounds is similar to that of ethylene, vinyl chloride, etc. (Sec. 9.31). Draw a structural formula for each of the polymers.

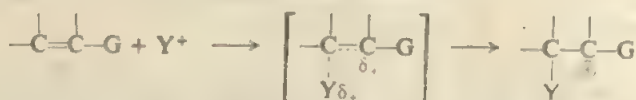
**Problem 32.5** Acrolein,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCHO}$ , can be prepared by heating glycerol with sodium hydrogen sulfate,  $\text{NaHSO}_4$ . (a) Outline the likely steps in this synthesis, which involves acid-catalyzed dehydration and keto-enol tautomerization. (Hint: Which  $-\text{OH}$  is easier to eliminate, a primary or a secondary?) (b) How could acrolein be converted into acrylic acid?

## 32.3 Interaction of functional groups

We have seen (Sec. 8.15) that, with regard to electrophilic addition, a carbon-carbon double bond is activated by an electron-releasing substituent and deactivated by an electron-withdrawing substituent. The carbon-carbon double bond serves as a source of electrons for the electrophilic reagent, the availability of its

electrons is determined by the groups attached to it. More specifically, an electron-releasing substituent stabilizes the transition state leading to the initial carbocation by dispersing the developing positive charge; an electron-withdrawing substituent destabilizes the transition state by intensifying the positive charge.

### Electrophilic Addition



*G releases electrons: activates*  
*G withdraws electrons: deactivates*

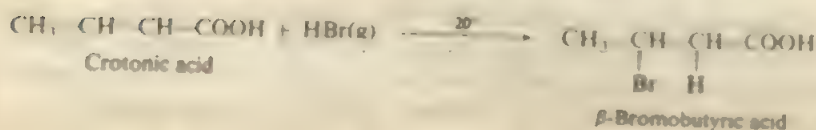
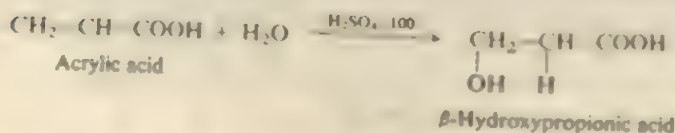
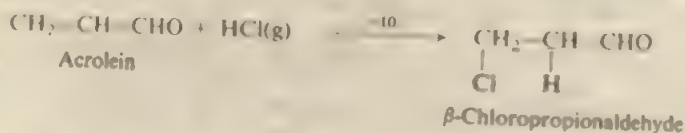
The  $\text{C}=\text{O}$ ,  $-\text{COOH}$ ,  $-\text{COOR}$ , and  $-\text{CN}$  groups are powerfully electron-withdrawing groups, and therefore would be expected to deactivate a carbon-carbon double bond toward electrophilic addition. This is found to be true:  $\alpha, \beta$ -unsaturated ketones, acids, esters, and nitriles are in general less reactive than simple alkenes toward reagents like bromine and the hydrogen halides.

But this powerful electron withdrawal, which deactivates a carbon-carbon double bond toward reagents seeking electrons, at the same time *activates* toward reagents that are electron-rich. As a result, the carbon-carbon double bond of an  $\alpha, \beta$ -unsaturated ketone, acid, ester, or nitrile is susceptible to nucleophilic attack, and undergoes a set of reactions, **nucleophilic addition**, that is uncommon for the simple alkenes. As we shall see (Sec. 32.5), this reactivity toward nucleophiles is primarily due, not to a simple inductive effect of these substituents, but rather to their *conjugation with the carbon-carbon double bond*.

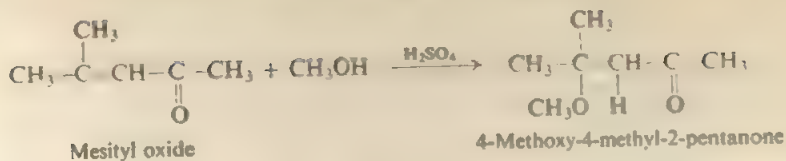
## 32.4 Electrophilic addition

The presence of the carbonyl group not only lowers the **reactivity** of the carbon-carbon double bond toward electrophilic addition, but also controls the **orientation** of the addition.

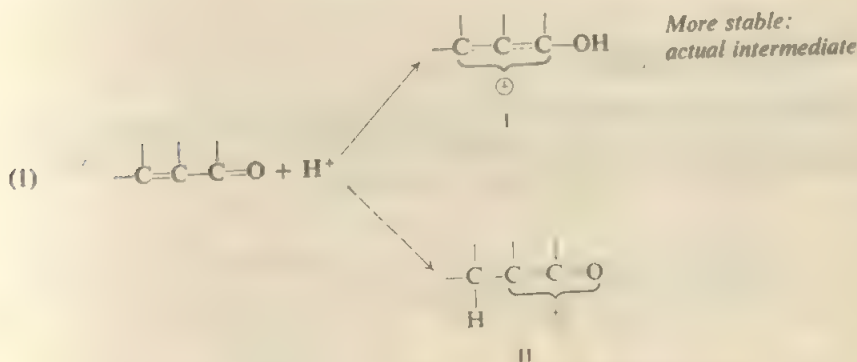
In general, it is observed that addition of an unsymmetrical reagent to an  $\alpha, \beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compound takes place in such a way that hydrogen becomes attached to the  $\alpha$ -carbon and the negative group becomes attached to the  $\beta$ -carbon. For example:





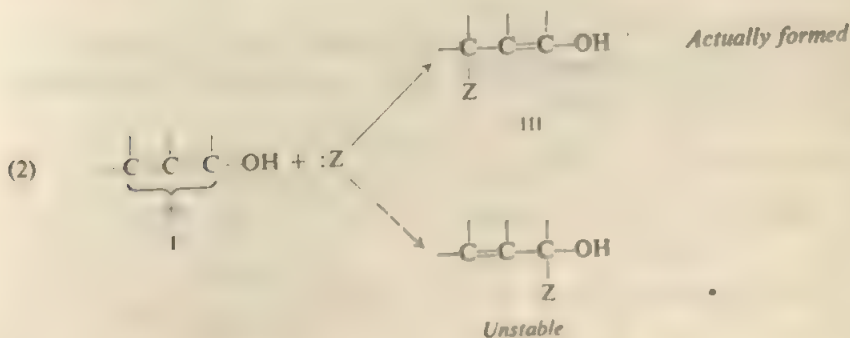


Electrophilic addition to simple alkenes takes place in such a way as to form the most stable intermediate carbocation. Addition to  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds, too, is consistent with this principle; to see that this is so, however, we must look at the conjugated system as a whole. As in the case of conjugated dienes (Sec. 9.26), addition to an *end* of the conjugated system is preferred, since this yields (step 1) a resonance-stabilized carbocation. Addition to the carbonyl oxygen end would yield cation I; addition to the  $\beta$ -carbon end would yield cation II.

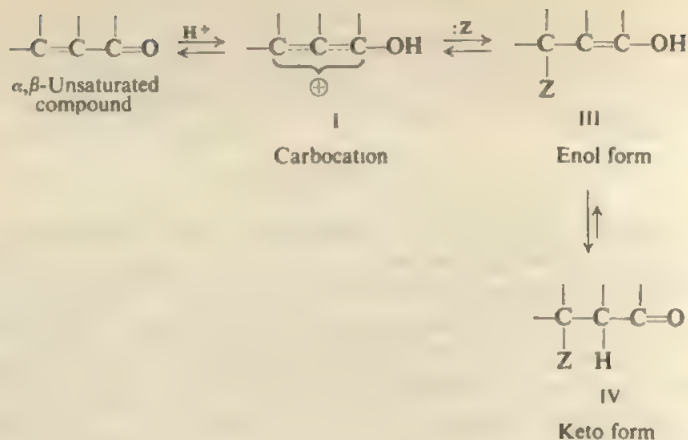


Of the two, I is the more stable, since the positive charge is carried by carbon atoms alone, rather than partly by the higher electronegative oxygen atom.

In the second step of addition, a negative ion or basic molecule attaches itself either to the carbonyl carbon or the  $\beta$ -carbon of the hybrid ion I.

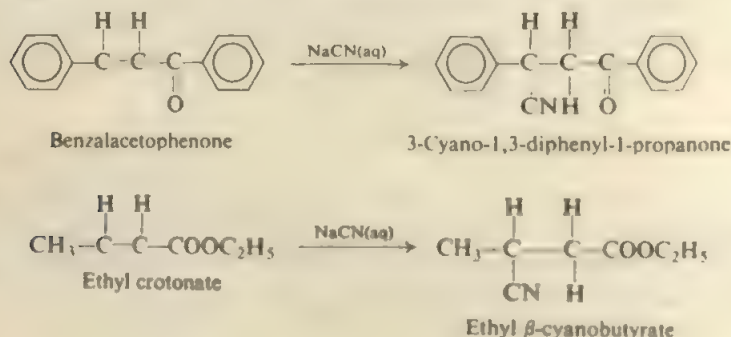


Of the two possibilities, only addition to the  $\beta$ -carbon yields a stable product (III), which is simply the enol form of the saturated carbonyl compound. The enol form then undergoes tautomerization to the keto form to give the observed product (IV).

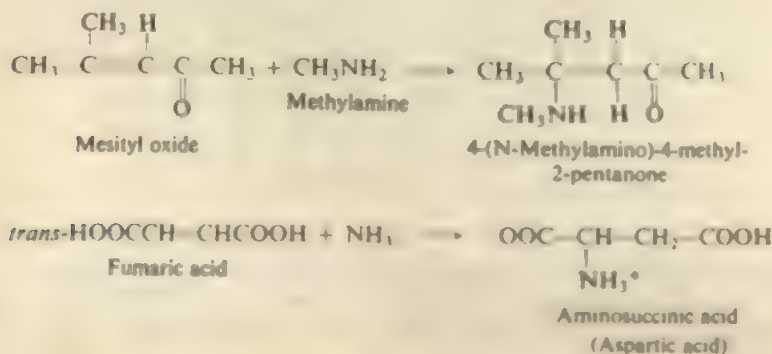


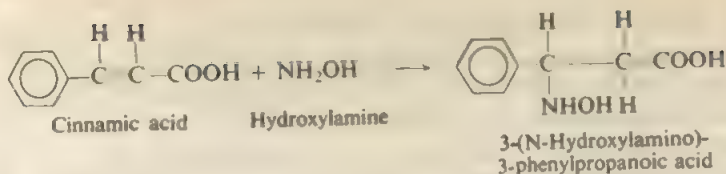
### 32.5 Nucleophilic addition

Aqueous sodium cyanide converts  $\alpha, \beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds into  $\beta$ -cyano carbonyl compounds. The reaction amounts to addition of the elements of HCN to the carbon-carbon double bond. For example:

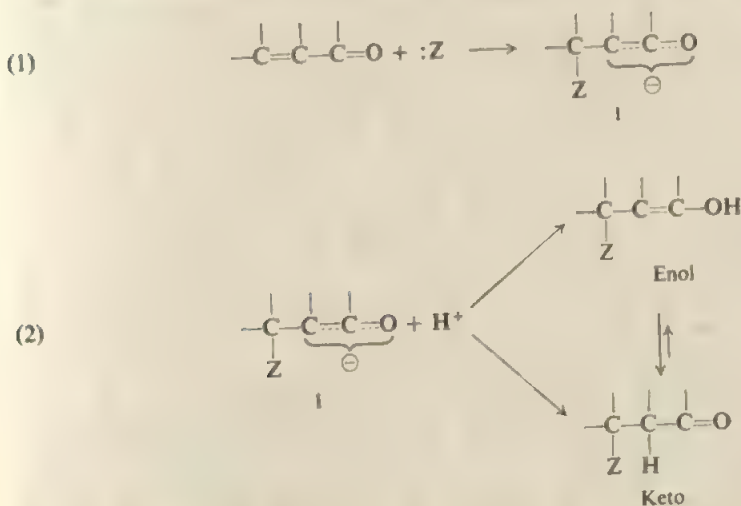


Ammonia or certain derivatives of ammonia (amines, hydroxylamine, phenylhydrazine, etc.) add to  $\alpha, \beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds to yield  $\beta$ -amino carbonyl compounds. For example:





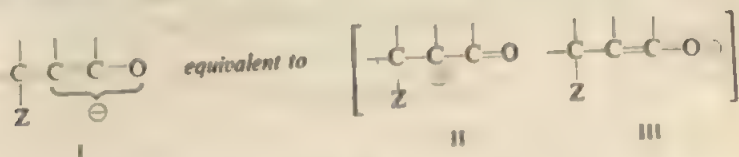
These reactions are believed to take place by the following mechanism:



The nucleophilic reagent adds (step 1) to the carbon-carbon double bond to yield the hybrid anion I, which then accepts (step 2) a hydrogen ion from the solvent to yield the final product. This hydrogen ion can add either to the  $\alpha$ -carbon or to oxygen, and thus yield either the keto or the enol form of the product; in either case the same equilibrium mixture, chiefly keto, is finally obtained.

In the examples we have just seen, the nucleophilic reagent,  $:Z$ , is either the strongly basic anion,  $:CN^-$ , or a neutral base like ammonia and its derivatives,  $:NH_2-G$ . These are the same reagents which, we have seen, add to the carbonyl group of simple aldehydes and ketones. (Indeed, nucleophilic reagents rarely add to the carbon-carbon double bond of  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated *aldehydes*, but rather to the highly reactive carbonyl group.)

These nucleophilic reagents add to the conjugated system in such a way as to form the most stable intermediate anion. The most stable anion is I, which is the hybrid of II and III.

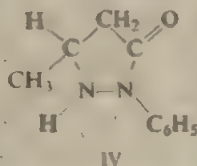


As usual, initial addition occurs to an end of the conjugated system, and in this case to the particular end ( $\beta$ -carbon) that enables the electronegative element oxygen to accommodate the negative charge.

The tendency for  $\alpha, \beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds to undergo nucleophilic addition is thus due not simply to the electron-withdrawing ability of the carbonyl group, but to the existence of the conjugated system that permits formation of the resonance-stabilized anion I. The importance in synthesis of  $\alpha, \beta$ -unsaturated aldehydes, ketones, acids, esters, and nitriles is due to the fact that they provide such a conjugated system.

**Problem 32.6** Draw structures of the anion expected from nucleophilic addition to each of the other positions in the conjugated system and compare its stability with that of I.

**Problem 32.7** Treatment of crotonic acid,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOH}$ , with phenylhydrazine yields compound IV.



To what simple class of compounds does IV belong? How can you account for its formation? (*Hint: See Sec. 20.11.*)

**Problem 32.8** Treatment of acrylonitrile,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCN}$ , with ammonia yields a mixture of two products:  $\beta$ -aminopropionitrile,  $\text{H}_2\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$ , and di( $\beta$ -cyanoethyl)amine,  $\text{NCCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$ . How do you account for their formation?

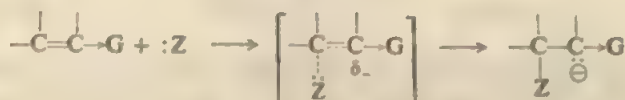
**Problem 32.9** Treatment of ethyl acrylate,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCOOC}_2\text{H}_5$ , with methylamine yields  $\text{CH}_3\text{N}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ . How do you account for its formation?

## 32.6 Comparison of nucleophilic and electrophilic addition

We can see that nucleophilic addition is closely analogous to electrophilic addition: (a) addition proceeds in two steps; (b) the first and controlling step is the formation of an intermediate ion; (c) both orientation of addition and reactivity are determined by the stability of the intermediate ion, or, more exactly, by the stability of the transition state leading to its formation; (d) this stability depends upon dispersal of the charge.

The difference between nucleophilic and electrophilic addition is, of course, that the intermediate ions have opposite charges: negative in nucleophilic addition, positive in electrophilic addition. As a result, the effects of substituents are exactly opposite. Where an electron-withdrawing group deactivates a carbon-carbon double bond toward electrophilic addition, it activates toward nucleophilic addition. An electron-withdrawing group stabilizes the transition state leading to the formation of an intermediate anion in nucleophilic addition by helping to disperse the developing negative charge:

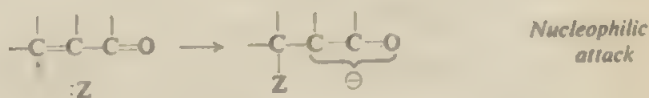
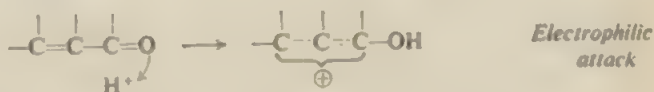
### Nucleophilic addition



*G withdraws electrons: activates*

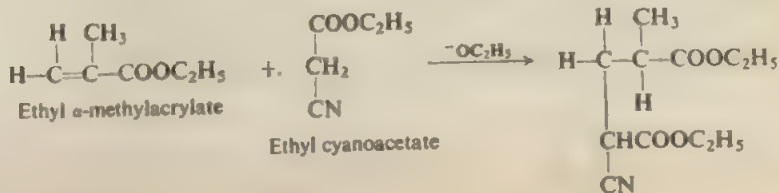
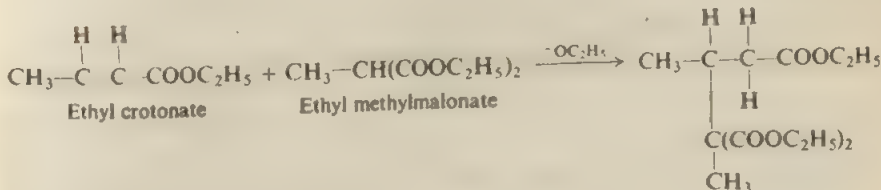
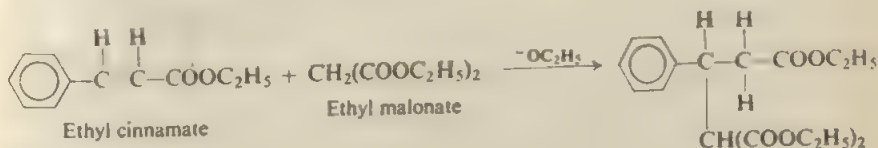
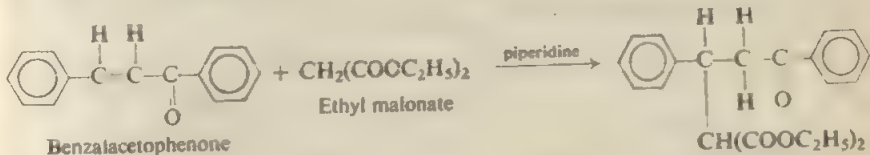


Addition to an  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compound can be understood best in terms of an attack on the entire conjugated system. To yield the most stable intermediate ion, this attack must occur at an end of the conjugated system. A nucleophilic reagent attacks at the  $\beta$ -carbon to form an ion in which the negative charge is partly accommodated by the electronegative atom oxygen, an electrophilic reagent attacks oxygen to form a carbocation in which the positive charge is accommodated by carbon.

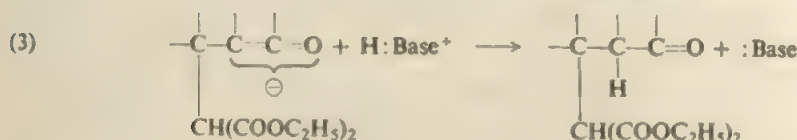
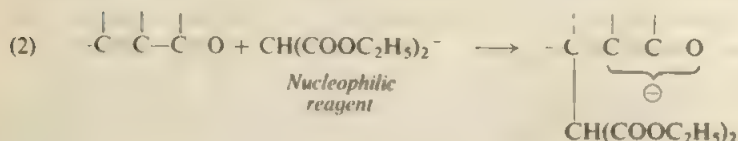
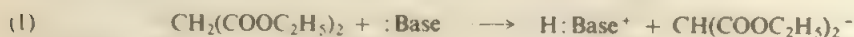


### 32.7 The Michael addition

Of special importance in synthesis is the nucleophilic addition of carbanions to  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds known as the **Michael addition**. Like the reactions of carbanions that we studied in Chapter 26, it results in formation of carbon-carbon bonds. For example:

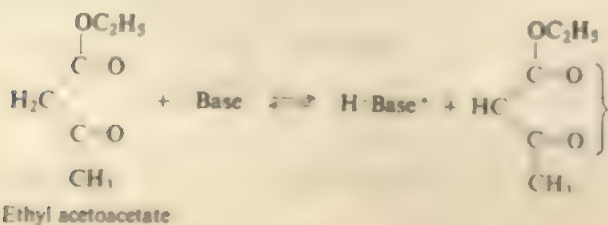
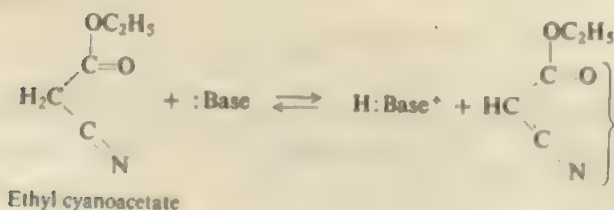
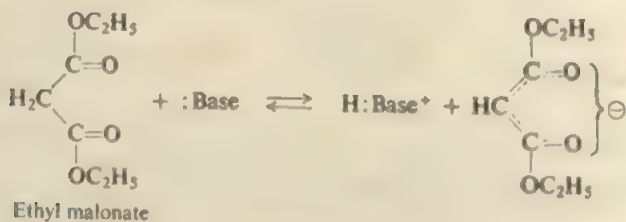


The Michael addition is believed to proceed by the following mechanism (shown for malonic ester):



The function of the base is to abstract (step 1) a hydrogen ion from malonic ester and thus generate a carbanion which, acting as a nucleophilic reagent, then attacks (step 2) the conjugated system in the usual manner.

In general, the compound from which the carbanion is generated must be a fairly acidic substance, so that an appreciable concentration of the carbanion can be obtained. Such a compound is usually one that contains a  $-\text{CH}_2-$  or  $-\text{CH}-$  group flanked by two electron-withdrawing groups which can help accommodate the negative charge of the anion. In place of ethyl malonate, compounds like ethyl cyanoacetate and ethyl acetoacetate can be used.



Ammonia and primary and secondary amines are especially powerful catalysts for the Michael addition. They appear to play a specific role in this reaction: not just to abstract a proton from the reagent to generate a carbanion, but to react with the carbonyl group of the substrate to form an intermediate imine or iminium ion (Sec. 26.8) that is particularly reactive toward nucleophilic addition.

**Problem 32.10** Predict the products of the following Michael additions:

- (a) ethyl crotonate + malonic ester  $\longrightarrow$  A  $\xrightarrow{\text{OH}^-} \xrightarrow{\text{H}^+} \xrightarrow{\text{heat}}$  B  
 (b) ethyl acrylate + ethyl acetoacetate  $\longrightarrow$  C  $\xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}, \text{H}^+}$  D  
 (c) methyl vinyl ketone + malonic ester  $\longrightarrow$  E  
 (d) benzalacetophenone + acetophenone  $\longrightarrow$  F  
 (e) acrylonitrile + allyl cyanide  $\longrightarrow$  G  $\xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}, \text{H}^+}$  H + 2NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>  
 (f) C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>OOC—C≡C—COOC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (1 mol) + ethyl acetoacetate (1 mol)  $\longrightarrow$  I  
 (g) I  $\xrightarrow{\text{strong OH}^-, \text{H}_2\text{O}} \xrightarrow{\text{H}^+}$  J + CH<sub>3</sub>COOH

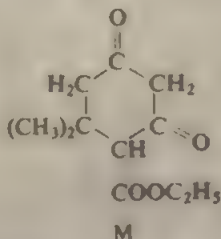
**Problem 32.11** Formaldehyde and malonic ester react in the presence of ethoxide ion to give K, C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>12</sub>O<sub>4</sub>. (a) What is the structure of K? (*Hint*: See Problem 26.3, p. 1023.) (b) How can K be converted into L, (C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>OOC)<sub>2</sub>CHCH<sub>2</sub>CH(COOC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>? (c) What would you get if L were subjected to hydrolysis, acidification, and heat?

**Problem 32.12** Show how a Michael addition followed by an aldol condensation can transform a mixture of methyl vinyl ketone and cyclohexanone into Δ<sup>1,9</sup>-octalone.

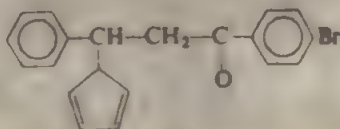


Δ<sup>1,9</sup>-Octalone

**Problem 32.13** When mesityl oxide, (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C=CHCOCH<sub>3</sub>, is treated with ethyl malonate in the presence of sodium ethoxide, compound M is obtained. (a) Outline the steps in its formation. (b) How could M be turned into 5,5-dimethyl-1,3-cyclohexanedione?



**Problem 32.14** In the presence of piperidine (a secondary amine, Sec. 22.14), 1,3-cyclopentadiene and benzal-*p*-bromoacetophenone yield N. Outline the steps in its formation.



N

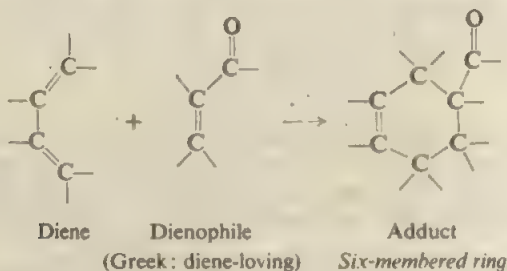
**Problem 32.15** (a) Using as your example the addition of ethyl malonate to benzalacetophenone in the presence of dimethylamine, show how an iminium ion might be formed and act as an intermediate in this reaction.

(b) How do you account for the high reactivity toward nucleophilic addition of such an iminium ion?

(c) Why do tertiary amines not show specific catalytic action in the Michael addition?

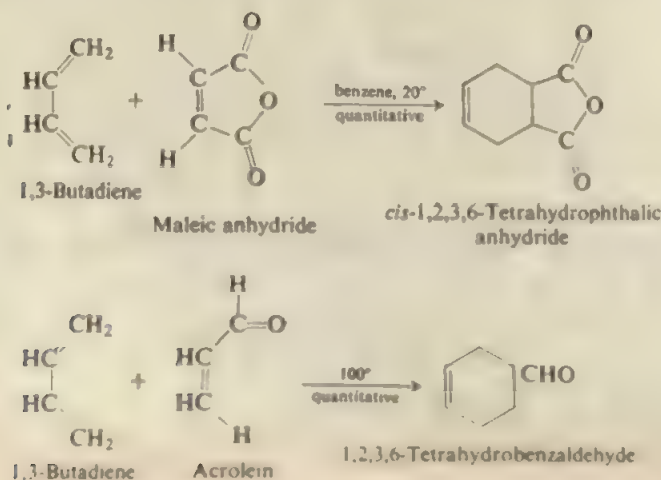
## 32.8 The Diels-Alder reaction

$\alpha, \beta$ -Unsaturated carbonyl compounds undergo an exceedingly useful reaction with conjugated dienes, known as the **Diels-Alder reaction**. This is an addition reaction in which C-1 and C-4 of the conjugated diene system become attached to

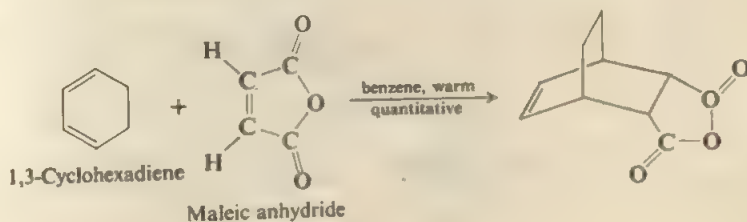
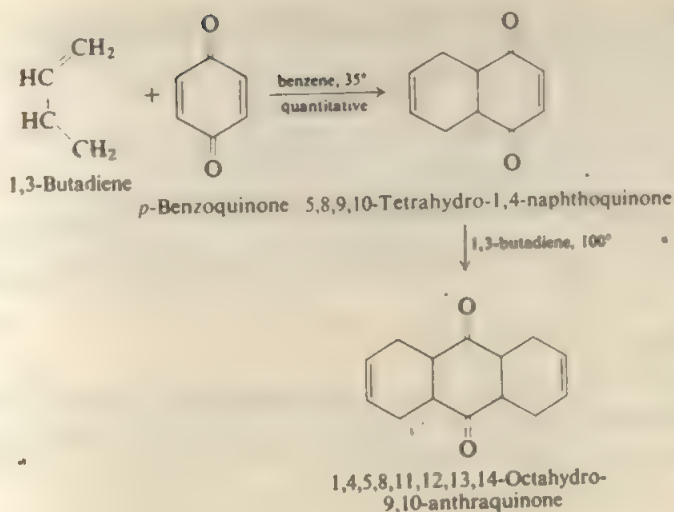


the doubly-bonded carbons of the unsaturated carbonyl compound to form a six-membered ring. A concerted, single-step mechanism is almost certainly involved; both new carbon-carbon bonds are partly formed in the same transition state, although not necessarily to the same extent. The Diels-Alder reaction is the most important example of *cycloaddition*, which is discussed further in Sec. 33.9. Since reaction involves a system of 4  $\pi$  electrons (the diene) and a system of 2  $\pi$  electrons (the dienophile), it is known as a [4 + 2] cycloaddition.

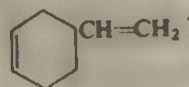
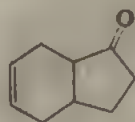
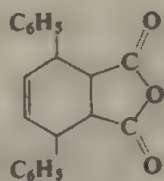
The Diels-Alder reaction is useful not only because a ring is generated, but also because it takes place so readily for a wide variety of reactants. Reaction is favored by electron-withdrawing substituents in the dienophile, but even simple alkenes can react. Reaction often takes place with the evolution of heat when the reactants are simply mixed together. A few examples of the Diels-Alder reaction are:



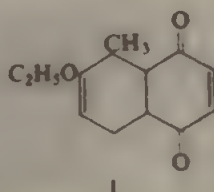




**Problem 32.16** From what reactants could each of the following compounds be synthesized?

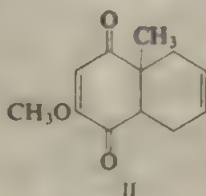


**Problem 32.17** (a) In one synthesis of the hormone *cortisone* (by Lewis Sarett of Merck, Sharp and Dohme), the initial step was the formation of **1** by a Diels-Alder reaction. What were the starting materials?



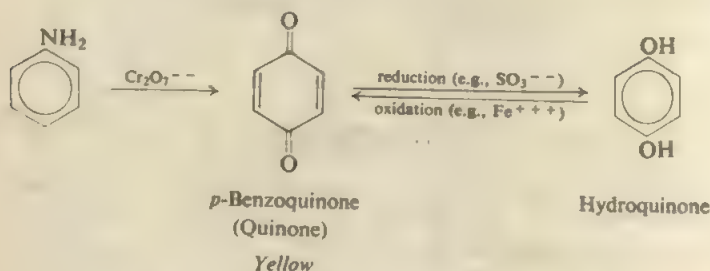
(b) In another synthesis of *cortisone* (by R. B. Woodward, p. 1203), the initial step

was the formation of II by a Diels-Alder reaction. What were the starting materials?



### 32.9 Quinones

$\alpha, \beta$ -Unsaturated ketones of a rather special kind are given the name of **quinones**: these are cyclic diketones of such a structure that they are converted by reduction into hydroquinones, phenols containing two  $\text{—OH}$  groups. For example:



Because they are highly conjugated, quinones are colored: *p*-benzoquinone, for example, is yellow.

Also because they are highly conjugated, quinones are rather closely balanced, energetically, against the corresponding hydroquinones. The ready interconversion provides a convenient oxidation-reduction system that has been studied intensively. Many properties of quinones result from the tendency to form the aromatic hydroquinone system.

Quinones—some related to more complicated aromatic systems (Chap. 34)—have been isolated from biological sources (molds, fungi, higher plants). In many cases they seem to take part in oxidation-reduction cycles essential to the living organism.

**Problem 32.18** When *p*-benzoquinone is treated with HCl, there is obtained 2-chlorohydroquinone. It has been suggested that this product arises via an initial 1,4-addition. Show how this might be so.

**Problem 32.19** (a) Hydroquinone is used in photographic developers to aid in the conversion of silver ion into free silver. What property of hydroquinone is being taken advantage of here?

(b) *p*-Benzoquinone can be used to convert iodide ion into iodine. What property of the quinone is being taken advantage of here?

**Problem 32.20** How do you account for the fact that the treatment of phenol with nitrous acid yields the mono-oxime of *p*-benzoquinone?

## PROBLEMS

1. Outline all steps in a possible laboratory synthesis of each of the unsaturated carbonyl compounds in Table 32.1, p. 1172, using any readily available monofunctional compounds: simple alcohols, aldehydes, ketones, acids, esters, and hydrocarbons.

2. Give the structures of the organic products expected from the reaction of benzalacetone,  $C_6H_5CH=CHCOCH_3$ , with each of the following:

- |                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (a) $H_2, Ni$                    | (l) aniline                    |
| (b) 9-BBN, then $HOCH_2CH_2NH_2$ | (m) $NH_3$                     |
| (c) $NaOI$                       | (n) $NH_2OH$                   |
| (d) $O_3$ , then $Zn, H_2O$      | (o) benzaldehyde, base         |
| (e) $Br_2$                       | (p) ethyl malonate, base       |
| (f) $HCl$                        | (q) ethyl cyanoacetate, base   |
| (g) $HBr$                        | (r) ethyl methylmalonate, base |
| (h) $H_2O, H^+$                  | (s) ethyl acetoacetate, base   |
| (i) $CH_3OH, H^+$                | (t) 1,3-butadiene              |
| (j) $NaCN(aq)$                   | (u) 1,3-cyclohexadiene         |
| (k) $CH_3NH_2$                   | (v) 1,3-cyclopentadiene        |

3. In the presence of base the following pairs of reagents undergo Michael addition. Give the structures of the expected products.

- benzalacetophenone + ethyl cyanoacetate
- ethyl cinnamate + ethyl cyanoacetate
- ethyl fumarate + ethyl malonate
- ethyl acetylenedicarboxylate + ethyl malonate
- mesityl oxide + ethyl malonate
- mesityl oxide + ethyl acetoacetate
- ethyl crotonate + ethyl methylmalonate
- formaldehyde + 2 mol ethyl malonate
- acetaldehyde + 2 mol ethyl acetoacetate
- methyl acrylate + nitromethane
- 2 mol ethyl crotonate + nitromethane
- 3 mol acrylonitrile + nitromethane
- 1 mol acrylonitrile +  $CHCl_3$

4. Give the structures of the compounds expected from the hydrolysis and decarboxylation of the products obtained in Problem 3, parts (a) through (i).

5. Depending upon reaction conditions, dibenzalacetone and ethyl malonate can be made to yield any of three products by Michael addition.

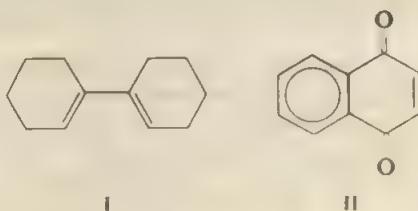
- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| dibenzalacetone + 2 mol ethyl malonate | → A (no unsaturation)               |
| dibenzalacetone + 1 mol ethyl malonate | → B (one carbon-carbon double bond) |
| dibenzalacetone + 1 mol ethyl malonate | → C (no unsaturation)               |

What are A, B, and C?

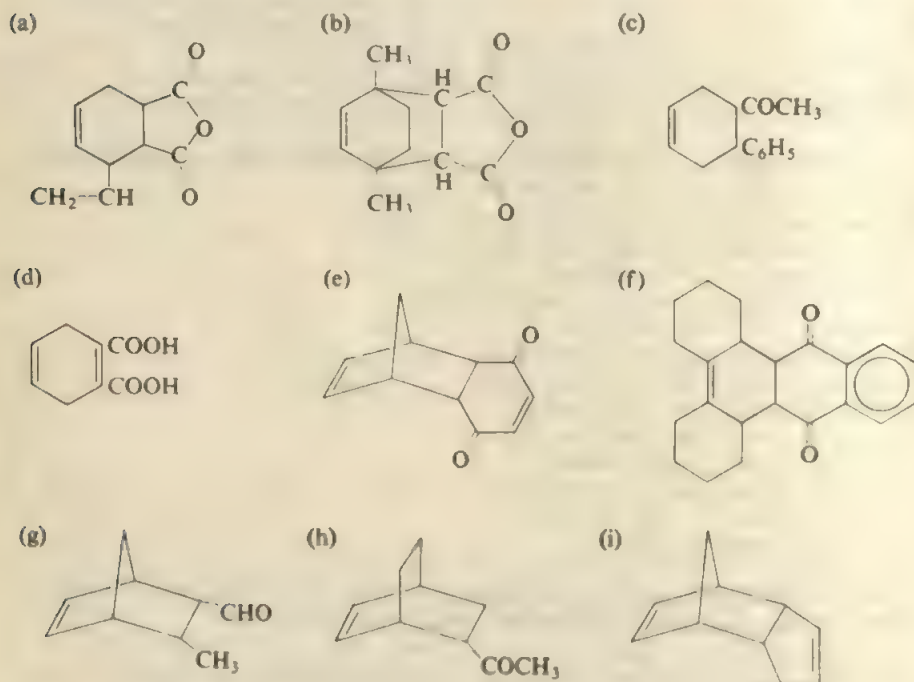
6. Give the structure of the product of the Diels-Alder reaction between:

- maleic anhydride and isoprene
- maleic anhydride and 1,1'-bicyclohexenyl (I)
- maleic anhydride and 1-vinyl-1-cyclohexene
- 1,3-butadiene and methyl vinyl ketone
- 1,3-butadiene and crotonaldehyde
- 2 mol 1,3-butadiene and dibenzalacetone
- 1,3-butadiene and  $\beta$ -nitrostyrene ( $C_6H_5CH=CHNO_2$ )
- 1,3-butadiene and 1,4-naphthoquinone (II)
- p*-benzoquinone and 1,3-cyclohexadiene
- p*-benzoquinone and 1,1'-bicyclohexenyl (I)
- p*-benzoquinone and 2 mol 1,3-cyclohexadiene

- (l) *p*-benzoquinone and 2 mol 1,1'-bicyclohexenyl (I)  
 (m) 1,3-cyclopentadiene and acrylonitrile  
 (n) 1,3-cyclohexadiene and acrolein



7. From what reactants could the following be synthesized by the Diels-Alder reaction?



8. The following observations illustrate one aspect of the stereochemistry of the Diels-Alder reaction:

maleic anhydride + 1,3-butadiene  $\rightarrow$  D ( $C_8H_{10}O_4$ )

D +  $H_2O$ , heat  $\rightarrow$  E ( $C_8H_{10}O_4$ )

E +  $H_2$ , Ni  $\rightarrow$  F ( $C_8H_{12}O_4$ ), m.p.  $192^\circ$

fumaryl chloride (*trans*- $ClOCCH=CHCOCl$ ) + 1,3-butadiene  $\rightarrow$  G ( $C_8H_8O_2Cl_2$ )

G +  $H_2O$ , heat  $\rightarrow$  H ( $C_8H_{10}O_4$ )

H +  $H_2$ , Ni  $\rightarrow$  I ( $C_8H_{12}O_4$ ), m.p.  $215^\circ$

I can be resolved; F cannot be resolved.

Does the Diels-Alder reaction involve a *syn*-addition or an *anti*-addition?

9. On the basis of your answer to Problem 8, give the stereochemical formulas of the products expected from each of the following reactions. Label *meso* compounds and racemic modifications.

(a) crotonaldehyde (*trans*-2-butenal) + 1,3-butadiene

(b) *p*-benzoquinone + 1,3-butadiene

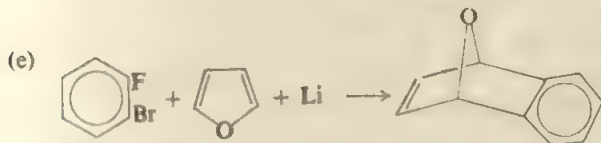
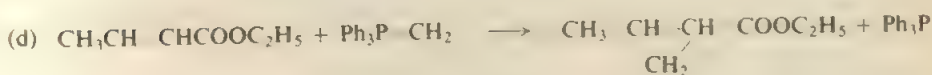
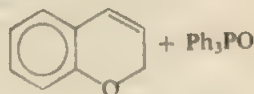
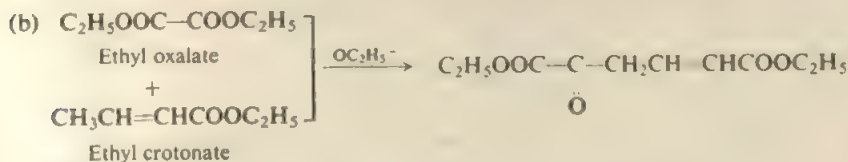
(c) maleic anhydride + 1,3-butadiene, followed by cold alkaline  $KMnO_4$

(d) maleic anhydride + 1,3-butadiene, followed by hot  $KMnO_4$   $\rightarrow$   $C_8H_{10}O_8$



## 10. Account for the following observations:

(a) Dehydration of 3-hydroxy-2,2-dimethylpropanoic acid yields 2-methyl-2-butenic acid.



11. When *citral* (Problem 29, p. 768) is refluxed with aqueous potassium carbonate, acetaldehyde distills from the mixture and 6-methyl-5-hepten-2-one is obtained in high yield. Show all steps in a likely mechanism. (*Hint*: See Sec. 21.5.)

12. In connection with his new research problem, our naive graduate student (Problem 18, p. 766, and Problem 20, p. 883) needed a quantity of the unsaturated alcohol  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHC}(\text{OH})(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)$ . He added a slight excess of benzalacetone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCOCH}_3$ , to a solution of ethylmagnesium bromide, and, by use of a color test, found that the Grignard reagent had been consumed. He worked up the reaction mixture in the usual way with dilute acid. Having learned a little (but not much) from his earlier sad experiences, he tested the product with iodine and sodium hydroxide; when a copious precipitate of iodoform appeared, he concluded that he had simply recovered his starting material.

He threw his product into the waste crock, carefully and methodically destroyed his glassware, burned his laboratory coat, left school, and went into politics, where he did quite well; his career in Washington was marred only, in the opinion of some, by his blind antagonism toward all appropriations for scientific research and his frequent attacks—alternately vitriolic and caustic—on the French.

What had he thrown into the waste crock? How had it been formed?

## 13. Give structures of compounds J through CCC:

- (a) glycerol +  $\text{NaHSO}_4$ , heat  $\longrightarrow$  J ( $\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{O}$ )  
 J + ethyl alcohol +  $\text{HCl}$   $\longrightarrow$  K ( $\text{C}_5\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_2\text{Cl}$ )  
 K +  $\text{NaOH}$ , heat  $\longrightarrow$  L ( $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_2$ )  
 L + cold neutral  $\text{KMnO}_4$   $\longrightarrow$  M ( $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_4$ )  
 M + dilute  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$   $\longrightarrow$  N ( $\text{C}_3\text{H}_6\text{O}_3$ ) + ethyl alcohol
- (b)  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OOC}-\text{C}(\text{C})-\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$  + sodiomalonate ester  $\longrightarrow$  O ( $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}_8$ )  
 O +  $\text{OH}^-$ , heat, then  $\text{H}^+$ , then heat  $\longrightarrow$  P ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_8\text{O}_6$ ), aconitic acid, found in sugar cane and beetroot
- (c) ethyl fumarate + sodiomalonate ester  $\longrightarrow$  Q ( $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}_8$ )  
 Q +  $\text{OH}^-$ , heat, then  $\text{H}^+$ , then heat  $\longrightarrow$  R ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_8\text{O}_6$ ), tricarballic acid

- (d) benzil ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCOC}_6\text{H}_5$ ) + benzyl ketone ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{COCH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ ) + base  $\longrightarrow$  S ( $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{20}\text{O}$ ), "tetracyclone"
- S + maleic anhydride  $\longrightarrow$  T ( $\text{C}_{33}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}_4$ )  
 T + heat  $\longrightarrow$  CO +  $\text{H}_2$  + U ( $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{20}\text{O}_3$ )
- (e) S +  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}\equiv\text{CH}$   $\longrightarrow$  V ( $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{26}\text{O}$ )  
 V + heat  $\longrightarrow$  CO + W ( $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{26}$ )
- (f) acetone +  $\text{BrMgC}\equiv\text{COC}_2\text{H}_5$ , then  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$   $\longrightarrow$  X ( $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_2$ )  
 X +  $\text{H}_2$ , Pd/CaCO<sub>3</sub>  $\longrightarrow$  Y ( $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_2$ )  
 Y +  $\text{H}^+$ , warm  $\longrightarrow$  Z ( $\text{C}_5\text{H}_8\text{O}$ ),  $\beta$ -methylcrotonaldehyde
- (g) ethyl 3-methyl-2-butenolate + ethyl cyanoacetate + base  $\longrightarrow$  AA ( $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_4\text{N}$ )  
 AA +  $\text{OH}^-$ , heat; then  $\text{H}^+$ , then heat  $\longrightarrow$  BB ( $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_4$ )
- (h) mesityl oxide + ethyl malonate + base  $\longrightarrow$  CC ( $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}_3$ )  
 CC + NaOBr, OH<sup>-</sup>, heat; then  $\text{H}^+$   $\longrightarrow$  CHBr<sub>3</sub> + BB ( $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_4$ )
- (i)  $\text{CH}_3\text{C}\equiv\text{CNa}$  + acetaldehyde  $\longrightarrow$  DD ( $\text{C}_5\text{H}_8\text{O}$ )  
 DD +  $\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$   $\longrightarrow$  EE ( $\text{C}_5\text{H}_6\text{O}$ )
- (j) 3-pentyn-2-one +  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ,  $\text{Hg}^{++}$ ,  $\text{H}^+$   $\longrightarrow$  FF ( $\text{C}_5\text{H}_8\text{O}_2$ )
- (k) mesityl oxide + NaOCl, then  $\text{H}^+$   $\longrightarrow$  GG ( $\text{C}_5\text{H}_8\text{O}_2$ )
- (l) methallyl chloride (3-chloro-2-methylpropene) + HOCl  $\longrightarrow$  HH ( $\text{C}_4\text{H}_8\text{OCl}_2$ )  
 HH + KCN  $\longrightarrow$  II ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_8\text{ON}_2$ )  
 II +  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , heat  $\longrightarrow$  JJ ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_8\text{O}_4$ )
- (m) ethyl adipate + NaOEt  $\longrightarrow$  KK ( $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_3$ )  
 KK + methyl vinyl ketone + base  $\xrightarrow{\text{Michael}}$  LL ( $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}_4$ )  
 LL + base  $\xrightarrow{\text{aldol}}$  MM ( $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_3$ )
- (n) hexachloro-1,3-cyclopentadiene +  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$  + KOH  $\longrightarrow$  NN ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6\text{Cl}_4\text{O}_2$ )  
 NN +  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}_2$ , heat, pressure  $\longrightarrow$  OO ( $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{10}\text{Cl}_4\text{O}_2$ )  
 OO + Na + *t*-BuOH  $\longrightarrow$  PP ( $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_2$ )  
 PP + dilute acid  $\longrightarrow$  QQ ( $\text{C}_7\text{H}_8\text{O}$ ), 7-ketonorbornene
- (o) ethyl acetamidomalonnate [ $\text{CH}_3\text{CONHCH}(\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ ] + acrolein  $\xrightarrow{\text{Michael}}$  RR ( $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{19}\text{O}_6\text{N}$ )  
 RR + KCN + acetic acid  $\longrightarrow$  SS ( $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{20}\text{O}_6\text{N}_2$ )  
 SS + acid + heat  $\longrightarrow$  TT ( $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}_5\text{N}_2$ )  
 TT +  $\text{H}_2$ , catalyst, in acetic anhydride  $\longrightarrow$  [UU ( $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{24}\text{O}_4\text{N}_2$ )]  
 UU  $\xrightarrow{\text{acetic anhydride}}$  VV ( $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{26}\text{O}_6\text{N}_2$ )  
 VV + OH<sup>-</sup>, heat; then  $\text{H}^+$ , then heat  $\longrightarrow$  WW ( $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{16}\text{O}_2\text{N}_2$ )
- (p) acrylonitrile + ethyl malonate  $\xrightarrow{\text{Michael}}$  XX ( $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{15}\text{O}_4\text{N}$ )  
 XX +  $\text{H}_2$ , catalyst  $\longrightarrow$  [YY ( $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{11}\text{O}_4\text{N}$ )]  $\longrightarrow$  ZZ ( $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{11}\text{O}_3\text{N}$ )  
 ZZ +  $\text{SO}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , in  $\text{CHCl}_3$   $\longrightarrow$  AAA ( $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_4\text{NCl}$ )  
 AAA + HCl, heat  $\longrightarrow$  BBB ( $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_2\text{NCl}$ )  
 BBB  $\xrightarrow{\text{base}}$  CCC ( $\text{C}_8\text{H}_8\text{O}_2\text{N}$ )

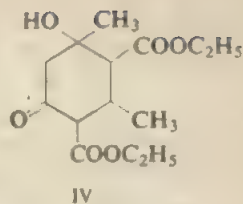
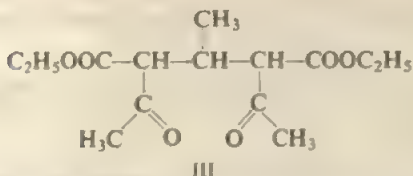
14. *Spermine*,  $\text{H}_2\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$ , found in seminal fluid, has been synthesized from acrylonitrile and 1,4-diaminobutane (putrescine). Show how this was probably done.

15. Outline all steps in each of the following syntheses

- (a)  $\text{HOOC}-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-\text{COOH}$  from adipic acid  
 (b)  $\text{HC}\equiv\text{C}-\text{CHO}$  from acrolein (*Hint*: See Problem 13(a), above.)  
 (c)  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$  from acetone and formaldehyde  
 (d)  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}=\text{CH}_2$  from vinylacetylene  
 (e)  $\beta$ -phenylglutaric acid from benzaldehyde and aliphatic reagents  
 (f) phenylsuccinic acid from benzaldehyde and aliphatic reagents  
 (g) 4-phenyl-2,6-heptanedione from benzaldehyde and aliphatic reagents (*Hint*: See Problem 3(f), above.)

16. Treatment of ethyl acetoacetate with acetaldol side in the presence of the base piperidine was found to give a product of formula  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}_4$ . Controversy arose about its structure: did it have open-chain structure III or cyclic structure IV, each formed by

combinations of aldol and Michael condensations?

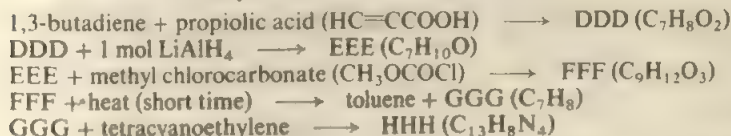


- (a) Show just how each possible product could have been formed.  
 (b) Then the NMR spectrum of the compound was found to be the following:

- a* complex,  $\delta$  0.95–1.10, 3H
- b* singlet,  $\delta$  1.28, 3H
- c* triplet, centered at  $\delta$  1.28, 3H
- d* triplet, centered at  $\delta$  1.32, 3H
- e* singlet,  $\delta$  2.5, 2H
- f* broad singlet,  $\delta$  3.5, 1H
- g* complex,  $\delta$  2–4, total of 3H
- h* quartet,  $\delta$  4.25, 2H
- i* quartet,  $\delta$  4.30, 2H

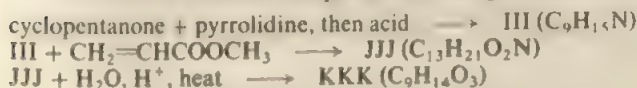
Which structure is the correct one? Assign all peaks in the spectrum. Describe the spectrum you would expect from the other possibility.

**17. Give the likely structures for GGG and HHH.**

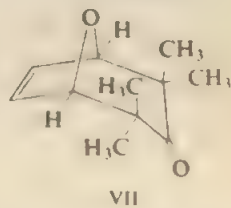
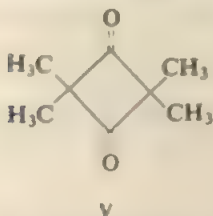


Compound GGG is not toluene or 1,3,5-cycloheptatriene; on standing at room temperature it is converted fairly rapidly into toluene. Compound GGG gives the following spectral data. Ultraviolet:  $\lambda_{\text{max}}$  303 nm,  $\epsilon_{\text{max}}$  4400. Infrared: strong bands at 3020, 2900, 1595, 1400, 864, 692, and  $645\text{ cm}^{-1}$ ; medium bands at 2850, 1152, and  $790\text{ cm}^{-1}$ .

**18. Give structures of compounds III through KKK, and account for their formation:**



**19. Irradiation by ultraviolet light of 2,2,4,4-tetramethyl-1,3-cyclobutanedione (V) produces tetramethylethylene and two moles of carbon monoxide. When the irradiation is carried out in furan (VI), there is obtained a product believed to have the structure VII.**



(a) Chief support for structure VII comes from elemental analysis, mol. wt. determination, and NMR data:

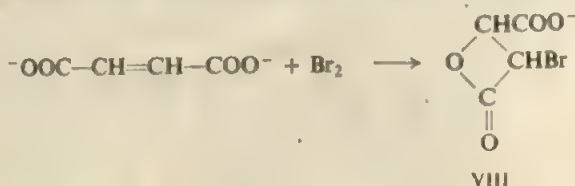
- a* singlet,  $\delta$  0.85, 6H
- b* singlet,  $\delta$  1.25, 6H
- c* singlet,  $\delta$  4.32, 2H
- d* singlet,  $\delta$  6.32, 2H

Show how the NMR data support the proposed structure. Why should there be two singlets of 6H each instead of one peak of 12H?

(b) It is proposed that, in the formation of tetramethylethylene, one mole of carbon monoxide is lost at a time. Draw electronic structures to show all steps in such a two-stage mechanism. How does the formation of VII support such a mechanism?

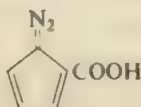
20. In the reaction of benzaldehyde with semicarbazide to form the semicarbazone (Sec. 18.13) the anilinium ion is a *much* more effective catalyst than a carboxylic acid of the same acidity. How might you account for this?

21.  $\beta$ -Lactones cannot be made from  $\beta$ -hydroxyacids. The  $\beta$ -lactone VIII was obtained, however, by treatment of sodium maleate (or sodium fumarate) with bromine water.

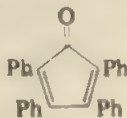


This experiment, reported in 1937 by P. D. Bartlett and D. S. Tarbell (of Harvard University), was an important step in the establishment of the mechanism of addition of halogens to carbon-carbon double bonds. Why is this so? How do you account for the formation of the  $\beta$ -lactone?

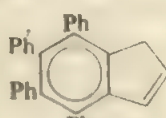
22. When the sodium salt of diazocyclopentadiene-2-carboxylic acid (IX) is heated above  $140^\circ$ ,  $\text{N}_2$  and  $\text{CO}_2$  are evolved. If IX is heated in solution with tetracyclone (X),  $\text{CO}$



IX



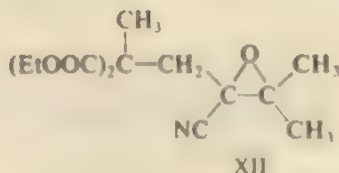
X



XI

is evolved as well, and 4,5,6,7-tetraphenylindene (XI) is obtained. Show all steps in a likely mechanism for the formation of XI. (*Hint*: See Problem 10(e) above.) Of what special theoretical interest are these findings?

23. When ethyl methylmalonate, acetone, and  $\alpha$ -chloroacrylonitrile ( $\text{CH}_2=\text{CClCN}$ ) are allowed to react in the presence of base, there is obtained the epoxy compound XII. Show all steps in a likely mechanism for the formation of XII.





## Molecular Orbitals. Orbital Symmetry

### 33.1 Molecular orbital theory

The structure of molecules is best understood through quantum mechanics. Exact quantum mechanical calculations are enormously complicated, and so various methods of approximation have been worked out to simplify the mathematics. The method that is often the most useful for the organic chemist is based on the concept of *molecular orbitals*: orbitals that are centered, not about individual nuclei, but about all the nuclei in the molecule.

What are the various molecular orbitals of a molecule like? What is their order of stability? How are electrons distributed among them? These are things we must know if we are to understand the relative stability of molecules: why certain molecules are aromatic, for example. These are things we must know if we are to understand the course of many chemical reactions: their stereochemistry, for example, and how easy or difficult they are to bring about; indeed, whether or not they will occur at all.

We cannot learn here how to make quantum mechanical calculations, but we can see what the results of some of these calculations are, and learn a little about how to use them.

In this chapter, then, we shall learn what is meant by the *phase* of an orbital, and what *bonding* and *antibonding* orbitals are. We shall see, in a non-mathematical way, what lies behind the Hückel  $4n + 2$  rule for aromaticity. And finally, we shall take a brief look at a recent—and absolutely fundamental—development in chemical theory: the application of the concept of *orbital symmetry* to the understanding of organic reactions.

### 33.2 Wave equations. Phase

In our first description of atomic and molecular structure, we said that electrons show properties not only of particles but also of waves. We must examine a little more closely the wave character of electrons, and see how this is involved in

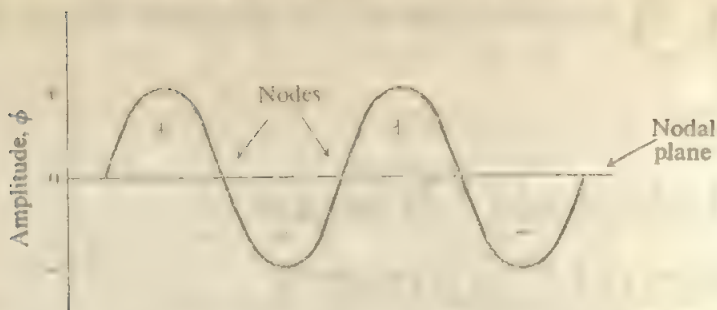


Figure 33.1. Standing waves. Plus and minus signs show relative phases.

chemical bonding. First, let us look at some properties of waves in general.

Let us consider the *standing waves* (or *stationary waves*) generated by the vibration of a string secured at both ends: the wave generated by, say, the plucking of a guitar string (Fig. 33.1). As we proceed horizontally along the string from left to right, we find that the vertical displacement—the *amplitude* of the wave—increases in one direction, passes through a maximum, decreases to zero, and then increases in the opposite direction. The places where the amplitude is zero are called *nodes*. In Fig. 33.1 they lie in a plane—the *nodal plane*—perpendicular to the plane of the paper. Displacement upward and displacement downward correspond to opposite *phases* of the wave. To distinguish between phases, we arbitrarily assign algebraic signs to the amplitude: plus for, say, displacement upward, and minus for displacement downward. If we were to superimpose similar waves on one another exactly *out of phase*—that is, with the crests of one lined up with the troughs of the other—they would cancel each other; that is to say, the sum of their amplitudes, + and –, would be zero.

The differential equation that describes the wave is a *wave equation*. Solution of this equation gives the amplitude,  $\phi$ , as a function,  $f(x)$ , of the distance,  $x$ , along the wave. Such a function is a *wave function*.

Now, electron waves are described by a wave equation of the same general form as that for string waves. The wave functions that are acceptable solutions to this equation again give the amplitude,  $\phi$ , this time as a function, not of a single coordinate, but of the three coordinates necessary to describe motion in three dimensions. It is these electron wave functions that we call *orbitals*.

Any wave equation has a *set* of solutions—an infinity of them, actually—each corresponding to a different energy level! The *quantum* thus comes naturally out of the mathematics.

Like a string wave, an electron wave can have nodes, where the amplitude is zero. On opposite sides of a node the amplitude has opposite signs, that is, the wave is of opposite phases. Of special interest to us is the fact that between the two lobes of a *p* orbital lies a nodal plane, perpendicular to the axis of the orbital (Fig. 33.2). The two lobes are of opposite phase, and this is often indicated by + and – signs.

As used here, the signs do not have anything to do with charge. They simply indicate that the amplitude is of opposite algebraic sign in the two lobes. To avoid confusion, we shall show lobes as shaded and unshaded. Two shaded lobes are of the same phase, both plus or both minus—it does not matter which. Similarly, two unshaded lobes are of the same phase, a shaded lobe and an unshaded lobe are of opposite phase.

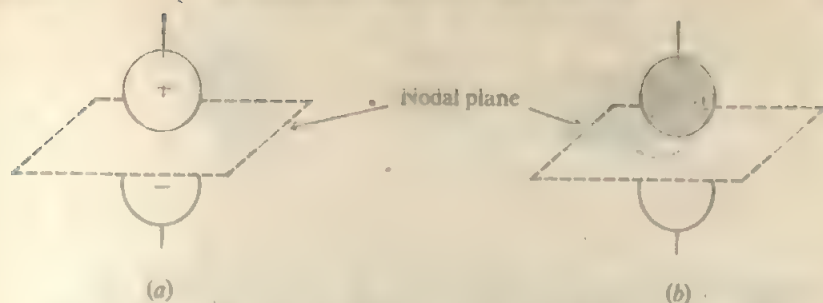


Figure 33.2. The  $p$  orbital. The two lobes are of opposite phase, indicated either (a) by plus and minus signs or (b) by shading.

The amplitude or wave function,  $\phi$ , is the orbital. As is generally true for waves, however, it is the square of the amplitude,  $\phi^2$ , that has physical meaning. For electron waves,  $\phi^2$  represents the probability of finding an electron at any particular place. The fuzzballs or simple spheres we draw to show the "shapes" of orbitals are crude representations of the space within which  $\phi^2$  has a particular value—the space within which the electron spends, say, 95% of its time. Whether  $\phi$  is positive or negative,  $\phi^2$  is of course positive; this makes sense, since probability cannot be negative. The usual practice is to draw the lobes of a  $p$  orbital to represent  $\phi^2$ : if + or – signs are added, or one lobe is shaded and the other unshaded, this is to show the relative signs of  $\phi$ .

### 33.3 Molecular orbitals. LCAO method

As chemists, we picture molecules as collections of atoms held together by bonds. We consider the bonds to arise from the overlap of an atomic orbital of one atom with an atomic orbital of another atom. A new orbital is formed, which is occupied by a pair of electrons of opposite spin. Each electron is attracted by both positive nuclei, and the increase in electrostatic attraction gives the bond its strength, that is, stabilizes the molecule relative to the isolated atoms.

This highly successful qualitative model parallels the most convenient quantum mechanical approach to molecular orbitals: **the method of linear combination of atomic orbitals (LCAO)**. We have assumed that the shapes and dispositions of bond orbitals are related in a simple way to the shapes and dispositions of atomic orbitals. The LCAO method makes the same assumption *mathematically*: to calculate an approximate molecular orbital,  $\psi$ , one uses a *linear combination* (that is, a combination through addition or subtraction) of atomic orbitals

$$\psi = \phi_A + \phi_B$$

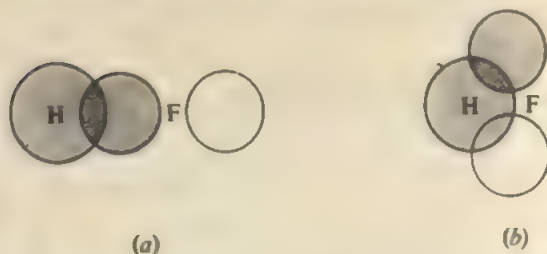
where

$\psi$  is the molecular orbital  
 $\phi_A$  is atomic orbital A  
 $\phi_B$  is atomic orbital B

The rationale for this assumption is simple: when the electron is near atom A,  $\psi$  resembles  $\phi_A$ ; when the electron is near atom B,  $\psi$  resembles  $\phi_B$ .

Now this combination is *effective*—that is, the molecular orbital is appreciably more stable than the atomic orbitals—only if the atomic orbitals  $\phi_A$  and  $\phi_B$

- (a) overlap to a considerable extent;
- (b) are of comparable energy; and
- (c) have the same symmetry about the bond axis.



**Figure 33.3.** The hydrogen fluoride molecule: dependence of overlap on orbital symmetry. (a) Overlap of lobes of same phase leads to bonding. (b) Positive overlap and negative overlap cancel each other.

These requirements can be justified mathematically. Qualitatively, we can say this: if there is not considerable overlap, the energy of  $\psi$  is equal to either that of  $\phi_A$  or that of  $\phi_B$ ; if the energy of  $\phi_A$  and  $\phi_B$  are quite different, the energy of  $\psi$  is essentially that of the more stable atomic orbital. In either case, there is no significant stabilization, and no bond formation.

When we speak of the symmetry of orbitals, we are referring to the relative phases of lobes, and their disposition in space. To see what is meant by requirement (c), that the overlapping orbitals have the same symmetry, let us look at one example: hydrogen fluoride. This molecule can be pictured as resulting from overlap of the  $s$  orbital of hydrogen with a  $p$  orbital of fluorine. In Fig. 33.3a, we use the  $2p_x$  orbital, where the  $x$  coordinate is taken as the H—F axis. The shaded  $s$  orbital overlaps the shaded lobe of the  $p$  orbital, and a bond forms. If, however, we were to use the  $2p_z$  (or  $2p_y$ ) orbital as in Fig. 33.3b, overlap of *both* lobes—plus and minus—would occur and cancel each other. That is, the positive overlap integral would be exactly canceled by the negative overlap integral; the net effect would be *no overlap*, and no bond formation. The dependence of overlap on phase is fundamental to chemical bonding.

### 33.4 Bonding and antibonding orbitals

Quantum mechanics shows that linear combination of two functions gives, not one, but *two* combinations and hence *two* molecular orbitals: a *bonding* orbital, more stable than the component atomic orbitals; and an *antibonding* orbital, less stable than the component orbitals.

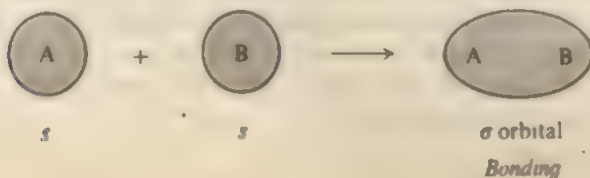
$$\psi_+ = \phi_A + \phi_B$$

Bonding orbital:  
stabilizes molecule

$$\psi_- = \phi_A - \phi_B$$

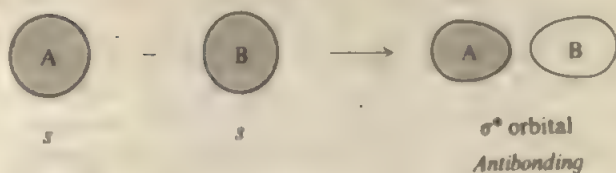
Antibonding orbital:  
destabilizes molecule

Two  $s$  orbitals, for example, can be added,





or subtracted.



We can see, in a general way, why there must be two combinations. There can be as many as two electrons in each component atomic orbital, making a total of four electrons; two molecular orbitals are required to accommodate them.

Figure 33.4 shows schematically the shapes of the molecular orbitals, bonding and antibonding, that result from overlap of various kinds of atomic orbitals. We recognize the bonding orbitals,  $\sigma$  and  $\pi$ , although until now we have not shown the

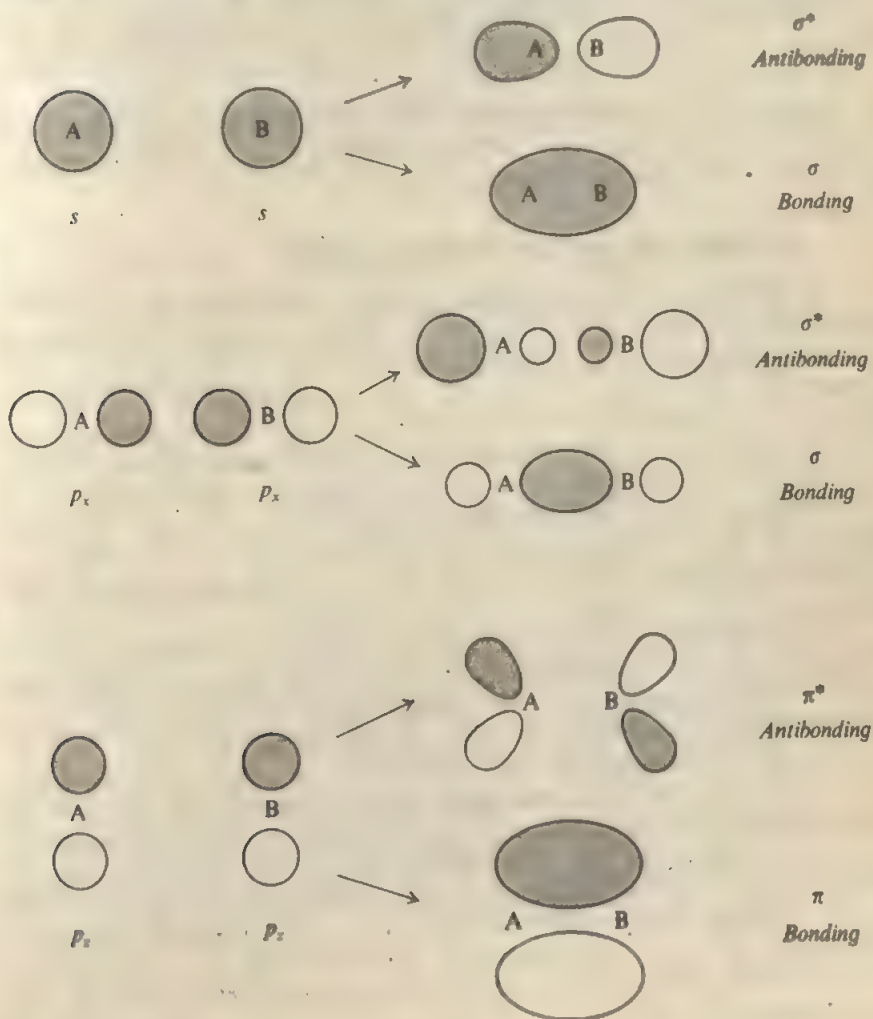


Figure 33.4. Bonding and antibonding orbitals.

two lobes of a  $\pi$  orbital as being of opposite phase. An antibonding orbital, we see, has a nodal plane perpendicular to the bond axis, and cutting between the atomic nuclei. The antibonding sigma orbital,  $\sigma^*$ , thus consists of two lobes, of opposite phase. The antibonding pi orbital,  $\pi^*$ , consists of four lobes.

In a bonding orbital, electrons are concentrated in the region between the nuclei, where they can be attracted by both nuclei. The increase in electrostatic attraction lowers the energy of the system. In an antibonding orbital, by contrast, electrons are *not* concentrated between the nuclei; electron charge is zero in the nodal plane. Electrons spend most of their time farther from a nucleus than in the separated atoms. There is a decrease in electrostatic attraction, and an increase in repulsion between the nuclei. The energy of the system is higher than that of the separated atoms. *Where electrons in a bonding orbital tend to hold the atoms together, electrons in an antibonding orbital tend to force the atoms apart.*

It may at first seem strange that electrons in certain orbitals can actually weaken the bonding. Should not *any* electrostatic attraction, even if less than optimum, be better than none? We must remember that it is the bond dissociation energy we are concerned with. We are not comparing the electrostatic attraction in an antibonding orbital with no electrostatic attraction, we are comparing it with the stronger electrostatic attraction in the separated atoms.

There are, in addition, orbitals of a third kind, *non-bonding orbitals*. As the name indicates, electrons in these orbitals—unshared pairs, for example—neither strengthen nor weaken the bonding between atoms.

### 33.5 Electronic configurations of some molecules

Let us look at the electronic configurations of some familiar molecules. The shapes and relative stabilities of the various molecular orbitals are calculated by quantum mechanics, and we shall simply use the results of these calculations. We picture the nuclei in place, with the molecular orbitals mapped out about them, and we feed electrons into the orbitals. In doing this we follow the same rules that we followed in arriving at the electronic configurations of atoms. There can be only two electrons—and of opposite spin—in each orbital, with orbitals of lower energy being filled up first. If there are orbitals of equal energy, each gets an electron before any one of them gets a pair of electrons. We shall limit our attention to orbitals containing  $\pi$  electrons, since these electrons will be the ones of chief interest to us.

For the  $\pi$  electrons of ethylene (Fig. 33.5), there are two molecular orbitals since there are two linear combinations of the two component  $p$  orbitals. The broken line in the figure indicates the non-bonding energy level; below it lies the bonding orbital,  $\pi$ , and above it lies the antibonding orbital,  $\pi^*$ .

Normally, a molecule exists in the state of lowest energy, the *ground state*. But, as we have seen (Sec. 17.8), absorption of light of the right frequency (in the ultraviolet region) raises a molecule to an *excited state*, a state of higher energy. In the ground state of ethylene, we see, both  $\pi$  electrons are in the  $\pi$  orbital; this configuration is specified as  $\pi^2$ , where the superscript tells the number of electrons in that orbital. In the excited state one electron is in the  $\pi$  orbital and the other—still of opposite spin—is in the  $\pi^*$  orbital, this configuration,  $\pi\pi^*$ , is naturally the less stable since only one electron helps to hold the atoms together, while the other tends to force them apart.

For 1,3-butadiene, with four component  $p$  orbitals, there are four molecular

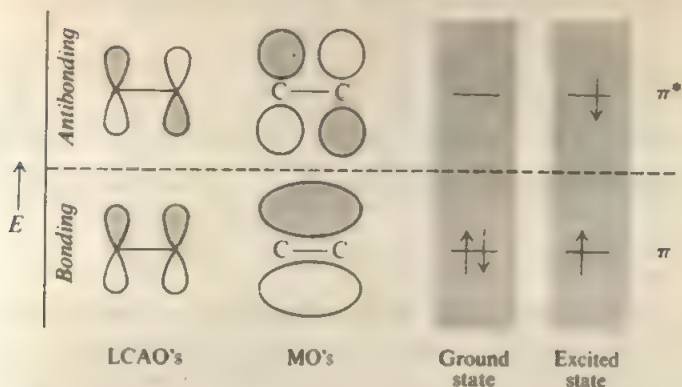


Figure 33.5. Ethylene. Configuration of  $\pi$  electrons in ground state and excited state.

orbitals for  $\pi$  electrons (Fig. 33.6). The ground state has the configuration  $\psi_1^2\psi_2^2$ ; that is, there are two electrons in each of the bonding orbitals,  $\psi_1$  and  $\psi_2$ . The higher of these,  $\psi_2$ , resembles two isolated  $\pi$  orbitals, although it is of somewhat lower energy. Orbital  $\psi_1$  encompasses all four carbons; this delocalization provides the net stabilization of the conjugated system. Absorption of light of the right frequency raises one electron to  $\psi_3$ .

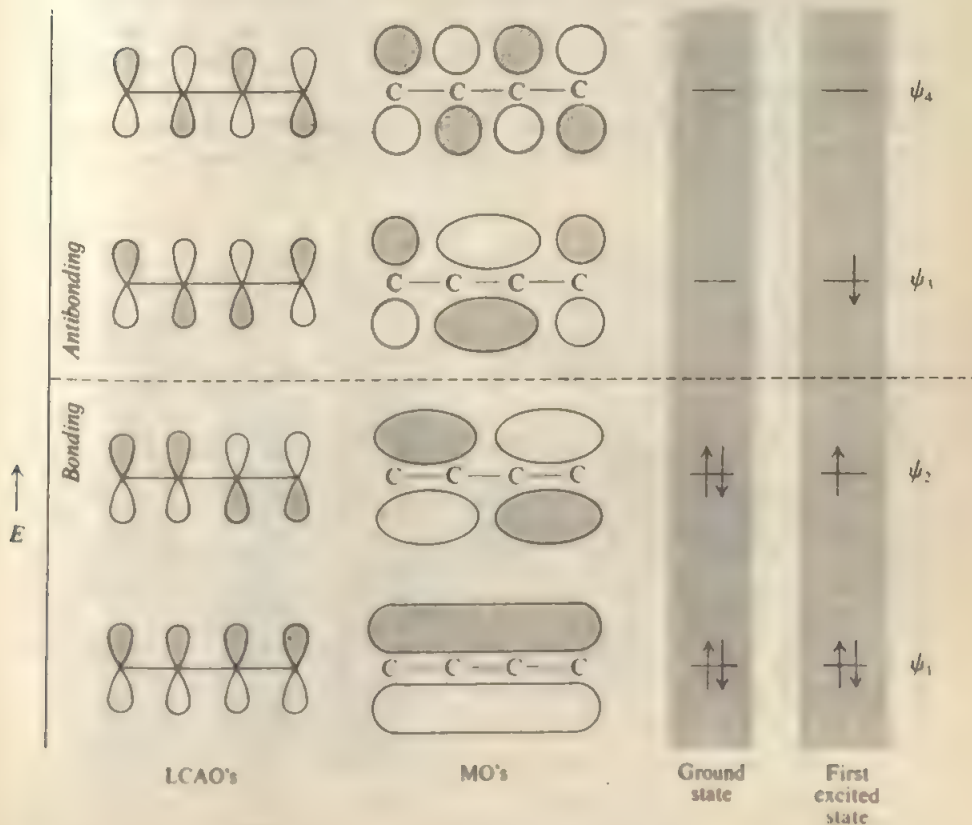
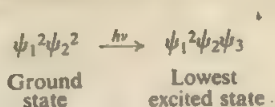
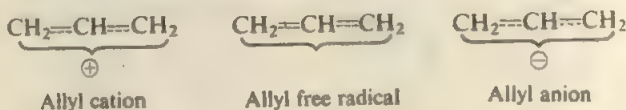


Figure 33.6. 1,3-Butadiene. Configuration of  $\pi$  electrons in ground state and first excited state.



Next, let us look at the allyl system: cation, free radical, and anion. Regardless



of the number of  $\pi$  electrons, there are three component  $p$  orbitals, one on each carbon, and they give rise to three molecular orbitals,  $\psi_1$ ,  $\psi_2$ , and  $\psi_3$ . As shown in Fig. 33.7,  $\psi_1$  is bonding and  $\psi_3$  is antibonding. Orbital  $\psi_2$  encompasses only the end carbons (there is a node at the middle carbon) and is of the same energy as an isolated  $p$  orbital; it is therefore non-bonding.

The allyl cation has  $\pi$  electrons only in the bonding orbital. The free radical has one electron in the non-bonding orbital as well, and the anion has two in the non-bonding orbital. The bonding orbital  $\psi_1$  encompasses all three carbons, and is more stable than a localized  $\pi$  orbital involving only two carbons; it is this delocalization that gives allylic particles their special stability. We see the symmetry we have attributed to allylic particles on the basis of the resonance theory; the two ends of each of these molecules are equivalent.

Finally, let us look at benzene. There are six combinations of the six component  $p$  orbitals, and hence six molecular orbitals. Of these, we shall consider only three combinations, which correspond to the three most stable molecular orbitals, all bonding orbitals (Fig. 33.8). Each contains a pair of electrons. The lowest orbital,  $\psi_1$ , encompasses all six carbons. Orbitals  $\psi_2$  and  $\psi_3$  are of different shape, but equal energy; together they provide—as does  $\psi_1$ —equal electron density at all

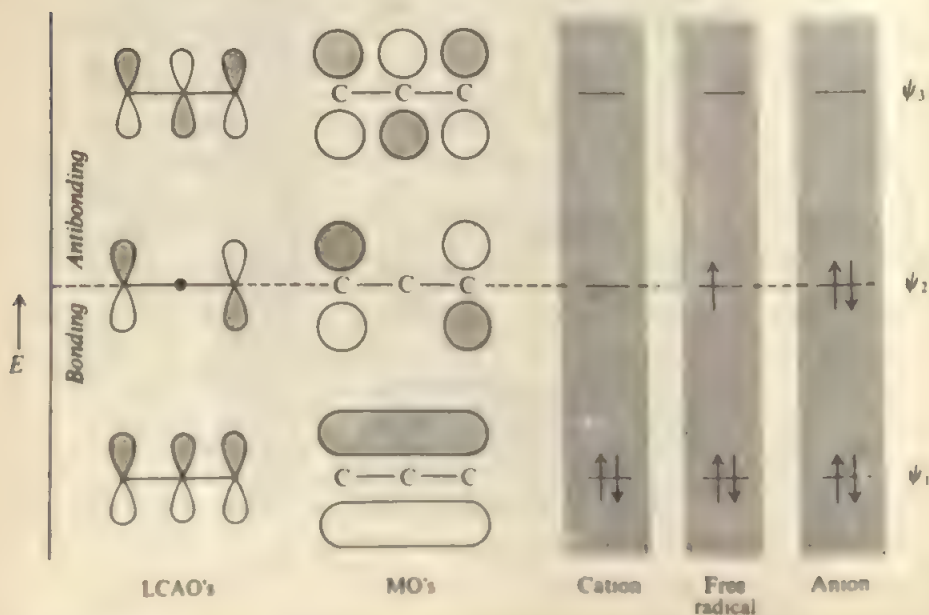
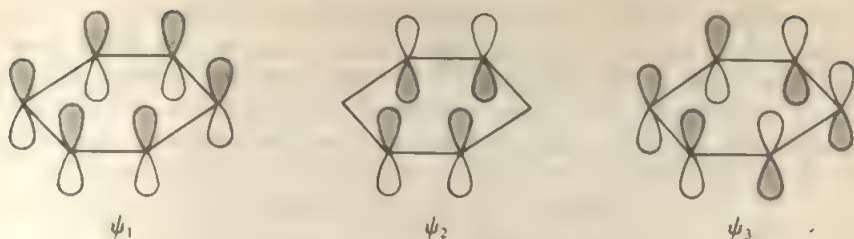


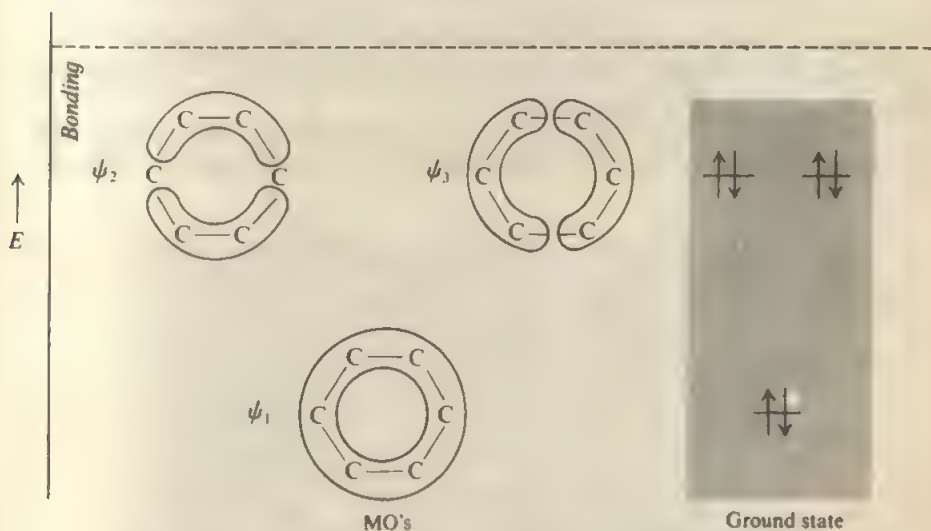
Figure 33.7. Allyl system Configuration of  $\pi$  electrons in cation, free radical, and anion





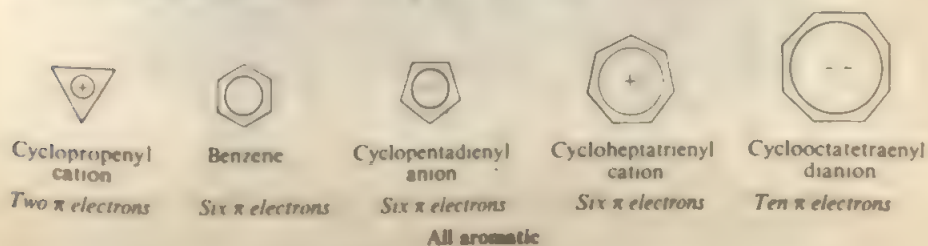
Benzene: first three LCAO's

six carbons. The net result, then, is a highly symmetrical molecule with considerable delocalization of  $\pi$  electrons. But this is only part of the story; in the next section we shall look more closely at just what makes benzene such a special kind of molecule.

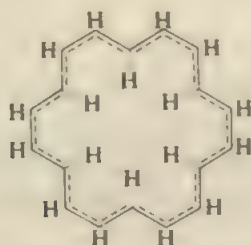
Figure 33.8. Benzene. Configuration of  $\pi$  electrons in ground state.

### 33.6 Aromatic character. The Hückel $4n + 2$ rule

In Chap. 14 we discussed the structure of aromatic compounds. An aromatic molecule is flat, with cyclic clouds of delocalized  $\pi$  electrons above and below the plane of the molecule. We have just seen, for benzene, the molecular orbitals that permit this delocalization. But delocalization alone is not enough. For that special degree of stability we call *aromaticity*, the number of  $\pi$  electrons must conform to **Hückel's rule**: *there must be a total of  $(4n + 2)$   $\pi$  electrons*.



In Sec. 14.10, we saw evidence of special stability associated with the "magic" numbers of 2, 6, and 10  $\pi$  electrons, that is, with systems where  $n$  is 0, 1, and 2 respectively. Problem 5 (p. 723) described the NMR spectrum of cyclooctadecanonaene, which contains 18  $\pi$  electrons ( $n$  is 4). Twelve protons lie outside the ring, are deshielded, and absorb downfield; but, because of the particular geometry of



Cyclooctadecanonaene  
Eighteen  $\pi$  electrons  
Aromatic

the large flat molecule, six protons lie *inside* the ring, are shielded (see Fig. 17.9, p. 695), and absorb upfield. The spectrum is unusual, but exactly what we would expect if this molecule were aromatic.

Hückel (p. 584) was a pioneer in the field of molecular orbital theory. He developed the LCAO method in its simplest form, yet "Hückel molecular orbitals"

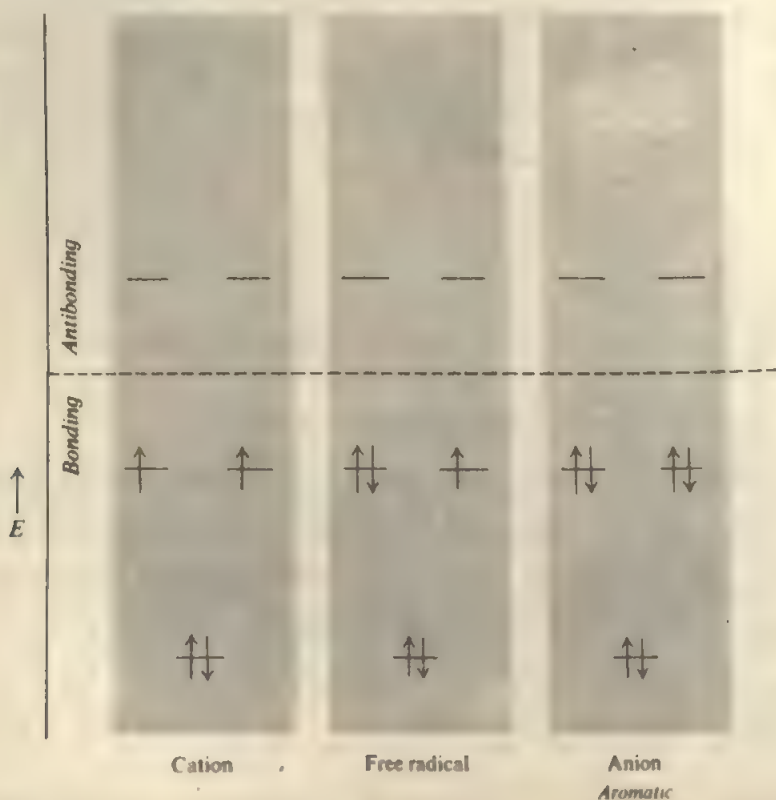


Figure 33.9. Cyclopentadienyl system. Configuration of  $\pi$  electrons in cation, free radical, and anion.

have proved enormously successful in dealing with organic molecules. Hückel proposed the  $4n + 2$  rule in 1931. It has been tested in many ways since then, and it works. Now, what is the theoretical basis for this rule?

Let us begin with the cyclopentadienyl system. Five  $sp^2$ -hybridized carbons have five component  $p$  orbitals, which give rise to five molecular orbitals (Fig. 33.9). At the lowest energy level there is a single molecular orbital. Above this, the orbitals appear as *degenerate pairs*, that is, pairs of orbitals of equal energy. The lowest degenerate pair are bonding, the higher ones are antibonding.

The cyclopentadienyl cation has four electrons. Two of these go into the lower orbital. Of the other two electrons, one goes into each orbital of the lower degenerate pair. The cyclopentadienyl free radical has one more electron, which fills one orbital of the pair. The anion has still another electron, and with this we fill the remaining orbital of the pair. The six  $\pi$  electrons of the cyclopentadienyl anion are *just enough to fill all the bonding orbitals*. Fewer than six leaves bonding orbitals unfilled; more than six, and electrons would have to go into antibonding orbitals. Six  $\pi$  electrons gives maximum bonding and hence maximum stability.

Figure 33.10 shows the molecular orbitals for rings containing five, six, and seven  $sp^2$ -hybridized carbons. We see the same pattern for all of them: a single orbital at the lowest level, and above it a series of degenerate pairs. It takes  $(4n + 2) \pi$  electrons to fill a set of these bonding orbitals: 2 electrons for the lowest orbital, and 4 for each of  $n$  degenerate pairs. Such an electron configuration has

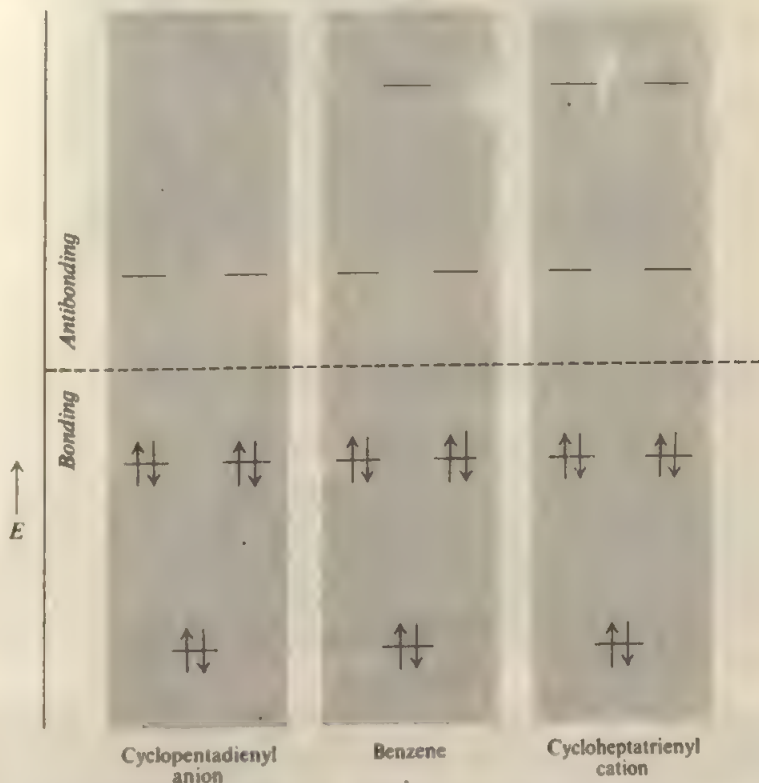


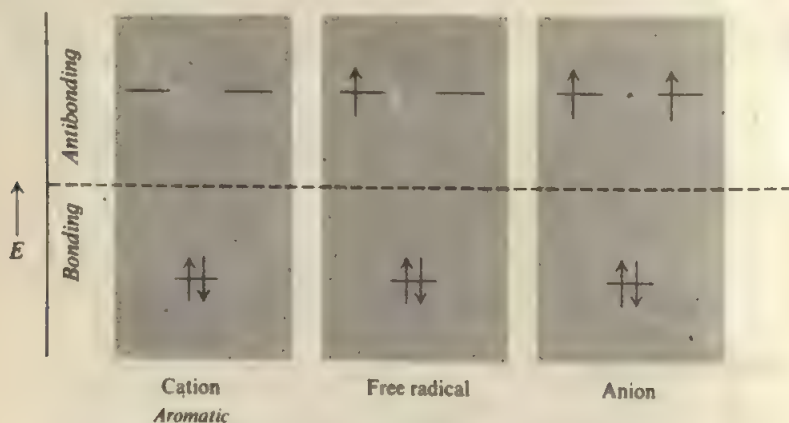
Figure 33.10. Aromatic compounds with 6  $\pi$  electrons. Configuration of  $\pi$  electrons in cyclopentadienyl anion, benzene, and cycloheptatrienyl cation.

been likened to the rare-gas configuration of an atom, with its closed shell. It is the filling of these molecular orbital shells that makes these molecules aromatic.

In Problem 14.6 (p. 586) we saw that the cyclopropenyl cation is unusually stable: 20 kcal/mol more stable even than the allyl cation. In contrast, the cyclo-



propenyl free radical and anion are *not* unusually stable; indeed, the anion seems to be particularly *unstable*. The cation has the Hückel number of two  $\pi$  electrons ( $n$  is zero) and is aromatic. Here, too, aromaticity results from the filling up of a molecular orbital shell (Fig. 33.11).



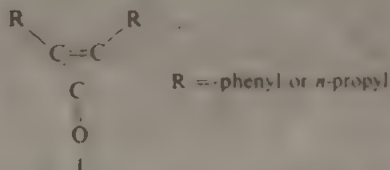
**Figure 33.11.** Cyclopropenyl system. Configuration of  $\pi$  electrons in cation, free radical, and anion.

In the allyl system (Fig. 33.7) the third and fourth electrons go into a non-bonding orbital, whereas here they go into antibonding orbitals. As a result, the cyclopropenyl free radical and anion are less stable than their open-chain counterparts. For the cyclopropenyl anion in particular, with two electrons in antibonding orbitals, simple calculations indicate no net stabilization due to delocalization, that is, zero resonance energy. Some calculations indicate that the molecule is actually less stable than if there were no conjugation at all. Such cyclic molecules, in which delocalization actually leads to *destabilization*, are not just non-aromatic; they are *antiaromatic*.

**Problem 33.1** When 3,4-dichloro-1,2,3,4-tetramethylcyclobutene was dissolved at  $-78^\circ$  in  $\text{SbF}_5$ ,  $-\text{SO}_2$ , the solution obtained gave three NMR peaks, at  $\delta$  2.07,  $\delta$  2.20, and  $\delta$  2.68, in the ratio 1:1:2. As the solution stood, these peaks slowly disappeared and were replaced by a single peak at  $\delta$  3.68. What compound is each spectrum probably due to? Of what theoretical significance are these findings?



**Problem 33.2** (a) Cyclopropenones (I) have been made, and found to have rather unusual properties.



They have very high dipole moments: about 5 D, compared with about 3 D for benzophenone or acetone. They are highly basic for ketones, reacting with perchloric acid to yield salts of formula  $(R_2C_3OH)^+ClO_4^-$ . What factor may be responsible for these unusual properties?

(b) Diphenylcyclopropenone was allowed to react with phenylmagnesium bromide, and the reaction mixture was hydrolyzed with perchloric acid. There was obtained, not a tertiary alcohol, but a salt of formula  $[(C_6H_5)_3C_3]^+ClO_4^-$ . Account for the formation of this salt.

(c) The synthesis of the cyclopropenones involved the addition to alkynes of  $CCl_2$ , which was generated from  $Cl_3CCOONa$ . Show all steps in the most likely mechanism for the formation of  $CCl_2$ . (Hint: See Sec. 8.26.)

### 33.7 Orbital symmetry and the chemical reaction

A chemical reaction involves the crossing of an energy barrier. In crossing this barrier, the reacting molecules seek the easiest path: a low path, to avoid climbing any higher than is necessary; and a broad path, to avoid undue restrictions on the arrangement of atoms. As reaction proceeds, there is a change in bonding among the atoms, from the bonding in the reactants to the bonding in the products. Bonding is a stabilizing factor; the stronger the bonding, the more stable the system. If a reaction is to follow the easiest path, it must take place in the way that *maintains maximum bonding during the reaction process*. Now, bonding, as we visualize it, results from overlap of orbitals. Overlap requires that portions of different orbitals occupy the same space, and that they be *of the same phase*.

This line of reasoning seems perfectly straightforward. Yet the central idea, that the course of reaction can be controlled by orbital symmetry, was a revolutionary one, and represents one of the really giant steps forward in chemical theory. A number of people took part in the development of this concept: K. Fukui in Japan, H. C. Longuet-Higgins in England. But organic chemists became aware of the power of this approach chiefly through a series of papers published in 1965 by R. B. Woodward and Roald Hoffmann working at Harvard University. (For their work, Woodward, Hoffmann, and Fukui have received Nobel Prizes.)

Very often in organic chemistry, theory lags behind experiment; many facts are accumulated, and a theory is proposed to account for them. This is a perfectly respectable process, and extremely valuable. But with orbital symmetry, just the reverse has been true. The theory lay in the mathematics, and what was needed was the spark of genius to see the applicability to chemical reactions. Facts were sparse, and Woodward and Hoffmann made *predictions*, which have since been borne out by experiment. All this is the more convincing because these predictions

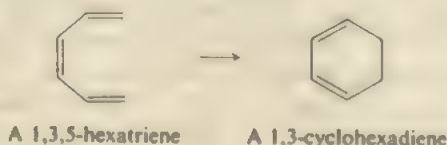
were of the kind called "risky": that is, the events predicted seemed unlikely on any grounds other than the theory being tested.

Orbital symmetry effects are observed in *concerted* reactions, that is, in reactions where several bonds are being made or broken simultaneously. Woodward and Hoffmann formulated "rules," and described certain reaction paths as *symmetry-allowed* and others as *symmetry-forbidden*. *All of this applies only to concerted reactions*, and refers to the relative ease with which they take place. A "symmetry-forbidden" reaction is simply one for which the concerted mechanism is very difficult, so difficult that, if reaction is to occur at all, it will probably do so in a different way: by a different concerted path that is symmetry-allowed; or, if there is none, by a stepwise, non-concerted mechanism. In the following brief discussion, and in the problems based on it, we have not the space to give the evidence indicating that each reaction is indeed concerted; but there must *be* such evidence, and gathering it is often the hardest job the investigator has to do.

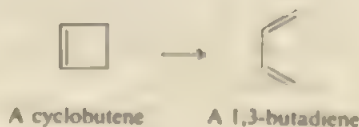
Nor have we space here for a full, rigorous treatment of concerted reactions, which considers the correlation of symmetry between all the molecular orbitals of the products. We shall focus our attention on certain key orbitals, which contain the "valence" electrons of the molecules. Even this simplified approach, we shall find, is tremendously powerful; it is highly graphic, and in some cases gives information that the more detailed treatment does not.

### 33.8 Electrocyclic reactions

Under the influence of heat or light, a conjugated polyene can undergo isomerization to form a cyclic compound with a single bond between the terminal carbons of the original conjugated system; one double bond disappears, and the remaining double bonds shift their positions. For example, 1,3,5-hexatrienes yield 1,3-cyclohexadienes:



The reverse process can also take place: a single bond is broken and a cyclic compound yields an open-chain polyene. Cyclobutenes, for example, are converted into butadienes:



Such interconversions are called **electrocyclic reactions**.

It is the stereochemistry of electrocyclic reactions that is of chief interest to us. To observe this, we must have suitably substituted molecules. Let us consider first the interconversion of 3,4-dimethylcyclobutene and 2,4-hexadiene (Fig. 33.12). The cyclobutene exists as *cis* and *trans* isomers. The hexadiene exists in

three forms: *cis,cis*; *cis,trans*; and *trans,trans*. As we can see, the *cis* cyclobutene yields only one of the three isomeric dienes; the *trans* cyclobutene yields a different isomer. Reaction is thus *completely stereospecific*. Furthermore, photochemical cyclization of the *trans,trans* diene gives a different cyclobutene than the one from which the diene is formed by the thermal (heat-promoted) ring-opening.

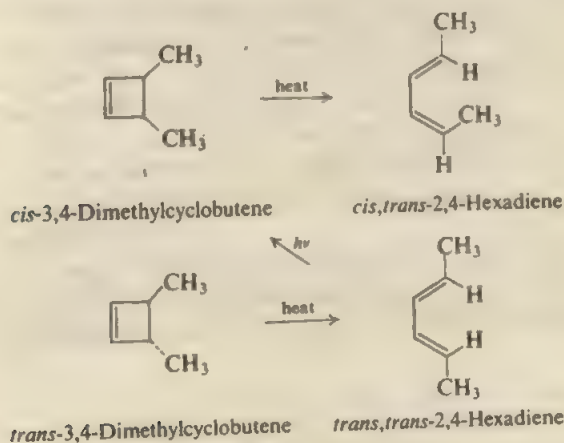


Figure 33.12. Interconversions of 3,4-dimethylcyclobutenes and 2,4-hexadienes.

The interconversions of the corresponding dimethylcyclohexadienes and the 2,4,6-octatrienes are also stereospecific (Fig. 33.13). Here, too, thermal and photochemical reactions differ in stereochemistry. If we examine the structures closely,

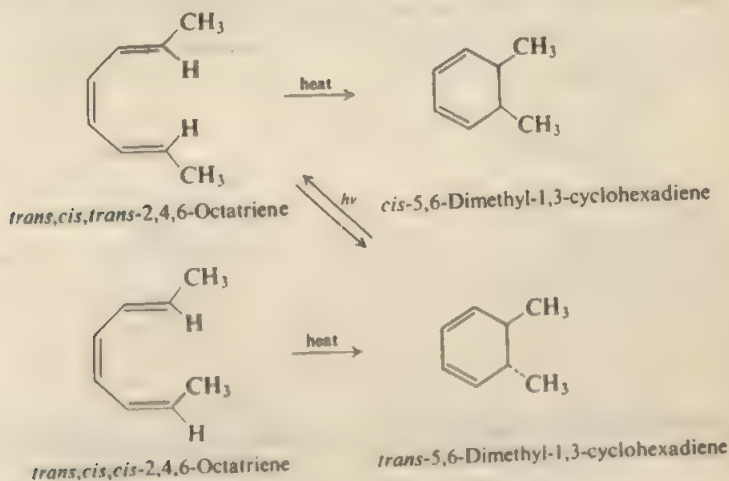


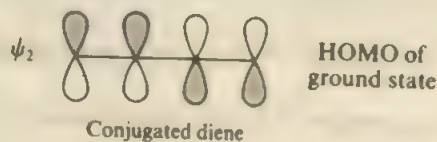
Figure 33.13. Interconversions of 2,4,6-octatrienes and 5,6-dimethyl-1,3-cyclohexadienes.

we see something else: the stereochemistry of the triene-cyclohexadiene interconversions is *opposite* to that of the diene-cyclobutene interconversions. For the thermal reactions, for example, *cis* methyl groups in the cyclobutene become *cis* and *trans* in the diene; *cis* methyl groups in the cyclohexadiene are *trans* and *trans* in the related triene.

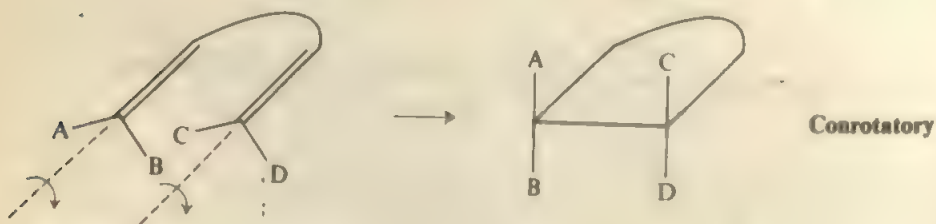
Electrocyclic reactions, then, are completely stereospecific. The exact stereochemistry depends upon two things: (a) the number of double bonds in the polyene, and (b) whether reaction is thermal or photochemical. It is one of the triumphs of the orbital symmetry approach that it can account for all these facts; indeed, most of the examples known today were *predicted* by Woodward and Hoffmann before the facts were known.

It is easier to examine these interconversions from the standpoint of cyclization; according to the principle of microscopic reversibility, whatever applies to this reaction applies equally well to the reverse process, ring-opening. In cyclization, two  $\pi$  electrons of the polyene form the new  $\sigma$  bond of the cycloalkene. But which two electrons? We focus our attention on the *highest occupied molecular orbital (HOMO)* of the polyene. Electrons in this orbital are the "valence" electrons of the molecule; they are the least tightly held, and the most easily pushed about during reaction.

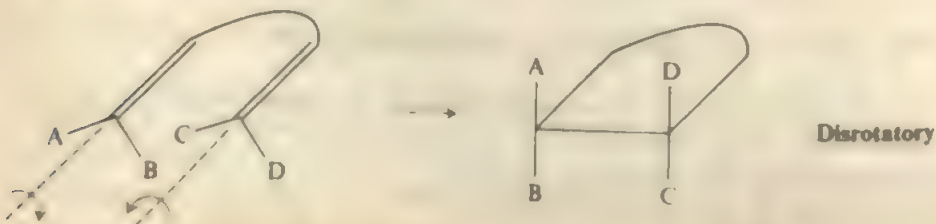
Let us begin with the thermal cyclization of a disubstituted butadiene,  $RCH=CH-CH=CHR$ . As we have already seen (Fig. 33.6, p. 1197), the highest occupied molecular orbital of a conjugated diene is  $\psi_2$ . It is the electrons in this



orbital that will form the bond that closes the ring. Bond formation requires overlap, in this case overlap of lobes on C-1 and C-4 of the diene: the front carbons in Fig. 33.14. We see that to bring these lobes into position for overlap, there must be rotation about two bonds,  $C_1-C_2$  and  $C_3-C_4$ . This rotation can take place in two different ways: there can be **conrotatory** motion, in which the bonds rotate in the same direction,

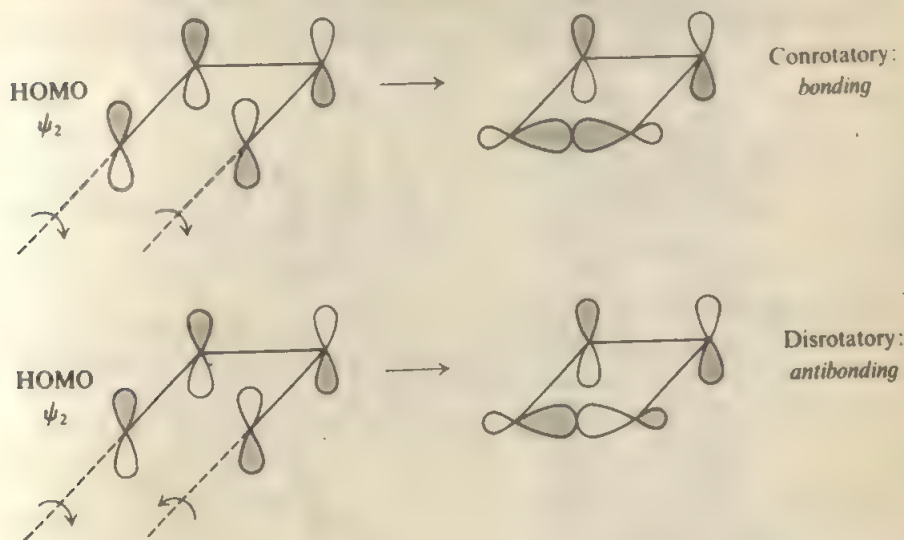


or there can be **disrotatory** motion, in which the bonds rotate in opposite directions.



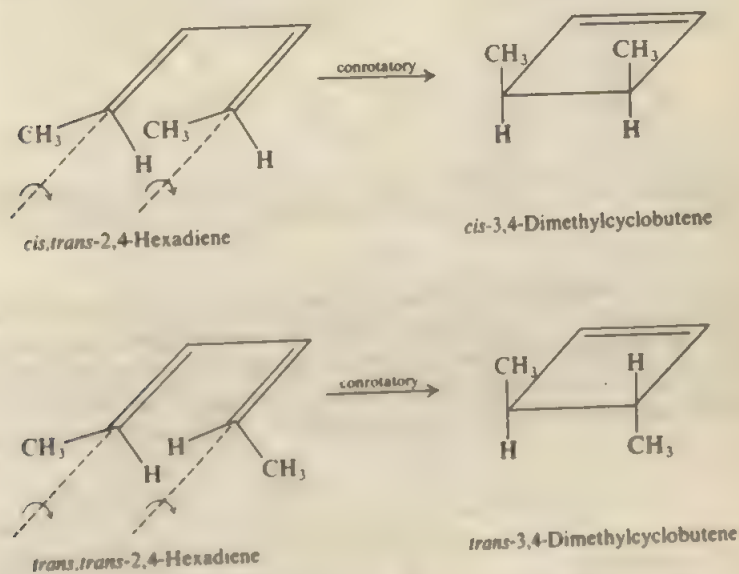


Now, in this case, as we see in Fig. 33.14, conrotatory motion brings together lobes of the *same phase*; overlap occurs and a bond forms. Disrotatory motion, on



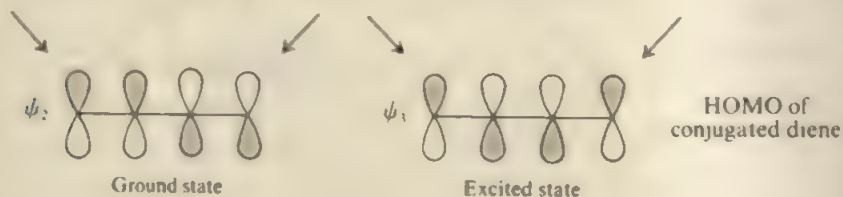
**Figure 33.14.** Thermal cyclization of a 1,3-butadiene to a cyclobutene. Conrotatory motion leads to bonding. Disrotatory motion leads to anti-bonding.

the other hand, brings together lobes of *opposite phase*; here interaction is anti-bonding, and repulsive. As Fig. 33.15 shows, it is conrotatory motion that produces the stereochemistry actually observed.

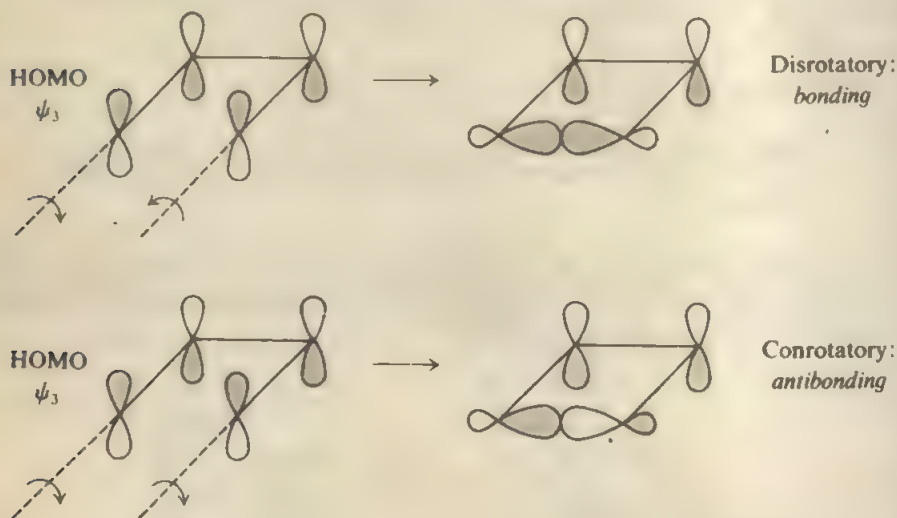


**Figure 33.15.** Thermal cyclization of substituted butadienes. Observed stereochemistry indicates conrotatory motion.

How are we to account for the opposite stereochemistry in the photochemical reaction? On absorption of light, butadiene is converted into the excited state shown in Fig. 33.6, in which one electron from  $\psi_2$  has been raised to  $\psi_3$ . Now the highest occupied orbital is  $\psi_3$ , and it is the electron here that we are concerned

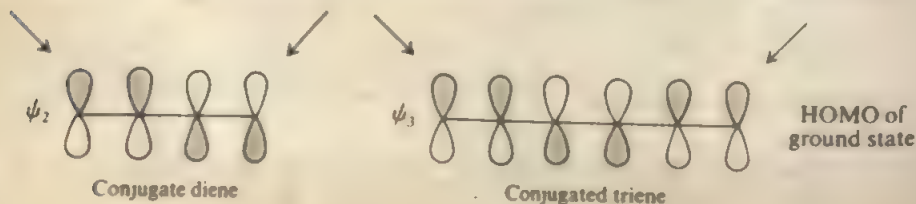


with. But in  $\psi_3$  the relative symmetry of the terminal carbons is opposite to that in  $\psi_2$ . Now it is the *disrotatory* motion that brings together lobes of the same phase, and the stereochemistry is reversed (Fig. 33.16).



**Figure 33.16.** Photochemical cyclization of a 1,3-butadiene to a cyclobutene. Disrotatory motion leads to bonding. Conrotatory motion leads to antibonding.

Next, let us look at the thermal cyclization of a disubstituted hexatriene,  $\text{RCH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CHR}$ , whose electronic configuration is shown in Fig. 33.17. The HOMO for the ground state of the hexatriene is  $\psi_3$ . If we compare this with the HOMO for the ground state of butadiene ( $\psi_2$  in Fig. 33.6), we see that the relative symmetry about the terminal carbons is opposite in the two cases.



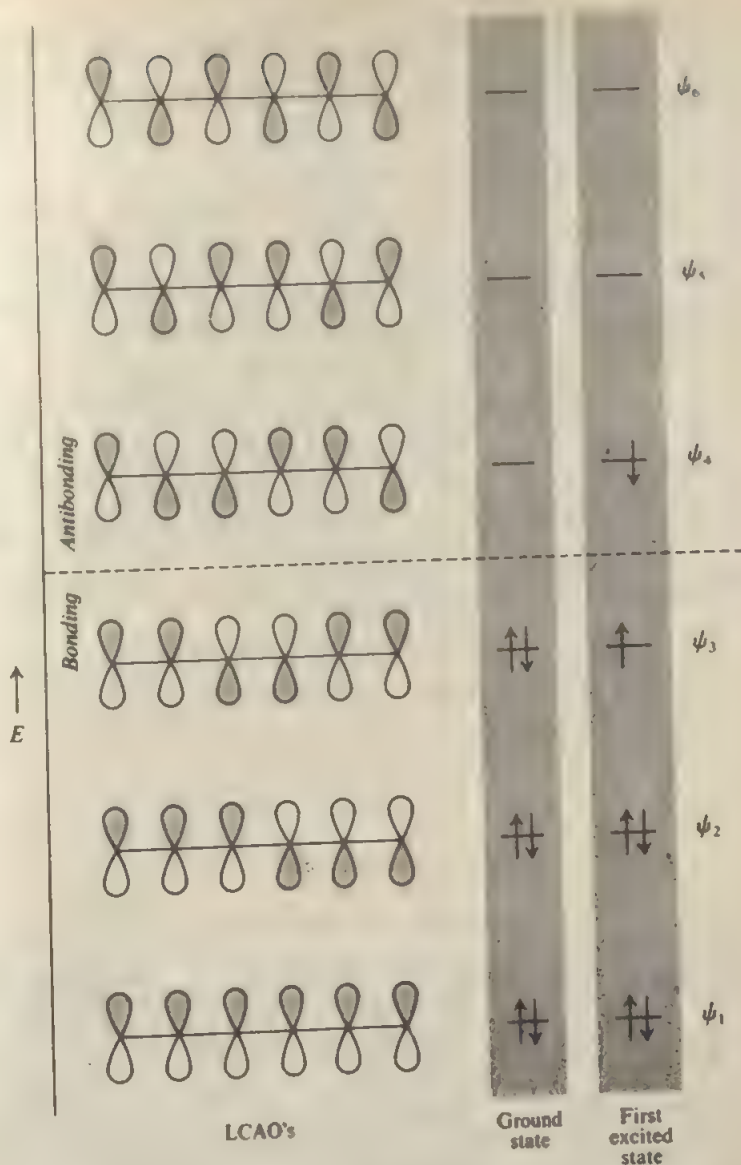
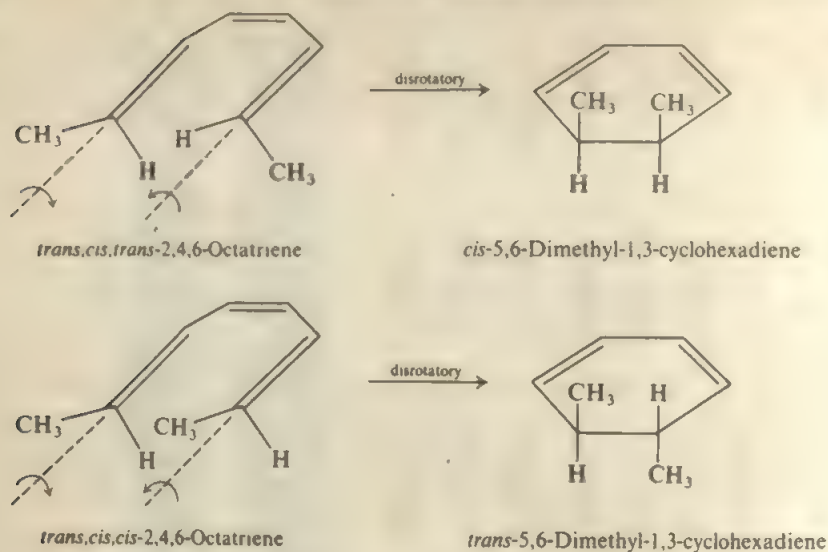


Figure 33.17. A 1,3,5-hexatriene. Configuration of  $\pi$  electrons in ground state and first excited state.

For ground state hexatriene it is disrotatory motion that leads to bonding and, as shown in Fig. 33.18 (p. 1210), gives rise to the observed stereochemistry.

In the excited state of hexatriene,  $\psi_4$  is the HOMO, and once again we see a reversal of symmetry: here, conrotatory motion is the favored process.

What we see here is part of a regular pattern (Table 33.1, p. 1210) that emerges from the quantum mechanics. As the number of pairs of  $\pi$  electrons in the polyene increases, the relative symmetry about the terminal carbons in the HOMO alternates regularly. Furthermore, symmetry in the HOMO of the first excited state is always opposite to that in the ground state.

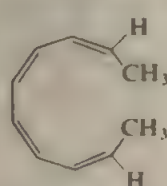
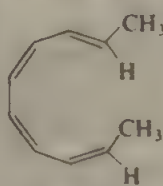
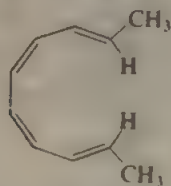


**Figure 33.18.** Thermal cyclization of substituted hexatrienes. Observed stereochemistry indicates disrotatory motion.

**Table 33.1** WOODWARD-HOFFMANN RULES FOR ELECTROCYCLIC REACTIONS

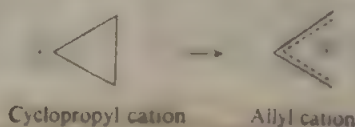
Number of $\pi$ electrons	Reaction	Motion
$4n$	thermal	conrotatory
$4n$	photochemical	disrotatory
$4n + 2$	thermal	disrotatory
$4n + 2$	photochemical	conrotatory

**Problem 33.3** Thermal ring closure of three stereoisomeric 2,4,6,8-decatetraenes (I, II, and III) has been found to be in agreement with the Woodward-Hoffmann rules.



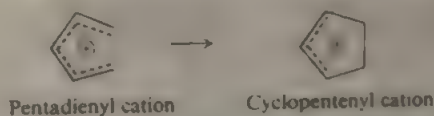
Two of these stereoisomers give one dimethylcyclooctatriene, and the third stereoisomer gives a different dimethylcyclooctatriene. (a) Which decatetraenes give which cyclooctatrienes? (b) Predict the product of photochemical ring closure of each.

**Problem 33.4** The commonly observed conversion of cyclopropyl cations into allyl cations is considered to be an example of an electrocyclic reaction. (a) What is the

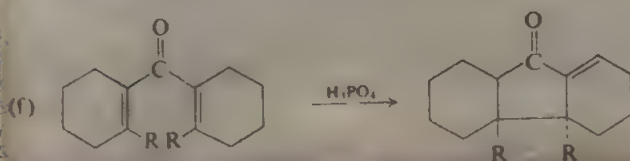
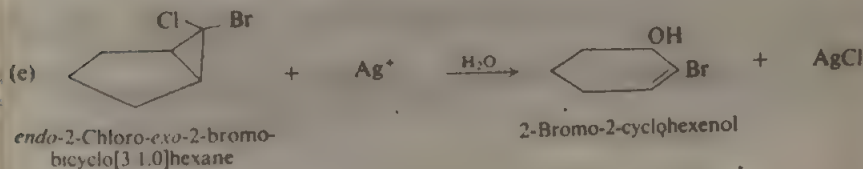
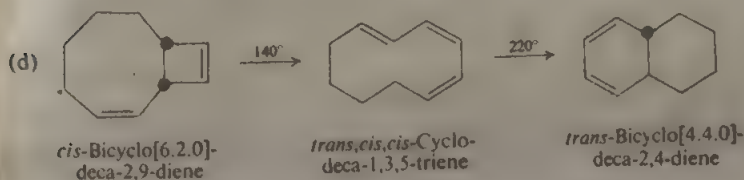
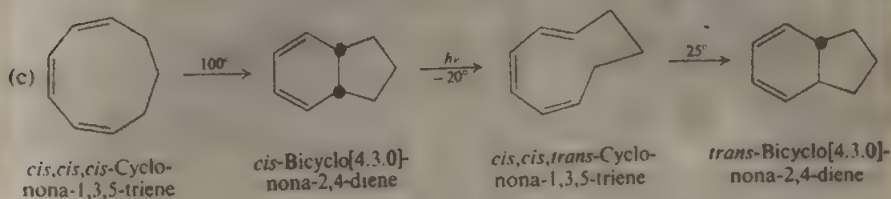
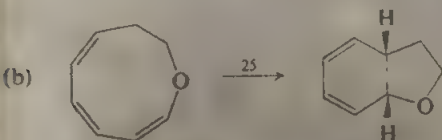
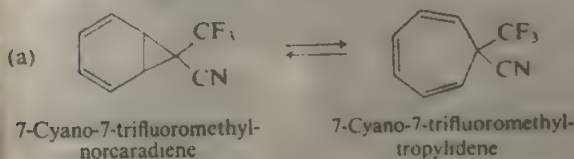




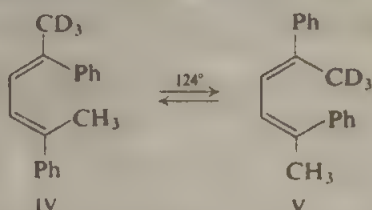
HOMO of the allyl cation? How many  $\pi$  electrons has it? (b) Where does this reaction fit in Table 33.1? Would you expect conrotatory or disrotatory motion? (c) What prediction would you make about interconversion of allyl and cyclopropyl anions? (d) About the interconversion of pentadienyl cations and cyclopentenyl cations?



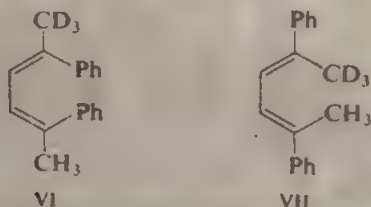
**Problem 33.5** Each of the following reactions involves one or more concerted steps that take place in accordance with the Woodward-Hoffmann rules. In each case, show exactly what is happening.



**Problem 33.6** Stereoisomers IV and V are easily interconverted by heating. After 51 days at  $124^\circ$ —during which time, it was calculated,  $2.6 \times 10^6$  interconversions took



place—*only* IV and V were found to be present; there was *none* of their stereoisomers VI and VII. Propose a mechanism for the interconversion that would account for this remarkable stereospecificity.



### 33.9 Cycloaddition reactions

In Sec. 32.8, we encountered the Diels-Alder reaction, in which a conjugated diene and a substituted alkene—the dienophile—react to form a cyclohexene.

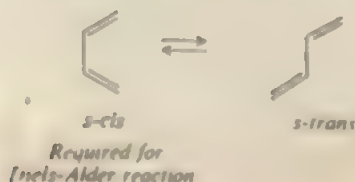


This is an example of **cycloaddition**, a reaction in which two unsaturated molecules combine to form a cyclic compound, with  $\pi$  electrons being used to form two new  $\sigma$  bonds. The Diels-Alder reaction is a [4 + 2] cycloaddition, since it involves a system of 4  $\pi$  electrons and a system of 2  $\pi$  electrons.

Reaction takes place very easily, often spontaneously, and at most requires moderate application of heat.

There are several aspects to the stereochemistry of the Diels-Alder reaction.

(a) First, we have taken for granted—correctly—that the diene must be in the



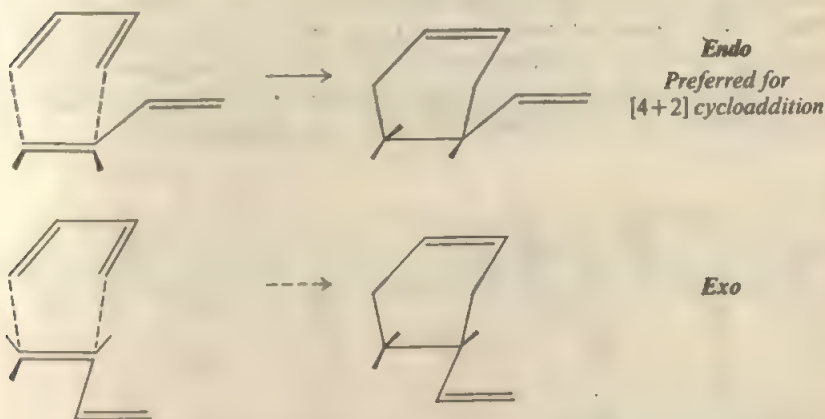
conformation (*s-cis*) that permits the ends of the conjugated system to *reach* the doubly-bonded carbons of the dienophile.

(b) Next, with respect to the alkene (dienophile) addition is clear-cut *syn* (Problem 8, p. 1186); this stereospecificity is part of the evidence that the Diels-



Alder reaction is, indeed, a concerted one, that is, that both new bonds are formed in the same transition state.

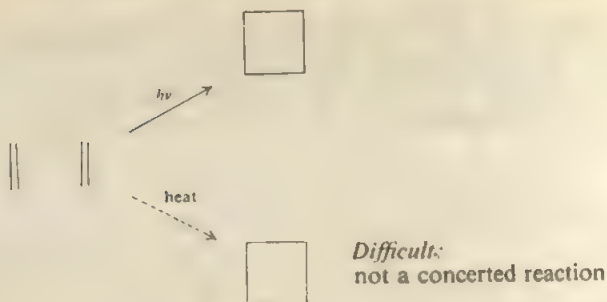
(c) Finally, the Diels-Alder reaction takes place in the *endo*, rather than *exo*, sense. That is to say, any other unsaturated groups in the dienophile (for example,  $\text{—CO—O—CO—}$  in maleic anhydride) tend to lie *near* the developing double bond in the diene moiety (Fig. 33.19). For the *endo* preference to be *seen*, of course, the diene must be suitably substituted.



**Figure 33.19.** Stereochemistry of the Diels-Alder reaction, illustrated for the reaction between two moles of 1,3-butadiene.

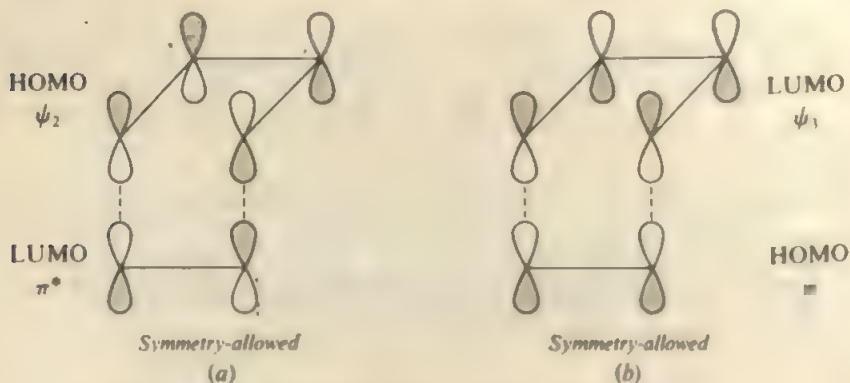
Now are there such reactions as  $[2+2]$  cycloadditions? Can, say, two molecules of ethylene combine to form cyclobutane? The answer is: yes, but not easily under thermal conditions. Under vigorous conditions cycloaddition may occur, but stepwise via diradicals—and not in a concerted fashion. Photochemical  $[2+2]$  cycloadditions, on the other hand, are very common. (Although some of these, too, may be stepwise reactions, many are clearly concerted.)

Of thermal cycloadditions, then,  $[4+2]$  is easy and  $[2+2]$  is difficult. Of  $[2+2]$  cycloadditions, the thermal reaction is difficult and the photochemical reaction is easy. How are we to account for these contrasts?



In cycloaddition, two new  $\sigma$  bonds are formed by use of  $\pi$  electrons of the reactants. The concerted reaction results from overlap of orbitals of one molecule with orbitals of the other. As before, it is on electrons in the HOMO that we focus attention. But which orbital does the HOMO overlap? It picks an orbital *into which its electrons can flow*: an unoccupied orbital. And of unoccupied orbitals it picks the most stable, the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (LUMO). In the transition state of cycloaddition, then, *stabilization comes chiefly from overlap between the HOMO of one reactant and the LUMO of the other*.

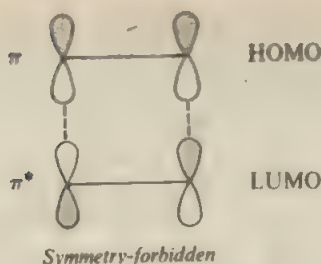
On this basis, let us examine the  $[4 + 2]$  cycloaddition of 1,3-butadiene and ethylene, the simplest example of the Diels-Alder reaction. The electronic configurations of these compounds—and of dienes and alkenes in general—have been given in Fig. 33.5 (p. 1197) and Fig. 33.6 (p. 1197). There are two combinations: overlap of the HOMO of butadiene ( $\psi_2$ ) with the LUMO of ethylene ( $\pi^*$ ); and overlap of the HOMO of ethylene ( $\pi$ ) with the LUMO of butadiene ( $\psi_3$ ). In either case, as Fig. 33.20 shows, overlap brings together lobes of the same phase. There is a flow of electrons from HOMO to LUMO, and bonding occurs.



**Figure 33.20.** Symmetry-allowed thermal  $[4 + 2]$  cycloaddition: 1,3-butadiene and ethylene. Overlap of (a) HOMO of 1,3-butadiene and LUMO of ethylene, and (b) HOMO of ethylene and LUMO of 1,3-butadiene.

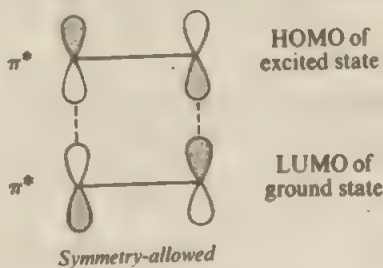
Now, consider a thermal  $[2 + 2]$  cyclization, dimerization of ethylene. This would involve overlap of the HOMO,  $\pi$ , of one molecule with the LUMO,  $\pi^*$ , of the other. But  $\pi$  and  $\pi^*$  are of opposite symmetry, and, as Fig. 33.21 shows, lobes of opposite phase would approach each other. Interaction is antibonding and repulsive, and concerted reaction does not occur.





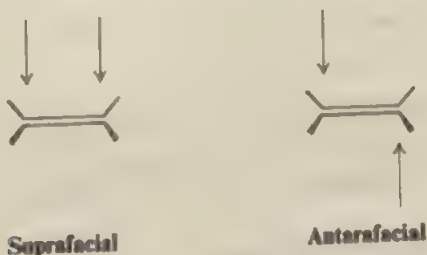
**Figure 33.21.** Symmetry-forbidden thermal  $[2 + 2]$  cycloaddition: two molecules of ethylene. Interaction is antibonding.

Photochemical  $[2 + 2]$  cycloadditions are symmetry-allowed. Here we have (Fig. 33.22) overlap of the HOMO ( $\pi^*$ ) of an excited molecule with the LUMO (also  $\pi^*$ ) of a ground-state molecule.



**Figure 33.22.** Symmetry-allowed photochemical  $[2 + 2]$  cycloaddition: two molecules of ethylene, one excited and one in ground state. Interaction is bonding.

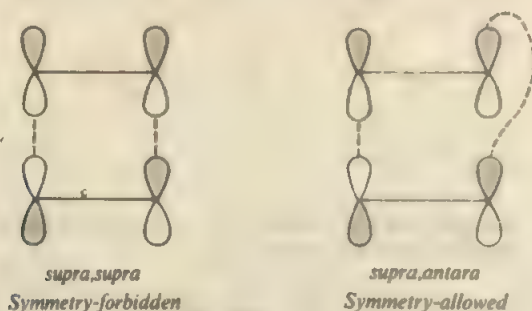
If, in a concerted reaction of this kind, both bonds to a component are being formed (or broken) on the same face, the process is said to be *suprafacial*. If the bonds are being formed (or broken) on opposite faces, the process is *antarafacial*.



These terms resemble the familiar ones *syn* and *anti*, but with this difference. *Syn* and *anti* describe the net stereochemistry of a reaction. We have seen *anti* addition, for example, as the overall result of a two-step mechanism. *Suprafacial* and *antarafacial*, in contrast, refer to actual processes: the simultaneous making (or breaking) of two bonds on the same face or opposite faces of a component.

So far, our discussion of cycloaddition has assumed that reaction is suprafacial with respect to both components. For  $[4 + 2]$  cycloadditions, the stereochemistry shows that this is indeed the case. Now, as far as orbital symmetry is concerned,

thermal  $[2 + 2]$  cycloaddition *could* occur if it were suprafacial with respect to one component and antarafacial with respect to the other (Fig. 33.23). Almost



**Figure 33.23.**  $[2 + 2]$  Cycloaddition. *Supra,supra*: geometrically possible, but symmetry-forbidden. *Supra,antara*: symmetry-allowed, but geometrically difficult.

certainly, such a *supra,antara* process is impossible here on geometric grounds. But if the ring being formed is big enough, both *supra,supra* and *supra,antara* processes are geometrically possible; in that case orbital symmetry determines, not *whether* cycloaddition occurs, but *how* it occurs (Table 33.2).

**Table 33.2** WOODWARD-HOFFMANN RULES FOR  $[i + j]$  CYCLOADDITIONS

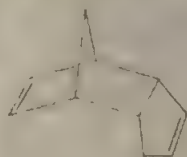
$i + j$	Thermal	Photochemical
$4n$	supra-antara antara-supra	supra-supra antara-antara
$4n + 2$	supra-supra antara-antara	supra-antara antara-supra

Cycloadditions are reversible. These *cycloreversions* (for example, the *retro*-Diels-Alder reaction) follow the same symmetry rules as cycloadditions—as they must, of course, since they occur via the same transition states.

**Problem 33.7** Give structural formulas for the products expected from each of the following reactions. Tell *why* you expect the particular products.

- (a) *trans,trans*-2,4-hexadiene + ethylene
- (b) *trans*-1,3-pentadiene + maleic anhydride
- (c) *trans,trans*-1,4-diphenyl-1,3-butadiene + maleic anhydride
- (d) *cis*-2-butene  $\xrightarrow{h\nu}$  A + B
- (e) *trans*-2-butene  $\xrightarrow{h\nu}$  A + C
- (f) *cis*-2-butene + *trans*-2-butene  $\xrightarrow{h\nu}$  A + B + C + D

**Problem 33.8** On standing, cyclopentadiene spontaneously forms *dicyclopentadiene* (I), from which it can be regenerated by heating under a fractionating column.



I

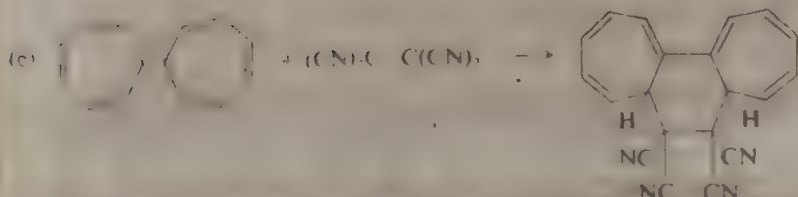
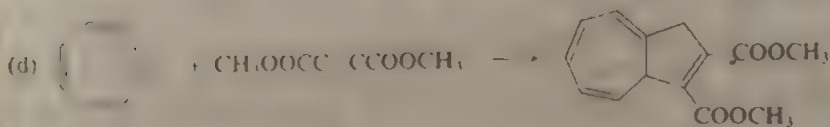
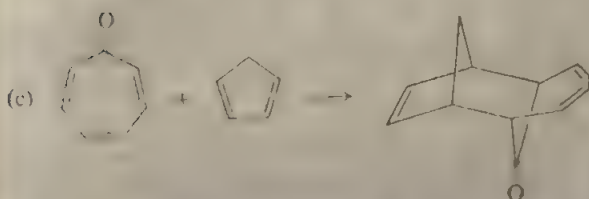
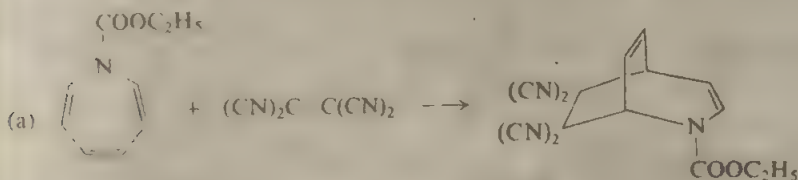


II

Dicyclopentadiene

(a) What reaction has taken place in the formation of dicyclopentadiene? In the regeneration of cyclopentadiene? (b) On what basis could you have predicted that dicyclopentadiene would have the structure I rather than the structure II?

**Problem 33.9** Each of the following reactions is believed to be concerted. Tell what kind of reaction is involved in each case, and what significance it bears on orbital symmetry theory.



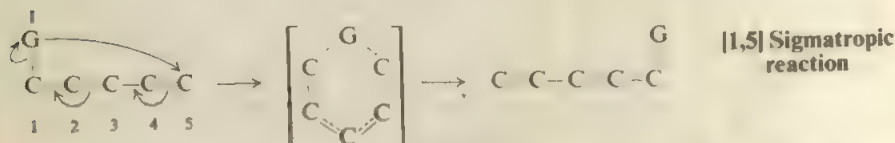
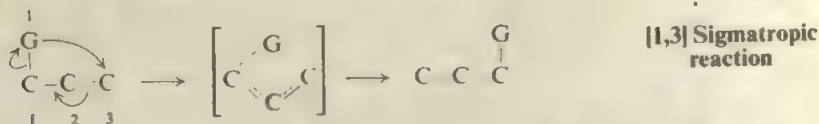
## 33.10 Sigmatropic reactions

A concerted reaction of the type,

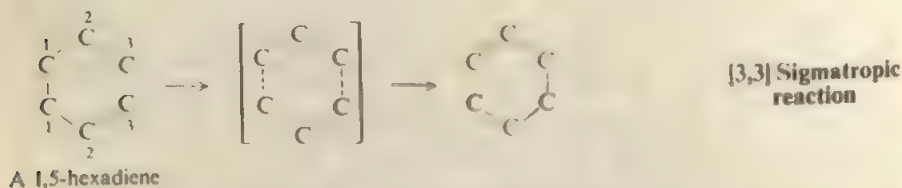


in which a group migrates with its  $\sigma$  bond within a  $\pi$  framework—an ene or a polyene—is called a **sigmatropic reaction**.

The migration is accompanied by a shift in  $\pi$  bonds. For example:



In the designations [1,3] and [1,5] the "3" and "5" refer to the number of the carbon to which group G is migrating (the migration terminus). The "1" does *not* refer to the migration source; instead, it specifies that in both reactant and product bonding is to the same atom (number 1) in the migrating group. The important *Cope rearrangement* of hexa-1,5-dienes, for example, is a [3,3] sigmatropic reaction,



in which there is a change in position of attachment in G as well as in the  $\pi$  framework—indeed, G itself is a  $\pi$  framework.

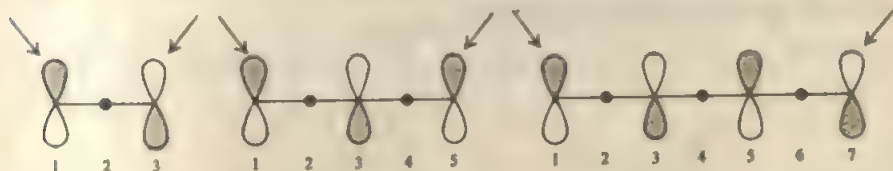
In the transition state of a sigmatropic reaction, the migrating group is bonded to both the migration source and the migration terminus; it is the nature of this transition state that we are concerned with. In Sec. 1.8, for convenience we considered bonding in the  $\text{H}_2$  molecule to arise from overlap between orbitals on two hydrogen atoms. In the same way, and simply *for convenience*, we consider bonding in the transition state for sigmatropic reactions to arise from overlap between an orbital of an atom or free radical (G) and an orbital of an allylic free radical (the  $\pi$  framework).

This does *not* mean that rearrangement actually involves the separation and reattachment of a free radical. Such a stepwise reaction would not be a concerted one, and hence is not the kind of reaction we are dealing with here. Indeed, a stepwise reaction would be a (high-energy) alternative open to a system if a (concerted) sigmatropic rearrangement were **symmetry-forbidden**.



In the transition state, there is overlap between the HOMO of one component and the HOMO of the other. Each HOMO is singly occupied, and together they provide a pair of electrons.

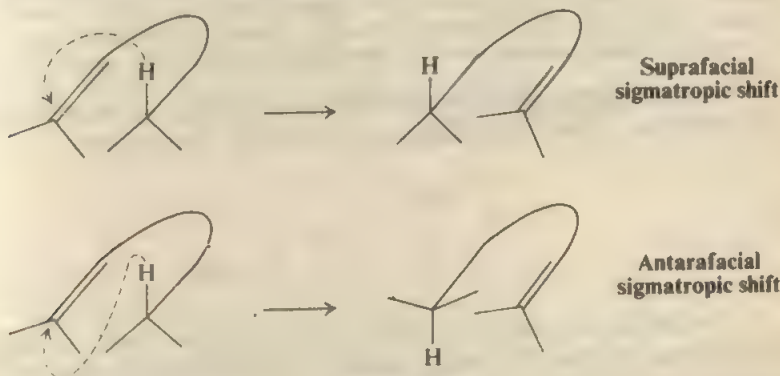
The HOMO of an allylic radical depends on the number of carbons in the  $\pi$  framework. The migrating group is passed from one end of the allylic radical to the other, and so it is the end carbons that we are concerned with. We see that the



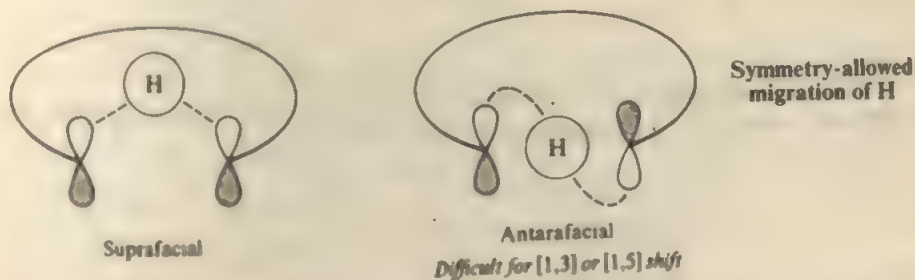
HOMO of allylic radicals

symmetry at these end carbons alternates regularly as we pass from C-3 to C-5 to C-7, and so on. The HOMO of the migrating group depends, as we shall see, on the nature of the group.

Let us consider first the simplest case: **migration of hydrogen**. Stereochemically, this shift can be suprafacial or antarafacial:



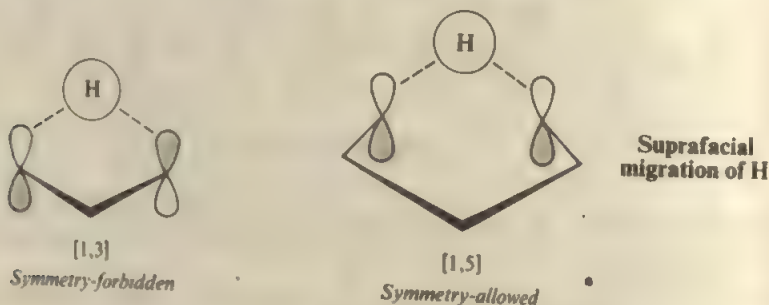
In the transition state, a *three-center bond* is required, and this must involve overlap between the  $s$  orbital of the hydrogen and lobes of  $p$  orbitals of the two terminal carbons. Whether a suprafacial or antarafacial shift is allowed depends upon the symmetry of these terminal orbitals:



Whether a sigmatropic rearrangement actually takes place, though, depends not only on the symmetry requirements but also on the *geometry* of the system. In

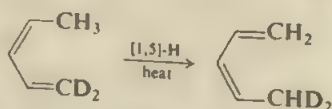
particular, [1,3] and [1,5] *antara* shifts should be extremely difficult, since they would require the  $\pi$  framework to be twisted far from the planarity that it requires for delocalization of electrons.

Practically, then, [1,3] and [1,5] sigmatropic reactions seem to be limited to *supra* shifts. A [1,3] *supra* shift of hydrogen is symmetry-forbidden; since the *s* orbital of hydrogen would have to overlap *p* lobes of opposite phase, hydrogen cannot be bonded simultaneously to both carbons. A [1,5] *supra* shift of hydrogen, on the other hand, is symmetry-allowed.

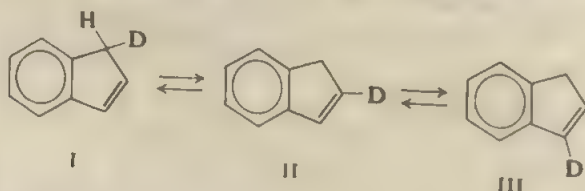


For larger  $\pi$  frameworks, both *supra* and *antara* shifts should be possible on geometric grounds, and here we would expect the stereochemistry to depend simply on orbital symmetry. A [1,7]-H shift, for example, should be *antara*, a [1,9]-H shift, *supra*, and so on. For photochemical reactions, as before, predictions are exactly reversed.

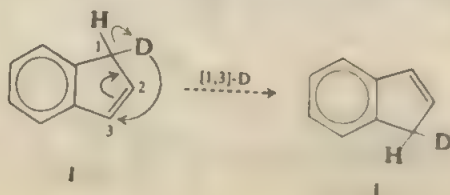
The facts agree with the above predictions: [1,3] sigmatropic shifts of hydrogen are not known, whereas [1,5] shifts are well known. For example:

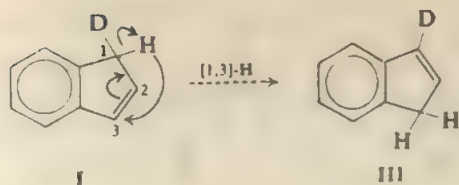


The preference for [1,5]-H shifts over [1,3]-H shifts has been demonstrated many times. For example, the heating of 3-deuterioindene (I) causes scrambling of the label to *all three* non-aromatic positions. Let us examine this reaction.

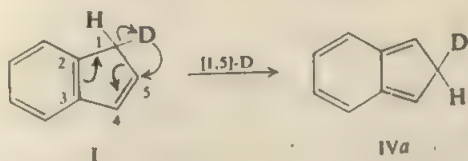


We cannot account for the formation of II on the basis of [1,3] shifts: migration of D would regenerate I; migration of H would yield only III.





But if we include the  $p$  orbitals of the benzene ring, and count along the edge of this ring, we see that a  $[1,5]$  shift of D would yield the unstable non-aromatic



intermediate IVa. This, in turn, can transfer H or D by  $[1,5]$  shifts to yield all the observed products (see Fig. 33.24).

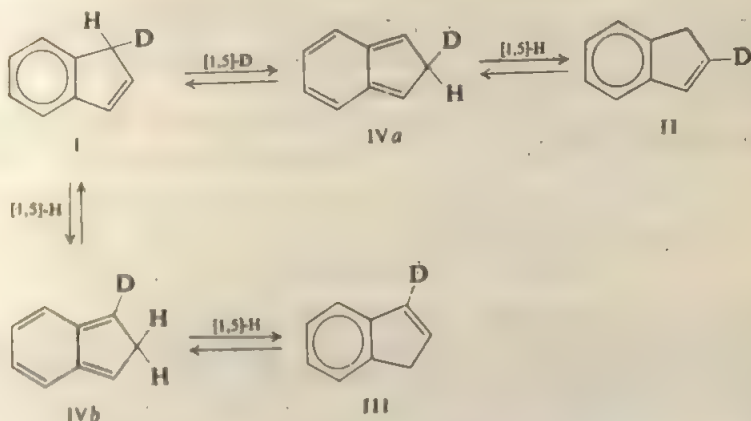
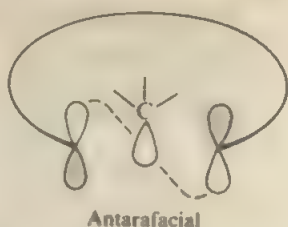
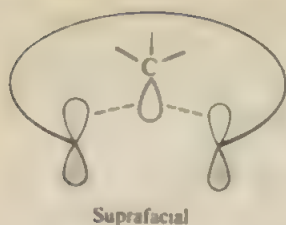


Figure 33.24. Deuterium scrambling in indene via unstable intermediates IVa and IVb, a series of  $[1,5]$  hydrogen shifts.

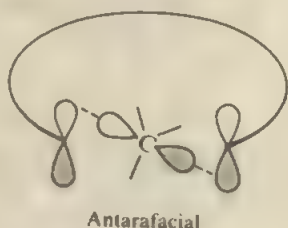
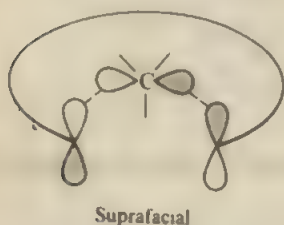
So far we have discussed only migration of hydrogen, which is necessarily limited to the overlap of an  $s$  orbital. Now let us turn to **migration of carbon**. Here, we have two possible kinds of bonding to the migrating group. One of these is similar to what we have just described for migration of hydrogen: bonding of both ends of the  $\pi$  framework to the same lobe on carbon. Depending on the symmetry of the  $\pi$  framework, the symmetry-allowed migration may be suprafacial or antarafacial.

With carbon, a new aspect appears: the stereochemistry in the migrating group. Bonding through the same lobe on carbon means attachment to the same face of the atom, that is to say, *retention of configuration in the migrating group*.



Retention in C

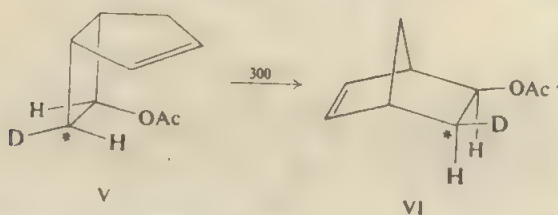
But there is a second possibility for carbon: bonding to the two ends of the  $\pi$  framework through different lobes of a  $p$  orbital. These lobes are on opposite faces of carbon—exactly as in an  $S_N2$  reaction—and there is *inversion of configuration in the migrating group*.



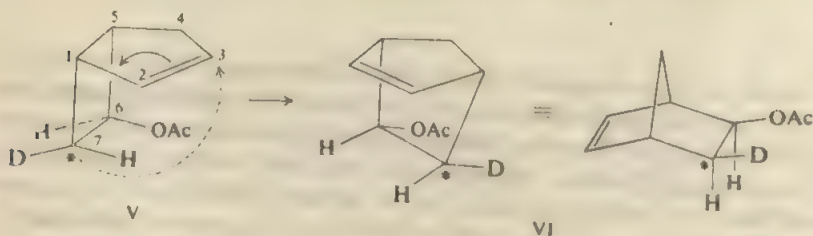
Inversion in C

For [1,3] and [1,5] shifts, the geometry pretty effectively prevents antarafacial migration. Limiting ourselves, then, to suprafacial migrations, we make these predictions: [1,3] migration with inversion; [1,5] migration with retention. *These predictions have been borne out by experiment.*

In 1968, Jerome Berson (of Yale University) reported that the deuterium-labeled bicyclo[3.2.0]heptene **V** is converted stereospecifically into the



*exo*-norbornene **VI**. As Fig. 33.25 shows, this reaction proceeds by a [1,3] migration and with *complete inversion of configuration in the migrating group*.



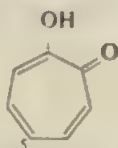
**Figure 33.25.** The deuterium-labeled bicyclo[3.2.0]heptene **V** rearranges via a [1,3]-C shift to the norbornene **VI**. There is *inversion of configuration* at C-7: from *R* to *S*. (Or, using C-6 as our standard, we see that H eclipses OAc in **V**, and D eclipses OAc in **VI**.)





## PROBLEMS

1. Tropolone (I,  $C_7H_4O_2$ ) has a flat molecule with all carbon-carbon bonds of the same



Tropolone

I

length (1.40 Å). The measured heat of combustion is 20 kcal lower than that calculated by the method of Problem 14.2 (p. 579). Its dipole moment is 3.71 D; that of 5-bromotropolone is 2.07 D.

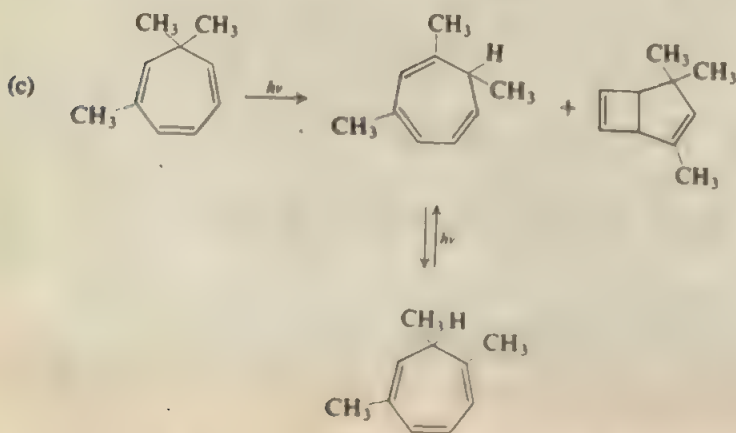
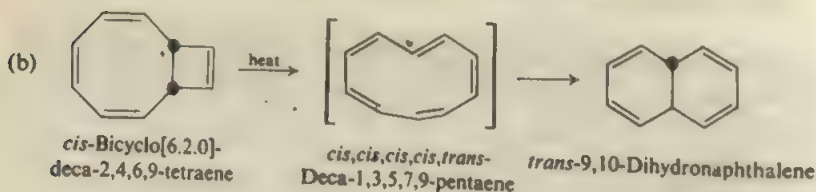
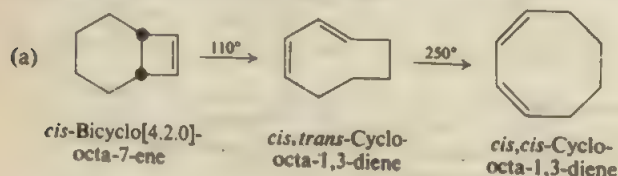
Tropolone undergoes the Reimer-Tiemann reaction, couples with diazonium ions, and is nitrated by dilute nitric acid. It gives a green color with ferric chloride, and does not react with 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine. Tropolone is both acidic ( $K_a = 10^{-7}$ ) and weakly basic, forming a hydrochloride in ether.

(a) What class of compounds does tropolone resemble? Is it adequately represented by formula I? (b) Using both valence-bond and orbital structures, account for the properties of tropolone.

(c) In what direction is the dipole moment of tropolone? Is this consistent with the structure you have proposed?

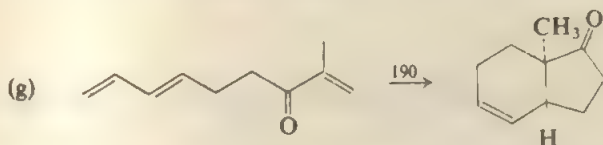
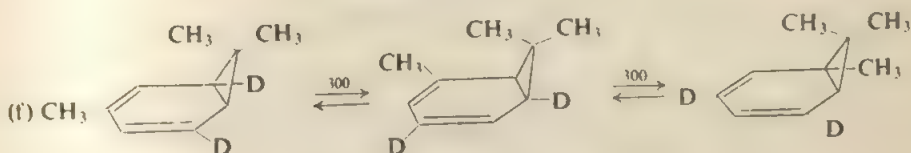
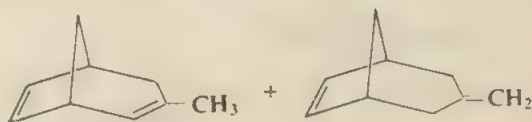
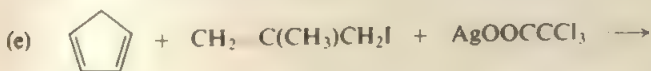
(d) The infrared spectrum of tropolone shows a broad band at about  $3150\text{ cm}^{-1}$  that changes only slightly upon dilution. What does this tell you about the structure of tropolone?

2. Each transformation shown below is believed to involve a concerted reaction. In each case show just what is happening.



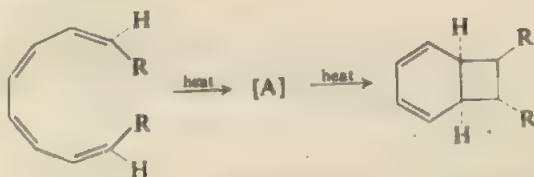


*cis*-9,10-Dihydronaphthalene



3. Each of the following transformations is believed to proceed by the indicated sequence of concerted reactions. Show just what each step involves, and give structures of compounds A–J.

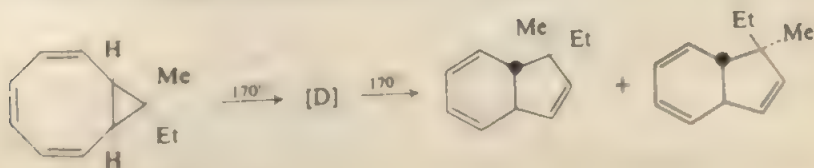
(a) Electrocyclic closure; electrocyclic closure.



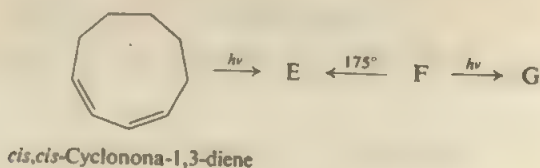
(b) [1,5]-H shift; electrocyclic opening.



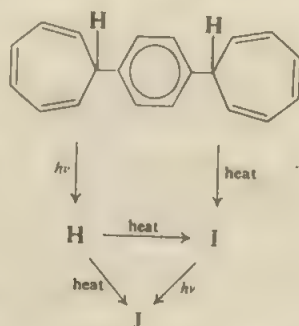
(c) Electrocyclic opening; electrocyclic closure. Final products are not interconvertible at  $170^\circ$ ; be sure you account for *both* of them.



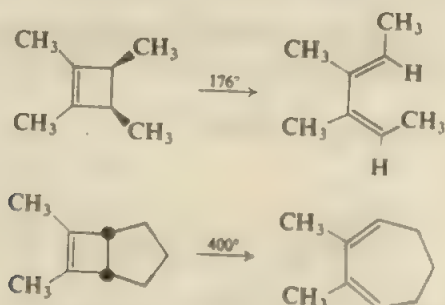
(d) Three electrocyclic closures.



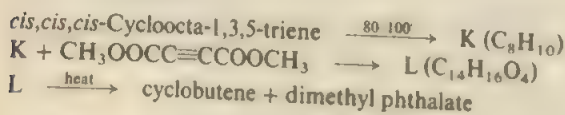
(e) A series of *supra* H shifts.



4. Account for the difference in conditions required to bring about the following transformations:

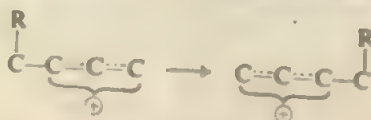


5. Give stereochemical structures of K and L, and tell exactly what process is taking place in each reaction.



6. (a) The familiar rearrangement of a carbocation by a 1,2-alkyl shift is, as we have described it (Sec. 6.26), a concerted reaction. Its ease certainly suggests that it is symmetry-allowed. Discuss the reaction from the standpoint of orbital symmetry. What stereochemistry would you predict in the migrating group?

(b) There is evidence that concerted 1,4-alkyl shifts of the kind

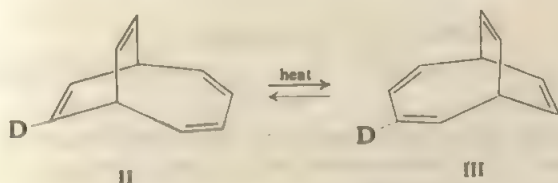


can occur. What stereochemistry would you predict in the migrating group?



7. Discuss the direct, concerted, non-catalytic addition of  $H_2$  to an alkene from the standpoint of orbital symmetry.

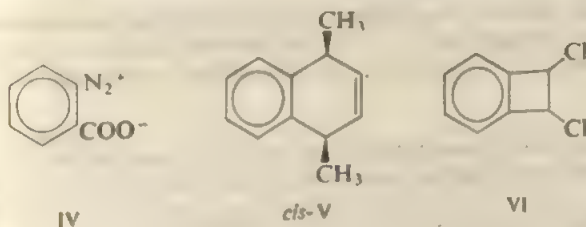
8. The deuterium scrambling between II and III has been accounted for on the basis of intramolecular Diels-Alder and *retro*-Diels-Alder reactions. Show how this might occur.



(Hint: Look for an intermediate that is symmetrical except for the presence of deuterium.)

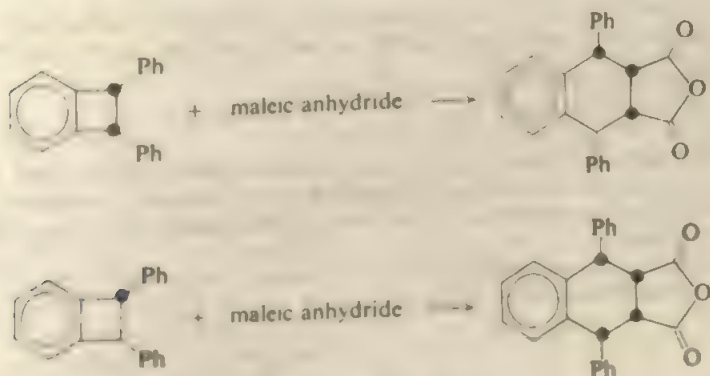
9. Suggest an explanation for each of the following facts.

(a) When the diazonium salt IV is treated with *trans,trans*-2,4-hexadiene,  $N_2$  and  $CO_2$  are evolved, and there is obtained stereochemically pure V. (Hint: See Problem 18, p. 1017.)



(b) In contrast, decomposition of IV in either *cis*- or *trans*-1,2-dichloroethene yields a mixture of *cis*- and *trans*-VI.

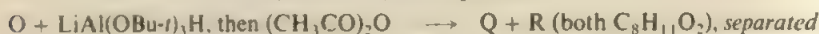
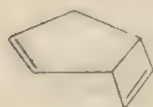
10. For each of the following reactions suggest an intermediate that would account for the formation of the product. Show exact stereochemistry. (For a hint, see Fig. 33.24, p. 1221)



11. (a) The diastereomeric 6,9-dimethylspiro[4.4]nona-1,3-dienes (p. 1223) were synthesized by reaction of cyclopentadiene with diastereomeric 2,5-dibromohexanes in the presence of sodium amide. Which 2,5-dibromohexane would you expect to yield each spirane?

(b) The stereochemistry of the spiranes obtained was shown by comparison of their NMR spectra, specifically, of the peaks due to the olefinic hydrogens. Explain.

12. (a) Berson synthesized the stereospecifically labeled compound V (p. 1222) by the following sequence. Give structures for compounds M-R.



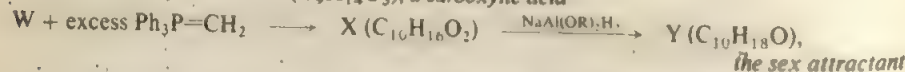
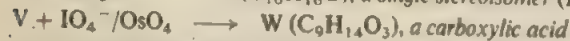
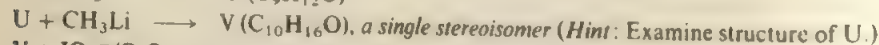
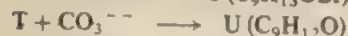
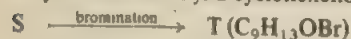
Q is compound V on p. 1222.

(b) Berson's study of the rearrangement of V to VI (p. 1222) was complicated by the tendency of VI, once formed, to decompose into cyclopentadiene and vinyl acetate. What kind of reaction is this decomposition?

13. (a) Woodward and Hoffmann suggested that the *endo* preference in Diels-Alder reactions is a "secondary" effect of orbital symmetry, and there is experimental evidence to support this suggestion. Using the dimerization of butadiene (Fig. 33.19, p. 1213) as your example, show how these secondary effects could arise. (*Hint*: Draw the orbitals involved and examine the structures closely.)

(b) In contrast, [6 + 4] cycloaddition was predicted to take place in the *exo* sense. This has been confirmed by experiment. Using the reaction of *cis*-1,3,5-hexatriene with 1,3-butadiene as example, show how this prediction could have been made.

14. (a) The sex attractant of the male boll weevil has been synthesized by the following sequence. Give stereochemical structures for compounds S-Y.



(b) The stereochemistry of the sex attractant was confirmed by the following reaction. Give a stereochemical formula for Z, and show how this confirms the stereochemistry.



15. (a) Although "Dewar benzene," VII, is less stable by 60 kcal than its isomer benzene, its conversion into benzene is surprisingly slow, with an  $E_{\text{act}}$  of about 37 kcal. It has a half-life at room temperature of two days, at 90° complete conversion into benzene takes one-half hour.

The high  $E_{\text{act}}$  for conversion of VII into benzene is attributed to the fact that the reaction is symmetry-forbidden. Explain.



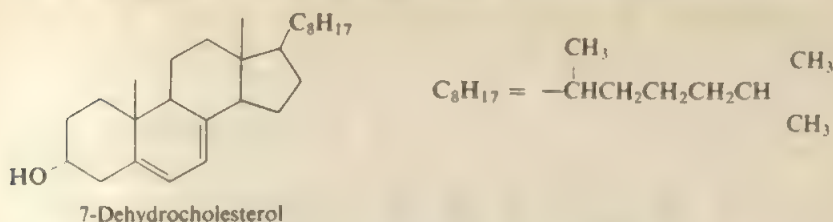
VII



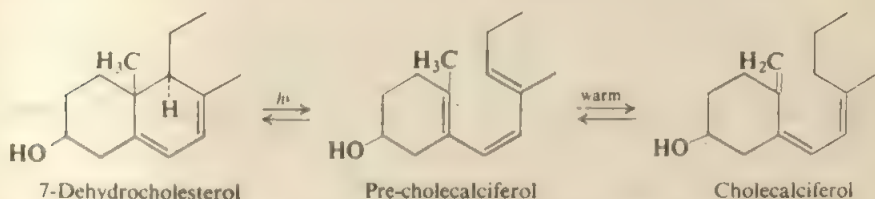
VIII

(b) In Problem 17, p. 1189, we outlined the synthesis of VIII. Although much less stable than its aromatic isomer toluene, this compound is surprisingly long-lived. Here, too, the conversion is considered to be symmetry-forbidden. Explain.

16. (a) In the skin of animals exposed to sunlight, 7-dehydrocholesterol is converted

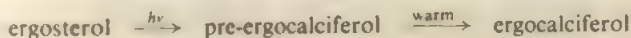


into the hormone *cholecalciferol*, the so-called "vitamin"  $\text{D}_3$  that plays a vital role in the development of bones. In the laboratory, the following sequence was observed:



What processes are actually taking place in these two reactions? Show details.

- (b) An exactly analogous reaction sequence is used to convert the plant steroid ergosterol (p. 481) into *ergocalciferol*, the "vitamin"  $\text{D}_2$  that is added to milk:

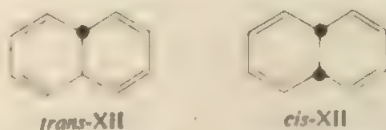


What is the structure of pre-ergocalciferol? Of ergocalciferol?

- (c) On heating at  $190^\circ$ , pre-ergocalciferol is converted into IX and X, stereoisomers of ergosterol. What reaction is taking place, and what are the structures of IX and X?

- (d) Still another stereoisomer of ergosterol, XI, can be converted by ultraviolet light into pre-ergocalciferol. What must XI be?

17. On photolysis at room temperature, *trans*-XII was converted into *cis*-XII. When *trans*-XII was photolyzed at  $-190^\circ$ , however, no *cis*-XII could be detected in the reaction



mixture. When *trans*-XII was photolyzed at  $-190^\circ$ , allowed to warm to room temperature, and then cooled again to  $-190^\circ$ , *cis*-XII was obtained. If, instead, the low-temperature photolysis mixture was reduced at  $-190^\circ$ , cyclodecane was formed; reduction of the room-temperature photolysis mixture gave only a trace of cyclodecane.

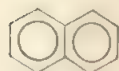
On the basis of these and other facts, E. E. van Tamelen (of Stanford University) proposed a two-step mechanism, consistent with orbital symmetry theory, for the conversion of *trans*-XII into *cis*-XII.

- (a) Suggest a mechanism for the transformation. Show how it accounts for the facts.  
 (b) The intermediate proposed by van Tamelen—never isolated and never before identified—is of considerable theoretical interest. Why? What conclusion do you draw about this compound from the facts?

## Polynuclear Aromatic Compounds

### 34.1 Fused-ring aromatic compounds

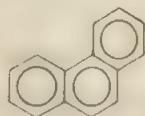
Two aromatic rings that share a pair of carbon atoms are said to be *fused*. In this chapter we shall study the chemistry of the simplest and most important of the fused-ring hydrocarbons, **naphthalene**,  $C_{10}H_8$ , and look briefly at two others of formula  $C_{14}H_{10}$ , **anthracene** and **phenanthrene**.



Naphthalene



Anthracene



or



Phenanthrene

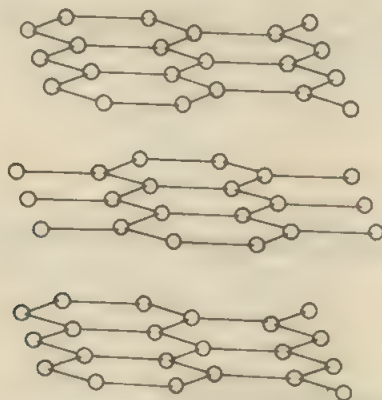
Table 34.1 POLYNUCLEAR AROMATIC COMPOUNDS

Name	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Name	M p , °C	B.p., °C
Naphthalene	80	218	1-Naphthalenesulfonic acid	90	
1,4-Dihydronaphthalene	25	212	2-Naphthalenesulfonic acid	91	
Tetralin	— 30	208	1-Naphthol	96	280
<i>is</i> -Decalin	— 43	194	2-Naphthol	122	286
<i>trans</i> -Decalin	— 31	185	1,4-Naphthoquinone	125	
1-Methylnaphthalene	— 22	241	Anthracene	217	354
2-Methylnaphthalene	38	240	9,10-Anthraquinone	286	380
1-Bromonaphthalene	6	281	Phenanthrene	101	340
2-Bromonaphthalene	59	281	9,10-Phenanthrenequinone	207	
1-Chloronaphthalene		263	Chrysene	255	
2-Chloronaphthalene	46	265	Pyrene	150	
1-Nitronaphthalene	62	304	1,2-Benzanthracene	160	
2-Nitronaphthalene	79		Dibenz(a,h)anthracene	262	
1-Naphthylamine	50	301	3-Methylcholanthrene	180	
2-Naphthylamine	113	294			



All three of these hydrocarbons are obtained from coal tar, naphthalene being the most abundant (5%) of all constituents of coal tar.

If diamond (p. 167) is the ultimate polycyclic aliphatic system, then the other allotropic form of elemental carbon, *graphite*, might be considered the ultimate in fused-ring aromatic systems. X-ray analysis shows that the carbon atoms are arranged in layers. Each layer is a continuous network of planar, hexagonal rings; the carbon atoms within a layer are held

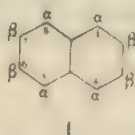


together by strong, covalent bonds 1.42 Å long (only slightly longer than those in benzene, 1.39 Å). The different layers, 3.4 Å apart, are held to each other by comparatively weak forces. The lubricating properties of graphite (its "greasy" feel) may be due to slipping of layers (with adsorbed gas molecules between) over one another.

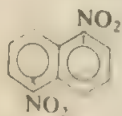
## NAPHTHALENE

### 34.2 Nomenclature of naphthalene derivatives

Positions in the naphthalene ring system are designated as in I. Two isomeric



monosubstituted naphthalenes are differentiated by the prefixes 1- and 2-, or  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -. The arrangement of groups in more highly substituted naphthalenes is indicated by numbers. For example:



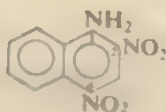
1,5-Dinitronaphthalene



6-Amino-2-naphthalenesulfonic acid



2-Naphthol  
 $\beta$ -Naphthol



2,4-Dinitro-1-naphthylamine

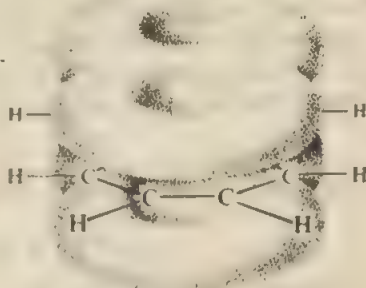
**Problem 34.1** How many different mononitronaphthalenes are possible? Dinitronaphthalenes? Nitronaphthylamines?

### 34.3 Structure of naphthalene

Naphthalene is classified as aromatic because its properties resemble those of benzene (see Sec. 14.10). Its molecular formula,  $C_{10}H_8$ , might lead one to expect a high degree of unsaturation; yet naphthalene is resistant (although less so than benzene) to the addition reactions characteristic of unsaturated compounds. Instead, the typical reactions of naphthalene are electrophilic substitution reactions, in which hydrogen is displaced as hydrogen ion and the naphthalene ring system is preserved. Like benzene, naphthalene is unusually stable: its heat of combustion is 61 kcal lower than that calculated on the assumption that it is aliphatic (see Problem 14.2, p. 579).

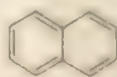
From the experimental standpoint, then, naphthalene is classified as aromatic on the basis of its properties. From a theoretical standpoint, naphthalene has the structure required of an aromatic compound: it contains flat six-membered rings, and consideration of atomic orbitals shows that the structure can provide  $\pi$  clouds containing six electrons—the *aromatic sextet* (Fig. 34.1). Ten carbons lie at the

**Figure 34.1.** Naphthalene molecule.  $\pi$  clouds above and below plane of rings.

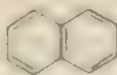


corners of two fused hexagons. Each carbon is attached to three other atoms by  $\sigma$  bonds; since these  $\sigma$  bonds result from the overlap of trigonal  $sp^2$  orbitals, all carbon and hydrogen atoms lie in a single plane. Above and below this plane there is a cloud of  $\pi$  electrons formed by the overlap of  $p$  orbitals and shaped like a figure 8. We can consider this cloud as two partially overlapping sextets that have a pair of  $\pi$  electrons in common.

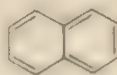
In terms of valence bonds, naphthalene is considered to be a resonance hybrid of the three structures I, II, and III. Its resonance energy, as shown by the heat of combustion, is 61 kcal/mol.



I



II



III

X-ray analysis shows that, in contrast to benzene, all carbon-carbon bonds in naphthalene are not the same. In particular, the  $C_1-C_2$  bond is considerably shorter (1.365 Å) than the  $C_2-C_3$  bond (1.404 Å). Examination of structures I, II, and III shows us that this difference in bond lengths is to be expected. The  $C_1-C_2$  bond is double in two structures

and single in only one: the  $C_2-C_3$  bond is single in two structures and double in only one. We would therefore expect the  $C_1-C_2$  bond to have more double-bond character than single, and the  $C_2-C_3$  bond to have more single-bond character than double.

For convenience, we shall represent naphthalene as the single structure IV, in which the circles stand for partially overlapping aromatic sextets.



IV

Although representation IV suggests a greater symmetry for naphthalene than exists, it has the advantage of emphasizing the aromatic nature of the system.

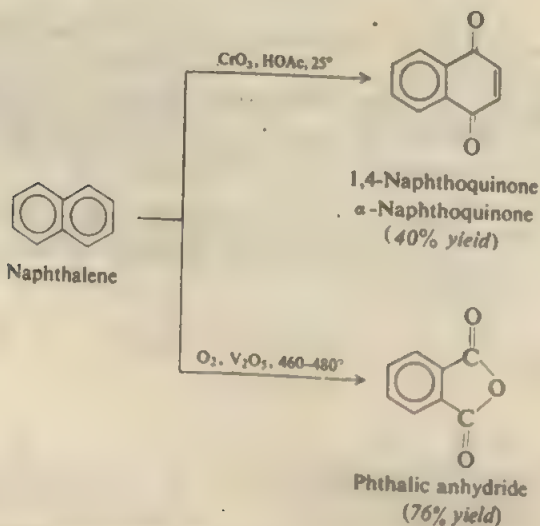
### 34.4 Reactions of naphthalene

Like benzene, naphthalene typically undergoes electrophilic substitution; this is one of the properties that entitle it to the designation of "aromatic." An electrophilic reagent finds the  $\pi$  cloud a source of available electrons, and attaches itself to the ring to form an intermediate carbocation; to restore the stable aromatic system, the carbocation then gives up a proton.

Naphthalene undergoes oxidation or reduction more readily than benzene, but only to the stage where a substituted benzene is formed; further oxidation or reduction requires more vigorous conditions. Naphthalene is stabilized by resonance to the extent of 61 kcal/mol; benzene is stabilized to the extent of 36 kcal/mol. When the aromatic character of one ring of naphthalene is destroyed, only 25 kcal of resonance energy is sacrificed; in the next stage, 36 kcal has to be sacrificed.

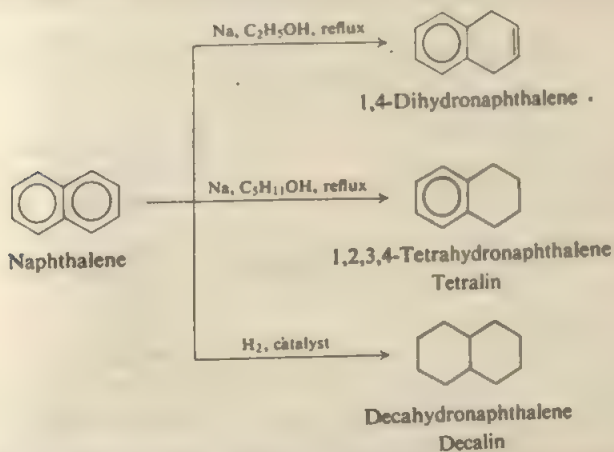
## REACTIONS OF NAPHTHALENE

### 1. Oxidation. Discussed in Sec. 34.5.



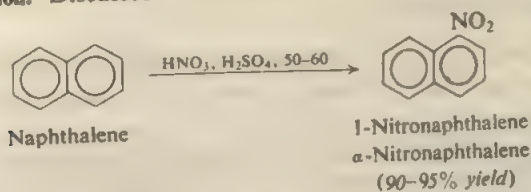
CONT.

## 2. Reduction. Discussed in Sec. 34.6.

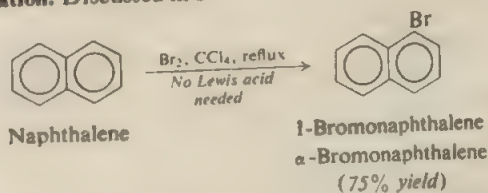


## 3. Electrophilic substitution. Discussed in Sec. 34.8–34.13.

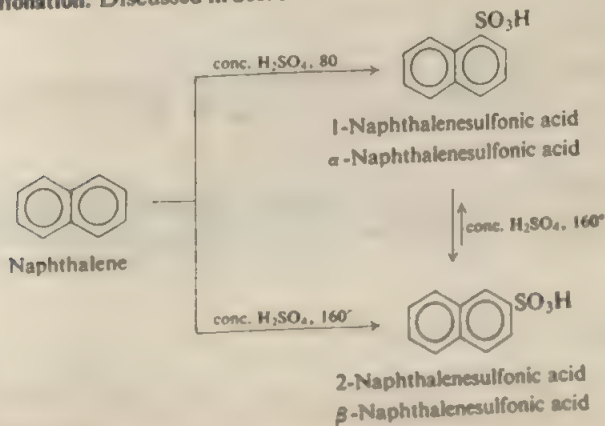
## (a) Nitration. Discussed in Sec. 34.8.



## (b) Halogenation. Discussed in Sec. 34.8.



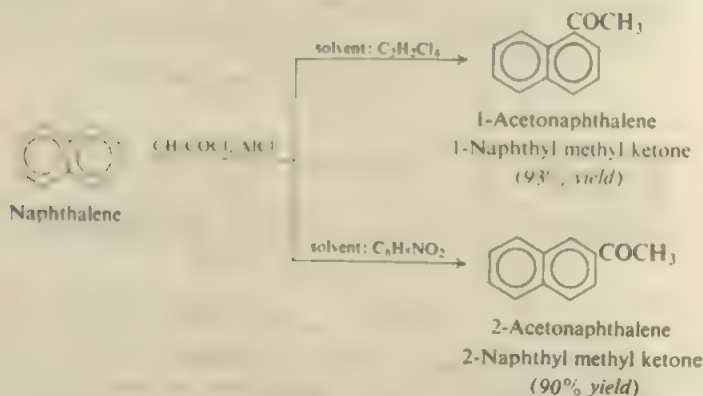
## (c) Sulfonation. Discussed in Sec. 34.11.



CONT.



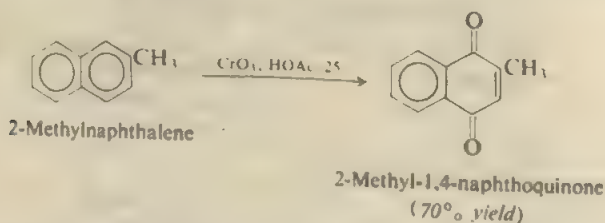
(d) Friedel-Crafts acylation. Discussed in Sec. 34.10.



### 34.5 Oxidation of naphthalene

Oxidation of naphthalene by oxygen in the presence of vanadium pentoxide destroys one ring and yields phthalic anhydride. Because of the availability of naphthalene from coal tar, and the large demand for phthalic anhydride (for example, see Secs. 20.24 and 34.18), this is an important industrial process.

Oxidation of certain naphthalene derivatives destroys the aromatic character of one ring in a somewhat different way, and yields diketo compounds known as *quinones* (Sec. 32.9). For example:



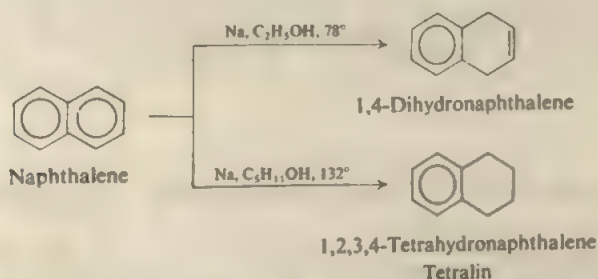
Because of this tendency to form quinones, it is not always feasible to prepare naphthalenecarboxylic acids as we do benzoic acids, by oxidation of methyl side chains.

**Problem 34.2** Show how 1- and 2-naphthalenecarboxylic acids ( $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -naphthoic acids) can be obtained from naphthalene by way of the corresponding acetonaphthalenes.

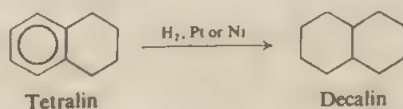
### 34.6 Reduction of naphthalene

In contrast to benzene, naphthalene can be reduced by chemical reducing agents. It is converted by sodium and ethanol into 1,4-dihydronaphthalene, and by sodium and isopentyl alcohol into 1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene (*tetralin*). The

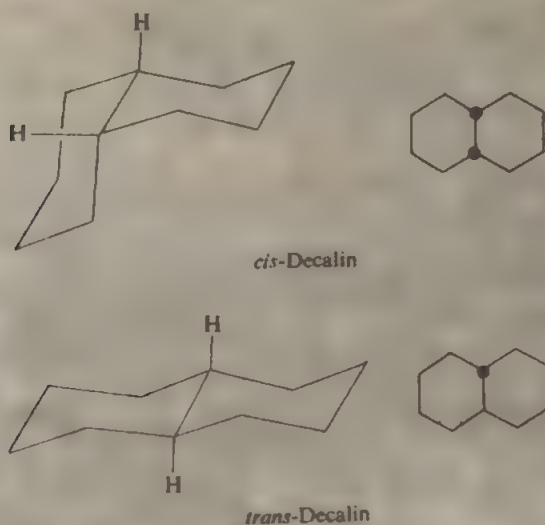
temperature at which each of these sodium reductions is carried out is the boiling point of the alcohol used; at the higher temperature permitted by isopentyl alcohol (b.p.  $132^{\circ}$ ), reduction proceeds further than with the lower-boiling ethyl alcohol (b.p.  $78^{\circ}$ ).



The tetrahydronaphthalene is simply a dialkyl derivative of benzene. As with other benzene derivatives, the aromatic ring that remains is reduced only by vigorous catalytic hydrogenation.



**Problem 34.3** Decalin exists in two stereoisomeric forms, *cis*-decalin (b.p.  $194^{\circ}$ ) and *trans*-decalin (b.p.  $185^{\circ}$ ).



(a) Build models of these compounds and see that they differ from one another. Locate in the models the pair of hydrogen atoms, attached to the fused carbons, that are *cis* or *trans* to each other.

(b) In *trans*-decalin is one ring attached to the other by two equatorial bonds, by two axial bonds, or by one axial bond and one equatorial bond? In *cis*-decalin? Remembering

(Sec. 5.12) that an equatorial position gives more room than an axial position for a bulky group, predict which should be the more stable isomer, *cis*- or *trans*-decalin.

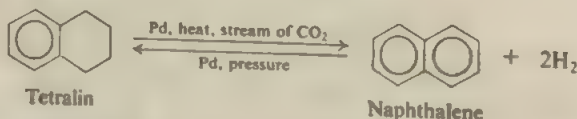
(c) Account for the following facts: rapid hydrogenation of tetralin over a platinum black catalyst at low temperatures yields *cis*-decalin, while slow hydrogenation of tetralin over nickel at high temperatures yields *trans*-decalin. Compare this with 1,2- and 1,4-addition to conjugated dienes (Sec. 9.27), Friedel-Crafts alkylation of toluene (Sec. 16.12), sulfonation of phenol (Problem 24.16, p. 976), and sulfonation of naphthalene (Sec. 34.11).

### 34.7 Dehydrogenation of hydroaromatic compounds. Aromatization

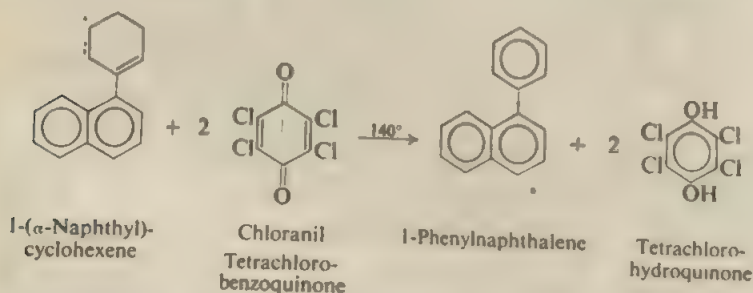
Compounds like 1,4-dihydronaphthalene, tetralin, and decalin, which contain the carbon skeleton of an aromatic system but too many hydrogen atoms for aromaticity, are called *hydroaromatic compounds*. They are sometimes prepared, as we have seen, by partial or complete hydrogenation of an aromatic system.

More commonly, however, the process is reversed, and hydroaromatic compounds are converted into aromatic compounds. Such a process is called **aromatization**.

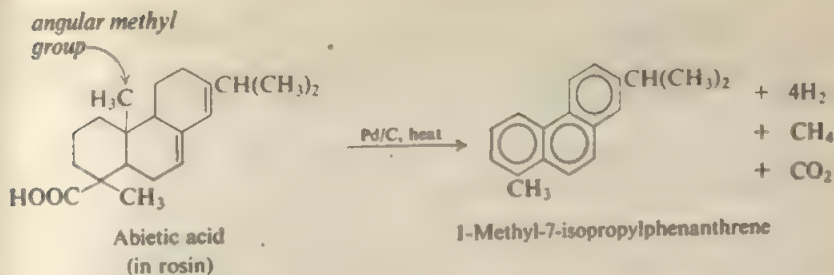
One of the best methods of aromatization is **catalytic dehydrogenation**, accomplished by heating the hydroaromatic compound with a catalyst like platinum, palladium, or nickel. We recognize these as the catalysts used for hydrogenation; since they lower the energy barrier between hydrogenated and dehydrogenated compounds, they speed up reaction in *both* directions (see Sec. 8.3). The position of the equilibrium is determined by other factors: hydrogenation is favored by an excess of hydrogen under pressure; dehydrogenation is favored by sweeping away the hydrogen in a stream of inert gas. For example:



In an elegant modification of dehydrogenation, hydrogen is *transferred* from the hydroaromatic compound to a compound that readily accepts hydrogen. For example:



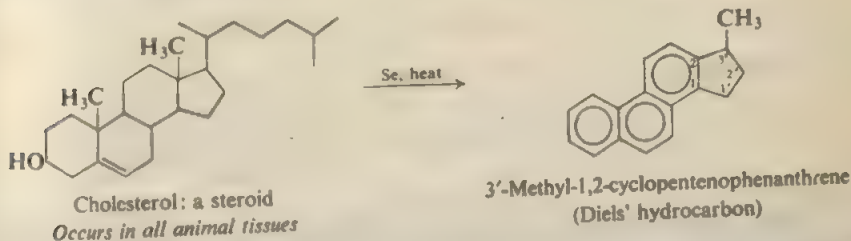
The tendency to form the stable aromatic system is so strong that, when necessary, groups can be eliminated: for example, a methyl group located at the point of fusion between two rings, a so-called *angular methyl group* (Sec. 10.17).



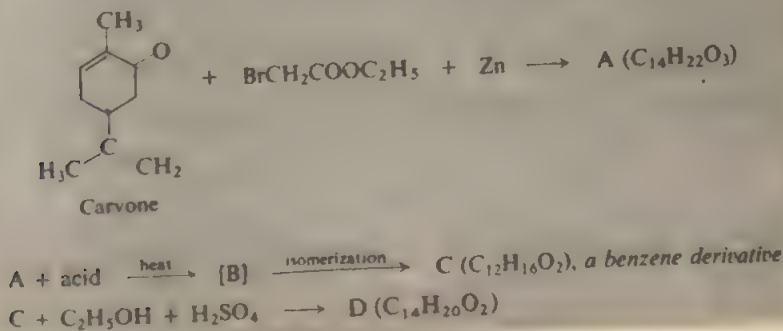
Aromatization has also been accomplished by heating hydroaromatic compounds with selenium, sulfur, or organic disulfides,  $\text{RSSR}$ . Here hydrogen is eliminated as  $\text{H}_2\text{Se}$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$ , or  $\text{RSH}$ .

**Problem 34.4** In a convenient laboratory preparation of dry hydrogen bromide,  $\text{Br}_2$  is dripped into boiling tetralin; the vapors react to form naphthalene and four moles of hydrogen bromide. Account, step by step, for the formation of these products. What familiar reactions are involved in this aromatization?

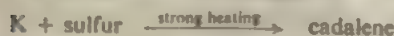
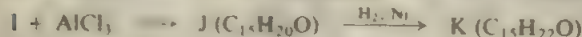
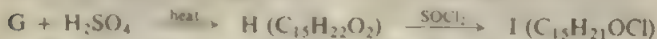
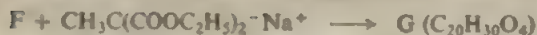
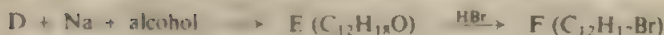
Aromatization is important in both *synthesis* and *analysis*. Many polynuclear aromatic compounds are made from open-chain compounds by ring closure; the last step in such a synthesis is aromatization (see, for example, Secs. 34.14, 34.19, and 35.13). Many naturally occurring substances are hydroaromatic; conversion into identifiable aromatic compounds gives important information about their structures. For example:



**Problem 34.5** *Cadinene*,  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{24}$ , is found in oil of cubebs. Dehydrogenation with sulfur converts cadinene into *cadalene*,  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{18}$ , which can be synthesized from *carvone* by the following sequence:





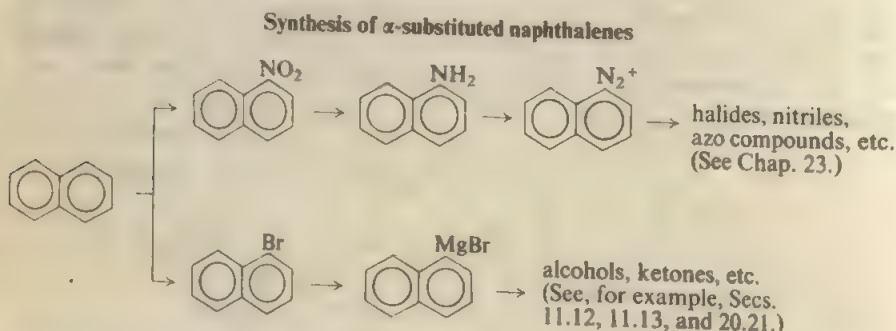


(a) What is the structure and systematic name of cadalene? (b) What is a likely carbon skeleton for cadinene?

### 34.8 Nitration and halogenation of naphthalene

Nitration and halogenation of naphthalene occur almost exclusively in the 1-position. Chlorination or bromination takes place so readily that a Lewis acid is not required for catalysis.

As we would expect, introduction of these groups opens the way to the preparation of a series of *alpha*-substituted naphthalenes: from 1-nitronaphthalene via the amine and diazonium salts, and from 1-bromonaphthalene via the Grignard reagent.



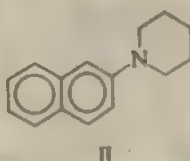
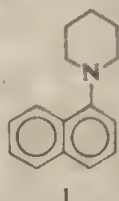
**Problem 34.6** Starting with 1-nitronaphthalene, and using any inorganic or aliphatic reagents, prepare:

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| (a) 1-naphthylamine              | (g) 1-(aminomethyl)naphthalene,                 |
| (b) $\alpha$ -iodonaphthalene    | $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$ |
| (c) $\alpha$ -naphthonitrile     | (h) 1-( <i>n</i> -propyl)naphthalene            |
| (d) $\alpha$ -naphthoic acid     | (i) $\alpha$ -naphthaldehyde                    |
| (1-naphthalenecarboxylic acid)   | (j) (1-naphthyl)methanol                        |
| (e) $\alpha$ -naphthoyl chloride | (k) 1-chloromethylnaphthalene                   |
| (f) 1-naphthyl ethyl ketone      | (l) (1-naphthyl)acetic acid                     |
|                                  | (m) N-(1-naphthyl)acetamide                     |

**Problem 34.7** Starting with 1-bromonaphthalene, and using any inorganic or aliphatic reagents, prepare:

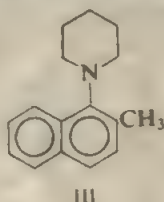
- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| (a) 1-naphthylmagnesium bromide | (e) 1-naphthylcarbinol                              |
| (b) $\alpha$ -naphthoic acid    | (1- $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ) |
| (1-naphthalenecarboxylic acid)  | (f) methyl-1-naphthylcarbinol                       |
| (c) 2-(1-naphthyl)-2-propanol   | (1-(1-naphthyl)ethanol)                             |
| (dimethyl-1-naphthylcarbinol)   | (g) 2-(1-naphthyl)ethanol                           |
| (d) 1-isopropylnaphthalene      |   |

**Problem 34.8** (a) When 1-chloronaphthalene is treated with sodium amide,  $\text{Na}^+ \text{NH}_2^-$ , in the secondary amine *piperidine* (Sec. 35.12), there is obtained not only I but also II,



in the ratio of 1:2. Similar treatment of 1-bromo- or 1-iodonaphthalene yields the same products and in the same 1:2 ratio. Show all steps in a mechanism that accounts for these observations. Can you suggest possible factors that might tend to favor II over I?

(b) Under the conditions of part (a), 1-fluoro-2-methylnaphthalene reacts to yield



III. By what mechanism must this reaction proceed?

(c) Under the conditions of part (a), 1-fluoronaphthalene yields I and II, but in the ratio of 3:2. How do you account for this different ratio of products? What two factors make the fluoronaphthalene behave differently from the other halonaphthalenes?

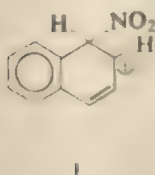
### 34.9 Orientation of electrophilic substitution in naphthalene

Nitration and halogenation of naphthalene take place almost exclusively in the  $\alpha$ -position. Is this orientation of substitution what we might have expected?

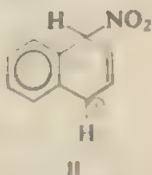
In our study of electrophilic substitution in the benzene ring (Chap. 15), we found that we could account for the observed orientation on the following basis:

(a) the controlling step is the attachment of an electrophilic reagent to the aromatic ring to form an intermediate carbocation; and (b) this attachment takes place in such a way as to yield the most stable intermediate carbocation. Let us see if this approach can be applied to the nitration of naphthalene.

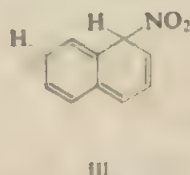
Attack by nitronium ion at the  $\alpha$ -position of naphthalene yields an intermediate carbocation that is a hybrid of structures I and II in which the positive charge is accommodated by the ring under attack, and several structures like III in which the charge is accommodated by the other ring.



More stable:  
aromatic sextet  
preserved



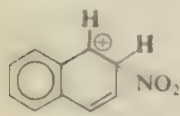
More stable:  
aromatic sextet  
preserved



Less stable:  
aromatic sextet  
disrupted

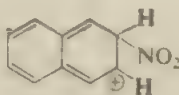
Alpha  
attack

Attack at the  $\beta$ -position yields an intermediate carbocation that is a hybrid of IV and V in which the positive charge is accommodated by the ring under attack, and several structures like VI in which the positive charge is accommodated by the other ring.



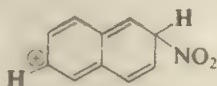
IV

More stable:  
aromatic sextet  
preserved



V

Less stable:  
aromatic sextet  
disrupted



VI

Beta  
attack

Less stable:  
aromatic sextet  
disrupted

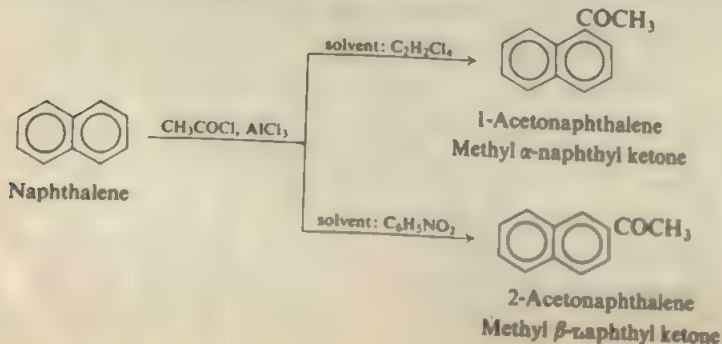
In structures I, II, and IV, the aromatic sextet is preserved in the ring that is not under attack; these structures thus retain the full resonance stabilization of one benzene ring (36 kcal/mol). In structures like III, V, and VI, on the other hand, the aromatic sextet is disrupted in both rings, with a large sacrifice of resonance stabilization. Clearly, structures like I, II, and IV are much the more stable.

But there are two of these stable contributing structures (I and II) for attack at the  $\alpha$ -position and only one (IV) for attack at the  $\beta$ -position. On this basis we would expect the carbocation resulting from attack at the  $\alpha$ -position (and also the transition state leading to that ion) to be much more stable than the carbocation (and the corresponding transition state) resulting from attack at the  $\beta$ -position, and that nitration would therefore occur much more rapidly at the  $\alpha$ -position.

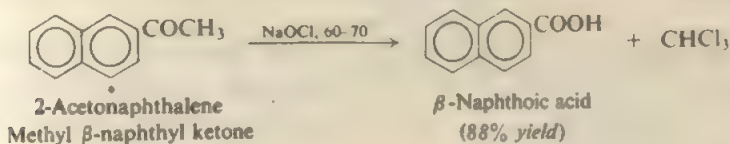
Throughout our study of polynuclear hydrocarbons, we shall find that the matter of orientation is generally understandable on the basis of this principle: of the large number of structures contributing to the intermediate carbocation, the important ones are those that require the smallest sacrifice of resonance stabilization. Indeed, we shall find that this principle accounts for orientation not only in electrophilic substitution but also in oxidation, reduction, and addition.

### 34.10 Friedel-Crafts acylation of naphthalene

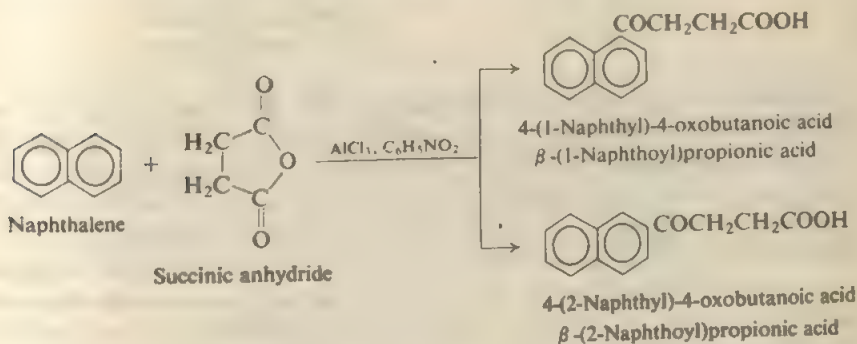
Naphthalene can be acetylated by acetyl chloride in the presence of aluminum chloride. The orientation of substitution is determined by the particular solvent used: predominantly *alpha* in carbon disulfide or solvents like tetrachloroethane, predominantly *beta* in nitrobenzene. (The effect of nitrobenzene has been attributed to its forming a complex with the acid chloride and aluminum chloride which, because of its bulkiness, attacks the roomier *beta* position.)



Thus acetylation (as well as sulfonation, Sec. 34.11) affords access to the *beta* series of naphthalene derivatives. Treatment of 2-acetonaphthalene with hypophalite, for example, provides the best route to  $\beta$ -naphthoic acid.



Acylation of naphthalene by succinic anhydride yields a mixture of *alpha* and *beta* products. These are separable, however, and both are of importance in the synthesis of higher ring systems (see Sec. 34.19).



Friedel-Crafts alkylation of naphthalene is of little use, probably for a combination of reasons: the high reactivity of naphthalene which causes side reactions and polyalkylations, and the availability of alkynaphthalenes via acylation or ring closure (Sec. 34.14).

**Problem 34.9** The position of the  $\text{—COOH}$  in  $\beta$ -naphthoic acid was shown by vigorous oxidation and identification of the product. What was this product? What product would have been obtained from  $\alpha$ -naphthoic acid?

**Problem 34.10** Outline the synthesis of the following compounds via an initial acylation:

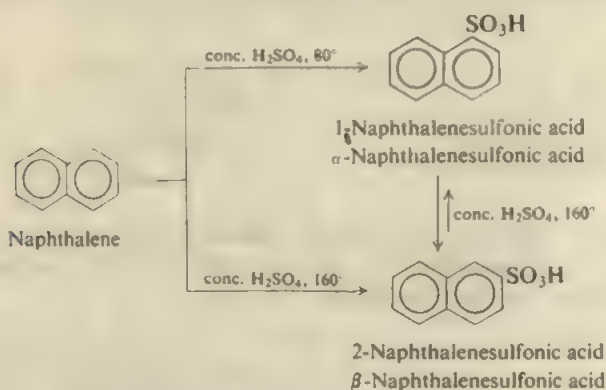
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) 2-ethylnaphthalene                 | (f) 4-(2-naphthyl)-1-butanol           |
| (b) methylethyl-2-naphthylcarbinol     | (g) 5-(2-naphthyl)-2-methyl-2-pentanol |
| (c) 2-(2-naphthyl)-2-butanol           | (h) 2-isohexylnaphthalene              |
| (d) 2-( <i>sec</i> -butyl)naphthalene  | (i) 1-amino-1-(2-naphthyl)ethane       |
| (e) 1-(2-naphthyl)ethanol              | (j) $\beta$ -vinyl naphthalene         |
| (e) $\gamma$ -(2-naphthyl)butyric acid |  |

### 34.11 Sulfonation of naphthalene

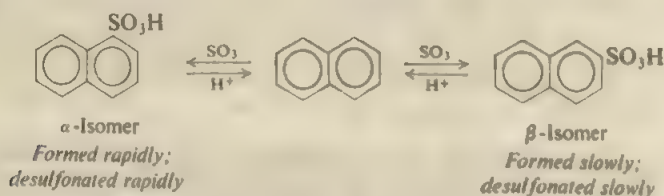
Sulfonation of naphthalene at  $80^\circ$  yields chiefly 1-naphthalenesulfonic acid; sulfonation at  $160^\circ$  or higher yields chiefly 2-naphthalenesulfonic acid. When 1-naphthalenesulfonic acid is heated in sulfuric acid at  $160^\circ$ , it is largely converted



into the 2-isomer. These facts become understandable when we recall that sulfonation is readily reversible (Sec. 15.12).



Sulfonation, like nitration and halogenation, occurs more rapidly at the  $\alpha$ -position, since this involves the more stable intermediate carbocation. But, for the same reason, attack by hydrogen ion, with subsequent desulfonation, also occurs more readily at the  $\alpha$ -position. Sulfonation at the  $\beta$ -position occurs more slowly but, once formed, the  $\beta$ -sulfonic acid tends to resist desulfonation. At low temperatures desulfonation is slow and we isolate the product that is formed faster, the *alpha* naphthalenesulfonic acid. At higher temperatures, desulfonation becomes important, equilibrium is more readily established, and we isolate the product that is more stable, the *beta* naphthalenesulfonic acid.



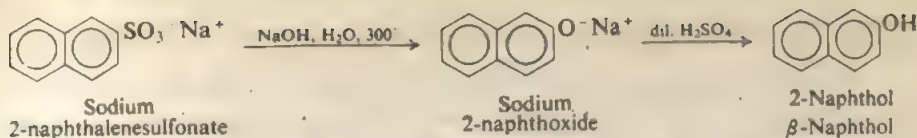
We see here a situation exactly analogous to one we have encountered several times before: in 1,2- and 1,4-addition to conjugated dienes (Sec. 9.27), in Friedel-Crafts alkylation of toluene (Sec. 16.12), and in sulfonation of phenols (Problem 24.16, p. 976). At low temperatures the controlling factor is *rate of reaction*, at high temperatures, *position of equilibrium*.

Sulfonation is of special importance in the chemistry of naphthalene because it gives access to the *beta*-substituted naphthalenes, as shown in the next section.

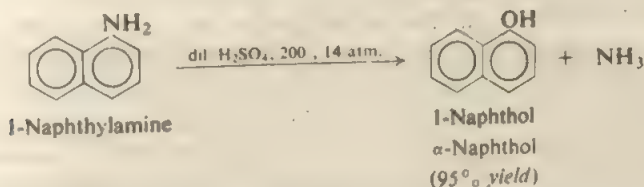
**Problem 34.11** (a) Show all steps in the sulfonation and desulfonation of naphthalene. (b) Draw a potential energy curve for the reactions involved. (Compare your answer with Fig. 9.7, p. 433.)

## 34.12 Naphthols

Like the phenols we have already studied, naphthols can be prepared from the corresponding sulfonic acids by fusion with alkali. Naphthols can also be made

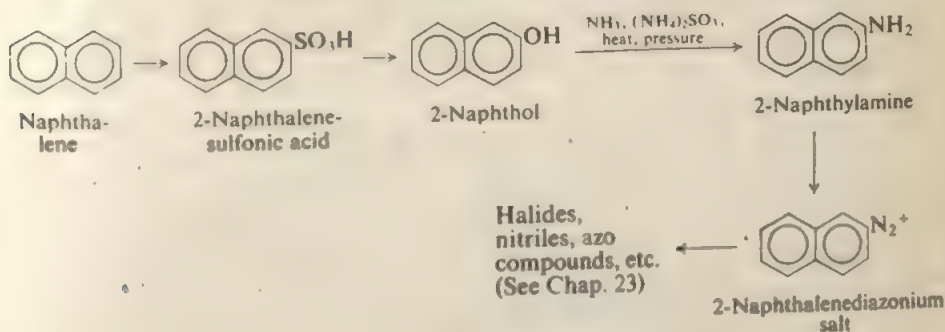


from the naphthylamines by direct hydrolysis under acidic conditions. (This reaction, which does not work in the benzene series, is superior to hydrolysis of diazonium salts.)



The  $\alpha$ -substituted naphthalenes, like substituted benzenes, are most commonly prepared by a sequence of reactions that ultimately goes back to a nitro compound (Sec. 34.8). Preparation of  $\beta$ -substituted naphthalenes, on the other hand, cannot start with the nitro compound, since nitration does not take place in the  $\beta$ -position. The route to  $\beta$ -naphthylamine, and through it to the versatile diazonium salts, lies through  $\beta$ -naphthol.  $\beta$ -Naphthol is made from the  $\beta$ -sulfonic acid; it is converted

#### Synthesis of $\beta$ -substituted naphthalenes



into  $\beta$ -naphthylamine when heated under pressure with ammonia and ammonium sulfite (the **Bucherer reaction**, not useful in the benzene series except in rare cases).

Naphthols undergo the usual reactions of phenols. Coupling with diazonium salts is particularly important in dye manufacture (see Sec. 23.19); the orientation of this substitution is discussed in the following section.

**Problem 34.12** Starting from naphthalene, and using any readily available reagents, prepare the following compounds.

- |                             |                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| (a) 2-bromonaphthalene      | (d) $\beta$ -naphthoic acid      |
| (b) 2-fluoronaphthalene     | (e) $\beta$ -naphthaldehyde      |
| (c) $\beta$ -naphthonitrile | (f) 3-(2-naphthyl)propenoic acid |

**Problem 34.13** Diazonium salts can be converted into nitro compounds by treatment with sodium nitrite, usually in the presence of a catalyst. Suggest a method for preparing 2-nitronaphthalene

### 34.13 Orientation of electrophilic substitution in naphthalene derivatives

We have seen that naphthalene undergoes nitration and halogenation chiefly at the  $\alpha$ -position, and sulfonation and Friedel-Crafts acylation at either the  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ -position, depending upon conditions. Now, to what position will a *second* substituent attach itself and how is the orientation influenced by the group already present?

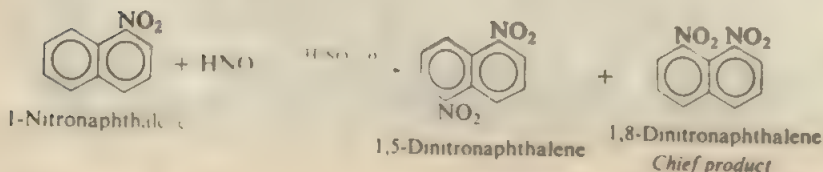
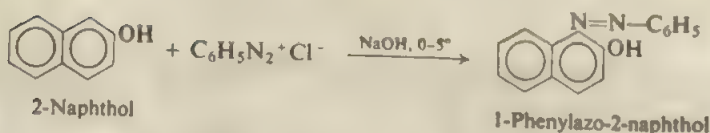
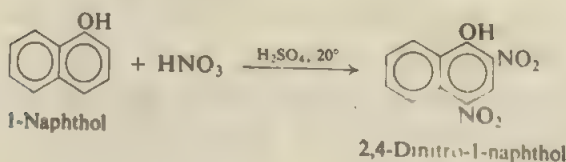
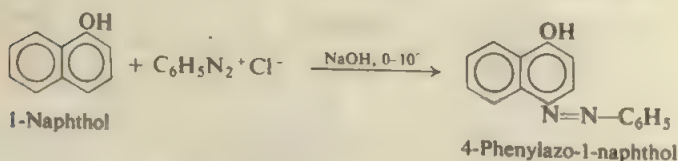
Orientation of substitution in the naphthalene series is more complicated than in the benzene series. An entering group may attach itself either to the ring that already carries the first substituent, or to the other ring; there are seven different positions open to attack, in contrast to only three positions in a monosubstituted benzene.

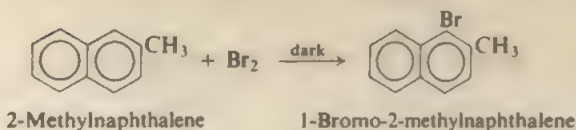
The major products of further substitution in a monosubstituted naphthalene can usually be predicted by the following rules. As we shall see, these rules are reasonable ones in light of structural theory and our understanding of electrophilic aromatic substitution.

(a) An activating group (electron-releasing group) tends to direct further substitution into the same ring. An activating group in position 1 directs further substitution to position 4 (and, to a lesser extent, to position 2). An activating group in position 2 directs further substitution to position 1.

(b) A deactivating group (electron-withdrawing group) tends to direct further substitution into the other ring: at an  $\alpha$ -position in nitration or halogenation, or at an  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ -position (depending upon temperature) in sulfonation.

For example:





These rules do not always hold in sulfonation, because the reaction is reversible and at high temperatures tends to take place at a  $\beta$ -position. However, the observed products can usually be accounted for if this feature of sulfonation is kept in mind.

**Problem 34.14** Predict the orientation in each of the following reactions, giving structural formulas and names for the predicted products:

- 1-methylnaphthalene + Br<sub>2</sub>
- 1-methylnaphthalene + HNO<sub>3</sub> + H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>
- 1-methylnaphthalene + CH<sub>3</sub>COCl + AlCl<sub>3</sub>
- the same as (a), (b), and (c) for 2-methylnaphthalene
- 2-nitronaphthalene + Br<sub>2</sub>
- 2-methoxynaphthalene + Br<sub>2</sub>

**Problem 34.15** How do you account for the following observed orientations?

- 2-methoxynaphthalene + CH<sub>3</sub>COCl + AlCl<sub>3</sub> + CS<sub>2</sub>  $\longrightarrow$  1-aceto compound
- 2-methoxynaphthalene + CH<sub>3</sub>COCl + AlCl<sub>3</sub> + C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>NO<sub>2</sub>  $\longrightarrow$  6-aceto compound
- 2-methylnaphthalene + H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> above 100°  $\longrightarrow$  6-sulfonic acid
- 2,6-dimethylnaphthalene + H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> at 40°  $\longrightarrow$  8-sulfonic acid
- 2,6-dimethylnaphthalene + H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> at 140°  $\longrightarrow$  3-sulfonic acid
- 2-naphthalenesulfonic acid + HNO<sub>3</sub> + H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>  $\longrightarrow$  5-nitro and 8-nitro compounds

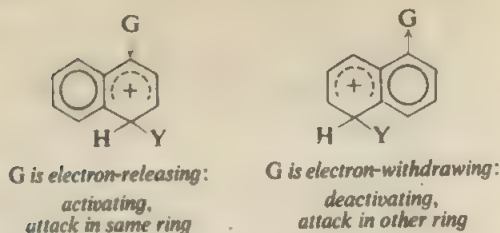
**Problem 34.16** Give the steps for the synthesis of each of the following from naphthalene and any needed reagents:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) 4-nitro-1-naphthylamine  | (f) 4-amino-1-naphthalenesulfonic acid<br>( <i>naphthionic acid</i> ) |
| (b) 1,4-dinitronaphthalene<br>( <i>Hint</i> : See Problem 34.13, p. 1245.) | (g) 8-amino-1-naphthalenesulfonic acid                                |
| (c) 2,4-dinitro-1-naphthylamine  | (h) 5-amino-2-naphthalenesulfonic acid                                |
| (d) 1,3-dinitronaphthalene   | (i) 8-amino-2-naphthalenesulfonic acid                                |
| (e) 1,2-dinitronaphthalene   |   |

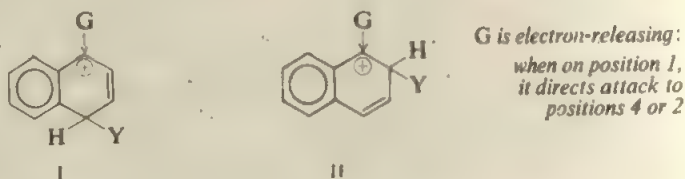
We have seen (Sec. 34.9) that orientation in naphthalene can be accounted for on the same basis as orientation in substituted benzenes: formation of the more stable intermediate carbocation. In judging the relative stabilities of these naphthalene carbocations, we have considered that those in which an aromatic sextet is preserved are by far the more stable and hence the more important. Let us see if we can account for orientation in substituted naphthalenes in the same way.

The structures preserving an aromatic sextet are those in which the positive charge is carried by the ring under attack; it is in this ring, therefore, that the charge chiefly develops. Consequently, attack occurs most readily on whichever ring can best accommodate the positive charge: the ring that carries an electron-releasing (activating) group or the ring that does *not* carry an electron-withdrawing (deactivating) group. (We have arrived at the quite reasonable conclusion that a substituent exerts its greatest effect—activating or deactivating—on the ring to which it is attached.)

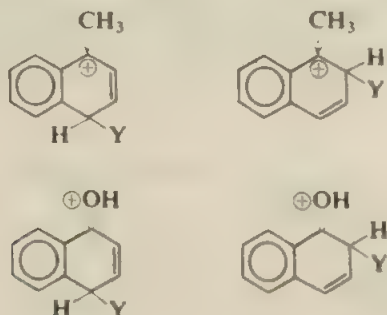




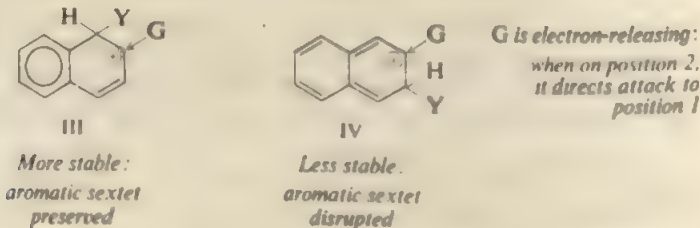
An electron-releasing group located at position 1 can best help accommodate the positive charge if attack occurs at position 4 (or position 2), through the contribution of structures like I and II.



This is true whether the group releases electrons by an inductive effect or by a resonance effect. For example:



An electron-releasing group located at position 2 could help accommodate the positive charge if attack occurred at position 1 (through structures like III), or if attack occurred at position 3 (through structures like IV).



However, we can see that only the structures like III preserve an aromatic sextet, these are much more stable than the structures like IV, and are the important ones. It is not surprising, therefore, that substitution occurs almost entirely at position 1

### 34.14 Synthesis of naphthalene derivatives by ring closure. The Haworth synthesis

Derivatives of benzene, we have seen, are almost always prepared from a compound that already contains the benzene ring: benzene itself or some simple substituted benzene. One seldom generates the benzene ring in the course of a synthesis.

While compounds containing other aromatic ring systems, too, are often prepared from the parent hydrocarbon, there are important exceptions: syntheses in which the ring system, or part of it, is actually generated. Such syntheses usually involve two stages: **ring closure** (or **cyclization**) and **aromatization**.

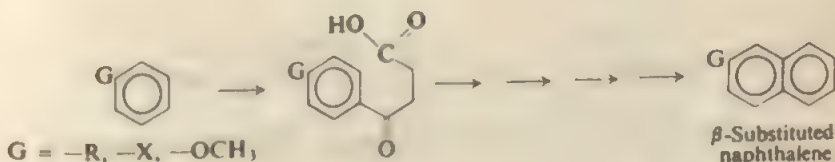
As an example, let us look at just one method used to make certain naphthalene derivatives: the **Haworth synthesis** (developed by R. D. Haworth at the University of Durham, England). Figure 34.2 (p. 1250) shows the basic scheme, which would yield naphthalene itself (not, of course, actually prepared in this way).

All the steps are familiar ones. The reaction in which the second ring is formed is simply Friedel-Crafts acylation that happens to involve two parts of the same molecule. Like many methods of ring closure, this one does not involve a new reaction, but merely an adaptation of an old one.

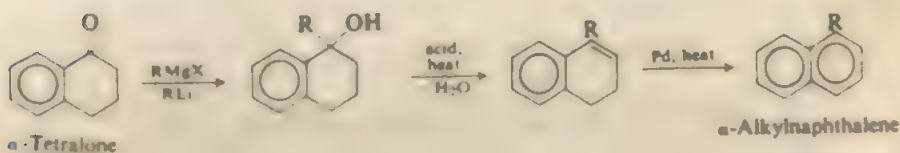
**Problem 34.17** Why is ring closure possible after the first Clemmensen reduction but not before?

To obtain substituted naphthalenes, the basic scheme can be modified in any or all of the following ways:

(a) A substituted benzene can be used in place of benzene and a  $\beta$ -substituted naphthalene obtained. Toluene or anisole or bromobenzene, for example, undergoes the initial Friedel-Crafts reaction chiefly at the *para* position; when the ring is closed, the substituent originally on the benzene ring must occupy a  $\beta$ -position in naphthalene.



(b) The intermediate cyclic ketone (an  $\alpha$ -tetralone) can be treated with a Grignard reagent, and an alkyl (or aryl) group introduced into an  $\alpha$ -position.



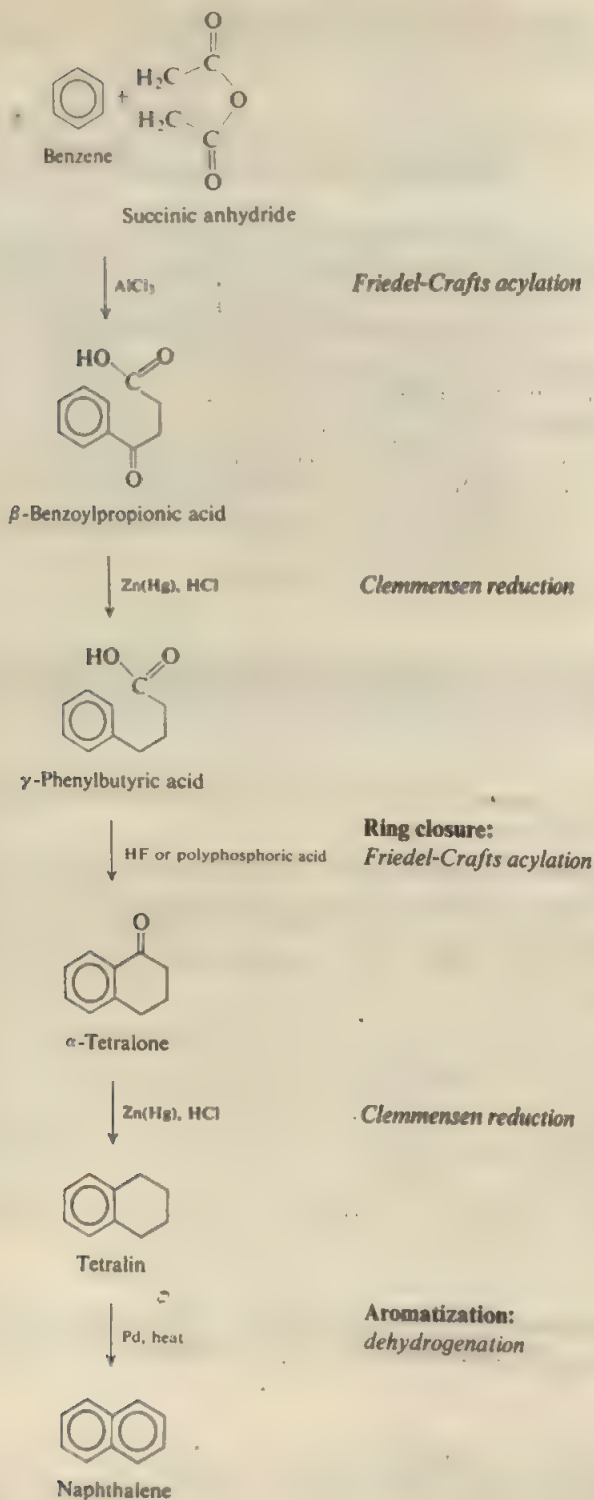
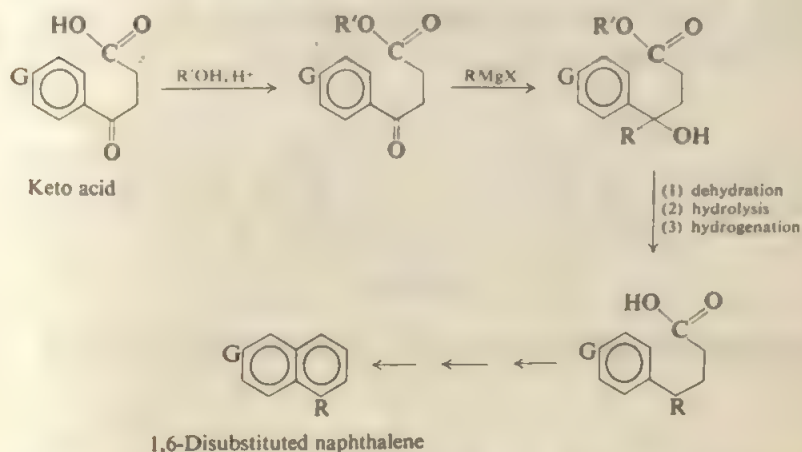


Figure 34.2. Haworth synthesis of naphthalene derivatives.

(c) The original keto acid (in the form of its ester) can be treated with a Grignard reagent, and an alkyl (or aryl) group introduced into an  $\alpha$ -position. The success of this reaction depends upon the fact that a ketone reacts much faster than an ester with a Grignard reagent.



By proper combinations of these modifications, a wide variety of substituted naphthalenes can be prepared.

**Problem 34.18** Outline all steps in the synthesis of the following compounds, starting from benzene and using any necessary aliphatic and inorganic reagents.

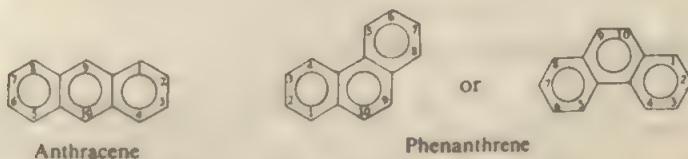
- |                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| (a) 2-methylnaphthalene     | (f) 1,4,6-trimethylnaphthalene  |
| (b) 1-methylnaphthalene     | (g) 1-ethyl-4-methylnaphthalene |
| (c) 1,4-dimethylnaphthalene | (h) 7-bromo-1-ethylnaphthalene  |
| (d) 1,7-dimethylnaphthalene | (i) 1-phenylnaphthalene         |
| (e) 1,6-dimethylnaphthalene |                                 |

**Problem 34.19** Outline the Haworth sequence of reactions, starting with naphthalene and succinic anhydride. What is the final hydrocarbon or hydrocarbons? (Remember the orientation rules for naphthalene.) Check your answer in Sec. 34.19.

## ANTHRACENE AND PHENANTHRENE

### 34.15 Nomenclature of anthracene and phenanthrene derivatives

The positions in anthracene and phenanthrene are designated by numbers as shown:



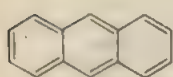
Examples are found in the various reactions that follow.



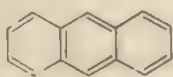
### 34.16 Structure of anthracene and phenanthrene

Like naphthalene, anthracene and phenanthrene are classified as aromatic on the basis of their properties. Consideration of atomic orbitals follows the same pattern as for naphthalene, and leads to the same kind of picture: a flat structure with partially overlapping  $\pi$  clouds lying above and below the plane of the molecule.

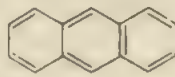
In terms of valence bonds, anthracene is considered to be a hybrid of structures I-IV,



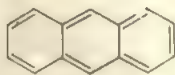
I



II



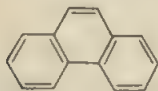
III



IV

Anthracene

and phenanthrene, a hybrid of structures V-IX. Heats of combustion indicate that



V



VI



VII



VIII

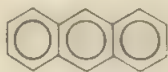


IX

Phenanthrene

anthracene has a resonance energy of 84 kcal/mol, and that phenanthrene has a resonance energy of 92 kcal/mol.

For convenience we shall represent anthracene as the single structure X, and phenanthrene as XI, in which the circles can be thought of as representing partially overlapping aromatic sextets.



X

Anthracene



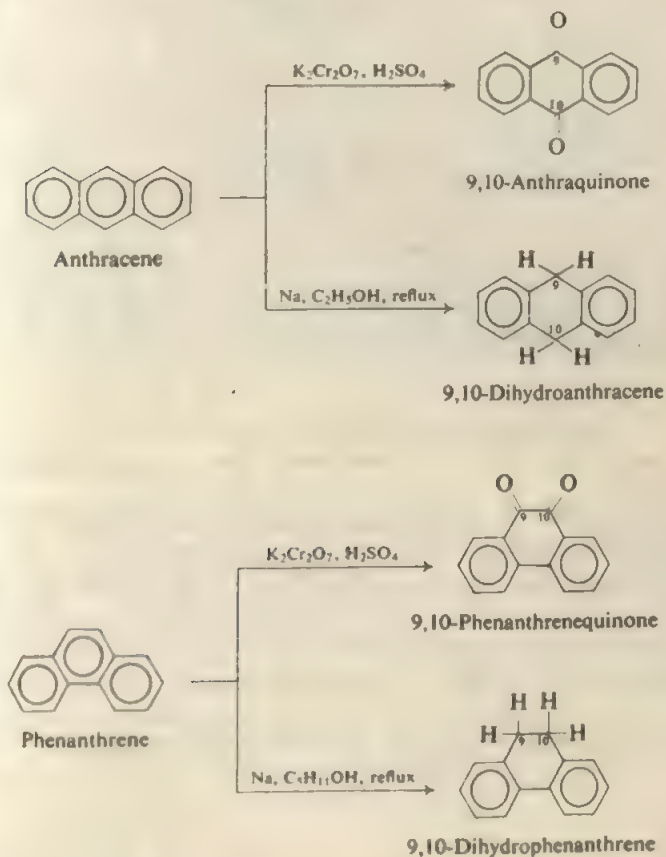
XI

Phenanthrene

### 34.17 Reactions of anthracene and phenanthrene

Anthracene and phenanthrene are even less resistant toward oxidation or reduction than naphthalene. Both hydrocarbons are oxidized to the 9,10-quinones and reduced to the 9,10-dihydro compounds. Both the orientation of these reactions and the comparative ease with which they take place are understandable on the basis of the structures involved. Attack at the 9- and 10-positions leaves two

benzene rings intact; thus there is a sacrifice of only 12 kcal of resonance energy ( $84 - 2 \times 36$ ) for anthracene, and 20 kcal ( $92 - 2 \times 36$ ) for phenanthrene. (In the

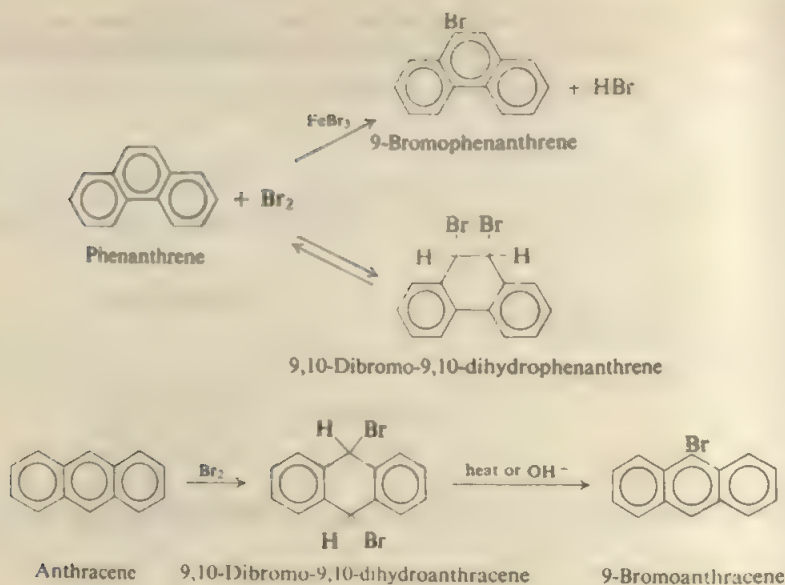


case of phenanthrene, the two remaining rings are conjugated; to the extent that this conjugation stabilizes the product—estimated at anywhere from 0 to 8 kcal/mol—the sacrifice is even less than 20 kcal.)

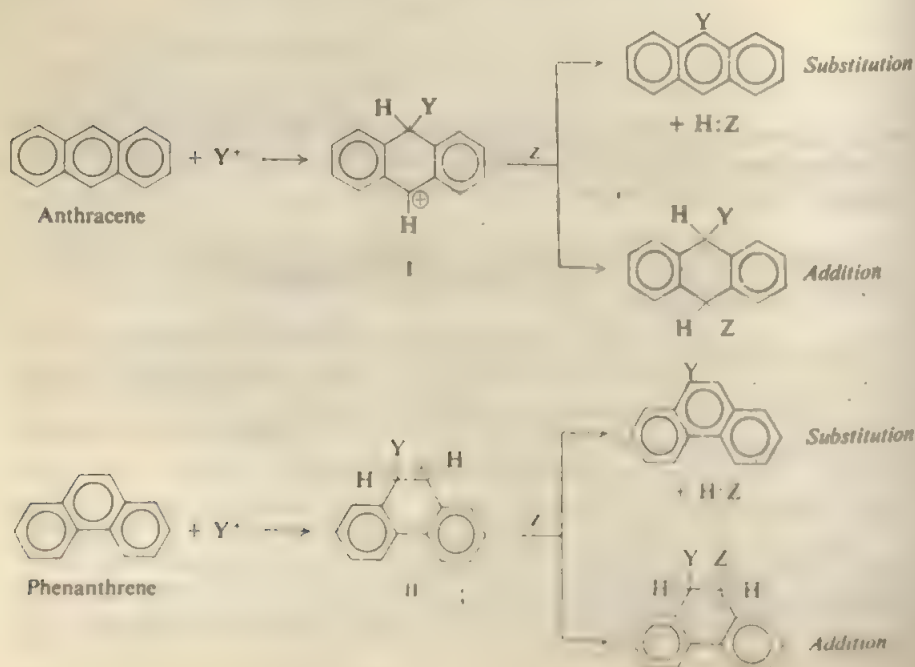
**Problem 34.20** How much resonance energy would be sacrificed by oxidation or reduction of one of the outer rings of anthracene? Of phenanthrene?

Both anthracene and phenanthrene undergo electrophilic substitution. With a few exceptions, however, these reactions are of little value in synthesis because of the formation of mixtures and polysubstitution products. Derivatives of these two hydrocarbons are usually obtained in other ways: by electrophilic substitution in 9,10-anthraquinone or 9,10-dihydrophenanthrene, for example, or by ring-closure methods (Secs. 34.18 and 34.19).

Bromination of anthracene or phenanthrene takes place at the 9-position. (9-Bromophenanthrene is a useful intermediate for the preparation of certain 9-substituted phenanthrenes.) In both cases, especially for anthracene, there is a tendency for addition to take place with the formation of the 9,10-dibromo-9,10-dihydro derivatives.

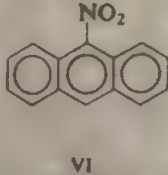
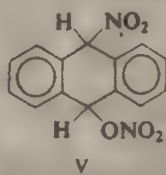
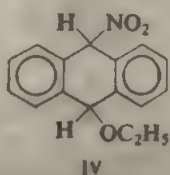
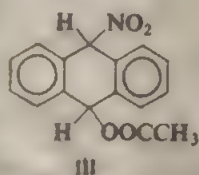


This reactivity of the 9- and 10-positions toward electrophilic attack is understandable, whether reaction eventually leads to substitution or addition. The carbocation initially formed is the most stable one, I or II, in which aromatic sextets are preserved in two of the three rings. This carbocation can then either (a) give up a proton to yield the substitution product, or (b) accept a base to yield the addition product. The tendency for these compounds to undergo addition is undoubtedly due to the comparatively small sacrifice in resonance energy that this entails (12 kcal/mol for anthracene, 20 kcal/mol or less for phenanthrene).



**Problem 34.21** Nitric acid converts anthracene into any of a number of products, III–VI, depending upon the exact conditions. How could each be accounted for?

- (a) Nitric acid and acetic acid yields III (c) Excess nitric acid yields V  
 (b) Nitric acid and ethyl alcohol yields IV (d) Nitric acid and acetic anhydride yields 9-nitroanthracene (VI)



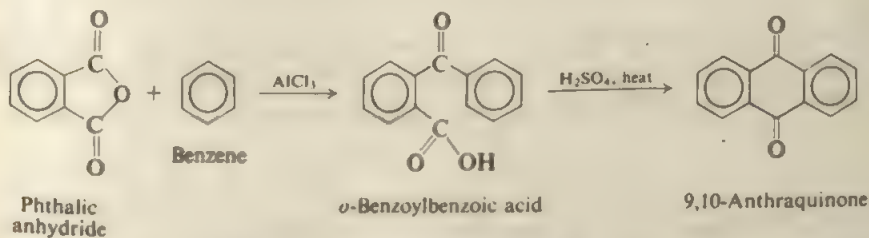
**Problem 34.22** Account for the following observations: (a) Upon treatment with hydrogen and nickel, 9,10-dihydroanthracene yields 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroanthracene. (b) In contrast to bromination, sulfonation of anthracene yields the 1-sulfonic acid.

### 34.18 Preparation of anthracene derivatives by ring closure.

#### Anthraquinones

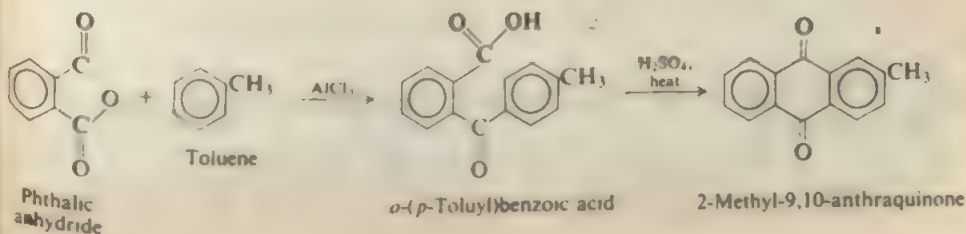
Derivatives of anthracene are seldom prepared from anthracene itself, but rather by ring-closure methods. As in the case of naphthalene, the most important method of ring closure involves adaptation of Friedel-Crafts acylation. The products initially obtained are **anthraquinones**, which can be converted into corresponding anthracenes by reduction with zinc and alkali. This last step is seldom carried out, since the quinones are by far the more important class of compounds.

The following reaction sequence shows the basic scheme. (Large amounts of anthraquinones are manufactured for the dye industry in this way.)



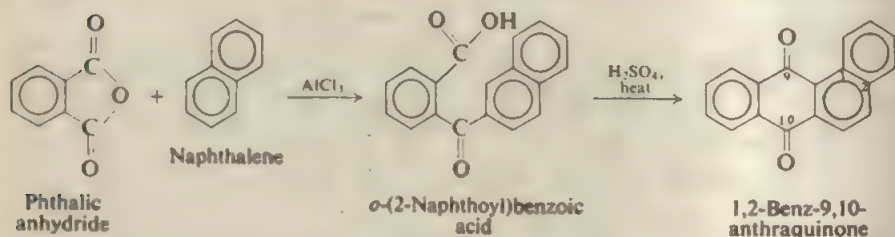
The basic scheme can be modified in a number of ways.

(a) A monosubstituted benzene can be used in place of benzene, and a 2-substituted anthraquinone obtained. (The initial acylation goes chiefly *para*. If the *para* position is blocked, *ortho* acylation is possible.) For example:

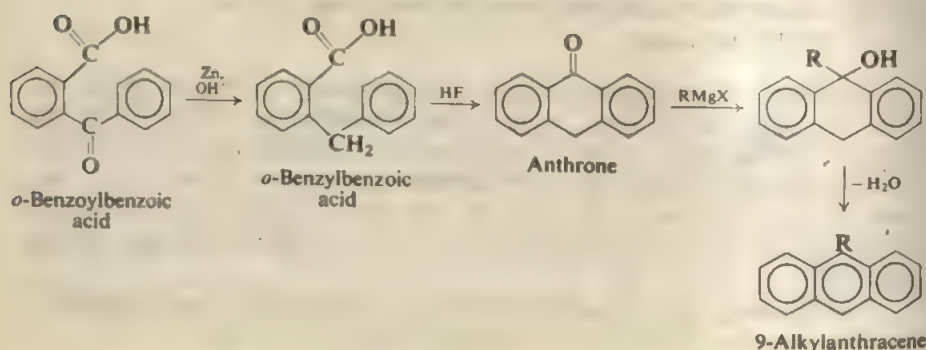




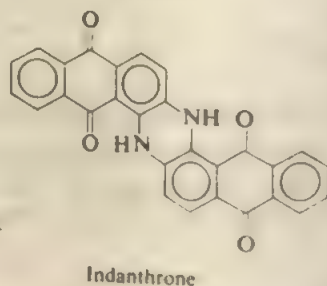
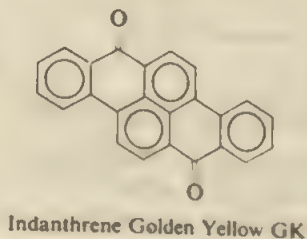
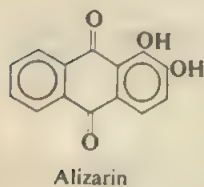
(b) A polynuclear compound can be used in place of benzene, and a product having more than three rings obtained. For example:



(c) The intermediate *o*-aroylbenzoic acid can be reduced before ring closure, and 9-substituted anthracenes obtained via Grignard reactions.



Anthraquinoid dyes are of enormous technological importance, and much work has been done in devising syntheses of large ring systems embodying the quinone structure. Several examples of anthraquinoid dyes are:



**Problem 34.23** Outline the synthesis of the following, starting from compounds having fewer rings:

- 1,4-dimethylantraquinone
- 1,2-dimethylantraquinone
- 1,3-dimethylantraquinone
- 2,9-dimethylantracene
- 9-methyl-1,2-benzanthracene (a potent cancer-producing hydrocarbon)

**Problem 34.24** What anthraquinone or anthraquinones would be expected from a sequence starting with 3-nitrophthalic anhydride and (a) benzene, (b) toluene?

### 34.19 Preparation of phenanthrene derivatives by ring closure

Starting from naphthalene instead of benzene, the Haworth succinic anhydride synthesis (Sec. 34.14) provides an excellent route to substituted phenanthrenes.

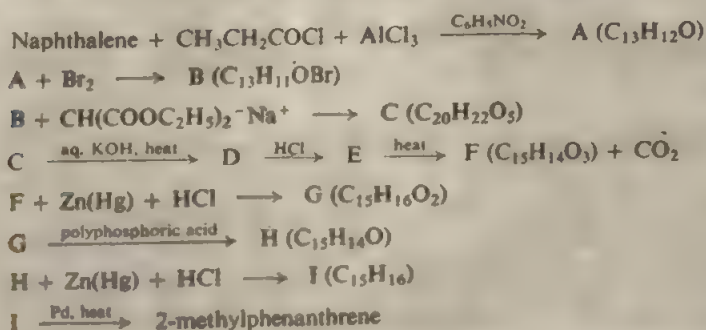
The basic scheme is outlined in Fig. 34.3. Naphthalene is acylated by succinic anhydride at both the 1- and 2-positions; the two products are separable, and either can be converted into phenanthrene. We notice that  $\gamma$ -(2-naphthyl)butyric acid undergoes ring closure at the 1-position to yield phenanthrene rather than at the 3-position to yield anthracene; the electron-releasing side chain at the 2-position directs further substitution to the 1-position (Sec. 34.13).

Substituted phenanthrenes are obtained by modifying the basic scheme in the ways already described for the Haworth method (Sec. 34.14).

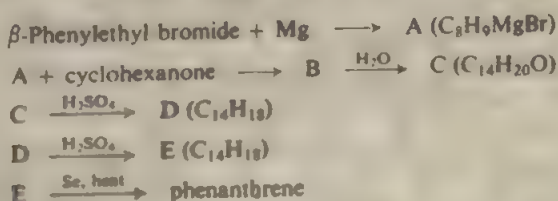
**Problem 34.25** Apply the Haworth method to the synthesis of the following, starting from naphthalene or a monosubstituted naphthalene:

- |                              |                                     |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (a) 9-methylphenanthrene     | (f) 1,4-dimethylphenanthrene        |
| (b) 4-methylphenanthrene     | (g) 1,4,9-trimethylphenanthrene     |
| (c) 1-methylphenanthrene     | (h) 2-methoxyphenanthrene           |
| (d) 1,9-dimethylphenanthrene | (Hint: See Problem 34.15, p. 1247.) |
| (e) 4,9-dimethylphenanthrene |                                     |

**Problem 34.26** Give structural formulas for all intermediates in the following synthesis of 2-methylphenanthrene. Tell what kind of reaction each step involves.



**Problem 34.27** Follow the instructions for Problem 34.26 for the following synthesis of phenanthrene (the Bogert-Cook synthesis):



How could  $\beta$ -phenylethyl bromide be made from benzene?

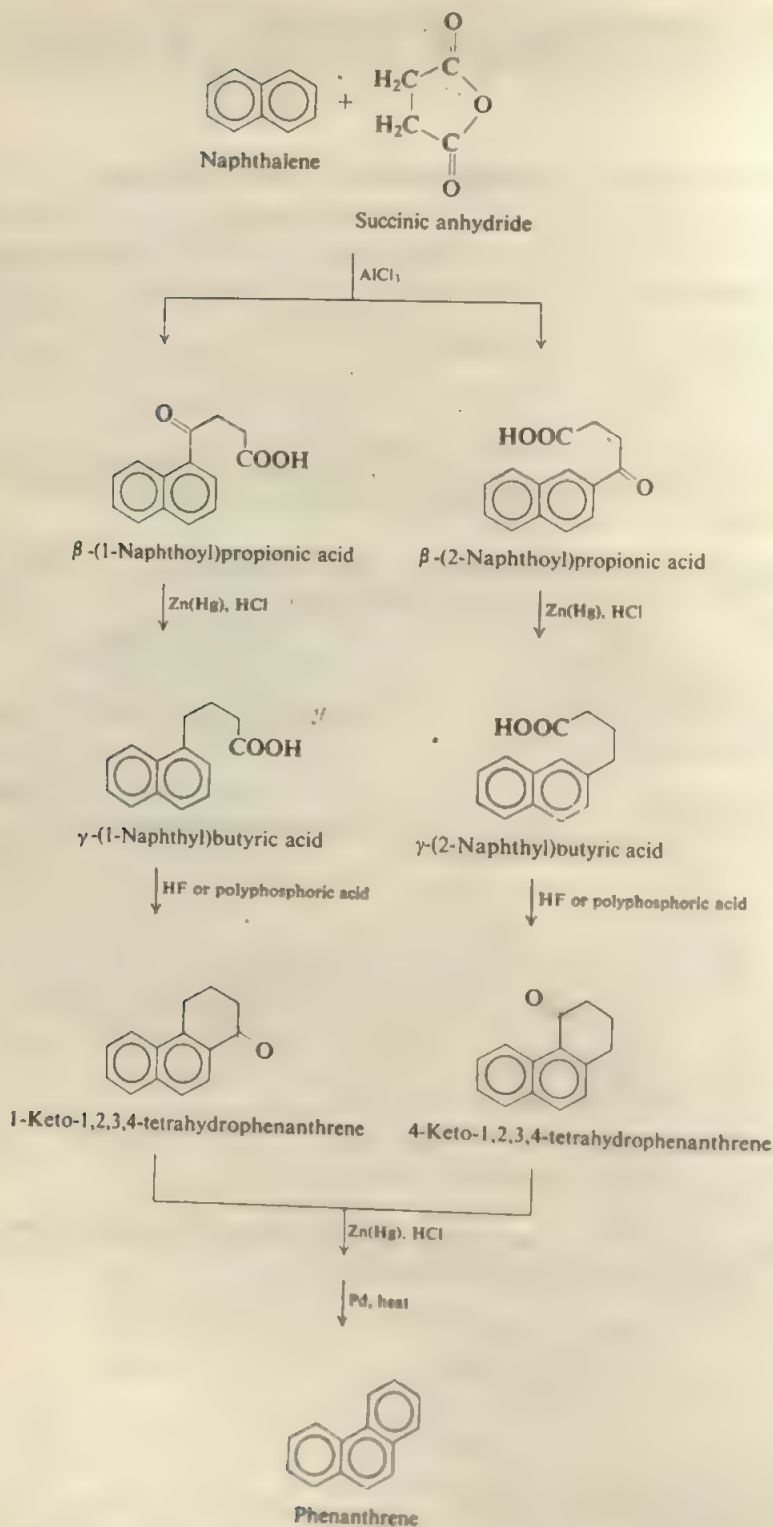
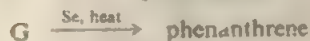
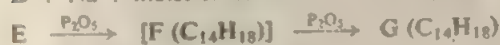
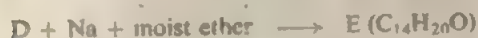
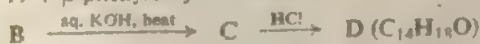
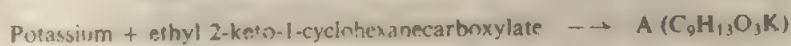
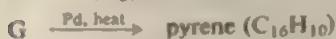
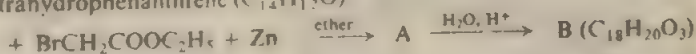


Figure 34.3. Haworth synthesis of phenanthrene derivatives

**Problem 34.28** Follow the instructions for Problem 34.26 for the following synthesis of phenanthrene (the *Bardhan-Sengupta synthesis*):

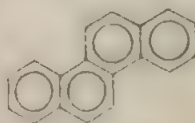


**Problem 34.29** Follow the instructions for Problem 34.26 for the following synthesis of pyrene:



How could you make the starting material?

**Problem 34.30** Outline a possible synthesis of *chrysene* by the Bogert-Cook method (Problem 34.27, p. 1257), starting from naphthalene and using any aliphatic or inorganic reagents. (*Hint*: See Problem 34.7(g), p. 1240.)



Chrysene

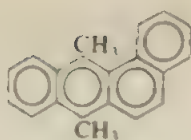
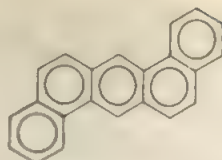
**Problem 34.31** Outline an alternative synthesis of chrysene by the Bogert-Cook method, starting from benzene and using any aliphatic or inorganic reagents.

## 34.20 Carcinogenic hydrocarbons. Arene oxides

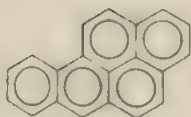
In recent years a rapidly increasing number of compounds have been found to be *carcinogenic*, that is, cancer-producing. Indeed, it has been suggested that cancer is primarily an environmental disease, just as the draining of swamps and the elimination of mosquitoes can be used to control malaria and yellow fever, so the elimination from our environment of carcinogens could reduce the incidence of cancer drastically.

Among the most potent carcinogens are certain polynuclear hydrocarbons. For example:

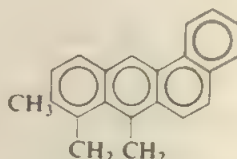


7,12-Dimethyl-  
benz[a]anthracene

Dibenz[a,h]anthracene



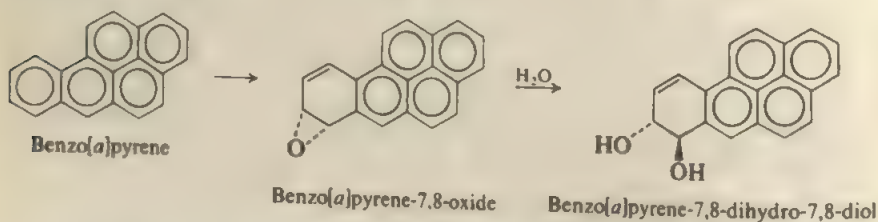
Benzo[a]pyrene



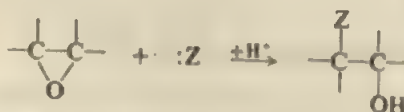
3-Methylcholanthrene

Since such hydrocarbons are the products of incomplete combustion of organic material—coal, petroleum, tobacco—they are widespread, and may well be an important cause of human cancer. As a result, much of the research into the mode of action of carcinogens has centred about polynuclear hydrocarbons.

When a foreign substance enters an organism, the organism tries to eliminate it. If the intruder is of low water solubility, this elimination generally takes the form of conversion into more water-soluble substances, which are readily excreted. Polynuclear hydrocarbons, it now seems clear, are converted first into *arene oxides*: epoxides in which the aromaticity of one ring has necessarily been destroyed. For example:

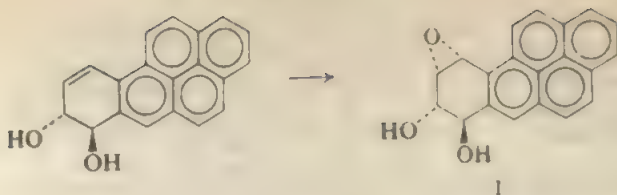


An epoxide, we know (Secs. 12.12–12.13) typically undergoes *nucleophilic substitution*, a reaction that opens the epoxide ring to give a product containing two functional groups.



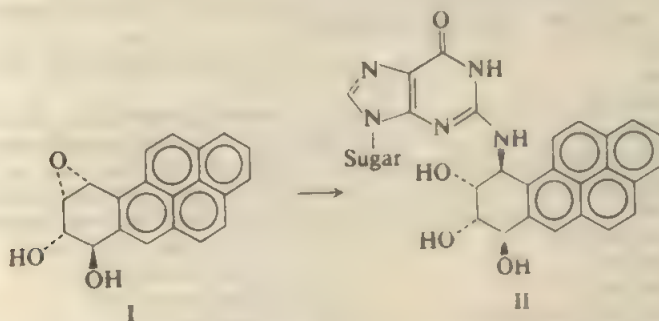
In hydrolysis, the nucleophile is water, and the product is a 1,2-diol. In an organism, hydrolysis (enzyme-catalyzed, of course) is a principal reaction of arene oxides; the resulting diols undergo further reaction and the material is eventually excreted.

But some of these diols undergo *further* epoxidation—in a regioselective and stereoselective way—to yield dihydroxy epoxides. Benzo[a]pyrene, for example, is converted into the diol epoxide I.



It is these dihydroxy epoxides that are believed to be the actual carcinogens formed by metabolism of polynuclear hydrocarbons.

Now, how do these epoxides cause cancer? When diol epoxide I is allowed to react in the test tube with DNA, and the product is degraded, there is obtained compound II.



A perfectly straightforward, familiar kind of reaction has taken place: *nucleophilic attack on an epoxide*. The  $\text{—NH}_2$  of the nucleoside base guanine has attacked C-10 of the epoxide and opened the ring with stereochemical inversion to yield the *trans* product II.

This same compound, II, is the principal product of the action of the parent hydrocarbon benzo[*a*]pyrene on DNA and RNA in human cells. The observed damage to the DNA that results from this reaction is easy to understand: attachment of this large hydrocarbon group to guanine clearly prevents it from fitting into the double helix of DNA and from hydrogen bonding to a cytosine in the opposite strand (Sec. 31.8). This damage leads to mutations and, with mutations, an increased likelihood of carcinogenesis.

Many carcinogenic substances are believed to work in much the same way: they are electrophilic and suffer nucleophilic attack by a nucleoside base of DNA. The nitrosamines (Sec. 23.12) formed by the action of nitrites on the proteins of meat are believed to exert their carcinogenic effects through their alkylating power. Methylating agents are in general carcinogenic: even the attachment of the tiny methyl groups is enough to interfere with base-pairing in the double helix.

## PROBLEMS

1. Give the structures and names of the principal products of the reaction (if any) of naphthalene with:

- (a)  $\text{CrO}_3$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$
- (b)  $\text{O}_2$ ,  $\text{V}_2\text{O}_5$
- (c)  $\text{Na}$ ,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$
- (d)  $\text{Na}$ ,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$
- (e)  $\text{H}_2$ ,  $\text{Ni}$
- (f)  $\text{HNO}_3$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$

- (g)  $\text{Br}_2$
- (h) conc.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ,  $80^\circ$
- (i) conc.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ,  $160^\circ$
- (j)  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCl}$ ,  $\text{AlCl}_3$ ,  $\text{CS}_2$
- (k)  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCl}$ ,  $\text{AlCl}_3$ ,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NO}_2$
- (l) succinic anhydride,  $\text{AlCl}_3$ ,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NO}_2$

2. Give the structure and names of the principal products of the reaction of  $\text{HNO}_3/\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  with:

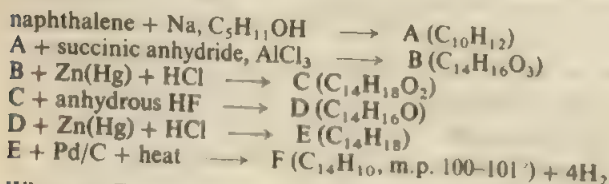
- |                                |                             |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) 1-methylnaphthalene        | (g) N-(1-naphthyl)acetamide |
| (b) 2-methylnaphthalene        | (h) N-(2-naphthyl)acetamide |
| (c) 1-nitronaphthalene         | (i) $\alpha$ -naphthol      |
| (d) 2-nitronaphthalene         | (j) $\beta$ -naphthol       |
| (e) 1-naphthalenesulfonic acid | (k) anthracene              |
| (f) 2-naphthalenesulfonic acid |                             |

3. When 2-methylnaphthalene is nitrated, three isomeric mononitro derivatives are obtained. Upon vigorous oxidation one of these yields 3-nitro-1,2,4-benzenetricarboxylic acid, and the other two both yield 3-nitrophthalic acid. Give the names and structures of the original three isomeric nitro compounds.

4. Outline all steps in a possible synthesis of each of the following from naphthalene, using any needed organic and inorganic reagents:

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| (a) $\alpha$ -naphthol          | (o) 1-amino-2-naphthol ( <i>Hint</i> : Use product of (n).) |
| (b) $\beta$ -naphthol           | (p) 4-amino-1-naphthol                                      |
| (c) $\alpha$ -naphthylamine     | (q) 1-bromo-2-methoxynaphthalene                            |
| (d) $\beta$ -naphthylamine      | (r) 1,5-diaminonaphthalene                                  |
| (e) 1-iodonaphthalene           | (s) 4,8-dibromo-1,5-diiodonaphthalene                       |
| (f) 2-iodonaphthalene           | (t) 5-nitro-2-naphthalenesulfonic acid                      |
| (g) 1-nitronaphthalene          | (u) 1,2-diaminonaphthalene                                  |
| (h) 2-nitronaphthalene          | (v) 1,3-diaminonaphthalene                                  |
| (i) $\alpha$ -naphthoic acid    | (w) <i>o</i> -aminobenzoic acid                             |
| (j) $\beta$ -naphthoic acid     | (x) phenanthrene  |
| (k) 4-(1-naphthyl)butanoic acid | (y) 9,10-anthraquinone                                      |
| (l) $\alpha$ -naphthaldehyde    | (z) anthracene  |
| (m) $\beta$ -naphthaldehyde     |   |
| (n) 1-phenylazo-2-naphthol      |   |

5. Naphthalene was transformed into another hydrocarbon by the following sequence of reactions:



What was F?

6. Outline all steps in a possible synthesis of each of the following from hydrocarbons containing fewer rings:

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| (a) 6-methoxy-4-phenyl-1-methylnaphthalene | (c) 9-phenylanthracene       |
| (b) 1,2-benzanthracene                     | (d) 1-phenylphenanthrene     |
|  | (e) 1,9-diphenylphenanthrene |

7. Acylation of phenanthrene by succinic anhydride takes place at the 2- and 3-positions. The sequence of reduction, ring closure, and aromatization converts the 2-isomer into G and H, and converts the 3-isomer into G.

What is the structure and name of G? Of H?

8. When 4-phenyl-3-butenic acid is refluxed there is formed a product,  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_8\text{O}$ , which is soluble in aqueous NaOH but not in aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , and which reacts with benzenediazonium chloride to yield a red-orange solid. What is the product, and by what series of steps is it probably formed?

9. Anthracene reacts readily with maleic anhydride to give I,  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_5$ , which can be hydrolyzed to J, a dicarboxylic acid of formula  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_4$ . (a) What reaction do you think is involved in the formation of I? (b) What is the most probable structure of I? Of J?



Anthracene reacts with methyl fumarate to give a product that on hydrolysis yields K, a dicarboxylic acid of formula  $C_{18}H_{14}O_4$ . (c) Compare the structures of J and K. (*Hint*: See Problem 8, p. 1186.)

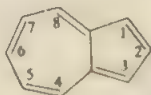
Anthracene reacts with *p*-benzoquinone to yield L,  $C_{20}H_{14}O_2$ . In acid, L undergoes rearrangement to a hydroquinone M,  $C_{20}H_{14}O_2$ . Oxidation of M gives a new quinone N,  $C_{20}H_{12}O_2$ . Reductive amination of N gives a diamine O,  $C_{20}H_{16}N_2$ . Deamination of O by the usual method gives the hydrocarbon *triptcene*,  $C_{20}H_{14}$ . (d) What is a likely structure for triptcene?

10. Reduction of aromatic rings by the action of Li metal in ammonia generally gives 1,4-addition and yields a dihydro compound. Thus from naphthalene,  $C_{10}H_8$ , one can obtain  $C_{10}H_{10}$ . (a) Draw the structure of this dihydro compound.

Similar reduction is possible for 2-methoxynaphthalene (methyl 2-naphthyl ether). (b) Draw the structure of this dihydro compound. (c) If this dihydro ether is cleaved by acid, what is the structure of the initial product? (d) What further change will this initial product undoubtedly undergo, and what will be the final product?

11. Reduction of naphthalene by Li metal in  $C_2H_5NH_2$  gives a 52% yield of 1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8-octahydronaphthalene. (a) What will this compound yield upon ozonolysis?

Treatment of the ozonolysis product ( $C_{10}H_{16}O_2$ ) with base yields an unsaturated ketone ( $C_{10}H_{14}O$ ). (b) What is its structure? (c) Show how this ketone can be transformed into *azulene*,  $C_{10}H_8$ , a blue hydrocarbon that is isomeric with naphthalene.



I  
Azulene

12. (a) Azulene (preceding problem) is a planar molecule, and has a heat of combustion about 40 kcal/mol lower than that calculated by the method of Problem 14.2 (p. 579). It couples with diazonium salts and undergoes nitration and Friedel-Crafts acylation. Using both valence-bond and orbital structures, account for these properties of azulene. What might be a better representation of azulene than the formula I?

(b) The dipole moment of azulene is 1.08 D; that of 1-chloroazulene is 2.69 D. What is the direction of the dipole of azulene? Is this consistent with the structure you arrived at in (a)?

13. (a) In  $CF_3COOH$  solution, azulene gives the following NMR spectrum:

a	singlet,	$\delta$ 4.4, 2H
b	doublet,	$\delta$ 7.8, 1H
c	doublet,	$\delta$ 8.1, 1H
d	multiplet,	$\delta$ 9, 5H

and in  $CF_3COOD$  solution, the following spectrum:

a	singlet,	$\delta$ 8.1, 1H
b	multiplet,	$\delta$ 9, 5H

What compound gives rise to the spectrum in  $CF_3COOH$ ? in  $CF_3COOD$ ? Identify all NMR signals.

(b) In light of your structure for azulene (preceding problem), how do you account for what happens in  $CF_3COOH$  solution? What would you expect to obtain on neutralization of this solution?

(c) Show in detail just how the compound giving rise to the spectrum observed in  $CF_3COOD$  must have been formed. What would you expect to obtain on neutralization of this solution?

(d) At which position or positions in azulene would you expect nitration, Friedel-Crafts acylation, and diazonium coupling to occur?



14. Azulene reacts with *n*-butyllithium to yield, after hydrolysis and dehydrogenation, a *n*-butylazulene, and similarly with sodamide to yield an aminoazulene. To what class of reactions do these substitutions belong? In which ring would you expect such substitution to have occurred? At which position?

15. The structure of *eudalene*,  $C_{14}H_{16}$ , a degradation product of eudesmol (a terpene found in eucalyptus oil), was first established by the following synthesis:

*p*-isopropylbenzaldehyde + ethyl bromoacetate, Zn; then  $H_2O \rightarrow P (C_{14}H_{20}O_3)$

$P + \text{acid, heat} \rightarrow Q (C_{14}H_{18}O_2)$

$Q + Na, \text{ethyl alcohol} \rightarrow R (C_{12}H_{18}O)$

$R \xrightarrow{HBr} \xrightarrow{KCN} \xrightarrow{H_2O, H^+} \xrightarrow{SOCl_2} S (C_{13}H_{17}OCl)$

$S + AlCl_3, \text{warm} \rightarrow T (C_{13}H_{16}O)$

$T + CH_3MgBr, \text{then } H_2O \rightarrow U (C_{14}H_{20}O)$

$U + \text{acid, heat} \rightarrow V (C_{14}H_{18})$

$V + \text{sulfur, heat} \rightarrow \text{eudalene } (C_{14}H_{16})$

What is the structure and systematic name of eudalene?

16. Many polynuclear aromatic compounds do not contain fused ring systems, e.g., biphenyl and triphenylmethane. Give structures and names of compounds W through II, formed in the following syntheses of such polynuclear compounds.

(a) 1,2,4,5-tetrachlorobenzene +  $H_2O, \text{heat} \rightarrow W (C_6H_3OCl_3)$

$W + HCHO + H_2SO_4 \rightarrow [X, C_7H_5O_2Cl_3] \rightarrow Y (C_{13}H_6O_2Cl_6)$ ,

"Hexachlorophene," soluble in base

(b) *m*-bromotoluene + Mg, ether  $\rightarrow Z (C_7H_7MgBr)$

$Z + 4\text{-methylcyclohexanone, then } H_2O \rightarrow AA (C_{14}H_{20}O)$

$AA + H^+, \text{heat} \rightarrow BB (C_{14}H_{18})$

$BB + Pd/C, \text{heat} \rightarrow CC (C_{14}H_{14})$

(c) ethyl benzoate +  $C_6H_5MgBr, \text{then } H_2O \rightarrow DD (C_{19}H_{16}O)$

$DD + \text{conc. } HBr \rightarrow EE (C_{19}H_{15}Br)$

$EE + Ag \rightarrow FF (C_{38}H_{30})$

(d)  $(C_6H_5)_3COH + C_6H_5NH_2 + \text{acid} \rightarrow GG (C_{25}H_{21}N)$

$GG + NaNO_2 + HCl; \text{then } H_3PO_2 \rightarrow HH (C_{25}H_{20})$

(e)  $C_6H_5COCH_3 + \text{acid} + \text{heat} \rightarrow II (C_{24}H_{18})$

(Hint: Acids catalyze aldol condensations.)

17. When 1-nitro-2-aminonaphthalene is treated with sodium nitrite and HCl, and then with warm water, there is obtained not only 1-nitro-2-naphthol, but also 1-chloro-2-naphthol. How do you account for the formation of the chloronaphthol? Consider carefully the stage at which chlorine is introduced into the molecule.

18. Treatment of phenanthrene with diazomethane yields a product JJ for which mass spectrometry indicates a molecular weight of 192. The infrared spectrum of JJ resembles that of 9,10-dihydrophenanthrene; its NMR spectrum shows two signals of one proton each at  $\delta -0.12$  and  $\delta 1.48$ .

(a) What is a likely structure for JJ, and how is it probably formed? How do you account for the formation of JJ rather than one of its isomers?

(b) When a solution of JJ in *n*-pentane was irradiated with ultraviolet light, there were obtained phenanthrene, 2-methylpentane, 3-methylpentane, and *n*-hexane; the alkanes were obtained in the ratio 34:17:49. What happened in this reaction? What is the driving force?

(c) The irradiation of JJ in cyclohexene gave four products of formula  $C_7H_{12}$ . What would you expect these products to be?

(d) What would you expect to obtain from the irradiation of JJ in *cis*-4-methyl-2-pentene? In *trans*-4-methyl-2-pentene?

19. When *dihydropentalene* is treated with a little more than two moles of *n*-butyllithium,



Dihydropentalene

a stable white crystalline material KK is obtained. In contrast to the rather complicated NMR spectrum of dihydropentalene, the NMR spectrum of KK is simple:

*a* doublet,  $\delta$  4.98,  $J = 3$  cps  
*b* triplet,  $\delta$  5.73,  $J = 3$  cps  
 peak area ratio  $a:b = 2:1$

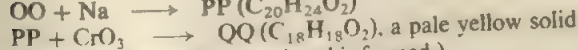
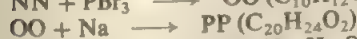
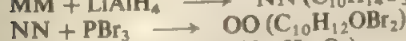
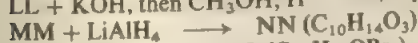
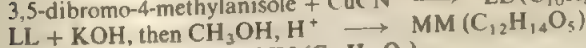
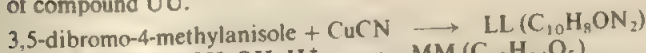
What is a likely structure for KK? Of what theoretical significance is its formation and stability?

20. (a) When either 1-chloronaphthalene or 2-chloronaphthalene is treated with lithium piperidide and piperidine (Sec. 22.14) dissolved in ether, the same mixture of products is obtained: I and II of Problem 34.8 (p. 1241) in the ratio 31:69. Show all steps in a mechanism that accounts for these observations. In particular, show why 2-chloronaphthalene yields the same mixture as 1-chloronaphthalene.

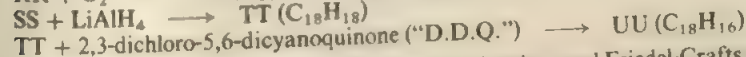
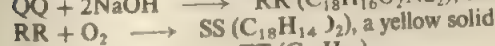
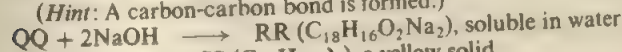
(b) Under the conditions of (a), 1-bromonaphthalene and 1-iodonaphthalene give I and II in the same ratio as 1-chloronaphthalene does. With 1-fluoronaphthalene, however, the ratio of products depends on the concentration of piperidine. At high piperidine concentration, I makes up as much as 84% of the product; at low piperidine concentrations the product ratio levels off at the 31:69 value.

Account in detail for these facts. Tell what is happening to change the product ratio, why the ratio is affected by piperidine concentration, and why the fluoride should behave differently from the other halides.

21. Give structural formulas for LL through UU. Account in detail for the properties of compound UU.



(Hint: A carbon-carbon bond is formed.)



Compound UU undergoes nitration, bromination, and Friedel-Crafts acylation. X-ray analysis shows that (except for the two methyl groups) UU is flat or nearly flat. Ten carbon bonds are between 1.386 Å and 1.401 Å long. The NMR spectrum shows peaks for 10H downfield, and for 6H far upfield:

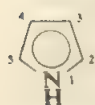
*a* singlet,  $\delta - 4.25$  ( $\tau$  14.25), 6H  
*b* triplet,  $\delta$  8.11, 2H  
*c* doublet,  $\delta$  8.62, 4H  
*d* singlet,  $\delta$  8.67, 4H

## Heterocyclic Compounds

### 35.1 Heterocyclic systems

A **heterocyclic compound** is one that contains a ring made up of more than one kind of atom.

In many of the cyclic compounds that we have studied so far—benzene, naphthalene, cyclohexanol, cyclopentadiene—the rings are made up only of carbon atoms; such compounds are called *homocyclic* or *alicyclic* compounds. But there are also rings containing, in addition to carbon, other kinds of atoms, most commonly nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur. For example:



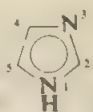
Pyrrole



Furan



Thiophene



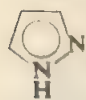
Imidazole



Oxazole



Thiazole



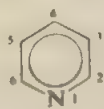
Pyrazole



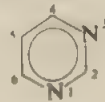
3-Pyrroline



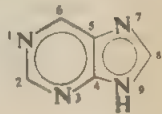
Pyrrolidine



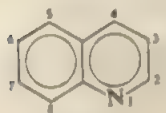
Pyridine



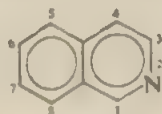
Pyrimidine



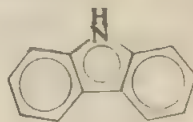
Purine



Quinoline



Isoquinoline



Carbazole

We notice that, in the numbering of ring positions, hetero atoms are generally given the lowest possible numbers.

Table 35.1 HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS

Name	M.p., °C	B.p., °C	Name	M.p., °C	B.p., °C
Furan	- 30	32	Pyridine	- 42	115
Tetrahydrofuran	- 108	66	$\alpha$ -Picoline	- 64	128
Furfuryl alcohol		171	$\beta$ -Picoline		143
Furfural	- 36	162	$\gamma$ -Picoline		144
Furoic acid	134		Piperidine	- 9	106
Pyrrrole		130	Picolinic acid	137	
Pyrrrolidine		88	Nicotinic acid	237	
Thiophene	- 40	84	Isonicotinic acid	317	
			Indole	53	254
			Quinoline	- 19	238
			Isoquinoline	23	243

Actually, of course, we have already dealt with numerous heterocyclic compounds: *cyclic anhydrides* (Sec. 20.9) and *cyclic imides* (Sec. 20.14), for example; *lactones* (Sec. 20.15) and *lactams* (Problem 22.8, p. 906); *cyclic acetals* of dihydroxy alcohols (Problem 25, p. 768); the solvents *dioxane* and *tetrahydrofuran* (Sec. 12.8). In all these, the chemistry is essentially that of their open-chain analogs.

Crown ethers (Sec. 12.9) are, of course, heterocyclic compounds, and with them we found an ordinary property of ethers—the ability to solvate cations—taking on a special importance because these molecules are rings, and rings of a particular size. In Sec. 22.14 we looked very briefly at a few nitrogen heterocycles, but only for the property they share with other amines: basicity.

We have encountered three-membered heterocyclic rings which, because of ring strain, are highly reactive: *epoxides* (Secs. 12.10–12.15) and *aziridines* (Sec. 22.6); the fleeting but important intermediates, cyclic *halonium ions* (Secs. 8.18 and 11.4) and cyclic *sulfonium ions* (Sec. 11.6).

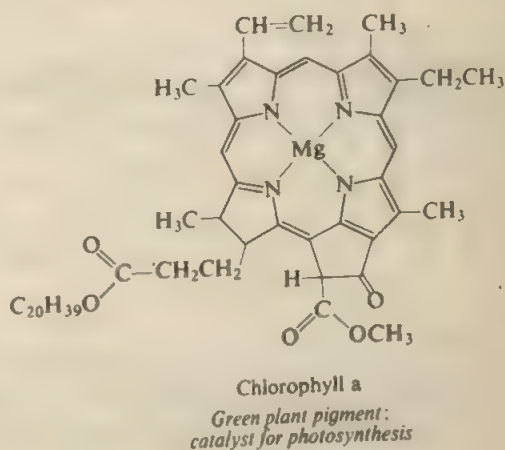
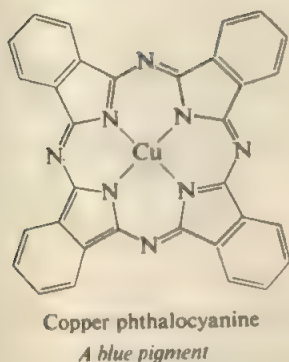
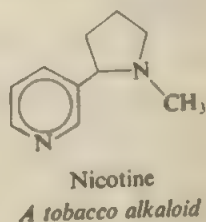
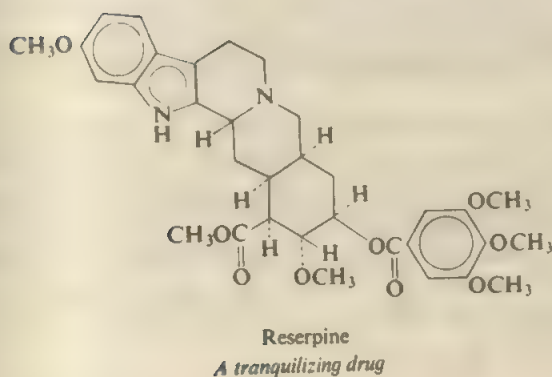
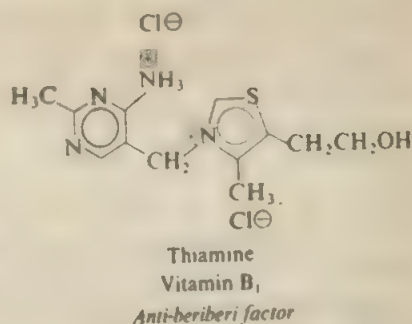
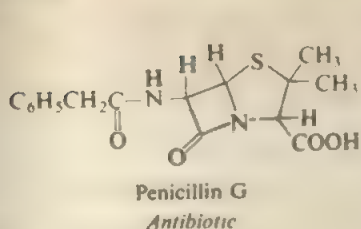
Heterocyclic intermediates are being used more and more in synthesis as *protecting groups*, readily generated and, when their job is done, readily removed. We have seen two examples of this: the temporary incorporation of the carboxyl group into a 2-oxazoline ring (Sec. 26.6), and the temporary formation of *tetrahydropyranyl (THP) ethers* and *esters*, resistant toward alkali but extremely easily cleaved by acid (Sec. 12.8 and Problem 18, p. 849).

In the biological world, as we have seen, heterocyclic compounds are everywhere. Carbohydrates are heterocyclic; so are chlorophyll and heme, which make leaves green and blood red and bring life to plants and animals. Heterocycles form the sites of reaction in many enzymes and coenzymes. Heredity comes down, ultimately, to the particular sequence of attachment of a half-dozen heterocyclic rings to the long chains of nucleic acids.

In this chapter we can take up only a very few of the many different heterocyclic systems, and look only briefly at them. Among the most important and most interesting heterocycles are the ones that possess aromatic properties; we shall focus our attention on a few of these, and in particular upon their aromatic properties.

We can get some idea of the importance as well as complexity of heterocyclic systems from the following examples. Some others are *heme* (p. 1137), *nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide* (p. 1137), and *oxytocin* (p. 1127).



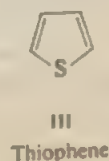
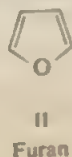
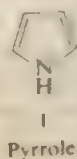


## FIVE-MEMBERED RINGS

### 35.2 Structure of pyrrole, furan, and thiophene

The simplest of the five-membered heterocyclic compounds are **pyrrole**, **furan**, and **thiophene**, each of which contains a single hetero atom.

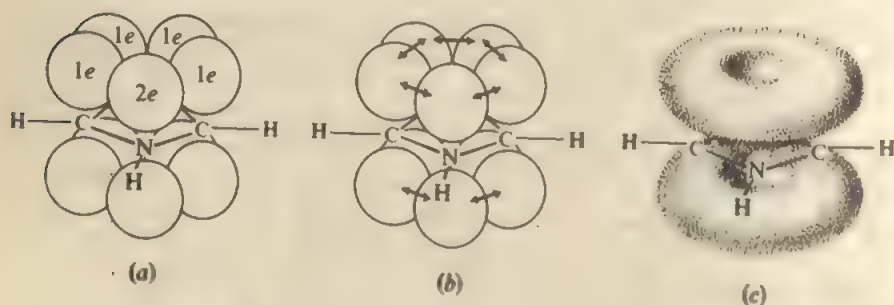
Judging from the commonly used structures I, II, and III, we might expect each of these compounds to have the properties of a conjugated diene and of an amine, an ether, or a sulfide (thioether). Except for a certain tendency to undergo



addition reactions, however, these heterocycles do not have the expected properties: thiophene does not undergo the oxidation typical of a sulfide, for example; pyrrole does not possess the basic properties typical of amines.

Instead, these heterocycles and their derivatives most commonly undergo electrophilic substitution: nitration, sulfonation, halogenation, Friedel-Crafts acylation, even the Reimer-Tiemann reaction and coupling with diazonium salts. Heats of combustion indicate resonance stabilization to the extent of 22–28 kcal/mol; somewhat less than the resonance energy of benzene (36 kcal/mol), but much greater than that of most conjugated dienes (about 3 kcal/mol). On the basis of these properties, pyrrole, furan, and thiophene must be considered *aromatic*. Clearly, formulas I, II, and III do not adequately represent the structures of these compounds.

Let us look at the orbital picture of one of these molecules, pyrrole. Each atom of the ring, whether carbon or nitrogen, is held by a  $\sigma$  bond to three other atoms. In forming these bonds, the atom uses three  $sp^2$  orbitals, which lie in a plane and are  $120^\circ$  apart. After contributing one electron to each  $\sigma$  bond, each carbon atom of the ring has left *one* electron and the nitrogen atom has left *two* electrons; these electrons occupy  $p$  orbitals. Overlap of the  $p$  orbitals gives rise to  $\pi$  clouds, one above and one below the plane of the ring; the  $\pi$  clouds contain a total of six electrons, the *aromatic sextet* (Fig. 35.1).

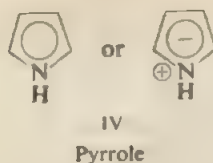


**Figure 35.1.** Pyrrole molecule. (a) Two electrons on  $p$  orbital of nitrogen; one electron in  $p$  orbital of each carbon. (b) Overlap of  $p$  orbitals to form  $\pi$  bonds. (c) Clouds above and below plane of ring; total of six  $\pi$  electrons, the aromatic sextet.

Delocalization of the  $\pi$  electrons stabilizes the ring. As a result, pyrrole has an abnormally low heat of combustion; it tends to undergo reactions in which the stabilized ring is retained, that is, to undergo substitution.

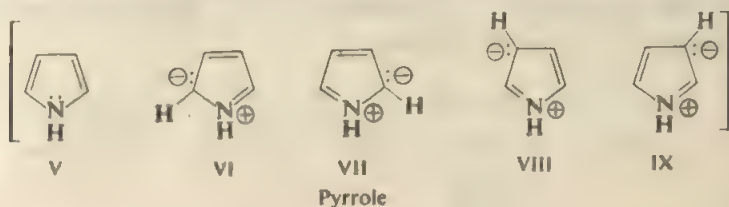
Nitrogen's extra pair of electrons, which is responsible for the usual basicity of nitrogen compounds, is involved in the  $\pi$  cloud, and is not available for sharing with acids. In contrast to most amines, therefore, pyrrole is an extremely weak base ( $K_b \sim 2.5 \times 10^{-14}$ ). By the same token, there is a high electron density in the ring, which causes pyrrole to be extremely reactive toward electrophilic substitution: it undergoes reactions like nitrosation and coupling with diazonium salts which are characteristic of only the most reactive benzene derivatives, phenols and amines.

It thus appears that pyrrole is better represented by IV,



in which the circle represents the aromatic sextet.

What does IV mean in terms of conventional valence-bond structures? Pyrrole can be considered a hybrid of structures V-IX. Donation of electrons to the ring by nitrogen is



indicated by the ionic structures in which nitrogen bears a positive charge and the carbon atoms of the ring bear a negative charge.

Furan and thiophene have structures that are analogous to the structure of pyrrole. Where nitrogen in pyrrole carries a hydrogen atom, the oxygen or sulfur carries an unshared pair of electrons in an  $sp^2$  orbital. Like nitrogen, the oxygen or

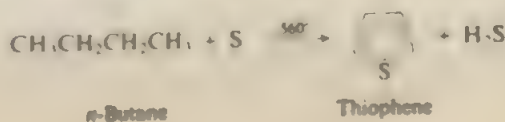


sulfur atom provides two electrons for the  $\pi$  cloud; as a result these compounds, too, behave like extremely reactive benzene derivatives:

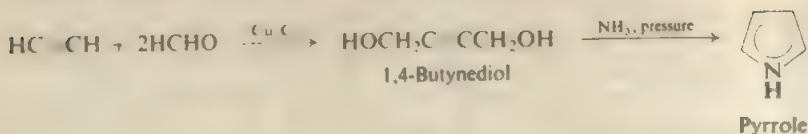
### 35.3 Source of pyrrole, furan, and thiophene

Pyrrole and thiophene are found in small amounts in coal tar. During the fractional distillation of coal tar, thiophene (b.p.  $84^\circ$ ) is collected along with the benzene (b.p.  $80^\circ$ ); as a result ordinary benzene contains about 0.5% of thiophene, and must be specially treated if *thiophene-free benzene* is desired.

Thiophene can be synthesized on an industrial scale by the high-temperature reaction between *n*-butane and sulfur.

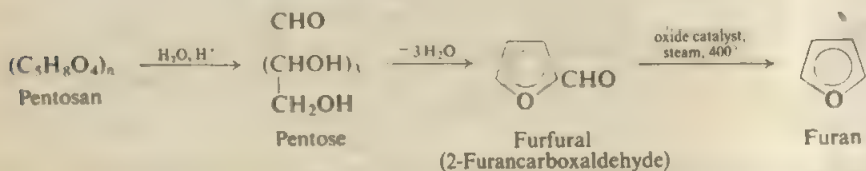


Pyrrole can be synthesized in a number of ways. For example:

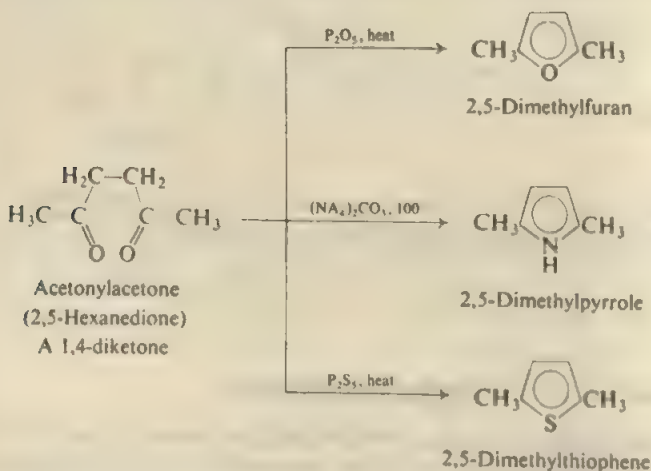


The pyrrole ring is the basic unit of the *porphyrin* system, which occurs, for example, in chlorophyll (p. 1269) and in hemoglobin (p. 1137).

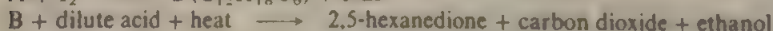
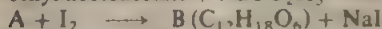
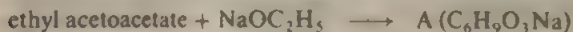
Furan is most readily prepared by decarbonylation (elimination of carbon monoxide) of **furfural** (furfuraldehyde), which in turn is made by the treatment of oat hulls, corncobs, or rice hulls with hot hydrochloric acid. In the latter reaction pentosans (polypentosides) are hydrolyzed to pentoses, which then undergo dehydration and cyclization to form furfural.



Certain substituted pyrroles, furans, and thiophenes can be prepared from the parent heterocycles by substitution (see Sec. 35.4); most, however, are prepared from open-chain compounds by ring closure. For example:



**Problem 35.1** Give structural formulas for all intermediates in the following synthesis of acetonylacetone (2,5-hexanedione):



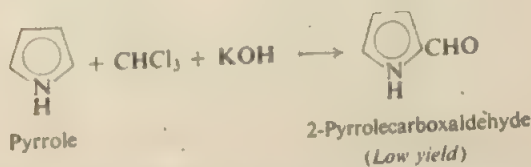
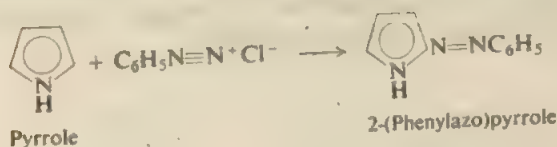
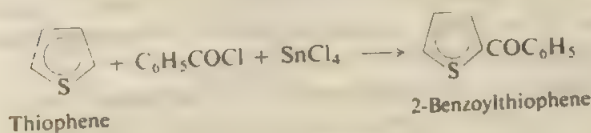
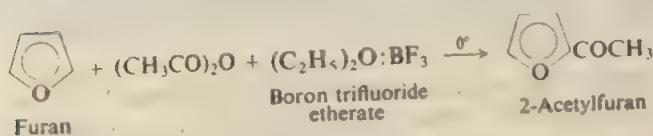
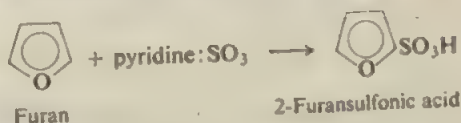
**Problem 35.2** Outline a synthesis of 2,5-diphenylfuran, starting from ethyl benzoate and ethyl acetate.



### 35.4 Electrophilic substitution in pyrrole, furan, and thiophene. Reactivity and orientation

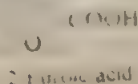
Like other aromatic compounds, these five-membered heterocycles undergo nitration, halogenation, sulfonation, and Friedel-Crafts acylation. They are much more reactive than benzene, and resemble the most reactive benzene derivatives (amines and phenols) in undergoing such reactions as the Reimer-Tiemann reaction, nitrosation, and coupling with diazonium salts.

Reaction takes place predominantly at the 2-position. For example:



In some of the examples we notice modifications in the usual electrophilic reagents. The high reactivity of these rings makes it possible to use milder reagents in many cases, as, for example, the weak Lewis acid stannic chloride in the Friedel-Crafts acylation of thiophene. The sensitivity to protic acids of furan (which undergoes ring opening) and pyrrole (which undergoes polymerization) makes it necessary to modify the usual sulfonating agent.

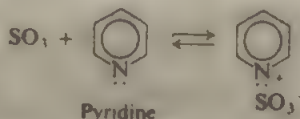
**Problem 35.3** Furan undergoes ring opening upon treatment with sulfuric acid; it reacts almost explosively with halogens. Account for the fact that 2-furoic acid, however, can be sulfonated (in the 5-position) by treatment with fuming sulfuric acid, and brominated (in the 5-position) by treatment with bromine at 100°.



**Problem 35.4** Upon treatment with formaldehyde and acid, ethyl 2,4-dimethyl-3-pyrrolecarboxylate is converted into a compound of formula  $C_{19}H_{26}O_4N_2$ . What is the most likely structure for this product? How is it formed? (*Hint*: See Sec. 24.15.)

**Problem 35.5** Predict the products from the treatment of furfural (2-furancarboxaldehyde) with concentrated aqueous NaOH.

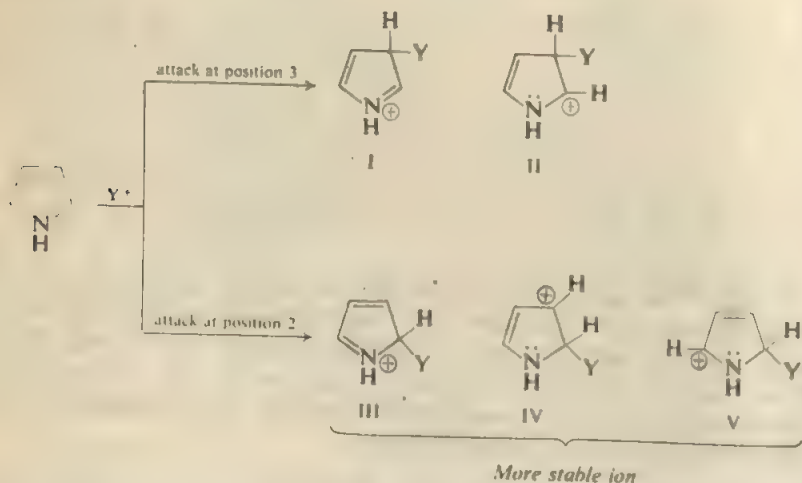
**Problem 35.6** Sulfur trioxide dissolves in the tertiary amine pyridine to form a salt:



Show all steps in the most likely mechanism for the sulfonation of an aromatic compound by this reagent.

In our study of electrophilic aromatic substitution (Sec. 15.17 and Sec. 34.9), we found that we could account for orientation on the following basis: the controlling step is the attachment of the electrophilic reagent to the aromatic ring, which takes place in such a way as to yield the most stable intermediate carbocation. Let us apply this approach to the reactions of pyrrole.

Attack at position 3 yields a carbocation that is a hybrid of structures I and II. Attack at position 2 yields a carbocation that is a hybrid not only of structures III and IV (analogous to I and II) but also of structure V; the extra stabilization conferred by V makes this ion the more stable one.

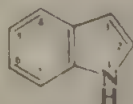


Viewed differently, attack at position 2 is faster because the developing positive charge is accommodated by *three* atoms of the ring instead of by only two.

Pyrrole is highly reactive, compared with benzene, because of contribution from the relatively stable structure III. In III *every atom has an octet of electrons*; nitrogen accommodates the positive charge simply by *sharing* four pairs of electrons. It is no accident that pyrrole resembles aniline in reactivity: both owe their high reactivity to the ability of nitrogen to share four pairs of electrons.

Orientation of substitution in furan and thiophene, as well as their high reactivity, can be accounted for in a similar way.

**Problem 35.7** The heterocycle *indole*, commonly represented as formula VI, is found in coal tar and in orange blossoms.

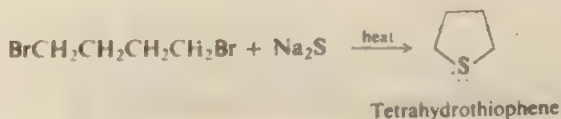
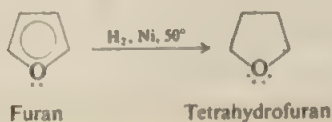
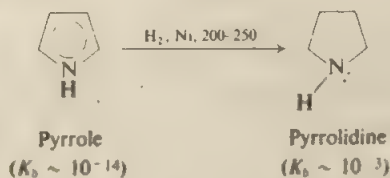


VI  
Indole

It undergoes electrophilic substitution, chiefly at position 3. Account (a) for the aromatic properties of indole, and (b) for the orientation in electrophilic substitution. (*Hint*: See Sec. 34.9.)

### 35.5 Saturated five-membered heterocycles

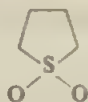
Catalytic hydrogenation converts pyrrole and furan into the corresponding saturated heterocycles, *pyrrolidine* and *tetrahydrofuran*. Since thiophene poisons most catalysts, *tetrahydrothiophene* is synthesized instead from open-chain compounds.



Saturation of these rings destroys the aromatic structure and, with it, the aromatic properties. Each of the saturated heterocycles has the properties we would expect of it: the properties of a secondary aliphatic amine, an aliphatic ether, or an aliphatic sulfide. With nitrogen's extra pair of electrons now available for sharing with acids, pyrrolidine ( $K_b \sim 10^{-3}$ ) has the normal basicity of an aliphatic amine. Hydrogenation of pyrrole increases the base strength by a factor of  $10^{11}$  (100 billion); clearly a fundamental change in structure has taken place.

Tetrahydrofuran is an important solvent, used, for example, in reductions with lithium aluminum hydride, in the preparation of arylmagnesium chlorides

(Sec. 25.4), and in hydroborations. Oxidation of tetrahydrothiophene yields *tetramethylene sulfone* (or *sulfolane*), also used as an aprotic solvent (Sec. 1.22).



Tetramethylene sulfone  
(Sulfolane)

We have encountered pyrrolidine as a secondary amine commonly used in making enamines (Sec. 26.8). The pyrrolidine ring occurs naturally in a number of alkaloids (Sec. 4.28), providing the basicity that gives these compounds their name (*alkali-like*).

**Problem 35.8** An older process for the synthesis of both the adipic acid and the hexamethylenediamine needed in the manufacture of Nylon 66 (Sec. 23.8) started with tetrahydrofuran. Using only familiar chemical reactions, suggest possible steps in their synthesis.

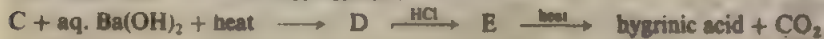
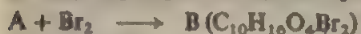
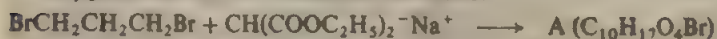
**Problem 35.9** Predict the products of the treatment of pyrrolidine with:

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| (a) aqueous HCl      | (d) benzenesulfonyl chloride + aqueous NaOH  |
| (b) aqueous NaOH     | (e) methyl iodide, followed by aqueous NaOH  |
| (c) acetic anhydride | (f) repeated treatment with methyl iodide, followed by Ag <sub>2</sub> O and then strong heating |

**Problem 35.10** The alkaloid *hygrine* is found in the coca plant. Suggest a structure for it on the basis of the following evidence:

*Hygrine* (C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>15</sub>ON) is insoluble in aqueous NaOH but soluble in aqueous HCl. It does not react with benzenesulfonyl chloride. It reacts with phenylhydrazine to yield a phenylhydrazone. It reacts with NaOI to yield a yellow precipitate and a carboxylic acid (C<sub>7</sub>H<sub>13</sub>O<sub>2</sub>N). Vigorous oxidation by CrO<sub>3</sub> converts *hygrine* into *hygrinic acid* (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>11</sub>O<sub>2</sub>N).

*Hygrinic acid* can be synthesized as follows:



## SIX-MEMBERED RINGS

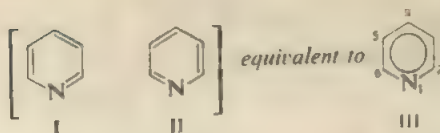
### 35.6 Structure of pyridine

Of the six-membered aromatic heterocycles, we shall take up only one, *pyridine*.

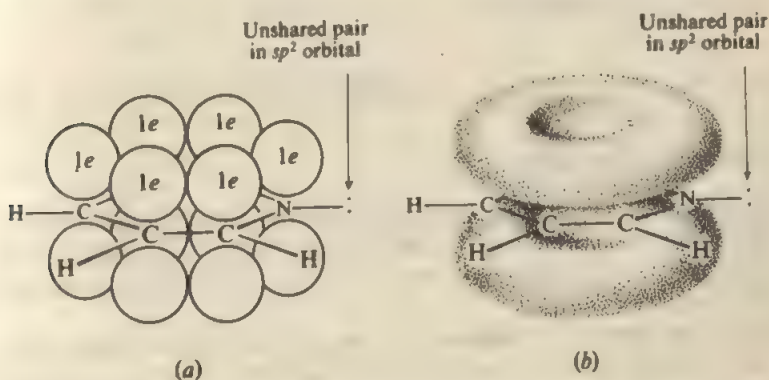
Pyridine is classified as aromatic on the basis of its properties. It is flat, with bond angles of 120°; the four carbon-carbon bonds are of the same length, and so are the two carbon-nitrogen bonds. It resists addition and undergoes electrophilic substitution. Its heat of combustion indicates a resonance energy of 23 kcal/mol.

Pyridine can be considered a hybrid of the Kekulé structures I and II. We shall represent it as structure III, in which the circle represents the aromatic sextet.





In electronic configuration, the nitrogen of pyridine is considerably different from the nitrogen of pyrrole. In pyridine the nitrogen atom, like each of the carbon atoms, is bonded to other members of the ring by the use of  $sp^2$  orbitals, and provides one electron for the  $\pi$  cloud. The third  $sp^2$  orbital of each carbon atom is used to form a bond to hydrogen; the third  $sp^2$  orbital of nitrogen simply contains a pair of electrons, which are available for sharing with acids (Fig. 35.2).



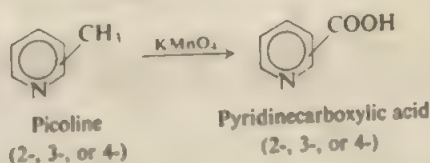
**Figure 35.2.** Pyridine molecule. (a) One electron in each  $p$  orbital; two electrons in  $sp^2$  orbital of nitrogen. (b) The  $p$  orbitals overlap to form  $\pi$  clouds above and below plane of ring; two unshared electrons still in  $sp^2$  orbital of nitrogen.

Because of this electronic configuration, the nitrogen atom makes pyridine a much stronger base than pyrrole, and affects the reactivity of the ring in a quite different way, as we shall see.

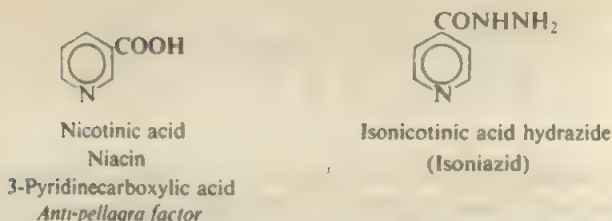
### 35.7 Source of pyridine compounds

Pyridine is found in coal tar. Along with it are found a number of methylpyridines, the most important of which are the monomethyl compounds, known as *picolines*.

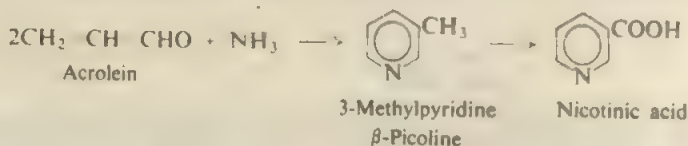
Oxidation of the picolines yields the pyridinecarboxylic acids.



The 3-isomer (*nicotinic acid* or *niacin*) is a vitamin. The 4-isomer (*isonicotinic acid*) has been used, in the form of its hydrazide, in the treatment of tuberculosis.



The increasing demand for certain pyridine derivatives has led to the development of syntheses involving ring closure. For example:



### 35.8 Reactions of pyridine

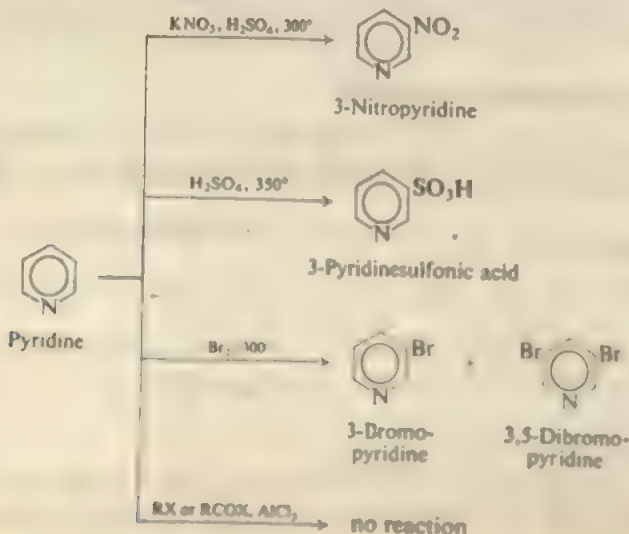
The chemical properties of pyridine are those we would expect on the basis of its structure. The ring undergoes the substitution, both electrophilic and nucleophilic, typical of aromatic rings; our interest will lie chiefly in the way the nitrogen atom affects these reactions.

There is another set of reactions in which pyridine acts as a base or nucleophile; these reactions involve nitrogen directly and are due to its unshared pair of electrons.

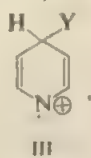
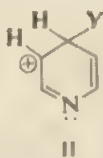
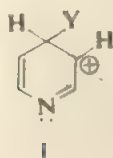
### 35.9 Electrophilic substitution in pyridine

Toward electrophilic substitution pyridine resembles a highly deactivated benzene derivative. It undergoes nitration, sulfonation, and halogenation only under very vigorous conditions, and does not undergo the Friedel-Crafts reaction at all.

Substitution occurs chiefly at the 3- (or  $\beta$ -) position.



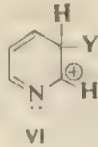
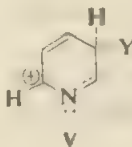
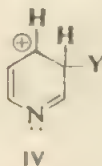
Let us see if we can account for the reactivity and orientation on our usual basis of stability of the intermediate carbocation. Attack at the 4-position yields a carbocation that is a hybrid of structures I, II, and III:



Electrophilic  
attack at  
4-position

*Especially unstable:  
nitrogen has sextet*

Attack at the 3-position yields an ion that is a hybrid of structures IV, V, and VI.



Electrophilic  
attack at  
3-position

(Attack at the 2-position resembles attack at the 4-position just as *ortho* attack resembles *para* attack in the benzene series.)

All these structures are less stable than the corresponding ones for attack on benzene, because of electron withdrawal by the nitrogen atom. As a result, pyridine undergoes substitution more slowly than benzene.

Of these structures, III is *especially* unstable, since in it the electronegative nitrogen atom has only a sextet of electrons. As a result, attack at the 4-position (or 2-position) is especially slow, and substitution occurs predominantly at the 3-position.

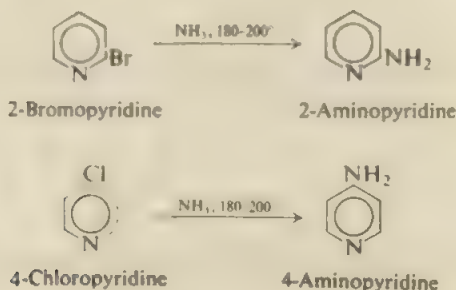
It is important to see the difference between substitution in pyridine and substitution in pyrrole. In the case of pyrrole, a structure in which nitrogen bears a positive charge (see Sec. 35.4) is especially stable since every atom has an octet of electrons; nitrogen accommodates the positive charge simply by sharing four pairs of electrons. In the case of pyridine, a structure in which nitrogen bears a positive charge (III) is especially unstable since nitrogen has only a sextet of electrons; nitrogen *shares* electrons readily, but as an electronegative atom it resists the *removal* of electrons.

**Problem 35.11** 2-Aminopyridine can be nitrated or sulfonated under much milder conditions than pyridine itself. Substitution occurs chiefly at the 5-position. Account for these facts.

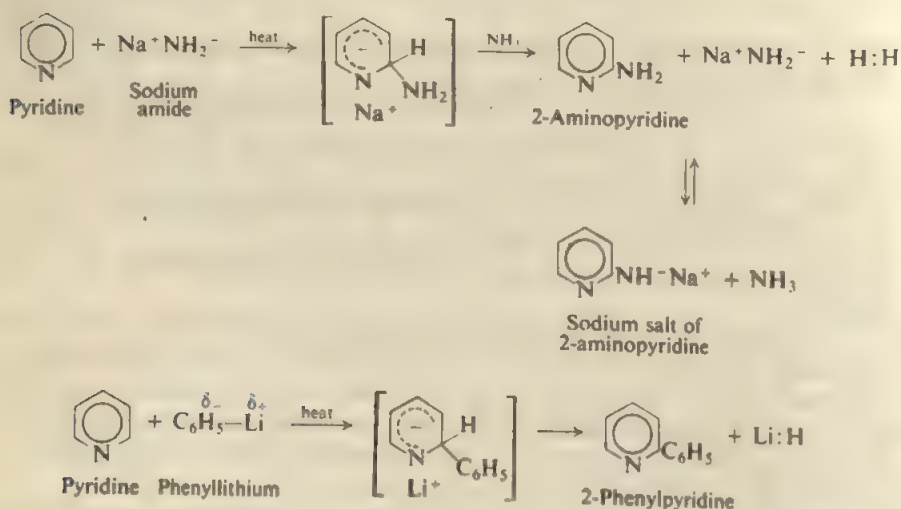
**Problem 35.12** Because of the difficulty of nitrating pyridine, 3-aminopyridine is most conveniently made via nicotinic acid. Outline the synthesis of 3-aminopyridine from  $\beta$ -picoline.

### 35.10 Nucleophilic substitution in pyridine

Here, as in electrophilic substitution, the pyridine ring resembles a benzene ring that contains strongly electron-withdrawing groups. Nucleophilic substitution takes place readily, particularly at the 2- and 4-positions. For example:



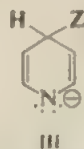
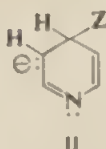
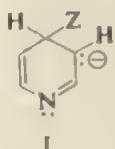
The reactivity of pyridine toward nucleophilic substitution is so great that even the powerfully basic hydride ion,  $\text{:H}^-$ , can be displaced. Two important examples of this reaction are amination by sodium amide (**Chichibabin reaction**), and alkylation or arylation by organolithium compounds.



As we have seen (Sec. 25.8), nucleophilic aromatic substitution can take place by a mechanism that is quite analogous to the mechanism for electrophilic substitution. Reaction proceeds by two steps; the rate of the first step, formation of a charged particle, determines the rate of the overall reaction. In electrophilic substitution, the intermediate is positively charged; in nucleophilic substitution, the intermediate is negatively charged. The ability of the ring to accommodate the charge determines the stability of the intermediate and of the transition state leading to it, and hence determines the rate of the reaction.



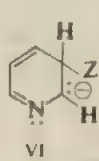
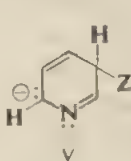
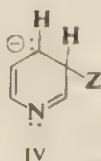
Nucleophilic attack at the 4-position yields a carbanion that is a hybrid of structures I, II, and III:



Nucleophilic  
attack at  
4-position

*Especially stable:  
negative charge  
on nitrogen*

Attack at the 3-position yields a carbanion that is a hybrid of structures IV, V, and VI:



Nucleophilic  
attack at  
3-position

(As before, attack at the 2-position resembles attack at the 4-position.)

All these structures are more stable than the corresponding ones for attack on a benzene derivative, because of electron withdrawal by the nitrogen atom. Structure III is *especially* stable, since the negative charge is located on the atom that can best accommodate it, the electronegative nitrogen atom. It is reasonable, therefore, that nucleophilic substitution occurs more rapidly on the pyridine ring than on the benzene ring, and more rapidly at the 2- and 4-positions than at the 3-position.

The same electronegativity of nitrogen that makes pyridine unreactive toward electrophilic substitution makes pyridine highly reactive toward nucleophilic substitution.

### 35.11 Basicity of pyridine

Pyridine is a base with  $K_b = 2.3 \times 10^{-9}$ . It is thus much stronger than pyrrole ( $K_b \sim 2.5 \times 10^{-14}$ ) but much weaker than aliphatic amines ( $K_b \sim 10^{-4}$ ).

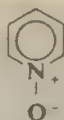
Pyridine has a pair of electrons (in an  $sp^2$  orbital) that is available for sharing with acids; pyrrole has not, and can accept an acid only at the expense of the aromatic character of the ring.

The fact that pyridine is a weaker base than aliphatic amines is more difficult to account for, but at least it fits into a pattern. Let us turn for a moment to the basicity of the carbon analogs of amines, the carbanions, and use the approach of Sec. 13.11.

Benzene is a stronger acid than an alkane, as shown by its ability to displace an alkane from its salts; this, of course, means that the phenyl anion,  $C_6H_5^-$ , is a weaker base than an alkyl anion,  $R^-$ .







Pyridine N-oxide

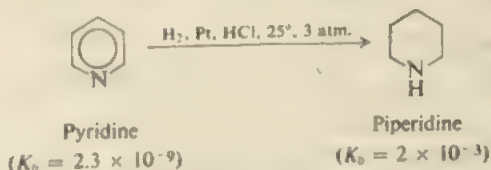
In contrast to pyridine itself, pyridine N-oxide readily undergoes nitration, chiefly in the 4-position. How do you account for this reactivity and orientation?

**Problem 35.16** Pyridine N-oxides not only are reactive toward electrophilic substitution, but also seem to be reactive toward nucleophilic substitution, particularly at the 2- and 4-positions. For example, treatment of 4-nitropyridine N-oxide with hydrobromic acid gives 4-bromopyridine N-oxide. How do you account for this reactivity and orientation?

**Problem 35.17** The oxygen of pyridine N-oxide is readily removed by treatment with  $\text{PCl}_3$ . Suggest a practical route to 4-nitropyridine. To 4-bromopyridine.

### 35.12 Reduction of pyridine

Catalytic hydrogenation of pyridine yields the aliphatic heterocyclic compound **piperidine**,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{N}$ .



Piperidine ( $K_b = 2 \times 10^{-3}$ ) has the usual basicity of a secondary aliphatic amine. Like pyridine, it is often used as a basic catalyst in such reactions as the Knoevenagel reaction (Problem 21.22 (f), p. 873) or Michael addition (Sec. 32.7).

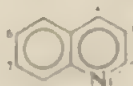
Like the pyrrolidine ring, the piperidine and pyridine rings are found in a number of alkaloids, including *nicotine*, *strychnine*, *cocaine*, and *reserpine* (see p. 1269).

**Problem 35.18** Why can piperidine not be used in place of pyridine in the Schotten-Baumann procedure?

## FUSED RINGS

### 35.13 Quinoline. The Skraup synthesis

Quinoline,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{N}$ , contains a benzene ring and a pyridine ring fused as shown in 1.



Quinoline  
( $K_b = 3 \times 10^{-10}$ )

In general, its properties are the ones we would expect from what we have learned about pyridine and naphthalene.

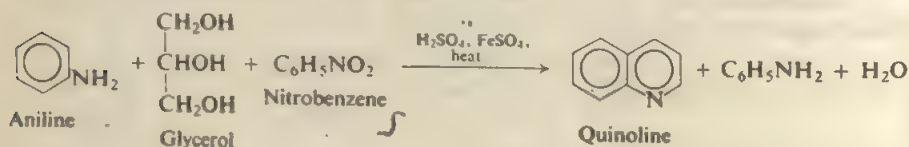
**Problem 35.19** Account for the following properties of quinoline:

- Treatment with nitric and sulfuric acids gives 5- and 8-nitroquinolines; treatment with fuming sulfuric acid gives 5- and 8-quinolinesulfonic acids.
- Oxidation by  $\text{KMnO}_4$  gives 2,3-pyridinedicarboxylic acid (*quinolinic acid*).
- Treatment with sodamide gives 2-aminoquinoline; treatment with alkyllithium compounds gives 2-alkylquinolines.

**Problem 35.20** 8-Hydroxyquinoline (8-quinolinol) is a reagent in inorganic analysis. Suggest a method of synthesizing it.

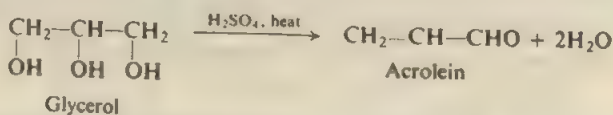
Quinoline is found in coal tar. Although certain derivatives of quinoline can be made from quinoline itself by substitution, most are prepared from benzene derivatives by ring closure.

Perhaps the most generally useful method for preparing substituted quinolines is the **Skraup synthesis**. In the simplest example, quinoline itself is obtained from the reaction of aniline with glycerol, concentrated sulfuric acid, nitrobenzene, and ferrous sulfate.

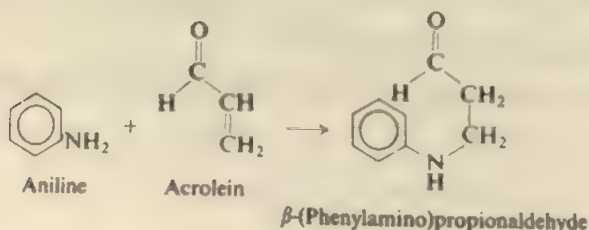


The following steps seem to be involved:

(1) Dehydration of glycerol by hot sulfuric acid to yield the unsaturated aldehyde acrolein:

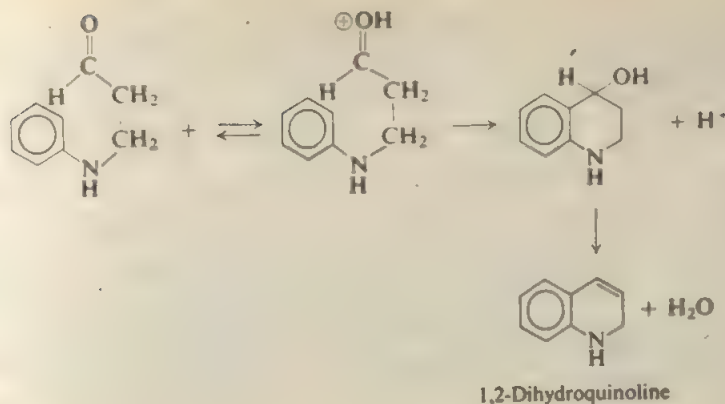


(2) Nucleophilic addition of aniline to acrolein to yield  $\beta$ -(phenylamino)-propionaldehyde:

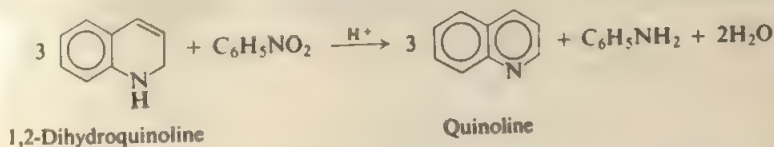


(3) Electrophilic attack on the aromatic ring by the electron-deficient carbonyl carbon of the protonated aldehyde (this is the actual ring-closing step):





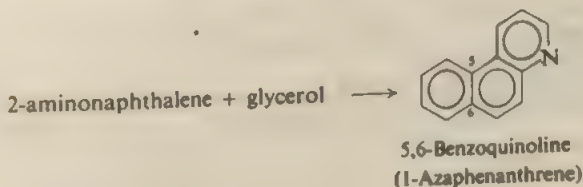
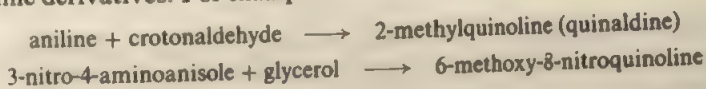
(4) Oxidation by nitrobenzene resulting in the aromatization of the newly formed ring:



Ferrous sulfate in some way moderates the otherwise very vigorous reaction.

Thus we see that what at first appears to be a complicated reaction is actually a sequence of simple steps involving familiar, fundamental types of reactions: acid-catalyzed dehydration, nucleophilic addition to an  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compound, electrophilic aromatic substitution, and oxidation.

The components of the basis synthesis can be modified to yield a wide variety of quinoline derivatives. For example:



Nitrobenzene is often replaced as oxidizing agent by arsenic acid,  $\text{H}_3\text{AsO}_4$ , which usually gives a less violent reaction; vanadium pentoxide is sometimes added as a catalyst. Sulfuric acid can be replaced by phosphoric acid or other acids.

**Problem 35.21** Show all steps in the Skraup syntheses mentioned above.

**Problem 35.22** The dehydration of glycerol to yield acrolein involves acid-catalyzed dehydration and keto-enol tautomerization. Outline the possible steps in the dehydration. (*Hint.* Which  $\text{—OH}$  is easier to eliminate, a primary or a secondary?)

**Problem 35.23** What is the product of the application of the Skraup synthesis to (a) *o*-nitroaniline, (b) *o*-aminophenol, (c) *o*-phenylenediamine, (d) *m*-phenylenediamine, (e) *p*-toluidine?

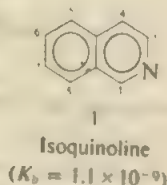
**Problem 35.24** Outline the synthesis of 6-bromoquinoline. Of 8-methylquinoline.

**Problem 35.25** In the Doebner-von Miller modification of the Skraup synthesis, aldehydes, ketones, or mixtures of aldehydes and ketones replace the glycerol. If acetaldehyde is used, for example, the product from aniline is 2-methylquinoline (*quinaldine*). (a) Account for its formation. (b) Predict the product if methyl vinyl ketone were used. (c) If a mixture of benzaldehyde and pyruvic acid,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCO}_2\text{H}$ , were used.

**Problem 35.26** Account for the formation of 2,4-dimethylquinoline from aniline and acetylacetone (2,4-pentanedione) by the Doebner-von Miller synthesis. (*Hint*: See Problem 23, p. 884.)

### 35.14 Isoquinoline. The Bischler-Napieralski synthesis

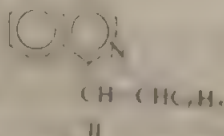
**Isoquinoline**,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_7\text{N}$ , contains a benzene ring and a pyridine ring fused as shown in I:



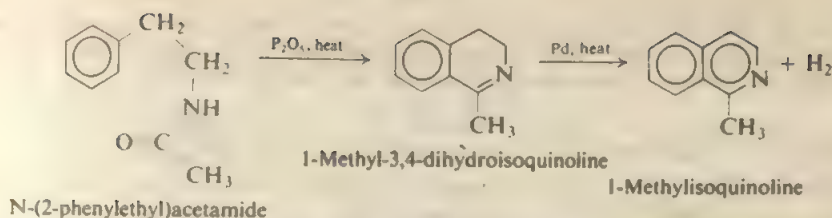
Isoquinoline, like quinoline, has the properties we would expect from what we know about pyridine and naphthalene.

**Problem 35.27** Account for the following properties of isoquinoline. (*Hint*: Review orientation in  $\beta$ -substituted naphthalenes, Sec. 34.13.)

- Nitration gives 5-nitroisoquinoline.
- Treatment with potassium amide,  $\text{KNH}_2$ , gives 1-aminoisoquinoline, and treatment with alkyllithium compounds gives 1-alkylisoquinoline, the 3-substituted products are not obtained.
- 1-Methylisoquinoline reacts with benzaldehyde to yield compound II, whereas 3-methylisoquinoline undergoes no reaction (*Hint*: See Problem 21.22 (c), p. 873.)



An important method for making derivatives of isoquinoline is the **Bischler-Napieralski synthesis**. Acyl derivatives of  $\beta$ -phenylethylamine are cyclized by treatment with acids (often  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$ ) to yield dihydroisoquinolines, which can then be aromatized.



**Problem 35.28** To what general class of reactions does the ring closure belong? What is the function of the acid? (Check your answers in Sec. 24.15.)

**Problem 35.29** Outline the synthesis of N-(2-phenylethyl)acetamide from toluene and aliphatic and inorganic reagents.

## PROBLEMS

1. Give structures and names of the principal products from the reaction (if any) of pyridine with:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) Br <sub>2</sub> , 300°                                   | (i) acetic anhydride   |
| (b) H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> , 350°                    | (j) benzenesulfonyl chloride   |
| (c) acetyl chloride, AlCl <sub>3</sub>                       | (k) ethyl bromide  |
| (d) KNO <sub>3</sub> , H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> , 300° | (l) benzyl chloride  |
| (e) NaNH <sub>2</sub> , heat                                 | (m) peroxybenzoic acid   |
| (f) C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> Li                         | (n) peroxybenzoic acid, then HNO <sub>3</sub> , H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> |
| (g) dilute HCl   | (o) H <sub>2</sub> , Pt  |
| (h) dilute NaOH  |  |

2. Give structures and names of the principal products from each of the following reactions:

- thiophene + conc. H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>
- thiophene + acetic anhydride, ZnCl<sub>2</sub>
- thiophene + acetyl chloride, TiCl<sub>4</sub>
- thiophene + fuming nitric acid in acetic anhydride
- product of (d) + Sn, HCl
- thiophene + 1 mol Br<sub>2</sub>
- product of (f) + Mg; then CO<sub>2</sub>; then H<sup>+</sup>
- pyrrole + pyridine; SO<sub>3</sub>
- pyrrole + diazotized sulfanilic acid
- product of (i) + SnCl<sub>2</sub>
- pyrrole + H<sub>2</sub>, Ni  $\longrightarrow$  C<sub>4</sub>H<sub>9</sub>N
- furfural + acetone + base
- quinoline + HNO<sub>3</sub>/H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>
- quinoline N-oxide + HNO<sub>3</sub>/H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>
- isoquinoline + *n*-butyllithium

3. Pyrrole can be reduced by zinc and acetic acid to a *pyrroline*, C<sub>4</sub>H<sub>7</sub>N. (a) What structures are possible for this pyrroline?

(b) On the basis of the following evidence which structure must the pyrroline have?

pyrroline + O<sub>3</sub>, then H<sub>2</sub>O, then H<sub>2</sub>O;  $\longrightarrow$  A (C<sub>4</sub>H<sub>7</sub>O<sub>4</sub>N)

chloroacetic acid + NH<sub>3</sub>  $\longrightarrow$  B (C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>O<sub>2</sub>N)

B + chloroacetic acid  $\longrightarrow$  A

4. Furan and its derivatives are sensitive to protic acids. The following reactions illustrate what happens.

2,5-dimethylfuran + dilute H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>  $\longrightarrow$  C (C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>10</sub>O<sub>2</sub>)

C + NaOH  $\longrightarrow$  succinic acid

(a) What is C? (b) Outline a likely series of steps for its formation from 2,5-dimethylfuran.

5. Pyrrole reacts with formaldehyde in hot pyridine to yield a mixture of products from which there can be isolated a small amount of a compound of formula  $(C_5H_5N)_4$ . Suggest a possible structure for this compound. (Hint: See Sec. 24.15 and p. 1269.)

6. There are three isomeric pyridinecarboxylic acids,  $(C_5H_4N)COOH$ : D, m.p. 137°; E, m.p. 234–7°, and F, m.p. 317°. Their structures were proved as follows:

quinoline +  $KMnO_4$ , OH  $\rightarrow$  a diacid  $(C-H_4O_4N)$   $\xrightarrow{\text{heat}}$  E, m.p. 234–7°  
 isoquinoline +  $KMnO_4$ , OH  $\rightarrow$  a diacid  $(C-H_5O_4N)$   $\xrightarrow{\text{heat}}$  E, m.p. 234–7° and F, m.p. 317°

What structures should be assigned to D, E, and F?

7. (a) What structures are possible for G?

*m*-toluidine + glycerol  $\xrightarrow{\text{Skraup}}$  G  $(C_{10}H_9N)$

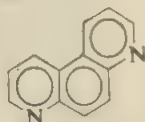
(b) On the basis of the following evidence which structures must G actually have?

2,3-diaminotoluene + glycerol  $\xrightarrow{\text{Skraup}}$  H  $(C_{10}H_{10}N_2)$

H +  $NaNO_2$ , HCl; then  $H_3PO_2$   $\rightarrow$  G

8. Outline all steps in a possible synthesis of each of the following from benzene, toluene, and any needed aliphatic and inorganic reagents:

- (a) 1-phenylisoquinoline
- (b) 1-benzylisoquinoline
- (c) 1,5-dimethylisoquinoline
- (d) 6-nitroquinoline
- (e) 2-methyl-6-quinolinecarboxylic acid
- (f) 1,8-diazaphenanthrene (Hint: Use the Skraup synthesis twice.)



1,8-Diazaphenanthrene

9. Outline all steps in each of the following syntheses, using any other needed reagents:

- (a)  $\beta$ -cyanopyridine from  $\beta$ -picoline
- (b) 2-methylpiperidine from pyridine
- (c) 5-aminoquinoline from quinoline
- (d) ethyl 5-nitro-2-furoate from furfural

(e) furylacrylic acid,



$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCOOH}$ , from furfural

(f) 1,2,5-trichloropentane from furfural

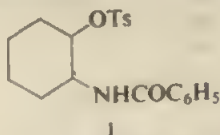
(g) 3-indolecarboxaldehyde from indole

10. Give the structures of compounds I through JJ formed in the following syntheses of heterocyclic systems.

- (a) ethyl malonate + urea, base, heat  $\rightarrow$  I  $(C_4H_4O_3N_2)$ , a pyrimidine (1,3-diazine)
- (b) 2,5-hexanedione +  $H_2N-NH_2$   $\rightarrow$  J  $(C_6H_{10}N_2)$   
 J + air  $\rightarrow$  K  $(C_6H_8N_2)$ , a pyridazine (1,2-diazine)
- (c) 2,4-pentanedione +  $H_2N-NH_2$   $\rightarrow$  L  $(C_5H_8N_2)$ , a pyrazole
- (d) 2,3-butanedione + *o*- $C_6H_4(NH_2)_2$   $\rightarrow$  M  $(C_{10}H_{10}N_2)$ , a quinoxaline
- (e) ethylene glycol + phosgene  $\rightarrow$  N  $(C_2H_4O_3)$ , a 1,3-dioxolane
- (f) *o*-aminobenzoic acid + chloroacetic acid  $\rightarrow$  O  $(C_9H_6O_4N)$   
 O + base, strong heat  $\rightarrow$  P  $(C_8H_7ON)$ , indoxyl, an intermediate in the synthesis of indigo
- (g) aminoacetone  $\rightarrow$  Q  $(C_6H_{10}N_2)$   
 Q + air  $\rightarrow$  R  $(C_6H_8N_2)$ , a pyrazine (1,4-diazine)
- (h) ethylenediamine + ethyl carbonate  $\rightarrow$  S  $(C_3H_6ON_2)$ , an imidazolidone
- (i) *o*- $C_6H_4(NH_2)_2$  + acetic acid, strong heat  $\rightarrow$  T  $(C_8H_8N_2)$ , a benzimidazole

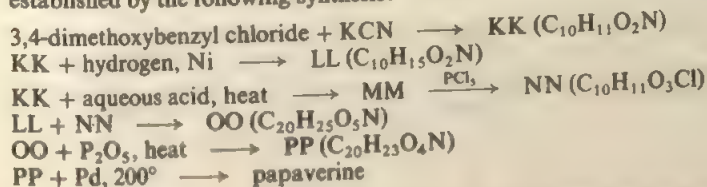


- (j) ethyl *o*-aminobenzoate + malonic ester  $\longrightarrow$  U ( $C_{14}H_{17}O_5N$ ), insoluble in dilute acid  
 $U \xrightarrow{NaOC_2H_5} V (C_{12}H_{11}O_4N)$   
 $V + \text{acid, warm} \longrightarrow W (C_9H_7O_2N)$ , a *quinoline*
- (k) repeat (j) starting with ethyl 3-amino-2-pyridinecarboxylate  $\longrightarrow$  a 1,5-diazanaphthalene
- (l) benzalacetophenone + KCN + acetic acid  $\longrightarrow$  X ( $C_{16}H_{13}ON$ )  
 $X + CH_3OH, H^+, H_2O \longrightarrow Y (C_{17}H_{16}O_3) + NH_4^+$   
 $Y + \text{phenylhydrazine} \longrightarrow Z (C_{22}H_{18}ON_2)$ , a *dihydro-1,2-diazine*
- (m) acrylic acid +  $H_2N-NH_2 \longrightarrow$  AA ( $C_3H_8O_2N_2$ )  $\longrightarrow$  BB ( $C_3H_6ON_2$ ), a *pyrazolidone*
- (n)  $o\text{-C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NH}_2)_2$  + glycerol  $\xrightarrow{\text{Skraup}}$  CC ( $C_{17}H_9N_2$ ), a 4,5-diazaphenanthrene
- (o) di(*o*-nitrophenyl)acetylene +  $Br_2 \longrightarrow$  DD ( $C_{14}H_8O_4N_2Br_2$ )  
 $DD + Sn, HCl \longrightarrow$  EE ( $C_{14}H_{12}N_2Br_2$ )  
 $EE \xrightarrow{\text{warm}} [FF (C_{14}H_{11}N_2Br)] \longrightarrow$  GG ( $C_{14}H_{10}N_2$ ), which contains four fused aromatic rings
- (p)  $m\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NHCH}_3 + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Li} \longrightarrow$  HH ( $C_{10}H_{13}N$ ), a *tetrahydroquinoline*
- (q)  $o\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{NHCOC}_6\text{H}_5 + \text{KNH}_2/\text{NH}_3 \longrightarrow$  II ( $C_{13}H_9ON$ ), a *benzoxazole*
- (r) *trans*-I + base  $\longrightarrow$  JJ ( $C_{13}H_{15}ON$ ), an *oxazoline*

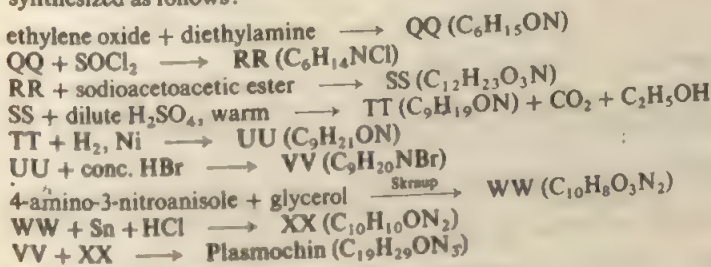


- (s) How do you account for the fact that *cis*-I undergoes reaction (r) much more slowly than *trans*-I?

11. The structure of *papaverine*,  $C_{20}H_{21}O_4N$ , one of the opium alkaloids, has been established by the following synthesis:

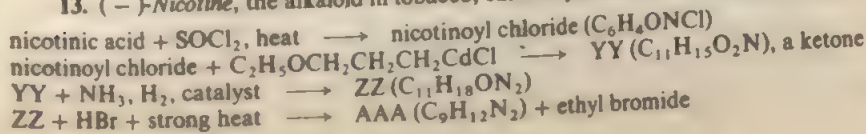


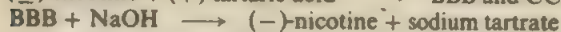
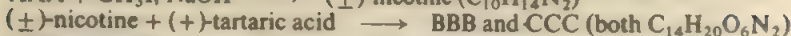
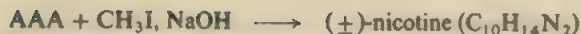
12. *Plasmochin* (also called *Pamaquine*), a drug effective against malaria, has been synthesized as follows:



What is the most likely structure of Plasmochin?

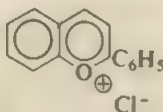
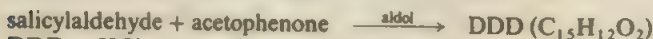
13. (–)-*Nicotine*, the alkaloid in tobacco, can be synthesized in the following way:





What is the structure of  $(\pm)$ -nicotine? Write equations for all the above reactions.

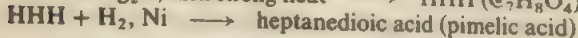
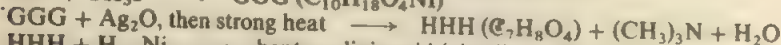
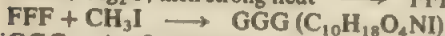
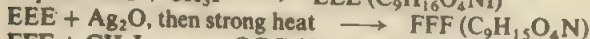
14. The red and blue colors of many flowers and fruits are due to the *anthocyanins*, glycosides of pyrylium salts. The parent structure of the pyrylium salts is *flavylium chloride*, which can be synthesized as follows:



Flavylium chloride

(a) What is the structure of DDD? (b) Outline a likely series of steps leading from DDD to flavylium chloride. (c) Account for the aromatic character of the fused ring system.

15. *Tropinic acid*,  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{13}\text{O}_4\text{N}$ , is a degradation product of atropine, an alkaloid of the deadly nightshade, *Atropa belladonna*. It has a neutralization equivalent of  $94 \pm 1$ . It does not react with benzenesulfonyl chloride, cold dilute  $\text{KMnO}_4$ , or  $\text{B}_2\text{O}_3/\text{CCl}_4$ . Exhaustive methylation gives the following results:



(a) What structures are likely for tropinic acid?

(b) Tropinic acid is formed by oxidation with  $\text{CrO}_3$  of *tropinone*, whose structure has been shown by synthesis to be



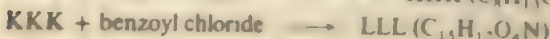
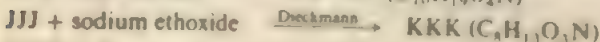
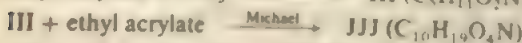
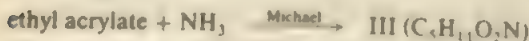
Tropinone

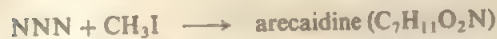
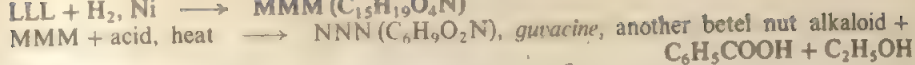
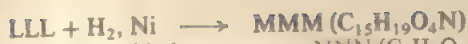
Now what is the most likely structure for tropinic acid?

16. *Tropilidene*, 1,3,5-cycloheptatriene, has been made from tropinone (Problem 15). Show how this might have been done. (Hint: See Problem 25, p. 950.)

17. Reduction of tropinone (Problem 15) gives *tropine* and *pseudotropine*, both  $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{15}\text{ON}$ . When heated with base, tropine is converted into pseudotropine. Give likely structures for tropine and pseudotropine, and explain your answer.

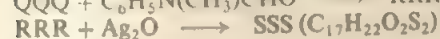
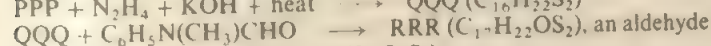
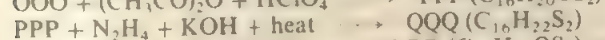
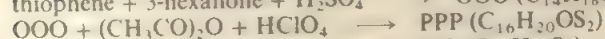
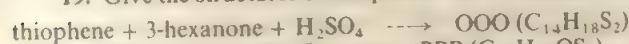
18. *Arecaidine*,  $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{11}\text{O}_2\text{N}$ , an alkaloid of betel nut, has been synthesized in the following way:



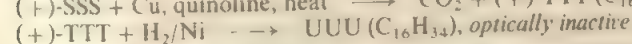


- (a) What is the most likely structure of arecaidine? Of guvacine?  
 (b) What will guvacine give upon dehydrogenation?

19. Give the structures of compounds OOO through UUU. (Hint: Sec. 24.15.)



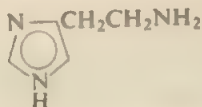
SSS was resolved



What is the significance of the optical inactivity of UUU?

20. (a) Account for the aromatic properties of the imidazole ring.

(b) Arrange the nitrogen atoms of *histamine* (the substance responsible for many allergic reactions) in order of their expected basicity, and account for your answer.

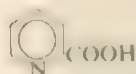


Histamine

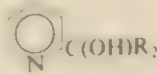
(c) Account for the particular dipolar structure given for the amino acid *histidine* in Table 30.1, p. 1118.

(d) Account for the particular point of attachment to the *guanine* residue in compound II, p. 1261.

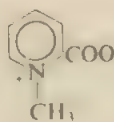
21. When heated in solution, 2-pyridinecarboxylic acid (II) loses carbon dioxide and forms pyridine. The rate of this decarboxylation is slowed down by addition of either acid or base. When decarboxylation is carried out in the presence of the ketone,  $\text{R}_2\text{CO}$ , there is obtained not only pyridine but also the tertiary alcohol III. The N-methyl derivative (IV) is decarboxylated much faster than II,



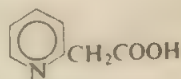
II



III



IV



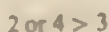
V

(a) Show all steps in the most likely mechanism for decarboxylation of II. Show how this mechanism is consistent with each of the above facts.

(b) In the decarboxylation of the isomeric pyridinecarboxylic acids (II and its isomers), the order of reactivity is:



In the decarboxylation of the isomeric pyridineacetic acids (V and its isomers), on the other hand, the order of reactivity is:



How do you account for each order of reactivity? Why is there a difference between the two sets of acids? (The same mechanism seems to be involved in both cases.)

# Suggested Readings

## General

- G. W. Wheland, *Advanced Organic Chemistry*, 3rd ed., Wiley, New York, 1960.
- J. Hine, *Physical Organic Chemistry*, 2nd ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 1962.
- C. K. Ingold, *Structure and Mechanism in Organic Chemistry*, 2nd ed., Cornell University Press, Ithaca, 1969.
- J. March, *Advanced Organic Chemistry*, 2nd ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 1977.
- L. P. Hammett, *Physical Organic Chemistry*, 2nd ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 1970.
- E. S. Gould, *Mechanism and Structure in Organic Chemistry*, Holt, New York, 1959.
- P. Sykes, *A Guidebook to Mechanism in Organic Chemistry*, 5th ed., Longman, New York, 1981.
- R. Breslow, *Organic Reaction Mechanisms*, 2nd ed., W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1969.
- R. A. Y. Jones, *Physical and mechanistic organic chemistry*, Cambridge University Press, New York, 1979.
- M. L. Bender, *Mechanisms of Homogeneous Catalysis from Protons to Proteins*, Wiley, New York, 1971.
- W. Carruthers, *Some modern methods of organic synthesis*, 2nd ed., Cambridge University Press, New York, 1978.
- H. O. House, *Modern Synthetic Reactions*, 2nd ed., W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1972.
- V. Gold and D. Bethell, eds., *Advances in Physical Organic Chemistry*, Academic Press, New York; a series starting in 1963.
- R. W. Taft, ed., *Progress in Physical Organic Chemistry*, Wiley, New York; a series starting in 1963.
- N. L. Allinger and E. L. Eliel, eds., *Topics in Stereochemistry*, Wiley, New York; a series starting in 1967.
- S. Patai, ed., *The Chemistry of Functional Groups*, Wiley, New York; a series starting in 1964.
- E. H. Rodd, ed., *Chemistry of Carbon Compounds*, Elsevier, New York; a series starting in 1951, 2nd ed. starting in 1964, with supplements in 1974.
- D. Barton and W. D. Ollis, eds., *Comprehensive Organic Chemistry*, 6 volumes, Pergamon Press, New York, 1979.
- Organic Reactions*, Wiley, New York; a series starting in 1942. Each chapter discusses one reaction ("The Clemmensen Reduction," "Periodic Acid Oxidation," etc.) with particular emphasis on its application to synthesis.
- Note: Some of the above books will be referred to later by abbreviated names, e.g., O R. III-2 for *Organic Reactions*, Vol. III, Ch. 2.



## Molecular structure and intermolecular forces

- G. W. Wheland, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 1, 3.  
 C. K. Ingold, *Struct. and Mech.*, Ch. I, II, IV.  
 I. Pauling, *The Nature of the Chemical Bond*, 3rd ed., Cornell University Press, Ithaca, 1960.  
 S. W. Benson, "Bond Energies," *J. Chem. Educ.*, **42**, 502 (1965).  
 G. W. Wheland, *Resonance in Organic Chemistry*, Wiley, New York, 1955.  
 C. A. Coulson, "The Meaning of Resonance in Quantum Chemistry," *Endeavour*, **6**, 42 (1947).  
 M. J. S. Dewar, *Hyperconjugation*, Ronald Press, New York, 1962.  
 M. J. S. Dewar and R. C. Dougherty, *The PMO Theory of Organic Chemistry*, Plenum Press, New York, 1975.  
 P. E. Verkade, "August Kekulé," *Proc. Chem. Soc.*, 205 (1958).  
 W. Baker, "The Widening Outlook in Aromatic Chemistry," *Chemistry in Britain*, **1**, 191, 250 (1965).  
 R. Breslow, "The Nature of Aromatic Molecules," *Sci. American*, August 1972, p. 28.  
 G. W. A. Fowles, "Lone Pair Electrons," *J. Chem. Educ.*, **34**, 187 (1957).  
 E. Cartmell and G. W. A. Fowles, *Valency and Molecular Structure*, 4th ed., Butterworths, London, 1977.  
 M. Orchin and H. H. Jaffé, *The Importance of Antibonding Orbitals*, Houghton-Mifflin, Boston, 1967.  
 R. B. Woodward and R. Hoffmann, *The Conservation of Orbital Symmetry*, Academic Press, New York, 1970.  
 J. J. Vollmer and K. L. Service, "Woodward-Hoffmann Rules: Electrocyclic Reactions," *J. Chem. Educ.*, **45**, 214 (1968); "Woodward-Hoffmann Rules: Cycloaddition Reactions," *J. Chem. Educ.*, **47**, 491 (1970).  
 R. G. Pearson, "Molecular Orbital Symmetry Rules," *Chem. Eng. News*, Sept. 28, 1970, p. 66.  
 T. L. Gilchrist and R. C. Storr, *Organic reactions and orbital symmetry*, 2nd ed., Cambridge University Press, New York, 1979.  
 K. Fukui, *Theory of Orientation and Stereoselection*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1975.  
 I. Fleming, *Frontier Orbitals and Organic Chemical Reactions*, Wiley, New York, 1976.

## Isomerism and stereochemistry

- E. L. Eliel, *Stereochemistry of Carbon Compounds*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1962.  
 E. L. Eliel, *Elements of Stereochemistry*, Wiley, New York, 1969.  
 G. W. Wheland, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 2, 6-9.  
 K. Mislow, *Introduction to Stereochemistry*, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1965.  
 E. L. Eliel, N. L. Allinger, S. J. Angyal, and G. A. Morrison, *Conformational Analysis*, Interscience-Wiley, New York, 1965.  
 R. S. Cahn, "An Introduction to the Sequence Rule," *J. Chem. Educ.*, **41**, 116 (1964).  
 E. L. Eliel, "Recent Advances in Stereochemical Nomenclature," *J. Chem. Educ.*, **48**, 163 (1971).  
 D. F. Wowers, Jr., "The Cause of Optical Inactivity," *J. Chem. Educ.*, **29**, 138 (1952).  
 J. M. Bijvoet, "Determination of the Absolute Configuration of Optical Antipodes," *Endeavour*, **14**, 71 (1955).  
 V. Prelog, "Chirality in Chemistry (Nobel Lecture)," *Science*, **193**, 17 (1976).  
 K. Mislow and M. Raban, "Stereochemical Relationships of Groups in Molecules," *Topics in Stereochem.*, **1**, 1 (1967).  
 D. Arigoni and E. L. Eliel, "Chirality Due to the Presence of Hydrogen at Nonequivalent Positions," *Topics in Stereochem.*, **4**, 127 (1969).  
 F. A. Loewus, F. H. Westheimer, and B. Vennesland, "Enzymatic Syntheses of Enantiomorphs of Ethanol-1-*d*," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 5018 (1953).  
 J. D. Morrison and H. S. Mosher, *Asymmetric Organic Reactions*, American Chemical Society, Washington, D.C., 1976.  
 J. W. ApSimon and R. P. Seguin, "Recent Advances in Asymmetric Synthesis," *Tetrahedron*, **35**, 2797 (1979).  
 P. H. Boyle, "Methods of Optical Resolution," *Quart. Revs. (London)*, **25**, 323 (1971).

## Acids and bases

- G. N. Lewis, "Acids and Bases," *J. Franklin Inst.*, **226**, 293 (1938).  
 W. B. Jensen, *The Lewis Acid Base Concepts*, Wiley-Interscience, New York, 1980.  
 G. W. Wheland, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 5.  
 C. A. VanderWerf, *Acids, Bases, and the Chemistry of the Covalent Bond*, Reinhold, New York, 1961.  
 R. P. Bell, *The Proton in Chemistry*, 2nd ed., Cornell University Press, Ithaca, 1973.  
 M. L. Bender, *Mech. Homog. Catal.*, Ch. 1-5.  
 J. Hine, *Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 2, "Acids and Bases."  
 J. March, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 8.  
 C. K. Ingold, *Struct. and Mech.*, Ch. XIV.  
 J. R. Jones, "Acidities of Carbon Acids," *Quart. Revs. (London)*, **25**, 365 (1971).  
 T-L Ho, *Hard and Soft Acid and Base Principle in Organic Chemistry*, Academic Press, New York, 1977.

## Nomenclature

- R. S. Cahn and O. C. Dermer, *Introduction to Chemical Nomenclature*, 5th ed., Butterworths, Boston, 1979.  
 M. Orchin, F. Kaplan, R. S. Macomber, R. M. Wilson, and H. Zimmer, *The Vocabulary of Organic Chemistry*, Wiley, New York, 1980.  
 J. Rigaudy and S. P. Klesney, eds., *IUPAC Nomenclature of Organic Chemistry*, Pergamon, New York, 1979.  
 A. M. Patterson, L. T. Capell, and D. F. Walker, *The Ring Index*, 2nd ed., 1959, and 3 supplements up to 1965, American Chemical Society, Washington, D.C.

## Free radicals

- M. Gomberg, "An Instance of Trivalent Carbon: Triphenylmethyl," *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, **22**, 757 (1900).  
 G. W. Wheland, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 15.  
 J. Hine, *Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 18-23.  
 D. C. Nonhebel, J. M. Tedder, and J. C. Walton, *Radicals*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1979.  
 W. A. Pryor, *Free Radicals*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1965.  
 W. A. Pryor, *Introduction to Free Radical Chemistry*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N. J., 1965.  
 E. S. Huyser, *Free-Radical Chain Reactions*, Wiley, New York, 1970.  
 C. Walling, *Free Radicals in Solution*, Wiley, New York, 1957.  
 M. C. R. Symons, "The Identification of Organic Free Radicals by Electron Spin Resonance," *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.*, **3**, 284 (1965).  
 J. E. Wertz and J. R. Bolton, *ESR: Elementary Theory and Practical Application*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1972.

## Carbocations

- F. C. Whitmore, "Alkylation and Related Processes of Modern Petroleum Practice," *Chem. Eng. News*, **26**, 668 (1948).  
 C. K. Ingold, *Struct. and Mech.*, Ch. VII.  
 D. Bethell and V. Gold, "The Structure of Carbonium Ions," *Quart. Revs. (London)*, **12**, 173 (1958).  
 H. C. Brown, *The Nonclassical Ion Problem*, Plenum, New York, 1977.  
 P. J. Stang, Z. Rappaport, M. Hanack, and L. R. Subramanian, *Vinyl Cations*, Academic Press, New York, 1979.  
 M. J. S. Dewar et al., ed., *Topics in Current Chemistry No. 80. In Memory of H. L. Meerwein*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1979.

- P. D. Bartlett, *Nonclassical Ions*, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1965.  
 G. A. Olah and P. v. R. Schleyer, eds., *Carbonium Ions*, Wiley, New York; in four volumes;  
 Vol. I, 1968.

### Carbanions and tautomerism

- J. Hine, *Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 10.  
 C. K. Ingold, *Struct. and Mech.*, Ch. X.  
 G. W. Wheland, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 14.  
 E. Bunce, *Carbanions. Mechanistic and Isotopic Aspects*, Elsevier, New York, 1975.  
 D. J. Cram, *Fundamentals of Carbanion Chemistry*, Academic Press, New York, 1965.  
 J. C. Stowell, *Carbanions in Organic Synthesis*, Wiley, New York, 1979.  
 J. R. Jones, "Acidities of Carbon Acids," *Quart. Revs. (London)*, **25**, 365 (1971).  
 K. Saltzman, "Arthur Lapworth: The Genesis of Reaction Mechanism," *J. Chem. Educ.*, **49**, 750 (1972).

### Nucleophilic aliphatic substitution

- J. Hine, *Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 6-7.  
 C. K. Ingold, *Struct. and Mech.*, Ch. 7.  
 J. March, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 10.  
 C. A. Bunton, *Nucleophilic Substitution at a Saturated Carbon Atom*, Elsevier, New York, 1963.  
 A. Streitwieser, Jr., *Solvolytic Displacement Reactions*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1962.  
 E. R. Thornton, *Solvolysis Mechanisms*, Ronald Press, New York, 1964.  
 E. M. Arnett, C. Peiro, and P. v. R. Schleyer, "Carbonium Ions in Solution. 9. The Relationship between Carbocations in Superacid and Solvolysis Transition States," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **101**, 522 (1979).  
 J. M. Harris, "Solvolytic Substitution in Simple Alkyl Systems," *Progr. Phys. Org.*, **11**, 89 (1974).  
 T. W. Bentley and P. v. R. Schleyer, "Medium Effects on the Rates and Mechanisms of Solvolytic Reactions," *Adv. Phys. Org.*, **14**, 1 (1977).  
 S. R. Hartshorn, *Aliphatic nucleophilic substitution*, Cambridge University Press, New York, 1973.  
 H. C. Brown, C. J. Kim, C. J. Lancelot, and P. v. R. Schleyer, "Product-Rate Correlation in Acetolysis of *threo*-3-Aryl-2-butyl Brosylates. Supporting Evidence for the Existence of Two Discrete Pathways," *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, **92**, 5244 (1970).  
 C. J. Pedersen, "Macrocyclic Polyethers for Complexing Metals," *Aldrichimica acta*, **4**, 1 (1971).  
 W. P. Weber and G. W. Gokel, *Phase Transfer Catalysis in Organic Synthesis*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1977.  
 C. M. Starks, "Phase-Transfer Catalysis I," *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, **93**, 195 (1971); C. M. Starks and R. M. Owens, "Phase-Transfer Catalysis II," *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, **95**, 3613 (1973).  
 D. J. Cram and J. M. Cram, "Host-Guest Chemistry," *Science*, **183**, 803 (1974).

### Electrophilic aromatic substitution

- J. Hine, *Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 16.  
 C. K. Ingold, *Struct. and Mech.*, Ch. VI.  
 J. March, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 11.  
 R. O. C. Norman and R. Taylor, *Electrophilic Substitution in Benzenoid Compounds*, Elsevier, New York, 1965.  
 J. H. Ridd, "Mechanism of Nitration," *Accts. Chem. Res.*, **4**, 248 (1971).  
 R. M. Roberts, "Friedel-Crafts Chemistry," *Chem. Eng. News*, Jan. 25, 1965, p. 96.  
 G. A. Olah, *Friedel-Crafts Chemistry*, Wiley, New York, 1973.



## Nucleophilic aromatic substitution

- J. Hine, *Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 17.  
 J. March, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 13.  
 J. F. Bunnett, "Mechanism and Reactivity in Aromatic Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions," *Quart. Revs. (London)*, **12**, 1 (1958).  
 J. F. Bunnett, "The Chemistry of Benzyne," *J. Chem. Educ.*, **38**, 278 (1961).  
 J. Miller, *Aromatic Nucleophilic Substitution*, Elsevier, New York, 1968.  
 R. W. Hoffmann, *Dehydrobenzene and Cycloalkynes*, Academic Press, New York, 1967.  
 F. Pietra, "Mechanisms for Nucleophilic and Phot nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution," *Quart. Revs. (London)*, **23**, 504 (1969).  
 J. F. Bunnett, "The Base-Catalyzed Halogen Dance, and Other Reactions of Aryl Halides," *Accts. Chem. Res.*, **5**, 139 (1972).

## Addition to carbon-carbon multiple bonds

- J. Hine, *Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 9, "Polar Addition to Carbon-Carbon Multiple Bonds."  
 C. K. Ingold, *Struct. and Mech.*, Ch. XIII, "Additions and Their Retrogression."  
 J. March, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 15.  
 P. B. D. de la Mare and R. Bolton, *Electrophilic Additions to Unsaturated Systems*, Elsevier, New York, 1966.  
 O. R. XIII-3, C. Walling and E. S. Huyser, "Free Radical Additions to Olefins and Acetylenes to Form Carbon-Carbon Bonds"; XIII-1, G. Zweifel and H. C. Brown, "Hydration of Olefins, Dienes, and Acetylenes via Hydroboration"; XIII-2, W. E. Parham and E. E. Schweizer, "Halocyclopropanes from Halocarbenes"; XX-1, H. E. Simmons et al., "Cyclopropanes."  
 M. Jones, Jr., "Carbenes," *Sci. American*, Feb. 1976, p. 101.  
 H. C. Brown, *Boranes in Organic Chemistry*, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, 1972.  
 G. Melloni et al., "Relative Reactivities of Carbon-Carbon Double Bonds and Carbon-Carbon Triple Bonds toward Electrophiles," *Accts. Chem. Res.*, **14**, 227 (1981).  
 M. Orchin, " $\text{HCo(CO)}_3$  the Quintessential Catalyst," *Accts. Chem. Res.*, **14**, 259 (1981).

## Elimination

- J. Hine, *Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 8, "Polar Elimination Reactions."  
 C. K. Ingold, *Struct. and Mech.*, Ch. IX, "Olefin-forming Eliminations."  
 J. March, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 17.  
 W. H. Saunders, Jr., *Mechanisms of Elimination Reactions*, Wiley, New York, 1973.  
 D. V. Ranthorpe, *Elimination Reactions*, Elsevier, New York, 1963.  
 O. R. XI-5, A. C. Cope and E. R. Trumbull, "Hofmann Elimination."  
 J. Sicher, "The *Syn* and *anti* Course in Bimolecular Olefin-Forming Eliminations," *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.*, **11**, 20 (1972).

## Oxidation

- W. Carruthers, *Mod. Meth. Synth.*, Ch. 6.  
 H. O. House, *Mod. Syn. Reactions*, Ch. 5-7.  
 J. March, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 19.  
 K. L. Rinehart, *Oxidation and Reduction of Organic Compounds*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1973.  
 R. Stewart, *Oxidation Mechanisms*, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1964.  
 K. B. Wiberg, ed., *Oxidation in Organic Chemistry*, Academic Press, New York, Part A, 1965.  
 O. R. VII-7, D. Swern, "Epoxidation and Hydroxylation of Ethylenic Compounds with Organic Peroxides"; II-8, E. L. Jackson, "Periodic Acid Oxidation."



## Reduction and hydrogenation

- W. Carruthers, *Mod. Meth. Synth.*, Ch. 7.  
 H. O. House, *Mod. Syn. Reactions*, Ch. 1-4.  
 J. March, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 19.  
 K. L. Rinehart, *Oxidation and Reduction of Organic Compounds*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1973.  
 O. R. I-7, E. L. Martin, "The Clemmensen Reduction"; XXII-3, E. Vedejs, "Clemmensen Reduction of Ketones in Anhydrous Organic Solvents"; IV-8, D. Todd, "The Wolff-Kishner Reduction"; II-5, A. L. Wilds, "Reduction with Aluminum Alkoxides (the Meerwein-Ponndorf-Verley Reduction)"; VI-10, W. G. Brown, "Reductions by Lithium Aluminum Hydride"; XXIII-1, D. Caine, "Reduction and Related Reactions of  $\alpha,\beta$ -Unsaturated Compounds with Metals in Liquid Ammonia"; XXIV-1, A. J. Birch and D. H. Williamson, "Catalytic Homogeneous Hydrogenation."  
 E. R. H. Walker, "The Functional Group Selectivity of Complex Hydride Reducing Agents," *Chem. Soc. Revs.*, **5**, 23 (1976).  
 J. Leucroft and P. G. Sammes, "Stereoselective and Stereospecific Olefin Synthesis," *Quart. Revs. (London)*, **25**, 135 (1971).

## Rearrangements

- F. C. Whitmore, "The Common Basis of Intramolecular Rearrangements," *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, **54**, 3274 (1932).  
 G. W. Wheland, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 12-13.  
 J. Hine, *Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 14, 15, 23.  
 C. K. Ingold, *Struct. and Mech.*, Ch. X-XII.  
 J. March, *Adv. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 18.  
 P. de Mayo, ed., *Molecular Rearrangements*, Interscience, New York, 1963.  
 O. R. III-7, E. S. Wallis and J. F. Lane, "The Hofmann Reaction"; III-8, H. Wolff, "The Schmidt Reaction"; III-9, P. A. S. Smith, "The Curtius Reaction."  
 C. J. Collins, "The Pinacol Rearrangement," *Quart. Revs. (London)*, **14**, 357 (1960).  
 C. J. Collins, "Reactions of Primary Aliphatic Amines with Nitrous Acid," *Accts. Chem. Res.*, **4**, 315 (1971).

## Acyl compounds

- C. K. Ingold, *Struct. and Mech.*, Ch. XXV.  
 J. Hine, *Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 12-13.  
 W. Carruthers, *Mod. Meth. Synth.*, Ch. 1.  
 H. O. House, *Mod. Syn. Reactions*, Ch. 11, "Acylation at Carbon."  
 O. R. I-9, C. R. Hauser and B. E. Hudson, Jr., "The Acetoacetic Ester Condensation and Related Reactions"; IV-4, S. M. McElvain, "The Acyloins"; II-4, W. S. Johnson, "The Formation of Cyclic Ketones by Intramolecular Acylation"; VIII-2, D. A. Shirley, "The Synthesis of Ketones from Acid Chlorides and Organometallic Compounds of Magnesium, Zinc, and Cadmium."  
 D. P. N. Satchell, "An Outline of Acylation," *Quart. Revs. (London)*, **17**, 160 (1963).  
 A. G. Davies and J. Kenyon, "Alkyl-Oxygen Heterolysis in Carboxylic Esters and Related Compounds," *Quart. Revs. (London)*, **9**, 203 (1955).  
 M. L. Bender, "Mechanisms of Catalysis of Nucleophilic Reactions of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives," *Chem. Revs.*, **60**, 53 (1960).

## Carbonyl compounds

- C. K. Ingold, *Struct. and Mech.*, pp. 994-1015.  
 J. Hine, *Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ch. 11.  
 W. Carruthers, *Mod. Meth. Synth.*, Ch. 1, 5.  
 H. O. House, *Mod. Syn. Reactions*, Ch. 9, "The Alkylation of Active Methylene Compounds"; Ch. 10, "The Aldol Condensation and Related Reactions."

- C. D. Gutsche, *The Chemistry of Carbonyl Compounds*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N. J., 1967.
- O. R. XVIII-1, M. J. Jorgenson, "Preparation of Ketones from the Reaction of Organolithium Reagents with Carboxylic Acids"; XVI (the entire volume), A. J. Nielsen and W. J. Houlihan, "The Aldol Condensation"; IV-5, W. S. Ide and J. S. Buck, "The Synthesis of Benzoin"; II-3, T. A. Geissman, "The Cannizzaro Reaction"; V-6, N. N. Crounse, "The Gattermann-Koch Reaction"; I-10, F. F. Blicke, "The Mannich Reaction"; XV-1 J. P. Schaefer and J. J. Bloomfield, "The Dieckmann Condensation"; XV-2, G. Jones, "The Knoevenagel Reaction"; XXII-4, M. W. Rathke, "The Reformatsky Reaction"; XIV-3, A. Maercker, "The Wittig Reaction"; XXII-2, G. H. Posner, "Substitution Reactions Using Organocopper Compounds."

### $\alpha$ , $\beta$ -Unsaturated carbonyl compounds

- C. K. Ingold, *Struct. and Mech.*, pp. 1015-1037.
- H. O. House, *Mod. Syn. Reactions*, Ch. 9, "The Alkylation of Active Methylene Compounds."
- W. Carruthers, *Mod. Meth. Synth.*, Ch. 1, 3.
- O. R. IV-1, M. C. Klotzel, "The Diels-Alder Reaction with Maleic Anhydride"; V-2, H. A. Bruson, "Cyanoethylation"; X-3, E. D. Bergmann, D. Ginsburg, and E. Pappo, "The Michael Reactions"; XXVI-3, W. Nagata and M. Yoshioka, "Hydrocyanation of Conjugated Carbonyl Compounds."

### Nitrogen compounds

- H. Zollinger, *Azo and Diazo Chemistry*, Interscience, New York, 1961.
- H. Zollinger, "Reactivity and Stability of Arenediazonium Ions," *Accts. Chem. Res.*, 6, 335 (1973).
- J. H. Ridd, "Nitrosation, Diazotization, and Deamination," *Quart. Revs. (London)*, 15, 418 (1961).
- L. A. Paquette, *Principles of Modern Heterocyclic Chemistry*, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1968.
- A. R. Katritzky and J. M. Lagowski, *Principles of Heterocyclic Chemistry*, Academic Press, New York, 1968.
- A. I. Meyers, *Heterocycles in Organic Synthesis*, Wiley, New York, 1974.
- A. G. Cook, *Enamines: Synthesis, Structure, and Reactions*, Dekker, New York, 1969.
- E. Adams, "Barbiturates," *Sci. American*, Jan. 1958, p. 60.
- I. T. Miller and H. D. Springall, *Sidgwick's Organic Chemistry of Nitrogen*, 3rd ed., Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1966.
- W. C. Guida and D. J. Raber, "The Chemistry of Color Photography," *J. Chem. Educ.*, 52, 622 (1975).
- W. L. F. Armarego, *Stereochemistry of Heterocyclic Compounds, Part I, Nitrogen Heterocycles*, Wiley, New York, 1977.

### Synthesis

- W. Carruthers, *Some modern methods of organic synthesis*, Cambridge University Press, New York, 1978.
- H. O. House, *Modern Synthetic Reactions*, 2nd ed., W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1972.
- R. O. C. Norman, *Principles of Organic Synthesis*, 2nd ed., Chapman and Hall, London, 1978.
- S. Warren, *Designing Organic Syntheses. A Programmed Introduction to the Synthron Approach*, Wiley, New York, 1978.
- J. F. W. McOmie, ed., *Protective Groups in Organic Chemistry*, Plenum, New York, 1973.
- R. P. Houghton, *Metal complexes in organic chemistry*, Cambridge University Press, New York, 1979.
- H. C. Brown, *Organic syntheses via boranes*, Wiley, 1975.

- H. C. Brown, *Boranes in Organic Chemistry*, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, 1972.  
 C. A. Henrick, "The Synthesis of Insect Sex Pheromones," *Tetrahedron*, **33**, 1848 (1977).

### Polymers and polymerization

- I. R. G. Treloar, *Introduction to Polymer Science*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1970.  
 I. Mandelkern, *Introduction to Macromolecules*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1972.  
 R. B. Seymour, *Introduction to Polymer Chemistry*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1971.  
 C. E. H. Bawn, "New Kinds of Macromolecules," *Endeavour*, **15**, 137 (1956).  
 G. Natta, "How Giant Molecules Are Made," *Sci. American*, Sept. 1957, p. 98.  
 G. Natta, "Precisely Constructed Polymers," *Sci. American*, Aug. 1961, p. 33.  
 C. E. H. Bawn and A. Ledwith, "Stereoregular Addition Polymerization," *Quart. Revs.* (London), **16**, 361 (1962).  
 Symposium on "State of the Art: Polymer Chemistry," *J. Chem. Educ.*, **58**, 837-955 (1981).  
 M. Szwarc, *Carbanions, Living Polymers, and Electron Transfer Processes*, Wiley, New York, 1968.  
 R. P. Quirk, "Stereochemistry and Macromolecules," *J. Chem. Educ.*, **58**, 540 (1981).

### Natural products

- C. S. Hudson, "Emil Fischer's Discovery of the Configuration of Glucose," *J. Chem. Educ.*, **18**, 353 (1941). Fiftieth Anniversary Lecture.  
 N. Sharon, "Carbohydrates," *Sci. American*, Nov. 1980, p. 90.  
 R. D. Guthrie and J. Honeyman, *An Introduction to the Chemistry of Carbohydrates*, 3rd ed., Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1968.  
 M. L. Bender and M. Komiyama, *Cyclodextrin Chemistry*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1978.  
 R. Breslow, "Biomimetic Chemistry," *Chem. Soc. Revs.*, **1**, 574-580 (1972).  
 I. Tabushi, "Cyclodextrin Catalysis as a Model for Enzyme Action," *Accs. Chem. Res.*, **15**, 66 (1982).  
 I. L. Finar, *Organic Chemistry*, Longmans, Green, New York, Vol. II, 2nd ed., 1959.  
 L. F. Fieser and M. Fieser, *Steroids*, Reinhold, New York, 1959.  
 W. Klyne, *The Chemistry of the Steroids*, Wiley, New York, 1957.  
 L. J. Mulheirn and P. J. Ramm, "The Biosynthesis of Sterols," *Chem. Soc. Revs.*, **1**, 259 (1972).  
 J. Simonsen, *The Terpenes*, Cambridge University Press. Vols. I-III, 2nd ed., 1947. Vols. IV-V, with W. C. J. Ross, 1957.  
 J. B. Hendrickson, *The Molecules of Nature*, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1965.  
 K. Nakanishi et al., *Natural Products Chemistry*, 2 vols., Academic Press, New York, 1974 and 1975.

### Amino acids and proteins

- R. E. Dickerson and I. Geis, *The Structure and Action of Proteins*, Harper and Row, New York, 1969.  
 W. A. Schroeder, *Primary Structures of Proteins*, Harper and Row, New York, 1968.  
 G. E. Schulz and R. H. Schirmer, *Principles of Protein Structure*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1979.  
 K. D. Kopple, *Peptides and Amino Acids*, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1966.  
 M. Bodansky, Y. S. Klausner, and M. A. Ondetti, *Peptide Synthesis*, 2nd ed., Wiley, New York, 1976.  
 L. Pauling, "The Configuration of Polypeptide Chains in Proteins," *Rec. Chem. Progr.* (Kresge-Hooker Sci. Lib.), **12**, 155 (1951).  
 P. Doty, "Proteins," *Sci. American*, Sept. 1957, p. 173.  
 L. Pauling, R. B. Corey, and R. Hayward, "Structure of Protein Molecules," *Sci. American*, Oct. 1954, p. 54.  
 F. Sanger and L. F. Smith, "The Structure of Insulin," *Endeavour*, **16**, 48 (1957).



- F. Sanger, "The Chemistry of Insulin (Nobel Lecture)," *Chemistry and Industry*, 104 (1959).
- C. H. Li, "The ACTH Molecule," *Sci. American*, July 1963, p. 46.
- D. E. Koshland, Jr., "Protein Shape and Biological Control," *Sci. American*, Oct. 1973, p. 52.
- R. E. Dickerson, "The Structure and Ancient History of an Ancient Protein," *Sci. American*, April 1972, p. 58.
- M. Calvin, "Chemical Evolution," *American Scientist*, 63, 169 (1975).
- M. O. Dayhoff, "Computer Analysis of Protein Evolution," *Sci. American*, July 1969, p. 86.
- A. L. Lehninger, *Principles of Biochemistry*, Worth, New York, 1982.
- R. C. Bohinski, *Modern Concepts in Biochemistry*, 3rd ed., Allyn and Bacon, Boston, 1979.
- W. B. Wood, J. H. Wilson, R. M. Benbow, and L. F. Hood, *Biochemistry: A Problems Approach*, 2nd ed., Benjamin/Cummings, Menlo Park, California, 1981.

## Chemistry of biological processes

- F. Wold, *Macromolecules: Structure and Function*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N. J., 1971.
- The Molecular Basis of Life: Readings from Scientific American*, Freeman, San Francisco, Calif., 1968.
- M. Calvin and W. A. Pryor, eds., *Organic Chemistry of Life*, Freeman, San Francisco, Calif., 1973.
- J. D. Watson, *Molecular Biology of the Gene*, 3rd ed., W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1976.
- R. B. Clayton, "Biosynthesis of Sterols, Steroids, and Terpenoids," *Quart. Revs. (London)*, 19, 168, 201 (1965).
- A. L. Lehninger, *Bioenergetics*, 2nd ed., W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1971.
- M. L. Bender, *Mech. Homog. Catal.*, Ch. 12-19.
- W. P. Jencks, *Catalysis in Chemistry and Enzymology*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1969.
- T. C. Bruice and S. Bentkovic, *Bioorganic Mechanisms*, 2 vols., W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1966.
- H. R. Levy, P. Talalay, and B. Vennesland, "The Steric Course of Enzymatic Reactions at Meso Carbon Atoms: Application of Hydrogen Isotopes," in P. B. D. de la Mare and W. Klyne, eds., *Progress in Stereochemistry*, 3, 299 (1962).
- W. Allworth, *Stereochemistry and Its Application in Biochemistry*, Wiley, New York, 1972.
- J. W. Cornforth, "Enzymes and Stereochemistry," *Tetrahedron*, 30, 1515 (1974).
- J. W. Cornforth, "Asymmetry and Enzyme Action (Nobel Lecture)," *Science*, 193, 121 (1976).
- J. R. Knowles and W. J. Albery, "Perfection in Enzyme Catalysis," *Accts. Chem. Res.*, 10, 105 (1977).
- R. E. Dickerson, "Cytochrome C and the Evolution of Energy Metabolism," *Sci. American*, Mar. 1980, p. 136.
- C. Cohen, "The Protein Switch of Muscle Contraction," *Sci. American*, Nov. 1975, p. 36.
- "The Chemistry of Vision" (special issue), *Accts. Chem. Res.*, 8, 81-112 (1975).
- W-H. Kunan, "Chemistry and Biochemistry of Unsaturated Fatty Acids," *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.*, 15, 61 (1976).
- D. E. Hathway and G. F. Kolar, "Mechanisms of Reaction between Ultimate Chemical Carcinogens and Nucleic Acid," *Chem. Soc. Revs.*, 9, 241 (1980).
- M. Eigen et al., "Origin of Genetic Information," *Sci. American*, Apr. 1981, p. 88.
- M. Perutz, "Hemoglobin Structure and Respiratory Transport," *Sci. American*, Dec. 1978, p. 92.

## Use of isotopes

- D. A. Semenov and J. D. Roberts, "Uses of Isotopes in Organic Chemistry," *J. Chem. Educ.*, 33, 2 (1956).
- J. G. Burr, *Tracer Applications for the Study of Organic Reactions*, Interscience, New York, 1957.
- C. J. Collins, "Isotopes and Organic Reaction Mechanisms," Vol. 2, p. 3, in *Adv. in Phys. Org. Chem.*



- H. Zollinger, "Hydrogen Isotope Effects in Aromatic Substitution Reactions," Vol. 2, p. 163, in *Adv. in Phys. Org. Chem.*
- L. Melander and W. H. Saunders, Jr., *Reaction Rates of Isotopic Molecules*, Wiley, New York, 1979.
- R. H. Wightman et al., "Enzyme-mediated Reactions I. Stereochemical Course of Elimination," *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Transactions*, 1, 2355 (1972).
- D. V. Banthorpe and D. Baxendale, "Terpene Biosynthesis III," *J. Chem. Soc., Sect. C*, 2694 (1970).
- J. A. Bassham, A. A. Benson, and M. Calvin, "Isotope Studies in Photosynthesis," *J. Chem. Educ.*, 30, 274 (1953).
- J. A. Bassham, "The Path of Carbon in Photosynthesis," *Sci. American*, June 1962, p. 88.
- R. P. Levine, "The Mechanism of Photosynthesis," *Sci. American*, Dec. 1969, p. 58.
- W. F. Libby, *Radiocarbon Dating*, 2nd ed., University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1955.

## Analysis

- R. L. Shriner, R. C. Fuson, D. Y. Curtin, and T. C. Morrill, *The Systematic Identification of Organic Compounds*, 6th ed., Wiley, New York, 1980.
- D. J. Pasto and C. R. Johnson, *Organic Structure Determination*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N. J., 1969.
- R. M. Silverstein, G. C. Bassler, and T. C. Morrill, *Spectrometric Identification of Organic Compounds*, 4th ed., Wiley, New York, 1981.
- J. R. Dyer, *Applications of Absorption Spectroscopy of Organic Compounds*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N. J., 1965.
- J. R. Dyer, *Organic Spectral Problems*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N. J., 1972.
- L. J. Bellamy, *Infrared Spectra of Complex Molecules*, 3rd ed., Wiley, New York, 1975.
- R. T. Conley, *Infrared Spectroscopy*, 2nd ed., Allyn and Bacon, Boston, 1972.
- K. Nakanishi, *Infrared Absorption Spectroscopy*, 2nd ed., Holden-Day, San Francisco, Calif., 1977.
- L. M. Jackman and S. Sternhell, *Applications of NMR Spectroscopy in Organic Chemistry*, 2nd ed., Pergamon, New York, 1969.
- G. C. Levy, R. L. Lichter, and G. L. Nelson, *Carbon-13 NMR*, 2nd ed., Wiley-Interscience, New York, 1980.
- G. C. Levy and R. L. Lichter,  *$^{15}\text{N}$  NMR Spectroscopy*, Wiley, New York, 1979.
- A. E. Tonelli and F. C. Schilling, " $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR Chemical Shifts and the Microstructure of Polymers," *Accts. Chem. Res.*, 14, 233 (1981).
- F. W. McLafferty, *Interpretation of Mass Spectroscopy*, 2nd ed., W. A. Benjamin, Menlo Park, Calif., 1973.
- H. Budzikiewicz, C. Djerassi, and D. H. Williams, *Mass Spectrometry of Organic Compounds*, Holden-Day, San Francisco, Calif., 1967.

## Industrial Methods:

- H. A. Wittcoff, *Industrial Organic Chemicals in Perspective*, 2 volumes, Wiley, New York, 1980.

# Answers to Problems

## Chapter 1

1.1 Ionic: a, e, f. 1.4 All tetrahedral ( $sp^3$ ). 1.5 Structure (a), not (b). 1.7 (a) Expect zero; (b) expect  $NF_3 > NH_3$ . 1.8 d, e. 1.9 Aprotic: b, c, e, g, j, k, l. 1.11 (a)  $CH_3OH > CH_3NH_2$ ; (b)  $CH_3SH > CH_3OH$ ; (c)  $H_3O^+ > NH_4^+$ . 1.12 (a)  $H_3O^+$ ; (b)  $NH_4^+$ ; (c)  $H_2S$ ; (d)  $H_2O$ . 1.13 (a)  $CH_3^- > NH_2^- > OH^- > F^-$ ; (b)  $NH_3 > H_2O > HF$ ; (c)  $SH^- > Cl^-$ ; (d)  $F^- > Cl^- > Br^- > I^-$ ; (e)  $OH^- > SH^- > SeH^-$ . 1.14  $CH_3NH_2 > CH_3OH > CH_3F$ . 1.15 (a)  $OH^- > H_2O > H_3O^+$ ; (b)  $NH_2^- > NH_3$ ; (c)  $S^{2-} > HS^- > H_2S$ .

1. Ionic: a, d, e, g. 3. Trigonal: a, c. Others: tetrahedral. 4. Octahedral. 7. Li cpd.: ionic. Be cpd.: non-ionic, covalent. 11. (a)  $H_3O^+$ ; (b) HCl; (c) HCl in benzene.

## Chapter 2

2.1 (a)  $-8$  kcal; (b)  $+13$  kcal; (c)  $-102$  kcal. 2.2 (a)  $+46$ ,  $+16$ ,  $-24$  kcal; (b)  $+36$ ,  $+33$ ,  $-20$  kcal; (c)  $+38$ ,  $-32$ ,  $-70$  kcal. 2.5 Cation:  $sp^2$ , trigonal, flat. Anion:  $sp^3$ , pyramidal. 2.7 (a)  $(\%C + \%H) < 100\%$ ; (b)  $34.8\%$ . 2.8 (a)  $69.5\%$  Cl; (b)  $70.2\%$  Cl; (c)  $24.84$  mg; (d)  $26.51$  mg; (e)  $27.43$  mg. 2.9 (a)  $CH_3$ ; (b)  $C_3H_6Cl_2$ . 2.10  $C_6H_6$ . 2.11  $C_4H_8O_2$ .

1. A,  $93.9\%$  C,  $6.3\%$  H; B,  $64.0\%$  C,  $4.5\%$  H,  $31.4\%$  Cl; C,  $62.0\%$  C,  $10.3\%$  H,  $27.7\%$  O. 2. (a)  $45.9\%$  C,  $8.9\%$  H,  $45.1\%$  Cl; (b)  $52.1\%$  C,  $13.1\%$  H,  $34.8\%$  O; (c)  $54.5\%$  C,  $9.2\%$  H,  $36.3\%$  O; (d)  $41.8\%$  C,  $4.7\%$  H,  $18.6\%$  O,  $16.3\%$  N,  $18.6\%$  S; (e)  $20.0\%$  C,  $6.7\%$  H,  $26.6\%$  O,  $46.7\%$  N; (f)  $55.6\%$  C,  $6.2\%$  H,  $10.8\%$  O,  $27.4\%$  Cl. 3. (a)  $CH_2$ ; (b) CH; (c)  $CH_2O$ ; (d)  $C_2H_5OCl$ ; (e)  $C_3H_{10}N_2$ ; (f)  $C_3H_4O_2Cl_2$ . 4.  $C_{20}H_{21}O_4N$ . 5.  $C_{14}H_{14}O_3N_3SNa$ . 6. (a)  $85.8\%$  C,  $14.3\%$  H; (b)  $CH_2$ ; (c)  $C_6H_{12}$ . 7.  $C_3H_4O_2$ . 8.  $CH_2O$ . 9.  $C_{10}H_{10}O_2N_2$ . 10. (a) 942; (b) 6. 11. (a)  $-130$ ; (b)  $-44$ ; (c)  $-26$ ; (d)  $-2$ ; (e)  $-13$ ; (f)  $-8$ ; (g)  $-1$ ; (h) 1st step  $+46$ ; 2nd steps  $+10$ ,  $-3$ ,  $0$ ; 3rd steps  $-23$ ,  $-5$ ,  $-1$ . 12. (b) Highly improbable, since  $E_{act}$  for reaction with  $Cl_2$  is much smaller. 14. (b) Chain-carrying  $E_{act} \geq 33$  kcal.

## Chapter 3

3.2 No. 3.3 Van der Waals repulsion between "large" methyls. 3.9 (a) and (b)  $C_3H_8$ ; (c)  $CH_3CH_2CH_2D$  and  $CH_3CHDCH_3$ . 3.10 (a) 3; (b) 4; (c) 2; (d) 1. 3.11 (b)  $R'X$

should be 1. **3.14** (a) 44% 1-Cl, 56% 2-Cl; (b) 64% 1°, 36% 3°; (c) 55% 1°, 45% 3°; (d) 21% 1-Cl, 53% 2-Cl, 26% 3-Cl; (e) 28% 1-Cl-2-Me, 23% 2-Cl-2-Me, 35% 2-Cl-3-Me, 14% 1-Cl-3-Me; (f) 45% 1-Cl-2,2,3-triMe, 25% 3-Cl-2,2,3-triMe, 30% 1-Cl-2,3,3-triMe; (g) 33% 1-Cl-2,2,4-triMe, 28% 3-Cl-2,2,4-triMe, 18% 4-Cl-2,2,4-triMe, 22% 1-Cl-2,4,4-triMe. **3.15** (a) 4% 1-Br, 96% 2-Br; (b) 0.6% 1°, 99.4% 3°; (c) 0.3% 1°, 99.7% 3°; (d) 1% 1-Br, 66% 2-Br, 33% 3-Br; (e) 0.3% 1-Br-2-Me, 90% 2-Br-2-Me, 9% 2-Br-3-Me, 0.2% 1-Br-3-Me; (f) 0.6% 1-Br-2,2,3-triMe, 99% 3-Br-2,2,3-triMe, 0.4% 1-Br-2,3,3-triMe; (g) 0.5% 1-Br-2,2,4-triMe, 9% 3-Br-2,2,4-triMe, 90% 4-Br-2,2,4-triMe, 0.3% 1-Br-2,4,4-triMe. **3.16** 40:1. **3.17** 1.15:1. **3.22** 2,2-Dimethylhexane.

**5.** (e) 6. **6.** One monochloro, three dichloro, four trichloro. **7** c, b, e, a, d. **10.** (a) 1-, 2-, and 3-chlorohexane; (b) 1-, 2-, and 3-chloro-2-methylpentane, and 1- and 2-chloro-4-methylpentane; (c) 1-, 3-, and 4-chloro-2,2,4-trimethylpentane, and 1-chloro-2,4,4-trimethylpentane; (d) 1- and 3-chloro-2,2-dimethylbutane, and 1-chloro-3,3-dimethylbutane. **11.** Order of isomers as in Problem 10: (a) 16, 42, 42%; (b) 21, 17, 26, 26, 10%; (c) 33, 28, 18, 22%, (d) 46, 39, 15%. **16.** (a) 2650 kcal; (b) 8710 kcal; (c) 169 g. **17.** Carius: mono, 45.3% Cl; di, 62.8% Cl. Mol.wt.: mono, 78.5; di, 113. **19.** (a) Methane gas; 1.49 mg  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ ; (b) 59, *n*-propyl or isopropyl alcohol; (c) 3;  $\text{CH}_2\text{OHCHOHCH}_2\text{OH}$ .

## Chapter 4

**4.1** 2 (mirror images). **4.2** (a) 3; (b) 2; (c) 3 (2 are mirror images); (d) 1. **4.3** (a)  $-39.0^\circ$ ; (b)  $-2.4^\circ$ ; (c)  $-0.6^\circ$ . **4.4** Use a shorter or longer tube, measure rotation. **4.5** Chiral: b, d, f, g, h. **4.6** (b) 3 of 5 are chiral. **4.7** (d) Mirror images: a, b. **4.9** 3°, 2°, 1°, Me. **4.15** (b) Neither active: one is achiral, other is a racemic modification. **4.17** (a) 4; (c) none. **4.19** c, d, e, g. **4.21**  $-1.01^\circ$ . **4.22** (f) *R,R*: *meso* = 29:71. **4.23** (a) 5 fractions, two inactive, others active; (b) 5, all inactive; (c) 6, all inactive. **4.24** Rapidly inverting pyramid.

**3.** Equal but opposite specific rotations; opposite *R/S* specifications; all other properties the same. **4.** (a) Screw, scissors, spool of thread; (b) glove, shoe, coat sweater, tied scarf; (c) helix, double helix; (d) football (laced), tennis racket (looped trim), golf club, rifle barrel; (e) hand, foot, ear, nose, yourself. **5.** (a) Sawing; (b) opening milk bottle, (c) throwing a ball. **7.** (a) and (b) 3-Methylhexane and 2,3-dimethylpentane. **8.** a, b, e, k, 2 pairs of enantiomers; c, d, h, 1 pair of enantiomers + 1 *meso*; f, 4 pairs of enantiomers, g, 1 pair of enantiomers + 2 *meso*; i, 2 diastereomers; j, 1 pair of enantiomers. **9.** A,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CCl}_2\text{CH}_3$ ; B,  $\text{ClCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ; C,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHClCH}_2\text{Cl}$ , chiral; D,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CHCl}_2$ . (d) Active,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHClCHCl}_2$ . **11:** Attractive dipole-dipole interaction. **12.** 12% *gauche* (as non-resolvable racemic modification), 88% *anti*. **13.** Any optical activity: "accident." Optical inactivity: "murder." **14.** (a) 3; (b) 5; (c) 7 (5 active); (d) 7 (6 active); (e) 1, (f) 2 (1 active); (g) 2. **15.** E, (*S,S*); F, (*R,S*); G, (*S,S*); H (*S,S*); I, (2*R,3S*)-4-bromo-1,2,3-butanetriol, J, (*R,R*); K, (*R,S*).

## Chapter 5

**5.1** Mg, anhyd.  $\text{Et}_2\text{O}$ ;  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . **5.3** *trans* is resolvable. **5.5** (a) 0 kcal, (b) 2.7 kcal, (c) 5.4 kcal (3.6 from methyl-methyl interaction), (d) 0 kcal, (e) 0 kcal; (f) 3.6 kcal. **5.6** (b) 3.6 kcal. **5.7** (a) *cis* > *trans*, (b) *trans* > *cis*, (c) 1.8 kcal/mol in each case. **5.8** More than (a) 3.2 kcal; (b) 6.8 kcal, (c) 2.3 kcal. **5.9** Resolvable b, d. *Meso*: c (e and f do not contain chiral centers). **5.10** (a) e; (b) a, (c) e, f, (d) d, (e) b, (f) none. **5.11** Pairs of enantiomers, a, b, c, d. No *meso* compounds. None are non-resolvable racemic modifications. **5.12** (d) For the same degree of unsaturation, there are two fewer hydrogens for each ring. **5.13** All are  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}$ , no information about ring size.

**3.** (a) 4, (b) 6, (c) 7, (d) 9, (e) 5, (f) 2, (g) all-equatorial. **4.** A, *cis*-dimethyl, B, *trans*-dimethyl. **7.** (d) In the *trans*-isomer, both large substituents (the other ring) are equatorial, (e) high energy barrier ( $E_a$ ) between decalins since bond must be broken.

## Chapter 6

6.1 1°: four; 2°: three; 3°: one. 6.6 Starting bromide 63%, optical purity; expect alcohol of -6.5°, same purity. 6.8 Optical purity of final product 13%, that of reactant: 13% inversion, 87% racemization, or 43.5% front-side attack, 56.5% back-side attack. 6.15 (a) 1.9%, (b) 16.4%, (c) 66.2%, (d) 95.1%, (e) 99.0%. 6.16 Free radical chlorination of neopentane.

12. (a) Retention; (b) inversion in last step. 15. (a) E1, (b) E2; (c) change from E1 to E2; (d) S<sub>N</sub>1 in (a), S<sub>N</sub>2 in (b).

## Chapter 7

7.5 (g) None. 7.8 (a) 2.05; (b) 1.02 mol HCl: 1 mol DCl. 7.9 (g) None. 7.10 *i*-Bu > *n*-Pr > Et (> neopentyl). 7.11 *Anti*. 7.12 All Cl atoms equatorial. 7.18 Anion unsolvated, highly basic. 7.20 Unsolvated F<sup>-</sup> very basic. 7.21 Principal base is *t*-BuOH. 7.23 Stere (3), p. 319, is slower than reverse of (2). 7.25 RNH<sub>3</sub><sup>+</sup> is deprotonated by OH<sup>-</sup>. 7.26 Alcohol by E1; tosylate by E2.

3. b, d, g, h, i, k (3 isomers). 4. (b) 4 show geometric isomerism. 5. Differ in all except (h); (l) dipole moment would tell. 9. 3° > 2° > 1°. 14. Isotope effect in forming alkene: (a) *trans*, 3.46, *cis*, 3.73; (b) *trans*, 3.44, *cis*, 3.70. 15. *cis*-Isomer: E2; *trans*-isomer: E1.

## Chapter 8

8.1 (c) 1-Butene 649.8, *cis*-2-butene 648.1, *trans*-2-butene 647.1; (d) 1-pentene 806.9, *cis*-2-pentene 805.3, *trans*-2-pentene 804.3. 8.2 (a) H<sub>3</sub>O<sup>+</sup>; HBr; (b) HBr; (c) HBr. 8.4 (a) Nucleophilic substitution by water; (b) S<sub>N</sub>2; (c) S<sub>N</sub>1. 8.5 (a) Et<sup>+</sup> < *i*-Pr<sup>+</sup> < *t*-Bu<sup>+</sup>; (b) *i*-Pr<sup>+</sup> - Et<sup>+</sup> = 19.8 kcal, *t*-Bu<sup>+</sup> - Et<sup>+</sup> = 32.9 kcal. 8.7 (a) Racemic; *meso*; (b) *syn*; (c) *anti*. 8.8 Racemic modification, a, c, d; *meso*, b. 8.11 *Anti*; intermediate chloronium ion. 8.22 A, alkane; B, 2° alcohol; C, alkyl halide; D, alkene; E, 3° alcohol.

4. 3° radical more stable than 2° radical, forms faster. 8. (d) Steps (2) and (4) are too difficult with HCl. 10. Polar effect of Br substituent. 12. (a), (b), (e), (f): 2 (1 active); (c) 1 (inactive, racemic), (d) 2 (both inactive, racemic). 13. (b) Formation of carbocation rate-determining.

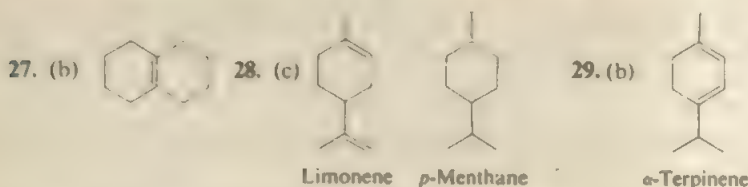
## Chapter 9

9.1 React with relatively scarce HCl, with a minimum *E*<sub>act</sub> of 15 kcal. 9.2 1-Chloro-2-butene and 3-chloro-1-butene. 9.6 Attachment of Br to an allylic radical. 9.7 "One-and-a-half" bonds effectively prevent rotation between configurations. 9.12 Steric hindrance by Me to S<sub>N</sub>2 attack. 9.13 Vinyl cation is intermediate. 9.14 A vinyl cation undergoes alkyl shift to give 5-membered ring (ring contraction). 9.15 (a) 56-60 kcal. 9.16 (a) 1,3-Hexadiene. (b) 1,3-cyclohexadiene. 9.18 (c) Position of equilibrium. 9.19 Orlon, CH<sub>2</sub>=CH-CN, Saran, CH<sub>2</sub>=CCl<sub>2</sub>, Teflon, CF<sub>2</sub>=CF<sub>2</sub>. 9.26 Head-to-tail polymer of isoprene. 9.27 2, 2, 1, none.

12. See Sec. 19.13. 13. (a) Two CH<sub>3</sub> planes perpendicular to each other. 16. Dehydration, polymerization. 19. A, *meso*, resembles isotactic; B, racemic, resembles syndiotactic. 21. Salt, R<sup>+</sup>HSO<sub>4</sub><sup>-</sup>, formed. 24. (b) Myrcene, (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C=CHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(CH<sub>3</sub>)=CHCH<sub>2</sub>. 25. (a) Dihydromyrcene, (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C=CHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(CH<sub>3</sub>)=CHCH<sub>2</sub>.



(b) 1,4-addition. 26. (c) 2 farnesyl units, head to head, form squalene skeleton.



30. Ring closure: addition of carbocation to an alkene.

## Chapter 10

10.1 Intramolecular H-bond in *cis*-isomer (see Sec. 24.2). 10.4 (a) Step 3; (b) steric hindrance. 10.6 (a) Leucine → isopentyl alcohol; isoleucine → active amyl alcohol. 10.8  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OCH}_3)\text{CH}_3$ . 10.9 *syn*-Hydration with anti-Markovnikov orientation. 10.10 Retention.

2. d (highest), e, a, c, b. 4. (a) *p*-Cresol; (b) and (c) propionic acid. 7. Intramolecular H-bond between  $-\text{OH}$  and  $-\text{G}$ . 8. Acetylene stronger acid than ethane. 9. (a) Coprostan-3 $\beta$ ,6 $\beta$ -diol, by *syn*-hydration at more hindered "top" face of molecule. (b) *syn*-Hydration from beneath gives *alpha*  $-\text{OH}$  at C-11. 10. (b) e,e; (c) a,a. 11. Twist-boat. 12. Allyllithium: considerable ionic character. Anion: 4 equivalent H's. 15. *syn*-Addition:  $\text{Rh}-\text{C}$  and  $\text{C}-\text{H}$  bonds formed on same face. 16. *anti*-Elimination.

## Chapter 11

11.2 Intermediate is an  $\alpha$ -lactone. 11.3 Neighboring *trans*-Br and *trans*-I give anchimeric assistance. 11.4 Electron-withdrawing groups increase acid strength. 11.6 2 identical pairs: b. 3 pairs: k. 2 pairs: d, f, i. 1 pair: e, g, h, j. None: a, c, l (all *R*). 11.7 2 pairs: f. 1 pair: a, c, d, e. None: b. 11.8 Enantiotopic: a, d, f, g. Diastereotopic: c, h. None: b, e. 11.9 (a) V → (*S*)-amino acid. (c) H adds to *Re* face. 11.12  $1\text{HIO}_4$ , a, b, c, e;  $4\text{HIO}_4$ , f, g; no reaction, d. 11.13 A,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ; B, 1,2-cyclohexanediol; C, 2-hydroxycyclohexanone; D,  $\text{HOOCCHOHCHOHCOOH}$ ; E,  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CHOHCHOHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ; F,  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CHOHCOCHO}$ ; G,  $\text{HOCH}_2(\text{CHOH})_4\text{CHO}$ .

1. (a) Two give iodoform; (c) one gives negative test. 14. (a) *anti*-Elimination. 16. Enantiotopic ligands: 3 pairs: a, d; 2 pairs: b, g; 1 pair: c, h. Enantiotopic faces: 1 pair: c, j. Diastereotopic ligands: 4 pairs: a, g; 1 pair: d, j. Diastereotopic faces: 1 pair: f, h. None of these: e, i. 18. Yes: a, b, d, e, f. No: c. 19. (c) Yes, it is prochiral. 20. B,  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ; D,  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{COOH}$ ; E, 1,2-cyclohexanediol; F,  $\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{CH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{COOH}$ ; J,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCOOH}$ ; M,  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{C}\equiv\text{CH}$ ; O,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_3$ ; S,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COONa}$ ; U, diacetate of *cis*-1,2-cyclohexanediol; W, triacetate of glycerol; AA,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{COOH}$ ; GG, active 2,4,6,8-tetramethylnonane; HH, *meso*-2,4,6,8-tetramethylnonane. 23. Geraniol,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{CHCH}_2\text{OH}$ ; (b) geometric isomers; (c) in geraniol,  $-\text{H}$  and  $-\text{CH}_3$  are *trans*. 24. Same hybrid allylic cation; gives same bromide.

## Chapter 12

12.5 (a) Configuration of  $(-)$ -ether same as  $(-)$ -alcohol; (b) maximum rotation is  $-19.5^\circ$ . 12.6 (a) Complete inversion. 12.7 Phase-transfer catalysis. 12.9 Trifluoroacetate is weaker base, weaker nucleophile, does not compete with alcohol. 12.18 (f) None.

5. Polyisobutylene. 6. (a) *t*-BuOH. 13. C,  $(\text{CH}_2-\text{CH})_2\text{O}$ ; D,  $\text{ClCH}_2-\text{CHOHCH}_2\text{OCH}_3$ ; E,  $\text{CH}_3\text{OCH}_2\text{COOH}$ ; F,  $\text{CH}_3\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2$ ; G,  $\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2$ ; H,  $\text{CH}_2-\text{O}$



I, racemic *trans*-2-chlorocyclohexanol; J, racemic 1-methyl-*trans*-1,2-cyclohexane-

diol; K, racemic and *meso*-HOCH<sub>2</sub>CHOHCHOHCH<sub>2</sub>OH; L, racemic 2,3-butanediol; M, *meso*-2,3-butanediol.

## Chapter 13

13.5 H goes to terminal C. 13.6 Keto-enol tautomerization. 13.7 Calcium acetylide.

7. Muscalure, (*Z*)-9-tricosene. 8. Douglas-fir tussock moth pheromone, (*Z*)-6-henicosen-11-one. 9. Grape berry moth pheromone, (*Z*)-9-dodecen-1-yl acetate. 10. One component of gossypure, (7*Z*,11*Z*)-7,11-hexadecadien-1-yl acetate. 11. Disparlure, (7*R*,8*S*)-7,8-epoxy-2-methyloctadecane.

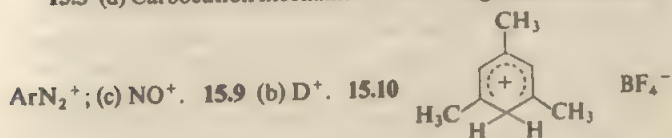
## Chapter 14

14.1 (a) +5.6 kcal; (b) -26.8 kcal. 14.2 (a) 824.1 kcal; (b) 35.0 kcal greater. 14.8 *Ortho*, +6°; *meta*, -7°; *para*, +87°. 14.10 26.0%. 14.11 22.8%. 14.12 18.5%. 14.13 25.9%, 22.9%, 18.6%.

2. (a) 3; (b) 3; (c) 3; (d) 6; (e) 10; (f) 6. 3. (a) 2, 3, 3, 1, 2; (b) 5, 5, 5, 2, 4 (neglecting stereoisomers); (c) none. 4. (a) 2; (b) 3; (c) 1; (d) 4; (e) 4; (f) 2; (g) 4; (h) 4; (i) 2; (j) 1; (k) 3; (l) 2. 5. (a) 1; (b) 1; (c) 2; (d) 1; (e) 2; (f) 3; (g) 2. 6. Yes. 7. (c) No, the *ortho* isomer would be chiral; and enantiomers would be possible. 8. *Ortho*, 104°; *meta*, 63°; *para*, 142°. 9. (a) Those with 3, 5, 7, 9 double bonds; actually, poor geometry for 5, 7; (b) C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>9</sub><sup>-</sup>. 11. (a) C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>6</sub>Cl<sub>6</sub>; (e)-(f) 9 stereoisomers (2 are enantiomers). 13. (a) 10e<sup>-</sup>, a "magic" number; (b) see Sec. 34.3.

## Chapter 15

15.3 (d) Carbocation mechanism. 15.6 Large size of complex. 15.8 (a) RC≡O<sup>+</sup>; (b)



1. Activated (faster): a, c, d, g, h, k. Deactivated (slower): b, e, f, i, j. 8. Via H<sub>2</sub>ONO<sub>2</sub>. 12. (a) Expect lower rate with C<sub>6</sub>D<sub>6</sub>; (b) expect more C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>Y; (c) expect higher *o/p* ratio; (d) expect more C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>2</sub>D<sub>3</sub>Y than C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>D<sub>2</sub>Y. 13. See Sec. 35.4. 14. See Sec. 34.9.

## Chapter 16

16.8 (a) Similar to Fig. 2.3, with  $E_{act} = 19$  kcal, and  $\Delta H = +11$  kcal; (b) 8 kcal; (c) steric hindrance to combination. 16.19  $\alpha$ -Phenylethyl cation, by H-shift.

6.  $\sim\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\sim$ . 17. 2-, 3-, 4-, 5-, and 6-phenyldodecane.

25.



Indene

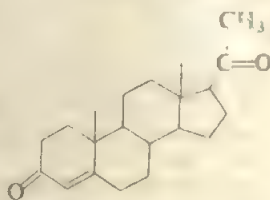


Indane


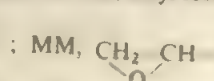
20.9 The product,  $o\text{-HOOC-C}_6\text{H}_4\text{-COOR}$ , has an acidic "handle." 20.13 (a) Cyclic double ester, (b) linear polyester by step-reaction polymerization (Sec. 20.24). 20.16 Basicity of leaving group:  $\text{Cl}^- < \text{RCOO}^- < \text{OR}^- < \text{NH}_2^-$ . 20.17 Structure II in Sec. 20.17. 20.21 (a) Formic acid. 20.22 1-Octadecanol and 1-butanol. 20.25 Linear:  $sp$ -carbon. 20.26 Urea,  $\text{CaCO}_3$ ,  $\text{NH}_3$ . 20.27 (b) Nucleophilic addition. 20.28  $1^\circ$   $-\text{OH}$  esterified more rapidly than  $2^\circ$ . 20.29 Polyurethane, by step-reaction polymerization. 20.30 (a)  $\text{RCOCl}$ ; (b)  $\text{RCOO}^- \text{NH}_4^+$ ,  $\text{RCONH}_2$ ,  $\text{RCN}$ , amides of low mol.wt. amines; (c)  $\text{RCOO}^- \text{NH}_4^+$ ; (d)  $(\text{RCO})_2\text{O}$ ; (e)  $\text{RCOOR}'$ . 20.31 (a) 102; (c) 4; (d) no. 20.32 (a) Two, 97, (b) S.E. = mol.wt./number ester groups per molecule; (c) 297.

1. (b) Contain aromatic ring; (c) diesters. 2. No reaction: f, k. 3. No reaction: f, k. 10. (a)  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CONH}_2$ ; (b)  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ; (c)  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOEt}$ . 11. Second step is  $S_N2$  attack by benzoate anion. 16. Phase-transfer catalysis speeds reaction (Sec. 6.29). 19. A, *meso*; B, racemic. 20. C,  $\text{CO}_3^{2-}$ ; D,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCONH}_2$ , K, 1-indanone (compare Prob. 10a, Chap. 18); M, indene (see Chap. 16,

Prob. 25); O, *trans*-2-methylcyclohexanol. 21. Progesterone,

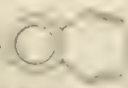


22. AA, 1,3-propanediol; BB, 1,2-propanediol; CC, 2-methoxyethanol; DD, dimethoxymethane (di-O-methylacetal of formaldehyde); EE,  $\alpha$ -hydroxypropionaldehyde; FF, hydroxyacetone; GG,  $\beta$ -hydroxypropionaldehyde; HH, propionic acid, II, ethyl formate; JJ,

methyl acetate; KK, *cis*-1,2-cyclopropanediol; LL, ; MM, .

23. (a) Methyls are *trans* in NN, PP, *cis* in OO, QQ, RR. (b) NN is resolvable. 24. See p. 1072. 25. SS has terminal  $-\text{OH}$ 's; TT has terminal  $-\text{NCO}$ 's, VV has terminal  $-\text{NH}_2$ 's (loss of  $\text{CO}_2$ ); VV crossed-linked between  $-\text{NH}_2$ 's and remaining  $-\text{NCO}$ 's; foam:  $\text{CO}_2$  dispersed in polymer. 26. (a) Ethyl acetate; (b) methacrylic acid; (c) phenylacetamide. 27. (a) *n*-Propyl formate; (b) methyl propionate; (c) ethyl acetate. 28. WW, benzyl acetate; XX, methyl phenylacetate; YY, hydrocinnamic acid,  $\text{PhCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ . 29. Ethyl anisate. 30. ZZ, vinyl acetate. 31. (a) Ethyl adipate; (b) ethyl ethylphenylmalonate, ethyl acetamidomalonate.

## Chapter 21

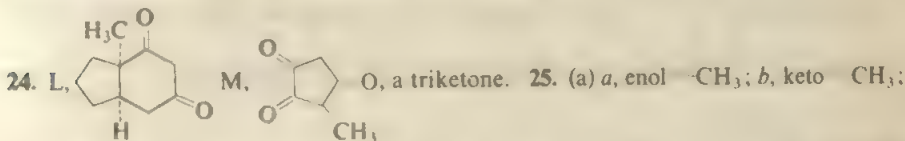
21.1 III, in which the negative charge resides on oxygen, the atom that can best accommodate it. 21.3 Order of decreasing delocalization of the negative charge of the anion. 21.5 Formation of carbanion is rate-determining in bromination, racemization, H/D exchange. 21.6 (b) Hard to generate *second* negative charge. 21.7 Expect rate of racemization to be twice as fast as exchange. 21.8 (a) Both reactions go through the same slow step (2), formation of the enol. 21.9 (a)  $\text{HSO}_4^-$ , (b)  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  or  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$ . 21.11 Gives a mixture of aldol products. 21.12 Electrophile is protonated aldehyde, nucleophile is enol. 21.14 *Retro* (reverse) aldol condensation. 21.15  $\pi$ -Orbital overlap of  $\text{C}-\text{C}$  and  $\text{C}-\text{O}$ . (Compare Fig. 9.5, p. 426.) 21.18 1,5-Cyclooctadiene. 21.20 (a)  $\gamma$ -Hydrogen will be acidic. 21.23 Elimination  $\rightarrow$  1- and 2-butene. 21.26 A,  $\text{Ph}_3\text{P}-\text{CHOPh}$ , B,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)-\text{CHOPh}$ , C,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CHO}$ , a general route to aldehydes. 21.27 D, 1-phenylcyclopentene, E,  $\text{Ph}_3\text{P}-\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2-\text{PPh}_3$ , F, . 21.30 (a) Intramolecular

Claisen condensation leading to cyclization, (b) 2-carbethoxycyclohexanone, (c) ethyl 2,5-dioxocyclohexane-1,4-dicarboxylate. 21.32 (b) 2,4-Hexanedione, (c) 1,3-diphenyl-1,3-propanedione (dibenzoylmethane), (d) 2-( $\text{EtOOC-CO}$ )cyclohexanone. 21.33 (a)



$\text{PhCOOEt}$  and  $\text{PhCH}_2\text{COOEt}$ ; (b)  $\text{EtOOC}^+\text{COOEt}$  and ethyl glutarate; (c) ethyl phthalate and  $\text{CH}_3\text{COOEt}$ . 21.36 C, citric acid,  $(\text{HOOC}^+\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{COOH}$ .

1. (e) Allylbenzene. 2. (e) Methylene cyclohexane. 3. (a) No reaction; (m)  $\text{PhCH}=\text{CHCH}=\text{CH}_2$ ; (n)  $\text{PhCH}=\text{CHOPh}$ ; (o)  $\text{PhCH}_2\text{CHO}$ . 6. Ali Claisen condensations. In (e) and (i): two successive condensations. 7. (b) No: poor yield contaminated by others. 12. From acetone via mesityl oxide. 13. (b) Iodoform test. 15. Triple aldol condensation, followed by crossed Cannizzaro reaction. 18. Dehydrocitral,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{CHCH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)-\text{CHCHO}$ , formed by aldol condensation on  $\gamma$ -carbon of  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated aldehyde. 19. By Wittig reaction at two points in the molecule. 20.  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{COOEt} + \text{CH}_3\text{MgI} \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 \uparrow + (\text{CH}_3\text{COCHCOOEt})\text{Mg}^+\text{I}^-$ . 21. (a) Pheromone is (9Z,11E)-9,11-tetradecadien-1-yl acetate. (b) C is a mixture of Z- and E-diastereomers. 22. Bombykol, (10E,12Z)-10,12-hexadecadien-1-ol. 23. (b) C-C conjugated with second  $\text{C}=\text{O}$ ; (c) intramolecular H-bonding.



c, keto  $-\text{CH}_2-$ ; d, enol  $-\text{CH}-$ ; e, enol  $-\text{OH}$ . Ratios  $a:b$  and  $2d:c$  are equal (5.5 and 5.6) and show 85% enol. (b) All enol, conjugation with ring.

## Chapter 22

22.4  $\text{R}^-$  undergoes rapid inversion. 22.7  $\text{N}_2$  is leaving group. 22.8 Goes with retention, since only *cis* amino acid can form lactam.

6. (a) Putrescine, 1,4-diaminobutane; (b) cadaverine, 1,5-diaminopentane. 8.  $\text{NH}_3$ ;  $\text{OBr}^-$ ,  $\text{H}^+$ . 9. Pair of enantiomers: a, c, e, f, one inactive compound, b; inactive *cis-trans* pair, d. 11. C,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$ . Gabriel synthesis gives 1° amines free from 2° and 3°. 12. (a) Analogous to Hofmann rearrangement, with  $\text{R}^+\text{COO}^-$  leaving group instead of  $\text{X}^-$ . 13. Hofmann rearrangement (Sec. 22.12) with  $\text{R} = \text{NH}_2$ .

## Chapter 23

23.2  $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{N}^+\text{BF}_4^-$ . 23.4 1,3-Pentadiene (from thermal isomerization of 1,4-pentadiene), 2-methyl-1,3-butadiene (isoprene). 23.9 Attack at acyl carbon less hindered than at sulfur, sulfonate better leaving group than carboxylate. 23.10 (a)  $\sim\text{NHCH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CO}\sim$ , (b) chain reaction. 23.11 Free amine is much more reactive. 23.13 (a) *n*-Butyl cation. 23.14 (b) 2-Methyl-2-butene, 2-methyl-1-butene, *tert*-pentyl alcohol. 23.15 Leaving groups  $\text{Cl}^- > \text{H}_2\text{O} > \text{OH}^-$ . 23.20 (a) Electron withdrawal makes diazonium ion more electrophilic. 23.23 (a) 2-Bromo-4-hydroxy-3,4'-dimethylazobenzene. 23.24 Reduction of azo compound formed by coupling  $\text{N,N}$ -dimethylaniline with some diazonium salt (usually  $\text{O}_3\text{SC}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2^+$  from sulfanilic acid). 23.26 (a) That unknown is 3, (b) separate, acidify aqueous solution.

13. Acidic hydrolysis of amide linkages. 16. Poor leaving group ( $\text{OH}^-$ ) converted into a good leaving group ( $\text{OTs}^-$ ). 17. Reaction of  $\text{PhN}_2^+$  is  $\text{S}_\text{N}1$ -like; reaction of  $p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2^+$  is  $\text{S}_\text{N}2$ -like. 22. Choline,  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_3^+\text{OH}^-$ ; acetylcholine,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_3^+\text{OH}^-$ . 23. Novocaine,  $p\text{-H}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{COOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ . 24. D, *N*-methyl-*N*-phenyl-*p*-toluamide. 25. Q, 1,3,5,7-cyclooctatetraene. 26. Pantothenic acid,  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHOHC}(\text{ONHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH})$ . 27. W,  $\text{PhCONHPh}$ , X,  $\text{PhNH}_2$ , Y,  $\text{PhCOOH}$ , (g) cyclohexanone. 28. Z,  $\text{PhNH}_2$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$ . 29. (a) *n*-Butylamine, (b) *N*-methylformamide, (c) *m*-anisidine. 30. (a)  $\alpha$ -Phenylethylamine, (b)  $\beta$ -phenylethylamine, (c) *p*-toluidine. 31. AA, *p*-phenetidine (*p*-ethoxyaniline). BB, *N*-ethylbenzylamine, CC, Michler's ketone, *p,p'*-bis(dimethylamino)benzophenone.

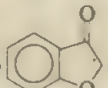


## Chapter 24

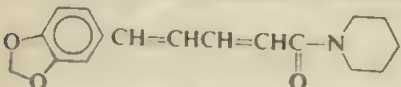
**24.1** Intramolecular H-bond in *o*-isomer unaffected by dilution **24.4** Benzene propylene, HF **24.5** If reaction (2), Sec. 24.5, occurs, it is not reversible, in view of substituent effect, then, (2) and (3) are concerted. **24.6** (a) *p*-Methylbenzaldehyde formed by migration of H, *p*-cresol (and formaldehyde), by migration of *p*-tolyl; (b) H migrates somewhat faster than *p*-tolyl **24.7** H migrates much faster than alkyl. **24.8** R group undergoes 1,2-shift, with retention of configuration, from boron to oxygen in intermediate  $R_3B-OOH$ , with displacement of OH **24.12** *p*-Bromophenyl benzoate,  $p\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{OOC}_6\text{H}_5$ . **24.15** (a) The  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}$  group is displaced by electrophilic reagents, in this case by nitronium ion. **24.16** Sulfonation is reversible: rate vs. equilibrium control. **24.17** Phenol, HONO,  $7-8^\circ$ ;  $\text{HNO}_3$ . **24.20** N.E.

5. No reaction: b, c, f, n. 6. Reaction only with: c, p, r, s, t, u. 7. Reaction only with: c, h, i, j, k, l, n. 13. (a) Nucleophilic aliphatic substitution; (b) electrophilic aromatic

substitution **21.** Phenacetin,  $p\text{-CH}_3\text{CONHC}_6\text{H}_4\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5$ ; coumarane, ; 3-cu-

maranone, ; carvacrol, 5-isopropyl-2-methylphenol; thymol, 2-isopropyl-5-meth-

ylphenol; hexestrol, 3,4-bis(*p*-hydroxyphenyl)hexane. **22.** Adrenaline, 1-(3,4-dihydroxyphenyl)-2-(*N*-methylamino)ethanol. **23.** Phellandral, 4-isopropyl-3,4,5,6-tetrahydrobenzaldehyde. **24.** Y, *m*-cresol. **25.** Z, *p*-allylanisole; AA, *p*-propenylanisole. **26.** BB, isopropyl salicylate. **27.** Chavibetol, 2-methoxy-5-allylphenol. **28.** Piperine,

 **29.** Hordinene,  $p\text{-HOC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$  or


$p\text{-HOC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$  (actually the former). **30.**  $\alpha$ -Terpineol, 2-(4-methyl-3-cyclohexenyl)-2-propanol. **31.** Coniferyl alcohol, 3-(4-hydroxy-3-methoxyphenyl)-2-propen-1-ol. **32.** (a) UU, a ketal and lactone. **33.** AAA, piperonal; BBB, vanillin; CCC, eugenol; DDD, thymol; EEE, isoeugenol; FFF, safrole.

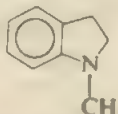
## Chapter 25

**25.1** (a) See Sec. 9.15; (b) see Sec. 15.19. **25.3** (b) Nucleophilic aromatic substitution; (c) electron withdrawal.

1. No reaction: b, c, d, e, f, g, k, l, n, o. 2. No reaction: h, i, j, k, m, n, o. 5. (o)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6 + \text{HC}\equiv\text{CMgBr}$ . Racemic modifications: f, h, k. Optically active: n. 13. Inductive effect,  $\sigma \gg m > p$ . 14.  $-\text{N}_2^+$  activates molecule toward nucleophilic substitution.

15.  $\text{ArF} + \text{R}_2\text{NH} \rightleftharpoons \text{Ar} \begin{array}{c} \text{F} \\ | \\ \text{NHR}_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{:\text{B}} \text{Ar} \begin{array}{c} \text{F} \\ | \\ \text{NR}_2 \end{array} \longrightarrow \text{ArNR}_2 + \text{F}^-$ . 18. (a) 28,  $\text{N}_2$ ;

44,  $\text{CO}_2$ ; 76, benzyne,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ ; 152, biphenylene.  (b) Anthranilic acid.  
Biphenylene

19. Tetraphenylmethane. 21.  23.  $\text{Ar}^\oplus + \text{Ar}'^- \text{Br} \rightleftharpoons \text{Ar}-\text{Br}^\oplus + \text{Ar}'^-$ . Only

carbanions with negative charge *ortho* to halogen are involved.

## Chapter 26

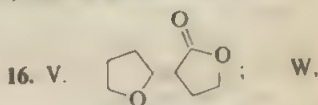
26.3 (a) Ethyl benzalmalonate,  $\text{PhCH}=\text{C}(\text{COOEt})_2$ . 26.4 (b) Cyclohexylideneacetic acid. 26.6 Nucleophilic substitution ( $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$ );  $1 > 2 \gg 3$  (or none), aryl halides not used. 26.7 (a)  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ , a  $\gamma$ -keto acid. (b)  $\text{PhCOCH}_2\text{COCH}_3$ ,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COCH}_3$ , both diketones. 26.9 A,  $\text{EtOCCCOCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{COOEt}$ . 26.11 (a) Charged end loses  $\text{CO}_2$ . 26.12 Gives relatively stable anion,  $2,4,6\text{-(NO}_2)_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_2$ . 26.15 Gives relatively stable anion,  $\text{PhC}\equiv\text{C}$ . 26.17 B, ethyl 3-hydroxynonanoate. 26.18 E,  $\text{Ph} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \end{array} \text{COOEt}$ . 26.22 B, 2-benzalicyclopentanone; F, 3-

phenyl-2,2-dimethylpropanal.

3. Cyclopentanone. 4. C, 1,3-cyclohexanedicarboxylic acid; F, 1,4-cyclohexanedicarboxylic acid; H, succinic acid, J, 1,2-cyclobutanedicarboxylic acid. 5. K, 1,5-hexadiene; O, 2,5-dimethylcyclopentanecarboxylic acid. 7. (b) Intramolecular aldol condensation. (d) gives 3-methyl-2-cyclohexen-1-one. 11. (a) *Retro* (reverse) Claisen condensation. 13. S,

1-phenyl-3-nonanone.

14. U is 9-BBN.



$\text{ClCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ .

17. Nerolidol,

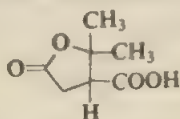
$\text{RCH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{OH})\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$ .

18. Menthone, 2-isopropyl-5-methylcyclohexanone.

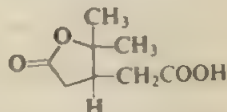
19. Camphoronic acid,

$\text{HOOCCH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{COOH})\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{COOH}$ .

20. Terebic acid,



Terpenylic acid,

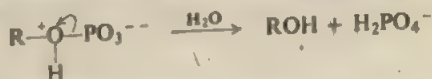


21. Dihydrogenphosphate ion,  $\text{H}_2\text{PO}_4^-$ , a better leaving group than  $\text{OH}^-$ .

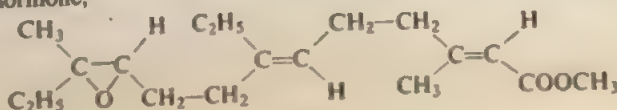
## Chapter 27

27.1 Decarboxylation. Fatty acids could be precursors of petroleum hydrocarbons. 27.2 (a) Isoprene unit. (b) Likely that petroleum comes from green plants. 27.3 Tung oil is high in eleostearic acid (3 double bonds). 27.4 Alkoxide is a poor leaving group. 27.5 Preserves semiliquidity of membranes in colder part of body.

1. Nervonic acid, *cis*- or *trans*- $\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{CH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_{13}\text{COOH}$  (actually, *trans*). 2. Transesterification to more random distribution of acyl groups among glyceride molecules. 3. Hybrid (allylic) free radical is intermediate. 4.  $2,4\text{-(NO}_2)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{O}^-$  is a good leaving group. 5. Spermaceti, *n*-hexadecyl *n*-hexadecanoate. 6. Cleavage of monoanion as dipolar ion (or with simultaneous transfer of proton) is easiest because of (a) protonation of alkoxy group and (b) double negative charge on other oxygens:



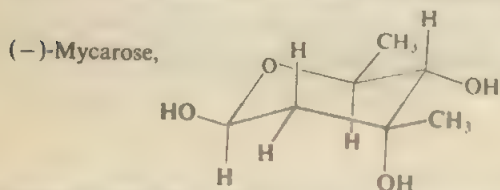
7. Vaccenic acid, *cis*- $\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{CH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_9\text{COOH}$ . 8. Corynomycolenic acid, *cis*- $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{27}\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{COOH})\text{CHOH}(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{CH}=\text{CHC}_6\text{H}_{13}$ . 9. Tuberculostearic acid,  $\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{COOH}$ . 10.  $\text{C}_{27}$ -phthienoic acid,  $\text{CC}(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{COOH}$ . 11. CC, octadecanoic acid; DD, 2-methyloctadecanoic acid. 12. Juvenile hormone,



## Chapter 28

**28.2** Formulas I-VIII, p. 1067. **28.3** (a) 3; (b) 8. **28.4** Glucose +  $5\text{HIO}_4 \rightarrow 5\text{HCOOH} + \text{HCHO}$ . **28.5** A, gluconic acid; B, glucitol; C, glucaric acid; D, glucuronic acid. **28.6** Fructose. Aldose  $\rightarrow$  osazone  $\rightarrow$  osone  $\rightarrow$  2-ketose. **28.7** Identical in configuration at C-3, C-4, and C-5. **28.8** Alditol. **28.9** (a) 2 tetroses; (b) 4 pentoses, 8 hexoses (see Prob. 28.2); (c) lowest chiral C has OH on right. **28.10** One product (*S,S*) would be optically active, one product (meso) optically inactive. **28.11** I, (+)-allose; II, (+)-altrose; VI, (-)-idose; VII, (+)-galactose; VIII, (+)-talose. **28.15** (a) *R*; (b) *R*; (c) *S*; (d) *R*. **28.16** (*S*)-(+)-2-butanol. **28.17** (a) *S,S*; (b) *R,R*; (c) *R,S*. **28.18** (b) 1:3; (c) the isomer favored in the L-series will be the mirror image of the isomer favored in the D-series. **28.19** L-(+)-Glucose. **28.20** (a) 36.2%  $\alpha$ , 63.8%  $\beta$ . **28.22** Acetylation occurs at C-1 to give diastereomers (anomers). **28.23** (a)  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ ,  $\text{HOOCCHO}$ , and D-glyceric acid. **28.24**  $\text{HCHO}$  instead of  $\text{HCOOH}$ . **28.25** (a) Six-membered ring; (b)  $\text{HCOOH}$ ,  $\text{OHC}-\text{CHO}$ , and  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CHO}$ . **28.26** (a) Six-membered ring; (b) enantiomer. **28.27** (a) Five-membered ring; (b) optically active, L-family; (c) enantiomer.

**4.** E and E', allitol and galactitol; F, glucitol (or gulitol); H, glucitol (or gulitol); I and I', allitol and galactitol; N, ribitol; O, arabitol (or lyxitol). **5.** (a) P, glycoside of glucuronic acid, (d)  $\text{HOCH}_2(\text{CHOH})_3\text{COCOOH}$ . **6.** Rate-determining step involves  $\text{OH}^-$  before reaction with  $\text{Cu}^{++}$ ; probably abstraction of proton leading to formation of enediol. **7.** (a) 5 carbons, five-ring; (b) C-1 and C-4; (c) Q, methyl  $\alpha$ -D-arabinofuranoside. **8.** Salicin, *o*-(hydroxymethyl)phenyl  $\beta$ -D-glucopyranoside. **9.** Bio-inonose, the pentahydroxycyclohexanone in which successive -OH groups are *trans* to each other. **11.** (a) T, D-ribose; U, D-arabinose; (b) 3-phosphate. **12.** Z and AA are ketals; Z, furanose with acetone bridging C-1 to C-2 and C-5 to C-6; AA, furanose, with acetone bridging C-1 to C-2. **14.**  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$ -like, with separation of relatively stable oxonium ion (see Sec. 18.14). **15.** (a) Proton on C-1 most deshielded by two oxygens. (b) JJ,  $\beta$ -anomer; KK,  $\alpha$ -anomer; (c) LL,  $\beta$ -anomer; MM,  $\alpha$ -anomer; (d) NN,  $\alpha$ -mannose; OO,  $\beta$ -mannose; PP,  $\beta$ -glucose; QQ,  $\alpha$ -glucose. **16.** L-



(e)  $\alpha$ -glycoside; (f)  $\beta$ -anomer. **17.** (a)

Anomeric effect (Sec. 28.20) stabilizes the  $\alpha$ -anomer; (b) anomeric effect stabilizes diaxial chlorines. **18.** (a) On steric grounds, neither; anomeric effect would favor axial OAc on C-1. (b) Tells nothing: in either conformation two OAc are equatorial, two are axial. (c) The *e:a* peak area ratio would be 2:1 if C-1 OAc were all axial, 1:1 if half axial, 0.5:1 if none axial. Ratio of 1.46:1.00 shows C-1 OAc is axial in 78% of molecules.

## Chapter 29

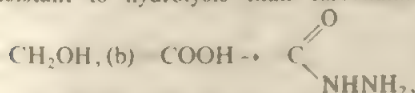
**29.1** Differ at C-1 of reducible glucose unit only. **29.2** Methoxyacetic acid and di-O-methyl-D-glyceric acid. **29.3** 2,3,4,6-Tetra- and 2,3,6-tri-O-methyl-D-glucose. **29.4** D-Glucose and D-erythrose, indicates attachment to other ring is at C-4. **29.6** Same as in Fig. 29.1 except for  $\beta$ -linkage in first three formulas. **29.7** 2,3,4,6-Tetra-O-methyl-D-galactose and 2,3,5,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-gluconic acid. **29.8** D-Galactose and D-erythrose. **29.9**  $(-92.4 + 52.7)/2 = -19.9^\circ$ . **29.10**  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}_{11}$ , non-reducing. **29.11** Sucrose is an  $\alpha$ -glucoside. **29.12** Di-O-methyl-L- and D-tartaric acids. **29.13** 1 (0.025%), 3 (0.075%), 9 (0.225%). **29.14** (a) A large group in an axial position. **29.15** (a) 3 molecules of  $\text{HCOOH}$  per molecule of amylose. (b) moles  $\text{HCOOH}$  3 = moles amylose, wt amylose moles amylose  $\times$  mol wt amylose, mol wt amylose wt (tot 162) per glucose unit = glucose units per molecule of amylose. (c) 980. **29.16** A poly- $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranoside, chain-forming unit, attachment at C-1 and C-6, chain-linking unit, attachment at C-1, C-3, and C-6, chain-terminating unit, attachment at C-1. **29.17** A poly- $\beta$ -D-xylopyranoside, chain-forming unit, attachment at C-1 and C-4, chain-linking unit, attachment at C-1, C-3, and C-4, chain-terminating unit, attachment at C-1. **29.19** The ionic sulfonate end. **29.20**  $\alpha$  cyclohexane,  $\beta$  PhF,  $\gamma$  anthracene.



1. Gentiobiose, 6-O-( $\beta$ -D-glucopyranosyl)-D-glucopyranose. 2. (a) Trehalose,  $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranosyl  $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranoside, (b) isotrehalose,  $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranosyl  $\beta$ -D-glucopyranoside; neotrehalose,  $\beta$ -D-glucopyranosyl  $\beta$ -D-glucopyranoside. 4. Raffinose,  $\alpha$ -D-galactosyl unit attached at C' 6 of glucose unit of sucrose, melibiose, 6-O-( $\alpha$ -D-galactopyranosyl)-D-glucopyranose. 5. (a) Melezitose,  $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranosyl unit attached at C' 3 of fructose unit of sucrose; turanose, 3-O-( $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranosyl)-D-fructofuranose. 6. Panose,  $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranosyl unit attached at C' 6 of non-reducing moiety of maltose; isomaltose, 6-O-( $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranosyl)-D-glucopyranose. 7. (b) D-Glucuronic acid; (c) D-xylose. 9. B, furan (p. 1272), C, tetrahydrofuran (p. 1275 and Sec. 12.8), E, N  $C(CH_2)_4C=N$ . Furfural (p. 1272). 12. I, D-CH<sub>2</sub>OH-CHOHCHOHCOOH, D-erythronic acid, J, HOOCCHO, glyoxylic acid. 13. (a) 3 molecules of HCOOH per molecule of cellulose, (c) 1390 glucose units.

## Chapter 30

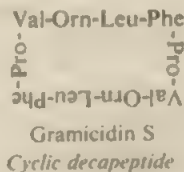
**30.1**  $\text{NH}_2 > \text{COO}^-$ , proton goes to  $\text{NH}_2$  to form  $^+\text{H}_3\text{NCHRCOO}^-$ . **30.2**  $\text{COOH} > \text{NH}_3^+$ :  $\text{COOH}$  gives up proton to form  $^+\text{H}_3\text{NCHRCOO}^-$ . **30.5** (a) On acid side; (b) on basic side; (c) more acidic and more basic than for glycine. **30.8** 4 isomers. **30.9** Cys, Cys, Hyl, Hyp, Ile. **30.11** Intermediate for Ala is  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\text{CN}$ . **30.12** A,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}(\text{COOEt})\text{COCOOEt}$ . B,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{COCOOEt}$ . **30.15** (a) 22.4  $\text{cm}^3$ ; (b) 44.8  $\text{cm}^3$ ; (c) no  $\text{N}_2$ . **30.16** Minimum mol.wt. = 114; could be valine. **30.19** Salmine, Ala, Arg, Gly, Ile, Pro, Ser, Val. **30.20** Same as empirical formula (preceding problem). **30.21** 70, 300. **30.22** (a) 16,700; (b) 4. **30.23** A sulfonamide, which is more resistant to hydrolysis than carboxamides (see Sec. 23.7). **30.25** (a)  $-\text{COOH} \rightarrow$



a hydrazide. **30.26** (a) Phe-Val-Asp-Glu-His;

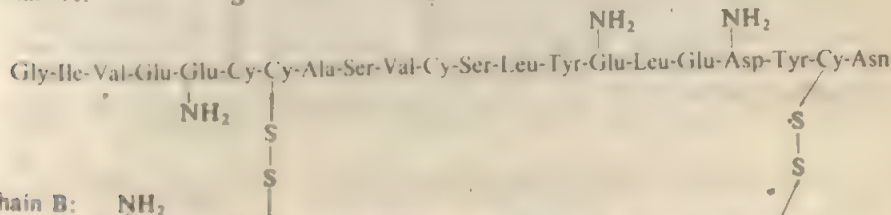
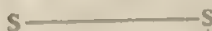
(b) His-Leu-Cys-Gly-Ser-His-Leu; (c) Tyr-Leu-Val-Cys-Gly-Glu-Arg-Gly-Phe-Phe.  
**30.27** (a)  $\text{CH}_2\text{-Gly-Ala}$ ,  $\text{SOCl}_2$ , Phe;  $\text{H}_2$ , Pd. (b)  $\text{PhCH}_2\text{OCOC}$ , Ala;  $\text{SOCl}_2$ ; Gly;  $\text{H}_2$ , Pd. **30.28** In A, polystyrene has  $\text{-CH}_2\text{Cl}$  groups attached to rings; in G,  $\text{-CH}_2\text{Br}$  groups.

2. D,  $\text{HOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{NH}_3^+)\text{COO}^-$ . 3. (a) Diketopiperazine, cyclic diamide; (b) unsaturated acid, (c)  $\gamma$ -lactam, 5-ring amide; (d)  $\delta$ -lactam, 6-ring amide. 5. Betaine,  $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{NCH}_2\text{COO}^-$ . 6. Polarity of solvent lowered, lipophilic parts of organic molecules come out of their huddle. 8. Minimum mol. wt. = 13,000; minimum of one Fe atom and six S atoms. 9. (a) Approx. 32  $\text{CONH}_2$  groups, (b) 395-398 peptide links plus  $-\text{CONH}_2$  groups; (c) 367-370 amino acid residues. 10.

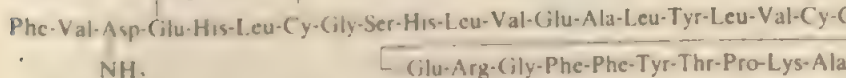


41 Reef insulin:

**Chair A:**



**Chain B:**



(g)  $\text{DNP-NH}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2^+)\text{COO}^-$  from  $\epsilon$ -amino group of Lys. If Lys had been N-terminal, would have got a double DNP derivative of it, and no DNP-Phe.



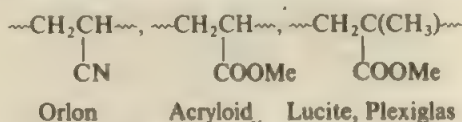
## Chapter 31

1.  $\text{CO}_2$  becomes the  $-\text{COOH}$  of malonyl-CoA in reaction (1), Sec. 31.7; this is the carbon lost in reaction (4). 2. Slow (rate-determining) formation of a tetrahedral intermediate (see Sec. 20.17) followed by fast loss of OR or SR. 3. (b) Guanine and cytosine, 3 H-bonds per pair, adenine and thymine, only 2. 4. (a) Aldol-like condensation between ester and keto group of oxaloacetate; (b) aldol-like condensation between ester and keto group of acetoacetyl CoA; reduction of ester to  $1^\circ$  alcohol by hydride transfer. 5. Biological oxidation of fatty acids removes 2 carbons at a time, starting at the carboxyl end: "beta oxidation." 6. *Retro* (reverse) aldol condensation. 7. Far ultraviolet. 8. Single-strand helix. 9. Two different RNA's would be generated, and hence two different sets of amino acids.

## Chapter 32

32.2 A,  $\text{PhCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHO}$ ; B,  $\text{PhCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ ; C,  $\text{PhCH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{OH}$ .

32.4 (d)

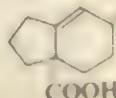


32.6 All less stable than I. 32.7 An amide. 32.8 Two successive nucleophilic additions. 32.9 Two successive nucleophilic additions. 32.10 B,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2\text{COOH})_2$ ; D,  $\delta$ -keto-caproic acid; E,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{COOEt})_2$ ; F,  $\text{PhCH}(\text{CH}_2\text{COPh})_2$ ; H,  $\text{H}_2\text{C}=\text{CHCH}(\text{COOH})\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ ; I,  $\text{EtOOCCH}=\text{C}(\text{COOEt})\text{CH}(\text{COOEt})\text{COCH}_3$ ; J,  $\text{HOOCCH}=\text{C}(\text{COOH})\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ . 32.11 (a) K,  $\text{H}_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{COOEt})_2$ ; (c) glutaric acid. 32.15 (c) Cannot form iminium ions. 32.16 1,4-Diphenyl-1,3-butadiene + maleic anhydride; 1,3-butadiene + 2-cyclopentenone; 1,3-butadiene (2 mol). 32.17 (a) 3-Ethoxy-1,3-pentadiene + *p*-benzoquinone; (b) 5-methoxy-2-methyl-1,4-benzoquinone + 1,3-butadiene. 32.18 This is one case in which "enol" is more stable than "keto." 32.19 (a) Ease of oxidation; (b) ease of reduction. 32.20 *p*-Nitrosophenol undergoes keto-enol tautomerization to give the mono-oxime.

3. (a)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ ; (f)  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}(\text{COOEt})\text{COCH}_3$ ; (h)  $(\text{EtOOC})_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{COOEt})_2$ ; (j)  $\text{O}_2\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOMe}$ ; (l)  $\text{O}_2\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$ ; (m)  $\text{Cl}_3\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$ . 5. A,  $(\text{EtOOC})_2\text{CHCHPhCH}_2\text{COCH}_2\text{CHPhCH}(\text{COOEt})_2$ ; B,  $(\text{EtOOC})_2\text{CHCHPhCH}_2\text{COCH}=\text{CHPh}$ ; C, 4,4-dicarbethoxy-3,5-diphenylcyclohexanone. 6. (d) 4-Acetylcyclohexene; (g) 5-nitro-4-phenylcyclohexene; (h) 1,4-dihydro-9,10-anthraquinone. 7. (a) 1,3,5-Hexatriene + maleic anhydride; (b) 1,4-dimethyl-1,3-cyclohexadiene + maleic anhydride; (c) 1,3-butadiene + benzalacetone; (d) 1,3-butadiene + acetylenedicarboxylic acid; (e) 1,3-cyclopentadiene + *p*-benzoquinone; (f) 1,1'-bicyclohexenyl (see Problem 6 (b)) + 1,4-naphthoquinone (see Problem 6 (h)); (g) 1,3-cyclopentadiene + crotonaldehyde; (h) 1,3-cyclohexadiene + methyl vinyl ketone; (i) 1,3-cyclopentadiene (2 mol). 8. *syn*-Addition. 9. (a) Racemic modification; (b) *meso*; (c) 2 *meso*; (d) *meso*. 11. Conjugate addition of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , then *retro*-aldol condensation. 12.  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2\text{COCH}_3$ , 4-phenyl-2-hexanone. 13. N, glyceraldehyde; P, aconitic acid,  $\text{HOOCCH}=\text{C}(\text{COOH})\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ ; R, tricarballic acid,  $\text{HOOCCH}(\text{CH}_2\text{COOH})_2$ ; S, "tetracyclone," tetraphenylcyclopentadienone; U, tetraphenylphthalic anhydride; W, pentaphenylbenzene; BB,  $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C}(\text{CH}_2\text{COOH})_2$ ; DD,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHOHC}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ ; EE,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COC}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ ; FF, acetylacetone; GG,

$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{CHCOOH}$ , JJ,  $\text{HOOCCH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ .

MM.



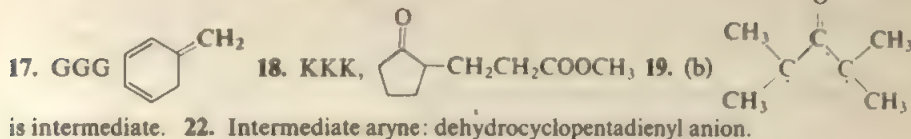
OO.



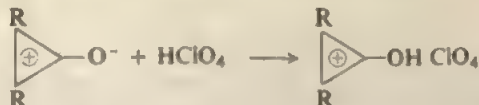
RR.

$\text{CH}_3\text{CONHC}(\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHO}$ .

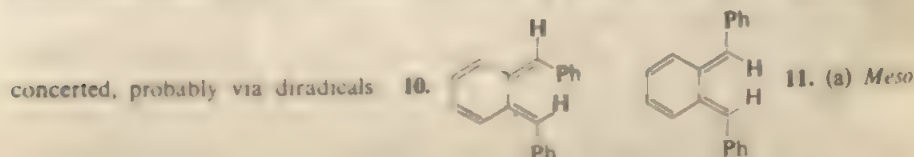
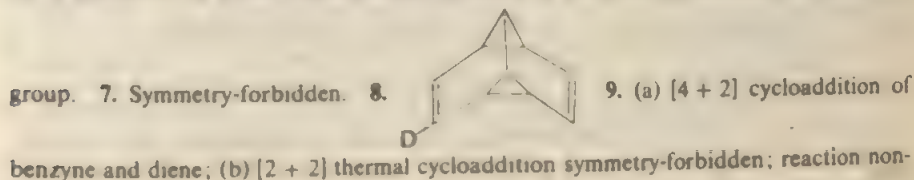
VV.



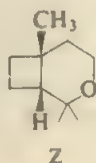
**33.1** First, monocation; then aromatic dication with  $2\pi$  electrons. **32.2** (a) Aromatic, with  $2\pi$  electrons;



1. (a) Phenols; no; (b) dipolar structure is aromatic with 6  $\pi$  electrons (compare answer to Problem 33.2); (d) intramolecular H-bond. 2. (a) *Con* opening (4 e); [1,5]-H *supra*; (b) *con* opening (4 e); *dis* closure (6 e); (c) [1,7]-C *supra* and *dis* closure (4 e); [1,7]-H *supra*; (d) [4 + 4] *supra, supra*; *retro* [4 + 2] *supra, supra* (presumably thermal); (e) allylic cation (2  $\pi$  electrons) undergoes [4 + 2] cycloaddition, followed by loss of proton; (f) bridge walks around the ring in a series of *supra* [1,5]-C shifts; (g) intramolecular *syn* [4 + 2] cycloaddition. 3. (a) A, *trans*-7,8-dialkyl-*cis, cis, cis*-cycloocta-1,3,5-triene; (b) C,  $(CH_3)_2C=C(CH_3)C(-CH_2)C(CH_3)=CH_2$ ; (c) D, 9-methyl-9-ethyl-*trans, cis, cis, cis*-cyclonona-1,3,5,7-tetraene; the *dis* closure takes place with both possible rotations; (d) E, *cis*-bicyclo[5.2.0]nona-8-ene, F, *cis, trans*-cyclonona-1,3-diene, G, *trans*-bicyclo[5.2.0]nona-8-ene. 4. Symmetry-allowed *con* opening impossible on geometric grounds for bicyclo compound; reaction is probably not concerted. 5. K, *cis*-bicyclo[4.2.0]octa-2,4-diene; L, Diels-Alder adduct which undergoes *retro*-Diels-Alder. 6. (a) [1,2] *supra* sigmatropic shift;  $\pi$  framework is a vinyl radical cation; HOMO is  $\pi$ ; predict retention in migrating group; (b)  $\pi$  framework is diene radical cation, HOMO is  $\psi_2$ ; predict inversion in migrating



dibromide gives *cis*-VII (Fig. 33.26); racemic dibromide gives *trans*-VII; *cis*-VII contains four non-equivalent olefinic hydrogens; *trans*-VII, two equivalent pairs. 12. (a) M and N, position isomers, both from *syn exo* addition; O and P, position isomers; (b) *retro*-Diels-Alder. 13. (a) (Numbering from left to right in Fig. 33.19). Overlap between lobe of C-3 of diene and C 3 of ene, carbons to which bonds are not being formed; (b) lobes corresponding to those in (a) are of opposite phase.



(b) intramolecular solvomercuration possible only for *cis* isomer. 15. (a) Allowed thermal *con* opening (4 e) would give impossibly strained *cis,cis,trans*-cyclohexa-1,3,5-triene; (b) allowed *antara* [1,3]-H impossible on geometric grounds. 16. (a) *Con* opening (6 e); [1,7]-H *antara*; (c) *dis* closure (6 e); (d) *con* opening (6 e). 17. (a) Via *cis,cis,cis,cis,cis*-cyclodeca-1,3,5,7,9-pentaene; (b) 10  $\pi$  electrons fits Hückel rule, but evidently not very stable for steric reasons.


## Chapter 34

34.1 2; 10; 14. 34.3 (b) *trans*-Decalin more stable; both large groups (the other ring) on each ring are equatorial; (c) *syn*-addition, rate control; *anti*-addition, equilibrium control. 34.4 Benzylic substitution; elimination of HBr to give conjugated alkenylbenzene; benzylic-allylic substitution; elimination to give aromatic ring. 34.5 (a) Cadalene, 4-isopropyl-1,6-dimethylnaphthalene; (b) cadinene has same carbon skeleton as cadalene, follows isoprene rule. 34.8 (a) Via aryne; (b) direct displacement of  $-F$  by amine; (c) both direct displacement and elimination-addition occur. 34.9 1,2,4-Benzenetricarboxylic acid; 1,2,3-benzenetricarboxylic acid. 34.17 Deactivating acyl group transformed into activating alkyl group. 34.19 Phenanthrene (see Sec. 34.19, and Fig. 34.3, p. 1258). 34.20 23 kcal/mol; 31 kcal/mol. 34.22 (a) Most stable tetrahydro product; (b) reversible sulfonation yields more stable product. 34.24 (a) 1-Nitro-9,10-anthraquinone; (b) 5-nitro-2-methyl-9,10-anthraquinone (with some 8-nitro isomer).

### 34.29 Pyrene,

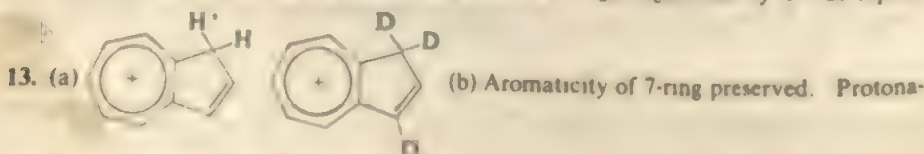


3. 1-, 5-, and 8-nitro-2-methylnaphthalene. 5. F, phenanthrene. 7. G, 1,2-benzanthracene; H, chrysene. 8.  $\alpha$ -Naphthol. 9. (a) Diels-Alder; (c) J, *meso*; K, racemic modification. 10. (d)  $\beta$ -Tetralone (2-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene). 11. (a) 1,6-Cyclodeca-

nedione; (b) bicyclic unsaturated ketone, one 7-ring and one 5-ring. 12. (a) 

Azulene

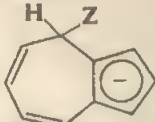
6  $\pi$  electrons in each ring (b) From 7-ring toward 5-ring, augmented by C-Cl dipole.




tion at C-1, azulene upon neutralization. (c) Deuteration via electrophilic substitution at C-1 and C-3, and deuteration again at C-1 comparable to the protonation in (b), expect

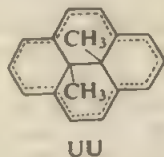


1,3-dideuterioazulene upon neutralization; (d) at C-1. 14. Nucleophilic substitution in the

7-ring, at C-4;  aromaticity of 5-ring preserved, conjugation in 7-ring.

15. Eudalene, 7-isopropyl-1-methylnaphthalene. 16. Y, 2,2',3,3',5,5'-hexachloro-6,6'-dihydroxydiphenylmethane; CC, 3,4'-dimethylbiphenyl; FF, compound I, p. 648; HH, tetraphenylmethane; II, 1,3,5-triphenylbenzene. 17.  $-\text{N}_2^+$  activates molecule toward nucleophilic aromatic substitution. 18. (a) JJ, methylene bridge between 9- and 10-positions of phenanthrene; (b) random insertion of methylene into *n*-pentane; (c) three insertion products and one addition product. 19. KK,  Each ring contains 6  $\pi$

electrons. 20. (a) Via an aryne; (b) direct displacement accompanies elimination-addition. Fluoride least reactive toward benzyne formation (p. 1011), most reactive toward direct displacement (Sec. 25.12). Piperidine shifts equilibrium (I) toward left, tends to inhibit benzyne formation. 21. UU is aromatic, with 14  $\pi$  electrons. Methyl protons are *inside* aromatic ring; see Fig. 17.9, p. 695.



## Chapter 35

35.1 B,  $[-\text{CH}(\text{COOEt})\text{COCH}_3]_2$ . 35.3  $-\text{COOH}$  deactivates ring. 35.4 Two units of starting material linked at the 5-positions through a  $-\text{CH}_2-$  group. 35.5 Sodium furoate and furfuryl alcohol (Cannizzaro reaction). 35.10 Hygrine, 2-acetonyl-N-methylpyrrolidine; hygrinic acid, N-methyl-2-pyrrolidinecarboxylic acid. 35.11 Orientation ("para") controlled by activating  $-\text{NH}_2$  group. 35.13 Amine > imine > nitrile. 35.18 Piperidine, a 2° amine, would itself be acylated. 35.23 (a) 8-Nitroquinoline; (b) 8-hydroxyquinoline (8-quinolinol); (c) 4,5-diazaphenanthrene; (d) 1,5-diazaphenanthrene; (e) 6-methylquinoline. 35.28 Electrophilic aromatic substitution or acid-catalyzed nucleophilic carbonyl addition, depending upon viewpoint.

1. No reaction: c, h, i, j. 3. Pyrroline has double bond between C-3 and C-4. 4. C, acetonylacetone. 5. Porphin, with same ring skeleton as in heme, p. 1137. 6. D, 2-COOH; E, 3-COOH; F, 4-COOH. 7. (a) 5- or 7-methylquinoline; (b) G, 7-methylquinoline. 9. (c) Perkin reaction; (g) Reimer-Tiemann reaction. 10. (See below for parent ring systems.) I, 2,4,6-trihydroxy-1,3-diazine; K, 3,6-dimethyl-1,2-diazine; L, 3,5-dimethyl-1,2-diazole; M, 2,3-dimethyl-1,4-diazanaphthalene; N, 1,3-dioxolan-2-one (ethylene carbonate); P, 3-indolol; R, 2,5-dimethyl-1,4-diazine; S, 1,3-diazolid-2-one (2-imidazolidone, ethyleneurea); T, 4,5-benzo-2-methyl-1,3-diazole (2-methylbenzimidazole); W, 2,4-dihydroxyquinoline; BB, 1,2-diazolid-3-one (3-pyrazolidone); CC, 4,5-diazaphenanthrene; GG, droxyquinoline; JJ, the benzene ring of II completely hydrogenated.



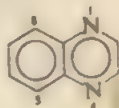
1,3-Diazine  
(Pyrimidine)



1,2-Diazine  
(Pyridazine)



1,2-Diazole  
(Pyrazole)

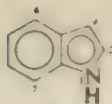
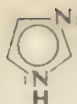
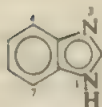
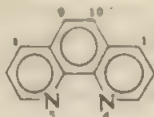
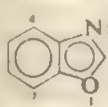


1,4-Diazanaphthalene  
(Quinoxaline)





1,3-Dioxolane

Indole  
(Benzopyrrole)1,4-Diazine  
(Pyrazine)1,3-Diazole  
(Imidazole)Benzo-1,3-diazole  
(Benzimidazole)4,5-Diazaphenanthrene  
(4,5-Phenanthroline)

Benzoxazole

11. LL, 3,4-(CH<sub>3</sub>O)<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; NN, 3,4-(CH<sub>3</sub>O)<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>COC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>; OO, amide; PP, a 1-substituted-7,8-dimethoxy-3,4-dihydroisoquinoline; papaverine, the corresponding substituted isoquinoline. 12. VV, (C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CHBrCH<sub>3</sub>; XX, 8-amino-6-methoxyquinoline; Plasmochin, 8-amino group of XX alkylated by VV. 13. Nicotine, 2-(3-pyridyl)-N-methylpyrrolidine. 14. DDD, *o*-hydroxybenzalacetophenone; (c) oxygen contributes a pair of electrons to complete an aromatic sextet. 15. Tropinic acid, 2-COOH-5-CH<sub>2</sub>COOH-N-methylpyrrolidine. 17. Pseudotropine has equatorial -OH, is more stable. 18. (a) Guvacine, 1,2,5,6-tetrahydro-3-pyridinecarboxylic acid; arecaidine, N-methylguvacine; (b) nicotinic acid. 19. UUU, one enantiomer of ethyl-*n*-propyl-*n*-butyl-*n*-hexylmethane; chirality does not necessarily lead to measurable optical activity (see Sec. 4.13). 20. Aliphatic NH<sub>2</sub> > "pyridine" N > "pyrrole" NH. 21. Dipolar ion loses CO<sub>2</sub>.

# Index

## A

- Abietic acid, 1239
- Absolute alcohol, 464
- Absolute configuration, 1076-1079
- Absolute ethers, 535
- Acetal, 751 (*See also* Acetals)
- Acetaldehyde, 734, *t* 736
  - preparation, 562, 565, 736
  - reactions, 751, 862, 867, 868, 870, 873, 895, 1125, 1188, 1286
- Acetaldehyde diethyl acetal, 751
- Acetaldehyde dimethylamine, 895
- Acetaldol, 862
- Acetaldoxime, 751
- Acetals, formation of, 757-760, 1082, 1085
  - reactions, 751, 1086
- Acetamide, 814, *t* 815, 837, 926
- p*-Acetamidobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 930
- Acetanilide, *t* 890, 913, 924, 928
  - preparation, 913
  - reactions, *t* 596, 598, 617, 930, 994
- Acetate, 1042
- Acetate rayon, 114
- Acetic acid, 35, 488, 757, 775, *t* 776, 780, 894, 1021
  - industrial preparation, 780
  - synthesis of substituted, 1021
  - uses, 823
- Acetic anhydride, 814, *t* 815, 823, 824
  - preparation, 822
  - reactions, 823, 873, 924, 967
- Acetoacetic acid, 1027
- Acetoacetic ester, 876, 877, 1025 (*See also* Ethyl acetoacetate)
  - preparation, 875-878
  - reactions, 1023-1076
- Acetoacetic ester synthesis, 1020
  - of ketones, 1023-1028
- Acetoacetyl-S-ACP, 1160
- Acetolysis, 497-499, 658-661, 672-673
- 1-Acetonaphthalene, 1236, 1243
- 2-Acetonaphthalene, 1236, 1243
- Acetone, 35, 478, 735, *t* 736, 750
  - preparation, 330, 518, 562
  - reactions, 862, 863, 867, 878, 879, 895
  - synthesis of substituted, 1024, 1029
- Acetone cyanohydrin, 750
- Acetonitrile, 35, 785
- Acetonylacetone, 1272
- Acetophenone (Methyl phenyl ketone), 735, *t* 736
  - infrared spectrum, 763
  - preparation, 739
  - reactions, 863, 870, 901, 1031, 1181
- Acetophenoneoxime, 910
- Aceto-*m*-toluidide, *t* 890, *t* 949
- Aceto-*o*-toluidide, *t* 890
  - preparation, 924
- Aceto-*p*-toluidide, *t* 890 924
  - preparation, 928
  - reactions, 599, 928, 939
- Acetoxonium ions, 498
- o*-Acetoxybenzoic acid (Aspirin), 977
- 2- $\alpha$ -Acetoxycholestane-3-one, NMR spectrum, 713
- 2-Acetoxy cyclohexyl tosylate, 497
- (+)-*trans*-2-Acetoxy cyclohexyl tosylate, 498
- Acetylacetone, 1286
  - acidity, 860
  - NMR spectrum, 885
  - preparation, 878
- Acetylalanine, 344
- Acetylation
  - of amines, 923
  - cyclic structure, 1079-1083
- Acetyl chloride, 814, *t* 815
- Friedel-Crafts acylation, 1242-1243
  - preparation, 787
- Acetylcholine, 949
- Acetyl CoA, 1157, 1160, 1166
- Acetyl CoA carboxylase, 1160
- Acetylene, 46, *t* 558
  - as acid, 566-567
  - industrial source, 46, 558-559
  - reactions, 562, 563, 565, 1092, 1272
  - structure, 555-557
- 2-Acetylfuran, 1273

- Acetylides, 559, 560, 562, 568-569  
 $\alpha$ -Acetyl- $\alpha$ -methylvaleric acid, 1025  
 $\gamma$ -Acetyl- $\gamma$ -methylvaleric acid, 1024  
 Acetyl-S-ACP, 1160  
 Acetylsalicylic acid (Aspirin), 977  
 Acetylurea, 842  
 Acid anhydrides, 813, 822-825  
   addition to aldehydes, 873  
   cyclic anhydrides, 825  
   physical properties, 814, *r* 815  
   preparation, 822  
   reactions, 823-825, 828, 873  
   structures, 813  
 Acid-base catalysis, 1150  
 Acid catalysis, 262  
 Acid chlorides, *r* 815, 819-822  
   carboxylic acid  
     spectroscopic analysis, 846  
     structure, 813  
   conversion, into acids and derivatives, 820, 821  
     into amides, 820, 912-913, 923-924  
   esterification, 820  
   ketone formation, 738-739, 820-821  
     with organocopper compounds, 821  
   Friedel-Crafts acylation, 738-739, 741-742, 820  
     with organocopper compounds, 739, 743, 821  
   nucleophilic substitution, 819  
   physical properties, 814-815, *r* 815  
   preparation, 819  
     from carboxylic acid, 787, 797, 818  
   reactions, 819-821, 1072  
   reduction, 738, 821  
   spectroscopic analysis, 846, *r* 847  
   structure, 813, 814  
   (See also Sulfonyl chlorides)  
 Acidity, 36-38, 201  
   alcohols, 500-501  
   alkynes, 566-568  
   amides, 826, 925  
   carboxylic acids, 779, 793-797  
   dicarboxylic acids, *r* 802, 803  
   hydrocarbons, 566-568, 1281-1282  
    $\alpha$ -hydrogen, 859-860, 876-877, 1019, 1020, 1026, 1030  
   imides, 827  
    $\beta$ -keto esters, 876, 1026  
   malonic ester, 1020  
   phenols, 942, 960, 970-972  
   phosphates, 1048  
   and rate of reaction, 757, 941-942, 1149-1150  
   relative series of, 36, 567, 790  
   sulfonamides, 925  
   sulfonic acids, 210-211, 925-926  
 Acidity constants, 789-790  
   acetic acid, *r* 796  
   amides, 826-827  
   amino acids, 1121  
   ammonia, 827  
   benzamide, 827  
   carboxylic acids, 789-790, *r* 802  
   dicarboxylic acids, *r* 802  
   imides, 827  
   phenols, *r* 958, 960  
   phthalimide, 827  
   sulfonamides, 926  
 Acids (See also Acidity, Amino acids, Carboxylic acids, Fatty acids, Sulfonic acids)  
   cleavage of, 539  
   Lewis definition, 37  
   Lowry-Brønsted definition, 36  
   and molecular structure, 38  
 Aconitic acid, 1187  
 ACP, 1160  
 Acrolein, *r* 1172  
   reactions, 760, 1174, 1176, 1182, 1278, 1284  
   preparation, 1173  
 Acrylan, 448  
 Acrylic acid, *r* 1172, 1174  
   hydration, 1174  
 Acryloid, 1173  
 Acrylonitrile, 1172, *r* 1172, 1173  
   industrial preparation, 1173  
   reactions, 1178, 1181, 1185, 1186  
 ACTH, 1127, 1134  
 Actin, 1159  
 Activating groups, 597-598, 613  
 Activation energy, 54-55, 71, *r* 108  
   and reaction rate, 59-63  
 Acylation, 741  
   of amines, 923-925  
   by benzyl chlorocarbonate, 1132  
   Friedel-Crafts (See Friedel-Crafts acylation)  
 Acyl azides, 905  
 Acyl carrier protein (ACP), 1160  
 Acyl compounds, nomenclature, 814  
   nucleophilic substitution, 815-819  
   structure, 813  
 Acyl group, 741, 789, 813  
   compared with alkyl group, 818-819  
   compared with phosphate group, 1048-1049  
   compared with sulfonyl group, 925  
   nucleophilic substitution, 741, 815-818  
 Acylium ions, 741, 974  
 Adamantane, 167  
 Addition polymerization, 438  
 Addition reactions (See also Electrophilic addition, Free radical addition, Nucleophilic addition)  
   of aldehydes and ketones, 746-761  
   of alkenes, 325-393  
   of alkenylbenzenes, 665-666  
   of alkynes, 561-563, 564  
   of conjugated dienes, 429-432  
   of cycloalkanes, 169  
   of cyclopropane, 170  
   definition, 325  
   syn- and anti-, 339-342  
    $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds, 1174-1182  
 Adenine, 1093, 1137, 1162, 1163  
 Adenosine, 1093, 1162  
 Adenosine diphosphate (ADP), 1155, 1158  
 Adenosine triphosphate (ATP), 1047, 1155, 1158  
 Adenylic acid, 1093  
 Adipamide, *r* 810  
 Adiponitrile, *r* 810  
 Adipic acid, 801, *r* 802, 1023, 1276 (Hexanedioic acid)  
   derivatives, *r* 810  
   esterification, 799  
   preparation, 1023, 1276  
 Adiponitrile, 896  
 ADP (adenosine diphosphate) 1155, 1158  
 (-)-Adrenaline, 135, 985  
 Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), 1127, 1134  
 Agar, 1116  
 Alanine, 1133  
   preparation, 343, 899, 909, 1123  
   Strecker synthesis, 1125  
 (+)-Alanine, *r* 1118  
 Albumin, 1134  
 Alcohol dehydrogenase, 505  
 Alcohols, 455-484, 485-531  
   as acids and bases, 201-202, 500-501  
   addition to aldehydes and ketones, 751, 757-760  
   alkyl halides from, 203, 204

- alkyl sulfonates from, 502
- analysis of, 521-524
  - iodoform test, 522-523
  - Lucas test, 522
  - periodic acid oxidation, 523-524
- carbocations from, 634
- characterization, 521-523
- chemical properties, 485
- classification, 197-198, 455-456
- dehydration, to alkenes, 281, 282, 313, 318, 320-322, 487, 489
  - to ethers, 534-535
- derivatives, *t* 530
- in detergents, 1045
- esterification, 488, 787, 798-799, 828-829
- ethyl (*see* Ethyl alcohol)
- Grignard synthesis, 475, 476
- hydrogen bonding, 456-458
- industrial source, 446, 459-463
- 95%, 464
- NMR spectra, 719-720
- nomenclature, 197-198
- order of reactivity of, 320
- oxidation, 488, 503-509, 521-522, 523
- physical properties, 200-201, *t* 457
- preparation, 464-467
  - aldol condensation, 870-871
  - Grignard synthesis, 466, 475-480, 838
  - hydroboration-oxidation, 465, 469-474
  - hydrolysis of halides, 466, 467
  - oxymercuration-demercuration, 465, 468-469
  - reduction, of carboxylic acids, 788, 789
    - of esters, 838
    - of fats, 1045
- protonated, 201, 489
- reactions, 485-531
  - as acids, 487
  - with active metals, 487
  - with hydrogen halides, 203, 258-262, 486
  - with phosphorus trihalides, 203, 204, 486
- reactivity with hydrogen halides, 260
- resolution, 159, 825
- solubility in water, *t* 31
- as solutes, 458
- as solvents, 200
- spectroscopic analysis, *t* 682, 684, *t* 696
- structure, 195, 455-456
- synthesis, 516-521
- unsaturated reduction, 871
- Alcoholysis**
  - of acid anhydrides, 824
  - of acid chlorides, 820
  - of esters, 831, 837
- Aldaric acids**, *t* 1060, 1061
- Aldehydes**, 385, 460-462, 474, 482, 503, 505, 519, 569, 733-773, 1025-1033
  - addition, of alcohols, 751, 757-760
  - of aldehydes and ketones, 867-873
  - of ammonia derivatives, 750-751, 756-757, 761-762
  - of carbanions, 752
  - of cyanide, 750, 755
  - of derivatives of ammonia, 750, 756-757
  - of Grignard reagent, 466, 476-477, 750, 755
  - of organozinc compounds, 879-881
- aldol condensation, 862, 867, 870, 872
  - related reactions, 873
- aliphatic, preparation, 737, 738, 740
- analysis, 748, 750-751, 752-753, 756, 761-764
- aromatic, preparation, 737, 740
- Cannizzaro reaction, 751, 760
  - crossed, 760
- Clemmensen reduction, 749, 754
- formation, 821
- vs. ketones, 733, 761-762
- Knoevenagel reaction, 873
- nomenclature, 734-735
- nucleophilic addition, 746-748, 750-752, 755-761
- oxidation, 748, 752-753, 762
- Perkin condensation, 873
- phenolic, 738
- physical properties, 735-737, *t* 736
- preparation, 737-740
  - oxidation of alcohols, 503-504, 737
  - oxidation of methylbenzenes, 737, 740
  - of primary alcohols, 737
  - ozonolysis, 384-386
  - reduction of acid chlorides, 738
  - Reimer-Tiemann reaction, 738, 970, 977-978
- reactions, 746-752
  - summary, 861-864
- reduction, 753
  - to alcohols, 749, 753-754
  - to hydrocarbons, 749
- reductive amination, 895, 896, 900-901
- spectroscopic analysis, 762-764, *t* 682, *t* 696
- structure, 733-734
- unsaturated, oxidation of, 753
  - preparation, 870
  - reduction, 870-871
- $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated, 1177 (*See also*  $\alpha,\beta$ -Unsaturated carbonyl compounds)
- Wittig reaction, 863, 873-875
- Wolff-Kishner reduction, 749, 754
- Alditols**, *t* 1060
- Aldohexoses** (*See also* Aldoses; D-(+)-Glucose)
  - anomers, 1080, 1083
  - configurations, 1066-1071, 1083-1084
  - conformations, 1089-1091
  - conversion to epimers, 1065
  - definition of, 1056
  - derivatives, nomenclature, 1060
  - (+)-glucose as, 1056-1058
  - Kiliani-Fischer synthesis, 1063-1065
  - ring size, 1087
  - Ruff degradation, 1065
- Aldol**
  - preparation, 867
  - reactions, 869, 870
- Aldolase**, 1167
- Aldol condensation**, 862, 867-869, 1173
  - crossed, 871-872
  - related reactions, 872-873
  - use in synthesis, 870-871
- Aldonic acids**, *t* 1060, 1061
- Aldopentoses**, configurations, 1067, 1069, 1071-1072
  - in Kiliani-Fischer synthesis, 1064
  - from Ruff degradation, 1065
- Aldoses** (*See also* Aldohexoses; D-(+)-Glucose)
  - carbon chain, lengthening, 1063-1065
  - shortening, 1065
  - configurations, 1063
  - conformations, 1071-1073
  - definition, 1056
  - derivatives, nomenclature, 1058-1060
  - effect of alkali, 1061
  - epimers, conversion into, 1062-1063, 1065
  - families, 1077-1079
  - Kiliani-Fischer synthesis, 1063-1065
  - osazone formation, 1062-1063
  - oxidation, 1060-1062
  - Ruff degradation, 1065
- Algin**, 1092
- Alginic acid**, 1116
- Alicyclic hydrocarbons**, 165-191 (*See also* Cycloalkanes, Cycloalkenes)
  - analysis, 189
  - angle strain, 170-174



- Baeyer strain theory, 170-174  
 conformational analysis, 175-182, 184-191  
 cycloaddition, 380-382  
 definition, 1267  
 dehydrogenation, 167  
 1,3-diaxial interaction, 180-181  
 heats of combustion, 171-172, *t* 172  
 industrial source, 167-168  
 methylene addition, 380-382  
 nomenclature, 166  
 physical properties, *t* 165  
 preparation, 168-169  
   cycloaddition, 378-382, 1212-1217  
   methylene addition, 378-382  
   ring closure, 168-169, 1204-1212  
 reactions, 169-170  
 relative stabilities, 171, 174, 175, 178-179, 185-187  
 ring closure, 169, 173, 1204-1212  
 ring opening, 169-170  
 small ring, 169-170  
 stereoisomerism, cyclic compounds, 182-184  
 Aliphatic compounds (*See* Alkanes, Alkenes, Alkynes)  
   definition, 573  
 Aliphatic cyclic hydrocarbons (*See* Alicyclic hydrocarbons)  
 Aliphatic hydrocarbons (*See* Alicyclic hydrocarbons, Alkanes, Alkenes, Alkynes, Dienes)  
 Alizarin, 1114, 1256  
 Alkaloids, 158, 685, 1269, 1283  
   piperidine ring in, 1283  
   pyridine ring in, 1283  
   pyrrolidine ring in, 1276  
   in resolution of racemic acids, 158  
 Alkanes, 43, 79-121  
   addition to alkenes, 329, 371-373  
   analysis, 118-119, *t* 682, 682-684  
   bond dissociation energies, *t* 20, *t* 21, 109-110  
   chlorination of, 102-115  
   classification by structure, 79  
   combustion, 101, 115-116  
   common names, 89  
   geometric isomerism, 271-276  
   halogenation, 101-115, 159-161  
     mechanism, 103-105, 113-115  
     orientation, 105-107  
     relative reactivities, 107-108  
   homologous series, 85-86  
   industrial source, 93-94, 116  
   vs. laboratory preparation, 94-95  
   isomeric structures, 83-86  
   isomerism, 87-88  
   IUPAC names, 89  
   methylene insertion into, 380-381  
   nomenclature, 86-91, *t* 87  
   physical properties, 91-93, *t* 92  
   preparation, 95-100  
     by coupling of alkyl halides with organometallic compounds, 96-97, 99-100  
     by hydrogenation of alkenes, 96-97  
     by hydrolysis of Grignard reagent, 96, 97-99  
     by reduction of alkyl halides, 96, 97-99  
     by Wurtz reaction, 100  
   pyrolysis, 94, 101, 116-117, 425  
   reactions, summary, 101  
   reactivity, 101  
   spectroscopic analysis, *t* 682, 682-684, *t* 696  
   structure, determination of, 117-118  
   uses, 93-94  
 Alkenes, 265, 267-324, 424 (*See also* Alkenylbenzenes, Cycloalkenes, Dienes)  
   addition reactions, 327-330  
     of alkanes, 329, 371-373  
     anti-Markovnikov, 327, 348-349  
     of bromine azide, 391, 552  
     of carbenes, 380-382  
     dimerization, 328, 370-371  
     electrophilic, 326, 350-371  
     free-radical, 329, 373, 439-440, 442  
     of halogens, 327, 359-367  
     halohydrin formation, 328, 367-370, 391  
     hydration, 328, 350, 460-463  
     hydroboration-oxidation, 465, 469-474  
     hydrogenation, 327, 331-335  
     of hydrogen bromide, 327, 348-349, 373-374  
     of hydrogen chloride, 345-347, 348  
     of hydrogen halides, 327, 345-349  
     of hydrogen iodide, 327, 346-347  
     of iodine azide, 390, 552  
     Markovnikov, 327, 345-347, 356, 373-374  
     mechanism, electrophilic, 350-361  
       free radical, 329, 373-378, 437-439, 442  
       hydroxylation, 548-549  
     of methylene, 379-381  
     orientation in, 346-349, 355-356  
     oxymercuration-demercuration, 465, 468-469  
     peroxide effect, 348-349, 373-374  
     polymerization, 437-438, 442-446  
     stereochemistry, halogens, 361-367  
       halogen azides, 390-391  
       halohydrin formation, 391  
       hydroboration, 465, 470-472  
       hydroxylation, 363, 548-549  
       oxymercuration, 469  
     of sulfuric acid, 328, 349-350  
     of water, 328, 350, 460  
   alkylation, 329, 371-373  
   alkyl halides from, 203  
   analysis, 386-389  
   carbocations from, 634  
   cleavage reactions, 330-331  
   dimerization of, 328, 370-371  
   ease of formation of, 301  
   epoxides from, 544-545  
   free-radical halogenation, 396-398  
   free-radical substitution, 400  
   geometric isomerism in, 271-275  
   halogenation, 330, 396-400  
   higher, 276  
   hydration, 328, 350, 460-463  
   hydrogenation, 327, 331-335  
     heats of, *t* 332  
   hydroxylation, 330, 382-384, 467, 548-549  
     stereochemistry, 548-549  
   hyperconjugation, 427-428  
   industrial source, 116, 280, 446  
   nomenclature, 276  
   ozonolysis, 330-331, 384-386  
   physical properties, 278-280, *t* 278  
   polymerization (*See* Polymerization)  
   preparation, 280-287, 313-322  
     from alkyl sulfonates, 306-307  
   dehalogenation of vicinal dihalides, 282-283, 391-392  
   dehydration of alcohols, 281-283, 318-322  
   dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides, 281, 283-287  
   Hofmann elimination, 919-920  
   reduction of alkynes, 282, 561, 563-564  
   Wittig reaction, 873-875  
   reactions, 325-393  
   relative reactivity toward acids, 357  
   resonance in, 427-428  
   spectroscopic analysis, *t* 682, 682-684, *t* 696  
   stability, 301, 333-335, 427-429  
   structure, 267-278

- substitution reactions, 330, 396–400  
 substitution vs. addition, 396–398
- Alkenol**, 277
- Alkenylbenzenes** (*See also* Arenes)  
 conjugated, 665–666  
 preparation, 663–664  
 reactions, 664–666  
 ring-halogenated, 665
- Alkoxides**, 201, 500, 501, 537
- Alkoxymercuration-demercuration**, 536, 538–539
- Alkoxymercuration in ether preparation**, 538
- Alkyd resins**, 844
- Alkylacetoacetic ester**, 1023
- 9-Alkylanthracenes**, 1256
- Alkylation**  
 of alkanes, 117  
 of alkenes, 329, 371–373  
 of amines, 902, 912, 919–920  
 of carbonyl and acyl compounds, 1019–1036  
 of esters and ketones, 1027–1028
- B-Alkyl-9-BBN**, 1030
- Alkylbenzene derivatives**, synthesis of, 652–654
- Alkylbenzenes**, 626, 666 (*See also* Arenes)  
 analysis, 639, 667  
 electrophilic substitution, 639  
 halogenation, 637–638, 640–645  
 hydrogenation, 636  
 identification of, 639  
 industrial source, 630  
 oxidation, 637, 638–639  
 physical properties, 628–630, *t* 629  
 preparation, 631  
   Clemmenson reduction of ketones, 631, 754  
   Friedel-Crafts alkylation, 631–636, 639  
   Wolff-Kishner reduction of ketones, 631, 754  
 reactions, 626, 636–643  
   hydrogenation, 636  
   oxidation, 637, 638–639  
   substitution in the ring, 637, 639  
   substitution in the side chain, 637–638, 640–643  
 ring vs. side chain, 640  
 side-chain halogenation of, 641–643  
 spectroscopic analysis, 682–684, *t* 696  
 structure and nomenclature, 626–627  
 unrearranged, 635
- B-Alkyl-9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane**, 1030
- Alkylboranes**, 1029–1031
- Alkyl bromide**, 232
- Alkyl cations**, resonance stabilization, 418–419
- 2-Alkyl-4,4-dimethyl-2-oxazoline**, 1028
- Alkyl free radicals**, 50–53, 103–107  
 hyperconjugation, 408–410  
 relative stabilities, 109–110  
 stereochemistry, 159–161  
 structure, 67–69
- Alkyl groups**, 316  
 nomenclature, 87–89  
 symbol for, 95
- Alkyl halides**, 99, 193–266, 559  
 vs. alkyl sulfonates, 502  
 analysis, 263, 997–998  
 vs. aryl halides, 997–999  
 bond dissociation energies, *t* 20, *t* 21, 64–65  
 bond lengths, *t* 999  
 carbocations from, 633  
 classification, 196–197  
 conversion into organometallic compounds, 207  
 coupling with organometallic compounds, 99–100  
 dehydrohalogenation of, 281, 282–287  
 dipole moments, *t* 999  
 elimination vs. substitution, 207  
 elimination (*See also* dehydrohalogenation *above*)  
   via carbanions, 290–293  
   F1, 289, 290  
   F2, 288, 289  
 stereochemistry, 302–309  
 vs. substitution, 315–317  
 Grignard reagent from, 97–99  
 halogenation, 204  
 heterolysis, effect of solvent, 245  
 hydrolysis, 195–197, 212  
   alcohol synthesis, 466, 467  
   glycol synthesis, 466  
 nomenclature, 196–197  
 physical properties, 198–200, *t* 199  
 preparation, 202–204  
   from alcohols, 202–203, 258–262, 486  
   from alkanes, 203  
   from alkenes, 327, 345–349, 397–400  
   from alkynes, 203  
   by halide exchange, 204  
 reactions, 204, 206  
   with acetylides, 559, 568–569  
   with alkoxides, 206, 536, 537–538  
   with amines, 206, 912, 918  
   with ammonia, 206, 894–895, 898–900  
   with cyanide ion, 206, 783, 785  
   with halide ion, 206  
   with hydroxide ion (*See* hydrolysis *above*)  
   with nucleophiles, 205, 206  
   with phenoxides, 536, 537–538  
   with sodioacetoacetic ester, 206, 1023–1025  
   with sodiomalonic ester, 206, 1020–1024  
   with water (*See* hydrolysis *above*)  
 reactivity, 302  
 reduction, 96, 97, 207  
 solvolysis, 254–256  
 structure, 195  
 substitution, nucleophilic, 205, 206, 207, 212  
 kinetics, 212, 215–216, 224–225  
 relative reactivities,  $S_N1$ , 224, 235–238, 253  
    $S_N2$ , 221–224, 253  
    $S_N1$ , 224–225, 228–231, 235–238, 244–246  
   compared with  $S_N2$ , 252–254  
    $S_N2$ , 215–219, 221–225, 246–251  
   compared with  $S_N1$ , 252–254  
 (*See also* Acetoacetic ester synthesis, Friedel-Crafts alkylation, Malonic ester synthesis)
- Alkyl hydrogen sulfates**, 349
- Alkyl lithium**, 99
- Alkylmagnesium halide**, 97
- Alkylmalonic esters**, 1020–1021
- Alkyl shift**, 241, 1030
- Alkyl sulfonates**, 211  
 in 1,2-elimination, 315  
 formation, 502
- Alkynes**, 555–572  
 acetylides from, 559, 568–569  
 acidity, 566–568  
 alkyl halides from, 203  
 analysis, 450, 569–570  
 electrophilic addition, 564  
 higher, 557  
 hydration, 562, 565–566  
 industrial source, 558–559  
 nomenclature, 557  
 non-terminal, 569  
 ozonolysis of, 450  
 physical properties, 558, *t* 558  
 preparation, 559–560, 568–569  
 reactions, 560  
   as acids, 562, 566–568  
   addition of halogens, 561

- hydrogen, 561
- hydrogen halides, 562
- water, 562
- reduction to alkenes, 563-564
- stereoselective, 282, 561, 563-564
- spectroscopic analysis, *t* 682, 682-684, *t* 696
- structure, 555-557
- terminal, 569
- Alkynylbenzenes, 626, 627, 666 (*See also* Arenes)
- Allene, 424, *t* 425, 426
- optically active, 452
- Allinger, N. L., 186, 191
- Allitol, 1073
- $\beta$ -D-Allopyranose, 1091
- (+)-Allose, 1073
- Allyl, 277
- Allyl alcohol, 411, *t* 457
- Allyl anion
  - electronic configuration, 1198-1199
  - molecular orbitals, 1198
- Allylbenzene, 627
- Allyl bromide, 277, 411
- Allyl cation, 410
  - from cyclopropyl cation, 1210
  - electronic configuration, 1198-1199
  - molecular orbitals, 1198
  - orbital picture, 410
  - as resonance hybrid, 410-411
  - stability, 411, 431
  - symmetry, 411
- Allyl chloride, *t* 199, 411, 874
- preparation, 330, 397, 399
- Allyl cyanide, 1181
- 2-Allylcyclohexanone, 1033
- Allyl ethyl ether, 411
- Allyl free radical (*See* Allyl radical)
- Allylic hydrogen, 398
- Allylic rearrangement, 400, 412
- Allylic substrates, nucleophilic substitution in, 411, 419
- Allyl iodide, *t* 199
- Allyl radical, 397, 398
  - electronic configuration, 1198-1199
  - HOMO, 1219
  - molecular orbitals, 1198
  - orbital picture, 405-408
  - as resonance hybrid, 402-407
  - stability, 399, 404-405
  - symmetry, 401-402
- Alpha helix, 1138, 1141-1144
- (+)-Altrac acid, 1073
- (+)-Altrose, 1073
- Aluminum isopropoxide, 487
- Amanita muscaria*, 163
- Amanita rubescens*, 163
- Amides, 787, *t* 815
  - analysis, NMR, 945
  - carboxylic acid, 787, 789, 799, 825-827
    - acidity, 826, 925
    - analysis, 845
    - Hofmann degradation, 901-902, 903-908
    - hydrolysis, 826-827
    - nomenclature, 813
    - nucleophilic substitution, 815
    - physical properties, *t* 810, 814-815, *t* 815
    - preparation, 787, 799, 820, 825, 830, 837
    - reactions, 826-827, 903-908
    - spectroscopic analysis, 846
    - vs. sulfonamides, 923-926
    - structure, 813
  - Hofmann degradation, 897, 901-902, 903-908, 910
  - physical properties, 814-815, *t* 815, 926
  - substituted, 912-913, 923-926
  - analysis, 944
  - hydrolysis, 925
  - nomenclature, 924
  - preparation, 912-913, 923-925
  - spectroscopic analysis, 944-945
- Amidol, 982
- Amination, of  $\alpha$ -halo acids, 1123
- pyridine, 1280
- reductive, 895, 896, 900-901, 902, 1125
- Amines, 887-910, 911-955
  - acidity, 925-926
  - acylation, 912-913, 923-925
  - acetylation, 923
  - alkylation, 902, 912, 919-920
  - analysis, 920, 943-944
    - spectroscopic, 944-945
  - aromatic
    - acetylation, 913, 924, 927
    - basicity, 915
    - conversion into diazonium salts, 931, 933
    - coupling with diazonium salts, 940-942
    - nitrosation, 914, 931
    - ring substitution, 913, 927-928
    - sulfonation, 928-929
  - basicity, *t* 889-890, 891, 911, 914-918, *t* 915
  - effect of substituents, 918
  - classification, 887-888
  - conversion into amides, 912, 923, 1132
  - derivatives, 944, *t* 949
  - exhaustive methylation, 920
  - heterocyclic, 903
  - Hinsberg test, 943-944
  - from Hofmann degradation of amides, 896, 897, 901-902, 903-908
  - Hofmann elimination, 914, 919-923
  - industrial source, 893
  - nitrosation, 914, 931
  - nomenclature, 888-889
  - optical activity, 892
  - physical properties, *t* 889-890, 889-891
  - preparation, 893-908
    - Curtius reaction, 905
    - Gabriel synthesis, 910
    - from halides, 894-895, 896, 898-900, 902
    - Hofmann degradation of amides, 896, 897, 901-908
    - Lossen reaction, 910
    - reduction of nitriles, 895-896, 897
    - reduction of nitro compounds, 893, 897-898
    - reductive amination, 895, 896-897, 900-901, 902
  - protection of amino group, 927-928
  - quaternary ammonium salts, 919-920
  - reactions, 911-955
    - with carbonyl compounds, 1031-1032
    - with nitrous acid, 914, 931-933
    - with sulfonyl chlorides, 912, 923, 943
    - summary, 911-914
  - salts, 889, 891, 911
  - spectroscopic analysis, *t* 682, 944-945, *t* 696
  - stereochemistry, 891-892
  - structure, 887, 915
  - substituted, preparation, 923
  - synthesis of secondary and tertiary, 902
- $\alpha$ -Aminoacetamide, 897
- Aminoacetic acid, 894 (*See also* Glycine)
- p*-Aminoacetophenone, 480
- Amino acid residue, C-terminal, 1126, 1129, 1130
- N-terminal residue, 1126, 1129-1130
- terminal residue analysis, 1129
- Amino acids, 342, 343, 345, 801, 1117-1134, 1165
  - acidic, 1120
  - acidity constants, 1121
  - basic, 1120



- configuration, 1122–1123  
 as dipolar ions, 1120–1121  
 essential, 1118, *t* 1118–1119  
 isoelectric point, 1122  
 natural, *t* 1118–1119, 1122–1123  
 physical properties, 1120–1121  
 preparation, 1123–1125  
 reactions, 1125  
 structure, 1118  
 synthetic, 1124  
 1-Aminoalkanes, synthesis, 893  
 Aminoazulene, 1264  
*p*-Aminobenzene sulfonamide (*See* Sulfanilic acid)  
*p*-Aminobenzenesulfonanilide, 947  
*p*-Aminobenzenesulfonic acid (Sulfanilic acid), 929  
*m*-Aminobenzoic acid, *t* 776, *t* 796  
   formation, 1017  
*o*-Aminobenzoic acid (*See* Anthranilic acid)  
*p*-Aminobenzoic acid, *t* 776, *t* 796, *t* 890, 909  
   as essential metabolite, 931  
 $\gamma$ -Aminobutyric acid, 888  
 3-Amino-2,3-dimethyl-2-butanol, 746  
 2-Aminoethanol (Ethanol amine), 547, 888  
 1-Aminoheptane, 900  
 Amino group, protection of, 1132  
 $\alpha$ -Aminoisocaproic, 1022  
 1-Aminoisquinoline, 1286  
 2-Amino-4-methoxybiphenyl, 997  
 1-(Aminomethyl)naphthalene, 1241  
 1-Amino-2-methyl-1-phenylpropane, 141  
 2-Amino-2-methyl-1-propanol, 1028  
 $\alpha$ -Amino- $\beta$ -methylvaleric acid, 1022 (*See also* Isoleucine)  
 2-Aminonaphthalene, 1285 (*See also* 2-Naphthylamine)  
 4-Amino-1-naphthalenesulfonic acid, 1247  
 8-Amino-1-naphthalenesulfonic acid, 1277  
 5-Amino-2-naphthalenesulfonic acid, 1247  
 6-Amino-2-naphthalenesulfonic acid, 1232  
 8-Amino-2-naphthalenesulfonic acid, 1247  
 4-Amino-1-naphthol, 1262  
 1-Amino-2-naphthol, 1262  
 1-Amino-1-(2-naphthyl)ethane, 1243  
 2-Aminopentane, 901  
*m*-Aminophenol, *t* 958  
*o*-Aminophenol, physical constants, *t* 958  
   reaction, 1286  
*p*-Aminophenol, *t* 958  
 $\alpha$ -Aminopropionic acid, 899 (*See also* Alanine)  
 $\beta$ -Aminopropionitrile, 1178  
 2-Aminopyridine, 1280  
   preparation, 1280  
   reactions, 1279  
   sodium salt, 1280  
 3-Aminopyridine, reactions, 1279  
 4-Aminopyridine, 1016  
 2-Aminoquinoline, 1284  
 5-Aminoquinoline, 1288  
 Aminosuccinic acid, 1176  
 Aminotoluene (*See* Toluidine)  
 Ammonia, 17–19, 35, 210  
   acidity, 566–567  
     constant, 827  
   basicity, 17, 36  
     compared with amines, 916  
     constant, 915  
   bonding in, 18–19, 24  
   derivatives, addition of, 756–757  
   dipole moment, *t* 23, 24  
   inversion, 18  
   unshared pair of electrons, 8, 25  
 Ammonium carbamate, 841  
 Ammonium chloride, 36  
 Ammonium formate, 778  
 Ammonium glycinate, 894  
 Ammonium ion, 210  
 Ammonium phthalamate, 827  
 Ammonium salt, 250  
 Ammonium succinamate, 824  
 Ammonolysis, of acid chlorides, 820  
   of anhydrides, 823  
   of esters, 830, 837  
   of halides, 894, 896, 898–900, 902  
 Amphipathic, definition, 1044  
 Amplitude, of wave, 1192  
 Amyl alcohol, 463  
 active-Amyl alcohol, *t* 457  
 Amylopectin, 1105  
   structure, 1109–1110  
 Amylose, 1105–1108  
   reactions, 1105–1106  
   structure, 1105–1108  
 Amytal, 1035  
 Anaerobic processes, 1156  
 Analysis (*See also* individual families and individual elements)  
   alkoxyl, 973  
   Carius method, 74, 75, 590  
   chromatographic, 1128  
   combustion, 73–74  
   conformational (*See* Conformational analysis)  
   dansyl method, 1130  
   by derivatives, 147  
   determination of structure, 117–118, 675–676  
   Dumas method, 589  
   electron spin resonance (ESR), 720–722  
   elemental, qualitative, 73  
   elemental, quantitative, 74  
   infrared, 118, 119, 680–689  
   Kjeldahl method, 589  
   mass spectrometric, 119, 676–679  
   neutralization equivalent, 804  
   nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR), 118, 119, 690–730  
   by periodic acid, 523  
   saponification equivalent, 845  
   Schöniger oxidation, 73  
   sodium fusion, 73  
   spectroscopic, 118, 675–732, 762–764, 944–945  
   (*See also* individual types and individual families)  
     carboxylic acid derivatives, 846  
     structure, determination of, 117–118, 675–676  
     ultraviolet, 688–689  
   Van Slyke method, amino nitrogen, 1125  
   x-ray, 119  
     for configuration, 138  
   Zeisel method, 973  
 Anchimeric assistance, 493, 495  
 Androgen, 481  
 Androst-9(11)-ene, 483  
 Anet, F.A.L., 714  
 Anethole, 961  
 Angle strain, 170–175 (*See also* Baeyer strain theory, Bond angles)  
   orbital picture, 173–174  
 Angular methyl groups, 480, 1239  
 Anhydrides, *t* 815  
   acid (*See* Acid anhydrides)  
   carboxylic acid, structure, 813  
   physical properties, 814–815, *t* 815  
 Aniline, 587, 887, 890, 895, 902, 1285  
   industrial preparation, 893  
   preparation, 1001, 1009  
   protection of amino group, 928  
   reactions, 617, 913, 924, 930, 934  
   resonance, 616  
 Aniline hydrochloride (*See* Anilinium chloride)



- Anilinium chloride, 889, 893, 909, 911  
 Anilinium hydrogen sulfate, 928  
 Anionic polymerization, 443  
 Anisaldehyde, *t* 736, 760  
 Anisic acid, *t* 776, *t* 796, 973  
*m*-Anisidine, *t* 890, 1012  
*o*-Anisidine, *t* 890  
*p*-Anisidine, *t* 890, 909  
 Anisole, 941, 1116  
 Annulenes, 591, 723, 1200  
 Anomeric effect, 1091  
 Anomers, 1081  
 Antarafacial reaction, 1215  
 Anthocyanins, 1290  
 Anthracene, 667, 1231, *t* 1231, 1251–1259, 1262  
   derivatives, nomenclature, 1251  
   preparation by ring closure, 1255–1257  
   reactions, 1252–1255  
   resonance energy, 1252  
   structure, 1252  
 1-Anthracenesulfonic acid, 1255  
 Anthranilic acid, *t* 796  
   physical constants, *t* 776  
 Anthraquinoid dyes, 1256  
 9,10-Anthraquinone  
   physical constants, *t* 1231  
   preparation, *t* 1253, 1255  
 Anthrone, 1256  
*anti*-Addition, 340, 362, 363, 365, 366  
 Antiaromatic, 1202  
 Antibiotics, 930, 1165  
 Antibonding orbitals, 1194, 1196  
*anti* Conformation, 84  
   *n*-butane, 181  
   in E2 elimination, 306–307  
 Apoenzymes, 1137  
 Aprotic solvents, 33–35, 1022  
 Arabans, 1115  
 $\alpha$ -D-Arabinopyranose, 1091  
 (+)-Arabinose, 1066  
 (–)-Arabinose, 1066, 1067–1069  
 Arachidamide, *t* 810  
 Arachidanilide, *t* 810  
 Arachidic acid, *t* 810  
 Aralkyl halide, 627  
 Arecidine, 1290  
 Arene oxides, 1259–1261  
 Arenes, 625–673 (*See also* Alkenylbenzenes,  
   Alkylbenzenes, Alkynylbenzenes)  
   analysis, 666–667  
   industrial source, 630  
   nomenclature, 626–628  
   physical properties, 628–630  
   preparation, 631–636, 663–664  
   reactions, 636–643, 664–666  
     addition reactions, 665–666  
     hydrogenation, 636, 664–665  
     oxidation, 637, 638–639, 665  
     ring substitution, 637, 639–641  
     side chain substitution, 637–638, 641–643  
   structure and nomenclature, 626–628  
 (+)-Arginine, *t* 1118  
 Arnett, Edward, 237  
 Aromatic compounds  
   aliphatic, 625–673  
   definition, 573  
   heterocyclic (*See* Heterocyclic compounds)  
   polynuclear, 1231–1257  
   sources, 167, 630  
 Aromatic hydrocarbons (*See also* Arenes;  
   Polynuclear aromatic compounds)  
   aliphatic, 625–673  
   physical properties, 628–630, *t* 629  
 Aromaticity, 573–592  
   of annulenes, 591, 723, 1200  
   electronic configuration and, 1200–1202  
   experimental criteria of, 573, 583, 1199–1200  
   geometry and, 583, 585, 1200  
   Hückel rule and, 583–587, 1199–1203  
   NMR and, 583, 694, 1200  
   requirements for, 583–586, 1199–1203  
 Aromatic properties, 573, 583–587 (*See also*  
   Aromaticity)  
 Aromatic proton, NMR chemical shift, *t* 696  
 Aromatic ring, 625  
 Aromatic sextet, 583–585, 1200–1202, 1233,  
   1270, 1276  
 Aromatization, anthracene derivatives, 1255  
   hydroaromatic compounds, 168, 1238–1240  
   isoquinoline derivatives, 1286  
   naphthalene derivatives, 1238–1240, 1249–1251  
   phenanthrene derivatives, 1257–1259  
   quinoline derivatives, 1285–1286  
*o*-Aroylbenzoic acids, 1256  
 Aryl alkyl ethers, 533, 536  
   cleavage, 539–540, 973  
   oxidation, 973  
   Williamson synthesis, 537–538, 966–967,  
     972–973  
 Aryl bromides (*See* Aryl halides)  
 Aryl carbamates (*See* Urethanes)  
 Aryl chlorides (*See* Aryl halides)  
 Aryl fluorides, in nucleophilic aromatic  
   substitution, 1007 (*See also* Aryl halides)  
 Aryl groups, 654  
   compared with phosphate group, 1048–1049  
 Aryl halides, 627, 991–1018  
   vs. alkyl halides, 991, 992, 995  
   ammonolysis, 896, 997, 1000  
   analysis, 1014  
   bond lengths, *t* 999  
   dipole moments, *t* 999, 999  
   electrophilic substitution, 598, 618–620  
   Grignard reagent, 480, 996  
   hydrolysis, 966, 997, 999–1000  
   low reactivity, 995, 997–998  
     structure and, 997–998  
   orientation, *t* 596, 618–619  
   nomenclature, 587  
   nucleophilic substitution, 996–997, 999–1014  
     bimolecular displacement, 996–997,  
       999–1014  
     elimination-addition, 996–997, 1009–1014  
   physical properties, 992–993, *t* 993, *t* 999  
   preparation, 993–995  
     from diazonium salts, 933, 936, 994  
     by halogenation, 605, 640, 996, 995  
   nitration, *t* 596  
   reactions, 995–997  
   reactivity, 618–620  
   structure, 991–992, 997–998  
   vinyl halides, similarity to, 997  
 Aryl iodides (*See* Aryl halides)  
 Arylmagnesium chlorides, 475, 996, 1275–1276  
 Aryloxyacetic acids, 979  
 Asparagine, 135  
 (–)-Asparagine, *t* 1118  
 Aspartic acid, 1124, 1176  
 (+)-Aspartic acid, *t* 1118, 1165  
 Aspergillus niger, 1115  
 Asphalt, *t* 94  
 Aspirin, 977  
 Associated liquids, 30, 457–458, 778, 959  
 Atactic polypropylene, 445–446  
 Atomic orbitals (*See* Orbitals)  
 Atomic structure, 5  
 Atomic weights (*See inside back cover*)  
 ATP (adenosine triphosphate), 1047, 1155, 1158  
 Atropine, 1290  
 Atropic acid, 840

Atropine, 1290  
 Atropisomers, 148  
 Aureomycin, 930  
 Axial bonds in cyclohexane, 179–180  
 1-Azaphenanthrene, 1285  
 Azeotropes, 464, 758, 798  
 Azobenzene, 910  
 Azo compounds, 935, 936, 940–943  
 Azo dyes, 942  
 Azulene, 1263–1264

## B

Back-bonding, 335  
 Bacterial enzymes, 780  
 von Baeyer, Adolph, 170  
 Baeyer strain theory, 170–173 (*See also* Angle strain)  
 Baeyer test, 384, 387  
 Bakelite, 978  
 Barbitol, 1035  
 Barbiturates, 842  
 Barbituric acid, 842  
 Bardhan-Sengupta synthesis, 1259  
 Bartlett, P.D., 1190  
 Base-catalyzed halogen dance, 992, 1018  
 Bases

  Lewis definition, 37  
 Lowry-Brønsted definition, 36, 158–159  
 and molecular structure, 38

Basicity, 36–38, 201, 208  
 alkenes, 326  
 alkoxide ions, 500  
 amines, *t* 889, 891, 914–918  
 benzene ring, 593  
 carbanions, 566–568  
 carboxylate ions, 790  
 piperidine, 1283  
 pyridine, 1277, 1281–1283  
 pyrrole, 1270–1275  
 relative, 37, 501, 566–568, 1281–1282

Basicity constants, 914–918  
 amines, *t* 889, 914, *t* 915  
 amino acids, 1120–1122  
 ammonia, 914  
 isoquinoline, 1286  
 pyridine, 1283  
 pyrrole, 1270  
 quinoline, 1283

Basketane, 167  
 9-BBN, 1030

Beckmann rearrangement, 950

Beef tallow, *t* 1041

Bender, Myron, 834

Benedict's reagent, 1056, 1060

Benzalacetone, *t* 1172, 1185  
 preparation, 863, 872  
 reactions, 1185

Benzalacetophenone (Chalcone), *t* 1172  
 preparation, 863, 872  
 reactions, 1176, 1179, 1181, 1185

Benzal bromide, *t* 199

Benzal-*p*-bromoacetophenone, 1181

Benzal chloride, *t* 199, 613  
 preparation, 637, 640–641

Benzaldehyde, 637, 640, 641, 734, 750, 751, 758, 768, 879, 890, 900

  reactions, *t* 596, 862, 872, 873, 874  
 Benzaldehyde, acetal with glycerol, 768

Benzaldehyde diethyl acetal, 758

Benzaldehyde phenylhydrazones, 751, 1062

Benzaldoxime, 910

Benzal group, 863

Benzamide, 814, *t* 815, 820  
 infrared spectrum, 846

Hofmann rearrangement, 905

  preparation, 820

Benzanilide, *t* 890, 924

  preparation, 924

1,2-Benzanthracene, *t* 1231

  synthesis, 1262

1,2-Benz-9,10-anthraquinone, 1256

Benzedrine, 909

Benzene, 168, 296, 406, 573–592

  aromatic properties, 573, 576–578, 580, 582–584

  bond angles in, 581–582

  bromination, 577, 600

  carbon-carbon bonds in, 579

  chlorination, 577, 605

  derivatives, nomenclature, 587

  "Dewar" formula, 1228

  disubstitution products, 575–576

  electronic configuration, 1199

  electrophilic substitution, 577, 583

  (*See also* Electrophilic substitution)

  Friedel-Crafts acylation, 578, 604, 1249–1250

  Friedel-Crafts alkylation, 578, 604

  halogenation, 577, 605

  heat of combustion, 578–579

  hydrogenation, 168

  heat of, 578–579

  industrial source, 630

  isomer number, 574–576

  and structure, 579

  Kekulé structure, 574–576

  Körner method of absolute orientation, 588

  Ladenburg prism formula, 591

  mass spectrum of, 678

  nitration, 577, 597–598, 600–603

  in nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 1008–1024

  orbitals, 581–582, 1199

  physical properties, *t* 629

  reactions, 577–578

  vs. cyclohexene, *t* 577

  resonance, 579

  stability and, 579–580

  ring, 583, 593, 639

  as source of aromatic compounds, 630

  stability of, 576–578, 580, 583, 585–586, 1201

  structure, 574, 579–583

  sulfonation, 577, 603

  thiophene in, 1271

Benzenediazonium chloride, 914, 934

Benzenediazonium fluoroborate, 934

1,4-Benzenedicarboxylic acid, 638 (Terephthalic acid)

Benzenesulfonamide, 926

Benzenesulfonanilide, 913

Benzenesulfonic acid, 587, 929

  nitration, *t* 596

  preparation, 577

Benzenesulfonyl chloride, 924

  in Hinsberg test, 943

Benzenonium ions, 602, 655, 657

Benzyhdrol, *t* 457, 766 (Diphenylcarbinol)

Benzidine, *t* 890

Benzil, 761

Benzilic acid, 761

  rearrangement, 761

Benzoic acid, 587, 639, 742, 775, *t* 776, 777, 814

  industrial source, 781

  preparation, 637, 638, 665, 820

  reactions, *t* 596

  relative acidity, 792

Benzoic anhydride, 814

Benzooin, 1062

Benzonitrile, 785

  nitration, *t* 596

- Benzophenone, 735, *t* 736  
   preparation, 739  
   in Wittig reaction, 874  
 Benzophenone oxime, 950  
   geometric isomers, 910  
   reactions, 950  
 Benzo[*a*]pyrene, 1260  
 Benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-dihydro-7,8-diol, 1260  
 Benzo[*a*]pyrene-7,8-oxide, 1260  
 5,6-Benzoquinoline, 1285  
*p*-Benzoquinone, 1183  
   reactions, 1183–1186  
 Benzotrichloride, *t* 199, 637, 641  
   hydrolysis, 781  
   physical constants, *t* 199  
   preparation, 637, 641  
 Benzoylacetone, NMR spectrum, 885  
*o*-Benzoylbenzoic acid, 824  
   preparation, 1255  
   reactions, 1255, 1256  
*p*-Benzoylbenzoic acid, 480  
 Benzoyl chloride, 742, 814, *t* 815  
   preparation, 786, 797  
   reactions, 924, 967  
 Benzoylglycine, 1132  
 Benzoylglycylalanine acid, 1132  
*β*-Benzoylpropionic acid, 1250  
 2-Benzoylthiophene, 1273  
 Benzyl, 628  
 Benzyl acetate, 828, *t* 829  
   preparation, 787  
 Benzyl alcohol, *t* 457, 628, 828  
   esterification, 787  
   infrared spectrum, 685  
   preparation, 466, 467  
 Benzylamine, 894, 899, 900, 909  
   physical constants, *t* 889  
   preparation, 899, 900  
   reactions, 894  
*o*-Benzylbenzoic acid, 1256  
 Benzyl bromide, *t* 199, 628, 642  
   preparation, 203, 642  
 Benzylbromomalonate, 1123  
 Benzyl cation, stability of, 649–650  
 Benzyl chloride, *t* 199, 640  
   preparation, 637, 641  
   reactions, 632, 894, 895, 899, 912, 982  
   reactivity, 613  
 Benzyl chlorocarbonate  
   acylation by, 1132  
   in peptide synthesis, 1132  
   synthesis, 841  
 Benzyl cyanide (Phenylacetone nitrile), 783, 895  
 Benzylidene(*n*-butyl)amine, 912  
 Benzyl dimethylamine, 894  
 Benzyl free radical (See Benzyl radical)  
 Benzyl cations, 414, 651  
 Benzyl hydrogen, 641  
 Benzyl substrates, nucleophilic substitution in,  
   650–652  
 Benzyl iodide, *t* 199  
 1-Benzylisoquinoline, 1288  
 Benzylmagnesium chloride, 653  
 Benzylmalonic acid, 1123  
 Benzyl methyl ketone, formation, 745  
   nomenclature, 735  
 Benzyl radical  
   resonance stabilization, 643–644  
   stability and ease of formation, 642  
 Benzynes (See also Dehydrobenzene)  
   in nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 1009–1014  
   structure, 1009  
 Bergmann, Max, 1132  
 Berson, Jerome, 1222  
 Beryllium, 11  
   Beryllium chloride, 12–13  
   Beta arrangement, 1140  
   Betaines, 863, 874, 1145  
   Bicyclic compounds, 169  
   *trans*-Bicyclo[4.4.0]deca-2,4-diene, 1211  
   *cis*-Bicyclo[6.2.0]deca-2,9-diene, 1211  
   *cis*-Bicyclo[6.2.0]deca-2,4,6,9-tetraene, 1224  
   Bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane, 166  
   1,1'-Bicyclohexenyl, 1186  
   *cis*-Bicyclo[4.3.0]nona-2,4-diene, 1211  
   *trans*-Bicyclo[4.3.0]nona-2,4-diene, 1211  
   Bicyclo[2.2.2]octane, 166  
   *cis*-Bicyclo[4.2.0]octa-7-ene, 1224  
   Bidentate, definition, 335  
   Bijvoet, J.M., 138, 151, 153, 1075  
   Bilayers, 1050  
   Bile acids, 481  
   Bimolecular displacement mechanism, 1006 (See  
     also Nucleophilic aromatic substitution)  
   Bimolecular elimination (E2 mechanism),  
     288–289 (See also Elimination reactions)  
   Biochemical processes, 1147–1167  
     biological energy, 1154  
     biosynthesis of fatty acids, 1159–1161  
     chymotrypsin action, 1148  
     heredity, 1164  
     hydrolysis, 1149–1150  
     nucleoproteins and nucleic acids, 1161–1164  
     oxidation of carbohydrates, 1156–1159  
     vision, 1152–1154  
   Biochemistry, definition, 1039  
   Biodegradable detergents, 1046  
   Biogenesis, 441  
   Bio-inonose, 1093  
   Biological energy, 1154–1155  
   Biological oxidation of carbohydrates,  
     1156–1157, 1167  
     mechanism, 1157–1159  
   Biomass, 2  
   Biosynthesis of fats, 1040  
     of fatty acids, 1159–1161  
   Biot, Jean-Baptiste, 128  
   Biphenyl, *t* 629, 996  
   Bischler-Napieralski synthesis, 1286–1287  
   2,4-Bis(diphenylphosphino)pentane, 344  
   1,1-Bis(*p*-methoxyphenyl)-2,2-diphenyl-1,2-  
     ethanediol, 746  
   Boat conformation, 176–178  
   Bogert-Cook synthesis, 1257  
   Boiling point, 29–30  
     associated liquids, 30, 457–458, 778, 959  
     chain branching and, 92–93  
     chain length and, 91–92  
     hydrogen bonding, intermolecular, 30,  
       457–458, 778, 959  
     intramolecular, 959  
     ionic vs. non-ionic compounds, 29  
     molecular shape and, 93  
     molecular size and, 30, 92  
     polarity, 458  
   Bombykol, 883  
   Bond angle, 13, 17  
   Bond dissociation energy, inside front cover, 9,  
     20–21, 50  
     heterolytic, *t* 21  
     homolytic, *t* 20  
   Bond energy, 20–21  
   Bond length, 10  
   Bond orbitals (See Orbital(s))  
   Bonds  
     bonding, infrared absorption and, 680, 683–684  
     bent, 174  
     benzene, 580  
     breaking, 151, 159, 193  
     cleavage, 21



- covalent, 4-5, 9-11. (See also Covalent bonds)
- dipole-dipole, 27-28, 244-245
- double (See Carbon-carbon double bond)
- hybrid, 403
- ion-dipole, 32, 244-245
- ionic, 3-4
- one-and-a-half, 403, 580
- orbitals (See Orbital(s))
- from overlap of orbitals, 9-11
- $\pi$ , 268, 556
- polarity, 22
- $\sigma$ , 268, 556
- single (See Carbon-carbon single bond)
- stretching, infrared absorption and, 683-684, 691
- triple (See Carbon-carbon triple bond)
- Bond strength (See Bond dissociation energy)
- 9-Borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (9-BBN), 1030
- Borane, 470
- tetrahydrofuran complex, 470
- Borazole, 583
- Boric acid, 469
- Borneol, 1092
- Boron, 14
- Boron trifluoride, 13-15
- Boyd, T.A., 116
- Bromination (See also Halogenation)
- of alkanes, 101-115
- of alkenes, 359
- of alkylbenzenes, 641-642
- of methane, 48
- stereochemistry, 490-492
- Bromine, *t* 678
- addition to *cis*-2-butene, 364
- p*-Bromoacetanilide
- preparation, 994
- reactions, 913, 925
- Bromoacetic acid, *t* 796, 800
- Bromoacetone
- preparation, 864
- reactions, 1029
- 2-Bromo-*p*-acetotoluidide, 939
- preparation, 599, 939
- reactions, 928, 939
- Bromoalkanes, 101
- 3-Bromo-4-aminotoluene
- preparation, 928
- reactions, 943
- m*-Bromoaniline
- physical constants, *t* 890
- preparation, 896
- reactions, 939
- o*-Bromoaniline, *t* 890
- p*-Bromoaniline, *t* 890, 913
- p*-Bromoanilinium chloride, 925
- m*-Bromoanisole, 1012
- o*-Bromoanisole, 1012
- 9-Bromoanthracene, 1254
- p*-Bromobenzaldehyde, 737
- m*-Bromobenzamide
- physical constants, *t* 810
- reactions, 896
- m*-Bromobenzanilide, *t* 810
- Bromobenzene, 587, 628, *t* 993, 998, *t* 999
- nitration, *t* 596
- preparation, 577
- m*-Bromobenzenediazonium chloride, 939
- p*-Bromobenzenesulfonyl group, 211
- m*-Bromobenzoic acid, *t* 776, *t* 810
- o*-Bromobenzoic acid, *t* 776, 777
- p*-Bromobenzoic acid, *t* 776, 777
- m*-Bromobenzyl alcohol, 628
- 1-Bromobutane, 197 (See also *n*-Butyl bromide)
- 2-Bromobutane, 90 (See also *sec*-Butyl bromide)
- 3-Bromo-2-butanol, 490, 491, 496
- 3-Bromo-1-butene, 432
- 1-Bromo-2-butene, 432
- $\beta$ -Bromobutyric acid, 1174
- m*-Bromochlorobenzene, 600
- 2-Bromo-1-chloroethane, 361
- Bromochloromethane, 130
- 3-Bromo-5-chloronitrobenzene, 588
- Bromocyclohexane (See also Cyclohexyl bromide), 197, 901
- NMR and conformational analysis of, 718-719, 724
- cis*-4-Bromocyclohexanol, 218
- 3-Bromocyclohexene, 330, 399, 429
- 2-Bromo-2-cyclohexanol, 1211
- 2-Bromocyclohexyl brosylate, 499
- Bromocyclopentane, 169
- 1-Bromo-1,2-diphenylpropane, 303, 304
- Bromoethane (See Ethyl bromide)
- 2-Bromoethanol (See also Ethylene bromohydrin)
- preparation, 361
- 7-Bromo-1-ethylnaphthalene, 1251
- 2-Bromoethyl nitrate, 361
- o*-Bromofluorobenzene, 1014
- Bromoform, 48, *t* 199
- $\alpha$ -Bromoglutaric acid, 802
- 3-Bromo-1-hexene, 667
- Bromohydrins, 367
- 2-Bromo-5-hydroxybenzaldehyde, 599
- D(-)-3-Bromo-2-hydroxypropanoic acid, 1074
- D(-)-3-Bromo-2-hydroxypropionic acid, 1075
- Bromiodobenzene, 587
- p*-Bromiodobenzene, 587
- 2-Bromo-1-iodoethane, 361
- $\alpha$ -Bromoisovaleric acid, 788
- 1-Bromo-2-methoxynaphthalene, 1262
- 1-Bromo-3-methylbutane, 520
- 2-Bromo-2-methylbutane, 300
- 1-Bromo-2-methylnaphthalene, 1247
- 1-Bromo-2-methylpropane, 102
- 2-Bromo-2-methylpropane (See *tert*-Butyl bromide)
- 1-Bromonaphthalene ( $\alpha$ -Bromonaphthalene), *t* 1231, 1235, 1241
- preparation, 1235
- 2-Bromonaphthalene, *t* 1231
- preparation, 1246
- m*-Bromonitrobenzene, 939
- Bromonitrobenzenes, 600
- Bromonium ions, 360, 364, 365
- 2-Bromooctane, 218
- (-)-2-Bromooctane, 158, 216
- 2-Bromopentane, 300
- 2-Bromopentanedioic acid, 802
- 9-Bromophenanthrene, 1253-1257
- m*-Bromophenol, *t* 958
- preparation, 939
- o*-Bromophenol, *t* 958, 967, 975
- p*-Bromophenol, 587, *t* 958
- preparation, 968, 975
- 1-Bromo-1-phenylethane (See also  $\alpha$ -Phenylethyl bromide)
- preparation, 203, 486, 626, 641
- 2-Bromo-1-phenylethane, 641
- o*-Bromophenyl *p*-toluenesulfonate, 967
- 1-Bromopropane (see *n*-Propyl bromide)
- 2-Bromopropane (see Isopropyl bromide)
- 2-Bromopropanoic acid, 775
- 1-Bromo-1-propene, 559
- 2-Bromopropene, NMR signals, 692, 707
- 3-Bromopropene, 277 (See also Allyl bromide)
- $\alpha$ -Bromopropionic acid, 775
- preparation, 899
- reactions, 1123



- 3-Bromopropyne, *t* 199
- 2-Bromopyridine, 1280
- 3-Bromopyridine, 1278
- 4-Bromopyridine, 1283
- 4-Bromopyridine N-oxide, 1283
- N-Bromosuccinimide (NBS), 398
- m*-Bromotoluene, *t* 993
  - synthesis, 939
- o*-Bromotoluene, *t* 993
  - synthesis, 934, 938
- p*-Bromotoluene, *t* 993
  - synthesis, 938
- Bromotrichloromethane, 434
- 3-Bromo-1,1,1-trichlorononane, 329
- 3-Bromo-5,5,5-trichloro-1-pentene, 435
- 1-Bromo-5,5,5-trichloro-2-pentene, 435
- Brosyl (see *p*-Bromobenzenesulfonyl)
- Brown, H.C., 114, 160, 397, 471, 657, 1029
- Brucine, 159
- Bs (see *p*-Bromobenzenesulfonyl)
- Bunnett, Joseph, 299, 992, 995, 1007
- 1,3-Butadiene, 277, 406, 424, 429, 1182
  - copolymerization of, 449
  - cycloaddition, 1182–1183, 1213–1214
  - Diels-Alder reaction, 1182–1183, 1213–1214
  - electronic configuration, 1196
  - electrophilic addition, 430, 432–433
  - free-radical addition, 434–435
  - heat of hydrogenation, *t* 425, 425
  - molecular orbitals, 1197–1198
  - polymerization, 439–440
  - preparation, 429
  - stabilization, 425
  - (See also Dienes)
- Butanal, 734
  - (See also *n*-Butyraldehyde)
- Butanes, 83–84
  - steric factors in, 85
- n*-Butane, *t* 83, *t* 92
  - anti*-conformation, 181
  - bromination, 102
  - chlorination, 102, 106, 150
  - conformations, 84–85, 175, 181
  - dehydrogenation, 429
  - halogenation, 102, 106
  - isobutane, 83–84
  - physical constants, *t* 83
  - preparation, 96, 168
  - thiophene from, 1271
- Butanedioic acid (see Succinic acid)
- Butane, *gauche* interactions, 84–85, 181, 186
  - 1,3-diaxial interactions, 186
- (+)-2-Butanol, 1075
- Butanone (methyl ethyl ketone), 735, 756, 902
- 2-Butanone, 755
- 2-Butenal (Crotonaldehyde), 862, 1173
- 1-Butene, 270–271, *t* 271, 276, *t* 278, 285
  - addition of hydrogen halides, 347
  - dehydrogenation, 429
  - dipole moment, 279
  - heat of combustion, 335
  - hydrogenation, 270–271
    - heat of, *t* 332, 334
  - ozonolysis, 331
  - preparation, 281
  - reactivity, 357–358
- 2-Butene, 270–271, *t* 271, 276, *t* 278, 285, 322
  - addition of hydrogen halides, 347
  - cyclopropane from, 379, 381
  - dehydrogenation, 429
  - geometric isomerism, 271–273
  - hydrogenation, 271
  - preparation, 281, 282
  - reactivity, 357–358
- cis*- and *trans*-2-Butenes, 271–273, 279, 308, 309
  - addition of bromine, stereochemistry, 361–366
  - addition of carbenes, stereochemistry, 381
  - addition of methylene, stereochemistry, 380
  - diol formation, stereochemistry, 363
  - dipole moments, 279
  - heats of combustion, 335
  - heats of hydrogenation, *t* 332
  - stability and, 333–334
  - hydroxylation, stereochemistry, 363
  - physical properties, *t* 271, *t* 278, 279
- Butenedioic acid, 339
  - cis*-Butenedioic acid (Maleic acid), 339, 1173
  - trans*-Butenedioic acid (Fumaric acid), 340, 1173
- cis*-Butenedioic anhydride, 1173
- 2-Butenoic acid, 777
- 3-Buten-2-ol, 277
- Butter, *t* 1041
- n*-Butyl acetate, *t* 829
- tert*-Butyl acetate, 836
- n*-Butylacetylene, 559 (See also 1-Hexyne)
- n*-Butyl alcohol, 41, 322, *t* 457, *t* 458
  - dehydration, 281
  - derivatives, *t* 530
  - industrial preparation, 870
  - oxidation, 737
  - preparation, 470, 754
- sec*-butyl alcohol, *t* 457, 517
  - dehydration, 282, 318
  - infrared spectrum, 685
  - optical activity, 158
  - preparation, 460, 517
- tert*-Butyl alcohol, 224, 259, *t* 457, 634
  - dehydration, 318
- Friedel-Crafts alkylation with, 634
- hydrogen halides reaction, 486
- iodoform test, 522
  - preparation, 350, 460
- n*-Butylamine, *t* 889, 902, 931
- sec*-Butylamine, *t* 889, 909
- tert*-Butylamine, 888, *t* 889
- n*-Butylammonium bromide, 899
- n*-Butylbenzene, *t* 629
  - infrared spectrum, 681
  - oxidation, 638
  - preparation, 634, 749
- sec*-Butylbenzene, *t* 629, 634
- tert*-Butylbenzene, *t* 629, 634
- p*-*sec*-Butylbenzoic acid, 782
- n*-Butyl bromide, 118, 197, *t* 199, 285, 559
- sec*-Butyl bromide (See also 2-Bromobutane)
  - dehydrohalogenation, 285–286, 300
  - physical constants, *t* 199
- tert*-Butyl bromide, 103, 112, *t* 199, 232, 348
  - ease of elimination, 785
  - hydrolysis, 222, 224–225
  - rate of reaction, 213
  - reaction, with cyanide ion, 785
  - S<sub>N</sub>1 reaction, relative rate, 236
  - S<sub>N</sub>2 reaction, relative rate, 223
- trans*-4-*tert* Butyl 1-bromocyclohexane, 724
- sec*-Butylcarbinol (See 2-Methyl-1-butanol)
- n*-Butyl cation, mass to charge ratio, 676
- tert*-Butyl cation, 226
  - NMR spectrum, 227
  - in S<sub>N</sub>1 reactions, 224
- n*-Butyl chloride, *t* 199
  - from *n*-butane, 102, 106
  - dehydrohalogenation, 281
  - Friedel-Crafts alkylation with, 634
- sec*-Butyl chloride, *t* 199
  - from *n*-butane, 102, 106, 149–150
  - dehydrohalogenation, 281
  - enantiomers of, 129, 132, 137, 140
  - lithiumdialkylcopper from, 100
  - stereochemistry, 151, 154–157

*tert*-Butyl chloride, 101, 114, *t* 199, 259

dehydrohalogenation, 317

Friedel-Crafts alkylation with, 968

from isobutane, 102, 106

lithiumdialkylcopper from, 97

preparation, 486

trimethylacetic acid from, 784

4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexene, 324

*cis*-4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexyl tosylate, 324

*n*-Butyldimethylcarbinol, 447 (*See also* 2-Methyl-2-hexanol)

Butylenes, 270–272

physical properties, *t* 271

structure, 270–276

(*See also* Butene; Isobutylene)

*n*-Butyl ether (Di-*n*-butyl ether), *t* 534

*tert*-Butyl fluoride

NMR spectrum, 227

*tert*-Butyl free radical (*See tert*-Butyl radical)

Butyl groups, 88

*sec*-Butyl hydrogen phthalate, 824

*tert*-Butyl hydrogen sulfate, 349

*tert*-Butyl hydroperoxide, 572

*n*-Butyl iodide, *t* 199

*sec*-Butyl iodide, *t* 199, 347

*tert*-Butyl iodide, *t* 199, 346

*n*-Butyl isopropyl ketone (2-Methyl-3-heptanone), 739

*n*-Butyllithium, 443, 1028

*n*-Butylmagnesium bromide, 478, 518

2-(*sec*-Butyl)naphthalene, 1243

*p*-*tert*-Butylphenol, 968

*tert*-Butyl radical, 114, 115, 409

Butyl rubber, 443, 449

*m*-(*n*-Butyl)toluene, 742

*p*-*tert*-Butyltoluene, NMR spectrum, 699

1-Butyne (Ethylacetylene), 557, *t* 558

preparation, 568

2-Butyne (Dimethylacetylene), 557, *t* 558, 561

1,4-Butynediol, 1272

1-Butyn-3-ol, 873

3-Butyn-2-ol, 873

*n*-Butyraldehyde, *t* 458, 734, *t* 736

in aldol condensation, 870

infrared spectrum, 763

preparation, 737, 780

*n*-Butyramide, *t* 815

Butyric acid, *t* 776, *t* 796

*n*-Butyric acid, 781

$\gamma$ -Butyrolactone, 848

*n*-Butyrophenone (Phenyl *n*-propyl ketone), 735, *t* 736, 749

*n*-Butyryl chloride, *t* 815

*n*-Butyryl-S-ACP, 1161

## C

C<sub>27</sub>-phthienoic acid, 1052

Cadalene, 1240

Cadaverine, 909

Cadinene, 1240

Caffeic acid, 982

Cahn-Ingold-Prelog convention, 343

Cahn-Ingold-Prelog sequence, 274

Cahn, R.S., 132, 138

Calcite, Nicol prism, 126

Calcium acetate, 778

Calcium carbide, 558

Calcium cyanamide, 842

Camphene hydrochloride, 657, 658

Camphoronic acid, 1036

Cannizzaro reaction, 751, 760, 868

Capric acid, *t* 776

Caproaldehyde, *t* 736

Caproamide, 896

Caproic acid, *t* 776, 969

Caprolactam, 927

Caprylic acid, *t* 776

Carbamates, 840 (*See also* Urethanes)

Carbamic acid, 839–840

Carbamide (Urea), 839

Carbanionoid compounds, 98, 100, 475, 874, 879, 1014, 1160

Carbanions, 98, 859–885, 922, 1019–1036 (*See also* individual carbanions)

from acetoacetic ester, 876–877, 1023

addition to aldehydes and ketones, 862–863, 867–869, 871–875, 878, 879–880

in aldol condensations, 862–863, 867–869, 871

basicity, relative, 1281–1282

charge accommodation, 859–860, 877

in Claisen condensation, 863–864, 875–878

concentration of, 293

from cyanoacetic ester, 1180

definition, 291

in dehydrohalogenation, 290–294, 297–299

elimination via, 290–293

formation, 292

formed irreversibly, 293

in halogenation of ketones, 865

from malonic ester, 1020–1023, 1180

in Michael reaction, 1179–1182

in nucleophilic acyl substitution, 863–864

in nucleophilic addition, 1176–1179

in nucleophilic aliphatic substitution, 100, 1020, 1023

in nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 1002–1007, 1009–1010, 1280–1281

orbitals, 567–568, 1282

in organoborane synthesis, 1029–1031

in Perkin condensation, 873

from pyridine, 1280–1281

racemization, 1032–1033

reactions, summary, 861–864

in Reformatsky reaction, 879–880

resonance, 859–860, 877

shape, 892

stability, 291

stereochemistry, 892

in Wittig reaction, 874

from ylids, 874

Carbazole, 1267

Carbenes, 378–382

addition of substituted, 381

Carbenium ions, 226

Carbenoid compounds, 382

2-Carboxoxycyclopentanone, 877

Carbitol, 548

Carbonyl chloride, 841, 1132

in peptide synthesis, 1132–1133

Carbonyl chloride, 1132

Carbonyl chloride, acid chloride, 1133

Carbonyl chloride, 1133

Carbocations, 205, 224–228, 289, 290, 363, 370,

371, 372, 376, 469, 489, 491, 496, 499, 759

(*See also* individual cations)

in acetal formation, 758–759

in addition to  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl

compounds, 1175–1176

from alcohols and alkenes, 634

in alkylation of alkenes, 372–373

from alkyl halides, 633

of anthracene and phenanthrene, 1254

definition, 226

from dehydration of alcohols, 319–320

delocalization, 430–432

ease of formation, 236–237, 355–358, 396

electronic effect in, 228, 237

in electrophilic addition, 350–355

in electrophilic aromatic substitution, 602–603, 604, 605, 606–610, 611–621

encumbered, 258

formation, 354

intermediacy of, 240

loss of proton from, 321

from naphthalene, 1241–1242

nucleophilically solvated, 257, 258

from pyridine, 1279

rate of elimination from, 317

rate of formation, 236, 311, 358, 412, 650

reactions, 243–244, 635

rearrangement of, 238–244, 311–312

relative stabilities, 231–233

resonance-stabilized, 1175

in  $S_N1$  reactions, 224, 229–231

in solvolysis, 255

stability, 233, 234, 311, 356, 411, 421, 649

stabilization, 234, 414–418

structure, 228

Carbohydrates, 753, 1055–1116 (*See also* Aldohexoses, Aldoses, Monosaccharides, *etc.*)

biological oxidation, 1156–1159

classification, 1056

definition, 1056

disaccharides, 1097–1104

esterification, 823

fermentation, 463

methylation, 1084–1086

monosaccharides, 1055–1095

nomenclature, 1056, 1058–1060, 1088

osazone formation, 1062–1063

oxidation, 1060–1062

polysaccharides, 1104–1111

Carbon acids, 291

Carbon, analysis for, 73

classes of, 91

migration, 1221

tetrahedral, 124–125, 128, 129

Carbonation of phenols, 969

Carbon–carbon bonds, formation, 477–478, 1019

Carbon–carbon double bonds, 276, 281, 407, 665

analysis for, 331, 359, 383, 386–389

in benzene, 579

in ethylene, 267–269

hindered rotation about, 269, 272

infrared spectra, 683

length, 270

peroxidation, 545

protecting, 283

reactions, 325–393

as substituent, 395

Carbon–carbon single bonds

in ethane, 79–82

free rotation about, 80–82

infrared spectra, 682–684

length, 270, 428

in methylacetylene, 270

rotational barrier, 81–82

Carbon–carbon triple bonds, 555

infrared spectra, 683

Carbon-chain lengthening

synthesis of alcohols, 516–518

aldol condensation, 867–872

of aldoses, 1063–1065

of alkanes, 99

of alkynes, 559, 560, 568

synthesis of amines, 897

of carboxylic acids, 937

Carbon-chain shortening

of aldoses, 1065

degradation of alkenes, 384–385

Hofmann degradation, 901–902

Carbon–halogen bonds, 420, 620

Carbon–hydrogen bonds, 67, 414, 418

infrared spectra, 683

lengths and hybridization, *t* 428

Carbonic acid, 839, 840

stability, 840

Carbonic acid, functional derivatives, 839–842

Carbonium ions (*See also* Carbocations)

definition, 226

Carbon–oxygen double bond, 747

Carbon tetrabromide, 48, *t* 199

Carbon tetrachloride, 30, 31, 47, 48, *t* 199

addition to alkenes, 377

Carbonyl chloride (Phosgene), 839

Carbonyl compounds, 733 (*See also* Aldehydes; Keto acids, Ketones,  $\alpha,\beta$ -Unsaturated carbonyl compounds)

addition to, 862–863, 1174–1179

Diels–Alder reaction, 1182–1184

electrophilic addition, 1174–1175, 1178–1179

interaction of functional groups, 1173–1174

Michael addition, 1179–1182

nucleophilic addition, 1176–1179

preparation, 1173

structure and properties, 1171–1173

$\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated, 1171–1190

Carbonyl group, 474, 746

and acidity of  $\alpha$ -hydrogens, 859–862

in aldehydes and ketones, 746–748

in aldol condensation, 868

bonding in, 816

in carboxylic acid derivatives, 815

in carboxylic acids, 789

geometry, 733, 816

*o*-Carboxybenzenediazonium inner salt, 1017

Carboxylate anion, basicity, 789–790

structure, 793–795

Carboxylate ions, structure of, 794–795

Carboxyl group, 775

electron withdrawal by, 789–790

Carboxylic acid anhydrides (*See* Acid anhydrides)

Carboxylic acid chlorides (*See* Acid chlorides)

Carboxylic acids, 775–812, 1045 (*See also*

Dicarboxylic acids)

acidity, 789, 793–797

effect of substituents, 795–797

acidity constants, 789–790, *t* 796

aliphatic, acidity, 795–796

alpha-halogenation, 788

sources, 780–781

alpha-amino (*See* Amino acids)

analysis, 804–805

aromatic, acidity, 796–797

nomenclature, 777

preparation, 636, 638–639, 782

ring substitution, 596, 788

sources, 780–781

biosynthesis, 1159–1161

conversion, into acid chlorides, 786–787

into amides, 787

into esters (*See* esterification *below*)

into functional derivatives, 786–787

into salts, 779, 786

derivatives, 804, *t* 810

analysis, 845

dicarboxylic (*See* Dicarboxylic acids)

effect on substituents, 795–797

esterification, 787, 798–799

mechanism, 835

reactivity, 799

(*See also* Esters)

from fats, 780

functional derivatives, 786, 788, 813–857 (*See also* individual families)

acid anhydrides, 822



- acid chlorides, 819–822
- amides, 787
- analysis, 845
- carbonyl group in, 816
- compared with sulfonyl derivatives, 872–873, 926
- esters, 787, 827–847
- hydrolysis, 820, 823, 826–827, 830
- nomenclature, 813
- nucleophilic acyl substitution, 815
- physical properties, 814–815, *t* 815, *t*, 829
- spectroscopic analysis, 846
- structure, 813
- halogenation, *alpha* (*See* Hell-Volhard-Zelinsky reaction)
- hydrogen bonding in, 778
- hydroxy (*See* Hydroxy acids)
- ionization, 789
- keto (*See* Keto acids)
- neutralization equivalent, 804
- nitrile synthesis, 785
- nomenclature, 776–778
- odor, 778
- physical properties, *t* 776, 778–779
- preparation, 385, 781–784, 873, 969
  - acetoacetic ester synthesis, 1035
  - carbonation of Grignard reagents, 782, 783
  - via diazonium salts, 937
  - Grignard synthesis, 784
  - haloform reaction, 522–523, 1237
  - hydrolysis of nitriles, 783, 785, 937
  - Knoevenagel reaction, 873
  - Kolbe reaction, 976–977
  - malonic ester synthesis, 1020–1024
  - organoborane synthesis, 1029–1031
  - via 2-oxazolines, 1028–1029
  - oxidation of alcohols, 488, 503–504, 782, 783
    - of alkenes, 386
    - of arenes, 637, 638–639, 782
    - of methyl ketones, 1237
  - Perkin condensation, 872–873
  - periodic acid oxidation, 523–524
  - Reformatsky reaction, 879–880
- reactions, summary, 786–791
- reduction to alcohols, 788, 799–800
- salts, 778, 779, 786
  - nomenclature, 778
  - physical properties, 779–780, 804–805
- solubility, *t* 776, 778–780
- salts, 779–780
- sources, 779
  - aliphatic, 780
  - aromatic, 781
- spectroscopic analysis, *t* 682, *t* 696, 805–806
- structure, 775
- substitution, *alpha*, 788
  - Hell-Volhard-Zelinsky reaction, 788, 800–801
  - ring, 596, 788
- unsaturated, from fats, 780, 1042, 1045
- $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated, *t* 1172, 1172–1173
  - electrophilic addition, 1174–1175
  - hydrogenation, 880
  - nucleophilic addition, 1176–1178
  - preparation, 801, 1173
- Carboxylic acids, functional derivatives, 813–857** (*See also* Acid chlorides, Acid anhydrides, Amides, carbonic acid derivatives, Imides, Esters, Fats)
- Carboxypeptidase, 1130
- Carcinogenic hydrocarbons, 1259–1261
- Cardiac glycosides, 481
- Carius method, analysis for halogen, 74
- analysis for sulfur, 590
- $\beta$ -Carotene, 689, 1153
- Carvacrol, 984
- 3,8-Carvomenthenediol, 767
- Carvomenthol, 769
- Carvomenthone, 769
- Carvone, 135, 1240
- (+)-Carvotanacetone, 769
- Castile soap, 1043
- Catalytic cracking, 116, 117
- Catalytic dehydrogenation, 1238–1240 (*See also* Aromatization, Dehydrogenation)
- Catalytic hydrogenation, 332–333 (*See also* Hydrogenation)
- Catalytic reforming, 94, 116, 630
  - of alicyclic hydrocarbons, 167
  - of alkanes, 117
- Catechol, 957, *t* 958
- Cationic polymerization, 442, 443
- Cell membranes, 1050–1051
- (+)-Cellobiose, 1100–1101
- Cellobiose octacetate, 1100, 1101
- Cellophane, 1114
- Cellulose
  - description, 1055, 1105
  - esterification, 823
  - molecular weights, 1113
  - properties, 1112
  - reactions, 1113
  - structure, 1112
- Cellulose acetate, 1113
- Cellulose ethers, 1114
- Cellulose nitrate, 1113
- Cellulose trinitrate, 1113
- Cellulose xanthate, 1114
- Cerebrosides, 1051
- Chain-reaction polymerization, 443–446 (*See also* Free radical polymerization)
  - coordination polymerization, 443–446
  - copolymerization, 442
  - free radical vinyl polymerization, 437–438
  - ionic polymerization, 442–443
- Chain reactions
  - chlorination of methane, 52–53
  - combustion of alkanes, 115–116
  - free radical addition, 373–374
  - halogenation of alkanes, 102–103
- Chair conformation, 176, 178, 182, 185
- Chalcone, *t* 1172
- Chao, T.H., 160
- Chavibetol, 986
- Chelation, 959
  - definition, 336
- Chemical bonds (*See* Bonds)
- Chemical paleogenetics, 1136
- Chemical shifts, 694–697, *t* 696
- Chichibabin reaction, 1280
- Chirality, 131–133, 138, 149–150
  - bond breaking and, 151, 159–161
  - 1,2-dimethylcyclohexanes, 187
  - generation of chiral center, 132–133
    - first, 149
    - more than one, 145
    - second, 154
  - optical activity and, 136, 152–153
  - reactions of chiral molecules, 150–164
- Chloranil, 1239
- Chlorination 47–48 (*See also* Halogenation)
  - of alkanes, 102–115
  - of alkylbenzenes, 640–643
  - aromatic, 605
  - mechanism of, 49–52
  - of methane, 46–48, 52–53
  - and stereochemistry, 159–161
- Chlorine
  - abundance of,  $^{35}\text{Cl}$ , *t* 678
  - $^{35}\text{Cl}$  as tracer, 115



- o*-Chloroacetanilide, 949
- Chloroacetic acid, 788, 808
  - preparation, 967
  - reactions, 967
- Chloroalkanes, 101 (*See also* Alkyl chlorides)
- m*-Chloroaniline, 1 890, 1 918
  - o*-Chloroaniline, 1 890, 1 918, 1 949
  - p*-Chloroaniline, 1 890, 1 918
  - methanesulfonyl chloride, 152
  - nitrobenzene, 1 810
  - nitrochlorobenzene, 1 810
  - 2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoate, 1 849
- Chlorobenzene, 586, 1 993, 1 999, 1017
  - nitrobenzene, 1 596
  - preparation, 577, 605
  - reactions, 618–620, 893, 961, 992, 1000, 1001
  - resonance, 997
- m*-Chlorobenzenediazonium hydrogen sulfate, 965
- 2-Chlorobenzenesulfonamide, 1 949
- p*-Chlorobenzenesulfonic acid, 587
- m*-Chlorobenzonitrile, 752
- o*-Chlorobenzoic acid, 1 776, 1 796, 1 810
- o*-Chlorobenzoic acid, 1 776, 1 796, 809, 991, 1017
- p*-Chlorobenzoic acid, 1 776, 1 796, 809
- m*-Chlorobenzyl alcohol, 752
- cis*-2-Chloro-*cis*-2-bromobicyclo[3.1.0]hexane, 1211
- 1-Chlorobutane, 102 (*See also n*-Butyl chloride)
- 2-Chlorobutane, 102 (*See also sec*-Butyl chloride)
  - 3-Chloro-2-butanol, 368
  - 3-Chloro-1-butene, 413, 419
  - 1-Chloro-2-butene, 1 199, 413, 430
  - cis*-1-Chloro-2-butene, 277
  - 3-Chloro-2-butene, 1 199, 430
  - 3-Chloro-2-butyl free radical, 156–157
  - $\alpha$ -Chlorobutyric acid, 1 796
  - $\beta$ -Chlorobutyric acid, 1 796
  - Chlorocarbonic acid, 840
  - Chlorocyclopropane, 166, 169
  - 2-Chloro-2,3-dimethylbutane, 259
  - 3-Chloro-2,3-dimethyl-2-butanol, 746
  - Chloroethane, 102 (*See also* Ethyl chloride)
  - 1-Chloroethane, 90
  - 2-Chloroethanol, 198 (*See also* Ethylene chlorohydrin)
  - Chloroethene, 277
  - o*-Chloroethylbenzene, 1018
  - (1-Chloroethyl)benzene, 158, 638 (*See also*  $\alpha$ -Phenylethyl chloride)
  - Chloroform, 47, 1 199
    - addition to alkenes, 377
    - test for alkylbenzenes, 667
  - 1-Chloro-2-halopropane, 261
  - 1-Chlorohexane, 1018
  - 4-Chloro-2-hexene, 430
  - 2-Chloro-3-hexene, 430
  - Chlorohydrins, 367
  - 2-Chlorohydroquinone, 1184
  - 1-Chloro-1-iodoethane, 347, 992
  - Chloriodomethanesulfonic acid, 129, 131, 139
  - enantiomers, 129
  - 2-Chloro-2-iodopropane, 562
  - Chloromethane, 46–48 (*See also* Methyl chloride)
    - 1-Chloro-2-methylaziridine, 892
    - 1-Chloro-2-methylbutane, 154
    - chirality, 152
    - photochemical halogenation of *S*-(+)-isomer, 160
  - 2-Chloro-2-methylbutane, 353, 355 (*See also tert*-Pentyl chloride)
  - 2-Chloro-3-methylbutane, 353
  - n*-Chloro- $\alpha$ -methylbutyric acid, 777
  - 1-Chloro-1-methylcyclopentane, 197
  - 1-Chloromethylnaphthalene, 1241
  - 3-Chloro-2-methylpentane, 140
  - m*-Chloro-*N*-methylphenethylamine, 1017
  - o*-Chloro-*N*-methylphenethylamine, 1017
  - 1-Chloro-2-methylpropane, 102, 197 (*See also* Isobutyl chloride)
  - 2-Chloro-2-methylpropane, 102 (*See also tert*-Butyl chloride)
  - Chloromycetin, 135
  - 1-Chloronaphthalene, 1 1231, 1241
  - 2-Chloronaphthalene, 1 1231
  - 1-Chloro-2-naphthol, 1264
  - m*-Chloronitrobenzene, 587, 991, 1 993, 1005
    - preparation, 994
    - o*-Chloronitrobenzene, 1 993, 1001, 1005
    - p*-Chloronitrobenzene, 1 993, 1000, 1004–1005
  - 2-Chloro-4-nitrophenol, 587
  - 4-Chloro-2-nitrotoluene, 599
  - 4-Chloro-3-nitrotoluene, 599
  - Chloronium ions, 367
  - m*-Chlorophenol, 1 958
    - preparation, 965
    - o*-Chlorophenol, 957, 1 958
    - p*-Chlorophenol, 1 958
    - p*-Chlorophenoxyacetic acid, 1 810
    - p*-Chlorophenoxyacetamide, 1 810
    - p*-Chlorophenoxyacetanilide, 1 810
  - Chlorophenylbutanes, 669
  - 3-(*p*-Chlorophenyl)butanoic acid, 777
  - 1-Chloro-1-phenylethane, 642 (*See also*  $\alpha$ -Phenylethyl chloride)
  - 2-Chloro-1-phenylethane, 642 (*See also*  $\beta$ -Phenylethyl chloride)
  - o*-Chlorophenyl phenyl sulfide, 496
  - Chlorophyll, 1042, 1055, 1269
  - Chloroprene, 440
  - 1-Chloropropane, 102 (*See also n*-Propyl chloride)
  - 2-Chloropropane, 102, 197 (*See also* Isopropyl chloride)
  - 2-Chloro-1-propanol, derivatives, 1 530
  - 1-Chloro-2-propanol, 261, 328 (*See also* Propylene chlorohydrin)
    - derivatives, 1 530
    - preparation, 367
  - 2-Chloropropene, 562
  - 3-Chloro-1-propene (*See* Allyl chloride)
  - $\beta$ -Chloropropionaldehyde, 1174
  - $\alpha$ -Chloropropionic acid, 809
  - 3-Chloropropyne, 1 199
  - 4-Chloropyridine, 1016
  - p*-Chlorostyrene, 665
  - $\alpha$ -Chlorotoluene, 613 (*See also* Benzyl chloride)
  - m*-Chlorotoluene, 1 993
    - nitration, 600
  - o*-Chlorotoluene, 638, 640, 934, 1 993, 994
    - preparation, 934
  - p*-Chlorotoluene, 599, 1 993
    - preparation, 638, 640
  - 2'-Chloro-*p*-toluenesulfonanilide, 1 949
  - Cholecalciferol, 1229
  - Cholestane-3 $\beta$ ,6 $\alpha$ -diol, 472
  - 3-Cholestanol, 489
  - 3-Cholestanone, 489, 527
  - 2-Cholestene, 484
  - Cholesterol, 441, 472, 480, 484, 1166
    - aromatization, 1239
    - biogenesis, 441
  - Choline, 949, 1049
  - Choline phosphoglyceride, 1049
  - Chromatography, 1128
  - Chromic anhydride, test for alcohols, 388, 5

- Chromium(VI), 504  
 Chrysene, *t* 1231, 1239  
 Chymotrypsin  
    $\alpha$ -structure, 1143, 1148  
   action, 1144–1152, 1166  
 Chymotrypsinogen, 1131, 1148  
 Cinchonine, 159  
 Cinnamaldehyde, 754, *t* 1172, 1173  
   synthesis, 862, 872  
 Cinnamic acid, *t* 1172, 1176  
   synthesis, 873  
 Cinnamyl alcohol, 754  
   physical constants, *t* 457  
   preparation, 754  
   reactions, 546  
 Cinnamylidenetriphenylphosphorane, 874  
*cis*- and *trans*-isomers (See Geometric isomers)  
 Citral, 983, 1187  
 Citric acid, 1166  
 Citronellol, 441  
 Claisen condensation, 832, 873, 875–878  
   crossed, 878  
   nucleophilic acyl substitution in, 863–864  
 Cleavage  
   acid-catalyzed, 546, 548  
      $S_N2$ , 551  
   by acids, 539  
   of alkenes, 384  
   of alkynes, 450  
   base-catalyzed, 547, 549  
   of bonds, 21  
   of C—OH bond, 489  
   of cycloalkenes, 386  
   of dienes, 450  
   of epoxides, 546–547, 548–552  
   of esters, 833, 836  
   of ethers, 539–540  
   of ketones, 753  
   of ozonolysis, 384–386  
   by periodic acid, 523–524  
   by permanganate, 385  
 Clemmensen reduction, 631, 742, 749, 754, 1250  
 Coal, 1, 630  
   in manufacture of acetylene, 558  
   as source of aromatic compounds, 630  
 Coal gas, 630  
 Coal tar, 630  
   as source of carboxylic acids, 781  
 Cocaine, 158  
 Coconut oil, *t* 1041  
 Cod liver oil, *t* 1041  
 Codons, 1165  
 Coenzyme A, 950  
 Coenzymes, 1137, 1138  
 Coke, 558, 630  
 Collagen, 1134, 1142, 1143  
 Collision energy, 61  
 Collision frequency, 59–62  
 Collisions, 55  
 Combustion of hydrocarbons, 46, 115–116  
 Competition (See Method of competition)  
 Concentration, and reaction rates, 212–213  
 Concerted reactions, 1204–1223  
 Condensation polymerization, 438  
 Conessine, 527  
 Configuration  
   absolute, 153, 1076, 1077–1079  
   of aldoses, 1071–1073  
   of amino acids, 1122–1123  
   of carbohydrates, 1066–1079, 1083  
   *cis* and *trans*, 272  
   *D* and *L*, 1073–1075, 1078  
   definition, 137  
   *E*, 274–275  
   of (+)-glucose, 1066–1071  
     inversion of, 217, 218, 221  
     and optical rotation, 139, 1084–1085  
     *F* and *S*, 115, 116, 131, 134, 1111  
     relative, 153  
     retention of, 906  
     sequence rules for, 138–141, 145–146  
     x-ray analysis, 138  
     *Z* and *E*, 274–275  
 Configurational isomers, definition, 147  
 Conformation  
   *anti*, 84, 306  
   boat, 176, 177, 178  
   chair, 176, 178, 182, 185  
   definition, 81  
   eclipsed, 81  
   envelope, 191  
   *gauche*, 84  
   half-chair, 178  
   NMR and, 724, 1094–1095  
   skew, 81  
   stability, factors affecting, 175  
   staggered, 81  
   twist-boat, 176–178  
 Conformational analysis, 81–82, 84–85, 123, 146–148  
   aldoses, 1089–1091  
   amulose, 1108  
   angle strain, 175  
   anomeric effect, 1091  
   butanes, 84–85  
   cyclobutane, 179  
   cyclohexane, 175–179  
   derivatives, 184–191, 299–301  
   cyclopentane, 179–180  
   decalin, 1237–1238  
   1,3-diaxial interaction, 180  
   1,2-dimethylcyclohexanes, 184–188  
   dipole-dipole interaction, 175  
   *E2* elimination, 307  
   ethane, 81–82  
   factors in, 175  
   *D*-(+)-glucose, 1089–1091  
   methylcyclohexane, 180–182  
   NMR and, 724, 1094–1095  
   proteins, 1138  
   pyranoses, 1089  
   torsional strain, 82  
   van der Waals strain, 85  
 Conformational effects, 308–309  
 Conformational isomers, definition of, 146–147  
 Conformers, 146  
 Coniferyl alcohol, 986  
 Conjugated double bonds, 1177  
   in alkenylbenzenes, 664  
   ultraviolet absorption band shift, 682, 689  
   in  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds, 869  
 Conjugated proteins, 1136–1138  
 Conjugation, 395–454  
 Conrotatory motion, 1206  
 Coordination polymerization, 443–446  
 Coordination sphere, 336  
 Cope reaction, 873, 1023  
 Cope rearrangement, 1218  
 Copolymerization, 442  
 Copolymers, 442  
 Copper chromite, 839  
 Copper phthalocyanine, 1269  
 Corey, E. J., 99  
 Corey-House synthesis, 99–100  
 Corey, Robert B., 1138  
 Corn oil, *t* 1041  
 $\alpha$ -Corticotropin, 1127  
 Cortisone, 481, 1183  
 Corynebacterium diphtherium, 1052  
 Corynomicolenic acid, 1052

- Cottonseed oil, *t* 1041  
 Coulson, C. A., 5, 174  
 Coumarane, 984  
 Coupling, of diazonium salts, 933, 936, 969  
 Coupling constants, 710  
 Covalent bonds (*See* Bonds)  
 Cracking, 94, 117  
 Crafts, James, 632  
 Cram, Donald J., 654, 656  
*m*-Cresol, 957, *t* 958, 969  
*o*-Cresol, 935, *t* 958, 969, 975  
*p*-Cresol, 599, *t* 958, 965, 967  
   infrared spectrum, 980  
 Cresols, industrial source, 630  
*m*-Cresyl acetate, 969  
 Crick, F. H. C., 1163, 1164, 1165  
 Crisco, 1046  
 Crotonaldehyde, 870, *t* 1172, 1173, 1285  
   synthesis, 862, 869  
*trans*-Crotonamide, *t* 810  
*trans*-Crotonanilide, *t* 810  
*trans*-Crotonic acid, *t* 810, *t* 1172, 1174, 1178  
 Crotonyl-S-ACP, 1161  
 Crotyl alcohol, *t* 457  
 Crotyl chloride, *t* 199  
 Crotyl iodide, *t* 199  
 Crown ethers, 542, 983  
 Crystallinity  
   degree of, 447  
   of polymers, 445-450  
 Crystallites, 447  
 Crystal structure  
   of macromolecules; 446  
   and melting points, 26  
   and physical properties, 993  
 Cubane, 167  
 3-Cumaranone, 984  
 Cumene, *t* 629, 961, 962  
 Cumene hydroperoxide, 962  
   rearrangement, 961, 962  
 Cumulated double bonds, 424  
 Cupric bromide, 1031  
 Curtius rearrangement, 905  
 Cyanamide, 839, 842  
 Cyanic acid, 839  
 Cyanides (*See* Nitriles)  
 Cyanoacetic ester, reactions, 1023  
 3-Cyano-1,3-diphenyl-1-propanone, 1176  
 Cyanohydrins, 750, 755  
   formation, 750  
 $\beta$ -Cyanopyridine, 1288  
 $\alpha$ -Cyano-*m*-toluic acid, 1017  
 7-Cyano-7-trifluoromethylnorcaradiene, 1211  
 7-Cyano-7-trifluoromethyltropyldene, 1211  
 Cyclic anhydrides, 825  
 Cyclic bromonium ions, 360, 364-367  
 Cyclic compounds (*See* Alicyclic hydrocarbons,  
   Arenes, Aromatic compounds,  
   Heterocyclic compounds)  
 Cyclic esters, 829 (*See also* Lactones)  
 Cyclic ethers, 540-544 (*See also* Epoxides)  
 Cyclic halonium ions, 360, 366-367, 552  
 Cyclic mercurinium ions, 469, 552  
 Cyclization, 168, 1249  
   cycloaddition, 1212-1217  
   electrocyclic reactions, 1204-1222  
 Cycloaddition reactions  
   definition, 169  
   Diels-Alder reaction, 1182-1184  
   and orbital symmetry, 1212-1217  
 Cycloalkanes, 93, *t* 165, 166 (*See also* Alicyclic  
   hydrocarbons)  
   analysis, 189  
 Cyclobutane, *t* 165, 166  
   conformations, 179  
   reactions, 169-170  
 1,3-Cyclobutanedicarboxylic acid, 183  
 Cyclobutenes, electrocyclic reactions, 1204-1222  
 Cyclodecane, puckered ring, 173  
*trans,cis,cis*-Cyclodeca-1,3,5-triene, 1211  
 Cyclodextrins, formation, 111  
   uses, 1112  
 Cycloheptane, *t* 165  
 1,3,5-Cycloheptatriene, 1290  
 Cycloheptatrienyl anion, 584  
 Cycloheptatrienyl cation (Tropylium ion)  
   electronic configuration, 585, 1199  
   molecular orbitals, 1201  
    $\pi$  electrons, 584, 1199  
 Cycloheptatrienyl radical, 584  
 Cyclohexadiene, 578  
 1,3-Cyclohexadiene, 429, 579  
   reactions, 1183, 1185  
 Cyclohexane, *t* 165, 166, 168  
   analysis, 189  
   axial bonds, 179-182  
   conformational analysis, 175-179, 718-719  
   derivatives, conformational analysis, 184-191  
   stereoisomerism, 182-191  
   equatorial bonds, 179-182  
   heat of combustion, 171-172  
   industrial source, 168  
   NMR spectrum, 718-719  
   puckered ring, 173  
 Cyclohexanecarboxylic acid, 775, *t* 776  
 1,2-Cyclohexanediol diacetate, 497  
*trans*-1,2-Cyclohexanediol diacetate, 498  
 Cyclohexanol, 198, 259, *t* 457, 488, 901  
   industrial source, 168  
   NMR spectrum, 714  
   reactions, 487, 488, 901  
 Cyclohexanone, 488, 566, 901, 1181  
   preparation, 488, 901  
   reactions, 863, 1033  
 Cyclohexene, 277, 399, *t* 577, 578, 579  
   preparation, 487, 901  
 Cyclohexene oxide, 525  
 4-Cyclohexenol, 277  
 Cyclohexen-1-yl triflate, 566  
 Cyclohexylamine, *t* 889  
   preparation, 901  
 Cyclohexyl bromide, *t* 199, 259 (*See also*  
   Bromocyclohexane)  
 Cyclohexyl brosylate, 499  
 Cyclohexyl chloride, *t* 199  
   hydrolysis and neighboring group effects, 496  
 Cyclohexyl tosylate, 498-499  
*cis,cis*-Cyclonona-1,3-diene, 1226  
*cis,cis,cis*-Cyclonona-1,3,5-triene, 1211  
*cis,cis,trans*-Cyclonona-1,3,5-triene, 1211  
 Cyclooctadecanone, 1200  
*cis,cis*-Cycloocta-1,3-diene, 1224  
*cis,trans*-Cycloocta-1,3-diene, 1224  
 1,5-Cyclooctadiene, reactions, 1031  
 Cyclooctane, *t* 165  
*cis*-1,4-Cyclooctanediol, 1035  
*cis*-1,5-Cyclooctanediol, 1035  
 1,3,5,7-Cyclooctatetraene, 587  
 Cyclooctatetraenyl dianion, 1199  
 1,3,5-Cyclooctatriene, 1223  
 1,3-Cyclopentadiene, 1181, 1217  
 Cyclopentadienyl anion  
   electronic configuration, 585, 1200-1201  
   molecular orbitals, 1201  
 Cyclopentadienyl cation  
   electronic configuration, 584, 1201  
   molecular orbitals, 1200, 1201  
 Cyclopentadienyl free radical (*continues*)



- electronic configuration, 584, 1200–1202  
 molecular orbitals, 1201  
 Cyclopentane, *t* 165, 166, 169, 750  
   conformational analysis, 179  
   derivatives, conformational analysis, 407–408  
   preparation, 750  
   stereoisomerism, 182–184  
 Cyclopentanecarboxylic acid, 1023  
 1,3-Cyclopentanedicarboxylic acid, 183  
 1,2-Cyclopentanediol  
   *cis*- and *trans*-isomers, 182–191, 198  
   chirality, 183–184  
 Cyclopentanol, 287, *t* 457  
   preparation, 749, 754  
 Cyclopentanone, 749, 750, 754, 822–823  
   formation, 823  
   reactions, 749, 754  
 Cyclopentene, 277  
   reactions, 287, 546, 1031  
 Cyclopentene oxide, 546  
 B-Cyclopentyl-9-BBN, 1031  
 Cyclopentenyl cation, 1211  
 Cyclopentyl tosylate, 287  
 Cyclopropane, *t* 165, 166, 169  
   preparation, 168  
   reactions, 169–170  
 Cyclopropanecarboxylic acid, 1023  
 Cyclopropenones, 1203  
 Cyclopropenyl anion, 1202  
 Cyclopropenyl cation, 1199, 1202  
 Cyclopropenyl free radical, 1202  
 Cyclopropyl anion, 1211  
 Cyclopropyl cation, 1210  
 Cycloreversions, 1216  
*p*-Cymene, *t* 629  
 (–)-Cysteine, *t* 1118  
 (–)-Cystine, *t* 1118  
 Cytochrome *c*, 1145  
 Cytosine, 1163  
   in nucleic acids, 1163, 1164, 1165
- ## D
- d*, prefix, 1073–1075, 1078  
*d*, prefix, 1074  
 2,4-D (2,4-Dichlorophenoxyacetic acid), 973  
 Dacron, 448, 844, 926  
 "Dansyl" method, 1130  
 DDQ, 1265  
 DDT, 1016  
 Decahydronaphthalene, 1235 (*See also* Decalin)  
 Decalin, *t* 1231, 1237–1238  
   conformations, 191  
   preparation, 1235, 1237  
   reactions, 1238  
*cis*-Decalin, *t* 1231  
*trans*-Decalin, *t* 1231  
*n*-Decane, *t* 92  
*cis*, *cis*, *cis*, *cis*, *trans*-Deca-1,3,5,7,9-pentaene, 1224  
 Decarbonylation, 1272  
 Decarboxylation  
   of aromatic acids, 789  
   of  $\beta$ -ketoacids and malonic acids, 1026–1027  
 2,4,6,8-Decatetraene, 1210  
 1-Decene, *t* 278  
*n*-Decyl alcohol, *t* 457  
 1-Decyne, *t* 558  
 5-Decyne, *t* 558  
 Degradation  
   amines (*See* Exhaustive methylation)  
   Hofmann (*See* Hofmann degradation)  
   by oxidation, 385  
   by ozonolysis, 384–385  
   Ruff (*See* Ruff degradation)  
   Dehalogenation, of vicinal dihalides, 282  
   Dehydration  
     acid-catalyzed, 319  
     of alcohols, 281, 282, 313, 318, 320–322  
       mechanism, 319  
       order of reactivity, 318  
     of aldol products, 869–870  
     reversible, 320  
     reversibility of, 322  
   Dehydrobenzene, 1009 (*See also* Benzyne)  
   7-Dehydrocholesterol, 1229  
   Dehydrogenation  
     of alicyclic hydrocarbons, 167  
     of hydroaromatic compounds, 1238–1240  
     industrial, 630, 663  
   Dehydrogenation enzymes, 1137  
   Dehydrohalogenation  
     of alkyl dihalides, 559, 560  
     of alkyl halides, 281, 283–287  
     E2, 302  
     kinetics of, 288  
     order of reactivity in, 302  
     orientation of, 302  
     use in synthesis, 1173  
     of vicinal dihalides, 560  
   Delocalization energy, 406 (*See also* Resonance energy)  
   Demercuration, 468, 538  
   Denaturation  
     of nucleic acids, 1135  
     of proteins, 1134  
   Denatured alcohol, 464 (*See also* Ethyl alcohol)  
   D,L-Dendroketose, 1094  
   Deoxyribonucleic acids, 1162–1167 (*See also* DNA)  
   D-2-Deoxyribose, 1162  
   Derivative, definition, 118  
   Desulfonation, 605  
     of naphthalenes, 1245  
   Detergents, 1045  
     biodegradable, 1046  
     manufacture, 446  
     non-ionic, 1045–1046  
     solubility and cleansing power, 32, 1046  
   o-Deuteriobromobenzene, 1011  
    $\alpha$ -Deuterioethylbenzene, 130, 132  
    $\alpha$ -Deuterioethylbromide, 139  
   o-Deuteriofluorobenzene, 1011  
   3-Deuterioindene, 1220  
   2-Deuterioisobutane, 114  
   Deuterium (*See also* Hydrogen)  
     exchange, 869  
     isotope effects, 610  
     labeling for NMR spectra, 715  
     labeling for reaction studies, 114–115, 1011  
     separation, 114  
   Deuterium oxide, 114  
   Dewar, James, benzene structure, 575, 999, 1228  
   Dewar, M. J. S., 428–429  
   Dextran, 1110  
   Dextrorotatory, definition, 127  
   Dextrose, 1103  
   DHP (Dihydropyran), 541, 849  
   Diacetamide, 926  
   Diacetone alcohol  
     from aldol condensation, 862, 867  
     dehydration, 869  
   Diacylglycerol phosphate, 1047  
   Dialkylacetoacetic esters, 1023–1025  
   Dialkylmalonic esters, 1020–1021  
   Diamides, 844  
   1,6-Diaminohexane, 896  
   1,2-Diaminonaphthalene, 1262  
   1,3-Diaminonaphthalene, 1262  
   1,5-Diaminonaphthalene, 1262



- 2,4-Diaminophenol (Amido), 982  
 3,3'-Diaminospiro[3.3]heptane, 190  
 2,3-Diaminotoluene, 1288  
 Diamond, structure, 167, 1232  
 Diastase, 1097  
 Diastereomers, 123, 130, 141-143, 159, 220  
   comparison of properties, 143  
   definition, 142  
   formation, by generation of second chiral center, 154-157  
   geometric isomers as, 272, 274  
   in resolution, 157-159  
   (See also Anomers, Epimers)  
 Diastereoselectivity, 275, 339-342  
 Diastereospecificity, 275, 339-342  
 Diastereotopic faces, 505, 515  
 Diastereotopic ligands, 505, 513  
 Diastereotopic protons, 693  
 1,3-Diaxial interactions, 180-182  
 1,8-Diazaphenanthrene, 1288  
 Diazo coupling, 595, 936  
 Diazoacyclopentadiene-2-carboxylic acid, sodium salt, 1190  
 Diazomethane, 378  
 Diazonium fluoroborates, 936  
 Diazonium hexafluorophosphates, 936  
 Diazonium salts, 994  
   coupling, 933, 936, 940-943  
   preparation, 931, 933  
   reactions, 933, 994  
   replacement, 933  
 Dibenzalacetone, *t* 1172, 1185  
 Dibenzo[*a,h*]anthracene, *t* 1231, 1260  
 Diborane, 470  
 3,5-Dibromo-4-aminotoluene, 928  
*m*-Dibromobenzene, 580, 587, *t* 993  
*o*-Dibromobenzene, 580, 587, *t* 993  
*p*-Dibromobenzene, 580, 587, *t* 993  
 2,6-Dibromobenzenediazonium chloride, 1016  
 1,4-Dibromobutane, 1275  
 2,3-Dibromobutane, 362, 490, 491  
   dehalogenation, 282  
   stereochemistry of formation  
     from 2-butenes, 361-367  
     from 3-bromo-2-butanols, 490-492  
*meso*-2,3-Dibromobutane, 363, 364, 366  
*rac*-2,3-Dibromobutane, 362  
*S,S*-2,3-Dibromobutane, 364  
 3,4-Dibromo-1-butene, 430  
 1,4-Dibromo-2-butene, 430  
 2 $\beta$ ,3 $\alpha$ -Dibromocholestane, 484  
 1,2-Dibromocyclopentane, 183  
 9,10-Dibromo-9,10-dihydroanthracene, 1254  
 9,10-Dibromo-9,10-dihydrophenanthrene, 1254  
 4,8-Dibromo-1,5-diiodonaphthalene, 1262  
 1,3-Dibromo-1,3-dimethylcyclobutane, 723  
 1,1-Dibromoethane, *t* 199  
   NMR spectrum, 701-702, 705  
 1,2-Dibromoethane, *t* 199, 359, 361  
   *cis*- and *trans*-isomers, 273  
 1,2-Dibromoethylene, 279  
 5 $\alpha$ ,6 $\beta$ -Dibromo-3 $\beta$ -hydroxycholestane, 484  
 Dibromomethane, *t* 199  
 4,6-Dibromo-2-methylphenol, 975  
 1,2-Dibromo-2-methylpropane, 359  
   NMR spectrum, 707  
 2,6-Dibromo-4-nitroaniline, 940  
 2,6-Dibromo-4-nitrobenzenediazonium hydrogen sulfate, 940  
 4,5-Dibromo-1-pentene, 429  
 1,2-Dibromo-1-phenylethane, 709  
 1,2-Dibromopropane, 327, 359, 559  
 1,2-Dibromopropene, 562  
 3,5-Dibromopyridine, 1278  
 Di-*n*-butylamine, 924  
   reactions, 912  
*N,N*-Di-*n*-butylbenzenesulfonamide, 924  
 Dicarboxylic acids, 801-803  
   acidity, 803  
   physical constants, *t* 802  
   preparation, 802  
 Dichloroacetic acid, *t* 796  
   preparation, 788, 800  
   relative acidity, 796  
 2,4-Dichloroaniline, 935  
 2,6-Dichlorobenzaldehyde, 1035  
 2,5-Dichlorobenzamide, *t* 810  
*m*-Dichlorobenzene, 935, *t* 993  
*o*-Dichlorobenzene, *t* 993  
*p*-Dichlorobenzene, *t* 993  
 2,4-Dichlorobenzenediazonium hydrogen sulfate, 935  
 2,5-Dichlorobenzoic acid, *t* 810  
 1,2-Dichlorobutane, chirality, 151  
 1,4-Dichlorobutane, 896  
 2,3-Dichlorobutane, 143-146, 154-157  
   *meso*-2,3-Dichlorobutane, 155, 156  
 Dichlorocarbene, 381, 977-978  
 2,2'-Dichlorodiethyl sulfide, 495-496  
 1,2-Dichloro-1,1-difluoroethane, NMR spectrum, 707  
 3,3-Dichloro-1,2-dimethylcyclopropane, 381  
 1,2-Dichloroethane, *t* 199, 899 (See also Ethylene chloride)  
   conformational analysis, 162-163  
   geometric isomerism, 273  
 1,2-Dichloroethene, 279  
   geometric isomerism, 273  
 $\alpha,\alpha'$ -Dichloroglutaric acid, 802  
 Dichloromethane, 47, *t* 199 (See also Methylene chloride)  
 1,2-Dichloro-2-methylbutane, 160  
 1,2-Dichloro-3-methylbutane, 140  
 2,3-Dichloro-3-methylpentane, 90  
 2,3-Dichloronorbormane, 307  
*endo-cis*-2,3-Dichloronorbormane, 307  
*trans*-2,3-Dichloronorbormane, 307  
 2,3-Dichloropentane, 141-142, 145  
 2,4-Dichloropentanedioic acid, 802  
 2,4-Dichlorophenoxyacetic acid, 973  
 1,2-Dichloropropane, 397  
   conformations, 717-718  
   NMR signals, 692  
 1,3-Dichloropropane, 168, 170  
 3,4-Dichloro-1,2,3,4-tetramethylcyclobutene, 1202  
 Di( $\beta$ -cyanoethyl)amine, 1178  
 Dicyclopentadiene, 1217  
 Dicyclopentadienyliron, 585  
 Dieckmann condensation, 873, 877  
 Dielectric constant, 32  
 Diels-Alder reaction, 1185, 1186, 1227  
   orbital symmetry, 1212-1217  
   stereochemistry, 1212-1213  
*retro*-Diels-Alder reactions, 1227  
 Diels' hydrocarbon, 1239  
 Dienes, 424  
   allenes, *t* 425  
   stability, 426  
   stereochemistry, 452  
   analysis, 450  
   conjugated, 424, 427-450  
     1,2- vs. 1,4-addition, 430-434  
     bonds in, 426-429  
     cycloaddition, 1182, 1212  
     Diels-Alder reaction, 1212-1217  
     ease of formation, 429  
     electrocyclic reactions, 1204-1212

- electronic configuration, 1196–1198  
 electrophilic addition, 429–434  
   orientation, 430–434  
   rate vs. equilibrium, 432–434  
 free-radical addition, orientation, 435  
   reactivity, 435  
 molecular orbitals, 1196–1198  
 polymerization, 439–440  
 resonance, 426–427  
 sigmatropic reactions, 1218–1223  
 stability, 424–425, 428–429  
 heats of hydrogenation, *t* 425  
 nomenclature, 424  
 stability, 425, 428–429  
 structure, 428–429  
   and properties, 424–425  
 Dienophile, 1182  
 Diethylamine, *t* 889, 909  
 Diethyl benzylidenemalonate, 873  
 1,2-Diethylcyclopentene, 471  
 Diethylene glycol, 548  
 Diephyl ether, 35, 41, *t* 458, 533–535, *t* 534  
   absolute ether, 535–536  
   hazards, 536  
   industrial source, 534–535  
   preparation, 535  
   as solvent, 534  
 3,3-Diethyl-5-isopropyl-4-methyloctane, 90  
 N,N-Diethyl-*o*-toluidine, *t* 949  
*o*-, *m*-, and *p*-Difluorobenzene, *t* 993  
 1,2-Difluorotetrachloroethane, NMR spectrum, 719  
 3,3-Difluoro-2,2,3-tribromopropanenitrile, NMR spectrum, 719  
 Diglyme, 470  
 Dihalocarbenes, 381  
 9,10-Dihydroanthracene  
   preparation, 1253  
   reactions, 1255  
 Dihydromyrcene, 453  
 1,4-Dihydronaphthalene, *t* 1231, 1237  
   preparation, 1235, 1237  
 9,10-Dihydronaphthalene, 1224, 1225  
 Dihydropentalene, 1264  
 Dihydrophellandric acid, 985  
 9,10-Dihydrophenanthrene, 1253  
 Dihydropyran (DHP), 849  
 2,3-Dihydro-4H-pyran (DHP), 541  
 1,2-Dihydroquinoline, 1285  
 Dihydroxyacetone, 1167  
 Dihydroxybenzene (See Catechol, Hydroquinone, Resorcinol)  
 3,4-Dihydroxybenzoic acid, 986  
 2,4-Dihydroxyphenyl *n*-pentyl ketone, 969  
*o*-, *m*-, and *p*-Diiodobenzene, *t* 993  
 1,1-Diiodoethane, *t* 199  
 1,2-Diiodoethane, *t* 199  
 1,2-Diiodoethene, 279  
 Diiodomethane, *t* 199  
 Diisocyanates, 845  
 Diisopropyl ether, 265, 533, *t* 534  
 $\beta$ -Diketones, 1035  
 Dimerization, 370  
   of alkenes, 328, 370–371  
 Dimers, 370  
 3,4-Dimethoxybenzaldehyde, 752  
 3,4-Dimethoxybenzyl alcohol, 752  
 Dimethylacetoacetic acid, decarboxylation, 1027  
 Dimethylacetylene (See 2-Butyne)  
 Dimethylallyl pyrophosphate, 453–454  
 Dimethylamine, 887, *t* 889  
   industrial preparation, 893  
   reactions, 912  
   synthesis, 1001  
*p*-(Dimethylamino)azobenzene, 914  
 3 $\beta$ -Dimethylaminoconanin-6-one, 527  
 3 $\beta$ -Dimethylaminocon-5-enine, 527  
 N,N-Dimethylaminocyclohexane, 909  
 4-(Dimethylamino)-3-methyl-1-butene, 920  
 5-(Dimethylamino)-1-pentene, 920  
 Dimethylammonium nitrate, 912  
 2,4-Dimethylaniline, *t* 890, 909  
 N,N-Dimethylaniline, 887, *t* 890, 894, 902, 909  
   reactions, 912, 914  
 N,N-Dimethylaminium acetate, 912  
 2,9-Dimethylantracene, 1256  
 1,2-Dimethylantraquinone, 1256  
 1,3-Dimethylantraquinone, 1256  
 1,4-Dimethylantraquinone, 1256  
 N,N-Dimethylbenzamide, 924  
 7,12-Dimethylbenz[a]anthracene, 1260  
 Dimethylbicyclo[4.3.0]nonadienes, 1223  
 3,3-Dimethyl-2-bromobutane, 311  
 2,3-Dimethyl-1,3-butadiene, *t* 425  
 2,2-Dimethylbutane, *t* 92  
 2,3-Dimethylbutane, *t* 92  
 2,3-Dimethyl-2,3-butanediol, 744 (See also Pinacol)  
 2,2-Dimethylbutanoic acid, 783  
 3,3-Dimethyl-1-butanol, preparation, 465, 471  
 2,3-Dimethyl-2-butanol, 831  
 3,3-Dimethyl-2-butanol, 310  
   dehydration, 321  
   preparation, 465, 468  
 3,3-Dimethyl-2-butanone, 862  
 2,3-Dimethyl-1-butene, 310, 311, 321  
   heat of hydrogenation, *t* 332  
 3,3-Dimethyl-1-butene, 244, 276, 353, 539  
   heat of hydrogenation, *t* 332  
 2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene, *t* 278, 310, 311, 321  
   heat of hydrogenation, *t* 332  
 2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene, epoxide, 746  
 Dimethyl *sec*-butylamine, 888  
 3,3-Dimethyl-2-butyl cation, rearrangement, 240–241  
 3,3-Dimethyl-1-butyne, *t* 558  
 N,N-Dimethyl-*o*-chloroaniline, *t* 949  
 3,4-Dimethylcyclobutene, 1205, 1207  
 5,6-Dimethyl-1,3-cyclohexadiene, 1205, 1210  
 1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane  
   chirality, 187  
   conformational analysis, 185–187  
   stability of isomers, 185–186  
 1,3-Dimethylcyclohexane, 166  
 1,2-Dimethylcyclohexene, 324  
 1,1-Dimethylcyclopentane, 166  
 1,2-Dimethylcyclopentane, *t* 165  
   industrial source, 167  
 2,5-Dimethylcyclopentanecarboxylic acid, 190  
 2,5-Dimethyl-1,1-cyclopentanedicarboxylic acid, 190, 850  
*cis*-1,2-Dimethylcyclopentanol, 471  
 1,2-Dimethylcyclopentene, 277  
 1,2-Dimethylcyclopropane  
   *cis*- and *trans*-isomers, 183  
   preparation, 379  
 Dimethyl ether, 39, *t* 534  
 Dimethylethylamine, 895  
 Dimethylformamide (DMF), 33, 249  
 N,N-Dimethylformamide  
   NMR spectrum, 1126  
   as solvent, 1022  
 2,5-Dimethylfuran, 1272, 1287  
 2,3-Di-*O*-methyl-D-glucose, 1110–1114  
 $\beta$ , $\beta$ -Dimethylglutaric acid, 802  
 2,2-Dimethylheptane, 97  
 1,1-Dimethyl-2-isopropenylcyclopentane, 453  
 1,5-Dimethylisoquinoline, 1288  
 1,4-Dimethylnaphthalene, 1251

- 1,6-Dimethylnaphthalene, 1251  
 1,7-Dimethylnaphthalene, 1251  
 2,6-Dimethylnaphthalene, 1247  
 Dimethyl-1-naphthylcarbinol, 1241  
 3,7-Dimethyl-3-octanol, 836  
 3,7-Dimethyl-3-octyl acetate, 836  
 Dimethylolurea, 844  
 2,2-Dimethyl-3-oxobutanol, 1033  
 3,3-Dimethylpentanedioic acid, 802  
 4,4-Dimethyl-1-pentene, *t* 332  
 Dimethyl-*tert*-pentylsulfonium ethoxide, 923  
 Dimethyl-*tert*-pentylsulfonium iodide, 923  
 1,4-Dimethylphenanthrene, 1257  
 1,9-Dimethylphenanthrene, 1257  
 4,9-Dimethylphenanthrene, 1257  
 2,2-Dimethylpropanol, 831 (*See also* Neopentyl alcohol)  
 2,5-Dimethylpyrrole, 1272  
 2,4-Dimethylquinoline, 1286  
 6,9-Dimethylspiro[4.4]nona-1,3-diene, 1223, 1227  
 Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), as solvent, 33, 249, 1002  
 2,5-Dimethylthiophene, 1272  
 $\alpha,\beta$ -Dimethylvaleric acid, 777  
 2,4-Dinitroaniline, *t* 890  
   preparation, 996, 1001  
 2,4-Dinitroanisole  
   preparation, 972  
   reactions, 1001  
 2,4-Dinitrobenzenediazonium chloride, 941  
 Dinitrobenzenes, separation, 1001  
 3,5-Dinitrobenzoates (*see specific alcohol, derivatives*)  
 2,4-Dinitrobenzoic acid, 777  
 3,5-Dinitrobenzoyl chloride, *t* 815  
   preparation, 797  
   reactions, 821  
 2,4-Dinitrobromobenzene, 1017  
 2,6-Dinitro-4-*tert*-butyl-3-methylanisole, 982  
 2,4-Dinitrochlorobenzene, *t* 993  
   reactions, 895, 966, 972, 996, 1000  
 4,4'-Dinitrodiphenylamine, 888  
 2,4-Dinitrofluorobenzene (DNFB)  
   reactions, 1017, 1146  
   in terminal residue analysis, 1129  
 1,2-Dinitronaphthalene, 1247  
 1,3-Dinitronaphthalene, 1247  
 1,4-Dinitronaphthalene, 1247  
 1,5-Dinitronaphthalene, 1232  
   preparation, 1247  
 1,8-Dinitronaphthalene, 1247  
 2,4-Dinitro-1-naphthol, 1246  
 2,4-Dinitro-1-naphthylamine, 1233  
   synthesis, 1247  
 2,4-Dinitrophenol, *t* 958, 972  
   preparation, 966, 996, 1000  
 N-Dinitrophenyl (DNP), 1129  
 N-(2,4-Dinitrophenyl)amino acid (DNP-AA), 1129  
 2,4-Dinitrophenyl ethyl ether, 996  
 2,4-Dinitrophenyl methyl ether, 972  
 2,4-Dinitrophenyl phenyl ether, 1017  
 1-(2,4-Dinitrophenyl)-2-phenylethylene, 873  
 2,4-Dinitrophenyl phosphate, 1051  
 2,4-Dinitrostilbene, 873  
 2,4-Dinitrotoluene, 873  
 2,6-Dinitrotoluene, 587  
 1,2-Diols (Glycols), 382-384  
   analysis, 523-524  
   preparation, 330, 382-384, 665  
   rearrangement, 744-746  
 1,4-Dioxane, *t* 534  
   industrial preparation, 541  
 Dipeptides, 1126 (*See also* Peptides)  
 Diphenylacetylene, *t* 629  
 $\alpha,\beta$ -Diphenylacrylonitrile, 873  
 Diphenylamine, 348, 888, *t* 889, 890, 909  
 1,4-Diphenyl-1,3-butadiene, 1216  
 2,3-Diphenyl-2,3-butanediol, 766  
 1,3-Diphenyl-2-buten-1-one, 870  
 Diphenylcarbinol, *t* 457  
 Diphenylcyclopropenone, 1203  
 1,1-Diphenyl-2,2-dimethyl-1,2-ethanediol, 746  
 1,2-Diphenylethane, 627, *t* 629  
   preparation, 632  
 1,1-Diphenyl-1,2-ethanediol, 746  
 1,1-Diphenylethene, preparation, 874  
 Diphenyl ether, *t* 534  
 1,1-Diphenylethylene, *t* 629, 874  
 2,5-Diphenylfuran, 1272  
 Diphenylmethane, 627, *t* 629, 632  
 Diphenylmethanol, 628  
 Diphenylmethyl bromide, *t* 199  
 Diphenylmethyl chloride, *t* 199  
 1,9-Diphenylphenanthrene, 1262  
 1,2-Diphenylpropene, 303-305  
 1,2-Diphenyl-1-propene, 303  
 E-1,2-Diphenyl-1-propene, 304  
 Z-1,2-Diphenyl-1-propene, 304  
 1,3-Diphenyl-2-propen-1-one, 863  
 1,3-Diphosphoglycerate, 1158, 1159  
 Diphosphopyridinenucleotide (*See* Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide)  
 Dipolar ions, 929  
   amino acids as, 1120-1121  
   phospholipids as, 1049  
 Dipole-dipole bonds, 244-245  
 Dipole-dipole interactions, 27, 175  
   in macromolecules, 446-450  
 Dipole moments, 23, *t* 23, *t* 999  
 Dipoles, 22  
 Di-*n*-propylamine, *t* 889  
 Di-*n*-propyl ether, *t* 534  
 Diradicals, 402  
 Disaccharides, 1097-1104 (*See also* Cellobiose, Lactose, Maltose, Sucrose)  
   definition, 1056  
 Disparlure, 572  
 Disrotatory motion, 1206-1212  
 Dissociation energy (*See* Bond dissociation energy and inside front cover)  
 Divinyl ether, *t* 534  
 DMF, 33, 249, 1022  
 DMSO, 33, 249, 1022  
 DNA, structure, 1161-1167  
   and genetics, 1164-1165  
 DNFB, 1017, 1146  
 DNP, 1129, 1146  
 DNP-AA, 1129  
*n*-Dodecane, *t* 92  
 Dodecanoic acid, 775  
 1-Dodecanol, 839  
 (Z)-8-Dodecen-1-yl acetate, 275  
 (E)-9-Dodecen-1-yl acetate, 275  
 (Z)-9-Dodecen-1-yl acetate, 275  
*n*-Dodecyl alcohol, *t* 457  
 6-Dodecyne, 559  
 Doebner reaction, 873  
 Doebner-von Miller synthesis, 1286  
 Double bonds (*See* Carbon-carbon double bonds, Carbonyl group)  
 Double helix, for DNA, 1163  
 Double irradiation in NMR spectroscopy, 714-715  
 Double resonance in NMR spectroscopy, 714-715  
 Dow process, 961  
 Driving oils, 1046-1047  
 Duck, D., 179  
 Dumas method, 589  
 Duprene, 440



Durene, *t* 629  
 du Vigneaud, Vincent, 1133  
 Dyes  
   anthraquinoid, 1256  
   azo, 942  
   use of naphthols, 1246  
 Dypnone, *t* 1172

## E

E1 mechanism  
   (See Elimination reactions)  
 E2 mechanism  
   (See Elimination reactions)  
 Eclipsed conformation, 81  
   in E2 elimination, 307  
 Edman, Pehr, 1129  
 Egg albumin, 1143  
*n*-Eicosane, *t* 92  
 Elastomers, 436  
   properties, 448  
 Electrocyclic reactions, 1204–1212  
 Electromagnetic radiation, absorption, 679–689  
   related to frequency, 679  
   wavelengths in, 679–680  
 Electromagnetic spectrum, 679–680  
 Electron density, 6  
 Electronegativity, 22, 915  
 Electronegativity series, 566  
 Electronic addition effect of substituent groups,  
   356–359  
 Electronic configuration, 7, 8, *t* 8, 1196–1199  
 Electronic effects (See also Inductive effects,  
   Resonance effects)  
   and acidity, 795–797  
   accommodation of charge, 234  
   in addition to carbonyl groups, 475  
   in amines, 918  
   in aromatic substitution, 612–621  
   and basicity, 915–918  
   in carbocations, 231–238  
   in carboxylic acids, 789–790  
   effect of substituent groups, 918  
   in electrophilic addition, 356–359, 1178  
   of functional groups, 1173–1174  
   in Hofmann degradation, 907–908  
   infrared absorption shift, 682  
   in naphthalenes, 1248  
   in nucleophilic addition, 747–748, 1178–1179  
   in nucleophilic aromatic substitution,  
     1001–1008  
   in  $S_N1$  reactions, 235–238, 1008  
   in  $S_N2$  reactions, 221–224, 1008  
 Electronic structure, 5, 40  
 Electronic transitions, 689  
 Electron-pair acceptor, 37  
 Electron-pair donor, 37  
 Electron paramagnetic resonance (See Electron  
   spin resonance)  
   spectra, 722  
 Electron release, 234  
 Electron sharing, 4–5 (See also Bonds)  
 Electron spin, 7, 648  
 Electron spin resonance (ESR) spectra, 675,  
   720–722  
 Electron spin resonance spectroscopy  
   of free radicals, 648  
   in reaction studies, 374  
 Electron transfer, 4  
 Electrophilic addition, 320, 326, 375, 416,  
   1174–1175, 1178–1179 (See also Addition  
   reactions)  
   absence of hydrogen exchange, 354  
   to alkenes, 350–373

  to alkenylbenzenes, 665–666  
   to alkynes, 560–564  
   to  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds,  
     1174–1176  
   to conjugated dienes, 429–434  
   definition, 326  
   effect of substituent groups, 356–358, 1174  
   hydroboration, 472  
   orientation, 417  
     and reactivity, 355–359  
   oxymercuration, 468–469  
   reaction mechanism, 350–355  
   rearrangement, 352–354  
 Electrophilic aromatic substitution, 593–623  
   alkylbenzenes, 637, 639  
   amines and amides, 913, 918  
   anthracene and phenanthrene, 1253  
   coupling of diazonium salts, 940–943  
   effect of halogen, 610–620, 992, 995  
   Friedel-Crafts acylation, 741  
   furan, pyrrole, and thiophene, 1273–1275  
   mechanism, 606–607  
   naphthalenes, 1235–1236, 1240–1249  
   nitrosation of amines, 932  
   orientation, 595–601  
   phenols, 974–976  
   pyridine, 1278–1279  
   reaction mechanisms, 601–606  
 Electrophilic reagents, 326  
 Electrophoresis, 1136  
 Element effect, 298–299, 1007  
 Eliel, E. L., 905  
 Elimination–addition mechanism, 991, 1009–1015  
 Elimination reactions, 280–322, 353  
   by acetylides, 568  
   of alkyl sulfonates, 210–211, 502  
   *anti*-elimination, 304–306, 309  
   via carbanions, 290–293  
   dehydration of alcohols, 318–322  
    $\beta$ - and  $\alpha$ -elimination, 382  
   1,2-elimination, 283–287  
   E1 mechanism, 289–290, 310, 311  
     evidence for, 310–313  
     orientation, 313  
     vs. E2, 314  
   E2 mechanism, 288–289, 921  
     absence of hydrogen exchange, 297–298  
     absence of rearrangement, 294–295  
     element effect, 298–299  
     evidence for, 294–299  
     isotope effects, 294–297  
     orientation and reactivity, 299–302  
     stereochemistry, 302–309  
     vs. E1, 314  
   in  $\alpha$ -halogenated acids, 801  
   Hofmann elimination, 920  
   preparation of alkynes, 559–560  
   stereochemistry, 302–309  
   *syn*-elimination, 304–306  
   vs. substitution, 207, 315–318, 537–538,  
     898–899  
 Empirical formula, determination, 74–75  
 Emulsin, 1100  
 Enamines, 1031–1033  
 Enantiomerism, prediction of, 131–133  
 Enantiomers, 123, 125, 130, 134–136, 142, 220  
   and enantiomerism, 128–132  
 Enantioselective synthesis, 275, 343–345  
 Enantiospecificity, 275  
 Enantiotopic faces, 505, 514  
 Enantiotopic ligands, 505, 510–511  
 Enantiotopic protons, 693  
 End group analysis, 1106  
 Endothermic reactions, 54, 57  
 Energy of activation (see Activation energy)



- Energy content, 69  
 Energy factors, 59, 62  
   in reaction rates, 59  
 Energy sources, 2, 1154  
 Enthalpy, 866, 867  
 Enthalpy change, 565–566, 1061, 1176, 1177  
   in macromolecules, 446–450  
 Entropy change, 791  
   in macromolecules, 446–450  
 Entropy of activation, 71 (*See also* Activation energy)  
 "Envelope" conformation, 191  
 Enzyme action, 1148–1152  
 Enzymes  
   and neighboring group effects, 495  
   solubility and shape, 32  
 Ephedrine, 135  
 Epimers, 1063, 1064  
   interconversion of, 1065–1066  
 Epoxides, 366, 544–554  
   cleavage, 546–552  
     acid catalyzed, 548  
     base-catalyzed, 549  
     orientation, 550–553  
   in formation of 1,2-diols, 546, 548–549  
   from halohydrins, 544, 545  
   nucleophilic attack, 1261  
   in pinacol rearrangement, 766  
   preparation, 544–546  
   protonated, 548, 549, 551  
   reactions, 546–547  
     with Grignard reagents, 550  
     polymerization, 550  
 Equatorial bonds in cyclohexane, 179–180  
 Equilibrium, 790–793  
   in esterification, 798  
 Equilibrium constant, 791–792  
 Ergocalciferol, 1229  
 Ergosterol, 481  
 Erythrose, 303  
 (–)-Erythrose, 851, 1072  
 ESR (*See* Electron spin resonance)  
 Essential oils, phenols from, 961  
 Esterification  
   of alcohols, 488, 787  
     by acid chlorides, 787, 820, 821, 828–829  
     by anhydrides, 824, 828  
     by carboxylic acids, 787, 798–799, 828–829  
     by esters, 831, 837–838  
     relative reactivity, 799, 828  
     by sulfonyl chlorides, 502  
   of carbohydrates, 1057, 1083, 1112  
   of carboxylic acids, 787, 798–799, 828–829, 835  
     bond cleavage, 799  
     relative reactivity, 799  
   of cellulose, 1113  
   of dicarboxylic acids, 803  
   of glucose, 1057, 1084  
   of sulfonic acids, 502  
   (*See also* Esters; Transesterification)  
 Esters, alkylation, 1027–1028  
 Esters, borate, 484  
 Esters, carboxylic acid, 813, 827–847 (*See also* Fats)  
   ammonolysis, 830, 837  
   analysis, 845  
   Claisen condensation, 863–864, 875–878  
   Claisen reduction, 832  
   cleavage, 830–832  
   cyclic (*See* Lactones)  
   hydrogenolysis, 831, 838  
   hydrolysis, 830  
     acid, 835–836  
     alkaline, 832–833  
   hydroxy (*See* Hydroxy esters)  
   keto (*See*  $\beta$ -Keto esters)  
   malonic (*See* Malonic ester synthesis)  
   nomenclature, 814  
   nucleophilic substitution, 815  
   phenolic, 799, 821, 967, 973–974  
   physical properties, 814–815, *t* 815, *t* 829  
   preparation, 206, 488, 787, 798–799, 827–829  
   reactions, 830–832  
     with Grignard reagents, 831, 838  
   reduction, 831–832, 838  
   saponification equivalent, 845  
   spectroscopic analysis, *t* 682, *t* 696, 846  
   structure, 813  
   transesterification, 831, 837  
 Esters, phosphoric acid, 1047–1049  
   hydrolysis, 1048–1049, 1052  
 Esters, sulfonic acid, 210–211, 497  
   preparation, 502  
 Estrogen, 481  
 Estrone, 481  
 Ethanal, 734  
   (*See* Acetaldehyde)  
 Ethanamide, 814  
   (*See* Acetamide)  
 Ethane  
   conformational analysis, 81–82  
   conformations, 80–82  
   empirical formula, 75  
   physical properties, *t* 92  
   rotational barrier in, 81  
   structure, 79–80  
 Ethanedioic acid (*See* Oxalic acid)  
 1,2-Ethanediol (*See also* Ethylene glycol)  
   preparation, 383, 466, 546  
 Ethanenitrile, 785  
   (*See* Acetonitrile)  
 Ethanoic acid, 775, 814 (*See* Acetic acid)  
 Ethanoic anhydride, 814  
   (*See* Acetic anhydride)  
 Ethanol 35, 297 (*See also* Ethyl alcohol)  
   biological oxidation of, 504–509  
 Ethanolamine, 888, 909, 1049  
   (*See* 2-Aminoethanol)  
 Ethanoyl chloride, 814  
   (*See* Acetyl chloride)  
 Ethene, 276 (*See* Ethylene)  
 Ether (*See* Diethyl ether)  
 Ethers, 533–544  
   absolute, 535  
   analysis, 552–553  
   of carbohydrates, 1085, 1114  
   of cellulose, 1114  
   cleavage by acids, 539–540  
     as nucleophilic reaction, 540  
   crown, 542–544  
   cyclic, 540–541  
     (*See also* Epoxides)  
   as Grignard solvent, 97, 535, 536, 996  
   hydrogen bonding, 534  
   industrial source, 534–536  
   nomenclature, 533–534  
   peroxides in, 535  
   physical properties, 534, *t* 534  
   preparation, 536–539  
     alkoxymercuration-demercuration, 536, 538–539  
   dehydration of alcohols, 535  
   from phenols, 536, 538, 966–967, 972–973  
   Williamson synthesis, 536, 537, 966–967, 972–973  
   stereochemistry, 538

- protonated, 540  
 reactions, 539–540  
 as solvents, 97, 534–536, 541  
 sources, industrial, 534–536  
 spectroscopic analysis, *t* 682, 685, *t* 696,  
   *t* 847  
 structure, 533–534  
 Ethude ion, basicity, 567  
 3-Ethoxy-2,2-dimethylbutane, 536  
 2-Ethoxy-1-butene, 413  
 1-Ethoxy-2-butene, 413  
 2-Ethoxyethanol, 533, 547  
 N-Ethylacetamide, 924, *t* 949  
 Ethyl acetate, 488, 814, *t* 829, 864, 878  
   ammonolysis, 830  
   Claisen condensation, 864, 876, 878  
   Ethyl acetoacetate, 875, 876, 1180 (See also  
     Acetoacetic ester synthesis)  
   preparation, 864, 876  
   reactions, 1024–1025, 1180–1181, 1185, 1188  
   relative acidity, 876  
 Ethylacetylene, 557  
 Ethyl acetylenedicarboxylate, 1185  
 Ethyl acrylate, 1178  
 Ethyl adipate  
   in Dieckmann condensation, 877  
   preparation, 798  
 Ethyl alcohol, 203, *t* 457, 464, 517, 758  
   dehydration, 281  
   iodoform test, 523  
   preparation, 349, 469  
   sources, 463–464  
   uses, 464  
 Ethylamine, *t* 889, 894  
 Ethyl *p*-aminobenzoate, 894  
 Ethylammonium sulfate, 889  
 N-Ethylaniline, *t* 949  
 1-Ethylaziridine, 892  
 N-Ethylbenzamide, *t* 949  
 Ethylbenzene, 625, 626, *t* 629  
   preparation, 668  
   reactions, 636, 638, 639, 641, 642, 663, 665  
 Ethyl benzoate, 814, 820, *t* 829  
   in Claisen condensation, 864  
   hydrolysis, 830  
   preparation, 820  
   tracer studies of hydrolysis, 834  
 Ethyl benzoylacetate, 864, 878  
 Ethyl benzylidenemalonate, 873  
 Ethyl benzylmalonate, 1123  
 Ethyl bromide, *t* 199, 232, 902, *t* 999  
   NMR spectrum, 701–702, 705  
 Ethyl bromoacetate, 879, 1029  
 Ethyl *o*-bromobenzoate, 828  
 Ethyl bromomalonate, 1124  
 Ethyl  $\alpha$ -bromopropionate, 879  
 Ethyl bromosuccinate, 1282  
 Ethyl 2-butenate, 1023  
 Ethyl *n*-butylamine, 902  
 Ethyl *tert*-butyl ether, 537  
 Ethyl *n*-butyrate, *t* 829  
 Ethyl carbamate, 839  
 Ethyl carbonate, 839, 878  
 Ethyl cation, 226, 232  
   mass to charge ratio, 676  
 Ethyl chloride, 96, 102, 108, *t* 199, 894, *t* 999  
   conformations, 717  
   NMR signals, 692, 716–717  
 Ethyl chloroacetate, 1124  
 Ethyl chlorocarbonate, 839  
 Ethyl cinnamate, *t* 1172  
   preparation, 873  
 Ethyl crotonate, reactions, 1176, 1181, 1185,  
   1187  
 Ethyl cyanoacetate, 1179, 1180  
   reactions, 873, 1023  
 Ethyl  $\beta$ -cyanobutyrate, 1176  
 Ethyl  $\gamma$ -cyano- $\alpha$ -methylglutarate, 1179  
 Ethylcyclohexane, 636, 665  
 3-Ethylcyclopentane, 166  
 Ethyl cyclopentylacetate, 1031  
 Ethyldimethylacetic acid, 783  
 Ethyl 6,6-dimethyl-2,4-  
   dioxocyclohexanecarboxylate, 1181  
 Ethyl 2,2-dimethylpropanoate, 831  
 Ethyl 2,4-dimethyl-3-pyrrolidylcarboxylate, 1274  
 Ethyl 2,3-dioxo-1,4-cyclopentanedicarboxylate,  
   878  
 Ethyl 1,3-dioxo-2-indanecarboxylate, 878  
 Ethyl (1,3-diphenyl-3-oxopropyl) malonate, 1179  
 Ethylene, 276, *t* 278, 899  
   cycloaddition reactions, 1213–1215  
   electronic configuration, 1197  
   heat of hydrogenation, *t* 332  
   molecular orbitals, 1196  
   polymerization, 449  
   preparation, 281  
   structure, 267–269  
   from thermal cracking, 117  
 Ethylene bromohydrin, 367, 547 (See also  
   2-Bromoethanol)  
 Ethylene chloride, 899  
 Ethylene chlorohydrin, derivatives, *t* 530  
 Ethylenediamine, 887, *t* 889, 899  
 Ethylene glycol (1,2-Ethanediol), *t* 457, 843  
   polymer with terephthalic acid, 843  
   preparation, 383, 466, 546  
 Ethylene oxide  
   detergents from, 1045  
   preparation, 525, 544, 545  
   reactions, 546–547  
     with Grignard reagents, 550  
 Ethyl ethanoate, 814 (See Ethyl acetate)  
 Ethyl ether (See Diethyl ether)  
 Ethyl formate, *t* 829, 878  
 Ethyl formylacetate, 878  
 Ethyl free radical, 109  
 Ethyl fumarate  
   preparation, 1185  
   reactions, 1282  
 Ethyl hexadecanoate, 839  
 2-Ethyl-1,3-hexanediol, 871  
 2-Ethyl-1-hexanol, 870, 871  
 2-Ethyl-2-hexenal, 871  
 Ethyl hydrogen sulfate, 350  
 Ethyl  $\beta$ -hydroxyisovalerate, 879,  
 Ethyl 3-hydroxy-3-methylbutanoate, 879  
 Ethyl  $\beta$ -hydroxy- $\beta$ -phenyl- $\alpha$ -methylpropionate,  
   879  
 Ethyl iodide, 966  
   preparation, 203, 346, 486  
 Ethyl  $\alpha$ -isobutylacetoacetate, 1024  
 Ethyl isobutylmalonate, 1021  
*m*-Ethylisopropylbenzene, 627  
 Ethyl ketone, 735  
 Ethyllithium, 96  
 Ethylmagnesium bromide, 97, 563  
 Ethyl malonate, 1179, 1180 (See also Malonic  
   ester)  
   preparation, 802  
   reactions, 781, 842, 873, 1021–1022, 1023,  
     1179–1181, 1185  
 Ethyl mandelate, 865  
 Ethyl  $\alpha$ -methylacrylate, 1179  
 Ethyl  $\alpha$ -methyl- $\beta$ -ketovalerate, 877  
 Ethyl methylmalonate, 1179, 1185  
 1-Ethyl-4-methylnaphthalene, 1251  
 Ethyl  $\alpha$ -methyl- $\alpha$ -*n*-propylacetoacetate, 1025

Ethyl methyl-*n*-propylmalonate, 1022  
 2-Ethynaphthalene, 1243  
 Ethyl *p*-nitrobenzoate, 894  
 Ethyl 5-nitro-2-furoate, 1288  
 2-Ethyl-octanoic acid, 781  
 Ethyl oxalate, 878, 1187  
 Ethyl oxaloacetate, 878  
 Ethyl 3-oxo-2-methylpentanoate, 877  
 Ethyl palmitate, 839  
 Ethyl phenylacetate, *t* 829, 878  
 Ethyl  $\alpha$ -phenylbenzoylacetate, 878  
 Ethyl  $\gamma$ -phenylbutyrate, 798  
 Ethyl phenyl ether (See Phenetole)  
 Ethyl phenyl ketone, 745  
 Ethyl phenylmalonate, 878  
 Ethyl pimelate, 877  
 Ethyl propionate, *t* 829, 833  
   in Claisen condensation, 877  
 Ethyl  $\alpha$ -*n*-propylacetate, 1025  
 Ethyl-*n*-propyl-*n*-butyl-*n*-hexylmethane, 137  
 Ethyl *n*-propylmalonate, 1022  
 Ethyl radical (See Ethyl free radical)  
 Ethyl stearate, *t* 829  
*p*-Ethyltoluene, 627  
*N*-Ethyl-*p*-toluenesulfonamide, *t* 949  
 Ethyl tosylate, 488  
 Ethyl trimethylacetate, 831  
   preparation, 787  
 Ethyl *n*-valerate, *t* 829  
 Eudalene, 1264  
 Eudesmol, 1264  
 Eugenol, 861  
 Excited state, of molecules, 1196  
 Exhaustive methylation, of amines, 920  
 Exothermic reaction, 53  
 Extinction coefficients, 688

## F

Farnesyl pyrophosphate, 454  
 Fats, 1039–1053, 1159  
   alcohol source, 463  
   biosynthesis, 1028, 1040  
   carboxylic acid source, 780  
   detergents from, 1045  
   hydrolysis, 1043–1044  
   industrial uses, 800  
   occurrence and composition, 1040–1042  
   phospholipids, 1047–1049  
   soap from, 1044–1045  
   source of pure acids and alcohols, 1045  
   unsaturated, 1046–1047  
 Fatty acids, 1040, 1167  
   biosynthesis, 1159–1161  
   in fats and oils, *t* 1041  
   unsaturated, 1042  
 Fehling's reagent, 1056, 1060  
 Ferguson, Lloyd, 165  
 Fermentation, 463  
   carbohydrates, 459  
 Ferrocene, 335, 337, 585  
 Fibers (synthetic), 436  
   properties, 447  
 Fibrin, 1134  
 Fibrinogen, 1134  
 Fibrin, 1134  
 Fibrous proteins, 1134  
 Fischer, Emil, 1062, 1066, 1131, 1144  
 Fischer proof, of (+)-glucose configuration, 1066–1071  
 Flash distillation, 42  
 Flavylium chloride, 1290  
 Fluorine (continues)

  bond formation, 11  
   <sup>19</sup>F nucleus and NMR spectra, 707  
 Fluoroacetic acid, *t* 796  
*o*-Fluoroanisole, 1013  
 Fluorobenzene, *t* 596, 934, *t* 993, 996  
*o*-Fluorobenzophenone, 817  
 1-Fluoro-2-methylnaphthalene, 1241  
 2-Fluoro-2-methylpropane, 90  
 1-Fluoronaphthalene, 1265  
 2-Fluoronaphthalene, 1246  
*p*-Fluoronitrobenzene, 1017  
*m*-, *o*-, *p*-Fluorophenol, *t* 958  
*m*-, *o*-, *p*-Fluorotoluene, *t* 993  
 Formaldehyde, 734, *t* 736, 760  
   polymerization, 450, 978–979  
   preparation, 330–331  
 Formalin, 735  
 Formamide, 35, *t* 815  
 Formate ion, 751  
 Formic acid, 775, *t* 776, *t* 796  
   bond lengths, 794  
 Formolysis, 656  
 Fossil fuels, 1, 2, 93  
 Free energy change, 791–792  
 Free energy of activation (See Activation energy)  
 Free radicals (See also individual free radicals)  
   addition, 326, 374–378  
     to alkenes, 329, 373–378  
     to alkynylbenzenes, 665–666  
     to conjugated dienes, reactivity, 435–436  
     to dienes, 435–436  
   alkyl, 50–53, 103–107  
     relative stabilities, 109–111, 398–399  
     resonance stabilization, 408–410  
   allyl, 397–400  
     electronic configuration, 1198–1199  
     molecular orbitals, 1198  
     relative stability, 642  
     resonance stabilization, 402–407  
   benzyl, 641–643  
     resonance stabilization, 643–645  
   definition, 50  
   delocalization of odd electron, 403–409  
   detection, alkyl, 76  
     by ESR, 648, 720, 722  
     triarylmethyl, 667  
   diradicals, 402, 1213  
   electron paramagnetic resonance (EPR)  
     spectrum, 648, 722  
   electron spin resonance (ESR) spectrum, 648, 720, 722  
   formation, by abstraction, 50–51  
     by addition, 373–378  
     from alkanes, 50–53  
     from alkenes, 373–378, 397–400  
     from alkylbenzenes, 641–642  
     in allylic substitution, 397–400  
     by *N*-bromosuccinimide, 398  
     from *tert*-butyl peroxide, 121  
     in concerted homolysis, 378  
     from dienes, 435, 436  
     ease of, 110–111, 399  
     stability and, 110–111, 435–436  
     in halogenation, 50–53, 103–105, 397–400  
     from peroxides, 121, 373–377, 438  
     from tetraethyllead, 77  
     from tetramethyllead, 77  
     from toluene, 641–642  
   hyperconjugation in, 408–410  
   inhibitors, 53  
   methyl (See Methyl radicals)  
   Paneth mirror technique, 77  
   paramagnetism, 648



- in polymerization, of alkenes, 437-438  
 of dienes, 439-440  
 of styrene, 442  
 racemization and, 160-161, 892  
 reactions, polar factors in, 374-377, 441, 643  
 rearrangement, lack of, 114  
 resonance stabilization, 405-407, 409  
 stability, 109-110, 399, 642  
   ease of formation and, 110-111  
   hyperconjugation and, 408-410  
   relative, 109-111, 398-400  
 stereochemistry, 160-161  
 structure, 67-69  
 triarylmethyl, 667  
 triphenylmethyl, 645-648  
 vinyl, 438
- Free radical substitution, 49-67, 69-72, 169, 397-400  
 in alkenes, allylic rearrangement, 400
- Friedel, Charles, 632
- Friedel-Crafts acylation  
 of benzene, 578, 594, 1250  
 of heterocyclic compounds, 1273  
 of naphthalene, 1242-1243  
 of phenols, 969  
 in preparation of anthracene derivatives, 1255  
 in preparation of ketones, 738-739, 741-742, 820, 824  
 in preparation of naphthalene derivatives, 1249-1251
- Friedel-Crafts alkylation, 631, 632, 663, 667  
 of benzene, 578, 594  
 limitations of, 635-636  
 of phenols, 968-975  
 reaction mechanism, 604, 633-635  
 test for aromatic compounds, 667
- Fries rearrangement, 969, 973-974
- $\beta$ -D-Fructofuranosyl  $\alpha$ -D-glucopyranoside, 1104
- (+)-Fructose, 1073
- (-)-Fructose, structure determination, 1058, 1060, 1063, 1073
- D-Fructose, 1094, 1103
- D-Fructose-1,6-diphosphate, 1167
- Fuchsin-aldehyde reagent, 762
- Fuels, 93, 463  
 fossil, 1, 2, 93  
 synthesis, 117
- Fukui, K., 1203
- Fumaric acid, 339-341, *r* 802, 823, *r* 1172
- Fumaryl chloride, 1186
- Functional derivatives of carboxylic acids, 813-857 (*See also* Acid chlorides, Acid anhydrides, Amides, Carbonic acid derivatives, Imides, Esters, Fats)
- Functional groups, 196, 325  
 electronic effects, 1173-1174
- Furan, 541, 1267, *r* 1268  
 in carbohydrate nomenclature, 1088  
 reactions, 1273  
 source, 1271-1272  
 structure, 1269-1271
- 2-Furancarboxaldehyde (*See* Furfural)
- 2-Furansulfonic acid, 1273
- Furfural, 1116, *r* 1268, 1272  
 reactions, 1272, 1174, 1287, 1288  
 source, 1272
- Furfuryl alcohol, *r* 1268
- Furoic acid, *r* 1268
- 2-Furoic acid, 1273
- Furylacrylic acid, 1288
- Fused ring aromatic compounds, 1231-1232 (*See also* Polynuclear aromatic compounds)
- Fused rings, 1283-1286
- Fusel oil, 463
- cis*-Fusion, 481
- trans*-Fusion, 481
- G
- Gabriel synthesis, 910, 1124
- Galactaric acid, 1072
- $\alpha$ -D-Galactopyranose, 1090
- 4-O-( $\beta$ -D-Galactopyranosyl)-D-glucopyranose, 1101
- (+)-Galactose, 1059, 1072
- D-(+)-Galactose, 1101-1102
- D-Galacturonic acid, 1092
- Gas, natural, *r* 94
- Gas oil, *r* 94
- Gasoline, 116, 117  
   ethyl (or leaded), 116
- Gaspar, P. P., 379
- Gattermann reaction, 936
- Gauche*-conformation, 84
- Gelatin, 1143
- Genetic code, 1164
- (+)-Gentiobiose, 1114
- Geometric isomerism, 269, 272-277  
   prefixes, 277
- Geranial, 768
- Geraniol, 531
- Geranyl pyrophosphate, 454
- Glass, 450
- Globin, 1137
- Globular proteins, 1134  
   structure, 1143-1144
- gamma*-Globulin, 1131, 1143
- Globulins, 1134
- Glucaric acid, 1057, *r* 1060, 1070
- (+)-Glucaric acid, 1078
- Glucitol, 1057, *r* 1060
- Gluconic acid, 1057, *r* 1060
- D-(-)-Gluconic acid, 1101-1102
- $\alpha$ -D-Glucopyranose, 1090
- $\beta$ -D-Glucopyranose, 1088
- $\beta$ -D-(+)-Glucopyranose, 1089
- $\beta$ -L-(-)-Glucopyranose, 1091
- $\alpha$ -D-Glucopyranosyl  $\beta$ -D-fructofuranoside, 1104
- 4-O-( $\alpha$ -D-Glucopyranosyl)-D-glucopyranose, 1099
- 4-O-( $\beta$ -D-Glucopyranosyl)-D-glucopyranose, 1100-1102
- D-Glucosazone, 1101-1102
- D-(+)-Glucose, acetylation, 1057, 1084  
 as aldohexose, 1056-1058  
 $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -forms, 1079-1081  
 in amylopectin structure, 1109-1110  
 in amylose structure, 1105-1108  
 anomers, 1080-1081  
   configuration, 1080  
   conformations, 1080, 1089-1090  
   specific rotations, 1079  
 biological importance, 1055, 1057  
 in cellobiose structure, 1100-1101  
 in cellulose structure, 1055, 1112-1113  
 configuration, 1070, 1077, 1078  
   Fischer proof, 1066-1071  
   conformation, 1089-1090  
 cyclic structure, 1079-1083  
   configuration, 1080  
   conformation, 1089-1090  
   methylation, 1080, 1085-1086  
   ring size, 1086-1091  
 in dextrans, 1110  
 enantiomeric forms, 1078  
 epimers, 1063  
 formation, from arabinose, 1068  
   in photosynthesis, 1055  
 $\gamma$ -glucoside of, 1089



- glucoside formation, 1080 (*See also* Glucosides)  
 in glycogen structure, 1112  
 glycolysis, 1156  
 as hemiacetal, 1080  
   mutarotation, 1079–1081  
 in lactose structure, 1101–1103  
 in maltose structure, 1097–1101  
 methylation, 1079, 1085–1086  
 O-methyl ethers, oxidation, 1089  
 molecular models, 1059, 1082–1083  
 mutarotation, 1079–1081  
 nomenclature, of derivatives, *t* 1060  
 open-chain structure, in mutarotation, 1081  
 osazone (*see* Glucosazone)  
 oxidation, 1057, 1069, 1078  
   in body, 1055, 1156  
 reactions, 1057  
 reduction, 1057  
 ring size determination, 1086–1088  
 in starch structure, 1055, 1105  
 stereoisomers, 1058–1059  
 structure, 1056–1058  
 in sucrose structure, 1103–1104
- L-(–)-Glucose, 1077, 1078  
 Glucose phenylhydrazones, 1057  
 D-Glucose-1-phosphate, 1094  
 D-Glucose-6-phosphate, 1158  
 Glucosides, 1082  
   as acetals, 1080  
   configuration, 1082  
   conformation, 1082  
   formation, 1079–1083  
     hydrolysis, acid, 1080–1081  
     base, stability toward, 1081  
     enzymatic, 1084  
   methyl (*see* Methyl glucosides)  
   methylation, 1084–1086  
   oxidation by periodic acid, 1084
- Glucosone, 1062  
 Glucuronic acid, *t* 1060  
 Glutamic acid, 135, 1125  
   synthesis, 1124  
 (+)-Glutamic acid, *t* 1118  
 (+)-Glutamine, *t* 1118  
 Glutamylcysteinylglycine, 1127  
 Glutaric acid, *t* 802  
 Glutathione, 1127, 1130  
 Glyceraldehyde, 760  
   configuration, 140, 1073  
   relationship to glucose, 1077–1078  
   relationship to tartaric acid, 1075  
 (+)-Glyceraldehyde, 1074  
 D-(+)-Glyceraldehyde, 1074–1078  
 R-Glyceraldehyde, 851  
 R-(+)-Glyceraldehyde, 1064–1065  
 Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate, 1159  
 D-Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate, 1157–1158, 1167  
 Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, 1158  
 D-(–)-Glyceric acid, 1074, 1075  
 Glycerides, 1040  
   hydrolysis, 1043  
 Glycerol, *t* 457, 768, 1285, 1288  
   from glycerides, 831  
   polymers from, 843  
 Glycerol, acetal with benzaldehyde, 768  
 Glycine, *t* 1118, 1125, 1133  
   isoelectric point, 1122  
   preparation, 894  
   reactions, 1133  
 Glycine hydrochloride, 1124  
 Glycogen, 1055, 1110, 1159  
   biological oxidation, 1156  
   cleavage, 1156  
 Glycolamide, *t* 810  
 Glycolanilide, *t* 810  
 Glycolic acid, *t* 810  
 Glycols, 382 (*See* 1,2-Diols)  
 Glycolysis, 1156  
 Glycosides, 1082  
 Glycylalanine, synthesis, 1131, 1133  
 Glyptal, 844  
 Gomberg, Moses, 645  
 Grain alcohol (*See* Ethyl alcohol)  
 Grains, as alcohol source, 463  
 Gramicidin S, 1145  
 Graphite, structure, 1232  
 Griess, Peter, 591, 1062  
 Grignard reagent, 96–99, 202, 207, 514, 535, 541, 547, 550, 743  
   in alcohol synthesis, 466, 475–477, 478–480, 517, 755  
   choice of, 478–480, 518  
   decomposition, 479  
   preparation, 97, 475, 478, 996  
   reactions  
   with acids, 98  
   with aldehydes and ketones, 475–480, 519  
   with esters, 831, 838  
   with ethylene oxide, 550  
   with water, 98  
   vs. organocopper compounds, 743  
 Grignard synthesis, 783  
   of alcohols, 466, 467, 475–480  
   of alkanes, 98–99  
   of carboxylic acids, 782–784  
   limitations, 479–480  
   products of, 476  
 Grignard, Victor, 97  
 Ground state, of molecules, 1196  
 Guaiacol, 981  
 Guanidine, 841, 842  
 Guanine, in nucleic acids, 1163, 1164  
 β-D-Gulopyranose, 1091  
 Gulose, 1059, 1070  
 (+)-Gulose, 1078–1079  
 Guncotton, 1113  
 Gutta percha, 449  
 Guvacine, 1291
- ## H
- Half-chair conformation, 178  
 Halides (*See* Alkyl halides, Aryl halides)  
 α-Halo acids, amination of, 1123  
 Haloalkanes, 90  
 Haloalkenes, 277  
 Halofarm reaction, 748–749, 753  
 α-Halogenated carboxylic acids, reactions, 801  
 Halogenation  
   addition to alkenes, 327, 359  
   addition to alkynes, 561–562, 564  
   of aliphatic acids, 800–801  
   of alkanes, 101–115  
   of alkylbenzenes, 640  
   allylic substitution in alkanes, 397–404  
   alternative mechanisms, 65–67  
   of amides, 904  
   aromatic, 605, 993–995  
   of benzene, 577, 594, 605  
   of ketones, 861, 86–865  
   of methane, 55–59  
   of naphthalene, 1240–1241  
   order of reactivity, 48, 63–67  
   of phenols, 968, 975  
   of pyridine, 1278  
   of pyrrole, furan, and thiophene, 1273  
   transition state for, 111  
 Halogen dance, base-catalyzed, 1018  
 Halogens  
   addition to alkenes, 35, 370

- addition to alkynes, 561–562, 564  
 addition mechanism, 359–361  
 effect on acidity, 795  
 effect on electrophilic aromatic substitution, 618–620  
 order of reactivity, 48  
 Halohydrins, 368  
   formation, 367  
   orientation in, 368  
   preparation, 328, 367–370  
 3-Halo-3-methyl-2-butanone, 1027  
 Halonium ions, 359, 367  
 Hammett constant, 656  
 Hammett equation, 792  
 Hammett, Louis P., 792  
 Hammond, G. S., 379  
 Hardening of oils, 1046–1047  
 Haworth, R. D., 1249  
 Haworth, Sir W. N., 1088  
 Haworth synthesis, 1249–1251, 1257–1258  
 Heat of activation, 71 (*See also* Activation energy)  
 Heat of combustion  
   of alkanes, 171–172, *t* 172  
   of benzene, 578–579  
   of cycloalkanes, 171–175, *t* 172  
   of methane, 46  
 Heat of hydrogenation, *t* 332, 425  
   alkenes, 331–335, *t* 332  
   benzene, 578–579  
   definition, 332  
   dienes, *t* 425, 578  
 Heat of reaction, definition of, 53  
 Hell-Volhard-Zelinsky reaction, 788, 789, 800–801  
 Heme, 1137, 1268  
 Hemiacetals, 758  
 Hemimellitine, *t* 629  
 Hemithioacetals, 1158  
 Hemoglobin, 1131, 1134, 1136–1137, 1143, 1144  
 Hendrickson, James B., 175  
*n*-Heptadecane, *t* 92, 1040  
 Heptaldehyde, *t* 736, 900  
 Heptanal, 900  
*n*-Heptane, *t* 92, 116  
 Heptanoic acid, 1057  
 1-Heptene, *t* 278, 279  
*n*-Heptyl alcohol, *t* 457  
*n*-Heptylamine, 900  
*n*-Heptyl bromide, 96, *t* 199  
*n*-Heptyl chloride, *t* 199  
*n*-Heptyl iodide, *t* 199  
 1-Heptyne, *t* 558  
 Heredity, 1164  
 Hertz, 679  
 Heterocyclic compounds, 1267–1291  
   five-membered rings, 1269–1276  
     reactions, 1273  
     saturated, 1275  
     structure, 1269–1271  
     source, 1271–1272  
   fused rings, 1283–1287  
   physical constants, *t* 1268  
   six-membered rings, 1276–1283  
   synthesis, 1288  
   uses, 1268  
 Heterolysis, 21, 194, 378, 413  
   in acetylene, 557  
 Heterotopic faces, 515  
 Heterotopic ligands, 513  
 Hexa-O-acetylglucitol (Hexa-O-acetylsorbitol), 1057  
 1,2,3,4,5,6-Hexachlorocyclohexane, 723  
 (10*E*, 12*Z*)-10,12-Hexadecadien-1-ol, 275  
*n*-Hexadecane, *t* 92  
 1-Hexadecanol, 839  
*n*-Hexadecyl alcohol, *t* 457  
 3,3,4,4,5,5-Hexadeuteriocyclohexanol, NMR spectrum, 714  
 1,5-Hexadiene, *t* 425  
 2,4-Hexadiene, 1205, 1207  
 (2*E*, 4*E*)-2,4-Hexadiene, 277  
 Hexamethylbenzene, *t* 629  
 Hexamethylenediamine, *t* 889, 896, 909  
 Hexamethylphosphotriamide (HMPT), 33, 249  
 Hexanamide, 896  
*n*-Hexane, 89, *t* 92  
 Hexanedioic acid, 801  
 2,5-Hexanedione, 1272  
 Hexanes, isomeric, 86  
 1-Hexanol, 547 (*See also n*-Hexyl alcohol)  
 2-Hexanol, 468  
 2-Hexanone, *t* 736  
 3-Hexanone, *t* 736  
 Hexaphenylethane, 645  
 1,3,5-Hexatriene, electronic configuration, 1209  
   molecular orbitals, 1209  
 Hexatrienes, 1208–1210  
 1-Hexene, *t* 278, 781  
 2-Hexene, 385  
 3-Hexene, 385  
 Hexestrol, 984  
*n*-Hexyl alcohol, *t* 457  
*n*-Hexylbenzene, 742  
*n*-Hexyl bromide, *t* 199  
*n*-Hexyl chloride, 88, *t* 199  
*n*-Hexyl iodide, *t* 199  
 4-*n*-Hexylresorcinol, 754, 974  
 1-Hexyne, *t* 558, 559  
 2-Hexyne, *t* 558  
 3-Hexyne, *t* 558, 561  
 Highest occupied molecular orbital (HOMO), 1206  
 Hindered rotation, 269, 272  
 Hine, Jack, 978  
 Hinsberg test, 943  
 Hippuric acid, 947  
 Histamine, 1291  
 Histidine, 1150, 1152  
 (–)-Histidine, *t* 1118  
 HMPT, 33, 249  
 Hoffmann, Roald, 1203  
 Hofmann degradation, 896, 897, 901–902, 910  
 Hofmann elimination, 914, 920  
 Hofmann orientation, 302, 921  
 Hofmann rearrangement, 903–905  
   intramolecular or intermolecular, 905  
   stereochemistry at migrating group, 906  
   timing of steps, 907–908  
 HOMO, 1206  
 Homocyclic compounds, 1267 (*See also* Alicyclic hydrocarbons, Cycloalkanes)  
 Homogeneous hydrogenation, 461  
 Homologous series, 85–86  
 Homologs, 86  
 Homolysis, 21, 50, 193, 378  
   concerted, 378  
 Homopolymers, 442  
 Homotopic faces, 515  
 Homotopic ligands, 513  
 Hordinene, 986  
 Hormones, 481  
 Host–guest relationship, 543  
 House, Herbert, 99  
 Huckel, Erich, 583, 1200  
 Huckel  $4n + 2$  rule, 583, 1199–1203  
 Hudson, C. S., 1084  
 Hughes, E. D., 214, 217, 288, 289, 492  
 Hyalophora cecropia, 1053

- Hybrid bonds (*See* Bonds)  
 Hybridization (of atomic orbitals) (*See also* Orbitals)  
   sp, 556, 557  
   of alkenes, 328, 350  
   of alkynes, 565  
 Hydration  
   of alkenes, 328, 350  
   of alkynes, 562, 565-566  
 Hydrazine, 751  
 Hydrazones, 751  
 Hydride ion, 372, 816  
 Hydride shift, 241  
 Hydroaromatic compounds, 1238-1240  
 Hydroboration, stereochemistry of, 470  
 Hydroboration-oxidation, 329, 465, 467, 469-472  
 Hydrocarbons, 43 (*See also* Alicyclic hydrocarbons, Alkanes, Alkenes, Alkynes, Arenes)  
   acidity, 1282  
   aromatic, 280  
   carcinogenic, 1259-1261  
   combustion, 46, 115-116  
   unsaturated, 267  
 Hydrocracking, 117 (*See also* Pyrolysis)  
 Hydrodealkylation, industrial, 630  
 Hydroformylation, 462  
 Hydrogen (*See also* Deuterium, Protons, Tritium)  
   abundance, 1678  
   allylic, 398  
    $\alpha$ , 876  
   benzylic, 641  
   bond formation, 10  
   classification, 91  
   diastereotopic, 512  
   different kinds of, 401  
   enantiotopic, 510-511  
   equivalent, 401  
   exchange, 866-867, 1016  
   hydride character, 473  
   ionization of  $\alpha$ -hydrogen, 859  
   isotope effects, 294-297  
   migration, 1219-1221  
   vinyllic, 398  
 Hydrogenation  
   of alkenes, 327, 331-335  
   of alkynes, 560, 561, 563  
   of alkenylbenzenes, 665-666  
   of alkylbenzenes, 636  
   of aromatic hydrocarbons, 168  
   of esters, 831  
   heat of (*See* Heat of hydrogenation)  
   homogeneous, 335-339  
   stereochemistry, 339-342  
   of nitro compounds, 893  
   of oils, 1046  
   quantitative, 450  
 Hydrogen atoms, 108  
   ease of abstraction, 108, 398  
 Hydrogen bonds, 27-28, 31, 33, 175, 200, 719  
   in alcohols, 456-458  
   in amides, 814  
   in amines, 889  
   boiling point and, 456-457, 959  
   in carboxylic acids, 778  
   in DNA, 28  
   in ethers, 534  
   formation, 10  
   and infrared absorption shift, 682  
   in macromolecules, 446-450  
   and molecular shape, 28  
   in nitrophenols, 959  
   in phenols, 957  
   and physical properties, 959  
   in proteins, 28  
 Hydrogen bromide, 1239  
   addition to alkenes, 348, 373-374  
 Hydrogen chloride, 30, 353  
 Hydrogen-chlorine bond, 66-67  
 Hydrogen exchange, 297, 865-866  
   absence of, 354  
 Hydrogen fluoride  
   dipole moment, 123  
   molecular orbitals, 1194  
 Hydrogen halides  
   reaction with alcohols, 258-262  
   addition to alkenes, 327, 345-349  
   addition to alkynes, 562  
 Hydrogen, hydride character, 473  
 Hydrogen iodide, addition of, 353  
 Hydrogen isotope effects, 295  
 Hydrogen migration, 1219-1221  
 Hydrogenolysis, of esters, 831, 838  
 Hydrolysis  
   of alkyl halides, 466  
   of alkyl hydrogen sulfates, 349-350  
   of amides, 826-827  
   in biochemical processes, 1149-1150  
   of carboxamides vs. sulfonamides, 930  
   of carboxylates, 790  
   of carboxylic acid derivatives, 818, 823, 830  
   of esters, 841  
   of fats, 1043-1044  
   of glycerides, 1043  
   of (+)-maltose, 1099  
   of methyl glucosides, 1085-1086  
   and neighboring group effects, 495-496  
   of nitriles, 785  
   partial, 1128  
   of phosphates, 1048-1049  
   of substituted amides, 925  
   of urea, 841  
 Hydroperoxides, 961  
   rearrangement, 962-965  
 Hydrophilic, definition, 31, 1044  
 Hydrophobic, definition, 31, 1044  
 Hydroquinone, 348, 957, 1958, 1184  
 Hydroxamic acid, 908  
*m*-Hydroxybenzaldehyde, 599  
*o*-Hydroxybenzaldehyde, 734, 1736 (*See also* Salicylaldehyde)  
*p*-Hydroxybenzaldehyde, 1736  
*m*-Hydroxybenzoic acid, 1796  
*o*-Hydroxybenzoic acid, 957 (*See also* Salicylic acid)  
*p*-Hydroxybenzoic acid, 1776, 1796, 957  
 3-Hydroxybutanal, preparation, 862, 867  
 $\beta$ -Hydroxybutyraldehyde, preparation, 867  
*o*- $\beta$ -Hydroxybutyryl S-ACP, 1161  
 2-Hydroxy-2'-chlorodiethyl sulfide, 495  
 3-Hydroxy-2,2-dimethylpropanoic acid, 1187  
 $\beta$ -Hydroxyesters, 1028  
   preparation, 879-880  
 $\alpha$ -Hydroxyisobutyramide, 1810  
 $\alpha$ -Hydroxyisobutyranilide, 1810  
 $\alpha$ -Hydroxyisobutyric acid, 1810  
 Hydroxylamine, 751, 756  
 Hydroxylamine hydrochloride, 756  
 3-(*N*-Hydroxylamino)-3-phenylpropanoic acid, 1177  
 Hydroxylation  
   of alkenes, 467  
   formation of 1,2-diols, 382-384  
   with permanganate, 383  
   with peroxyformic acid, 381  
 Hydroxyl group, 786  
 (-)-Hydroxylysine, 1119



3-Hydroxy-2-methylpentanal, 867  
 4-Hydroxy-4-methyl-2-pentanone, 862, 867  
 $\beta$ -Hydroxy- $\alpha$ -methylvaleraldehyde, 867  
*o*-Hydroxyphenyl ethyl ketone, 974  
*p*-Hydroxyphenyl ethyl ketone, 974  
 (–)-Hydroxyproline, *t* 1119  
 $\alpha$ -Hydroxypropionic acid (*see* Lactic acid)  
 $\beta$ -Hydroxypropionic acid, 1174  
*o*-Hydroxypropiophenone, 974  
*p*-Hydroxypropiophenone, 974  
 8-Hydroxyquinoline, 1284  
 Hygrine, 1276  
 Hygrinic acid, 1276  
 Hyperconjugation, 407–410, 418–419, 427–428  
   in alkenes, 427  
 Hypiodite, 522  
 Hypophosphorous acid, 938

## I

$\alpha$ -D-Idopyranose, 1090  
 (–)-Idose, 1073  
 Ignition test, 804  
 Imidazole, 1151, 1267  
 Imides, 827  
 Imine-enamine tautomerism, 1031–1032  
 Imines, 900  
 Iminium ions, 1032–1033  
 Indanthrene Golden Yellow GK, 1256  
 Indanthrene, 1256  
 Indene, 1221  
 Indigo, 76  
 Indole, *t* 1268, 1275  
 3-Indolecarboxaldehyde, 1288  
 Inductive effects, 235 (*See also* Electronic effects, Resonance effect)  
   in aromatic substitution, 613  
   and carbocation stability, 235  
   definition, 235  
   of halogens, 618, 992  
   of substituent groups on acids, 795–797  
 Infrared absorption bands, for organic groups, 680, *t* 682  
 Infrared absorption shift, 680–682  
 Infrared spectra, 675, 680–689, 729, 731  
   analysis of alcohols, 683–684, 846, 944–945, 979–980  
   of aldehydes and ketones, 762–764  
   of amines and substituted amides, 944–945  
   of carboxylic acids, 805  
   of carboxylic acid derivatives, 846  
   of ethers, 685  
   of hydrocarbons, 683–684  
   of phenols, 979–980  
 Ingold, Sir Christopher, 132, 138, 214, 217, 226, 288, 289, 492  
 Inhibitors, definition, 53  
   in chlorination of methane, 53  
 Initiators  
   for polymerization, 438, 443  
 Inorganic compounds, 1  
 Insertion reactions, of methylene, 380–381  
 Insulin, 1131, 1134, 1143  
   structure of, 1145–1146  
 Interionic forces  
   of liquids, 30  
   of solids, 26  
   and solubility, 30  
 Intermolecular forces, 27–30  
   in liquids, 29  
   in macromolecules, 447–450  
   in solids, 27  
   and solubility, 30–35  
 Intramolecular forces, 19–20

Intramolecular nucleophilic attack, 493  
 Intramolecular nucleophilic substitution, 493 (*See also* Rearrangement)  
 Intramolecular reactions, 169  
 Inversion  
   of ammonia, 18  
   of configuration, 217, 218, 221  
   of sucrose, 1103  
 Inversional isomers (*See* Stereoisomers)  
   of sucrose, 1103  
 Invertase, 1103  
 Invert sugar, 1103  
 Iodine, 63  
   as tracer, 115  
 Iodine azide, 390, 552  
 Iodoacetic acid, *t* 796, *t* 810  
 Iodoacetamide, *t* 810  
 Iodoacetanilide, *t* 810  
 Iodoacetone, 865, 866  
*o*-Iodoaniline, 587  
 Iodobenzene, 587, *t* 596, 934, *t* 993  
 2-Iodobutane, 347  
 1-Iodo-2-butene, *t* 199  
 2-Iodocyclohexyl brosylate, 499  
 2-Iodo-2,3-dimethylbutane, 244, 353  
 3-Iodo-2,2-dimethylbutane, 353  
 2-Iodo-3,3-dimethylbutane, 244  
 Iodoform, 749  
   melting point, 552  
 Iodoform test  
   alcohols, 522–523  
   aldehydes and ketones, 523, 749, 762  
 2-Iodoheptane, 1057  
 2-Iodo-2-methylbutane, 197, 347  
 1-Iodo-2-methylpropane, 90  
 $\alpha$ -Iodonaphthalene, 1240  
 1-Iodonaphthalene, 1262, 1265  
 2-Iodonaphthalene, 1262  
 2-Iodopentane, 347  
 3-Iodopentane, 347  
*m*-Iodophenol, *t* 958  
*o*-Iodophenol, *t* 958  
*p*-Iodophenol, *t* 958  
 2-Iodopropane, 327  
 $\beta$ -Iodopropionic acid, *t* 810  
 $\beta$ -Iodopropionamide, *t* 810  
 3-Iodopropyne, *t* 199  
*m*-Iodotoluene, *t* 993  
*o*-Iodotoluene, *t* 993  
*p*-Iodotoluene, 991, *t* 993  
 Ion-dipole bonds, 244–245  
 Ionic bonds (*see* Bonds)  
 Ionic polymerization, 442–443  
 Ionization (*see* Acidity, Acidity constants, Basicity, Basicity constants)  
 Ion pair, 35, 257  
   loose, 35  
   tight, 35  
 IR (*See* Infrared)  
 Isobornyl chloride, 657, 658  
 Isobutane, *t* 83, *t* 92, 114  
 Isobutyl alcohol, *t* 475, 470, 521  
 Isobutylamine, *t* 889  
   infrared spectrum, 945  
 N-Isobutylaniline, 895  
 B-Isobutyl-BBN, 1031  
 Isobutylbenzene, 626, *t* 629  
 Isobutyl benzoate, 828  
 Isobutyl bromide, *t* 199, 348, 1021, 1024  
 Isobutyl chloride, 102, 197, *t* 199, 634  
 Isobutylene, 270, 271, 276, 287, *t* 278, 634, 1031  
   dimerization, 328  
   heat of hydrogenation, *t* 332  
   NMR signals, 692, 707



- Isobutylmalonic acid, 1021  
 Isobutylmalonic ester, 1021  
 Isobutyl radical, 114, 115  
 Isobutyraldehyde, 895  
 Isobutyric acid, 782  
 Isocaproaldehyde, 734  
 Isocaproic acid, 1021  
 Isocrotonic acid, *t* 1172  
 Isocyanates  
   reactions, 844, 904, 910  
 Isodurene, *t* 629  
 Isoelectric point  
   in amino acids, 1122  
   in proteins, 1135  
 Isoelectronic molecules, 378  
 Isoeugenol, 961  
 Isohexane, 89, 91, *t* 92  
 Isohexyl chloride, 89  
 2-Isohexylnaphthalene, 1243  
 Isoleucine, 463, 1022, 1150  
 (+)-Isoleucine, *t* 1119  
 Isomer  
   configurational, definition, 147  
   conformational, 146–148  
   definition, 40  
   mirror-image (*See* Enantiomers)  
   stereo- (*See* Stereoisomers)  
 Isomerism, 39–40  
   alicyclic compounds, 182–184  
   alkanes, 87–88  
   alkenes, 270–276  
   alkyl groups, 88–89  
   alkynes, 557  
   butanes, 83–84, *t* 83  
   butylenes, 270–272, *t* 271, 273  
   *cis-trans* (*See* Geometric isomerism)  
   concept of, 39  
   hexanes, 86  
   optical, 130  
   substituted benzenes, 575–576  
 Isomerization  
   catalytic, 94  
   industrial, 630  
 Isomer number, 84, 124–125  
   benzene and, 575  
   tetrahedral carbon and, 124–125  
*cis*-Isomers, 182–184, 188  
*trans*-Isomers, 182–184, 188  
 Isoniazid, 1278  
 Isonicotinic acid  
   physical constants, *t* 1268  
   preparation, 1277  
 Isonicotinic acid hydrazide, 1278  
 "Iso-octane," 116, 371–372  
 Isopentane, 89, *t* 92  
 Isopentenyl, 1036  
 Isopentenyl pyrophosphate, 441  
 Isopentyl acetate, *t* 829  
 Isopentyl alcohol, *t* 457  
 Isopentyl chloride, 89  
 Isophthalic acid, 639, *t* 776, *t* 802  
 Isoprene  
   polymerization, 439, 440, 442, 446  
   reaction, 879  
   rule, 440  
   units (in nature), 440  
 3-Isopropoxy-2,2-dimethylbutane, 539  
 Isopropyl alcohol, 265, 328, 350, *t* 457, 460, 518  
   (*See also* 2-Propanol)  
 Isopropylamine, *t* 889, 895  
 Isopropylammonium benzoate, 909  
 Isopropylbenzene, 634, 961  
 Isopropyl bromide, *t* 199, 232, 317, 348, 486,  
   540, *t* 999  
   dehydrohalogenation, 283–284, 285  
   infrared spectrum, 681  
   NMR spectrum, 708  
 Isopropyl cation, 226  
   ionization potential from bromide, 232  
 Isopropyl chloride, 88, 102, 132, 197, *t* 199, 322,  
   355, *t* 999  
   NMR signals, 692  
 Isopropyl ether (*See* Diisopropyl ether)  
 $\beta$ -Isopropylglutaric acid, 769  
 Isopropyl hydrogen sulfate, 328, 349  
 Isopropyl iodide, *t* 199, 346  
 Isopropylmagnesium chloride, 98  
 4-Isopropyl-1-methylcyclohexane, 1036  
 1-Isopropyl-naphthalene, 1241  
 Isopropyl phenyl ether, 533  
 Isopropyl radical, hyperconjugation, 409  
 Isopropylsuccinic acid, 769  
*p*-Isopropyltoluene (*See p*-Cymene)  
 Isoquinoline, 1267, *t* 1268, 1286–1287  
 Isotactic polypropylene, 445–446  
 Isotope effects, 115  
   in elimination reactions, 294–297  
   in sulfonation, 610  
 Isotopes, abundance of heavy, *t* 678  
 Isotopic exchange, 834, 836  
 Isotopic peaks, in mass spectra, 678, *t* 679  
 Isotopic tracers  
   in alkaline hydrolysis of esters, 833  
   in halogenation of alkanes, 113–115  
   in Hofmann rearrangement, 905  
   in organic chemistry, 115  
 (–)-Isotrehalose, 1114  
 Isovalent hyperconjugation, 428  
 Isovaleric acid, 788  
 IUPAC system of nomenclature, 89, 197, 198,  
   276, 557, 734, 735, 777, 813 (*See also*  
   individual families)
- J**
- Johnson, W. S., 713
- K**
- Kekulé, August, 2, 574  
   benzene structure, 574–577, 579–580  
 Kekulé structures, 574, 579, 580, 643, 649  
 Kelvin, Lord, 132  
 Kendrew, J. C., 1144  
 $\alpha$ -Keratin, 1134  
   proposed helix structure, 1141–1142  
 Kerosine, 93, *t* 94, 120  
 Ketals, 758  
 Ketene, 378  
   preparation, 822  
 Keto acids, from tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose,  
   1086–1088  
 $\alpha$ -Keto acids, preparation, 1026  
 $\beta$ -Keto acids, decarboxylation, 1021, 1026–1027  
 $\gamma$ -Keto-acids, in Haworth synthesis, 1244–1251  
 $\alpha$ -Ketobutyric acid, preparation, 1026  
 Keto-enol tautomerism, 565, 566, 866–867, 869,  
   1177, 1285  
   acid and base catalysis, 884, 971  
   acid-catalyzed aldol condensation, 869  
   bromination, 866–867  
   in carbohydrates, 1061  
   electrophilic conjugate addition, 1175–1176  
   nucleophilic conjugate addition, 1177  
   (*See also* Iminic-enamine tautomerism)  
 $\beta$ -Keto esters, 863, 875–878 (*See also*  
   Acetoacetic ester synthesis (Claisen  
   condensation. Ethyl acetoacetate))

- 2-Ketohexose, (–)-fructose as, 1058, 1073  
 2-Ketohexoside, 1089  
 Ketones, 474, 505, 519, 569, 733–773, 859–875  
   addition, of alcohols, 751, 757–760  
   addition, of ammonia derivatives, 750–751, 756–757  
     of carbanions, 752  
     of cyanide, 750, 755  
     of Grignard reagents, 475–479, 750, 755  
     of organozinc compounds, 879–880  
   aldol condensation, 863, 867–871  
     aliphatic, 740  
     alkylation, 1027–1028  
     analysis, 761–764  
     aromatic, 740  
   Clemmensen reduction, 742, 749, 754  
     in Haworth synthesis, 1250  
   crossed Claisen condensation, 878  
   enamine formation, 1031–1033  
   enolization, 866–867  
   formation, 821, 824  
   in Grignard synthesis, 475–480, 755  
   halogenation, 752, 861  
     acid-catalyzed, 866–867  
     base-promoted, 864–865  
   industrial source, 737  
   nomenclature, 735  
   nucleophilic addition, 746–752, 862–863  
   oxidation, 748, 752–753  
   physical properties, 735–737, *r* 736  
   preparation, 737–744, 822  
     acetoacetic ester synthesis, 739, 1023–1026  
     via enamines, 1031–1033  
     Friedel-Crafts acylation, 738–739, 741–742  
     Fries rearrangement, 969, 973–974  
     organoborane synthesis, 1029–1031  
     using organocopper compounds, 739, 740, 743–744  
   oxidation of secondary alcohols, 488–489, 503, 504, 738, 740  
   ozonolysis, 384–385  
   pinacol rearrangement, 744–746  
   reactions, 746–752  
     with Grignard reagents, 475–480, 755  
   reduction, 631  
     to alcohols, 749  
     to hydrocarbons, 749–750, 754  
   reductive amination, 750, 900–901  
   Reformatsky reaction, 879–880  
   spectroscopic analysis, *r* 847  
   structure, 733–734  
   unsaturated, preparation, 1173  
   Wittig reaction, 863, 873–875  
   Wolff-Kishner reduction, 742, 749, 754  
   (See also  $\alpha,\beta$ -Unsaturated carbonyl compounds)  
 7-Ketonorbornene, 1188  
 Ketopentoses, definition, 1056  
 Ketoses  
   definition, 1056  
   effect of alkali, 1061  
 1-Keto-1,2,3,4-tetrahydrophenanthrene, 1258  
 4-Keto-1,2,3,4-tetrahydrophenanthrene, 1258  
 Kharasch, M. S., 100, 160, 348, 373  
 Kiliani, Heinrich, 1063  
 Kiliani-Fischer synthesis, 1063–1064  
 Kimball, G. E., 364, 492  
 Kinetic energy distribution, 60  
 Kinetics  
   definition, 212  
   of dehydrohalogenation, 288  
   first-order, 213, 214, 225  
   second-order, 213, 214, 216  
 Kjeldahl method, 589  
 Kloosterziel, H., 1223  
 Knocking, in gasoline engine, 116  
 Knoevenagel condensation, 872  
 Knoevenagel reaction, 873, 1023, 1283  
 Knoop, Franz, 1167  
 Kolbe reaction, 595, 969, 976  
 Körner, Wilhelm, 588  
 Körner method of absolute orientation, 588  
 Kossel, Walther, 4  
 L  
   *l*, prefix, 1073–1075, 1078  
   *l*, prefix, 1074  
   Lactams, 906  
   Lactic acid, 132, 135  
     enantiomers, 129  
     in biochemical processes, 1156  
     from muscle contraction, 158  
   (+)-Lactic acid, 1074, 1075  
   D-(–)-Lactic acid, 1074  
   L-(+)-Lactic acid, 1074, 1075  
   Lactobacillus bulgaricus, 1101  
   Lactobionic acid, 1101  
    $\beta$ -Lactoglobulin, 1145  
   Lactones, 829  
    $\beta$ -Lactones, 1190  
   Lactosazone, 1101–1102  
   (+)-Lactose, 1101–1103  
     properties, 1101  
     source, 1101  
     structure, 1101  
   Ladenburg, Albert, 591  
     benzene structure, 591  
   Lanosterol, 441, 442  
   Lapworth, A., 865  
   Lard, *r* 1041  
   Lauric acid, 775, *r* 776  
   Lauryl alcohol, 839, 1045  
   Lauryl hydrogen sulfate, 1045  
   LCAO method, 1193–1194  
   Leaving groups, 205, 208, 210, 286, 287  
     in acyl substitution, 816  
   Le Bel, J. A., 124, 128, 1066  
   Lemieux, R. U., 1103  
   Leucine, 135, 463, 1022, 1165  
     synthesis, 1125  
   (–)-Leucine, *r* 1119  
   Levorotatory, definition, 127  
   Levulinic acid, 768  
   Levulose, 1103  
   Lewis, G. N., 4  
     acid and base definition, 37–39  
     acids, 604, 632, 633, 635, 636  
   Life, origin of, 45  
   Light  
     detection of, 1152  
     visible, 1167  
   Ligroin, *r* 94  
   Limestone, 558  
   Limonene, 454  
   Linalool, 531  
   Lindlar's catalyst, 563, 571  
   Linear combination of atomic orbitals (LCAO), 1193–1194  
   Linear free energy relationships, 792  
   Linear polymers, 444–446, 450, 844  
   Linoleic acid, *r* 776, 1042  
   Linolenic acid, *r* 776, 1042  
   Linseed oil, 1047  
     composition, *r* 1041  
   Lipids, 1040  
   Lipophilic, definition, 31, 1044  
   Lithium acetylides, 559, 568–569

Lithium aluminum hydride, 471, 473, 754  
 in reduction of acids, 789, 800  
 Lithium amide, 443  
 Lithium dialkylcopper, 99  
 Lithium dialkylcuprate, 743  
 Lithium di-*sec*-butylcopper, 100  
 Lithium di-*tert*-butylcopper, 96, 118  
 Lithium diethylcopper, 96  
 Lithium diisopentylcuprate, 744  
 Lithium dimethylcopper, 99  
 Lithium dimethylcuprate, 743  
 Lithium hydride, 473  
 Lithium isopropylacetylde, 562  
 Lithium methylacetylde, 563  
 Lithium *n*-pentylacetylde, 559  
 Longuet-Higgins, H. C., 1203  
 Lossen rearrangement, 910  
 Lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (LUMO), 1214–1215  
 Lowry-Brønsted  
 acid and base definition, 36  
 Lubricating oil, *t* 94  
 Lucas, Howard J., 490, 492  
 Lucas reagent, 522  
 Lucas test, 260, 522  
 Lucite, 450  
 LUMO, 1214–1215  
 Lycopene, 451  
 (+)-Lysine, *t* 1119, 1125, 1144  
 (–)-Lyxose, 1072

## M

Macromolecules, 436–450  
 definition, 436  
 structure and properties, 446–450  
 "Magic" acid, 100  
 Magnesium-halogen bonds, 97–98  
 Magnetic moments  
 in free radicals, 648  
 of nuclei, 690–691  
 Malaprade, L., 1061  
 Maleic acid, 159, 339, 341, *t* 802, 823, *t* 1172  
 Maleic anhydride, *t* 815, *t* 1172, 1182, 1183, 1186, 1188  
 Malic acid, 158, 159  
 Malonic acid, 801, *t* 802  
 decarboxylation, 1026  
 Malonic ester (See Ethyl malonate)  
 Malonic ester synthesis, 1020–1025  
 Malonyl CoA, 1160  
 Malonyl-S-ACP, 1160  
 Malonylurea, 842  
 Maltase, 1099  
 Maltobionic acid, 1097  
 D-Maltobionic acid, 1099–1100  
 (+)-Maltose, 1097–1101  
 $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -, 1097, 1100  
 from amylose, 1105  
 reactions, 1097–1101, 1108  
 structure, 1097–1101  
 Mandelic acid, 750  
 Mandelonitrile, 750  
 Manganese(VII), 504  
 Mannan, 1116  
 Mannaric acid, *t* 1060  
 Mannitol, *t* 1060  
 Mannonic acid, *t* 1060  
 $\beta$ -D-Mannopyranose, 1090  
 Mannosaccharic acid, *t* 1060  
 (+)-Mannose, 1059, 1060  
 structure determination, 1063, 1068  
 (–)-Mannose, 1073  
 Mannuronic acid, *t* 1060, 1092

Markovnikov orientation, 375  
 Markovnikov's rule, 347–350, 356, 368, 467, 471  
 Markovnikov, Vladimir, 346  
 Mass spectra, 676–679  
 Mass spectrometers, 676  
 Mass to charge ratio, 676, 677  
 Mayo, Frank R., 348, 373, 442  
 Meerwein, Hans, 226, 239, 657  
 Melander, Lars, 608  
 (+)-Meleziotose, 1115  
 Melibiose, 1115  
 Mellitic acid, 804  
 Melting point, 26  
 and crystal structure, 26  
 ionic vs. non-ionic compounds, 26  
 and molecular symmetry, 628–630  
*p*-Menthane, 454, 1036  
 2-Menthene, 306–307  
 3-Menthene, 306–307  
 (–)-Menthol, 738  
 Menthone, 1036  
 (–)-Menthone, 738  
 Menthyl chloride, 306–307  
 Mercuric acetate, 468  
 Mercuric trifluoroacetate, 538, 539  
 Mercurinium ions, 469  
 Merrifield, R. Bruce, 1133  
 Mesitoic acid, 785, 799  
 Mesitylene, *t* 629, 723, 941  
 NMR spectrum, 697, 698  
 Mesityl oxide, *t* 1172  
 preparation, 862, 869  
 reactions, 749, 861, 1175, 1176, 1181, 1185  
 Meso compounds, 145  
 Meso structures, 143–145  
 Mesotartaric acid, 809, 1072, 1076, 1077  
 Messenger RNA, 1165  
 Mesyl (See Methanesulfonyl group)  
 Metabolite antagonism, 930  
 meta-directing groups, 596–601, 1001  
 Metal acetylides, reactions, 568–569  
 Metal hydrides, 754–755 (See also individual compounds)  
 Methacrylamide, 851  
 Methacrylic acid, 750, 851, 1172, *t* 1172  
 Methallyl chloride, 1188  
 Methanal, 734  
 (See also Formaldehyde)  
 Methane, 43–77  
 bond formation, 15–17  
 bromination, 48  
 chlorination, 46–48, 52–53  
 heat of combustion, 46  
 physical properties, 27, 30, 31, 44–46, *t* 92  
 reactions, 45–49  
 halogenation, 45, 46, 48–72  
 oxidation, 45–46  
 source, 45  
 structure, 43–44, 124–125  
 Methanesulfonyl group, 211  
 Methanoic acid, 775  
 Methanol, 30, 31, 33, 46, 198, *t* 457, 460  
 (–)-Methionine, *t* 1119  
 Methoxyaniline (See Anisidine)  
*p*-Methoxybenzaldehyde, 760 (See also Anisaldehyde)  
*m*-Methoxybenzoic acid, *t* 776, *t* 796  
 $\alpha$ -Methoxybenzoic acid, *t* 776, *t* 796  
*p*-Methoxybenzoic acid (See Anisic acid)  
*p*-Methoxybenzyl alcohol, 760  
 $\delta$ -Methoxyhexane, 533  
 Methoxymethyl chloride, 415  
 4-Methoxy-4-methyl-2-pentanone, 1175  
 1-Methoxy-2-methyl-2-propanol, 551  
 2-Methoxynaphthalene, 1247



- 6-Methoxy-8-nitroquinoline, 1285  
 2-Methoxyphenanthrene, 1257  
 6-Methoxy-4-phenyl-1-methylnaphthalene, 1262  
 Methyl acetate, *t* 829  
   infrared spectrum, 846  
   preparation, 824  
 N-Methyl-*m*-acetotoluidide, *t* 949  
 N-Methyl-*o*-acetotoluidide, *t* 949  
 N-Methyl-*p*-acetotoluidide, *t* 949  
 Methylacetylene, 270  
 Methyl acrylate, *t* 1172, 1173  
 Methyl alcohol, 87  
 Methylallylphenylbenzylammonium iodide, 892  
 Methylamine, 887, *t* 889, 893, 902  
 2-(N-Methylamino)heptane, 888  
 4-(N-Methylamino)-4-methyl-2-pentanone, 1176  
 2-Methyl-4-aminophenol, 943  
 Methylaniline (See Toluidine)  
 N-Methylaniline, 617, 887, *t* 890, 902  
   infrared spectrum, 945  
   preparation, 925  
   reaction with nitrous acid, 932  
*p*-Methylanisole, 973  
 2-Methyl-9,10-anthraquinone, 1255  
 Methyl  $\alpha$ -L-arabinoside, 1088  
*p*-Methylbenzaldehyde, 965  
 N-Methylbenzanilide, 925  
 9-Methyl-1,2-benzanthracene, 1256  
 N-Methylbenzenesulfono-*p*-toluidide, *t* 949  
 Methyl benzoate, 761  
 Methyl benzoate, 787  
 N-Methyl-*o*-benzotoluidide, *t* 949  
 N-Methyl-*p*-benzotoluidide, *t* 949  
*m*-Methylbenzyl alcohol, 788  
*p*-Methylbenzyl hydroperoxide, 965  
 Methyl benzyl ketone, 745  
 Methyl bromide, 48, 87, 99, *t* 199, 212, 902, *t* 999  
 2-Methyl-1-bromobutane, 486  
 2-Methyl-1,3-butadiene, 277, *t* 425 (See also Isoprene)  
 2-Methylbutanoic acid (See also  $\alpha$ -Methylbutyric acid)  
   chirality, 152  
   preparation, 488  
 2-Methyl-1-butanol, 132, 134, 135, 198, 310, 321  
   derivatives, *t* 530  
   enantiomers, 129  
   from fermentation, 158  
   from fusel oil, 154  
   preparation of, 476  
   reactions, 152  
   specific rotation, 128, 154  
 3-Methyl-1-butanol, 521 (See also Isopentyl alcohol)  
   derivatives, *t* 530  
   synthesis, 520–521  
 2-Methyl-2-butanol, 198  
 3-Methyl-2-butanol, 198  
   derivatives, *t* 530  
   preparation, 471  
 3-Methyl-2-butanone, 735  
 2-Methyl-1-butene, 311, 312, 313, 321  
   heat of hydrogenation, *t* 332  
   preparation, 300  
 3-Methyl-1-butene, *t* 278, 311, *t* 332, 333  
   synthesis, 519–520  
 2-Methyl-2-butene, *t* 278, 311, 312, 313, *t* 332  
   preparation, 300, 321  
 2-Methyl-2-butenic acid, preparation, 786, 118  
 3-Methyl-2-butenic acid, 749  
 3-Methyl-2-buten-2-yl group, 423  
 3-Methyl-2-buten-2-yl triflate, 423  
 3-Methyl-2-buten-2-yl trifluoroethyl ether, 423  
 3-Methyl-2-butyl tosylate, 311  
 Methyl *sec*-butylamine, 902  
 Methyl *tert*-butyl ether, 533  
   preparation, 537  
 Methyl *n*-butyl ketone, 478, 518  
 Methyl *tert*-butyl ketone (See also 3,3-Dimethyl-2-butanone, Pinacolone)  
   preparation, 744  
   reactions, 862, 1031  
 3-Methyl-1-butyne, *t* 558  
 $\alpha$ -Methylbutyric acid, 777  
   preparation, 782  
 $\alpha$ -Methylcaproic acid, 1058  
 Methyl cation  
   ionization potential from bromide, 232  
   structure, 228  
 Methyl chloride, *t* 23, 46, 49–52, 87, *t* 199, 306, 307 (See also Chloromethane)  
 3-Methylcholanthrene, *t* 1231, 1260  
 $\alpha$ -Methylcinnamic acid, 753  
 $\beta$ -Methylcrotonaldehyde, 1188  
 5-Methyl-1,3-cyclohexadiene, 277  
 Methylcyclohexane, *t* 165, 167  
   conformation, 180–182  
   1,3-diaxial interactions, 180  
   industrial source, 167  
 2-Methylcyclohexanol, 321  
 1-Methylcyclohexene, 321  
 4-Methylcyclohexylideneacetic acid, 190  
 Methylcyclopentane, *t* 165  
   industrial source, 167  
 1-Methylcyclopentanol, 468  
*trans*-2-Methyl-1-cyclopentanol, 465  
 1-Methylcyclopentene, 465  
 3'-Methyl-1,2-cyclopentenophenanthrene, 1239  
 Methylcyclopropane, 692  
 1-Methyl-3,4-dihydroisoquinoline, 1287  
 5-Methyl-1,3-dihydroxybenzene, 982  
 N-Methyl-2,4-dinitroaniline, 895  
 N-Methyl-2,4-dinitrodiphenylamine, 1017  
 Methyl dodecanoate, 839  
 Methylene, as group, 47  
   as compound, 378–381  
 Methylene bromide, 48  
 Methylene chloride, 35, 47 (See also Dichloromethane)  
 Methylene cyclohexane, 863  
 Methylenetriphenylphosphorane, 863, 874  
 Methyl ether (See Dimethyl ether)  
 Methyl ethylamine, 888, 894, 913  
 N-Methyl-N-ethylaniline, 888  
 N-Methyl-N-ethylbenzamide, 913  
 Methyl ethyl-*n*-butylamine, 902  
 N-Methyl-N-ethylbutylamide, 924  
 Methyl ethyl ketone, 735, *t* 736, 755  
 Methyl ethyl-2-naphthylcarbinol, 1243  
 2-Methyl-3-ethyl-2,3-pentanediol, 746  
 N-Methyl-N-ethyl-*p*-toluenesulfonamide, 913  
 N-Methylformamide, 35  
 Methyl free radical (See Methyl radical)  
 Methyl  $\beta$ -D-fructofuranoside, 1088  
 Methyl  $\alpha$ -D-fructoside, 1088  
 Methyl  $\beta$ -D-glucopyranoside, 1088  
 Methyl  $\alpha$ -D-glucoside  
   formation, 1080–1081  
   reactions, 1082, 1084  
   structure and properties, 1081–1082  
 Methyl  $\beta$ -D-glucoside  
   formation, 1080–1081  
   reactions, 1085, 1087  
   structure and properties, 1081–1082  
 Methyl group, 87  
 2-Methyl-3-heptanone, 739  
 6-Methyl-5-hepten-2-one, 1187  
 2-Methylhexane, 554  
 2-Methyl-2-hexanol, 478, 518



- Methyl-2-hexanone**, 1029  
**Methyl-2-octanone**, 1031  
 **$\alpha$ -Methylhydrocinnamic acid**, 867  
2-Methyl-2-pentanol, 929  
4-Methyl-2-hydroxyacetophenone, 879  
Methyl iodide, 1199  
Methyl isobutyl ketone, 1199  
Methylnorpropylacetylene, 551  
Methyl isopropyl ketone, 735  
1-Methyl-7-nitrophenyl ketone, 1239  
1-Methyl-2-naphthalene sulfonate, 1085–1086  
Methyl acetate, 842  
Methyl ketones, 734–744  
Methyl lactate, 839  
Methyl oleate, 1051  
Methyl propyl ester bromide, 479–518  
Methyl magnesium iodide, 97  
1-Methyl-2-methylbutane, 805  
Methyl methyl acetate, 824  
Methyl methacrylate, 1172–1173  
    polymerization, 443–450  
1-Methyl naphthalene, 1231–1247  
    synthesis, 1251  
2-Methyl naphthalene, 1231–1236, 1247  
    synthesis, 1251  
2-Methyl-1,4-naphthoquinone, 1236  
Methyl-1-naphthylcarbinol, 124  
Methyl  $\alpha$ -naphthyl ketone, 1243  
Methyl  $\beta$ -naphthyl ketone, 1243  
Methyl *p*-nitrophenyl ketone, 743  
2-Methylnorbornyl cation, 661  
Methyl  $\alpha$ -D-glucosulfonate, 842  
3-Methyloctane, 100  
Methyl oleate, 842–1051  
Methylurea, 844  
Methyl orange, 76–947  
Methyl 4-oxo-7-methylstanoate, 744  
 $\gamma$ -Methylparaconic acid, 882  
2-Methylpentanal, 734  
3-Methylpentanal, 734  
4-Methylpentanal, 734  
2-Methylpentane, 90  
3-Methylpentane, 90–92 (*See also* Isohexane)  
3-Methylpentanedioic acid, 1023  
3-Methyl-2-pentanol, 517  
4-Methyl-2-pentanol, 530  
3-Methyl-3-pentanol, 517  
2-Methyl-2-pentene, 385  
4-Methyl-2-pentene, 276  
4-Methyl-2-pentenolic acid, 1173  
4-Methyl-3-penten-2-one, 861, 1173 (*See also* Mesityl oxide)  
2-Methyl-3-pentyl tosylate, 314  
4-Methyl-2-pentyne, 557  
1-Methylphenanthrene, 1257  
2-Methylphenanthrene, 1257  
4-Methylphenanthrene, 1257  
9-Methylphenanthrene, 1257  
Methyl phenyl ether (*See* Anisole)  
Methyl phenyl ketone, 739 (*See also* Acetophenone)  
2-Methyl-3-phenylpentane, 627  
 $\alpha$ -Methyl- $\beta$ -phenylpropionic acid, 880  
5-Methyl-2-phenyl-3-pyrazolidinone, 1178  
2-Methylpiperidine, 1288  
Methylpropane, 90 (*See also* Isobutane)  
2-Methyl-1,2-propanediol, 551, 746  
2-Methylpropene, 276 (*See also* Isobutylene)  
2-Methylpropenoic acid, 750, 1172 (*See also* Methacrylic acid)  
Methyl *n*-propyl ketone, 735  
Methyl-*n*-propylmalonic acid, 1022  
Methyl-*n*-propylmalonic ester, 1022  
3-Methylpyridine, 1278  
N-Methylpyridinium iodide, 1282  
2-Methylpyrrolidone, 920  
3-Methylpyrrolidone, 920  
2-Methylquinoline, 1285  
8-Methylquinoline, 1286  
2-Methyl-6-quinolinecarboxylic acid, 1288  
Methyl radical, 51, 67–69, 109  
Methyl salicylate, 977  
 $\alpha$ -Methylsuccinic acid, 1022  
Methyl sulfate, reactions, 967  
Methyl terephthalate, 841  
Methyl  $\beta$ -2,3,4,6-tetra-O-methyl-D-glucoside, 1085–1086  
N-Methyl-*p*-toluenesulfono- $\alpha$ -toluidide, 1949  
N-Methyl-*p*-toluenesulfono-*p*-toluidide, 1949  
N-Methyl-*m*-toluidine, 1949  
N-Methyl- $\alpha$ -toluidine, 1949  
N-Methyl-*p*-toluidine, 1949  
Methyl *p*-tolyl ether (*See p*-Methylanisole)  
Methylinphenylphosphonium bromide, 874  
 $\alpha$ -Methylvaleraldehyde, 734  
 $\beta$ -Methylvaleraldehyde, 734  
 $\gamma$ -Methylvaleraldehyde, 734  
 $\alpha$ -Methylvaleric acid, 1021–1022  
Methylvinylcarbinol, 1457  
Methyl vinyl ketone, reactions, 1181, 1185, 1286  
Methyl  $\beta$ -D-xyloside, 1088  
Mevalonic acid, 1036, 1167  
Mevalonic acid 5-pyrophosphate, 1036  
Mevalonic acid 5-pyrophosphate 3-phosphate, 1036  
Meyers, A. I., 1028  
MIBK (*See* Methyl isobutyl ketone)  
Micelles, 1044  
Michael addition, 1179–1183  
Michael condensation, 1023  
Microcococcus ureae, 841  
Microscopic reversibility, principle, 320, 606, 1206  
Midgley, T. C., Jr., 116  
Migratory aptitude, 963–965  
Miller, Stanley, 45  
Moffitt, W. A., 174  
Molecular biology, 1147  
Molecular formula, determination, 72–73, 75  
Molecular orbitals, 8–9, 1191–1229  
    bonding and antibonding orbitals, 1194–1196  
    LCAO method, 1193–1194  
    orbital symmetry and chemical reactions, 1203–1233  
    theory, 1191  
    wave equations, 1191–1194  
Molecular weight  
    of cellulose, 1113  
    end-group analysis, 1105–1108  
    by mass spectrometry, 75, 677  
    of peptides, 1128  
    of polysaccharides, 1106–1109  
Molecules, polarity of, 22–25  
Molozonides, 384  
Monomer, 437  
Monosaccharides, 1055–1095 (*See also* Aldohexoses, Aldoses, D-(+)-Glucose, etc.)  
    analysis, 1061, 1062  
    classification, 1056  
    definition, 1056  
    reactions, 1060–1062, 1085  
Morphine, 158  
Morpholine, 1032–1033  
Ms (*See* Methanesulfonyl group)  
Mucic acid, 1072  
Mulliken, R. S., 409  
Muscalure, 571  
Muscarine, 163  
Musk (synthetic), 982

- Mustard gas, 495–496
- Mutarotation  
of D- + L-glucose, 1081  
of (+)-maltose, 1097
- Mutations, 1165
- (-)-Mycarose, 1095
- Myoglobin, 1144
- Myosin, 1134, 1159
- Myrcene, 453
- Myristic acid, *t* 776
- NAD (Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide), 505–510, 1137, 1157, 1158, 1159
- NAD<sup>+</sup>, 506, 508–510
- NADH, 505–510, 1157, 1158, 1159
- NADP, 1137, 1161
- NADPH, 1138, 1160–1161
- Nanometer, 688
- $\alpha$ -Naphthaldehyde, 1241, 1262
- $\beta$ -Naphthaldehyde, 1246, 1262
- Naphthalene, 667, 781, *t* 1231, 1262, 1263, 1284  
industrial source, 630  
nomenclature, 1232  
reactions, 1234–1236, 1256, 1258  
structure, 1233–1234  
test for, 667
- 1-Naphthalenecarbamates (*See specific alcohol*)
- 1-Naphthalenecarboxylic acid, 1237
- 2-Naphthalenecarboxylic acid, 1237
- Naphthalene derivatives  
orientation of substituents, 1246–1249  
synthesis by ring closure, 1249–1251
- 1-Naphthalenediazonium salts, reactions, 1240, 1245–1246
- 1-Naphthalenesulfonic acid, *t* 1231  
preparation, 1235, 1244
- 2-Naphthalenesulfonic acid, *t* 1231  
preparation, 1235, 1244  
reactions, 1247
- Naphthenes, 93, 167 (*See also* Cycloalkanes)
- Naphthionic acid, 1247
- $\alpha$ -Naphthoic acid, 1240, 1241
- $\beta$ -Naphthoic acid, 1243, 1246  
preparation, 1243
- 1-Naphthol, *t* 1231  
preparation, 1245  
reactions, 1246
- 2-Naphthol, *t* 1231  
preparation, 1245  
reactions, 1245, 1247
- Naphthols, 1245–1246
- $\alpha$ -Naphthonitrile, 1240
- $\beta$ -Naphthonitrile, 1246
- 1,4-Naphthoquinone, 1185, *t* 1231  
preparation, 1234
- o*-(2-Naphthyl)benzoic acid, 1256
- $\alpha$ -Naphthoyl chloride, 1241
- $\beta$ -(1-Naphthyl)propionic acid, 1258  
preparation, 1243
- $\beta$ -(2-Naphthyl)propionic acid, 1258  
preparation, 1243
- N-(1-Naphthyl)acetamide, 1241
- (1-Naphthyl)acetic acid, 1241
- 1-Naphthylamine, *t* 1231, 1240, 1262  
reactions, 1245
- 2-Naphthylamine, *t* 1231, 1262  
reactions, 1245
- 4-(1-Naphthyl)butanoic acid, 1262
- 4-(2-Naphthyl)-1-butanol, 1243
- 2-(2-Naphthyl)-2-butanol, 1243
- $\gamma$ -(1-Naphthyl)butyric acid, 1258
- $\gamma$ -(2-Naphthyl)butyric acid, 1243, 1258
- 1-Naphthylcarbinol, 1241
- 1-*o*-Naphthylcyclohexene, 1239
- 1-(1-Naphthyl)ethanol, 1241
- 1-(2-Naphthyl)ethanol, 1243
- 2-(1-Naphthyl)ethanol, 1241
- 1-Naphthyl ethyl ketone, 1241
- 1-Naphthylmagnesium bromide, 1241
- (1-Naphthyl)methanol, 1241
- 1-Naphthyl methyl ketone, preparation, 1236, 1243
- 2-Naphthyl methyl ketone, preparation, 1236, 1243
- 5-(2-Naphthyl)-2-methyl-2-pentanol, 1243
- 4-(1-Naphthyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid, 1243
- 4-(2-Naphthyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid, 1243
- 2-(1-Naphthyl)-2-propanol, 1241
- 3-(2-Naphthyl)propenoic acid, 1246
- Natite, *Quilva*, 343
- Natural gas, 45, 93, *t* 94
- NBS, 398
- Neighboring group effects  
by acetoxy, 497–499  
alkyl, 661, 654–657  
anchimeric assistance, 495–499  
by aryl, 654–657  
by bromine, 490, 492, 494  
by carbon, 494, 654–663  
in enzyme action, 495, 1151–1152  
by hydrogen, 661–663  
intramolecular nucleophilic attack, 493–495  
by iodine, 499  
by nitrogen, 494  
nonclassical ions, 657–661  
by oxygen, 494  
reaction mechanism, 494  
reaction rate, 495–499  
saturated carbon, 657–661  
stereochemistry, 490–492  
by sulfur, 494, 495–496
- Neomenthyl chloride, 306, 307
- Neopentane, *t* 92, 106, 203
- Neopentyl alcohol, 289, 261, 654, 788, 831
- Neopentyl bromide, 312
- Neopentyl cation  
mass to charge ratio, 676  
rearrangement, 239–240
- Neopentyl chloride, 108, 203
- Neopentyl ethyl ether, 239
- Neopentyl halides, 238
- Neoprene, 440
- (+)-Neotrehalose, 1114
- Neral, 768
- Nerol, 531
- Nerolidol, 1036
- Nervonic acid, 1051
- Neutralization equivalent, 804
- Newman, M. S., 81
- Newman projections, 81, 181
- Niacin, 1277, 1278
- Nicol prisms, 126
- Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (*See* NAD)  
reduced (*See* NADH)
- Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (*See* NADP)  
reduced (*See* NADPH)
- Nicotine, 1269
- (-)-Nicotine, 1289
- Nicotinic acid (3-Pyridinecarboxylic acid), *t* 1268, 1277, 1278  
decarboxylation, 1291
- Nitration  
of anthracene, 1255  
of aryl halides, 992  
of benzene, 577, 594  
of naphthalene, 1235, 1240–1241  
orientation in substituted benzenes, *t* 596

- of phenols, 968, 975
- of pyridine, 1278
- of pyridine, furan, and thiophene, 1273
- reaction mechanism, 601-603, 608
- Nitriles
  - hydrolysis, 755-756, 783, 785, 937
  - infrared absorption frequencies, 1 682
  - nomenclature, 785
  - preparation, 750, 755-756, 784, 785, 937
  - reduction, 895, 897
- Nitrile synthesis
  - of carboxylic acids, 783, 784, 785
- m*-Nitroacetanilide, 1 890
  - o*-Nitroacetanilide, 1 890, 897
  - p*-Nitroacetanilide, 1 890, 928, 1001
- p*-Nitroacetophenone, 743
- 1-Nitro-4-aminoanisole, 1285
- 1-Nitro-2-aminonaphthalene, 1264
- m*-Nitroaniline, 1 890, 1 915
- o*-Nitroaniline, 1 890, 1 915, 1286
- p*-Nitroaniline, 1 890, 894, 1 915, 940
  - preparation, 928
- o*-Nitroanisole, 967
- 9-Nitroanthracene, 1255
- m*-Nitrobenzaldehyde, 480, 755
- p*-Nitrobenzaldehyde, 760
  - preparation, 734
- Nitrobenzene, 587, 1 596, 742, 893, 945, 994, 1284, 1285
  - orientation of electrophilic substitution, 615-616
  - preparation, 577
- m*-Nitrobenzoic acid, 587, 742, 1 776, 1 796
  - preparation, 788
- o*-Nitrobenzoic acid, 1 776, 1 796, 810
- p*-Nitrobenzoic acid, 638, 775, 1 776, 782, 1 796
  - relative acidity, 792
- Nitrobenzoic acids, 600-601
- m*-Nitrobenzophenone, 742
- p*-Nitrobenzophenone, 964
- m*-Nitrobenzoyl chloride, 742
- p*-Nitrobenzoyl chloride, 743, 1 815
- p*-Nitrobenzyl adipate, 1 810
- p*-Nitrobenzyl alcohol, preparation, 760
- p*-Nitrobenzyl benzoate, 639
- p*-Nitrobenzyl bromide, 628, 967
- p*-Nitrobenzyl *m*-bromobenzoate, 1 810
- p*-Nitrobenzyl *m*-chlorobenzoate, 1 810
- p*-Nitrobenzyl *trans*-crotonate, 1 810
- p*-Nitrobenzyl glycolate, 1 810
- p*-Nitrobenzyl  $\alpha$ -hydroxybutyrate, 1 810
- p*-Nitrobenzyl isophthalate, 639
- p*-Nitrobenzyl phenylacetate, 1 810
- p*-Nitrobenzyl phthalate, 639
- p*-Nitrobenzyl salicylate, 1 810
- p*-Nitrobenzyl terephthalate, 639
- p*-Nitrobenzyl 2,4,6-trimethylbenzoate, 1 810
- o*-Nitrocinnamic acid, 809
- Nitro compounds
  - hydrogenation, 893
  - importance, 936, 937, 994-995
  - infrared absorption frequencies, 1 682
  - reduction, 893, 896, 897-898
  - removal of nitro group, 938
- 2-Nitro-*p*-cresol, 599
- o*-Nitroethylbenzene, 626
- p*-Nitroethylbenzene, 626
- Nitrogen
  - amino, Van Slyke determination, 1125
  - analysis, 589
  - electron-deficient, 903-905
  - electronic configuration, 1 8
- Nitrogen trifluoride, 1 23, 24, 25
- Nitroisoquinoline, 1286
- m*-Nitromandelic acid, 755
- Nitromethane, 1185
- 3-Nitro-4'-methylbenzophenone, 735
- 1-Nitronaphthalene, 1 1231, 1240, 1246, 1247
  - preparation, 1235, 1262
- 2-Nitronaphthalene, 1 1231, 1247
  - preparation, 1245, 1262
- 5-Nitro-2-naphthalenesulfonic acid, 1262
- 1-Nitro-2-naphthol, 1264
- 4-Nitro-1-naphthylamine, 1247
- Nitronium ion, 601
- Nitronium salts, 602
- m*-Nitrophenol, 1 958
  - intermolecular hydrogen bonding, 958
- o*-Nitrophenol, 1 958, 967
  - chelation, 959
  - preparation, 968, 975
- p*-Nitrophenol
  - intermolecular hydrogen bonding, 1 958, 959, 967
  - preparation, 968, 975, 1000
- Nitrophenols, infrared bands, 959
- p*-Nitrophenylacetamide, 1 810
- p*-Nitrophenylacetanilide, 1 810
- p*-Nitrophenyl acetate, preparation, 828, 967
- p*-Nitrophenylacetic acid, 1 796, 1 810
- o*-Nitrophenyl methyl ether, 967
- 3-Nitrophthalic acid, 809
- 1-Nitropropane, 894
- 3-Nitropyridine, 1278
- 4-Nitropyridine, 1283
- 4-Nitropyridine *N*-oxide, 1283
- 5-Nitroquinoline, 1284
- 6-Nitroquinoline, 1288
- 8-Nitroquinoline, 1284
- Nitrosation, 595, 931
  - of phenols, 969, 976
- p*-Nitroso-*N,N*-dimethylaniline, 888, 1001
  - preparation, 914, 932
- N*-Nitroso-*N*-methylaniline, 932
- 4-Nitroso-2-methylphenol, 969
- Nitrosonium ion, 932
- p*-Nitrosophenol, 976
- $\beta$ -Nitrostyrene
  - Diels-Alder reaction, 1185
  - preparation, 873
- Nitrosyl chloride, 933
- o*-Nitrotoluene, 587, 938
  - preparation, 637
- p*-Nitrotoluene, 638, 898, 937, 938, 939
  - preparation, 637
- p*-Nitrotriphenylmethyl hydroperoxide, 964
- Nitrous acid
  - reactions with amines, 914, 931
  - reaction with urea, 841
- NMR (See Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy)
- Nodal plane, 1192
- Nodes, waves, 1192
- Nomenclature (See specific families)
- Nonactin, 543-544
- n*-Nonadecane, 1 92
- n*-Nonane, 1 92, 96, 99
- Non-bonding orbitals, 1196
- Nonclassical ions, 660-661
- 1-Nonene, 1 278
- Non-stereospecific addition, 380
- 1-Nonyne, 1 558
- Noradrenaline, 982
- Norbornane, 166
- Norbornene, 465
  - exo*-Norborneol, 465
  - exo*-Norbornyl acetate, 658-659, 672
  - endo*-Norbornyl brosylate, 658-660
  - exo*-Norbornyl brosylate, 658-659, 672-673
  - Norbornyl cation, 659-661



- anti*-7-Norbornylene acetate, 672  
*anti*-7-Norbornylene tosylate, 672  
 Norcarane, 207  
 Nortricyclene, 166  
 Novocaine, 949  
 Nuclear energy, 2  
 Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR)  
   spectroscopy, 226-227, 675-732  
     absorption frequency, 690  
     acetylacetone, 885  
     alcohols, 684, 719-720  
     aldehydes, 763  
     amides, 847, 945  
     amines, 945  
     azulene, 1263  
     benzoylacetone, 885  
     carbon-13 (CMR), 720  
     carboxylic acid derivatives, 847  
     carboxylic acids, 806  
     chemical shifts, 694-697, *r* 696  
        $\delta$  scale, 695  
        $\tau$  scale, 695  
     of 1°, 2°, and 3° hydrogens, 696  
     reference point, 695  
     conformational analysis and, 715-719  
     coupling constant, 703-704, 710  
     conformations and, 710  
     decoupling spins in, 714-715  
     deuterium labeling, 715  
     double resonance method, 714-715  
     esters, 847  
     field strength, 690-691  
     fluorine, 707, 719  
     hydrocarbons, 710  
     inversion of molecules and, 716  
     magnetic moment in, 690-691  
     molecular change effects, 715  
     monosaccharides, 1094-1095  
     peak area and proton counting in, 699-700  
     phenols, 980  
     protons in, 690  
       aromatic, 696, 697  
       chemical shifts (*See* chemical shifts *above*)  
       counting of, and peak area, 699-700  
       deshielded, 694  
       diastereotopic, 693  
       enantiotopic, 693  
       equivalent, 691-692, 715-719  
       exchange, 716  
       neighboring, 706  
       non-equivalent, 706  
       shielded, 694  
       side-chain, 697  
     rotations about single bonds in, 716-719  
     signals in, 691  
       intensities, 691, 699-700  
       number of, 691  
       positions of, 691, 694-697  
       splitting of, 691, 700-709  
     spectra, 690-691  
       complicated, 713-719  
     spin (of nuclei) in, 690  
     spin-spin coupling, 700-709  
     structural information from, 691  
     temperature effects, 719  
     theory, 690-691  
 Nuclear spin, 690-691  
 Nucleic acids, 436, 1093, 1161-1164  
   denaturation, 1135  
   genetic code, 1165-1166  
   heredity and, 1164-1166  
   primary structure, 1161-1163  
   secondary structure, 1163-1164  
 Nucleofuge, 205  
 Nucleophiles, 205, 208-209  
   addition effect, 361  
   concentration of, 253  
   nature of, 253, 254  
 Nucleophilic acyl substitution  
   in acid chlorides, 819-822  
   acylation of organocopper compounds,  
     743-744  
   vs. addition, 816  
   vs. alkyl substitution, 818-819  
   in carboxylic acid derivatives, 815-819  
   in Claisen condensation, 863-864, 876  
   in esters, 830  
   in Friedel-Crafts acylation, 741  
   in hydrolysis of amides, 826-827, 925  
 Nucleophilic addition (*See also* Addition  
   reactions)  
   acid-catalyzed, 748  
   vs. acyl substitution, 816  
   to aldehydes and ketones, 746-761  
   in aldol condensation, 862-863, 876  
   in Cannizzaro reaction, 760-761  
   to carbonyl compounds, 862-863  
   of organozinc compounds, 879-880  
   to  $\alpha,\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds,  
     1174, 1176-1179  
   in Wittig reactions, 873-874  
 Nucleophilic aliphatic (alkyl) substitution, 194,  
   208-215  
   vs. acyl substitution, 818-819  
   alcohols, 259, 260  
   in alkylation of esters, 864, 1020-1026  
   alkyl halides and organometallic compounds,  
     99-100, 204-207, 864  
   alkyl sulfonates, 210-211  
   in ammonolysis of halides, 898-899  
   in cleavage of ethers, 540  
   electronic effects, 1008  
   and epoxides, 550-552, 1260-1261  
   in ether formation, 535  
    $\alpha$ -halogenated acids, 800-801  
   kinetics, 212  
   mechanisms, 213-215, 1002-1003  
   in Michael addition, 1179-1182  
   in Williamson synthesis, 537  
 Nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 991,  
   998-1014  
   bimolecular displacement, 999-1009  
   mechanism, 1002-1003, 1006-1008  
   orientation, 1004-1005  
   reactivity, 999-1002, 1003-1004, 1006  
   elimination-addition (benzyne), 996, 1009-1015  
   in pyridine, 1280-1282  
 Nucleophilic assistance, to solvolysis, 256-258,  
   414  
 Nucleophilic reagents, 205  
 Nucleophilic substitution  
   in allylic substrates, 411-414, 419  
   in benzylic substrates, 650-652  
   in vinylic substrates, 419-424  
 Nucleophilic sulfonyl substitution, 925  
 Nucleoproteins, 1161-1164  
 Nucleosides, 1162  
 Nucleotides, 1162  
 Nylon, 448, 926  
 Nylon 6, 927  
 Nylon 66, 926, 947

Oblivon, 882  
 Octa-O-acetylcellobiose, 1101, 1113  
 Octacarbonyldicobalt, 460-461  
*n*-Octadecane, *r* 92  
*cis*-9-Octadecanoic acid (*See* Oleic acid)  
*cis*-9-Octadecen-1-ol, 832



- n*-Octadecyl alcohol, *t* 457
- 1,4,5,8,11,12,13,14-Octahydro-9,10-anthraquinone, 1183
- $\Delta^{1,9}$ -Octalone, 1181
- Octa-O-methyl-D-maltobionic acid, 1099–1100
- n*-Octane, *t* 92
  - mass spectrum, 677
- Octane number, 116
- (+)-2-Octanol, 216–217
- (-)-2-Octanol, 216–217
- 2,4,6-Octatriene, 1205, 1210
- 1-Octene, *t* 278
  - infrared spectrum, 681
- n*-Octyl alcohol, *t* 457
- n*-Octyl bromide, *t* 199
- n*-Octyl chloride, *t* 199
- n*-Octyl iodide, 99, *t* 199
- 1-Octyne, *t* 558
- 4-Octyne, *t* 558, 1018
- Odor
  - acid chlorides, 815
  - amines, 890
  - carboxylic acids, 778
  - and configuration, 135
  - esters, 815
- Oil of wintergreen, 977
- Oils
  - definition, 1040
  - drying, 1047
  - hardening of, 1046–1047
  - hydrogenation of, 1046–1047
- Olah, George, 226, 367, 469, 602, 657
- Oleic acid, 775, *t* 776, 1042
- Oleomargarine, 1046
- Oleyl alcohol, 832
- Oligosaccharides, 1111
- Olive oil, *t* 1041
- Olivetol, 983
- Optical activity, 125–128
  - in amines, 892
  - in amino acids, 342–345
  - and chirality, 136, 152–153
  - and configuration, 137–139, 1083–1084
  - in cyclic compounds, 183–184, 187–188
  - and enantiomerism, 130
  - in naturally occurring substances, 158
- Optical families, 1073–1075
- Optical isomers (See Stereoisomers)
- Optical purity, 154, 228–229
- Orbitals, 6 (See also Molecular orbitals)
  - atomic, 6–7
  - bond, 10–11
  - hybrid, 11–12, 270
  - molecular, 8–9, 1191–1229
  - overlap of, 9–10
  - p*, 7, 268
  - $\pi$ , 268–269, 556–557, 581–582
  - s*, 6–7, 268
  - $\sigma$ , 10, 11, 13, 80, 268, 269, 556, 581
  - sp*, 11–13, 555–556
  - sp*<sup>2</sup>, 13–15, 268, 269, 581
  - sp*<sup>3</sup>, 15–19
- Orbital symmetry, 1203–1223
- Orcinol, 982
- Organic chemistry, 1–3
- Organoborane compounds, 1029–1031
- Organocopper compounds, 1019
  - in preparation of ketones, 739, 743–744
- reactivity, 743
- Organolithium compounds, 475, 1014
- Organometallic compounds, 477, 567
  - addition of carbenes, 382
  - coupling with alkyl halides, 99
- Grignard reagent, 98
- use in synthesis, 1019
- Organozinc compounds, 879
- Oriental fruit moth, 275
- Orientation
  - in electrophilic addition, 417
  - of free-radical addition, 374
  - reactivity and, 111–112, 299–302, 313, 355, 357, 399, 610, 665
  - Saytzeff's rule, 321
- Orlon, 448
- Ornithine, 1145
- Ortho effect, 796, 918
- ortho, para-directing groups, 595–601, 913, 967, 973, 995 (See also Orientation, Substituent groups)
- Osazones, 1062–1063
- Osones, 1062
- Oxalic acid, 768, *t* 802
- Oxaloacetic acid, 1166
- Oxazole, 1267
- 2-Oxazoline, reactions, 1028–1029
- Oxidation
  - of alcohols, 488–489, 503–504, 737, 738, 740, 782
  - of aldehydes and ketones, 752–753
  - of alkenes, 386
  - of alkenylbenzenes, 638–639
  - of alkylbenzenes, 638–639
  - of amines, 890
  - biological, 1167
  - of carbohydrates, 1156–1159
  - of ethanol, 504–510
  - of carbohydrates, 1060–1062
  - of 1,2-diols, 523–524
  - of methane, 46
  - of methylbenzenes, 737, 740
  - of naphthalene, 1234, 1236–1237
- Oximes, 751, 756
- Oxirane, 544
- Oxonium ions, 416, 974
- Oxonium salts, 521, 552
- Oxo process, 460–463
- Oxygen exchange
  - in hydrolysis of esters, 834–836
  - in rearrangement studies, 963–964
- Oxygen transport, by hemoglobin, 1144
- Oxymercuration-demercuration, 329, 465, 468–469
- Oxytocin, 1127
- Ozonides, 384
- Ozonolysis
  - of alkenes, 384
  - of alkynes, 450
  - of dienes, 450

P

- Paints, 1047
- Palmitic acid, *t* 776, 909
  - biosynthesis, 1161
- Palm kernel oil, *t* 1041
- Palm oil, *t* 1041
- Pamaquine, 1289
- Pan, S. C., 1115
- Paneth, Fritz, 77
- (+)-Panoxe, 1115
- Pantothenic acid, 950
- Papaverine, synthesis, 1289
- Paraffins (See Alkanes)
- Paraformaldehyde, 735, 736
- Paraldehyde, 736
- Paramagnetic resonance absorption (See Electron spin resonance spectroscopy)
- Paramagnetism, 648
- Para red, 942
- Pasteur, Louis, 128, 136, 1075

- Pauli, Wolfgang, Jr., 7  
 Pauli exclusion principle, 7, 406  
 Pauling, Linus, 10, 1138  
 Peanut oil, *t* 1041, 1051  
 Pectic acid, 1116  
 Pectin, 1092  
 Penicillin G, 1269  
 Penicillium glaucum, 134  
 Penta-O-acetylglucose, 1057  
*n*-Pentadecane, *t* 92  
 1,3-Pentadiene, *t* 425, 1216  
 1,4-Pentadiene, 424, *t* 425  
 Pentadienyl cation, 1211  
 Pentaerythritol  
   physical constants, *t* 457  
   synthesis, 882  
 Pentamethylbenzene, *t* 629  
*n*-Pentane  
   nomenclature, 89  
   physical constants, *t* 92, *t* 458  
 2,4-Pentanedione (Acetylacetone), 849  
   acidity, 860  
   enol in, 884  
   NMR spectrum, 885  
   preparation, 878  
 Pentanenitrile (See Valeronitrile)  
 Pentanes, 86, 89  
 Pentanoic acid, 777  
 2-Pentanol, 523  
   derivatives, *t* 530  
 3-Pentanol, 523  
   derivatives, *t* 530  
 2-Pentanone, 735, *t* 736  
   reductive amination, 901  
 3-Pentanone, 735, *t* 736  
 1-Pentene, *t* 278, 313, *t* 332, 921  
 2-Pentene, *t* 278, 313, *t* 332, 334, 921  
 Pentosan, 1272  
 Pentose, 1272  
*n*-Pentyl acetate, *t* 829  
*n*-Pentyl alcohol, *t* 457  
*tert*-Pentyl alcohol, 321, *t* 457, 468 (See also 2-Methyl-2-butanol)  
*n*-Pentylamine, 896  
*tert*-Pentylbenzene, 634, 635  
*n*-Pentyl bromide, 97, *t* 199  
*tert*-Pentyl bromide, 313  
*tert*-Pentyl cation, 240  
*n*-Pentyl chloride, 88, *t* 199, 559  
*tert*-Pentyl chloride, preparation, 259, 355 (See also 2-Chloro-2-methylbutane)  
*tert*-Pentyl ethyl ether, 239  
*n*-Pentyl iodide, *t* 199  
*tert*-Pentyl iodide (See 2-Iodo-2-methylbutane)  
 Pentyl phenyl ketone, 742  
 2-Pentyl tosylate, 313  
 2-Pentyltrimethylammonium ion, 921  
 2-Pentylurethane, 841  
 1-Pentyne, *t* 558  
 2-Pentyne, *t* 558  
 Peptide chains, 1135, 1139  
 Peptides, 1125-1134, 1152  
   molecular weights, 1128  
   peptide linkage, 1125-1127  
   structure determination, 1128-1131  
   synthesis, 1131-1133  
     solid-phase, 1133  
 Periodic acid, 504  
   analysis of carbohydrates, 1061  
   analysis of 1,2-diols, 523-524  
 Periodic table, inside back cover  
 Perkin condensation, 872, 1173  
 Permanganate test, 521  
 Peroxide effect, 348-349  
   mechanism, 372-373  
 Peroxides  
   analysis for, in ethers, 535  
   effect on orientation, 665-666  
   removal from ethers, 535  
 Peroxy acids, 383  
 Peroxybenzoic acid, 546  
 Peroxyformic acid, 383  
 Perutz, M. F., 1144  
 Petroleum, 1  
   constituents, 93, *t* 94  
   source of alcohols, 459  
   source of aromatic compounds, 630  
   source of carboxylic acids, 781  
   uses, 94  
 Petroleum coke, *t* 94  
 Petroleum ether, *t* 94  
 Phases, of orbitals, 1191-1194  
 Phases, of waves, 1192  
 Phase-transfer catalysis, 250  
 (+)-Phellandral, 985  
 (-)-Phellandral, 985  
 (-)-Phellandric acid, 985  
 Phenacetin, 984  
 Phenanthrene, *t* 1231  
   derivatives, 1257-1259  
   nomenclature, 1251  
   reactions, 1252-1255, 1257, 1264  
   structure, 1252  
   synthesis, 1257, 1258, 1259  
   test for, 667  
 9,10-Phenanthrenequinone, *t* 1231, 1253  
 Phenetole, *t* 534  
   infrared spectrum, 686  
   preparation, 536, 966  
 Phenol, 587, *t* 958 (See also Phenols)  
   industrial source, 630, 960-961  
   preparation, 941, 962, 1000  
   reactions, *t* 596, 617, 966-972, 974-979  
   relative acidity, 966  
   use, 961  
 2,4-Phenoldisulfonic acid, 975  
 Phenol-formaldehyde resins, 978  
 Phenolic acids, 976  
 Phenolic aldehydes, 971-973  
 Phenolic esters, 799  
 Phenolic ethers  
   analysis, 552-553  
   preparation, 966-967, 972-973  
   spectroscopic analysis, 685, *t* 847, 980  
 Phenolic ketones, 973, 976  
 Phenols, 956-990 (See also Hydroquinones)  
   acidity, 942, *t* 958, 960, 970-972  
     effect of substituents, 972  
   aldehydes from, 970, 977-979  
   analysis, 960, 976-977, 979  
   carbonation, 969, 976-977  
   coupling with diazonium salts, 936, 940-942  
   electrophilic substitution, 967-970, 974-979  
   from essential oils, 961  
   esterification, 799, 967, 973  
   ether formation, 966, 972-973  
   formation, during diazotization, 937  
   Friedel-Crafts acylation, 967  
   Friedel-Crafts alkylation, 968, 975  
   Fries rearrangement, 969, 976-977  
   halogenation, 968, 975  
   hydrogen bonding, 959-960  
   industrial source, 960-961  
   ionization, 960, 970-972  
   Kolbe reaction, 969, 976-977  
   nitration, 968, 975-976  
   nitrosation, 969, 976  
   nomenclature, 951  
   oxidation, 957-961, 975  
   physical properties, 957-960, *t* 958

- in polymerization, 978-979  
 preparation, 965-966  
   from diazonium salts, 934, 937, 965  
   from sulfonic acids, 1244-1246  
 reactions, with diazonium salts, 940-942  
   with ferric chloride, 979  
   with formaldehyde, 978-979  
 Reimer-Tiemann reaction, 970, 977-978  
 ring substitution, 966-970, 974-978  
   salts, 960, 966  
 spectroscopic analysis, *t* 847, 979-980  
 structure, 959  
 sulfonation, 968, 976  
 Williamson synthesis, 538, 966, 972-973  
*o*-Phenolsulfonic acid, 968, 976  
*p*-Phenolsulfonic acid, 968, 975, 976  
 Phenoxyacetic acid, 967  
 2-Phenoxyethanol, preparation, 547  
 Phenylacetaldehyde, 734, *t* 736  
 Phenylacetamide, 787, *t* 810  
*N*-Phenylacetamide, 787 (*See also* Acetanilide)  
 Phenyl acetate, *t* 829  
 Phenylacetic acid, 775, *t* 776, 783, *t* 796, *t* 810  
 Phenylacetonitrile, 847, 895  
 Phenylacetylene, 627, *t* 629  
   preparation, 666  
 (-)-Phenylalanine, *t* 1119, 1123  
   synthesis, 1144  
 Phenylalkanes, 627  
*m*-Phenylanisole, 1013  
 9-Phenylanthracene, 1262  
 4-Phenylazo-1-naphthol, 1246  
 1-Phenylazo-2-naphthol, 1247, 1262  
 2-(Phenylazo)pyrrole, 1273  
*N*-Phenylbenzenesulfonamide, 913  
 Phenyl benzoate  
   preparation, 821, 967  
 1-Phenyl-1,3-butadiene, 670, 863  
 2-Phenyl-2-butene, 627  
 4-Phenyl-3-butenic acid, 1262  
 1-Phenyl-2-buten-1-ol, 848  
 1-Phenyl-1-buten-3-ol, 848  
 4-Phenyl-3-buten-2-one, 863  
 3-Phenyl-2-butyl acetate, 654  
 (+)-Phenyl *sec*-butyl ketone, 865  
 3-Phenyl-2-butyl tosylate, 654  
 $\gamma$ -Phenylbutyric acid, 777, 1250  
 Phenyl carbitol, 548  
 1-Phenyl-1-chloroethane, 663  
 1-Phenyl-2-chloroethane, 664  
*m*-Phenylenediamine, *t* 890, *t* 915  
*o*-Phenylenediamine, *t* 890, 909, *t* 915  
*p*-Phenylenediamine, *t* 890, 894, *t* 915  
 Phenylethanol, 734  
 1-Phenyl-1,2-ethanediol, 665  
   rearrangement, 746  
 1-Phenylethanol, 203, 652, 663 (*See also*  
    $\alpha$ -Phenylethyl alcohol)  
 2-Phenylethanol (*See*  $\beta$ -Phenylethyl alcohol)  
 Phenyl ether (Diphenyl ether), *t* 534  
*N*-(2-Phenylethyl)acetamide, 1287  
 $\alpha$ -Phenylethyl alcohol, 203, *t* 457, 628  
   preparation, 749  
 $\beta$ -Phenylethyl alcohol, *t* 457, 628  
   preparation, 477  
 $\alpha$ -Phenylethylamine, *t* 889, 909  
   preparation, 901  
 (-)- $\alpha$ -Phenylethylamine, 906  
 $\beta$ -Phenylethylamine, *t* 889, 909  
   preparation, 895  
 $\alpha$ -Phenylethyl bromide, *t* 199 (*See also* 1-Bromo-  
   1-phenylethane)  
   preparation, 203, 626  
 $\beta$ -Phenylethyl bromide, *t* 199, 206  
 $\alpha$ -Phenylethyl chloride, 158, *t* 199, 628  
   preparation, 638  
 $\beta$ -Phenylethyl chloride, *t* 199, 628, 657  
   preparation, 638  
 Phenylethylene, 297 (*See also* Styrene)  
 $\alpha$ -Phenylethyl hydroperoxide, 963  
 $\beta$ -Phenylethyl iodide, *t* 199  
 Phenyl group, 296  
 $\beta$ -Phenylglutaric acid, 1188  
 Phenylglyoxal, 761  
 4-Phenyl-2,6-heptanedione, 1188  
 1-Phenyl-2-hexene, 669  
 Phenylhydrazine, 751, 756, 757  
   in carbohydrate studies, 1062  
 Phenylhydrazine hydrochloride, 757  
 Phenylhydrazones, 751, 756  
 2-Phenyl-1-iodo-2-propanol, 745  
 1-Phenylisoquinoline, 1288  
 Phenyl isothiocyanate, 1129  
 Phenyl ketone, 739 (*See also* Benzophenone)  
 Phenyllithium, 1280  
   reactions, 996, 1013  
 Phenylmagnesium bromide, 652  
 Phenylmalonic ester, 878  
 1-Phenyl-3-methyl-2-butanol, 653  
 Phenylmethylcarbinol, 477 (*See*  $\alpha$ -Phenylethyl  
   alcohol)  
 1-Phenyl-2-methyl-2-propanol, 653  
 1-Phenylnaphthalene, preparation, 1239, 1251  
 2-Phenylnorbornyl cation, 661  
 5-Phenyl-2,4-pentadienal, 872  
 1-Phenylphenanthrene, 1262  
 1-Phenyl-1,2-propanediol, 745, 746  
 3-Phenyl-1,2-propanediol, 766  
 3-Phenylpropanoic acid, 777  
 1-Phenyl-2-propanol, 664  
 1-Phenyl-2-propanone, 735  
 3-Phenylpropenal, 862, 1173  
 1-Phenylpropene  
   *cis*- and *trans*-isomers, 666  
   preparation, 663-664, 670  
   reactions, 670  
 2-Phenylpropene, 487, 670  
 3-Phenylpropene, 664, 670  
 3-Phenyl-2-propen-1-ol (*See* Cinnamyl alcohol)  
 Phenylpropionic acid, 1027  
 $\alpha$ -Phenylpropionaldehyde, 745  
 (+)- $\alpha$ -Phenylpropionamide, 158, 906  
 Phenyl propionate, 974  
 Phenyl *n*-propyl ketone, 749  
 2-Phenylpyridine, 1280  
 Phenylsuccinic acid, 1188  
 Phenylthiohydantoins, 1129  
 Phenyltrimethylammonium iodide, 894  
 Phillips, Henry, 217  
 Phlorogucinol, 982  
 Phosgene, 839, 840  
   manufacture, 840  
   reactions, 840  
 Phosphate esters, 1047-1049  
 Phosphates, 1048  
 Phosphatidic acids, 1047  
 Phosphatidyl choline, 1049  
 Phosphatidyl ethanolamine, 1049  
 3-Phosphoglycerate, 1158  
 3-Phosphoglyceric acid, 1157  
 Phosphoglycerides, 1047-1049, 1161  
 Phospholipids, 949, 1047-1049  
   in cell membranes, 1050-1051  
 Phosphonium salts, 874  
 Phosphoric acid, 1048, 1049  
 Phosphorus pentachloride, 797  
 Phosphorus trichloride, 797  
 Phosphorus trihalides, 486, 519  
 Phosphorus vides, 874  
 Phosphorylation, 1155



- Photosynthesis, 1055, 1093  
 Phthalamic acid, 827  
 Phthalic acid, 639, *t* 776, *t* 802  
     industrial source, 781  
 Phthalic anhydride, *t* 815  
     in polymerization, 843  
     preparation, 822, 1234  
     reactions, 824, 1255–1256  
 Phthalimide, *t* 815, 910  
     preparation, 827  
 Phthalimidomalonic ester, 1124  
*C*<sub>7</sub>-Phthienoic acid, 1052  
 Physical-organic chemistry, 793  
 Phytol, 1042  
      $\alpha$ -Picoline, *t* 1268  
      $\beta$ -Picoline, *t* 1268  
         preparation, 1278  
      $\gamma$ -Picoline, *t* 1268  
 Picolines, 1277–1278  
 Picolinic acid, *t* 1268  
 $\pi$ -Complexes, 338, 344  
 Picramide, *t* 890  
 Picric acid, *t* 958  
     preparation, 975, 1000  
 Picryl chloride, *t* 993  
 Pinacol, 744  
 Pinacolone, 744  
 Pinacol rearrangement, 744–746  
 Piperic acid, 986  
 Piperidine, 903, 1181, 1241, *t* 1268  
     in alkaloids, 1283  
     preparation, 986, 1283  
 Piperine, 986  
 Piperonal, *t* 736  
     preparation, 767  
 Piperonylic acid, 986  
 Plane-polarized light, 125–126  
 Plasmochin (Pamaquine), 1289  
 Plasticizers, 1045  
 Plastics (*See also* Polymers)  
     industry, 440  
     preparation, 437–438  
     structure, 450  
     uses, 436–437  
 Plexiglas, 450, 1173  
 PMR, 690, 720  
 Polar effect, 234 (*See also* Electronic effects)  
 Polar factors, in polymerization, 375, 376, 642  
 Polarimeter, 126–127  
 Polarity  
     of bonds, 22  
     of molecules, 22–25  
 Polaroid, 126  
 Pollution  
     from automobile emission, 116  
     from plastics, 437  
 Polyacrylonitrile, 448  
 Polyamides, 926–927  
 Polybutadiene, 439  
     copolymers, 449  
 Polychloroprene, 440  
 Polyesters, 842–845  
 Polyethylene, preparation, 437, 444–445  
*cis*-Polyisoprene  
     preparation, 440, 446, 449  
     structure, 439  
 Polymerization, 436–450, 842–845  
     of alkenes, 329, 437–438  
         definition, 437  
         stereochemical control, 444  
 Polymers, 436–450  
     crystallinity, 445–450  
     definition, 437  
     formation, 437  
 Poly(methyl methacrylate), 450, 1173  
 Polynuclear aromatic compounds, 1231–1257  
 Polynucleotide chains, 1161  
 Poly(oxypropylene) glycols, 550  
 Polypeptides, 1126 (*See also* Peptides)  
 Polypropylene, 445–446  
 Polysaccharides, 436, 1104–1111  
     definition, 1056  
 Polystyrene, 443  
     copolymers, 442, 449  
     properties, 450  
 Polyurethane foam rubber, 550  
 Polyurethanes, 842–845  
 Poly(vinyl chloride)  
     preparation, 438  
     properties, 447, 450  
 Poly(vinylidene chloride), 447  
 Ponnampurna, Cyril, 158  
 Porphin, 1137  
 Porphyrin system, 1272  
 Potassium, 1124  
 Potassium amide, 1017  
 Potassium permanganate, 383  
 Potassium *tert*-butoxide, 381  
     preparation, 487  
 Potassium  $\alpha,\beta$ -dibromopropionate, 778  
 Potassium di-*tert*-butylphenoxide, 1030  
 Potassium phthalimide, 1124  
 Potassium triphenylmethide, 1017  
 Potential energy changes  
     in 1,2- vs. 1,4-addition, 433  
     in chlorination of alkanes, 104  
     and conformation, 82, 85, 178  
     in halogenation of methane, 64–65, 69, 72  
     in hydrogenation of alkenes, 332–333  
 Power sources, 2  
 Pre-cholecalciferol, 1229  
 Preferred product, 300  
 Pregnenolone, 850  
 5 $\alpha$ -Pregnane-3 $\alpha$ -ol-20-one (acetate ester), 527  
 Prehnite, *t* 629  
 Prelog, V., 132, 138  
 Primeverose, 1115  
 Probability factor, 62  
     and reaction rates, 59  
 Prochirality concept, 148  
 Progesterone, 850  
 (–)-Proline, *t* 1119, 1125  
     synthesis, 1144  
 1,2-Propadiene, *t* 425  
 Propanal, 734 (*See also* Propionaldehyde)  
 Propane, 82–83, *t* 92, 170, 327, 405  
     rotational barrier in, 82  
 Propanedioic acid (*See* Malonic acid)  
 1,2-Propanediol (*See also* Propylene glycol)  
     preparation, 383  
 (+)-1,2-Propanediol, 1074  
 1,3-Propanediol, *t* 457, 528  
 1,2-Propanedione, 450  
 1,1,2-Propanetricarboxylic acid, 1022  
 2-Propanol, 328 (*See also* Isopropyl alcohol)  
 Propanone, 735 (*See also* Acetone)  
 Propargyl chloride, *t* 199  
 Propenal, 1172 (*See also* Acrolein)  
 Propene, 276, *t* 278 (*See also* Propylene)  
 Propenenitrile, 1172 (*See also* Acrylonitrile)  
 Propenoic acid, 775 (*See also* Acrylic acid)  
 2-Propen-1-ol, 277  
 Propiolic acid, 1189  
 Propionaldehyde, 331, 385, 734, *t* 736  
     in aldol condensation, 867  
 Propionamide, *t* 815  
 Propionic acid, *t* 776, 899, 1123, 1172  
     infrared spectrum, 805  
 Propionyl chloride, *t* 815  
 Propiophenone, *t* 736



- n*-Propyl acetate, *t* 829
- n*-Propyl alcohol, 170, 202, *t* 457, 470
- n*-Propylamine, *t* 889, 912
  - preparation, 894
- n*-Propylbenzene, 626, *t* 629, 634, 668
  - NMR spectrum, 708
- n*-Propyl bromide, *t* 189, 202, 285, 316, 348
  - t* 889
- n*-Propyl cation, 676
- n*-Propyl chloride, 88, 102, *t* 199, *t* 458, 634,
  - t* 949
  - NMR signals, 692
- n*-Propyldimethylamine, 912
- n*-Propyl 3,5-dinitrobenzoate, 821
- Propylene, 276, *t* 278, 279, 316, *t* 122, 327, 333,
  - 405
  - polymerization, 445, 449
  - preparation, 285
  - reactions, 327, 330
  - structure, 269
- Propylene bromide, 327
- Propylene chloride, 397
- Propylene chlorohydrin, 367 (*See also* 1-Chloro-2-propanol)
- Propylene glycol, *t* 457
  - preparation, 330
- Propylene oxide, 545
- n*-Propyl ethyl ether, 316
- Propyl groups, 88
- n*-Propyl iodide, *t* 199
  - preparation, 346
- n*-Propyl isopropyl ether, 536
- n*-Propylmagnesium chloride, 98
- n*-Propylmalonic ester, 1022
- n*-Propylmethylamine, 912
- 1-(*n*-Propyl)naphthalene, 1241
- n*-Propyl phenyl ether, 538
- n*-Propyl *m*-tolyl ketone, 742
- n*-Propyltrimethylammonium iodide, 912
- Propyne, *t* 558
  - preparation, 559
- Pro-R, 511
- Pro-S, 511
- Prosser, T. J., 905
- Prosthetic groups, 1156
- Protection, of amino groups, 928, 1132
- Proteins, 436, 1117, 1134–1144
  - alpha*-, 1141–1142
  - beta*-, 1141–1142
  - classification and function, 1134–1135
  - cleavage, 1052
  - conformational analysis, 1138
  - conjugated, 1136
  - denaturation, 1134
  - DNA and synthesis, 1165
  - fibrous, 1134
  - globular, 1134, 1143
  - isoelectric point, 1135
  - peptide chains, 1135
  - side chains, 1135
  - structure, 1135
- Protein sequenator, 1130
- Protic solvents, 32–35
- Protocatechuic acid, 986
- Protonation, of aromatic compounds, 595, 605–606
- Proton counting, 699–700
- Proton exchange, 719
- Proton magnetic resonance spectrum (PMR),
  - 690, 720
- Protonolysis, 1030
- Protons, in nuclear magnetic resonance
  - alignment, 690
  - chemical shifts for characteristic, *t* 696
  - counting, 699–700
  - equivalence, 691–692, 696, 715–719
  - and position of NMR signals, 694–697
  - shielding and deshielding, 694
  - spin–spin coupling, 700–709
- Pseudocumene, *t* 627
- Pseudotropine, 1290
- p*-Purpise, 1092
- Puckered rings, 173
- Pyridine, 903, 1267
  - Purity, of synthetic products, 938
- Putrescine, 909, 1188
- PVC (*See* Poly(vinyl chloride))
- Pyran, 1088
- Pyranose ring, 1088
- Pyrazole, 1267
- Pyrene, *t* 1231
  - synthesis, 1259
- Pyridine, 903, 1267, *t* 1268, 1284
  - in alkaloids, 1283
  - as base, 822
  - basicity, 1276, 1281–1283
  - electrophilic aromatic substitution, 1278–1279
  - nitration, 1278
  - nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 1280–1281, 1282
  - reactions, 1274, 1278, 1287
  - reduction, 1283
  - source, 1277–1278
  - structure, 1276–1277
  - sulfonation, 1278
- Pyridineacetic acids, decarboxylation, 1291
- 2-Pyridinecarboxylic acid, 1277, 1288, 1291
- 3-Pyridinecarboxylic acid, 1277, 1278, 1288 (*See also* Niacin, Nicotinic acid)
- 4-Pyridinecarboxylic acid, 1277, 1288 (*See also* Isonicotinic acid)
- 2,3-Pyridinedicarboxylic acid, 1284
- Pyridine methiodide, 1282
- Pyridine N-oxide, 1282–1283
- 3-Pyridinesulfonic acid, 1278
- Pyrimidine, 903, 1267
- Pyrolysis, of alkanes, 116–117, 425
- Pyroxylin, 1113
- Pyrrrole, 903, 947, 1267, *t* 1268
  - basicity, 1270, 1275
  - reactions, 1273, 1274, 1287, 1288
  - reactivity, 1274
  - source, 1271–1272
  - structure, 1269–1271
- 2-Pyrrrolecarboxaldehyde, 1273
- Pyrolidine, 903, 947, *t* 1268
  - basicity, 1275
  - preparation, 1275
  - reactions, 1033, 1276
  - structure, 1267
- 3-Pyrroline, 1267
- Pyruvic acid, 1286
  - in biochemical processes, 1156–1157

Q

- Quantum mechanics, 3, 5, 1191
- Quaternary ammonium hydroxide, 919
- Quaternary ammonium salts, 250, 900, 919–923, 1282
- Quinaldine, 1285
- Quinine, 159
- Quinoline, 1267, *t* 1268, 1283–1286
  - reactions, 1288
  - synthesis, 1284
- 5-Quinolinesulfonic acid, 1284
- 8-Quinolinesulfonic acid, 1284
- Quinolinic acid, 1284
- 8-Quinolinol, 1284
- Quinones, 1184

## R

- R**, prefix, for configuration, 138-139, 141, 144-145, 511, 1074
- R**, symbol for alkyl group, 95
- Racemic modification**  
definition, 135  
formation, 149
- Racemization**  
partial, 229  
in  $S_N1$  reactions, 229, 231
- Radicals** (See Free radicals)
- Radioactive labeling** (See Isotopic tracers)
- (+)-Raffinose, 1115
- Rancidity**, of fats, 1046
- Random copolymers**, 442
- Rate constant**, 213
- Rate-determining step**, 224
- Rates of reaction**, 59-63, 212, 495  
and activation energy, 59  
and probability factor, 59  
relative, 62
- Rayon**, 1113
- Reaction mechanisms**, 49
- Reaction rate** (See Rate of reaction)
- Reactions**  
intermolecular, 169  
intramolecular, 169
- Reactivity**  
and orientation, 111-112, 299-302, 313, 355, 357, 399, 610, 665  
and selectivity, 112-113
- Rearrangement**  
of carbocations, 238-244  
in dehydration of alcohols, 321  
in electrophilic addition, 352-354  
in Friedel-Crafts alkylation, 634  
in Hofmann degradation, 897, 901-902, 903-908  
of hydroperoxides, 962-965  
neighboring group effects, 493-494, 657-660, 662  
pinacol rearrangement, 744-746  
in  $S_N1$  reactions, 239-243, 412-414
- Reducing sugars**, 1056  
oxidation rate, 1092
- Reduction** (See Hydrogenation, and specific compound or family)
- Reductive amination**, 896, 900, 1125
- Reeves, R. E.**, 1089
- Re face**, 514
- Reformatsky reaction**, 879-880
- Reforming** (See Catalytic reforming)
- Regiospecific reactions**, 347
- Reimer-Tiemann synthesis**, 595, 970, 977-978
- Relative reactivity**, 48-49
- Replication**, 1164, 1165
- Reserpine**, 1269
- Resins**, structure, 450  
synthesis, 843-844, 978-979
- Resolution**, of racemic modification, 150, 157-159
- Resonance**, 395-436  
alkenes, 427  
allyl radical, 402-407  
aromatic amines, 916  
aryl and vinyl halides, 997-999  
benzene, 614-621  
benzyl cation, 649-650  
benzyl radical, 643-645  
carbanions with  $\alpha$ -ionization, 859  
carboxylic acids, 793-794  
chloronitrobenzenes, 1005-1006  
conjugated dienes, 426-427  
definition, 402  
electron withdrawal by, 1006  
phenols, 971  
structure, 579  
theory of, 402  
use of, 407
- Resonance effect**, 235, 414-415
- Resonance energy**  
alkyl free radicals, 409  
allyl radical, 405  
anthracene and phenanthrene, 1253  
benzene, 579  
benzyl radical, 643-645  
conjugated dienes, 427  
definition, 402  
naphthalene, 1236  
pyrrole, furan, and thiophene, 1270  
triphenylmethyl radical, 648
- Resonance stabilization**  
aromatic amines, 916, 927  
benzyl radical, 643-644  
carboxylic acids, 793  
phenols, 971-972  
urea, 841
- Resorcinol**, 754, 957, *r* 958, 969
- Respiration**, 1156
- Retinal**, 1153-1154
- Retinol**, 1153
- Reversible reactions**, 790-793
- Rhodopsin**, 1153, 1167
- Ribitol**, 1071
- Ribonucleic acids** (See RNA)
- D-Ribose, 1161  
(-)-Ribose, 1071, 1073
- Ring closure**, 173, 1249-1251, 1255-1257 (See also Cyclization)  
electrocyclic reactions, 1204-1222  
isoquinoline derivatives, 1287  
quinoline derivatives, 1284
- Ring opening reactions**, 169-170  
electrocyclic reactions, 1204-1222
- RNA**, 1161-1163, 1167  
and genetics, 1165  
messenger-, 1165  
structure, 1162, 1164  
transport-, 1165
- Roberts, I.**, 364, 492
- Roberts, John D.**, 403, 492, 716, 1010
- Rosano, M. A.**, 1078
- Rotational barrier** (See also Carbon-carbon bonds)  
in carbon-carbon single bonds, 81-82  
in ethane, 81  
in propane, 82
- Rotational isomers** (See Conformational isomers)
- Rubber** (See also *cis*-Polyisoprene)  
preparation, 440  
structure, 439, 448-450  
vulcanization, 439, 449
- Ruberythric acid**, 1115
- Ruff degradation**, 1065
- Russell, Glen**, 114

## S

- S**, prefix for configuration, 138-139, 141, 144-145, 343, 345, 511, 1074
- Saccharic acid**, 1057
- Sacrificial hyperconjugation**, 428
- Safrole**, 767, 961
- Salicin**, 1092
- Salicylaldehyde**, 734, *r* 736  
preparation, 970, 977
- Salicylamide**, *r* 810
- Salicylanilide**, *r* 810

- Salicylic acid, *t* 776, *t* 796, *t* 810, 957  
 preparation, 976  
 Salmine, 1128  
 Sandmeyer reaction, 936  
 Sanger, Frederick, 1129, 1131  
 Saponification equivalent, 845  
 Saran, 439, 447  
 Sarett, Lewis, 1183  
 Saytzeff, Alexander, 301  
 Saytzeff orientation, 301, 308, 313  
 Saytzeff's rule, 301, 314, 321  
 SBR rubber, 442, 449  
 Schiff test, 762  
 Schlesinger, H. I., 471  
 Schleyer, Paul, 237  
 Schöniger oxidation, 73, 263  
 Schotten-Bauman reaction, 821, 829, 924  
 Schrödinger, Erwin, 5  
 Seconal, 1035  
 Selectivity, and reactivity, 112–113  
 Semicarbazide, 751, 756  
 Semicarbazide hydrochloride, 756  
 Semicarbazones, 751, 756  
 Sequence rules, for configuration, 138–141, 141–146  
 Serine, in chymotrypsin, 1148–1149  
 (–)-Serine, *t* 1119  
 Sex attractants, 275, 1228  
 Sex hormones, 481  
 Sex pheromones, 571, 572, 883  
 1,2-Shifts, 241–242, 904–905  
   stereochemistry, 906  
 Sick-cell anemia, 1136, 1165  
 Si face, 514  
 Sigma orbitals (*See* Orbitals, Molecular orbitals)  
 Sigmatropic reactions, 1218–1223  
 Silk fibroin, proposed structure, 1140  
 Silk moth, 275  
 Silver ammonia ion, 752  
 Silver mirror test, 748, 752–753  
 Silver nitrate, 263  
 Simmons, H. E., 382  
 Simmons-Smith reaction, 382  
 Singlet methylene, 378, 380  
 Skell, P. S., 380  
 Skew conformations, 81  
 Skraup synthesis, 1284  
 Smith, R. D., 382  
 $S_N1$  reactions, 262  
   mechanism and kinetics, 224  
   reactivity, 235–238, 411–414  
   rearrangement, 239–243, 412–414  
   role of solvent, 244–246  
   vs.  $S_N2$  reactions, 252–254  
   stereochemistry, 228–231  
 $S_N2$  reactions, 262  
   cleavage of epoxides, 551–552  
   mechanism and kinetics, 215–216, 1002–1003  
   phase-transfer catalysis, 249–251  
   reactivity, 221, 419  
   role of solvent, 246–249  
   vs.  $S_N1$  reactions, 252–254  
   stereochemistry, 216  
 Soaps, cleansing power and solubility, 32, 1044  
   manufacture, 1043  
 Sodioacetoacetic ester, 876–877, 1023  
 Sodiomalonic ester, 1123  
 Sodium acetate, 757  
 Sodium acetylide  
   formation, 566  
   reactions, 568–569  
 Sodium alkoxides, 537–538  
 Sodium amide, 1280  
 Sodium azide, 905  
 Sodium benzenesulfonate, 961  
 Sodium benzoate, 778, 786, 925  
 Sodium borohydride, 468, 471, 473  
 Sodium  $\alpha$ -bromopropionate, 492  
 Sodium 3-butyne-2-oxide, 873  
 Sodium chloride, 26, 27, 29  
 Sodium cyanoacetate, 802  
 Sodium cyanohydrinborate, 900, 901  
 Sodium 2,4-dinitrophenoxide, 966  
 Sodium ethoxide, 487  
 Sodium formate, 760  
   bond lengths, 794  
 Sodium fusion, 73, 263  
 Sodium hypoiodite, 523  
 Sodium lactate, 492  
 Sodium laurate, 786  
 Sodium lauryl sulfate, 1045  
 Sodium mandelate, 761  
 Sodium 2-naphthalenesulfonate, 1245  
 Sodium 2-naphthoxide, 1245  
 Sodium *o*-nitrobenzenesulfonate, 1001  
 Sodium *p*-nitrobenzoate, 760  
 Sodium phenoxide, 961  
   formation, 966  
   reactions, 547, 969  
 Sodium salicylate, 969, 976  
 Sodium trichloroacetate, 1034  
 Solid-phase peptide synthesis, 1133  
 Solubility  
   and intermolecular forces, 30  
   and structure, 30–35  
 Solvation, 501  
 Solvents, 33–35  
   alcohol as, 200  
   aprotic, 33, 246–249  
   protic, 33, 246–249  
 Solvolysis, 254–256, 497  
   nucleophilic assistance to, 256–258  
 Solvomercuration, 469  
 Solvomercuration–demercuration, 539  
 Sorbic acid, *t* 1172  
 Sorbitol, 1057, *t* 1060  
 D-Sorbose, 1092, 1094  
 Soybean oil, *t* 1041  
 Space network polymers, 844, 979  
   structure, 450  
 Spandex, 448  
 Specific rotation, 127  
 Spectrometers, 675  
 Spectroscopy, and structure, 675–732  
 Spermaceti, 1052  
 Spermine, 1188  
 Spin-spin coupling, in NMR, 700–709  
 Spry, 1046  
 Squalene, 441, 453–454  
 Standing (stationary) waves, 1192  
 Starch, 1055, 1104, 1105  
 Steam cracking (*See* Pyrolysis)  
 Stearamide, *t* 815, 821  
 Stearic acid, *t* 776  
 Stearoyl chloride, 787, *t* 815, 821  
 Step-reaction polymerization, 439, 842–845  
 Stereochemistry, 123–164, 205, 509  
   in addition of halogens, 361  
   in alkaline hydrolysis of esters, 832–833  
   and alkyl sulfonates, 502  
   and chlorination, 159–161  
   control of polymerization, 444  
   definition, 123  
   in Diels-Alder reaction, 1186, 1212–1217  
   of electrocyclic reactions, 1204–1212  
   of elimination reactions, 302–309  
   of epoxide cleavage, 548–549  
   of fatty acids, 1042  
   of (+)-glucose, 1058–1060, 1066–1071  
   of Hofmann elimination, 921–923



- of homogeneous hydrogenation
  - diastereoselectivity, 339–342
  - enantioselectivity, 342–345
- of hydroboration, 470
- of neighboring group effects, 490–492
- of nitrogen compounds, 891–892
- optical families D and L, 1073–1075
- sequence rules, 138–141
- 1,2-shifts, 906
- of  $S_N1$  reactions, 228–231
- of  $S_N2$  reactions, 216–221
- of steroids, 480–481
- of (+)-sucrose, 1103–1104
- Stereoisomers, stereoisomerism
  - cyclic compounds, 182–191
  - definition, 123, 147
  - diastereomers, 141–143
  - enantiomers, 128–136
  - geometric (*cis*-, *trans*-) isomers, 272
    - stability, 334
  - interconvertibility, 147
  - meso* compounds, 143–145
  - reactions, 148
- Stereoselective reactions, 219–220, 563
- Stereospecific addition, 380
- Stereospecificity, 275, 504, 563
- Stereospecific reactions, 219, 380, 563, 1205
- Steric factors, 175, 376
  - in butane, 85
  - vs. electronic effects, 656, 907–908
  - in esterification, 799
  - in  $S_N2$  reactions, 222
- Steric hindrance, 252, 260, 261
- Steric repulsion, 85
- Steric strain, 85, 175
- Steroids, 480–481
- Sterols, 480
- Stigmasterol, 840
- Stilbene, *cis*- and *trans*-, 670
- cis*-Stilbene, *t* 629
- trans*-Stilbene, *t* 629
- Stork, Gilbert, 1032
- Strecker synthesis, 1125
- Structural theory, 3
- Strychnine, 159
- Styrene (vinylbenzene), 627, *t* 629, 665
  - commercial preparation, 663
  - polymerization, 442, 449
- Styrene oxide, 545
- Suberic acid, 809
- Substitution nucleophilic bimolecular reactions
  - (See  $S_N2$  reactions)
- Substitution nucleophilic unimolecular reactions
  - (See  $S_N1$  reactions)
- Substitution reactions (See Acyl substitution, Alkyl substitution, Aromatic substitution, Free-radical substitution, Intramolecular nucleophilic substitution,  $S_N1$  reactions,  $S_N2$  reactions)
- Substrate, 205
  - nature of, 252
- Succinamic acid, 824
- Succinic acid, 801, *t* 802
- Succinic anhydride, *t* 815, 1243, 1258
  - preparation, 822
- Succinimide, 398, *t* 815
- Succinoylsulfathiazole, 931
- Sucrose, inversion of, 1103
- (+)-Sucrose, 1103–1104
- Sugar cane, as alcohol source, 463
- Sulfa drugs, 930–931
- Sulfamerazine, 931
- Sulfanilamide, *t* 890, 930–931
  - antibacterial activity, 930–931
  - preparation, 930
- N-substituted, 931
- Sulfanilic acid, *t* 890
  - preparation, 928
  - properties, 929
- Sulfinhydril groups, 1136, 1157
- Sulfolane
  - preparation, 1276
  - as solvent, 35, 1276
- Sulfonamides, 923, 930
  - hydrolysis, 925
  - relative acidity, 925–926
- Sulfonation
  - of aromatic amines, 928–929
  - of benzene, 577, 594, 610
  - of naphthalene, 1235, 1244–1245
  - of phenols, 968
  - of pyridine, 1278
  - of pyrrole, furan, and thiophene, 1273
  - reaction mechanism, 603, 610–611
- Sulfonic acids, 210, 605, 606, 804
- Sulfonium ions, 496
- Sulfonyl chlorides, 502
- Sulfur dioxide, 35
- Sulfuric acid, addition, 328, 349–350
- Sun, as energy source, 1154
- Suprafacial reactions, 1215
- Sweeteners, 973
- Symmetry, orbital, 1194
- Symmetry-allowed reactions, 1204
- Symmetry-forbidden reactions, 1204
- syn*-Addition, 340–342
- syn*-Conformation, 471–472
- Syndiotactic polypropylene, 445–446
- Synthesis, procedure, 266

## T

- (+)-Talose, 1072
- Tanret, C., 1081
- Tarbell, D. S., 1190
- Tartaric acid, 151–152
  - configuration, 138, 1075–1077
  - meso*-, 1076
  - optical activity, 128, 152–153
- (+)-Tartaric acid, 1075–1076
- (-)-Tartaric acid, 1072
- D(-)-Tartaric acid, 1076
- L-(+)-Tartaric acid, 1076
- Tautomerism
  - enol-keto, 565–566
  - imine-enamine, 1031–1032
- Terebic acid, 1036
- Terephthalic acid, 638, 639, *t* 776, *t* 802, 843
  - (1,4-Benzenedicarboxylic acid)
- Terminal residue analysis, 1129–1131
- Terpenes, 440
- Terpenylic acid, 1036
- $\alpha$ -Terpinene, 454
- $\gamma$ -Terpinene, 441
- $\alpha$ -Terpineol, 986
- Terpin hydrate, 454
- Terylene, 448
- Testosterone, 481
- 1,2,4,5-Tetrabromopentane, 429
- 1,1,2,2-Tetrabromopropane, 562
- Tetra-*n*-butylammonium iodide, 909
- Tetrachlorobenzoquinone (Chloranil), 1239
- Tetrachloroethylene, *t* 199, 377
- Tetrachlorohydroquinone, 1239
- Tetrachloromethane (See Carbon tetrachloride)
- Tetracyclone, 1188, 1190
- n*-Tetradecane, *t* 92
- n*-Tetradecyl alcohol, *t* 457
- Tetraethyllead, 116
- 1,2,3,4-Tetrahydroanthracene, 1255



- 1,2,3,6-Tetrahydrobenzaldehyde, 1182  
 $\Delta^3$ -4-*trans*-Tetrahydrocannabinol, 983  
 Tetrahydrofuran, 35, *t* 534, 541, *t* 1268  
   preparation, 1275  
   as solvent, 468, 1275  
 1,2,3,4-Tetrahydronaphthalene, 1237 (*See also* Tetralin)  
 5,8,9,10-Tetrahydro-1,4-naphthoquinone, 1183  
 1,2,3,6-Tetrahydrophthalic anhydride, 1182  
 Tetrahydropyranyl esters, 849, 1268  
 Tetrahydropyranyl ethers, 541, 1268  
 Tetrahydrothiophene, oxidation, 1276  
   preparation, 1275  
 Tetraiodomethane, *t* 199  
 Tetralin, *t* 1231, 1250  
   preparation, 1237  
   reduction, 1237, 1238  
 $\alpha$ -Tetralone, 1250  
 $\beta$ -Tetralone, 1033  
 Tetramethylammonium hydroxide, *t* 889  
 2,2,4,4-Tetramethyl-1,3-cyclobutanedione, 1189  
 Tetramethylenediamine, *t* 889  
 Tetramethylene sulfone, 1276 (*See also* Sulfolane)  
 Tetramethylethylene, 276  
 2,3,5,6-Tetra-O-methyl-D-gluconic acid, 1099–1100  
 2,3,4,6-Tetra-O-methyl-D-glucopyranose, 1099–1100  
 2,3,4,6-Tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose, 1106–1109  
   reactions, 1086–1088  
 $\alpha$ -2,3,4,6-Tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose, 1086–1088  
 $\beta$ -2,3,4,6-Tetra-O-methyl-D-glucose, 1086, 1087  
 3,7,11,15-Tetramethylhexadecanoic acid, 1042  
*cis*-7(*R*),11(*R*)-3,7,11,15-Tetramethyl-2-hexadecen-1-ol, 1042  
 Tetramethylsilane, 695  
 Tetraphenylethylene, *t* 629  
 4,5,6,7-Tetraphenylindene, 1190  
 Tetraphenylmethane, 645  
 Tf (*See* Trifluoromethanesulfonyl group)  
 Thermoplastic polymers, 450  
 Thermosetting polymers, 450  
 Thiamine, 1269  
 Thiazole, 1267  
 Thiele, Johannes, 583  
 Thioacetals, 1157  
 Thioethers, 1157  
 Thiol esters, 1157  
 Thiols, 1157  
 Thionyl chloride, 797  
 Thiophene, 1267, *t* 1268  
   reactions, 1273–1275, 1287  
   source, 1271–1272  
   structure, 1269–1271  
 Thiourea, 842  
 THP, 541, 1268  
 (–)-Threonine, *t* 1119, 1123  
 Threose, 303  
 (–)-Threose, 851, 1072  
 Thymine, 1163, 1164, 1165  
 Thymol, 961, 984  
 Thyroglobulin, 1134  
 Tollens' reagent, 752, 762, 1056, 1060  
 Tollens' test, 748, 753  
*m*-Tolualdehyde, *t* 736  
*o*-Tolualdehyde, *t* 763  
*p*-Tolualdehyde, 734  
   physical constants, *t* 736  
 Toluene, 587, 626–627, *t* 629, 637, 643–644, 742, 781, 899  
   bromination, *t* 597  
   industrial source, 167, 630  
   nitration, *t* 596  
   NMR spectrum, 697, 698  
   orientation of electrophilic substitution, 614–621  
   preparation, 632  
   reactions, 637, 640, 641, 642, 937, 938, 939, 1255  
   sulfonation, *t* 597  
*o*-Toluenediazonium bromide, 938  
*p*-Toluenediazonium bromide, 938  
*o*-Toluenediazonium chloride, 934, 994  
*p*-Toluenediazonium chloride, 937  
*o*-Toluenediazonium hydrogen sulfate, 934  
 2,4-Toluenediisocyanate, 845  
*p*-Toluenesulfonates, 211  
*o*-Toluenesulfonic acid, 595, 637  
*p*-Toluenesulfonic acid, 211, 595, 637  
*p*-Toluenesulfonic esters, 211  
*p*-Toluenesulfono-*m*-toluidide, *t* 949  
*p*-Toluenesulfonyl chloride, 211, 967  
*p*-Toluenesulfonyl group, 211  
*m*-Toluic acid, *t* 776, 777, *t* 796  
*o*-Toluic acid, *t* 776, *t* 796  
   infrared spectrum, 805  
   preparation, 783  
*p*-Toluic acid, *t* 776, *t* 796, 937  
   preparation, 937  
 Toluic acids, 777  
*m*-Toluidine, *t* 890, *t* 949  
   reactions, 1288  
*o*-Toluidine, *t* 890, 909, *t* 949  
   reactions, 924, 934, 938  
*p*-Toluidine, 888, *t* 890, 898, *t* 949  
   protection of amino group, 928  
   reactions, 937, 938, 939, 1286  
*o*-Tolunitrile, 934  
*p*-Tolunitrile, 785, 937  
*o*-(*p*-Tolyl)benzoic acid, 1255  
*p*-Tolyl *p*-nitrobenzyl ether, 967  
 $\alpha$ -(*p*-Tolyl)oxyisobutyric acid, 987  
 Torsional energy, 82  
 Torsional strain, 82, 175, 434  
 Tosylates, 211  
 Tosyl chloride, 211 (*See also p*-Toluenesulfonyl chloride)  
   reactions, 211, 488  
 Tracers (*See* Isotopic tracers)  
 Transesterification, 831, 837–838  
 Transition metal complexes, 335–339  
 Transition state, 69–71  
   for halogenation, 111  
   reactivity and development of, 71–72  
 Transport proteins, 1051  
 Transport RNA, 1165  
 (+)-Trehalose, 1114  
 Triacylglycerols, 1040, 1161  
 Triarylcarbinols, 982  
 2,4,6-Tribromoaniline, 588, 888  
   preparation, 913  
 3,4,5-Tribromoaniline, 940  
 1,2,3-Tribromobenzene, 940  
 1,2,4-Tribromobenzene, 587  
 3,4,5-Tribromobenzenediazonium chloride, 940  
 1,1,2-Tribromoethane, 705  
   NMR spectrum, 701–702  
 Tribromoethylene, *t* 199  
 Tribromomethane (*See* Bromoform)  
 3,4,5-Tribromonitrobenzene, 940  
 2,4,6-Tribromophenol, preparation, 968, 975  
 Tricarballic acid, 1187  
 Trichloroacetaldehyde trimer, 767  
 Trichloroacetic acid  
   acidity constant, *t* 796  
   preparation, 788, 800  
   relative acidity, 796  
 1,1,1-Trichloro-2,2-bis-(*p*-chlorophenyl) ethane (DDT), 1016



- 1,1,2-Trichloroethane, 717  
 Trichloroethylene, *t* 199  
 Trichloromethane (*See* Chloroform)  
 Trichloromethyl free radical, 435  
 1,1,1-Trichloro-2-methyl-2-propanol, 978  
 1,2,5-Trichloropentane, 1288  
 Tricyclo[2.2.1.0<sup>2,5</sup>]heptane (Nortricyclene), 166  
*n*-Tridecane, *t* 92  
 Tridentate, definition, 336  
 Triethylaluminum-titanium trichloride, 444  
 Triethylamine, *t* 889  
 Triethylboron, 469  
 Triethylene glycol, 548  
 Trifluoromethanesulfonyl group, 422  
 Triflyl (*See* Trifluoromethanesulfonyl group)  
 1,3,5-Trihydroxybenzene (Phloroglucinol), 982  
 1,1,1-Triiodo-3,3-dimethyl-2-butanone, 862  
 Triiodomethane, *t* 199  
 Trimethylacetate ion, 862  
 Trimethylacetic acid, 784  
 Trimethylamine, 322, 887, *t* 889  
   industrial preparation, 893  
 Trimethylammonium nitrate, 889  
 1,2,4-Trimethylbenzene, 669  
 1,3,5-Trimethylbenzene, 941 (*See also* Mesitylene)  
 2,4,6-Trimethylbenzoic acid, *t* 810 (*See also* Mesitoic acid)  
 2,3,4-Tri-O-methyl-D-glucose, 1115  
 2,3,6-Tri-O-methyl-D-glucose, 1106, 1107, 1108  
 Trimethylisopropylammonium ion, 322  
 1,4,6-Trimethylnaphthalene, 1251  
 Trimethylpentane, 677  
 2,2,4-Trimethylpentane, 90 (*See also* "Iso-octane")  
   manufacture, 372  
   mass spectrum, 677  
   octane number, 116  
   preparation, 329, 370  
 2,4,4-Trimethyl-1-pentene, preparation, 328, 370  
 2,4,4-Trimethyl-2-pentene, preparation, 328, 370  
 1,4,9-Trimethylphenanthrene, 1257  
 Trimethyl-*n*-propylammonium hydroxide, 919  
 1,1,2-Trimethylpyrrolidinium hydroxide, 920  
 1,1,3-Trimethylpyrrolidinium hydroxide, 920  
 2,3,4-Tri-O-methyl-D-xylose, 1115  
 2,4,6-Trinitroaniline, *t* 890 (*See also* Picramide)  
 2,4,6-Trinitroanisole  
   preparation, 1001  
   reactions, 1007  
 2,4,6-Trinitrobenzenediazonium chloride, 941  
 2,4,6-Trinitrobenzoic acid, 809  
   decarboxylation, 1026  
 2,4,6-Trinitrochlorobenzene, *t* 993 (*See also* Picryl chloride)  
 2,4,6-Trinitrophenetole, 1007  
 2,4,6-Trinitrophenol, *t* 958, 972, 1000  
   preparation, 966  
 Trioxane, 736  
 Tripeptides, 1126 (*See also* Peptides)  
 Triphenylamine, *t* 890  
 Triphenylcarbinol, *t* 457  
 Triphenylchloromethane, 633, 645, 646  
 Triphenylethylene, *t* 629  
 Triphenylmethane, *t* 629  
   preparation, 633  
 Triphenylmethyl bromide, *t* 199  
 Triphenylmethyl chloride, *t* 199  
 Triphenylmethyl dimer, 647  
 1,1,2-Triphenyl-2-methyl-1,2-ethanediol, 746  
 Triphenylmethyl free radical, 645-649  
 Triphenylmethyl peroxide, 646  
 Triphenylphosphine, 337, 874  
 Triphenylphosphine oxide, 874  
 Triplet methylene, 379, 380  
 Tri-*n*-propylamine, *t* 889  
 Triptycene, 1263  
 Tritium, 114, 295  
   isotope effects, 295  
 Tropic acid, 810  
 Tropilidene, 1290  
 Tropine, 1290  
 Tropinic acid, 1290  
 Tropinone, 1290  
 Tropolone, 1224  
 Tropylium bromide, 585  
 Tropylium ion, 584, 585  
 (-)-Tryptophane, *t* 1119  
 Ts (*See* *p*-Toluenesulfonyl group)  
 Tuberculostearic acid, 1052  
 Tung oil, 1047  
   composition, *t* 1041  
 Turanose, 1115  
 Twist-boat conformation, 176, 177, 178  
 Tyramine, 982  
 (-)-Tyrosine, *t* 1119, 1125
- U
- Ultraviolet absorption bands, 688  
 Ultraviolet spectra, 675, 688-689  
   in analysis of aldehydes and ketones, 763-764  
*n*-Undecane, *t* 92  
 Unimolecular elimination (E1 mechanism), 289-290  
 Unsaturated acids, 753  
 $\alpha,\beta$ -Unsaturated carbonyl compounds, 1171-1190  
 Unsaturated fatty acids, 1042  
 Unsaturated hydrocarbons, 267 (*See also* Alkenes, Alkynes, Arenes)  
 Unshared pairs, role of, 415-418  
 Unsymmetrical ethers, 533  
 Uracil, 1163, 1165  
 Urea, 839, 840  
   manufacture, 841  
   reactions, 841  
   resonance stabilization, 841  
 Urea-formaldehyde plastics, 841-845  
 Ureas, 844  
 Urease, 841  
 Ureides, 842  
 Urethane, 839  
 Urethanes, 840, 844  
 Urey, Harold C., 45  
 Uronic acids, *t* 1060  
 UV (*See* Ultraviolet)
- V
- Vaccenic acid, 1052  
 Valence electrons, 1206  
 Valence shells, 4, 5  
*n*-Valeraldehyde, *t* 736  
*n*-Valeramide, *t* 815  
 Valeric acid, *t* 776, 783, 809  
 Valeronitrile, 785  
*n*-Valeryl chloride, *t* 815  
 (+)-Valine, *t* 1119, 1165  
 Vampire, lack of mirror image, 130  
 Van der Waals forces, 28, 29, 30, 85, 186, 199, 1143, 1152  
   in butane, 84  
   in macromolecules, 447-450  
 Van der Waals radius, 29  
 Vanillin, *t* 736, 961  
 Van Slyke, nitrogen determination, 1125  
 Van Tamelen, E. E., 1129  
 Van't Hoff, J. H., 124, 128, 1066  
 Veratraldehyde, 752  
 Veratrole, 981  
 Veronal, 1035



- Vicinal dihalides  
 dehalogenation, 282-283  
 dehydrohalogenation, 560  
 preparation, 359-367  
 du Vigneaud, Vincent, 1133  
 Vinegar, 780  
 Vinyl alcohol, 565  
 Vinylbenzene, 627 (*See also* Styrene)  
 Vinyl bromide, *t* 993, *t* 999  
 Vinyl chloride, 277, 399, *t* 993, *t* 999  
   NMR signals, 693  
   polymerization, 438  
   reactions, 417, 992  
   relative reactivity, 358, 416, 997  
   resonance, 998  
 1-Vinyl-1-cyclohexene, 1185  
 Vinyl ether (*See* Divinyl ether)  
 Vinyl group, 277  
 Vinyl halides, *t* 199  
   vs. aryl halides, 992  
   reactivity, -997  
 Vinylic cations, 420-424  
 Vinylic hydrogen, 398  
 Vinylic substrates, nucleophilic substitution,  
   419-424  
 Vinylidene chloride, 447  
 $\beta$ -Vinylnaphthalene, 1243  
 Viscose, 1114  
 Viscosity, of macromolecules, 447  
 Vision, organic chemistry of, 1152-1154  
 Vitamin A, 1153  
 Vitamin A<sub>2</sub>, 441  
 Vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, 1269  
 Vitamin D<sub>2</sub>, 1229  
 Vitamin D<sub>3</sub>, 1229  
 Vitamins, 1138  
 von Baeyer, Adolf, 170  
 Vulcanization, of rubber, 439, 449  
 Vycra, 448  
 Vycron, 448
- W**
- Walden, Paul, 218  
 Walling, Cheves, 442  
 Water  
   bond formation, 18-19  
   dipole moment, *t* 23  
   as solvent, 32  
 Watson, J. D., 1163, 1164  
 Wave amplitude, 1192  
 Wave equations, 5, 1191-1194  
 Wave functions, 5, 1192  
 Wave mechanics, 5  
 Wavenumbers, 680  
 Wheland, G. W., 403  
 Whitmore, Frank, 226, 241  
 Wilkinson, Sir Geoffrey, 337  
 Wilkinson's catalyst, 337  
 Williamson, K. L., 713  
 Williamson synthesis, 537, 545, 966-967,  
   972-973, 1085  
 Winstein, Saul, 187, 257, 490-492, 658-660  
 Wittig, Georg, 873  
 Wittig reaction, 863, 873-875  
 Wohler, Friedrich, 3  
 Wolff-Kishner reduction, 631, 742, 749, 754  
 Woodward, R. B., 1183, 1203  
 Woodward-Hoffmann rules, *t* 1210, *t* 1216  
 Wurtz reaction, 100
- X**
- Xanthates, 1114  
 X-ray analysis  
   for configuration, 138  
   for protein structure, 1138  
 Xylans, 1110, 1116  
*m*-Xylene, 627, *t* 629, 639  
   industrial source, 630  
*o*-Xylene, 627, *t* 629, 637, 639, 781  
   industrial source, 630  
*p*-Xylene, 627, *t* 629, 637, 638, 639  
   industrial source, 630  
   NMR spectrum, 697, 698  
 Xylenes, 627, 630  
 $\beta$ -D-Xylopyranose, 1091  
 (+)-Xylose, 1072
- Y**
- Ylides, 874
- Z**
- Zerewitinoff active hydrogen determination, 121  
 Zervas, Leonidas, 1132  
 Ziegler, Karl, 443  
 Ziegler-Natta polymerization, 444-446, 449, 461,  
   462  
 Zinc acetate, 786  
 Zwitterions 929 (*See also* Dipolar ions)



## OTHER IMPORTANT PUBLICATIONS

Emeleus, H J &  
Sharpe, A G

Modern Aspects of Inorganic Chemistry

Rama Rao, A V S S

Textbook of Biochemistry - 5th Revised  
Edition